

Probabilistic Machine Learning: An Introduction

## **Adaptive Computation and Machine Learning**

Thomas Dietterich, Editor

Christopher Bishop, David Heckerman, Michael Jordan, and Michael Kearns, Associate Editors

*Bioinformatics: The Machine Learning Approach*, Pierre Baldi and Søren Brunak

*Reinforcement Learning: An Introduction*, Richard S. Sutton and Andrew G. Barto

*Graphical Models for Machine Learning and Digital Communication*, Brendan J. Frey

*Learning in Graphical Models*, Michael I. Jordan

*Causation, Prediction, and Search*, second edition, Peter Spirtes, Clark Glymour, and Richard

Scheines

*Principles of Data Mining*, David Hand, Heikki Mannila, and Padhraic Smyth

*Bioinformatics: The Machine Learning Approach*, second edition, Pierre Baldi and Søren Brunak

*Learning Kernel Classifiers: Theory and Algorithms*, Ralf Herbrich

*Learning with Kernels: Support Vector Machines, Regularization, Optimization, and Beyond*,

Bernhard Schölkopf and Alexander J. Smola

*Introduction to Machine Learning*, Ethem Alpaydin

*Gaussian Processes for Machine Learning*, Carl Edward Rasmussen and Christopher K.I. Williams

*Semi-Supervised Learning*, Olivier Chapelle, Bernhard Schölkopf, and Alexander Zien, Eds.

*The Minimum Description Length Principle*, Peter D. Grünwald

*Introduction to Statistical Relational Learning*, Lise Getoor and Ben Taskar, Eds.

*Probabilistic Graphical Models: Principles and Techniques*, Daphne Koller and Nir Friedman

*Introduction to Machine Learning*, second edition, Ethem Alpaydin

*Boosting: Foundations and Algorithms*, Robert E. Schapire and Yoav Freund

*Machine Learning: A Probabilistic Perspective*, Kevin P. Murphy

*Foundations of Machine Learning*, Mehryar Mohri, Afshin Rostami, and Ameet Talwalkar

# Probabilistic Machine Learning

## An Introduction

Kevin P. Murphy

The MIT Press  
Cambridge, Massachusetts  
London, England

© 2020 Massachusetts Institute of Technology

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced in any form by any electronic or mechanical means (including photocopying, recording, or information storage and retrieval) without permission in writing from the publisher.

For information about special quantity discounts, please email [special\\_sales@mitpress.mit.edu](mailto:special_sales@mitpress.mit.edu)

This book was set in the L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X programming language by the author. Printed and bound in the United States of America.

This book is dedicated to my mother, Brigid Murphy,  
who introduced me to the joy of learning and teaching.



# Brief Contents

1	Introduction	1
<b>I Foundations</b>	<b>19</b>	
2	Probabilistic inference	21
3	Probabilistic models	45
4	Parameter estimation	83
5	Optimization algorithms	107
6	Information theory	153
7	Bayesian statistics	173
8	Bayesian decision theory	233
<b>II Linear models</b>	<b>259</b>	
9	Linear discriminant analysis	261
10	Logistic regression	277
11	Linear regression	319
12	Generalized linear models	371
<b>III Deep neural networks</b>	<b>389</b>	
13	Neural networks for unstructured data	391
14	Neural networks for images	427
15	Neural networks for sequences	463
<b>IV Nonparametric models</b>	<b>489</b>	
16	Exemplar-based methods	491
17	Kernel methods	511
18	Trees, forests, bagging and boosting	559

<b>V Beyond supervised learning</b>	<b>579</b>
19 Learning with fewer labeled examples	581
20 Dimensionality reduction	617
21 Clustering	667
22 Recommender systems	693
23 Graph embeddings	705
<b>VI Appendix: Mathematical background</b>	<b>727</b>
A Some useful mathematics	729
B Linear algebra	749
C Probability	789
D Frequentist statistics	813

# Contents

## Preface xxix

<b>1</b>	<b>Introduction</b>	<b>1</b>
1.1	What is machine learning?	1
1.2	Supervised learning	1
1.2.1	Classification	2
1.2.2	Regression	7
1.2.3	Overfitting and generalization	10
1.3	Unsupervised learning	11
1.3.1	Clustering	12
1.3.2	Self-supervised learning	13
1.3.3	Evaluating unsupervised learning	13
1.4	Reinforcement learning	14
1.4.1	Challenges in RL	14
1.4.2	Comparing supervised, unsupervised and reinforcement learning	15
1.5	Discussion	16
1.5.1	The relationship between ML and other fields	16
1.5.2	Structure of the book	16
1.5.3	Caveats	17
<b>I</b>	<b>Foundations</b>	<b>19</b>
<b>2</b>	<b>Probabilistic inference</b>	<b>21</b>
2.1	Introduction	21
2.2	Bayes' rule	21
2.2.1	Example: testing for COVID-19	22
2.2.2	Example: The Monty Hall problem	23
2.2.3	Inverse problems	25
2.3	Bayesian concept learning	25
2.3.1	Learning a discrete concept: the number game	26
2.3.2	Learning a continuous concept: the healthy levels game	32

2.4	Bayesian machine learning	35
2.4.1	Fully Bayesian approach	36
2.4.2	Plug-in approximation	36
2.4.3	Example: scalar input, binary output	37
2.4.4	Example: binary input, scalar output	39
2.4.5	Scaling up	40
2.4.6	Is Bayes relevant in the “big data era”?	40
2.4.7	Is Bayes relevant in the “deep learning era”?	42
2.5	Exercises	42
<b>3</b>	<b>Probabilistic models</b>	<b>45</b>
3.1	Bernoulli and binomial distributions	45
3.1.1	Definition	45
3.1.2	Sigmoid (logistic) function	46
3.1.3	Binary logistic regression	48
3.2	Categorical and multinomial distributions	49
3.2.1	Definition	49
3.2.2	Softmax function	49
3.2.3	Multiclass logistic regression	50
3.2.4	Log-sum-exp trick	51
3.3	Univariate Gaussian (normal) distribution	52
3.3.1	Cumulative distribution function	52
3.3.2	Probability density function	53
3.3.3	Regression	55
3.3.4	Why is the Gaussian distribution so widely used?	56
3.3.5	Half-normal	56
3.4	Some other common univariate distributions	56
3.4.1	Student $t$ distribution	56
3.4.2	Cauchy distribution	58
3.4.3	Laplace distribution	58
3.4.4	Beta distribution	59
3.4.5	Gamma distribution	59
3.5	The multivariate Gaussian (normal) distribution	61
3.5.1	Definition	61
3.5.2	Mahalanobis distance	62
3.5.3	Marginals and conditionals of an MVN	64
3.5.4	Example: Imputing missing values	64
3.6	Linear Gaussian systems	65
3.6.1	Example: inferring a latent vector from a noisy sensor	66
3.6.2	Example: inferring a latent vector from multiple noisy sensors	67
3.7	Mixture models	68
3.7.1	Gaussian mixture models	69
3.7.2	Mixtures of Bernoullis	71
3.7.3	Gaussian scale mixtures	72
3.8	Probabilistic graphical models	74

3.8.1	Representation	75
3.8.2	Inference	77
3.8.3	Learning	78
3.9	Exercises	80
<b>4</b>	<b>Parameter estimation</b>	<b>83</b>
4.1	Introduction	83
4.2	Maximum likelihood estimation (MLE)	83
4.2.1	Definition	83
4.2.2	Justification for MLE	84
4.2.3	Example: MLE for the Bernoulli distribution	85
4.2.4	Example: MLE for the categorical distribution	86
4.2.5	Example: MLE for the univariate Gaussian	87
4.2.6	Example: MLE for the multivariate Gaussian	88
4.2.7	Example: MLE for linear regression	90
4.3	Empirical risk minimization (ERM)	91
4.3.1	Example: minimizing the misclassification rate	91
4.3.2	Surrogate loss	91
4.4	Regularization	92
4.4.1	Example: MAP estimation for the Bernoulli distribution	93
4.4.2	Example: MAP estimation for the multivariate Gaussian	94
4.4.3	Example: weight decay	95
4.4.4	Picking the regularizer using a validation set	97
4.4.5	Cross-validation	97
4.4.6	Early stopping	99
4.4.7	Using more data	99
4.5	The method of moments	101
4.5.1	Example: MOM for the univariate Gaussian	101
4.5.2	Example: MOM for the uniform distribution	101
4.6	Online (recursive) estimation	102
4.6.1	Example: recursive MLE for the mean of a Gaussian	102
4.6.2	Exponentially-weighted moving average (EMA)	103
4.6.3	Bayesian inference	104
4.7	Parameter uncertainty	104
4.8	Exercises	104
<b>5</b>	<b>Optimization algorithms</b>	<b>107</b>
5.1	Introduction	107
5.1.1	Local vs global optimization	107
5.1.2	Constrained vs unconstrained optimization	109
5.1.3	Convex vs nonconvex optimization	109
5.1.4	Smooth vs nonsmooth optimization	110
5.2	First-order methods	110
5.2.1	Descent direction	111
5.2.2	Step size (learning rate)	111

5.2.3	Convergence rates	113
5.2.4	Momentum methods	114
5.3	Second-order methods	116
5.3.1	Newton's method	116
5.3.2	BFGS and other quasi-Newton methods	117
5.3.3	Trust region methods	118
5.3.4	Natural gradient descent	119
5.4	Stochastic gradient descent	122
5.4.1	Application to finite sum problems	123
5.4.2	Example: SGD for fitting linear regression	123
5.4.3	Choosing the step size	124
5.4.4	Iterate averaging	125
5.4.5	Variance reduction	125
5.4.6	Preconditioned SGD	126
5.5	Constrained optimization	129
5.5.1	Lagrange multipliers	130
5.5.2	The KKT conditions	131
5.5.3	Linear programming	132
5.5.4	Quadratic programming	134
5.5.5	Mixed integer linear programming	135
5.6	Proximal gradient method	135
5.6.1	Projected gradient descent	136
5.6.2	Proximal operator for $\ell_1$ -norm regularizer	137
5.6.3	Proximal operator for quantization	138
5.7	Bound optimization	139
5.7.1	The general algorithm	139
5.7.2	The EM algorithm	140
5.7.3	Example: EM for a GMM	143
5.7.4	Example: EM for an MVN with missing data	147
5.8	Blackbox and derivative free optimization	150
5.8.1	Grid search and random search	150
5.8.2	Simulated annealing	150
5.8.3	Model-based blackbox optimization	151
5.9	Exercises	152
<b>6</b>	<b>Information theory</b>	<b>153</b>
6.1	Entropy	153
6.1.1	Entropy for discrete random variables	153
6.1.2	Cross entropy	155
6.1.3	Joint entropy	155
6.1.4	Conditional entropy	156
6.1.5	Perplexity	157
6.1.6	Differential entropy for continuous random variables	157
6.2	Relative entropy (KL divergence)	159
6.2.1	Definition	159

6.2.2	Interpretation	159
6.2.3	Example: KL divergence between two Gaussians	159
6.2.4	Non-negativity of KL	160
6.2.5	KL divergence and MLE	160
6.2.6	Forward vs reverse KL	161
6.3	Mutual information	162
6.3.1	Definition	162
6.3.2	Interpretation	163
6.3.3	Example	163
6.3.4	Conditional mutual information	164
6.3.5	Normalized mutual information	165
6.3.6	MI as a “generalized correlation coefficient”	165
6.3.7	Data processing inequality	167
6.3.8	Sufficient Statistics	168
6.3.9	Fano’s inequality	168
6.4	Exercises	169
<b>7</b>	<b>Bayesian statistics</b>	<b>173</b>
7.1	Introduction	173
7.1.1	Computing the posterior	173
7.1.2	Summarizing the posterior	173
7.2	Conjugate priors	177
7.2.1	The beta-binomial model	178
7.2.2	The Dirichlet-multinomial model	184
7.2.3	The Gaussian-Gaussian model	188
7.2.4	The multivariate Gaussian-Gaussian model	193
7.2.5	Beyond conjugate priors	199
7.3	Noninformative priors	199
7.3.1	Jeffreys priors	200
7.3.2	Invariant priors	202
7.3.3	Reference priors	203
7.4	Hierarchical priors	203
7.4.1	A hierarchical binomial model	204
7.4.2	A hierarchical Gaussian model	205
7.5	Empirical priors	209
7.5.1	A hierarchical binomial model	209
7.5.2	A hierarchical Gaussian model	210
7.6	Bayesian model comparison	211
7.6.1	Bayesian model selection	211
7.6.2	Bayes model averaging	212
7.6.3	Occam’s razor	213
7.6.4	Connection between cross validation and marginal likelihood	214
7.6.5	Information criteria	216
7.6.6	Bayesian hypothesis testing	218
7.6.7	Group comparisons	220

7.6.8	Posterior predictive checks	222
<b>7.7</b>	Approximate inference algorithms	224
7.7.1	Grid approximation	225
7.7.2	Laplace approximation	225
7.7.3	Variational approximation	226
7.7.4	Markov Chain Monte Carlo (MCMC) approximation	228
7.7.5	Online inference using assumed density filtering	229
<b>7.8</b>	Exercises	230
<b>8</b>	<b>Bayesian decision theory</b>	<b>233</b>
<b>8.1</b>	Bayesian decision theory	233
8.1.1	Basics	233
8.1.2	Classification problems	234
8.1.3	ROC curves	236
8.1.4	Precision-recall curves	238
8.1.5	Regression problems	240
8.1.6	Probabilistic prediction problems	241
<b>8.2</b>	A/B testing	243
8.2.1	A Bayesian approach	244
8.2.2	Example	246
<b>8.3</b>	Bandit problems	248
8.3.1	Contextual bandits	248
8.3.2	Markov decision processes	249
8.3.3	Exploration-exploitation tradeoff	250
8.3.4	Optimal solution	250
8.3.5	Regret	252
8.3.6	Upper confidence bounds (UCB)	253
8.3.7	Thompson sampling	254
8.3.8	Simple heuristics	255
<b>8.4</b>	Discussion	256
8.4.1	The separation principle and its limits	256
8.4.2	Optimality of the Bayesian approach and its limits	257
<b>8.5</b>	Exercises	257

## **II Linear models 259**

<b>9</b>	<b>Linear discriminant analysis</b>	<b>261</b>
<b>9.1</b>	Introduction	261
<b>9.2</b>	Gaussian discriminant analysis	261
9.2.1	Quadratic decision boundaries	262
9.2.2	Linear decision boundaries	263
9.2.3	The connection between LDA and logistic regression	263
9.2.4	Model fitting	264
9.2.5	Nearest centroid classifier	266

9.2.6	Fisher's linear discriminant analysis	266
9.3	Naive Bayes classifiers	270
9.3.1	Example models	271
9.3.2	Model fitting	272
9.3.3	Bayesian naive Bayes	273
9.3.4	The connection between naive Bayes and logistic regression	273
9.4	Generative vs discriminative classifiers	274
9.4.1	Advantages of discriminative classifiers	274
9.4.2	Advantages of generative classifiers	275
9.4.3	Handling missing features	275
9.5	Exercises	276
<b>10</b>	<b>Logistic regression</b>	<b>277</b>
10.1	Introduction	277
10.2	Binary logistic regression	277
10.2.1	Linear classifiers	277
10.2.2	Nonlinear classifiers	278
10.2.3	Maximum likelihood estimation	280
10.2.4	Stochastic gradient descent	283
10.2.5	Perceptron algorithm	284
10.2.6	Iteratively reweighted least squares	285
10.2.7	MAP estimation	286
10.2.8	Standardization	288
10.3	Multinomial logistic regression	288
10.3.1	Linear and nonlinear classifiers	288
10.3.2	Maximum likelihood estimation	289
10.3.3	Gradient-based optimization	291
10.3.4	Bound optimization	291
10.3.5	MAP estimation	293
10.3.6	Maximum entropy classifiers	293
10.3.7	Hierarchical classification	294
10.3.8	Handling large numbers of classes	295
10.4	Preprocessing discrete input data	297
10.4.1	One-hot encoding	297
10.4.2	Feature crosses	297
10.4.3	Dealing with text	298
10.5	Robust logistic regression	300
10.5.1	Mixture model for the likelihood	300
10.5.2	Bi-tempered loss	300
10.6	Bayesian logistic regression	304
10.6.1	Approximating the posterior predictive	304
10.6.2	Laplace approximation	305
10.6.3	MCMC approximation	308
10.6.4	Variational inference	309
10.6.5	Online inference using assumed density filtering	313

10.7 Exercises	315
<b>11 Linear regression</b>	<b>319</b>
11.1 Introduction	319
11.2 Standard linear regression	319
11.2.1 Terminology	319
11.2.2 Least squares estimation	320
11.2.3 Other approaches to computing the MLE	324
11.2.4 Measuring goodness of fit	328
11.3 Ridge regression	329
11.3.1 Computing the MAP estimate	329
11.3.2 Connection between ridge regression and PCA	331
11.3.3 Choosing the strength of the regularizer	333
11.4 Robust linear regression	333
11.4.1 Robust regression using the Student $t$ distribution	334
11.4.2 Robust regression using the Laplace distribution	335
11.4.3 Robust regression using Huber loss	336
11.4.4 Robust regression by randomly or iteratively removing outliers	337
11.5 Lasso regression	337
11.5.1 MAP estimation with a Laplace prior ( $\ell_1$ regularization)	337
11.5.2 Why does $\ell_1$ regularization yield sparse solutions?	338
11.5.3 Hard vs soft thresholding	339
11.5.4 Regularization path	341
11.5.5 Comparison of least squares, lasso, ridge and subset selection	342
11.5.6 Variable selection consistency	344
11.5.7 Group lasso	345
11.5.8 Elastic net (ridge and lasso combined)	347
11.5.9 Optimization algorithms	347
11.6 Bayesian linear regression	349
11.6.1 Computing $p(\mathbf{w} \mathcal{D}, \sigma^2)$ with Gaussian prior	350
11.6.2 Computing $p(\mathbf{w}, \sigma^2 \mathcal{D})$ with Gaussian-Gamma prior	353
11.6.3 Uninformative priors	356
11.6.4 Sparsity-promoting priors	358
11.6.5 Hierarchical priors	360
11.6.6 Empirical Bayes (Automatic relevancy determination)	362
11.6.7 Online inference (recursive least squares)	366
11.7 Exercises	367
<b>12 Generalized linear models</b>	<b>371</b>
12.1 Introduction	371
12.2 The exponential family	371
12.2.1 Definition	371
12.2.2 Examples	372
12.2.3 Log partition function is cumulant generating function	376
12.2.4 MLE for the exponential family	378

12.2.5	Exponential dispersion family	379
12.2.6	Maximum entropy derivation of the exponential family	379
12.3	Generalized linear models (GLMs)	380
12.3.1	Examples	380
12.3.2	Maximum likelihood estimation	382
12.3.3	GLMs with non-canonical link functions	383
12.4	Probit regression	384
12.4.1	Latent variable interpretation	384
12.4.2	Maximum likelihood estimation	385
12.4.3	Bayesian inference	387
12.4.4	Ordinal probit regression	387
12.4.5	Multinomial probit models	387
<b>III</b>	<b>Deep neural networks</b>	<b>389</b>
<b>13</b>	<b>Neural networks for unstructured data</b>	<b>391</b>
13.1	Introduction	391
13.2	Multilayer perceptrons (MLPs)	392
13.2.1	The XOR problem	392
13.2.2	Differentiable MLPs	393
13.2.3	Activation functions	394
13.2.4	Example models	396
13.2.5	The importance of depth	400
13.2.6	Connections with biology	402
13.3	Backpropagation	404
13.3.1	Forwards pass	404
13.3.2	Backwards pass	405
13.3.3	Automatic differentiation	406
13.3.4	Computation graphs	408
13.4	Training neural networks	410
13.4.1	Tuning the learning rate	410
13.4.2	Vanishing and exploding gradients	411
13.4.3	Residual connections	412
13.4.4	Batch normalization	414
13.4.5	Parameter initialization	415
13.5	Regularization	417
13.5.1	Early stopping	417
13.5.2	Weight decay	417
13.5.3	Sparse DNNs	418
13.5.4	Dropout	418
13.5.5	Bayesian neural networks	419
13.6	Other kinds of feedforward networks	420
13.6.1	Radial basis function networks	420
13.6.2	Mixtures of experts	421

<b>14 Neural networks for images</b>	<b>427</b>
14.1 Introduction	427
14.2 Basics	427
14.2.1 Convolution in 1d	427
14.2.2 Convolution in 2d	429
14.2.3 Convolution as matrix-vector multiplication	430
14.2.4 Boundary conditions and strides	430
14.2.5 Pooling layers	433
14.2.6 Normalization layers	434
14.2.7 Putting it altogether	435
14.3 Image classification using CNNs	435
14.3.1 Common datasets	435
14.3.2 Common models	439
14.4 Solving other discriminative vision tasks with CNNs	443
14.4.1 Image tagging	443
14.4.2 Object detection	443
14.4.3 Human pose estimation	445
14.4.4 Image segmentation	446
14.5 Generating images by inverting CNNs	448
14.5.1 Converting a trained classifier into a generative model	448
14.5.2 Image priors	448
14.5.3 Visualizing the features learned by a CNN	450
14.5.4 Deep Dream	451
14.5.5 Neural style transfer	452
14.6 Adversarial Examples	455
14.6.1 Whitebox (gradient-based) attacks	456
14.6.2 Blackbox (gradient-free) attacks	457
14.6.3 Real world adversarial attacks	458
14.6.4 Defenses based on robust optimization	458
14.6.5 Why models have adversarial examples	459
<b>15 Neural networks for sequences</b>	<b>463</b>
15.1 Introduction	463
15.2 Recurrent neural networks (RNNs)	463
15.2.1 Vec2Seq (sequence generation)	463
15.2.2 Seq2Vec (sequence classification)	466
15.2.3 Seq2Seq (sequence translation)	467
15.2.4 Beam search	469
15.2.5 Backpropagation through time	469
15.2.6 Gating and long term memory	470
15.3 1d CNNs	472
15.3.1 1d CNNs for sequence classification	472
15.3.2 Causal 1d CNNs for sequence generation	473
15.4 Attention	474
15.4.1 Seq2seq with attention	475

15.4.2	Seq2vec with attention	476
15.4.3	Attention as a soft dictionary lookup	476
15.4.4	Soft vs hard attention	478
15.5	Transformers	478
15.5.1	Self-attention	479
15.5.2	Multi-headed attention	480
15.5.3	Positional encoding	481
15.5.4	Putting it altogether	481
15.5.5	Comparing transformers, CNNs and RNNs	482
15.6	Efficient transformers	483
15.6.1	Fixed non-learnable localized attention patterns	483
15.6.2	Learnable sparse attention patterns	484
15.6.3	Memory and recurrence methods	485
15.6.4	Low-rank and kernel methods	485

## IV Nonparametric models 489

16	Exemplar-based methods	491
16.1	K nearest neighbor (KNN) classification	491
16.1.1	Example	492
16.1.2	The curse of dimensionality	492
16.1.3	Reducing the speed and memory requirements	494
16.1.4	Open set recognition	494
16.2	Learning distance metrics	495
16.2.1	Linear and convex methods	496
16.2.2	Deep metric learning	497
16.2.3	Classification losses	498
16.2.4	Ranking losses	498
16.2.5	Speeding up ranking loss optimization	500
16.2.6	Other training tricks for DML	503
16.3	Kernel density estimation (KDE)	503
16.3.1	Density kernels	504
16.3.2	Parzen window density estimator	504
16.3.3	How to choose the bandwidth parameter	506
16.3.4	From KDE to KNN classification	506
16.3.5	Kernel regression	507
17	Kernel methods	511
17.1	Inferring functions from data	511
17.1.1	Smoothness prior	512
17.1.2	Inference from noise-free observations	512
17.1.3	Inference from noisy observations	514
17.2	Mercer kernels	514
17.2.1	Mercer's theorem	515

17.2.2	Some popular Mercer kernels	515
17.3	Gaussian processes	520
17.3.1	Noise-free observations	520
17.3.2	Noisy observations	521
17.3.3	Comparison to kernel regression	522
17.3.4	Weight space vs function space	523
17.3.5	Numerical issues	523
17.3.6	Estimating the kernel	524
17.3.7	GPs for classification	527
17.3.8	Connections with deep learning	528
17.4	Scaling GPs to large datasets	529
17.4.1	(Sparse) variational inference	529
17.4.2	Exploiting parallelization and kernel matrix structure	533
17.4.3	Random feature approximation	534
17.5	Support vector machines (SVMs)	536
17.5.1	Large margin classifiers	536
17.5.2	The dual problem	539
17.5.3	Soft margin classifiers	540
17.5.4	The kernel trick	541
17.5.5	Converting SVM outputs into probabilities	542
17.5.6	Connection with logistic regression	543
17.5.7	Multi-class classification with SVMs	543
17.5.8	How to choose the regularizer $C$	544
17.5.9	Kernel ridge regression	545
17.5.10	SVMs for regression	546
17.6	Sparse vector machines	548
17.6.1	Relevance vector machines (RVMs)	549
17.6.2	Comparison of sparse and dense kernel methods	549
17.7	Optimizing in function space	552
17.7.1	Functional analysis	553
17.7.2	Hilbert space	553
17.7.3	Reproducing Kernel Hilbert Space	554
17.7.4	Representer theorem	554
17.7.5	Kernel ridge regression revisited	556
17.8	Exercises	557
<b>18</b>	<b>Trees, forests, bagging and boosting</b>	<b>559</b>
18.1	Classification and regression trees (CART)	559
18.1.1	Model definition	559
18.1.2	Model fitting	560
18.1.3	Regularization	561
18.1.4	Pros and cons	561
18.2	Ensemble learning	563
18.2.1	Stacking	563
18.2.2	Ensembling is not Bayes model averaging	563

18.3	Bagging	564
18.4	Random forests	565
18.5	Boosting	566
18.5.1	Forward stagewise additive modeling	567
18.5.2	Quadratic loss and least squares boosting	567
18.5.3	Exponential loss and AdaBoost	567
18.5.4	LogitBoost	570
18.5.5	Gradient boosting	571
18.6	Interpreting tree ensembles	575
18.6.1	Feature importance	575
18.6.2	Partial dependency plots	576
<b>V</b>	<b>Beyond supervised learning</b>	<b>579</b>
<b>19</b>	<b>Learning with fewer labeled examples</b>	<b>581</b>
19.1	Data augmentation	581
19.1.1	Examples	581
19.1.2	Theoretical justification	582
19.2	Transfer learning	583
19.2.1	Fine-tuning	583
19.2.2	Supervised pre-training	584
19.2.3	Unsupervised pre-training (self-supervised learning)	585
19.2.4	Domain adaptation	588
19.3	Meta-learning	588
19.3.1	Model-agnostic meta-learning (MAML)	589
19.4	Few-shot learning	590
19.4.1	Matching networks	591
19.5	Word embeddings	592
19.5.1	Methods based on SVD	592
19.5.2	Word2vec	594
19.5.3	RAND-WALK model of word embeddings	596
19.5.4	Word analogies	597
19.5.5	Contextual word embeddings	598
19.6	Semi-supervised learning	602
19.6.1	Self-training and pseudo-labeling	603
19.6.2	Entropy minimization	604
19.6.3	Co-training	606
19.6.4	Label propagation on graphs	607
19.6.5	Consistency regularization	608
19.6.6	Deep generative models	609
19.6.7	Combining self-supervised and semi-supervised learning	613
19.7	Active learning	614
19.7.1	Decision-theoretic approach	614
19.7.2	Information-theoretic approach	615

19.7.3	Batch active learning	615
19.8	Exercises	616
<b>20</b>	<b>Dimensionality reduction</b>	<b>617</b>
20.1	Principal components analysis (PCA)	617
20.1.1	Examples	617
20.1.2	Derivation of the algorithm	619
20.1.3	Computational issues	622
20.1.4	Choosing the number of latent dimensions	624
20.2	Factor analysis	626
20.2.1	Generative model	627
20.2.2	Probabilistic PCA	628
20.2.3	EM algorithm for FA/PPCA	629
20.2.4	Unidentifiability of the parameters	631
20.2.5	Nonlinear factor analysis	633
20.2.6	Mixtures of factor analysers	634
20.2.7	Exponential family factor analysis	635
20.2.8	Factor analysis models for paired data	637
20.3	Autoencoders	639
20.3.1	Bottleneck autoencoders	640
20.3.2	Denoising autoencoders	641
20.3.3	Contractive autoencoders	641
20.3.4	Sparse autoencoders	643
20.3.5	Variational autoencoders	644
20.4	Manifold learning	649
20.4.1	What are manifolds?	649
20.4.2	The manifold hypothesis	650
20.4.3	Approaches to manifold learning	650
20.4.4	Multi-dimensional scaling (MDS)	651
20.4.5	Isomap	654
20.4.6	Kernel PCA	654
20.4.7	Maximum variance unfolding (MVU)	656
20.4.8	Local linear embedding (LLE)	657
20.4.9	Laplacian eigenmaps	658
20.4.10	t-SNE	661
20.5	Exercises	665
<b>21</b>	<b>Clustering</b>	<b>667</b>
21.1	Introduction	667
21.1.1	Evaluating the output of clustering methods	667
21.2	Hierarchical agglomerative clustering	669
21.2.1	The algorithm	670
21.2.2	Example	672
21.3	K means clustering	673
21.3.1	The algorithm	674

21.3.2	Examples	674
21.3.3	Vector quantization	675
21.3.4	The K-means++ algorithm	677
21.3.5	The K-medoids algorithm	677
21.3.6	Speedup tricks	678
21.3.7	Choosing the number of clusters $K$	678
21.4	Clustering using mixture models	681
21.4.1	Mixtures of Gaussians	682
21.4.2	Mixtures of Bernoullis	685
21.5	Spectral clustering	686
21.5.1	Normalized cuts	687
21.5.2	Eigenvectors of the graph Laplacian encode the clustering	687
21.5.3	Example	688
21.5.4	Connection with other methods	689
21.6	Biclustering	689
21.6.1	Basic biclustering	690
21.6.2	Nested partition models (Crosscat)	690
<b>22</b>	<b>Recommender systems</b>	<b>693</b>
22.1	Explicit feedback	693
22.1.1	Datasets	693
22.1.2	Collaborative filtering	694
22.1.3	Matrix factorization	695
22.1.4	Autoencoders	697
22.2	Implicit feedback	699
22.2.1	Bayesian personalized ranking	699
22.2.2	Factorization machines	700
22.2.3	Neural matrix factorization	701
22.3	Leveraging side information	701
22.4	Exploration-exploitation tradeoff	702
<b>23</b>	<b>Graph embeddings</b>	<b>705</b>
23.1	Introduction	705
23.2	Graph Embedding as an Encoder/Decoder Problem	706
23.3	Shallow graph embeddings	708
23.3.1	Unsupervised embeddings	708
23.3.2	Distance-based: Euclidean methods	709
23.3.3	Distance-based: non-Euclidean methods	710
23.3.4	Outer product-based: Matrix factorization methods	710
23.3.5	Outer product-based: Skip-gram methods	711
23.3.6	Supervised embeddings	712
23.4	Graph Neural Networks	713
23.4.1	Message passing GNNs	713
23.4.2	Spectral Graph Convolutions	715
23.4.3	Spatial Graph Convolutions	715

23.4.4	Non-Euclidean Graph Convolutions	717
23.5	Deep graph embeddings	717
23.5.1	Unsupervised embeddings	717
23.5.2	Semi-supervised embeddings	720
23.6	Applications	721
23.6.1	Unsupervised applications	721
23.6.2	Supervised applications	723
<b>Appendices</b>	<b>725</b>	
<b>VI Appendix: Mathematical background</b>		<b>727</b>
<b>A Some useful mathematics</b>		<b>729</b>
A.1	Introduction	729
A.2	Sets, functions and relations	729
A.2.1	Functions	729
A.2.2	Relations	733
A.3	Matrix calculus	734
A.3.1	Derivatives	734
A.3.2	Gradients	735
A.3.3	Jacobian	736
A.3.4	Hessian	736
A.3.5	Gradients of commonly used functions	736
A.4	Convexity	738
A.4.1	Convex sets	738
A.4.2	Convex functions	740
A.4.3	Jensen's inequality	742
A.4.4	Subgradients	742
A.4.5	Taylor series approximation	743
A.4.6	Bregman divergence	744
A.4.7	Conjugate duality	745
<b>B Linear algebra</b>		<b>749</b>
B.1	Introduction	749
B.1.1	Notation	749
B.1.2	Vector spaces	752
B.1.3	Norms of a vector and matrix	754
B.1.4	Properties of a matrix	756
B.1.5	Special types of matrices	758
B.2	Matrix multiplication	762
B.2.1	Vector-Vector Products	762
B.2.2	Matrix-Vector Products	762
B.2.3	Matrix-Matrix Products	763
B.2.4	Application: manipulating data matrices	765
B.2.5	Kronecker products	767

B.2.6	Einstein summation	768
<b>B.3</b>	Matrix inversion	769
B.3.1	The inverse of a square matrix	769
B.3.2	Schur complements	769
B.3.3	The matrix inversion lemma	771
B.3.4	Matrix determinant lemma	771
<b>B.4</b>	Eigenvalue decomposition (EVD)	772
B.4.1	Basics	772
B.4.2	Diagonalization	773
B.4.3	Eigenvalues and eigenvectors of symmetric matrices	773
B.4.4	Geometry of quadratic forms	774
B.4.5	Standardizing and whitening data	774
B.4.6	Power method	776
B.4.7	Deflation	777
B.4.8	Eigenvectors optimize quadratic forms	777
<b>B.5</b>	Singular value decomposition (SVD)	777
B.5.1	Basics	777
B.5.2	Connection between SVD and EVD	778
B.5.3	Pseudo inverse	779
B.5.4	SVD and the range and null space of a matrix	780
B.5.5	Truncated SVD	781
<b>B.6</b>	Other matrix decompositions	782
B.6.1	LU factorization	782
B.6.2	QR decomposition	782
B.6.3	Cholesky decomposition	783
<b>B.7</b>	Solving systems of linear equations	784
B.7.1	Solving square systems	785
B.7.2	Solving underconstrained systems (least norm estimation)	785
B.7.3	Solving overconstrained systems (least squares estimation)	786
<b>B.8</b>	Exercises	787
<b>C</b>	<b>Probability</b>	<b>789</b>
<b>C.1</b>	Introduction	789
C.1.1	What is probability?	789
C.1.2	Types of uncertainty	789
C.1.3	Fundamental rules of probability	790
<b>C.2</b>	Random variables	791
C.2.1	Discrete random variables	791
C.2.2	Continuous random variables	792
C.2.3	An aside on notation	794
<b>C.3</b>	Sets of related random variables	794
C.3.1	Joint, marginal and conditional distributions	794
C.3.2	Bayes' rule	795
C.3.3	Independence and conditional independence	795
<b>C.4</b>	Properties of a distribution	796

C.4.1	Moments of a distribution	796
C.4.2	Covariance	799
C.4.3	Correlation	800
C.4.4	Uncorrelated does not imply independent	801
C.4.5	Correlation does not imply causation	801
C.4.6	Simpsons' paradox	802
C.5	Transformations of random variables	803
C.5.1	Discrete case	803
C.5.2	Continuous case	803
C.5.3	Invertible transformations (bijectors)	803
C.5.4	Moments of a linear transformation	805
C.5.5	The convolution theorem	806
C.5.6	Central limit theorem	808
C.6	Exercises	809
<b>D</b>	<b>Frequentist statistics</b>	<b>813</b>
D.1	Introduction	813
D.2	Fisher information matrix (FIM)	813
D.2.1	Definition	814
D.2.2	Connection between the FIM and the Hessian of the NLL	814
D.2.3	Examples	815
D.2.4	Connection between FIM and KL divergence	816
D.3	Sampling distributions	817
D.3.1	Exact sampling distribution of the MLE	817
D.3.2	Large sample approximation	819
D.3.3	Bootstrap approximation	820
D.3.4	Confidence intervals	822
D.4	Bias and variance	823
D.4.1	Bias of an estimator	823
D.4.2	Variance of an estimator	824
D.4.3	The bias-variance tradeoff	824
D.4.4	Jackknife	828
D.5	Frequentist decision theory	828
D.5.1	Computing the risk of an estimator	828
D.5.2	Consistent estimators	831
D.5.3	Admissible estimators	832
D.5.4	Stein's paradox	832
D.6	Empirical risk minimization	834
D.6.1	Empirical risk	834
D.6.2	Structural risk	836
D.6.3	Cross-validation	837
D.6.4	Statistical learning theory	837
D.7	Hypothesis testing	839
D.7.1	Likelihood ratio test	839
D.7.2	Null hypothesis significance testing (NHST)	840

D.7.3	t-test	841
D.7.4	$\chi^2$ test	841
D.7.5	p-values	842
D.8	Pathologies of frequentist statistics	843
D.8.1	Confidence intervals are not credible	843
D.8.2	p-values confuse deduction with induction	844
D.8.3	p-values overstate evidence against the null hypothesis	845
D.8.4	p-values depend on the stopping rule	846
D.8.5	Why isn't everyone a Bayesian?	847
D.9	Exercises	849
<b>Bibliography</b>		<b>869</b>



# Preface

In 2012, I published a 1200-page book called “Machine learning: a probabilistic perspective”, which provided a fairly comprehensive coverage of the field of machine learning (ML) at that time, under the unifying lens of probabilistic modeling. The book was well received, and won the [De Groot prize](#) in 2013.

The year 2012 is also generally considered the start of the “deep learning revolution”. The term “deep learning” refers to a branch of ML that is based on neural networks with many layers (hence the term “deep”). Although this basic technology had been around for many years, it was not until 2012 that it started to significantly outperform other, more “classical” approaches to ML, on several challenging benchmarks. For example, [KSH12] used deep neural networks (DNNs) to win the ImageNet image classification challenge, [CMS12] used DNNs to win a different image classification challenge, and [DHK13] used DNNs to outperform existing methods for speech recognition by a large margin. These breakthroughs were enabled by advances in hardware technology (in particular, the repurposing of fast graphics processing units from video games to ML), data collection technology (in particular, the use of crowd sourcing to collect large labeled datasets such as ImageNet), as well as various new algorithmic ideas.

Since 2012, the field of deep learning has exploded, with new advances coming at an increasing pace. Interest in the field has also exploded, fueled by the commercial success of the technology, and the breadth of applications to which it can be applied. Therefore, in 2018, I decided to write a second edition of my book, to attempt to summarize some of this progress.

By Spring 2020, my draft of the second edition had swollen to about 1600 pages, and I was still not done. At this point, 3 major events happened. First, the COVID-19 pandemic struck, so I decided to “pivot” so I could spend most of my time on COVID-19 modeling. Second, MIT Press told me they could not publish a 1600 page book, and that I would need to split it into two volumes. Third, I decided to recruit several colleagues to help me finish the last  $\sim 15\%$  of “missing content”. (See acknowledgements below.)

The result is two new books, “Probabilistic Machine Learning: An Introduction”, which you are currently reading, and “Probabilistic Machine Learning: Advanced Topics”, which is the sequel to this book [Mur22]. Together these two books attempt to present a fairly broad coverage of the field of ML c. 2021, using the same unifying lens of probabilistic modeling and Bayesian decision theory that I used in the first book.

Most of the content from the first book has been reused, but it is now split fairly evenly between the two new books. In addition, each book has lots of new material, covering some topics from deep

learning, but also advances in other parts of the field, such as generative models, variational inference and reinforcement learning. To make the book more self-contained and useful for students, I have also added some more background content, on topics such as optimization and linear algebra, that was omitted from the first book due to lack of space.

Another major change is that nearly all of the software now uses Python instead of Matlab. (In the future, we hope to have a Julia version of the code.) The new code leverages standard Python libraries, such as numpy, scipy, scikit-learn, etc. Some examples also rely on various deep learning libraries, such as TensorFlow, JAX, and PyTorch. In addition to scripts to create some of the figures, there are Jupyter notebooks to accompany each chapter, which discuss practical aspects that we don't have space to cover in the main text. Details can be found at <http://mlbayes.ai>.

## Acknowledgements

I would like to thank the following people for helping me to write various parts of this book:

- Frederik Kunstner, Si Yi Meng, Aaron Mishkin, Sharan Vaswani, and Mark Schmidt who helped write parts of [Chapter 5 \(Optimization algorithms\)](#).
- Lihong Li, who helped write [Sec. 8.3 \(Bandit problems\)](#).
- Justin Gilmer, who helped write [Sec. 14.6 \(Adversarial Examples\)](#).
- Krzysztof Choromanski, who helped write [Sec. 15.6 \(Efficient transformers\)](#).
- Andrew Wilson, who helped write [Sec. 17.4.2 \(Exploiting parallelization and kernel matrix structure\)](#).
- Colin Raffel, who helped write [Sec. 19.2 \(Transfer learning\)](#) and [Sec. 19.6 \(Semi-supervised learning\)](#).
- Bryan Perozzi, who helped write [Chapter 23 \(Graph embeddings\)](#).
- Zico Kolter, who helped write parts of [Chapter B \(Linear algebra\)](#).

I would like to thank John Fearn for proofreading almost the entire book. Many other people provided feedback on parts of the book, and helped with the code. See the [webpage](#) for a complete list of contributors.

Finally I would like to thank my manager at Google, Doug Eck, for letting me spend company time on this book, and my wife Margaret for letting me spend family time on it, too. I hope my efforts to synthesize all this material together in one place will help to save you time in your journey of discovery into the “land of ML”.

Kevin Patrick Murphy  
Palo Alto, California  
January 2021.

# 1 Introduction

## 1.1 What is machine learning?

A popular definition of **machine learning** or **ML**, due to Tom Mitchell [Mit97], is as follows:

A computer program is said to learn from experience  $E$  with respect to some class of tasks  $T$ , and performance measure  $P$ , if its performance at tasks in  $T$ , as measured by  $P$ , improves with experience  $E$ .

Thus there are many different kinds of machine learning, depending on the nature of the task  $T$  we wish the system to learn, the nature of the performance measure  $P$  we use to evaluate the system, and the nature of the training signal or experience  $E$  we give it.

In this book, we will cover the most common types of ML, but from a **probabilistic perspective**. Roughly speaking, this means that we treat all unknown quantities (e.g., predictions about the future value of some quantity of interest, such as tomorrow's temperature, or the parameters of some model) as **random variables**, that are endowed with **probability distributions** which describe a weighted set of possible values the variable may have. (See Chapter C for a quick refresher on the basics of probability, if necessary.)

There are two main reasons we adopt a probabilistic approach. First, it is the optimal approach to **decision making under uncertainty**, as we explain in Sec. 8.1. Second, probabilistic modeling is the language used by most other areas of science and engineering, and thus provides a unifying framework between these fields. As Shakir Mohamed, a researcher at DeepMind, put it:<sup>1</sup>

Almost all of machine learning can be viewed in probabilistic terms, making probabilistic thinking fundamental. It is, of course, not the only view. But it is through this view that we can connect what we do in machine learning to every other computational science, whether that be in stochastic optimisation, control theory, operations research, econometrics, information theory, statistical physics or bio-statistics. For this reason alone, mastery of probabilistic thinking is essential.

## 1.2 Supervised learning

The most common form of ML is **supervised learning**. In this problem, the task  $T$  is to learn a mapping  $f$  from inputs  $\mathbf{x} \in \mathcal{X}$  to outputs  $\mathbf{y} \in \mathcal{Y}$ . The inputs  $\mathbf{x}$  are also called the **features**, or the

---

1. Source: Slide 2 of <https://bit.ly/3pyHyPn>

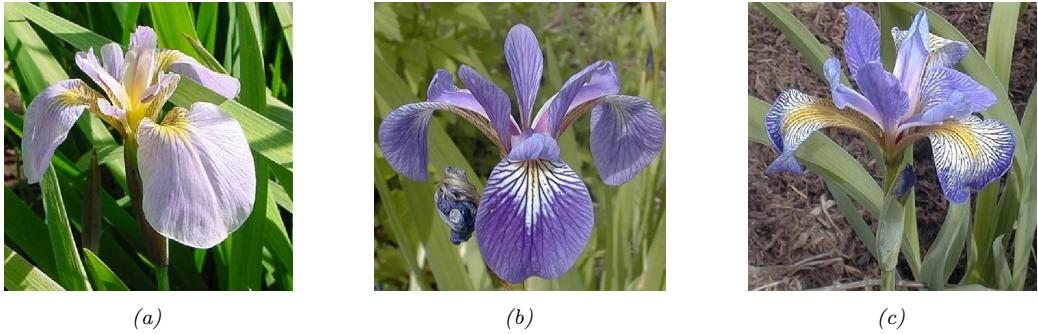


Figure 1.1: Three types of iris flowers: setosa, versicolor and virginica. Used with kind permission of Dennis Kramb and SIGNA.

index	sl	sw	pl	pw	label
0	5.1	3.5	1.4	0.2	setosa
1	4.9	3.0	1.4	0.2	setosa
	...				
50	7.0	3.2	4.7	1.4	versicolor
	...				
149	5.9	3.0	5.1	1.8	virginica

Table 1.1: A subset of the Iris design matrix. The features are: sepal length, sepal width, petal length, petal width. There are 50 examples of each class.

**covariates**; this is often a fixed dimensional vector of numbers, such as the height and weight of a person, or the pixels in an image. In this case,  $\mathcal{X} = \mathbb{R}^D$ , where  $D$  is the dimensionality of the vector (i.e., the number of input features). The output  $\mathbf{y}$  is also known as the **label**, **target**, or **response**.<sup>2</sup> The experience  $E$  is given in the form of a set of  $N$  input-output pairs  $\mathcal{D} = \{(\mathbf{x}_n, \mathbf{y}_n)\}_{n=1}^N$ , known as the **training set**. ( $N$  is called the **sample size**.) The performance measure  $P$  depends on the type of output we are predicting, as we discuss below.

### 1.2.1 Classification

In **classification** problems, the output space is a set of  $C$  unordered and mutually exclusive labels known as **classes**,  $\mathcal{Y} = \{1, 2, \dots, C\}$ . The problem of predicting the class label given an input is also called **pattern recognition**. (If there are just two classes, often denoted by  $y \in \{0, 1\}$  or  $y \in \{-1, +1\}$ , it is called **binary classification**.)

### 1.2.1.1 Example: classifying Iris flowers

As an example, consider the problem of classifying iris flowers into their 3 subspecies, setosa, versicolor and virginica. Fig. 1.1 shows one example of each of these classes.

2. Sometimes (e.g., in the `statsmodels` Python package)  $x$  are called the **exogeneous variables** and  $y$  are called the **endogenous variables**.

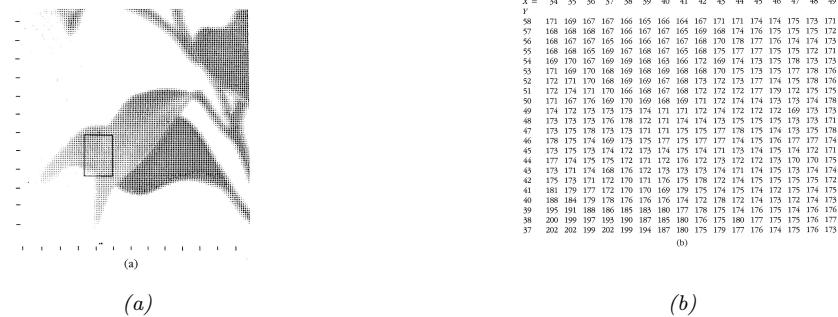


Figure 1.2: (a) An image of a flower as seen by a human. (b) What the computer sees. The array of numbers represents pixel intensities in the highlighted box. This illustrates the difficulty of learning models that work with image data. From [Mar82, p273]. Used with kind permission of MIT Press.

In **image classification**, the input space  $\mathcal{X}$  is the set of images, which is a very high dimensional space: for a color image of size  $D_1 \times D_2$  pixels, we have  $\mathcal{X} = \mathbb{R}^D$ , where  $D = 3 \times D_1 \times D_2$ . (In practice we represent each pixel intensity with an integer, typically from the range  $\{0, 1, \dots, 255\}$ , but we assume real valued inputs for notational simplicity.) Learning a mapping  $f : \mathcal{X} \rightarrow \mathcal{Y}$  from images to labels is quite challenging, as illustrated in Fig. 1.2. However, it can be tackled using certain kinds of functions, such as a **convolutional neural network** or **CNN**, which we discuss in Sec. 14.1.

Fortunately for us, some botanists have already identified 4 simple, but highly informative, numeric features — sepal length, sepal width, petal length, petal width — which can be used to distinguish the three kinds of Iris flowers. In this section, we will use this much lower dimensional input space,  $\mathcal{X} = \mathbb{R}^4$ , for simplicity. The **iris dataset** is a collection of 150 labeled examples of iris flowers, 50 of each type, described by these 4 features. It is widely used as an example, because it is small and simple to understand. (We will discuss larger and more complex datasets later in the book.)

When we have small datasets of features, it is common to store them in an  $N \times D$  matrix, in which each row represents an example, and each column represents a feature. This is known as a **design matrix**; see Table 1.1 for an example.<sup>3</sup>

The iris dataset is an example of **tabular data**. When the inputs are structured objects (e.g., sequences of words, or variable-shaped graphs), rather than fixed-length vectors, the data is usually stored in some other format rather than in a design matrix. However, structured examples are often converted to a fixed-sized feature representation (a process known as **featurization**), thus implicitly creating a design matrix for further processing.

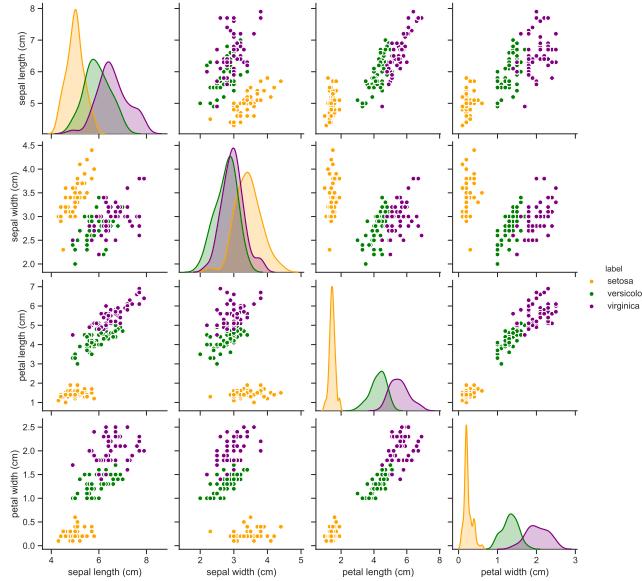


Figure 1.3: Visualization of the Iris data as a pairwise scatter plot. On the diagonal we plot the marginal distribution of each feature for each class. The off-diagonals contain scatterplots of all possible pairs of features. Generated by `iris_plot.py`

### 1.2.1.2 Exploratory data analysis

Before tackling a problem with ML, it is usually a good idea to perform **exploratory data analysis**, to see if there are any obvious patterns (which might give hints on what method to choose), or any obvious problems with the data (e.g., label noise or outliers).

For tabular data with a small number of features, it is common to make a **pair plot**, in which we show a scatter plots of each pair of variables, color coded by class label. See Fig. 1.3 for an example.

For higher dimensional data, it is common to first perform **dimensionality reduction**, and then to visualize the data in 2d or 3d. We discuss methods for dimensionality reduction in Chapter 20.

### 1.2.1.3 Learning a classifier

From Fig. 1.3, we can see that the setosa class is easy to distinguish from the other two classes. For example, suppose we create the following **decision rule**:

$$f(\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \begin{cases} \text{Setosa if petal length} < 2.45 \\ \text{Versicolor or Virginica otherwise} \end{cases} \quad (1.1)$$

3. This particular design matrix has  $N = 150$  rows and  $D = 4$  columns, and hence has a **tall and skinny** shape, since  $N \gg D$ . By contrast, some datasets (e.g., genomics) have more features than examples,  $D \gg N$ ; their design matrices are **short and fat**. The term “**big data**” usually means that  $N$  is large, whereas the term “**wide data**” means that  $D$  is large (relative to  $N$ ).

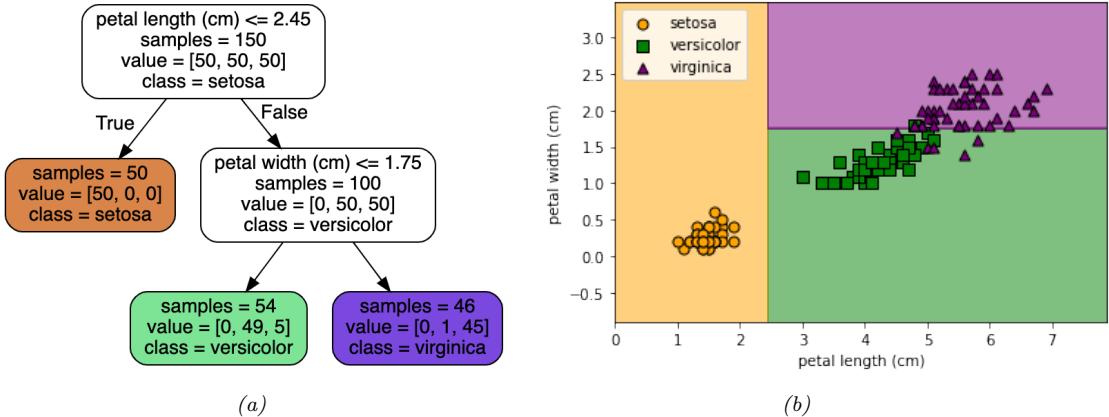


Figure 1.4: Example of a decision tree of depth 2 applied to the iris data, using just the petal length and petal width features. Leaf nodes are color coded according to the predicted class. The number of training samples that pass from the root to a node is shown inside each box; we show how many values of each class fall into this node. This can be normalized to get a distribution over class labels for each node. We can then pick the majority class. Adapted from Figures 6.1 and 6.2 of [Gér19]. Generated by [trees/iris\\_dtree.ipynb](#).

This is a very simple example of a classifier, in which we have partitioned the input space into two regions, defined by the 1d **decision boundary** at  $x_{\text{petal length}} = 2.45$ . Points lying to the left of this boundary are classified as setosa; points to the right are either versicolor or virginica.

We see that this rule perfectly classifies the setosa examples, but not the virginica and versicolor ones. To improve performance, we can recursively partition the space, by splitting regions in which the classifier makes errors. For example, we can add another decision rule, to be applied to inputs that fail the first test, to check if the petal width is below 1.75cm (in which case we predict versicolor) or above (in which case we predict virginica). We can arrange these nested rules in to a tree structure, called a **decision tree**, as shown in Fig. 1.4a. This induces the 2d **decision surface** shown in Fig. 1.4b.

We can represent the tree by storing, for each internal node, the feature index that is used, as well as the corresponding threshold value. We denote all these **parameters** by  $\theta$ . We discuss how to learn these parameters in Sec. 18.1.

#### 1.2.1.4 Model fitting

The goal of supervised learning is to automatically come up with classification models such as the one shown in Fig. 1.4a, so as to reliably predict the labels for any given input. A common way to measure performance on this task is in terms of the **misclassification rate** on the training set:

$$\mathcal{L}(\theta) \triangleq \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^N \mathbb{I}(y_n \neq f(\mathbf{x}_n; \theta)) \quad (1.2)$$

		Estimate		
		Setosa	Versicolor	Virginica
Truth	Setosa	0	1	10
	Versicolor	1	0	10
	Virginica	1	1	0

Table 1.2: Hypothetical asymmetric loss matrix for iris classification.

where  $\mathbb{I}(e)$  is the binary **indicator function**, which returns 1 iff (if and only if) the condition  $e$  is true, and returns 0 otherwise, i.e.,

$$\mathbb{I}(e) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } e \text{ is true} \\ 0 & \text{if } e \text{ is false} \end{cases} \quad (1.3)$$

This assumes all errors are equal. However it may be the case that some errors are more costly than others. For example, suppose we are foraging in the wilderness and we find some iris flowers. Furthermore, suppose that setosa and versicolor are tasty, but virginica is poisonous. In this case, we might use the asymmetric **loss function**  $\ell(y, \hat{y})$  shown in Table 1.2.

We can then define **empirical risk** to be the average loss of the predictor on the training set:

$$\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta}) \triangleq \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^N \ell(y_n, f(\mathbf{x}_n; \boldsymbol{\theta})) \quad (1.4)$$

We see that the misclassification rate Eq. (1.2) is equal to the empirical risk when we use **zero-one loss** for comparing the true label with the prediction:

$$\ell_{01}(y, \hat{y}) = \mathbb{I}(y \neq \hat{y}) \quad (1.5)$$

See Sec. 8.1 for more details.

One way to define the problem of **model fitting** or **training** is to find a setting of the parameters that minimizes the empirical risk on the training set:

$$\hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}} = \underset{\boldsymbol{\theta}}{\operatorname{argmin}} \mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta}) = \underset{\boldsymbol{\theta}}{\operatorname{argmin}} \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^N \ell(y_n, f(\mathbf{x}_n; \boldsymbol{\theta})) \quad (1.6)$$

This is called **empirical risk minimization**.

However, our true goal is to minimize the expected loss on *future data* that we have not yet seen. That is, we want to **generalize**, rather than just do well on the training set. We discuss this important point in Sec. 1.2.3.

### 1.2.1.5 Uncertainty

[We must avoid] false confidence bred from an ignorance of the probabilistic nature of the world, from a desire to see black and white where we should rightly see gray. — Immanuel Kant, as paraphrased by Maria Konnikova [Kon20].

In many cases, we will not be able to perfectly predict the exact output given the input, due to lack of knowledge of the input-output mapping (this is called **epistemic uncertainty** or **model uncertainty**), and/or due to intrinsic (irreducible) stochasticity in the mapping (this is called **aleatoric uncertainty** or **data uncertainty**).

For example, in Fig. 1.4b,, we see that an input with petal-length=5 and petal-width=1.75 is right on the decision boundary between virginica (purple) and versicolor (green), so there may be some uncertainty about the correct label. We can capture our uncertainty using a **conditional probability distribution**

$$p(y = c | \mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta}) = f_c(\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta}) \quad (1.7)$$

where  $f : \mathcal{X} \rightarrow [0, 1]^C$  maps inputs to a probability distribution over the  $C$  possible output labels. For example, given the decision tree in Fig. 1.4a, we can estimate the empirical distribution over class labels for each leaf node. If we consider the second (green) leaf node , we get  $p(y | \mathbf{x} \in L_3(\boldsymbol{\theta})) = [0/54, 49/54, 5/54]$ , which reflects the fact that most examples in that region of input space are versicolor, but some are virginica.

Representing uncertainty in our prediction can be important for certain applications. For example, let us return to our poisonous flower example. If we are confident that the flower is setosa, we can enjoy a healthy snack, but if we are uncertain about whether the flower is versicolor or virginica, we would be better off going hungry. Alternatively, if we are uncertain, we may choose to perform an **information gathering action**, such as performing a diagnostic test. For more information about how to make optimal decisions in the presence of uncertainty, see Sec. 8.1.

### 1.2.2 Regression

Now suppose that we want to predict a real-valued quantity  $y \in \mathbb{R}$  instead of a class label  $y \in \{1, \dots, C\}$ ; this is known as **regression**. For example, in the case of Iris flowers,  $y$  might be the degree of toxicity if the flower is eaten, or the average height of the plant.

Regression is very similar to classification. However, since the output is real-valued, we need to use a different loss function. For regression, the most common choice is to use **quadratic loss**, or  $\ell_2$  **loss**:

$$\ell_2(y, \hat{y}) = (y - \hat{y})^2 \quad (1.8)$$

This penalizes large **residuals**  $y - \hat{y}$  more than small ones.<sup>4</sup> The empirical risk when using quadratic loss is equal to the **mean squared error** or **MSE**:

$$\text{MSE}(\boldsymbol{\theta}) = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^N (y_n - f(\mathbf{x}_n; \boldsymbol{\theta}))^2 \quad (1.9)$$

#### 1.2.2.1 Linear regression

As an example, consider the 1d data in Fig. 1.5a. We can fit this data using a **simple linear regression** model of the form

$$f(x; \boldsymbol{\theta}) = b + wx \quad (1.10)$$

---

4. If the data has outliers, the quadratic penalty can be too severe. In such cases, it can be better to use  $\ell_1$  loss instead, which is more **robust**. See Sec. 11.4 for details.

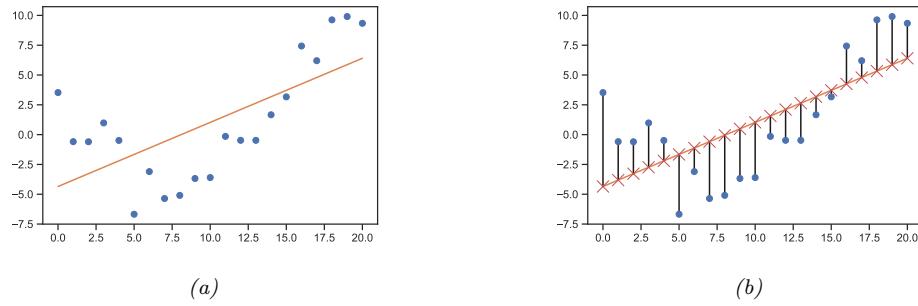


Figure 1.5: (a) Linear regression on some 1d data. (b) The vertical lines denote the residuals between the observed output value for each input (blue circle) and its predicted value (red cross). The goal of least squares regression is to pick a line that minimizes the sum of squared residuals. Generated by [linreg\\_residuals\\_plot.py](#).

where  $w$  is the **slope**,  $b$  is the **offset**, and  $\theta = (w, b)$  are all the **parameters** of the model. By adjusting  $\theta$ , we can minimize the sum of squared errors, shown by the vertical lines in Fig. 1.5b, until we find the **least squares solution**

$$\hat{\theta} = \underset{\theta}{\operatorname{argmin}} \text{MSE}(\theta) \quad (1.11)$$

See Sec. 11.2.2.1 for details.

If we have multiple input features, we can write

$$f(\mathbf{x}; \theta) = b + w_1 x_1 + \cdots + w_D x_D = b + \mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x} \quad (1.12)$$

where  $\theta = (\mathbf{w}, b)$ . This is called **multiple linear regression**.

For example, consider the task of predicting temperature as a function of 2d location in a room. Fig. 1.6(a) plots the results of a linear model of the following form:

$$f(\mathbf{x}; \theta) = b + w_1 x_1 + w_2 x_2 \quad (1.13)$$

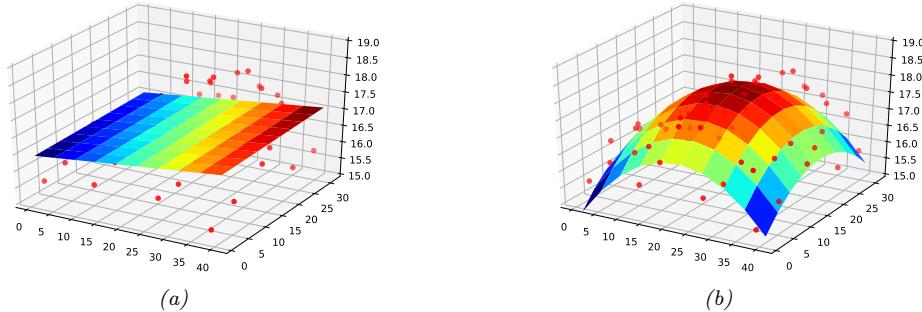
We can extend this model to use  $D > 2$  input features (such as time of day), but then it becomes harder to visualize.

To reduce notational clutter, it is standard to absorb the bias term  $b$  into the weights  $\mathbf{w}$  by defining  $\tilde{\mathbf{w}} = [b, w_1, \dots, w_D]$  and defining  $\tilde{\mathbf{x}} = [1, x_1, \dots, x_D]$ , so that

$$\tilde{\mathbf{w}}^\top \tilde{\mathbf{x}} = \mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x} + b \quad (1.14)$$

This converts the **affine function** into a linear function. We will usually assume that this has been done, so we can just write  $f(\mathbf{x}; \mathbf{w}) = \mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x}$ .

In statistics, the  $\mathbf{w}$  parameters are usually called **regression coefficients** (and are typically denoted by  $\beta$ ) and  $b$  is called the **intercept**. In ML, the parameters  $\mathbf{w}$  are called the **weights** and  $b$  is called the **bias**. This terminology arises from electrical engineering, where we view the function  $f$  as a circuit which takes in  $\mathbf{x}$  and returns  $f(\mathbf{x})$ . Each input is fed to the circuit on “wires”, which have weights  $\mathbf{w}$ . The circuit computes the weighted sum of its inputs, and adds a constant bias or offset term  $b$ . (This use of the term “bias” should not be confused with the statistical concept of bias discussed in Sec. D.4.1.)



*Figure 1.6: Linear and polynomial regression applied to 2d data. Vertical axis is temperature, horizontal axes are location within a room. Data was collected by some remote sensing motes at Intel’s lab in Berkeley, CA (data courtesy of Romain Thibaux). (a) The fitted plane has the form  $\hat{f}(\mathbf{x}) = w_0 + w_1x_1 + w_2x_2$ . (b) Temperature data is fitted with a quadratic of the form  $\hat{f}(\mathbf{x}) = w_0 + w_1x_1 + w_2x_2 + w_3x_1^2 + w_4x_2^2$ . Produced by [linreg\\_2d\\_surface\\_demo.py](#).*

### 1.2.2.2 Polynomial regression

The linear model in Fig. 1.5a is obviously not a very good fit to the data. We can improve the fit by using a **polynomial regression** model of degree  $D$ . This has the form  $f(x; \mathbf{w}) = \mathbf{w}^\top \phi(x)$ , where  $\phi(x)$  is a feature vector derived from the input, which has the following form:

$$\phi(x) = [1, x, x^2, \dots, x^D] \quad (1.15)$$

This is a simple example of **feature preprocessing**, also called **feature engineering**.

This model is still a linear function of the parameters  $\mathbf{w}$ , but is now a nonlinear function of the original input  $x$ . In Fig. 11.1, we see that using  $D = 2$  results in a much better fit. We can keep increasing  $D$ , and hence the number of parameters in the model, until  $D = N - 1$ ; in this case, we have one parameter per data point, so we can perfectly **interpolate** the data. The resulting model will have 0 MSE, as shown in Fig. 1.7c. However, intuitively the resulting function will not be a good predictor for future inputs, since it is too “wiggly”. We discuss this in more detail in Sec. 1.2.3.

We can also apply polynomial regression to multi-dimensional inputs. For example, Fig. 1.6(b) plots the predictions for the temperature model after performing a quadratic expansion of the inputs

$$f(\mathbf{x}; \mathbf{w}) = w_0 + w_1x_1 + w_2x_2 + w_3x_1^2 + w_4x_2^2 \quad (1.16)$$

The quadratic shape is a better fit to the data than the linear model in Fig. 1.6(a), since it captures the fact that the middle of the room is hotter. We can also add cross terms, such as  $x_1x_2$ , to capture interaction effects. See Sec. 10.4.2 for details.

### 1.2.2.3 Deep neural networks

In Sec. 1.2.2.2, we manually specified the transformation of the input features, namely polynomial expansion,  $\phi(\mathbf{x}) = [1, x_1, x_2, x_1^2, x_2^2, \dots]$ . We can create much more powerful models by learning to

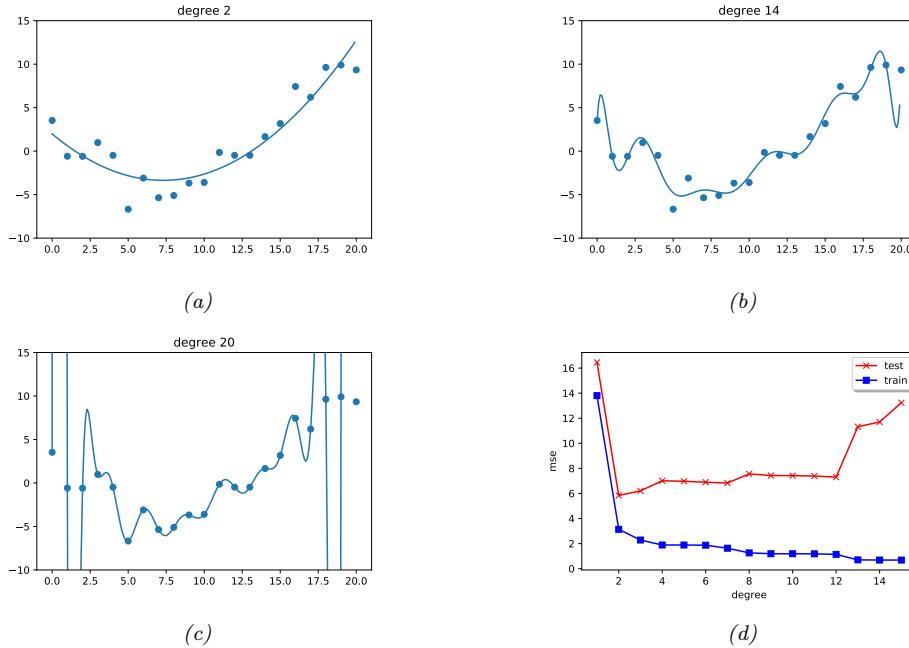


Figure 1.7: (a-c) Polynomials of degrees 2, 14 and 21 fit to 21 datapoints (the same data as in Fig. 1.5). (d) MSE vs degree. Generated by `linreg_poly_vs_degree.py`.

do such nonlinear **feature extraction** automatically. If we let  $\phi(\mathbf{x})$  have its own set of parameters, say  $\mathbf{V}$ , then the overall model has the form

$$f(\mathbf{x}; \mathbf{w}, \mathbf{V}) = \mathbf{w}^\top \phi(\mathbf{x}; \mathbf{V}) \quad (1.17)$$

We can recursively decompose the feature extractor  $\phi(\mathbf{x}; \mathbf{V})$  into a composition of simpler functions. The resulting model then becomes a stack of  $L$  nested functions:

$$f(\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta}) = f_L(f_{L-1}(\dots(f_1(\mathbf{x}))\dots)) \quad (1.18)$$

where  $f_\ell(\mathbf{x}) = f(\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta}_\ell)$  is the function at layer  $\ell$ . The final layer is linear and has the form  $f_L(\mathbf{x}) = \mathbf{w}^\top f_{1:L-1}(\mathbf{x})$ , where  $f_{1:L-1}(\mathbf{x})$  is the learned feature extractor. This is the key idea behind **deep neural networks** or **DNNs**. See Part III for details.

### 1.2.3 Overfitting and generalization

Recall that the empirical risk on a training set is given by

$$\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta}; \mathcal{D}_{\text{train}}) = \frac{1}{|\mathcal{D}_{\text{train}}|} \sum_{(\mathbf{x}_n, y_n) \in \mathcal{D}_{\text{train}}} \ell(y_n, f(\mathbf{x}_n; \boldsymbol{\theta})) \quad (1.19)$$

With a suitably flexible model, we can drive this error to zero, e.g., by simply memorizing the correct output for each input. For example, Fig. 1.7(c) perfectly interpolates the training data. But what we care about is prediction accuracy on new data, which may not be part of the training set. A model that perfectly fits the training data, but which is too complex, is said to suffer from **overfitting**.

To detect if a model is overfitting, we assume (for now) that we have access to the true (but unknown) distribution  $p^*(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y})$  used to generate the training set. Then, instead of computing the empirical risk we compute the theoretical expected loss or **population risk**

$$\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta}; p^*) \triangleq \mathbb{E}_{p^*(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y})} [\ell(\mathbf{y}, f(\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta}))] \quad (1.20)$$

The difference  $\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta}; p^*) - \mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta}; \mathcal{D}_{\text{train}})$  is called the **generalization gap**. If a model has a large generalization gap (i.e., low training error but high test error), it is a sign that it is overfitting.

In practice we don't know  $p^*$ . However, we can partition the data we do have into two subsets, known as the training set and the **test set**. Then we can approximate the population risk using the **test risk**:

$$\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta}; \mathcal{D}_{\text{test}}) \triangleq \frac{1}{|\mathcal{D}_{\text{test}}|} \sum_{\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y} \in \mathcal{D}_{\text{test}}} \ell(y, f(\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta})) \quad (1.21)$$

As an example, in Fig. 1.7d, we plot the training error and test error for polynomial regression as a function of degree  $D$ . We see that the training error goes to 0 as the model becomes more complex. However, the test error has a characteristic **U-shaped curve**: on the left, where  $D = 1$ , the model is **underfitting**; on the right, where  $D \gg 1$ , the model is **overfitting**; and when  $D = 2$ , the model complexity is “just right”.

How can we pick a model of the right complexity? If we use the training set to evaluate different models, we will always pick the most complex model, since that will have the most **degrees of freedom**, and hence will have minimum loss. So instead we should pick the model with minimum test loss.

In practice, we need to partition the data into three sets, namely the training set, the test set and a **validation set**; the latter is used for model selection, and we just use the test set to estimate future performance (the population risk), i.e., the test set is not used for model fitting or model selection. See Sec. 4.4.4 for further details.

### 1.3 Unsupervised learning

In supervised learning, we assume that each input example  $\mathbf{x}$  in the training set has an associated set of output targets  $\mathbf{y}$ , and our goal is to learn the input-output mapping. Although this is useful, and can be difficult, supervised learning is essentially just “glorified curve fitting” [Pea18].

An arguably much more interesting task is to try to “make sense of” data, as opposed to just learning a mapping. That is, we just get observed “inputs”  $\mathcal{D} = \{\mathbf{x}_n : n = 1 : N\}$  without any corresponding labels  $\mathbf{y}_n$ . This is called **unsupervised learning**.

Unsupervised learning also avoids the need to collect large labeled datasets for training, which can often be time consuming and expensive (think of asking doctors to label medical images).

Unsupervised learning also avoids the need to learn how to partition the world into often arbitrary categories. For example, consider the task of labeling when an action, such as “drinking” or “sipping”, occurs in a video. Is it when the person picks up the glass, or when the glass first touches the mouth,

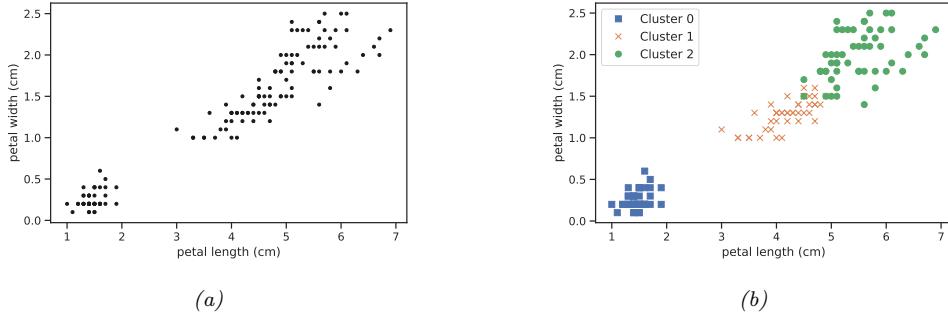


Figure 1.8: (a) A scatterplot of the petal features from the *iris* dataset. (b) The result of unsupervised clustering using  $K = 3$ . Generated by `iris_kmeans.py`.

or when the liquid pours out? What if they pour out some liquid, then pause, then pour again — is that two actions or one? Humans will often disagree on such issues [Idr+17], which means the task is not well defined. It is therefore not reasonable to expect machines to learn such mappings.<sup>5</sup>

Finally, unsupervised learning forces the model to “explain” the high dimensional inputs, rather than just the low dimensional outputs. This allows us to learn richer models of “how the world works”. As Geoff Hinton, who is a famous professor of ML at the University of Toronto, has said:

When we’re learning to see, nobody’s telling us what the right answers are — we just look. Every so often, your mother says “that’s a dog”, but that’s very little information. You’d be lucky if you got a few bits of information — even one bit per second — that way. The brain’s visual system has  $10^{14}$  neural connections. And you only live for  $10^9$  seconds. So it’s no use learning one bit per second. You need more like  $10^5$  bits per second. And there’s only one place you can get that much information: from the input itself. — Geoffrey Hinton, 1996 (quoted in [Gor06]).

### 1.3.1 Clustering

A simple example of unsupervised learning is the problem of finding **clusters** in data. The goal is to partition the input into regions that contain “similar” points. As an example, consider a 2d version of the Iris dataset. In Fig. 1.8a, we show the points without any class labels. Intuitively there are at least two clusters in the data, one in the bottom left and one in the top right. Furthermore, if we assume that a “good” set of clusters should be fairly compact, then we might want to split the top right into (at least) two subclusters. The resulting partition into three clusters is shown in Fig. 1.8b. (Note that there is no correct number of clusters; instead, we need to consider the tradeoff between model complexity and fit to the data. We discuss ways to make this tradeoff in Sec. 21.3.7.)

5. A more reasonable approach is to try to capture the probability distribution over labels produced by a “crowd” of annotators (see e.g., [Dum+18; Aro+19]). This embraces the fact that there can be multiple “correct” labels for a given input due to the ambiguity of the task itself.

### 1.3.2 Self-supervised learning

A recently popular approach to unsupervised learning is known as **self-supervised learning**. In this approach, we create proxy supervised tasks from unlabeled data. For example, we might try to learn to predict a color image from a gray scale image, or to mask out words in a sentence and then try to predict them given the surrounding context. The hope is that the resulting predictor  $\hat{\mathbf{y}}_1 = f(\mathbf{y}_2; \boldsymbol{\theta})$ , where  $\mathbf{y}_2$  is the observed input and  $\mathbf{y}_1$  is the predicted output, will learn useful features from the data, that can then be used in standard, downstream supervised tasks. We discuss this approach in more detail in Sec. 19.2.

### 1.3.3 Evaluating unsupervised learning

Although unsupervised learning is appealing, it is very hard to evaluate the quality of the output of an unsupervised learning method, because there is no ground truth to compare to [TOB16].

A common method for evaluating unsupervised models is to measure the probability assigned by the model to unseen test examples, by computing the unconditional probability  $p(\mathbf{y}|\boldsymbol{\theta})$ . (It is conditioned on the parameters  $\boldsymbol{\theta}$ , but not conditioned on any input features  $\mathbf{x}$ .) This treats the problem of unsupervised learning as one of **density estimation**. The idea is that a good model will not be “surprised” by actual data samples (i.e., will assign them high probability). Furthermore, since probabilities must sum to 1.0, if the model assigns high probability to regions of data space where the data samples come from, it implicitly assigns low probability to the regions where the data does not come from. Thus the model has learned to capture the **typical patterns** in the data. This can be used inside of a **data compression** algorithm. Unfortunately, density estimation is difficult, especially in high dimensions. Furthermore, a model that assigns high probability to the data may not have learned useful high level patterns (after all, the model could just memorize all the training examples).

An alternative evaluation metric is to use the learned unsupervised representation as features or input to a downstream supervised learning method. If the unsupervised method has discovered useful patterns, then it should be possible to use these patterns to perform supervised learning using much less labeled data than when working with the original features. For example, in Sec. 1.2.1.1, we saw how the 4 manually defined features of iris flowers contained most of the information needed to perform classification. We were thus able to train a classifier with perfect performance using just 150 examples. If the input was raw pixels, we would need many more examples to achieve comparable performance (see Sec. 14.1). That is, we can increase the **sample efficiency** of learning (i.e., reduce the number of labeled examples needed to get good performance) by first learning a good representation.

Increased sample efficiency is a useful evaluation metric, but in many applications, especially in science, the goal of unsupervised learning is to *gain understanding*, not to improve performance on some prediction task. This requires the use of models that are **interpretable**, but which can also generate or “explain” most of the observed patterns in the data. To paraphrase Plato, the goal is to discover how to “carve nature at its joints”. Of course, evaluating whether we have successfully discovered the true underlying structure behind some dataset often requires performing experiments and thus interacting with the world. We discuss this topic further in Sec. 1.4.



Figure 1.9: Examples of some control problems. (a) Space Invaders Atari game. From <https://gym.openai.com/envs/SpaceInvaders-v0/>. (b) Controlling a humanoid robot in the MuJuCo simulator so it walks as fast as possible without falling over. From <https://gym.openai.com/envs/Humanoid-v2/>

## 1.4 Reinforcement learning

In addition to supervised and unsupervised learning, there is a third kind of ML known as **reinforcement learning (RL)**. In this class of problems, the system or **agent** has to learn a **policy**  $\mathbf{a} = \pi(\mathbf{x})$  that specifies the action  $\mathbf{a}$  to take in response to each possible input  $\mathbf{x}$ . For example, consider an agent that learns to play a video game, such as Atari Space Invaders (see Fig. 1.9a). In this case, the input  $\mathbf{x}$  is the image (or sequence of past images), and the output  $\mathbf{a}$  is the direction to move in (left or right) and whether to fire a missile or not. As a more complex example, consider the problem of a robot learning to walk (see Fig. 1.9b). In this case, the input  $\mathbf{x}$  is the set of joint positions and angles for all the limbs, as well as their temporal derivatives, and the output  $\mathbf{a}$  is a set of actuation or motor control signals.

The difference from supervised learning (SL) is that the system is not told which action is the best one to take (i.e., which output to produce for a given input). Instead, the system just receives an occasional **reward** (or punishment) signal in response to the actions that it takes. This is like **learning with a critic**, who gives an occasional thumbs up or thumbs down, as opposed to **learning with a teacher**, who tells you what to do at each step.

### 1.4.1 Challenges in RL

Learning a good policy is much more challenging than learning a good prediction function as in supervised learning tasks. The main sources of difficulty are the following:

- **Temporal credit assignment problem.** The RL agent may only receive feedback (a reward signal) after performing a sequence of many actions. (For example, consider playing the game of chess.) In this case, it is hard for the agent to know which of the actions that it took was the most important due to lack of intermediate feedback. This challenge is also known as the **delayed reward** problem.
- **Exploration-exploitation tradeoff.** The RL agent only gets rewards for actions it took, not for those it did not take. Without observing such counterfactual rewards, the agent does not

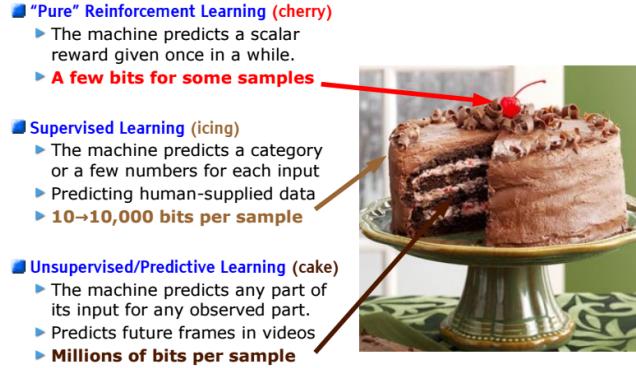


Figure 1.10: The three types of machine learning visualized as layers of a chocolate cake. This figure (originally from <https://bit.ly/2m65Vs1>) was used in a talk by Yann Le Cun at NIPS’16, and is used with his permission.

know for sure whether it could have gotten more reward for choosing a different sequence of actions. Therefore, the agent needs to explore the environment and try different options, while still trying to maximize reward as it goes. This scenario is also called “**learning while earning**”. See Sec. 8.3 for more information.

- **Blackbox optimization problem.** In supervised and unsupervised learning, we usually have a parametric model to which we can apply gradient based optimization to estimate the parameters  $\theta$  (see Chapter 4). However, in RL, the environment is “blackbox” which we cannot differentiate easily. Instead the agent must use derivative-free optimization methods (see Sec. 5.8). Alternatively, it can learn a proxy model of the world which it can then optimize in the usual way. However, if the model is a poor one, the agent may act suboptimally. Furthermore, such suboptimal actions may cause it to get stuck collecting “useless” data, thus preventing the model from getting better.

Thus we see that there are many other challenges in making RL work successfully (see e.g., [DAMH19; Win20]). Nevertheless, it is the current frontier in ML research, due to its wide applicability (since the reward function can be any property of a system that the human designer wants to optimize). Unfortunately, RL is beyond the scope of this book. However, more information can be found in the sequel to this book, [Mur22].

#### 1.4.2 Comparing supervised, unsupervised and reinforcement learning

RL has grown in popularity recently, due to its broad applicability. However, to compensate for the minimal amount of information coming from the reward signal, we must use other information sources, such as expert demonstrations, or unsupervised learning, to make it feasible to learning from a limited number of trials (interactions with the environment). As Yann Le Cun put it, in an invited talk at the NIPS<sup>6</sup> conference in 2016: “If intelligence was a cake, unsupervised learning would be the

6. NIPS stands for “Neural Information Processing Systems”. It is one of the premier ML conferences. It has recently been renamed to NeurIPS.

chocolate sponge, supervised learning would be the icing, and reinforcement learning would be the cherry.” This is illustrated in Fig. 1.10.

## 1.5 Discussion

In this section, we situate ML and this book into a larger context.

### 1.5.1 The relationship between ML and other fields

There are several subcommunities that work on ML-related topics, each of which have different names. The field of **predictive analytics** is similar to supervised learning (in particular, classification and regression), but focuses more on business applications. **Data mining** covers both supervised and unsupervised machine learning, but focuses more on structured data, usually stored in large commercial databases. **Data science** uses techniques from machine learning and statistics, but also emphasizes other topics, such as data integration, data visualization, and working with domain experts, often in an iterative feedback loop (see e.g., [BS17]). The difference between these areas is often just one of terminology.<sup>7</sup>

ML is also very closely related to the field of **statistics**. Indeed, Jerry Friedman, a famous statistics professor at Stanford, said<sup>8</sup>

[If the statistics field had] incorporated computing methodology from its inception as a fundamental tool, as opposed to simply a convenient way to apply our existing tools, many of the other data related fields [such as ML] would not have needed to exist — they would have been part of statistics. — Jerry Friedman [Fri97b]

Machine learning is also related to **artificial intelligence (AI)**. Historically, the field of AI assumed that we could program “intelligence” by hand (see e.g., [RN10; PM17]), but this approach has largely failed, mostly because it is too difficult to manually encode all the knowledge such a system would need. Consequently, there is renewed interest in using ML to help AI (to the extent that sometimes the terms are used interchangeably).

### 1.5.2 Structure of the book

We have seen that ML is closely related to many other subjects in mathematics, statistics, computer science, etc. It can be hard to know where to start.

In this book, we take one particular path through this interconnected landscape, using probability theory as our unifying lens. We cover statistical foundations in Part I, supervised learning in Part II–Part IV, and unsupervised learning in Part V. Relevant background material is covered in the appendix. For more information on unsupervised learning and reinforcement learning, please see the sequel to this book, [Mur22],

In addition to the book, you may find the online Python notebooks that accompany this book helpful. See <http://mlbayes.ai> for details.

---

7. See <https://developers.google.com/machine-learning/glossary/> for a useful “ML glossary”.

8. Quoted in <https://brenocon.com/blog/2008/12/statistics-vs-machine-learning-fight/>

### 1.5.3 Caveats

In this book, we will see how machine learning can be used to create systems that can (attempt to) predict the future; these predictions can then be used to choose actions so as to minimize expected loss. When designing such systems, it can be hard to design a loss function that correctly specifies all of our preferences; this can result in “**reward hacking**” in which the machine optimizes the reward function we give it, but then we realize that the function did not capture various constraints or preferences that we forgot to specify [Wei76; Amo+16; D’A+20]. (This is particularly important when tradeoffs need to be made between multiple objectives.)

Reward hacking has raised various concerns in the context of **AI ethics** and **AI safety** (see e.g., [KR19]). Russell [Rus19] proposes to solve this problem by not specifying the reward function, but instead forcing the machine to infer the reward by observing human behavior, an approach known as **inverse reinforcement learning**. However, emulating current or past human behavior too closely may be undesirable, and can be biased by the data that is available for training (see e.g., [Pau+20]).

Another approach is to view ML as a tool for building adaptive components which form part of a larger system. Such a system should be designed and regulated in the same way that we design and regulate other complex, semi-autonomous human artefacts, such as aeroplanes, online trading platforms or medical diagnostic systems (c.f. [Jor19]). ML plays a key role in such systems, but additional checks and balances should be put in place to encode our prior knowledge and preferences, and to ensure the system acts in the way that we intended.



PART I

# Foundations



# 2 Probabilistic inference

## 2.1 Introduction

In this chapter, we introduce some of the basic probabilistic “machinery” that we will use to tackle machine learning problems.

## 2.2 Bayes’ rule

Bayes’s theorem is to the theory of probability what Pythagoras’s theorem is to geometry. — Sir Harold Jeffreys, 1973 [Jef73].

In this section, we discuss the basics of **Bayesian inference**. According to the Merriam-Webster dictionary, the term “inference” means “the act of passing from sample data to generalizations, usually with calculated degrees of certainty”. The term “Bayesian” is used to refer to inference methods that represent “degrees of certainty” using probability theory, and which leverage **Bayes’ rule**<sup>1</sup>, to update the degree of certainty given data.

Bayes’ rule itself is very simple: it is just a formula for computing the probability distribution over possible values of an unknown (or **hidden**) quantity  $H$  given some observed data  $Y = y$ :

$$p(H = h|Y = y) = \frac{p(H = h)p(Y = y|H = h)}{p(Y = y)} \quad (2.1)$$

This follows automatically from the identity

$$p(h|y)p(y) = p(h)p(y|h) = p(h, y) \quad (2.2)$$

which itself follows from the **product rule of probability**.<sup>2</sup>

1. Thomas Bayes (1702–1761) was an English mathematician and Presbyterian minister. For a discussion of whether to spell this as Bayes’ rule or Bayes’s rule, see <https://bit.ly/2kDtLuK>.

2. If these equations are unfamiliar to you, see Chapter C for a refresher on probability theory. Also, note that we abuse notation somewhat and use  $p(h)$  as shorthand for  $p_H(h)$ ,  $p(y)$  as shorthand for  $p_Y(y)$ , etc. i.e.,  $p(h)$  and  $p(y)$  are different functions evaluated at different values. (By contrast,  $f(h)$  and  $f(y)$  is the same function  $f$  evaluated at different values.) We hope the meaning is clear from context. Also, we use  $p()$  to denote both probability mass functions (for discrete random variables) and probability density functions (for continuous random variables). Finally, we write  $p(h)$  to represent the scalar value corresponding to the distribution  $p_H()$  evaluated at  $h$ , and we write  $p(H)$  to represent the full distribution over possible values.

In Eq. (2.1), the term  $p(H)$  represents what we know about possible values of  $H$  before we see any data; this is called the **prior distribution**. (If  $H$  has  $K$  possible values, then  $p(H)$  is a vector of  $K$  probabilities, that sum to 1.) The term  $p(Y|H = h)$  represents the distribution over the possible outcomes  $Y$  we expect to see if  $H = h$ ; this is called the **observation distribution**. When we evaluate this at a point corresponding to the actual observations,  $y$ , we get the function  $p(Y = y|H = h)$ , which is called the **likelihood**. (Note that this is a function of  $h$ , since  $y$  is fixed, but it is not a probability distribution, since it does not sum to one.) The normalization constant in the denominator,  $p(Y = y)$ , is sometimes called the **marginal likelihood**, since it is computed by marginalizing over the unknown  $H$ :

$$p(Y = y) = \sum_{h' \in \mathcal{H}} p(H = h') p(Y = y|H = h') \quad (2.3)$$

Multiplying the prior by the likelihood for each value of  $H$ , and then normalizing so the result sums to one, gives the **posterior distribution**  $p(H = h|Y = y)$ ; this represents our new **belief state** about the possible values of  $H$ .

We can summarize Bayes rule in words as follows:

$$\text{posterior} \propto \text{prior} \times \text{likelihood} \quad (2.4)$$

Here we use the symbol  $\propto$  to denote “proportional to”, since we are ignoring the denominator, which is just a constant, independent of  $H$ . Using Bayes rule to update a distribution over unknown values of some quantity of interest, given relevant observed data, is called **Bayesian inference**, or **posterior inference**. It can also just be called **probabilistic inference**.

Below we give some simple examples of Bayesian inference in action. We will see many more interesting examples later in this book.

### 2.2.1 Example: testing for COVID-19

Suppose you think you may have contracted **COVID-19**, which is an infectious disease caused by the **SARS-CoV-2** virus. You decide to take a diagnostic test, and you want to use its result to determine if you are infected or not.

Let  $H = 1$  be the event that you are infected, and  $H = 0$  be the event you are not infected. Let  $Y = 1$  if the test is positive, and  $Y = 0$  if the test is negative. We want to compute  $p(H = h|Y = y)$ , for  $h \in \{0, 1\}$ , where  $y$  is the observed test outcome. (We will write the distribution of values,  $[p(H = 0|Y = y), p(H = 1|Y = y)]$  as  $p(H|y)$ , for brevity.) We can think of this as a form of **binary classification**, where  $H$  is the unknown class label, and  $y$  is the feature vector.

First we must specify the likelihood. This quantity obviously depends on how reliable the test is. There are two key parameters. The **sensitivity** (aka **true positive rate**) is defined as  $p(Y = 1|H = 1)$ , i.e., the probability of a positive test given that the truth is positive. The **false negative rate** is defined as one minus the sensitivity. The **specificity** (aka **true negative rate**) is defined as  $p(Y = 0|H = 0)$ , i.e., the probability of a negative test given that the truth is negative. The **false positive rate** is defined as one minus the specificity. We summarize all these quantities in Table 2.1. (See Sec. 8.1.3.1 for more details.) Following <https://nyti.ms/31MTZgV>, we set the sensitivity to 87.5% and the specificity to 97.5%.

Next we must specify the prior. The quantity  $p(H = 1)$  represents the **prevalence** of the disease in the area in which you live. We set this to  $p(H = 1) = 0.1$ , for illustration purposes.

	$Y = 0$	$Y = 1$
$H = 0$	TNR	FPR
$H = 1$	FNR	TPR

Table 2.1: Likelihood function  $p(Y|H)$  for a binary outcome  $Y$  given two possible hidden states  $H$ . Each row sums to one. Abbreviations: TNR is true negative rate, TPR is true positive rate, FNR is false negative rate, FPR is false positive rate.

Now suppose you test positive. We have

$$p(H = 1|Y = 1) = \frac{p(Y = 1|H = 1)p(H = 1)}{p(Y = 1|H = 1)p(H = 1) + p(Y = 1|H = 0)p(H = 0)} \quad (2.5)$$

$$= \frac{\text{TPR} \times \text{prior}}{\text{TPR} \times \text{prior} + \text{FPR} \times (1 - \text{prior})} \quad (2.6)$$

$$= \frac{0.875 \times 0.1}{0.875 \times 0.1 + 0.025 \times 0.9} = 0.795 \quad (2.7)$$

So there is a 79.5% chance you are infected.

Now suppose you test negative. The probability you are infected is given by

$$p(H = 1|Y = 0) = \frac{p(Y = 0|H = 1)p(H = 1)}{p(Y = 0|H = 1)p(H = 1) + p(Y = 0|H = 0)p(H = 0)} \quad (2.8)$$

$$= \frac{\text{FNR} \times \text{prior}}{\text{FNR} \times \text{prior} + \text{TNR} \times (1 - \text{prior})} \quad (2.9)$$

$$= \frac{0.125 \times 0.1}{0.125 \times 0.1 + 0.975 \times 0.9} = 0.014 \quad (2.10)$$

So there is just a 1.4% chance you are infected. (If the prevalence (base rate) drops to  $p(H = 1) = 0.01$ , these numbers reduce to 26% and 0.13% respectively. See also Exercise 2.1.)

In the above example, we assumed the sensitivity and specificity parameters were known. See [GC20] for how to apply Bayes rule for diagnostic testing when there is uncertainty about these parameters.

### 2.2.2 Example: The Monty Hall problem

In this section, we consider a more “frivolous” application of Bayes rule. In particular, we apply it to the famous **Monty Hall problem**.

Imagine a game show with the following rules: There are three doors, labelled 1, 2, 3. A single prize (e.g., a car) has been hidden behind one of them. You get to select one door. Then the gameshow host opens one of the other two doors (not the one you picked), in such a way as to not reveal the prize location. At this point, you will be given a fresh choice of door: you can either stick with your first choice, or you can switch to the other closed door. All the doors will then be opened and you will receive whatever is behind your final choice of door.

For example, suppose you choose door 1, and the gameshow host opens door 3, revealing nothing behind the door, as promised. Should you (a) stick with door 1, or (b) switch to door 2, or (c) does it make no difference?

	Door 1	Door 2	Door 3	Switch	Stay
Car	-	-		Lose	Win
-		Car	-	Win	Lose
-	-		Car	Win	Lose

Table 2.2: 3 possible states for the Monty Hall game, showing that switching doors is two times better (on average) than staying with your original choice. Adapted from Table 6.1 of [PM18].

Intuitively, it seems it should make no difference, since your initial choice of door cannot influence the location of the prize. However, the fact that the host opened door 3 tells us something about the location of the prize, since he made his choice conditioned on the knowledge of the true location and on your choice. As we show below, you are in fact twice as likely to win the prize if you switch to door 2.

To show this, we will use Bayes' rule. Let  $H_i$  denote the hypothesis that the prize is behind door  $i$ . We make the following assumptions: the three hypotheses  $H_1$ ,  $H_2$  and  $H_3$  are equiprobable *a priori*, i.e.,

$$P(H_1) = P(H_2) = P(H_3) = \frac{1}{3}. \quad (2.11)$$

The datum we receive, after choosing door 1, is either  $Y = 3$  and  $Y = 2$  (meaning door 3 or 2 is opened, respectively). We assume that these two possible outcomes have the following probabilities. If the prize is behind door 1, then the host selects at random between  $Y = 2$  and  $Y = 3$ . Otherwise the choice of the host is forced and the probabilities are 0 and 1.

$$\left| \begin{array}{l} P(Y = 2|H_1) = \frac{1}{2} \\ P(Y = 3|H_1) = \frac{1}{2} \end{array} \right| \left| \begin{array}{l} P(Y = 2|H_2) = 0 \\ P(Y = 3|H_2) = 1 \end{array} \right| \left| \begin{array}{l} P(Y = 2|H_3) = 1 \\ P(Y = 3|H_3) = 0 \end{array} \right| \quad (2.12)$$

Now, using Bayes' theorem, we evaluate the posterior probabilities of the hypotheses:

$$P(H_i|Y = 3) = \frac{P(Y = 3|H_i)P(H_i)}{P(Y = 3)} \quad (2.13)$$

$$\left| \begin{array}{l} P(H_1|Y = 3) = \frac{(1/2)(1/3)}{P(Y=3)} \\ P(H_2|Y = 3) = \frac{(1)(1/3)}{P(Y=3)} \\ P(H_3|Y = 3) = \frac{(0)(1/3)}{P(Y=3)} \end{array} \right| \quad (2.14)$$

The denominator  $P(Y = 3)$  is  $P(Y = 3) = \frac{1}{6} + \frac{1}{3} = \frac{1}{2}$ . So

$$\left| \begin{array}{llll} P(H_1|Y = 3) & = & \frac{1}{3} & | P(H_2|Y = 3) = \frac{2}{3} & | P(H_3|Y = 3) = 0. \end{array} \right| \quad (2.15)$$

So the contestant should switch to door 2 in order to have the biggest chance of getting the prize. See Table 2.2 for a worked example.

Many people find this outcome surprising. One way to make it more intuitive is to perform a thought experiment in which the game is played with a million doors. The rules are now that the contestant chooses one door, then the game show host opens 999,998 doors in such a way as not to reveal the prize, leaving the *contestant's* selected door and *one other door* closed. The contestant may now stick or switch. Imagine the contestant confronted by a million doors, of which doors 1 and 234,598 have not been opened, door 1 having been the contestant's initial guess. Where do you think the prize is?

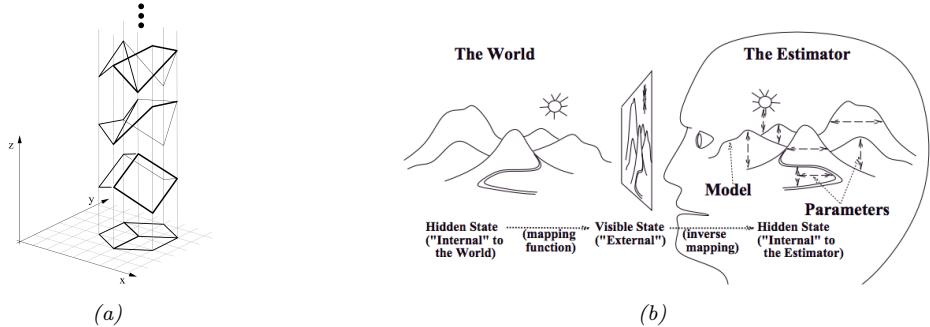


Figure 2.1: (a) Any planar line-drawing is geometrically consistent with infinitely many 3-D structures. From Figure 11 of [SA93]. Used with kind permission of Pawan Sinha. (b) Vision as inverse graphics. The agent (here represented by a human head) has to infer the scene  $h$  given the image  $y$  using an estimator, which computes  $\hat{h}(y) = \operatorname{argmax}_h p(h|y)$ . From Figure 1 of [Rao99]. Used with kind permission of Rajesh Rao.

### 2.2.3 Inverse problems

Probability theory is concerned with predicting a distribution over outcomes  $y$  given knowledge (or assumptions) about the state of the world,  $h$ . By contrast, **inverse probability** is concerned with inferring the state of the world from observations of outcomes. We can think of this as inverting the  $h \rightarrow y$  mapping.

For example, consider trying to infer a 3d shape  $h$  from a 2d image  $y$ . This is a fundamentally **ill-posed** problem, as illustrated in Fig. 2.1a, since there are multiple possible hidden  $h$ 's consistent with the same observed  $y$ . To tackle such **inverse problems**, we can use Bayes' rule to compute the posterior,  $p(h|y)$ , as we saw above. This requires specifying the **forwards model**,  $p(y|h)$ , as well as a prior  $p(h)$ , which can be used to rule out (or downweight) implausible inverse mappings.

Fig. 2.1b illustrates how this idea can be used in the context of computer vision. This approach — known as **vision as inverse graphics** or **analysis by synthesis** — assumes that humans infer the underlying 3d structure of a scene by considering the set of possible 3d models  $h$  which best “explain” the observed data  $y$ . There is considerable evidence for this [KMY04; YK06; Doy+07; MC19], although the brain has evolved to use various shortcuts to make the computation efficient (see e.g., [Lak+17; Gri20]). We give some simple (2d) examples of this approach in practice in Sec. 3.7.1.2, and discuss the topic in more detail in the sequel to this book, [Mur22].

## 2.3 Bayesian concept learning

In Sec. 2.2, we discussed problems in which inferred a hidden quantity of interest  $h \in \mathcal{H}$  from a single observation  $y$ . We can easily generalize this to the case where the observed data is a *set* of observations,  $\mathcal{D} = \{y_n : n = 1 : N\}$ ; now the goal is to infer the hidden common pattern, or **concept**, underlying the data. As usual, we represent our uncertainty about which concept best explains the data using a probability distribution,  $p(h|\mathcal{D})$ .

As a motivating example, consider how a child learns the meaning of a word, such as “dog”. Typically the child's parents will point out **positive examples** of this concept, saying such things as,

“look at the cute dog!”, or “mind the doggy”, etc. The core challenge is to figure out what we mean by the word “dog”, based on a finite (and possibly quite small) number of such examples. Concretely, we should be able to predict which other objects would be considered “dog” and which not.

Note that the parent is unlikely to provide **negative examples**; for example, people do not usually say “look at that non-dog”. Negative examples may be obtained during an active learning process (e.g., the child says “look at the dog” and the parent says “that’s a cat, dear, not a dog”), but psychological research has shown that people can learn concepts from positive examples alone [XT07]. This means that standard supervised learning methods cannot explain this behavior; however, Bayesian inference can be used to show how humans learn the meaning of words [XT07] and other aspects of language (e.g. [CM06]) in an unsupervised fashion, as well as how they might learn visual concepts from real-world images [Jia+13].

Rather than dealing with the complexities of learning from real data, in this section we consider two simplified forms of this problem, from [Ten00], which will serve as a gentle introduction to the Bayesian approach to concept learning.

### 2.3.1 Learning a discrete concept: the number game

Suppose that we are trying to learn some mathematical concept from a teacher who provides examples of that concept. We assume that a concept is defined as the set of positive integers that belong to its **extension**; for example, the concept “even number” is defined by  $h_{\text{even}} = \{2, 4, 6, \dots\}$ , and the concept “powers of two” is defined by  $h_{\text{two}} = \{2, 4, 8, 16, \dots\}$ . For simplicity, we assume the range of numbers is between 1 and 100.

For example, suppose we see one example,  $\mathcal{D} = \{16\}$ . What other numbers do you think are examples of this concept? 17? 6? 32? 99? It’s hard to tell with only one example, so your predictions will be quite vague. Presumably numbers that are similar in some sense to 16 are more likely. But similar in what way? 17 is similar, because it is “close by”, 6 is similar because it has a digit in common, 32 is similar because it is also even and a power of 2, but 99 does not seem similar. Thus some numbers are more likely than others.

Now suppose I tell you that  $\mathcal{D} = \{2, 8, 16, 64\}$  are positive examples. You may guess that the hidden concept is “powers of two”. Given your beliefs about the true (but hidden) concept, you may confidently predict that  $y \in \{2, 4, 8, 16, 32, 64\}$  may also be generated in the future by the teacher. This is an example of **generalization**, since we are making predictions about future data that we have not seen.

Fig. 2.2 gives an example of how humans perform at this task. Given a single example, such as  $\mathcal{D} = \{16\}$  or  $\mathcal{D} = \{60\}$ , humans make fairly diffuse predictions over the other numbers that are similar in magnitude. But when given several examples, such as  $\mathcal{D} = \{2, 8, 16, 64\}$ , humans often find an underlying **pattern**, and use this to make fairly precise predictions about which other numbers might be part of the same concept, even if those other numbers are “far away”.

How can we explain this behavior and emulate it in a machine? The classic approach to the problem of **induction** is to suppose we have a hypothesis space  $\mathcal{H}$  of concepts (such as even numbers, all numbers between 1 and 10, etc.), and then to identify the smallest subset of  $\mathcal{H}$  that is consistent with the observed data  $\mathcal{D}$ ; this is called the **version space**. As we see more examples, the version space shrinks and we become increasingly certain about the underlying hypothesis [Mit97].

However, the version space theory cannot explain the human behavior we saw in Fig. 2.2. For example, after seeing  $\mathcal{D} = \{16, 8, 2, 64\}$ , why do people choose the rule “powers of two” and not,

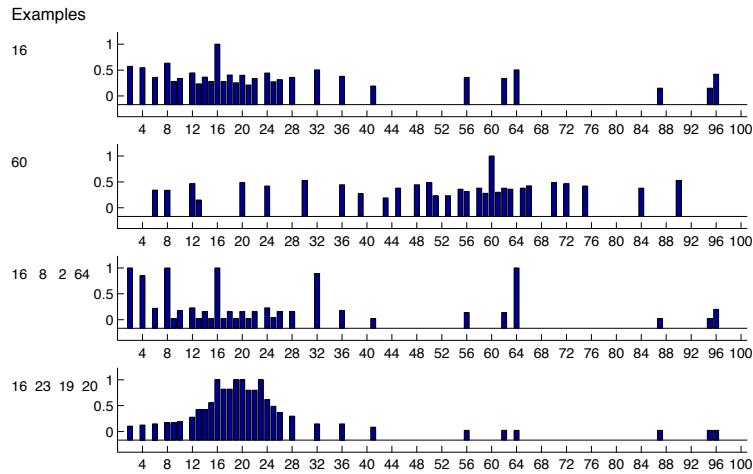


Figure 2.2: Empirical membership distribution in the numbers game, derived from predictions from 8 humans. First two rows: after seeing  $\mathcal{D} = \{16\}$  and  $\mathcal{D} = \{60\}$ . This illustrates diffuse similarity. Third row: after seeing  $\mathcal{D} = \{16, 8, 2, 64\}$ . This illustrates rule-like behavior (powers of 2). Bottom row: after seeing  $\mathcal{D} = \{16, 23, 19, 20\}$ . This illustrates focussed similarity (numbers near 20). From Figure 5.5 of [Ten99]. Used with kind permission of Josh Tenenbaum.

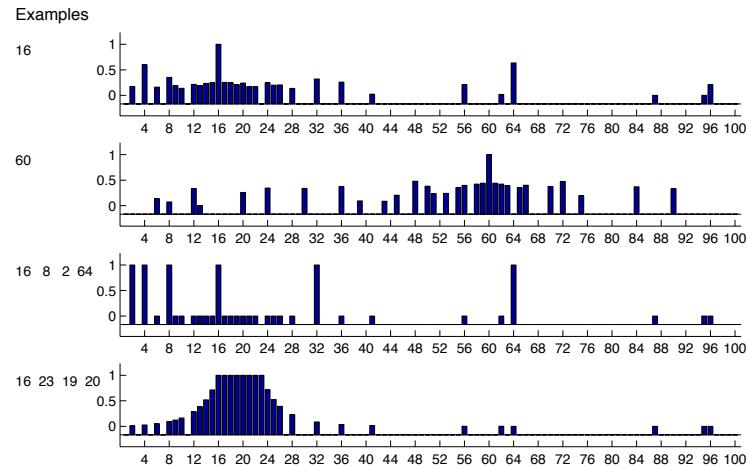


Figure 2.3: Posterior membership probabilities derived using the full hypothesis space. Compare to Fig. 2.2. The predictions of the Bayesian model are only plotted for those values for which human data is available; this is why the top line looks sparser than Fig. 2.5. From Figure 5.6 of [Ten99]. Used with kind permission of Josh Tenenbaum.

say, “all even numbers”, or “powers of two except for 32”, both of which are equally consistent with the evidence? We will now show how Bayesian inference can explain this behavior. The resulting predictions are shown in Fig. 2.3.

### 2.3.1.1 Likelihood

We must explain why people chose  $h_{\text{two}}$  and not, say,  $h_{\text{even}}$  after seeing  $\mathcal{D} = \{16, 8, 2, 64\}$ , given that both hypotheses are consistent with the evidence. The key intuition is that we want to avoid **suspicious coincidences**. For example, if the true concept was even numbers, it would be surprising if we just happened to only see powers of two.

To formalize this, let us assume that the examples are sampled uniformly at random from the **extension** of the concept. (Tenenbaum calls this the **strong sampling assumption**.) Given this assumption, the probability of independently sampling  $N$  items (with replacement) from the unknown concept  $h$  is given by

$$p(\mathcal{D}|h) = \prod_{n=1}^N p(y_n|h) = \prod_{n=1}^N \frac{1}{\text{size}(h)} \mathbb{I}(y_n \in h) = \left[ \frac{1}{\text{size}(h)} \right]^N \mathbb{I}(\mathcal{D} \in h) \quad (2.16)$$

where  $\mathbb{I}(\mathcal{D} \in h)$  is non zero iff all the data points lie in the support of  $h$ . This crucial equation embodies what Tenenbaum calls the **size principle**, which means the model favors the simplest (smallest) hypothesis consistent with the data. This is more commonly known as **Occam’s razor**.

To see how it works, let  $\mathcal{D} = \{16\}$ . Then  $p(\mathcal{D}|h_{\text{two}}) = 1/6$ , since there are only 6 powers of two less than 100, but  $p(\mathcal{D}|h_{\text{even}}) = 1/50$ , since there are 50 even numbers. So the likelihood that  $h = h_{\text{two}}$  is higher than if  $h = h_{\text{even}}$ . After 4 examples, the likelihood of  $h_{\text{two}}$  is  $(1/6)^4 = 7.7 \times 10^{-4}$ , whereas the likelihood of  $h_{\text{even}}$  is  $(1/50)^4 = 1.6 \times 10^{-7}$ . This is a **likelihood ratio** of almost 5000:1 in favor of  $h_{\text{two}}$ . This quantifies our earlier intuition that  $D = \{16, 8, 2, 64\}$  would be a very suspicious coincidence if generated by  $h_{\text{even}}$ .

### 2.3.1.2 Prior

In the Bayesian approach, we must specify a prior over unknowns,  $p(h)$ , as well as the likelihood,  $p(\mathcal{D}|h)$ . To see why this is useful, suppose  $D = \{16, 8, 2, 64\}$ . Given this data, the concept  $h' = \text{“powers of two except 32”}$  is more likely than  $h = \text{“powers of two”}$ , since  $h'$  does not need to explain the coincidence that 32 is missing from the set of examples. However, the hypothesis  $h' = \text{“powers of two except 32”}$  seems “conceptually unnatural”. We can capture such intuition by assigning low prior probability to unnatural concepts. Of course, your prior might be different than mine. This **subjective** aspect of Bayesian reasoning is a source of much controversy, since it means, for example, that a child and a math professor will reach different answers.<sup>3</sup>

Although the subjectivity of the prior is controversial, it is actually quite useful. If you are told the numbers are from some arithmetic rule, then given 1200, 1500, 900 and 1400, you may think 400 is likely but 1183 is unlikely. But if you are told that the numbers are examples of healthy cholesterol

3. A child and a math professor presumably not only have different priors, but also different hypothesis spaces. However, we can finesse that by defining the hypothesis space of the child and the math professor to be the same, and then setting the child’s prior weight to be zero on certain “advanced” concepts. Thus there is no sharp distinction between the prior and the hypothesis space.

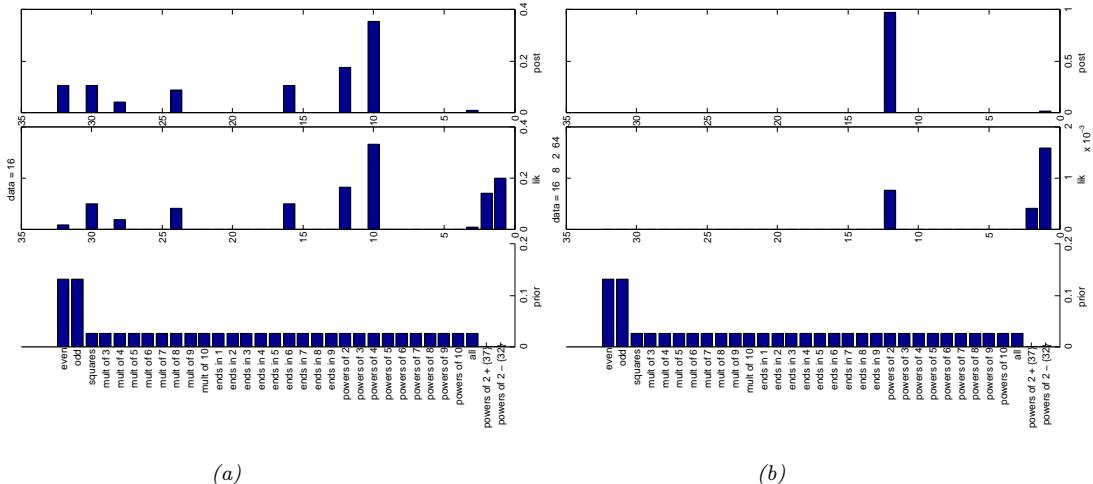


Figure 2.4: (a) Prior, likelihood and posterior for  $\mathcal{D} = \{16\}$ . (b) Prior, likelihood and posterior for  $\mathcal{D} = \{16, 8, 2, 64\}$ . Adapted from [Ten99]. Generated by `numbers_game.py`.

levels, you would probably think 400 is unlikely and 1183 is likely, since you assume that healthy levels lie within some range. Thus we see that the prior is the mechanism by which **background knowledge** can be brought to bear on a problem. Without this, rapid learning (i.e., from small sample sizes) is impossible.

So, what prior should we use? We will initially consider 30 simple arithmetical concepts, such as “even numbers”, “odd numbers”, “prime numbers”, “numbers ending in 9”,. We could use a uniform prior over these concepts; however, for illustration purposes, we make the concepts even and odd more likely apriori, and use a uniform prior over the others. We also include two “unnatural” concepts, namely “powers of 2, plus 37” and “powers of 2, except 32”, but give them low prior weight. See Fig. 2.4a(bottom row) for a plot of this prior.

In addition to “rule-like” hypotheses, we consider the set of intervals between  $n$  and  $m$  for  $1 \leq n, m \leq 100$ . This allows us to capture concepts based on being “close to” some number, rather than satisfying some more abstract property. We put a uniform prior over the intervals.

We can combine these two priors by using a **mixture distribution**, as follows:

$$p(h) = \pi \text{Unif}(h|\text{rules}) + (1 - \pi) \text{Unif}(h|\text{intervals}) \quad (2.17)$$

where  $0 < \pi < 1$  is the **mixture weight** assigned to the rules prior, and  $\text{Unif}(h|S)$  is the uniform distribution over the set  $S$ .

### 2.3.1.3 Posterior

The posterior is simply the likelihood times the prior, normalized:  $p(h|\mathcal{D}) \propto p(\mathcal{D}|h)p(h)$ . Fig. 2.4a plots the prior, likelihood and posterior after seeing  $\mathcal{D} = \{16\}$ . (In this figure, we only consider

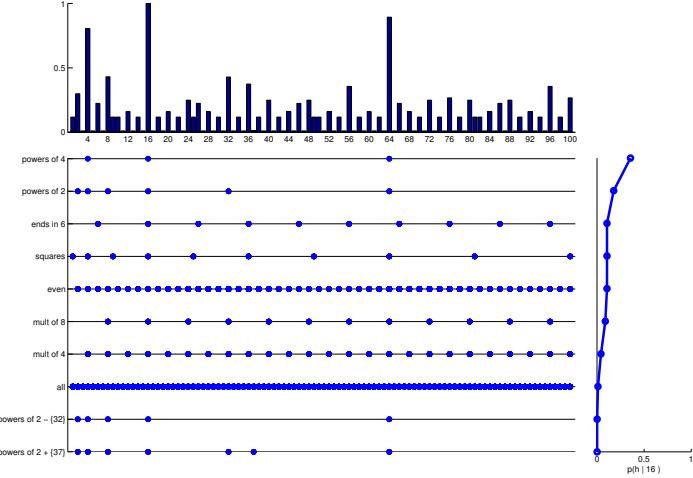


Figure 2.5: Posterior over hypotheses, and the induced posterior over membership, after seeing one example,  $\mathcal{D} = \{16\}$ . A dot means this number is consistent with this hypothesis. The graph  $p(h|\mathcal{D})$  on the right is the weight given to hypothesis  $h$ . By taking a weighed sum of dots, we get  $p(y \in h|\mathcal{D})$  (top). Adapted from Figure 2.9 of [Ten99]. Generated by [numbers\\_game.py](#).

rule-like hypotheses, not intervals, for simplicity.) We see that the posterior is a combination of prior and likelihood. In the case of most of the concepts, the prior is uniform, so the posterior is proportional to the likelihood. However, the “unnatural” concepts of “powers of 2, plus 37” and “powers of 2, except 32” have low posterior support, despite having high likelihood, due to the low prior. Conversely, the concept of odd numbers has low posterior support, despite having a high prior, due to the low likelihood.

Fig. 2.4b plots the prior, likelihood and posterior after seeing  $\mathcal{D} = \{16, 8, 2, 64\}$ . Now the likelihood is much more peaked on the powers of two concept, so this dominates the posterior. Essentially the learner has an **aha** moment, and figures out the true concept.<sup>4</sup> This example also illustrates why we need the low prior on the unnatural concepts, otherwise we would have overfit the data and picked “powers of 2, except for 32”.

### 2.3.1.4 Posterior predictive

The posterior over hypotheses is our internal **belief state** about the world. The way to test if our beliefs are justified is to use them to predict objectively observable quantities (this is the basis of the scientific method). To do this, we compute the **posterior predictive distribution** over possible future observations:

$$p(y|\mathcal{D}) = \sum_h p(y|h)p(h|\mathcal{D}) \quad (2.18)$$

<sup>4</sup>. Humans have a natural desire to figure things out; Alison Gopnik, in her paper “Explanation as orgasm” [Gop98], argued that evolution has ensured that we enjoy reducing our posterior uncertainty.

This is called **Bayes model averaging** [Hoe+99]. Each term is just a weighted average of the predictions of each individual hypothesis. This is illustrated in Fig. 2.5. The dots at the bottom show the predictions from each hypothesis; the vertical curve on the right shows the weight associated with each hypothesis. If we multiply each row by its weight and add up, we get the distribution at the top.

### 2.3.1.5 MAP, MLE, and the plugin approximation

As the amount of data increases, the posterior will (usually) become concentrated around a single point, namely the **posterior mode**, as we saw in Fig. 2.4 (top right plot). The posterior mode is defined as the hypothesis with maximum posterior probability:

$$h_{\text{map}} \triangleq \underset{h}{\operatorname{argmax}} p(h|\mathcal{D}) \quad (2.19)$$

This is also called the **maximum a posterior** or **MAP** estimate.

We can compute the MAP estimate by solving the following **optimization problem**:

$$h_{\text{map}} = \underset{h}{\operatorname{argmax}} p(h|\mathcal{D}) = \underset{h}{\operatorname{argmax}} \log p(\mathcal{D}|h) + \log p(h) \quad (2.20)$$

The first term,  $\log p(\mathcal{D}|h)$ , is the log of the **likelihood**,  $p(\mathcal{D}|h)$ . The second term,  $\log p(h)$ , is the log of the prior. As the data set increases in size, the log likelihood grows in magnitude, but the log prior term remains constant. We thus say that the **likelihood overwhelms the prior**. In this context, a reasonable approximation to the MAP estimate is to ignore the prior term, and just pick the **maximum likelihood estimate** or **MLE**, which is defined as

$$h_{\text{mle}} \triangleq \underset{h}{\operatorname{argmax}} p(\mathcal{D}|h) = \underset{h}{\operatorname{argmax}} \log p(\mathcal{D}|h) = \underset{h}{\operatorname{argmax}} \sum_{n=1}^N \log p(y_n|h) \quad (2.21)$$

Suppose we approximate the posterior by a single **point estimate**  $\hat{h}$ , might be the MAP estimate or MLE. We can represent this degenerate distribution as a single point mass

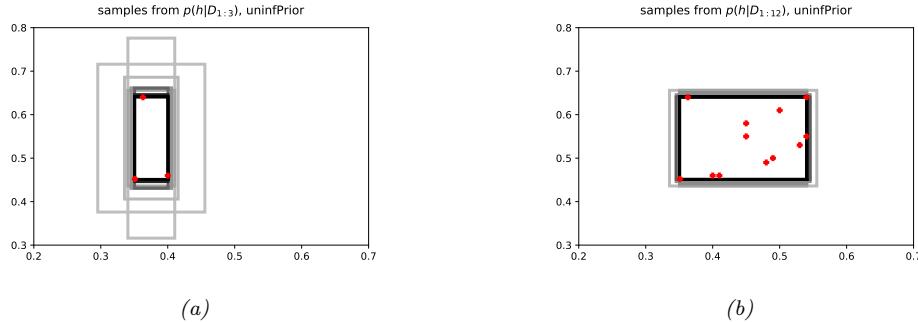
$$p(h|\mathcal{D}) \approx \mathbb{I}(h = \hat{h}) \quad (2.22)$$

where  $\mathbb{I}()$  is the indicator function defined in Eq. (1.3). The corresponding posterior predictive distribution becomes

$$p(y|\mathcal{D}) \approx \sum_h p(y|h) \mathbb{I}(h = \hat{h}) = p(y|\hat{h}) \quad (2.23)$$

This is called a **plug-in approximation**, and is very widely used, due to its simplicity, as we discuss further in Sec. 2.4.2.

Although the plug-in approximation is simple, it behaves in a qualitatively inferior way than the fully Bayesian approach when the dataset is small. In the Bayesian approach, we start with broad predictions, and then become more precise in our forecasts as we see more data, which makes intuitive sense. For example, given  $\mathcal{D} = \{16\}$ , there are many hypotheses with non-negligible posterior mass, so the predicted support over the integers is broad. However, when we see  $\mathcal{D} = \{16, 8, 2, 64\}$ , the



*Figure 2.6: Samples from the posterior in the “healthy levels” game. The axes represent “cholesterol level” and “insulin level”. (a) Given a small number of positive examples (represented by 3 red crosses), there is a lot of uncertainty about the true extent of the rectangle. (b) Given enough data, the smallest enclosing rectangle (which is the maximum likelihood hypothesis) becomes the most probable, although there are many other similar hypotheses that are almost as probable. Adapted from [Ten99]. Generated by `healthy_levels_plots.py`.*

posterior concentrates its mass on one or two specific hypotheses, so the overall predicted support becomes more focused. By contrast, the MLE picks the minimal consistent hypothesis, and predicts the future using that single model. For example, if we see  $\mathcal{D} = \{16\}$ , we compute  $h_{mle}$  to be “all powers of 4” (or the interval hypothesis  $h = \{16\}$ ), and the resulting plugin approximation only predicts  $\{4, 16, 64\}$  as having non-zero probability. This is an example of **overfitting**, where we pay too much attention to the specific data that we saw in training, and fail to generalise correctly to novel examples. When we observe more data, the MLE will be forced to pick a broader hypothesis to explain all the data. For example, if we see  $\mathcal{D} = \{16, 8, 2, 64\}$ , the MLE broadens to become “all powers of two”, similar to the Bayesian approach. This in the limit of infinite data, both approaches converge to the same predictions. However, in the small sample regime, the fully Bayesian approach, in which we consider multiple hypotheses, will give better (less over confident) predictions.

### 2.3.2 Learning a continuous concept: the healthy levels game

The number game involved observing a series of discrete variables, and inferring a distribution over another discrete variable from a finite hypothesis space. This made the computations particularly simple: we just needed to sum, multiply and divide. However, in many applications, the variables that we observe are real-valued continuous quantities. More importantly, the unknown parameters are also usually continuous, so the hypothesis space becomes (some subset) of  $\mathbb{R}^K$ , where  $K$  is the number of parameters. This complicates the mathematics, since we have to replace sums with integrals. However, the basic ideas are the same.

We illustrate these ideas by considering another example of concept learning called the **healthy levels game**, also due to Tenenbaum. The idea is this: we measure two continuous variables, representing the cholesterol and insulin levels of some randomly chosen healthy patients. We would like to know what range of values correspond to a healthy range. As in the numbers game, the challenge is to learn the concept from positive data alone.

Let our hypothesis space be **axis-parallel rectangles** in the plane, as in Fig. 2.6. This is a

classic example which has been widely studied in machine learning [Mit97]. It is also a reasonable assumption for the healthy levels game, since we know (from prior domain knowledge) that healthy levels of both insulin and cholesterol must fall between (unknown) lower and upper bounds. We can represent a rectangle hypothesis as  $h = (\ell_1, \ell_2, s_1, s_2)$ , where  $\ell_j \in [-\infty, \infty]$  are the coordinates (locations) of the lower left corner, and  $s_j \in [0, \infty]$  are the lengths of the two sides. Hence the hypothesis space is  $\mathcal{H} = \mathbb{R}^2 \times \mathbb{R}_+^2$ , where  $\mathbb{R}_+$  is the set of positive reals.

More complex concepts might require discontinuous regions of space to represent them. Alternatively, we might want to use *latent* rectangular regions to represent more complex, high dimensional concepts [Li+19b]. The question of where the hypothesis space comes from is a very interesting one, but is beyond the scope of this chapter. (One approach is to use hierarchical Bayesian models, as discussed in [Ten+11].)

### 2.3.2.1 Likelihood

We assume points are sampled uniformly at random from the support of the rectangle. To simplify the analysis, let us first consider the case of one-dimensional “rectangles”, i.e., lines. In the 1d case, the likelihood is  $p(\mathcal{D}|\ell, s) = (1/s)^N$  if all points are inside the interval, otherwise it is 0. Hence

$$p(\mathcal{D}|\ell, s) = \begin{cases} s^{-N} & \text{if } \min(\mathcal{D}) \geq \ell \text{ and } \max(\mathcal{D}) \leq \ell + s \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases} \quad (2.24)$$

To generalize this to 2d, we assume the observed features are conditionally independent given the hypothesis. Hence the 2d likelihood becomes

$$p(\mathcal{D}|h) = p(\mathcal{D}_1|\ell_1, s_1)p(\mathcal{D}_2|\ell_2, s_2) \quad (2.25)$$

where  $\mathcal{D}_j = \{y_{nj} : n = 1 : N\}$  are the observations for dimension (feature)  $j = 1, 2$ .

### 2.3.2.2 Prior

For simplicity, let us assume the prior factorizes, i.e.,  $p(h) = p(\ell_1)p(\ell_2)p(s_1)p(s_2)$ . We will use uninformative priors for each of these terms. As we explain in Sec. 7.3, this means we should use a prior of the form  $p(h) \propto \frac{1}{s_1} \frac{1}{s_2}$ .

### 2.3.2.3 Posterior

The posterior is given by

$$p(\ell_1, \ell_2, s_1, s_2 | \mathcal{D}) \propto p(\mathcal{D}_1|\ell_1, s_1)p(\mathcal{D}_2|\ell_2, s_2) \frac{1}{s_1} \frac{1}{s_2} \quad (2.26)$$

We can compute this numerically by discretizing  $\mathbb{R}^4$  into a 4d grid, evaluating the numerator pointwise, and normalizing.

Since visualizing a 4d distribution is difficult, we instead draw **posterior samples** from it,  $h^s \sim p(h|\mathcal{D})$ , and visualize them as rectangles. In Fig. 2.6(a), we show some samples when the number  $N$  of observed data points is small — we are uncertain about the right hypothesis. In Fig. 2.6(b), we see that for larger  $N$ , the samples concentrate on the observed data.

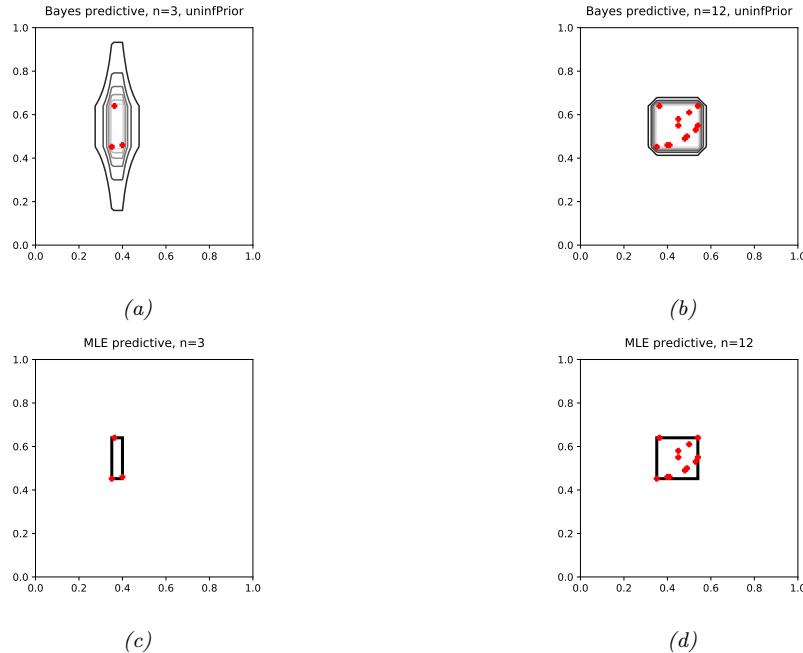


Figure 2.7: Posterior predictive distribution for the healthy levels game. Red crosses are observed data points. Left column:  $N = 3$ . Right column:  $N = 12$ . First row: Bayesian prediction. Second row: Plug-in prediction using MLE (smallest enclosing rectangle). We see that the Bayesian prediction goes from uncertain to certain as we learn more about the concept given more data, whereas the plug-in prediction goes from narrow to broad, as it is forced to generalize when it sees more data. However, both converge to the same answer. Adapted from [Ten99]. Generated by [healthy\\_levels\\_plot.py](#).

### 2.3.2.4 Posterior predictive distribution

We now consider how to predict which data points we expect to see in the future, given the data we have seen so far. In particular, we want to know how likely it is that we will see any point  $\mathbf{y} \in \mathbb{R}^2$ .

Let us define  $y_j^{\min} = \min_n y_{nj}$ ,  $y_j^{\max} = \max_n y_{nj}$ , and  $r_j = y_j^{\max} - y_j^{\min}$ . Then one can show (Exercise 2.4) that the posterior predictive distribution is given by

$$p(\mathbf{y}|\mathcal{D}) = \left[ \frac{1}{(1 + d(y_1)/r_1)(1 + d(y_2)/r_2)} \right]^{N-1} \quad (2.27)$$

where  $d(y_j) = 0$  if  $y_j^{\min} \leq y_j \leq y_j^{\max}$ , and otherwise  $d(y_j)$  is the distance to the nearest data point along dimension  $j$ . Thus  $p(\mathbf{y}|\mathcal{D}) = 1$  if  $\mathbf{y}$  is inside the support of the training data; if  $\mathbf{y}$  is outside the support, the probability density drops off, at a rate that depends on  $N$ .

Note that if  $N = 1$ , the predictive distribution is undefined. This is because we cannot infer the extent of a 2d rectangle from just one data point (unless we use a stronger prior).

In Fig. 2.7(a), we plot the posterior predictive distribution when we have just seen  $N = 3$  examples; we see that there is a broad generalizatino gradient, which extends further along the vertical dimension

than the horizontal direction. This is because the data has a broader vertical spread than horizontal. In other words, if we have seen a large range in one dimension, we have evidence that the rectangle is quite large in that dimension, but otherwise we prefer compact hypotheses, as follows from the size principle.

In Fig. 2.7(b), we plot the distribution for  $N = 12$ . We see it is focused on the smallest consistent hypothesis, since the size principle exponentially down-weights hypothesis which are larger than necessary.

### 2.3.2.5 Plugin approximation

Now suppose we use a plug-in approximation to the posterior predictive,  $p(\mathbf{y}|\mathcal{D}) \approx p(\mathbf{y}|\hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}})$ , where  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}}$  is the MLE or MAP estimate, analogous to the discussion in Sec. 2.3.1.5. In Fig. 2.7(c-d), we show the behavior of this approximation. In both cases, it predicts the smallest enclosing rectangle, since that is the one with maximum likelihood. However, this does not extrapolate beyond the range of the observed data. We also see that initially the predictions are narrower, since very little data has been observed, but that the predictions become broader with more data. By contrast, in the Bayesian approach, the initial predictions are broad, since there is a lot of uncertainty, but become narrower with more data. In the limit of large data, both methods converge to the same predictions. (See Sec. 2.4.2 for more discussion of the plug-in approximation.)

## 2.4 Bayesian machine learning

In Sec. 2.3, we considered concept learning where the data was a set of integers,  $y \in \{1, \dots, 100\}$ , or points in the plane,  $\mathbf{y} \in \mathbb{R}^2$ . In both cases our predictions were based on past training examples,  $\mathcal{D} = \{\mathbf{y}_n : n = 1 : N\}$ , but no other features.

In many applications, each unknown output  $\mathbf{y}$  will have some known **inputs** or **features**,  $\mathbf{x} \in \mathcal{X}$  associated with it which we can use to help with our predictions (in addition to the past training data). In such cases, we want to use a *conditional* probability distribution of the form  $p(\mathbf{y}|\mathbf{x}, \mathcal{D})$ , where now  $\mathcal{D} = \{(\mathbf{x}_n, \mathbf{y}_n) : n = 1 : N\}$ . If the output is from a low-dimensional space, such as a set of labels  $y \in \{1, \dots, C\}$  or scalars  $y \in \mathbb{R}$ , this is called a **discriminative model**, since it can discriminate between the different possible outputs (see Sec. 9.4 for more details). If the output is high-dimensional, say the space of images  $\mathbf{y} \in \mathbb{R}^{D_1 \times D_2}$  (where  $D_1 \times D_2$  is the size of the image), or sentences,  $\mathbf{y} \in \{1, \dots, V\}^T$  (where  $T$  is the length of the sequence and  $V$  is the vocabulary size) then it is called a **conditional generative model**, since it can generate an output  $\mathbf{y}$  given an input  $\mathbf{x}$ .

In these more complex settings, the unknown “concept” or hypothesis  $h$  that predicts the output given the input usually consists of a set of real-valued parameters  $\boldsymbol{\theta} \in \mathbb{R}^K$ , which, together with the input  $\mathbf{x} \in \mathcal{X}$ , specify the distribution over outputs  $\mathbf{y} \in \mathcal{Y}$ . That is, we use a model of the form

$$p(\mathbf{y}|\mathbf{x}, \boldsymbol{\theta}) = p(\mathbf{y}|f(\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta})) \quad (2.28)$$

where  $f(\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta})$  maps the inputs to the parameters of the output distribution. To fully specify this model, we need to choose the form of the output probability distribution  $p$ , as well as the form of the predictor  $f$ . We will consider various output distributions in Chapter 3, and will consider various predictors in Part II–Part IV.

### 2.4.1 Fully Bayesian approach

In the Bayesian approach to machine learning, we compute the posterior of the parameters given the data in exactly the same way that we compute the posterior of any other unknown hypothesis, namely using Bayes rule:

$$p(\boldsymbol{\theta}|\mathcal{D}) = \frac{p(\boldsymbol{\theta})p(\mathcal{D}|\boldsymbol{\theta})}{p(\mathcal{D})} \quad (2.29)$$

From this, we can compute the posterior predictive distribution over outputs given inputs:

$$p(\mathbf{y}|\mathbf{x}, \mathcal{D}) = \int p(\mathbf{y}|\mathbf{x}, \boldsymbol{\theta})p(\boldsymbol{\theta}|\mathcal{D})d\boldsymbol{\theta} \quad (2.30)$$

### 2.4.2 Plug-in approximation

In many models, computing the posterior and the posterior predictive can be computationally difficult. In such cases, it is common to approximate the posterior by a single **point estimate**, such as the **maximum likelihood estimate** (MLE) or the **maximum a posterior** (MAP) estimate, both of which can be computed using standard optimization methods (see Chapter 4). For example, the MLE is given by

$$\hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}}_{\text{mle}} = \underset{\boldsymbol{\theta}}{\operatorname{argmax}} \log p(\mathcal{D}|\boldsymbol{\theta}) = \underset{\boldsymbol{\theta}}{\operatorname{argmin}} -\frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^N \log p(\mathbf{y}_n|f(\mathbf{x}_n; \boldsymbol{\theta})) \quad (2.31)$$

and the MAP estimate is given by

$$\hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}}_{\text{map}} = \underset{\boldsymbol{\theta}}{\operatorname{argmax}} \log p(\boldsymbol{\theta}|\mathcal{D}) = \underset{\boldsymbol{\theta}}{\operatorname{argmax}} \log p(\mathcal{D}|\boldsymbol{\theta}) + \log p(\boldsymbol{\theta}) \quad (2.32)$$

$$= \underset{\boldsymbol{\theta}}{\operatorname{argmin}} - \left[ \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^N \log p(\mathbf{y}_n|f(\mathbf{x}_n; \boldsymbol{\theta})) \right] - \log p(\boldsymbol{\theta}) \quad (2.33)$$

Once we have computed these point estimates, we can represent the posterior as an infinitely narrow, but infinitely tall, “spike” at the chosen value. Formally, this can be done using a **Dirac delta function**, which is defined by

$$\delta(\boldsymbol{\theta}) = \begin{cases} +\infty & \text{if } \boldsymbol{\theta} = 0 \\ 0 & \text{if } \boldsymbol{\theta} \neq 0 \end{cases} \quad (2.34)$$

(This can be extended to vector-valued inputs by checking equality elementwise.) The delta function satisfies the property that

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \delta(\boldsymbol{\theta}) d\boldsymbol{\theta} = 1 \quad (2.35)$$

Hence we can define a pdf that puts all its probability density on a single point as follows:

$$p(\boldsymbol{\theta}|\mathcal{D}) = \delta(\boldsymbol{\theta} - \hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}}) \quad (2.36)$$

We call this a **delta function approximate posterior**.

To use our approximation for prediction, we exploit the fact that the delta function satisfies the **sifting property**, which says

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(y)\delta(x-y)dy = f(x) \quad (2.37)$$

If we use the delta function posterior, then the predictive distribution can be obtained by simply “plugging in” the point estimate into the likelihood:

$$p(\mathbf{y}|\mathcal{D}) = \int p(\mathbf{y}|\boldsymbol{\theta})p(\boldsymbol{\theta}|\mathcal{D})d\boldsymbol{\theta} \approx \int p(\mathbf{y}|\boldsymbol{\theta})\delta(\boldsymbol{\theta} - \hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}})d\boldsymbol{\theta} = p(\mathbf{y}|\hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}}) \quad (2.38)$$

This is called a **plug-in approximation**. This approach is equivalent to the standard approach used in most of machine learning, in which we first fit the model (i.e. compute a point estimate  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}}$ ) and then use it to make predictions. However, the standard (plug-in) approach can suffer from overfitting and overconfidence, as we discussed in Sec. 1.2.3. The fully Bayesian approach avoids this by marginalizing out the parameters, but can be expensive. Fortunately, even simple approximations, in which we average over a few plausible parameter values, can improve performance. We give some examples of this below.

### 2.4.3 Example: scalar input, binary output

Suppose we want to perform binary classification, so  $y \in \{0, 1\}$ . We will use a model of the form

$$p(y|\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \text{Ber}(y|\sigma(\mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x} + b)) \quad (2.39)$$

where

$$\sigma(a) \triangleq \frac{e^a}{1 + e^a} \quad (2.40)$$

is the **sigmoid or logistic function** which maps  $\mathbb{R} \rightarrow [0, 1]$ , and  $\text{Ber}(y|\mu)$  is the Bernoulli distribution with mean  $\mu$  (see Sec. 3.1 for details). In other words,

$$p(y=1|\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \sigma(\mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x} + b) = \frac{1}{1 + e^{-\mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x} + b}} \quad (2.41)$$

This model is called **logistic regression**. (We discuss this in more detail in Chapter 10.)

Let us apply this model to the task of determining if an iris flower is of type setosa or versicolor,  $y_n \in \{0, 1\}$ , given information about the sepal length,  $x_n$ . (See Sec. 1.2.1.1 for a description of the iris dataset.)

We first fit a 1d logistic regression model of the following form

$$p(y=1|x, \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \sigma(b + wx) \quad (2.42)$$

to the dataset  $\mathcal{D} = \{(x_n, y_n)\}$  using maximum likelihood estimation. (See Sec. 10.2.3 for details on how to compute the MLE for this model.) Fig. 2.8a shows the plugin approximation to the posterior predictive,  $p(y=1|x, \hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}})$ , where  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}}$  is the MLE of the parameters. We see that we become more

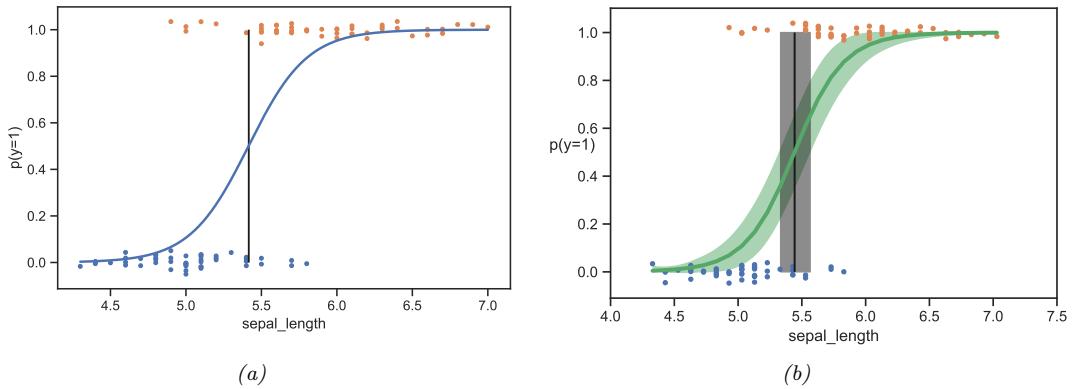


Figure 2.8: (a) Logistic regression for classifying if an Iris flower is versicolor ( $y = 1$ ) or setosa ( $y = 0$ ) using a single input feature  $x$  corresponding to sepal length. Labeled points have been (vertically) jittered to avoid overlapping too much. Vertical line is the decision boundary. Generated by `logreg_iris_1d.py`. (b) Same as (a) but showing posterior distribution. Adapted from Figure 4.4 of [Mar18]. Generated by `logreg_iris_bayes_1d_pymc3.py`.

confident that the flower is of type versicolor as the sepal length gets larger, as represented by the sigmoidal (S-shaped) logistic function.

The **decision boundary** is defined to be the input value  $x^*$  where  $p(y = 1|x^*, \hat{\theta}) = 0.5$ . We can solve for this value as follows:

$$\sigma(b + wx^*) = \frac{1}{1 + e^{-(b+wx^*)}} = \frac{1}{2} \quad (2.43)$$

$$b + wx^* = 0 \quad (2.44)$$

$$x^* = -\frac{b}{w} \quad (2.45)$$

From Fig. 2.8a, we see that  $x^* \approx 5.5$  cm.

However, the above approach does not model the uncertainty in our estimate of the parameters, and therefore ignores the induced uncertainty in the output probabilities, and the location of the decision boundary. To capture this additional uncertainty, we can use a Bayesian approach to approximate the posterior  $p(\theta|\mathcal{D})$ . (See Sec. 10.6 for details.) Given this, we can approximate the posterior predictive distribution using a Monte Carlo approximation:

$$p(y = 1|x, \mathcal{D}) \approx \frac{1}{S} \sum_{s=1}^S p(y = 1|x, \theta^s) \quad (2.46)$$

where  $\theta^s \sim p(\theta|\mathcal{D})$  is a posterior sample. Fig. 2.8b plots the mean and 95% credible interval of this function. We see that there is now a range of predicted probabilities for each input. We can also compute a distribution over the location of the decision boundary by using the Monte Carlo

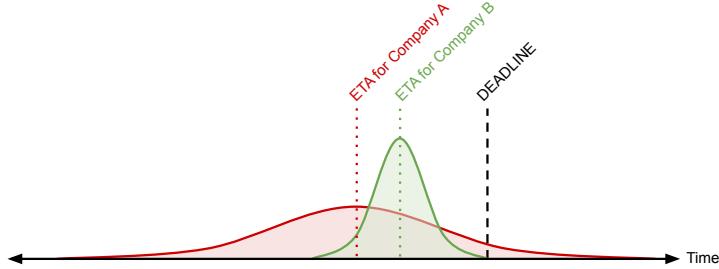


Figure 2.9: Distribution of arrival times for two different shipping companies. ETA is the expected time of arrival. A’s distribution has greater uncertainty, and may be too risky. From <https://bit.ly/39bc4XL>. Used with kind permission of Brendan Hasz.

approximation

$$p(x^*|\mathcal{D}) \approx \frac{1}{S} \sum_{s=1}^S \delta\left(x^* - \left(-\frac{b^s}{w^s}\right)\right) \quad (2.47)$$

where  $(b^s, w^s) = \boldsymbol{\theta}^s$ . The 95% credible interval for this distribution is shown by the “fat” vertical line in Fig. 2.8b.

Although carefully modeling our uncertainty may not matter for this application, it can be important in risk-sensitive applications, such as health care and finance, as we discuss in Chapter 8.

#### 2.4.4 Example: binary input, scalar output

Now suppose we want to predict the delivery time for a package,  $y \in \mathbb{R}$ , if shipped by company A vs B. We can encode the company id using a binary feature  $x \in \{0, 1\}$ , where  $x = 0$  means company A and  $x = 1$  means company B. We will use the following discriminative model for this problem:

$$p(y|x, \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \mathcal{N}(y|\mu_x, \sigma_x^2) \quad (2.48)$$

where  $\mathcal{N}(y|\mu, \sigma^2)$  is the Gaussian distribution

$$\mathcal{N}(y|\mu, \sigma^2) \triangleq \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi\sigma^2}} e^{-\frac{1}{2\sigma^2}(y-\mu)^2} \quad (2.49)$$

and  $\boldsymbol{\theta} = (\mu_0, \mu_1, \sigma_0, \sigma_1)$  are the parameters of the model. We can fit this model using maximum likelihood estimation as we discuss in Sec. 4.2.5; alternatively, we can adopt a Bayesian approach, as we discuss in Sec. 7.2.3.

The advantage of the Bayesian approach is that by capturing uncertainty in the parameters  $\boldsymbol{\theta}$ , we will more accurately model uncertainty in our forecasts  $p(y|x, \mathcal{D})$  than we would using a plug-in approximation  $p(y|x, \hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}})$ . For example, suppose we have only used each company once, so our training set has the form  $\mathcal{D} = \{(x_1 = 0, y_1 = 15), (x_2 = 1, y_2 = 20)\}$ . As we show in Sec. 4.2.5, the MLE for the means will be the empirical means,  $\hat{\mu}_0 = 15$  and  $\hat{\mu}_1 = 20$ , but the MLE for the standard

deviations will be zero,  $\hat{\sigma}_0 = \hat{\sigma}_1 = 0$ , since we only have a single sample from each “class”. The resulting plug-in prediction will therefore not capture any uncertainty.

To see why modeling the uncertainty is important, consider Fig. 2.9. We see that the expected time of arrival (ETA) for company A is less than for company B; however, the variance of A’s distribution is larger, which makes it a risky choice if you want to be confident the package will arrive by the specified deadline. (For more details on how to choose optimal actions in the presence of uncertainty, see Chapter 8.)

Of course, the above example is extreme, because we assumed we only had one example from each delivery company. However, this kind of problem occurs whenever we have few examples of a given kind of input, as can happen whenever the data has a long tail of novel combinations, as we discuss in Sec. 2.4.6.

### 2.4.5 Scaling up

The above examples were both extremely simple, involving 1d input and 1d output, and just 2–4 parameters. Most practical problems involve high dimensional inputs, and sometimes high dimensional outputs, and therefore use models with lots of parameters. Unfortunately, computing the posterior,  $p(\boldsymbol{\theta}|\mathcal{D})$ , and the posterior predictive,  $p(\mathbf{y}|\mathbf{x}, \mathcal{D})$ , can be computationally challenging for many models.

In this book we mostly focus on the simplest approach, in which we approximate the posterior by a point estimate,  $p(\boldsymbol{\theta}|\mathcal{D}) \approx \delta(\boldsymbol{\theta} - \hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}})$ , where  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}}$  is the MLE or MAP estimate, computed using an optimization algorithm (see Chapter 4). We can then use the plug-in approximation in Eq. (2.38). However, in some cases we can compute the posterior exactly, or we can use simple approximations. We will give several examples throughout the book, but for more details on this topic, see the sequel to this book, [Mur22].

### 2.4.6 Is Bayes relevant in the “big data era”?

As the amount of data increases, the posterior  $p(\boldsymbol{\theta}|\mathcal{D})$  often shrinks to a point, since the log likelihood term,  $\log p(\mathcal{D}|\boldsymbol{\theta})$ , grows with  $N$ , whereas the log prior,  $\log p(\boldsymbol{\theta})$ , is independent of  $N$ . We say that the **likelihood dominates the prior**. Consequently, the posterior approaches a delta function at the MLE,  $p(\boldsymbol{\theta}|\mathcal{D}) \rightarrow \delta(\boldsymbol{\theta} - \hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}})$ , as we discussed in Sec. 2.3.1.5. Thus one may think that Bayes is irrelevant in the era of “**big data**” (c.f., [Jor11; SXM18]).

The above argument assumes that the observed training data “covers” all of the relevant input-output patterns that the model may see in the future (with the **inductive bias** of the model “filling in” the gaps between the training samples). However, in many problems, the data distribution has a **long tail**, also called a **heavy tail**. If we plot the corresponding probability distribution over values, sorted by decreasing order of probability, we will see that there are many possible values that may occur, but each one may be individually quite unlikely. Such “**tail events**” may therefore be hard to predict (see Sec. 4.4.1 for discussion).

For example, consider words in a natural language, such as English. It has been observed that the  $n$ ’th most common word occurs with a frequency proportional to  $1/n$ . This is known as **Zipf’s law**. For example, according to [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Zipf%27s\\_law](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Zipf%27s_law), in the Brown Corpus of American English text, the word “the” accounts for roughly 70k out of 1M words (7%), the word “of” accounts for about 26k out of 1M (3.5%), etc. In fact, only 135 words are needed to account for the half of the Brown Corpus. These are called **head terms**, since they form the head of the

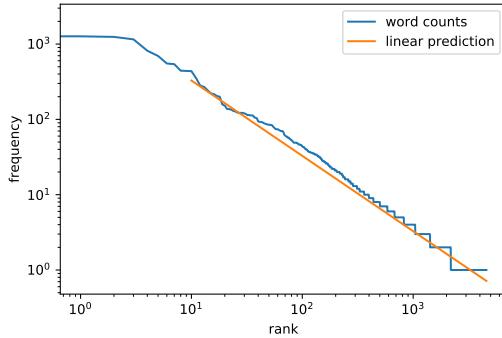


Figure 2.10: A log-log plot of the frequency vs the rank for the words in H. G. Wells’ The Time Machine. (We remove the first 10 words from the plot, for visual clarity.) Generated by `zipfs_law_plot.py`. Adapted from a figure from [Zha+19a, Sec 8.3].

probability distribution. Formally, we can model this phenomenon using a **Pareto distribution** of the form

$$p(r) \propto \kappa r^{-a} \quad (2.50)$$

where  $p(r)$  is the probability that a word with rank  $r$  will be encountered, and  $\kappa$  and  $a$  are constants. If we set  $a = 1$ , we recover Zipf’s law. From Eq. (2.50), we see that plotting the log frequency of words vs their log rank, we should get a straight line with slope  $-1$ , as illustrated in Fig. 2.10. See e.g., [Ada00] for further discussion of Zipf’s law.

The problem of heavy tails is not unique to natural language. As Andrew Gelman put it in his blog<sup>5</sup>:

Sample sizes are never large. If  $N$  is too small to get a sufficiently-precise estimate, you need to get more data (or make more assumptions). But once  $N$  is ‘large enough,’ you can start subdividing the data to learn more (for example, in a public opinion poll, once you have a good estimate for the entire country, you can estimate among men and women, northerners and southerners, different age groups, etc etc).  $N$  is never enough because if it were ‘enough’ you’d already be on to the next problem for which you need more data.

Another interesting setting where heavy tails occur is in **recommender systems**. As we explain in Chapter 22, such a system has to predict what items (e.g., movies) a user might like. But since the system will always be faced with new users and new movies, it will often be in the “small  $N$ ” regime. Bayesian methods can help create personalized recommendations in such cases, by “borrowing statistical strength” from other similar users or items, for whom we have more data (see Sec. 7.4 for discussion). In general, Bayesian methods are very useful for online learning and sequential decision making (see Sec. 8.3), where data may be scarce, and where making the wrong decision can be catastrophic.

<sup>5</sup>. [https://statmodeling.stat.columbia.edu/2005/07/31/n\\_is\\_never\\_larg/](https://statmodeling.stat.columbia.edu/2005/07/31/n_is_never_larg/).

### 2.4.7 Is Bayes relevant in the “deep learning era”?

In the deep learning community, it is common to fit models with millions of parameters, (see Part III for details). This actually *increases* the amount of uncertainty compared to classical methods, since we enter a regime in which there may be many more parameters than training examples; the resulting prediction function  $f(\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta})$  is therefore *underspecified* [D'A+20]. Bayesian methods are, in principle, ideal for capturing such forms of epistemic uncertainty (see e.g. [Wil20]). However, we defer deeper (ahem) discussion of **Bayesian deep learning** to the sequel to this book, [Mur22].

## 2.5 Exercises

### Exercise 2.1 [Bayes rule for medical diagnosis]

After your yearly checkup, the doctor has bad news and good news. The bad news is that you tested positive for a serious disease, and that the test is 99% accurate (i.e., the probability of testing positive given that you have the disease is 0.99, as is the probability of testing negative given that you don’t have the disease). The good news is that this is a rare disease, striking only one in 10,000 people. What are the chances that you actually have the disease? (Show your calculations as well as giving the final result.)

### Exercise 2.2 [Legal reasoning]

(Source: Peter Lee.) Suppose a crime has been committed. Blood is found at the scene for which there is no innocent explanation. It is of a type which is present in 1% of the population.

- a. The prosecutor claims: “There is a 1% chance that the defendant would have the crime blood type if he were innocent. Thus there is a 99% chance that he is guilty”. This is known as the **prosecutor’s fallacy**. What is wrong with this argument?
- b. The defender claims: “The crime occurred in a city of 800,000 people. The blood type would be found in approximately 8000 people. The evidence has provided a probability of just 1 in 8000 that the defendant is guilty, and thus has no relevance.” This is known as the **defender’s fallacy**. What is wrong with this argument?

### Exercise 2.3 [Probabilities are sensitive to the form of the question that was used to generate the answer]

(Source: Minka.) My neighbor has two children. Assuming that the gender of a child is like a coin flip, it is most likely, a priori, that my neighbor has one boy and one girl, with probability 1/2. The other possibilities—two boys or two girls—have probabilities 1/4 and 1/4.

- a. Suppose I ask him whether he has any boys, and he says yes. What is the probability that one child is a girl?
- b. Suppose instead that I happen to see one of his children run by, and it is a boy. What is the probability that the other child is a girl?

### Exercise 2.4 [Deriving the posterior predictive density for the healthy levels game]

We will first consider one-dimensional “rectangles” (i.e., lines); since the dimensions are independent, we can easily generalize to 2d.

For convenience, we will follow the notation of Josh Tenenbaum’s PhD thesis [Ten99]. In particular, let  $h = \boldsymbol{\theta}$  be the unknown hypothesis or parameter vector,  $\mathcal{H}$  be the set of possible hypotheses (rectangles),  $\mathcal{H}_y$  be the set of hypotheses consistent with observation  $y$  (so the rectangles have to be big enough to capture  $y$ ), and  $\mathcal{H}_{\mathcal{D}, y}$  be the set of hypotheses consistent with all the examples in  $\mathcal{D}$  as well as with  $y$ .

The posterior predictive is given by  $p(y|\mathcal{D}) = \frac{p(y, \mathcal{D})}{p(\mathcal{D})}$ , where

$$p(\mathcal{D}) = \int_{h \in \mathcal{H}} p(h)p(\mathcal{D}|h)dh = \int_{h \in \mathcal{H}_{\mathcal{D}}} p(h)/|h|^N dh \quad (2.51)$$

where we used the fact that  $p(\mathcal{D}|h) = 1/|h|^N$  if  $h \in \mathcal{H}_{\mathcal{D}}$  and is 0 otherwise. Similarly,  $p(y, \mathcal{D}) = \int_{h \in \mathcal{H}_{\mathcal{D},y}} p(h)/|h|^N dh$ .

To derive the integral in Equation 2.51, let us assume the maximum observed value is 0 (we can pick any maximum and recenter the data, since we assume a translation invariant prior). Then the right edge of the rectangle must lie past the data, so  $\ell \geq 0$ . Also, if  $r$  is the range spanned by the examples, then the left most data point is at  $-r$ , so the left side of the rectangle must satisfy  $\ell - s \leq -r$ , where  $s$  is size of the rectangle.

- a. Using these assumptions, show that

$$p(\mathcal{D}) = \frac{1}{N(N-1)r^{N-1}} \quad (2.52)$$

Hint: use integration by parts

$$I = \int_a^b f(x)g'(x)dx = [f(x)g(x)]_a^b - \int_a^b f'(x)g(x)dx \quad (2.53)$$

- b. To compute  $p(y, \mathcal{D})$ , we just need to extend the range from  $r$  to  $r + d$ , where  $d$  is the distance from  $y$  to the closest observed example. Hence show that

$$p(y|\mathcal{D}) = \frac{1}{(1+d/r)^{N-1}} \quad (2.54)$$



# 3 Probabilistic models

In Sec. 2.4, we introduced the Bayesian approach to machine learning. In a nutshell, this has three steps: (1) specify a (conditional) probability model of the form  $p(\mathbf{y}|\mathbf{x}, \boldsymbol{\theta}) = p(\mathbf{y}|f(\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta}))$ , along with a prior  $p(\boldsymbol{\theta})$ ; (2) compute the posterior over any unknown parameters,  $p(\boldsymbol{\theta}|\mathcal{D})$ ; (3) make predictions using  $p(\mathbf{y}|\mathbf{x}, \mathcal{D})$ .

There are many possible predictive functions  $f(\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta})$  that we can use, depending on what we think the input-output mapping might look like. We will see many different examples in the remaining chapters of this book. However in this chapter, we focus on the output distribution  $p(\mathbf{y}|\boldsymbol{\theta})$  itself. In particular, we describe various “**building blocks**” that can be used to construct probabilistic models, whether conditional or unconditional. We will use these blocks extensively throughout the book. We discuss how to estimate (learn) the parameters of these building blocks in Chapter 4.

## 3.1 Bernoulli and binomial distributions

Perhaps the simplest probability distribution is the **Bernoulli distribution**, which can be used to model binary events, as we discuss below.

### 3.1.1 Definition

This distribution is defined as follows:

$$\text{Ber}(y|\theta) \triangleq \theta^y(1-\theta)^{1-y} = \begin{cases} 1-\theta & \text{if } y=0 \\ \theta & \text{if } y=1 \end{cases} \quad (3.1)$$

where  $0 \leq \theta \leq 1$  is the probability that  $y = 1$ . To denote the assumption that the random variable  $Y$  has a Bernoulli distribution with parameter  $\theta$ , we write

$$Y \sim \text{Ber}(\theta) \quad (3.2)$$

where the symbol  $\sim$  means “is sampled from” or “is distributed as”.

The Bernoulli distribution is a special case of the **binomial distribution**. To explain this, suppose we observe a set of  $N$  Bernoulli trials, denoted  $y_n \sim \text{Ber}(\cdot|\theta)$ , for  $n = 1 : N$ . Concretely, think of tossing a coin  $N$  times. Let us define  $s$  to be the total number of heads,  $s \triangleq \sum_{n=1}^N \mathbb{I}(y_n = 1)$ . The distribution of  $s$  is given by the binomial distribution:

$$\text{Bin}(s|N, \theta) \triangleq \binom{N}{s} \theta^s (1-\theta)^{N-s} \quad (3.3)$$

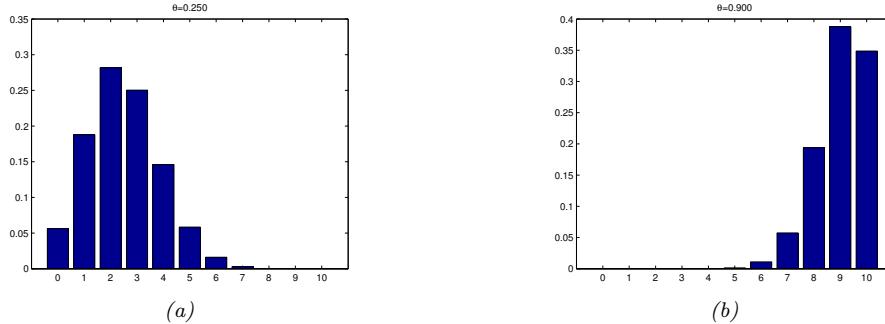


Figure 3.1: Illustration of the binomial distribution with  $N = 10$  and (a)  $\theta = 0.25$  and (b)  $\theta = 0.9$ . Generated by `binom_dist_plot.py`.

where

$$\binom{N}{k} \triangleq \frac{N!}{(N-k)!k!} \quad (3.4)$$

is the number of ways to choose  $k$  items from  $N$  (this is known as the **binomial coefficient**, and is pronounced “N choose  $k$ ”). See Fig. 3.1 for some examples of the binomial distribution. If  $N = 1$ , the binomial distribution reduces to the Bernoulli distribution.

### 3.1.2 Sigmoid (logistic) function

When we want to predict a binary variable  $y \in \{0, 1\}$  given some inputs  $\mathbf{x} \in \mathcal{X}$ , we need to use a **conditional probability distribution** of the form

$$p(y|\mathbf{x}, \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \text{Ber}(y|f(\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta})) \quad (3.5)$$

where  $f(\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta})$  is some function that predicts the mean parameter of the output distribution. We will consider many different kinds of function  $f$  in Part II–Part IV.

To avoid the requirement that  $0 \leq f(\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta}) \leq 1$ , we can let  $f$  be an unconstrained function, and use the following model:

$$p(y|\mathbf{x}, \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \text{Ber}(y|\sigma(f(\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta}))) \quad (3.12)$$

Here  $\sigma()$  is the **sigmoid** or **logistic** function, defined as follows:

$$\sigma(a) \triangleq \frac{1}{1 + e^{-a}} \quad (3.13)$$

where  $a = f(\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta})$ . The term “sigmoid” means S-shaped: see Fig. 3.2a for a plot. We see that it maps the whole real line to  $[0, 1]$ , which is necessary for the output to be interpreted as a probability (and hence a valid value for the Bernoulli parameter  $\theta$ ). The sigmoid function can be thought of as a “soft” version of the **heaviside step function**, defined by

$$H(a) \triangleq \mathbb{I}(a > 0) \quad (3.14)$$

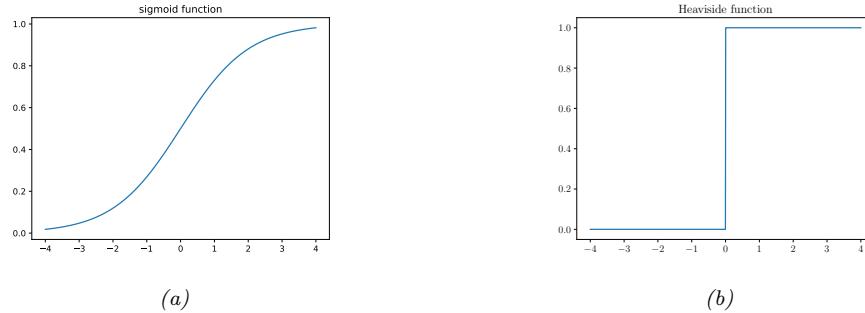


Figure 3.2: (a) The sigmoid (logistic) function  $\sigma(a) = (1 + e^{-a})^{-1}$ . (b) The Heaviside function  $\mathbb{I}(a > 0)$ . Generated by `activation_fun_plot.py`.

$$\sigma(x) \triangleq \frac{1}{1+e^{-x}} = \frac{e^x}{1+e^x} \quad (3.6)$$

$$\frac{d}{dx}\sigma(x) = \sigma(x)(1 - \sigma(x)) \quad (3.7)$$

$$1 - \sigma(x) = \sigma(-x) \quad (3.8)$$

$$\sigma^{-1}(p) = \log\left(\frac{p}{1-p}\right) \triangleq \text{logit}(p) \quad (3.9)$$

$$\sigma_+(x) \triangleq \log(1 + e^x) \quad (3.10)$$

$$\frac{d}{dx}\sigma_+(x) = \sigma(x) \quad (3.11)$$

Table 3.1: Some useful properties of the sigmoid (logistic) and related functions. Note that the **logit** function is the inverse of the sigmoid function, and has a domain of  $[0, 1]$ .

as shown in Fig. 3.2b.

Plugging the definition of the sigmoid function into Eq. (3.12) we get

$$p(y=1|\mathbf{x}, \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \frac{1}{1+e^{-a}} = \frac{e^a}{1+e^a} = \sigma(a) \quad (3.15)$$

$$p(y=0|\mathbf{x}, \boldsymbol{\theta}) = 1 - \frac{1}{1+e^{-a}} = \frac{e^{-a}}{1+e^{-a}} = \frac{1}{1+e^a} = \sigma(-a) \quad (3.16)$$

The quantity  $a$  is equal to the **log odds**,  $\log(\frac{p}{1-p})$ , where  $p = p(y = 1 | \mathbf{x}; \theta)$ . To see this, note that

$$\log\left(\frac{p}{1-p}\right) = \log\left(\frac{e^a}{1+e^a} \frac{1+e^a}{1}\right) = \log(e^a) = a \quad (3.17)$$

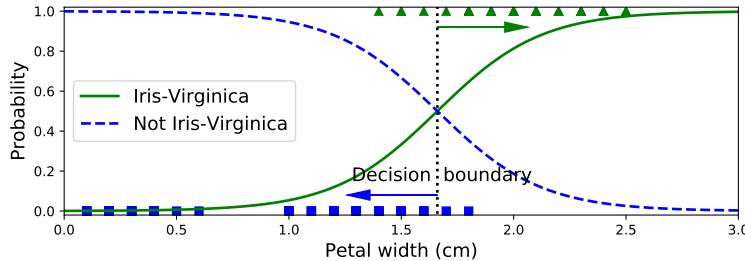


Figure 3.3: Logistic regression applied to a 1-dimensional, 2-class version of the Iris dataset. Generated by `iris_logreg.py`. Adapted from Figure 4.23 of [Gér19].

The **logit function** map  $p$  to the log-odds  $a$ :

$$\text{logit}(p) \triangleq \log\left(\frac{p}{1-p}\right) = \sigma^{-1}(a) \quad (3.18)$$

The **logistic function** is the inverse of the logit function, and maps the log-odds  $a$  to  $p$ :

$$\text{logistic}(a) \triangleq \frac{1}{1+e^{-a}} = \frac{e^a}{1+e^a} = \sigma(a) \quad (3.19)$$

See Table 3.1 for some useful properties of these functions.

### 3.1.3 Binary logistic regression

In this section, we use a conditional Bernoulli model, where we use a linear predictor of the form  $f(\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x}$ . Thus the model has the form

$$p(y|\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \text{Ber}(y|\sigma(\mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x} + b)) \quad (3.20)$$

In other words,

$$p(y=1|\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \sigma(\mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x} + b) = \frac{1}{1+e^{-(\mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x} + b)}} \quad (3.21)$$

This is called **logistic regression**.

For example consider a 1-dimensional, 2-class version of the iris dataset, where the positive class is “virginica” and the negative class is “not virginica”, and the feature  $x$  we use is the petal width. We fit a logistic regression model to this and show the results in ???. The **decision boundary** corresponds to the value  $x^*$  where  $p(y=1|x=x^*, \boldsymbol{\theta}) = 0.5$ . We see that, in this example,  $x^* \approx 1.7$ . As  $x$  moves away from this boundary, the classifier becomes more confident in its prediction about the class label.

It should be clear from this example why it would be inappropriate to use linear regression for a (binary) classification problem. In such a model, the probabilities would increase above 1 as we move far enough to the right, and below 0 as we move far enough to the left.

For more detail on logistic regression, see Chapter 10.

## 3.2 Categorical and multinomial distributions

To represent a distribution over a finite set of labels,  $y \in \{1, \dots, C\}$ , we can use the **categorical** distribution, which generalizes the Bernoulli to  $C > 2$  values.

### 3.2.1 Definition

The categorical distribution is a discrete probability distribution with one parameter per class:

$$\text{Cat}(y|\boldsymbol{\mu}) \triangleq \prod_{c=1}^C \theta_c^{\mathbb{I}(y=c)} \quad (3.22)$$

In other words,  $p(y = c|\boldsymbol{\theta}) = \theta_c$ . Note that the parameters are constrained so that  $0 \leq \theta_c \leq 1$  and  $\sum_{c=1}^C \theta_c = 1$ ; thus there are only  $C - 1$  independent parameters.

We can write the categorical distribution in another way by converting the discrete variable  $y$  into a **one-hot vector** with  $C$  elements, all of which are 0 except for the entry corresponding to the class label. (The term “one-hot” arises from electrical engineering, where binary vectors are encoded as electrical current on a set of wires, which can be active (“hot”) or not (“cold”).) For example, if  $C = 3$ , we encode the classes 1, 2 and 3 as  $(1, 0, 0)$ ,  $(0, 1, 0)$ , and  $(0, 0, 1)$ . More generally, we can encode the classes using **unit vectors**, where  $\mathbf{e}_c$  is all 0s except for dimension  $c$ . (This is also called a **dummy encoding**.) Using one-hot encoding, we can write the categorical distribution as follows:

$$\text{Cat}(\mathbf{y}|\boldsymbol{\mu}) \triangleq \prod_{c=1}^C \theta_c^{y_c} \quad (3.23)$$

The categorical distribution is a special case of the **multinomial distribution**. To explain this, suppose we observe  $N$  categorical trials,  $y_n \sim \text{Cat}(\cdot|\boldsymbol{\mu})$ , for  $n = 1 : N$ . Concretely, think of rolling a  $C$ -sided dice  $N$  times. Let us define  $\mathbf{s}$  to be a vector that counts the number of times each face shows up, i.e.,  $s_c \triangleq \sum_{n=1}^N \mathbb{I}(y_n = c)$ . (Equivalently, if we use one-hot encodings, we have  $\mathbf{s} = \sum_n \mathbf{y}_n$ .) The distribution of  $\mathbf{s}$  is given by the **multinomial distribution**:

$$\text{Mu}(\mathbf{s}|N, \boldsymbol{\mu}) \triangleq \binom{N}{s_1 \dots s_C} \prod_{c=1}^C \theta_c^{s_c} \quad (3.24)$$

where  $\theta_c$  is the probability that side  $c$  shows up, and

$$\binom{N}{s_1 \dots s_C} \triangleq \frac{N!}{s_1! s_2! \dots s_C!} \quad (3.25)$$

is the **multinomial coefficient**, which is the number of ways to divide a set of size  $N = \sum_{c=1}^C s_c$  into subsets with sizes  $s_1$  up to  $s_C$ . If  $N = 1$ , the multinomial distribution becomes the categorical.

### 3.2.2 Softmax function

In the conditional case, we can define

$$p(y|\mathbf{x}, \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \text{Cat}(y|f(\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta})) \quad (3.26)$$

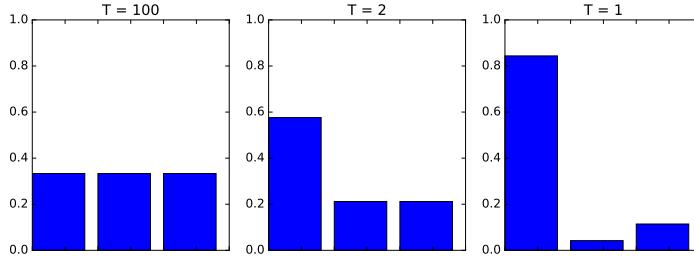


Figure 3.4: Softmax distribution  $\mathcal{S}(\mathbf{a}/T)$ , where  $\mathbf{a} = (3, 0, 1)$ , at temperatures of  $T = 100$ ,  $T = 2$  and  $T = 1$ . When the temperature is high (left), the distribution is uniform, whereas when the temperature is low (right), the distribution is “spiky”, with most of its mass on the largest element. Generated by `softmax_plot.py`.

which we can also write as

$$p(y|\mathbf{x}, \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \text{Mu}(\mathbf{y}|1, f(\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta})) \quad (3.27)$$

We require that  $0 \leq f_c(\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta}) \leq 1$  and  $\sum_{c=1}^C f_c(\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta}) = 1$ .

To avoid the requirement that  $f$  directly predict a probability vector, it is common to pass the output from  $f$  into the **softmax** function [Bri90], also called the **multinomial logit**. This is defined as follows:

$$\mathcal{S}(\mathbf{a}) \triangleq \left[ \frac{e^{a_1}}{\sum_{c'=1}^C e^{a_{c'}}}, \dots, \frac{e^{a_C}}{\sum_{c'=1}^C e^{a_{c'}}} \right] \quad (3.28)$$

This maps  $\mathbb{R}^C$  to  $[0, 1]^C$ , and satisfies the constraints that  $0 \leq \mathcal{S}(\mathbf{a})_c \leq 1$  and  $\sum_{c=1}^C \mathcal{S}(\mathbf{a})_c = 1$ . The inputs to the softmax,  $\mathbf{a} = f(\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta})$ , are called **logits**, and are a generalization of the log odds.

The softmax function is so-called since it acts a bit like the argmax function. To see this, let us divide each  $a_c$  by a constant  $T$  called the **temperature**.<sup>1</sup> Then as  $T \rightarrow 0$ , we find

$$\mathcal{S}(\mathbf{a}/T)_c = \begin{cases} 1.0 & \text{if } c = \text{argmax}_{c'} a_{c'} \\ 0.0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases} \quad (3.29)$$

In other words, at low temperatures, the distribution puts most of its probability mass in the most probable state (this is called **winner takes all**), whereas at high temperatures, it spreads the mass uniformly. See Fig. 3.4 for an illustration.

### 3.2.3 Multiclass logistic regression

If we use a linear predictor of the form  $f(\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \mathbf{W}\mathbf{x}$ , where  $\mathbf{W}$  is a  $C \times D$  matrix, and  $\mathbf{b}$  is  $C$ -dimensional bias vector, the final model becomes

$$p(y|\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \text{Cat}(y|\mathcal{S}(\mathbf{W}\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{b})) \quad (3.30)$$

<sup>1</sup> This terminology comes from the area of statistical physics. The **Boltzmann distribution** is a distribution over states which has the same form as the softmax function.

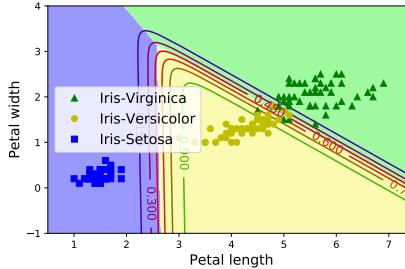


Figure 3.5: Logistic regression on the 3-class, 2-feature version of the Iris dataset. Adapted from Figure of 4.25 [Gér19]. Generated by `iris_logreg.py`.

Let  $\mathbf{a} = \mathbf{Wx} + \mathbf{b}$  be the  $C$ -dimensional vector of **logits**. Then we can rewrite the above as follows:

$$p(y = c|\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \frac{e^{a_c}}{\sum_{c'=1}^C e^{a_{c'}}} \quad (3.31)$$

This is known as **multinomial logistic regression**.

If we have just two classes, this reduces to binary logistic regression. To see this, note that

$$\mathcal{S}(\mathbf{a})_0 = \frac{e^{a_0}}{e^{a_0} + e^{a_1}} = \frac{1}{1 + e^{a_1 - a_0}} = \sigma(a_0 - a_1) \quad (3.32)$$

so we can just train the model to predict  $a = a_1 - a_0$ . This can be done with a single weight vector  $\mathbf{w}$ ; if we use the multi-class formulation, we will have two weight vectors,  $\mathbf{w}_0$  and  $\mathbf{w}_1$ . Such a model is **over-parameterized**, which can hurt interpretability, but the predictions will be the same.

We discuss this more in more detail in Sec. 10.3. For now, we just give an example. Fig. 3.5 shows what happens when we fit this model to the 3-class iris dataset, using just 2 features. We see that the decision boundaries between each class are linear. We can create nonlinear boundaries by using transforming the features (e.g., using polynomials), as we discuss in Sec. 10.3.1.

### 3.2.4 Log-sum-exp trick

In this section, we discuss one important practical detail to pay attention to when working with the softmax distribution. Suppose we want to compute the normalized probability  $p_c = p(y = c|\mathbf{x})$ , which is given by

$$p_c = \frac{e^{a_c}}{Z(\mathbf{a})} = \frac{e^{a_c}}{\sum_{c'=1}^C e^{a_{c'}}} \quad (3.33)$$

where  $\mathbf{a} = f(\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta})$  are the logits. We might encounter numerical problems when computing the **partition function**  $Z$ . For example, suppose we have 3 classes, with logits  $\mathbf{a} = (0, 1, 0)$ . Then we find  $Z = e^0 + e^1 + e^0 = 4.71$ . But now suppose  $\mathbf{a} = (1000, 1001, 1000)$ ; we find  $Z = \infty$ , since on a computer, even using 64 bit precision, `np.exp(1000)=inf`. Similarly, suppose  $\mathbf{a} = (-1000, -999, -1000)$ ; now

we find  $Z = 0$ , since `np.exp(-1000)=0`. To avoid numerical problems, we can use the following identity:

$$\log \sum_{c=1}^C \exp(a_c) = m + \log \sum_{c=1}^C \exp(a_c - m) \quad (3.34)$$

This holds for any  $m$ . It is common to use  $m = \max_c a_c$  which ensures that the largest value you exponentiate will be zero, so you will definitely not overflow, and even if you underflow, the answer will be sensible. This is known as the **log-sum-exp trick**. We use this trick when implementing the `lse` function:

$$\text{lse}(\mathbf{a}) \triangleq \log \sum_{c=1}^C \exp(a_c) \quad (3.35)$$

We can use this to compute the probabilities from the logits:

$$p(y = c | \mathbf{x}) = \exp(a_c - \text{lse}(\mathbf{a})) \quad (3.36)$$

We can then pass this to the cross-entropy loss, defined in Eq. (8.32).

However, to save computational effort, and for numerical stability, it is quite common to modify the cross-entropy loss so that it takes the logits  $\mathbf{a}$  as inputs, instead of the probability vector  $\mathbf{p}$ . For example, consider the binary case. The CE loss for one example is

$$\mathcal{L} = -[\mathbb{I}(y = 0) \log p_0 + \mathbb{I}(y = 1) \log p_1] \quad (3.37)$$

where

$$\log p_1 = \log \left( \frac{1}{1 + \exp(-a)} \right) = \log(1) - \log(1 + \exp(-a)) = 0 - \text{lse}([0, -a]) \quad (3.38)$$

$$\log p_0 = 0 - \text{lse}([0, +a]) \quad (3.39)$$

### 3.3 Univariate Gaussian (normal) distribution

The most widely used distribution real-valued random variables  $y \in \mathbb{R}$  is the **Gaussian distribution**, also called the **normal distribution** (see Sec. 3.3.4 for a discussion of these names).

#### 3.3.1 Cumulative distribution function

We define the **cumulative distribution function** or **cdf** of a continuous random variable  $Y$  as follows:

$$P(y) \triangleq \Pr(Y \leq y) \quad (3.40)$$

(Note that we use a capital  $P$  to represent the cdf.) Using this, we can compute the probability of being in any interval as follows:

$$\Pr(a < Y \leq b) = P(b) - P(a) \quad (3.41)$$

Cdf's are monotonically non-decreasing functions.

The cdf of the Gaussian is defined by

$$\Phi(y; \mu, \sigma^2) \triangleq \int_{-\infty}^y \mathcal{N}(z|\mu, \sigma^2) dz = \frac{1}{2}[1 + \text{erf}(z/\sqrt{2})] \quad (3.42)$$

where  $z = (y - \mu)/\sigma$  and  $\text{erf}(u)$  is the **error function**, defined as

$$\text{erf}(u) \triangleq \frac{2}{\sqrt{\pi}} \int_0^u e^{-t^2} dt \quad (3.43)$$

This latter function is built in to most software packages. See Fig. 3.6a for a plot.

The parameter  $\mu$  encodes the mean of the distribution, which is the same as the mode, since the distribution is unimodal. The parameter  $\sigma^2$  encodes the variance. (Sometimes we talk about the **precision** of a Gaussian, which is the inverse variance, denoted  $\lambda = 1/\sigma^2$ .) When  $\mu = 0$  and  $\sigma = 1$ , the Gaussian is called the **standard normal** distribution.

If  $P$  is the cdf of  $Y$ , then  $P^{-1}(q)$  is the value  $y_q$  such that  $p(Y \leq y_q) = q$ ; this is called the  $q$ 'th **quantile** of  $P$ . The value  $P^{-1}(0.5)$  is the **median** of the distribution, with half of the probability mass on the left, and half on the right. The values  $P^{-1}(0.25)$  and  $P^{-1}(0.75)$  are the lower and upper **quartiles**.

For example, let  $\Phi$  be the cdf of the Gaussian distribution  $\mathcal{N}(0, 1)$ , and  $\Phi^{-1}$  be the inverse cdf (also known as the **probit function**). Then points to the left of  $\Phi^{-1}(\alpha/2)$  contain  $\alpha/2$  of the probability mass, as illustrated in Fig. 3.6b. By symmetry, points to the right of  $\Phi^{-1}(1 - \alpha/2)$  also contain  $\alpha/2$  of the mass. Hence the central interval  $(\Phi^{-1}(\alpha/2), \Phi^{-1}(1 - \alpha/2))$  contains  $1 - \alpha$  of the mass. If we set  $\alpha = 0.05$ , the central 95% interval is covered by the range

$$(\Phi^{-1}(0.025), \Phi^{-1}(0.975)) = (-1.96, 1.96) \quad (3.44)$$

If the distribution is  $\mathcal{N}(\mu, \sigma^2)$ , then the 95% interval becomes  $(\mu - 1.96\sigma, \mu + 1.96\sigma)$ . This is often approximated by writing  $\mu \pm 2\sigma$ .

### 3.3.2 Probability density function

We define the **probability density function** or **pdf** as the derivative of the cdf:

$$p(y) \triangleq \frac{d}{dy} P(y) \quad (3.45)$$

The pdf of the Gaussian is given by

$$\mathcal{N}(y|\mu, \sigma^2) \triangleq \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi\sigma^2}} e^{-\frac{1}{2\sigma^2}(y-\mu)^2} \quad (3.46)$$

where  $\sqrt{2\pi\sigma^2}$  is the normalization constant needed to ensure the density integrates to 1 (see Exercise 3.2). See Fig. 3.6b for a plot.

Given a pdf, we can compute the probability of a continuous variable being in a finite interval as follows:

$$\Pr(a < Y \leq b) = \int_a^b p(y) dy = P(b) - P(a) \quad (3.47)$$

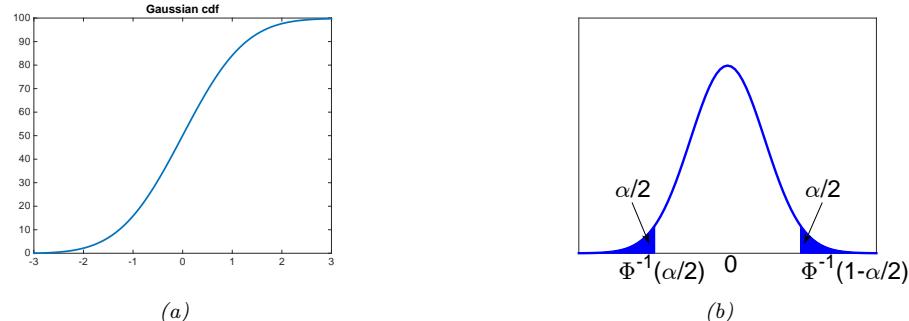


Figure 3.6: (a) Cumulative distribution function (cdf) for the standard normal. Generated by `gauss_plot.py`. (b) Probability density function (pdf) for the standard normal. The shaded regions each contain  $\alpha/2$  of the probability mass. Therefore the nonshaded region contains  $1 - \alpha$  of the probability mass. The leftmost cutoff point is  $\Phi^{-1}(\alpha/2)$ , where  $\Phi$  is the cdf of the Gaussian. By symmetry, the rightmost cutoff point is  $\Phi^{-1}(1 - \alpha/2) = -\Phi^{-1}(\alpha/2)$ . Generated by `quantile_plot.py`.

As the size of the interval gets smaller, we can write

$$\Pr(y \leq Y \leq y + dy) \approx p(y)dy \quad (3.48)$$

Intuitively, this says the probability of  $Y$  being in a small interval around  $y$  is the density at  $y$  times the width of the interval. One important consequence of the above result is that the pdf at a point can be larger than 1. For example,  $\mathcal{N}(0|0, 0.1) = 3.99$ .

We can use the pdf to compute the **mean**, or **expected value**, of the distribution:

$$\mathbb{E}[Y] \triangleq \int_Y y p(y) dy \quad (3.49)$$

For a Gaussian, we have the familiar result that  $\mathbb{E} [\mathcal{N}(\cdot | \mu, \sigma^2)] = \mu$ . (Note, however, that for some distributions, this integral is not finite, so the mean is not defined.)

We can also use the pdf to compute the **variance** of a distribution. This is a measure of the “spread”, and is often denoted by  $\sigma^2$ . The variance is defined as follows:

$$\mathbb{V}[Y] \triangleq \mathbb{E}[(Y - \mu)^2] = \int (y - \mu)^2 p(y) dy \quad (3.50)$$

$$= \int y^2 p(y) dy + \mu^2 \int p(y) dy - 2\mu \int yp(y) dy = \mathbb{E}[Y^2] - \mu^2 \quad (3.51)$$

from which we derive the useful result

$$\mathbb{E}[Y^2] = \sigma^2 + \mu^2 \quad (3.52)$$

The standard deviation is defined as

$$\text{std}[Y] \triangleq \sqrt{\mathbb{V}[Y]} = \sigma \quad (3.53)$$

(The standard deviation can be more interpretable than the variance since it has the same units as  $Y$  itself.) For a Gaussian, we have the familiar result that  $\text{std}[\mathcal{N}(\cdot|\mu, \sigma^2)] = \sigma$ .

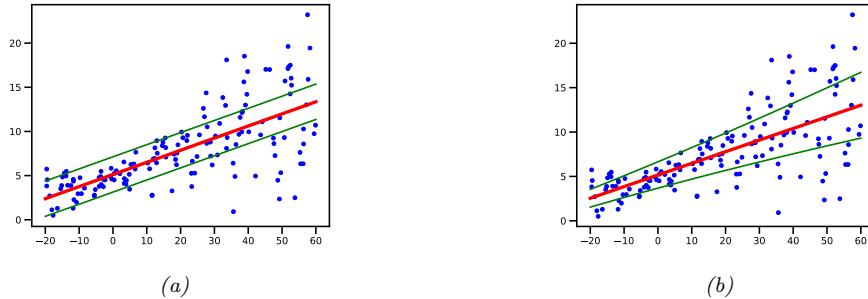


Figure 3.7: Linear regression using Gaussian output with mean  $\mu(x) = b + wx$  and (a) fixed variance  $\sigma^2$  (homoskedastic) or (b) input-dependent variance  $\sigma(x)^2$  (heteroscedastic). Generated by `linreg_1d_hetero_tfp.py`.

### 3.3.3 Regression

So far we have been considering the unconditional Gaussian distribution. In some cases, it is helpful to make the parameters of the Gaussian be functions of some input variables, i.e., we want to create a conditional density model of the form

$$p(y|\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \mathcal{N}(y|f_\mu(\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta}), f_\sigma(\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta})^2) \quad (3.54)$$

where  $f_\mu(\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta}) \in \mathbb{R}$  predicts the mean, and  $f_\sigma(\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta}) \in \mathbb{R}^*$  predicts the variance.

It is common to assume that the variance is fixed, and is independent of the input. This is called **homoscedastic regression**. Furthermore it is common to assume the mean is a linear function of the input. The resulting model is called **linear regression**:

$$p(y|\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \mathcal{N}(y|\mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x} + b, \sigma^2) \quad (3.55)$$

where  $\boldsymbol{\theta} = (\mathbf{w}, b, \sigma^2)$ . See Fig. 3.7(a) for an illustration of this model in 1d. and Sec. 11.2 for more details on this model.

However, we can also make the variance depend on the input; this is called **heteroskedastic regression**. In the linear regression setting, we have

$$p(y|\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \mathcal{N}(y|\mathbf{w}_\mu^\top \mathbf{x} + b, \sigma_+(\mathbf{w}_\sigma^\top \mathbf{x})) \quad (3.56)$$

where  $\boldsymbol{\theta} = (\mathbf{w}_\mu, \mathbf{w}_\sigma)$  are the two forms of regression weights, and

$$\sigma_+(a) = \log(1 + e^a) \quad (3.57)$$

is the **softplus** function, that maps from  $\mathbb{R}$  to  $\mathbb{R}_+$ , to ensure the predicted standard deviation is non-negative. See Fig. 3.7(b) for an illustration of this model in 1d.

Note that Fig. 3.7 plots the 95% predictive interval,  $[\mu(x) - 2\sigma(x), \mu(x) + 2\sigma(x)]$ . This is the uncertainty in the predicted *observation*  $y$  given  $\mathbf{x}$ , and captures the variability in the blue dots. By contrast, the uncertainty in the underlying (noise-free) function is represented by  $\sqrt{\mathbb{V}[f_\mu(\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta})]}$ , which does not involve the  $\sigma$  term; now the uncertainty is over the parameters  $\boldsymbol{\theta}$ , rather than the output  $y$ . See Sec. 11.6 for details on how to model parameter uncertainty.

### 3.3.4 Why is the Gaussian distribution so widely used?

The Gaussian distribution is the most widely used distribution in statistics and machine learning. There are several reasons for this. First, it has two parameters which are easy to interpret, and which capture some of the most basic properties of a distribution, namely its mean and variance. Second, the central limit theorem (Sec. C.5.6) tells us that sums of independent random variables have an approximately Gaussian distribution, making it a good choice for modeling residual errors or “noise”. Third, the Gaussian distribution makes the least number of assumptions (has maximum entropy), subject to the constraint of having a specified mean and variance. This makes it a good default choice in many cases. Finally, it has a simple mathematical form, which results in easy to implement, but often highly effective, methods, as we will see in Sec. 3.5.

From a historical perspective, it’s worth remarking that the term “Gaussian distribution” is a bit misleading, since, as Jaynes [Jay03, p241] notes: “The fundamental nature of this distribution and its main properties were noted by Laplace when Gauss was six years old; and the distribution itself had been found by de Moivre before Laplace was born”. However, Gauss popularized the use of the distribution in the 1800s, and the term “Gaussian” is now widely used in science and engineering.

The name “normal distribution” seems to have arisen in connection with the normal equations in linear regression (see Sec. 11.2.2). However, we prefer to avoid the term “normal”, since it suggests other distributions are “abnormal”, whereas, as Jaynes [Jay03] points out, it is the Gaussian that is abnormal in the sense that it has many special properties that are untypical of general distributions.

### 3.3.5 Half-normal

For some problems, we want a distribution over non-negative reals. One way to create such a distribution is to define  $Y = |X|$ , where  $X \sim \mathcal{N}(0, \sigma^2)$ . The induced distribution for  $Y$  is called the **half-normal distribution**, which has the pdf

$$\mathcal{N}_+(y|\sigma) \triangleq 2\mathcal{N}(y|0, \sigma^2) = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{\sigma\sqrt{\pi}} \exp\left(-\frac{y^2}{2\sigma^2}\right) \quad y \geq 0 \quad (3.58)$$

This can be thought of as the  $\mathcal{N}(0, \sigma^2)$  distribution “folded” onto itself. This distribution has the following moments:

$$\text{mean} = \frac{\sigma\sqrt{2}}{\sqrt{\pi}}, \quad \text{var} = \sigma^2 \left(1 - \frac{2}{\pi}\right) \quad (3.59)$$

## 3.4 Some other common univariate distributions

In this section, we briefly introduce some other univariate distributions that we will use in this book.

### 3.4.1 Student $t$ distribution

The Gaussian distribution is quite sensitive to **outliers**. A **robust** alternative to the Gaussian is the **Student  $t$ -distribution**, which we shall call the **Student distribution** for short.<sup>2</sup> Its pdf is

---

2. This distribution has a colorful etymology. It was first published in 1908 by William Sealy Gosset, who worked at the Guinness brewery in Dublin, Ireland. Since his employer would not allow him to use his own name, he called it the

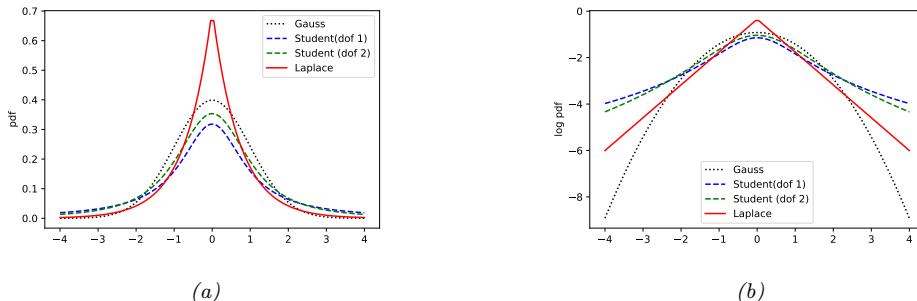


Figure 3.8: (a) The pdf's for a  $\mathcal{N}(0, 1)$ ,  $\mathcal{T}(\mu = 0, \sigma = 1, \nu = 1)$ ,  $\mathcal{T}(\mu = 0, \sigma = 1, \nu = 2)$ , and  $\text{Lap}(0, 1/\sqrt{2})$ . The mean is 0 and the variance is 1 for both the Gaussian and Laplace. When  $\nu = 1$ , the Student is the same as the Cauchy, which does not have a well-defined mean and variance. (b) Log of these pdf's. Note that the Student distribution is not log-concave for any parameter value, unlike the Laplace distribution. Nevertheless, both are unimodal. Generated by `student_laplace_pdf_plot.py`.

as follows:

$$\mathcal{T}(y|\mu, \sigma^2, \nu) \propto \left[ 1 + \frac{1}{\nu} \left( \frac{y - \mu}{\sigma} \right)^2 \right]^{-(\frac{\nu+1}{2})} \quad (3.60)$$

where  $\mu$  is the mean,  $\sigma > 0$  is the scale parameter (not the standard deviation), and  $\nu > 0$  is called the **degrees of freedom** (although a better term would be the **degree of normality** [Kru13], since large values of  $\nu$  make the distribution act like a Gaussian).

We see that the probability density decays as a polynomial function of the squared distance from the center, as opposed to an exponential function, so there is more probability mass in the tail than with a Gaussian distribution, as shown in Fig. 3.8. We say that the Student distribution has **heavy tails**, which makes it robust to outliers.

To illustrate the robustness of the Student distribution, consider Fig. 3.9. On the left, we show a Gaussian and a Student distribution fit to some data with no outliers. On the right, we add some outliers. We see that the Gaussian is affected a lot, whereas the Student hardly changes. We discuss how to use the Student distribution for robust linear regression in Sec. 11.4.1.

For later reference, we note that the Student distribution has the following properties:

$$\text{mean} = \mu, \text{ mode} = \mu, \text{ var} = \frac{\nu\sigma^2}{(\nu - 2)} \quad (3.61)$$

The mean is only defined if  $\nu > 1$ . The variance is only defined if  $\nu > 2$ . For  $\nu \gg 5$ , the Student distribution rapidly approaches a Gaussian distribution and loses its robustness properties. It is common to use  $\nu = 4$ , which gives good performance in a range of problems [LLT89].

<sup>1</sup>“Student” distribution. The origin of the term  $t$  seems to have arisen in the context of tables of the Student distribution, used by Fisher when developing the basis of classical statistical inference. See <http://jeff560.tripod.com/s.html> for more historical details.

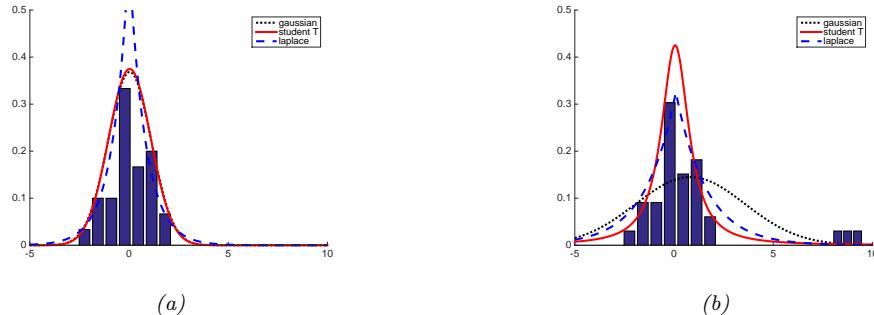


Figure 3.9: Illustration of the effect of outliers on fitting Gaussian, Student and Laplace distributions. (a) No outliers (the Gaussian and Student curves are on top of each other). (b) With outliers. We see that the Gaussian is more affected by outliers than the Student and Laplace distributions. Adapted from Figure 2.16 of [Bis06]. Generated by `robust_pdf_plot.py`

### 3.4.2 Cauchy distribution

If  $\nu = 1$ , the Student distribution is known as the **Cauchy** or **Lorentz** distribution. Its pdf is defined by

$$\mathcal{C}(x|\mu, \gamma) = \frac{1}{\gamma\pi} \left[ 1 + \left( \frac{x-\mu}{\gamma} \right)^2 \right]^{-1} \quad (3.62)$$

This distribution has very heavy tails compared to a Gaussian. For example, 95% of the values from a standard normal are between -1.96 and 1.96, but for a standard Cauchy they are between -12.7 and 12.7. In fact the tails are so heavy that the integral that defines the mean does not converge.

The **half Cauchy** distribution is a version of the Cauchy (with mean 0) that is “folded over” on itself, so all its probability density is on the positive reals. Thus it has the form

$$\mathcal{C}_+(x|\gamma) \triangleq \frac{2}{\pi\gamma} \left[ 1 + \left( \frac{x}{\gamma} \right)^2 \right]^{-1} \quad (3.63)$$

This is useful in Bayesian modeling (Sec. 7.2.3.5), where we want to use a distribution over positive reals with heavy tails, but finite density at the origin.

### 3.4.3 Laplace distribution

Another distribution with heavy tails is the **Laplace distribution**<sup>3</sup>, also known as the **double sided exponential** distribution. This has the following pdf:

$$\text{Lap}(y|\mu, b) \triangleq \frac{1}{2b} \exp\left(-\frac{|y-\mu|}{b}\right) \quad (3.64)$$

<sup>3</sup> Pierre-Simon Laplace (1749–1827) was a French mathematician, who played a key role in creating the field of Bayesian statistics.

See Fig. 3.8 for a plot. Here  $\mu$  is a location parameter and  $b > 0$  is a scale parameter. This distribution has the following properties:

$$\text{mean} = \mu, \text{ mode} = \mu, \text{ var} = 2b^2 \quad (3.65)$$

In Sec. 11.4.2, we discuss how to use the Laplace distribution for robust linear regression, and in Sec. 11.5, we discuss how to use the Laplace distribution for sparse linear regression.

### 3.4.4 Beta distribution

The **beta distribution** has support over the interval  $[0, 1]$  and is defined as follows:

$$\text{Beta}(x|a, b) = \frac{1}{B(a, b)} x^{a-1} (1-x)^{b-1} \quad (3.66)$$

where  $B(a, b)$  is the **beta function**, defined by

$$B(a, b) \triangleq \frac{\Gamma(a)\Gamma(b)}{\Gamma(a+b)} \quad (3.67)$$

where  $\Gamma(a)$  is the Gamma function defined by

$$\Gamma(a) \triangleq \int_0^\infty x^{a-1} e^{-x} dx \quad (3.68)$$

See Fig. 3.10a for plots of some beta distributions.

We require  $a, b > 0$  to ensure the distribution is integrable (i.e., to ensure  $B(a, b)$  exists). If  $a = b = 1$ , we get the uniform distribution. If  $a$  and  $b$  are both less than 1, we get a bimodal distribution with “spikes” at 0 and 1; if  $a$  and  $b$  are both greater than 1, the distribution is unimodal.

For later reference, we note that the distribution has the following properties (Exercise C.12):

$$\text{mean} = \frac{a}{a+b}, \text{ mode} = \frac{a-1}{a+b-2}, \text{ var} = \frac{ab}{(a+b)^2(a+b+1)} \quad (3.69)$$

### 3.4.5 Gamma distribution

The **gamma distribution** is a flexible distribution for positive real valued rv's,  $x > 0$ . It is defined in terms of two parameters, called the shape  $a > 0$  and the rate  $b > 0$ :

$$\text{Ga}(x|\text{shape} = a, \text{rate} = b) \triangleq \frac{b^a}{\Gamma(a)} x^{a-1} e^{-xb} \quad (3.70)$$

Sometimes the distribution is parameterized in terms of the shape  $a$  and the **scale**  $s = 1/b$ :

$$\text{Ga}(x|\text{shape} = a, \text{scale} = s) \triangleq \frac{1}{s^a \Gamma(a)} x^{a-1} e^{-x/s} \quad (3.71)$$

See Fig. 3.10b for some plots of the gamma pdf.

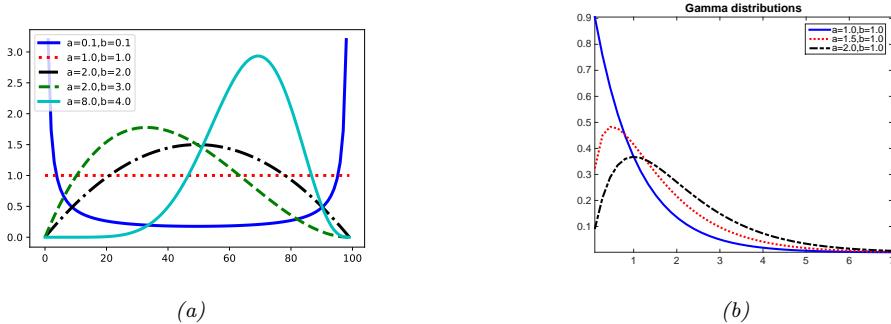


Figure 3.10: (a) Some beta distributions. Generated by `beta_dist_plot.py`. (b) Some  $\text{Ga}(a, b = 1)$  distributions. If  $a \leq 1$ , the mode is at 0, otherwise it is  $> 0$ . As we increase the rate  $b$ , we reduce the horizontal scale, thus squeezing everything leftwards and upwards. Generated by `gamma_dist_plot.py`.

For reference, we note that the distribution has the following properties:

$$\text{mean} = \frac{a}{b}, \quad \text{mode} = \frac{a - 1}{b}, \quad \text{var} = \frac{a}{b^2} \quad (3.72)$$

There are several distributions which are just special cases of the Gamma, which we discuss below.

- **Exponential distribution.** This is defined by

$$\text{Expon}(x|\lambda) \triangleq \text{Ga}(x|\text{shape} = 1, \text{rate} = \lambda) \quad (3.73)$$

This distribution describes the times between events in a Poisson process, i.e. a process in which events occur continuously and independently at a constant average rate  $\lambda$ .

- **Chi-squared distribution.** This is defined by

$$\chi_\nu^2(x) \triangleq \text{Ga}(x|\text{shape} = \frac{\nu}{2}, \text{rate} = \frac{1}{2}) \quad (3.74)$$

where  $\nu$  is called the degrees of freedom. This is the distribution of the sum of squared Gaussian random variables. More precisely, if  $Z_i \sim \mathcal{N}(0, 1)$ , and  $S = \sum_{i=1}^{\nu} Z_i^2$ , then  $S \sim \chi_\nu^2$ .

- The **inverse Gamma distribution** is the distribution of  $Y = 1/X$  assuming  $X \sim \text{Ga}(a, b)$ . One can show (Exercise C.11) that the pdf is given by

$$\text{IG}(x|\text{shape} = a, \text{scale} = s) \triangleq \frac{b^a}{\Gamma(a)} x^{-(a+1)} e^{-s/x} \quad (3.75)$$

The distribution has these properties

$$\text{mean} = \frac{s}{a-1}, \quad \text{mode} = \frac{s}{a+1}, \quad \text{var} = \frac{s^2}{(a-1)^2(a-2)} \quad (3.76)$$

The mean only exists if  $a > 1$ . The variance only exists if  $a > 2$ .

### 3.5 The multivariate Gaussian (normal) distribution

The most widely used joint probability distribution for continuous random variables is the **multivariate Gaussian** or **multivariate normal** (MVN). This is mostly because it is mathematically convenient, but also because the Gaussian assumption is fairly reasonable in many cases (see the discussion in Sec. 3.3.4).

#### 3.5.1 Definition

The MVN density is defined by the following:

$$\mathcal{N}(\mathbf{y}|\boldsymbol{\mu}, \boldsymbol{\Sigma}) \triangleq \frac{1}{(2\pi)^{D/2}|\boldsymbol{\Sigma}|^{1/2}} \exp \left[ -\frac{1}{2}(\mathbf{y} - \boldsymbol{\mu})^\top \boldsymbol{\Sigma}^{-1} (\mathbf{y} - \boldsymbol{\mu}) \right] \quad (3.77)$$

where  $\boldsymbol{\mu} = \mathbb{E}[\mathbf{y}] \in \mathbb{R}^D$  is the mean vector, and  $\boldsymbol{\Sigma} = \text{Cov}[\mathbf{y}]$  is the  $D \times D$  covariance matrix, defined as follows:

$$\text{Cov}[\mathbf{y}] \triangleq \mathbb{E}[(\mathbf{y} - \mathbb{E}[\mathbf{y}])(\mathbf{y} - \mathbb{E}[\mathbf{y}])^\top] \quad (3.78)$$

$$= \begin{pmatrix} \mathbb{V}[Y_1] & \text{Cov}[Y_1, Y_2] & \cdots & \text{Cov}[Y_1, Y_D] \\ \text{Cov}[Y_2, Y_1] & \mathbb{V}[Y_2] & \cdots & \text{Cov}[Y_2, Y_D] \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ \text{Cov}[Y_D, Y_1] & \text{Cov}[Y_D, Y_2] & \cdots & \mathbb{V}[Y_D] \end{pmatrix} \quad (3.79)$$

where

$$\text{Cov}[Y_i, Y_j] \triangleq \mathbb{E}[(Y_i - \mathbb{E}[Y_i])(Y_j - \mathbb{E}[Y_j])] = \mathbb{E}[Y_i Y_j] - \mathbb{E}[Y_i] \mathbb{E}[Y_j] \quad (3.80)$$

and  $\mathbb{V}[Y_i] = \text{Cov}[Y_i, Y_i]$ . From Eq. (3.78), we get the important result

$$\mathbb{E}[\mathbf{y}\mathbf{y}^\top] = \boldsymbol{\Sigma} + \boldsymbol{\mu}\boldsymbol{\mu}^\top \quad (3.81)$$

The normalization constant in Eq. (3.77)  $Z = (2\pi)^{D/2}|\boldsymbol{\Sigma}|^{1/2}$  just ensures that the pdf integrates to 1 (see Exercise 3.3).

In 2d, the MVN is known as the **bivariate Gaussian** distribution. Its pdf can be represented as  $\mathbf{y} \sim \mathcal{N}(\boldsymbol{\mu}, \boldsymbol{\Sigma})$ , where  $\mathbf{y} \in \mathbb{R}^2$ ,  $\boldsymbol{\mu} \in \mathbb{R}^2$  and

$$\boldsymbol{\Sigma} = \begin{pmatrix} \sigma_1^2 & \sigma_{12}^2 \\ \sigma_{21}^2 & \sigma_2^2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \sigma_1^2 & \rho\sigma_1\sigma_2 \\ \rho\sigma_1\sigma_2 & \sigma_2^2 \end{pmatrix} \quad (3.82)$$

where  $\rho$  is the **correlation coefficient**, defined by

$$\text{corr}[X, Y] \triangleq \frac{\text{Cov}[X, Y]}{\sqrt{\mathbb{V}[X]\mathbb{V}[Y]}} = \frac{\sigma_{12}^2}{\sigma_1\sigma_2} \quad (3.83)$$

One can show (Exercise C.5) that  $-1 \leq \text{corr}[X, Y] \leq 1$ . Expanding out the pdf in the 2d case gives the following rather intimidating-looking result:

$$p(y_1, y_2) = \frac{1}{2\pi\sigma_1\sigma_2\sqrt{1-\rho^2}} \exp \left( -\frac{1}{2(1-\rho^2)} \times \left[ \frac{(y_1 - \mu_1)^2}{\sigma_1^2} + \frac{(y_2 - \mu_2)^2}{\sigma_2^2} - 2\rho \frac{(y_1 - \mu_1)}{\sigma_1} \frac{(y_2 - \mu_2)}{\sigma_2} \right] \right) \quad (3.84)$$

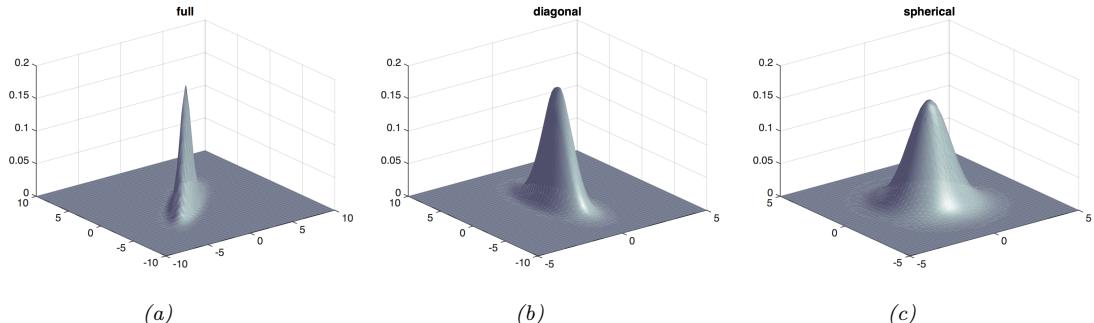


Figure 3.11: Visualization of a 2d Gaussian density as a surface plot. (a) Distribution using a full covariance matrix can be oriented at any angle. (b) Distribution using a diagonal covariance matrix must be parallel to the axis. (c) Distribution using a spherical covariance matrix must have a symmetric shape. Generated by `gauss_plot_2d.py`.

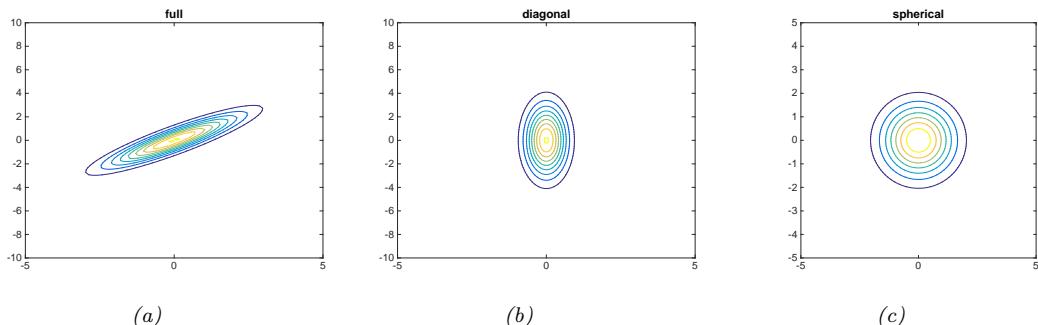


Figure 3.12: Visualization of a 2d Gaussian density in terms of level sets of constant probability density. (a) A full covariance matrix has elliptical contours. (b) A diagonal covariance matrix is an **axis aligned** ellipse. (c) A spherical covariance matrix has a circular shape. Generated by `gauss_plot_2d.py`.

Fig. 3.11 and Fig. 3.12 plot some MVN densities in 2d for three different kinds of covariance matrices. A **full covariance matrix** has  $D(D + 1)/2$  parameters, where we divide by 2 since  $\Sigma$  is symmetric. (The reason for the elliptical shape is explained in Sec. B.4.4, where we discuss the geometry of quadratic forms.) A **diagonal covariance matrix** has  $D$  parameters, and has 0s in the off-diagonal terms. A **spherical covariance matrix**, also called **isotropic covariance matrix**, has the form  $\Sigma = \sigma^2 \mathbf{I}_D$ , so it only has one free parameter, namely  $\sigma^2$ .

### 3.5.2 Mahalanobis distance

In this section, we attempt to gain some insights into the geometric shape of the Gaussian pdf in multiple dimensions. To do this, we will consider the shape of the **level sets** of constant (log) probability.

The log probability at a specific point  $\mathbf{y}$  is given by

$$\log p(\mathbf{y}|\boldsymbol{\mu}, \boldsymbol{\Sigma}) = -\frac{1}{2}(\mathbf{y} - \boldsymbol{\mu})^\top \boldsymbol{\Sigma}^{-1}(\mathbf{y} - \boldsymbol{\mu}) + \text{const} \quad (3.85)$$

The dependence on  $\mathbf{x}$  can be expressed in terms of the **Mahalanobis distance**  $\Delta$  between  $\mathbf{x}$  and  $\boldsymbol{\mu}$ , whose square is defined as follows:

$$\Delta^2 \triangleq (\mathbf{y} - \boldsymbol{\mu})^\top \boldsymbol{\Sigma}^{-1}(\mathbf{y} - \boldsymbol{\mu}) \quad (3.86)$$

Thus contours of constant (log) probability are equivalent to contours of constant Mahalanobis distance.

To gain insight into the contours of constant Mahalanobis distance, we exploit the fact that  $\boldsymbol{\Sigma}$ , and hence  $\boldsymbol{\Lambda} = \boldsymbol{\Sigma}^{-1}$ , are both positive definite matrices (by assumption). Consider the following eigendecomposition (Appendix B.4) of  $\boldsymbol{\Sigma}$ :

$$\boldsymbol{\Sigma} = \sum_{d=1}^D \lambda_d \mathbf{u}_d \mathbf{u}_d^\top \quad (3.87)$$

We can similarly write

$$\boldsymbol{\Sigma}^{-1} = \sum_{d=1}^D \frac{1}{\lambda_d} \mathbf{u}_d \mathbf{u}_d^\top \quad (3.88)$$

Let us define  $z_d \triangleq \mathbf{u}_d^\top (\mathbf{y} - \boldsymbol{\mu})$ , so  $\mathbf{z} = \mathbf{U}(\mathbf{y} - \boldsymbol{\mu})$ . Then we can rewrite the Mahalanobis distance as follows:

$$(\mathbf{y} - \boldsymbol{\mu})^\top \boldsymbol{\Sigma}^{-1}(\mathbf{y} - \boldsymbol{\mu}) = (\mathbf{y} - \boldsymbol{\mu})^\top \left( \sum_{d=1}^D \frac{1}{\lambda_d} \mathbf{u}_d \mathbf{u}_d^\top \right) (\mathbf{y} - \boldsymbol{\mu}) \quad (3.89)$$

$$= \sum_{d=1}^D \frac{1}{\lambda_d} (\mathbf{y} - \boldsymbol{\mu})^\top \mathbf{u}_d \mathbf{u}_d^\top (\mathbf{y} - \boldsymbol{\mu}) = \sum_{d=1}^D \frac{z_d^2}{\lambda_d} \quad (3.90)$$

As we discuss in Sec. B.4.4, this means we can interpret the Mahalanobis distance as Euclidean distance in a new coordinate frame  $\mathbf{z}$  in which we rotate  $\mathbf{y}$  by  $\mathbf{U}$  and scale by  $\boldsymbol{\Lambda}$ .

For example, in 2d, let us consider the set of points  $(z_1, z_2)$  that satisfy this equation:

$$\frac{z_1^2}{\lambda_1} + \frac{z_2^2}{\lambda_2} = r \quad (3.91)$$

Since these points have the same Mahalanobis distance, they correspond to points of equal probability. Hence we see that the contours of equal probability density of a 2d Gaussian lie along ellipses. This is illustrated in Fig. B.6. The eigenvectors determine the orientation of the ellipse, and the eigenvalues determine how elongated it is.

We can also define the Mahalanobis distance in terms of a linear mapping  $\mathbf{L}$  such that  $\boldsymbol{\Sigma}^{-1} = \mathbf{L}^\top \mathbf{L}$ , where  $\mathbf{L}$  may map from  $\mathbb{R}^D$  to  $\mathbb{R}^d$  where  $d \leq D$ . Then we have

$$(\mathbf{y} - \boldsymbol{\mu})^\top \boldsymbol{\Sigma}^{-1}(\mathbf{y} - \boldsymbol{\mu}) = (\mathbf{y} - \boldsymbol{\mu})^\top \mathbf{L}^\top \mathbf{L}(\mathbf{y} - \boldsymbol{\mu}) = (\mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{\delta})^\top (\mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{\delta}) = \|\mathbf{L}\boldsymbol{\delta}\|_2^2 \quad (3.92)$$

where  $\boldsymbol{\delta} = \mathbf{y} - \boldsymbol{\mu}$ . This can be thought of as measuring Euclidean distance in a lower dimensional space.

### 3.5.3 Marginals and conditionals of an MVN

Suppose we have two *discrete* random variables,  $Y_1$  and  $Y_2$ . We can represent their joint distribution as a 2d table, all of whose entries sum to one. For example, consider the following example with two binary variables:

		$Y_1 = 0$	$Y_2 = 1$
		$Y_1 = 0$	0.2
$Y_2 = 1$	$Y_1 = 0$	0.3	0.2

Given a joint distribution, we define the **marginal distribution** as follows:

$$p(Y_2 = y_2) = \sum_{y_1} p(Y_1 = y_1, Y_2 = y_2) \quad (3.93)$$

We define the **conditional distribution** as follows:

$$p(Y_1 = y_1 | Y_1 = y_2) = \frac{p(Y_1 = y_1, Y_2 = y_2)}{p(Y_2 = y_2)} \quad (3.94)$$

We now discuss how to extend these results to jointly Gaussian random variables, where we replace sums with integrals. We will partition our vector of random variables  $\mathbf{y}$  into two parts,  $\mathbf{y}_1$  and  $\mathbf{y}_2$ , where  $\mathbf{y}_2$  are the variables of interest, and  $\mathbf{y}_1$  are called **nuisance variables**. The marginal distribution for  $\mathbf{y}_2$  can be computed by integrating out  $\mathbf{y}_1$  as follows:

$$p(\mathbf{y}_2) = \int \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{y} | \boldsymbol{\mu}, \boldsymbol{\Sigma}) d\mathbf{y}_1 = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{y}_2 | \boldsymbol{\mu}_2, \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{22}) \quad (3.95)$$

where we have defined the following partition of the (moment) parameters:

$$\boldsymbol{\mu} = \begin{pmatrix} \boldsymbol{\mu}_1 \\ \boldsymbol{\mu}_2 \end{pmatrix}, \quad \boldsymbol{\Sigma} = \begin{pmatrix} \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{11} & \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{12} \\ \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{21} & \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{22} \end{pmatrix} \quad (3.96)$$

Now suppose we observe the value of  $\mathbf{y}_2$ , and we want to predict the value of  $\mathbf{y}_1$  conditional on this observation. That is, we want to transform the prior distribution  $p(\mathbf{y}_1)$ , which represents our beliefs about the values of  $\mathbf{y}_1$  before we have seen any observations, into the posterior distribution  $p(\mathbf{y}_1 | \mathbf{y}_2)$ , which represents our beliefs about the values of  $\mathbf{y}_1$  after (posterior to) seeing  $\mathbf{y}_2$ . Exercise 3.8 asks you to derive the following important result:

$$p(\mathbf{y}_1 | \mathbf{y}_2) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{y}_1 | \boldsymbol{\mu}_1 + \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{12}\boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{22}^{-1}(\mathbf{y}_2 - \boldsymbol{\mu}_2), \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{11} - \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{12}\boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{22}^{-1}\boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{21}) \quad (3.97)$$

Note that the posterior mean is a linear function of  $\mathbf{y}_2$ , but the posterior covariance is independent of  $\mathbf{y}_2$ . See Exercise 3.5 for a simple example.

### 3.5.4 Example: Imputing missing values

As an example application of the above results, suppose we observe some parts (dimensions) of  $\mathbf{y}$ , with the remaining parts being missing or unobserved. We can exploit the correlation amongst the dimensions (encoded by the covariance matrix) to infer the missing entries; this is called **missing value imputation**.

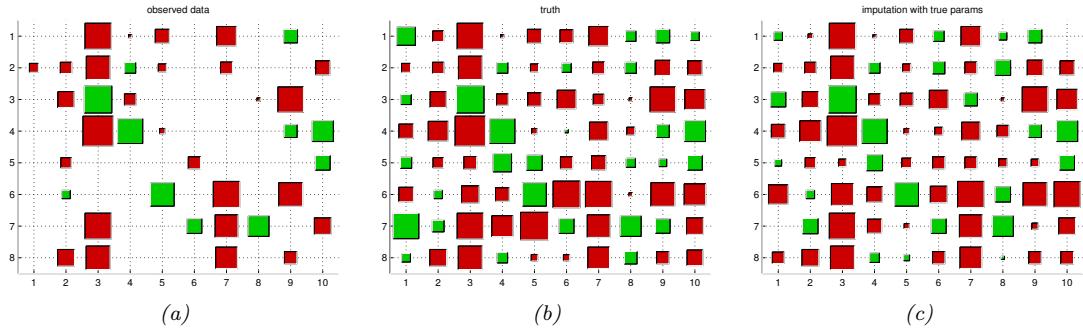


Figure 3.13: Illustration of data imputation using an MVN. (a) Visualization of the data matrix. Blank entries are missing (not observed). Red are positive, green are negative. Area of the square is proportional to the value. (This is known as a **Hinton diagram**, named after Geoff Hinton, a famous ML researcher.) (b) True data matrix (hidden). (c) Mean of the posterior predictive distribution, based on partially observed data in that row, using the true model parameters. Generated by `gaussImputationDemo.m`.

Fig. 3.13 shows a simple example. We sampled  $N$  vectors from a  $D = 10$ -dimensional Gaussian, and then deliberately “hid” 50% of the data in each sample (row). We then inferred the missing entries given the observed entries and the true model parameters.<sup>4</sup> More precisely, for each row  $n$  of the data matrix, we compute  $p(\mathbf{y}_{n,h}|\mathbf{y}_{n,v}, \boldsymbol{\theta})$ , where  $\mathbf{v}$  are the indices of the visible entries in that row,  $\mathbf{h}$  are the remaining indices of the hidden entries, and  $\boldsymbol{\theta} = (\boldsymbol{\mu}, \boldsymbol{\Sigma})$ . From this, we compute the marginal distribution of each missing variable  $i \in \mathbf{h}$ ,  $p(y_{n,i}|\mathbf{y}_{n,v}, \boldsymbol{\theta})$ . From the marginal, we compute the posterior mean,  $\bar{y}_{n,i} = \mathbb{E}[y_{n,i}|\mathbf{y}_{n,v}, \boldsymbol{\theta}]$ .

The posterior mean represents our “best guess” about the true value of that entry, in the sense that it minimizes our expected squared error, as explained in Chapter 8. We can use  $\mathbb{V}[y_{n,i}|\mathbf{y}_{n,v}, \boldsymbol{\theta}]$  as a measure of confidence in this guess, although this is not shown. Alternatively, we could draw multiple posterior samples from  $p(\mathbf{y}_{n,h}|\mathbf{y}_{n,v}, \boldsymbol{\theta})$ ; this is called **multiple imputation**, and provides a more robust estimate to downstream algorithms that consume the “filled in” data.

## 3.6 Linear Gaussian systems

In Sec. 3.5.3, we conditioned on noise-free observations to infer the posterior over the hidden parts of a Gaussian random vector. In this section, we extend this approach to handle noisy observations.

Let  $\mathbf{z} \in \mathbb{R}^D$  be an unknown vector of values, and  $\mathbf{y} \in \mathbb{R}^K$  be some noisy measurement of  $\mathbf{z}$ . We assume these variables are related by the following joint distribution:

$$p(\mathbf{z}) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{z}|\boldsymbol{\mu}_z, \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_z) \tag{3.98}$$

$$p(\mathbf{y}|\mathbf{z}) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{y}|\mathbf{W}\mathbf{z} + \mathbf{b}, \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_y) \tag{3.99}$$

where  $\mathbf{W}$  is a matrix of size  $K \times D$ . This is an example of a **linear Gaussian system**.

4. In practice, we would need to estimate the parameters from the partially observed data. Unfortunately the MLE results in Sec. 4.2.6 no longer apply, but we can use the EM algorithm to derive an approximate MLE in the presence of missing data, as explained in Sec. 5.7.4.

The corresponding joint distribution,  $p(\mathbf{z}, \mathbf{y}) = p(\mathbf{z})p(\mathbf{y}|\mathbf{z})$ , is a  $D + K$  dimensional Gaussian, with mean and covariance given by

$$\boldsymbol{\mu} = \begin{pmatrix} \boldsymbol{\mu}_z \\ \mathbf{W}\boldsymbol{\mu}_z + \mathbf{b} \end{pmatrix} \quad (3.100)$$

$$\boldsymbol{\Sigma} = \begin{pmatrix} \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_z & \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_z \mathbf{W}^\top \\ \mathbf{W}\boldsymbol{\Sigma}_z & \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_x + \mathbf{W}\boldsymbol{\Sigma}_z \mathbf{W}^\top \end{pmatrix} \quad (3.101)$$

By conditioning on  $\mathbf{y}$ , we can compute the posterior  $p(\mathbf{z}|\mathbf{y})$  using **Bayes' rule for Gaussians**, which is as follows:

$$p(\mathbf{z}|\mathbf{y}) = \frac{p(\mathbf{y}|\mathbf{z})p(\mathbf{z})}{p(\mathbf{y})} = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{z}|\boldsymbol{\mu}_{z|y}, \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{z|y}) \quad (3.102)$$

$$\boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{z|y}^{-1} = \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_z^{-1} + \mathbf{W}^\top \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_y^{-1} \mathbf{W} \quad (3.103)$$

$$\boldsymbol{\mu}_{z|y} = \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{z|y} [\mathbf{W}^\top \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_y^{-1} (\mathbf{y} - \mathbf{b}) + \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_z^{-1} \boldsymbol{\mu}_z] \quad (3.104)$$

The normalization constant is given by

$$p(\mathbf{y}) = \int \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{z}|\boldsymbol{\mu}_z, \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_z) \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{y}|\mathbf{W}\mathbf{z} + \mathbf{b}, \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_y) d\mathbf{z} = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{y}|\mathbf{W}\boldsymbol{\mu}_z + \mathbf{b}, \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_y + \mathbf{W}\boldsymbol{\Sigma}_z \mathbf{W}^\top) \quad (3.105)$$

This result follows by applying the Gaussian conditioning formula, Eq. (3.97), to the joint  $p(\mathbf{y}, \mathbf{z})$ .

We see that the Gaussian prior  $p(\mathbf{z})$ , combined with the Gaussian likelihood  $p(\mathbf{y}|\mathbf{z})$ , results in a Gaussian posterior  $p(\mathbf{z}|\mathbf{y})$ . Thus Gaussians are closed under Bayesian conditioning. To describe this more generally, we say that the Gaussian prior is a **conjugate prior** for the Gaussian likelihood, since the posterior distribution has the same type as the prior. We discuss the notion of conjugate priors in more detail in Sec. 7.2.

In the sections below, we give various applications of this result.

### 3.6.1 Example: inferring a latent vector from a noisy sensor

Suppose we have an unknown quantity of interest,  $\mathbf{z} \in \mathbb{R}^D$ , which we endow with a Gaussian prior,  $p(\mathbf{z}) = \mathcal{N}(\boldsymbol{\mu}_z, \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_z)$ . If we “know nothing” about  $\mathbf{z}$  a priori, we can set  $\boldsymbol{\Sigma}_z = \infty \mathbf{I}$ , which means we are completely uncertain about what the value of  $\mathbf{z}$  should be. (In practice, we can use a large but finite value for the covariance.) By symmetry, it seems reasonable to set  $\boldsymbol{\mu}_z = \mathbf{0}$ .

Now suppose we make  $N$  noisy but independent measurements of  $\mathbf{z}$ ,  $\mathbf{y}_n \sim \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{z}, \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_y)$ , each of size  $K$ . We can represent the likelihood as follows:

$$p(\mathcal{D}|\mathbf{z}) = \prod_{n=1}^N \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{y}_n|\mathbf{z}, \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_y) = \mathcal{N}(\bar{\mathbf{y}}|\mathbf{z}, \frac{1}{N} \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_y) \quad (3.106)$$

Note that we can replace the  $N$  observations with their average,  $\bar{\mathbf{y}}$ , provided we scale down the covariance by  $1/N$  to compensate. Setting  $\mathbf{W} = \mathbf{I}$ ,  $\mathbf{b} = \mathbf{0}$ , we can then use Bayes rule for Gaussian to compute the posterior over  $\mathbf{z}$ :

$$p(\mathbf{z}|\mathbf{y}_1, \dots, \mathbf{y}_N) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{z}|\hat{\boldsymbol{\mu}}, \hat{\boldsymbol{\Sigma}}) \quad (3.107)$$

$$\hat{\boldsymbol{\Sigma}}^{-1} = \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_z^{-1} + N\boldsymbol{\Sigma}_y^{-1} \quad (3.108)$$

$$\hat{\boldsymbol{\mu}} = \hat{\boldsymbol{\Sigma}} (\boldsymbol{\Sigma}_y^{-1} (N\bar{\mathbf{y}}) + \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_z^{-1} \boldsymbol{\mu}_z) \quad (3.109)$$

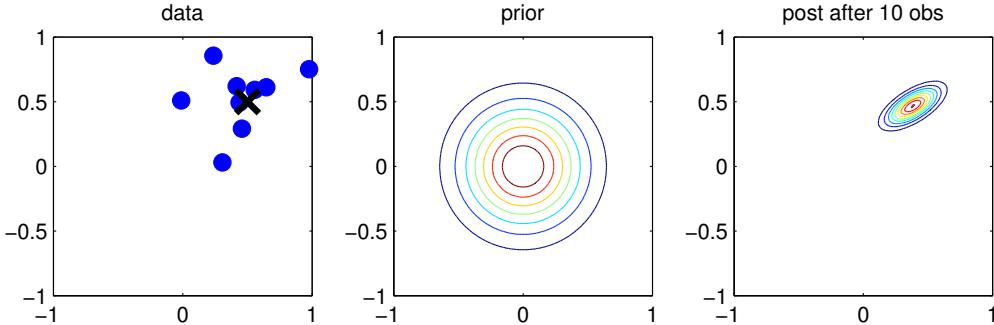


Figure 3.14: Illustration of Bayesian inference for a 2d Gaussian random vector  $\mathbf{z}$ . (a) The data is generated from  $\mathbf{y}_n \sim \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{z}, \Sigma_y)$ , where  $\mathbf{z} = [0.5, 0.5]^\top$  and  $\Sigma_y = 0.1[2, 1; 1, 1]$ . We assume the sensor noise covariance  $\Sigma_y$  is known but  $\mathbf{z}$  is unknown. The black cross represents  $\mathbf{z}$ . (b) The prior is  $p(\mathbf{z}) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{z}|\mathbf{0}, 0.1\mathbf{I}_2)$ . (c) We show the posterior after 10 data points have been observed. Generated by `gaussInferParamsMean2d.m`.

where  $\hat{\mu}$  and  $\hat{\Sigma}$  are the parameters of the posterior.

Fig. 3.14 gives a 2d example. We can think of  $\mathbf{z}$  as representing the true, but unknown, location of an object in 2d space, such as a missile or airplane, and the  $\mathbf{y}_n$  as being noisy observations, such as radar ‘‘blips’’. As we receive more blips, we are better able to localize the source. This is the (In the sequel to this book, [Mur22], we discuss the **Kalman filter** algorithm, which extends this idea to a temporal sequence of observations.)

The posterior uncertainty about each component of  $\mathbf{z}$  location vector depends on how reliable the sensor is in each of these dimensions. In the above example, the measurement noise in dimension 1 is higher than in dimension 2, so we have more posterior uncertainty about  $z_1$  (horizontal axis) than about  $z_2$  (vertical axis).

### 3.6.2 Example: inferring a latent vector from multiple noisy sensors

In this section, we extend Sec. 3.6.1, to the case where we have multiple measurements, coming from different sensors, each with different reliabilities. That is, the model has the form

$$p(\mathbf{z}, \mathbf{y}) = p(\mathbf{z}) \prod_{m=1}^M \prod_{n=1}^{N_m} \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{y}_{n,m} | \mathbf{z}, \Sigma_m) \quad (3.110)$$

where  $M$  is the number of sensors (measurement devices), and  $N_m$  is the number of observations from sensor  $m$ , and  $\mathbf{y} = \mathbf{y}_{1:N, 1:M} \in \mathbb{R}^K$ . Our goal is to combine the evidence together, to compute  $p(\mathbf{z}|\mathbf{y})$ . This is known as **sensor fusion**.

We now give a simple example, where there are just two sensors, so  $\mathbf{y}_1 \sim \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{z}, \Sigma_1)$  and  $\mathbf{y}_2 \sim \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{z}, \Sigma_2)$ . Pictorially, we can represent this example as  $\mathbf{y}_1 \leftarrow \mathbf{z} \rightarrow \mathbf{y}_2$ . We can combine  $\mathbf{y}_1$  and  $\mathbf{y}_2$  into a single vector  $\mathbf{y}$ , so the model can be represented as  $\mathbf{z} \rightarrow [\mathbf{y}_1, \mathbf{y}_2]$ , where  $p(\mathbf{y}|\mathbf{z}) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{y}|\mathbf{W}\mathbf{z}, \Sigma_y)$ , where  $\mathbf{W} = [\mathbf{I}; \mathbf{I}]$  and  $\Sigma_y = [\Sigma_1, \mathbf{0}; \mathbf{0}, \Sigma_2]$  are block-structured matrices. We can then apply Bayes’ rule for Gaussians to compute  $p(\mathbf{z}|\mathbf{y})$ .

Fig. 3.15(a) gives a 2d example, where we set  $\Sigma_1 = \Sigma_2 = 0.01\mathbf{I}_2$ , so both sensors are equally

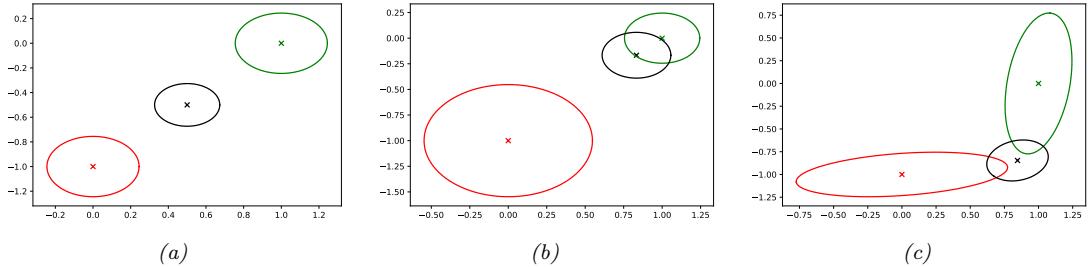


Figure 3.15: We observe  $\mathbf{y}_1 = (0, -1)$  (red cross) and  $\mathbf{y}_2 = (1, 0)$  (green cross) and estimate  $\mathbb{E}[\mathbf{z}|\mathbf{y}_1, \mathbf{y}_2]$  (black cross). (a) Equally reliable sensors, so the posterior mean estimate is in between the two circles. (b) Sensor 2 is more reliable, so the estimate shifts more towards the green circle. (c) Sensor 1 is more reliable in the vertical direction, Sensor 2 is more reliable in the horizontal direction. The estimate is an appropriate combination of the two measurements. Generated by [sensor\\_fusion\\_2d.py](#).

reliable. In this case, the posterior mean is halfway between the two observations,  $\mathbf{y}_1$  and  $\mathbf{y}_2$ . In Fig. 3.15(b), we set  $\Sigma_1 = 0.05\mathbf{I}_2$  and  $\Sigma_2 = 0.01\mathbf{I}_2$ , so sensor 2 is more reliable than sensor 1. In this case, the posterior mean is closer to  $\mathbf{y}_2$ . In Fig. 3.15(c), we set

$$\Sigma_1 = 0.01 \begin{pmatrix} 10 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}, \quad \Sigma_2 = 0.01 \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 10 \end{pmatrix} \quad (3.111)$$

so sensor 1 is more reliable in the second component (vertical direction), and sensor 2 is more reliable in the first component (horizontal direction). In this case, the posterior mean uses  $\mathbf{y}_1$ 's vertical component and  $\mathbf{y}_2$ 's horizontal component.

### 3.7 Mixture models

One way to create more complex probability models is to take a convex combination of simple distributions. This is called a **mixture model**. This has the form

$$p(\mathbf{y}|\boldsymbol{\theta}) = \sum_{k=1}^K \pi_k p_k(\mathbf{y}) \quad (3.112)$$

where  $p_k$  is the  $k$ 'th mixture component, and  $\pi_k$  are the mixture weights which satisfy  $0 \leq \pi_k \leq 1$  and  $\sum_{k=1}^K \pi_k = 1$ .

We can re-express this model as a hierarchical model, in which we introduce the discrete **latent variable**  $z \in \{1, \dots, K\}$ , which specifies which distribution to use for generating the output  $\mathbf{y}$ . The prior on this latent variable is  $p(z = k) = \pi_k$ , and the conditional is  $p(\mathbf{y}|z = k) = p_k(\mathbf{y}) = p(\mathbf{y}|\boldsymbol{\theta}_k)$ . That is, we define the following joint model:

$$p(z|\boldsymbol{\theta}) = \text{Cat}(z|\boldsymbol{\pi}) \quad (3.113)$$

$$p(\mathbf{y}|z = k, \boldsymbol{\theta}) = p(\mathbf{y}|\boldsymbol{\theta}_k) \quad (3.114)$$

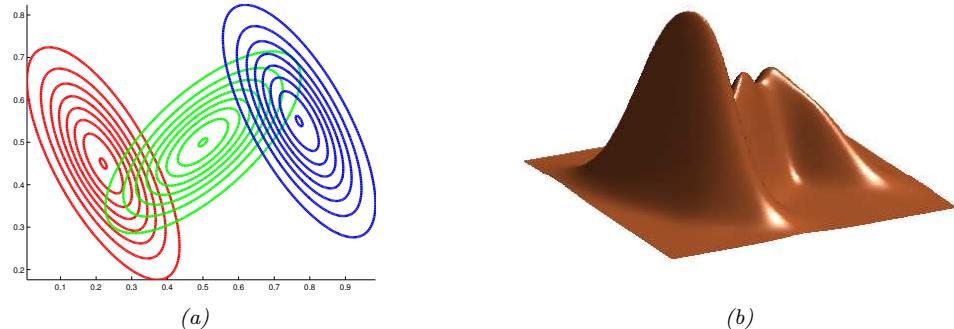


Figure 3.16: A mixture of 3 Gaussians in 2d. (a) We show the contours of constant probability for each component in the mixture. (b) A surface plot of the overall density. Adapted from Figure 2.23 of [Bis06]. Generated by `mixGaussPlotDemo.m`.

The “generative story” for the data is that we first sample a specific component  $z$ , and then we generate the observations  $\mathbf{y}$  using the parameters chosen according to the value of  $z$ . By marginalizing out  $z$ , we recover Eq. (3.112):

$$p(\mathbf{y}|\boldsymbol{\theta}) = \sum_{k=1}^K p(z=k|\boldsymbol{\theta})p(\mathbf{y}|z=k, \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \sum_{k=1}^K \pi_k p(\mathbf{y}|\boldsymbol{\theta}_k) \quad (3.115)$$

We can create different kinds of mixture model by varying the base distribution  $p_k$ , as we illustrate below.

### 3.7.1 Gaussian mixture models

A **Gaussian mixture model** or **GMM**, also called a **mixture of Gaussians** (**MoG**), is defined as follows:

$$p(\mathbf{y}) = \sum_{k=1}^K \pi_k \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{y}|\boldsymbol{\mu}_k, \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_k) \quad (3.116)$$

In Fig. 3.16 we show the density defined by a mixture of 3 Gaussians in 2d. Each mixture component is represented by a different set of elliptical contours. If we let the number of mixture components grow sufficiently large, a GMM can approximate any smooth distribution over  $\mathbb{R}^D$ .

#### 3.7.1.1 Using GMMs for clustering

GMMs are often used for unsupervised **clustering** of real-valued data samples  $\mathbf{y}_n \in \mathbb{R}^D$ . This works in two stages. First we fit the model e.g., by computing the MLE  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}} = \operatorname{argmax} \log p(\mathcal{D}|\boldsymbol{\theta})$ , where  $\mathcal{D} = \{\mathbf{y}_n : n = 1 : N\}$ . (We discuss how to compute this MLE in Sec. 5.7.3.) Then we associate each data point  $\mathbf{y}_n$  with a discrete latent or hidden variable  $z_n \in \{1, \dots, K\}$  which specifies the identity of the mixture component or cluster which was used to generate  $\mathbf{y}_n$ . These latent identities are

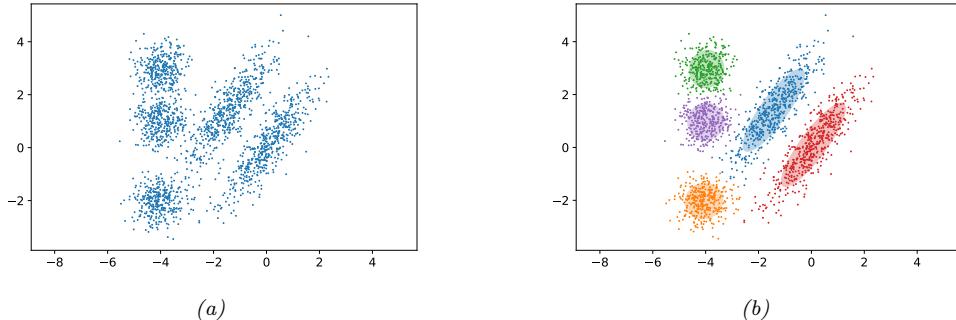


Figure 3.17: (a) Some data in 2d. (b) A possible clustering using  $K = 3$  clusters computed using a GMM. Generated by [gmm\\_2d.py](#).

unknown, but we can compute a posterior over them using Bayes rule:

$$r_{nk} \triangleq p(z_n = k | \mathbf{x}_n, \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \frac{p(z_n = k | \boldsymbol{\theta}) p(\mathbf{x}_n | z_n = k, \boldsymbol{\theta})}{\sum_{k'=1}^K p(z_n = k' | \boldsymbol{\theta}) p(\mathbf{x}_n | z_n = k', \boldsymbol{\theta})} \quad (3.117)$$

The quantity  $r_{nk}$  is called the **responsibility** of cluster  $k$  for data point  $n$ . Given the responsibilities, we can compute the most probable cluster assignment as follows:

$$\hat{z}_n = \arg \max_k r_{nk} = \arg \max_k [\log p(\mathbf{x}_n | z_n = k, \boldsymbol{\theta}) + \log p(z_n = k | \boldsymbol{\theta})] \quad (3.118)$$

This is known as **hard clustering**. (If we use the responsibilities to fractionally assign each data point to different clusters, it is called **soft clustering**.) See Fig. 3.17 for an example.

If we have a uniform prior over  $z_n$ , and we use spherical Gaussians with  $\Sigma_k = \mathbf{I}$ , the hard clustering problem reduces to

$$z_n = \operatorname{argmin}_k \|\mathbf{y}_n - \hat{\boldsymbol{\mu}}_k\|_2^2 \quad (3.119)$$

In other words, we assign each data point to its closest centroid, as measured by Euclidean distance. This is the basis of the **K-means clustering** algorithm, which we discuss in Sec. 21.3.

### 3.7.1.2 Using GMMs as a prior to regularize an inverse problem

In this section, we consider using GMMs as a blackbox density model to regularize the inversion of a many-to-one mapping. Specifically, we consider the problem of inferring a “clean” image  $\mathbf{z}$  from a corrupted version  $\mathbf{y}$ . We use a linear-Gaussian forwards model of the form

$$p(\mathbf{y} | \mathbf{z}) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{y} | \mathbf{W}\mathbf{z}, \sigma^2 \mathbf{I}) \quad (3.120)$$

where  $\sigma^2$  is the variance of the measurement noise. The form of the matrix  $\mathbf{W}$  depends on the nature of the corruption, which we assume is known, for simplicity. Here are some common examples of different kinds of corruption we can model in our approach:

- If the corruption is due to additive noise (as in Fig. 3.18a), we can set  $\mathbf{W} = \mathbf{I}$ . The resulting MAP estimate can be used for **image denoising**, as in Fig. 3.18b.
- If the corruption is due to blurring (as in Fig. 3.18c), we can set  $\mathbf{W}$  to be a fixed convolutional kernel [KF09b]. The resulting MAP estimate can be used for **image deblurring**, as in Fig. 3.18d.
- If the corruption is due to occlusion (as in Fig. 3.18e), we can set  $\mathbf{W}$  to be a diagonal matrix, with 0s in the locations corresponding to the occluders. The resulting MAP estimate can be used for **image inpainting**, as in Fig. 3.18f.

Thus we see that the linear-Gaussian likelihood model is surprisingly flexible. Given the model, our goal is to invert it, by computing the MAP estimate  $\hat{\mathbf{z}} = \operatorname{argmax}_{\mathbf{z}} p(\mathbf{z}|\mathbf{y})$ . However, the problem of inverting this model is ill-posed, since there are many possible latent images  $\mathbf{z}$  that map to the same observed image  $\mathbf{y}$ . Therefore we need to use a prior to regularize the inversion process.

In [ZW11], they propose to use a GMM prior of the form  $p(\mathbf{z}) = \sum_k p(c=k)\mathcal{N}(\mathbf{z}|\boldsymbol{\mu}_k, \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_k)$ , using  $K = 200$  mixture components, which they fit a dataset of 2M clean image patches. The full joint model therefore has the form

$$p(c=k, \mathbf{z}, \mathbf{y}|\boldsymbol{\theta}) = p(c=k)\mathcal{N}(\mathbf{z}|\boldsymbol{\mu}_k, \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_k)\mathcal{N}(\mathbf{y}|\mathbf{W}\mathbf{z}, \sigma^2\mathbf{I}) \quad (3.121)$$

To compute the marginal MAP estimate  $\operatorname{argmax}_{\mathbf{z}} p(\mathbf{z}|\mathbf{y})$ , we can use the approximation

$$p(\mathbf{z}|\mathbf{y}) \approx p(\mathbf{z}|\mathbf{y}, c^*) \propto \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{z}|\boldsymbol{\mu}_{c^*}, \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{c^*})\mathcal{N}(\mathbf{y}|\mathbf{W}\mathbf{z}, \sigma^2\mathbf{I}) \quad (3.122)$$

If we know  $c^*$  we can compute the above using Bayes rule for Gaussians in Eq. (3.102). To compute the MAP mixture component,  $c^*$ , we can use Eq. (3.105) to get

$$c^* = \operatorname{argmax}_c p(c)p(\mathbf{y}|c) = \operatorname{argmax}_c p(c)\mathcal{N}(\mathbf{y}|\mathbf{W}\boldsymbol{\mu}_c, \sigma^2\mathbf{I} + \mathbf{W}\boldsymbol{\Sigma}_c\mathbf{W}^\top) \quad (3.123)$$

See Fig. 3.18 for some examples of this process in action.

If the corruption is not known, it is called a “**blind inverse problem**”, which is significantly harder. See e.g., [Ani+18; XC19; Wan+20c] for some relevant works.

### 3.7.2 Mixtures of Bernoullis

If the data is binary valued, we can use a **mixture of Bernoullis**, where each mixture component has the following form:

$$p(\mathbf{y}|z=k, \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \prod_{d=1}^D \operatorname{Ber}(y_d|\mu_{dk}) = \prod_{d=1}^D \mu_{dk}^{y_d} (1 - \mu_{dk})^{1-y_d} \quad (3.124)$$

Here  $\mu_{dk}$  is the probability that bit  $d$  turns on in cluster  $k$ .

For example, consider building an unsupervised density model for the famous **MNIST** dataset [LeC+98; YB19]. This is a dataset of 60k training images of size  $28 \times 28 \times 1$  (the final dimension of size 1 means the images are gray scale) illustrating handwritten digits from 10 categories; see Fig. 3.19a for an illustration of the data. There are 60k training examples and 10k test examples.



*Figure 3.18: Example of recovering a clean image (right) from a corrupted version (left) using MAP estimation with a GMM patch prior and Gaussian likelihood. First row: image denoising. Second row: image deblurring. Third row: image inpainting. From [RW15] and [ZW11]. Used with kind permission of Dan Rosenbaum and Daniel Zoran.*

We fit a mixture of Bernoullis using  $K = 20$  components to the training set data. (We use the EM algorithm to do this fitting — see Sec. 5.7.3 for details.) The resulting parameters for each mixture component (i.e.,  $\mu_k$  and  $\pi_k$ ) are shown in Fig. 3.19b. We see that the model has “discovered” a representation of each type of digit. (Some digits are represented multiple times, since the model does not know the “true” number of classes. See Sec. 21.3.7 for more information on how to choose the number  $K$  of mixture components.)

### 3.7.3 Gaussian scale mixtures

A **Gaussian scale mixture** of GSM [AM74; Wes87] is like an “infinite” mixture of Gaussians, each with a different scale (variance). More precisely, let  $x = \epsilon z$ , where  $z \sim \mathcal{N}(0, \sigma_0^2)$  and  $\epsilon \sim p(\epsilon)$ . We can

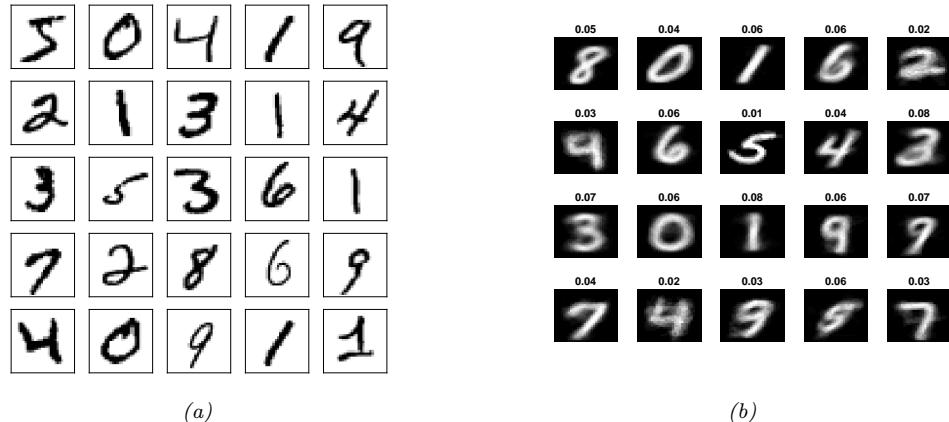


Figure 3.19: (a) (a) Visualization of the first 25 digits from the **MNIST** dataset [LeC+98; YB19]. Generated by `mnist_viz_tf.py`. (b) We fit a mixture of 20 Bernoullis to the binarized MNIST digit data. We visualize the estimated cluster means  $\hat{\mu}_k$ . The numbers on top of each image represent the estimated mixing weights  $\hat{\pi}_k$ . No labels were used when training the model. Generated by `mixBerMnistEM.m`.

think of this as **multiplicative noise** being applied to the Gaussian rv  $z$ . We have  $x|\epsilon \sim \mathcal{N}(0, \epsilon^2 \sigma_0^2)$ . Marginalizing out the scale  $\epsilon$  gives

$$p(x) = \int \mathcal{N}(x|0, \sigma_0^2 \epsilon^2) p(\epsilon^2) d\epsilon \quad (3.125)$$

By changing the prior  $p(\epsilon)$ , we can create various interesting distributions. We give some examples below.

The main advantage of this approach is that it is often computationally more convenient to work with the **expanded parameterization**, in which we explicitly include the scale term  $\epsilon$ , since, conditional on that, the distribution is Gaussian. We use this formulation Sec. 11.6.4.2, where we discuss sparse regression using lasso, and Sec. 11.4.1.1, where we discuss robust regression.

### 3.7.3.1 Example: Student $t$ distribution as GSM

We can represent the Student distribution as a GSM as follows:

$$\mathcal{T}(y|0, \sigma^2, \nu) = \int_0^\infty dz \mathcal{N}(y|0, z\sigma^2) \text{IG}(z|\frac{\nu}{2}, \frac{\nu}{2}) = \int_0^\infty dz \mathcal{N}(y|0, z\sigma^2) \chi^{-2}(z|\nu, 1) dz \quad (3.126)$$

where  $\text{IG}$  is the inverse Gamma distribution (Sec. 3.4.5). (See Exercise 3.7 for the derivation.) Thus we can think of the Student as an infinite superposition of Gaussians of different widths; marginalizing this out induces a distribution with wider tails than a Gaussian with the same variance. This result also explains why the Student distribution approaches a Gaussian as the dof gets large, since when  $\nu = \infty$ , the inverse Gamma distribution becomes a delta function.

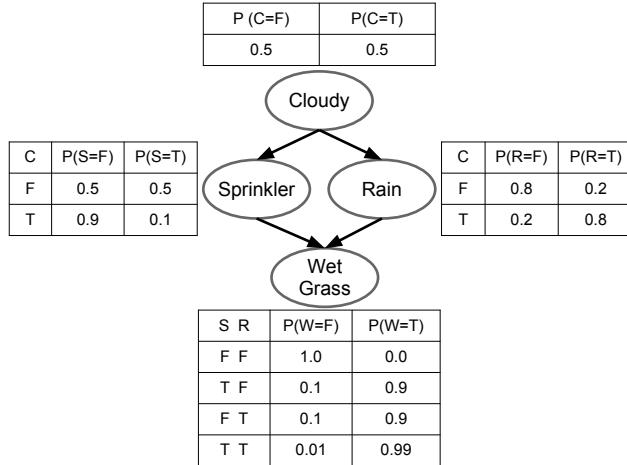


Figure 3.20: Water sprinkler PGM with corresponding binary CPTs. T and F stand for true and false. See [sprinkler\\_pgm.py](#) for some code that implements inference in this model.

### 3.7.3.2 Example: Laplace distribution as GSM

Similarly one can show that the Laplace distribution is an infinite weighted sum of Gaussians, where the precision comes from a Gamma distribution:

$$\text{Lap}(w|0, \lambda) = \int \mathcal{N}(w|0, \tau^2) \text{Ga}(\tau^2|1, \frac{\lambda^2}{2}) d\tau^2 \quad (3.127)$$

## 3.8 Probabilistic graphical models

I basically know of two principles for treating complicated systems in simple ways: the first is the principle of modularity and the second is the principle of abstraction. I am an apologist for computational probability in machine learning because I believe that probability theory implements these two principles in deep and intriguing ways — namely through factorization and through averaging. Exploiting these two mechanisms as fully as possible seems to me to be the way forward in machine learning. — Michael Jordan, 1997 (quoted in [Fre98]).

We have now introduced a few simple probabilistic building blocks. In Sec. 3.6, we showed one way to combine some Gaussian building blocks to build a high dimensional distribution  $p(\mathbf{y})$  from simpler parts, namely the marginal  $p(\mathbf{y}_1)$  and the conditional  $p(\mathbf{y}_2|\mathbf{y}_1)$ . This idea can be extended to define joint distributions over sets of many random variables. The key assumption we will make is that some variables are **conditionally independent** of others. We will represent our CI assumptions using graphs, as we briefly explain below. (See the sequel to this book, [Mur22], for more information.)

### 3.8.1 Representation

A **probabilistic graphical model** or **PGM** is a joint probability distribution that uses a graph structure to encode conditional independence assumptions. When the graph is a **directed acyclic graph** or **DAG**, the model is sometimes called a **Bayesian network**, although there is nothing inherently Bayesian about such models.

The basic idea in PGMs is that each node in the graph represents a random variable, and each edge represents a direct dependency. More precisely, each lack of edge represents a conditional independency. In the DAG case, we can number the nodes in **topological order** (parents before children), and then we connect them such that each node is conditionally independent of all its predecessors given its parents:

$$Y_i \perp \mathbf{Y}_{\text{pred}(i) \setminus \text{pa}(i)} \mid \mathbf{Y}_{\text{pa}(i)} \quad (3.128)$$

where  $\text{pa}(i)$  are the parents of node  $i$ , and  $\text{pred}(i)$  are the predecessors of node  $i$  in the ordering. (This is called the **ordered Markov property**.) Consequently, we can represent the joint distribution as follows:

$$p(\mathbf{Y}_{1:V}) = \prod_{i=1}^V p(Y_i \mid \mathbf{Y}_{\text{pa}(i)}) \quad (3.129)$$

where  $V$  is the number of nodes in the graph.

#### 3.8.1.1 Example: water sprinkler network

For example, suppose we want to model the dependencies between 4 discrete (binary) random variables related to the weather:  $C$  (whether it is cloudy or not),  $R$  (whether it is raining or not),  $S$  (whether the water sprinkler is on or not), and  $W$  (whether the grass is wet or not). Intuitively, clouds cause rain to fall, but prevent sprinklers from turning on (either because of a sensor or human intervention). The rain or the sprinklers can both cause the grass to get wet. We can represent these assumptions using the DAG in Fig. 3.20, where we number the nodes as follows:  $C = Y_1$ ,  $S = Y_2$ ,  $R = Y_3$  and  $W = Y_4$ . This model defines the following joint distribution:

$$p(C, S, R, W) = p(C)p(S|C)p(R|C, \cancel{S})p(W|\cancel{C}, S, R) \quad (3.130)$$

where we strike through terms that are not needed due to the conditional independence properties of the model.

Each term  $p(Y_i \mid \mathbf{Y}_{\text{pa}(i)})$  is called the **conditional probability distribution** or **CPD** for node  $i$ . This can be any kind of distribution we like. In Fig. 3.20, we assume each CPD is a conditional categorical distribution, which can be represented as a **conditional probability table** or **CPT**. We can represent the  $i$ 'th CPT as follows:

$$\theta_{ijk} \triangleq p(Y_i = k \mid \mathbf{Y}_{\text{pa}(i)} = j) \quad (3.131)$$

This satisfies the properties  $0 \leq \theta_{ijk} \leq 1$  and  $\sum_{k=1}^{K_i} \theta_{ijk} = 1$  for each row  $j$ . Here  $i$  indexes nodes,  $i \in [V]$ ;  $k$  indexes node states,  $k \in [K_i]$ , where  $K_i$  is the number of states for node  $i$ ; and  $j$  indexes joint parent states,  $j \in [J_i]$ , where  $J_i = \prod_{p \in \text{pa}(i)} K_p$ . For example, the wet grass node has 2 binary parents, so there are 4 parent states.

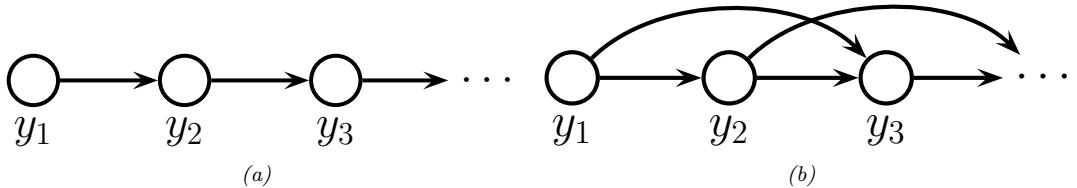


Figure 3.21: Illustration of first and second order autoregressive (Markov) models.

### 3.8.1.2 Example: Markov chain

Now suppose we want to create a joint probability distribution over variable-length sequences,  $p(y_{1:T})$ . If each variable  $y_t$  represents a word from a vocabulary with  $K$  possible values, so  $y_t \in \{1, \dots, K\}$ , the resulting model represents a distribution over possible sentences of length  $T$ ; this is often called a **language model**.

By the chain rule of probability, we can represent any joint distribution over  $T$  variables as follows:

$$p(\mathbf{y}_{1:T}) = p(y_1)p(y_2|y_1)p(y_3|y_2, y_1)p(y_4|y_{3,2}, y_1)\dots = \prod_{t=1}^T p(y_t|\mathbf{y}_{1:t-1}) \quad (3.132)$$

Unfortunately, the number of parameters needed to represent each conditional distribution  $p(y_t | \mathbf{y}_{1:t-1})$  grows exponentially with  $t$ . However, suppose we make the conditional independence assumption that the future,  $\mathbf{y}_{t+1:T}$ , is independent of the past,  $\mathbf{y}_{1:t-1}$ , given the present,  $y_t$ . This is called the **first order Markov condition**, and is represented by the PGM in Fig. 3.21(a). With this assumption, we can write the joint distribution as follows:

$$p(\mathbf{y}_{1:T}) = p(y_1)p(y_2|y_1)p(y_3|y_2)p(y_4|y_3)\dots = p(y_1) \prod_{t=2}^T p(y_t|y_{t-1}) \quad (3.133)$$

This is called a **Markov chain**, **Markov model** or **autoregressive model** of order 1.

The function  $p(y_t|y_{t-1})$  is called the **transition function**, **transition kernel** or **Markov kernel**. This is just a conditional distribution over the states at time  $t$  given the state at time  $t-1$ , and hence it satisfies the conditions  $p(y_t|y_{t-1}) \geq 0$  and  $\sum_{k=1}^K p(y_t = k|y_{t-1} = j) = 1$ . We can represent this CPT as a **stochastic matrix**,  $A_{jk} = p(y_t = k|y_{t-1} = j)$ , where each row sums to 1. This is known as the **state transition matrix**. We assume this matrix is the same for all time steps, so the model is said to be **homogeneous**, **stationary**, or **time-invariant**. This is an example of **parameter tying**, since the same parameter is shared by multiple variables. This assumption allows us to model an arbitrary number of variables using a fixed number of parameters.

The first-order Markov assumption is rather strong. Fortunately, we can easily generalize first-order models to depend on the last  $M$  observations, thus creating a model of order (memory length)  $M$ :

$$p(\mathbf{y}_{1:T}) = p(\mathbf{y}_{1:M}) \prod_{t=M+1}^T p(y_t | \mathbf{y}_{t-M:t-1}) \quad (3.134)$$

This is called an  $M$ 'th order Markov model. For example, if  $M = 2$ ,  $y_t$  depends on  $y_{t-1}$  and  $y_{t-2}$ , as shown in Fig. 3.21(b). This is called a **trigram model**, since it models the distribution over

word triples. If we use  $M = 1$ , we get a **bigram model**, which models the distribution over word pairs.

For large vocabulary sizes, the number of parameters needed to estimate the conditional distributions for  $M$ -gram models for large  $M$  can become prohibitive. In this case, we need to make additional assumptions beyond conditional independence. For example, we can assume that  $p(y_t|\mathbf{y}_{t-M:t-1})$  can be represented as a low-rank matrix, or in terms of some kind of neural network. This is called a **neural language model**. See Chapter 15 for details.

### 3.8.2 Inference

A PGM defines a joint probability distribution. We can therefore use the rules of marginalization and conditioning to compute  $p(\mathbf{Y}_i|\mathbf{Y}_j = \mathbf{y}_j)$  for any sets of variables  $i$  and  $j$ .

#### 3.8.2.1 Example: water sprinkler

For example, consider the water sprinkler example in Fig. 3.20. We can compute our prior belief that it has rained as follows:

$$p(R = 1) = \sum_{c=0}^1 p(C = c)p(R = 1|C = c) = 0.5 \quad (3.135)$$

If we see that the grass is wet, then our (posterior) belief that it has rained changes to  $p(R = 1|W = 1) = 0.7079$ . Now suppose we also notice the water sprinkler was turned on: our belief that it rained goes down to  $p(R = 1|W = 1, S = 1) = 0.3204$ . This negative mutual interaction between multiple causes of some observations is called the **explaining away** effect, also known as **Berkson's paradox**.

#### 3.8.2.2 Example: Asia network

Let us now give a more interesting example. We will consider a hypothetical model proposed in [LS88]; this is known as the “**Asia network**”, since it was designed to model various lung diseases in Western patients who may have recently visited Asia. (Note: this is purely for pedagogical purposes, and it is not a realistic model. Also, it should be apparent that we could, in principle, create a similar model for COVID-19 diagnosis.)

Fig. 3.22a shows the model, as well as the prior marginal distributions over each node (assumed to be binary). Now suppose the patient reports that they have **Dyspnea**, aka shortness of breath. We can represent this fact by “shading” that node a dark color, and then clamping the distribution to be 100% probability that  $\text{Ddyspnea}=1$ , and 0% probability that  $\text{Dyspnea}=0$ . We then propagate this new information through the network to get the updated marginal distributions shown in Fig. 3.22b. We see that the probability of bronchitis has gone up, from 45% to 83.4%, since this is the most likely cause or explanation of the evidence. However, there is some probability that the symptom (Dyspnea) was caused by TB or Lung Cancer.

Now suppose the doctor asks the patient if they have recently been to Asia, and they say yes. Fig. 3.22c shows the new belief state of each node. We see that the probability of TB has increased from 2% to 9%. However, Bronchitis remains the most likely explanation, so the doctor asks if the patient smokes, and they say yes. Fig. 3.22c shows the new belief state of each node. We see that

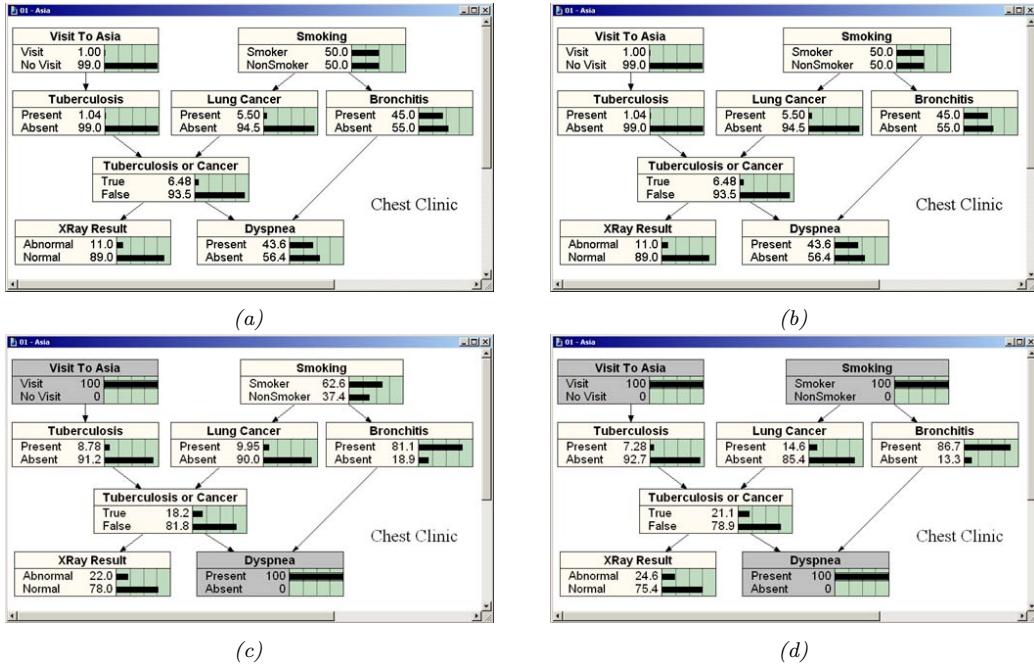


Figure 3.22: Illustration of belief updating in the “Asia” PGM. The histograms show the marginal distribution of each node. (a) Prior. (b) Posterior after conditioning on Dyspnea=1. (c) Posterior after also conditioning on VisitToAsia=1. (d) Posterior after also conditioning on Smoking=1. From <https://bit.ly/3h8DWQP>. Used with kind permission of Brent Boerlage.

we are now even more confident that the patient has Bronchitis, and not TB or Lung Cancer. The predicted probability that an X-ray will show an abnormal result has gone up, to 24%, so the doctor may decide it is worth ordering a test to verify this hypothesis.

### 3.8.2.3 Computational issues

We have seen that Bayesian inference allows us to update our beliefs about the world by combining noisy evidence with prior knowledge. Unfortunately, the process of computing marginals and conditionals from joint distributions can be computationally expensive. Fortunately, we can often exploit the CI properties of the distribution to make the computation much more efficient. We discuss this topic briefly in Sec. 7.7, but go into more detail in the sequel to this book, [Mur22].

### 3.8.3 Learning

If the parameters of the CPDs are unknown, we can view them as additional random variables, add them as nodes to the graph, and then treat them as **hidden variables** to be inferred. Fig. 3.23(a) shows a simple example, in which we have  $N$  iid random variables,  $\mathbf{y}_n$ , all drawn from the same distribution with common parameter  $\boldsymbol{\theta}$ . (The **shaded nodes** represent observed values, whereas the

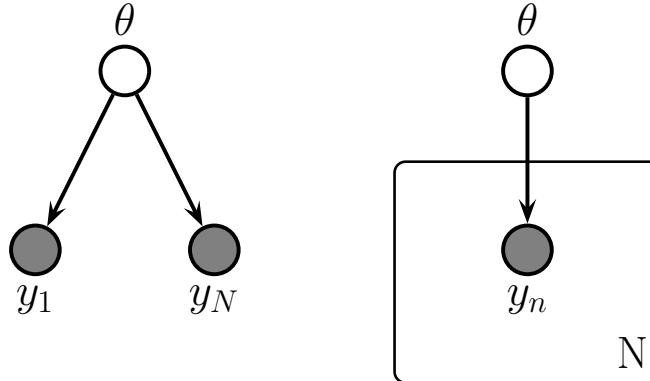


Figure 3.23: Left: data points  $\mathbf{y}_n$  are conditionally independent given  $\boldsymbol{\theta}$ . Right: Same model, using plate notation. This represents the same model as the one on the left, except the repeated  $\mathbf{y}_n$  nodes are inside a box, known as a plate; the number in the lower right hand corner,  $N$ , specifies the number of repetitions of the  $\mathbf{y}_n$  node.

unshaded (hollow) nodes represent latent variables or parameters.)

More precisely, the model encodes the following “generative story” about the data:

$$\boldsymbol{\theta} \sim p(\boldsymbol{\theta}) \quad (3.136)$$

$$\mathbf{y}_n \sim p(\mathbf{y}|\boldsymbol{\theta}) \quad (3.137)$$

where  $p(\boldsymbol{\theta})$  is some (unspecified) prior over the parameters, and  $p(\mathbf{y}|\boldsymbol{\theta})$  is some specified likelihood function. The corresponding joint distribution has the form

$$p(\mathcal{D}, \boldsymbol{\theta}) = p(\boldsymbol{\theta})p(\mathcal{D}|\boldsymbol{\theta}) \quad (3.138)$$

where  $\mathcal{D} = (\mathbf{y}_1, \dots, \mathbf{y}_N)$ . By virtue of the iid assumption, the likelihood can be rewritten as follows:

$$p(\mathcal{D}|\boldsymbol{\theta}) = \prod_{n=1}^N p(\mathbf{y}_n|\boldsymbol{\theta}) \quad (3.139)$$

Notice that the order of the data vectors is not important for defining this model, i.e., we can permute the numbering of the leaf nodes in the PGM. When this property holds, we say that the data is **exchangeable**.

### 3.8.3.1 Plate notation

In Fig. 3.23(a), we see that the  $\mathbf{y}$  nodes are repeated  $N$  times. To avoid visual clutter, it is common to use a form of **syntactic sugar** called **plates**. This is a notational convention in which we draw a little box around the repeated variables, with the understanding that nodes within the box will get repeated when the model is **unrolled**. We often write the number of copies or repetitions in the bottom right corner of the box. This is illustrated in Fig. 3.23(b). This notation is widely used to represent certain kinds of Bayesian model.

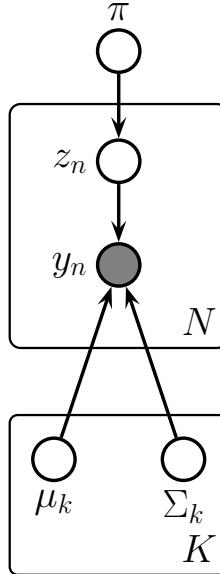


Figure 3.24: A Gaussian mixture model represented as a graphical model.

Fig. 3.24 shows a more interesting example, in which we represent a GMM (Sec. 3.7.1) as a graphical model. We see that this encodes the joint distribution

$$p(\mathbf{y}_{1:N}, \mathbf{z}_{1:N}, \boldsymbol{\theta}) = p(\boldsymbol{\pi}) \left[ \prod_{k=1}^K p(\boldsymbol{\mu}_k) p(\boldsymbol{\Sigma}_k) \right] \left[ \prod_{n=1}^N p(z_n | \boldsymbol{\pi}) p(\mathbf{y}_n | z_n, \boldsymbol{\mu}_{1:K}, \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{1:K}) \right] \quad (3.140)$$

We see that the latent variables  $z_n$  as well as the unknown parameters,  $\boldsymbol{\theta} = (\boldsymbol{\pi}, \boldsymbol{\mu}_{1:K}, \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{1:K})$ , are all shown as unshaded nodes.

### 3.9 Exercises

#### Exercise 3.1 [Gaussian vs *jointly* Gaussian]

Let  $X \sim \mathcal{N}(0, 1)$  and  $Y = WX$ , where  $p(W = -1) = p(W = 1) = 0.5$ . It is clear that  $X$  and  $Y$  are not independent, since  $Y$  is a function of  $X$ .

- a. Show  $Y \sim \mathcal{N}(0, 1)$ .
- b. Show  $\text{Cov}[X, Y] = 0$ . Thus  $X$  and  $Y$  are uncorrelated but dependent, even though they are Gaussian.  
Hint: use the definition of covariance

$$\text{Cov}[X, Y] = \mathbb{E}[XY] - \mathbb{E}[X]\mathbb{E}[Y] \quad (3.141)$$

and the **rule of iterated expectation**

$$\mathbb{E}[XY] = \mathbb{E}[\mathbb{E}[XY|W]] \quad (3.142)$$

**Exercise 3.2** [Normalization constant for a 1D Gaussian]

The normalization constant for a zero-mean Gaussian is given by

$$Z = \int_a^b \exp\left(-\frac{x^2}{2\sigma^2}\right) dx \quad (3.143)$$

where  $a = -\infty$  and  $b = \infty$ . To compute this, consider its square

$$Z^2 = \int_a^b \int_a^b \exp\left(-\frac{x^2 + y^2}{2\sigma^2}\right) dxdy \quad (3.144)$$

Let us change variables from cartesian  $(x, y)$  to polar  $(r, \theta)$  using  $x = r \cos \theta$  and  $y = r \sin \theta$ . Since  $dxdy = rdrd\theta$ , and  $\cos^2 \theta + \sin^2 \theta = 1$ , we have

$$Z^2 = \int_0^{2\pi} \int_0^\infty r \exp\left(-\frac{r^2}{2\sigma^2}\right) drd\theta \quad (3.145)$$

Evaluate this integral and hence show  $Z = \sqrt{\sigma^2 2\pi}$ . Hint 1: separate the integral into a product of two terms, the first of which (involving  $d\theta$ ) is constant, so is easy. Hint 2: if  $u = e^{-r^2/2\sigma^2}$  then  $du/dr = -\frac{1}{\sigma^2}re^{-r^2/2\sigma^2}$ , so the second integral is also easy (since  $\int u'(r)dr = u(r)$ ).

**Exercise 3.3** [Normalization constant for a multidimensional Gaussian]

Prove that the normalization constant for a  $d$ -dimensional Gaussian is given by

$$(2\pi)^{d/2} |\Sigma|^{\frac{1}{2}} = \int \exp\left(-\frac{1}{2}(\mathbf{x} - \boldsymbol{\mu})^T \boldsymbol{\Sigma}^{-1} (\mathbf{x} - \boldsymbol{\mu})\right) d\mathbf{x} \quad (3.146)$$

Hint: diagonalize  $\Sigma$  and use the fact that  $|\Sigma| = \prod_i \lambda_i$  to write the joint pdf as a product of  $d$  one-dimensional Gaussians in a transformed coordinate system. (You will need the change of variables formula.) Finally, use the normalization constant for univariate Gaussians.

**Exercise 3.4** [Bivariate Gaussian]

Derive an explicit expression for the pdf of a bivariate Gaussian.

**Exercise 3.5** [Conditioning a bivariate Gaussian]

Consider a bivariate Gaussian distribution  $p(x_1, x_2)$ .

- What is  $p(x_2|x_1)$ ? Simplify your answer by expressing it in terms of  $\rho$ ,  $\sigma_2$ ,  $\sigma_1$ ,  $\mu_1, \mu_2$  and  $x_1$ .
- Assume  $\sigma_1 = \sigma_2 = 1$ . What is  $p(x_2|x_1)$  now?

**Exercise 3.6** [Sensor fusion with known variances in 1d]

Suppose we have two sensors with known (and different) variances  $v_1$  and  $v_2$ , but unknown (and the same) mean  $\mu$ . Suppose we observe  $n_1$  observations  $y_i^{(1)} \sim \mathcal{N}(\mu, v_1)$  from the first sensor and  $n_2$  observations  $y_i^{(2)} \sim \mathcal{N}(\mu, v_2)$  from the second sensor. (For example, suppose  $\mu$  is the true temperature outside, and sensor 1 is a precise (low variance) digital thermosensing device, and sensor 2 is an imprecise (high variance) mercury thermometer.) Let  $\mathcal{D}$  represent all the data from both sensors. What is the posterior  $p(\mu|\mathcal{D})$ , assuming a non-informative prior for  $\mu$  (which we can simulate using a Gaussian with a precision of 0)? Give an explicit expression for the posterior mean and variance.

**Exercise 3.7** [Show that the Student distribution can be written as a Gaussian scale mixture]

Show that a Student distribution is a GSM where we use a Gamma mixing distribution on the precision  $\alpha$  (or equivalently, an inverse Gamma on the variance).

**Exercise 3.8** [Derivation of the conditionals of an MVN]

Consider a joint Gaussian of the form  $p(\mathbf{x}_1, \mathbf{x}_2) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{x}|\boldsymbol{\mu}, \boldsymbol{\Sigma})$ , where

$$\boldsymbol{\mu} = \begin{pmatrix} \boldsymbol{\mu}_1 \\ \boldsymbol{\mu}_2 \end{pmatrix}, \quad \boldsymbol{\Sigma} = \begin{pmatrix} \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{11} & \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{12} \\ \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{21} & \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{22} \end{pmatrix} \quad (3.147)$$

By using Schur complements, show that

$$p(\mathbf{x}_1|\mathbf{x}_2) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{x}_1|\boldsymbol{\mu}_1 + \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{12}\boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{22}^{-1}(\mathbf{x}_2 - \boldsymbol{\mu}_2), \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{11} - \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{12}\boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{22}^{-1}\boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{21}) \quad (3.148)$$

**Exercise 3.9** [Information form formulae for marginalizing and conditioning an MVN]

Derive the equations for the marginal and conditional of an MVN in information form, i.e., show that

$$p(\mathbf{x}_2) = \mathcal{N}_c(\mathbf{x}_2|\boldsymbol{\xi}_2 - \boldsymbol{\Lambda}_{21}\boldsymbol{\Lambda}_{11}^{-1}\boldsymbol{\xi}_1, \boldsymbol{\Lambda}_{22} - \boldsymbol{\Lambda}_{21}\boldsymbol{\Lambda}_{11}^{-1}\boldsymbol{\Lambda}_{12}) \quad (3.149)$$

$$p(\mathbf{x}_1|\mathbf{x}_2) = \mathcal{N}_c(\mathbf{x}_1|\boldsymbol{\xi}_1 - \boldsymbol{\Lambda}_{12}\mathbf{x}_2, \boldsymbol{\Lambda}_{11}) \quad (3.150)$$

# 4 Parameter estimation

## 4.1 Introduction

In Chapter 3, we assumed all the parameters  $\theta$  of each building block in our model were known. In this chapter, we discuss how to learn these parameters from data,  $\mathcal{D} = \{(\mathbf{x}_n, \mathbf{y}_n) : n = 1 : N\}$ . We focus on techniques for computing a **point estimate**,  $\hat{\theta}(\mathcal{D})$ , and ignore any notion of uncertainty in our estimate. If it is important to model the uncertainty in the parameters, we can use the techniques in Chapter 7 to compute the posterior  $p(\theta|\mathcal{D})$ . (Alternatively, we can use techniques from frequentist statistics, which we discuss in Appendix D.3.)

The process of estimating  $\theta$  from  $\mathcal{D}$  is called **model fitting**, or **training**, and is at the heart of machine learning. There are many methods for producing such estimates, but most boil down to an optimization problem of the form

$$\hat{\theta} = \underset{\theta}{\operatorname{argmin}} \mathcal{L}(\theta) \tag{4.1}$$

where  $\mathcal{L}(\theta)$  is some kind of loss function or objective function. We discuss several different loss functions in this chapter. In some cases, we also discuss how to solve the optimization problem in closed form. In general, however, we will need to use some kind of generic optimization algorithm, which we discuss in Chapter 5.

## 4.2 Maximum likelihood estimation (MLE)

The most common approach to parameter estimation is to pick the parameters that assign the highest probability to the training data; this is called **maximum likelihood estimation** or **MLE**. We give more details below, and then give a series of worked examples.

### 4.2.1 Definition

We define the MLE as follows:

$$\hat{\theta}_{\text{mle}} \triangleq \underset{\theta}{\operatorname{argmax}} p(\mathcal{D}|\theta) \tag{4.2}$$

We usually assume the training examples are independently sampled from the same distribution, so the (conditional) likelihood becomes

$$p(\mathcal{D}|\boldsymbol{\theta}) = \prod_{n=1}^N p(\mathbf{y}_n|\mathbf{x}_n, \boldsymbol{\theta}) \quad (4.3)$$

This is known as the **iid** assumption, which stands for “independent and identically distributed”. We usually work with the **log likelihood**, which is given by

$$L(\boldsymbol{\theta}) \triangleq \log p(\mathcal{D}|\boldsymbol{\theta}) = \sum_{n=1}^N \log p(\mathbf{y}_n|\mathbf{x}_n, \boldsymbol{\theta}) \quad (4.4)$$

This decomposes into a sum of terms, one per example. Thus the MLE is given by

$$\hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}}_{\text{mle}} = \underset{\boldsymbol{\theta}}{\operatorname{argmax}} \sum_{n=1}^N \log p(\mathbf{y}_n|\mathbf{x}_n, \boldsymbol{\theta}) \quad (4.5)$$

Since most optimization algorithms (such as those discussed in Chapter 5) are designed to *minimize* cost functions, we can redefine the **objective function** to be the (conditional) **negative log likelihood** or **NLL**:

$$\text{NLL}(\boldsymbol{\theta}) \triangleq -\log p(\mathcal{D}|\boldsymbol{\theta}) = -\sum_{n=1}^N \log p(\mathbf{y}_n|\mathbf{x}_n, \boldsymbol{\theta}) \quad (4.6)$$

Minimizing this will give the MLE. If the model is unconditional (unsupervised), the MLE becomes

$$\hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}}_{\text{mle}} = \underset{\boldsymbol{\theta}}{\operatorname{argmin}} -\sum_{n=1}^N \log p(\mathbf{y}_n|\boldsymbol{\theta}) \quad (4.7)$$

Alternatively we may want to maximize the *joint* likelihood of inputs and outputs. The MLE in this case becomes

$$\hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}}_{\text{mle}} = \underset{\boldsymbol{\theta}}{\operatorname{argmin}} -\sum_{n=1}^N \log p(\mathbf{y}_n, \mathbf{x}_n|\boldsymbol{\theta}) \quad (4.8)$$

#### 4.2.2 Justification for MLE

There are several ways to justify the method of MLE. One way is to view it as simple point approximation to the Bayesian posterior  $p(\boldsymbol{\theta}|\mathcal{D})$  using a uniform prior, as explained in Sec. 2.3.1.5.

Another way is to view it as the estimate which minimizes the KL divergence to the **empirical distribution**, defined (in the unconditional case) by

$$p_D(\mathbf{y}) \triangleq \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^N \delta(\mathbf{y} - \mathbf{y}_n) \quad (4.9)$$

The empirical distribution is a series of delta functions or “spikes” at the observed training points (see Sec. 2.4.2 for a discussion of delta functions). If we define  $q(\mathbf{y}) = p(\mathbf{y}|\boldsymbol{\theta})$ , then the KL divergence becomes

$$\mathbb{KL}(p_D\|q) = \sum_{\mathbf{y}} p_D(\mathbf{y}) \log p_D(\mathbf{y}) - p_D(\mathbf{y}) \log q(\mathbf{y}) = -\mathbb{H}(p_D) - \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^N \log p(\mathbf{y}_n|\boldsymbol{\theta}) \quad (4.10)$$

The first term is a constant which we can ignore. This leaves us with an expression that is equivalent to the (unconditional) NLL:

$$\mathcal{L}(q) = \mathbb{H}(p_D, q(\cdot)) = \mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta}) = \mathbb{H}(p_D, p(\cdot|\boldsymbol{\theta})) \quad (4.11)$$

We can generalize the above results to the supervised setting by using the following empirical distribution:

$$p_D(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y}) = p_D(\mathbf{y}|\mathbf{x})p_D(\mathbf{x}) = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^N \delta(\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}_n)\delta(\mathbf{y} - \mathbf{y}_n) \quad (4.12)$$

The expected KL then becomes

$$\mathbb{E}_{p_D(\mathbf{x})} [\mathbb{KL}(p_D(Y|\mathbf{x})\|q(Y|\mathbf{x}))] = \mathbb{E}_{p_D(\mathbf{x})} [-\mathbb{H}(p_D(Y|\mathbf{x}))] - \mathbb{E}_{p_D(\mathbf{x})} \left[ \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^N \log p(\mathbf{y}_n|\mathbf{x}, \boldsymbol{\theta}) \right] \quad (4.13)$$

$$= \text{const} - \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^N \log p(\mathbf{y}_n|\mathbf{x}_n, \boldsymbol{\theta}) \quad (4.14)$$

which matches Eq. (4.6) (up to scaling factors).

### 4.2.3 Example: MLE for the Bernoulli distribution

Suppose  $Y$  is a random variable representing a coin toss, where the event  $Y = 1$  corresponds to heads and  $Y = 0$  corresponds to tails. Let  $\theta = p(Y = 1)$  be the probability of heads. The probability distribution for this rv is the Bernoulli, which we introduced in Sec. 3.1.

The NLL for the Bernoulli distribution is given by

$$\text{NLL}(\theta) = -\log \prod_{n=1}^N p(y_n|\theta) \quad (4.15)$$

$$= -\log \prod_{n=1}^N \theta^{\mathbb{I}(y_n=1)}(1-\theta)^{\mathbb{I}(y_n=0)} \quad (4.16)$$

$$= -\sum_{n=1}^N \mathbb{I}(y_n = 1) \log \theta + \mathbb{I}(y_n = 0) \log(1-\theta) \quad (4.17)$$

$$= -[N_1 \log \theta + N_0 \log(1-\theta)] \quad (4.18)$$

where we have defined  $N_1 = \sum_{n=1}^N \mathbb{I}(y_n = 1)$  and  $N_0 = \sum_{n=1}^N \mathbb{I}(y_n = 0)$ , representing the number of heads and tails. (The NLL for the binomial is the same as for the Bernoulli, modulo an irrelevant  $\binom{N}{c}$  term, which is a constant independent of  $\theta$ .) These two numbers are called the **sufficient statistics** of the data, since they summarize everything we need to know about  $\mathcal{D}$ . The total count,  $N = N_0 + N_1$ , is called the **sample size**.

The MLE can be found by solving  $\frac{d}{d\theta} \text{NLL}(\theta) = 0$ . The derivative of the NLL is

$$\frac{d}{d\theta} \text{NLL}(\theta) = \frac{-N_1}{\theta} + \frac{N_0}{1-\theta} \quad (4.19)$$

and hence the MLE is given by

$$\hat{\theta}_{\text{mle}} = \frac{N_1}{N_0 + N_1} \quad (4.20)$$

We see that this is just the empirical fraction of heads, which is an intuitive result.

#### 4.2.4 Example: MLE for the categorical distribution

Suppose we roll a  $K$ -sided dice  $N$  times. Let  $Y_n \in \{1, \dots, K\}$  be the  $n$ 'th outcome, where  $Y_n \sim \text{Cat}(\boldsymbol{\theta})$ . We want to estimate the probabilities  $\boldsymbol{\theta}$  from the dataset  $\mathcal{D} = \{y_n : n = 1 : N\}$ . The NLL is given by

$$\text{NLL}(\boldsymbol{\theta}) = - \sum_k N_k \log \theta_k \quad (4.21)$$

where  $N_k$  is the number of times the event  $Y = k$  is observed. (The NLL for the multinomial is the same, up to irrelevant scale factors.)

To compute the MLE, we have to minimize the NLL subject to the constraint that  $\sum_{k=1}^K \theta_k = 1$ . To do this, we will use the method of Lagrange multipliers (see Sec. 5.5.1).<sup>1</sup>

The Lagrangian is as follows:

$$\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta}, \lambda) \triangleq - \sum_k N_k \log \theta_k - \lambda \left( 1 - \sum_k \theta_k \right) \quad (4.22)$$

Taking derivatives with respect to  $\lambda$  yields the original constraint:

$$\frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial \lambda} = 1 - \sum_k \theta_k = 0 \quad (4.23)$$

Taking derivatives with respect to  $\theta_k$  yields

$$\frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial \theta_k} = -\frac{N_k}{\theta_k} + \lambda = 0 \implies N_k = \lambda \theta_k \quad (4.24)$$

---

<sup>1</sup> We do not need to explicitly enforce the constraint that  $\theta_k \geq 0$  since the gradient of the Lagrangian has the form  $-N_k/\theta_k - \lambda$ ; so negative values of  $\theta_k$  would increase the objective, rather than minimize it. (Of course, this does not preclude setting  $\theta_k = 0$ , and indeed this is the optimal solution if  $N_k = 0$ .)

We can solve for  $\lambda$  using the sum-to-one constraint:

$$\sum_k N_k = N = \lambda \sum_k \theta_k = \lambda \quad (4.25)$$

Thus the MLE is given by

$$\hat{\theta}_k = \frac{N_k}{\lambda} = \frac{N_k}{N} \quad (4.26)$$

which is just the empirical fraction of times event  $k$  occurs.

#### 4.2.5 Example: MLE for the univariate Gaussian

Suppose  $Y \sim \mathcal{N}(\mu, \sigma^2)$  and let  $\mathcal{D} = \{y_n : n = 1 : N\}$  be an iid sample of size  $N$ . We can estimate the parameters  $\boldsymbol{\theta} = (\mu, \sigma^2)$  using MLE as follows. First, we derive the NLL, which is given by

$$\text{NLL}(\mu, \sigma^2) = - \sum_{n=1}^N \log \left[ \left( \frac{1}{2\pi\sigma^2} \right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \exp \left( -\frac{1}{2\sigma^2} (y_n - \mu)^2 \right) \right] \quad (4.27)$$

$$= \frac{1}{2\sigma^2} \sum_{n=1}^N (y_n - \mu)^2 + \frac{N}{2} \log(2\pi\sigma^2) \quad (4.28)$$

The minimum of this function must satisfy the following conditions, which we explain in Sec. 5.1.1.1:

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial \mu} \text{NLL}(\mu, \sigma^2) = 0, \quad \frac{\partial}{\partial \sigma^2} \text{NLL}(\mu, \sigma^2) = 0 \quad (4.29)$$

So all we have to do is to find this stationary point. Some simple calculus (Exercise 4.1) shows that the solution is given by the following:

$$\hat{\mu}_{\text{mle}} = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^N y_n = \bar{y} \quad (4.30)$$

$$\hat{\sigma}_{\text{mle}}^2 = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^N (y_n - \hat{\mu}_{\text{mle}})^2 = \frac{1}{N} \left[ \sum_{n=1}^N y_n^2 + \hat{\mu}_{\text{mle}}^2 - 2y_n \hat{\mu}_{\text{mle}} \right] = s^2 - \bar{y}^2 \quad (4.31)$$

$$s^2 \triangleq \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^N y_n^2 \quad (4.32)$$

The quantities  $\bar{y}$  and  $s^2$  are called the **sufficient statistics** of the data, since they are sufficient to compute the MLE, without loss of information relative to using the raw data itself.

Note that you might be used to seeing the estimate for the variance written as

$$\hat{\sigma}_{\text{unb}}^2 = \frac{1}{N-1} \sum_{n=1}^N (y_n - \hat{\mu}_{\text{mle}})^2 \quad (4.33)$$

where we divide by  $N - 1$ . This is not the MLE, but is a different kind of estimate, which happens to be unbiased (unlike the MLE); see Sec. D.4.1 for details.

#### 4.2.6 Example: MLE for the multivariate Gaussian

In this section, we derive the maximum likelihood estimate for the parameters of a multivariate Gaussian.

First, let us write the log-likelihood, dropping irrelevant constants:

$$L(\boldsymbol{\mu}, \boldsymbol{\Sigma}) = \log p(\mathcal{D}|\boldsymbol{\mu}, \boldsymbol{\Sigma}) = \frac{N}{2} \log |\boldsymbol{\Lambda}| - \frac{1}{2} \sum_{n=1}^N (\mathbf{y}_n - \boldsymbol{\mu})^\top \boldsymbol{\Lambda} (\mathbf{y}_n - \boldsymbol{\mu}) \quad (4.34)$$

where  $\boldsymbol{\Lambda} = \boldsymbol{\Sigma}^{-1}$  is the **precision matrix** (inverse covariance matrix).

##### 4.2.6.1 MLE for the mean

Using the substitution  $\mathbf{z}_n = \mathbf{y}_n - \boldsymbol{\mu}$ , the derivative of a quadratic form (Eq. (A.40)) and the chain rule of calculus, we have

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial \boldsymbol{\mu}} (\mathbf{y}_n - \boldsymbol{\mu})^\top \boldsymbol{\Sigma}^{-1} (\mathbf{y}_n - \boldsymbol{\mu}) = \frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{z}_n} \mathbf{z}_n^\top \boldsymbol{\Sigma}^{-1} \mathbf{z}_n \frac{\partial \mathbf{z}_n}{\partial \boldsymbol{\mu}^\top} \quad (4.35)$$

$$= -1(\boldsymbol{\Sigma}^{-1} + \boldsymbol{\Sigma}^{-T}) \mathbf{z}_n \quad (4.36)$$

since  $\frac{\partial \mathbf{z}_n}{\partial \boldsymbol{\mu}^\top} = -\mathbf{I}$ . Hence

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial \boldsymbol{\mu}} L(\boldsymbol{\mu}, \boldsymbol{\Sigma}) = -\frac{1}{2} \sum_{n=1}^N -2\boldsymbol{\Sigma}^{-1} (\mathbf{y}_n - \boldsymbol{\mu}) = \boldsymbol{\Sigma}^{-1} \sum_{n=1}^N (\mathbf{y}_n - \boldsymbol{\mu}) = 0 \quad (4.37)$$

$$\hat{\boldsymbol{\mu}} = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^N \mathbf{y}_n = \bar{\mathbf{y}} \quad (4.38)$$

So the MLE of  $\boldsymbol{\mu}$  is just the empirical mean.

##### 4.2.6.2 MLE for the covariance matrix

We can use the trace trick (Eq. (B.36)) to rewrite the log-likelihood in terms of the precision matrix  $\boldsymbol{\Lambda} = \boldsymbol{\Sigma}^{-1}$  as follows:

$$L(\hat{\boldsymbol{\mu}}, \boldsymbol{\Lambda}) = \frac{N}{2} \log |\boldsymbol{\Lambda}| - \frac{1}{2} \sum_n \text{tr}[(\mathbf{y}_n - \hat{\boldsymbol{\mu}})(\mathbf{y}_n - \hat{\boldsymbol{\mu}})^\top \boldsymbol{\Lambda}] \quad (4.39)$$

$$= \frac{N}{2} \log |\boldsymbol{\Lambda}| - \frac{1}{2} \text{tr}[\mathbf{S}_{\bar{\mathbf{y}}} \boldsymbol{\Lambda}] \quad (4.40)$$

$$\mathbf{S}_{\bar{\mathbf{y}}} \triangleq \sum_{n=1}^N (\mathbf{y}_n - \bar{\mathbf{y}})(\mathbf{y}_n - \bar{\mathbf{y}})^\top = \left( \sum_n \mathbf{y}_n \mathbf{y}_n^\top \right) - N \bar{\mathbf{y}} \bar{\mathbf{y}}^\top \quad (4.41)$$

where  $\mathbf{S}_{\bar{\mathbf{y}}}$  is the **scatter matrix** centered on  $\bar{\mathbf{y}}$ .

We can rewrite the scatter matrix in a more compact form as follows:

$$\mathbf{S}_{\bar{\mathbf{y}}} = \tilde{\mathbf{Y}}^\top \tilde{\mathbf{Y}} = \mathbf{Y}^\top \mathbf{C}_N^\top \mathbf{C}_N \mathbf{Y} = \mathbf{Y}^\top \mathbf{C}_N \mathbf{Y} \quad (4.42)$$

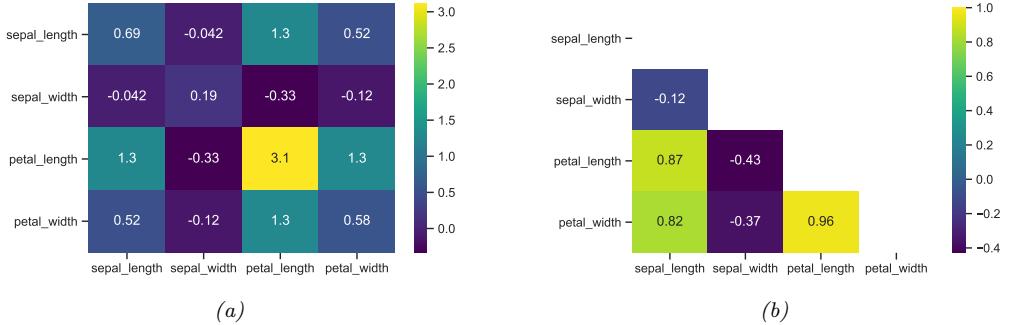


Figure 4.1: (a) Covariance matrix for the features in the iris dataset from Sec. 1.2.1.1. (b) Correlation matrix. We only show the lower triangle, since the matrix is symmetric and has a unit diagonal. Compare this to Fig. 1.3. Generated by `iris_cov_mat.py`.

where

$$\mathbf{C}_N \triangleq \mathbf{I}_N - \frac{1}{N} \mathbf{1}_N \mathbf{1}_N^\top \quad (4.43)$$

is the **centering matrix**, which converts  $\mathbf{Y}$  to  $\tilde{\mathbf{Y}}$  by subtracting the mean  $\bar{\mathbf{y}} = \frac{1}{N} \mathbf{Y}^\top \mathbf{1}_N$  off every row.

Using results from Appendix A.3, we can compute derivatives of the loss with respect to  $\Lambda$  to get

$$\frac{\partial L(\hat{\mu}, \Lambda)}{\partial \Lambda} = \frac{N}{2} \Lambda^{-T} - \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{S}_{\bar{\mathbf{y}}}^\top = \mathbf{0} \quad (4.44)$$

$$\Lambda^{-T} = \Lambda^{-1} = \Sigma = \frac{1}{N} \mathbf{S}_{\bar{\mathbf{y}}} \quad (4.45)$$

$$\hat{\Sigma} = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^N (\mathbf{y}_n - \bar{\mathbf{y}})(\mathbf{y}_n - \bar{\mathbf{y}})^\top = \frac{1}{N} \mathbf{Y}^\top \mathbf{C}_N \mathbf{Y} \quad (4.46)$$

Thus the MLE for the covariance matrix is the empirical covariance matrix. See Fig. 4.1a for an example.

Sometimes it is more convenient to work with the correlation matrix defined in Eq. (C.50). This can be computed using

$$\text{corr}(\mathbf{Y}) = (\text{diag}(\Sigma))^{-\frac{1}{2}} \Sigma (\text{diag}(\Sigma))^{-\frac{1}{2}} \quad (4.47)$$

where  $\text{diag}(\Sigma)^{-\frac{1}{2}}$  is a diagonal matrix containing the entries  $1/\sigma_i$ . See Fig. 4.1b for an example.

Note, however, that the MLE may overfit or be numerically unstable, especially when the number of samples  $N$  is small compared to the number of dimensions  $D$ . The main problem is that  $\Sigma$  has  $O(D^2)$  parameters, so we may need a lot of data to reliably estimate it. In particular, as we see from Eq. (4.46), the MLE for a full covariance matrix is singular if  $N < D$ . And even when  $N > D$ , the MLE can be ill-conditioned, meaning it is close to singular. We discuss solutions to this problem in Sec. 4.4.2.

#### 4.2.7 Example: MLE for linear regression

We briefly mentioned linear regression in Sec. 3.3.3. Recall that it corresponds to the following model:

$$p(y|\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \mathcal{N}(y|\mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x}, \sigma^2) \quad (4.48)$$

where  $\boldsymbol{\theta} = (\mathbf{w}, \sigma^2)$ . Let us assume for now that  $\sigma^2$  is fixed, and focus on estimating the weights  $\mathbf{w}$ .

The negative log likelihood or NLL is given by

$$\text{NLL}(\mathbf{w}) = -\sum_{n=1}^N \log \left[ \left( \frac{1}{2\pi\sigma^2} \right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \exp \left( -\frac{1}{2\sigma^2} (y_n - \mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x}_n)^2 \right) \right] \quad (4.49)$$

Dropping the irrelevant additive constants gives the following simplified objective, known as the **residual sum of squares** or **RSS**:

$$\text{RSS}(\mathbf{w}) \triangleq \sum_{n=1}^N (y_n - \mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x}_n)^2 = \sum_{n=1}^N r_n^2 \quad (4.50)$$

where  $r_n$  the  $n$ 'th **residual error**. Scaling by the number of examples  $N$  gives the **mean squared error** or **MSE**:

$$\text{MSE}(\mathbf{w}) = \frac{1}{N} \text{RSS}(\mathbf{w}) = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^N (y_n - \mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x}_n)^2 \quad (4.51)$$

Finally, taking the square root gives the **root mean squared error** or **RMSE**:

$$\text{RMSE}(\mathbf{w}) = \sqrt{\text{MSE}(\mathbf{w})} = \sqrt{\frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^N (y_n - \mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x}_n)^2} \quad (4.52)$$

We can compute the MLE by minimizing the NLL, RSS, MSE or RMSE. All will give the same results, since these objective functions are all the same, up to irrelevant constants

Let us focus on the RSS objective. It can be written in matrix notation as follows:

$$\text{RSS}(\mathbf{w}) = \sum_{n=1}^N (y_n - \mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x}_n)^2 = \|\mathbf{X}\mathbf{w} - \mathbf{y}\|_2^2 = (\mathbf{X}\mathbf{w} - \mathbf{y})^\top (\mathbf{X}\mathbf{w} - \mathbf{y}) \quad (4.53)$$

In Sec. 11.2.2.1, we prove that the optimum, which occurs where  $\nabla_{\mathbf{w}} \text{RSS}(\mathbf{w}) = \mathbf{0}$ , satisfies the following equation:

$$\hat{\mathbf{w}}_{\text{mle}} \triangleq \underset{\mathbf{w}}{\operatorname{argmin}} \text{RSS}(\mathbf{w}) = (\mathbf{X}^\top \mathbf{X})^{-1} \mathbf{X}^\top \mathbf{y} \quad (4.54)$$

This is called the **ordinary least squares** or **OLS** estimate, and is equivalent to the MLE.

### 4.3 Empirical risk minimization (ERM)

We can generalize MLE by replacing the (conditional) log loss term in Eq. (4.6),  $\ell(\mathbf{y}_n, \boldsymbol{\theta}; \mathbf{x}_n) = -\log p(\mathbf{y}_n | \mathbf{x}_n, \boldsymbol{\theta})$ , with any other loss function, to get

$$\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta}) = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^N \ell(\mathbf{y}_n, \boldsymbol{\theta}; \mathbf{x}_n) \quad (4.55)$$

This is known as **empirical risk minimization** or **ERM**, since it is the expected loss where the expectation is taken wrt the empirical distribution. See Appendix D.6 for more details.

#### 4.3.1 Example: minimizing the misclassification rate

If we are solving a classification problem, we might want to use 0-1 loss:

$$\ell_{01}(\mathbf{y}_n, \boldsymbol{\theta}; \mathbf{x}_n) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } \mathbf{y}_n = f(\mathbf{x}_n; \boldsymbol{\theta}) \\ 1 & \text{if } \mathbf{y}_n \neq f(\mathbf{x}_n; \boldsymbol{\theta}) \end{cases} \quad (4.56)$$

where  $f(\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta})$  is some kind of predictor. The empirical risk becomes

$$\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta}) = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^N \ell_{01}(\mathbf{y}_n, \boldsymbol{\theta}; \mathbf{x}_n) \quad (4.57)$$

This is just the empirical **misclassification rate** on the training set.

Note that for binary problems, we can rewrite the misclassification rate in the following notation. Let  $\tilde{y} \in \{-1, +1\}$  be the true label, and  $\hat{y} \in \{-1, +1\} = f(\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta})$  be our prediction. We define the 0-1 loss as follows:

$$\ell_{01}(\tilde{y}, \hat{y}) = \mathbb{I}(\tilde{y} \neq \hat{y}) = \mathbb{I}(\tilde{y} \hat{y} < 0) \quad (4.58)$$

The corresponding empirical risk becomes

$$\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta}) = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^N \ell_{01}(y_n, \hat{y}_n) = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^N \mathbb{I}(\tilde{y}_n \hat{y}_n < 0) \quad (4.59)$$

where the dependence on  $\mathbf{x}_n$  and  $\boldsymbol{\theta}$  is implicit.

#### 4.3.2 Surrogate loss

Unfortunately, the 0-1 loss used in Sec. 4.3.1 is a non-smooth step function, as shown in Fig. 4.2, making it difficult to optimize. (In fact, it is NP-hard [BDEL03].) In this section we consider the use of a **surrogate loss function** [BJM06]. The surrogate is usually chosen to be a maximally tight convex upper bound, which is then easy to minimize.

For example, consider a probabilistic binary classifier, which produces the following distribution over labels:

$$p(\tilde{y} | \mathbf{x}, \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \sigma(\tilde{y}\eta) = \frac{1}{1 + e^{-\tilde{y}\eta}} \quad (4.60)$$

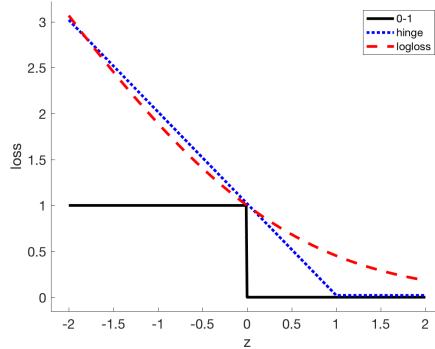


Figure 4.2: Illustration of various loss functions for binary classification. The horizontal axis is the margin  $z = \tilde{y}\eta$ , the vertical axis is the loss. The log loss uses log base 2. Generated by [hinge\\_loss\\_plot.py](#).

where  $\eta = f(\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta})$  is the log odds. Hence the log loss is given by

$$\ell_{\text{ll}}(\tilde{y}, \eta) = -\log p(\tilde{y}|\eta) = \log(1 + e^{-\tilde{y}\eta}) \quad (4.61)$$

Fig. 4.2 shows that this is a smooth upper bound to the 0-1 loss, where we plot the loss vs the quantity  $\tilde{y}\eta$ , known as the **margin**, since it defines a “margin of safety” away from the threshold value of 0. Thus we see that minimizing the negative log likelihood is equivalent to minimizing a (fairly tight) upper bound on the empirical 0-1 loss.

Another convex upper bound to 0-1 loss is the **hinge loss**, which is defined as follows:

$$\ell_{\text{hinge}}(\tilde{y}, \eta) = \max(0, 1 - \tilde{y}\eta) \triangleq (1 - \tilde{y}\eta)_+ \quad (4.62)$$

This is plotted in Fig. 4.2; we see that it has the shape of a partially open door hinge. This is convex upper bound to the 0-1 loss, although it is only piecewise differentiable, not everywhere differentiable.

## 4.4 Regularization

A fundamental problem with MLE, and ERM, is that it will try to pick parameters that minimize loss on the training set, but this may not result in a model that has low loss on future data. This is called **overfitting**.

As a simple example, suppose we want to predict the probability of heads when tossing a coin. We toss it  $N = 3$  times and observe 3 heads. The MLE is  $\theta_{\text{mle}} = N_1/(N_0 + N + 1) = 3/(3 + 0) = 1$  (see Sec. 4.2.3). However, if we use  $\text{Ber}(y|\theta_{\text{mle}})$  as our model, we will predict that all future coin tosses will also be heads, which seems rather unlikely.

The core of the problem is that the model has enough parameters to perfectly fit the observed training data, so it can perfectly match the empirical distribution. However, in most cases the empirical distribution is not the same as the true distribution, so putting all the probability mass on the observed set of  $N$  examples will not leave over any probability for novel data in the future. That is, the model may not **generalize**.

The main solution to overfitting is to use **regularization**, which means to add a penalty term to the NLL (or empirical risk). Thus we optimize an objective of the form

$$\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta}; \lambda) = \left[ \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^N \ell(\mathbf{y}_n, \boldsymbol{\theta}; \mathbf{x}_n) \right] + \lambda C(\boldsymbol{\theta}) \quad (4.63)$$

where  $\lambda \geq 0$  is the **regularization parameter**, and  $C(\boldsymbol{\theta})$  is some form of **complexity penalty**. A common way to define the complexity penalty is to use  $\lambda C(\boldsymbol{\theta}) = \log p(\boldsymbol{\theta})$ , where  $p(\boldsymbol{\theta})$  is the **prior** for  $\boldsymbol{\theta}$ . If  $\ell$  is the log loss, the regularized objective becomes

$$\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta}; \lambda) = \left[ \frac{1}{N} \log p(\mathbf{y}_n | \mathbf{x}_n, \boldsymbol{\theta}) \right] + \log p(\boldsymbol{\theta}) \quad (4.64)$$

Thus the approach becomes identical to MAP estimation. We give some examples below.

#### 4.4.1 Example: MAP estimation for the Bernoulli distribution

Consider again the coin tossing example. If we observe just one head, the MLE is  $\theta_{mle} = 1$ . To avoid this, we can add a penalty to  $\theta$  to discourage “extreme” values, such as  $\theta = 0$  or  $\theta = 1$ . We can do this by using a beta distribution as our prior,  $p(\theta) = \text{Beta}(\theta|a, b)$ , where  $a, b > 1$  encourages values of  $\theta$  near to  $a/(a+b)$  (see Sec. 3.4.4 for details). The log likelihood plus log prior becomes

$$L(\theta) = \log p(\mathcal{D}|\theta) + \log p(\theta) \quad (4.65)$$

$$= [N_1 \log \theta + N_0 \log(1 - \theta)] + [(a - 1) \log(\theta) + (b - 1) \log(1 - \theta)] \quad (4.66)$$

Using the method from Sec. 4.2.3 we find that the MAP estimate is

$$\theta_{\text{map}} = \frac{N_1 + a - 1}{N_1 + N_0 + a + b - 2} \quad (4.67)$$

If we set  $a = b = 2$  (which weakly favors a value of  $\theta$  near 0.5), the estimate becomes

$$\theta_{\text{map}} = \frac{N_1 + 1}{N_1 + N_0 + 2} \quad (4.68)$$

This is called **add-one smoothing**, and is a simple but widely used technique to avoid the **zero count** problem. (See also Sec. 7.2.1.4.)

The zero-count problem, and overfitting more generally, is analogous to a problem in philosophy called the **black swan paradox**. This is based on the ancient Western conception that all swans were white. In that context, a black swan was a metaphor for something that could not exist. (Black swans were discovered in Australia by European explorers in the 17th Century.) The term “black swan paradox” was first coined by the famous philosopher of science Karl Popper; the term has also been used as the title of a recent popular book [Tal07]. This paradox was used to illustrate the problem of **induction**, which is the problem of how to draw general conclusions about the future from specific observations from the past. The solution to the paradox is to admit that induction is in general impossible, and that the best we can do is to make plausible guesses about what the future might hold, by combining the empirical data with prior knowledge.

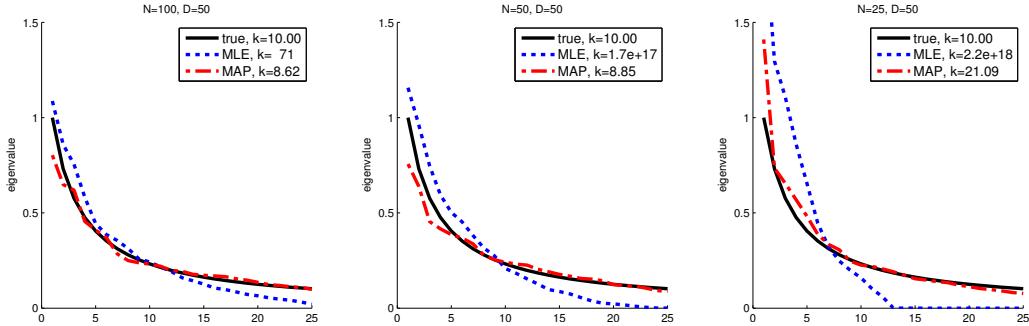


Figure 4.3: Estimating a covariance matrix in  $D = 50$  dimensions using  $N \in \{100, 50, 25\}$  samples. We plot the eigenvalues in descending order for the true covariance matrix (solid black), the MLE (dotted blue) and the MAP estimate (dashed red), using Eq. (4.70) with  $\lambda = 0.9$ . We also list the condition number of each matrix in the legend. We see that the MLE is often poorly conditioned, but the MAP estimate is numerically well behaved. Adapted from Figure 1 of [SS05]. Generated by `shrinkcov_plots.py`.

#### 4.4.2 Example: MAP estimation for the multivariate Gaussian

In Sec. 4.2.6, we showed that the MLE for the mean of an MVN is the empirical mean,  $\hat{\mu}_{\text{mle}} = \bar{\mathbf{y}}$ . We also showed that the MLE for the covariance is the empirical covariance,  $\hat{\Sigma} = \frac{1}{N} \mathbf{S}_{\bar{\mathbf{y}}}$ .

In high dimensions the estimate for  $\Sigma$  can easily become singular. One solution to this is to perform MAP estimation, as we explain below.

##### 4.4.2.1 Shrinkage estimate

A convenient prior to use for  $\Sigma$  is the inverse Wishart prior (see Sec. 7.2.4.2). This is a distribution over positive definite matrices, where the parameters are defined in terms of a prior scatter matrix,  $\check{\mathbf{S}}$ , and a prior sample size or strength  $\check{N}$ . One can show that the resulting MAP estimate is given by

$$\hat{\Sigma}_{\text{map}} = \frac{\check{\mathbf{S}} + \mathbf{S}_{\bar{\mathbf{y}}}}{\check{N} + N} = \frac{\check{N}}{\check{N} + N} \frac{\check{\mathbf{S}}}{\check{N}} + \frac{N}{\check{N} + N} \frac{\mathbf{S}_{\bar{\mathbf{y}}}}{N} = \lambda \Sigma_0 + (1 - \lambda) \hat{\Sigma}_{\text{mle}} \quad (4.69)$$

where  $\lambda = \frac{\check{N}}{\check{N} + N}$  controls the amount of regularization.

A common choice (see e.g., [FR07, p6]) for the prior scatter matrix is to use  $\check{\mathbf{S}} = \check{N} \text{ diag}(\hat{\Sigma}_{\text{mle}})$ . With this choice, we find that the MAP estimate for  $\Sigma$  is given by

$$\hat{\Sigma}_{\text{map}}(i, j) = \begin{cases} \hat{\Sigma}_{\text{mle}}(i, j) & \text{if } i = j \\ (1 - \lambda) \hat{\Sigma}_{\text{mle}}(i, j) & \text{otherwise} \end{cases} \quad (4.70)$$

Thus we see that the diagonal entries are equal to their ML estimates, and the off-diagonal elements are “shrunk” somewhat towards 0. This technique is therefore called **shrinkage estimation**.

The other parameter we need to set is  $\lambda$ , which controls the amount of regularization (shrinkage towards the MLE). It is common to set  $\lambda$  by cross validation (Sec. 4.4.5). Alternatively, we can use the closed-form formula provided in [LW04a; LW04b; SS05], which is the optimal frequentist estimate if we use squared loss. This is implemented in the sklearn function `sklearn.covariance.LedoitWolf.py`.

The benefits of this approach are illustrated in Fig. 4.3. We consider fitting a 50-dimensional Gaussian to  $N = 100$ ,  $N = 50$  and  $N = 25$  data points. We see that the MAP estimate is always well-conditioned, unlike the MLE (see Sec. B.1.4.4 for a discussion of condition numbers). In particular, we see that the eigenvalue spectrum of the MAP estimate is much closer to that of the true matrix than the MLE's spectrum. The eigenvectors, however, are unaffected.

#### 4.4.2.2 Inverting the MAP estimate

We have seen how to compute a numerically stable estimate of the covariance matrix using  $\hat{\Sigma}_{\text{map}}$ . However, we often need to compute the precision matrix  $\hat{\Sigma}_{\text{map}}^{-1}$ . Since  $\hat{\Sigma}_{\text{map}}$  is just a scaled version of  $\hat{\Sigma}_{\text{mle}}$ , when we try to invert  $\hat{\Sigma}_{\text{map}}$ , we will encounter numerical problems whenever  $D > N$ . Fortunately we can use the SVD of  $\mathbf{Y}$  to get around this, as we show below. (See Appendix B.5 for details on SVD.)

Let  $\mathbf{Y} = \mathbf{UDV}^\top$  be the SVD of the design matrix, where  $\mathbf{V}$  is  $D \times N$ ,  $\mathbf{U}$  is an  $N \times N$  orthogonal matrix, and  $\mathbf{D}$  is a diagonal matrix of size  $N \times N$ . Furthermore, define the  $N \times N$  matrix  $\mathbf{Z} = \mathbf{UD}$ ; this is like a design matrix in a lower dimensional space (since we assume  $N < D$ ). Also, define  $\boldsymbol{\mu}_z = \mathbf{V}^\top \hat{\boldsymbol{\mu}}$  as the mean of the data in this reduced space, where  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\mu}} = \bar{\mathbf{y}}$ . With these definitions, we can rewrite the MLE as follows:

$$\hat{\Sigma}_{\text{mle}} = \frac{1}{N} \mathbf{Y}^\top \mathbf{Y} - \bar{\mathbf{y}} \bar{\mathbf{y}}^\top \quad (4.71)$$

$$= \frac{1}{N} (\mathbf{Z} \mathbf{V}^\top)^\top (\mathbf{Z} \mathbf{V}^\top) - (\mathbf{V} \boldsymbol{\mu}_z)(\mathbf{V} \boldsymbol{\mu}_z)^\top \quad (4.72)$$

$$= \frac{1}{N} \mathbf{V} \mathbf{Z}^\top \mathbf{Z} \mathbf{V}^\top - \mathbf{V} \boldsymbol{\mu}_z \boldsymbol{\mu}_z^\top \mathbf{V}^\top \quad (4.73)$$

$$= \mathbf{V} \left( \frac{1}{N} \mathbf{Z}^\top \mathbf{Z} - \boldsymbol{\mu}_z \boldsymbol{\mu}_z^\top \right) \mathbf{V}^\top \quad (4.74)$$

$$= \mathbf{V} \hat{\Sigma}_z \mathbf{V}^\top \quad (4.75)$$

where  $\hat{\Sigma}_z$  is the empirical covariance of  $\mathbf{Z}$ . Hence we can rewrite the MAP estimate as

$$\hat{\Sigma}_{\text{map}} = \mathbf{V} \boldsymbol{\Omega}_z \mathbf{V}^\top \quad (4.76)$$

where

$$\boldsymbol{\Omega}_z \triangleq \lambda \text{diag}(\hat{\Sigma}_z) + (1 - \lambda) \hat{\Sigma}_z \quad (4.77)$$

This is an invertible matrix, unlike  $\hat{\Sigma}_{\text{mle}}$ .

#### 4.4.3 Example: weight decay

In Fig. 1.7, we saw how using polynomial regression with too high of a degree can result in overfitting. One solution is to reduce the degree of the polynomial. However, a more general solution is to penalize the magnitude of the weights (regression coefficients). We can do this by using a zero-mean Gaussian prior,  $p(\mathbf{w})$ . The resulting MAP estimate is given by

$$\hat{\mathbf{w}}_{\text{map}} = \underset{\mathbf{w}}{\operatorname{argmin}} \text{NLL}(\mathbf{w}) + \lambda \|\mathbf{w}\|_2^2 \quad (4.78)$$

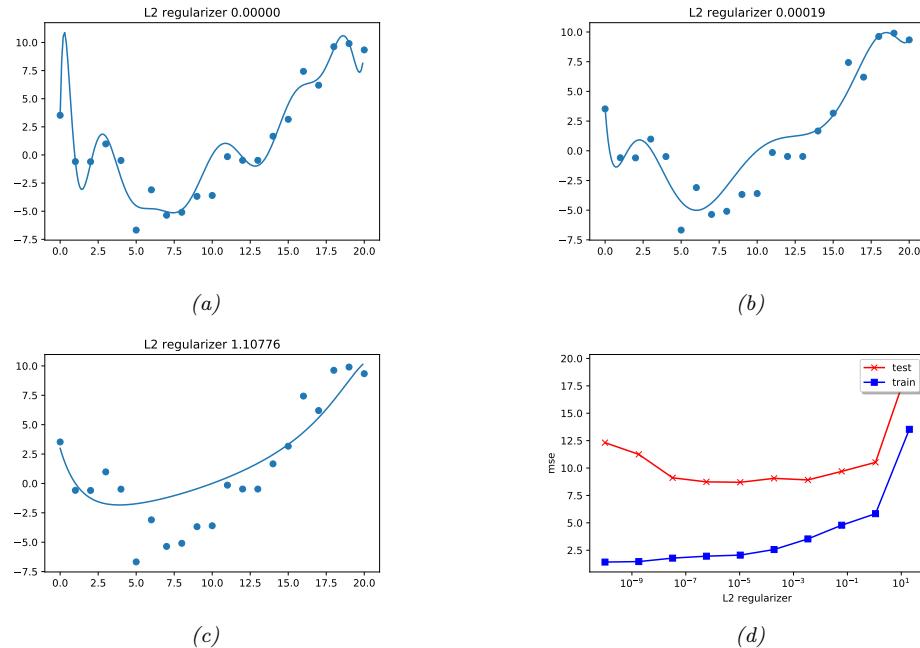


Figure 4.4: (a-c) Ridge regression applied to a degree 14 polynomial fit to 21 datapoints. (d) MSE vs strength of regularizer. The degree of regularization increases from left to right, so model complexity decreases from left to right. Generated by `linreg_poly_ridge.py`.

where  $\|\mathbf{w}\|_2^2 = \sum_{d=1}^D w_d^2$ . (We write  $\mathbf{w}$  rather than  $\boldsymbol{\theta}$ , since it only really make sense to penalize the magnitude of weight vectors, rather than other parameters, such as bias terms or noise variances.)

Eq. (4.78) is called  **$\ell_2$  regularization** or **weight decay**. The larger the value of  $\lambda$ , the more the parameters are penalized for being “large” (deviating from the zero-mean prior), and thus the less flexible the model.

In the case of linear regression, this kind of penalization scheme is called **ridge regression**. For example, consider the polynomial regression example from Sec. 1.2.2.2, where the predictor has the form

$$f(x; \mathbf{w}) = \sum_{d=0}^D w_d x^d = \mathbf{w}^\top [1, x, x^2, \dots, x^D] \quad (4.79)$$

Suppose we use a high degree polynomial, say  $D = 14$ , even though we have a small dataset with just  $N = 21$  examples. MLE for the parameters will enable the model to fit the data very well, by carefully adjusting the weights, but the resulting function is very “wiggly”, thus resulting in overfitting. Fig. 4.4 illustrates how increasing  $\lambda$  can reduce overfitting. For more details on ridge regression, see Sec. 11.3.

#### 4.4.4 Picking the regularizer using a validation set

A key question when using regularization is how to choose the strength of the regularizer  $\lambda$ : a small value means we will focus on minimizing empirical risk, which may result in overfitting, whereas a large value means we will focus on staying close to the prior, which may result in **underfitting**.

In this section, we describe a simple but very widely used method for choosing  $\lambda$ . The basic idea is to partition the data into two disjoint sets, the training set  $\mathcal{D}_{\text{train}}$  and a **validation set**  $\mathcal{D}_{\text{valid}}$  (also called a **development set**). (Often we use about 80% of the data for the training set, and 20% for the validation set.) We fit the model on  $\mathcal{D}_{\text{train}}$  (for each setting of  $\lambda$ ) and then evaluate its performance on  $\mathcal{D}_{\text{valid}}$ . We then pick the value of  $\lambda$  that results in the best validation performance. (This optimization method is a 1d example of grid search, discussed in Sec. 5.8.1.)

To explain the method in more detail, we need some notation. Let us define the regularized empirical risk on a dataset as follows:

$$R_\lambda(\mathcal{D}, \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \frac{1}{|\mathcal{D}|} \sum_{(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y}) \in \mathcal{D}} \ell(\mathbf{y}, f(\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta})) + \lambda C(\boldsymbol{\theta}) \quad (4.80)$$

For each  $\lambda$ , we compute the parameter estimate

$$\hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}}_\lambda(\mathcal{D}_{\text{train}}) = \underset{\boldsymbol{\theta}}{\operatorname{argmin}} R_\lambda(\mathcal{D}_{\text{train}}, \boldsymbol{\theta}) \quad (4.81)$$

We then compute the **validation risk**:

$$R_\lambda^{\text{val}} \triangleq R_0(\mathcal{D}_{\text{valid}}, \hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}}_\lambda(\mathcal{D}_{\text{train}})) \quad (4.82)$$

This is an estimate of the **population risk**, which is the expected loss under the true distribution  $p^*(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y})$ . Finally we pick

$$\lambda^* = \underset{\lambda \in \mathcal{S}}{\operatorname{argmin}} R_\lambda^{\text{val}} \quad (4.83)$$

(This requires fitting the model once for each value of  $\lambda$  in  $\mathcal{S}$ , although in some cases, this can be done more efficiently.)

After picking  $\lambda^*$ , we can refit the model to the entire dataset,  $\mathcal{D} = \mathcal{D}_{\text{train}} \cup \mathcal{D}_{\text{valid}}$ , to get

$$\hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}}^* = \underset{\boldsymbol{\theta}}{\operatorname{argmin}} R_{\lambda^*}(\mathcal{D}, \boldsymbol{\theta}) \quad (4.84)$$

#### 4.4.5 Cross-validation

The above technique in Sec. 4.4.4 can work very well. However, if the size of the training set is small, leaving aside 20% for a validation set can result in an unreliable estimate of the model parameters.

A simple but popular solution to this is to use **cross validation (CV)**. The idea is as follows: we split the training data into  $K$  **folds**; then, for each fold  $k \in \{1, \dots, K\}$ , we train on all the folds but the  $k$ 'th, and test on the  $k$ 'th, in a round-robin fashion, as sketched in Fig. 4.5. Formally, we have

$$R_\lambda^{\text{cv}} \triangleq \frac{1}{K} \sum_{k=1}^K R_0(\mathcal{D}_k, \hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}}_\lambda(\mathcal{D}_{-k})) \quad (4.85)$$

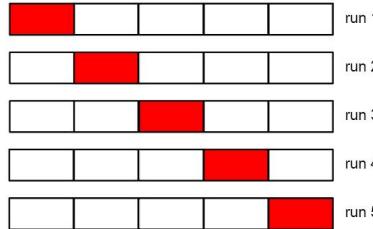


Figure 4.5: Schematic of 5-fold cross validation.

where  $\mathcal{D}_k$  is the data in the  $k$ 'th fold, and  $\mathcal{D}_{-k}$  is all the other data. This is called the **cross-validated risk**. Fig. 4.5 illustrates this procedure for  $K = 5$ . If we set  $K = N$ , we get a method known as **leave-one-out cross-validation**, since we always train on  $N - 1$  items and test on the remaining one.

We can use the CV estimate as an objective inside of an optimization routine to pick the optimal hyperparameter,  $\hat{\lambda} = \operatorname{argmin}_{\lambda} R_{\lambda}^{\text{CV}}$ . Finally we combine all the available data (training and validation), and re-estimate the model parameters using  $\hat{\theta} = \operatorname{argmin}_{\theta} R_{\hat{\lambda}}(\mathcal{D}, \theta)$ . See Sec. D.6.3 for more details.

#### 4.4.5.1 The one standard error rule

CV gives an estimate of  $\hat{R}(\mathcal{D}, \lambda)$ , but does not give any measure of uncertainty. A standard frequentist measure of uncertainty of an estimate is the standard error of the mean (see Sec. 7.2.3.4). We can compute this as follows. First let  $L_n = \ell(\mathbf{y}_n, f(\mathbf{x}_n; \hat{\theta}_{\lambda}(\mathcal{D}_{-n}))$  be the loss on the  $n$ 'th example, where we use the parameters that were estimated using whichever training fold excludes  $n$ . (Note that  $L_n$  depends on  $\lambda$ , but we drop this from the notation.) Next let  $\hat{\mu} = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^N L_n$  be the empirical mean and  $\hat{\sigma}^2 = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^N (L_n - \hat{\mu})^2$  be the empirical variance. Given this, we define our estimate to be  $\hat{\mu}$ , and the standard error of this estimate to be  $\text{se}(\hat{\mu}) = \frac{\hat{\sigma}}{\sqrt{N}}$ . Note that  $\sigma$  measures the intrinsic variability of  $L_n$  across samples, whereas  $\text{se}(\hat{\mu})$  measures our uncertainty about the mean  $\hat{\mu}$ .

Suppose we apply CV to a set of models and compute the mean and se of their estimated risks. A common heuristic for picking a model from these noisy estimates is to pick the value which corresponds to the simplest model whose risk is no more than one standard error above the risk of the best model; this is called the **one-standard error rule** [HTF01, p216].

#### 4.4.5.2 Example: ridge regression

As an example, consider picking the strength of the  $\ell_2$  regularizer for the ridge regression problem in Sec. 4.4.3. In Fig. 4.6a, we plot the error vs  $\log(\lambda)$  on the train set (blue) and test set (red curve). We see that the test error has a U-shaped curve, where it decreases as we increase the regularizer, and then increases as we start to underfit. In Fig. 4.6b, we plot the CV estimate of the test MSE vs  $\log(\lambda)$ . We see that the minimum CV error is close the optimal value for the test set.

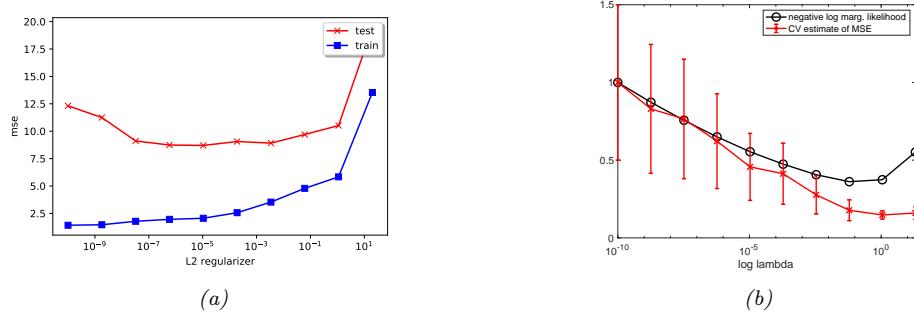


Figure 4.6: Ridge regression is applied to a degree 14 polynomial fit to 21 datapoints shown in Fig. 4.4 for different values of the regularizer  $\lambda$ . The degree of regularization increases from left to right, so model complexity decreases from left to right. (a) MSE on train (blue) and test (red) vs  $\log(\lambda)$ . (b) 5-fold cross-validation estimate of test MSE in red; error bars are standard error of the mean. In black we plot the negative log evidence  $-\log p(\mathcal{D}|\lambda)$ . Both curves are scaled to lie in  $[0, 1]$ . Generated by [polyfitRidgeModelSel.m](#).

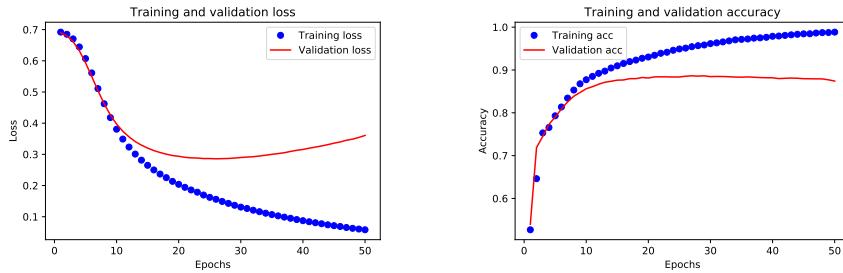


Figure 4.7: Performance of a text classifier (a neural network applied to a bag of word embeddings using average pooling) vs number of training epochs on the IMDB movie sentiment dataset. Blue = train, red = validation. (a) Cross entropy loss. Early stopping is triggered at about epoch 25. (b) Classification accuracy. Generated by [imdb\\_mlp\\_bow\\_tf.py](#).

#### 4.4.6 Early stopping

A very simple form of regularization, which is often very effective in practice (especially for complex models), is known as **early stopping**. This leverages the fact that optimization algorithms are iterative, and so they take many steps to move away from the initial parameter estimates. If we detect signs of overfitting (by monitoring performance on the validation set), we can stop the optimization process, to prevent the model memorizing too much information about the training set. See Fig. 4.7 for an illustration.

#### 4.4.7 Using more data

As the amount of data increases, the chance of overfitting (for a model of fixed complexity) decreases (assuming the data contains suitably informative examples, and is not too redundant). This is

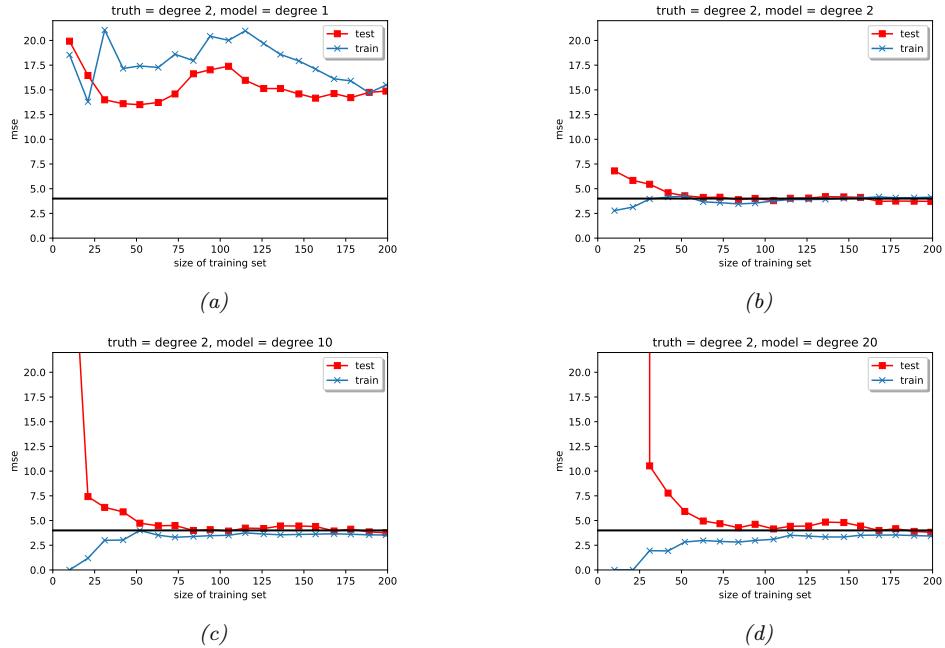


Figure 4.8: MSE on training and test sets vs size of training set, for data generated from a degree 2 polynomial with Gaussian noise of variance  $\sigma^2 = 4$ . We fit polynomial models of varying degree to this data. Generated by [linreg\\_poly\\_vs\\_n.py](#).

illustrated in Fig. 4.8. We show the MSE on the training and test sets for four different models (polynomials of increasing degree) as a function of the training set size  $N$ . (A plot of error vs training set size is known as a **learning curve**.) The horizontal black line represents the **Bayes error**, which is the error of the optimal predictor (the true model) due to inherent noise. (In this example, the true model is a degree 2 polynomial, and the noise has a variance of  $\sigma^2 = 4$ ; this is called the **noise floor**, since we cannot go below it.)

We notice several interesting things. First, the test error for degree 1 remains high, even as  $N$  increases, since the model is too simple to capture the truth; this is called underfitting. The test error for the other models decreases to the optimal level (the noise floor), but it decreases more rapidly for the simpler models, since they have fewer parameters to estimate. The gap between the test error and training error is larger for more complex models, but decreases as  $N$  grows.

Another interesting thing we can note is that the training error (blue line) initially *increases* with  $N$ , at least for the models that are sufficiently flexible. The reason for this is as follows: as the data set gets larger, we observe more distinct input-output pattern combinations, so the task of fitting the data becomes more complex (cf. Sec. 2.3.1.5). However, eventually the training set will come to resemble the test set, and the error rates will converge, and will reflect the optimal performance of that model.

## 4.5 The method of moments

Computing the MLE requires solving the equation  $\nabla_{\theta} \text{NLL}(\theta) = \mathbf{0}$ . Sometimes this is computationally difficult. In such cases, we may be able to use a simpler approach known as the **method of moments** (MOM). In this approach, we equate the theoretical moments of the distribution to the empirical moments, and solve the resulting set of  $K$  simultaneous equations, where  $K$  is the number of parameters. The theoretical moments are given by  $\mu_k = \mathbb{E}[Y^k]$ , for  $k = 1 : K$ , and the empirical moments are given by

$$\hat{\mu}_k = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^N y_n^k \quad (4.86)$$

so we just need to solve  $\mu_k = \hat{\mu}_k$  for each  $k$ . We give some examples below.

The method of moments is simple, but it is theoretically inferior to the MLE approach, since it may not use all the data as efficiently. (For details on these theoretical results, see e.g., [CB02].) Furthermore, it can sometimes produce inconsistent results (see Sec. 4.5.2). However, when it produces valid estimates, it can be used to initialize iterative algorithms that are used to optimize the NLL (see e.g., [AHK12]), thus combining the computational efficiency of MOM with the statistical accuracy of MLE.

### 4.5.1 Example: MOM for the univariate Gaussian

For example, consider the case of a univariate Gaussian distribution. From Sec. 4.2.5, we have

$$\mu_1 = \mu = \bar{y} \quad (4.87)$$

$$\mu_2 = \sigma^2 + \mu = s^2 \quad (4.88)$$

where  $\bar{y}$  is the empirical mean and  $s^2$  is the empirical average sum of squares. so  $\hat{\mu}_1 = \bar{y}$  and  $\hat{\mu}_2 = s^2 - \bar{y}^2$ . In this case, the MOM estimate is the same as the MLE, but this is not always the case.

### 4.5.2 Example: MOM for the uniform distribution

In this section, we give an example of the MOM applied to the uniform distribution. Our presentation follows the wikipedia page.<sup>2</sup> Let  $Y \sim \text{Unif}(\theta_1, \theta_2)$  be a uniform random variable, so

$$p(y|\theta) = \frac{1}{\theta_2 - \theta_1} \mathbb{I}(\theta_1 \leq y \leq \theta_2) \quad (4.89)$$

The first two moments are

$$\mu_1 = \mathbb{E}[Y] = \frac{1}{2}(\theta_1 + \theta_2) \quad (4.90)$$

$$\mu_2 = \mathbb{E}[Y^2] = \frac{1}{3}(\theta_1^2 + \theta_1\theta_2 + \theta_2^2) \quad (4.91)$$

---

<sup>2</sup>. [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Method\\_of\\_moments\\_\(statistics\)](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Method_of_moments_(statistics)).

Inverting these equations gives

$$(\theta_1, \theta_2) = \left( \mu_1 - \sqrt{3(\mu^2 - \mu_1^2)}, 2\mu_1 - \theta_1 \right) \quad (4.92)$$

Unfortunately this estimator can give sometimes give invalid results. For example, suppose  $\mathcal{D} = \{0, 0, 0, 0, 1\}$ . The empirical moments are  $\hat{\mu}_1 = \frac{1}{5}$  and  $\hat{\mu}_2 = \frac{1}{5}$ , so the estimated parameters are  $\hat{\theta}_1 = \frac{1}{5} - \frac{2\sqrt{3}}{5} = -0.493$  and  $\hat{\theta}_2 = \frac{1}{5} + \frac{2\sqrt{3}}{5} = 0.893$ . However, these cannot possibly be the correct parameters, since if  $\theta_2 = 0.893$ , we cannot generate a sample as large as 1.

By contrast, consider the MLE. Let  $y_{(1)} \leq y_{(2)} \leq \dots \leq y_{(N)}$  be the **order statistics** of the data (i.e., the values sorted in increasing order). Let  $\theta = \theta_2 - \theta_1$ . Then the likelihood is given by

$$p(\mathcal{D}|\theta) = (\theta)^{-N} \mathbb{I}(y_{(1)} \geq \theta_1) \mathbb{I}(y_{(N)} \leq \theta_2) \quad (4.93)$$

Within the permitted bounds for  $\theta$ , the derivative of the log likelihood is given by

$$\frac{d}{d\theta} \log p(\mathcal{D}|\theta) = -\frac{N}{\theta} < 0 \quad (4.94)$$

Hence the likelihood is a decreasing function of  $\theta$ , so we should pick

$$\hat{\theta}_1 = y_{(1)}, \hat{\theta}_2 = y_{(N)} \quad (4.95)$$

In the above example, we get  $\hat{\theta}_1 = 0$  and  $\hat{\theta}_2 = 1$ , as one would expect.

## 4.6 Online (recursive) estimation

If the entire dataset  $\mathcal{D}$  is available before training starts, we say that we are doing **batch learning**. However, in some cases, the data set arrives sequentially, so  $\mathcal{D} = \{\mathbf{y}_1, \mathbf{y}_2, \dots\}$  in an unbounded stream. In this case, we want to perform **online learning**.

Let  $\hat{\theta}_{t-1}$  be our estimate (e.g., MLE) given  $\mathcal{D}_{1:t-1}$ . To ensure our learning algorithm takes constant time per update, we need to find a learning rule of the form

$$\theta_t = f(\hat{\theta}_{t-1}, \mathbf{y}_t) \quad (4.96)$$

This is called a **recursive update**. Below we give some examples of such online learning methods.

### 4.6.1 Example: recursive MLE for the mean of a Gaussian

Let us reconsider the example from Sec. 4.2.5 where we computed the MLE for a univariate Gaussian. We know that the batch estimate for the mean is given by

$$\hat{\mu}_t = \frac{1}{t} \sum_{n=1}^t \mathbf{y}_n \quad (4.97)$$

This is just a **running sum** of the data, so we can easily convert this into a recursive estimate as follows:

$$\hat{\mu}_t = \frac{1}{t} \sum_{n=1}^t \mathbf{y}_n = \frac{1}{t} ((t-1)\hat{\mu}_{t-1} + \mathbf{y}_t) \quad (4.98)$$

$$= \hat{\mu}_{t-1} + \frac{1}{t} (\mathbf{y}_t - \hat{\mu}_{t-1}) \quad (4.99)$$

This is known as a **moving average**.

We see from Eq. (4.99) that the new estimate is the old estimate plus a correction term. The size of the correction diminishes over time (i.e., as we get more samples). However, if the distribution is changing, we want to give more weight to more recent data examples. We discuss how to do this in Sec. 4.6.2.

#### 4.6.2 Exponentially-weighted moving average (EMA)

Eq. (4.99) shows how to compute the moving average of a signal. In this section, we show how to adjust this to give more weight to more recent examples. In particular, we will compute the following **exponentially weighted moving average (EWMA)**:

$$\hat{\mu}_t = \beta \hat{\mu}_{t-1} + (1 - \beta) \mathbf{y}_t \quad (4.100)$$

where  $0 \leq \beta \leq 1$ . The contribution of a data point  $k$  steps in the past is weighted by  $\beta^k(1 - \beta)$ . Thus the contribution from old data is exponentially decreasing. In particular, we have

$$\hat{\mu}_t = \beta \hat{\mu}_{t-1} + (1 - \beta) \mathbf{y}_t \quad (4.101)$$

$$= \beta^2 \hat{\mu}_{t-2} + \beta(1 - \beta) \mathbf{y}_{t-1} + (1 - \beta) \mathbf{y}_t \quad \vdots \quad (4.102)$$

$$= (1 - \beta) \beta^t \mathbf{y}_0 + (1 - \beta) \beta^{t-1} \mathbf{y}_1 + \cdots + (1 - \beta) \beta \mathbf{y}_{t-1} + (1 - \beta) \beta^0 \mathbf{y}_t \quad (4.103)$$

The sum of a **geometric series** is given by

$$\beta^t + \beta^{t-1} + \cdots + \beta^1 + \beta^0 = \frac{1 - \beta^{t+1}}{1 - \beta} \quad (4.104)$$

Hence

$$(1 - \beta) \sum_{k=0}^t \beta^k = (1 - \beta) \frac{1 - \beta^{t+1}}{1 - \beta} = 1 - \beta^{t+1} \quad (4.105)$$

Since  $\beta < 0$ , we have  $\beta^{t+1} \rightarrow 0$  as  $t \rightarrow \infty$ , so smaller  $\beta$  forgets the past more quickly, and adapts to the more recent data more rapidly. This is illustrated in Fig. 4.9.

Since the initial estimate starts from  $\hat{\mu}_0 = \mathbf{0}$ , there is an initial bias. This can be corrected by scaling as follows [KB15]:

$$\tilde{\mu}_t = \frac{\hat{\mu}_t}{1 - \beta^t} \quad (4.106)$$

(Note that the update in Eq. (4.100) is still applied to the uncorrected EWMA,  $\hat{\mu}_{t-1}$ , before being corrected for the current time step.) The benefit of this is illustrated in Fig. 4.9.

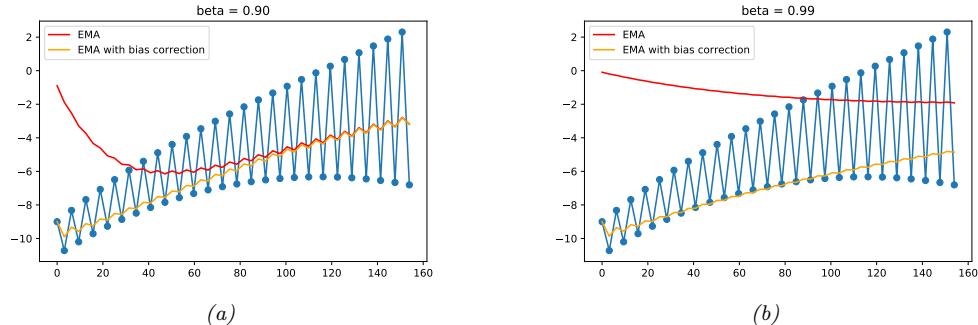


Figure 4.9: Illustration of exponentially-weighted moving average with and without bias correction. (a) Short memory:  $\beta = 0.9$ . (a) Long memory:  $\beta = 0.99$ . Generated by `ema_demo.py`.

### 4.6.3 Bayesian inference

So far we have focused on computing **point estimates**  $\hat{\theta}$ , which do not have any measure of uncertainty. In Chapter 7, we discuss a Bayesian approach, which models uncertainty in our estimate by computing a posterior,  $p(\theta|\mathcal{D})$ . This is particularly well suited to online inference, since we can use the posterior from the previous time step as a prior for the current time step: the following update:

$$p(\boldsymbol{\theta} | \mathcal{D}_{1:t}) \propto p(\mathbf{y}_t | \boldsymbol{\theta}) p(\boldsymbol{\theta} | \mathbf{y}_{1:t-1}) \quad (4.107)$$

$$\propto p(\mathbf{y}_t | \boldsymbol{\theta}) p(\mathbf{y}_{t-1} | \boldsymbol{\theta}) \dots p(\mathbf{y}_1 | \boldsymbol{\theta}) p(\boldsymbol{\theta}) \quad (4.108)$$

where This is an example of sequential Bayesian updating or online Bayesian inference. It will give the same results as batch Bayesian inference, but is often more efficient. We give concrete examples of this applied to logistic regression in Sec. 10.6.5 and linear regression in Sec. 11.6.7.

## 4.7 Parameter uncertainty

In this chapter, we have focused on computing a “best guess” for the parameters  $\hat{\theta}$ . There are two main ways to represent our uncertainty in this estimate, based on **Bayesian statistics** and **frequentist statistics**. See Chapter 7 and Chapter D for details.

## 4.8 Exercises

**Exercise 4.1** [MLE for the univariate Gaussian]

Show that the MLE for a univariate Gaussian is given by

$$\hat{\mu} = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^N y_n \quad (4.109)$$

$$\hat{\sigma}^2 = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^N (y_n - \hat{\mu})^2 \quad (4.110)$$

**Exercise 4.2** [MAP estimation for 1D Gaussians]

(Source: Jaakkola.)

Consider samples  $x_1, \dots, x_n$  from a Gaussian random variable with known variance  $\sigma^2$  and unknown mean  $\mu$ . We further assume a prior distribution (also Gaussian) over the mean,  $\mu \sim \mathcal{N}(m, s^2)$ , with fixed mean  $m$  and fixed variance  $s^2$ . Thus the only unknown is  $\mu$ .

- a. Calculate the MAP estimate  $\hat{\mu}_{MAP}$ . You can state the result without proof. Alternatively, with a lot more work, you can compute derivatives of the log posterior, set to zero and solve.
- b. Show that as the number of samples  $n$  increase, the MAP estimate converges to the maximum likelihood estimate.
- c. Suppose  $n$  is small and fixed. What does the MAP estimator converge to if we increase the prior variance  $s^2$ ?
- d. Suppose  $n$  is small and fixed. What does the MAP estimator converge to if we decrease the prior variance  $s^2$ ?



# 5 Optimization algorithms<sup>1</sup>

## 5.1 Introduction

We saw in Chapter 4 that the core problem in machine learning is parameter estimation (aka model fitting). This requires solving an **optimization problem**, where we try to find the values for a set of variables  $\theta \in \Theta$ , that minimize a scalar-valued **loss function** or **cost function**  $\mathcal{L} : \Theta \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ :

$$\theta^* \in \operatorname{argmin}_{\theta \in \Theta} \mathcal{L}(\theta) \quad (5.1)$$

We will assume that the **parameter space** is given by  $\Theta \subseteq \mathbb{R}^D$ , where  $D$  is the number of variables being optimized over. Thus we are focusing on **continuous optimization**, rather than **discrete optimization**.

If we want to *maximize* a **score function** or **reward function**  $R(\theta)$ , we can equivalently minimize  $-R$ . We will use the term **objective function** to refer generically to a function we want to maximize or minimize. An algorithm that can find an optimum of an objective function is often called a **solver**.

In the rest of this chapter, we discuss different kinds of solvers for different kinds of objective functions, with a focus on methods used in the machine learning community. For more details on optimization, please consult some of the many excellent textbooks, such as [KW19b; BV04; NW06; Ber15; Ber16] as well as various review articles, such as [BCN18; Sun+19; PPS18].

### 5.1.1 Local vs global optimization

A point that satisfies Eq. (5.1) is called a **global optimum**. Finding such a point is called **global optimization**.

In general, finding global optima is computationally intractable [Neu04]. In such cases, we will just try to find a **local optimum**. For continuous problems, this is defined to be a point  $\theta^*$  which has lower (or equal) cost than “nearby” points. Formally, we say  $\theta^*$  is a **local minimum** if

$$\exists \delta > 0, \forall \theta \in \Theta : \|\theta - \theta^*\| < \delta, \mathcal{L}(\theta^*) \leq \mathcal{L}(\theta) \quad (5.2)$$

A local minimum could be surrounded by other local minima with the same objective value; this is known as a **flat local minimum**. A point is said to be a **strict local minimum** if its cost is

---

1. This chapter benefited from contributions from Frederik Kunstner, Si Yi Meng, Aaron Mishkin, Sharan Vaswani, and Mark Schmidt.

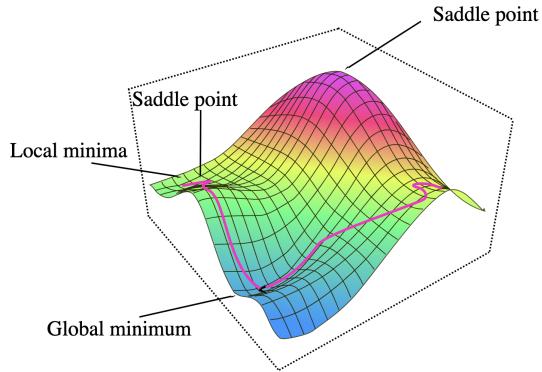


Figure 5.1: Illustration of a 2d function with a local minimum, global minimum, and a some saddle points. We also illustrate some trajectories through this cost landscape. From Figure 17 from [FL+19]. Used with kind permission of Jose Abdenago Flores Livas.

strictly lower than those of neighboring points:

$$\exists \delta > 0, \forall \theta \in \Theta, \theta \neq \theta^* : \|\theta - \theta^*\| < \delta, \mathcal{L}(\theta^*) < \mathcal{L}(\theta) \quad (5.3)$$

We can define a (strict) **local maximum** analogously. See Fig. 5.1 for an illustration.

A final note on terminology; if an algorithm is guaranteed to converge to a stationary point from any starting point, it is called **globally convergent**. However, this does not mean (rather confusingly) that it will converge to a global optimum; instead, it just means it will converge to some stationary point.

### 5.1.1.1 Optimality conditions for local vs global optima

For continuous, twice differentiable functions, we can precisely characterize the points which correspond to local minima. Let  $\mathbf{g}(\theta) = \nabla \mathcal{L}(\theta)$  be the gradient vector, and  $\mathbf{H}(\theta) = \nabla^2 \mathcal{L}(\theta)$  be the Hessian matrix. (See Appendix A.3 for a refresher on these concepts, if necessary.) Consider a point  $\theta^* \in \mathbb{R}^D$ , and let  $\mathbf{g}^* = \mathbf{g}(\theta)|_{\theta^*}$  be the gradient at that point, and  $\mathbf{H}^* = \mathbf{H}(\theta)|_{\theta^*}$  be the corresponding Hessian. One can show that the following conditions characterize every local minimum:

- Necessary condition: If  $\theta^*$  is a local minimum, then we must have  $\mathbf{g}^* = \mathbf{0}$  (i.e.,  $\theta^*$  must be a **stationary point**), and  $\mathbf{H}^*$  must be positive semi-definite.
- Sufficient condition: If  $\mathbf{g}^* = \mathbf{0}$  and  $\mathbf{H}^*$  is positive definite, then  $\theta^*$  is a local optimum.

To see why the first condition is necessary, suppose we were at a point  $\theta^*$  at which the gradient is non-zero: at such a point, we could decrease the function by following the negative gradient a small distance, so this would not be optimal. So the gradient must be zero. (In the case of nonsmooth functions, the necessary condition is that the zero is a local subgradient at the minimum.) To see why a zero gradient is not sufficient, note that the stationary point could be a local minimum, maximum or **saddle point**, which is a point where some directions point downhill, and some uphill. More

precisely, at a saddle point, the eigenvalues of the Hessian will be both positive and negative. However, if the Hessian at a point is positive semi-definite, then some directions may point uphill, while others are flat. This means that the objective function can not be decreased in the neighbourhood of this point, implying that it is necessarily a local minimum. Moreover, if the Hessian is strictly positive definite, then we are at the bottom of a “bowl”, and all directions point uphill, which is sufficient for this to be a minimum.

### 5.1.2 Constrained vs unconstrained optimization

In **unconstrained optimization**, we define the optimization task as finding any value in the parameter space  $\Theta$  that minimizes the loss. However, we often have a set of **constraints** on the allowable values. It is standard to partition the set of constraints  $\mathcal{C}$  into **inequality constraints**,  $g_j(\boldsymbol{\theta}) \leq 0$  for  $j \in \mathcal{I}$  and **equality constraints**,  $h_k(\boldsymbol{\theta}) = 0$  for  $k \in \mathcal{E}$ . For example, we can represent a sum-to-one constraint as an equality constraint  $h(\boldsymbol{\theta}) = (1 - \sum_{i=1}^D \theta_i) = 0$ , and we can represent a non-negativity constraint on the parameters by using  $D$  inequality constraints of the form  $g_i(\boldsymbol{\theta}) = -\theta_i \leq 0$ .

We define the **feasible set** as the subset of the parameter space that satisfies the constraints:

$$\mathcal{C} = \{\boldsymbol{\theta} : g_j(\boldsymbol{\theta}) \leq 0 : j \in \mathcal{I}, h_k(\boldsymbol{\theta}) = 0 : k \in \mathcal{E}\} \subseteq \mathbb{R}^D \quad (5.4)$$

Our **constrained optimization** problem now becomes

$$\boldsymbol{\theta}^* \in \operatorname{argmin}_{\boldsymbol{\theta} \in \mathcal{C}} \mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta}) \quad (5.5)$$

If  $\mathcal{C} = \mathbb{R}^D$ , it is called **unconstrained optimization**.

The addition of constraints can change the number of optima of a function. For example, a function that was previously unbounded (and hence had no well-defined global maximum or minimum) can “acquire” multiple maxima or minima when we add constraints, as illustrated in Fig. 5.2. However, if we add too many constraints, we may find that the feasible set becomes empty. The task of finding any point (regardless of its cost) in the feasible set is called a **feasibility problem**; this can be a hard subproblem in itself.

A common strategy for solving constrained problems is to create penalty terms that measure how much we violate each constraint. We then add these terms to the objective and solve an unconstrained optimization problem. The **Lagrangian** is a special case of such a combined objective (see Sec. 5.5 for details).

### 5.1.3 Convex vs nonconvex optimization

In **convex optimization**, we require the objective to be a convex function defined over a convex set (see Appendix A.4 for definitions of these terms). In such problems, every local minimum is also a global minimum. If  $\mathcal{L}$  is a *strictly* convex function, then the optimal solution (assuming it exists) is unique. Furthermore, we can usually devise methods to efficiently find such minima, as we will see. Thus many models are designed so that their training objectives are convex.

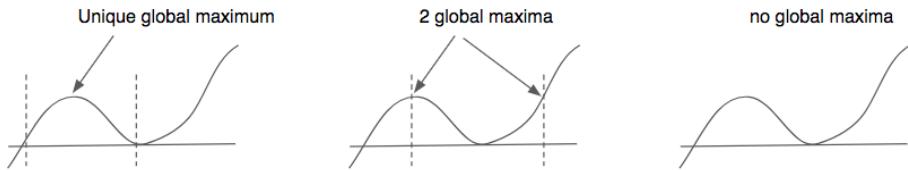


Figure 5.2: Illustration of constrained maximization of a nonconvex 1d function. The area between the dotted vertical lines represents the feasible set. (a) There is a unique global maximum since the function is concave within the support of the feasible set. (b) There are two global maxima, both occurring at the boundary of the feasible set. (c) In the unconstrained case, this function has no global maximum, since it is unbounded.



Figure 5.3: (a) Smooth 1d function. (b) Non-smooth 1d function. (There is a discontinuity at the origin.) From [https://scipy-lectures.org/advanced/mathematical\\_optimization/index.html#smooth-and-non-smooth-problems](https://scipy-lectures.org/advanced/mathematical_optimization/index.html#smooth-and-non-smooth-problems). Used with kind permission of Gael Varoquaux

### 5.1.4 Smooth vs nonsmooth optimization

In **smooth optimization**, the objective and constraints are continuously differentiable functions, whereas in **nonsmooth optimization**, there are at least some points where the gradient of the objective function or the constraints is not well-defined. See Fig. 5.3 for an example.

In some optimization problems, we can partition the objective into a part that only contains smooth terms, and a part that contains the nonsmooth terms:

$$\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta}) = \mathcal{L}_s(\boldsymbol{\theta}) + \mathcal{L}_r(\boldsymbol{\theta}) \quad (5.6)$$

where  $\mathcal{L}_s$  is smooth (differentiable), and  $\mathcal{L}_r$  is nonsmooth (“rough”). This is often referred to as a **composite objective**. In machine learning applications,  $\mathcal{L}_s$  is usually the training set loss, and  $\mathcal{L}_r$  is a regularizer, such as the  $\ell_1$  norm of  $\boldsymbol{\theta}$ . This composite structure can be exploited by various algorithms.

## 5.2 First-order methods

In this section, we consider iterative optimization methods that leverage **first order** derivatives of the objective function, i.e., they compute which directions point “downhill”, but they ignore curvature

information. All of these algorithms require that the user specify a starting point  $\boldsymbol{\theta}_0$ . Then at each iteration  $t$ , they perform an update of the following form:

$$\boldsymbol{\theta}_{t+1} = \boldsymbol{\theta}_t + \eta_t \mathbf{d}_t \quad (5.7)$$

where  $\eta_t$  is known as the **step size** or **learning rate**, and  $\mathbf{d}_t$  is a **descent direction**, such as the **gradient**  $\mathbf{g}_t = \nabla_{\boldsymbol{\theta}} \mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta})|_{\boldsymbol{\theta}_t}$ . These update steps are continued until the method reaches a stationary point, where the gradient is zero.

### 5.2.1 Descent direction

We say that a direction  $\mathbf{d}$  is a **descent direction** if there is a small enough (but nonzero) amount  $\eta$  we can move in direction  $\mathbf{d}$  and be guaranteed to decrease the function value. Formally, we require that there exists an  $\eta_{\max} > 0$  such that

$$\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta} + \eta \mathbf{d}) < \mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta}) \quad (5.8)$$

for all  $0 < \eta < \eta_{\max}$ . The gradient at the current iterate,

$$\mathbf{g}_t \triangleq \nabla \mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta})|_{\boldsymbol{\theta}_t} = \nabla \mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta}_t) = \mathbf{g}(\boldsymbol{\theta}_t) \quad (5.9)$$

points in the direction of maximal increase in  $f$ , so the negative gradient is a descent direction. It can be shown that any direction  $\mathbf{d}$  is also a descent direction if the angle  $\theta$  between  $\mathbf{d}$  and  $-\mathbf{g}_t$  is less than 90 degrees and satisfies

$$\mathbf{d}^\top \mathbf{g}_t = \|\mathbf{d}\| \|\mathbf{g}_t\| \cos(\theta) < 0 \quad (5.10)$$

It seems that the best choice would be to pick  $\mathbf{d}_t = -\mathbf{g}_t$ . This is known as the direction of **steepest descent**. However, this can be quite slow. We consider faster versions later.

### 5.2.2 Step size (learning rate)

In machine learning, the sequence of step sizes  $\{\eta_t\}$  is called the **learning rate schedule**. There are several widely used methods for picking this, some of which we discuss below. (See also Sec. 5.4.3, where we discuss schedules for stochastic optimization.)

#### 5.2.2.1 Constant step size

The simplest method is to use a constant step size,  $\eta_t = \eta$ . However, if it is too large, the method may fail to converge, and if it is too small, the method will converge but very slowly.

For example, consider the convex function

$$\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta}) = 0.5(\theta_1^2 - \theta_2)^2 + 0.5(\theta_1 - 1)^2 \quad (5.11)$$

Let us pick as our descent direction  $\mathbf{d}_t = \mathbf{g}_t$ . Fig. 5.4 shows what happens if we use this descent direction with a fixed step size, starting from  $(0, 0)$ . In Fig. 5.4(a), we use a small step size of  $\eta = 0.1$ ; we see that the iterates move slowly along the valley. In Fig. 5.4(b), we use a larger step size  $\eta = 0.6$ ;

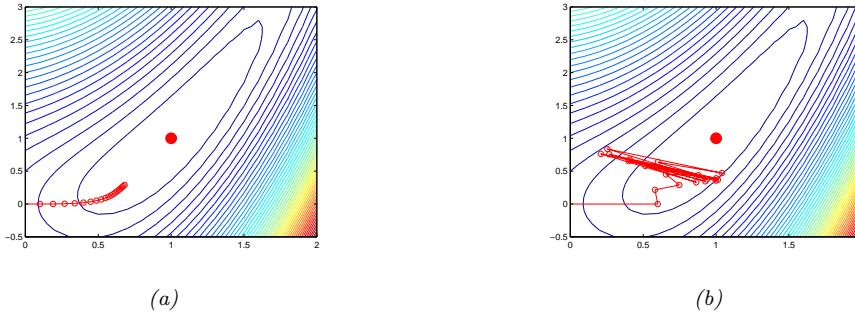


Figure 5.4: Steepest descent on a simple convex function, starting from  $(0, 0)$ , for 20 steps, using a fixed step size. The global minimum is at  $(1, 1)$ . (a)  $\eta = 0.1$ . (b)  $\eta = 0.6$ . Generated by `steepestDescentDemo.m`.

we see that the iterates start oscillating up and down the sides of the valley and never converge to the optimum, even though this is a convex problem.

In some cases, we can derive a theoretical upper bound on the maximum step size we can use. For example, consider a quadratic objective,  $\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta}) = \frac{1}{2}\boldsymbol{\theta}^\top \mathbf{A}\boldsymbol{\theta} + \mathbf{b}^\top \boldsymbol{\theta} + c$  with  $\mathbf{A} \succeq \mathbf{0}$ . One can show that steepest descent will have global convergence iff the step size satisfies  $\eta < \frac{2}{\lambda_{\max}(\mathbf{A})}$ , where  $\lambda_{\max}(\mathbf{A})$  is the largest eigenvalue of  $\mathbf{A}$ . The intuitive reason for this can be understood by thinking of a ball rolling down a valley. We want to make sure it doesn't take a step that is larger than the slope of the steepest direction, which is what the largest eigenvalue measures (see Sec. 3.5.2).

More generally, setting  $\eta < 2/L$ , where  $L$  is the Lipschitz constant of the gradient (Sec. A.2.1.3), ensures convergence. Since this constant is generally unknown, we usually need to adapt the step size, as we discuss below.

### 5.2.2.2 Line search

The optimal step size can be found by finding the value that maximally decreases the objective along the chosen direction by solving the 1d minimization problem

$$\eta_t = \underset{\eta > 0}{\operatorname{argmin}} \phi_t(\eta) = \underset{\eta > 0}{\operatorname{argmin}} \mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta}_t + \eta \mathbf{d}_t) \quad (5.12)$$

This is known as **line search**, since we are searching along the line defined by  $\mathbf{d}_t$ .

If the loss is convex, this subproblem is also convex, because  $\phi_t(\eta) = \mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta}_t + \eta \mathbf{d}_t)$  is a convex function of an affine function of  $\eta$ , for fixed  $\boldsymbol{\theta}_t$  and  $\mathbf{d}_t$ . For example, consider the quadratic loss

$$\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta}) = \frac{1}{2}\boldsymbol{\theta}^\top \mathbf{A}\boldsymbol{\theta} + \mathbf{b}^\top \boldsymbol{\theta} + c \quad (5.13)$$

Computing the derivative of  $\phi$  gives

$$\frac{d\phi(\eta)}{d\eta} = \frac{d}{d\eta} \left[ \frac{1}{2}(\boldsymbol{\theta} + \eta \mathbf{d})^\top \mathbf{A}(\boldsymbol{\theta} + \eta \mathbf{d}) + \mathbf{b}^\top (\boldsymbol{\theta} + \eta \mathbf{d}) + c \right] \quad (5.14)$$

$$= \mathbf{d}^\top \mathbf{A}(\boldsymbol{\theta} + \eta \mathbf{d}) + \mathbf{d}^\top \mathbf{b} \quad (5.15)$$

$$= \mathbf{d}^\top (\mathbf{A}\boldsymbol{\theta} + \mathbf{b}) + \eta \mathbf{d}^\top \mathbf{A}\mathbf{d} \quad (5.16)$$

Solving for  $\frac{d\phi(\eta)}{d\eta} = 0$  gives

$$\eta = -\frac{\mathbf{d}^\top(\mathbf{A}\boldsymbol{\theta} + \mathbf{b})}{\mathbf{d}^\top \mathbf{A}\mathbf{d}} \quad (5.17)$$

Using the optimal step size is known as **exact line search**. However, it is not usually necessary to be so precise. There are several methods, such as the **Armijo backtracking method**, that try to ensure sufficient reduction in the objective function without spending too much time trying to solve Eq. (5.12). In particular, we can start with the current stepsize (or some maximum value), and then reduce it by a factor  $0 < \beta < 1$  at each step until we satisfy the following condition, known as the **Armijo-Goldstein test**:

$$\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta}_t + \eta \mathbf{d}_t) \leq \mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta}_t) + c\eta \mathbf{d}_t^\top \nabla \mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta}_t) \quad (5.18)$$

where  $c \in [0, 1]$  is a constant, typically  $c = 10^{-4}$ . In practice, the initialization of the line-search and how to backtrack can significantly affect performance. See [NW06, Sec 3.1] for details.

### 5.2.3 Convergence rates

We want to find optimization algorithms that converge quickly to a (local) optimum. For certain convex problems, with a gradient with bounded Lipschitz constant, one can show that gradient descent converges at a **linear rate**. This means that there exists a number  $0 < \mu < 1$  such that

$$|\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta}_{t+1}) - \mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta}_*)| \leq \mu |\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta}_t) - \mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta}_*)| \quad (5.19)$$

Here  $\mu$  is called the **rate of convergence**.

For some simple problems, we can derive the convergence rate explicitly. For example, consider a quadratic objective  $\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta}) = \frac{1}{2}\boldsymbol{\theta}^\top \mathbf{A}\boldsymbol{\theta} + \mathbf{b}^\top \boldsymbol{\theta} + c$  with  $\mathbf{A} \succ 0$ . Suppose we use steepest descent with exact line search. One can show (see e.g., [Ber15]) that the convergence rate is given by

$$\mu = \left( \frac{\lambda_{\max} - \lambda_{\min}}{\lambda_{\max} + \lambda_{\min}} \right)^2 \quad (5.20)$$

where  $\lambda_{\max}$  is the largest eigenvalue of  $\mathbf{A}$  and  $\lambda_{\min}$  is the smallest eigenvalue. We can rewrite this as  $\mu = (\frac{\kappa-1}{\kappa+1})^2$ , where  $\kappa = \frac{\lambda_{\max}}{\lambda_{\min}}$  is the condition number of  $\mathbf{A}$ . Intuitively, the condition number measures how “skewed” the space is, in the sense of being far from a symmetrical “bowl”. (See Sec. B.1.4.4 for more information on condition numbers.)

Fig. 5.5 illustrates the effect of the condition number on the convergence rate. On the left we show an example where  $\mathbf{A} = [20, 5; 5, 1]$ ,  $\mathbf{b} = [14; 6]$  and  $c = 10$ , so  $\kappa(\mathbf{A}) = 30.234$ . On the right we show an example where  $\mathbf{A} = [20, 5; 516]$ ,  $\mathbf{b} = [14; 6]$  and  $c = 10$ , so  $\kappa(\mathbf{A}) = 1.8541$ . We see that steepest descent converges much more quickly for the problem with the smaller condition number.

In the more general case of non-quadratic functions, the objective will often be locally quadratic around a local optimum. Hence the convergence rate depends on the condition number of the Hessian,  $\kappa(\mathbf{H})$ , at that point. We can often improve the convergence speed by optimizing a surrogate objective (or model) at each step which has a Hessian that is close to the Hessian of the objective function as we discuss in Sec. 5.3.

Fig. 5.6(a) demonstrates that line search does indeed work for minimizing the simple convex objective in Eq. (5.11). However, we see that the path of steepest descent with an exact line-search exhibits a characteristic **zig-zag** behavior, which is inefficient. This problem can be overcome using a method called **conjugate gradient** descent.

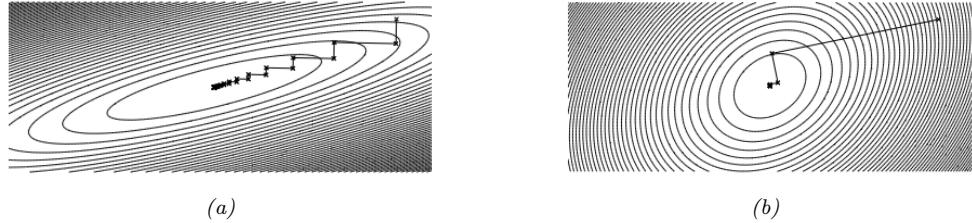


Figure 5.5: Illustration of the effect of condition number  $\kappa$  on the convergence speed of steepest descent with exact line searches. (a) Large  $\kappa$ . (b) Small  $\kappa$ . From Lecture 18 (slides 42, 46) from [Ber09].

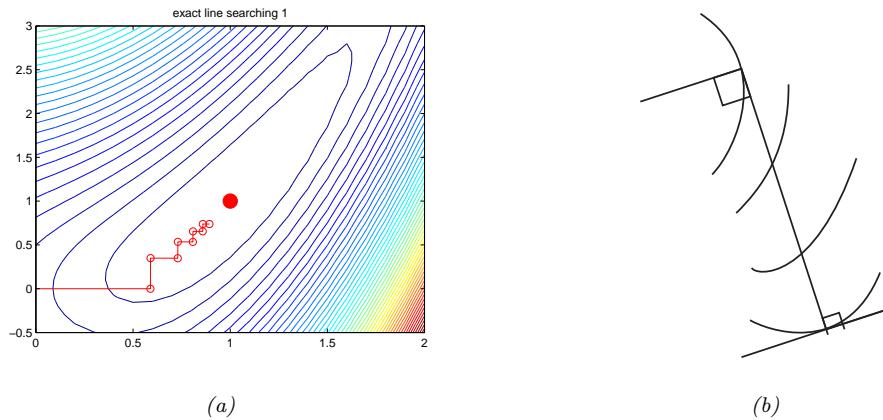


Figure 5.6: (a) Steepest descent on the same function as Fig. 5.4, starting from  $(0,0)$ , using line search. Generated by `steepestDescentDemo.m`. (b) Illustration of the fact that at the end of an exact line search (top of picture), the local gradient of the function will be perpendicular to the search direction. Adapted from Figure 10.6.1 of [Pre+88].

## 5.2.4 Momentum methods

Gradient descent can move very slowly along flat regions of the loss landscape, as we illustrated in Fig. 5.4. We discuss some solutions to this below.

### 5.2.4.1 Momentum

One simple heuristic, known as the **heavy ball** or **momentum** method [Ber99], is to move faster along directions that were previously good, and to slow down along directions where the gradient has suddenly changed, just like a ball rolling downhill. This can be implemented as follows:

$$\mathbf{m}_{t+1} = \beta \mathbf{m}_t - \eta_t \mathbf{g}_t \quad (5.21)$$

$$\theta_{t+1} = \theta_t + \mathbf{m}_{t+1} \quad (5.22)$$

where  $\mathbf{m}_t$  is the momentum (mass times velocity) and  $0 < \beta < 1$ . A typical value of  $\beta$  is 0.9. For  $\beta = 0$ , the method reduces to gradient descent.

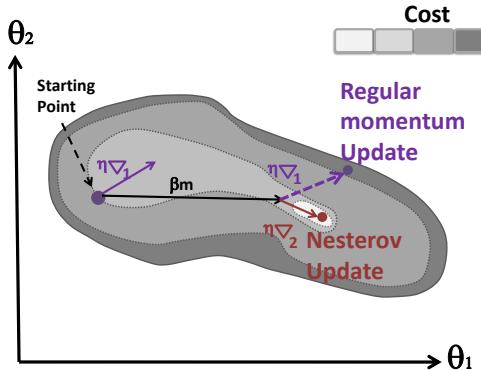


Figure 5.7: Illustration of the Nesterov update. Adapted from Figure 11.6 of [Gér19].

To gain more insight into this method, suppose the gradient is a constant, say  $\mathbf{g}$ , at each iteration. Since we initialize the momentum to zero,  $\mathbf{m}_0 = \mathbf{0}$ , the momentums at each step will be as follows:

$$\mathbf{m}_1 = -\eta \mathbf{g} \quad (5.23)$$

$$\mathbf{m}_2 = \beta \mathbf{m}_1 - \eta \mathbf{g} = -\beta \eta \mathbf{g} - \eta \mathbf{g} = -(\beta + 1)\eta \mathbf{g} \quad (5.24)$$

$$\mathbf{m}_3 = \beta \mathbf{m}_2 - \eta \mathbf{g} = -\beta^2 \eta \mathbf{g} - \beta \eta \mathbf{g} - \eta \mathbf{g} = -(\beta^2 + \beta^1 + \beta^0)\eta \mathbf{g} \quad (5.25)$$

and so on. The scaling factor is a geometric series, whose infinite sum is given by

$$1 + \beta + \beta^2 + \dots = \sum_{i=0}^{\infty} \beta^i = \frac{1}{1 - \beta} \quad (5.26)$$

Thus in the limit, we multiply the step size by  $1/(1 - \beta)$ . For example, if we set  $\beta = 0.9$ , then we eventually increase  $\eta$  by a factor of 10. This can help prevent GD from getting stuck in flat “valley floors”. However, it can also cause overshooting, as we discuss in Sec. 5.2.4.2.

### 5.2.4.2 Nesterov momentum

One problem with the standard momentum method is that it may not slow down enough at the bottom of a valley, causing oscillation. The **Nesterov accelerated gradient** method of [Nes04] instead modifies the gradient descent to include an extrapolation step, as follows:

$$\tilde{\theta}_{t+1} = \theta_t + \beta_t(\theta_t - \theta_{t-1}) \quad (5.27)$$

$$\theta_{t+1} = \tilde{\theta}_{t+1} - \eta_t \nabla \mathcal{L}(\tilde{\theta}_{t+1}) \quad (5.28)$$

This is essentially a form of one-step “look ahead”, that can reduce the amount of oscillation, as illustrated in Fig. 5.7.

Nesterov accelerated gradient can also be rewritten in the same format as standard momentum. In

this case, the momentum term is updated using the gradient at the predicted new location,

$$\mathbf{m}_{t+1} = \beta \mathbf{m}_t - \eta_t \nabla \mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta}_t + \beta \mathbf{m}_t) \quad (5.29)$$

$$\boldsymbol{\theta}_{t+1} = \boldsymbol{\theta}_t + \mathbf{m}_{t+1} \quad (5.30)$$

This explains why the Nesterov accelerated gradient method is sometimes called Nesterov momentum. It also shows how this method can be faster than standard momentum: the momentum vector is already roughly pointing in the right direction, so measuring the gradient at the new location,  $\boldsymbol{\theta}_t + \beta \mathbf{m}_t$ , rather than the current location,  $\boldsymbol{\theta}_t$ , can be more accurate.

The Nesterov accelerated gradient method is provably faster than steepest descent for convex functions when  $\beta$  and  $\eta_t$  are chosen appropriately. It is called “accelerated” because of this improved convergence rate, which is optimal for gradient-based methods using only first-order information when the objective function is convex and has Lipschitz-continuous gradients. In practice, however, using Nesterov momentum can be slower than steepest descent, and can even be unstable if  $\beta$  or  $\eta_t$  are misspecified.

## 5.3 Second-order methods

Optimization algorithms that only use the gradient are called **first-order** methods. They have the advantage that the gradient is cheap to compute and to store, but they do not model the curvature of the space, and hence they can be slow to converge, as we have seen in Fig. 5.5. **Second-order** optimization methods incorporate curvature in various ways (such via the Hessian) which may yield faster convergence. We discuss some of these methods below.

### 5.3.1 Newton’s method

The classic second-order method is **Newton’s method**. This consists of updates of the form

$$\boldsymbol{\theta}_{t+1} = \boldsymbol{\theta}_t - \eta_t \mathbf{H}_t^{-1} \mathbf{g}_t \quad (5.31)$$

where

$$\mathbf{H}_t \triangleq \nabla^2 \mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta})|_{\boldsymbol{\theta}_t} = \nabla^2 \mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta}_t) = \mathbf{H}(\boldsymbol{\theta}_t) \quad (5.32)$$

is assumed to be positive-definite to ensure the update is well-defined. The pseudo-code for Newton’s method is given in Algorithm 1. The intuition for why this is faster than gradient descent is that the matrix inverse  $\mathbf{H}^{-1}$  “undoes” any skew in the local curvature, converting a topology like Fig. 5.5a to one like Fig. 5.5b.

This algorithm can be derived as follows. Consider making a second-order Taylor series approximation of  $\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta})$  around  $\boldsymbol{\theta}_t$ :

$$\mathcal{L}_{\text{quad}}(\boldsymbol{\theta}) = \mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta}_t) + \mathbf{g}_t^\top (\boldsymbol{\theta} - \boldsymbol{\theta}_t) + \frac{1}{2} (\boldsymbol{\theta} - \boldsymbol{\theta}_t)^\top \mathbf{H}_t (\boldsymbol{\theta} - \boldsymbol{\theta}_t) \quad (5.33)$$

The minimum of  $\mathcal{L}_{\text{quad}}$  is at

$$\boldsymbol{\theta} = \boldsymbol{\theta}_t - \mathbf{H}_t^{-1} \mathbf{g}_t \quad (5.34)$$

**Algorithm 1:** Newton's method for minimizing a function

```

1 Initialize  $\theta_0$ ;
2 for  $t = 1, 2, \dots$  until convergence do
3   Evaluate  $\mathbf{g}_t = \nabla \mathcal{L}(\theta_t)$ ;
4   Evaluate  $\mathbf{H}_t = \nabla^2 \mathcal{L}(\theta_t)$ ;
5   Solve  $\mathbf{H}_t \mathbf{d}_t = -\mathbf{g}_t$  for  $\mathbf{d}_t$ ;
6   Use line search to find stepsize  $\eta_t$  along  $\mathbf{d}_t$ ;
7    $\theta_{t+1} = \theta_t + \eta_t \mathbf{d}_t$ ;

```

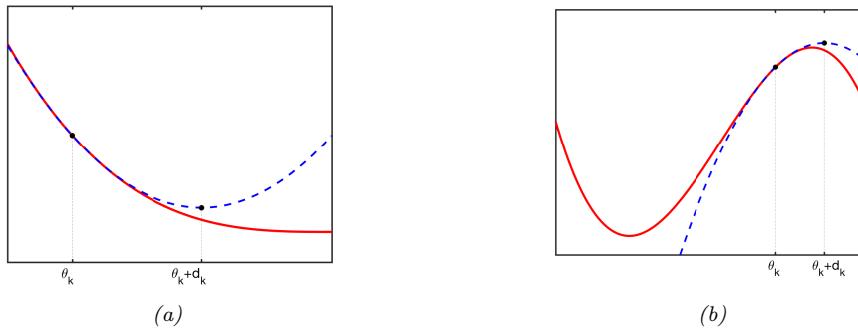


Figure 5.8: Illustration of Newton's method for minimizing a 1d function. (a) The solid curve is the function  $\mathcal{L}(x)$ . The dotted line  $\mathcal{L}_{\text{quad}}(\theta)$  is its second order approximation at  $\theta_t$ . The Newton step  $d_t$  is what must be added to  $\theta_t$  to get to the minimum of  $\mathcal{L}_{\text{quad}}(\theta)$ . Adapted from Figure 13.4 of [Van06]. Generated by `newtonsMethodMinQuad.m`. (b) Illustration of Newton's method applied to a nonconvex function. We fit a quadratic function around the current point  $\theta_t$  and move to its stationary point,  $\theta_{t+1} = \theta_t + d_t$ . Unfortunately, this takes us near a local maximum of  $f$ , not minimum. This means we need to be careful about the extent of our quadratic approximation. Adapted from Figure 13.11 of [Van06]. Generated by `newtonsMethodNonConvex.m`.

So if the quadratic approximation is a good one, we should pick  $\mathbf{d}_t = -\mathbf{H}_t^{-1}\mathbf{g}_t$  as our descent direction. See Fig. 5.8(a) for an illustration. Note that, in a “pure” Newton method, we use  $\eta_t = 1$  as our stepsize. However, we can also use linesearch to find the best stepsize; this tends to be more robust as using  $\eta_t = 1$  may not always converge globally.

If we apply this method to linear regression, we get to the optimum in one step, since (as we shown in Sec. 11.2.2.1) we have  $\mathbf{H} = \mathbf{X}^\top \mathbf{X}$  and  $\mathbf{g} = \mathbf{X}^\top \mathbf{X} \mathbf{w} - \mathbf{X}^\top \mathbf{y}$ , so the Newton update becomes

$$\mathbf{w}_1 = \mathbf{w}_0 - \mathbf{H}^{-1} \mathbf{g} = \mathbf{w}_0 - (\mathbf{X}^\top \mathbf{X})^{-1} (\mathbf{X}^\top \mathbf{X} \mathbf{w}_0 - \mathbf{X}^\top \mathbf{y}) = \mathbf{w}_0 - \mathbf{w}_0 + (\mathbf{X}^\top \mathbf{X})^{-1} \mathbf{X}^\top \mathbf{y} \quad (5.35)$$

which is the OLS estimate. However, when we apply this method to logistic regression, it may take multiple iterations to converge to the global optimum, as we discuss in Sec. 10.2.6.

### 5.3.2 BFGS and other quasi-Newton methods

**Quasi-Newton** methods, sometimes called **variable metric** methods, iteratively build up an approximation to the Hessian using information gleaned from the gradient vector at each step. The

most common method is called **BFGS** (named after its simultaneous inventors, Broyden, Fletcher, Goldfarb and Shanno), which updates the approximation to the Hessian  $\mathbf{B}_t \approx \mathbf{H}_t$  as follows:

$$\mathbf{B}_{t+1} = \mathbf{B}_t + \frac{\mathbf{y}_t \mathbf{y}_t^\top}{\mathbf{y}_t^\top \mathbf{s}_t} - \frac{(\mathbf{B}_t \mathbf{s}_t)(\mathbf{B}_t \mathbf{s}_t)^\top}{\mathbf{s}_t^\top \mathbf{B}_t \mathbf{s}_t} \quad (5.36)$$

$$\mathbf{s}_t = \boldsymbol{\theta}_t - \boldsymbol{\theta}_{t-1} \quad (5.37)$$

$$\mathbf{y}_t = \mathbf{g}_t - \mathbf{g}_{t-1} \quad (5.38)$$

This is a rank-two update to the matrix. If  $\mathbf{B}_0$  is positive-definite, and the step size  $\eta$  is chosen via line search satisfying both the Armijo condition in Eq. (5.18) and the following curvature condition

$$\nabla \mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta}_t + \eta \mathbf{d}_t) \geq c_2 \eta \mathbf{d}_t^\top \nabla \mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta}_t) \quad (5.39)$$

then  $\mathbf{B}_{t+1}$  will remain positive definite. The constant  $c_2$  is chosen within  $(c, 1)$  where  $c$  is the tunable parameter in Eq. (5.18). The two step size conditions are together known as the **Wolfe conditions**. We typically start with a diagonal approximation,  $\mathbf{B}_0 = \mathbf{I}$ . Thus BFGS can be thought of as a “diagonal plus low-rank” approximation to the Hessian.

Alternatively, BFGS can iteratively update an approximation to the inverse Hessian,  $\mathbf{C}_t \approx \mathbf{H}_t^{-1}$ , as follows:

$$\mathbf{C}_{t+1} = \left( \mathbf{I} - \frac{\mathbf{s}_t \mathbf{y}_t^\top}{\mathbf{y}_t^\top \mathbf{s}_t} \right) \mathbf{C}_t \left( \mathbf{I} - \frac{\mathbf{y}_t \mathbf{s}_t^\top}{\mathbf{y}_t^\top \mathbf{s}_t} \right) + \frac{\mathbf{s}_t \mathbf{s}_t^\top}{\mathbf{y}_t^\top \mathbf{s}_t} \quad (5.40)$$

Since storing the Hessian approximation still takes  $O(D^2)$  space, for very large problems, one can use **limited memory BFGS**, or **L-BFGS**, where we control the rank of the approximation by only using the  $M$  most recent  $(\mathbf{s}_t, \mathbf{y}_t)$  pairs while ignoring older information. Rather than storing  $\mathbf{B}_t$  explicitly, we just store these vectors in memory, and then approximate  $\mathbf{H}_t^{-1} \mathbf{g}_t$  by performing a sequence of inner products with the stored  $\mathbf{s}_t$  and  $\mathbf{y}_t$  vectors. The storage requirements are therefore  $O(MD)$ . Typically choosing  $M$  to be between 5–20 suffices for good performance [NW06, p177].

Note that sklearn uses LBFGS as its default solver for logistic regression.<sup>2</sup>

### 5.3.3 Trust region methods

If the objective function is nonconvex, then the Hessian  $\mathbf{H}_t$  may not be positive definite, so  $\mathbf{d}_t = -\mathbf{H}_t^{-1} \mathbf{g}_t$  may not be a descent direction. This is illustrated in 1d in Fig. 5.8(b), which shows that Newton’s method can end up in a local maximum rather than a local minimum.

In general, any time the quadratic approximation made by Newton’s method becomes invalid, we are in trouble. However, there is usually a local region around the current iterate where we can safely approximate the objective by a quadratic. Let us call this region  $\mathcal{R}_t$ , and let us call  $M(\boldsymbol{\delta})$  the model (or approximation) to the objective, where  $\boldsymbol{\delta} = \boldsymbol{\theta} - \boldsymbol{\theta}_t$ . Then at each step we can solve

$$\boldsymbol{\delta}^* = \underset{\boldsymbol{\delta} \in \mathcal{R}_t}{\operatorname{argmin}} M_t(\boldsymbol{\delta}) \quad (5.41)$$

This is called **trust-region optimization**. (This can be seen as the “opposite” of line search, in the sense that we pick a distance we want to travel, determined by  $\mathcal{R}_t$ , and then solve for the optimal direction, rather than picking the direction and then solving for the optimal distance.)

---

<sup>2</sup>. See [https://scikit-learn.org/stable/modules/generated/sklearn.linear\\_model.LogisticRegression.html](https://scikit-learn.org/stable/modules/generated/sklearn.linear_model.LogisticRegression.html).

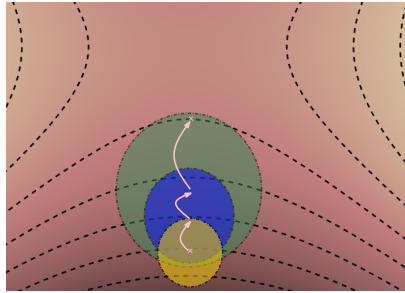


Figure 5.9: Illustration of the trust region approach. The dashed lines represent contours of the original nonconvex objective. The circles represent successive quadratic approximations. From Figure 4.2 of [Pas14]. Used with kind permission of Razvan Pascanu.

We usually assume that  $M_t(\boldsymbol{\delta})$  is a quadratic approximation:

$$M_t(\boldsymbol{\delta}) = \mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta}_t) + \mathbf{g}_t^\top \boldsymbol{\delta} + \frac{1}{2} \boldsymbol{\delta}^\top \mathbf{H}_t \boldsymbol{\delta} \quad (5.42)$$

where  $\mathbf{g}_t = \nabla_{\boldsymbol{\theta}} \mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta})|_{\boldsymbol{\theta}_t}$  is the gradient, and  $\mathbf{H}_t = \nabla_{\boldsymbol{\theta}}^2 \mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta})|_{\boldsymbol{\theta}_t}$  is the Hessian. Furthermore, it is common to assume that  $\mathcal{R}_t$  is a ball of radius  $r$ , i.e.,  $\mathcal{R}_t = \{\boldsymbol{\delta} : \|\boldsymbol{\delta}\|_2 \leq r\}$ . Using this, we can convert the constrained problem into an unconstrained one as follows:

$$\boldsymbol{\delta}^* = \underset{\boldsymbol{\delta}}{\operatorname{argmin}} M(\boldsymbol{\delta}) + \lambda \|\boldsymbol{\delta}\|_2^2 = \underset{\boldsymbol{\delta}}{\operatorname{argmin}} \mathbf{g}^\top \boldsymbol{\delta} + \frac{1}{2} \boldsymbol{\delta}^\top (\mathbf{H} + \lambda \mathbf{I}) \boldsymbol{\delta} \quad (5.43)$$

for some Lagrange multiplier  $\lambda > 0$  which depends on the radius  $r$  (see Sec. 5.5.1 for a discussion of Lagrange multipliers). We can solve this using

$$\boldsymbol{\delta} = -(\mathbf{H} + \lambda \mathbf{I})^{-1} \mathbf{g} \quad (5.44)$$

This is called **Tikhonov damping** or **Tikhonov regularization**. See Fig. 5.9 for an illustration.

Note that adding a sufficiently large  $\lambda \mathbf{I}$  to  $\mathbf{H}$  ensures the resulting matrix is always positive definite. As  $\lambda \rightarrow 0$ , this trust method reduces to Newton's method, but for  $\lambda$  large enough, it will make all the negative eigenvalues positive (and all the 0 eigenvalues become equal to  $\lambda$ ).

### 5.3.4 Natural gradient descent

In this section, we discuss **natural gradient descent (NGD)** [Ama98], which is a second order method for optimizing the parameters of (conditional) probability distributions  $p_{\boldsymbol{\theta}}(\mathbf{y}|\mathbf{x})$ . The key idea is to compute parameter updates by measuring distances between the induced distributions, rather than comparing parameter values directly.

For example, when comparing two Gaussians, it is not very meaningful to compute Euclidean distance in parameter space,  $\|\boldsymbol{\theta} - \boldsymbol{\theta}'\|_2$ , where  $\boldsymbol{\theta} = (\mu, \sigma)$ , since the significance (in terms of prediction) of a difference of size  $\delta$  between  $\mu$  and  $\mu'$  depends on the value of  $\sigma$ . This is illustrated in Fig. 5.10(a-b), which shows two univariate Gaussian distributions (dotted and solid lines) whose means differ by

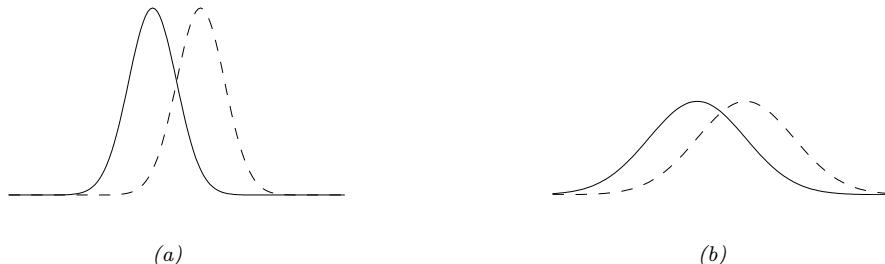


Figure 5.10: Changing the mean of a Gaussian by a fixed amount (from solid to dotted curve) can have more impact when the (shared) variance is small (as in a) compared to when the variance is large (as in b). Hence the impact (in terms of prediction accuracy) of a change to  $\mu$  depends on where the optimizer is in  $(\mu, \sigma)$  space. From Figure 3 of [Hon+10], reproduced from [Val00]. Used with kind permission of Antti Honkela.

$\delta$ . In Fig. 5.10(a), they share the same small variance  $\sigma^2$ , whereas in Fig. 5.10(b), they share the same large variance. It is clear that the value of  $\delta$  matters much more (in terms of the effect on the distribution) when the variance is small. Thus we see that the two parameters interact with each other, which the Euclidean distance cannot capture. This problem gets much worse when we consider more complex models, such as deep neural networks (see e.g., [SSE18; ZMG19]). By modeling such correlations, NGD can sometimes converge much faster than other gradient methods.

Algorithmically, the basic idea in NGD is to use the Fisher information matrix (Appendix D.2) as a preconditioning matrix, i.e., we perform updates of the following form:

$$\boldsymbol{\theta}_{t+1} = \boldsymbol{\theta}_t - \eta_t \mathbf{F}(\boldsymbol{\theta}_t)^{-1} \mathbf{g}_t \quad (5.45)$$

The term

$$\mathbf{F}(\boldsymbol{\theta}_t)^{-1} \mathbf{g}_t = \mathbf{F}(\boldsymbol{\theta}_t)^{-1} \nabla \mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta}_t) \triangleq \tilde{\nabla} \mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta}_t) \quad (5.46)$$

is called the **natural gradient**, where  $\mathbf{F}$  is the (averaged) Fisher information matrix (see Appendix D.2), given by

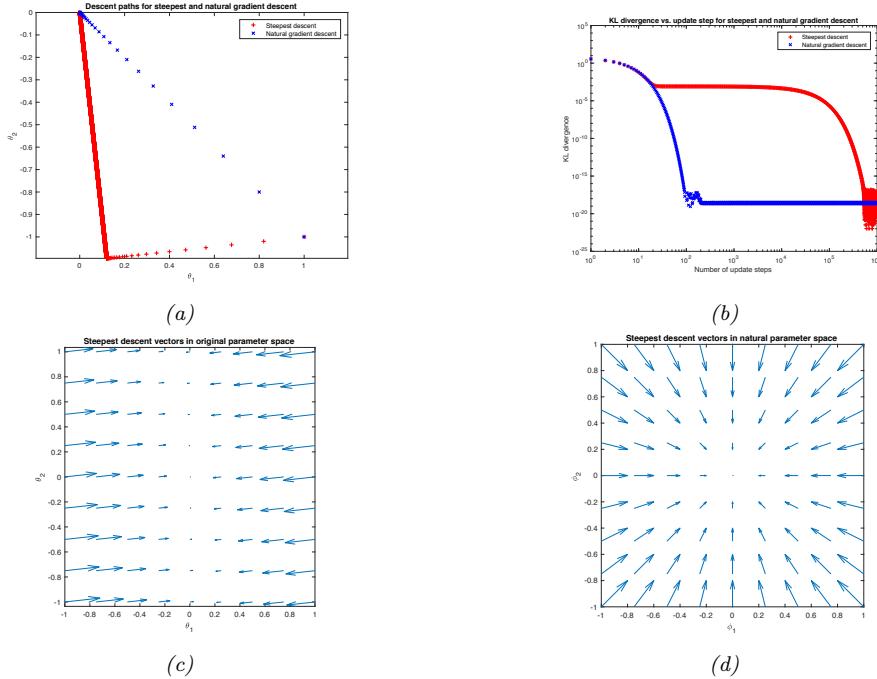
$$\mathbf{F}(\boldsymbol{\theta}) = \mathbb{E}_{p_D(\mathbf{x})} [\mathbf{F}_x(\boldsymbol{\theta})] \quad (5.47)$$

$$\mathbf{F}_x(\boldsymbol{\theta}) = -\mathbb{E}_{p_{\boldsymbol{\theta}}(\mathbf{y}|\mathbf{x})} [\nabla^2 \log p_{\boldsymbol{\theta}}(\mathbf{y}|\mathbf{x})] = \mathbb{E}_{p_{\boldsymbol{\theta}}(\mathbf{y}|\mathbf{x})} [(\nabla \log p_{\boldsymbol{\theta}}(\mathbf{y}|\mathbf{x})) (\nabla \log p_{\boldsymbol{\theta}}(\mathbf{y}|\mathbf{x}))^\top] \quad (5.48)$$

The intuition for why NGD is a good idea is based on the following approximation, derived in Sec. D.2.4:

$$\mathbb{KL}(p_{\boldsymbol{\theta}}(\mathbf{y}|\mathbf{x}) \| p_{\boldsymbol{\theta}+\delta}(\mathbf{y}|\mathbf{x})) \approx \frac{1}{2} \boldsymbol{\delta}^\top \mathbf{F}_x \boldsymbol{\delta} \quad (5.49)$$

where  $\boldsymbol{\delta} = \boldsymbol{\theta}_{t+1} - \boldsymbol{\theta}_t$ . Thus we see that the divergence in the output distribution is a quadratic function of  $\boldsymbol{\delta}$ , where  $\mathbf{F}_x$  represents the curvature term. Thus we see that NGD is a kind of trust region method.



*Figure 5.11: Illustration of the benefits of natural gradient vs steepest descent on a 2D problem. (a) Trajectories of the two methods in parameter space (red = steepest descent, blue = NG). They both start at \$(1, -1)\$, bottom right location. (b) Objective vs number of iterations. (c) Gradient field in the \$\boldsymbol{\theta}\$ parameter space. (d) Gradient field in the whitened \$\boldsymbol{\phi} = \mathbf{F}^{\frac{1}{2}}\boldsymbol{\theta}\$ parameter space used by NG. Generated by `nat_grad_demo.py`.*

#### 5.3.4.1 Example

In this section, we consider a simple example of NGD from [SD12]. We will use a 2D Gaussian with an unusual, highly coupled parameterization:

$$p(\mathbf{y}; \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \frac{1}{2\pi} \exp \left[ -\frac{1}{2} \left( y_1 - \left[ 3\theta_1 + \frac{1}{3}\theta_2 \right] \right)^2 - \frac{1}{2} \left( y_2 - \frac{1}{3}\theta_1 \right)^2 \right] \quad (5.50)$$

The objective is the cross-entropy loss:

$$\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta}) = -\mathbb{E}_{p^*(\mathbf{y})} [\log p(\mathbf{y}; \boldsymbol{\theta})] \quad (5.51)$$

The gradient of this objective is given by

$$\nabla_{\boldsymbol{\theta}} \mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta}) = \begin{pmatrix} \mathbb{E}_{p^*(\mathbf{x})} [3(y_1 - [3\theta_1 + \frac{1}{3}\theta_2]) + \frac{1}{3}(y_2 - \frac{1}{3}\theta_1)] \\ \mathbb{E}_{p^*(\mathbf{x})} [\frac{1}{3}(y_1 - [3\theta_1 + \frac{1}{3}\theta_2])] \end{pmatrix} \quad (5.52)$$

Suppose that \$p^\*(\mathbf{y}) = p(\mathbf{y}; [0, 0])\$. Then the Fisher matrix is a constant matrix, given by

$$\mathbf{F} = \begin{pmatrix} 3^2 + \frac{1}{3^2} & 1 \\ 1 & \frac{1}{3^2} \end{pmatrix} \quad (5.53)$$

Fig. 5.11 compares steepest descent in  $\boldsymbol{\theta}$  space with the natural gradient method, which is equivalent to steepest descent in a “whitened” parameter space given by  $\phi = \mathbf{F}^{\frac{1}{2}}\boldsymbol{\theta}$  (see Sec. B.4.5 for details). Both methods start at  $\boldsymbol{\theta} = (1, -1)$ . The global optimum is at  $\boldsymbol{\theta} = (0, 0)$ . We see that the NG method (blue dots) converges much faster to this optimum and takes the shortest path, whereas steepest descent takes a very circuitous route. We also see that the gradient field in the whitened parameter space is more “spherical”, which makes descent much simpler and faster.

### 5.3.4.2 Approximating the FIM

Unfortunately, computing the FIM is in general intractable. However, a variety of approximations to this matrix have been proposed for high dimensional problems, such as the **KFAC** (Kronecker-Factored approximate curvature) method from [MG15].

A simpler approach is to approximate the FIM by replacing the model’s distribution with the empirical distribution. In particular, define  $p_D(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y}) = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^N \delta(\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}_n)\delta(\mathbf{y} - \mathbf{y}_n)$ ,  $p_D(\mathbf{x}) = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^N \delta(\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}_n)$  and  $p_{\boldsymbol{\theta}}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y}) = p_D(\mathbf{x})p(\mathbf{y}|\mathbf{x}, \boldsymbol{\theta})$ . Then we can compute the **empirical Fisher** [Mar16] as follows:

$$\mathbf{F} = \mathbb{E}_{p_{\boldsymbol{\theta}}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y})} [\nabla \log p(\mathbf{y}|\mathbf{x}, \boldsymbol{\theta}) \nabla \log p(\mathbf{y}|\mathbf{x}, \boldsymbol{\theta})^\top] \quad (5.54)$$

$$\approx \mathbb{E}_{p_D(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y})} [\nabla \log p(\mathbf{y}|\mathbf{x}, \boldsymbol{\theta}) \nabla \log p(\mathbf{y}|\mathbf{x}, \boldsymbol{\theta})^\top] \quad (5.55)$$

$$= \frac{1}{|\mathcal{D}|} \sum_{(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y}) \in \mathcal{D}} \nabla \log p(\mathbf{y}|\mathbf{x}, \boldsymbol{\theta}) \nabla \log p(\mathbf{y}|\mathbf{x}, \boldsymbol{\theta})^\top \quad (5.56)$$

This approximation is widely used, since it is simple to compute. Unfortunately, it does not work as well as the true Fisher [KBH19; Tho+19]. For it to be a good approximation, we need to already be close to the minimum, to have  $p_{\boldsymbol{\theta}}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y}) \approx p_D(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y})$ . Using the outer-product of gradients leads to a large or small preconditioner when the gradients are large or small, regardless of curvature. For example, for a linear regression model, the FIM is constant but the squared gradients are not; using the approximation leads to small steps when the gradient is large and large steps when the gradient is small.

## 5.4 Stochastic gradient descent

In this section, we consider **stochastic optimization**, where the goal is to minimize the average value of a function:

$$\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta}) = \mathbb{E}_{q(\mathbf{z})} [\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta}, \mathbf{z})] \quad (5.57)$$

where  $\mathbf{z}$  is a random input to the objective. This could be a “noise” term, coming from the environment, or it could be a training example drawn randomly from the training set, as we explain below.

At each iteration, we assume we observe  $\mathcal{L}_t(\boldsymbol{\theta}) = \mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta}, \mathbf{z}_t)$ , where  $\mathbf{z}_t \sim q$ . We also assume a way to compute an unbiased estimate of the gradient of  $\mathcal{L}$ . If the distribution  $q(\mathbf{z})$  is independent of the parameters we are optimizing, we can use  $\mathbf{g}_t = \nabla_{\boldsymbol{\theta}} \mathcal{L}_t(\boldsymbol{\theta}_t)$ . In this case, The resulting algorithm can be written as follows:

$$\boldsymbol{\theta}_{t+1} = \boldsymbol{\theta}_t - \eta_t \nabla \mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta}_t, \mathbf{z}_t) = \boldsymbol{\theta}_t - \eta_t \mathbf{g}_t \quad (5.58)$$

This method is known as **stochastic gradient descent** or **SGD**. As long as the gradient estimate is unbiased, then this method will converge to a stationary point, providing we decay the step size  $\eta_t$  at a certain rate, as we discuss in Sec. 5.4.3.

### 5.4.1 Application to finite sum problems

SGD is very widely used in machine learning. To see why, recall from Sec. 4.3 that many model fitting procedures are based on empirical risk minimization, which involve minimizing the following loss:

$$\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta}) = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^N \ell(\mathbf{y}_n, f(\mathbf{x}_n; \boldsymbol{\theta})) = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^N \mathcal{L}_n(\boldsymbol{\theta}) \quad (5.59)$$

This is called a **finite sum problem**. The gradient of this objective has the form

$$\mathbf{g}_t = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^N \nabla_{\boldsymbol{\theta}} \mathcal{L}_n(\boldsymbol{\theta}_t) = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^N \nabla_{\boldsymbol{\theta}} \ell(\mathbf{y}_n, f(\mathbf{x}_n; \boldsymbol{\theta}_t)) \quad (5.60)$$

This requires summing over all  $N$  training examples, and thus can be slow if  $N$  is large. Fortunately we can approximate this by sampling a **minibatch** of  $B \ll N$  samples to get

$$\mathbf{g}_t \approx \frac{1}{|\mathcal{B}_t|} \sum_{n \in \mathcal{B}_t} \nabla_{\boldsymbol{\theta}} \mathcal{L}_n(\boldsymbol{\theta}_t) = \frac{1}{|\mathcal{B}_t|} \sum_{n \in \mathcal{B}_t} \nabla_{\boldsymbol{\theta}} \ell(\mathbf{y}_n, f(\mathbf{x}_n; \boldsymbol{\theta}_t)) \quad (5.61)$$

where  $\mathcal{B}_t$  is a set of randomly chosen examples to use at iteration  $t$ .<sup>3</sup> This is an unbiased approximation to the empirical average in Eq. (5.60). Hence we can safely use this with SGD.

Although the theoretical rate of convergence of SGD is slower than batch GD (in particular, SGD has a sublinear convergence rate), in practice SGD is often faster, since the per-step time is much lower [BB08; BB11]. To see why SGD can make faster progress than full batch GD, suppose we have a dataset consisting of a single example duplicated  $K$  times. Batch training will be (at least)  $K$  times slower than SGD, since it will waste time computing the gradient for the repeated examples. Even if there are no duplicates, batch training can be wasteful, since early on in training the parameters are not well estimated, so it is not worth carefully evaluating the gradient.

### 5.4.2 Example: SGD for fitting linear regression

In this section, we show how to use SGD to fit a linear regression model. Recall from Sec. 4.2.7 that the objective has the form

$$\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta}) = \frac{1}{2N} \sum_{n=1}^N (\mathbf{x}_n^\top \boldsymbol{\theta} - y_n)^2 = \frac{1}{2N} \|\mathbf{X}\boldsymbol{\theta} - \mathbf{y}\|_2^2 \quad (5.62)$$

---

<sup>3</sup> In practice we usually sample  $\mathcal{B}_t$  without replacement. However, once we reach the end of the dataset (i.e., after a single training **epoch**), we can perform a random shuffling of the examples, to ensure that each minibatch on the next epoch is different from the last. This version of SGD is analyzed in [HS19].

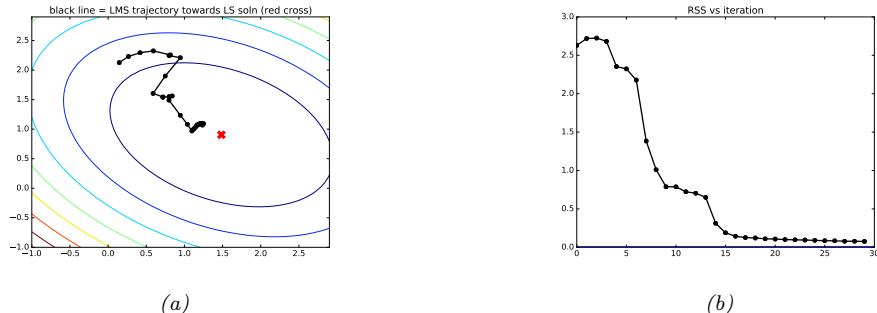


Figure 5.12: Illustration of the LMS algorithm. Left: we start from  $\theta = (-0.5, 2)$  and slowly converging to the least squares solution of  $\hat{\theta} = (1.45, 0.93)$  (red cross). Right: plot of objective function over time. Note that it does not decrease monotonically. Generated by `lms_demo.py`.

The gradient is

$$\mathbf{g}_t = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^N (\boldsymbol{\theta}_t^\top \mathbf{x}_n - y_n) \mathbf{x}_n \quad (5.63)$$

Now consider using SGD with a minibatch size of  $B = 1$ . The update becomes

$$\boldsymbol{\theta}_{t+1} = \boldsymbol{\theta}_t - \eta_t (\boldsymbol{\theta}_t^\top \mathbf{x}_n - y_n) \mathbf{x}_n \quad (5.64)$$

where  $n = n(t)$  is the index of the example chosen at iteration  $t$ . The overall algorithm is called the **least mean squares (LMS)** algorithm, and is also known as the **delta rule**, or the **Widrow-Hoff rule**.

Fig. 5.12 shows the results of applying this algorithm to the data shown in Fig. 11.2. We start at  $\boldsymbol{\theta} = (-0.5, 2)$  and converge (in the sense that  $\|\boldsymbol{\theta}_t - \boldsymbol{\theta}_{t-1}\|_2^2$  drops below a threshold of  $10^{-2}$ ) in about 26 iterations. Note that SGD (and hence LMS) may require multiple passes through the data to find the optimum. By contrast, the recursive least squares algorithm, which is based on the Kalman filter and which uses second-order information, finds the optimum in a single pass (see Sec. 11.6.7).

### 5.4.3 Choosing the step size

When using SGD, we need to be careful in how we choose the learning rate in order to achieve convergence. A sufficient condition is if the **learning rate schedule** satisfies the **Robbins-Monro conditions**:

$$\eta_t \rightarrow 0, \frac{\sum_{t=1}^{\infty} \eta_t^2}{\sum_{t=1}^{\infty} \eta_t} \rightarrow 0 \quad (5.65)$$

A common choice is the **power schedule**, which has the form  $\eta_t = \eta_0 / (1 + t/s)^c$ . Another common choice is the **exponentially decaying schedule**, in which  $\eta_t = \eta_0 c^{t/s}$ . This will reduce the step size by a constant factor of  $c$  every  $s$  steps (typical values would be  $c = 0.1$  and  $s = 20$ ). See Sec. 13.4.1 for more discussion of heuristics for tuning the learning rate.

An alternative to using heuristics for estimating the learning rate is to use line search (Sec. 5.2.2.2). This is tricky when using SGD, because the noisy gradients make the computation of the Armijo condition difficult [CS20]. However, [Vas+19] show that it can be made to work if the variance of the gradient noise goes to zero over time. This can happen if the model is sufficient flexible that it can perfectly interpolate the training set.

#### 5.4.4 Iterate averaging

The parameter estimates produced by SGD can be very unstable over time. To reduce the variance of the estimate, we can compute the average using

$$\bar{\theta}_t = \frac{1}{t} \sum_{i=1}^t \theta_i = \frac{1}{t} \theta_t + \frac{t-1}{t} \bar{\theta}_{t-1} \quad (5.66)$$

where  $\theta_t$  are the usual SGD iterates. This is called **iterate averaging** or **Polyak-Ruppert averaging** [Rup88].

In [PJ92], they prove that the estimate  $\bar{\theta}_t$  achieves the best possible asymptotic convergence rate among SGD algorithms, matching that of variants using second-order information, such as Hessians.

This averaging can also have statistical benefits. For example, in [NR18], they prove that, in the case of linear regression, this method is equivalent to  $\ell_2$  regularization (i.e., ridge regression).

Rather than an exponential moving average of SGD iterates, **Stochastic Weight Averaging** (SWA) [Izm+18] uses an *equal* average in conjunction with a modified learning rate schedule. In contrast to standard Polyak-Ruppert averaging, which was motivated for faster convergence rates, SWA exploits the flatness in objectives used to train deep neural networks, to find solutions which provide better generalization.

#### 5.4.5 Variance reduction

In this section, we discuss various ways to reduce the variance in SGD. In some cases, this can improve the theoretical convergence rate from sublinear to linear (i.e., the same as full-batch gradient descent) [SLRB17; JZ13; DBLJ14]. These methods reduces the variance of the gradients, rather than the parameters themselves and are designed to work for finite sum problems.

##### 5.4.5.1 SVRG

The basic idea of **stochastic variance reduced gradient** (SVRG) [JZ13] is to use a control variate, in which we estimate a baseline value of the gradient based on the full batch, which we then use to compare the stochastic gradients to.

More precisely, ever so often (e.g., once per epoch), we compute the full gradient at a “snapshot” of the model parameters  $\tilde{\theta}$ ; the corresponding “exact” gradient is therefore  $\nabla \mathcal{L}(\tilde{\theta})$ . At step  $t$ , we compute the usual stochastic gradient at the current parameters,  $\nabla \mathcal{L}_t(\theta_t)$ , but also at the snapshot parameters,  $\nabla \mathcal{L}_t(\tilde{\theta})$ , which we use as a baseline. We can then use the following improved gradient estimate

$$\mathbf{g}_t = \nabla \mathcal{L}_t(\theta_t) - \nabla \mathcal{L}_t(\tilde{\theta}) + \nabla \mathcal{L}(\tilde{\theta}) \quad (5.67)$$

to compute  $\boldsymbol{\theta}_{t+1}$ . This is unbiased because  $\mathbb{E} \left[ \nabla \mathcal{L}_t(\tilde{\boldsymbol{\theta}}) \right] = \nabla \mathcal{L}(\tilde{\boldsymbol{\theta}})$ . Furthermore, the update only involves two gradient computations, since we can compute  $\nabla \mathcal{L}(\tilde{\boldsymbol{\theta}})$  once per epoch. At the end of the epoch, we update the snapshot parameters,  $\tilde{\boldsymbol{\theta}}$ , based on the most recent value of  $\boldsymbol{\theta}_t$ , or a running average of the iterates, and update the expected baseline. (We can compute snapshots less often, but then the baseline will not be correlated with the objective and can hurt performance, as shown in [DB18].)

Iterations of SVRG are computationally faster than those of full-batch GD, but SVRG can still match the theoretical convergence rate of GD.

#### 5.4.5.2 SAGA

In this section, we describe the **stochastic averaged gradient accelerated (SAGA)** algorithm of [DBLJ14]. Unlike SVRG, it only requires one full batch gradient computation, at the start of the algorithm. However, it “pays” for this saving in time by using more memory. In particular, it must store  $N$  gradient vectors. This enables the method to maintain an approximation of the global gradient by removing the old local gradient from the overall sum and replacing it with the new local gradient. This is called an **aggregated gradient** method.

More precisely, we first initialize by computing  $\mathbf{g}_n^{\text{local}} = \nabla \mathcal{L}_n(\boldsymbol{\theta}_0)$  for all  $n$ , and the average,  $\mathbf{g}^{\text{avg}} = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^N \mathbf{g}_n^{\text{local}}$ . Then, at iteration  $t$ , we use the gradient estimate

$$\mathbf{g}_t = \nabla \mathcal{L}_n(\boldsymbol{\theta}_t) - \mathbf{g}_n^{\text{local}} + \mathbf{g}^{\text{avg}} \quad (5.68)$$

where  $n \sim \text{Unif}\{1, \dots, N\}$  is the example index sampled at iteration  $t$ . We then update  $\mathbf{g}_n^{\text{local}} = \nabla \mathcal{L}_n(\boldsymbol{\theta}_t)$  and  $\mathbf{g}^{\text{avg}}$  by replacing the old  $\mathbf{g}_n^{\text{local}}$  by its new value.

This has an advantage over SVRG since it only has to do one full batch sweep at the start. (In fact, the initial sweep is not necessary, since we can compute  $\mathbf{g}^{\text{avg}}$  “lazily”, by only incorporating gradients we have seen so far.) The downside is the large extra memory cost. However, if the features (and hence gradients) are sparse, the memory cost can be reasonable. Indeed, the SAGA algorithm is recommended for use in the sklearn logistic regression code when  $N$  is large and  $\mathbf{x}$  is sparse.<sup>4</sup>

#### 5.4.5.3 Application to deep learning

Variance reduction methods are widely used for fitting ML models with convex objectives, such as linear models. However, there are various difficulties associated with using SVRG with conventional deep learning training practices. For example, the use of batch normalization (Sec. 13.4.4), data augmentation (Sec. 19.1) and dropout (Sec. 13.5.4) all break the assumptions of the method, since the loss will differ randomly in ways that depend not just on the parameters and the data index  $n$ . For more details, see e.g., [DB18; Arn+19].

#### 5.4.6 Preconditioned SGD

In this section, we consider **preconditioned SGD**, which involves the following update:

$$\boldsymbol{\theta}_{t+1} = \boldsymbol{\theta}_t - \eta_t \mathbf{M}_t^{-1} \mathbf{g}_t, \quad (5.69)$$

---

4. See [https://scikit-learn.org/stable/modules/linear\\_model.html#logistic-regression](https://scikit-learn.org/stable/modules/linear_model.html#logistic-regression).

where  $\mathbf{M}_t$  is a **preconditioning matrix**, or simply the **preconditioner**, typically chosen to be positive-definite. Unfortunately the noise in the gradient estimates make it difficult to reliably estimate the Hessian, which makes it difficult to use the methods from Sec. 5.3. In addition, it is expensive to solve for the update direction with a full preconditioning matrix. Therefore most practitioners use a diagonal preconditioner  $\mathbf{M}_t$ . Such preconditioners do not necessarily use second-order information, but often result in speedups compared to vanilla SGD.

#### 5.4.6.1 ADAGRAD

The **ADAGRAD** (short for “adaptive gradient”) method of [DHS11] was originally designed for optimizing convex objectives where many elements of the gradient vector are zero; these might correspond to features that are rarely present in the input, such as rare words. The update has the following form

$$\theta_{t+1,d} = \theta_{t,d} - \eta_t \frac{1}{\sqrt{s_{t,d} + \epsilon}} g_{t,d} \quad (5.70)$$

where

$$s_{t,d} = \sum_{\tau=1}^t g_{\tau,d}^2 \quad (5.71)$$

is the sum of the squared gradients and  $\epsilon > 0$  is a small term to avoid dividing by zero. Equivalently we can write the update in vector form as follows:

$$\Delta \theta_t = -\eta_t \frac{1}{\sqrt{\mathbf{s}_t + \epsilon}} \mathbf{g}_t \quad (5.72)$$

where the square root and division is performed elementwise. Viewed as preconditioned SGD, this is equivalent to taking  $\mathbf{M}_t = \text{diag}(\mathbf{s}_t + \epsilon)^{1/2}$ . This is an example of an **adaptive learning rate**; the overall stepsize  $\eta_t$  still needs to be chosen, but the results are less sensitive to it compared to vanilla GD. In particular, we usually fix  $\eta_t = \eta_0$ .

#### 5.4.6.2 RMSPROP and ADADELTA

A defining feature of ADAGRAD is that the term in the denominator gets larger over time, so the effective learning rate drops. While it is necessary to ensure convergence, it might hurt performance as the denominator gets large too fast.

An alternative is to use an exponentially weighted moving average (EWMA, Sec. 4.6.2) of the past squared gradients, rather than their sum:

$$s_{t+1,d} = \beta s_{t,d} + (1 - \beta) g_{t,d}^2 \quad (5.73)$$

In practice we usually use  $\beta \sim 0.9$ , which puts more weight on recent examples. In this case,

$$\sqrt{s_{t,d}} \approx \text{RMS}(\mathbf{g}_{1:t,d}) = \sqrt{\frac{1}{t} \sum_{\tau=1}^t g_{\tau,d}^2} \quad (5.74)$$

where RMS stands for “root mean squared”. Hence this method, (which is based on the earlier **RPROP** method of [RB93]) is known as **RMSProp** [Hin14], The overall update of RMSProp is

$$\Delta\theta_t = -\eta_t \frac{1}{\sqrt{\mathbf{s}_t + \epsilon}} \mathbf{g}_t. \quad (5.75)$$

Similar to RMSProp, **ADADELTA**, was independently introduced in [Zei12]. In addition to accumulating an EWMA of the gradients in  $\hat{\mathbf{s}}$ , it also keeps an EWMA of the updates  $\delta_t$  to obtain an update of the form

$$\Delta\theta_t = -\eta_t \frac{\sqrt{\delta_{t-1} + \epsilon}}{\sqrt{\mathbf{s}_t + \epsilon}} \mathbf{g}_t \quad (5.76)$$

where

$$\delta_t = \beta\delta_{t-1} + (1 - \beta)(\Delta\theta_t)^2 \quad (5.77)$$

and  $\mathbf{s}_t$  is the same as in RMSProp. This has the advantage that the “units” of the numerator and denominator cancel, so we are just elementwise-multiplying the gradient by a scalar. This eliminates the need to tune the learning rate  $\eta_t$ , which means one can simply set  $\eta_t = 1$ , although popular implementations of ADADELTA still keep  $\eta_t$  as a tunable hyperparameter. However, since these adaptive learning rates need not decrease with time (unless we choose  $\eta_t$  to explicitly do so), these methods are not guaranteed to converge to a solution.

#### 5.4.6.3 ADAM

It is possible to combine RMSProp with momentum. In particular, let us compute an EWMA of the gradients (as in momentum) and squared gradients (as in RMSProp)

$$\mathbf{m}_t = \beta_1 \mathbf{m}_{t-1} + (1 - \beta_1) \mathbf{g}_t \quad (5.78)$$

$$\mathbf{s}_t = \beta_2 \mathbf{s}_{t-1} + (1 - \beta_2) \mathbf{g}_t^2 \quad (5.79)$$

We then perform the following update:

$$\Delta\theta_t = -\eta_t \frac{1}{\sqrt{\mathbf{s}_t + \epsilon}} \mathbf{m}_t \quad (5.80)$$

The resulting method is known as **ADAM**, which stands for “adaptive moment estimation” [KB15]. In practice, the authors recommend using the bias-corrected moments, which increase the values early in the optimization process:

$$\hat{\mathbf{m}}_t = \mathbf{m}_t / (1 - \beta_1^t) \quad (5.81)$$

$$\hat{\mathbf{s}}_t = \mathbf{s}_t / (1 - \beta_2^t) \quad (5.82)$$

The advantage of bias-correction is shown in Fig. 4.9.

The standard values for the various constants are  $\beta_1 = 0.9$ ,  $\beta_2 = 0.999$  and  $\epsilon = 10^{-7}$ . (If we set  $\beta_1 = 0$  and no bias-correction, we recover RMSProp, which does not use momentum.) For the overall learning rate, it is common to use a fixed value such as  $\eta_t = 0.001$ . Again, as the adaptive learning rate may not decrease over time, convergence is not guaranteed.

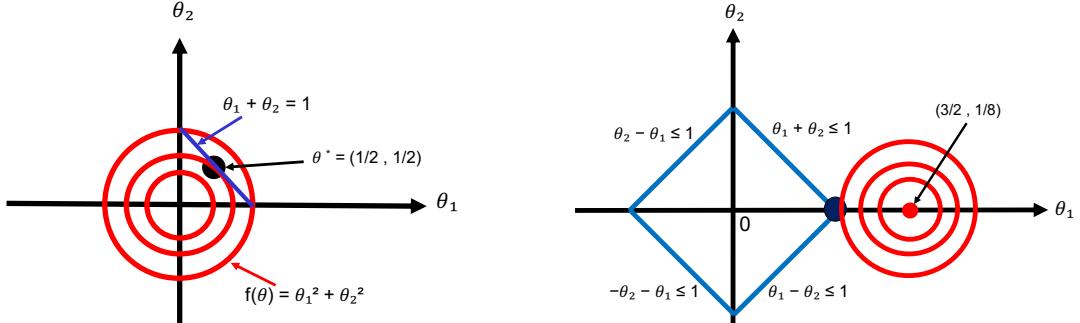


Figure 5.13: Illustration of some constrained optimization problems. Red contours are the level sets of the objective function  $\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta})$ . Optimal constrained solution is the black dot, (a) Blue line is the equality constraint  $h(\boldsymbol{\theta}) = 0$ . (b) Blue lines denote the inequality constraints  $|\theta_1| + |\theta_2| \leq 1$ . (Compare to Fig. 11.10 (left).)

#### 5.4.6.4 Issues with adaptive learning rates

When using diagonal scaling methods, the overall learning rate is determined by  $\eta_0 \mathbf{M}_t^{-1}$ , which changes with time. Hence these methods are often called **adaptive learning rate** methods. However, they still require setting the base learning rate  $\eta_0$ .

Since the EWMA methods are typically used in the stochastic setting where the gradient estimates are noisy, their learning rate adaptation can result in non-convergence even on convex problems [RKK18]. Various solutions to this problem have been proposed, including AMSGRAD [RKK18], PADAM [CG18; Zho+18], and YOGI [Zah+18].

## 5.5 Constrained optimization

In this section, we consider the following **constrained optimization problem**:

$$\boldsymbol{\theta}^* = \arg \min_{\boldsymbol{\theta} \in \mathcal{C}} \mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta}) \quad (5.83)$$

where the feasible set, or constraint set, is

$$\mathcal{C} = \{\boldsymbol{\theta} \in \mathbb{R}^D : h_i(\boldsymbol{\theta}) = 0, i \in \mathcal{E}, g_j(\boldsymbol{\theta}) \leq 0, j \in \mathcal{I}\} \quad (5.84)$$

where  $\mathcal{E}$  is the set of **equality constraints**, and  $\mathcal{I}$  is the set of **inequality constraints**, and  $\mathcal{C} = \mathcal{I} \cup \mathcal{E}$  is the set of all constraints. (We define the constraints in this way, rather than as boolean membership of some set, so it gives us a measure of how far from feasible any given proposed solution is.)

For example, suppose we have a quadratic objective,  $\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta}) = \theta_1^2 + \theta_2^2$ , subject to a linear equality constraint,  $h(\boldsymbol{\theta}) = 1 - \theta_1 - \theta_2 = 0$ . Fig. 5.13(a) plots the level sets of  $f$ , as well as the constraint surface. What we are trying to do is find the point  $\boldsymbol{\theta}^*$  that lives on the line, but which is closest to the origin. It is clear from the geometry that the optimal solution is  $\boldsymbol{\theta} = (0.5, 0.5)$ , indicated by the solid black dot.

In the following sections, we briefly describe some of the theory and algorithms underlying constrained optimization. More details can be found in other books, such as [BV04; NW06; Ber15; Ber16].

### 5.5.1 Lagrange multipliers

In this section, we discuss how to solve equality constrained optimization problems. We initially assume that we have just one equality constraint,  $h(\boldsymbol{\theta}) = 0$ .

First note that for any point on the constraint surface,  $\nabla h(\boldsymbol{\theta})$  will be orthogonal to the constraint surface. To see why, consider another point nearby,  $\boldsymbol{\theta} + \boldsymbol{\epsilon}$ , that also lies on the surface. If we make a first-order Taylor expansion around  $\boldsymbol{\theta}$  we have

$$h(\boldsymbol{\theta} + \boldsymbol{\epsilon}) \approx h(\boldsymbol{\theta}) + \boldsymbol{\epsilon}^\top \nabla h(\boldsymbol{\theta}) \quad (5.85)$$

Since both  $\boldsymbol{\theta}$  and  $\boldsymbol{\theta} + \boldsymbol{\epsilon}$  are on the constraint surface, we must have  $h(\boldsymbol{\theta}) = h(\boldsymbol{\theta} + \boldsymbol{\epsilon})$  and hence  $\boldsymbol{\epsilon}^\top \nabla h(\boldsymbol{\theta}) \approx 0$ . Since  $\boldsymbol{\epsilon}$  is parallel to the constraint surface,  $\nabla h(\boldsymbol{\theta})$  must be perpendicular to it.

We seek a point  $\boldsymbol{\theta}^*$  on the constraint surface such that  $\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta})$  is minimized. We just showed that it must satisfy the condition that  $\nabla h(\boldsymbol{\theta}^*)$  is orthogonal to the constraint surface. In addition, such a point must have the property that  $\nabla \mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta})$  is also orthogonal to the constraint surface, as otherwise we could decrease  $\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta})$  by moving a short distance along the constraint surface. Since both  $\nabla h(\boldsymbol{\theta})$  and  $\nabla \mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta})$  are orthogonal to the constraint surface at  $\boldsymbol{\theta}^*$ , they must be parallel (or anti-parallel) to each other. Hence there must exist a constant  $\lambda^* \in \mathbb{R}$  such that

$$\nabla \mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta}^*) = \lambda^* \nabla h(\boldsymbol{\theta}^*) \quad (5.86)$$

(We cannot just equate the gradient vectors, since they may have different magnitudes.) The constant  $\lambda^*$  is called a **Lagrange multiplier**, and can be positive, negative, or zero. This latter case occurs when  $\nabla f(\boldsymbol{\theta}^*) = 0$ .

We can convert Eq. (5.86) into an objective, known as the **Lagrangian**, that we should minimize:

$$\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta}, \lambda) \triangleq \mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta}) - \lambda h(\boldsymbol{\theta}) \quad (5.87)$$

At a stationary point of the Lagrangian, we have

$$\nabla_{\boldsymbol{\theta}, \lambda} \mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta}, \lambda) = \mathbf{0} \iff \lambda \nabla_{\boldsymbol{\theta}} h(\boldsymbol{\theta}) = \nabla \mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta}), h(\boldsymbol{\theta}) = 0 \quad (5.88)$$

This is called a **critical point**, and satisfies the original constraint  $h(\boldsymbol{\theta}) = 0$  and Eq. (5.86).

If we have  $m > 1$  constraints, we can form a new constraint function by addition, as follows:

$$\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta}, \lambda) = \mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta}) - \sum_{j=1}^m \lambda_j h_j(\boldsymbol{\theta}) \quad (5.89)$$

We now have  $D+m$  equations in  $D+m$  unknowns and we can use standard unconstrained optimization methods to find a stationary point. We give some examples below.

### 5.5.1.1 Example: 2d Quadratic objective with one linear equality constraint

Consider minimizing  $\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta}) = \theta_1^2 + \theta_2^2 - 1$  subject to the constraint that  $\theta_1 + \theta_2 = 1$ .

(This is the problem illustrated in Fig. 5.13(a).) The Lagrangian is

$$L(\theta_1, \theta_2, \lambda) = \theta_1^2 + \theta_2^2 - 1 + \lambda(\theta_1 + \theta_2 - 1) \quad (5.90)$$

We have the following conditions for a stationary point:

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial \theta_1} L(\theta_1, \theta_2, \lambda) = 2\theta_1 + \lambda = 0 \quad (5.91)$$

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial \theta_2} L(\theta_1, \theta_2, \lambda) = 2\theta_2 + \lambda = 0 \quad (5.92)$$

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial \lambda} L(\theta_1, \theta_2, \lambda) = \theta_1 + \theta_2 - 1 = 0 \quad (5.93)$$

From Equations 5.91 and 5.92 we find  $2\theta_1 = -\lambda = 2\theta_2$ , so  $\theta_1 = \theta_2$ . Also, from Eq. (5.93), we find  $2\theta_1 = 1$ . So  $\boldsymbol{\theta}^* = (0.5, 0.5)$ , as we claimed earlier. Furthermore, this is the global minimum since the objective is convex and the constraint is affine.

## 5.5.2 The KKT conditions

In this section, we generalize the concept of Lagrange multipliers to additionally handle inequality constraints.

First consider the case where we have a single inequality constraint  $g(\boldsymbol{\theta}) \leq 0$ . To find the optimum, one approach would be to consider an unconstrained problem where we add the penalty as an infinite step function:

$$\hat{\mathcal{L}}(\boldsymbol{\theta}) = \mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta}) + \infty \mathbb{I}(g(\boldsymbol{\theta}) > 0) \quad (5.94)$$

However, this is a discontinuous function that is hard to optimize.

Instead, we create a lower bound of the form  $\mu g(\boldsymbol{\theta})$ , where  $\mu \geq 0$ . This gives us the following Lagrangian:

$$\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta}, \mu) = \mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta}) + \mu g(\boldsymbol{\theta}) \quad (5.95)$$

Note that the step function can be recovered using

$$\hat{\mathcal{L}}(\boldsymbol{\theta}) = \max_{\mu \geq 0} \mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta}, \mu) = \begin{cases} \infty & \text{if } g(\boldsymbol{\theta}) > 0, \\ \mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta}) & \text{otherwise} \end{cases} \quad (5.96)$$

Thus our optimization problem becomes

$$\min_{\boldsymbol{\theta}} \max_{\mu \geq 0} \mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta}, \mu) \quad (5.97)$$

Now consider the general case where we have multiple inequality constraints,  $\mathbf{g}(\boldsymbol{\theta}) \leq \mathbf{0}$ , and multiple equality constraints,  $\mathbf{h}(\boldsymbol{\theta}) = \mathbf{0}$ . The **generalized Lagrangian** becomes

$$\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta}, \boldsymbol{\mu}, \boldsymbol{\lambda}) = \mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta}) + \sum_i \mu_i g_i(\boldsymbol{\theta}) + \sum_j \lambda_j h_j(\boldsymbol{\theta}) \quad (5.98)$$

(We are free to change  $-\lambda_j h_j$  to  $+\lambda_j h_j$  since the sign is arbitrary.) Our optimization problem becomes

$$\min_{\boldsymbol{\theta}} \max_{\boldsymbol{\mu} \geq \mathbf{0}, \boldsymbol{\lambda}} \mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta}, \boldsymbol{\mu}, \boldsymbol{\lambda}) \quad (5.99)$$

When  $\mathcal{L}$ ,  $g$  and  $h$  are convex and satisfy a technical property called Slater's condition (see [BV04, Sec.5.2.3]) all critical points of this problem must satisfy the following criteria.

- All constraints are satisfied (this is called **feasibility**):

$$\mathbf{g}(\boldsymbol{\theta}) \leq \mathbf{0}, \mathbf{h}(\boldsymbol{\theta}) = \mathbf{0} \quad (5.100)$$

- The solution is a stationary point:

$$\nabla \mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta}^*) - \sum_i \mu_i \nabla g_i(\boldsymbol{\theta}^*) - \sum_j \lambda_j \nabla h_j(\boldsymbol{\theta}^*) = \mathbf{0} \quad (5.101)$$

- The penalty for the inequality constraint points in the right direction (this is called **dual feasibility**):

$$\boldsymbol{\mu} \geq \mathbf{0} \quad (5.102)$$

- The Lagrange multipliers pick up any slack in the inactive constraints, i.e., either  $\mu_i = 0$  or  $g_i(\boldsymbol{\theta}^*) = 0$ , so

$$\boldsymbol{\mu} \odot \mathbf{g} = \mathbf{0} \quad (5.103)$$

This is called **complementary slackness**.

To see why the last condition holds, consider (for simplicity) the case of a single inequality constraint,  $g(\boldsymbol{\theta}) \leq 0$ . Either it is **active**, meaning  $g(\boldsymbol{\theta}) = 0$ , or it is **inactive**, meaning  $g(\boldsymbol{\theta}) < 0$ . In the active case, the solution lies on the constraint boundary, and  $g(\boldsymbol{\theta}) = 0$  becomes an equality constraint; then we have  $\nabla \mathcal{L} = \mu \nabla g$  for some constant  $\mu \neq 0$ , because of Eq. (5.86). In the inactive case, the solution is not on the constraint boundary; we still have  $\nabla \mathcal{L} = \mu \nabla g$ , but now  $\mu = 0$ .

These are called the **Karush-Kuhn-Tucker (KKT)** conditions. If  $\mathcal{L}$  is a convex function, and the constraints define a convex set, the KKT conditions are sufficient for (global) optimality, as well as necessary.

### 5.5.3 Linear programming

Consider optimizing a linear function subject to linear constraints. We can write such a problem in **general form** as follows.

$$\min_{\boldsymbol{\theta}} \mathbf{c}^\top \boldsymbol{\theta} \quad \text{s.t.} \quad \mathbf{A}_{le} \boldsymbol{\theta} \leq \mathbf{b}_{le}, \mathbf{A}_{ge} \boldsymbol{\theta} \geq \mathbf{b}_{ge}, \mathbf{A}_{eq} \boldsymbol{\theta} = \mathbf{b}_{eq}, \quad (5.104)$$

This kind of optimization problem is known as a **linear program**. Let us now rewrite this in **standard form**, as follows:

$$\min_{\boldsymbol{\theta}} \mathbf{c}^\top \boldsymbol{\theta} \quad \text{s.t.} \quad \mathbf{A} \boldsymbol{\theta} \leq \mathbf{b}, \boldsymbol{\theta} \geq \mathbf{0} \quad (5.105)$$

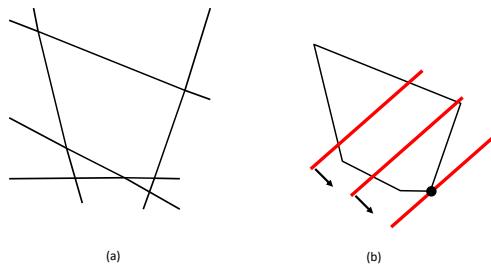


Figure 5.14: (a) A convex polytope in 2d defined by the intersection of linear constraints. (b) Depiction of the feasible set as well as the linear objective function. The red line is a level set of the objective, and the arrow indicates the direction in which it is improving. We see that the optimal solution lies at a vertex of the polytope.

To do this, we replace greater-than inequalities by less-than inequalities, and split equalities into two:

$$\mathbf{A}_{ge}\boldsymbol{\theta} \geq \mathbf{b}_{ge} \rightarrow -\mathbf{A}_{ge}\boldsymbol{\theta} \leq -\mathbf{b}_{ge} \quad (5.106)$$

$$\mathbf{A}_{eq}\boldsymbol{\theta} = \mathbf{b}_{eq} \rightarrow \begin{cases} \mathbf{A}_{eq}\boldsymbol{\theta} & \leq \mathbf{b}_{eq} \\ -\mathbf{A}_{eq}\boldsymbol{\theta} & \leq -\mathbf{b}_{eq} \end{cases} \quad (5.107)$$

The feasible set defines a convex **polytope**, which is a convex set defined as the intersection of half spaces. See Fig. 5.14(a) for a 2d example. Fig. 5.14(b) shows a linear cost function that decreases as we move to the bottom right. We see that the lowest point that is in the feasible set is a vertex. In fact, it can be proved that the optimum point always occurs at a vertex of the polytope, assuming the solution is unique. If there are multiple solutions, the line will be parallel to a face. There may also be no optima inside the feasible set; in this case, the problem is said to be infeasible.

### 5.5.3.1 The simplex algorithm

It can be shown that the optima of an LP occur at vertices of the polytope defining the feasible set (see Fig. 5.14(b) for an example). The **simplex algorithm** solves LPs by moving from vertex to vertex, each time seeking the edge which most improves the objective.

In the worse case, the simplex algorithm can take time exponential in  $D$ , although in practice it is usually very efficient. There are various polynomial-time algorithms based on the interior point method.

### 5.5.3.2 Applications

There are many applications of linear programming in science, engineering and business. It is also useful in some machine learning problems. For example, Sec. 11.4.2.1 shows how to use it to solve robust linear regression. It is also useful for state estimation in graphical models (see e.g., [SGJ11]).

### 5.5.4 Quadratic programming

Consider minimizing a quadratic objective subject to linear equality and inequality constraints. This kind of problem is known as a **quadratic program** or **QP**. In general, it has the form

$$\min_{\boldsymbol{\theta}} \frac{1}{2} \boldsymbol{\theta}^\top \mathbf{H} \boldsymbol{\theta} + \mathbf{c}^\top \boldsymbol{\theta} \quad \text{s.t.} \quad \mathbf{A}\boldsymbol{\theta} \leq \mathbf{b}, \quad \mathbf{A}_{eq}\boldsymbol{\theta} = \mathbf{b}_{eq} \quad (5.108)$$

If  $\mathbf{H}$  is positive semidefinite, then this is a convex optimization problem.

#### 5.5.4.1 Example: 2d quadratic objective with linear inequality constraints

As a concrete example, suppose we want to minimize

$$\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta}) = (\theta_1 - \frac{3}{2})^2 + (\theta_2 - \frac{1}{8})^2 = \frac{1}{2} \boldsymbol{\theta}^\top \mathbf{H} \boldsymbol{\theta} + \mathbf{c}^\top \boldsymbol{\theta} + \text{const} \quad (5.109)$$

where  $\mathbf{H} = 2\mathbf{I}$  and  $\mathbf{c} = -(3, 1/4)$ , subject to

$$|\theta_1| + |\theta_2| \leq 1 \quad (5.110)$$

See Fig. 5.13(b) for an illustration.

We can rewrite the constraints as

$$\theta_1 + \theta_2 \leq 1, \quad \theta_1 - \theta_2 \leq 1, \quad -\theta_1 + \theta_2 \leq 1, \quad -\theta_1 - \theta_2 \leq 1 \quad (5.111)$$

which we can write more compactly as

$$\mathbf{A}\boldsymbol{\theta} - \mathbf{b} \leq \mathbf{0} \quad (5.112)$$

where  $\mathbf{b} = \mathbf{1}$  and

$$\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & -1 \\ -1 & 1 \\ -1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \quad (5.113)$$

This is now in the standard QP form.

From the geometry of the problem, shown in Fig. 5.13(b), we see that the constraints corresponding to the two left faces of the diamond (the two left faces of the diamond) are inactive (since we are trying to get as close to the center of the circle as possible, which is outside of, and to the right of, the constrained feasible region). Denoting  $g_i(\boldsymbol{\theta})$  as the inequality constraint corresponding to row  $i$  of  $\mathbf{A}$ , this means  $g_3(\boldsymbol{\theta}^*) > 0$  and  $g_4(\boldsymbol{\theta}^*) > 0$ , and hence, by complementarity,  $\mu_3^* = \mu_4^* = 0$ . We can therefore remove these inactive constraints.

From the KKT conditions we know that

$$\mathbf{H}\boldsymbol{\theta} + \mathbf{c} + \mathbf{A}^\top \boldsymbol{\mu} = \mathbf{0} \quad (5.114)$$

Using these for the actively constrained subproblem, we get

$$\begin{pmatrix} 2 & 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 2 & 1 & -1 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & -1 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \theta_1 \\ \theta_2 \\ \mu_1 \\ \mu_2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 1/4 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \quad (5.115)$$

Hence the solution is

$$\boldsymbol{\theta}_* = (1, 0)^\top, \boldsymbol{\mu}_* = (0.625, 0.375, 0, 0)^\top \quad (5.116)$$

Notice that the optimal value of  $\boldsymbol{\theta}$  occurs at one of the vertices of the  $\ell_1$  “ball” (the diamond shape).

#### 5.5.4.2 Applications

There are several applications of quadratic programming in ML. In Sec. 11.5, we show how to use it for sparse linear regression. And in Sec. 17.5, we show how to use it for SVMs (support vector machines).

#### 5.5.5 Mixed integer linear programming

**Integer linear programming** or **ILP** corresponds to minimizing a linear objective, subject to linear constraints, where the optimization variables are discrete integers instead of reals. In standard form, the problem is as follows:

$$\min_{\boldsymbol{\theta}} \mathbf{c}^\top \boldsymbol{\theta} \quad \text{s.t.} \quad \mathbf{A}\boldsymbol{\theta} \leq \mathbf{b}, \boldsymbol{\theta} \geq 0, \boldsymbol{\theta} \in \mathbb{Z}^D \quad (5.117)$$

where  $\mathbb{Z}$  is the set of integers. If some of the optimization variables are real-valued, it is called a **mixed ILP**, often called a **MIP** for short. (If all of the variables are real-valued, it becomes a standard LP.)

MIPs have a large number of applications, such as in vehicle routing, scheduling and packing. They are also useful for some ML applications, such as formally verifying the behavior of certain kinds of deep neural networks [And+18], and proving robustness properties of DNNs to adversarial (worst-case) perturbations [TXT19].

## 5.6 Proximal gradient method

We are often interested in optimizing an objective of the form

$$\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta}) = \mathcal{L}_s(\boldsymbol{\theta}) + \mathcal{L}_r(\boldsymbol{\theta}) \quad (5.118)$$

where  $\mathcal{L}_s$  is differentiable (smooth), and  $\mathcal{L}_r$  is convex but not necessarily differentiable (i.e., it may be non-smooth or “rough”). For example,  $\mathcal{L}_s$  might be the NLL, and  $\mathcal{L}_r$  might be an indicator function that is infinite if a constraint is violated (see Sec. 5.6.1), or  $\mathcal{L}_r$  might be the  $\ell_1$  norm of some parameters (see Sec. 5.6.2), or  $\mathcal{L}_r$  might measure how far the parameters are from a set of allowed quantized values (see Sec. 5.6.3).

One way to tackle such problems is to use the **proximal gradient method** (see e.g., [PB+14; PSW15]). Roughly speaking, this takes a step in the direction of  $\mathcal{L}_s$ , and then projects the resulting update into a space that respects  $\mathcal{L}_r$ . More precisely, the update is as follows

$$\boldsymbol{\theta}_{t+1} = \text{prox}_{\eta_t \mathcal{L}_r}(\boldsymbol{\theta}_t - \eta_t \nabla \mathcal{L}_s(\boldsymbol{\theta}_t)) \quad (5.119)$$

where  $\text{prox}_{\eta f}(\boldsymbol{\theta})$  is the **proximal operator** of  $\mathcal{L}_r$  (scaled by  $\eta$ ) evaluated at  $\boldsymbol{\theta}$ :

$$\text{prox}_{\eta f}(\boldsymbol{\theta}) \triangleq \underset{\boldsymbol{\theta}_0}{\operatorname{argmin}} \left( f(\boldsymbol{\theta}_0) + \frac{1}{2\eta} \|\boldsymbol{\theta}_0 - \boldsymbol{\theta}\|_2^2 \right) = \underset{\mathbf{z}}{\operatorname{argmin}} f(\boldsymbol{\theta}_0) \quad \text{s.t.} \quad \|\boldsymbol{\theta}_0 - \boldsymbol{\theta}\|_2 \leq \rho \quad (5.120)$$

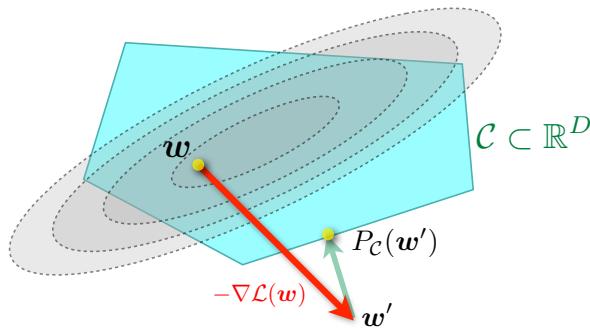


Figure 5.15: Illustration of projected gradient descent.  $\mathbf{w}$  is the current parameter estimate,  $\mathbf{w}'$  is the update after a gradient step, and  $P_{\mathcal{C}}(\mathbf{w}')$  projects this onto the constraint set  $\mathcal{C}$ . From <https://bit.ly/3eJ3BhZ> Used with kind permission of Martin Jaggi.

where the bound  $\rho$  depends on the scaling factor  $\eta$ . Thus the proximal projection minimizes the function while staying close to (i.e., proximal to) the current iterate. We give some examples below.

### 5.6.1 Projected gradient descent

Suppose we want to solve the problem

$$\operatorname{argmin}_{\boldsymbol{\theta}} \mathcal{L}_s(\boldsymbol{\theta}) \text{ s.t. } \boldsymbol{\theta} \in \mathcal{C} \quad (5.121)$$

where  $\mathcal{C}$  is a convex set. For example, we may have the **box constraints**  $\mathcal{C} = \{\boldsymbol{\theta} : \mathbf{l} \leq \boldsymbol{\theta} \leq \mathbf{u}\}$ , where we specify lower and upper bounds on each element. These bounds can be infinite for certain elements if we don't want to constrain values along that dimension. For example, if we just want to ensure the parameters are non-negative, we set  $l_d = 0$  and  $u_d = \infty$  for each dimension  $d$ .

We can convert the constrained optimization problem into an unconstrained one by adding a **penalty term** to the original objective:

$$\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta}) = \mathcal{L}_s(\boldsymbol{\theta}) + \mathcal{L}_r(\boldsymbol{\theta}) \quad (5.122)$$

where  $\mathcal{L}_r(\boldsymbol{\theta})$  is the indicator function for the convex set  $\mathcal{C}$ , i.e.,

$$\mathcal{L}_r(\boldsymbol{\theta}) = I_{\mathcal{C}}(\boldsymbol{\theta}) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } \boldsymbol{\theta} \in \mathcal{C} \\ \infty & \text{if } \boldsymbol{\theta} \notin \mathcal{C} \end{cases} \quad (5.123)$$

We can use proximal gradient descent to solve Eq. (5.122). The proximal operator for the indicator function is equivalent to projection onto the set  $\mathcal{C}$ :

$$\operatorname{proj}_{\mathcal{C}}(\boldsymbol{\theta}) = \operatorname{argmin}_{\boldsymbol{\theta}' \in \mathcal{C}} \|\boldsymbol{\theta}' - \boldsymbol{\theta}\|_2 \quad (5.124)$$

This method is known as **projected gradient descent**. See Fig. 5.15 for an illustration.

For example, consider the box constraints  $\mathcal{C} = \{\boldsymbol{\theta} : \mathbf{l} \leq \boldsymbol{\theta} \leq \mathbf{u}\}$ . The projection operator in this case can be computed elementwise by simply thresholding at the boundaries:

$$\text{proj}_{\mathcal{C}}(\boldsymbol{\theta})_d = \begin{cases} l_d & \text{if } \theta_k \leq l_k \\ x_d & \text{if } l_k \leq \theta_k \leq u_k \\ u_d & \text{if } \theta_k \geq u_k \end{cases} \quad (5.125)$$

For example, if we want to ensure all elements are non-negative, we can use

$$\text{proj}_{\mathcal{C}}(\boldsymbol{\theta}) = \boldsymbol{\theta}_+ = [\max(\theta_1, 0), \dots, \max(\theta_D, 0)] \quad (5.126)$$

See Sec. 11.5.9.2 for an application of this method to sparse linear regression.

### 5.6.2 Proximal operator for $\ell_1$ -norm regularizer

Consider a linear predictor of the form  $f(\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \sum_{d=1}^D \theta_d x_d$ . If we have  $\theta_d = 0$  for any dimension  $d$ , we ignore the corresponding feature  $x_d$ . This is a form of **feature selection**, which can be useful both as a way to reduce overfitting as well as way to improve model interpretability. We can encourage weights to be zero (and not just small) by penalizing the  $\ell_1$  norm,

$$\|\boldsymbol{\theta}\|_1 = \sum_{d=1}^D |\theta_d| \quad (5.127)$$

This is called a **sparsity inducing regularizer**.

To see why this induces sparsity, consider two possible parameter vectors, one which is sparse,  $\boldsymbol{\theta} = (1, 0)$ , and one which is non-sparse,  $\boldsymbol{\theta}' = (1/\sqrt{2}, 1/\sqrt{2})$ . Both have the same  $\ell_2$  norm

$$\|(1, 0)\|_2^2 = \|(1/\sqrt{2}, 1/\sqrt{2})\|_2^2 = 1 \quad (5.128)$$

Hence  $\ell_2$  regularization (Sec. 4.4.3) will not favor the sparse solution over the dense solution. However, when using  $\ell_1$  regularization, the sparse solution is cheaper, since

$$\|(1, 0)\|_1 = 1 < \|(1/\sqrt{2}, 1/\sqrt{2})\|_1 = \sqrt{2} \quad (5.129)$$

See Sec. 11.5 for more details on sparse regression.

If we combine this regularizer with our smooth loss, we get

$$\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta}) = \text{NLL}(\boldsymbol{\theta}) + \lambda \|\boldsymbol{\theta}\|_1 \quad (5.130)$$

We can optimize this objective using proximal gradient descent. The key question is how to compute the prox operator for the function  $f(\boldsymbol{\theta}) = \|\boldsymbol{\theta}\|_1$ . Since this function decomposes over dimensions  $d$ , the proximal projection can be computed componentwise. We can solve each 1d problem as follows:

$$\text{prox}_{\lambda f}(\theta) = \underset{z}{\operatorname{argmin}} \lambda |z| + \frac{1}{2}(z - \theta)^2 \quad (5.131)$$

In Sec. 11.5.3, we show that the solution to this is given by

$$\text{prox}_{\lambda f}(\theta) = \begin{cases} -\lambda & \text{if } \theta \geq \lambda \\ 0 & \text{if } |\theta| \leq \lambda \\ \theta + \lambda & \text{if } \theta \leq -\lambda \end{cases} \quad (5.132)$$

This is known as the **soft thresholding operator**, since values less than  $\lambda$  in absolute value are set to 0 (thresholded), but in a continuous way. Note that soft thresholding can be written more compactly as

$$\text{SoftThreshold}(\theta, \lambda) = \text{sign}(\theta) (|\theta| - \lambda)_+ \quad (5.133)$$

where  $\theta_+ = \max(\theta, 0)$  is the positive part of  $\theta$ . In the vector case, we perform this elementwise:

$$\text{SoftThreshold}(\boldsymbol{\theta}, \lambda) = \text{sign}(\boldsymbol{\theta}) \odot (|\boldsymbol{\theta}| - \lambda)_+ \quad (5.134)$$

See Sec. 11.5.9.3 for an application of this method to sparse linear regression.

### 5.6.3 Proximal operator for quantization

In some applications (e.g., when training deep neural networks to run on memory-limited **edge devices**, such as mobile phones) we want to ensure that the parameters are **quantized**. For example, in the extreme case where each parameter can only be -1 or +1, the state space becomes  $\mathcal{C} = \{-1, +1\}^D$ .

Let us define a regularizer that measures distance to the nearest quantized version of the parameter vector:

$$\mathcal{L}_r(\boldsymbol{\theta}) = \inf_{\boldsymbol{\theta}_0 \in \mathcal{C}} \|\boldsymbol{\theta} - \boldsymbol{\theta}_0\|_1 \quad (5.135)$$

(We could also use the  $\ell_2$  norm.) In the case of  $\mathcal{C} = \{-1, +1\}^D$ , this becomes

$$\mathcal{L}_r(\boldsymbol{\theta}) = \sum_{d=1}^D \inf_{[\theta_0]_d \in \{\pm 1\}} |\theta_d - [\theta_0]_d| = \sum_{d=1}^D \min\{|\theta_d - 1|, |\theta_d + 1|\} = \|\boldsymbol{\theta} - \text{sign}(\boldsymbol{\theta})\|_1 \quad (5.136)$$

Let us define the corresponding quantization operator to be

$$q(\boldsymbol{\theta}) = \text{proj}_{\mathcal{C}}(\boldsymbol{\theta}) = \arg\min \mathcal{L}_r(\boldsymbol{\theta}) = \text{sign}(\boldsymbol{\theta}) \quad (5.137)$$

The core difficulty with quantized learning is that quantization is not a differentiable operation. A popular solution to this is to use the **straight-through estimator**, which uses the approximation  $\frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial q(\boldsymbol{\theta})} \approx \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial \boldsymbol{\theta}}$  (see e.g., [Yin+19b]). The corresponding update can be done in two steps: first compute the gradient vector at the quantized version of the current parameters, and then update the unconstrained parameters using this approximate gradient:

$$\tilde{\boldsymbol{\theta}}_t = \text{proj}_{\mathcal{C}}(\boldsymbol{\theta}_t) = q(\boldsymbol{\theta}_t) \quad (5.138)$$

$$\boldsymbol{\theta}_{t+1} = \boldsymbol{\theta}_t - \eta_t \nabla \mathcal{L}_s(\tilde{\boldsymbol{\theta}}_t) \quad (5.139)$$

When applied to  $\mathcal{C} = \{-1, +1\}^D$ , this is known as the **binary connect** method [CBD15].

We can get better results using proximal gradient descent, in which we treat quantization as a regularizer, rather than a hard constraint; this is known as **ProxQuant** [BWL19]. The update becomes

$$\tilde{\boldsymbol{\theta}}_t = \text{prox}_{\eta_t \lambda \mathcal{L}_r}(\boldsymbol{\theta}_t - \eta_t \nabla \mathcal{L}_s(\boldsymbol{\theta}_t)) \quad (5.140)$$

In the case that  $\mathcal{C} = \{-1, +1\}^D$ , one can show that the proximal operator is a generalization of the soft thresholding operator in Eq. (5.134):

$$\text{prox}_{\eta_t \lambda \mathcal{L}_r}(\boldsymbol{\theta}) = \text{SoftThreshold}(\boldsymbol{\theta}, \lambda, \text{sign}(\boldsymbol{\theta})) \quad (5.141)$$

$$= \text{sign}(\boldsymbol{\theta}) + \text{sign}(\boldsymbol{\theta} - \text{sign}(\boldsymbol{\theta})) \odot (|\boldsymbol{\theta} - \text{sign}(\boldsymbol{\theta})| - \lambda)_+ \quad (5.142)$$

This can be generalized to other forms of quantization; see [Yin+19b] for details.

## 5.7 Bound optimization

In this section, we consider a class of algorithms known as **bound optimization** or **MM** algorithms. In the context of minimization, MM stands for **majorize-minimize**. In the context of maximization, MM stands for **minorize-maximize**. We will discuss a special case of MM, known as **expectation maximization** or **EM**, in Sec. 5.7.2.

### 5.7.1 The general algorithm

In this section, we give a brief outline of MM methods. (More details can be found in e.g., [HL04; Mai15; SBP17; Nad+19].) To be consistent with the literature, we assume our goal is to *maximize* some function  $L(\boldsymbol{\theta})$ , such as the log likelihood, wrt its parameters  $\boldsymbol{\theta}$ . The basic approach in MM algorithms is to construct a **surrogate function**  $Q(\boldsymbol{\theta}, \boldsymbol{\theta}^t)$  which is a tight lowerbound to  $L(\boldsymbol{\theta})$  such that  $Q(\boldsymbol{\theta}, \boldsymbol{\theta}^t) \leq L(\boldsymbol{\theta})$  and  $Q(\boldsymbol{\theta}^t, \boldsymbol{\theta}^t) = L(\boldsymbol{\theta}^t)$ . If these conditions are met, we say that  $Q$  minorizes  $L$ . We then perform the following update at each step:

$$\boldsymbol{\theta}^{t+1} = \underset{\boldsymbol{\theta}}{\operatorname{argmax}} Q(\boldsymbol{\theta}, \boldsymbol{\theta}^t) \quad (5.143)$$

This guarantees us monotonic increases in the original objective:

$$\ell(\boldsymbol{\theta}^{t+1}) \geq Q(\boldsymbol{\theta}^{t+1}, \boldsymbol{\theta}^t) \geq Q(\boldsymbol{\theta}^t, \boldsymbol{\theta}^t) = \ell(\boldsymbol{\theta}^t) \quad (5.144)$$

where the first inequality follows since  $Q(\boldsymbol{\theta}^t, \boldsymbol{\theta}')$  is a lower bound on  $\ell(\boldsymbol{\theta}^t)$  for any  $\boldsymbol{\theta}'$ ; the second inequality follows from Eq. (5.143); and the final equality follows the tightness property. As a consequence of this result, if you do not observe monotonic increase of the objective, you must have an error in your math and/or code. This is a surprisingly powerful debugging tool.

This process is sketched in Fig. 5.16. The dashed red curve is the original function (e.g., the log-likelihood of the observed data). The solid blue curve is the lower bound, evaluated at  $\boldsymbol{\theta}^t$ ; this touches the objective function at  $\boldsymbol{\theta}^t$ . We then set  $\boldsymbol{\theta}^{t+1}$  to the maximum of the lower bound (blue curve), and fit a new bound at that point (dotted green curve). The maximum of this new bound becomes  $\boldsymbol{\theta}^{t+2}$ , etc.

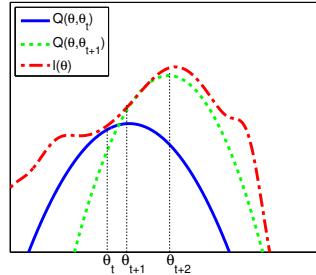


Figure 5.16: Illustration of a bound optimization algorithm. Adapted from Figure 9.14 of [Bis06]. Generated by `emLogLikelihoodMax.m`.

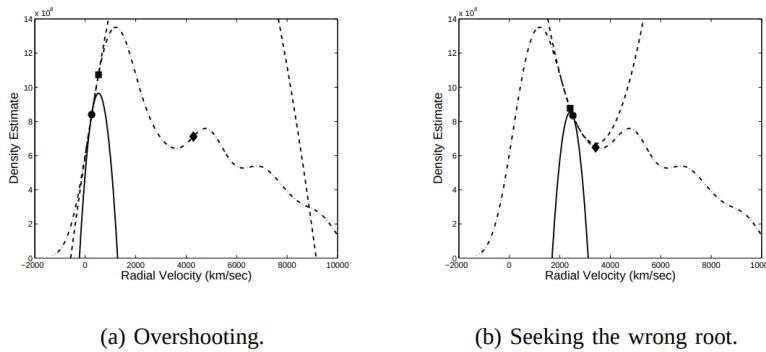


Figure 5.17: The quadratic lower bound of an MM algorithm (solid) and the quadratic approximation of Newton's method (dashed) superimposed on an empirical density estimate (dotted). The starting point of both algorithms is the circle. The square denotes the outcome of one MM update. The diamond denotes the outcome of one Newton update. (a) Newton's method overshoots the *se*, global maximum. (b) Newton's method results in a reduction of the objective. From Figure 4 of [FT05]. Used with kind permission of Carlo Tomasi.

If  $Q$  is a quadratic lower bound, the overall method is similar to Newton's method, which repeatedly fits and then optimizes a quadratic approximation, as shown in Fig. 5.8(a). The difference is that optimizing  $Q$  is guaranteed to lead to an improvement in the objective, even if it is not convex, whereas Newton's method may overshoot or lead to a decrease in the objective, as shown in Fig. 5.17, since it is a quadratic approximation and not a bound.

### 5.7.2 The EM algorithm

In this section, we discuss the **expectation maximization (EM)** algorithm [DLR77; MK97], which is an algorithm designed to compute the MLE or MAP parameter estimate for probability models that have **missing data** and/or **hidden variables**. We let  $\mathbf{y}_n$  be the visible data for example  $n$ , and  $\mathbf{z}_n$  be the hidden data.

The basic idea behind EM is to alternate between estimating the hidden variables (or missing values) during the **E step** (expectation step), and then using the fully observed data to compute the MLE during the **M step** (maximization step). Of course, we need to iterate this process, since the expected values depend on the parameters, but the parameters depend on the expected values.

In Sec. 5.7.2.1, we show that EM is an MM algorithm, which implies that this iterative procedure will converge to a local maximum of the log likelihood. The speed of convergence depends on the amount of missing data, which affects the tightness of the bound [XJ96; MD97; SRG03; KKS20].

There are many applications of EM in ML. In this book, we consider several examples:

- In Sec. 5.7.3, we show how to use EM to fit mixture models, such as Gaussian mixtures.
- In Sec. 5.7.4, we show how to use EM to fit a multivariate Gaussian, when we have missing data.
- In Sec. 11.4.1.1, we show to use EM to fit robust linear regression models.

### 5.7.2.1 Lower bound

The goal of EM is to maximize the log likelihood of the observed data:

$$\ell(\boldsymbol{\theta}) = \sum_{n=1}^N \log p(\mathbf{y}_n | \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \sum_{n=1}^N \log \left[ \sum_{\mathbf{z}_n} p(\mathbf{y}_n, \mathbf{z}_n | \boldsymbol{\theta}) \right] \quad (5.145)$$

where  $\mathbf{y}_n$  are the visible variables and  $\mathbf{z}_n$  are the hidden variables. Unfortunately this is hard to optimize, since the log cannot be pushed inside the sum.

EM gets around this problem as follows. First, consider a set of arbitrary distributions  $q_n(\mathbf{z}_n)$  over each hidden variable  $\mathbf{z}_n$ . The observed data log likelihood can be written as follows:

$$\ell(\boldsymbol{\theta}) = \sum_{n=1}^N \log \left[ \sum_{\mathbf{z}_n} q_n(\mathbf{z}_n) \frac{p(\mathbf{y}_n, \mathbf{z}_n | \boldsymbol{\theta})}{q_n(\mathbf{z}_n)} \right] \quad (5.146)$$

Using Jensen's inequality (Eq. (A.55)), we can push the log (which is a concave function) inside the expectation to get the following lower bound on the log likelihood:

$$\ell(\boldsymbol{\theta}) \geq \sum_n \sum_{\mathbf{z}_n} q_n(\mathbf{z}_n) \log \frac{p(\mathbf{y}_n, \mathbf{z}_n | \boldsymbol{\theta})}{q_n(\mathbf{z}_n)} \quad (5.147)$$

$$= \sum_n [\mathbb{E}_{q_n} [\log p(\mathbf{y}_n, \mathbf{z}_n | \boldsymbol{\theta})]] + \mathbb{H}(q_n) \quad (5.148)$$

$$\triangleq Q(\boldsymbol{\theta}, \{q_n\}) \quad (5.149)$$

where  $\mathbb{H}(q)$  is the entropy of probability distribution  $q$ :  $\mathbb{H}(q) \triangleq -\sum_z q(z) \log q(z)$ . The expression in Eq. (5.149) is sometimes called the **evidence lower bound** or **ELBO**, since it is a lower bound on the **evidence**  $\log p(\mathbf{x}_{1:N} | \boldsymbol{\theta})$ . (The evidence is another term for the marginal log likelihood.)

The EM algorithm alternates between maximizing the lower bound  $Q$  wrt the distributions  $q_n$  and the parameters  $\boldsymbol{\theta}$ , as we discuss below.

### 5.7.2.2 E step

We see that the lower bound is a sum of  $N$  terms, each of which has the following form:

$$Q(\boldsymbol{\theta}, q_n) = \sum_{\mathbf{z}_n} q_n(\mathbf{z}_n) \log \frac{p(\mathbf{y}_n, \mathbf{z}_n | \boldsymbol{\theta})}{q_n(\mathbf{z}_n)} \quad (5.150)$$

$$= \sum_{\mathbf{z}_n} q_n(\mathbf{z}_n) \log \frac{p(\mathbf{z}_n | \mathbf{y}_n, \boldsymbol{\theta}) p(\mathbf{y}_n | \boldsymbol{\theta})}{q_n(\mathbf{z}_n)} \quad (5.151)$$

$$= \sum_{\mathbf{z}_n} q_n(\mathbf{z}_n) \log \frac{p(\mathbf{z}_n | \mathbf{y}_n, \boldsymbol{\theta})}{q_n(\mathbf{z}_n)} + \sum_{\mathbf{z}_n} q_n(\mathbf{z}_n) \log p(\mathbf{y}_n | \boldsymbol{\theta}) \quad (5.152)$$

$$= -\mathbb{KL}(q_n(\mathbf{z}_n) \| p(\mathbf{z}_n | \mathbf{y}_n, \boldsymbol{\theta})) + \log p(\mathbf{y}_n | \boldsymbol{\theta}) \quad (5.153)$$

where  $\mathbb{KL}(q \| p) \triangleq \sum_z q(z) \log \frac{q(z)}{p(z)}$  is the Kullback-Leibler divergence (or KL divergence for short) between probability distributions  $q$  and  $p$ . We discuss this in more detail in Sec. 6.2, but the key property we need here is that  $\mathbb{KL}(q \| p) \geq 0$  and  $\mathbb{KL}(q \| p) = 0$  iff  $q = p$ . Hence we can maximize the lower bound  $Q(\boldsymbol{\theta}, \{q_n\})$  wrt  $\{q_n\}$  by setting each one to  $q_n^* = p(\mathbf{z}_n | \mathbf{y}_n, \boldsymbol{\theta})$ . This is called the **E step**. This makes the lower bound tight, in the sense that  $Q(\boldsymbol{\theta}, \{q_n^*\}) = \sum_n \log p(\mathbf{y}_n | \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \ell(\boldsymbol{\theta})$ .

### 5.7.2.3 M step

In the M step, we need to maximize  $Q(\boldsymbol{\theta}, \{q_n^t\})$  wrt  $\boldsymbol{\theta}$ , where  $q_n^t$  are the distributions computed in the E step at iteration  $t$ . Since the entropy terms  $\mathbb{H}(q_n)$  are constant wrt  $\boldsymbol{\theta}$ , so we can drop them in the M step. We are left with

$$\ell^t(\boldsymbol{\theta}) = \sum_n \mathbb{E}_{q_n^t(\mathbf{z}_n)} [\log p(\mathbf{y}_n, \mathbf{z}_n | \boldsymbol{\theta})] \quad (5.154)$$

This is called the **expected complete data log likelihood**. If the joint probability is in the exponential family (Sec. 12.2), we can rewrite this as

$$\ell^t(\boldsymbol{\theta}) = \sum_n \mathbb{E} [\mathbf{t}(\mathbf{y}_n, \mathbf{z}_n)^\top \boldsymbol{\theta} - A(\boldsymbol{\theta})] = \sum_n (\mathbb{E} [\mathbf{t}(\mathbf{y}_n, \mathbf{z}_n)])^\top \boldsymbol{\theta} - A(\boldsymbol{\theta}) \quad (5.155)$$

where  $\mathbb{E} [\mathbf{t}(\mathbf{y}_n, \mathbf{z}_n)]$  are called the **expected sufficient statistics**.

In the M step, we maximize the expected complete data log likelihood to get

$$\boldsymbol{\theta}^{t+1} = \arg \max_{\boldsymbol{\theta}} \sum_n \mathbb{E}_{q_n^t} [\log p(\mathbf{y}_n, \mathbf{z}_n | \boldsymbol{\theta})] \quad (5.156)$$

In the case of the exponential family, the maximization can be solved in closed-form by matching the moments of the expected sufficient statistics (Sec. 12.2.4).

We see from the above that the E step does not in fact need to return the full set of posterior distributions  $\{q(\mathbf{z}_n) : n = 1 : N\}$ , but can instead just return the sum of the expected sufficient statistics,  $\sum_n \mathbb{E}_{q(\mathbf{z}_n)} [\mathbf{t}(\mathbf{y}_n, \mathbf{z}_n)]$ . This will become clearer in the examples below.

### 5.7.3 Example: EM for a GMM

In this section, we show how to use the EM algorithm to compute MLE and MAP estimates of the parameters for a Gaussian mixture model (GMM).

#### 5.7.3.1 E step

The E step simply computes the **responsibility** of cluster  $k$  for generating data point  $n$ , as estimated using the current parameter estimates  $\boldsymbol{\theta}^{(t)}$ :

$$r_{nk}^{(t)} = p(z_n = k | \boldsymbol{\theta}^{(t)}) = \frac{\pi_k^{(t)} p(\mathbf{y}_n | \boldsymbol{\theta}_k^{(t)})}{\sum_{k'} \pi_{k'}^{(t)} p(\mathbf{y}_n | \boldsymbol{\theta}_{k'}^{(t)})} \quad (5.157)$$

#### 5.7.3.2 M step

The M step maximizes the expected complete data log likelihood, given by

$$\ell^t(\boldsymbol{\theta}) = \mathbb{E} \left[ \sum_n \log p(z_n | \boldsymbol{\pi}) + \log p(\mathbf{y}_n | z_m \boldsymbol{\theta}) \right] \quad (5.158)$$

$$= \mathbb{E} \left[ \sum_n \log \left( \prod_k \pi_k^{z_{nk}} \right) + \log \left( \prod_k \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{y}_n | \boldsymbol{\mu}_k, \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_k)^{z_{nk}} \right) \right] \quad (5.159)$$

$$= \sum_n \sum_k \mathbb{E}[z_{nk}] \log \pi_k + \sum_n \sum_k \mathbb{E}[z_{nk}] \log \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{y}_n | \boldsymbol{\mu}_k, \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_k) \quad (5.160)$$

$$= \sum_n \sum_k r_{nk}^{(t)} \log(\pi_k) - \frac{1}{2} \sum_n \sum_k r_{nk}^{(t)} [\log |\boldsymbol{\Sigma}_k| + (\mathbf{y}_n - \boldsymbol{\mu}_k)^\top \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_k^{-1} (\mathbf{y}_n - \boldsymbol{\mu}_k)] + \text{const} \quad (5.161)$$

where  $z_{nk} = \mathbb{I}(z_n = k)$  is a one-hot encoding of the categorical value  $z_n$ . This objective is just a weighted version of the standard problem of computing the MLEs of an MVN (see Sec. 4.2.6). One can show that the new parameter estimates are given by

$$\boldsymbol{\mu}_k^{(t+1)} = \frac{\sum_n r_{nk}^{(t)} \mathbf{y}_n}{r_k^{(t)}} \quad (5.162)$$

$$\begin{aligned} \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_k^{(t+1)} &= \frac{\sum_n r_{nk}^{(t)} (\mathbf{y}_n - \boldsymbol{\mu}_k^{(t+1)}) (\mathbf{y}_n - \boldsymbol{\mu}_k^{(t+1)})^\top}{r_k^{(t)}} \\ &= \frac{\sum_n r_{nk}^{(t)} \mathbf{y}_n \mathbf{y}_n^\top}{r_k^{(t)}} - \boldsymbol{\mu}_k^{(t+1)} (\boldsymbol{\mu}_k^{(t+1)})^\top \end{aligned} \quad (5.163)$$

where  $r_k^{(t)} \triangleq \sum_n r_{nk}^{(t)}$  is the weighted number of points assigned to cluster  $k$ . The mean of cluster  $k$  is just the weighted average of all points assigned to cluster  $k$ , and the covariance is proportional to the weighted empirical scatter matrix.

The M step for the mixture weights is simply a weighted form of the usual MLE:

$$\pi_k^{(t+1)} = \frac{1}{N} \sum_n r_{nk}^{(t)} = \frac{r_k^{(t)}}{N} \quad (5.164)$$

### 5.7.3.3 Example

An example of the algorithm in action is shown in Fig. 5.18 where we fit some 2d data with a 2 component GMM. The data set, from [Bis06], is derived from measurements of the Old Faithful geyser in Yellowstone National Park. In particular, we plot the time to next eruption in minutes versus the duration of the eruption in minutes. The data was standardized, by removing the mean and dividing by the standard deviation, before processing; this often helps convergence.

We start with  $\boldsymbol{\mu}_1 = (-1, 1)$ ,  $\boldsymbol{\Sigma}_1 = \mathbf{I}$ ,  $\boldsymbol{\mu}_2 = (1, -1)$ ,  $\boldsymbol{\Sigma}_2 = \mathbf{I}$ . We color code points such that blue points come from cluster 1 and red points from cluster 2. More precisely, we set the color of the  $n$ 'th point to  $\text{color}(n) = r_{n1}\text{blue} + r_{n2}\text{red}$ , so ambiguous points appear purple. We see that initially, the cluster centers move, and their shapes change, quite quickly, and then EM slowly converges to a local maximum. (For a recent analysis of the convergence rate of EM, see [KKS20].)

For more details on applying GMMs for clustering, see Sec. 21.4.1.

### 5.7.3.4 MAP estimation

Computing the MLE of a GMM often suffers from numerical problems and overfitting. To see why, suppose for simplicity that  $\boldsymbol{\Sigma}_k = \sigma_k^2 \mathbf{I}$  for all  $k$ . It is possible to get an infinite likelihood by assigning one of the centers, say  $\boldsymbol{\mu}_k$ , to a single data point, say  $\mathbf{y}_n$ , since then the likelihood of that data point is given by

$$\mathcal{N}(\mathbf{y}_n | \boldsymbol{\mu}_k = \mathbf{y}_n, \sigma_k^2 \mathbf{I}) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi\sigma_k^2}} e^0 \quad (5.165)$$

Hence we can drive this term to infinity by letting  $\sigma_k \rightarrow 0$ , as shown in Fig. 5.19(a). We call this the “collapsing variance problem”.

An easy solution to this is to perform MAP estimation. Fortunately, we can still use EM to find this MAP estimate. Our goal is now to maximize the expected complete data log-likelihood plus the log prior:

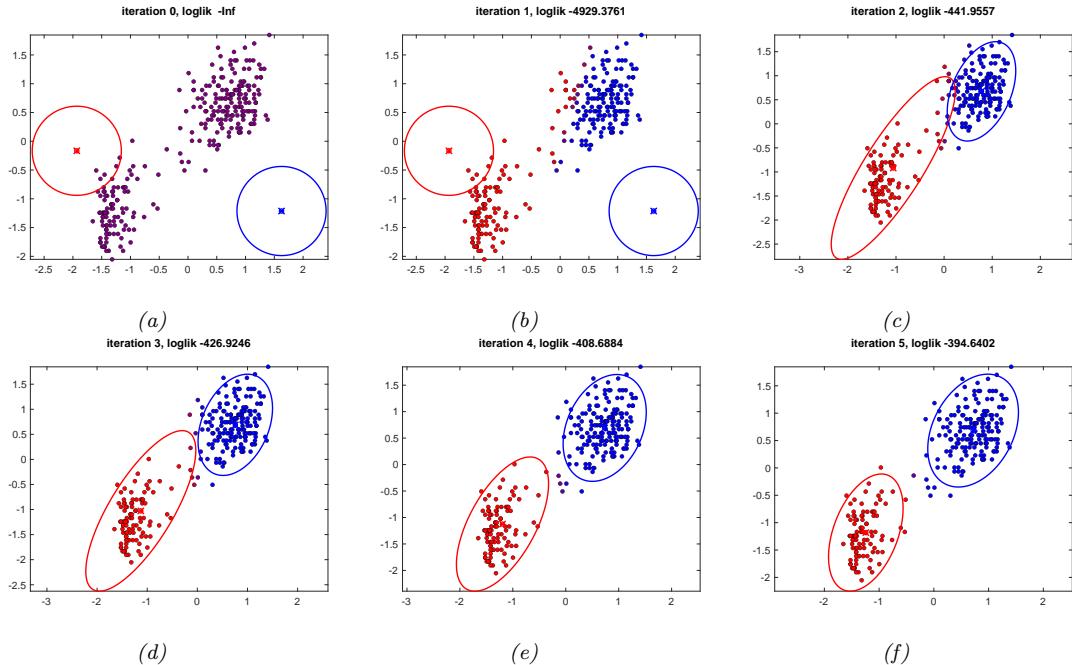
$$Q(\boldsymbol{\theta}, \boldsymbol{\theta}^{old}) = \left[ \sum_n \sum_k r_{nk} \log \pi_{nk} + \sum_n \sum_k r_{nk} \log p(\mathbf{y}_n | \boldsymbol{\theta}_k) \right] + \log p(\boldsymbol{\pi}) + \sum_k \log p(\boldsymbol{\theta}_k) \quad (5.166)$$

Note that the E step remains unchanged, but the M step needs to be modified, as we now explain.

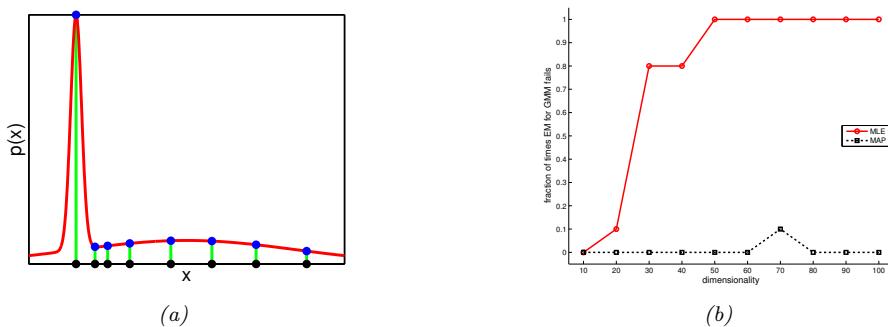
For the prior on the mixture weights, it is natural to use a Dirichlet prior (Sec. 7.2.2.2),  $\boldsymbol{\pi} \sim \text{Dir}(\boldsymbol{\alpha})$ , since this is conjugate to the categorical distribution. The MAP estimate is given by

$$\pi_k = \frac{r_k + \alpha_k - 1}{N + \sum_k \alpha_k - K} \quad (5.167)$$

If we use a uniform prior,  $\alpha_k = 1$ , this reduces to the MLE.



*Figure 5.18: Illustration of the EM for a GMM applied to the Old Faithful data for the first 6 steps. The degree of redness indicates the degree to which the point belongs to the red cluster, and similarly for blue; thus purple points have a roughly 50/50 split in their responsibilities to the two clusters. Adapted from [Bis06] Figure 9.8. Generated by [mixGaussDemoFaithful.m](#).*



*Figure 5.19: (a) Illustration of how singularities can arise in the likelihood function of GMMs. Here  $K = 2$ , but the first mixture component is a narrow spike (with  $\sigma_1 \approx 0$ ) centered on a single data point  $x_1$ . Adapted from Figure 9.7 of [Bis06]. Generated by [mixGaussSingularity.m](#). (b) Illustration of the benefit of MAP estimation vs ML estimation when fitting a Gaussian mixture model. We plot the fraction of times (out of 5 random trials) each method encounters numerical problems vs the dimensionality of the problem, for  $N = 100$  samples. Solid red (upper curve): MLE. Dotted black (lower curve): MAP. Generated by [mixGaussMLvsMAP.m](#).*

For the prior on the mixture components, let us consider a conjugate prior of the form

$$p(\boldsymbol{\mu}_k, \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_k) = \text{NIW}(\boldsymbol{\mu}_k, \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_k | \check{\mathbf{m}}, \check{\kappa}, \check{\nu}, \check{\mathbf{S}}) \quad (5.168)$$

which is the Normal-Inverse-Wishart distribution discussed in Sec. 7.2.4.4. When using MAP estimation, we need to specify the hyper-parameters. We can set  $\check{\kappa} = 0$ , so that the  $\boldsymbol{\mu}_k$  are unregularized, since the numerical problems only arise from  $\boldsymbol{\Sigma}_k$ . In this case, the MAP estimates are given by

$$\hat{\boldsymbol{\mu}}_k = \bar{\mathbf{y}}_k \quad (5.169)$$

$$\hat{\boldsymbol{\Sigma}}_k = \frac{\check{\mathbf{S}} + \mathbf{S}_k}{\check{\nu} + r_k + D + 2} \quad (5.170)$$

where  $\mathbf{S}_k$  is the MLE for  $\boldsymbol{\Sigma}_k$  from Eq. (5.163).

Now we discuss how to set the prior covariance,  $\check{\mathbf{S}}$ . One possibility (suggested in [FR07, p163]) is to use

$$\check{\mathbf{S}} = \frac{1}{K^{1/D}} \text{diag}(s_1^2, \dots, s_D^2) \quad (5.171)$$

where  $s_d = (1/N) \sum_{n=1}^N (x_{nd} - \bar{x}_d)^2$  is the pooled variance for dimension  $d$ . The parameter  $\check{\nu}$  controls how strongly we believe this prior. The weakest prior we can use, while still being proper, is to set  $\check{\nu} = D + 2$ , so this is a common choice.

We now illustrate the benefits of using MAP estimation instead of ML estimation in the context of GMMs. We apply EM to some synthetic data with  $N = 100$  samples in  $D$  dimensions, using either ML or MAP estimation. We count the trial as a “failure” if there are numerical issues involving singular matrices. For each dimensionality, we conduct 5 random trials. The results are illustrated in Fig. 5.19(b). We see that as soon as  $D$  becomes even moderately large, ML estimation crashes and burns, whereas MAP with an appropriate prior estimation rarely encounters numerical problems.

### 5.7.3.5 Nonconvexity of the NLL

The likelihood for a mixture model is given by

$$\ell(\boldsymbol{\theta}) = \sum_{n=1}^N \log \left[ \sum_{z_n=1}^K p(\mathbf{y}_n, z_n | \boldsymbol{\theta}) \right] \quad (5.172)$$

In general, this will have multiple modes, and hence there will not be a unique global optimum.

Fig. 5.20 illustrates this for a mixture of 2 Gaussians in 1d. We see that there are two equally good global optima, corresponding to two different labelings of the clusters, one in which the left peak corresponds to  $z = 1$ , and one in which the left peak corresponds to  $z = 2$ . This is called the **label switching problem**; see Sec. 21.4.1.2 for more details.

The question of how many modes there are in the likelihood function is hard to answer. There are  $K!$  possible labelings, but some of the peaks might get merged, depending on how far apart the  $\boldsymbol{\mu}_k$  are. Nevertheless, there can be an exponential number of modes. Consequently, finding any global optimum is NP-hard [Alo+09; Dri+04]. We will therefore have to be satisfied with finding a local optimum. To find a good local optimum, we can use Kmeans++ (Sec. 21.3.4) to initialize EM.

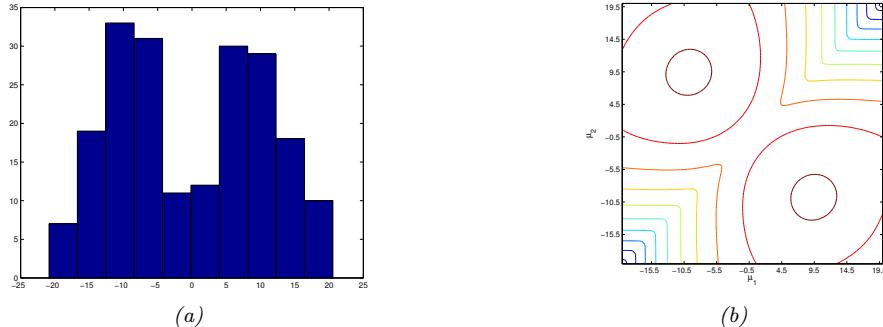


Figure 5.20: Left:  $N = 200$  data points sampled from a mixture of 2 Gaussians in 1d, with  $\pi_k = 0.5$ ,  $\sigma_k = 5$ ,  $\mu_1 = -10$  and  $\mu_2 = 10$ . Right: Likelihood surface  $p(\mathcal{D}|\mu_1, \mu_2)$ , with all other parameters set to their true values. We see the two symmetric modes, reflecting the unidentifiability of the parameters. Generated by `mixGaussLikSurfaceDemo.m`.

#### 5.7.4 Example: EM for an MVN with missing data

In Sec. 4.2.6, we explained how to compute the MLE for an MVN (multivariate normal) when we have a fully observed data matrix  $\mathbf{Y}$ . In this section, we consider the case where we have **missing data** or **partially observed data**. For example, we can think of the entries of  $\mathbf{Y}$  as being answers to a survey; some of these answers may be unknown.

To model the missing data, let  $\mathbf{M}$  be an  $N \times D$  matrix of binary variables, where  $M_{nd} = 1$  if feature  $d$  in example  $n$  is missing, and  $M_{nd} = 0$  otherwise. Let  $\mathbf{y}_n$  be the visible entries for case  $n$  (where  $M_{nd} = 1$ )  $\mathbf{z}_n$  be the hidden entries (where  $M_{nd} = 0$ ), and  $\mathbf{y}_n = (\mathbf{y}_n, \mathbf{z}_n) \sim \mathcal{N}(\boldsymbol{\mu}, \boldsymbol{\Sigma})$  be all the entries. If we assume  $p(\mathbf{M}|\mathbf{Y}, \boldsymbol{\phi}) = p(\mathbf{M}|\boldsymbol{\phi})$ , we say the data is **missing completely at random** or **MCAR**. If we assume  $p(\mathbf{M}|\mathbf{Y}, \boldsymbol{\phi}) = p(\mathbf{M}|\mathbf{Y}, \boldsymbol{\phi})$ , we say the data is **missing at random** or **MAR**. If neither of these assumptions hold, we say the data is **not missing at random** or **NMAR**.

In the MCAR and MAR cases, we can ignore the missingness mechanism, since it tells us nothing about the hidden data. In this section, we will make this assumption, although we acknowledge it does not always hold. (For example, the fact that someone did not fill out an answer to a sensitive question on a survey (e.g., “Do you have AIDS?”) could be informative about the underlying value (see e.g., [Mar08; Mar+11] for more information).)

Under the MAR assumption, the log likelihood of the visible data has the form

$$\log p(\mathbf{Y}|\boldsymbol{\theta}) = \sum_n \log p(\mathbf{y}_n|\boldsymbol{\theta}) = \sum_n \log \left[ \int p(\mathbf{y}_n, \mathbf{z}_n|\boldsymbol{\theta}) d\mathbf{z}_n \right] \quad (5.173)$$

Unfortunately, this objective is hard to maximize. since we cannot push the log inside the expectation. Fortunately, we can easily apply EM, as we explain below.

### 5.7.4.1 E step

Suppose we have  $\boldsymbol{\theta}^{t-1}$ . Then we can compute the expected complete data log likelihood at iteration  $t$  as follows:

$$Q(\boldsymbol{\theta}, \boldsymbol{\theta}^{t-1}) = \mathbb{E} \left[ \sum_{n=1}^N \log \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{y}_n | \boldsymbol{\mu}, \boldsymbol{\Sigma}) | \mathcal{D}, \boldsymbol{\theta}^{t-1} \right] \quad (5.174)$$

$$= -\frac{N}{2} \log |2\pi\boldsymbol{\Sigma}| - \frac{1}{2} \sum_n \mathbb{E} [(\mathbf{y}_n - \boldsymbol{\mu})^\top \boldsymbol{\Sigma}^{-1} (\mathbf{y}_n - \boldsymbol{\mu})] \quad (5.175)$$

$$= -\frac{N}{2} \log |2\pi\boldsymbol{\Sigma}| - \frac{1}{2} \text{tr}(\boldsymbol{\Sigma}^{-1} \sum_n \mathbb{E} [(\mathbf{y}_n - \boldsymbol{\mu})(\mathbf{y}_n - \boldsymbol{\mu})^\top]) \quad (5.176)$$

$$= -\frac{N}{2} \log |\boldsymbol{\Sigma}| - \frac{ND}{2} \log(2\pi) - \frac{1}{2} \text{tr}(\boldsymbol{\Sigma}^{-1} \mathbb{E} [\mathbf{S}(\boldsymbol{\mu})]) \quad (5.177)$$

where

$$\mathbb{E} [\mathbf{S}(\boldsymbol{\mu})] \triangleq \sum_n \left( \mathbb{E} [\mathbf{y}_n \mathbf{y}_n^\top] + \boldsymbol{\mu} \boldsymbol{\mu}^\top - 2\boldsymbol{\mu} \mathbb{E} [\mathbf{y}_n]^\top \right) \quad (5.178)$$

(We drop the conditioning of the expectation on  $\mathcal{D}$  and  $\boldsymbol{\theta}^{t-1}$  for brevity.) We see that we need to compute  $\sum_n \mathbb{E} [\mathbf{y}_n]$  and  $\sum_n \mathbb{E} [\mathbf{y}_n \mathbf{y}_n^\top]$ ; these are the expected sufficient statistics.

To compute these quantities, we use the results from Sec. 3.5.3. Specifically, consider case  $n$ , where components  $v$  are observed and components  $h$  are unobserved. We have

$$p(\mathbf{z}_n | \mathbf{y}_n, \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{z}_n | \mathbf{m}_n, \mathbf{V}_n) \quad (5.179)$$

$$\mathbf{m}_n \triangleq \boldsymbol{\mu}_h + \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{hv} \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{vv}^{-1} (\mathbf{y}_n - \boldsymbol{\mu}_v) \quad (5.180)$$

$$\mathbf{V}_n \triangleq \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{hh} - \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{hv} \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{vv}^{-1} \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{vh} \quad (5.181)$$

Hence the expected sufficient statistics are

$$\mathbb{E} [\mathbf{y}_n] = (\mathbb{E} [\mathbf{z}_n]; \mathbf{y}_n) = (\mathbf{m}_n; \mathbf{y}_n) \quad (5.182)$$

where we have assumed (without loss of generality) that the unobserved variables come before the observed variables in the node ordering.

To compute  $\mathbb{E} [\mathbf{y}_n \mathbf{y}_n^\top]$ , we use the result that  $\text{Cov}[\mathbf{y}] = \mathbb{E} [\mathbf{y} \mathbf{y}^\top] - \mathbb{E} [\mathbf{y}] \mathbb{E} [\mathbf{y}^\top]$ . Hence

$$\mathbb{E} [\mathbf{y}_n \mathbf{y}_n^\top] = \mathbb{E} \left[ \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{z}_n \\ \mathbf{y}_n \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{z}_n^\top & \mathbf{y}_n^\top \end{pmatrix} \right] = \begin{pmatrix} \mathbb{E} [\mathbf{z}_n \mathbf{z}_n^\top] & \mathbb{E} [\mathbf{z}_n] \mathbf{y}_n^\top \\ \mathbf{y}_n \mathbb{E} [\mathbf{z}_n]^\top & \mathbf{y}_n \mathbf{y}_n^\top \end{pmatrix} \quad (5.183)$$

$$\mathbb{E} [\mathbf{z}_n \mathbf{z}_n^\top] = \mathbb{E} [\mathbf{z}_n] \mathbb{E} [\mathbf{z}_n]^\top + \mathbf{V}_n \quad (5.184)$$

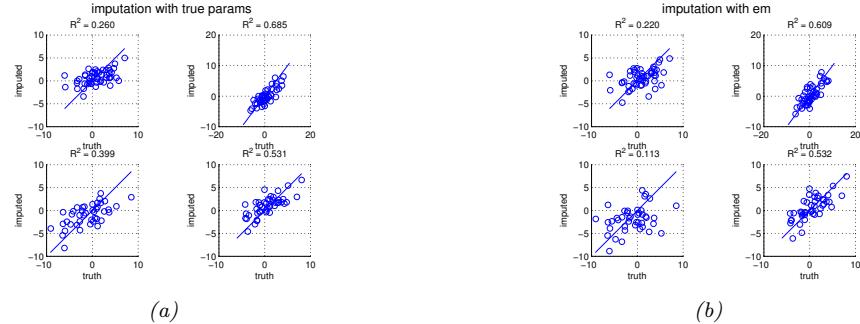


Figure 5.21: Illustration of data imputation. (a) Scatter plot of true values vs imputed values using true parameters. (b) Same as (a), but using parameters estimated with EM. We just show the first four variables, for brevity. Generated by `gaussImputationDemoEM.m`.

#### 5.7.4.2 M step

By solving  $\nabla Q(\boldsymbol{\theta}, \boldsymbol{\theta}^{(t-1)}) = \mathbf{0}$ , we can show that the M step is equivalent to plugging these ESS into the usual MLE equations to get

$$\boldsymbol{\mu}^t = \frac{1}{N} \sum_n \mathbb{E} [\mathbf{y}_n] \quad (5.185)$$

$$\boldsymbol{\Sigma}^t = \frac{1}{N} \sum_n \mathbb{E} [\mathbf{y}_n \mathbf{y}_n^\top] - \boldsymbol{\mu}^t (\boldsymbol{\mu}^t)^\top \quad (5.186)$$

Thus we see that EM is *not* equivalent to simply replacing variables by their expectations and applying the standard MLE formula; that would ignore the posterior variance and would result in an incorrect estimate. Instead we must compute the expectation of the sufficient statistics, and plug that into the usual equation for the MLE.

#### 5.7.4.3 Initialization

To get the algorithm started, we can compute the MLE based on those rows of the data matrix that are fully observed. If there are no such rows, we can just estimate the diagonal terms of  $\boldsymbol{\Sigma}$  using the observed marginal statistics. We are then ready to start EM.

#### 5.7.4.4 Example

As an example of this procedure in action, let us reconsider the imputation problem from Sec. 3.5.4, which had  $N = 100$  10-dimensional data cases, with 50% missing data. Let us fit the parameters using EM. Call the resulting parameters  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}}$ . We can use our model for predictions by computing  $\mathbb{E} [\mathbf{z}_n | \mathbf{y}_n, \hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}}]$ . Fig. 5.21 indicates that the results obtained using the learned parameters are almost as good as with the true parameters. Not surprisingly, performance improves with more data, or as the fraction of missing data is reduced.

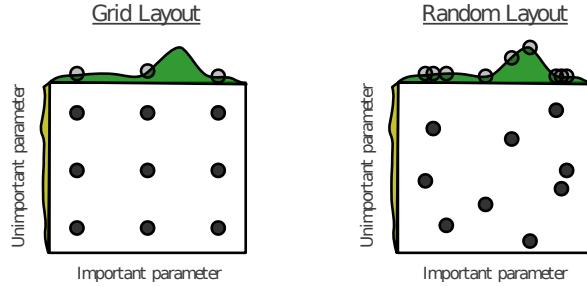


Figure 5.22: Illustration of grid search (left) vs random search (right). From Figure 1 of [BB12]. Used with kind permission of James Bergstra.

## 5.8 Blackbox and derivative free optimization

In some optimization problems, the objective function is a **blackbox**, meaning that its functional form is unknown. This means we cannot use gradient-based methods to optimize it. Instead, solving such problems require **blackbox optimization (BBO)** methods, also called **derivative free optimization (DFO)**.

In ML, this kind of problem often arises when performing model selection. For example, suppose we have some hyper-parameters,  $\lambda \in \Lambda$ , which control the type or complexity of a model. We often define the objective function  $\mathcal{L}(\lambda)$  to be the loss on a validation set (see Sec. 4.4.4). Since the validation loss depends on the optimal model parameters, which are computed using a complex algorithm, this objective function is effectively a blackbox.<sup>5</sup> Furthermore, evaluating this blackbox is expensive, since it requires training the model before computing the validation loss.

### 5.8.1 Grid search and random search

A simple (and very common) approach is to definite a discrete grid of possible hyper-parameters, and then to exhaustively enumerate all combinations, as shown in Fig. 5.22(left). If some dimensions don't affect the output very much, using a fine grid along that dimension is wasteful, and better results can sometimes be found more quickly using **random search**, as shown in Fig. 5.22(right).

### 5.8.2 Simulated annealing

**Simulated annealing** [KJV83; LA87] is a **stochastic local search** algorithm that attempts to find the global maximum of a black-box function  $f(\mathbf{x}) = -\mathcal{E}(\mathbf{x})$ , where  $\mathcal{E}()$  is known as the “energy function” (note that this can be positive or negative). SA can be used for both discrete and continuous optimization.

At each step, we sample a new state according to some proposal distribution  $\mathbf{x}' \sim q(\cdot | \mathbf{x}_t)$ . For real-valued parameters, this is often simply a random walk proposal centered on the current iterate,

5. If the optimal parameters are computed using a gradient-based optimizer, we can “unroll” the gradient steps, to create a deep circuit that maps from the training data to the optimal parameters and hence to the validation loss. We can then optimize through the optimizer (see e.g., [Fra+17]). However, this technique can only be applied in limited settings.

$\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{x}_t + \boldsymbol{\epsilon}_{t+1}$ , where  $\boldsymbol{\epsilon}_{t+1} \sim \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{0}, \boldsymbol{\Sigma})$ . (The matrix  $\boldsymbol{\Sigma}$  is often diagonal, and may be updated over time using the method in [Cor+87].) Having proposed a new state, we compute the acceptance probability

$$\alpha_{t+1} = \exp((f(\mathbf{x}') - f(\mathbf{x}_t))/T_t) \quad (5.187)$$

where  $T_t$  is the temperature of the system. We then accept the new state (i.e., set  $\mathbf{x}_{t+1} = \mathbf{x}'$ ) with probability  $\min(1, \alpha_{t+1})$ , otherwise we stay in the current state (i.e., set  $\mathbf{x}_{t+1} = \mathbf{x}_t$ ). This means that if the new state has lower energy (is more probable), we will definitely accept it, but if it has higher energy (is less probable), we might still accept, depending on the current temperature. Thus the algorithm allows “downhill” moves in probability space (uphill in energy space), but less frequently as the temperature drops.

Fig. 3.4 gives an example of a function defined on a discrete state space with 3 possible values. At high temperatures,  $T \gg 1$ , the surface is approximately flat, and hence it is easy to move around (i.e., to avoid local optima). As the temperature cools, the largest peaks become larger, and the smallest peaks disappear. By cooling slowly enough, it is possible to “track” the largest peak, and thus find the global optimum (minimum energy state). This is an example of a **continuation method**.

The rate at which the temperature changes over time is called the **cooling schedule**. It has been shown [Haj88] that if one cools according to a logarithmic schedule,  $T_t \propto 1/\log(t+1)$ , then the method is guaranteed to find the global optimum under certain assumptions. However, this schedule is often too slow. In practice it is common to use an **exponential cooling schedule** of the form  $T_{t+1} = \gamma T_t$ , where  $\gamma \in (0, 1]$  is the cooling rate. Cooling too quickly means one can get stuck in a local maximum, but cooling too slowly just wastes time. The best cooling schedule is difficult to determine; this is one of the main drawbacks of simulated annealing.

### 5.8.3 Model-based blackbox optimization

Many model selection problems (and other blackbox optimization problems) involve a combinatorially large search space. For example, in **neural architecture search**, the task is to pick the best neural net graph structure (see e.g., [EMH19]). In this case, the state space can be viewed as the set of edge labels,  $\mathcal{X} = \{0, 1\}^{N \times N}$ , where  $N$  is the number of nodes, and  $x_{ij} = 1$  iff there is an edge from  $i$  to  $j$ . (Note that not all combinations are feasible, so we may have  $\mathcal{L}(\mathbf{x}) = \infty$  for some settings.)

In such exponentially large spaces, random search or blind local search is usually not very effective. It is usually better to try to learn up a *model* of the loss landscape, which can be used to guide subsequent search steps. (This is analogous to building up a quadratic approximation to the loss surface in second order gradient methods.)

This model could be an implicit (non-parametric) model, as used by population-based methods (aka **evolutionary algorithms**, see e.g., [Sör15]), or it could be an explicit (parametric) model. There are many possible choices for parametric model. For example, the **cross-entropy method** (see e.g., [Rub97; RK04; Boe+05]) uses a multivariate Gaussian to represent a distribution over promising points in a real-valued configuration space; **probabilistic model-building genetic algorithms** [Pel08; Bal17] uses generic probability models (such as graphical models) to represent a distribution over promising discrete configurations; **Bayesian optimization** (see e.g., [Sha+16a]) uses regression models (such as Gaussian processes, discussed in Chapter 17) to provide a cheap **surrogate function** to the expensive blackbox function; and so on. For more information on blackbox optimization, see e.g., [KW19b; HA17].

## 5.9 Exercises

**Exercise 5.1** [Subderivative of the hinge loss function]

Let  $f(x) = (1 - x)_+$  be the hinge loss function, where  $(z)_+ = \max(0, z)$ . What are  $\partial f(0)$ ,  $\partial f(1)$ , and  $\partial f(2)$ ?

**Exercise 5.2** [EM for the Student distribution]

Derive the EM equations for computing the MLE for a multivariate Student distribution. Consider the case where the dof parameter is known and unknown separately. Hint: write the Student distribution as a scale mixture of Gaussians.

# 6 Information theory

In this chapter, we introduce a few basic concepts from the field of **information theory**. More details can be found in other books such as [Mac03; CT06], as well as the sequel to this book, [Mur22].

## 6.1 Entropy

The **entropy** of a probability distribution can be interpreted as a measure of uncertainty, or lack of predictability, associated with a random variable drawn from a given distribution, as we discuss below.

### 6.1.1 Entropy for discrete random variables

The entropy of a discrete random variable  $X$  with distribution  $p$  over  $K$  states is defined by

$$\mathbb{H}(X) \triangleq -\sum_{k=1}^K p(X=k) \log_2 p(X=k) = -\mathbb{E}_X [\log p(X)] \quad (6.1)$$

(Note that we use the notation  $\mathbb{H}(X)$  to denote the entropy of the rv with distribution  $p$ , just as people write  $\mathbb{V}[X]$  to mean the variance of the distribution associated with  $X$ ; we could alternatively write  $\mathbb{H}(p)$ .) Usually we use log base 2, in which case the units are called **bits** (short for binary digits). For example, if  $X \in \{1, \dots, 5\}$  with histogram distribution  $p = [0.25, 0.25, 0.2, 0.15, 0.15]$ , we find  $H = 2.29$  bits. If we use log base  $e$ , the units are called **nats**.

The discrete distribution with **maximum entropy** is the uniform distribution. Hence for a  $K$ -ary random variable, the entropy is maximized if  $p(x=k) = 1/K$ ; in this case,  $\mathbb{H}(X) = \log_2 K$ . Conversely, the distribution with minimum entropy (which is zero) is any delta-function that puts all its mass on one state. Such a distribution has no uncertainty.

For the special case of binary random variables,  $X \in \{0, 1\}$ , we can write  $p(X=1) = \theta$  and  $p(X=0) = 1 - \theta$ . Hence the entropy becomes

$$\mathbb{H}(X) = -[p(X=1) \log_2 p(X=1) + p(X=0) \log_2 p(X=0)] \quad (6.2)$$

$$= -[\theta \log_2 \theta + (1 - \theta) \log_2 (1 - \theta)] \quad (6.3)$$

This is called the **binary entropy function**, and is also written  $\mathbb{H}(\theta)$ . We plot this in Fig. 6.1. We see that the maximum value of 1 bit occurs when the distribution is uniform,  $\theta = 0.5$ . A fair coin requires a single yes/no question to determine its state.

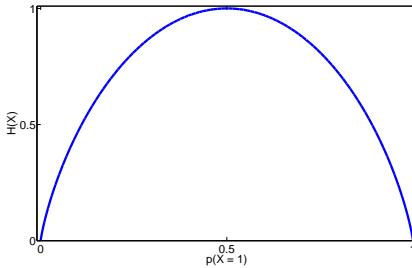
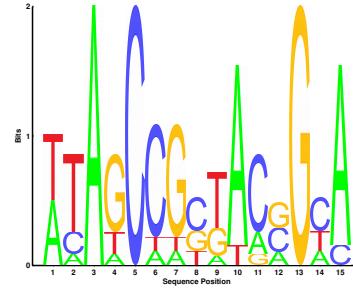


Figure 6.1: Entropy of a Bernoulli random variable as a function of  $\theta$ . The maximum entropy is  $\log_2 2 = 1$ . Generated by [beroulli\\_entropy\\_fig.py](#).

```
a t a g c c g g t a c g g c a
t t a g c t g c a a c c g c a
t c a g c c a c t a g a g c a
a t a a a c c g c g a c c g c a
t t a g c c g c t a a g g t a
t a a g c c t c g t a c g t a
t t a g c c g t t a c g g c c
a t a t c c g g t a c a g t a
a t a g c a g g t a c c g a a
a c a t c c g t g a c g g a a
```

(a)



(b)

Figure 6.2: (a) Some aligned DNA sequences. (b) The corresponding **position weight matrix** represented as a sequence logo. Each column represents a probability distribution over the alphabet  $\{A, C, G, T\}$  for the corresponding location in the sequence. The size of the letter is proportional to the probability. The overall vertical axis represents the information content of that location measured in bits (i.e., using  $\log_2 2$ ). Deterministic distributions (with an entropy of 0) have height 2, and uniform distributions (with an entropy of 2) have height 0. Generated by [seqlogoDemo.m](#).

As an interesting application of entropy, consider the problem of representing **DNA sequence motifs**, which is a distribution over short DNA strings. We can estimate this distribution by aligning a set of DNA sequences (e.g., from different species), and then estimating the empirical distribution of each possible nucleotide from the 4 letter alphabet  $X \sim \{A, C, G, T\}$  at each location  $t$  in the  $i$ th sequence as follows:

$$\mathbf{N}_t = \left( \sum_{i=1}^N \mathbb{I}(X_{it} = A), \sum_{i=1}^N \mathbb{I}(X_{it} = C), \sum_{i=1}^N \mathbb{I}(X_{it} = G), \sum_{i=1}^N \mathbb{I}(X_{it} = T) \right) \quad (6.4)$$

$$\hat{\theta}_t = \mathbf{N}_t / N, \quad (6.5)$$

This  $\mathbf{N}_t$  is a length four vector counting the number of times each letter appears at each location amongst the set of sequences. This  $\hat{\theta}_t$  distribution is known as a motif. We can also compute the most probable letter in each location; this is called the **consensus sequence**.

One way to visually summarize the data is by using a **sequence logo**, as shown in Fig. 6.2(b). We plot the letters A, C, G and T, with the most probable letter on the top; the height of the  $t$ 'th bar is defined to be  $2 - H_t$ , where  $H_t$  is the entropy of  $\hat{\theta}_t$  (note that 2 is the maximum possible entropy for a distribution over 4 letters). Thus tall bars correspond to nearly deterministic distributions, which are the locations that are conserved by evolution (e.g., because they are part of a gene coding region). In this example, we see that column 13 is all G's, and hence has height 2.

Estimating the entropy of a random variable with many possible states requires estimating its distribution, which can require a lot of data. For example, imagine if  $X$  represents the identity of a word in an English document. Since there is a long tail of rare words, and since new words are invented all the time, it can be difficult to reliably estimate  $p(X)$  and hence  $\mathbb{H}(X)$ . For one possible solution to this problem, see [VV13].

### 6.1.2 Cross entropy

The **cross entropy** between distribution  $p$  and  $q$  is defined by

$$\mathbb{H}(p, q) \triangleq - \sum_{k=1}^K p_k \log q_k \quad (6.6)$$

One can show that the cross entropy is the expected number of bits needed to compress some data samples drawn from distribution  $p$  using a code based on distribution  $q$ . This can be minimized by setting  $q = p$ , in which case the expected number of bits of the optimal code is  $\mathbb{H}(p, p) = \mathbb{H}(p)$  — this is known as **Shannon's source coding theorem** (see e.g., [CT06]).

### 6.1.3 Joint entropy

The joint entropy of two random variables  $X$  and  $Y$  is defined as

$$\mathbb{H}(X, Y) = - \sum_{x,y} p(x, y) \log_2 p(x, y) \quad (6.7)$$

For example, consider choosing an integer from 1 to 8,  $n \in \{1, \dots, 8\}$ . Let  $X(n) = 1$  if  $n$  is even, and  $Y(n) = 1$  if  $n$  is prime:

$n$	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
$X$	0	1	0	1	0	1	0	1
$Y$	0	1	1	0	1	0	1	0

The joint distribution is

$p(X, Y)$	$Y = 0$	$Y = 1$
$X = 0$	$\frac{1}{8}$	$\frac{3}{8}$
$X = 1$	$\frac{3}{8}$	$\frac{1}{8}$

so the joint entropy is given by

$$\mathbb{H}(X, Y) = - \left[ \frac{1}{8} \log_2 \frac{1}{8} + \frac{3}{8} \log_2 \frac{3}{8} + \frac{3}{8} \log_2 \frac{3}{8} + \frac{1}{8} \log_2 \frac{1}{8} \right] = 1.81 \text{ bits} \quad (6.8)$$

Clearly the marginal probabilities are uniform:  $p(X = 1) = p(X = 0) = p(Y = 0) = p(Y = 1) = 0.5$ , so  $\mathbb{H}(X) = \mathbb{H}(Y) = 1$ . Hence  $\mathbb{H}(X, Y) = 1.81 \text{ bits} < \mathbb{H}(X) + \mathbb{H}(Y) = 2 \text{ bits}$ . In

fact, this upper bound on the joint entropy holds in general. If  $X$  and  $Y$  are independent, then  $\mathbb{H}(X, Y) = \mathbb{H}(X) + \mathbb{H}(Y)$ , so the bound is tight. This makes intuitive sense: when the parts are correlated in some way, it reduces the “degrees of freedom” of the system, and hence reduces the overall entropy.

What is the lower bound on  $\mathbb{H}(X, Y)$ ? If  $Y$  is a deterministic function of  $X$ , then  $\mathbb{H}(X, Y) = \mathbb{H}(X)$ . So

$$\mathbb{H}(X, Y) \geq \max\{\mathbb{H}(X), \mathbb{H}(Y)\} \geq 0 \quad (6.9)$$

Intuitively this says combining variables together does not make the entropy go down: you cannot reduce uncertainty merely by adding more unknowns to the problem, you need to observe some data, a topic we discuss in Sec. 6.1.4.

We can extend the definition of joint entropy from two variables to  $n$  in the obvious way.

#### 6.1.4 Conditional entropy

The **conditional entropy** of  $Y$  given  $X$  is the uncertainty we have in  $Y$  after seeing  $X$ , averaged over possible values for  $X$ :

$$\mathbb{H}(Y|X) \triangleq \mathbb{E}_{p(X)} [\mathbb{H}(p(Y|X))] \quad (6.10)$$

$$= \sum_x p(x) \mathbb{H}(p(Y|X=x)) = - \sum_x p(x) \sum_y p(y|x) \log p(y|x) \quad (6.11)$$

$$= - \sum_{x,y} p(x,y) \log p(y|x) = - \sum_{x,y} p(x,y) \log \frac{p(x,y)}{p(x)} \quad (6.12)$$

$$= - \sum_{x,y} p(x,y) \log p(x,y) + \sum_x p(x) \log \frac{1}{p(x)} \quad (6.13)$$

$$= \mathbb{H}(X, Y) - \mathbb{H}(X) \quad (6.14)$$

If  $Y$  is a deterministic function of  $X$ , then knowing  $X$  completely determines  $Y$ , so  $\mathbb{H}(Y|X) = 0$ . If  $X$  and  $Y$  are independent, knowing  $X$  tells us nothing about  $Y$  and  $\mathbb{H}(Y|X) = \mathbb{H}(Y)$ . Since  $\mathbb{H}(X, Y) \leq \mathbb{H}(Y) + \mathbb{H}(X)$ , we have

$$\mathbb{H}(Y|X) \leq \mathbb{H}(Y) \quad (6.15)$$

with equality iff  $X$  and  $Y$  are independent. This shows that, on average, conditioning on data never increases one’s uncertainty. The caveat “on average” is necessary because for any *particular* observation (value of  $X$ ), one may get more “confused” (i.e.,  $\mathbb{H}(Y|x) > \mathbb{H}(Y)$ ). However, in expectation, looking at the data is a good thing to do. (See also Sec. 6.3.7.)

We can rewrite Eq. (6.14) as follows:

$$\mathbb{H}(X_1, X_2) = \mathbb{H}(X_1) + \mathbb{H}(X_2|X_1) \quad (6.16)$$

This can be generalized to get the **chain rule for entropy**:

$$\mathbb{H}(X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n) = \sum_{i=1}^n \mathbb{H}(X_i|X_1, \dots, X_{i-1}) \quad (6.17)$$

### 6.1.5 Perplexity

The **perplexity** of a discrete probability distribution  $p$  is defined as

$$\text{perplexity}(p) \triangleq 2^{\mathbb{H}(p)} \quad (6.18)$$

This is often interpreted as a measure of predictability. For example, suppose  $p$  is a uniform distribution over  $K$  states. In this case, the perplexity is  $K$ . Obviously the lower bound on perplexity is  $2^0 = 1$ , which will be achieved if the distribution can perfectly predict outcomes.

Now suppose we have an empirical distribution based on data  $\mathcal{D}$ :

$$p_{\mathcal{D}}(x|\mathcal{D}) = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^N \delta_{x_n}(x) \quad (6.19)$$

We can measure how well  $p$  predicts  $\mathcal{D}$  by computing

$$\text{perplexity}(p_{\mathcal{D}}, p) \triangleq 2^{\mathbb{H}(p_{\mathcal{D}}, p)} \quad (6.20)$$

Perplexity is often used to evaluate the quality of statistical language models, which is a generative model for sequences of tokens. Suppose the data is a single long document  $x$  of length  $N$ , and suppose  $p$  is a simple unigram model. In this case, the cross entropy term is given by

$$H = -\frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^N \log p(x_n) \quad (6.21)$$

and hence the perplexity is given by

$$\text{perplexity}(p_{\mathcal{D}}, p) = 2^H = \sqrt[N]{\prod_{n=1}^N \frac{1}{p(x_n)}} \quad (6.22)$$

This is sometimes called the **exponentiated cross entropy**. We see that this is the geometric mean of the inverse predictive probabilities.

In the case of language models, we usually condition on previous words when predicting the next word. For example, in a bigram model, we use a second order Markov model of the form  $p(x_i|x_{i-1})$ . We define the **branching factor** of a language model as the number of possible words that can follow any given word. We can thus interpret the perplexity as the weighted average branching factor. For example, suppose the model predicts that each word is equally likely, regardless of context, so  $p(x_i|x_{i-1}) = 1/K$ . Then the perplexity is  $((1/K)^N)^{-1/N} = K$ . If some symbols are more likely than others, and the model correctly reflects this, its perplexity will be lower than  $K$ . However, as we show in Sec. 6.2, we have  $\mathbb{H}(p^*) \leq \mathbb{H}(p^*, p)$ , so we can never reduce the perplexity below the entropy of the underlying stochastic process  $p^*$ .

See [JM08, p96] for further discussion of perplexity and its uses in language models.

### 6.1.6 Differential entropy for continuous random variables

If  $X$  is a continuous random variable with pdf  $p(x)$ , we define the **differential entropy** as

$$h(X) \triangleq - \int_{\mathcal{X}} dx p(x) \log p(x) \quad (6.23)$$

assuming this integral exists. For example, suppose  $X \sim U(0, a)$ . Then

$$h(X) = - \int_0^a dx \frac{1}{a} \log \frac{1}{a} = \log a \quad (6.24)$$

Note that, unlike the discrete case, *differential entropy can be negative*. This is because pdf's can be bigger than 1. For example if  $X \sim U(0, 1/8)$ , we have  $h(X) = \log_2(1/8) = -3$ .

One way to understand differential entropy is to realize that all real-valued quantities can only be represented to finite precision. It can be shown [CT91, p228] that the entropy of an  $n$ -bit quantization of a continuous random variable  $X$  is approximately  $h(X) + n$ . For example, suppose  $X \sim U(0, \frac{1}{8})$ . Then in a binary representation of  $X$ , the first 3 bits to the right of the binary point must be 0 (since the number is  $\leq 1/8$ ). So to describe  $X$  to  $n$  bits of accuracy only requires  $n - 3$  bits, which agrees with  $h(X) = -3$  calculated above.

#### 6.1.6.1 Example: Entropy of a Gaussian

The entropy of a  $d$ -dimensional Gaussian is

$$h(\mathcal{N}(\boldsymbol{\mu}, \boldsymbol{\Sigma})) = \frac{1}{2} \ln |2\pi e \boldsymbol{\Sigma}| = \frac{1}{2} \ln [(2\pi e)^d |\boldsymbol{\Sigma}|] = \frac{d}{2} + \frac{d}{2} \ln(2\pi) + \frac{1}{2} \ln |\boldsymbol{\Sigma}| \quad (6.25)$$

In the 1d case, this becomes

$$h(\mathcal{N}(\mu, \sigma^2)) = \frac{1}{2} \ln [2\pi e \sigma^2] \quad (6.26)$$

#### 6.1.6.2 Connection with variance

The entropy of a Gaussian increases monotonically as the variance increases. However, this is not always the case. For example, consider a mixture of two 1d Gaussians centered at -1 and +1. As we move the means further apart, say to -10 and +10, the variance increases (since the average distance from the overall mean gets larger). However, the entropy remains more or less the same, since we are still uncertain about where a sample might fall, even if we know that it will be near -10 or +10. (The exact entropy of a GMM is hard to compute, but a method to compute upper and lower bounds is presented in [Hub+08].)

#### 6.1.6.3 Discretization

In general, computing the differential entropy for a continuous random variable can be difficult. A simple approximation is to **discretize** or **quantize** the variables. There are various methods for this (see e.g., [DKS95; KK06] for a summary), but a simple approach is to bin the distribution based on its empirical quantiles. The critical question is how many bins to use [LM04]. Scott [Sco79] suggested the following heuristic:

$$B = N^{1/3} \frac{\max(\mathcal{D}) - \min(\mathcal{D})}{3.5\sigma(\mathcal{D})} \quad (6.27)$$

where  $\sigma(\mathcal{D})$  is the empirical standard deviation of the data, and  $N = |\mathcal{D}|$  is the number of datapoints in the empirical distribution. However, the technique of discretization does not scale well if  $X$  is a multi-dimensional random vector, due to the curse of dimensionality.

## 6.2 Relative entropy (KL divergence)

Given two distributions  $p$  and  $q$ , it is often useful to define a **distance metric** to measure how “close” or “similar” they are. In fact, we will be more general and consider a **divergence measure**  $D(p, q)$  which quantifies how far  $q$  is from  $p$ , without requiring that  $D$  be a metric. More precisely, we say that  $D$  is a divergence if  $D(p, q) \geq 0$  with equality iff  $p = q$ , whereas a metric also requires that  $D$  be symmetric and satisfy the **triangle inequality**,  $D(p, r) \leq D(p, q) + D(q, r)$ . There are many possible divergence measures we can use. In this section, we focus on the **Kullback-Leibler divergence** or **KL divergence**, also known as the **information gain** or **relative entropy**, between two distributions  $p$  and  $q$ .

### 6.2.1 Definition

For discrete distributions, the KL divergence is defined as follows:

$$\mathbb{KL}(p\|q) \triangleq \sum_{k=1}^K p_k \log \frac{p_k}{q_k} \quad (6.28)$$

This naturally extends to continuous distributions as well:

$$\mathbb{KL}(p\|q) \triangleq \int dx p(x) \log \frac{p(x)}{q(x)} \quad (6.29)$$

### 6.2.2 Interpretation

We can rewrite the KL as follows:

$$\mathbb{KL}(p\|q) = \underbrace{\sum_{k=1}^K p_k \log p_k}_{-\mathbb{H}(p)} - \underbrace{\sum_{k=1}^K p_k \log q_k}_{\mathbb{H}(p,q)} \quad (6.30)$$

We recognize the first term as the negative entropy, and the second term as the cross entropy. Thus we can interpret the KL divergence as the “extra number of bits” you need to pay when compressing data samples from  $p$  using the incorrect distribution  $q$  as the basis of your coding scheme.

There are various other interpretations of KL divergence. See the sequel to this book, [Mur22], for more information.

### 6.2.3 Example: KL divergence between two Gaussians

For example, one can show that the KL divergence between two multivariate Gaussian distributions is given by

$$\begin{aligned} & \mathbb{KL}(\mathcal{N}(\mathbf{x}|\boldsymbol{\mu}_1, \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_1) \| \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{x}|\boldsymbol{\mu}_2, \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_2)) \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \left[ \text{tr}(\boldsymbol{\Sigma}_2^{-1} \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_1) + (\boldsymbol{\mu}_2 - \boldsymbol{\mu}_1)^\top \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_2^{-1} (\boldsymbol{\mu}_2 - \boldsymbol{\mu}_1) - D + \log \left( \frac{\det(\boldsymbol{\Sigma}_2)}{\det(\boldsymbol{\Sigma}_1)} \right) \right] \end{aligned} \quad (6.31)$$

In the scalar case, this becomes

$$\mathbb{KL}(\mathcal{N}(x|\mu_1, \sigma_1) \| \mathcal{N}(x|\mu_2, \sigma_2)) = \log \frac{\sigma_2}{\sigma_1} + \frac{\sigma_1^2 + (\mu_1 - \mu_2)^2}{2\sigma_2^2} - \frac{1}{2} \quad (6.32)$$

### 6.2.4 Non-negativity of KL

In this section, we prove that the KL divergence is always non-negative.

**Theorem 6.2.1.** (*Information inequality*)  $\mathbb{KL}(p\|q) \geq 0$  with equality iff  $p = q$ .

*Proof.* We now prove the theorem following [CT06, p28]. Let  $A = \{x : p(x) > 0\}$  be the support of  $p(x)$ . Using the convexity of the log function and Jensen's inequality (Sec. A.4.3), we have that

$$-\mathbb{KL}(p\|q) = -\sum_{x \in A} p(x) \log \frac{p(x)}{q(x)} = \sum_{x \in A} p(x) \log \frac{q(x)}{p(x)} \quad (6.33)$$

$$\leq \log \sum_{x \in A} p(x) \frac{q(x)}{p(x)} = \log \sum_{x \in A} q(x) \quad (6.34)$$

$$\leq \log \sum_{x \in \mathcal{X}} q(x) = \log 1 = 0 \quad (6.35)$$

Since  $\log(x)$  is a strictly concave function ( $-\log(x)$  is convex), we have equality in Eq. (6.34) iff  $p(x) = cq(x)$  for some  $c$  that tracks the fraction of the whole space  $\mathcal{X}$  contained in  $A$ . We have equality in Eq. (6.35) iff  $\sum_{x \in A} q(x) = \sum_{x \in \mathcal{X}} q(x) = 1$ , which implies  $c = 1$ . Hence  $\mathbb{KL}(p\|q) = 0$  iff  $p(x) = q(x)$  for all  $x$ .  $\square$

This theorem has many important implications, as we will see throughout the book. For example, we can show that the uniform distribution is the one that maximizes the entropy:

**Corollary 6.2.1.** (*Uniform distribution maximizes the entropy*)  $\mathbb{H}(X) \leq \log |\mathcal{X}|$ , where  $|\mathcal{X}|$  is the number of states for  $X$ , with equality iff  $p(x)$  is uniform.

*Proof.* Let  $u(x) = 1/|\mathcal{X}|$ . Then

$$0 \leq \mathbb{KL}(p\|u) = \sum_x p(x) \log \frac{p(x)}{u(x)} = \log |\mathcal{X}| - \mathbb{H}(X) \quad (6.36)$$

$\square$

### 6.2.5 KL divergence and MLE

Suppose we want to find the distribution  $q$  that is as close as possible to  $p$ , as measured by KL divergence:

$$q^* = \arg \min_q \mathbb{KL}(p\|q) = \arg \min_q \int p(x) \log p(x) dx - \int p(x) \log q(x) dx \quad (6.37)$$

Now suppose  $p$  is the empirical distribution, which puts a probability atom on the observed training data and zero mass everywhere else:

$$p_D(x) = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^N \delta(x - x_n) \quad (6.38)$$

Using the sifting property of delta functions we get

$$\mathbb{KL}(p_D \| q) = - \int p_D(x) \log q(x) dx + C \quad (6.39)$$

$$= - \int \left[ \frac{1}{N} \sum_n \delta(x - x_n) \right] \log q(x) dx + C \quad (6.40)$$

$$= - \frac{1}{N} \sum_n \log q(x_n) + C \quad (6.41)$$

where  $C = \int p(x) \log p(x)$  is a constant independent of  $q$ . This is called the **cross entropy** objective, and is equal to the average negative log likelihood of  $q$  on the training set. Thus we see that minimizing KL divergence to the empirical distribution is equivalent to maximizing likelihood.

This perspective points out the flaw with likelihood-based training, namely that it puts too much weight on the training set. In most applications, we do not really believe that the empirical distribution is a good representation of the true distribution, since it just puts “spikes” on a finite set of points, and zero density everywhere else. Even if the dataset is large (say 1M images), the universe from which the data is sampled is usually even larger (e.g., the set of “all natural images” is much larger than 1M). We could smooth the empirical distribution using kernel density estimation (Sec. 16.3), but that would require a similar kernel on the space of images. An alternative, algorithmic approach is to use **data augmentation**, which is a way of perturbing the observed data samples in way that we believe reflects plausible “natural variation”. Applying MLE on this augmented dataset often yields superior results, especially when fitting models with many parameters [Xie+19a].

### 6.2.6 Forward vs reverse KL

Suppose we want to approximate a distribution  $p$  using a simpler distribution  $q$ . We can do this by minimizing  $\mathbb{KL}(q \| p)$  or  $\mathbb{KL}(p \| q)$ . This gives rise to different behavior, as we discuss below.

First we consider the **forwards KL**, also called the **inclusive KL**, defined by

$$\mathbb{KL}(p \| q) = \int p(x) \log \frac{p(x)}{q(x)} dx \quad (6.42)$$

Minimizing this wrt  $q$  is known as an **M-projection** or **moment projection**.

We can gain an understanding of the optimal  $q$  by considering inputs  $x$  for which  $p(x) > 0$  but  $q(x) = 0$ . In this case, the term  $\log p(x)/q(x)$  will be infinite. Thus minimizing the KL will force  $q$  to include all the areas of space for which  $p$  has non-zero probability. Put another way,  $q$  will be **zero-avoiding** or **mode-covering**, and will typically over-estimate the support of  $p$ . Fig. 6.3(a) illustrates mode covering where  $p$  is a bimodal distribution but  $q$  is unimodal.

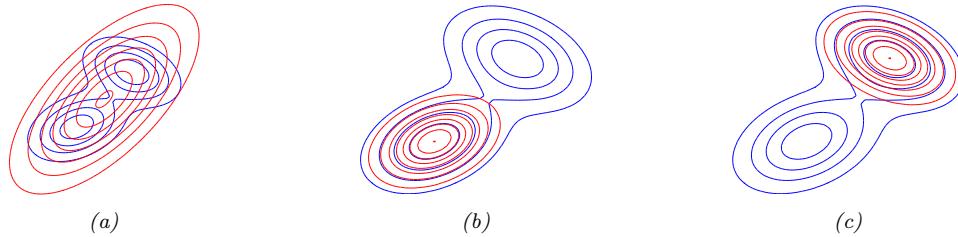


Figure 6.3: Illustrating forwards vs reverse KL on a bimodal distribution. The blue curves are the contours of the true distribution  $p$ . The red curves are the contours of the unimodal approximation  $q$ . (a) Minimizing forwards KL,  $\mathbb{KL}(p\|q)$ , wrt  $q$  causes  $q$  to “cover”  $p$ . (b-c) Minimizing reverse KL,  $\mathbb{KL}(q\|p)$  wrt  $q$  causes  $q$  to “lock onto” one of the two modes of  $p$ . Adapted from Figure 10.3 of [Bis06]. Generated by `KLfwdReverseMixGauss.m`.

Now consider the **reverse KL**, also called the **exclusive KL**:

$$\mathbb{KL}(q\|p) = \int q(x) \log \frac{q(x)}{p(x)} dx \quad (6.43)$$

Minimizing this wrt  $q$  is known as an **I-projection** or **information projection**.

We can gain an understanding of the optimal  $q$  by consider inputs  $x$  for which  $p(x) = 0$  but  $q(x) > 0$ . In this case, the term  $\log q(x)/p(x)$  will be infinite. Thus minimizing the exclusive KL will force  $q$  to exclude all the areas of space for which  $p$  has zero probability. One way to do this is for  $q$  to put probability mass in very few parts of space; this is called **zero-forcing** or **mode-seeking** behavior. In this case,  $q$  will typically under-estimate the support of  $p$ . We illustrate mode seeking when  $p$  is bimodal but  $q$  is unimodal in Fig. 6.3(b-c).

## 6.3 Mutual information

The KL divergence gave us a way to measure how similar two distributions were. How should we measure how dependant two random variables are? One thing we could do is turn the question of measuring the dependence of two random variables into a question about the similarity of their distributions. This gives rise to the notion of **mutual information** (MI) between two random variables, which we define below.

### 6.3.1 Definition

The mutual information between rv’s  $X$  and  $Y$  is defined as follows:

$$\mathbb{I}(X; Y) \triangleq \mathbb{KL}(p(x, y)\|p(x)p(y)) = \sum_{y \in Y} \sum_{x \in X} p(x, y) \log \frac{p(x, y)}{p(x)p(y)} \quad (6.44)$$

(We write  $\mathbb{I}(X; Y)$  instead of  $\mathbb{I}(X, Y)$ , in case  $X$  and/or  $Y$  represent sets of variables; for example, we can write  $\mathbb{I}(X; Y, Z)$  to represent the MI between  $X$  and  $(Y, Z)$ .) For continuous random variables, we just replace sums with integrals.

It is easy to see that MI is always non-negative, even for continuous random variables, since

$$\mathbb{I}(X;Y) = \mathbb{KL}(p(x,y)\|p(x)p(y)) \geq 0 \quad (6.45)$$

We achieve the bound of 0 iff  $p(x,y) = p(x)p(y)$ .

### 6.3.2 Interpretation

Knowing that the mutual information is a KL divergence between the joint and factored marginal distributions tells us that the MI measures the information gain if we update from a model that treats the two variables as independent  $p(x)p(y)$  to one that models their true joint density  $p(x,y)$ .

To gain further insight into the meaning of MI, it helps to re-express it in terms of joint and conditional entropies, as follows:

$$\mathbb{I}(X;Y) = \mathbb{H}(X) - \mathbb{H}(X|Y) = \mathbb{H}(Y) - \mathbb{H}(Y|X) \quad (6.46)$$

Thus we can interpret the MI between  $X$  and  $Y$  as the reduction in uncertainty about  $X$  after observing  $Y$ , or, by symmetry, the reduction in uncertainty about  $Y$  after observing  $X$ . Incidentally, this result gives an alternative proof that conditioning, on average, reduces entropy. In particular, we have  $0 \leq \mathbb{I}(X;Y) = \mathbb{H}(X) - \mathbb{H}(X|Y)$ , and hence  $\mathbb{H}(X|Y) \leq \mathbb{H}(X)$ .

We can also obtain a different interpretation. One can show that

$$\mathbb{I}(X;Y) = \mathbb{H}(X,Y) - \mathbb{H}(X|Y) - \mathbb{H}(Y|X) \quad (6.47)$$

Finally, one can show that

$$\mathbb{I}(X;Y) = \mathbb{H}(X) + \mathbb{H}(Y) - \mathbb{H}(X,Y) \quad (6.48)$$

See Fig. 6.4 for a summary of these equations in terms of an **information diagram**. (Formally, this is a signed measure mapping set expressions to their information-theoretic counterparts [Yeu91].)

### 6.3.3 Example

As an example, let us reconsider the example concerning prime and even numbers from Sec. 6.1.3. Recall that  $\mathbb{H}(X) = \mathbb{H}(Y) = 1$ . The conditional distribution  $p(Y|X)$  is given by normalizing each row:

	Y=0	Y=1
X=0	$\frac{1}{4}$	$\frac{3}{4}$
X=1	$\frac{3}{4}$	$\frac{1}{4}$

Hence the conditional entropy is

$$\mathbb{H}(Y|X) = -\left[\frac{1}{8} \log_2 \frac{1}{4} + \frac{3}{8} \log_2 \frac{3}{4} + \frac{3}{8} \log_2 \frac{3}{4} + \frac{1}{8} \log_2 \frac{1}{4}\right] = 0.81 \text{ bits} \quad (6.49)$$

and the mutual information is

$$\mathbb{I}(X;Y) = \mathbb{H}(Y) - \mathbb{H}(Y|X) = (1 - 0.81) \text{ bits} = 0.19 \text{ bits} \quad (6.50)$$

You can easily verify that

$$\mathbb{H}(X,Y) = \mathbb{H}(X|Y) + \mathbb{I}(X;Y) + \mathbb{H}(Y|X) \quad (6.51)$$

$$= (0.81 + 0.19 + 0.81) \text{ bits} = 1.81 \text{ bits} \quad (6.52)$$

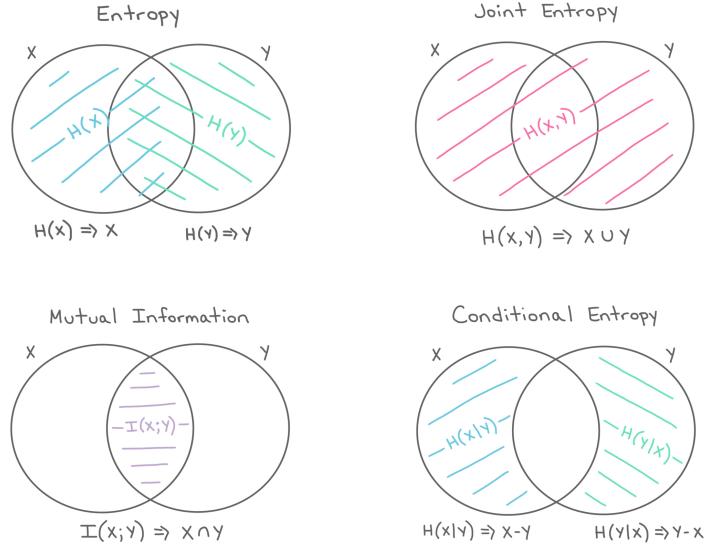


Figure 6.4: The marginal entropy, joint entropy, conditional entropy and mutual information represented as information diagrams. Used with kind permission of Katie Everett.

### 6.3.4 Conditional mutual information

We can define the **conditional mutual information** in the obvious way

$$\mathbb{I}(X;Y|Z) \triangleq \mathbb{E}_{p(Z)} [\mathbb{I}(X;Y)|Z] \quad (6.53)$$

$$= \mathbb{E}_{p(x,y,z)} \left[ \log \frac{p(x,y|z)}{p(x|z)p(y|z)} \right] \quad (6.54)$$

$$= \mathbb{H}(X|Z) + \mathbb{H}(Y|Z) - \mathbb{H}(X,Y|Z) \quad (6.55)$$

$$= \mathbb{H}(X|Z) - \mathbb{H}(X|Y,Z) = \mathbb{H}(Y|Z) - \mathbb{H}(Y|X,Z) \quad (6.56)$$

$$= \mathbb{H}(X,Z) + \mathbb{H}(Y,Z) - \mathbb{H}(Z) - \mathbb{H}(X,Y,Z) \quad (6.57)$$

$$= \mathbb{I}(Y;X,Z) - \mathbb{I}(Y;Z) \quad (6.58)$$

The last equation tells us that the conditional MI is the extra (residual) information that  $X$  tells us about  $Y$ , excluding what we already knew about  $Y$  given  $Z$  alone.

We can rewrite Eq. (6.58) as follows:

$$\mathbb{I}(Z,Y;X) = \mathbb{I}(Z;X) + \mathbb{I}(Y;X|Z) \quad (6.59)$$

Generalizing to  $N$  variables, we get the **chain rule for mutual information**:

$$\mathbb{I}(Z_1, \dots, Z_N; X) = \sum_{n=1}^N \mathbb{I}(Z_n; X|Z_1, \dots, Z_{n-1}) \quad (6.60)$$

### 6.3.5 Normalized mutual information

For some applications, it is useful to have a normalized measure of dependence, between 0 and 1. We now discuss one way to construct such a measure.

First, note that

$$\mathbb{I}(X;Y) = \mathbb{H}(X) - \mathbb{H}(X|Y) \leq \mathbb{H}(X) \quad (6.61)$$

$$= \mathbb{H}(Y) - \mathbb{H}(Y|X) \leq \mathbb{H}(Y) \quad (6.62)$$

so

$$0 \leq \mathbb{I}(X;Y) \leq \min(\mathbb{H}(X), \mathbb{H}(Y)) \quad (6.63)$$

Therefore we can define the **normalized mutual information** as follows:

$$NMI(X,Y) = \frac{\mathbb{I}(X;Y)}{\min(\mathbb{H}(X), \mathbb{H}(Y))} \leq 1 \quad (6.64)$$

This normalized mutual information ranges from 0 to 1. When  $NMI(X,Y) = 0$ ,  $\mathbb{I}(X;Y) = 0$  so  $X$  and  $Y$  are independent. Without loss of generality assume  $X$  has the higher entropy:  $NMI(X,Y) = 1 \implies \mathbb{I}(X;Y) = \mathbb{H}(X) - \mathbb{H}(X|Y) = \mathbb{H}(X) \implies \mathbb{H}(X|Y) = 0$  and so  $X$  is a deterministic function of  $Y$ .

### 6.3.6 MI as a “generalized correlation coefficient”

Suppose that  $(x,y)$  are jointly Gaussian:

$$\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} \sim \mathcal{N}\left(\mathbf{0}, \begin{pmatrix} \sigma^2 & \rho\sigma^2 \\ \rho\sigma^2 & \sigma^2 \end{pmatrix}\right) \quad (6.65)$$

We now show how to compute the mutual information between  $X$  and  $Y$ .

Using Eq. (6.25), we find that the entropy is

$$h(X,Y) = \frac{1}{2} \log [(2\pi e)^2 \det \Sigma] = \frac{1}{2} \log [(2\pi e)^2 \sigma^4 (1 - \rho^2)] \quad (6.66)$$

Since  $X$  and  $Y$  are individually normal with variance  $\sigma^2$ , we have

$$h(X) = h(Y) = \frac{1}{2} \log [2\pi e \sigma^2] \quad (6.67)$$

Hence

$$I(X,Y) = h(X) + h(Y) - h(X,Y) \quad (6.68)$$

$$= \log[2\pi e \sigma^2] - \frac{1}{2} \log[(2\pi e)^2 \sigma^4 (1 - \rho^2)] \quad (6.69)$$

$$= \frac{1}{2} \log[(2\pi e \sigma^2)^2] - \frac{1}{2} \log[(2\pi e \sigma^2)^2 (1 - \rho^2)] \quad (6.70)$$

$$= \frac{1}{2} \log \frac{1}{1 - \rho^2} = -\frac{1}{2} \log[1 - \rho^2] \quad (6.71)$$

We now discuss some interesting special cases.

1.  $\rho = 1$ . In this case,  $X = Y$ , and  $I(X, Y) = \infty$ , which makes sense. Observing  $Y$  tells us an infinite amount of information about  $X$  (as we know its real value exactly).
2.  $\rho = 0$ . In this case,  $X$  and  $Y$  are independent, and  $I(X, Y) = 0$ , which makes sense. Observing  $Y$  tells us nothing about  $X$ .
3.  $\rho = -1$ . In this case,  $X = -Y$ , and  $I(X, Y) = \infty$ , which again makes sense. Observing  $Y$  allows us to predict  $X$  to infinite precision.

Now consider the case where  $X$  and  $Y$  are scalar, but not jointly Gaussian. In general it can be difficult to compute the mutual information between continuous random variables, because we have to estimate the joint density  $p(X, Y)$ . For scalar variables, a simple approximation is to **discretize** or **quantize** them, by dividing the ranges of each variable into bins, and computing how many values fall in each histogram bin [Sco79]. We can then easily compute the MI using the empirical pmf.

Unfortunately, the number of bins used, and the location of the bin boundaries, can have a significant effect on the results. Another approach is to try many different bin sizes and locations, and to compute the maximum MI achieved. This statistic, appropriately normalized, is known as the **maximal information coefficient** (MIC) [Res+11]. More precisely, define

$$m(w, h) = \frac{\max_{G \in \mathcal{G}(w, h)} \mathbb{I}(X(G); Y(G))}{\log \min(w, h)} \quad (6.72)$$

where  $\mathcal{G}(w, h)$  is the set of 2d grids of size  $w \times h$ , and  $X(G), Y(G)$  represents a discretization of the variables onto this grid. (The maximization over bin locations can be performed efficiently using dynamic programming [Res+11].) Now define the MIC as

$$\text{MIC} \triangleq \max_{w, h: wh < B} m(w, h) \quad (6.73)$$

where  $B$  is some sample-size dependent bound on the number of bins we can use and still reliably estimate the distribution ([Res+11] suggest  $B = N^{0.6}$ ). It can be shown that the MIC lies in the range  $[0, 1]$ , where 0 represents no relationship between the variables, and 1 represents a noise-free relationship of any form, not just linear.

Fig. 6.5 gives an example of this statistic in action. The data consists of 357 variables measuring a variety of social, economic, health and political indicators, collected by the World Health Organization (WHO). On the left of the figure, we see the correlation coefficient (CC) plotted against the MIC for all 63,546 variable pairs. On the right of the figure, we see scatter plots for particular pairs of variables, which we now discuss:

- The point marked C (near 0,0 on the plot) has a low CC and a low MIC. The corresponding scatter plot makes it clear that there is no relationship between these two variables (percentage of lives lost to injury and density of dentists in the population).
- The points marked D and H have high CC (in absolute value) and high MIC, because they represent nearly linear relationships.
- The points marked E, F, and G have low CC but high MIC. This is because they correspond to non-linear (and sometimes, as in the case of E and F, non-functional, i.e., one-to-many) relationships between the variables.

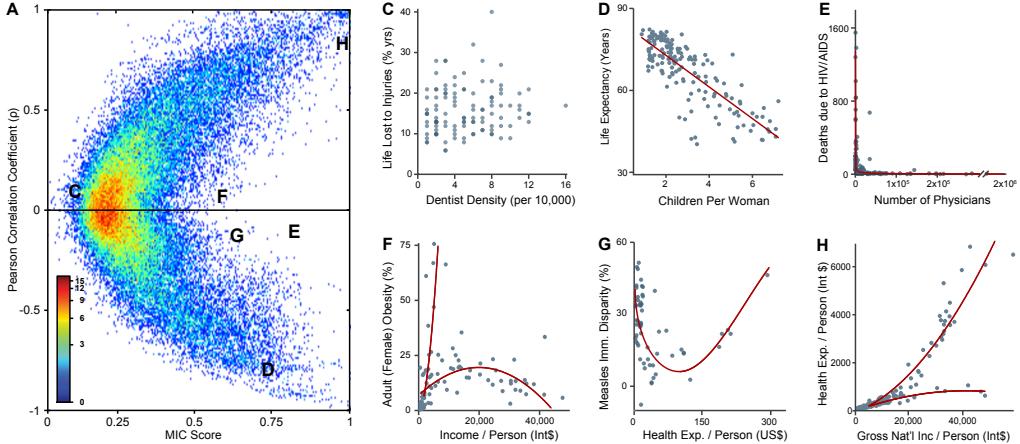


Figure 6.5: Left: Correlation coefficient vs maximal information criterion (MIC) for all pairwise relationships in the WHO data. Right: scatter plots of certain pairs of variables. The red lines are non-parametric smoothing regressions fit separately to each trend. From Figure 4 of [Res+11]. Used with kind permission of David Reshef.

In summary, we see that statistics (such as MIC) based on mutual information can be used to discover interesting relationships between variables in a way that simpler measures, such as correlation coefficients, cannot. For this reason, the MIC has been called “a correlation for the 21st century” [Spe11]. However, despite the appealing properties of MIC, it does have some theoretical problems [KA14]. For example, equal width histogram binning is not a reparameterization independent procedure. Since mutual information is independent of how we parameterize the distributions (since it is based on KL divergence), this can cause slow convergence and overly sensitive dependence of the estimates on the choice of bin widths. One strategy around this is to use fixed-mass binning, i.e. binning the data into quantiles. Fixed-mass binning is reparameterization independent and so can have nicer properties [Hud06].

### 6.3.7 Data processing inequality

Suppose we have an unknown variable  $X$ , and we observe a noisy function of it, call it  $Y$ . If we process the noisy observations in some way to create a new variable  $Z$ , it should be intuitively obvious that we cannot increase the amount of information we have about the unknown quantity,  $X$ . This is known as the **data processing inequality**. We now state this more formally, and then prove it.

**Theorem 6.3.1.** Suppose  $X \rightarrow Y \rightarrow Z$  forms a Markov chain, so that  $X \perp Z|Y$ . Then  $\mathbb{I}(X;Y) \geq \mathbb{I}(X;Z)$ .

*Proof.* By the chain rule for mutual information (Eq. (6.59)), we can expand the mutual information

in two different ways:

$$\mathbb{I}(X; Y, Z) = \mathbb{I}(X; Z) + \mathbb{I}(X; Y|Z) \quad (6.74)$$

$$= \mathbb{I}(X; Y) + \mathbb{I}(X; Z|Y) \quad (6.75)$$

Since  $X \perp Z|Y$ , we have  $\mathbb{I}(X; Z|Y) = 0$ , so

$$\mathbb{I}(X; Z) + \mathbb{I}(X; Y|Z) = \mathbb{I}(X; Y) \quad (6.76)$$

Since  $\mathbb{I}(X; Y|Z) \geq 0$ , we have  $\mathbb{I}(X; Y) \geq \mathbb{I}(X; Z)$ . Similarly one can prove that  $\mathbb{I}(Y; Z) \geq \mathbb{I}(X; Z)$ .

□

### 6.3.8 Sufficient Statistics

An important consequence of the DPI is the following. Suppose we have the chain  $\theta \rightarrow \mathcal{D} \rightarrow s(\mathcal{D})$ . Then

$$\mathbb{I}(\theta; s(\mathcal{D})) \leq \mathbb{I}(\theta; \mathcal{D}) \quad (6.77)$$

If this holds with equality, then we say that  $s(\mathcal{D})$  is a **sufficient statistic** of the data  $\mathcal{D}$  for the purposes of inferring  $\theta$ . In this case, we can equivalently write  $\theta \rightarrow s(\mathcal{D}) \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$ , since we can reconstruct the data from knowing  $s(\mathcal{D})$  just as accurately as from knowing  $\theta$ .

An example of a sufficient statistic is the data itself,  $s(\mathcal{D}) = \mathcal{D}$ , but this is not very useful, since it doesn't summarize the data at all. Hence we define a **minimal sufficient statistic**  $s'(\mathcal{D})$  as one which is sufficient, and which contains no extra information about  $\theta$ ; thus  $s(\mathcal{D})$  maximally compresses the data  $\mathcal{D}$  without losing information which is relevant to predicting  $\theta$ . More formally, we say  $s$  is a *minimal* sufficient statistic for  $\mathcal{D}$  if for all sufficient statistics  $s'(\mathcal{D})$  there is some function  $f$  such that  $s(\mathcal{D}) = f(s'(\mathcal{D}))$ . We can summarize the situation as follows:

$$\theta \rightarrow s(\mathcal{D}) \rightarrow s'(\mathcal{D}) \rightarrow \mathcal{D} \quad (6.78)$$

Here  $s'(\mathcal{D})$  takes  $s(\mathcal{D})$  and adds redundant information to it, thus creating a one-to-many mapping.

For example, a minimal sufficient statistic for a set of  $N$  Bernoulli trials is simply  $N$  and  $N_1 = \sum_n \mathbb{I}(X_n = 1)$ , i.e., the number of successes. In other words, we don't need to keep track of the entire sequence of heads and tails and their ordering, we only need to keep track of the total number of heads and tails. Similarlt, for inferring the mean of a Gaussian distribution with known variance we only need to know the empirical mean and number of samples.

### 6.3.9 Fano's inequality

A common method for **feature selection** is to pick input features  $X_d$  which have high mutual information with the response variable  $Y$ . Below we justify why this is a reasonable thing to do. In particular, we state a result, known as **Fano's inequality**, which bounds the probability of misclassification (for any method) in terms of the mutual information between the features  $X$  and the class label  $Y$ .

**Theorem 6.3.2.** (*Fano's inequality*) Consider an estimator  $\hat{Y} = f(X)$  such that  $Y \rightarrow X \rightarrow \hat{Y}$  forms a Markov chain. Let  $E$  be the event  $\hat{Y} \neq Y$ , indicating that an error occurred, and let  $P_e = P(Y \neq \hat{Y})$  be the probability of error. Then we have

$$\mathbb{H}(Y|X) \leq \mathbb{H}(Y|\hat{Y}) \leq \mathbb{H}(E) + P_e \log |\mathcal{Y}| \quad (6.79)$$

Since  $\mathbb{H}(E) \leq 1$ , as we saw in Fig. 6.1, we can weaken this result to get

$$1 + P_e \log |\mathcal{Y}| \geq \mathbb{H}(Y|X) \quad (6.80)$$

and hence

$$P_e \geq \frac{\mathbb{H}(Y|X) - 1}{\log |\mathcal{Y}|} \quad (6.81)$$

Thus minimizing  $\mathbb{H}(Y|X)$  (which can be done by maximizing  $\mathbb{I}(X; Y)$ ) will also minimize the lower bound on  $P_e$ .

*Proof.* (From [CT06, p38].) Using the chain rule for entropy, we have

$$\mathbb{H}(E, Y|\hat{Y}) = \mathbb{H}(Y|\hat{Y}) + \underbrace{\mathbb{H}(E|Y, \hat{Y})}_{=0} \quad (6.82)$$

$$= \mathbb{H}(E|\hat{Y}) + \mathbb{H}(Y|E, \hat{Y}) \quad (6.83)$$

Since conditioning reduces entropy (see Sec. 6.2.4), we have  $\mathbb{H}(E|\hat{Y}) \leq \mathbb{H}(E)$ . The final term can be bounded as follows:

$$\mathbb{H}(Y|E, \hat{Y}) = P(E=0)\mathbb{H}(Y|\hat{Y}, E=0) + P(E=1)\mathbb{H}(Y|\hat{Y}, E=1) \quad (6.84)$$

$$\leq (1 - P_e)0 + P_e \log |\mathcal{Y}| \quad (6.85)$$

Hence

$$\mathbb{H}(Y|\hat{Y}) \leq \underbrace{\mathbb{H}(E|\hat{Y})}_{\leq \mathbb{H}(E)} + \underbrace{\mathbb{H}(Y|E, \hat{Y})}_{P_e \log |\mathcal{Y}|} \quad (6.86)$$

Finally, by the data processing inequality, we have  $\mathbb{I}(Y; \hat{Y}) \leq \mathbb{I}(Y; X)$ , so  $\mathbb{H}(Y|X) \leq \mathbb{H}(Y|\hat{Y})$ , which establishes Eq. (6.79).  $\square$

## 6.4 Exercises

**Exercise 6.1** [Expressing mutual information in terms of entropies]

Prove the following identities:

$$I(X; Y) = H(X) - H(X|Y) = H(Y) - H(Y|X) \quad (6.87)$$

and

$$H(X, Y) = H(X|Y) + H(Y|X) + I(X; Y) \quad (6.88)$$

**Exercise 6.2** [Relationship between  $D(p||q)$  and  $\chi^2$  statistic]

(Source: [CT91, Q12.2].)

Show that, if  $p(x) \approx q(x)$ , then

$$\mathbb{KL}(p||q) \approx \frac{1}{2}\chi^2 \quad (6.89)$$

where

$$\chi^2 = \sum_x \frac{(p(x) - q(x))^2}{q(x)} \quad (6.90)$$

Hint: write

$$p(x) = \Delta(x) + q(x) \quad (6.91)$$

$$\frac{p(x)}{q(x)} = 1 + \frac{\Delta(x)}{q(x)} \quad (6.92)$$

and use the Taylor series expansion for  $\log(1+x)$ .

$$\log(1+x) = x - \frac{x^2}{2} + \frac{x^3}{3} - \frac{x^4}{4} \dots \quad (6.93)$$

for  $-1 < x \leq 1$ .

**Exercise 6.3** [Fun with entropies]

(Source: Mackay.)

Consider the joint distribution  $p(X, Y)$

		$x$			
		1	2	3	4
$y$	1	1/8	1/16	1/32	1/32
	2	1/16	1/8	1/32	1/32
	3	1/16	1/16	1/16	1/16
	4	1/4	0	0	0

- a. What is the joint entropy  $H(X, Y)$ ?
- b. What are the marginal entropies  $H(X)$  and  $H(Y)$ ?
- c. The entropy of  $X$  conditioned on a specific value of  $y$  is defined as

$$H(X|Y=y) = - \sum_x p(x|y) \log p(x|y) \quad (6.94)$$

Compute  $H(X|y)$  for each value of  $y$ . Does the posterior entropy on  $X$  ever increase given an observation of  $Y$ ?

- d. The conditional entropy is defined as

$$H(X|Y) = \sum_y p(y) H(X|Y=y) \quad (6.95)$$

Compute this. Does the posterior entropy on  $X$  increase or decrease when averaged over the possible values of  $Y$ ?

- e. What is the mutual information between  $X$  and  $Y$ ?

**Exercise 6.4** [Forwards vs reverse KL divergence]

(Source: Exercise 33.7 of [Mac03].) Consider a factored approximation  $q(x, y) = q(x)q(y)$  to a joint distribution  $p(x, y)$ . Show that to minimize the forwards KL  $\mathbb{KL}(p\|q)$  we should set  $q(x) = p(x)$  and  $q(y) = p(y)$ , i.e., the optimal approximation is a product of marginals

Now consider the following joint distribution, where the rows represent  $y$  and the columns  $x$ .

	1	2	3	4
1	1/8	1/8	0	0
2	1/8	1/8	0	0
3	0	0	1/4	0
4	0	0	0	1/4

Show that the reverse KL  $\mathbb{KL}(q\|p)$  for this  $p$  has three distinct minima. Identify those minima and evaluate  $\mathbb{KL}(q\|p)$  at each of them. What is the value of  $\mathbb{KL}(q\|p)$  if we set  $q(x, y) = p(x)p(y)$ ?



# 7 Bayesian statistics

## 7.1 Introduction

In Chapter 4, we discussed how to estimate parameters from data. However, this ignored any uncertainty in the estimates, which can be important for some applications. In this chapter, we model our uncertainty by computing the posterior over the parameters given the data:

$$p(\boldsymbol{\theta}|\mathcal{D}) = \frac{p(\boldsymbol{\theta})p(\mathcal{D}|\boldsymbol{\theta})}{p(\mathcal{D})} = \frac{p(\boldsymbol{\theta})p(\mathcal{D}|\boldsymbol{\theta})}{\int p(\boldsymbol{\theta}')p(\mathcal{D}|\boldsymbol{\theta}')d\boldsymbol{\theta}'} \quad (7.1)$$

This is conceptually similar to the probabilistic inference we discussed in Chapter 2, however in this chapter, we will apply inference to more “standard” kinds of models.

### 7.1.1 Computing the posterior

Bayesian inference relies on the ability to compute the posterior in Eq. (7.1). This can be computationally difficult due to the need to compute the integral in the denominator; this term is necessary in order to ensure the distribution integrates to 1 over the entire space.

In Sec. 7.2 we will discuss a class of models for which this integral can be computed in closed form. These models are often used as “building blocks” for more complex models. However, in general we will need to use some of the algorithms that we discuss in Sec. 7.7 to approximate the posterior.

### 7.1.2 Summarizing the posterior

A posterior distribution is (usually) a high dimensional object that is hard to visualize and work with. In this section, we discuss some common ways to summarize posteriors.

#### 7.1.2.1 Point estimates

The simplest thing to do with a posterior distribution is to “collapse” it to a single point, which can be interpreted as our “best guess” about the unknown parameter. This is known as a **point estimate**. As we discuss in Sec. 8.1.5, the optimal point estimate minimizes the posterior expected loss:

$$\hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}} = \operatorname{argmin}_{\boldsymbol{\theta}} \int p(\boldsymbol{\theta}|\mathcal{D})\ell(\boldsymbol{\theta}, \hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}})d\boldsymbol{\theta} \quad (7.2)$$

where  $\ell(\boldsymbol{\theta}, \hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}})$  is the loss we incur if the true value is  $\boldsymbol{\theta}$  but we guess  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}}$ .

If we use  $\ell_2$  loss,  $\ell(\boldsymbol{\theta}, \hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}}) = \|\boldsymbol{\theta} - \hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}}\|_2^2$ , then the optimal estimate is the posterior mean,  $\bar{\boldsymbol{\theta}} = \mathbb{E}[\boldsymbol{\theta}|\mathcal{D}]$ , as we show in Sec. 8.1.5.1. If we use  $\ell_1$  loss,  $\ell(\boldsymbol{\theta}, \hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}}) = |\boldsymbol{\theta} - \hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}}|_1$ , then the optimal estimate is the posterior median, as we show in Sec. 8.1.5.2. If we use 0-1 loss,  $\ell(\boldsymbol{\theta}, \hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}}) = \mathbb{I}(\boldsymbol{\theta} = \hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}})$ , then the optimal estimate is the posterior mode or MAP estimate,  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}} = \operatorname{argmax}_{\boldsymbol{\theta}} p(\boldsymbol{\theta}|\mathcal{D})$ , as we show in Sec. 8.1.2.1. This is the easiest point estimate to compute, since it just requires optimization, and not integration. However, 0-1 loss is a very unnatural loss function to use for parameter estimation, which are real-valued vectors.

### 7.1.2.2 Credible intervals

We often want a measure of confidence in our parameter estimates. A standard measure of confidence in some (scalar) quantity  $\theta$  is the “width” of its posterior distribution. This can be measured using a  $100(1 - \alpha)\%$  **credible interval**<sup>1</sup> which is a (contiguous) region  $C = (\ell, u)$  (standing for lower and upper) which contains  $1 - \alpha$  of the posterior probability mass, i.e.,

$$C_\alpha(\mathcal{D}) = (\ell, u) : P(\ell \leq \theta \leq u|\mathcal{D}) = 1 - \alpha \quad (7.3)$$

There may be many intervals that satisfy Eq. (7.3), so we usually choose one such that there is  $(1 - \alpha)/2$  mass in each tail; this is called a **central interval**. If the posterior has a known functional form, we can compute the posterior central interval using  $\ell = F^{-1}(\alpha/2)$  and  $u = F^{-1}(1 - \alpha/2)$ , where  $F$  is the cdf of the posterior, and  $F^{-1}$  is the inverse cdf. For example, if the posterior is Gaussian,  $p(\theta|\mathcal{D}) = \mathcal{N}(0, 1)$ , and  $\alpha = 0.05$ , then we have  $\ell = \Phi(\alpha/2) = -1.96$ , and  $u = \Phi(1 - \alpha/2) = 1.96$ , where  $\Phi$  denotes the cdf of the Gaussian. This is illustrated in Fig. 3.6b. This justifies the common practice of quoting a credible interval in the form of  $\mu \pm 2\sigma$ , where  $\mu$  represents the posterior mean,  $\sigma$  represents the posterior standard deviation, and 2 is a good approximation to 1.96.

In general, it is often hard to compute the inverse cdf of the posterior. In this case, a simple alternative is to draw samples from the posterior, and then to use a Monte Carlo approximation to the posterior quantiles: we simply sort the  $S$  samples, and find the one that occurs at location  $\alpha/S$  along the sorted list. As  $S \rightarrow \infty$ , this converges to the true quantile. See `beta_credible_int_demo.py` for a demo of this.

A problem with central intervals is that there might be points outside the central interval which have higher probability than points that are inside, as illustrated in Figure 7.1(a). This motivates an alternative quantity known as the **highest posterior density** or **HPD** region which is the set of points which have a probability above some threshold. More precisely we find the threshold  $p^*$  on the pdf such that

$$1 - \alpha = \int_{\theta: p(\theta|\mathcal{D}) > p^*} p(\theta|\mathcal{D}) d\theta \quad (7.4)$$

and then define the HPD as

$$C_\alpha(\mathcal{D}) = \{\theta : p(\theta|\mathcal{D}) \geq p^*\} \quad (7.5)$$

---

1. A credible interval is not the same as a confidence interval, which is a concept from frequentist statistics which we discuss in Sec. D.3.4.

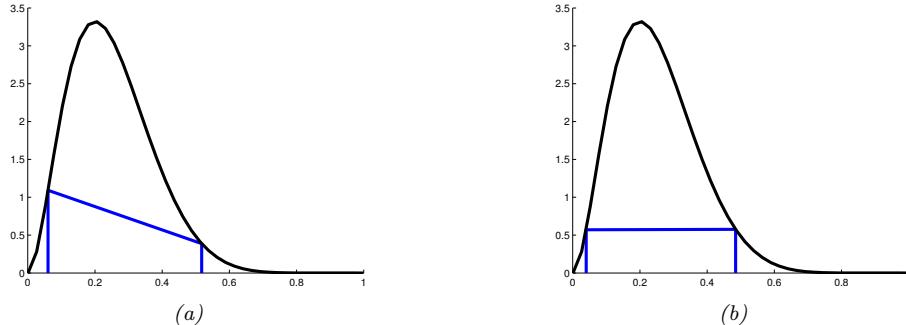


Figure 7.1: (a) Central interval and (b) HPD region for a Beta(3,9) posterior. The CI is (0.06, 0.52) and the HPD is (0.04, 0.48). Adapted from Figure 3.6 of [Hof09]. Generated by `betaHPD.m`.

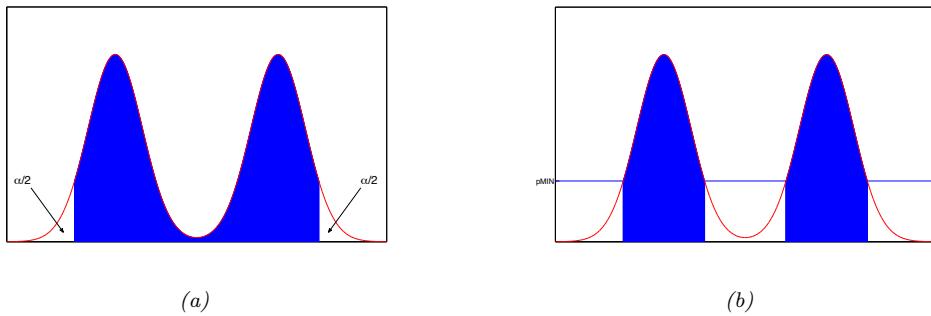


Figure 7.2: (a) Central interval and (b) HPD region for a hypothetical multimodal posterior. Adapted from Figure 2.2 of [Gel+04]. Generated by `postDensityIntervals.m`.

In 1d, the HPD region is sometimes called a **highest density interval** or **HDI**. For example, Figure 7.1(b) shows the 95% HDI of a Beta(3,9) distribution, which is (0.04, 0.48). We see that this is narrower than the central interval, even though it still contains 95% of the mass; furthermore, every point inside of it has higher density than every point outside of it.

For a unimodal distribution, the HDI will be the narrowest interval around the mode containing 95% of the mass. To see this, imagine “water filling” in reverse, where we lower the level until 95% of the mass is revealed, and only 5% is submerged. This gives a simple algorithm for computing HDIs in the 1d case: simply search over points such that the interval contains 95% of the mass and has minimal width. This can be done by 1d numerical optimization if we know the inverse CDF of the distribution, or by search over the sorted data points if we have a bag of samples (see `betaHPD.m` for a demo).

If the posterior is multimodal, the HDI may not even be a connected region: see Figure 7.2(b) for an example. However, summarizing multimodal posteriors is always difficult.

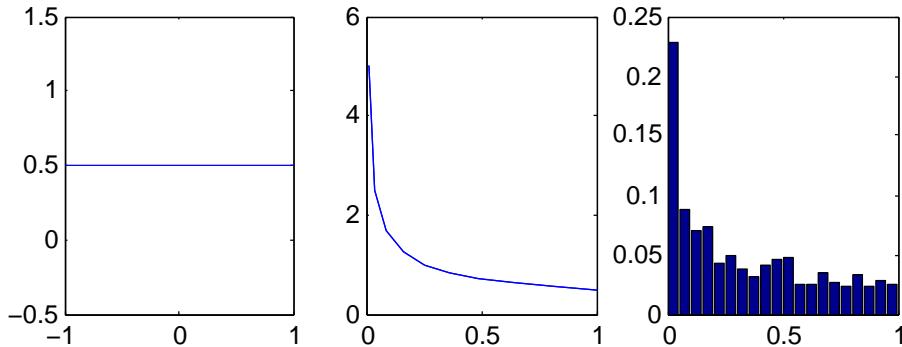


Figure 7.3: Computing the distribution of  $z = y^2$ , where  $p(y)$  is uniform (left). The analytic result is shown in the middle, and the Monte Carlo approximation is shown on the right. Generated by [change\\_of\\_vars\\_demo1d.py](#).

### 7.1.2.3 Posterior samples

Often we want to compute the expected value of some function of a random variable,  $Z = f(Y)$ . We can approximate this by drawing many samples of  $Y$  from its (posterior) distribution, and then using

$$\mathbb{E}[f(Y)] = \int f(y)p(y)dy \approx \frac{1}{S} \sum_{s=1}^S f(y_s) \quad (7.6)$$

This is called **Monte Carlo integration**, and has the advantage over numerical integration (which is based on evaluating the function at a fixed grid of points) that the function is only evaluated in places where there is non-negligible probability. Thus MC integration scales better to high dimensional problems.

For example, suppose  $y \sim \text{Unif}(-1, 1)$  and  $z = f(x) = y^2$ . The exact mean is given by

$$\mathbb{E}[z] = \int_{-1}^{-1} \frac{1}{2}y^2 dy = \frac{1}{2}[\frac{y^3}{3}]_{-1}^1 = 1/3 \quad (7.7)$$

We can approximate this by drawing many samples from  $p(y)$ , squaring them, and then averaging; we find  $\hat{\mathbb{E}}[f] = 0.34$ , as shown in Fig. 7.3.

By varying the function  $f$ , we can approximate many quantities of interest, such as the mean,

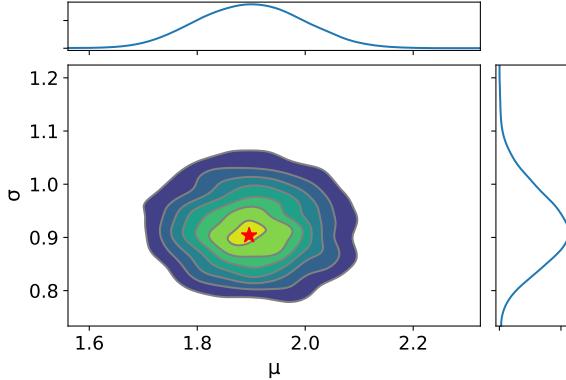


Figure 7.4: Kernel density estimate derived from a Monte Carlo approximation to  $p(\mu, \sigma^2 | \mathcal{D})$  where  $\mathcal{D} = \{y_n \sim \mathcal{N}(\mu = 2, \sigma = 1) : n = 1 : 1000\}$  and we use a diffuse prior. The red star is the MLE. Generated by `gauss2d_pymc3.py`.

variance and quantiles of a distribution, as shown below:

$$\mathbb{E}[Y] \approx \frac{1}{S} \sum_{s=1}^S y_s \quad (7.8)$$

$$\mathbb{V}[Y] \approx \frac{1}{S} \sum_{s=1}^S (y_s - \bar{y})^2 \quad (7.9)$$

$$\Pr(Y \leq c) \approx \frac{1}{S} |\{y_s \leq c : s = 1 : S\}| \quad (7.10)$$

In some cases, the posterior is already represented as a set of samples, rather than as an explicit parametric distribution from which we can draw samples. In this case, we often use kernel density estimation to visualize 1d marginals or 2d joints as a smooth distribution. (We discuss KDE in Sec. 16.3). See Fig. 7.4 for an example.

## 7.2 Conjugate priors

In this section, we consider a set of (prior, likelihood) pairs for which we can compute the posterior in closed form. In particular, we will use priors that are “conjugate” to the likelihood. We say that a prior  $p(\theta) \in \mathcal{F}$  is a **conjugate prior** for a likelihood function  $p(\mathcal{D}|\theta)$  if the posterior is in the same parameterized family as the prior, i.e.,  $p(\theta|\mathcal{D}) \in \mathcal{F}$ . In other words,  $\mathcal{F}$  is closed under Bayesian updating. If the family  $\mathcal{F}$  corresponds to the exponential family (defined in Sec. 12.2), then the computations can be performed in closed form. In the sections below, we give some common examples of this framework, which we will use later in the book.

### 7.2.1 The beta-binomial model

Suppose we toss a coin  $N$  times, and want to infer the probability of heads. Let  $y_n = 1$  denote the event that the  $n$ 'th trial was heads,  $y_n = 0$  represent the event that the  $n$ 'th trial was tails, and let  $\mathcal{D} = \{y_n : n = 1 : N\}$  be all the data. We assume  $y_n \sim \text{Ber}(\theta)$ , where  $\theta \in [0, 1]$  is the rate parameter (probability of heads). In this section, we discuss how to compute  $p(\theta|\mathcal{D})$ .

#### 7.2.1.1 Likelihood

We assume the data are **iid** or **independent and identically distributed**. Thus the likelihood has the form

$$p(\mathcal{D}|\theta) = \prod_{n=1}^N \theta^{y_n} (1-\theta)^{1-y_n} = \theta^{N_1} (1-\theta)^{N_0} \quad (7.11)$$

where we have defined  $N_1 = \sum_{n=1}^N \mathbb{I}(y_n = 1)$  and  $N_0 = \sum_{n=1}^N \mathbb{I}(y_n = 0)$ , representing the number of heads and tails. These counts are called the **sufficient statistics** of the data, since this is all we need to know about  $\mathcal{D}$  to infer  $\theta$ . The total count,  $N = N_0 + N_1$ , is called the sample size.

Note that we can also consider a Binomial likelihood model, in which we perform  $N$  trials and observe the number of heads,  $y$ , rather than observing a sequence of coin tosses. Now the likelihood has the following form:

$$p(\mathcal{D}|\theta) = \text{Bin}(y|N, \theta) \binom{N}{y} \theta^y (1-\theta)^{N-y} \quad (7.12)$$

The scaling factor  $\binom{N}{y}$  is independent of  $\theta$ , so we can ignore it. Thus this likelihood is proportional to the Bernoulli likelihood in Eq. (7.11), so our inferences about  $\theta$  will be the same for both models.

#### 7.2.1.2 Prior

To simplify the computations, we will assume that the prior  $p(\theta) \in \mathcal{F}$  is a conjugate prior for the likelihood function  $p(y|\theta)$ . This means that the posterior is in the same parameterized family as the prior, i.e.,  $p(\theta|\mathcal{D}) \in \mathcal{F}$ .

To ensure this property when using the Bernoulli (or Binomial) likelihood, we should use a prior of the following form:

$$p(\theta) \propto \theta^{\tilde{\alpha}-1} (1-\theta)^{\tilde{\beta}-1} \quad (7.13)$$

We recognize this as the pdf of a beta distribution (see Sec. 3.4.4).

#### 7.2.1.3 Posterior

If we multiply the Bernoulli likelihood in Eq. (7.11) with the beta prior in Eq. (3.66) we get a beta posterior:

$$p(\theta|\mathcal{D}) \propto \theta^{N_1} (1-\theta)^{N_0} \theta^{\tilde{\alpha}-1} (1-\theta)^{\tilde{\beta}-1} \quad (7.14)$$

$$\propto \text{Beta}(\theta | \tilde{\alpha} + N_1, \tilde{\beta} + N_0) \quad (7.15)$$

$$= \text{Beta}(\theta | \hat{\alpha}, \hat{\beta}) \quad (7.16)$$

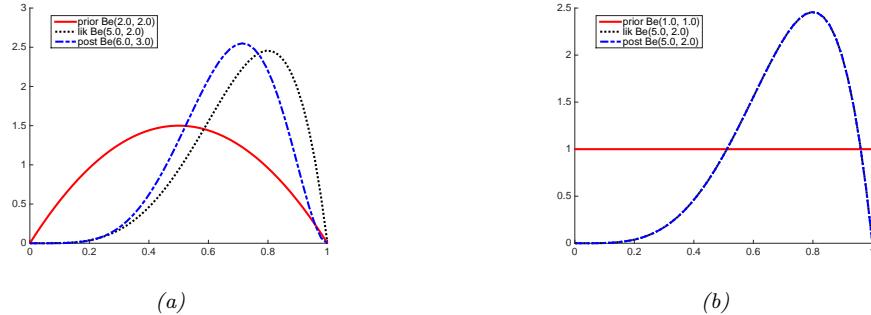


Figure 7.5: Updating a Beta prior with a Bernoulli likelihood with sufficient statistics  $N_1 = 4, N_0 = 1$ . (a) Beta(2,2) prior. (b) Uniform Beta(1,1) prior. Generated by `beta_binom_post_plot.py`.

where  $\hat{\alpha} \triangleq \check{\alpha} + N_1$  and  $\hat{\beta} \triangleq \check{\beta} + N_0$  are the parameters of the posterior. Since the posterior has the same functional form as the prior, we say that the beta distribution is a conjugate prior for the Bernoulli likelihood.

The parameters of the prior are called **hyper-parameters**. It is clear that (in this example) the hyper-parameters play a role analogous to the sufficient statistics; they are therefore often called **pseudo counts**. The value  $\check{N} = \check{\alpha} + \check{\beta}$  is called the **equivalent sample size**, since it plays a role analogous to the observed sample size,  $N = N_0 + N_1$ .

### Example

For example, suppose we set  $\check{\alpha} = \check{\beta} = 2$ . This is like saying we believe we have already seen two heads and two tails before we see the actual data; this is a very weak preference for the value of  $\theta = 0.5$ . The effect of using this prior is illustrated in Fig. 7.5a. We see the posterior (blue line) is a “compromise” between the prior (red line) and the likelihood (black line).

If we set  $\check{\alpha} = \check{\beta} = 1$ , the corresponding prior becomes the uniform distribution:

$$p(\theta) = \text{Beta}(\theta|1, 1) \propto \theta^0(1-\theta)^0 = \text{Unif}(\theta|0, 1) \quad (7.17)$$

The effect of using this prior is illustrated in Fig. 7.5b. We see that the posterior has exactly the same shape as the likelihood, since the prior was “**uninformative**”.

### Summarizing the posterior

The posterior distribution  $p(\theta|\mathcal{D})$  captures everything we know about the parameter after seeing the data. However, it is often more convenient to summarize our knowledge in terms of a **point estimate**, such as the posterior mean, as well as some measure of confidence, such as the posterior variance.

The posterior mean of the beta distribution is given by

$$\bar{\theta} \triangleq \mathbb{E}[\theta|\mathcal{D}] = \frac{\hat{\alpha}}{\hat{\beta} + \hat{\alpha}} = \frac{\hat{\alpha}}{\check{N}} \quad (7.18)$$

where  $\widehat{N} = \widehat{\beta} + \widehat{\alpha}$  is the strength (equivalent sample size) of the posterior. We will now show that the posterior mean is a convex combination of the prior mean,  $m = \check{\alpha} / \check{N}$  (where  $\check{N} \triangleq \check{\alpha} + \check{\beta}$  is the prior strength), and the MLE:  $\hat{\theta}_{\text{mle}} = \frac{N_1}{N}$ :

$$\mathbb{E}[\theta | \mathcal{D}] = \frac{\check{\alpha} + N_1}{\check{\alpha} + N_1 + \check{\beta} + N_0} = \frac{\check{N} m + N_1}{N + \check{N}} = \frac{\check{N}}{N + \check{N}} m + \frac{N}{N + \check{N}} \frac{N_1}{N} = \lambda m + (1 - \lambda) \hat{\theta}_{\text{mle}} \quad (7.19)$$

where  $\lambda = \frac{\check{N}}{\widehat{N}}$  is the ratio of the prior to posterior equivalent sample size. So the weaker the prior, the smaller is  $\lambda$ , and hence the closer the posterior mean is to the MLE.

To capture some notion of uncertainty in our estimate, a common approach is to compute the **standard error** of our estimate, which is just the posterior standard deviation:

$$\text{se}(\theta) = \sqrt{\mathbb{V}[\theta | \mathcal{D}]} \quad (7.20)$$

In the case of the Bernoulli model, we showed that the posterior is a beta distribution. The variance of the beta posterior is given by

$$\mathbb{V}[\theta | \mathcal{D}] = \frac{\widehat{\alpha} \widehat{\beta}}{(\widehat{\alpha} + \widehat{\beta})^2 (\widehat{\alpha} + \widehat{\beta} + 1)} \quad (7.21)$$

where  $\widehat{\alpha} = \check{\alpha} + N_1$  and  $\widehat{\beta} = \check{\beta} + N_0$ . If  $N \gg \check{\alpha} + \check{\beta}$ , this simplifies to

$$\mathbb{V}[\theta | \mathcal{D}] \approx \frac{N_1 N_0}{N^3} = \frac{\hat{\theta}(1 - \hat{\theta})}{N} \quad (7.22)$$

where  $\hat{\theta}$  is the MLE. Hence the standard error is given by

$$\sigma = \sqrt{\mathbb{V}[\theta | \mathcal{D}]} \approx \sqrt{\frac{\hat{\theta}(1 - \hat{\theta})}{N}} \quad (7.23)$$

We see that the uncertainty goes down at a rate of  $1/\sqrt{N}$ . We also see that the uncertainty (variance) is maximized when  $\hat{\theta} = 0.5$ , and is minimized when  $\hat{\theta}$  is close to 0 or 1. This makes sense, since it is easier to be sure that a coin is biased than to be sure that it is fair.

#### 7.2.1.4 Posterior predictive

Suppose we want to predict future observations. A very common approach is to first compute an estimate of the parameters based on training data,  $\hat{\theta}(\mathcal{D})$ , and then to plug that parameter back into the model and use  $p(y|\hat{\theta})$  to predict the future; this is called a **plug-in approximation**. However, this can result in overfitting. As an extreme example, suppose we have seen  $N = 3$  heads in a row. The MLE is  $\hat{\theta} = 3/3 = 1.0$ . However, if we use this estimate, we would predict that tails are impossible.

One solution to this is to compute a MAP estimate, and plug that in, as we discussed in Sec. 4.4.1. Here we discuss a fully Bayesian solution, in which we marginalize out  $\theta$ .

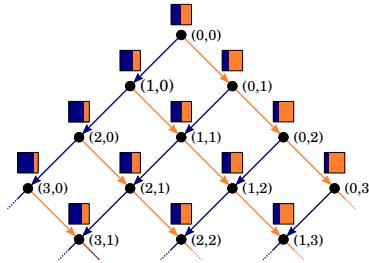


Figure 7.6: Illustration of sequential Bayesian updating for the beta-Bernoulli model. Each colored box represents the predicted distribution  $p(x_t | \mathbf{h}_t)$ , where  $\mathbf{h}_t = (N_{1,t}, N_{0,t})$  is the sufficient statistic derived from history of observations up until time  $t$ , namely the total number of heads and tails. The probability of heads (blue bar) is given by  $p(x_t = 1 | \mathbf{h}_t) = (N_{t,1} + 1)/(t + 2)$ , assuming we start with a uniform Beta( $\theta | 1, 1$ ) prior. From Figure 3 of [Ort+19]. Used with kind permission of Pedro Ortega.

### Bernoulli model

For the Bernoulli model, the resulting **posterior predictive distribution** has the form

$$p(y = 1 | \mathcal{D}) = \int_0^1 p(y = 1 | \theta) p(\theta | \mathcal{D}) d\theta \quad (7.24)$$

$$= \int_0^1 \theta \text{Beta}(\theta | \hat{\alpha}, \hat{\beta}) d\theta = \mathbb{E}[\theta | \mathcal{D}] = \frac{\hat{\alpha}}{\hat{\alpha} + \hat{\beta}} \quad (7.25)$$

In Sec. 4.4.1, we had to use the Beta(2,2) prior to recover add-one smoothing, which is a rather unnatural prior. In the Bayesian approach, we can get the same effect using a uniform prior,  $p(\theta) = \text{Beta}(\theta | 1, 1)$ , since the predictive distribution becomes

$$p(y = 1 | \mathcal{D}) = \frac{N_1 + 1}{N_1 + N_0 + 2} \quad (7.26)$$

This is known as **Laplace's rule of succession**. See Fig. 7.6 for an illustration of this in the sequential setting.

### Binomial model

Now suppose we were interested in predicting the number of heads in  $M > 1$  future coin tossing trials, i.e., we are using the binomial model instead of the Bernoulli model. The posterior over  $\theta$  is the same as before, but the posterior predictive distribution is different:

$$p(y | \mathcal{D}, M) = \int_0^1 \text{Bin}(y | M, \theta) \text{Beta}(\theta | \hat{\alpha}, \hat{\beta}) d\theta \quad (7.27)$$

$$= \binom{M}{y} \frac{1}{B(\hat{\alpha}, \hat{\beta})} \int_0^1 \theta^y (1 - \theta)^{M-y} \theta^{\hat{\alpha}-1} (1 - \theta)^{\hat{\beta}-1} d\theta \quad (7.28)$$

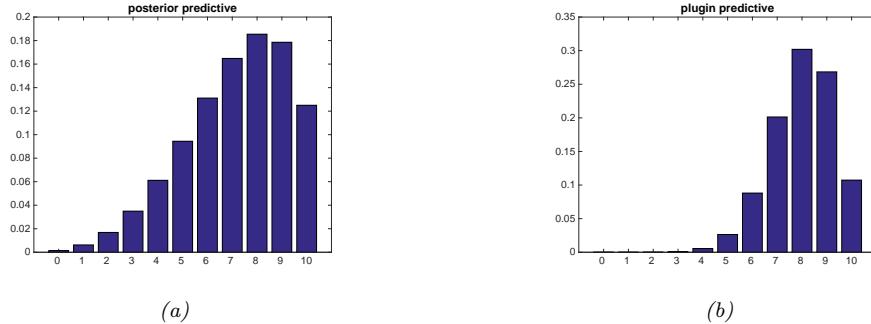


Figure 7.7: (a) Posterior predictive distributions for 10 future trials after seeing  $N_1 = 4$  heads and  $N_0 = 1$  tails. (b) Plug-in approximation based on the same data. In both cases, we use a uniform prior. Generated by `beta_binom_post_pred_plot.py`.

We recognize the integral as the normalization constant for a  $\text{Beta}(\hat{\alpha} + y, M - y + \hat{\beta})$  distribution. Hence

$$\int_0^1 \theta^{y+\hat{\alpha}-1} (1-\theta)^{M-y+\hat{\beta}-1} d\theta = B(y+\hat{\alpha}, M-y+\hat{\beta}) \quad (7.29)$$

Thus we find that the posterior predictive is given by the following, known as the (compound) **beta-binomial** distribution:

$$Bb(x|M, \hat{\alpha}, \hat{\beta}) \triangleq \binom{M}{x} \frac{B(x+\hat{\alpha}, M-x+\hat{\alpha})}{B(\hat{\alpha}, \hat{\beta})} \quad (7.30)$$

In Fig. 7.7(a), we plot the posterior predictive density for  $M = 10$  after seeing  $N_1 = 4$  heads and  $N_0 = 1$  tails, when using a uniform  $\text{Beta}(1,1)$  prior. In Fig. 7.7(b), we plot the plug-in approximation, given by

$$p(\theta|\mathcal{D}) \approx \delta(\theta - \hat{\theta}) \quad (7.31)$$

$$p(y|\mathcal{D}, M) = \int_0^1 \text{Bin}(y|M, \theta) p(\theta|\mathcal{D}) d\theta = \text{Bin}(y|M, \hat{\theta}) \quad (7.32)$$

where  $\hat{\theta}$  is the MAP estimate. Looking at Fig. 7.7, we see that the Bayesian prediction has longer tails, spreading its probability mass more widely, and is therefore less prone to overfitting and black-swan type paradoxes. (Note that we use a uniform prior in both cases, so the difference is not arising due to the use of a prior; rather, it is due to the fact that the Bayesian approach integrates out the unknown parameters when making its predictions.)

### 7.2.1.5 Marginal likelihood

The **marginal likelihood** or **evidence** for a model  $\mathcal{M}$  is defined as

$$p(\mathcal{D}|\mathcal{M}) = \int p(\boldsymbol{\theta}|\mathcal{M}) p(\mathcal{D}|\boldsymbol{\theta}, \mathcal{M}) d\boldsymbol{\theta} \quad (7.33)$$

When performing inference for the parameters of a specific model, we can ignore this term, since it is constant wrt  $\theta$ . However, this quantity plays a vital role when choosing between different models, as we discuss in Sec. 7.6.1. It is also useful for estimating the hyperparameters from data (an approach known as empirical Bayes), as we discuss in Sec. 7.5.

In general, computing the marginal likelihood can be hard. However, in the case of the beta-Bernoulli model, the marginal likelihood is proportional to the ratio of the posterior normalizer to the prior normalizer. To see this, recall that the posterior for the beta-binomial models is given by  $p(\theta|\mathcal{D}) = \text{Beta}(\theta|a', b')$ , where  $a' = a + N_1$  and  $b' = b + N_0$ . We know the normalization constant of the posterior is  $B(a', b')$ . Hence

$$p(\theta|\mathcal{D}) = \frac{p(\mathcal{D}|\theta)p(\theta)}{p(\mathcal{D})} \quad (7.34)$$

$$= \frac{1}{p(\mathcal{D})} \left[ \frac{1}{B(a, b)} \theta^{a-1} (1-\theta)^{b-1} \right] \left[ \binom{N}{N_1} \theta^{N_1} (1-\theta)^{N_0} \right] \quad (7.35)$$

$$= \binom{N}{N_1} \frac{1}{p(\mathcal{D})} \frac{1}{B(a, b)} [\theta^{a+N_1-1} (1-\theta)^{b+N_0-1}] \quad (7.36)$$

So

$$\frac{1}{B(a+N_1, b+N_0)} = \binom{N}{N_1} \frac{1}{p(\mathcal{D})} \frac{1}{B(a, b)} \quad (7.37)$$

$$p(\mathcal{D}) = \binom{N}{N_1} \frac{B(a+N_1, b+N_0)}{B(a, b)} \quad (7.38)$$

The marginal likelihood for the beta-Bernoulli model is the same as above, except it is missing the  $\binom{N}{N_1}$  term.

### 7.2.1.6 Mixtures of conjugate priors

The beta distribution is a conjugate prior for the binomial likelihood, which enables us to easily compute the posterior in closed form, as we have seen. However, this prior is rather restrictive. For example, suppose we want to predict the outcome of a coin toss at a casino, and we believe that the coin may be fair, but may equally likely be biased towards heads. This prior cannot be represented by a beta distribution. Fortunately, it can be represented as a **mixture of beta distributions**. For example, we might use

$$p(\theta) = 0.5 \text{ Beta}(\theta|20, 20) + 0.5 \text{ Beta}(\theta|30, 10) \quad (7.39)$$

If  $\theta$  comes from the first distribution, the coin is fair, but if it comes from the second, it is biased towards heads.

We can represent a mixture by introducing a latent indicator variable  $h$ , where  $h = k$  means that  $\theta$  comes from mixture component  $k$ . The prior has the form

$$p(\theta) = \sum_k p(h=k) p(\theta|h=k) \quad (7.40)$$

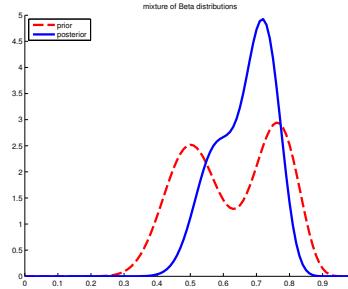


Figure 7.8: A mixture of two Beta distributions. Generated by `mixBetaDemo.m`.

where each  $p(\theta|h = k)$  is conjugate, and  $p(h = k)$  are called the (prior) mixing weights. One can show (Exercise 7.4) that the posterior can also be written as a mixture of conjugate distributions as follows:

$$p(\theta|\mathcal{D}) = \sum_k p(h = k|\mathcal{D})p(\theta|\mathcal{D}, h = k) \quad (7.41)$$

where  $p(h = k|\mathcal{D})$  are the posterior mixing weights given by

$$p(h = k|\mathcal{D}) = \frac{p(h = k)p(\mathcal{D}|h = k)}{\sum_{k'} p(h = k')p(\mathcal{D}|h = k')} \quad (7.42)$$

Here the quantity  $p(\mathcal{D}|h = k)$  is the marginal likelihood for mixture component  $k$  (see Sec. 7.2.1.5).

Returning to our example above, if we have the prior in Eq. (7.39), and we observe  $N_1 = 20$  heads and  $N_0 = 10$  tails, then, using Eq. (7.38), the posterior becomes

$$p(\theta|\mathcal{D}) = 0.346 \text{ Beta}(\theta|40, 30) + 0.654 \text{ Beta}(\theta|30, 20) \quad (7.43)$$

See Fig. 7.8 for an illustration.

We can compute the posterior probability that the coin is biased towards heads as follows:

$$\Pr(\theta > 0.5|\mathcal{D}) = \sum_k \Pr(\theta > 0.5|\mathcal{D}, h = k)p(h = k|\mathcal{D}) = 0.9604 \quad (7.44)$$

If we just used a single Beta(20,20) prior, we would get a slightly smaller value of  $\Pr(\theta > 0.5|\mathcal{D}) = 0.8858$ . So if we were “suspicious” initially that the casino might be using a biased coin, our fears would be confirmed more quickly than if we had to be convinced starting with an open mind.

## 7.2.2 The Dirichlet-multinomial model

In this section, we generalize the results from Sec. 7.2.1 from binary variables (e.g., coins) to  $K$ -ary variables (e.g., dice).

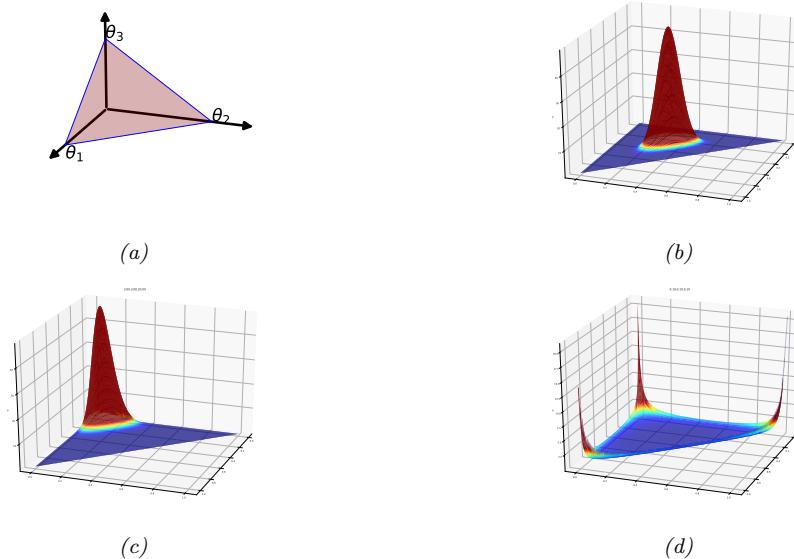


Figure 7.9: (a) The Dirichlet distribution when  $K = 3$  defines a distribution over the simplex, which can be represented by the triangular surface. Points on this surface satisfy  $0 \leq \theta_k \leq 1$  and  $\sum_{k=1}^3 \theta_k = 1$ . Generated by `dirichlet_3d_triangle_plot.py`. (b) Plot of the Dirichlet density for  $\alpha = (20, 20, 20)$ . (c) Plot of the Dirichlet density for  $\alpha = (3, 3, 20)$ . (d) Plot of the Dirichlet density for  $\alpha = (0.1, 0.1, 0.1)$ . Generated by `dirichlet_3d_spiky_plot.py`.

### 7.2.2.1 Likelihood

Let  $Y \sim \text{Cat}(\boldsymbol{\theta})$  be a discrete random variable drawn from a categorical distribution. The likelihood has the form

$$p(\mathcal{D}|\boldsymbol{\theta}) = \prod_{n=1}^N \text{Cat}(y_n|\boldsymbol{\theta}) = \prod_{n=1}^N \prod_{c=1}^C \theta_c^{\mathbb{I}(y_n=c)} = \prod_{c=1}^C \theta_c^{N_c} \quad (7.45)$$

where  $N_c = \sum_n \mathbb{I}(y_n = c)$ .

### 7.2.2.2 Prior

The conjugate prior for a categorical distribution is the **Dirichlet distribution**, which is a multivariate generalization of the beta distribution. This has support over the **probability simplex**, defined by

$$S_K = \{\boldsymbol{\theta} : 0 \leq \theta_k \leq 1, \sum_{k=1}^K \theta_k = 1\} \quad (7.46)$$

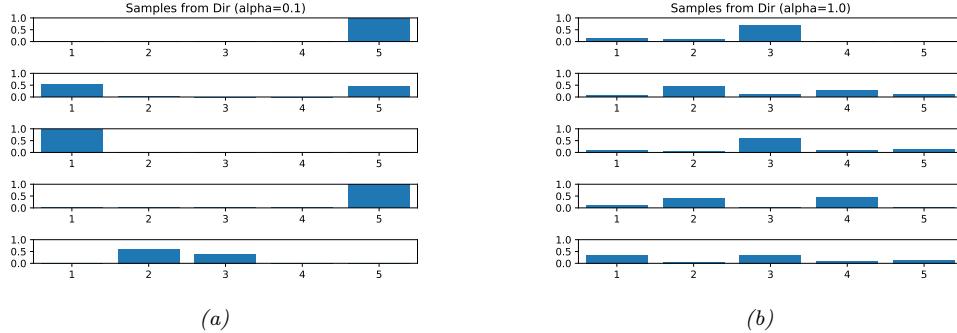


Figure 7.10: Samples from a 5-dimensional symmetric Dirichlet distribution for different parameter values. (a)  $\alpha = (0.1, \dots, 0.1)$ . This results in very sparse distributions, with many 0s. (b)  $\alpha = (1, \dots, 1)$ . This results in more uniform (and dense) distributions. Generated by [dirichlet\\_samples\\_plot.py](#).

The pdf of the Dirichlet is defined as follows:

$$\text{Dir}(\boldsymbol{\theta} | \boldsymbol{\alpha}) \triangleq \frac{1}{B(\boldsymbol{\alpha})} \prod_{k=1}^K \theta_k^{\alpha_k - 1} \mathbb{I}(\boldsymbol{\theta} \in S_K) \quad (7.47)$$

where  $B(\boldsymbol{\alpha})$  is the multivariate beta function,

$$B(\boldsymbol{\alpha}) \triangleq \frac{\prod_{k=1}^K \Gamma(\alpha_k)}{\Gamma(\sum_{k=1}^K \alpha_k)} \quad (7.48)$$

Fig. 7.9 shows some plots of the Dirichlet when  $K = 3$ . We see that  $\alpha_0 = \sum_k \alpha_k$  controls the strength of the distribution (how peaked it is), and the  $\alpha_k$  control where the peak occurs. For example,  $\text{Dir}(1, 1, 1)$  is a uniform distribution,  $\text{Dir}(2, 2, 2)$  is a broad distribution centered at  $(1/3, 1/3, 1/3)$ , and  $\text{Dir}(20, 20, 20)$  is a narrow distribution centered at  $(1/3, 1/3, 1/3)$ .  $\text{Dir}(3, 3, 20)$  is an asymmetric distribution that puts more density in one of the corners. If  $\alpha_k < 1$  for all  $k$ , we get “spikes” at the corners of the simplex. Samples from the distribution when  $\alpha_k < 1$  will be sparse, as shown in Fig. 7.10.

### 7.2.2.3 Posterior

We can combine the multinomial likelihood and Dirichlet prior to compute the posterior, as follows:

$$p(\boldsymbol{\theta} | \mathcal{D}) \propto p(\mathcal{D} | \boldsymbol{\theta}) \text{Dir}(\boldsymbol{\theta} | \boldsymbol{\alpha}) \quad (7.49)$$

$$= \left[ \prod_k \theta_k^{N_k} \right] \left[ \prod_k \theta_k^{\alpha_k - 1} \right] \quad (7.50)$$

$$= \text{Dir}(\boldsymbol{\theta} | \alpha_1 + N_1, \dots, \alpha_K + N_K) \quad (7.51)$$

$$= \text{Dir}(\boldsymbol{\theta} | \hat{\boldsymbol{\alpha}}) \quad (7.52)$$

where  $\widehat{\alpha}_k = \check{\alpha}_k + N_k$  are the parameters of the posterior. So we see that the posterior can be computed by adding the empirical counts to the prior counts.

The posterior mean is given by

$$\bar{\theta}_k = \frac{\widehat{\alpha}_k}{\sum_{k'=1}^K \widehat{\alpha}_{k'}} \quad (7.53)$$

The posterior mode, which corresponds to the MAP estimate, is given by

$$\hat{\theta}_k = \frac{\widehat{\alpha}_k - 1}{\sum_{k'=1}^K (\widehat{\alpha}_{k'} - 1)} \quad (7.54)$$

If we use  $\check{\alpha}_k = 1$ , corresponding to a uniform prior, the MAP becomes the MLE:

$$\hat{\theta}_k = N_k / N \quad (7.55)$$

(See Sec. 4.2.4 for a more direct derivation of this result.)

#### 7.2.2.4 Posterior predictive

The posterior predictive distribution is given by

$$p(y = k | \mathcal{D}) = \int p(y = k | \boldsymbol{\theta}) p(\boldsymbol{\theta} | \mathcal{D}) d\boldsymbol{\theta} \quad (7.56)$$

$$= \int \theta_k p(\theta_k | \mathcal{D}) d\theta_k = \mathbb{E} [\theta_k | \mathcal{D}] = \frac{\widehat{\alpha}_k}{\sum_{k'} \widehat{\alpha}_{k'}} \quad (7.57)$$

In other words, the posterior predictive distribution is given by

$$p(y | \mathcal{D}) = \text{Cat}(y | \bar{\boldsymbol{\theta}}) \quad (7.58)$$

where  $\bar{\boldsymbol{\theta}} \triangleq \mathbb{E} [\boldsymbol{\theta} | \mathcal{D}]$  are the posterior mean parameters. If instead we plug-in the MAP estimate, we will suffer from the zero-count problem. The only way to get the same effect as add-one smoothing is to use a MAP estimate with  $\check{\alpha}_c = 2$ .

Eq. (7.57) gives the probability of a single future event, conditioned on past observations  $\mathbf{y} = (y_1, \dots, y_N)$ . In some cases, we want to know the probability of observing a batch of future data, say  $\tilde{\mathbf{y}} = (\tilde{y}_1, \dots, \tilde{y}_M)$ . We can compute this as follows:

$$p(\tilde{\mathbf{y}} | \mathbf{y}) = \frac{p(\tilde{\mathbf{y}}, \mathbf{y})}{p(\mathbf{y})} \quad (7.59)$$

The denominator is the marginal likelihood of the training data, and the numerator is the marginal likelihood of the training and future test data. We discuss how to compute such marginal likelihoods in Sec. 7.2.2.5.

### 7.2.2.5 Marginal likelihood

By the same reasoning as in Sec. 7.2.1.5, one can show that the marginal likelihood for the Dirichlet-categorical model is given by

$$p(\mathcal{D}) = \frac{B(\mathbf{N} + \boldsymbol{\alpha})}{B(\boldsymbol{\alpha})} \quad (7.60)$$

where

$$B(\boldsymbol{\alpha}) = \frac{\prod_{k=1}^K \Gamma(\alpha_k)}{\Gamma(\sum_k \alpha_k)} \quad (7.61)$$

Hence we can rewrite the above result in the following form, which is what is usually presented in the literature:

$$p(\mathcal{D}) = \frac{\Gamma(\sum_k \alpha_k)}{\Gamma(N + \sum_k \alpha_k)} \prod_k \frac{\Gamma(N_k + \alpha_k)}{\Gamma(\alpha_k)} \quad (7.62)$$

### 7.2.3 The Gaussian-Gaussian model

In this section, we derive the posterior  $p(\mu, \sigma^2 | \mathcal{D})$  for a univariate Gaussian. For simplicity, we consider this in three steps: inferring just  $\mu$ , inferring just  $\sigma^2$ , and then inferring both. See Sec. 7.2.4 for the multivariate case.

#### 7.2.3.1 Posterior of $\mu$ given $\sigma^2$

If  $\sigma^2$  is a known constant, the likelihood for  $\mu$  has the form

$$p(\mathcal{D} | \mu) \propto \exp \left( -\frac{1}{2\sigma^2} \sum_{n=1}^N (y_n - \mu)^2 \right) \quad (7.63)$$

One can show that the conjugate prior is another Gaussian,  $\mathcal{N}(\mu | \check{m}, \check{\tau}^2)$ . Applying Bayes' rule for Gaussians (Eq. (3.102)), we find that the corresponding posterior is given by

$$p(\mu | \mathcal{D}, \sigma^2) = \mathcal{N}(\mu | \hat{m}, \hat{\tau}^2) \quad (7.64)$$

$$\hat{\tau}^2 = \frac{1}{\frac{N}{\sigma^2} + \frac{1}{\check{\tau}^2}} = \frac{\sigma^2 \check{\tau}^2}{N \check{\tau}^2 + \sigma^2} \quad (7.65)$$

$$\hat{m} = \hat{\tau}^2 \left( \frac{\check{m}}{\check{\tau}^2} + \frac{N \bar{y}}{\sigma^2} \right) = \frac{\sigma^2}{N \check{\tau}^2 + \sigma^2} \check{m} + \frac{N \check{\tau}^2}{N \check{\tau}^2 + \sigma^2} \bar{y} \quad (7.66)$$

where  $\bar{y} \triangleq \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^N y_n$  is the empirical mean.

This result is easier to understand if we work in terms of the precision parameters, which are just inverse variances. Specifically, let  $\lambda = 1/\sigma^2$  be the observation precision, and  $\check{\lambda} = 1/\check{\tau}^2$  be the

precision of the prior. We can then rewrite the posterior as follows:

$$p(\mu|\mathcal{D}, \lambda) = \mathcal{N}(\mu| \hat{m}, \bar{\lambda}^{-1}) \quad (7.67)$$

$$\bar{\lambda} = \check{\lambda} + N\lambda \quad (7.68)$$

$$\hat{m} = \frac{N\lambda\bar{y} + \check{\lambda}\check{m}}{\bar{\lambda}} = \frac{N\lambda}{N\lambda + \check{\lambda}}\bar{y} + \frac{\check{\lambda}}{N\lambda + \check{\lambda}}\check{m} \quad (7.69)$$

These equations are quite intuitive: the posterior precision  $\bar{\lambda}$  is the prior precision  $\check{\lambda}$  plus  $N$  units of measurement precision  $\lambda$ . Also, the posterior mean  $\hat{m}$  is a convex combination of the empirical mean  $\bar{y}$  and the prior mean  $\check{m}$ . This makes it clear that the posterior mean is a compromise between the empirical mean and the prior. If the prior is weak relative to the signal strength ( $\check{\lambda}$  is small relative to  $\lambda$ ), we put more weight on the empirical mean. If the prior is strong relative to the signal strength ( $\check{\lambda}$  is large relative to  $\lambda$ ), we put more weight on the prior. This is illustrated in Fig. 7.11. Note also that the posterior mean is written in terms of  $N\lambda\bar{x}$ , so having  $N$  measurements each of precision  $\lambda$  is like having one measurement with value  $\bar{x}$  and precision  $N\lambda$ .

To gain further insight into these equations, consider the posterior after seeing a single data point  $y$  (so  $N = 1$ ). Then the posterior mean can be written in the following equivalent ways:

$$\hat{m} = \frac{\check{\lambda}}{\bar{\lambda}}\check{m} + \frac{\lambda}{\bar{\lambda}}y \quad (7.70)$$

$$= \check{m} + \frac{\lambda}{\bar{\lambda}}(y - \check{m}) \quad (7.71)$$

$$= y - \frac{\lambda}{\bar{\lambda}}(y - \check{m}) \quad (7.72)$$

The first equation is a convex combination of the prior mean and the data. The second equation is the prior mean adjusted towards the data  $y$ . The third equation is the data adjusted towards the prior mean; this is called a **shrinkage** estimate. This is easier to see if we define the weight  $w = \check{\lambda}/\bar{\lambda}$ . Then we have

$$\hat{m} = y - w(y - \check{m}) = (1 - w)y + w\check{m} \quad (7.73)$$

Note that, for a Gaussian, the posterior mean and posterior mode are the same. Thus we can use the above equations to perform MAP estimation. See Exercise 4.2 for a simple example.

### 7.2.3.2 Posterior of $\sigma^2$ given $\mu$

If  $\mu$  is a known constant, the likelihood for  $\sigma^2$  has the form

$$p(\mathcal{D}|\sigma^2) \propto (\sigma^2)^{-N/2} \exp\left(-\frac{1}{2\sigma^2} \sum_{n=1}^N (y_n - \mu)^2\right) \quad (7.74)$$

where we can no longer ignore the  $1/(\sigma^2)$  term in front. The standard conjugate prior is the inverse Gamma distribution (Sec. 3.4.5), given by

$$\text{IG}(\sigma^2 | \check{a}, \check{b}) = \frac{\check{b}^{\check{a}}}{\Gamma(\check{a})} (\sigma^2)^{-(\check{a}+1)} \exp(-\frac{\check{b}}{\sigma^2}) \quad (7.75)$$

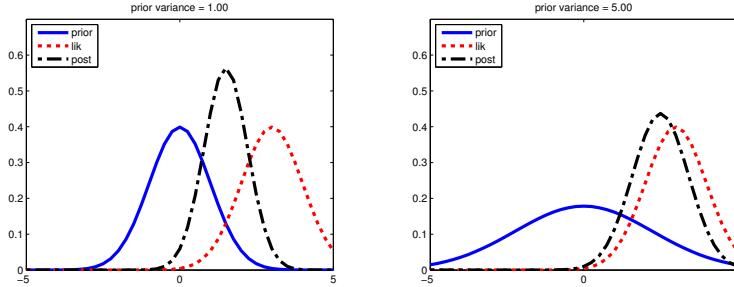


Figure 7.11: Inferring the mean of a univariate Gaussian with known  $\sigma^2$ . (a) Using strong prior,  $p(\mu) = \mathcal{N}(\mu|0, 1)$ . (b) Using weak prior,  $p(\mu) = \mathcal{N}(\mu|0, 5)$ . Generated by [gaussInferParamsMean1d.m](#).

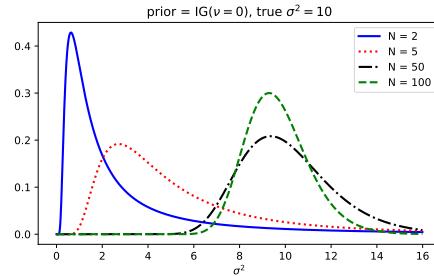


Figure 7.12: Sequential updating of the posterior for  $\sigma^2$  starting from an uninformative prior. The data was generated from a Gaussian with known mean  $\mu = 5$  and unknown variance  $\sigma^2 = 10$ . Generated by [gauss\\_seq\\_update\\_sigma\\_1d.py](#)

Multiplying the likelihood and the prior, we see that the posterior is also IG:

$$p(\sigma^2|\mu, \mathcal{D}) = \text{IG}(\sigma^2|\bar{a}, \bar{b}) \quad (7.76)$$

$$\bar{a} = \check{a} + N/2 \quad (7.77)$$

$$\bar{b} = \check{b} + \frac{1}{2} \sum_{n=1}^N (y_n - \mu)^2 \quad (7.78)$$

See Fig. 7.12 for an illustration.

One small annoyance with using the  $\text{IG}(\check{a}, \check{b})$  distribution is that the strength of the prior is encoded in both  $\check{a}$  and  $\check{b}$ . Therefore, in the Bayesian statistics literature it is common to use an alternative parameterization of the IG distribution, known as the (scaled) **inverse chi-squared distribution**:

$$\chi^{-2}(\sigma^2|\check{\nu}, \check{\tau}^2) = \text{IG}(\sigma^2|\frac{\check{\nu}}{2}, \frac{\check{\nu} \check{\tau}^2}{2}) \propto (\sigma^2)^{-\check{\nu}/2-1} \exp(-\frac{\check{\nu} \check{\tau}^2}{2\sigma^2}) \quad (7.79)$$

Here  $\check{\nu}$  (called the degrees of freedom or dof parameter) controls the strength of the prior, and  $\check{\tau}^2$

encodes the prior mean. With this prior, the posterior becomes

$$p(\sigma^2 | \mathcal{D}, \mu) = \chi^{-2}(\sigma^2 | \tilde{\nu}, \tilde{\tau}^2) \quad (7.80)$$

$$\tilde{\nu} = \check{\nu} + N \quad (7.81)$$

$$\tilde{\tau}^2 = \frac{\check{\nu} \tilde{\tau}^2 + \sum_{n=1}^N (y_n - \mu)^2}{\tilde{\nu}} \quad (7.82)$$

We see that the posterior dof  $\tilde{\nu}$  is the prior dof  $\check{\nu}$  plus  $N$ , and the posterior sum of squares  $\tilde{\nu}\tilde{\tau}^2$  is the prior sum of squares  $\check{\nu}\tilde{\tau}^2$  plus the data sum of squares.

### 7.2.3.3 Posterior of $\mu$ and $\sigma^2$ : conjugate prior

Now suppose we want to infer both the mean and variance. The corresponding conjugate prior is the **normal inverse Gamma**:

$$\text{NIG}(\mu, \sigma^2 | \check{m}, \check{\kappa}, \check{a}, \check{b}) \triangleq \mathcal{N}(\mu | \check{m}, \sigma^2 / \check{\kappa}) \text{IG}(\sigma^2 | \check{a}, \check{b}) \quad (7.83)$$

However, it is common to use a reparameterization of this known as the **normal inverse chi-squared** or **NIX** distribution [Gel+14, p67], which is defined by

$$NI\chi^2(\mu, \sigma^2 | \check{m}, \check{\kappa}, \check{\nu}, \check{\tau}^2) \triangleq \mathcal{N}(\mu | \check{m}, \sigma^2 / \check{\kappa}) \chi^{-2}(\sigma^2 | \check{\nu}, \check{\tau}^2) \quad (7.84)$$

$$\propto \left( \frac{1}{\sigma^2} \right)^{(\check{\nu}+3)/2} \exp \left( -\frac{\check{\nu}\check{\tau}^2 + \check{\kappa}(\mu - \check{m})^2}{2\sigma^2} \right) \quad (7.85)$$

See Fig. 7.13 for some plots. Along the  $\mu$  axis, the distribution is shaped like a Gaussian, and along the  $\sigma^2$  axis, the distribution is shaped like a  $\chi^{-2}$ ; the contours of the joint density have a “squashed egg” appearance. Interestingly, we see that the contours for  $\mu$  are more peaked for small values of  $\sigma^2$ , which makes sense, since if the data is low variance, we will be able to estimate its mean more reliably.

One can show (based on Sec. 7.2.4.4) that the posterior is given by

$$p(\mu, \sigma^2 | \mathcal{D}) = NI\chi^2(\mu, \sigma^2 | \hat{m}, \hat{\kappa}, \hat{\nu}, \hat{\tau}^2) \quad (7.86)$$

$$\hat{m} = \frac{\check{\kappa}\check{m} + N\bar{x}}{\check{\kappa}} \quad (7.87)$$

$$\hat{\kappa} = \check{\kappa} + N \quad (7.88)$$

$$\hat{\nu} = \check{\nu} + N \quad (7.89)$$

$$\hat{\nu}\hat{\tau}^2 = \check{\nu}\check{\tau}^2 + \sum_{n=1}^N (y_n - \bar{y})^2 + \frac{N \check{\kappa}}{\check{\kappa} + N} (\check{m} - \bar{y})^2 \quad (7.90)$$

The interpretation of this is as follows. For  $\mu$ , the posterior mean  $\hat{m}$  is a convex combination of the prior mean  $\check{m}$  and the MLE  $\bar{x}$ ; the strength of this posterior,  $\hat{\kappa}$ , is the prior strength  $\check{\kappa}$  plus the number of data points  $N$ . For  $\sigma^2$ , we work instead with the sum of squares: the posterior sum of squares,  $\hat{\nu}\hat{\tau}^2$ , is the prior sum of squares  $\check{\nu}\check{\tau}^2$  plus the data sum of squares,  $\sum_{n=1}^N (y_n - \bar{y})^2$ , plus a term due to the discrepancy between the prior mean  $\check{m}$  and the MLE  $\bar{y}$ . The strength of this posterior,  $\hat{\nu}$ , is the prior strength  $\check{\nu}$  plus the number of data points  $N$ ;

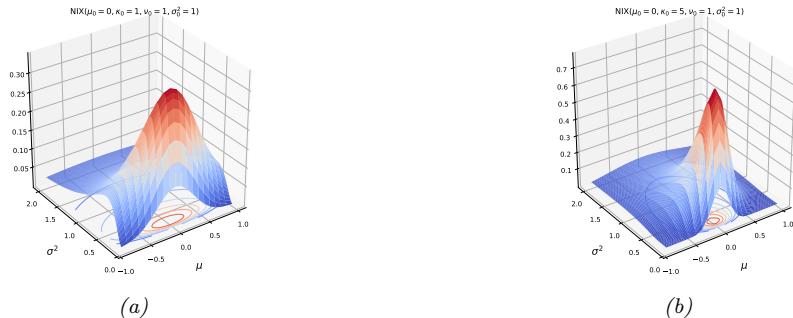


Figure 7.13: The  $NIX^2(\mu, \sigma^2 | m, \kappa, \nu, \sigma^2)$  distribution.  $m$  is the prior mean and  $k$  is how strongly we believe this;  $\sigma^2$  is the prior variance and  $\nu$  is how strongly we believe this. (a)  $m = 0, \kappa = 1, \nu = 1, \sigma^2 = 1$ . Notice that the contour plot (underneath the surface) is shaped like a “squashed egg”. (b) We increase the strength of our belief in the mean by setting  $\kappa = 5$ , so the distribution for  $\mu$  around  $m = 0$  becomes narrower. Generated by [nix plots.py](#).

The posterior marginal for  $\sigma^2$  is just

$$p(\sigma^2 | \mathcal{D}) = \int p(\mu, \sigma^2 | \mathcal{D}) d\mu = \chi^{-2}(\sigma^2 | \bar{\nu}, \hat{\tau}^2) \quad (7.91)$$

with the posterior mean given by  $\mathbb{E} [\sigma^2 | \mathcal{D}] = \frac{\hat{\sigma}^2}{\hat{\nu} - 2}$ .

The posterior marginal for  $\mu$  has a Student distribution, which follows from the fact that the Student distribution is a (scaled) mixture of Gaussians:

$$p(\mu|\mathcal{D}) = \int p(\mu, \sigma^2|D) d\sigma^2 = \mathcal{T}(\mu| \hat{m}, \hat{\tau}^2 / \hat{\kappa}, \hat{\nu}) \quad (7.92)$$

with the posterior mean given by  $\mathbb{E}[\mu|\mathcal{D}] = \hat{m}$ .

#### 7.2.3.4 Posterior of $\mu$ and $\sigma^2$ : uninformative prior

If we “know nothing” about the parameters *a priori*, we can use an uninformative prior. We discuss how to create such priors in Sec. 7.3. A common approach is to use a Jeffreys prior. In Sec. 7.3.1.2, we show that the Jeffreys prior for a location and scale parameter has the form

$$p(\mu, \sigma^2) \propto p(\mu)p(\sigma^2) \propto \sigma^{-2} \quad (7.93)$$

We can simulate this with a conjugate prior by using

$$p(\mu, \sigma^2) = N I \chi^2(\mu, \sigma^2 | \tilde{w} = 0, \tilde{\xi} = 0, \tilde{\nu} = -1, \tilde{\tau}^2 = 0) \quad (7.94)$$

With this prior, the posterior has the form

$$p(\mu, \sigma^2 | \mathcal{D}) = N(\bar{x}^2 | \mu, \sigma^2) \cdot \mathcal{M}(\bar{y} | \bar{x}, \hat{\sigma}^2) = N(\bar{\mu} | \bar{N}, \hat{\sigma}^2) \quad (7.95)$$

where

$$s^2 \triangleq \frac{1}{N-1} \sum_{n=1}^N (y_n - \bar{y})^2 = \frac{N}{N-1} \hat{\sigma}_{\text{mle}}^2 \quad (7.96)$$

$s$  is known as the **sample standard deviation**. (In Sec. D.4.1, we show that this is an unbiased estimate of the variance.) Hence the marginal posterior for the mean is given by

$$p(\mu|\mathcal{D}) = \mathcal{T}(\mu|\bar{y}, \frac{s^2}{N}, N-1) = \mathcal{T}(\mu|\bar{y}, \frac{\sum_{n=1}^N (y_n - \bar{y})^2}{N(N-1)}, N-1) \quad (7.97)$$

Thus the posterior variance of  $\mu$  is

$$\mathbb{V}[\mu|\mathcal{D}] = \frac{\hat{\nu}}{\hat{\nu}-2} \hat{\tau}^2 = \frac{N-1}{N-3} \frac{s^2}{N} \rightarrow \frac{s^2}{N} \quad (7.98)$$

The square root of this is called the **standard error of the mean**:

$$\text{se}(\mu) \triangleq \sqrt{\mathbb{V}[\mu|\mathcal{D}]} \approx \frac{s}{\sqrt{N}} \quad (7.99)$$

Thus we can approximate the 95% **credible interval** for  $\mu$  using

$$I_{.95}(\mu|\mathcal{D}) = \bar{y} \pm 2 \frac{s}{\sqrt{N}} \quad (7.100)$$

(Note that a Bayesian credible interval is not the same as a frequentist confidence interval, as explained in Sec. D.3.4, although in practice they are often numerically similar, and sometimes identical.)

### 7.2.3.5 Half Cauchy prior

In Sec. 7.3.1.4, we show that the Jeffreys uninformative prior for a variance term is given by  $p(\sigma^2) = \text{IG}(\sigma^2|0, 0)$ . Unfortunately, this is not a proper prior. One solution to this is to use a **weakly informative** proper prior such as  $\text{IG}(\epsilon, \epsilon)$  for small  $\epsilon$ . However, this turns out to not work very well, for reasons that are explained in [Gel06; PS12]. Instead, it is recommended to use the half Cauchy distribution defined in Sec. 3.4.2. (Another common choice is the half normal defined in Sec. 3.3.5.)

## 7.2.4 The multivariate Gaussian-Gaussian model

In this section, we derive the posterior  $p(\boldsymbol{\mu}, \boldsymbol{\Sigma}|\mathcal{D})$  for a multivariate Gaussian. For simplicity, we consider this in three steps: inferring just  $\boldsymbol{\mu}$ , inferring just  $\boldsymbol{\Sigma}$ , and then inferring both.

### 7.2.4.1 Posterior of $\boldsymbol{\mu}$ given $\boldsymbol{\Sigma}$

The likelihood has the form

$$p(\mathcal{D}|\boldsymbol{\mu}) = \mathcal{N}(\bar{\mathbf{y}}|\boldsymbol{\mu}, \frac{1}{N}\boldsymbol{\Sigma}) \quad (7.101)$$

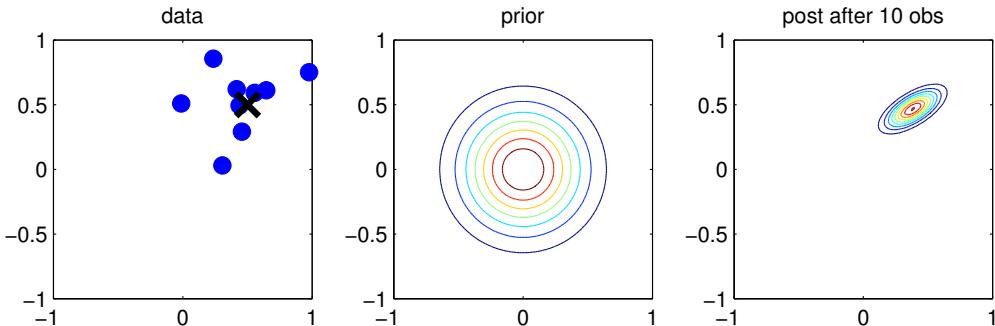


Figure 7.14: Illustration of Bayesian inference for the mean of a 2d Gaussian. (a) The data is generated from  $\mathbf{y}_n \sim \mathcal{N}(\boldsymbol{\mu}, \boldsymbol{\Sigma})$ , where  $\boldsymbol{\mu} = [0.5, 0.5]^\top$  and  $\boldsymbol{\Sigma} = 0.1[2, 1; 1, 1]$ . (b) The prior is  $p(\boldsymbol{\mu}) = \mathcal{N}(\boldsymbol{\mu} | \mathbf{0}, 0.1\mathbf{I}_2)$ . (c) We show the posterior after 10 data points have been observed. Generated by [gaussInferParamsMean2d.m](#).

For simplicity, we will use a conjugate prior, which in this case is a Gaussian. In particular, if  $p(\boldsymbol{\mu}) = \mathcal{N}(\boldsymbol{\mu} | \tilde{\mathbf{m}}, \tilde{\mathbf{V}})$  then we can derive a Gaussian posterior for  $\boldsymbol{\mu}$  based on the results in Sec. 3.6. We get

$$p(\boldsymbol{\mu} | \mathcal{D}, \boldsymbol{\Sigma}) = \mathcal{N}(\boldsymbol{\mu} | \hat{\mathbf{m}}, \hat{\mathbf{V}}) \quad (7.102)$$

$$\hat{\mathbf{V}}^{-1} = \tilde{\mathbf{V}}^{-1} + N\boldsymbol{\Sigma}^{-1} \quad (7.103)$$

$$\hat{\mathbf{m}} = \hat{\mathbf{V}} (\boldsymbol{\Sigma}^{-1}(N\bar{\mathbf{y}}) + \tilde{\mathbf{V}}^{-1}\tilde{\mathbf{m}}) \quad (7.104)$$

Fig. 7.14 gives a 2d example of these results.

#### 7.2.4.2 Posterior of $\boldsymbol{\Sigma}$ given $\boldsymbol{\mu}$

We now discuss how to compute  $p(\boldsymbol{\Sigma} | \mathcal{D}, \boldsymbol{\mu})$ .

#### Likelihood

Following Sec. 4.2.6, we can rewrite the likelihood as follows:

$$p(\mathcal{D} | \boldsymbol{\mu}, \boldsymbol{\Sigma}) \propto |\boldsymbol{\Sigma}|^{-\frac{N}{2}} \exp\left(-\frac{1}{2}\text{tr}(\mathbf{S}_\mu \boldsymbol{\Sigma}^{-1})\right) \quad (7.105)$$

where

$$\mathbf{S}_\mu \triangleq \sum_{n=1}^N (\mathbf{y}_n - \boldsymbol{\mu})(\mathbf{y}_n - \boldsymbol{\mu})^\top \quad (7.106)$$

is the scatter matrix around  $\boldsymbol{\mu}$ .

### Prior

The conjugate prior is known as the **inverse Wishart** distribution, which is a distribution over positive definite matrices. This has the following pdf:

$$\text{IW}(\boldsymbol{\Sigma} | \check{\mathbf{S}}, \check{\nu}) \propto |\boldsymbol{\Sigma}|^{-(\check{\nu}+D+1)/2} \exp\left(-\frac{1}{2}\text{tr}(\check{\mathbf{S}} \boldsymbol{\Sigma}^{-1})\right) \quad (7.107)$$

Here  $\check{\nu} > D - 1$  is the degrees of freedom (dof), and  $\check{\mathbf{S}}$  is a symmetric pd matrix. We see that  $\check{\mathbf{S}}$  plays the role of the prior scatter matrix, and  $N_0 \triangleq \check{\nu} + D + 1$  controls the strength of the prior, and hence plays a role analogous to the sample size  $N$ .

If  $D = 1$ , the inverse Wishart reduces to the inverse Gamma:

$$\text{IW}(\sigma^2 | s^{-1}, \nu) = \text{IG}(\sigma^2 | \nu/2, s/2) \quad (7.108)$$

If  $s = 1$ , this reduces to the inverse chi-squared distribution.

### Posterior

Multiplying the likelihood and prior we find that the posterior is also inverse Wishart:

$$\begin{aligned} p(\boldsymbol{\Sigma} | \mathcal{D}, \boldsymbol{\mu}) &\propto |\boldsymbol{\Sigma}|^{-\frac{N}{2}} \exp\left(-\frac{1}{2}\text{tr}(\boldsymbol{\Sigma}^{-1} \mathbf{S}_\mu)\right) |\boldsymbol{\Sigma}|^{-(\check{\nu}+D+1)/2} \\ &\quad \exp\left(-\frac{1}{2}\text{tr}(\boldsymbol{\Sigma}^{-1} \check{\mathbf{S}})\right) \end{aligned} \quad (7.109)$$

$$= |\boldsymbol{\Sigma}|^{-\frac{N+(\check{\nu}+D+1)}{2}} \exp\left(-\frac{1}{2}\text{tr}[\boldsymbol{\Sigma}^{-1}(\mathbf{S}_\mu + \check{\mathbf{S}})]\right) \quad (7.110)$$

$$= \text{IW}(\boldsymbol{\Sigma} | \hat{\mathbf{S}}, \hat{\nu}) \quad (7.111)$$

$$\hat{\nu} = \check{\nu} + N \quad (7.112)$$

$$\hat{\mathbf{S}} = \check{\mathbf{S}} + \mathbf{S}_\mu \quad (7.113)$$

In words, this says that the posterior strength  $\hat{\nu}$  is the prior strength  $\check{\nu}$  plus the number of observations  $N$ , and the posterior scatter matrix  $\hat{\mathbf{S}}$  is the prior scatter matrix  $\check{\mathbf{S}}$  plus the data scatter matrix  $\mathbf{S}_\mu$ .

We posterior mode of the inverse Wishart can be used to derive the shrinkage estimate for  $\boldsymbol{\Sigma}$  discussed in Sec. 4.4.2.

#### 7.2.4.3 LKJ prior

The conjugate prior for a covariance matrix is the inverse Wishart. However, this distribution is hard to sample from. Consequently it is common to use the **LKJ distribution** as a prior instead (this is named after the authors of [LKJ09]). This is a prior on correlation matrices  $\mathbf{C}$  of the form  $p(\mathbf{C} | \eta) \propto |\mathbf{C}|^{\eta-1}$ , so  $\eta = 1$  leads to a uniform a distribution. We can combine this with a suitable prior for the standard deviation, such as half-Cauchy prior (Sec. 7.2.3.5), to derive a prior for  $\boldsymbol{\Sigma} = \sigma \mathbf{C}$ .

#### 7.2.4.4 Posterior of $\boldsymbol{\Sigma}$ and $\boldsymbol{\mu}$

In this section, we compute  $p(\boldsymbol{\mu}, \boldsymbol{\Sigma} | \mathcal{D})$  using a conjugate prior.

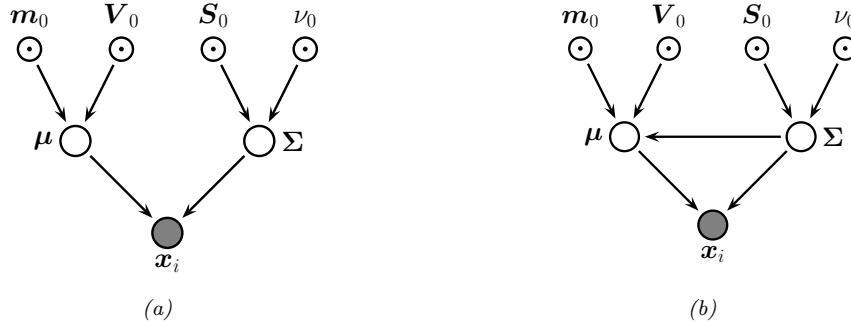


Figure 7.15: Graphical models representing different kinds of assumptions about the parameter priors. (a) A semi-conjugate prior for a Gaussian. (b) A conjugate prior for a Gaussian.

## Likelihood

The likelihood is given by

$$p(\mathcal{D}|\boldsymbol{\mu}, \boldsymbol{\Sigma}) \propto |\boldsymbol{\Sigma}|^{-\frac{N}{2}} \exp \left( -\frac{1}{2} \sum_{n=1}^N (\mathbf{y}_n - \boldsymbol{\mu})^\top \boldsymbol{\Sigma}^{-1} (\mathbf{y}_n - \boldsymbol{\mu}) \right) \quad (7.114)$$

One can show that

$$\sum_{n=1}^N (\mathbf{y}_n - \boldsymbol{\mu})^\top \boldsymbol{\Sigma}^{-1} (\mathbf{y}_n - \boldsymbol{\mu}) = \text{tr}(\boldsymbol{\Sigma}^{-1} \mathbf{S}_{\bar{\mathbf{y}}}) + N(\bar{\mathbf{y}} - \boldsymbol{\mu})^\top \boldsymbol{\Sigma}^{-1} (\bar{\mathbf{y}} - \boldsymbol{\mu}) \quad (7.115)$$

where

$$\mathbf{S}_{\bar{\mathbf{y}}} \triangleq \sum_{n=1}^N (\mathbf{y}_n - \bar{\mathbf{y}})(\mathbf{y}_n - \bar{\mathbf{y}})^\top = \mathbf{Y}^\top \mathbf{C}_N \mathbf{Y} \quad (7.116)$$

is empirical scatter matrix, and  $\mathbf{C}_N$  is the centering matrix defined in Eq. (4.43).

Hence we can rewrite the likelihood as follows:

$$p(\mathcal{D}|\boldsymbol{\mu}, \boldsymbol{\Sigma}) \propto |\boldsymbol{\Sigma}|^{-\frac{N}{2}} \exp \left( -\frac{N}{2} (\boldsymbol{\mu} - \bar{\mathbf{y}})^\top \boldsymbol{\Sigma}^{-1} (\boldsymbol{\mu} - \bar{\mathbf{y}}) \right) \exp \left( -\frac{1}{2} \text{tr}(\boldsymbol{\Sigma}^{-1} \mathbf{S}_{\bar{\mathbf{y}}}) \right) \quad (7.117)$$

We will use this form below.

## Prior

The obvious prior to use is the following

$$p(\boldsymbol{\mu}, \boldsymbol{\Sigma}) = \mathcal{N}(\boldsymbol{\mu} | \tilde{\mathbf{m}}, \tilde{\mathbf{C}}) \text{IW}(\boldsymbol{\Sigma} | \tilde{\mathbf{S}}, \tilde{\nu}) \quad (7.118)$$

where IW is the inverse Wishart distribution. Unfortunately,  $\boldsymbol{\mu}$  and  $\boldsymbol{\Sigma}$  appear together in a non-factorized way in the likelihood in Eq. (7.117) (see the first exponent term), so the factored prior in Eq. (7.118) is not conjugate to the likelihood.<sup>2</sup>

The above prior is sometimes called **conditionally conjugate**, since both conditionals,  $p(\boldsymbol{\mu}|\boldsymbol{\Sigma})$  and  $p(\boldsymbol{\Sigma}|\boldsymbol{\mu})$ , are individually conjugate. To create a fully conjugate prior, we need to use a prior where  $\boldsymbol{\mu}$  and  $\boldsymbol{\Sigma}$  are dependent on each other. We will use a joint distribution of the form  $p(\boldsymbol{\mu}, \boldsymbol{\Sigma}) = p(\boldsymbol{\mu}|\boldsymbol{\Sigma})p(\boldsymbol{\Sigma})$ . Looking at the form of the likelihood equation, Eq. (7.117), we see that a natural conjugate prior has the form of a **Normal-inverse-Wishart** or **NIW** distribution, defined as follows:

$$\text{NIW}(\boldsymbol{\mu}, \boldsymbol{\Sigma} | \check{\mathbf{m}}, \check{\kappa}, \check{\nu}, \check{\mathbf{S}}) \triangleq \mathcal{N}(\boldsymbol{\mu} | \check{\mathbf{m}}, \frac{1}{\check{\kappa}} \boldsymbol{\Sigma}) \times \text{IW}(\boldsymbol{\Sigma} | \check{\mathbf{S}}, \check{\nu}) \quad (7.119)$$

$$\begin{aligned} &= \frac{1}{Z_{\text{NIW}}} |\boldsymbol{\Sigma}|^{-\frac{1}{2}} \exp \left( -\frac{\check{\kappa}}{2} (\boldsymbol{\mu} - \check{\mathbf{m}})^\top \boldsymbol{\Sigma}^{-1} (\boldsymbol{\mu} - \check{\mathbf{m}}) \right) \\ &\times |\boldsymbol{\Sigma}|^{-\frac{\check{\nu}+D+1}{2}} \exp \left( -\frac{1}{2} \text{tr}(\boldsymbol{\Sigma}^{-1} \check{\mathbf{S}}) \right) \end{aligned} \quad (7.120)$$

where the normalization constant is given by

$$Z_{\text{NIW}} \triangleq 2^{\check{\nu}D/2} \Gamma_D(\check{\nu}/2) (2\pi/\check{\kappa})^{D/2} |\check{\mathbf{S}}|^{-\check{\nu}/2} \quad (7.121)$$

The parameters of the NIW can be interpreted as follows:  $\check{\mathbf{m}}$  is our prior mean for  $\boldsymbol{\mu}$ , and  $\check{\kappa}$  is how strongly we believe this prior;  $\check{\mathbf{S}}$  is (proportional to) our prior mean for  $\boldsymbol{\Sigma}$ , and  $\check{\nu}$  is how strongly we believe this prior.<sup>3</sup>

## Posterior

To derive the posterior, let us define the sum-of-squares matrix

$$\mathbf{S}_0 \triangleq \sum_{n=1}^N \mathbf{y}_n \mathbf{y}_n^\top = \mathbf{Y}^\top \mathbf{Y} \quad (7.122)$$

so we can rewrite the scatter matrix as follows:

$$\mathbf{S}_{\bar{\mathbf{y}}} = \mathbf{S}_0 - \frac{1}{N} \left( \sum_{n=1}^N \mathbf{y}_n \right) \left( \sum_{n=1}^N \mathbf{y}_n \right)^\top = \mathbf{S}_0 - N \bar{\mathbf{y}} \bar{\mathbf{y}}^\top \quad (7.123)$$

Now we can multiply the likelihood and the prior to give

$$p(\boldsymbol{\mu}, \boldsymbol{\Sigma} | \mathcal{D}) \propto |\boldsymbol{\Sigma}|^{-\frac{N}{2}} \exp \left( -\frac{N}{2} (\boldsymbol{\mu} - \bar{\mathbf{y}})^\top \boldsymbol{\Sigma}^{-1} (\boldsymbol{\mu} - \bar{\mathbf{y}}) \right) \exp \left( -\frac{1}{2} \text{tr}(\boldsymbol{\Sigma}^{-1} \mathbf{S}_{\bar{\mathbf{y}}}) \right) \quad (7.124)$$

$$\times |\boldsymbol{\Sigma}|^{-\frac{\check{\nu}+D+2}{2}} \exp \left( -\frac{\check{\kappa}}{2} (\boldsymbol{\mu} - \check{\mathbf{m}})^\top \boldsymbol{\Sigma}^{-1} (\boldsymbol{\mu} - \check{\mathbf{m}}) \right) \exp \left( -\frac{1}{2} \text{tr}(\boldsymbol{\Sigma}^{-1} \check{\mathbf{S}}) \right) \quad (7.125)$$

$$= |\boldsymbol{\Sigma}|^{-(N+\check{\nu}+D+2)/2} \exp \left( -\frac{1}{2} \text{tr}(\boldsymbol{\Sigma}^{-1} \mathbf{M}) \right) \quad (7.126)$$

2. Using the language of directed graphical models, we see that  $\boldsymbol{\mu}$  and  $\boldsymbol{\Sigma}$  become dependent when conditioned on  $\mathcal{D}$  due to explaining away. See Fig. 7.15(a).

3. Note that our uncertainty in the mean is proportional to the covariance. In particular, if we believe that the variance is large, then our uncertainty in  $\boldsymbol{\mu}$  must be large too. This makes sense intuitively, since if the data has large spread, it will be hard to pin down its mean.

where

$$\mathbf{M} \triangleq N(\boldsymbol{\mu} - \bar{\mathbf{y}})(\boldsymbol{\mu} - \bar{\mathbf{y}})^\top + \kappa (\boldsymbol{\mu} - \check{\mathbf{m}})(\boldsymbol{\mu} - \check{\mathbf{m}})^\top + \mathbf{S}_{\bar{\mathbf{y}}} + \check{\mathbf{S}} \quad (7.127)$$

$$= (\kappa + N)\boldsymbol{\mu}\boldsymbol{\mu}^\top - \boldsymbol{\mu}(\kappa \check{\mathbf{m}} + N\bar{\mathbf{y}})^\top - (\kappa \check{\mathbf{m}} + N\bar{\mathbf{x}})\boldsymbol{\mu}^\top + \kappa \check{\mathbf{m}}\check{\mathbf{m}}^\top + \mathbf{S}_0 + \check{\mathbf{S}} \quad (7.128)$$

We can simplify the  $\mathbf{M}$  matrix using a trick called completing the square (Sec. A.2.1.6). Applying this to the above, we have

$$(\kappa + N)\boldsymbol{\mu}\boldsymbol{\mu}^\top - \boldsymbol{\mu}(\kappa \check{\mathbf{m}} + N\bar{\mathbf{y}})^\top - (\kappa \check{\mathbf{m}} + N\bar{\mathbf{x}})\boldsymbol{\mu}^\top \quad (7.129)$$

$$= (\kappa + N) \left( \boldsymbol{\mu} - \frac{\kappa \check{\mathbf{m}} + N\bar{\mathbf{y}}}{\kappa + N} \right) \left( \boldsymbol{\mu} - \frac{\kappa \check{\mathbf{m}} + N\bar{\mathbf{x}}}{\kappa + N} \right)^\top \quad (7.130)$$

$$- \frac{(\kappa \check{\mathbf{m}} + N\bar{\mathbf{x}})(\kappa \check{\mathbf{m}} + N\bar{\mathbf{y}})^\top}{\kappa + N} \quad (7.131)$$

$$= \hat{\kappa} (\boldsymbol{\mu} - \hat{\mathbf{m}})(\boldsymbol{\mu} - \hat{\mathbf{m}})^\top - \hat{\kappa} \hat{\mathbf{m}}\hat{\mathbf{m}}^\top \quad (7.132)$$

Hence we can rewrite the posterior as follows:

$$p(\boldsymbol{\mu}, \Sigma | \mathcal{D}) \propto |\Sigma|^{(\mathcal{D}+D+1)/2} \exp \left( -\frac{1}{2} \text{tr} [\Sigma^{-1} (\hat{\kappa} (\boldsymbol{\mu} - \hat{\mathbf{m}})(\boldsymbol{\mu} - \hat{\mathbf{m}})^\top + \hat{\mathbf{S}})] \right) \quad (7.133)$$

$$= \text{NIW}(\boldsymbol{\mu}, \Sigma | \hat{\mathbf{m}}, \hat{\kappa}, \hat{\nu}, \hat{\mathbf{S}}) \quad (7.134)$$

where

$$\hat{\mathbf{m}} = \frac{\kappa \check{\mathbf{m}} + N\bar{\mathbf{y}}}{\hat{\kappa}} = \frac{\kappa}{\kappa + N} \check{\mathbf{m}} + \frac{N}{\kappa + N} \bar{\mathbf{y}} \quad (7.135)$$

$$\hat{\kappa} = \kappa + N \quad (7.136)$$

$$\hat{\nu} = \nu + N \quad (7.137)$$

$$\hat{\mathbf{S}} = \check{\mathbf{S}} + \mathbf{S}_{\bar{\mathbf{y}}} + \frac{\kappa N}{\kappa + N} (\bar{\mathbf{y}} - \check{\mathbf{m}})(\bar{\mathbf{x}} - \check{\mathbf{m}})^\top \quad (7.138)$$

$$= \check{\mathbf{S}} + \mathbf{S}_0 + \kappa \check{\mathbf{m}}\check{\mathbf{m}}^\top - \hat{\kappa} \hat{\mathbf{m}}\hat{\mathbf{m}}^\top \quad (7.139)$$

This result is actually quite intuitive: the posterior mean  $\hat{\mathbf{m}}$  is a convex combination of the prior mean and the MLE; the posterior scatter matrix  $\hat{\mathbf{S}}$  is the prior scatter matrix  $\check{\mathbf{S}}$  plus the empirical scatter matrix  $\mathbf{S}_{\bar{\mathbf{y}}}$  plus an extra term due to the uncertainty in the mean (which creates its own virtual scatter matrix); and the posterior confidence factors  $\hat{\kappa}$  and  $\hat{\nu}$  are both incremented by the size of the data we condition on.

### Posterior marginals

We have computed the joint posterior

$$p(\boldsymbol{\mu}, \Sigma | \mathcal{D}) = \mathcal{N}(\boldsymbol{\mu} | \Sigma, \mathcal{D}) p(\Sigma | \mathcal{D}) = \mathcal{N}(\boldsymbol{\mu} | \hat{\mathbf{m}}, \frac{1}{\hat{\kappa}} \Sigma) \text{IW}(\Sigma | \hat{\mathbf{S}}, \hat{\nu}) \quad (7.140)$$

We now discuss how to compute the posterior marginals,  $p(\Sigma | \mathcal{D})$  and  $p(\boldsymbol{\mu} | \mathcal{D})$ .

It is easy to see that the posterior marginal for  $\Sigma$  is

$$p(\Sigma|\mathcal{D}) = \int p(\mu, \Sigma|\mathcal{D}) d\mu = \text{IW}(\Sigma| \hat{\mathbf{S}}, \hat{\nu}) \quad (7.141)$$

For the mean, one can show that

$$p(\mu|\mathcal{D}) = \int p(\mu, \Sigma|\mathcal{D}) d\Sigma = \mathcal{T}(\mu| \hat{\mu}, \frac{\hat{\mathbf{S}}}{\hat{\kappa}\hat{\nu}'}, \hat{\nu}') \quad (7.142)$$

where  $\hat{\nu}' \triangleq \hat{\nu} - D + 1$ . Intuitively this result follows because  $p(\mu|\mathcal{D})$  is an infinite mixture of Gaussians, where each mixture component has a value of  $\Sigma$  drawn from the IW distribution; by mixing these altogether, we induce a Student distribution, which has heavier tails than a single Gaussian.

### Posterior predictive

Following Sec. 7.2.2.4, we now discuss how to predict future data by integrating out the parameters. If  $\mathbf{y} \sim \mathcal{N}(\mu, \Sigma)$ , where  $(\mu, \Sigma|\mathcal{D}) \sim \text{NIW}(\hat{\mathbf{m}}, \hat{\kappa}, \hat{\nu}, \hat{\mathbf{S}})$ , then one can show that the posterior predictive distribution, for a single observation vector, is as follows:

$$p(\mathbf{y}|\mathcal{D}) = \int \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{x}|\mu, \Sigma) \text{NIW}(\mu, \Sigma| \hat{\mathbf{m}}, \hat{\kappa}, \hat{\nu}, \hat{\mathbf{S}}) d\mu d\Sigma \quad (7.143)$$

$$= \mathcal{T}(\mathbf{y}| \hat{\mathbf{m}}, \frac{\hat{\mathbf{S}} (\hat{\kappa} + 1)}{\hat{\kappa}\hat{\nu}'}, \hat{\nu}') \quad (7.144)$$

where  $\hat{\nu}' = \hat{\nu} - D + 1$ .

### 7.2.5 Beyond conjugate priors

We have seen various examples of conjugate priors, all of which have come from the exponential family (see Sec. 12.2). These priors have the advantage of being easy to interpret (in terms of sufficient statistics from a virtual prior dataset), and easy to compute with. However, for most models, there is no prior in the exponential family that is conjugate to the likelihood. Furthermore, even where there is a conjugate prior, the assumption of conjugacy may be too limiting. Therefore in the sections below, we briefly discuss various other kinds of priors.

## 7.3 Noninformative priors

When we have little or no domain specific knowledge, it is desirable to use an **uninformative**, **noninformative** or **objective** priors, to “let the data speak for itself”. Unfortunately, there is no unique way to define such priors, and they all encode some kind of knowledge. It is therefore better to use the term **diffuse prior**, **minimally informative prior** or **default prior**.

As an example of the difficulty of being uninformative, consider a Bernoulli parameter  $\theta \in [0, 1]$ . One might think that the most uninformative prior would be the uniform distribution, Beta(1, 1). (Laplace argued in favor of this prior based on what he called the **principle of insufficient reason** to prefer any other distribution.) However, this prior is not uniform on the logits  $\eta = \log(\theta/(1-\theta))$ ,

so in some senses it is an informative prior. Indeed, Jaynes argued that the “natural” uninformative prior for  $\theta$  is the improper **Haldane prior**

$$p(\theta) = \theta^{-1}(1-\theta)^{-1} = \text{Beta}(\theta|0,0) \quad (7.145)$$

This has a “horseshoe” shape, with all its density on  $\theta = 0$  or  $\theta = 1$ , as shown in Fig. 3.10a.

In the sections below, we briefly mention some common approaches for creating default priors. For further details, see e.g., [KW96] and the Stan website.<sup>4</sup>

### 7.3.1 Jeffreys priors

Let  $p_\theta(\theta)$  be some prior, and let  $\phi = f(\theta)$  be some invertible transformation of  $\theta$ , such as a change in location and/or scale. We want to choose a prior that is **invariant** to this function  $f$ , i.e., we want  $p_\phi(\phi)$  to be the same as  $p_\theta(\theta)$ . We can achieve that provided that  $p_\theta(\theta)$  is chosen to be the **Jeffreys prior**, named after Harold Jeffreys.<sup>5</sup> In 1d, the Jeffreys prior is given by  $p(\theta) \propto \sqrt{F(\theta)}$ , where  $F$  is the Fisher information (Appendix D.2). In multiple dimensions, the Jeffreys prior has the form  $p(\boldsymbol{\theta}) \propto \sqrt{\det \mathbf{F}(\boldsymbol{\theta})}$ , where  $\mathbf{F}$  is the Fisher information matrix (Appendix D.2).

To see why the Jeffreys prior is invariant to parameterization, consider the 1d case. Suppose  $p_\theta(\theta) \propto \sqrt{F(\theta)}$ . Using the change of variables, we can derive the corresponding prior for  $\phi$  as follows:

$$p_\phi(\phi) = p_\theta(\theta) \left| \frac{d\theta}{d\phi} \right| \quad (7.146)$$

$$\propto \sqrt{F(\theta) \left( \frac{d\theta}{d\phi} \right)^2} = \sqrt{\mathbb{E} \left[ \left( \frac{d \log p(x|\theta)}{d\theta} \right)^2 \right] \left( \frac{d\theta}{d\phi} \right)^2} \quad (7.147)$$

$$= \sqrt{\mathbb{E} \left[ \left( \frac{d \log p(x|\theta)}{d\theta} \frac{d\theta}{d\phi} \right)^2 \right]} = \sqrt{\mathbb{E} \left[ \left( \frac{d \log p(x|\phi)}{d\phi} \right)^2 \right]} \quad (7.148)$$

$$= \sqrt{F(\phi)} \quad (7.149)$$

Thus the prior distribution is the same whether we use the  $\theta$  parameterization or the  $\phi$  parameterization.

We give some examples of Jeffreys priors below.

#### 7.3.1.1 Jeffreys prior for Bernoulli and categorical distributions

For the Bernoulli distribution, we have (using Eq. (D.17))  $F(\theta) = \frac{1}{\theta(1-\theta)}$ . Hence

$$p(\theta) \propto \theta^{-\frac{1}{2}}(1-\theta)^{-\frac{1}{2}} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{\theta(1-\theta)}} \propto \text{Beta}(\theta|\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2}) \quad (7.150)$$

4. <https://github.com/stan-dev/stan/wiki/Prior-Choice-Recommendations>.

5. Harold Jeffreys, 1891 – 1989, was an English mathematician, statistician, geophysicist, and astronomer. He is not to be confused with Richard Jeffrey, a philosopher who advocated the subjective interpretation of probability [Jef04].

Similarly, for a categorical random variable with  $K$  states, one can show that the Jeffreys prior is given by

$$p(\boldsymbol{\theta}) \propto \text{Dir}(\boldsymbol{\theta} | \frac{1}{2}, \dots, \frac{1}{2}) \quad (7.151)$$

Note that this is different from the more obvious choices of  $\text{Dir}(\frac{1}{K}, \dots, \frac{1}{K})$  or  $\text{Dir}(1, \dots, 1)$ .

### 7.3.1.2 Jeffreys prior for the mean and variance of a univariate Gaussian

Consider a 1d Gaussian  $x \sim \mathcal{N}(\mu, \sigma^2)$  with both parameters unknown, so  $\boldsymbol{\theta} = (\mu, \sigma^2)$ . From Eq. (D.22), the Fisher information matrix is

$$\mathbf{F}(\boldsymbol{\theta}) = \begin{pmatrix} 1/\sigma^2 & 0 \\ 0 & 2/\sigma^2 \end{pmatrix} \quad (7.152)$$

Since  $\sqrt{\det(\mathbf{F}(\boldsymbol{\theta}))} = \sqrt{\frac{2}{\sigma^4}}$ , the Jeffreys prior has the form

$$p(\mu, \sigma^2) \propto 1/\sigma^2 \quad (7.153)$$

It turns out that we can emulate this prior with a conjugate NIX prior:

$$p(\mu, \sigma^2) = NI\chi^2(\mu, \sigma^2 | \mu_0 = 0, \check{\kappa} = 0, \check{\nu} = -1, \check{\sigma}^2 = 0) \quad (7.154)$$

This lets us easily reuse the results from Sec. 7.2.3.3, as we showed in Sec. 7.2.3.4.

### 7.3.1.3 Jeffreys prior for the mean of a univariate Gaussian

Now suppose the variance is known (fixed), so we just want to compute the Jeffreys prior for the location parameter  $\mu$ . In this case,  $F(\mu) = 1/\sigma^2$  which is a constant, so the prior has the form of a uniform distribution over the real line,

$$p(\mu) \propto 1 \quad (7.155)$$

Note that this is an **improper prior**, since it does not integrate to 1. Using improper priors is fine as long as the posterior is proper. This will be the case provided we have seen  $N \geq 1$  data points, since we can “nail down” the location as soon as we have seen a single data point.

We can approximate this prior by using a conjugate Gaussian prior with infinite variance,  $p(\mu) = \mathcal{N}(\mu | 0, \infty)$ . This lets us easily reuse the results from Sec. 7.2.3.1.

### 7.3.1.4 Jeffreys prior for the standard deviation of a Gaussian

Now suppose the mean is known (fixed), so we just want to compute the Jeffreys prior for the scale parameter  $\sigma$ . In this case,  $F(\sigma) = 2/\sigma^2$ , so the prior has the form

$$p(\sigma) \propto \frac{1}{\sigma} \quad (7.156)$$

We can rewrite this as follows. Let  $\ell = \log(\sigma)$  be the log of the scale parameter. If we want to express “ignorance” about a scale parameter, it is natural to use a uniform prior on the log scale,  $p(\ell) \propto 1$ . By the change of variable formula, we get the following induced prior for the scale:  $p(\sigma) = p(\ell) |\frac{d\ell}{d\sigma}| \propto \frac{1}{\sigma}$ . We see that this matches the Jeffreys prior.

Note that this is an improper prior, but the posterior is proper as soon as we have seen  $N \geq 2$  data points (since we need at least two data points to estimate a variance).

We can emulate the above prior using a conjugate inverse Gamma distribution of the form  $p(\sigma) = \text{IG}(\sigma|0, 0)$ . This lets us easily reuse the results from Sec. 7.2.3.2.

### 7.3.2 Invariant priors

If we have “objective” prior knowledge about a problem in the form of invariances, we may be able to encode this into a prior, as we show below.

#### 7.3.2.1 Translation-invariant priors

A **location-scale family** is a family of probability distributions parameterized by a location  $\mu$  and scale  $\sigma$ . If  $x$  is an rv in this family, then  $y = a + bx$  is also an rv in the same family.

When inferring the location parameter  $\mu$ , it is intuitively reasonable to want to use a **translation-invariant prior**, which satisfies the property that the probability mass assigned to any interval,  $[A, B]$  is the same as that assigned to any other shifted interval of the same width, such as  $[A - c, B - c]$ . That is,

$$\int_{A-c}^{B-c} p(\mu) d\mu = \int_A^B p(\mu) d\mu \quad (7.157)$$

This can be achieved using

$$p(\mu) \propto 1 \quad (7.158)$$

since

$$\int_{A-c}^{B-c} 1 d\mu = (A - c) - (B - c) = (A - B) = \int_A^B 1 d\mu \quad (7.159)$$

This matches the Jeffreys prior in Sec. 7.3.1.3.

#### 7.3.2.2 Scale-invariant prior

When inferring the scale parameter  $\sigma$ , we may want to use a **scale-invariant prior**, which satisfies the property that the probability mass assigned to any interval  $[A, B]$  is the same as that assigned to any other interval  $[A/c, B/c]$ , where  $c > 0$ . That is,

$$\int_{A/c}^{B/c} p(\sigma) d\sigma = \int_A^B p(\sigma) d\sigma \quad (7.160)$$

This can be achieved by using

$$p(\sigma) \propto 1/\sigma \quad (7.161)$$

since then

$$\int_{A/c}^{B/c} \frac{1}{\sigma} d\sigma = [\log \sigma]_{A/c}^{B/c} = \log(B/c) - \log(A/c) = \log(B) - \log(A) = \int_A^B \frac{1}{\sigma} d\sigma \quad (7.162)$$

This matches the Jeffreys prior in Sec. 7.3.1.4.

### 7.3.2.3 Learning invariant priors

Whenever we have knowledge of some kind of invariance we want our model to satisfy, we can use this to encode a corresponding prior. Sometimes this is done analytically (see e.g., [Rob07, Ch.9]). When this is intractable, it may be possible to learn invariant priors by solving a variational optimization problem (see e.g., [NS18]).

### 7.3.3 Reference priors

One way to define a noninformative prior is as a distribution which is maximally far from all possible posteriors, when averaged over datasets. This is the basic idea behind a **reference prior** [Ber05; BBS09]. More precisely, we say that  $p(\boldsymbol{\theta})$  is a reference prior if it maximizes the expected KL divergence between posterior and prior:

$$p^*(\boldsymbol{\theta}) = \underset{p(\boldsymbol{\theta})}{\operatorname{argmax}} \int_{\mathcal{D}} p(\mathcal{D}) \mathbb{KL}(p(\boldsymbol{\theta}|\mathcal{D}) \| p(\boldsymbol{\theta})) d\mathcal{D} \quad (7.163)$$

where  $p(\mathcal{D}) = \int p(\mathcal{D}|\boldsymbol{\theta}) p(\boldsymbol{\theta}) d\boldsymbol{\theta}$ . This is the same as maximizing the mutual information  $\mathbb{I}(\boldsymbol{\theta}, \mathcal{D})$ .

We can eliminate the integral over datasets by noting that

$$\int p(\mathcal{D}) \int p(\boldsymbol{\theta}|\mathcal{D}) \log \frac{p(\boldsymbol{\theta}|\mathcal{D})}{p(\boldsymbol{\theta})} = \int p(\boldsymbol{\theta}) \int p(\mathcal{D}|\boldsymbol{\theta}) \log \frac{p(\mathcal{D}|\boldsymbol{\theta})}{p(\mathcal{D})} = \mathbb{E}_{\boldsymbol{\theta}} [\mathbb{KL}(p(\mathcal{D}|\boldsymbol{\theta}) \| p(\mathcal{D}))] \quad (7.164)$$

where we used the fact that  $\frac{p(\boldsymbol{\theta}|\mathcal{D})}{p(\boldsymbol{\theta})} = \frac{p(\mathcal{D}|\boldsymbol{\theta})}{p(\mathcal{D})}$ .

One can show that, in 1d, the corresponding prior is equivalent to the Jeffreys prior. In higher dimensions, we can compute the reference prior for one parameter at a time, using the chain rule. However, this can become computationally intractable. See [NS17] for a tractable approximation based on variational inference (Sec. 7.7.3).

## 7.4 Hierarchical priors

Bayesian models require specifying a prior  $p(\boldsymbol{\theta})$  for the parameters. The parameters of the prior are called **hyperparameters**, and will be denoted by  $\boldsymbol{\phi}$ . If these are unknown, we can put a prior on them; this defines a **hierarchical Bayesian model**, or **multi-level model**, which can visualize like this:  $\boldsymbol{\phi} \rightarrow \boldsymbol{\theta} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$ . We assume the prior on the hyper-parameters is fixed (e.g., we may use some kind of minimally informative prior), so the joint distribution has the form

$$p(\boldsymbol{\phi}, \boldsymbol{\theta}, \mathcal{D}) = p(\boldsymbol{\phi}) p(\boldsymbol{\theta}|\boldsymbol{\phi}) p(\mathcal{D}|\boldsymbol{\theta}) \quad (7.165)$$

The hope is that we can learn the hyperparameters by treating the parameters themselves as datapoints.

A common setting in which such an approach makes sense is when we have  $J > 1$  related datasets,  $\mathcal{D}_j$ , each with their own parameters  $\boldsymbol{\theta}_j$ . Inferring  $p(\boldsymbol{\theta}_j|\mathcal{D}_j)$  independently for each group  $j$  can give poor results if  $\mathcal{D}_j$  is a small dataset (e.g., if condition  $j$  corresponds to a rare combination of features, or a sparsely populated region). We could of course pool all the data to compute a single model,  $p(\boldsymbol{\theta}|\mathcal{D})$ , but that would not let us model the subpopulations. A hierarchical Bayesian model lets us **borrow statistical strength** from groups with lots of data (and hence well-informed posteriors  $p(\boldsymbol{\theta}_j|\mathcal{D})$ ) in order to help groups with little data (and hence highly uncertain posteriors  $p(\boldsymbol{\theta}_j|\mathcal{D})$ ). The idea is that well-informed groups  $j$  will have a good estimate of  $\boldsymbol{\theta}_j$ , from which we can infer  $\phi$ , which can be used to help estimate  $\boldsymbol{\theta}_k$  for groups  $k$  with less data. (Information is shared via the hidden common parent node  $\phi$  in the graphical model, as shown in Fig. 7.16.) We give some examples of this below.

After fitting such models, we can compute two kinds of posterior predictive distributions. If we want to predict observations for an existing group  $j$ , we need to use

$$p(y_j|\mathcal{D}) = \int p(y_j|\boldsymbol{\theta}_j)p(\boldsymbol{\theta}_j|\mathcal{D})d\boldsymbol{\theta}_j \quad (7.166)$$

However, if we want to predict observations for a new group  $*$  that has not yet been measured, but which is comparable to (or **exchangeable with**) the existing groups  $1 : J$ , we need to use

$$p(y_*|\mathcal{D}) = \int p(y_*|\boldsymbol{\theta}_*)p(\boldsymbol{\theta}_*|\phi)p(\phi|\mathcal{D})d\boldsymbol{\theta}_*d\phi \quad (7.167)$$

For more information on hierarchical models, see e.g., [GH07; Gel+14; Kru15].

#### 7.4.1 A hierarchical binomial model

Suppose we want to estimate the prevalence of COVID in a set of counties. Let  $N_j$  be the population size, and let  $y_j$  be the number of positive cases for county  $j = 1 : J$ . We assume  $y_j \sim \text{Bin}(N_j, \theta_j)$ , and we want to estimate the rates  $\theta_j$ . Since some counties may have small population sizes, we may get unreliable results if we estimate each  $\theta_j$  separately; for example we may observe  $y_j = 0$  resulting in  $\hat{\theta}_j = 0$ , even though the true infection rate is higher.

One solution is to assume all the  $\theta_j$  are the same; this is called **parameter tying**. The resulting pooled MLE is just  $\hat{\theta}_{\text{pooled}} = \frac{\sum_j y_j}{\sum_j N_j}$ . But the assumption that all the counties have the same rate is a rather strong one. A compromise approach is to assume that the  $\theta_j$  are similar, but that there may be county-specific variations. This can be modeled by assuming the  $\theta_j$  are drawn from some common distribution, say  $\theta_j \sim \text{Beta}(a, b)$ . The full joint distribution can be written as

$$p(\mathcal{D}, \boldsymbol{\theta}, \phi) = p(\phi)p(\boldsymbol{\theta}|\phi)p(\mathcal{D}|\boldsymbol{\theta}) = p(\phi) \left[ \prod_{j=1}^J \text{Beta}(\theta_j|\phi) \right] \left[ \prod_{j=1}^J \text{Bin}(y_j|N_j, \theta_j) \right] \quad (7.168)$$

where  $\phi = (a, b)$ . In Fig. 7.16 we represent these assumptions using a directed graphical model.

It remains to specify the prior  $p(\phi)$ . Recall that the mean of a  $\text{Beta}(a, b)$  distribution is  $\mu = a/(a+b)$  and the equivalent sample size is  $a+b$ ; thus the prior standard deviation is approximately  $\sigma = (a+b)^{-1/2}$ . We will use an improper factored uniform prior,  $p(\mu, \sigma) \propto 1$ ; it can be shown

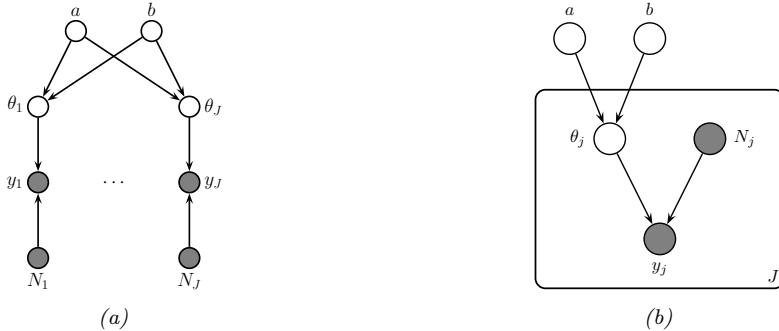


Figure 7.16: PGM for a hierarchical binomial model. (a) “Unrolled” model. (b) Same model, using plate notation.

that this results in a proper posterior, unlike the Jeffreys' prior (Sec. 7.3.1.4) which has the form  $p(\mu, \sigma) \propto 1/\sigma$  [Gel+14, p110]. After using the change of variables formula with the appropriate Jacobian (see Sec. C.5.3.2) we get the following:

(7.169)

We can perform approximate posterior inference in this model using a variety of methods. We will use a method called HMC (see Sec. 7.7.4), which combines gradient based methods with Monte Carlo sampling, and which is implemented in many software libraries. The result is a set of samples from the posterior,  $(\phi^s, \theta^s) \sim p(\phi, \theta | \mathcal{D})$  from which we can compute any quantity of interest. (See Sec. 7.5.1 for a faster approximate inference method.)

In Fig. 7.17a(a, rows one and two) we show some empirical data.<sup>6</sup> In Fig. 7.17a(a, row three) we show the MLE  $\hat{\theta}_j$  for each group. We see that some groups have  $\hat{\theta}_j = 0$ , which is much less than the pooled MLE  $\hat{\theta}_{\text{pooled}}$  (red line). In Fig. 7.17a(a, row four) we show the posterior mean  $\mathbb{E}[\theta_j | \mathcal{D}]$  estimated from all the data, as well as the population mean  $\mathbb{E}[\theta | \mathcal{D}] = \mathbb{E}[a/(a+b) | \mathcal{D}]$  shown in the red line. We see that groups that had low counts have their estimates increased towards the population mean, and groups that have large counts have their estimates decreased towards the population mean. In other words, the groups regularize each other; this phenomenon is called **shrinkage**. The amount of shrinkage is controlled by the prior on  $(a, b)$ , which is inferred from the data.

In Fig. 7.17a(b), we show the 95% credible intervals for each parameter, as well as the overall population mean. (This is known as a **forest plot**.) We can use this to decide if any group is significantly different than any specified target value (e.g., the overall average).

### 7.4.2 A hierarchical Gaussian model

In this section, we consider a variation of the Sec. 7.4.1 model, but this time applied to real-valued data instead of binary count data. More specifically we assume  $y_{ij} \sim \mathcal{N}(\theta_j, \sigma^2)$ , where  $\theta_j$  is the unknown mean for group  $j$ , and  $\sigma^2$  is the observation variance (assumed to be shared across groups)

<sup>6</sup>. This data actually corresponds to the number of rats that develop a certain kind of tumor during a particular clinical trial, rather than COVID cases, but the idea is the same. See [GeL+14, p102] for details.

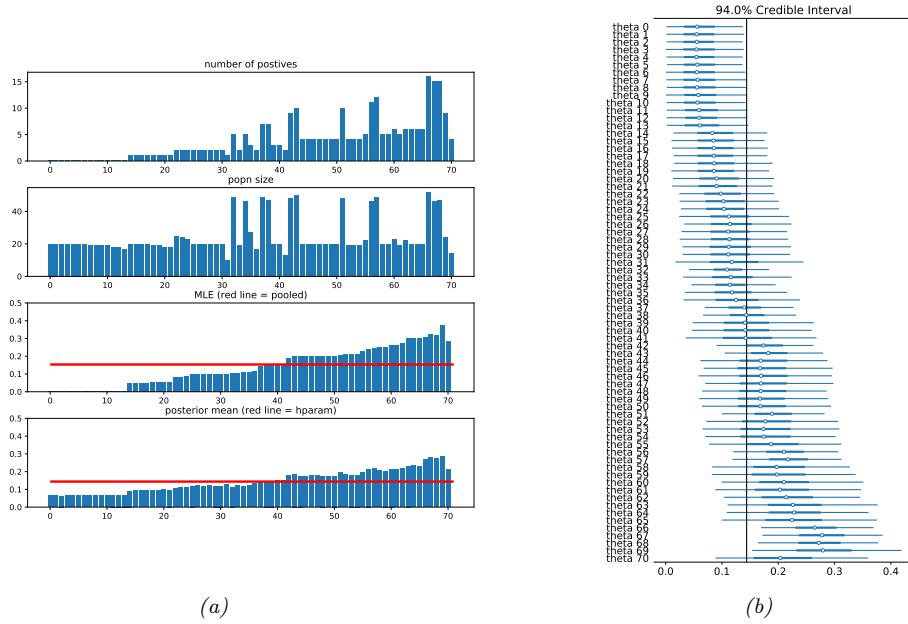


Figure 7.17: Data and inferences for the hierarchical binomial model fit using HMC. Generated by `hbayes_binom_rats_pymc3.py`.

and fixed, for simplicity). As we discussed in Sec. 3.6.1, having  $N_j$  observations  $y_{ij}$  each with variance  $\sigma^2$  is like having one measurement  $y_j \triangleq \frac{1}{N_j} \sum_{i=1}^{N_j} y_{ij}$  with variance  $\sigma_j^2 \triangleq \sigma^2/N_j$ . This lets us simplify notation and use one observation per group, with likelihood  $y_j \sim \mathcal{N}(\theta_j, \sigma_j^2)$ , where we assume the  $\sigma_j$ 's are known.

We will use a hierarchical model by assuming each group's parameters come from a common distribution,  $\theta_j \sim \mathcal{N}(\mu, \tau^2)$ . The model becomes

$$p(\mu, \tau^2, \boldsymbol{\theta}_{1:J} | \mathcal{D}) \propto p(\mu, \tau^2) \prod_{j=1}^J \mathcal{N}(\theta_j | \mu, \tau^2) \mathcal{N}(y_j | \theta_j, \sigma_j^2) \quad (7.170)$$

where  $p(\mu, \tau^2)$  is some kind of prior (e.g., a diffuse prior) over the hyper-parameters. See Fig. 7.18a for the graphical model.

It turns out that posterior inference in this model is difficult for many algorithms because of the tight dependence between the variance hyper parameter  $\tau^2$  and the group means  $\theta_j$ . In particular, consider making local move through parameter space, similar to SGD. The algorithm can only “visit” the place where  $\tau^2$  is small (corresponding to strong shrinkage to the prior) if all the  $\theta_j$  are close to the prior mean  $\mu$ . It may be hard to move into the area where  $\tau^2$  is small unless all groups simultaneously move their  $\theta_j$  estimates closer to  $\mu$ . We discuss this problem in more detail in Sec. 11.6.5.

A standard solution to this problem is to rewrite the model using the following **non-centered**

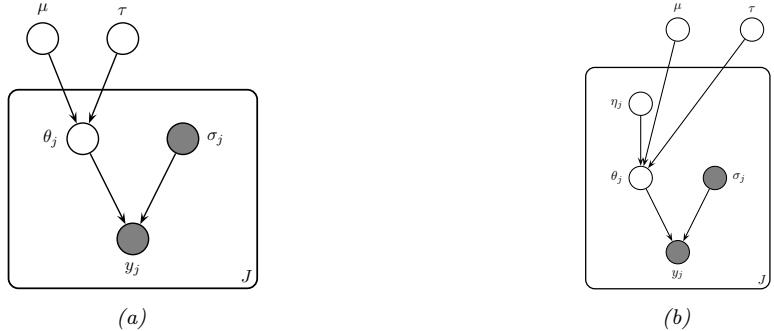


Figure 7.18: A hierarchical Gaussian Bayesian model. (a) Centered parameterization. (b) Non-centered parameterization.

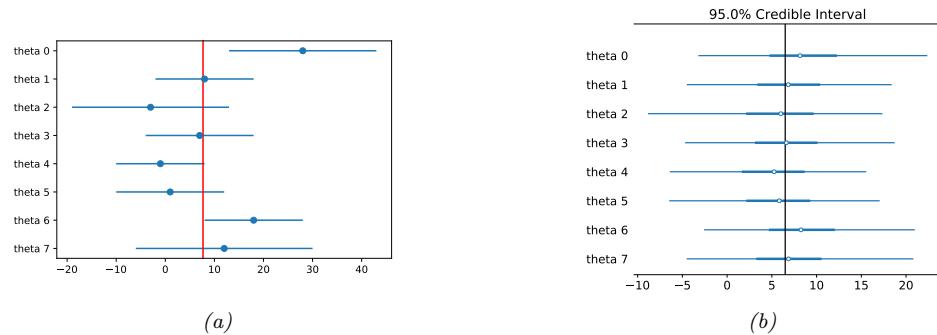


Figure 7.19: 8-schools dataset. (a) Raw data. Each row plots  $y_j \pm \sigma_j$ . Vertical line is the pooled estimate. (b) Posterior 95% credible intervals for  $\theta_j$ . Vertical line is posterior mean  $\mathbb{E}[\mu|\mathcal{D}]$ . Generated by `schools8 pymc3.py`.

parameterization:

$$\theta_i = \mu + \tau \eta_i \quad (7.171)$$

$$\eta_j \sim \mathcal{N}(0, 1) \quad (7.172)$$

See Fig. 7.18b for the corresponding graphical model. By writing  $\theta_j$  as a deterministic function of its parents plus a local noise term, we have reduced the dependence between  $\theta_j$  and  $\tau$  and hence the other  $\theta_k$  variables, which can improve the computational efficiency of inference algorithms, as we discuss in Sec. 7.4.2. (This is analogous to the reparameterization trick that is widely used in variational inference, as discussed in Sec. 20.3.5.1.) This kind of reparameterization is widely used in hierarchical Bayesian models. (See [GMH19] for a way to automatically derive this kind of model transformation.)

Let us now apply this model to some data. We will consider the **eight schools** dataset from [Gel+14, Sec 5.5]. The goal is to estimate the effects on a new coaching program on SAT scores. Let  $y_{nj}$  be the observed improvement in score for student  $n$  in school  $j$  compared to a baseline. Since each

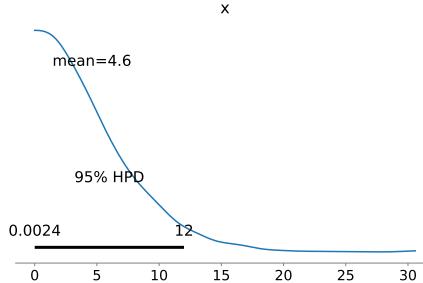


Figure 7.20: Marginal posterior density  $p(\tau|\mathcal{D})$  for the 8-schools dataset. Generated by `schools8_pymc3.py`.

school has multiple students, we summarize its data using the empirical mean  $\bar{y}_{..j} = \frac{1}{N_j} \sum_{n=1}^{N_j} y_{nj}$  and standard deviation  $\sigma_j$ . See Fig. 7.19a for an illustration of the data. We also show the pooled MLE for  $\theta$ , which is a precision weighted average of the data:

$$\bar{y}_{..} = \frac{\sum_{j=1}^J \frac{1}{\sigma_j^2} \bar{y}_{..j}}{\sum_{j=1}^J \frac{1}{\sigma_j^2}} \quad (7.173)$$

We see that school 0 has an unusually large improvement (28 points) compared to the overall mean, suggesting that the estimating  $\theta_0$  just based on  $\mathcal{D}_0$  might be unreliable. However, we can easily apply our hierarchical model. We will use HMC to do approximate inference. (See Sec. 7.5.2 for a faster approximate method.)

After computing the (approximate) posterior, we can compute the marginal posteriors  $p(\theta_j|\mathcal{D})$  for each school. These distributions are shown in Fig. 7.19b. Once again, we see shrinkage towards the global mean  $\bar{\mu} = \mathbb{E}[\mu|\mathcal{D}]$ , which is close to the pooled estimate  $\bar{y}_{..}$ . In fact, if we fix the hyper-parameters to their posterior mean values, and use the approximation

$$p(\mu, \tau^2|\mathcal{D}) = \delta(\mu - \bar{\mu})\delta(\tau^2 - \bar{\tau}^2) \quad (7.174)$$

then we can use the results from Sec. 7.2.3.1 to compute the marginal posteriors

$$p(\theta_j|\mathcal{D}) \approx p(\theta_j|\mathcal{D}_j, \bar{\mu}, \bar{\tau}^2) \quad (7.175)$$

In particular, we can show that the posterior mean  $\mathbb{E}[\theta_j|\mathcal{D}]$  is in between the MLE  $\hat{\theta}_j = y_j$  and the global mean  $\bar{\mu} = \mathbb{E}[\mu|\mathcal{D}]$ :

$$\mathbb{E}[\theta_j|\mathcal{D}, \bar{\mu}, \bar{\tau}^2] = w_j \bar{\mu} + (1 - w_j) \hat{\theta}_j \quad (7.176)$$

where the amount of shrinkage towards the global mean is given by

$$w_j = \frac{\sigma_j^2}{\sigma_j^2 + \tau^2} \quad (7.177)$$

Thus we see that there is more shrinkage for groups with smaller measurement precision (e.g., due to smaller sample size), which makes intuitive sense. There is also more shrinkage if  $\tau^2$  is smaller; of course  $\tau^2$  is unknown, but we can compute a posterior for it, as shown in Fig. 7.20.

## 7.5 Empirical priors

In Sec. 7.4, we discussed hierarchical Bayes as a way to infer parameters from data. Unfortunately, posterior inference in such models can be computationally challenging. In this section, we discuss a computationally convenient approximation, in which we first compute a point estimate of the hyperparameters,  $\hat{\phi}$ , and then compute the conditional posterior,  $p(\boldsymbol{\theta}|\hat{\phi}, \mathcal{D})$ , rather than the joint posterior,  $p(\boldsymbol{\theta}, \phi|\mathcal{D})$ .

To estimate the hyper-parameters, we can maximize the marginal likelihood:

$$\hat{\phi}_{\text{mml}}(\mathcal{D}) = \underset{\phi}{\operatorname{argmax}} p(\mathcal{D}|\phi) = \underset{\phi}{\operatorname{argmax}} \int p(\mathcal{D}|\boldsymbol{\theta})p(\boldsymbol{\theta}|\phi)d\boldsymbol{\theta} \quad (7.178)$$

This technique is known as **type II maximum likelihood**, since we are optimizing the hyperparameters, rather than the parameters. Once we have estimated  $\hat{\phi}$ , we compute the posterior  $p(\boldsymbol{\theta}|\hat{\phi}, \mathcal{D})$  in the usual way.

Since we are estimating the prior parameters from data, this approach is **empirical Bayes (EB)** [CL96]. This violates the principle that the prior should be chosen independently of the data. However, we can view it as a computationally cheap approximation to inference in the full hierarchical Bayesian model, just as we viewed MAP estimation as an approximation to inference in the one level model  $\boldsymbol{\theta} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$ . In fact, we can construct a hierarchy in which the more integrals one performs, the “more Bayesian” one becomes, as shown below.

Method	Definition
Maximum likelihood	$\hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}} = \operatorname{argmax}_{\boldsymbol{\theta}} p(\mathcal{D} \boldsymbol{\theta})$
MAP estimation	$\hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}} = \operatorname{argmax}_{\boldsymbol{\theta}} p(\mathcal{D} \boldsymbol{\theta})p(\boldsymbol{\theta} \phi)$
ML-II (Empirical Bayes)	$\hat{\phi} = \operatorname{argmax}_{\phi} \int p(\mathcal{D} \boldsymbol{\theta})p(\boldsymbol{\theta} \phi)d\boldsymbol{\theta}$
MAP-II	$\hat{\phi} = \operatorname{argmax}_{\phi} \int p(\mathcal{D} \boldsymbol{\theta})p(\boldsymbol{\theta} \phi)p(\phi)d\boldsymbol{\theta}$
Full Bayes	$p(\boldsymbol{\theta}, \phi \mathcal{D}) \propto p(\mathcal{D} \boldsymbol{\theta})p(\boldsymbol{\theta} \phi)p(\phi)$

Note that ML-II is less likely to overfit than “regular” maximum likelihood, because there are typically fewer hyper-parameters  $\phi$  than there are parameters  $\boldsymbol{\theta}$ . We give some simple examples below, and will see some ML applications later in the book.

### 7.5.1 A hierarchical binomial model

In this section, we revisit the hierarchical binomial model from Sec. 7.4.1, but we use empirical Bayes instead of full Bayesian inference. We can analytically integrate out the  $\theta_j$ ’s, and write down the

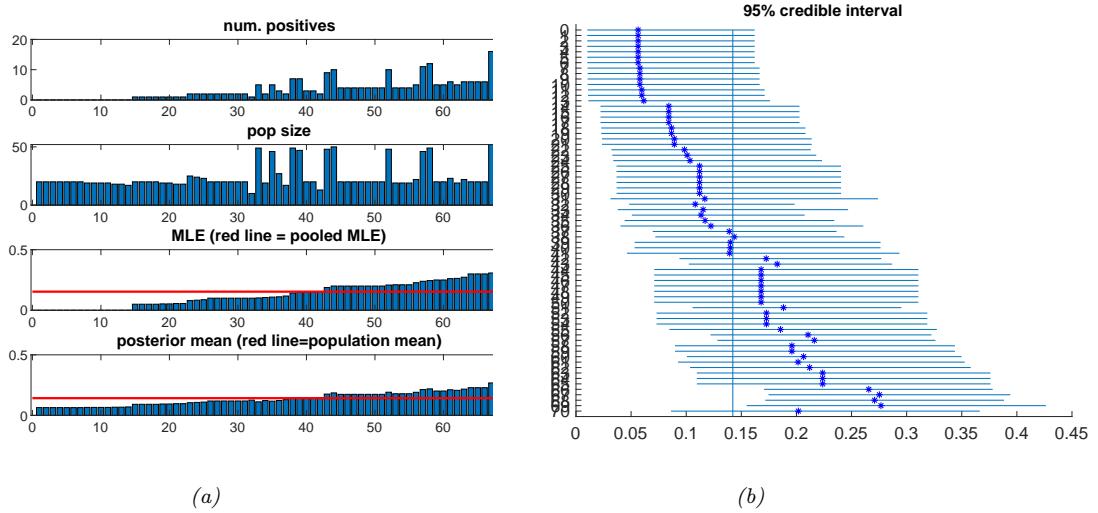


Figure 7.21: Data and inferences for the hierarchical binomial model fit using empirical Bayes. Generated by `ebBinom.m`.

marginal likelihood directly, as shown in Sec. 7.2.1.5. The resulting expression is

$$p(\mathcal{D}|\phi) = \prod_j \int \text{Bin}(y_j|N_j, \theta_j) \text{Beta}(\theta_j|a, b) d\theta_j \quad (7.179)$$

$$\propto \prod_j \frac{B(a + y_j, b + N_j - y_j)}{B(a, b)} \quad (7.180)$$

$$= \prod_j \frac{\Gamma(a+b)}{\Gamma(a)\Gamma(b)} \frac{\Gamma(a+y_j)\Gamma(b+N_j-y_j)}{\Gamma(a+b+N_j)} \quad (7.181)$$

Various ways of maximizing this marginal likelihood wrt  $a$  and  $b$  are discussed in [Min00c].

Having estimated the hyper-parameters  $a$  and  $b$ , we can plug them in to compute the posterior  $p(\theta_j|\hat{a}, \hat{b}, \mathcal{D})$  for each group, using conjugate analysis in the usual way. We show the results in Fig. 7.21; they are very similar to the full Bayesian analysis shown in Fig. 7.17, but the EB method is much faster.

### 7.5.2 A hierarchical Gaussian model

In this section, we revisit the hierarchical Gaussian model from Sec. 7.4.2. However, we fit the model using empirical Bayes.

For simplicity, we will assume that  $\sigma_j^2 = \sigma^2$  is the same for all groups. When the variances are equal, we can derive the EB estimate in closed form, as we now show. We have

$$p(y_j|\mu, \tau^2, \sigma^2) = \int \mathcal{N}(y_j|\theta_j, \sigma^2) \mathcal{N}(\theta_j|\mu, \tau^2) d\theta_j = \mathcal{N}(y_j|\mu, \tau^2 + \sigma^2) \quad (7.182)$$

Hence the marginal likelihood is

$$p(\mathcal{D}|\mu, \tau^2, \sigma^2) = \prod_{j=1}^J \mathcal{N}(y_j|\mu, \tau^2 + \sigma^2) \quad (7.183)$$

Thus we can estimate the hyper-parameters using the usual MLEs for a Gaussian. For  $\mu$ , we have

$$\hat{\mu} = \frac{1}{J} \sum_{j=1}^J y_j = \bar{y} \quad (7.184)$$

which is the overall mean. For  $\tau^2$ , we can use moment matching, which is equivalent to the MLE for a Gaussian. This means we equate the model variance to the empirical variance:

$$\hat{\tau}^2 + \sigma^2 = \frac{1}{J} \sum_{j=1}^J (y_j - \bar{y})^2 \triangleq v \quad (7.185)$$

so  $\hat{\tau}^2 = v - \sigma^2$ . Since we know  $\tau^2$  must be positive, it is common to use the following revised estimate:

$$\hat{\tau}^2 = \max\{0, v - \sigma^2\} = (v - \sigma^2)_+ \quad (7.186)$$

Given this, the posterior mean becomes

$$\hat{\theta}_j = \lambda\mu + (1 - \lambda)y_j = \mu + (1 - \lambda)(y_j - \mu) \quad (7.187)$$

where  $\lambda_j = \lambda = \sigma^2 / (\sigma^2 + \tau^2)$ .

Unfortunately, we cannot use the above method on the 8-schools dataset in Sec. 7.4.2, since it uses unequal  $\sigma_j$ . Exercise 7.8 discusses how to use the EM algorithm to derive an EB estimate for this more general case.

## 7.6 Bayesian model comparison

All models are wrong, but some are useful. — George Box [BD87, p424].<sup>7</sup>

In this section, we assume we have a set of models  $\mathcal{M}$ , each of which may fit the data to different degrees, and each of which may make different assumptions, and may be more or less simple. We discuss ways to pick the “best” model, or to combine them, or just to compare them.

### 7.6.1 Bayesian model selection

Suppose we want to choose the best model from some set  $\mathcal{M}$ . This is called **model selection**. We can view this as a decision theory problem, where the action space requires choosing one model,  $m \in \mathcal{M}$ . If we zero-one loss, the optimal action is to pick the most probable model:

$$\hat{m} = \operatorname{argmax}_{m \in \mathcal{M}} p(m|\mathcal{D}) \quad (7.188)$$

---

<sup>7</sup>. George Box is a retired statistics professor at the University of Wisconsin.

where

$$p(m|\mathcal{D}) = \frac{p(\mathcal{D}|m)p(m)}{\sum_{m \in \mathcal{M}} p(\mathcal{D}|m)p(m)} \quad (7.189)$$

is the posterior over models. If the prior over models is uniform,  $p(m) = 1/|\mathcal{M}|$ , then the MAP model is given by

$$\hat{m} = \operatorname{argmax}_{m \in \mathcal{M}} p(\mathcal{D}|m) \quad (7.190)$$

The quantity  $p(\mathcal{D}|m)$  is given by

$$p(\mathcal{D}|m) = \int p(\mathcal{D}|\boldsymbol{\theta}, m)p(\boldsymbol{\theta}|m)d\boldsymbol{\theta} \quad (7.191)$$

This is known as the **marginal likelihood**, or the **evidence** for model  $m$ . Intuitively, it is the likelihood of the data averaging over all possible parameter values, weighted by the prior  $p(\boldsymbol{\theta}|m)$ . If all settings of  $\boldsymbol{\theta}$  assign high probability to the data, then this is probably a good model.

#### 7.6.1.1 Example: polynomial regression

As an example of Bayesian model selection, we will consider polynomial regression in 1d. Fig. 7.22 shows the posterior over three different models, corresponding to polynomials of degrees 1, 2 and 3 fit to  $N = 5$  data points. We use a uniform prior over models, and use empirical Bayes to estimate the prior over the regression weights (see Sec. 11.6.6). We then compute the evidence for each model (see Sec. 11.6 for details on how to do this). We see that there is not enough data to justify a complex model, so the MAP model is  $m = 1$ . Fig. 7.23 shows the analogous plot for  $N = 30$  data points. Now we see that the MAP model is  $m = 2$ ; the larger sample size means we can safely pick a more complex model.

#### 7.6.2 Bayes model averaging

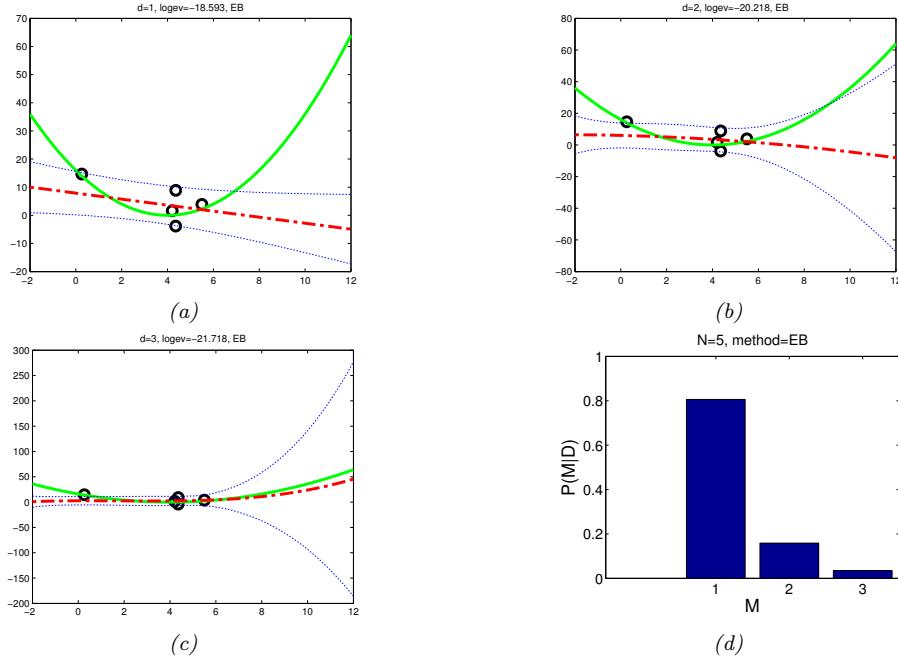
So far, we have focused on picking the single best model. However, if our goal is to perform prediction, we can get better results if we marginalize out over all models, by computing

$$p(y|\mathbf{x}, \mathcal{D}) = \sum_{m \in \mathcal{M}} p(y|\mathbf{x}, m)p(m|\mathcal{D}) \quad (7.192)$$

This is called **Bayesian model averaging** or **BMA** (see e.g., [Dra95; RMH97] for further discussion). If we use a uniform prior over models, this becomes

$$p(y|\mathbf{x}, \mathcal{D}) \propto \sum_{m \in \mathcal{M}} p(y|\mathbf{x}, m)p(\mathcal{D}|m) \quad (7.193)$$

Essentially this requires performing prediction using an **ensemble** of models, weighted by their marginal likelihood. If the set of models is very large, we may still be able to get good results using an equally weighted random selection of models.



*Figure 7.22: Illustration of Bayesian model selection for polynomial regression. (a-c) We fit polynomials of degrees 1, 2 and 3 fit to  $N = 5$  data points. The solid green curve is the true function, the dashed red curve is the prediction (dotted blue lines represent  $\pm\sigma$  around the mean). (d) We plot the posterior over models,  $p(m|\mathcal{D})$ , assuming a uniform prior  $p(m) \propto 1$ . Adapted from a figure by Zoubin Ghahramani. Generated by [linreg\\_eb\\_modelsel\\_vs\\_n.py](#)*

### 7.6.3 Occam's razor

Consider two models, a simple one,  $m_1$ , and a more complex one,  $m_2$ . Suppose that both can explain the data by suitably optimizing their parameters, i.e., for which  $p(\mathcal{D}|\hat{\theta}_1, m_1)$  and  $p(\mathcal{D}|\hat{\theta}_2, m_2)$  are both large. Intuitively we should prefer  $m_1$ , since it is simpler and just as good as  $m_2$ . This principle is known as **Occam's razor**.

Let us now see how ranking models based on their marginal likelihood, which involves averaging the likelihood wrt the prior, will give rise to this behavior. The complex model will put less prior probability on the “good” parameters that explain the data,  $\hat{\theta}_2$ , since the prior must integrate to 1.0 over the entire parameter space. Thus it will take averages in parts of parameter space with low likelihood. By contrast, the simpler model has fewer parameters, so the prior is concentrated over a smaller volume; thus its averages will mostly be in the good part of parameter space, near  $\hat{\theta}_1$ . Hence we see that the marginal likelihood will prefer the simpler model. This is called the **Bayesian Occam's razor** effect [Mac95; MG05].

Another way to understand the Bayesian Occam's razor effect is to compare the relative predictive abilities of simple and complex models. Since probabilities must sum to one, we have  $\sum_{\mathcal{D}'} p(\mathcal{D}'|m) = 1$ , where the sum is over all possible datasets. Complex models, which can predict many things, must

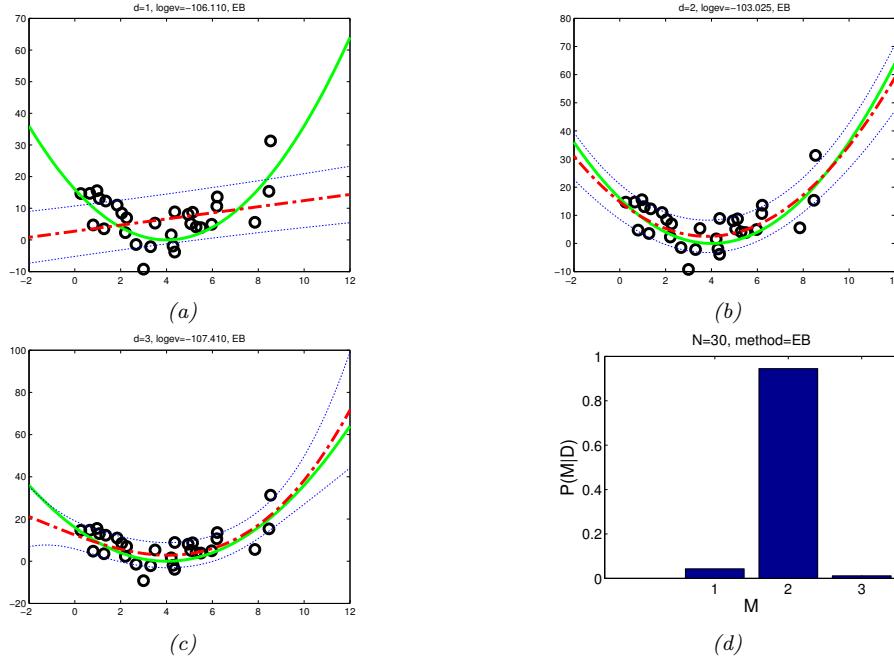


Figure 7.23: Same as Fig. 7.22 except now  $N = 30$ . Generated by `linreg_eb_modelsel_vs_n.py`

spread their predicted probability mass thinly, and hence will not obtain as large a probability for any given data set as simpler models. This is sometimes called the **conservation of probability mass** principle, and is illustrated in Fig. 7.24. On the horizontal axis we plot all possible data sets in order of increasing complexity (measured in some abstract sense). On the vertical axis we plot the predictions of 3 possible models: a simple one,  $M_1$ ; a medium one,  $M_2$ ; and a complex one,  $M_3$ . We also indicate the actually observed data  $\mathcal{D}_0$  by a vertical line. Model 1 is too simple and assigns low probability to  $\mathcal{D}_0$ . Model 3 also assigns  $\mathcal{D}_0$  relatively low probability, because it can predict many data sets, and hence it spreads its probability quite widely and thinly. Model 2 is “just right”: it predicts the observed data with a reasonable degree of confidence, but does not predict too many other things. Hence model 2 is the most probable model.

#### 7.6.4 Connection between cross validation and marginal likelihood

We have seen how the marginal likelihood helps us choose models of the “right” complexity. In non-Bayesian approaches to model selection, it is standard to use cross validation (Sec. 4.4.5) for this purpose.

It turns out that the marginal likelihood is closely related to the leave-one-out cross-validation (LOO-CV) estimate, as we now show. We start with the marginal likelihood, which we write in

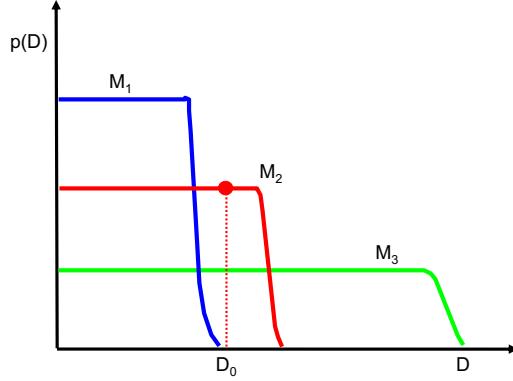


Figure 7.24: A schematic illustration of the Bayesian Occam's razor. The broad (green) curve corresponds to a complex model, the narrow (blue) curve to a simple model, and the middle (red) curve is just right. Adapted from Figure 3.13 of [Bis06]. See also [MG05, Figure 2] for a similar plot produced on real data.

sequential form as follows:

$$p(\mathcal{D}|m) = \prod_{n=1}^N p(y_n|y_{1:n-1}, \mathbf{x}_{1:N}, m) = \prod_{n=1}^N p(y_n|\mathbf{x}_n, \mathcal{D}_{1:n-1}, m) \quad (7.194)$$

where

$$p(y|\mathbf{x}, \mathcal{D}_{1:n-1}, m) = \int p(y|\mathbf{x}, \boldsymbol{\theta}) p(\boldsymbol{\theta}|\mathcal{D}_{1:n-1}, m) d\boldsymbol{\theta} \quad (7.195)$$

Suppose we use a plugin approximation to the above distribution to get

$$p(y|\mathbf{x}, \mathcal{D}_{1:n-1}, m) \approx \int p(y|\mathbf{x}, \boldsymbol{\theta}) \delta(\boldsymbol{\theta} - \hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}}_m(\mathcal{D}_{1:n-1})) d\boldsymbol{\theta} = p(y|\mathbf{x}, \hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}}_m(\mathcal{D}_{1:n-1})) \quad (7.196)$$

Then we get

$$\log p(\mathcal{D}|m) \approx \sum_{n=1}^N \log p(y_n|\mathbf{x}_n, \hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}}_m(\mathcal{D}_{1:n-1})) \quad (7.197)$$

This is very similar to a leave-one-out cross-validation estimate of the likelihood, except it is evaluated sequentially. A complex model will overfit the “early” examples and will then predict the remaining ones poorly, and thus will get low marginal likelihood as well as low cross-validation score. See [FH20] for further discussion.

#### 7.6.4.1 Example: ridge regression

In this section, we demonstrate empirically the similarity between the validation loss and the marginal likelihood. We consider a family of ridge regression models with different priors. The likelihood

is  $p(y|\mathbf{x}, \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \mathcal{N}(y|\mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x}, \beta^{-1})$  and the prior is  $p(\mathbf{w}) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{w}|\mathbf{0}, \alpha^{-1}\mathbf{I})$ . We assume the observation variance  $\sigma^2 = 1/\beta$  is known. Let  $\lambda = \alpha/\beta$  index the different model families. In Sec. 4.4.5.2, we used cross validation to estimate the optimal  $\lambda$ . In this section, we pick the value of  $\lambda$  with the maximum marginal likelihood. More precisely, we evaluate the log marginal likelihood (evidence) of the model as in Sec. 11.6.6.1. In Fig. 4.6b, we plot the negative log marginal likelihood  $\mathcal{L}(\lambda)$  vs  $\log(\lambda)$ . We see that it has roughly the same shape as the CV curve. In particular, their minima occur for the same value of  $\lambda$ .

Furthermore, since  $\mathcal{L}(\lambda)$  is a continuous function of  $\lambda$  (unlike the CV estimate), we can use gradient-based optimization to find  $\hat{\lambda}$ . This can be easily extended to the case where we have many hyperparameters. See Sec. 11.6.6 for details.

### 7.6.5 Information criteria

The marginal likelihood can be difficult to compute, since it requires marginalizing over the entire parameter space. Furthermore, the result can be quite sensitive to the choice of prior. In this section, we discuss some other related metrics for model selection that incorporate a complexity penalty, and which therefore do not require the use of a validation set. These are known as **information criteria**.

The basic idea is to start with the **deviance**, which is two times the negative log likelihood:

$$\text{deviance}(m) \triangleq -2 \sum_{n=1}^N \log p(y_n|\hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}}_m, m) \quad (7.198)$$

(The factor of 2 is for historical reasons, since it cancels out the factor of  $1/2$  that arises with a Gaussian likelihood.) We know that selecting the model with smallest deviance will result in overfitting, so we add some form of complexity penalty to get

$$J(m) = -2L(m) + C(m) \quad (7.199)$$

where  $L(m)$  is the log likelihood, and  $C(m)$  is the complexity penalty for model  $m$ . We discuss different choices for  $L$  and  $C$  below. See e.g., [GHV14] for further details.

#### 7.6.5.1 The Bayesian information criterion (BIC)

The **Bayesian information criterion** or **BIC** [Sch78] uses a complexity term of the form

$$C(m) = \log(N) \times \text{dof}(m) \quad (7.200)$$

where  $N$  is the size of the training set and “dof” stands for **degrees of freedom** of the model. If we interpret the dof as the number of parameters in the model, then we can derive the BIC as the log marginal likelihood of a Gaussian approximation to the posterior, as we discuss in Sec. 7.7.2.

In particular, from Eq. (7.229), we have

$$\log p(\mathcal{D}) \approx \log p(\mathcal{D}|\hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}}_{\text{map}}) + \log p(\hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}}_{\text{map}}) - \frac{1}{2} \log |\mathbf{H}| \quad (7.201)$$

where  $\mathbf{H}$  is the Hessian of the negative log joint  $\log p(\mathcal{D}, \boldsymbol{\theta})$  evaluated at the MAP estimate  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}}_{\text{map}}$ . We see that Eq. (7.201) is the log likelihood plus some penalty terms. If we have a uniform prior,  $p(\boldsymbol{\theta}) \propto 1$ , we can drop the prior term, and replace the MAP estimate with the MLE,  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}}$ , yielding

$$\log p(\mathcal{D}) \approx \log p(\mathcal{D}|\hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}}) - \frac{1}{2} \log |\mathbf{H}| \quad (7.202)$$

We now focus on approximating the  $\log |\mathbf{H}|$  term, which is sometimes called the **Occam factor**, since it is a measure of model complexity (volume of the posterior distribution). We have  $\mathbf{H} = \sum_{i=1}^N \mathbf{H}_i$ , where  $\mathbf{H}_i = \nabla \nabla \log p(\mathcal{D}_i | \boldsymbol{\theta})$ . Let us approximate each  $\mathbf{H}_i$  by a fixed matrix  $\hat{\mathbf{H}}$ . Then we have

$$\log |\mathbf{H}| = \log |N\hat{\mathbf{H}}| = \log(N^D |\hat{\mathbf{H}}|) = D \log N + \log |\hat{\mathbf{H}}| \quad (7.203)$$

where  $D = \dim(\boldsymbol{\theta})$  and we have assumed  $\mathbf{H}$  is full rank. We can drop the  $\log |\hat{\mathbf{H}}|$  term, since it is independent of  $N$ , and thus will get overwhelmed by the likelihood. Putting all the pieces together, we recover the BIC score

$$\log p(\mathcal{D}) \approx \log p(\mathcal{D}|\hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}}) - \frac{D}{2} \log N \quad (7.204)$$

We can then multiply this by -2 to match Eq. (7.199).

### 7.6.5.2 Akaike information criterion

The **Akaike information criterion** [Aka74] corresponds to using a complexity term of the form

$$C(m) = 2 \times \text{dof}(m) \quad (7.205)$$

This penalizes complex models less heavily than BIC. It can be derived from a frequentist perspective.

### 7.6.5.3 Widely applicable information criterion (WAIC)

The main problem with AIC and BIC is that it can be hard to compute the degrees of freedom of a model, since most parameters are highly correlated and not uniquely identifiable from the likelihood. In particular, if the mapping from parameters to the likelihood is not one-to-one, then the model known as a **singular statistical model**, since the corresponding Fisher information matrix (Appendix D.2), and hence the Hessian  $\mathbf{H}$  above, may be singular (have determinant 0). An alternative criterion that works even in the singular case is known as the **widely applicable information criterion** (WAIC), also known as the **Watanabe–Akaike information criterion** [Wat10; Wat13].

In the WAIC, we replace the deviance with average log pointwise predictive density (LPPD) to get

$$\text{LPPD}(m) = \sum_{n=1}^N \log \mathbb{E}[p(y_n | \mathcal{D}, m)] \approx \sum_{n=1}^N \log \left( \frac{1}{S} \sum_{s=1}^S p(y_n | \boldsymbol{\theta}_s, m) \right) \quad (7.206)$$

where  $\boldsymbol{\theta}_s \sim p(\boldsymbol{\theta} | \mathcal{D}, m)$  is a posterior sample. This marginalizes out the parameters. In addition, WAIC approximates the complexity term using

$$C(m) = \sum_{n=1}^N \log \mathbb{V}[p(y_n | \mathcal{D}, m)] \approx \sum_{n=1}^N \log (\mathbb{V}\{p(y_n | \boldsymbol{\theta}_s, m) : s = 1 : S\}) \quad (7.207)$$

The final criterion is

$$\text{WAIC}(m) = -2\text{LPPD}(m) + 2C(m) \quad (7.208)$$

See Fig. 21.18 for an example, where we use this method to select the number of components  $K$  in a Gaussian mixture model.

#### 7.6.5.4 Minimum description length (MDL)

We can think about the problem of scoring different models in terms of information theory (Chapter 6). The goal is for the sender to communicate the data to the receiver. First the sender needs to specify which model  $m$  to use; this takes  $C(m) = -\log p(m)$  bits (see Sec. 6.1). Then the receiver can fit the model, by computing  $\hat{\theta}_m$ , and can thus approximately reconstruct the data. To perfectly reconstruct the data, the sender needs to send the residual errors that cannot be explained by the model; this takes  $-L(m) = -\sum_n \log p(y_n|\hat{\theta}_m, m)$ . The total cost is  $J(m) = -L(m) + C(m)$ . Choosing the model which minimizes  $J(m)$  is known as the **minimum description length** or **MDL** principle. See e.g., [HY01] for details.

#### 7.6.6 Bayesian hypothesis testing

**Hypothesis testing** is a special case of model selection in which we only have two models, commonly called the **null hypothesis**,  $M_0$ , and the **alternative hypothesis**,  $M_1$ . Since we only have two models, it is convenient to define the **Bayes factor** as the ratio of marginal likelihoods:

$$B_{1,0} \triangleq \frac{p(\mathcal{D}|M_1)}{p(\mathcal{D}|M_0)} = \frac{p(M_1|\mathcal{D})}{p(M_0|\mathcal{D})} / \frac{p(M_1)}{p(M_0)} \quad (7.209)$$

(This is like a **likelihood ratio**, except we integrate out the parameters, which allows us to compare models of different complexity, due to the Bayesian Occam's razor effect explained in Sec. 7.6.3.) If  $B_{1,0} > 1$  then we prefer model 1, otherwise we prefer model 0.

Of course, it might be that  $B_{1,0}$  is only slightly greater than 1. In that case, we are not very confident that model 1 is better. Jeffreys [Jeff61] proposed a scale of evidence for interpreting the magnitude of a Bayes factor, which is shown in Table 7.1. This is a Bayesian alternative to the frequentist concept of a p-value (see Sec. D.7.5). Alternatively, we can just convert the Bayes factor to a posterior over models. If  $p(M_1) = p(M_0) = 0.5$ , we have

$$p(M_0|\mathcal{D}) = \frac{B_{0,1}}{1 + B_{0,1}} = \frac{1}{B_{1,0} + 1} \quad (7.210)$$

We give a worked example of how to compute Bayes factors in Sec. 7.6.6.1.

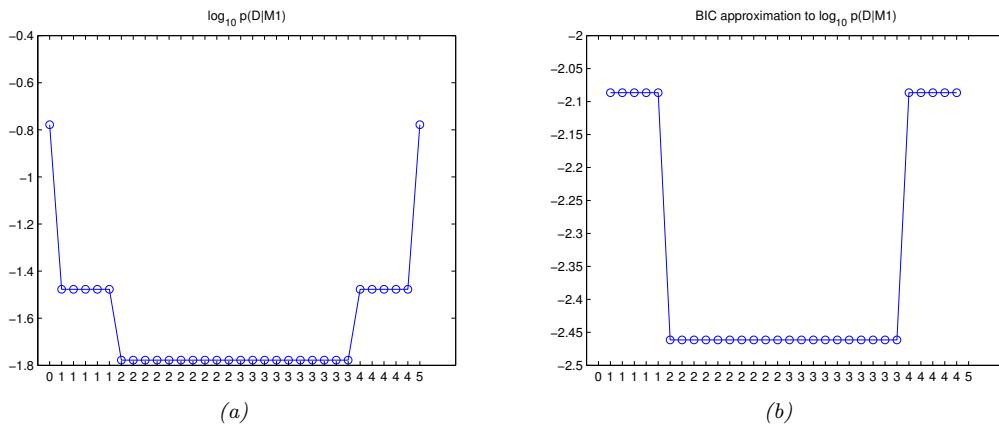
##### 7.6.6.1 Example: Testing if a coin is fair

As an example, suppose we observe some coin tosses, and want to decide if the data was generated by a fair coin,  $\theta = 0.5$ , or a potentially biased coin, where  $\theta$  could be any value in  $[0, 1]$ . Let us denote the first model by  $M_0$  and the second model by  $M_1$ . The marginal likelihood under  $M_0$  is simply

$$p(\mathcal{D}|M_0) = \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^N \quad (7.211)$$

Bayes factor $BF(1, 0)$	Interpretation
$BF < \frac{1}{100}$	Decisive evidence for $M_0$
$BF < \frac{1}{10}$	Strong evidence for $M_0$
$\frac{1}{10} < BF < \frac{1}{3}$	Moderate evidence for $M_0$
$\frac{1}{3} < BF < 1$	Weak evidence for $M_0$
$1 < BF < 3$	Weak evidence for $M_1$
$3 < BF < 10$	Moderate evidence for $M_1$
$BF > 10$	Strong evidence for $M_1$
$BF > 100$	Decisive evidence for $M_1$

Table 7.1: Jeffreys scale of evidence for interpreting Bayes factors.

Figure 7.25: (a) Log marginal likelihood vs number of heads for the coin tossing example. (b) BIC approximation. (The vertical scale is arbitrary, since we are holding  $N$  fixed.) Generated by [coins\\_model\\_sel\\_demo.py](#).

where  $N$  is the number of coin tosses. From Eq. (7.38), the marginal likelihood under  $M_1$ , using a Beta prior, is

$$p(\mathcal{D}|M_1) = \int p(\mathcal{D}|\theta)p(\theta)d\theta = \frac{B(\alpha_1 + N_1, \alpha_0 + N_0)}{B(\alpha_1, \alpha_0)} \quad (7.212)$$

We plot  $\log p(\mathcal{D}|M_1)$  vs the number of heads  $N_1$  in Fig. 7.25(a), assuming  $N = 5$  and a uniform prior,  $\alpha_1 = \alpha_0 = 1$ . (The shape of the curve is not very sensitive to  $\alpha_1$  and  $\alpha_0$ , as long as the prior is symmetric, so  $\alpha_0 = \alpha_1$ .) If we observe 2 or 3 heads, the unbiased coin hypothesis  $M_0$  is more likely than  $M_1$ , since  $M_0$  is a simpler model (it has no free parameters) — it would be a suspicious coincidence if the coin were biased but happened to produce almost exactly 50/50 heads/tails. However, as the counts become more extreme, we favor the biased coin hypothesis. Note that, if we plot the log Bayes factor,  $\log B_{1,0}$ , it will have exactly the same shape, since  $\log p(\mathcal{D}|M_0)$  is a constant.

In cases where computing the marginal likelihood is intractable, we can use the BIC approximation.

In this case, this is given by

$$L_{\text{BIC}}(\mathcal{D}) = \log p(\mathcal{D}|\hat{\theta}(\mathcal{D})) - \frac{1}{2} \log N = N_1 \log \hat{\theta} + N_0 \log(1 - \hat{\theta}) - \frac{1}{2} \log N \quad (7.213)$$

Fig. 7.25(b) shows that using this we get similar results. However, BIC assumes the parameters are identifiable, which is not true for most models of interest.

#### 7.6.6.2 Problems caused by improper priors

Problems can arise when we use improper priors (i.e., priors that do not integrate to 1) for model selection, even though such priors may be acceptable for other purposes. For example, consider testing the hypotheses  $M_0 : \theta \in \Theta_0$  vs  $M_1 : \theta \in \Theta_1$ . The posterior probability of  $M_0$  is given by

$$p(M_0|\mathcal{D}) = \frac{p(M_0)L_0}{p(M_0)L_0 + p(M_1)L_1} \quad (7.214)$$

where  $L_i = p(\mathcal{D}|M_i) = \int_{\Theta_i} p(\mathcal{D}|\theta)p(\theta|M_i)d\theta$  is the marginal likelihood for model  $i$ .

Suppose (for simplicity) that  $p(M_0) = p(M_1) = 0.5$ , and we use a uniform but improper prior over the model parameters,  $p(\theta|M_0) \propto c_0$  and  $p(\theta|M_1) \propto c_1$ . Define  $\ell_i = \int_{\Theta_i} p(\mathcal{D}|\theta)d\theta$ , so  $L_i = c_i \ell_i$ . Then

$$p(M_0|\mathcal{D}) = \frac{c_0 \ell_0}{c_0 \ell_0 + c_1 \ell_1} = \frac{\ell_0}{\ell_0 + (c_1/c_0)\ell_1} \quad (7.215)$$

Thus the posterior (and hence Bayes factor) depends on the arbitrary constants  $c_0$  and  $c_1$ . (This is known as the **marginalization paradox**.) For this reason, we should avoid using improper priors when performing Bayesian model selection. (However, if the same improper prior is used for common parameters that are shared between the two hypotheses, then the paradox does not arise.)

#### 7.6.7 Group comparisons

Suppose we have two different models for a dataset, call them the **null hypothesis**  $H_0$  and the **alternative hypothesis**  $H_1$ . We may want to know which hypothesis is the “true hypothesis” given the data. We can use Bayesian hypothesis testing to answer this question by computing  $p(H_0|\mathcal{D})$  to  $p(H_1|\mathcal{D})$  (see Sec. 7.6.6).

However, typically we are more interested in asking more nuanced questions, such as “*to what degree* is hypothesis  $H_1$  better than  $H_0$ ?” For example, we may be interested in determining how much the blood pressure differs between two **groups** of people, one of whom took some drug (called the **treatment group**) and one of whom did not (the **control group**). Let  $\mu_j$  be the average blood pressure in group  $j$ , and define the **effect size** as  $\delta = \mu_A - \mu_B$ . We could then test if there is a ‘statistically significant difference by computing  $p(|\delta| > 0|\mathcal{D})$ . However, even if this probability is large, the difference may be not be practically significant. So it is better to compute a probability such as  $p(|\delta| > \epsilon|\mathcal{D})$ , where  $\epsilon$  represents the minimal magnitude of effect size that is meaningful for the problem at hand.

More generally, let  $R = [-\epsilon, \epsilon]$  represent a **region of practical equivalence** or **ROPE** [Kru15; KL17]. We can define 3 events of interest: the null hypothesis  $H_0 : \delta \in R$ , which says both groups are practically the same;  $H_A : \delta > \epsilon$ , which says A is better than B; and  $H_B : \delta < -\epsilon$ , which says B is better than A. The details of how to compute  $p(\delta|\mathcal{D})$  depend on our modeling assumptions; we give some examples below. (Many more examples can be found in [KL17].)

### 7.6.7.1 Bayesian $\chi^2$ -test for difference in rates

Suppose you are about to buy something from Amazon.com, and there are two sellers offering it for the same price. Seller 1 has 90 positive reviews and 10 negative reviews. Seller 2 has 2 positive reviews and 0 negative reviews. On the face of it, you should pick seller 2, because they have no negative reviews. However, we cannot be very confident that seller 2 is better since they have had so few reviews. In this section, we sketch a Bayesian analysis of this problem.<sup>8</sup>

Since the reviews from the two sellers are for different items, we will use an **unpaired test**. Let  $\theta_1$  and  $\theta_2$  be the unknown reliabilities of the two sellers. The likelihood function is  $y_i \sim \text{Bin}(N_i, \theta_i)$ , where  $y_i$  is the number of positive reviews, and  $N_i$  is the total number of reviews (so we have  $y_1 = 90$ ,  $N_1 = 100$ ,  $y_2 = 2$ ,  $N_2 = 2$ ). Since we don't know anything about these sellers a priori, we'll use a uniform priors for both unknown parameters,  $\theta_i \sim \text{Unif}(0, 1)$ . This is equivalent to  $\theta_i \sim \text{Beta}(1, 1)$ . Therefore the posteriors are  $p(\theta_1 | \mathcal{D}_1) = \text{Beta}(91, 11)$  and  $p(\theta_2 | \mathcal{D}_2) = \text{Beta}(3, 1)$ , where  $\mathcal{D}_i = (y_i, N_i)$  is the observed data.

We want to compute  $p(\theta_1 > \theta_2 | \mathcal{D})$ . For convenience, let us define  $\delta = \theta_1 - \theta_2$  as the difference in the rates. (Alternatively we might want to work in terms of the log-odds ratio.) We can determine which seller is better by computing

$$\begin{aligned} p(\delta > 0 | \mathcal{D}) &= \int_0^1 \int_0^1 \mathbb{I}(\theta_1 > \theta_2) \text{Beta}(\theta_1 | y_1 + 1, N_1 - y_1 + 1) \\ &\quad \times \text{Beta}(\theta_2 | y_2 + 1, N_2 - y_2 + 1) d\theta_1 d\theta_2 \end{aligned} \tag{7.216}$$

We can compute this integral numerically, or analytically [Coo05]. An even simpler approach is to approximate the posterior  $p(\delta | \mathcal{D})$  by Monte Carlo sampling. This is easy, since  $\theta_1$  and  $\theta_2$  are independent in the posterior, and both have beta distributions, which can be sampled from using standard methods. An MC approximation to  $p(\delta | \mathcal{D})$ , is shown Figure 7.26. We can then approximate  $p(\delta > 0 | \mathcal{D})$  by counting the fraction of samples where  $\theta_1 > \theta_2$ ; this turns out to be 0.718, which closely matches the results of numerical integration. This means you are better off buying from seller 1, even though they have more negative reviews.

We call this method a **Bayesian  $\chi^2$ -test**, because it is similar in spirit to the frequentist test discussed in Sec. D.7.4.

### 7.6.7.2 Bayesian t-test for difference in means

Let us revisit the example from Sec. 7.6.7.1, but suppose our goal is now to decide which seller is cheaper on average, based on the set of prices they list for a set of shared items. Let  $y_i^j$  be the cost of item  $i$  from seller  $j$ . Since the items are comparable across groups, we can use a **paired test**. Let  $x_i = y_i^1 - y_i^2$ . It is often reasonable to assume that  $x_i \sim \mathcal{N}(\delta, \sigma^2)$ , where  $\delta$  is the unknown effect size. We are interested in  $p(\delta | \mathbf{x})$ , where  $\mathbf{x} = (x_1, \dots, x_N)$ .

We will use the uninformative Jeffreys prior for the unknown parameters  $(\delta, \sigma)$  given in Eq. (7.154). The posterior marginal for the mean is given by Eq. (7.97), which we repeat here for convenience:

$$p(\delta | \mathbf{x}) = \mathcal{T}(\delta | \bar{x}, s^2/N, N - 1) \tag{7.217}$$

---

8. This example is from [www.johndcook.com/blog/2011/09/27/bayesian-amazon](http://www.johndcook.com/blog/2011/09/27/bayesian-amazon).

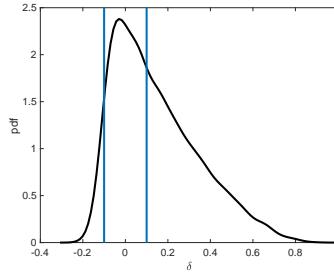


Figure 7.26: Monte Carlo approximation to  $p(\delta|\mathcal{D})$ . We use kernel density estimation (Sec. 16.3) to get a smooth plot. The vertical lines represent a ROPE of  $[-0.1, 0.1]$ . Generated by `amazonSellerDemo.m`.

where  $\bar{x} = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{i=1}^N x_i$  is the sample mean, and  $s^2 = \frac{1}{N-1} \sum_{i=1}^N (x_i - \bar{x})^2$  is an unbiased estimate of the variance. Eq. (7.217) has the same form as the frequentist sampling distribution of the test statistic used in the t-test, as shown in Eq. (D.126). For this reason, we describe this procedure as a **Bayesian t-test**.

### 7.6.8 Posterior predictive checks

Bayesian inference and decision making is optimal, but only if the modeling assumptions are correct. In this section, we discuss some ways to assess if a model is reasonable.

From a Bayesian perspective, this can seem a bit odd, since if we knew there was a better model, why don't we just use that? Here we assume that we do not have a specific alternative model in mind (so we are not performing model selection, unlike Sec. 7.6.1) Instead we are just trying to see if the data we observe is “typical” of what we might expect if our model were correct. This is called **model checking**, and is similar to frequentist hypothesis testing (Appendix D.7), but avoids some of its conceptual problems (discussed in Sec. D.8.2).

In particular, suppose we knew the true parameters  $\theta$ , which we use to generate  $S$  synthetic datasets,  $\tilde{\mathcal{D}}^s = \{\mathbf{y}_n^s \sim p(\cdot|\theta) : n = 1 : N\}$ ; these represent “plausible hallucinations” of the model. To assess the quality of our model, we can compute how “typical” our observed data  $\mathcal{D}$  is compared to the model’s hallucinations. To perform this comparison, we create one or more scalar **test statistics**,  $\tau(\tilde{\mathcal{D}}^s)$ , and compare them to the test statistics on the actual data,  $\tau(\mathcal{D})$ . These statistics should measure features of interest (since it will not, in general, be possible to capture every aspect of the data with a given model). If there is a large difference between the distribution of  $T(\tilde{\mathcal{D}}^s)$  across different  $s$  and the value of  $\tau(\mathcal{D})$ , it suggests the model is not a good one.

The crucial difference from the frequentist concept of a sampling distribution, which we discuss in Appendix D.3, is that we first condition on the observed data  $\mathcal{D}$  to compute  $p(\theta|\mathcal{D})$ , and then use posterior samples of  $\theta$  to generate each  $\tilde{\mathcal{D}}^s$ , rather than assuming access to an unknown true parameter when generating  $\tilde{\mathcal{D}}^s$ . Hence this method is called **posterior predictive checking** [Rub84].

To make things clearer, let us consider an example from [Gel+04]. In 1882, Newcomb measured the speed of light using a certain method and obtained  $N = 66$  measurements, shown in Fig. 7.27(a). There are clearly two outliers in the left tails, suggesting that the distribution is not Gaussian. Let us nonetheless fit a Gaussian to it. For simplicity, we will just compute the MLE, and use a plug-in

approximation to the posterior predictive density:

$$p(\tilde{y}|\mathcal{D}) \approx \mathcal{N}(\tilde{y}|\hat{\mu}, \hat{\sigma}^2), \quad \hat{\mu} = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^N y_n, \quad \hat{\sigma}^2 = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^N (y_n - \hat{\mu})^2 \quad (7.218)$$

Let  $\tilde{\mathcal{D}}^s$  be the  $s$ 'th dataset of size  $N = 66$  sampled from this distribution, for  $s = 1 : 1000$ . The histogram of  $\tilde{\mathcal{D}}^s$  for  $s = 1 : 9$  is shown in Fig. 7.27(b). It is clear that none of the samples contain the large negative examples that were seen in the real data. This suggests the model cannot capture the long tails present in the data. (We are assuming that these extreme values are scientifically interesting, and something we want the model to capture.)

A more formal way to test fit is to define a test statistic. Since we are interested in small values, let us use

$$\tau(\mathcal{D}) = \min\{y : y \in \mathcal{D}\} \quad (7.219)$$

The empirical distribution of  $\tau(\tilde{\mathcal{D}}^s)$  for  $s = 1 : 1000$  is shown in Fig. 7.27(c). For the real data,  $\tau(\mathcal{D}) = -44$ , but the test statistics of the generated data,  $\tau(\tilde{\mathcal{D}})$ , are much larger. Indeed, we see that  $-44$  is in the left tail of the predictive distribution,  $p(\tau(\tilde{\mathcal{D}})|\mathcal{D})$ .

If  $\tau(\mathcal{D})$  occurs in the left or right tail of the predictive distribution, then it is very unlikely under the model. We can quantify this using a **Bayesian p-value**, also called a **posterior-predictive p-value**:

$$p_B = P(\tau(\tilde{\mathcal{D}}) \geq \tau(\mathcal{D})|\mathcal{D}) \quad (7.220)$$

In contrast, a classical p-value (see Sec. D.7.5) is defined as

$$p_C = P(\tau(\tilde{\mathcal{D}}) \geq \tau(\mathcal{D})|\theta^*) \quad (7.221)$$

where  $\theta^*$  is the true but unknown parameter. The key difference between the Bayesian and classical approach is that the Bayesian always conditions on what is known (namely the data  $\mathcal{D}$ ), and never conditions on what is unknown (namely  $\theta^*$ ).

We can approximate the Bayesian p-value using Monte Carlo integration, as follows:

$$p_B = \int \mathbb{I}(\tau(\tilde{\mathcal{D}}) > \tau(\mathcal{D})) p(\tilde{\mathcal{D}}|\theta)p(\theta|\mathcal{D}) d\theta \approx \frac{1}{S} \sum_{s=1}^S \mathbb{I}(\tau(\tilde{\mathcal{D}}^s) > \tau(\mathcal{D})) \quad (7.222)$$

Any extreme value for  $p_B$  (i.e., a value near 0 or 1) means that the observed data is unlikely under the model, as assessed via test statistic  $\tau$ . However, if  $\tau(\mathcal{D})$  is a sufficient statistic of the model, it is likely to be well estimated, and the p-value will be near 0.5. For example, in the speed of light example, if we define our test statistic to be the variance of the data,  $\tau(\mathcal{D}) = \mathbb{V}\{y : y \in \mathcal{D}\}$ , we get a p-value of 0.48. (See Fig. 7.27(d).) This shows that the Gaussian model is capable of representing the variance in the data, even though it is not capable of representing the support (range) of the data.

The above example illustrates the very important point that we should not try to assess whether the data comes from a given model (for which the answer is nearly always that it does not), but rather, we should just try to assess whether the model captures the features we care about. See [Gel+04, ch.6] for a more extensive discussion of this topic.

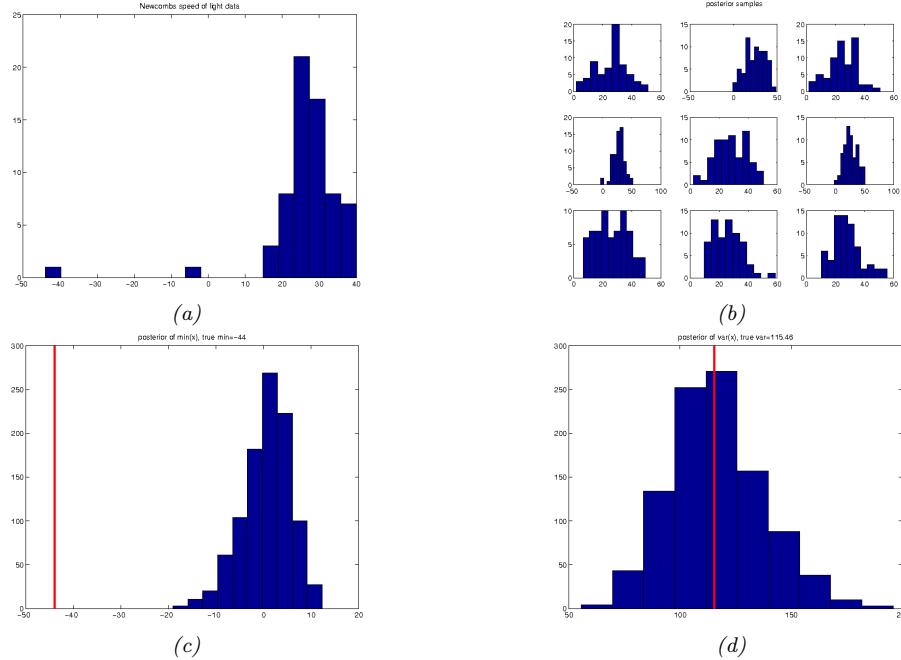


Figure 7.27: (a) Histogram of Newcomb’s data. (b) Histograms of data sampled from Gaussian model. (c) Histogram of test statistic on data sampled from the model, which represents  $p(\tau(\tilde{D}^s)|\mathcal{D})$ , where  $\tau(\mathcal{D}) = \min\{y \in \mathcal{D}\}$ . The vertical line is the test statistic on the true data,  $\tau(\mathcal{D})$ . (d) Same as (c) except  $\tau(\mathcal{D}) = \mathbb{V}\{y \in \mathcal{D}\}$ . Generated by `newcombPlugin.m`.

## 7.7 Approximate inference algorithms

Given a likelihood  $p(\mathcal{D}|\theta)$  and a prior  $p(\theta)$ , we can compute the posterior  $p(\theta|\mathcal{D})$  using Bayes’ rule. However, actually performing this computation is usually intractable, except for simple special cases, such as conjugate models (Sec. 7.2), or models where there all the latent variables come from a small finite set of possible values. We therefore need to approximate the posterior. There are a large variety of methods for performing **approximate posterior inference**, which trade off accuracy, simplicity, and speed. We briefly discuss some of these algorithms below, but go into more detail in the sequel to this book, [Mur22].

As a running example, we will use the problem of approximating the posterior of a beta-Bernoulli model. Specifically, the goal is to approximate

$$p(\theta|\mathcal{D}) \propto \left[ \prod_{n=1}^N \text{Bin}(y_n|\theta) \right] \text{Beta}(\theta|1,1) \quad (7.223)$$

where  $\mathcal{D}$  consists of 10 heads and 1 tail (so  $N = 11$ ), and we use a uniform prior. Although we can compute this posterior exactly (see Fig. 7.28), using the method discussed in Sec. 7.2.1, this serves as a useful pedagogical example since we can compare the approximation to the exact answer.

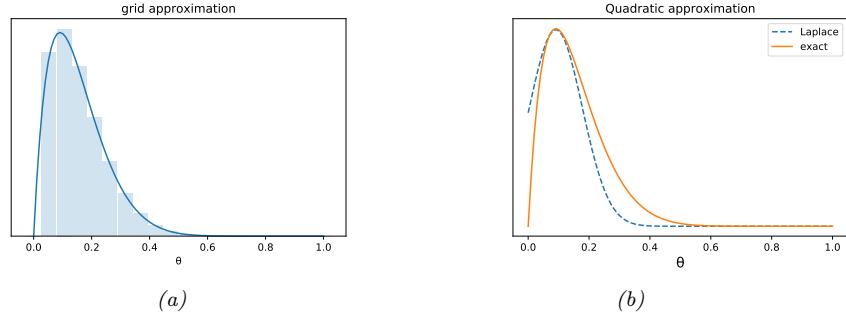


Figure 7.28: Approximating the posterior of a beta-Bernoulli model. (a) Grid approximation using 20 grid points. (b) Laplace approximation. Generated by `beta_binom_approx_post_pymc3.py`.

Also, since the target distribution is just 1d, it is easy to visualize the results. (Note, however, that the problem is not completely trivial, since the posterior is highly skewed, due to the use of an imbalanced sample of 10 heads and 1 tail.)

### 7.7.1 Grid approximation

The simplest approach to approximate posterior inference is to partition the space of possible values for the unknowns into a finite set of possibilities, call them  $\boldsymbol{\theta}_1, \dots, \boldsymbol{\theta}_K$ , and then to approximate the posterior by brute-force enumeration, as follows:

$$p(\boldsymbol{\theta} = \boldsymbol{\theta}_k | \mathcal{D}) \approx \frac{p(\mathcal{D} | \boldsymbol{\theta}_k)p(\boldsymbol{\theta}_k)}{p(\mathcal{D})} = \frac{p(\mathcal{D} | \boldsymbol{\theta}_k)p(\boldsymbol{\theta}_k)}{\sum_{k'=1}^K p(\mathcal{D}, \boldsymbol{\theta}_{k'})} \quad (7.224)$$

This is called a **grid approximation**. In Fig. 7.28a, we illustrate this method applied to our 1d problem. We see that it is easily able to capture the skewed posterior. Unfortunately, this approach does not scale to problems in more than 2 or 3 dimensions, because the number of grid points grows exponentially with the number of dimensions.

### 7.7.2 Laplace approximation

In this section, we discuss a simple way to approximate the posterior using a multivariate Gaussian, known as the **Laplace approximation** (see e.g., [TK86; RMC09]).

Suppose we write the posterior as follows:

$$p(\boldsymbol{\theta} | \mathcal{D}) = \frac{1}{Z} e^{-\mathcal{E}(\boldsymbol{\theta})} \quad (7.225)$$

where  $\mathcal{E}(\boldsymbol{\theta}) = -\log p(\boldsymbol{\theta}, \mathcal{D})$  is called an energy function, and  $Z = p(\mathcal{D})$  is the normalization constant. Performing a Taylor series expansion around the mode  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}}$  (i.e., the lowest energy state) we get

$$\mathcal{E}(\boldsymbol{\theta}) \approx \mathcal{E}(\hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}}) + (\boldsymbol{\theta} - \hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}})^\top \mathbf{g} + \frac{1}{2}(\boldsymbol{\theta} - \hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}})^\top \mathbf{H}(\boldsymbol{\theta} - \hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}}) \quad (7.226)$$

where  $\mathbf{g}$  is the gradient at the mode, and  $\mathbf{H}$  is the Hessian. Since  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}}$  is the mode, the gradient term is zero. Hence

$$\hat{p}(\boldsymbol{\theta}, \mathcal{D}) = e^{-\mathcal{E}(\hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}})} \exp \left[ -\frac{1}{2} (\boldsymbol{\theta} - \hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}})^\top \mathbf{H} (\boldsymbol{\theta} - \hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}}) \right] \quad (7.227)$$

$$\hat{p}(\boldsymbol{\theta} | \mathcal{D}) = \frac{1}{Z} \hat{p}(\boldsymbol{\theta}, \mathcal{D}) = \mathcal{N}(\boldsymbol{\theta} | \hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}}, \mathbf{H}^{-1}) \quad (7.228)$$

$$Z = e^{-\mathcal{E}(\hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}})} (2\pi)^{D/2} |\mathbf{H}|^{-\frac{1}{2}} \quad (7.229)$$

The last line follows from normalization constant of the multivariate Gaussian.

The Laplace approximation is easy to apply, since we can leverage existing optimization algorithms to compute the MAP estimate, and then we just have to compute the Hessian at the mode. (In high dimensional spaces, we can use a diagonal approximation.)

In Fig. 7.28b, we illustrate this method applied to our 1d problem. Unfortunately we see that it is not a particularly good approximation. This is because the posterior is skewed, whereas a Gaussian is symmetric. In addition, the parameter of interest lies in the constrained interval  $\theta \in [0, 1]$ , whereas the Gaussian assumes an unconstrained space,  $\boldsymbol{\theta} \in \mathbb{R}^D$ . Fortunately, we can solve this latter problem by using a change of variable. For example, in this case we can apply the Laplace approximation to  $\alpha = \text{logit}(\theta)$ . This is a common trick to simplify the job of inference. See also Exercise 7.6.

### 7.7.3 Variational approximation

In Sec. 7.7.2, we discussed the Laplace approximation, which uses an optimization procedure to find the MAP estimate, and then approximates the curvature of the posterior at that point based on the Hessian. In this section, we discuss **Variational inference (VI)**, which is another optimization-based approach to posterior inference, but which has much more modeling flexibility (and thus can give a much more accurate approximation).

VI attempts to approximate an intractable probability distribution, such as  $p(\boldsymbol{\theta} | \mathcal{D})$ , with one that is tractable,  $q(\boldsymbol{\theta})$ , so as to minimize some discrepancy  $D$  between the distributions:

$$q^* = \underset{q \in \mathcal{Q}}{\operatorname{argmin}} D(q, p) \quad (7.230)$$

where  $\mathcal{Q}$  is some tractable family of distributions (e.g., fully factorized distributions).

It is common to use the KL divergence (Sec. 6.2) as the discrepancy measure, so  $D(q, p) = \text{KL}(q(\boldsymbol{\theta}) \| p(\boldsymbol{\theta} | \mathcal{D}))$ . In this case, we need to compute

$$q(\boldsymbol{\theta}) = \underset{q}{\operatorname{argmin}} \text{KL}(q(\boldsymbol{\theta}) \| p(\boldsymbol{\theta} | \mathcal{D})) \quad (7.231)$$

$$= \underset{q}{\operatorname{argmin}} \mathbb{E}_{q(\boldsymbol{\theta})} \left[ \log q(\boldsymbol{\theta}) - \log \left( \frac{p(\mathcal{D} | \boldsymbol{\theta}) p(\boldsymbol{\theta})}{p(\mathcal{D})} \right) \right] \quad (7.232)$$

$$= \underset{q}{\operatorname{argmin}} \underbrace{\mathbb{E}_{q(\boldsymbol{\theta})} [-\log p(\mathcal{D} | \boldsymbol{\theta}) - \log p(\boldsymbol{\theta}) + \log q(\boldsymbol{\theta})]}_{-\mathcal{L}(q)} + \log p(\mathcal{D}) \quad (7.233)$$

Note that  $\log p(\mathcal{D})$  is independent of  $q$ , so we can ignore it when fitting the approximate posterior, and just focus on optimizing the term

$$\mathcal{L}(q) \triangleq \mathbb{E}_{q(\boldsymbol{\theta})} [\log p(\mathcal{D} | \boldsymbol{\theta}) + \log p(\boldsymbol{\theta}) - \log q(\boldsymbol{\theta})] \quad (7.234)$$

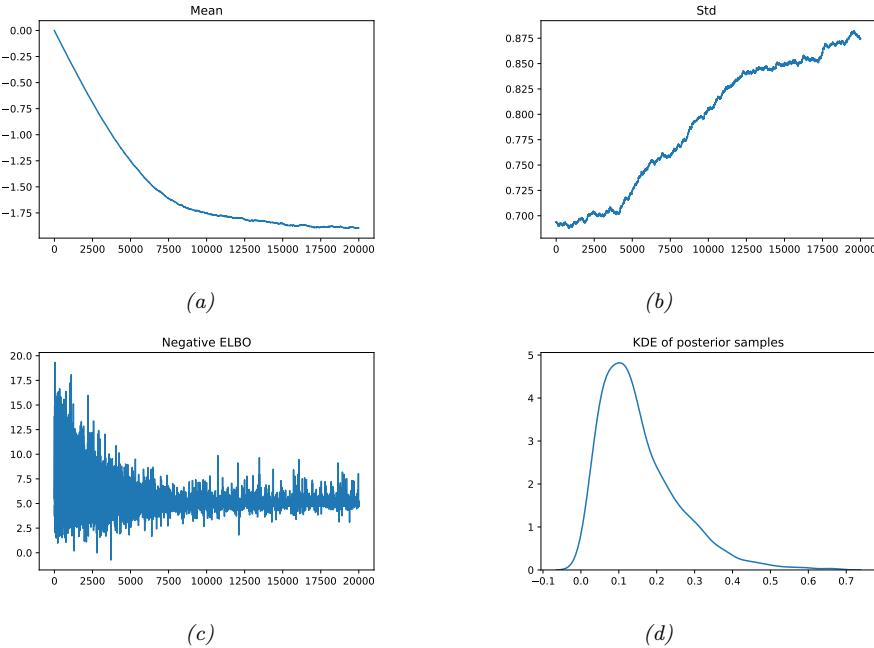


Figure 7.29: Approximating the posterior of a beta-Bernoulli model using Gaussian approximation to the logits,  $q(\alpha) = \mathcal{N}(\mu, \sigma)$ , where  $\alpha = \text{logit}(\theta)$ . (a) Estimate of variational mean over time. (b) Estimate of variational standard deviation over time. (c) ELBO over time. (d) Kernel density estimate of the original parameter  $\theta \in [0, 1]$  derived from samples from the variational posterior. Generated by `beta_binom_approx_post_pymc3.py`.

Since we have  $\mathbb{KL}(q\|p) \geq 0$ , we have  $\mathcal{L}(q) \leq \log p(\mathcal{D})$ . The quantity  $\log p(\mathcal{D})$ , which is the log marginal likelihood, is also called the **evidence**. Hence  $\mathcal{L}(q)$  is known as the **evidence lower bound** or **ELBO**.

It is common to use a Gaussian approximate posterior,  $q(\boldsymbol{\theta}|\boldsymbol{\xi}) = \mathcal{N}(\boldsymbol{\theta}|\boldsymbol{\mu}, \boldsymbol{\Sigma})$ , where  $\boldsymbol{\xi} = (\boldsymbol{\mu}, \boldsymbol{\Sigma})$  are the **variational parameters** that we optimize. (This is different from the Laplace approximation, where the Gaussian parameters were chosen to make a quadratic approximation near the mode, as opposed to being optimized to make a good overall fit to the distribution.) If  $\boldsymbol{\Sigma}$  is diagonal, we are assuming the posterior is fully factorized; this is called a **mean field** approximation.

In cases where the parameters are constrained (e.g.  $\theta \in [0, 1]$ ), we can use a different kind of variational posterior, such as a beta or Dirichlet distribution, for each unknown variable. (This is one advantage of the mean field assumption.) However, choosing the optimal form of posterior requires some level of expertise. To create a more easily applicable, or “turn-key”, method, that works on a wide range of models, we can use a method called **automatic differentiation variational inference** or **ADVI** [Kuc+16]. This uses automatic differentiation (Sec. 13.3.3) to derive the Jacobian term needed to compute the density of the transformed variables; it then combines this with Gaussian VI, which it fits by optimizing the ELBO.

We apply ADVI to our 1d beta-Bernoulli model in Fig. 7.29. Specifically we use the approximation

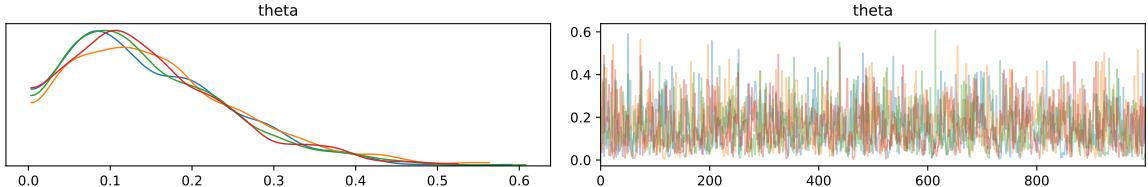


Figure 7.30: Approximating the posterior of a beta-Bernoulli model using MCMC. (a) Kernel density estimate derived from samples from 4 independent chains. (b) Trace plot of the chains as they generate posterior samples. Generated by `beta_binom_approx_post_pymc3.py`.

$p(\alpha|\mathcal{D}) \approx q(\alpha) = \mathcal{N}(\alpha|\mu, \sigma)$ , where  $\alpha = \text{logit}(\theta)$ . We optimize the ELBO using SGD (this is known as **stochastic variational inference**). In panels a-b, we plot  $\mu$  and  $\sigma$  as a function of the number of steps of optimization. We see that  $\mu$  has converged, but  $\sigma$  is still being optimized. In panel c, we plot the negative ELBO. We see that it (approximately) converges to a constant, which is an upper bound of the negative log marginal likelihood. Finally, in panel d, we draw samples from  $q(\alpha)$ , convert to  $\theta = \sigma(\alpha)$ , and then plot the KDE approximation to  $p(\theta|\mathcal{D})$ . We see that this is a fairly good approximation to the true beta posterior shown in Fig. 7.28.

#### 7.7.4 Markov Chain Monte Carlo (MCMC) approximation

Although VI is a fast, optimization-based method, it can give a biased approximation to the posterior, since it is restricted to a specific function form  $q \in \mathcal{Q}$ . A more flexible approach is to use a non-parametric approximation in terms of a set of samples,  $q(\boldsymbol{\theta}) \approx \frac{1}{S} \sum_{s=1}^S \delta(\boldsymbol{\theta} - \boldsymbol{\theta}^s)$ . This is called a **Monte Carlo approximation** to the posterior. The key issue is how to create the posterior samples  $\boldsymbol{\theta}^s \sim p(\boldsymbol{\theta}|\mathcal{D})$  efficiently, without having to evaluate the normalization constant  $p(\mathcal{D}) = \int p(\boldsymbol{\theta}, \mathcal{D}) d\boldsymbol{\theta}$ . A common approach to this problem is known as **Markov chain Monte Carlo** or **MCMC**; the most common variant of this is known as the **Metropolis Hastings algorithm**.

The basic idea behind MH is as follows: we start at a random point in parameter space, and then perform a random walk, by sampling new states (parameters) from a **proposal distribution**  $q(\boldsymbol{\theta}'|\boldsymbol{\theta})$ . If  $q$  is chosen carefully, the resulting Markov chain distribution will satisfy the property that the fraction of time we visit each point in space is proportional to the posterior probability. (For more details on the theory, see e.g., [BZ20].) The key point is that to decide whether to move to a newly proposed point  $\boldsymbol{\theta}'$  or to stay in the current point  $\boldsymbol{\theta}$ , we only need to evaluate the unnormalized density ratio

$$\frac{p(\boldsymbol{\theta}|\mathcal{D})}{p(\boldsymbol{\theta}'|\mathcal{D})} = \frac{p(\mathcal{D}|\boldsymbol{\theta})p(\boldsymbol{\theta})/p(\mathcal{D})}{p(\mathcal{D}|\boldsymbol{\theta}')p(\boldsymbol{\theta}')/p(\mathcal{D})} = \frac{p(\mathcal{D}, \boldsymbol{\theta})}{p(\mathcal{D}, \boldsymbol{\theta}')} \quad (7.235)$$

This avoids the need to compute the normalization constant  $p(\mathcal{D})$ . (In practice we usually work with log probabilities, instead of joint probabilities, to avoid numerical issues.)

We see that the input to the algorithm is just a function that computes the log joint density,  $\log p(\boldsymbol{\theta}, \mathcal{D})$ , as well as a proposal distribution  $q(\boldsymbol{\theta}'|\boldsymbol{\theta})$  for deciding which states to visit next. It is common to use a Gaussian distribution for the proposal,  $q(\boldsymbol{\theta}'|\boldsymbol{\theta}) = \mathcal{N}(\boldsymbol{\theta}'|\boldsymbol{\theta}, \sigma \mathbf{I})$ ; this is called the **random walk Metropolis** algorithm. However, this can be very inefficient, since it is blindly

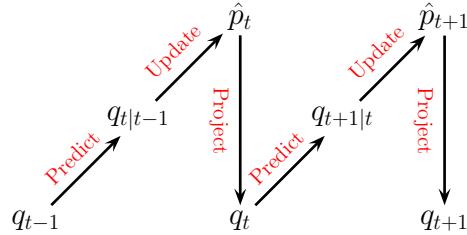


Figure 7.31: Illustration of the predict-update-project cycle of assumed density filtering.

walking through the space, in the hopes of finding higher probability regions.

In models that have conditional independence structure, it is often easy to compute the **full conditionals**  $p(\boldsymbol{\theta}_d | \boldsymbol{\theta}_{-d}, \mathcal{D})$  for each variable  $d$ , one at a time, and then sample from them. This is like a stochastic analog of coordinate ascent, and is called **Gibbs sampling**.

For models where all unknown variables are continuous, we can often compute the gradient of the log joint,  $\nabla_{\boldsymbol{\theta}} \log p(\boldsymbol{\theta}, \mathcal{D})$ . We can use this gradient information to guide the proposals into regions of space with higher probability. This approach is called **Hamiltonian Monte Carlo** or **HMC**, and is one of the most widely used MCMC algorithms due to its speed. For details, see e.g., [Bet17].

We apply HMC to our beta-Bernoulli model in Fig. 7.30. (We use a logit transformation for the parameter.) In panel b, we show samples generated by the algorithm from 4 parallel Markov chains. We see that they oscillate around the true posterior, as desired. (Unlike VI, the goal is not to make the variational parameters converge to a single point, so such random fluctuations are good.) In panel a, we compute a kernel density estimate from the posterior samples from each chain (we can also combine the samples into a single large set); we see that the result is a good approximation to the true posterior in Fig. 7.28.

### 7.7.5 Online inference using assumed density filtering

In this section, we discuss how to recursively compute (i.e., in an online fashion) the (approximate) posterior  $p(\boldsymbol{\theta}_t | \mathcal{D}_{1:t})$ , where  $\mathcal{D}_{1:t} = \{(\mathbf{x}_n, y_n) : n = 1 : t\}$  is all the data we have seen so far. This is particularly useful in cases where the data is arriving in a continual stream.

We will use a technique known as **assumed density filtering** or **ADF** [May79], in which we repeatedly force the posterior to have a certain form (in our case, a Gaussian) by updating the prior with the likelihood, and then forcing the exact one-step posterior into the approximating family.

In more detail, we assume (by induction) that our prior  $q(\boldsymbol{\theta}_{t-1}) \approx p(\boldsymbol{\theta}_{t-1} | \mathcal{D}_{1:t-1})$  satisfies  $q_{t-1} \in \mathcal{Q}$ , where  $\mathcal{Q}$  is a family of tractable distributions (e.g., Gaussians with a diagonal covariance matrix, or a product of discrete distributions). We can update the prior with the new measurement to get the approximate posterior as follows. First we compute the **one-step-ahead predictive distribution**

$$q_{t|t-1}(\boldsymbol{\theta}_t) = \int p(\boldsymbol{\theta}_t | \boldsymbol{\theta}_{t-1}) q_{t-1}(\boldsymbol{\theta}_{t-1}) d\boldsymbol{\theta}_{t-1} \quad (7.236)$$

Then we update it with the new likelihood to get the posterior

$$\hat{p}(\boldsymbol{\theta}_t) = \frac{1}{Z_t} p(\mathcal{D}_t | \boldsymbol{\theta}_t) q_{t|t-1}(\boldsymbol{\theta}_t) \quad (7.237)$$

where

$$Z_t = \int p(\mathcal{D}_t | \boldsymbol{\theta}_t) q_{t|t-1}(\boldsymbol{\theta}_t) d\boldsymbol{\theta} \quad (7.238)$$

is the normalization constant. If the prior is from a suitably restricted family, this process is usually tractable. However, we often find that the resulting posterior is no longer in our tractable family,  $\hat{p}(\boldsymbol{\theta}_t) \notin \mathcal{Q}$ . So after updating we seek the best tractable approximation by computing

$$q(\boldsymbol{\theta}_t) = \underset{q \in \mathcal{Q}}{\operatorname{argmin}} \mathbb{KL}(\hat{p}(\boldsymbol{\theta}_t) \| q(\boldsymbol{\theta}_t)) \quad (7.239)$$

This minimizes the Kullback-Leibler divergence (Sec. 6.2) from the approximation  $q(\boldsymbol{\theta}_t)$  to the (one-step) exact posterior  $\hat{p}(\boldsymbol{\theta}_t)$ , and can be thought of as **projecting**  $\hat{p}$  onto the space of tractable distributions, as sketched in Fig. 7.31. Thus the overall algorithm consists of three steps: predict, update, and project. (See also Sec. 11.6.7, where we discuss a similar algorithm for online Bayesian linear regression.)

If  $q$  is in the exponential family, one can show that this KL minimization can be done by moment matching (Sec. 4.5). In the Gaussian case, this means that need to find the parameters of  $q$  such that the means and variances match those of  $p$ . We give a concrete example of this in Sec. 10.6.5, where we apply the method to a Bayesian logistic regression model. See [GDFY16] for an application to Bayesian neural networks.

## 7.8 Exercises

**Exercise 7.1** [Gaussian posterior credible interval]

(Source: DeGroot.) Let  $X \sim \mathcal{N}(\mu, \sigma^2 = 4)$  where  $\mu$  is unknown but has prior  $\mu \sim \mathcal{N}(\mu_0, \sigma_0^2 = 9)$ . The posterior after seeing  $n$  samples is  $\mu \sim \mathcal{N}(\mu_n, \sigma_n^2)$ . (This is called a credible interval, and is the Bayesian analog of a confidence interval.) How big does  $n$  have to be to ensure

$$p(\ell \leq \mu_n \leq u | D) \geq 0.95 \quad (7.240)$$

where  $(\ell, u)$  is an interval (centered on  $\mu_n$ ) of width 1 and  $D$  is the data? Hint: recall that 95% of the probability mass of a Gaussian is within  $\pm 1.96\sigma$  of the mean.

**Exercise 7.2** [BIC for Gaussians]

(Source: Jaakkola.)

The Bayesian information criterion (BIC) is a penalized log-likelihood function that can be used for model selection. It is defined as

$$BIC = \log p(\mathcal{D} | \hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}}_{ML}) - \frac{d}{2} \log(N) \quad (7.241)$$

where  $d$  is the number of free parameters in the model and  $N$  is the number of samples. In this question, we will see how to use this to choose between a full covariance Gaussian and a Gaussian with a diagonal covariance. Obviously a full covariance Gaussian has higher likelihood, but it may not be “worth” the extra

parameters if the improvement over a diagonal covariance matrix is too small. So we use the BIC score to choose the model.

We can write

$$\log p(\mathcal{D}|\hat{\Sigma}, \hat{\mu}) = -\frac{N}{2} \text{tr}(\hat{\Sigma}^{-1}\hat{\mathbf{S}}) - \frac{N}{2} \log(|\hat{\Sigma}|) \quad (7.242)$$

$$\hat{\mathbf{S}} = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{i=1}^N (\mathbf{x}_i - \bar{\mathbf{x}})(\mathbf{x}_i - \bar{\mathbf{x}})^T \quad (7.243)$$

where  $\hat{\mathbf{S}}$  is the scatter matrix (empirical covariance), the trace of a matrix is the sum of its diagonals, and we have used the trace trick.

- a. Derive the BIC score for a Gaussian in  $D$  dimensions with full covariance matrix. Simplify your answer as much as possible, exploiting the form of the MLE. Be sure to specify the number of free parameters  $d$ .
- b. Derive the BIC score for a Gaussian in  $D$  dimensions with a *diagonal* covariance matrix. Be sure to specify the number of free parameters  $d$ . Hint: for the diagonal case, the ML estimate of  $\Sigma$  is the same as  $\hat{\Sigma}_{ML}$  except the off-diagonal terms are zero:

$$\hat{\Sigma}_{diag} = \text{diag}(\hat{\Sigma}_{ML}(1,1), \dots, \hat{\Sigma}_{ML}(D,D)) \quad (7.244)$$

### Exercise 7.3 [BIC for a 2d discrete distribution]

(Source: Jaakkola.)

Let  $x \in \{0, 1\}$  denote the result of a coin toss ( $x = 0$  for tails,  $x = 1$  for heads). The coin is potentially biased, so that heads occurs with probability  $\theta_1$ . Suppose that someone else observes the coin flip and reports to you the outcome,  $y$ . But this person is unreliable and only reports the result correctly with probability  $\theta_2$ ; i.e.,  $p(y|x, \theta_2)$  is given by

	$y = 0$	$y = 1$
$x = 0$	$\theta_2$	$1 - \theta_2$
$x = 1$	$1 - \theta_2$	$\theta_2$

Assume that  $\theta_2$  is independent of  $x$  and  $\theta_1$ .

- a. Write down the joint probability distribution  $p(x, y|\theta)$  as a  $2 \times 2$  table, in terms of  $\theta = (\theta_1, \theta_2)$ .
- b. Suppose have the following dataset:  $\mathbf{x} = (1, 1, 0, 1, 1, 0, 0)$ ,  $\mathbf{y} = (1, 0, 0, 0, 1, 0, 1)$ . What are the MLEs for  $\theta_1$  and  $\theta_2$ ? Justify your answer. Hint: note that the likelihood function factorizes,

$$p(x, y|\theta) = p(y|x, \theta_2)p(x|\theta_1) \quad (7.245)$$

What is  $p(\mathcal{D}|\hat{\theta}, M_2)$  where  $M_2$  denotes this 2-parameter model? (You may leave your answer in fractional form if you wish.)

- c. Now consider a model with 4 parameters,  $\theta = (\theta_{0,0}, \theta_{0,1}, \theta_{1,0}, \theta_{1,1})$ , representing  $p(x, y|\theta) = \theta_{x,y}$ . (Only 3 of these parameters are free to vary, since they must sum to one.) What is the MLE of  $\theta$ ? What is  $p(\mathcal{D}|\hat{\theta}, M_4)$  where  $M_4$  denotes this 4-parameter model?
- d. Suppose we are not sure which model is correct. We compute the leave-one-out cross validated log likelihood of the 2-parameter model and the 4-parameter model as follows:

$$L(m) = \sum_{i=1}^n \log p(x_i, y_i|m, \hat{\theta}(\mathcal{D}_{-i})) \quad (7.246)$$

and  $\hat{\theta}(\mathcal{D}_{-i})$  denotes the MLE computed on  $\mathcal{D}$  excluding row  $i$ . Which model will CV pick and why? Hint: notice how the table of counts changes when you omit each training case one at a time.

e. Recall that an alternative to CV is to use the BIC score, defined as

$$\text{BIC}(M, \mathcal{D}) \triangleq \log p(\mathcal{D}|\hat{\theta}_{MLE}) - \frac{\text{dof}(M)}{2} \log N \quad (7.247)$$

where  $\text{dof}(M)$  is the number of free parameters in the model. Compute the BIC scores for both models (use log base  $e$ ). Which model does BIC prefer?

**Exercise 7.4** [A mixture of conjugate priors is conjugate]

Consider a mixture prior

$$p(\theta) = \sum_k p(h=k)p(\theta|z=k) \quad (7.248)$$

where each  $p(\theta|z=k)$  is conjugate to the likelihood. Prove that this is a conjugate prior.

**Exercise 7.5** [Conjugate prior for univariate Gaussian in exponential family form]

Derive the conjugate prior for  $\mu$  and  $\lambda = 1/\sigma^2$  for a univariate Gaussian using the exponential family. By suitable reparameterization, show that the prior has the form  $p(\mu, \lambda) = \mathcal{N}(\mu|\gamma, \lambda(2\alpha-1))\text{Ga}(\lambda|\alpha, \beta)$ , and thus only has 3 free parameters.

**Exercise 7.6** [Laplace approximation to  $p(\mu, \log \sigma|\mathcal{D})$  for a univariate Gaussian.]

Compute a Laplace approximation of  $p(\mu, \log \sigma|\mathcal{D})$  for a Gaussian, using an uninformative prior  $p(\mu, \log \sigma) \propto 1$ .

**Exercise 7.7** [James Stein estimator for Gaussian means ]

Consider the 2 stage model  $Y_i|\theta_i \sim \mathcal{N}(\theta_i, \sigma^2)$  and  $\theta_i|\mu \sim \mathcal{N}(m_0, \tau_0^2)$ . Suppose  $\sigma^2 = 500$  is known and we observe the following 6 data points: 1505, 1528, 1564, 1498, 1600, 1470.

- a. Find the ML-II estimates of  $m_0$  and  $\tau_0^2$ .
- b. Find the posterior estimates  $\mathbb{E}[\theta_i|y_i, m_0, \tau_0]$  and  $\mathbb{V}[\theta_i|y_i, m_0, \tau_0]$  for  $i = 1$ . (The other terms,  $i = 2 : 6$ , are computed similarly.)
- c. Give a 95% credible interval for  $p(\theta_i|y_i, m_0, \tau_0)$  for  $i = 1$ . Do you trust this interval (assuming the Gaussian assumption is reasonable)? i.e. is it likely to be too large or too small, or just right?
- d. What do you expect would happen to your estimates if  $\sigma^2$  were much smaller (say  $\sigma^2 = 1$ )? You do not need to compute the numerical answer; just briefly explain what would happen qualitatively, and why.

**Exercise 7.8** [EM for EB estimation of Gaussian shrinkage model]

Extend the results of Section 7.5.2 to the case where the  $\sigma_j^2$  are not equal (but are known). Hint: treat the  $\theta_j$  as hidden variables, and then integrate them out in the E step, and maximize  $\lambda = (\mu, \tau^2)$  in the M step.

# 8 Bayesian decision theory

## 8.1 Bayesian decision theory

Bayesian inference provides the optimal way to update our beliefs about hidden quantities  $H$  given observed data  $X = x$  by computing the posterior  $p(H|x)$ . However, at the end of the day, we need to turn our beliefs into **actions** that we can perform in the world. How can we decide which action is best? This is where **Bayesian decision theory** comes in. In this chapter, we give a brief introduction. For more details, see e.g., [DeG70; KWW21].

### 8.1.1 Basics

In decision theory, we assume the decision maker, or **agent**, has a set of possible actions,  $\mathcal{A}$ , to choose from. For example, in the case of a doctor treating someone who may have COVID-19, the actions might be: do nothing, tell patient to isolate at home, or give some treatment to the patient.

Each of these actions has costs and benefits, which will depend on the underlying **state of nature**  $H \in \mathcal{H}$ . We assume that we have a **loss function**  $\ell(h, a)$ , that specifies the loss we incur if we take action  $a \in \mathcal{A}$  when the state of nature is  $h \in \mathcal{H}$ . For example, suppose  $\mathcal{H}$  corresponds to the three possible states a patient could be in: they don't have cancer, or they have mild cancer or they have severe cancer. Furthermore, suppose  $\mathcal{A}$  corresponds to the three possible actions a doctor can choose between: do nothing, give drugs, or perform surgery. We can represent the loss function as the following **loss matrix**:

	Nothing	Drugs	Surgery
No cancer	0	5	10
Mild cancer	10	1	5
Severe cancer	20	10	5

These (fictitious) numbers reflects the relative costs and benefits of the different possible outcomes. For example, doing nothing when they don't have cancer incurs no loss, but doing nothing when they have severe cancer incurs a loss of 20.

These numbers reflect relative costs and benefits, and will depend on many factors. The numbers can be derived by asking the decision maker about their **preferences** about different possible outcomes. It is a theorem of decision theory that any consistent set of preferences can be converted into an ordinal cost scale (see e.g., [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Preference\\_\(economics\)](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Preference_(economics))).

Once we have specified the loss function, we can compute the **posterior expected loss** for each

possible action:

$$R(a|x) \triangleq \mathbb{E}_{p(h|x)} [\ell(h, a)] = \sum_{h \in \mathcal{H}} \ell(h, a)p(h|x) \quad (8.1)$$

The **optimal policy** (also called the **Bayes estimator**) specifies what action to take to minimize the posterior expected loss:

$$\pi^*(x) = \operatorname{argmin}_{a \in \mathcal{A}} \mathbb{E}_{p(h|x)} [\ell(h, a)] \quad (8.2)$$

An alternative, but equivalent, way of stating this result is as follows. Let us define a **utility function**  $U(h, a)$  to be the desirability of each possible action in each possible state. If we set  $U(h, a) = -\ell(h, a)$ , then the optimal policy is as follows:

$$\pi(\mathbf{x}) = \operatorname{argmax}_{a \in \mathcal{A}} \mathbb{E}_h [U(h, a)] \quad (8.3)$$

This is called the **maximum expected utility principle**.

So far, we have implicitly assumed that the agent is **risk neutral**. This means that their decision is not affected by the degree of certainty in a set of outcomes. For example, such an agent would be indifferent between getting \$50 for sure, of a 50% chance of \$100 or \$0. By contrast, a **risk averse** agent would choose the latter. We can generalize the framework of Bayesian decision theory to **risk sensitive** applications, but we do not pursue the matter here. (See e.g., [Cho+15] for details.)

### 8.1.2 Classification problems

In this section, we use Bayesian decision theory to decide the optimal class label to predict given an observed input  $x \in \mathcal{X}$ .

#### 8.1.2.1 Zero-one loss

Suppose the states of nature correspond to class labels, so  $\mathcal{H} = \mathcal{Y} = \{1, \dots, C\}$ . Furthermore, suppose the actions also correspond to class labels, so  $\mathcal{A} = \mathcal{Y}$ . In this setting, a very commonly used loss function is the **zero-one loss**, defined as follows:

$$\ell_{01}(y^*, \hat{y}) = \mathbb{I}(y^* \neq \hat{y}) \quad (8.4)$$

In this case, the posterior expected loss is

$$R(\hat{y}|\mathbf{x}) = p(\hat{y} \neq y^*|\mathbf{x}) = 1 - p(y^* = \hat{y}|\mathbf{x}) \quad (8.5)$$

Hence the action that minimizes the expected loss is to choose the most probable label:

$$\pi(\mathbf{x}) = \operatorname{argmax}_{y \in \mathcal{Y}} p(y|\mathbf{x}) \quad (8.6)$$

This corresponds to the **mode** of the posterior distribution, also known as the **maximum a posteriori** or **MAP estimate**

### 8.1.2.2 Cost-sensitive classification

Consider a binary classification problem where the loss function is  $\ell(h, a) = \ell_{a,h}$ . Let  $p_0 = p(h = 0|x)$  and  $p_1 = 1 - p_0$ . Thus we should choose label  $a = 0$  iff

$$\ell_{00}p_0 + \ell_{01}p_1 < \ell_{10}p_0 + \ell_{11}p_1 \quad (8.7)$$

If  $\ell_{00} = \ell_{11} = 0$ , this simplifies to

$$p_1 < \frac{\ell_{10}}{\ell_{10} + \ell_{01}} \quad (8.8)$$

Now suppose  $\ell_{01} = c\ell_{10}$ , so a false negative costs  $c$  times more than a false positive. The decision rule further simplifies to the following: pick  $a = 0$  iff  $p_1 < 1/(1 + c)$ . For example, if a false negative costs twice as much as false positive, so  $c = 2$ , then we use a decision threshold of  $2/3$  before declaring a positive.

### 8.1.2.3 Classification with the “reject” option

In some cases, we may able to say “I don’t know” instead of returning an answer that we don’t really trust; this is called picking the **reject option** (see e.g., [BW08]). This is particularly important in domains such as medicine and finance where we may be risk averse.

We can formalize the reject option as follows. Suppose the states of nature are  $\mathcal{H} = \{1, \dots, C\}$ , and the actions are  $\mathcal{A} = \mathcal{H} \cup \{0\}$ , where action 0 represents the reject action. Now define the following loss function:

$$\ell(h, a) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } h = a \text{ and } a \in \{1, \dots, C\} \\ \lambda_r & \text{if } a = 0 \\ \lambda_e & \text{otherwise} \end{cases} \quad (8.9)$$

where  $\lambda_r$  is the cost of the reject action, and  $\lambda_e$  is the cost of a classification error. Exercise 8.1 asks you to show that the optimal action is to pick the reject action if the most probable class has a probability below  $\lambda^* = 1 - \frac{\lambda_r}{\lambda_e}$ ; otherwise you should just pick the most probable class. In other words, the optimal policy is as follows:

$$a^* = \begin{cases} y^* & \text{if } p^* > \lambda^* \\ \text{reject} & \text{otherwise} \end{cases} \quad (8.10)$$

where

$$y^* = \underset{y \in \{1, \dots, C\}}{\operatorname{argmax}} p(y|x) \quad (8.11)$$

$$p^* = p(y^*|x) = \underset{y \in \{1, \dots, C\}}{\max} p(y|x) \quad (8.12)$$

$$\lambda^* = 1 - \frac{\lambda_r}{\lambda_e} \quad (8.13)$$

See Fig. 8.1 for an illustration.

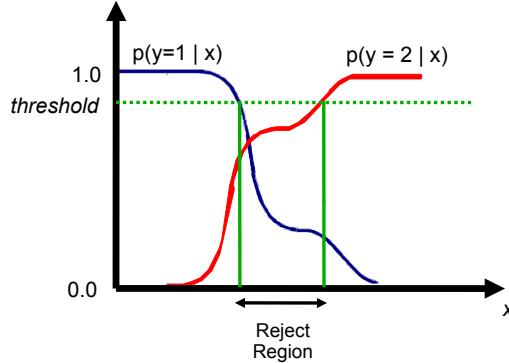


Figure 8.1: For some regions of input space, where the class posteriors are uncertain, we may prefer not to choose class 1 or 2; instead we may prefer the reject option. Adapted from Figure 1.26 of [Bis06].

		Estimate		Row sum
		0	1	
Truth	0	TN	FP	N
	1	FN	TP	
Col. sum		$\hat{N}$	$\hat{P}$	

Table 8.1: Class confusion matrix for a binary classification problem.  $TP$  is the number of true positives,  $FP$  is the number of false positives,  $TN$  is the number of true negatives,  $FN$  is the number of false negatives,  $P$  is the true number of positives,  $\hat{P}$  is the predicted number of positives,  $N$  is the true number of negatives,  $\hat{N}$  is the predicted number of negatives.

One interesting application of the reject option arises when playing the TV game show Jeopardy. In this game, contestants have to solve various word puzzles and answer a variety of trivia questions, but if they answer incorrectly, they lose money. In 2011, IBM unveiled a computer system called **Watson** which beat the top human Jeopardy champion. Watson uses a variety of interesting techniques [Fer+10], but the most pertinent one for our present discussion is that it contains a module that estimates how confident it is of its answer. The system only chooses to “buzz in” its answer if sufficiently confident it is correct.

### 8.1.3 ROC curves

In Sec. 8.1.2.2, we showed that we can pick the optimal label in a binary classification problem by thresholding the probability using a value  $\tau$ , derived from the relative cost of a false positive and false negative. Instead of picking a single threshold, we can instead consider using a set of different thresholds, and comparing the resulting performance, as we discuss below.

		Estimate	
		0	1
Truth	0	TN/N=TNR=Spec	FP/N=FPR=Type I = Fallout
	1	FN/P=FNR=Miss=Type II	TP/P=TPR=Sens=Recall

Table 8.2: Class confusion matrix for a binary classification problem normalized per row to get  $p(\hat{y}|y)$ . Abbreviations: TNR = true negative rate, Spec = specificity, FPR = false positive rate, FNR = false negative rate, Miss = miss rate, TPR = true positive rate, Sens = sensitivity. Note  $FNR=1-TPR$  and  $FPR=1-TNR$ .

		Estimate	
		0	1
Truth	0	TN/ $\hat{N}$ =NPV	FP/ $\hat{P}$ =FDR
	1	FN/ $\hat{N}$ =FOR	TP/ $\hat{P}$ =Prec=PPV

Table 8.3: Class confusion matrix for a binary classification problem normalized per column to get  $p(y|\hat{y})$ . Abbreviations: NPV = negative predictive value, FDR = false discovery rate, FOR = false omission rate, PPV = positive predictive value, Prec = precision. Note that  $FOR=1-NPV$  and  $FDR=1-PPV$ .

### 8.1.3.1 Class confusion matrices

For any fixed threshold  $\tau$ , we consider the following decision rule:

$$\hat{y}_\tau(\mathbf{x}) = \mathbb{I}(p(y = 1|\mathbf{x}) \geq 1 - \tau) \quad (8.14)$$

We can compute the empirical number of false positives (FP) that arise from using this policy on a set of  $N$  labeled examples as follows:

$$FP_\tau = \sum_{n=1}^N \mathbb{I}(\hat{y}_\tau(\mathbf{x}_n) = 1, y_n = 0) \quad (8.15)$$

Similarly, we can compute the empirical number of false negatives (FN), true positives (TP), and true negatives (TN). We can store these results in a  $2 \times 2$  class confusion matrix  $C$ , where  $C_{ij}$  is the number of times an item with true class label  $i$  was (mis)classified as having label  $j$ . In the case of binary classification problems, the resulting matrix will look like Table 8.1.

From this table, we can compute  $p(\hat{y}|y)$  or  $p(y|\hat{y})$ , depending on whether we normalize across the rows or columns. We can derive various summary statistics from these distributions, as summarized in Table 8.2 and Table 8.3. For example, the **true positive rate** (TPR), also known as the **sensitivity**, **recall** or **hit rate**, is defined as

$$TPR_\tau = p(\hat{y} = 1|y = 1, \tau) = \frac{TP_\tau}{TP_\tau + FN_\tau} \quad (8.16)$$

and the **false positive rate** (FPR), also called the **false alarm rate**, or the **type I error rate**, is defined as

$$FPR_\tau = p(\hat{y} = 1|y = 0, \tau) = \frac{FP_\tau}{FP_\tau + TN_\tau} \quad (8.17)$$

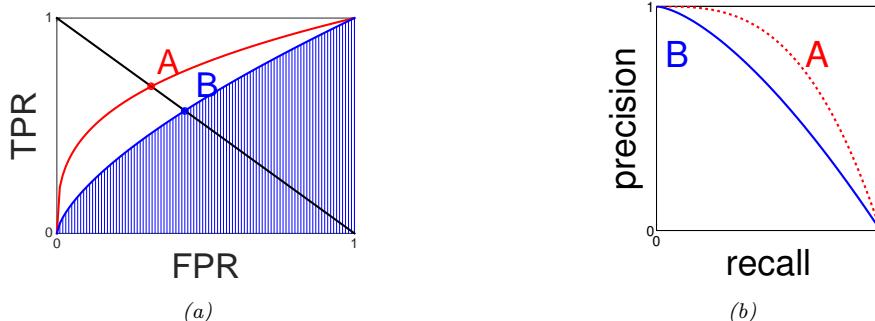


Figure 8.2: (a) ROC curves for two hypothetical classification systems. The red curve for system A is better than the blue curve for system B. We plot the true positive rate (TPR) vs the false positive rate (FPR) as we vary the threshold  $\tau$ . We also indicate the equal error rate (EER) with the red and blue dots, and the area under the curve (AUC) for classifier B by the shaded area. Generated by `roc_plot.py`. (b) A precision-recall curve for two hypothetical classification systems. The red curve for system A is better than the blue curve for system B. Generated by `pr_plot.py`.

We can now plot the TPR vs FPR as an implicit function of  $\tau$ . This is called a **receiver operating characteristic** or **ROC** curve. See Fig. 8.2(a) for an example.

### 8.1.3.2 Summarizing ROC curves as a scalar

The quality of a ROC curve is often summarized as a single number using the **area under the curve** or **AUC**. Higher AUC scores are better; the maximum is obviously 1. Another summary statistic that is used is the **equal error rate** or **EER**, also called the **cross-over rate**, defined as the value which satisfies  $FPR = FNR$ . Since  $FNR=1-TPR$ , we can compute the EER by drawing a line from the top left to the bottom right and seeing where it intersects the ROC curve (see points A and B in Fig. 8.2(a)). Lower EER scores are better; the minimum is obviously 0 (corresponding to the top left corner).

### 8.1.4 Precision-recall curves

In some problems, the notion of a “negative” is not well-defined. For example, consider detecting objects in images: if the detector works by classifying patches, then the number of patches examined — and hence the number of true negatives — is a parameter of the algorithm, not part of the problem definition. In other cases, there is severe **class imbalance**. For example, in information retrieval on the web, the set of negatives is essentially infinite. In such cases, a large change in the number of false positives will not change the false positive *rate* very much, since  $FPR$  is divided by  $FP+TN$ ; this can make ROC curves misleading [SR15]. Below we present an alternative, based on **precision-recall curves**. (See [DG06] for a more detailed discussion of the connection between ROC curves and PR curves.)

### 8.1.4.1 Computing precision and recall

The key idea is to replace the FPR with a quantity that is computed just from positives, namely the **precision**:

$$\mathcal{P}(\tau) \triangleq p(y = 1 | \hat{y} = 1, \tau) = \frac{TP_\tau}{TP_\tau + FP_\tau} \quad (8.18)$$

The precision measures what fraction of our detections are actually positive. We can compare this to the **recall** (which is the same as the TPR), which measures what fraction of the positives we actually detected:

$$\mathcal{R}(\tau) \triangleq p(\hat{y} = 1 | y = 1, \tau) = \frac{TP_\tau}{TP_\tau + FN_\tau} \quad (8.19)$$

If  $\hat{y}_n \in \{0, 1\}$  is the predicted label, and  $y_n \in \{0, 1\}$  is the true label, we can estimate precision and recall using

$$\mathcal{P}(\tau) = \frac{\sum_n y_n \hat{y}_n}{\sum_n \hat{y}_n} \quad (8.20)$$

$$\mathcal{R}(\tau) = \frac{\sum_n y_n \hat{y}_n}{\sum_n y_n} \quad (8.21)$$

We can now plot the precision vs recall as we vary the threshold  $\tau$ . See Fig. 8.2(b). Hugging the top right is the best one can do.

### 8.1.4.2 Summarizing PR curves as a scalar

The PR curve can be summarized as a single number in several ways. First, we can quote the precision for a fixed recall level, such as the precision of the first  $K = 10$  entities recalled. This is called the **precision at K score**. Alternatively, we can compute the area under the PR curve. However, it is possible that the precision does not drop monotonically with recall. For example, suppose a classifier has 90% precision at 10% recall, and 96% precision at 20% recall. In this case, rather than measuring the precision *at* a recall of 10%, we should measure the maximum precision we can achieve with *at least* a recall of 10% (which would be 96%). This is called the **interpolated precision**. The average of the interpolated precisions is called the **average precision**; it is equal to the area under the interpolated PR curve, but may not be equal to the area under the raw PR curve.<sup>1</sup> The **mean average precision** or **mAP** is the mean of the AP over a set of different PR curves.

### 8.1.4.3 F-scores

For a fixed threshold, corresponding to a single point on the PR curve, we can compute a single precision and recall value, which we will denote by  $\mathcal{P}$  and  $\mathcal{R}$ . These are often combined into a single statistic called the **F1 score**, which is the harmonic mean of precision and recall:

$$F_1 \triangleq \frac{2}{1/\mathcal{P} + 1/\mathcal{R}} = \frac{2\mathcal{P}\mathcal{R}}{\mathcal{R} + \mathcal{P}} = \frac{2 \sum_{n=1}^N y_n \hat{y}_n}{\sum_{n=1}^N y_n + \sum_{n=1}^N \hat{y}_n} \quad (8.22)$$

1. For details, see <https://sanchom.wordpress.com/tag/average-precision/>.

To understand why we use the harmonic mean instead of the arithmetic mean,  $(\mathcal{P} + \mathcal{R})/2$ , consider the following scenario. Suppose we recall all entries, so  $\hat{y}_n = 1$  for all  $n$ , and  $\mathcal{R} = 1$ . In this case, the precision  $\mathcal{P}$  will be given by the **prevalence**,  $p(y = 1) = \frac{\sum_n \mathbb{I}(y_n=1)}{N}$ . Suppose the prevalence is low, say  $p(y = 1) = 10^{-4}$ . The arithmetic mean of  $\mathcal{P}$  and  $\mathcal{R}$  is given by  $(\mathcal{P} + \mathcal{R})/2 = (10^{-4} + 1)/2 \approx 50\%$ . By contrast, the harmonic mean of this strategy is only  $\frac{2 \times 10^{-4} \times 1}{1 + 10^{-4}} \approx 0.2\%$ . In general, the harmonic mean is more conservative, and requires both precision and recall to be high.

### 8.1.5 Regression problems

So far, we have considered the case where there are a finite number of actions  $\mathcal{A}$  and states of nature  $\mathcal{H}$ . In this section, we consider the case where the set of actions and states are both equal to the real line,  $\mathcal{A} = \mathcal{H} = \mathbb{R}$ . We will specify various commonly used loss functions for this case (which can be extended to  $\mathbb{R}^D$  by computing the loss elementwise.) The resulting decision rules can be used to compute the optimal parameters for an estimator to return, or the optimal action for a robot to take, etc.

#### 8.1.5.1 L2 loss

The most common loss for continuous states and actions is the  **$\ell_2$  loss**, also called **squared error** or **quadratic loss**, which is defined as follows:

$$\ell_2(h, a) = (h - a)^2 \quad (8.23)$$

In this case, the risk is given by

$$R(a|\mathbf{x}) = \mathbb{E} [h - a]^2 | \mathbf{x} ] = \mathbb{E} [h^2 | \mathbf{x} ] - 2a\mathbb{E} [h | \mathbf{x} ] + a^2 \quad (8.24)$$

The optimal action must satisfy the condition that the derivative of the risk (at that point) is zero (as explained in Chapter 5). Hence the optimal action is to pick the posterior mean:

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial a} R(a|\mathbf{x}) = -2\mathbb{E} [h | \mathbf{x} ] + 2a = 0 \Rightarrow \pi(\mathbf{x}) = \mathbb{E} [h | \mathbf{x} ] = \int h p(h|\mathbf{x}) dh \quad (8.25)$$

This is often called the **minimum mean squared error** estimate or **MMSE** estimate.

#### 8.1.5.2 L1 loss

The  $\ell_2$  loss penalizes deviations from the truth quadratically, and thus is sensitive to **outliers**. A more **robust** alternative is the absolute or  **$\ell_1$  loss**

$$\ell_1(h, a) = |h - a| \quad (8.26)$$

This is sketched in Fig. 8.3 Exercise 8.4 asks you to show that the optimal estimate is the **posterior median**, i.e., a value  $a$  such that  $\Pr(h < a | \mathbf{x}) = \Pr(h \geq a | \mathbf{x}) = 0.5$ . We can use this for robust regression as discussed in Sec. 11.4.2.

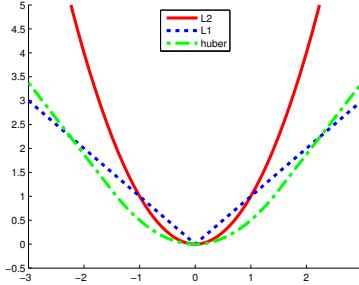


Figure 8.3: Illustration of  $\ell_2$ ,  $\ell_1$ , and Huber loss functions with  $\delta = 1.5$ . Generated by `huberLossPlot.m`.

### 8.1.5.3 Huber loss

Another robust loss function is the **Huber loss** [Hub64], defined as follows:

$$\ell_\delta(h, a) = \begin{cases} r^2/2 & \text{if } |r| \leq \delta \\ \delta|r| - \delta^2/2 & \text{if } |r| > \delta \end{cases} \quad (8.27)$$

where  $r = h - a$ . This is equivalent to  $\ell_2$  for errors that are smaller than  $\delta$ , and is equivalent to  $\ell_1$  for larger errors. See Fig. 8.3 for a plot. We can use this for robust regression as discussed in Sec. 11.4.3.

## 8.1.6 Probabilistic prediction problems

In Sec. 8.1.2, we assumed the set of possible actions was to pick a single class label (or possibly the “reject” or “do not know” action). In Sec. 8.1.5, we assumed the set of possible actions was to pick a real valued scalar. In this section, we assume the set of possible actions is to pick a **probability distribution** over some value of interest. That is, we want to perform **probabilistic prediction** or **probabilistic forecasting**, rather than predicting a specific value. More precisely, we assume the true “state of nature” is a *distribution*,  $h = p(Y|x)$ , the action is another distribution,  $a = q(Y|x)$ , and we want to pick  $q$  to minimize  $\mathbb{E}[\ell(p, q)]$  for a given  $x$ . We discuss various possible loss functions below.

### 8.1.6.1 KL, cross-entropy and log-loss

A common form of loss functions for comparing two distributions is the **Kullback Leibler divergence**, or **KL divergence**, which is defined as follows:

$$\text{KL}(p\|q) \triangleq \sum_{y \in \mathcal{Y}} p(y) \log \frac{p(y)}{q(y)} \quad (8.28)$$

(We have assumed the variable  $y$  is discrete, for notational simplicity, but this can be generalized to real-valued variables.) In Sec. 6.2, we show that the KL divergence satisfies the following properties:  $\text{KL}(p\|q) \geq 0$  with equality iff  $p = q$ . Note that it is an asymmetric function of its arguments.

We can expand the KL as follows:

$$\mathbb{KL}(p\|q) = \sum_{y \in \mathcal{Y}} p(y) \log p(y) - \sum_{y \in \mathcal{Y}} p(y) \log q(y) \quad (8.29)$$

$$= -\mathbb{H}(p) + \mathbb{H}(p, q) \quad (8.30)$$

$$\mathbb{H}(p) \triangleq -\sum_y p(y) \log p(y) \quad (8.31)$$

$$\mathbb{H}(p, q) \triangleq -\sum_y p(y) \log q(y) \quad (8.32)$$

The  $\mathbb{H}(p)$  term is known as the **entropy**. This is a measure of uncertainty or variance of  $p$ ; it is maximal if  $p$  is uniform, and is 0 if  $p$  is a degenerate or deterministic delta function. Entropy is often used in the field of **information theory**, which is concerned with optimal ways of compressing and communicating data (see Chapter 6). The optimal coding scheme will allocate fewer bits to more frequent symbols (i.e., values of  $Y$  for which  $p(y)$  is large), and more bits to less frequent symbols. A key result states that the number of bits needed to compress a dataset generated by a distribution  $p$  is at least  $\mathbb{H}(p)$ ; the entropy therefore provides a lower bound on the degree to which we can compress data without losing information. The  $\mathbb{H}(p, q)$  term is known as the **cross-entropy**. This measures the expected number of bits we need to use to compress a dataset coming from distribution  $p$  if we design our code using distribution  $q$ . Thus the KL is the extra number of bits we need to use due to compress the data due to using the incorrect distribution  $q$ . If the KL is zero, it means that we can correctly predict the probabilities of all possible future events, and thus we have learned to predict the future as well as an “oracle” that has access to the true distribution  $p$ .

To find the optimal distribution to use when predicting future data, we can minimize  $\mathbb{KL}(p\|q)$ . Since  $\mathbb{H}(p)$  is a constant wrt  $q$ , it can be ignored, and thus we can equivalently minimize the cross-entropy:

$$q^*(Y|x) = \operatorname{argmin}_q \mathbb{H}(q(Y|x), p(Y|x)) \quad (8.33)$$

Now consider the special case in which the true state of nature is a degenerate distribution, which puts all its mass on a single outcome, say  $c$ , i.e.,  $h = p(Y|x) = \mathbb{I}(Y=c)$ . This is often called a “**one-hot**” distribution, since it turns “on” the  $c$ ’th element of the vector, and leaves the other elements “off”, as shown in Fig. 8.4. In this case, the cross entropy becomes

$$\mathbb{H}(\delta(Y=c), q) = -\sum_{y \in \mathcal{Y}} \delta(y=c) \log q(y) = -\log q(c) \quad (8.34)$$

This is known as the **log loss** of the predictive distribution  $q$  when given target label  $c$ .

### 8.1.6.2 Proper scoring rules

Cross-entropy loss is a very common choice for probabilistic forecasting, but is not the only possible metric. The key property we desire is that the loss function is minimized iff the decision maker picks the distribution  $q$  that matches the true distribution  $q$ , i.e.,  $\ell(p, p) \leq \ell(p, q)$ , with equality iff  $p = q$ . Such a loss function  $\ell$  is called a **proper scoring rule** [GR07].

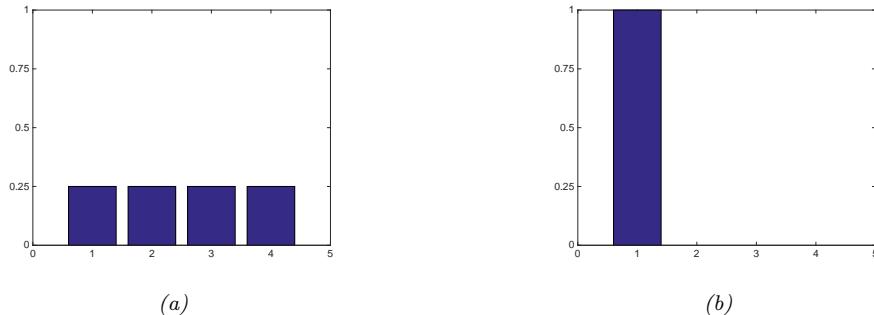


Figure 8.4: Some discrete distributions on the state space  $\mathcal{Y} = \{1, 2, 3, 4\}$ . (a) A uniform distribution with  $p(y = c) = 1/4$ . (b) A degenerate (one-hot) distribution that puts all its mass on  $y = 1$ . Generated by `discrete_prob_dist_plot.py`.

We can show that cross-entropy loss is a proper scoring rule by virtue of the fact that  $\text{KL}(p||p) \leq \text{KL}(p||q)$ . However, cross entropy puts a lot of emphasis on correctly estimating the probabilities of rare events, due to the log term [QC+06]. A common alternative is to use the **Brier score** [Bri50], which is defined as follows (for a discrete distribution with  $C$  values):

$$\ell(p, q) \triangleq \frac{1}{C} \sum_{c=1}^C (q(y = c|x) - p(y = c|x))^2 \quad (8.35)$$

This is just the squared error of the predictive distribution compared to the true distribution, when viewed as vectors. Since it based on squared error, the Brier score is less sensitive to extremely rare or extremely common classes. Fortunately, it is also a proper scoring rule.

## 8.2 A/B testing

Suppose you are trying to decide which version of a product is likely to sell more, or which version of a drug is likely to work better. Let us call the versions you are choosing between A and B; sometimes version A is called the **treatment**, and version B is called the **control**. To simplify notation, we will refer to picking version A as choosing action 1, and picking version B as choosing action 0. We will call the resulting outcome from each action that you want to maximize the **reward** (e.g., profit, or lives saved).

A very common approach to such problems is to use an **A/B test**, in which you try both actions out for a while, by randomly assigning a different action to different subsets of the population, and then you measure the results and pick the winner. (This is also sometimes called a “**test and roll**” problem, since you test which method is best, and then roll it out for the rest of the population.)

A key problem in A/B testing is to come up with a decision rule, or policy, for deciding which action is best, after obtaining potentially noisy results during the test phase. Another problem is to choose how many people to assign to the treatment,  $n_1$ , and how many to the control,  $n_0$ . The fundamental tradeoff is that using larger values of  $n_1$  and  $n_0$  will help you collect more data and hence be more confident in picking the best action, but this incurs an **opportunity cost**, because the

testing phase involves performing actions that may not result in the highest reward. This is called the **exploration-exploitation tradeoff**, or the **earning while learning dilemma**. In this section, we give a simple Bayesian decision theoretic analysis of this problem, following the presentation of [FB19].<sup>2</sup>

### 8.2.1 A Bayesian approach

We assume the  $i$ 'th reward for action  $j$  is given by  $Y_{ij} \sim \mathcal{N}(\mu_j, \sigma_j^2)$  for  $i = 1 : n_j$  and  $j = 0 : 1$ , where  $j = 1$  corresponds to the treatment (action A) and  $j = 0$  corresponds to the control (action B). For simplicity, we assume the  $\sigma_j^2$  are known. For the unknown  $\mu_j$  parameters (expected reward), we will use Gaussian priors,  $\mu_j \sim \mathcal{N}(m_j, \tau_j^2)$ .

If we assign  $n_1$  people to the treatment and  $n_0$  to the control, then the expected reward in the testing phase is given by

$$\mathbb{E}[R_{\text{test}}] = (n_1 + n_0)m \quad (8.36)$$

The expected reward in the roll phase depends on the decision rule  $\pi(\mathbf{y}_1, \mathbf{y}_0)$ , which specifies which action to deploy, where  $\mathbf{y}_j = (y_{1j}, \dots, y_{n_j, j})$  is the data from action  $j$ . We derive the optimal policy below, and then discuss some of its properties.

#### 8.2.1.1 Optimal policy

The optimal policy is to choose the action with the greater expected posterior mean reward. Applying Bayes' rule for Gaussians (Eq. (3.102)), we find that the corresponding posterior is given by

$$p(\mu_j | \mathbf{y}_j, n_j) = \mathcal{N}(\mu_j | \hat{m}_j, \hat{\tau}_j^2) \quad (8.37)$$

$$1/\hat{\tau}_j = n_j/\sigma^2 + 1/\tau_j^2 \quad (8.38)$$

$$\hat{m}_j / \hat{\tau} = n_j \bar{y}_j / \sigma^2 + m_j / \tau_j^2 \quad (8.39)$$

We see that the posterior precision (inverse variance) is a weighted sum of the prior precision plus  $n_j$  units of measurement precision. We also see that the posterior precision weighted mean is a sum of the prior precision weighted mean and the measurement precision weighted mean. Hence the optimal policy is

$$\pi^*(\mathbf{y}_1, \mathbf{y}_0) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } \mathbb{E}[\mu_1 | \mathbf{y}_1] \geq \mathbb{E}[\mu_0 | \mathbf{y}_0] \\ 0 & \text{if } \mathbb{E}[\mu_1 | \mathbf{y}_1] < \mathbb{E}[\mu_0 | \mathbf{y}_0] \end{cases} \quad (8.40)$$

where  $\pi = 1$  means choose action A, and  $\pi = 0$  means choose action B. In the fully symmetric case, where  $n_1 = n_0$ ,  $m_1 = m_0$  and  $\tau_1 = \tau_0$ , we find that the optimal policy is to simply “pick the winner”:

$$\pi^*(\mathbf{y}_1, \mathbf{y}_0) = \mathbb{I}\left(\frac{m}{\tau^2} + \frac{\bar{y}_1}{\sigma^2} > \frac{m}{\tau^2} + \frac{\bar{y}_0}{\sigma^2}\right) = \mathbb{I}(\bar{y}_1 > \bar{y}_0) \quad (8.41)$$

This makes intuitive sense. When the problem is asymmetric, we need to take into account the different sample sizes and prior beliefs.

---

2. For a similar set of results in the time-discounted setting, see <https://chris-said.io/2020/01/10/optimizing-sample-sizes-in-ab-testing-part-I>.

### 8.2.1.2 Expected reward

If the total population size is  $N$ , and we cannot reuse people from the testing phase, the expected reward from the roll stage is

$$\mathbb{E}[R_{\text{roll}}] = \int_{\mu_1} \int_{\mu_0} \int_{\mathbf{y}_1} \int_{\mathbf{y}_0} (N - n_1 - n_0) (\pi(\mathbf{y}_1, \mathbf{y}_0) \mu_1 + (1 - \pi(\mathbf{y}_1, \mathbf{y}_0)) \mu_0) \quad (8.42)$$

$$\times p(\mathbf{y}_0)p(\mathbf{y}_1)p(\mu_0)p(\mu_1)d\mathbf{y}_0d\mathbf{y}_1d\mu_0d\mu_1 \quad (8.43)$$

One can show that this equals

$$\mathbb{E}[R_{\text{roll}}] = (N - n_1 - n_0) \left( m_1 + e\Phi\left(\frac{e}{v}\right) + v\phi\left(\frac{e}{v}\right) \right) \quad (8.44)$$

where  $\phi$  is the Gaussian pdf,  $\Phi$  is the Gaussian cdf,  $e = m_0 - m_1$  and

$$v = \sqrt{\frac{\tau_1^4}{\tau_1^2 + \sigma_1^2/n_1} + \frac{\tau_0^4}{\tau_0^2 + \sigma_0^2/n_0}} \quad (8.45)$$

In the fully symmetric case, where  $m_j = m$ ,  $\tau_j = \tau$ ,  $\sigma_j = \sigma$ , and  $n_j = n$ , Eq. (8.44) simplifies to

$$\mathbb{E}[R_{\text{roll}}] = (N - 2n) \left( m + \frac{\sqrt{2}\tau^2}{\sqrt{\pi}\sqrt{2\tau^2 + \frac{2}{n}\sigma^2}} \right) \quad (8.46)$$

The second term inside the brackets is the incremental gain we expect to see (beyond the prior) per person by virtue of picking the optimal action to deploy. We see that the incremental gain increases with  $n$  (because we are more likely to pick the correct action); however, this gain can only be accrued for a smaller number,  $N - 2n$ , of the population. Not surprisingly, we see that the incremental gain decreases with measurement noise,  $\sigma$ . We also see that the incremental gain increases with prior uncertainty,  $\tau$ , since there is more to be learned by doing an experiment in this case.

The total expected reward is given by adding Eq. (8.36) and Eq. (8.46):

$$\mathbb{E}[R] = \mathbb{E}[R_{\text{test}}] + \mathbb{E}[R_{\text{roll}}] = Nm + (N - 2n) \left( \frac{\sqrt{2}\tau^2}{\sqrt{\pi}\sqrt{2\tau^2 + \frac{2}{n}\sigma^2}} \right) \quad (8.47)$$

### 8.2.1.3 Optimal sample size

We can maximize the expected reward in Eq. (8.47) to find the optimal sample size for the testing phase, which (from symmetry) satisfies  $n_1^* = n_2^* = n^*$ , and from  $\frac{d}{dn^*} \mathbb{E}[R] = 0$  satisfies

$$n^* = \sqrt{\frac{N}{4}u^2 + \left(\frac{3}{4}u^2\right)^2} - \frac{3}{4}u^2 \leq \sqrt{N}\frac{\sigma}{2\tau} \quad (8.48)$$

where  $u^2 = \frac{\sigma^2}{\tau^2}$ . This we see that the optimal sample size  $n^*$  increases as the observation noise  $\sigma$  increases, since we need to collect more data to be confident of the right decision. However, the optimal sample size decreases with  $\tau$ , since a prior belief that the effect size will be large implies we expect to need less data to reach a confident conclusion.

### 8.2.1.4 Expected error rate

For any given sample size  $n_1, n_2$ , we can compute the expected error rate, i.e., the probability that we will pick the wrong action. Since the optimal policy is to pick the action with highest mean (in the symmetric case), the probability of error, conditional on known  $\mu_j$ , is given by

$$\Pr(\pi(\mathbf{y}_1, \mathbf{y}_0) = 1 | \mu_1 < \mu_0) = \Pr(Y_1 - Y_0 > 0 | \mu_1 < \mu_0) = 1 - \Phi\left(\frac{\mu_1 - \mu_0}{\sigma\sqrt{\frac{1}{n_1} + \frac{1}{n_0}}}\right) \quad (8.49)$$

Let  $\delta = \mu_1 - \mu_0$  be the treatment effect. When  $\delta$  is positive and large, the error rate is lower, as is to be expected. When  $\delta$  is smaller, the error rate is higher, but the consequences on expected reward are less important (i.e., the cost of misclassification is reduced).

The above expression assumed that  $\mu_j$  are known. Since they are not known, we can compute the expected error rate using  $\mathbb{E}[\Pr(\pi(\mathbf{y}_1, \mathbf{y}_0) = 1 | \mu_1 < \mu_0)]$ . By symmetry, the quantity  $\mathbb{E}[\Pr(\pi(\mathbf{y}_1, \mathbf{y}_0) = 0 | \mu_1 > \mu_0)]$  is the same. One can show that both quantities are given by

$$\text{Prob. error} = \frac{1}{4} - \frac{1}{2\pi} \arctan\left(\frac{\sqrt{2}\tau}{\sigma}\sqrt{\frac{n_1 n_0}{n_1 + n_0}}\right) \quad (8.50)$$

As expected, the error rate decreases with the sample size  $n_1$  and  $n_0$ , increases with observation noise  $\sigma$ , and decreases with variance of the effect size  $\tau$ .

### 8.2.1.5 Regret

Finally, we can compute the **regret**, which is the difference between the expected reward given **perfect information** about the true best action and the expected reward due to our policy. Minimizing regret is equivalent to making the expected reward of our policy equal to the best possible reward (which may be high or low, depending on the problem).

An oracle with perfect information about which  $\mu_J$  is bigger would pick the highest scoring action, and hence get an expected reward of  $N\mathbb{E}[\max(\mu_1, \mu_2)]$ . Since we assume  $\mu_j \sim \mathcal{N}(m, \tau^2)$ , we have

$$\mathbb{E}[R|PI] = N\left(m + \frac{\tau}{\sqrt{\pi}}\right) \quad (8.51)$$

Therefore the regret from the optimal policy is given by

$$\mathbb{E}[R|PI] - (\mathbb{E}[R_{\text{test}}|\pi^*] + \mathbb{E}[R_{\text{roll}}|\pi^*]) = N\frac{\tau}{\sqrt{\pi}}\left(1 - \frac{\tau}{\sqrt{\tau^2 + \frac{\sigma^2}{n^*}}}\right) + \frac{2n^*\tau^2}{\sqrt{\pi}\sqrt{\tau^2 + \frac{\sigma^2}{n^*}}} \quad (8.52)$$

One can show that the regret is  $O(\sqrt{N})$ , which is optimal for this problem when using a time horizon (population size) of  $N$  [AG13].

## 8.2.2 Example

In this section, we give a simple example of the above framework. Suppose our goal is to do **website testing**, where we have two different versions of a webpage that we want to compare in terms of their

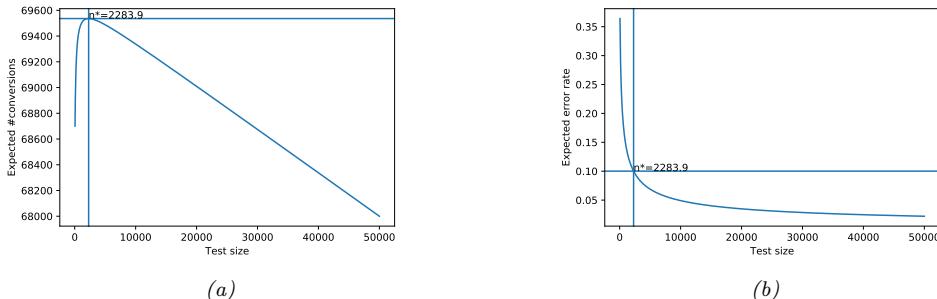


Figure 8.5: Total expected profit (a) and error rate (b) as a function of the sample size used for website testing. Generated by `ab test demo.py`.

**click through rate.** The observed data is now binary,  $y_{ij} \sim \text{Ber}(\mu_j)$ , so it is natural to use a Beta prior,  $\mu_j \sim \text{Beta}(\alpha, \beta)$  (see Sec. 7.2.1). However, in this case the optimal sample size and decision rule is harder to compute (see [FB19; Sta+17] for details). As a simple approximation, we can assume  $\bar{y}_{ij} \sim \mathcal{N}(\mu_j, \sigma^2)$ , where  $\mu_j \sim \mathcal{N}(m, \tau^2)$ ,  $m = \frac{\alpha}{\alpha + \beta}$ ,  $\tau^2 = \frac{\alpha\beta}{(\alpha + \beta)^2(\alpha + \beta + 1)}$ , and  $\sigma^2 = m(1 - m)$ .

To set the Gaussian prior, [FB19] used empirical data from about 2000 prior A/B tests. For each test, they observed the number of times the page was served with each of the two variations, as well as the total number of times a user clicked on each version. Given this data, they used a hierarchical Bayesian model to infer  $\mu_j \sim \mathcal{N}(m = 0.68, \tau = 0.03)$ . This prior implies that the expected effect size is quite small,  $\mathbb{E}[\|\mu_1 - \mu_0\|] = 0.023$ . (This is consistent with the results in [Aze+20], who found that most changes made to the Microsoft Bing EXP platform had negligible effect, although there were occasionally some “big hits”.)

With this prior, and assuming a population of  $N = 100,000$ , Eq. (8.48) says that the optimal number of trials to run is  $n_1^* = n_0^* = 2284$ . The expected reward (number of clicks or **conversions**) in the testing phase is  $\mathbb{E}[R_{\text{test}}] = 3106$ , and in the deployment phase  $\mathbb{E}[R_{\text{rol}}] = 66,430$ , for a total reward of 69,536. The expected error rate is 10%.

In Fig. 8.5a, we plot the expected reward vs the size of the test phase  $n$ . We see that the reward increases sharply with  $n$  to the global maximum at  $n^* = 2284$ , and then drops off more slowly. This indicates that it is better to have a slightly larger test than one that is too small by the same amount. (However, when using a heavy tailed model, [Aze+20] find that it is better to do lots of smaller tests.)

In Fig. 8.5b, we plot the probability of picking the wrong action vs  $n$ . We see that tests that are larger than optimal only reduce this error rate marginally. Consequently, if you want to make the misclassification rate low, you may need a large sample size, particularly if  $\mu_1 - \mu_0$  is small, since then it will be hard to detect the true best action. However, it is also less important to identify the best action in this case, since both actions have very similar expected reward. This explains why classical methods for A/B testing based on frequentist statistics, which use hypothesis testing methods to determine if A is better than B (see Appendix D.7), may often recommend sample sizes that are much larger than necessary. (See [FB19] and references therein for further discussion.)

## 8.3 Bandit problems<sup>3</sup>

In Sec. 8.2, we discussed A/B testing, in which the decision maker tries two different actions (A and B) a fixed number of times,  $n_1$  and  $n_0$ , measures the resulting sequence of rewards,  $\mathbf{y}_1$  and  $\mathbf{y}_0$ , and then picks the best action to use for the rest of time (or the rest of the population) so as to maximize expected reward.

We can obviously generalize this beyond two actions. More importantly, we can generalize this beyond a one-stage decision problem. In particular, suppose we allow the decision maker to try an action  $a_t$ , observe the reward  $r_t$ , and then decide what to do at time step  $t + 1$ , rather than waiting until  $n_1 + n_0$  experiments are finished. This immediate feedback allows for **adaptive policies** that can result in much higher expected reward (lower regret).

We have converted a one-stage decision problem into a **sequential decision problem**. There are many kinds of sequential decision problems, but in this section, we consider the simplest kind, known as a **bandit problem** (see e.g., [BCB12; LS19b; Sli19]).

In a bandit problem, there is an agent (decision maker) which gets to see some **state of nature**,  $s_t \in \mathcal{S}$ , which it uses to choose an **action**  $a_t \sim \pi(s_t)$ , and then it finally receives a **reward** sampled from the **environment**,  $r_t \sim p_R(s_t, a_t)$ . (For future use, we define  $R(s, a) = \mathbb{E}[R|s, a]$  as the expected reward.) In the **finite horizon** formulation, the goal is to maximize the expected **cumulative reward**:

$$J \triangleq \sum_{t=1}^T \mathbb{E}_{p_R(r_t|s_t, a_t) \pi_t(a_t|s_t) p(s_t)} [r_t] = \sum_{t=1}^T \mathbb{E}[r_t] \quad (8.53)$$

where the second expectation without explicit distributions specified is a shorthand when no ambiguity arises. In the **infinite horizon** formulation, where  $T = \infty$ , the cumulative reward may be infinite. To prevent  $J$  from being unbounded, we introduce a **discount factor**  $0 < \gamma < 1$ , so that

$$J \triangleq \sum_{t=1}^{\infty} \gamma^{t-1} \mathbb{E}[r_t] \quad (8.54)$$

The quantity  $\gamma$  can be interpreted as the probability that the agent is terminated at any moment in time (in which case it will cease to accumulate reward).

We can think of this setup in terms of an agent at a casino who is faced with multiple slot machines, each of which pays out rewards at a different rate. A slot machine is sometimes called a **one-armed bandit**, so a set of such machines is called a **multi-armed bandit (MAB)**; each different action corresponds to pulling the arm of a different slot machine, but there is just one fixed state (namely being in a given casino). The goal is to quickly figure out which machine pays out the most money, and then to keep playing that one until you become as rich as possible.

### 8.3.1 Contextual bandits

In the basic bandit problem, the state of nature  $s_t$  is fixed, meaning that the world does not change. However, the agent's internal model of the world does change, as it learns about which actions have

---

3. This section is co-authored with Lihong Li.

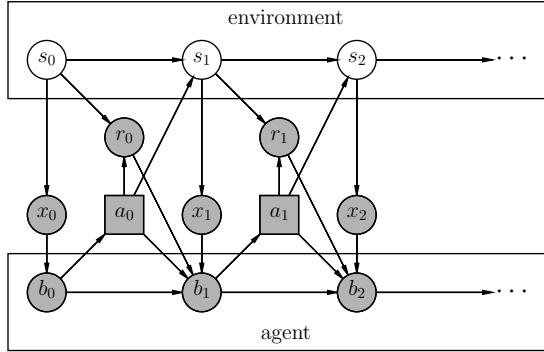


Figure 8.6: Illustration of a partially observable Markov decision process (POMDP) with hidden environment state  $s_t$  which generates the observation  $x_t$ , controlled by an agent with internal belief state  $b_t$  which generates the action  $a_t$ . The reward  $r_t$  depends on  $s_t$  and  $a_t$ . Nodes in this graph represent random variables (circles) and decision variables (squares).

highest reward. If we allow the state of the environment  $s_t$  to vary randomly over time, the model is known as a **contextual bandit**, which is a more flexible model.

For example, consider an **online advertising system**. We can regard the page that the user is currently looking at as the state  $s_t$ , and the ad which we choose to show as the action  $a_t$ . Since the reward function has the form  $R(s_t, a_t)$ , we can see that the value of an ad  $a_t$  depends on the context  $s_t$ . The goal is to maximize the expected reward, which is equivalent to the expected number of times people click on ads; this is known as the **click through rate** or **CTR**. (See e.g., [Gra+10; Li+10; McM+13; Aga+14] for more information about this application.)

Another application of contextual bandits arises in **clinical trials** [VBW15]. In this case, the state  $s_t$  are features of the current patient we are treating, and the action  $a_t$  is the treatment we choose to give them (e.g., a new drug or a **placebo**). Our goal is to maximize expected reward, i.e., the expected number of people who get cured. (In fact, the goal is often stated in terms of determining which treatment is best, rather than maximizing expected reward; this variant is known as **best-arm identification** [ABM10].)

So far we have assumed the state and reward are sampled from fixed distributions,  $s_t \sim p(s_t)$  and  $r_t \sim p(r|s_t, a_t)$ . This is known as a **stochastic bandit**. It is also possible to allow the reward, and possibly the state, to be chosen in an adversarial manner, where nature tries to minimize the reward of the agent. This is known as an **adversarial bandit**. However, we do not consider this version in this book.

### 8.3.2 Markov decision processes

We can consider a generalization of the contextual bandit model, in which the next state  $s_{t+1}$  depends on  $s_t$  and the agent's action  $a_t$ ; this is called a **Markov decision process** or **MDP**. This defines a

controlled Markov chain,

$$p(\mathbf{s}_{0:T} | \mathbf{a}_{0:T-1}) = p(s_0) \prod_{t=1}^T p(s_t | s_{t-1}, a_{t-1}) \quad (8.55)$$

where  $p(s_t | s_{t-1}, a_{t-1})$  is known as the **state transition model**. A further generalization of this assumes that the agent does not see the world state  $s_t$  directly, but instead only sees a potentially noisy observation generated from the hidden state,  $y_t \sim p(\cdot | s_t, a_t)$ ; this is called a **partially observable Markov decision process** or **POMDP** (pronounced “pom-dee-pee”). Now the agent’s policy is a mapping from all the available data to actions,  $a_t \sim \pi(\mathcal{D}_t)$ , where  $\mathcal{D}_t = (x_0, a_0, r_0, x_1, a_1, r_1, \dots, x_t)$ . See Fig. 8.6 for an illustration. (MDPs are a special case where  $x_t = s_t$ .) Finding optimal policies for MDPs and POMDPs is studied in the field of **reinforcement learning**.

For more details on MDPs and POMDPs, see e.g., [Koc15]. For more details on RL, see other books such as [Sze10; SB18; Ber19] or the sequel to this book, [Mur22].

### 8.3.3 Exploration-exploitation tradeoff

The fundamental difficulty in solving bandit problems is known as the **exploration-exploitation tradeoff**. This refers to the fact that the agent needs to try new state/action combinations (this is known as exploration) in order to learn the reward function  $R(s, a)$  before it can exploit its knowledge by picking the predicted best action for each state.

One of the simplest approaches to this problem is to use a two-stage strategy. In the first stage, the agent explores, by trying many different actions, and then computes an estimate of the reward function,  $\hat{R}(s, a)$ . It stops exploring once it is sufficiently confident in all its estimates (as measured by the posterior variance, for example). In the second stage, it exploits its knowledge using the **greedy policy**  $\pi(s) = \operatorname{argmax}_a \hat{R}(s, a)$ . (This is similar to the A/B testing method in Sec. 8.2.) However, we can often do better by interleaving exploration and exploitation. We discuss various methods for this below.

### 8.3.4 Optimal solution

In this section, we discuss the optimal solution to the exploration-exploitation tradeoff. We start with a simple example, namely the context-free **Bernoulli bandit**, where  $p_R(r|a) = \text{Ber}(r|\mu_a)$ , and  $\mu_a = p_R(r=1|a) = R(a)$  is the expected reward for taking action  $a$ . Let the estimated reward function have the form  $\hat{R}(a; \theta) = \theta_a$ , which (in the context-free case) is just a lookup table. The MLE estimate for the reward function at time  $t$ , based on the history of observations,  $\mathbf{h}_t = \{s_{1:t-1}, a_{1:t-1}, r_{1:t-1}\}$ , is given by

$$\hat{\theta}_t(a) = \frac{N_{t,1}(a)}{\max\{N_t(a), 1\}} \quad (8.56)$$

$$N_{t,r}(a) = \sum_{\tau=1}^{t-1} \mathbb{I}(r_\tau = r) \mathbb{I}(a_\tau = a) \quad (8.57)$$

$$N_t(a) = N_{t,0}(a) + N_{t,1}(a) = \sum_{\tau=1}^{t-1} \mathbb{I}(a_\tau = a) \quad (8.58)$$

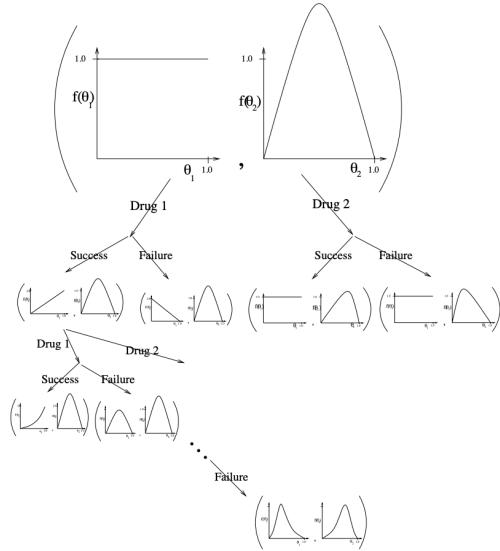


Figure 8.7: Illustration of sequential belief updating for a two-armed beta-Bernoulli bandit, where the arms correspond to different drugs in a clinical trial, and the observed outcomes (rewards) correspond to success or failure of the trial. (Compare to Fig. 7.6, where we display the predictive distribution for a single armed beta-Bernoulli model.) From [Sil18]. Used with kind permission of David Silver.

Thus  $\hat{\theta}_t(a)$  is just the fraction of times we received a reward of 1 when taking action  $a$ .

In order to decide when to stop exploring and start exploiting, we need some notion of confidence in this estimate. The natural approach is to compute the posterior  $p(\boldsymbol{\theta}|\mathcal{D}_t)$ . If we use a factored beta prior,  $p(\boldsymbol{\theta}) = \prod_a \text{Beta}(\theta_a|\alpha, \beta)$ , then we can compute the posterior in closed form, as we discuss in Sec. 7.2.1. In particular, we find

$$p(\boldsymbol{\theta}|\mathcal{D}_t) = \prod_a \text{Beta}(\theta_a|\alpha + N_{t,1}(a), \beta + N_{t,0}(a)) \quad (8.59)$$

We can use a similar method for a **Gaussian bandit**, where  $p_R(r|a) = \mathcal{N}(r|\mu_a, \sigma_a^2)$ , using results from Sec. 7.2.3.

In the case of contextual bandits, the problem becomes slightly more complicated. If we assume a conditional Gaussian bandit with a linear reward function,  $\mathbb{E}[R|s, a; \boldsymbol{\theta}] = \phi(s, a)^\top \boldsymbol{\theta}$ , we can use Bayesian linear regression to compute  $p(\boldsymbol{\theta}|\mathcal{D}_t)$  in closed form, as we discuss in Sec. 11.6. If we assume a conditional Bernoulli bandit with a linear-logistic reward function,  $\mathbb{E}[R|s, a; \boldsymbol{\theta}] = \sigma(\phi(s, a)^\top \boldsymbol{\theta})$ , we can use Bayesian logistic regression to compute  $p(\boldsymbol{\theta}|\mathcal{D}_t)$ , as we discuss in Sec. 10.6; however, this posterior cannot be computed in closed form, so we must use approximate inference methods. We can also use nonlinear models, although posterior inference becomes more challenging. Details can be found in the sequel to this book, [Mur22].

In general, let us denote the posterior over the parameters of the reward function by  $\mathbf{b}_t = p(\boldsymbol{\theta}|\mathbf{h}_t)$ ; this is known as the **belief state** or **information state**. It is a finite sufficient statistic for the

history  $\mathbf{h}_t$ .

It can be verified that the information state can be updated deterministically using Bayes' rule (see Fig. 8.7 for a visualization). An MDP is thus induced, where the state space consists of the real-valued vectors  $\mathbf{b}_t$ , and the transition and reward models are given by

$$p(\mathbf{b}_t | \mathbf{b}_{t-1}, a_t, r_t) = \mathbb{I}(\mathbf{b}_t = \text{BayesRule}(\mathbf{b}_{t-1}, a_t, r_t)) \quad (8.60)$$

$$p(R | \mathbf{b}_t, a_t = a) = \int p_R(R | \mu_a) p(\mu_a | \mathbf{b}_t) d\mu_a \quad (8.61)$$

This MDP is called the **belief-state MDP**. Since the transition model and reward model are known, we can solve for the optimal MDP policy using dynamic programming. The resulting optimal policy can be represented as a tabular decision tree, similar to Fig. 8.7; this is known as the **Gittins index** [Git89].

Unfortunately, computing the optimal policy for contextual bandits (and MDPs) is much more difficult, so we will need to use other methods. We discuss several options below.

### 8.3.5 Regret

In the sections below, we will discuss several approximate methods for solving the exploration-exploitation tradeoff. It is useful to define a metric of the degree of suboptimality of these methods. A common approach is to compute the **regret**, which is defined as the difference between the expected reward under the agent's policy and the oracle policy  $\pi_*$ , which knows the true reward function. (Note that the oracle policy will in general be better than the Bayes optimal policy, which we discussed in Sec. 8.3.4.)

Specifically, let  $\pi_t$  be the agent's policy at time  $t$ . Then the **per-step regret** at  $t$  is defined as

$$l_t \triangleq \mathbb{E}_{p(s_t)} [R(s_t, \pi_*(s_t))] - \mathbb{E}_{\pi_t(a_t | s_t)p(s_t)} [R(s_t, a_t)] \quad (8.62)$$

The **cumulative regret** (total regret, or regret) at time  $T$  is

$$L_T \triangleq \mathbb{E} \left[ \sum_{t=1}^T l_t \right] \quad (8.63)$$

where the expectation is with respect to randomness in determining  $\pi_t$ , which depends on earlier states, actions and rewards, as well as other potential sources of randomness. By contrast, if we only care about the final performance of the best discovered arm, as in most optimization problems, it is enough to look at the **simple regret** at the last step, namely  $l_T$ . This problem is called **pure exploration** [BMS11].

Under the typical assumption that rewards are bounded,  $L_T$  is at most linear in  $T$ . If the agent's policy converges to the optimal policy as  $T$  increases, then the regret is sublinear:  $L_T = o(T)$ . In general, the slower  $L_T$  grows, the more efficient the agent is in trading off exploration and exploitation. To understand its growth rate, it is helpful to consider again the simpler context-free bandit, where  $R_* = \text{argmax}_a R(a)$  is the optimal reward. The total regret in the first  $T$  steps can be written as

$$L_T = \mathbb{E} \left[ \sum_{t=1}^T R_* - R(a_t) \right] = \sum_{a \in \mathcal{A}} \mathbb{E}[N_{T+1}(a)] (R_* - R(a)) = \sum_{a \in \mathcal{A}} \mathbb{E}[N_{T+1}(a)] \Delta_a \quad (8.64)$$

where  $N_{T+1}(a)$  is the total number of times the agent picks action  $a$ , and  $\Delta_a = R_* - R(a)$  is the reward **gap**. If the agent under-explores and converges to choosing a suboptimal action (say,  $\hat{a}$ ), then a linear regret is suffered with a per-step regret of  $\Delta_{\hat{a}}$ . On the other hand, if the agent over-explores, then  $N_t(a)$  will be too large for suboptimal actions, and the agent also suffers a linear regret.

Fortunately, it is possible to achieve sublinear regrets, using some of the methods discussed below. In fact, some of them are optimal in the sense that their regrets are essentially not improvable; that is, they match regret lower bounds. To establish such a lower bound, note that the agent needs to collect enough data to distinguish different reward distributions, before identifying the optimal action. Typically, the deviation of the reward estimate from the true reward decays at the rate of  $1/\sqrt{N}$ , where  $N$  is the sample size (see e.g., Eq. (7.99)). Therefore, if two reward distributions are similar, distinguishing them becomes harder and requires more samples. (For example, consider the case of two arms with Gaussian rewards with slightly different means and large variance, as shown in Fig. 8.8.) A fundamental result is proved by [LR85] for the asymptotic regret (under certain mild assumptions not given here):

$$\liminf_{T \rightarrow \infty} L_T \geq \log T \sum_{a: \Delta_a > 0} \frac{\Delta_a}{\mathbb{KL}(p_R(a) \| p_R(a_*))} \quad (8.65)$$

Thus, we see that the best we can achieve is logarithmic growth in the total regret. Similar lower bounds have also been obtained for various bandits variants.

### 8.3.6 Upper confidence bounds (UCB)

A particularly effective principle to address the exploration-exploitation tradeoff is known as “**optimism in the face of uncertainty**”. The principle selects actions greedily, based on optimistic estimates of their rewards. The most important class of strategies with this principle are collectively called **upper confidence bound** or **UCB** methods.

To use a UCB strategy, the agent maintains an optimistic reward function estimate  $\tilde{R}_t$ , so that  $\tilde{R}_t(s_t, a) \geq R(s_t, a)$  for all  $a$  with high probability, and then chooses the greedy action accordingly:

$$a_t = \operatorname{argmax}_a \tilde{R}_t(s_t, a) \quad (8.66)$$

UCB can be viewed as a form of exploration bonus, where the optimistic estimate encourages exploration. Typically, the amount of optimism,  $\tilde{R}_t - R$ , decreases over time so that the agent gradually reduces exploration. With properly constructed optimistic reward estimates, the UCB strategy has been shown to achieve near-optimal regret in many variants of bandits [LS19b].

The optimistic function  $\tilde{R}$  can be obtained in different ways, sometimes in closed forms. One approach is to use a **concentration inequality** [BLM16] to derive a high-probability upper bound of the estimation error:  $|\hat{R}_t(s, a) - R_t(s, a)| \leq \delta_t(s, a)$ , where  $\hat{R}_t$  is a usual estimate of  $R$  (often the MLE), and  $\delta_t$  is a properly selected function. An optimistic reward is then obtained by setting  $\tilde{R}_t(s, a) = \hat{R}_t(s, a) + \delta_t(s, a)$ .

As an example, consider again the context-free Bernoulli bandit,  $R(a) \sim \text{Ber}(\mu(a))$ . The MLE  $\hat{R}_t(a) = \hat{\mu}_t(a)$  is given by Eq. (8.56). (For simplicity we will assume  $N_t(a) > 0$  for all  $a$ .) Then the **Chernoff-Hoeffding inequality** [BLM16] leads to  $\delta_t(a) = c/\sqrt{N_t(a)}$  for some proper constant  $c$ ,

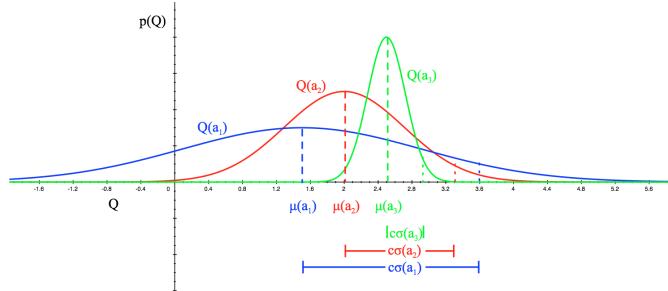


Figure 8.8: Illustration of the reward distribution  $Q(a)$  for 3 different actions, and the corresponding lower and upper confidence bounds. From A figure from [Sil18]. Used with kind permission of David Silver.

so

$$\tilde{R}_t(a) = \hat{\mu}_t(a) + \frac{c}{\sqrt{N_t(a)}} \quad (8.67)$$

We may also derive  $\tilde{R}$  from Bayesian inference. If we use a beta prior, we can compute the posterior in closed form, as shown in Eq. (8.59). The posterior mean is  $\hat{\mu}_t(a) = \mathbb{E}[\mu(a)|\mathcal{D}_t] = \frac{\alpha_t}{\alpha_t + \beta_t}$ . From Eq. (7.23), the posterior standard deviation is approximately

$$\hat{\sigma}_t(a) = \sqrt{\mathbb{V}[\mu(a)|\mathcal{D}_t]} \approx \sqrt{\frac{\hat{\mu}_t(a)(1 - \hat{\mu}_t(a))}{N_t(a)}} \quad (8.68)$$

We then pick the action

$$a_t = \operatorname{argmax}_a \hat{\mu}_t(a) + c\hat{\sigma}_t(a) \quad (8.69)$$

for some constant  $c$  that controls how greedy the policy is. We see that this is similar to the frequentist method based on concentration inequalities.

Fig. 8.8 illustrates the UCB principle. We assume there are 3 actions, and we represent  $p(R(a)|\mathcal{D}_t)$  using a Gaussian. We show the posterior means  $\mu_a$  with a vertical dotted line, and the scaled posterior standard deviations  $c\sigma(a) = c\text{se}_a$  as a horizontal solid line.

### 8.3.7 Thompson sampling

Suppose at each step we define the policy to choose action  $a$  with probability  $p$ , where  $p$  is the probability that  $a$  is the optimal action:

$$\pi_t(a|s_t, \mathbf{h}_t) = \Pr(a = a_*|s_t, \mathbf{h}_t) = \int \mathbb{I}\left(a = \operatorname{argmax}_{a'} R(s_t, a'; \boldsymbol{\theta})\right) p(\boldsymbol{\theta}|\mathbf{h}_t) d\boldsymbol{\theta} \quad (8.70)$$

This is known as **probability matching** [Sco10]. If the posterior is uncertain, the agent will sample many different actions, resulting in exploration. As the uncertainty decreases, it will start to exploit its knowledge.

Although the integral in Eq. (8.70) is usually intractable, we can approximate it by using a single Monte Carlo sample  $\tilde{\boldsymbol{\theta}}_t \sim p(\boldsymbol{\theta}|\mathbf{h}_t)$  to get

$$\pi_t(a|s_t, \mathbf{h}_t) \approx \hat{\pi}_t(a|s_t, \mathbf{h}_t) = \mathbb{I}\left(a = \operatorname{argmax}_{a'} R(s_t, a'; \tilde{\boldsymbol{\theta}}_t)\right) \quad (8.71)$$

We then have

$$a_t = \operatorname{argmax}_a \hat{\pi}_t(a|s_t, \mathbf{h}_t) = \operatorname{argmax}_a R(s_t, a; \tilde{\boldsymbol{\theta}}_t) \quad (8.72)$$

In other words, we sample a function, and then act greedily. This is the idea of **Thompson sampling** [Tho33]. Despite its simplicity, this approach can be shown to achieve optimal (logarithmic) regret (see e.g., [Rus+18] for a survey). In addition, it is very easy to implement, and hence is widely used in practice [Gra+10; Sco10; CL11].

### 8.3.8 Simple heuristics

We have discussed some optimal solutions to the exploration-exploitation tradeoff. However, some of these are difficult to apply, particularly in the context of MDPs. We finish by briefly discussing several simple heuristics that are commonly used.

#### 8.3.8.1 $\epsilon$ -greedy

A common approach is to use an  **$\epsilon$ -greedy** policy  $\pi_\epsilon$ , parameterized by  $\epsilon \in [0, 1]$ . In this case, we pick the greedy action wrt the current model,  $a_t = \operatorname{argmax}_a \hat{R}_t(s_t, a)$  with probability  $1 - \epsilon$ , and a random action with probability  $\epsilon$ . This rule ensures the agent's continual exploration of all state-action combinations. Unfortunately, this heuristic can be shown to be suboptimal, since it explores every action with at least a constant probability  $\epsilon/|\mathcal{A}|$ .

#### 8.3.8.2 Boltzmann exploration

A source of inefficiency in the  $\epsilon$ -greedy rule is that exploration occurs uniformly over all actions. The **Boltzmann policy** can be more efficient, by assigning higher probabilities to explore more promising actions:  $\pi_\tau(a|s) = \frac{\exp(\hat{R}_t(s_t, a)/\tau)}{\sum_{a'} \exp(\hat{R}_t(s_t, a')/\tau)}$ , where  $\tau > 0$  is a temperature parameter that controls how entropic the distribution is (see Fig. 3.4). As  $\tau$  gets close to 0,  $\pi_\tau$  becomes close to a greedy policy. On the other hand, higher values of  $\tau$  will make  $\pi(a|s)$  more uniform, and encourage more exploration. Its action selection probabilities can be much “smoother” with respect to changes in the reward estimates than  $\epsilon$ -greedy, as illustrated in Table 8.4.

#### 8.3.8.3 Exploration bonuses

Exploration bonus is another simple yet sometimes effective heuristic. The idea is to add a bonus term,  $b_t(s_t, a)$ , to the reward estimate of action  $a$ , and then choose a greedy action accordingly:  $a_t = \operatorname{argmax}_a \hat{R}_t(s_t, a) + b_t(s_t, a)$ . Typically, the bonus term is large for an action  $a$  if it has not been chosen many times (i.e.,  $N_t(a)$  is small), and decays to 0 as  $N_t(a)$  becomes large. These bonuses therefore encourage exploration of rarely selected actions. They are also related to the idea of **intrinsic motivation**, in which the agent performs actions in order to learn about the world, even if there is no external reward (see e.g., [AMH19] for a review).

$\hat{R}(s, a_1)$	$\hat{R}(s, a_2)$	$\pi_\epsilon(a s_1)$	$\pi_\epsilon(a s_2)$	$\pi_\tau(a s_1)$	$\pi_\tau(a s_2)$
1.00	9.00	0.05	0.95	0.00	1.00
4.00	6.00	0.05	0.95	0.12	0.88
4.90	5.10	0.05	0.95	0.45	0.55
5.05	4.95	0.95	0.05	0.53	0.48
7.00	3.00	0.95	0.05	0.98	0.02
8.00	2.00	0.95	0.05	1.00	0.00

Table 8.4: Comparison of  $\epsilon$ -greedy policy (with  $\epsilon = 0.1$ ) and Boltzmann policy (with  $\tau = 1$ ) for a simple MDP with 6 states and 2 actions. Adapted from Table 4.1 of [GK19].

## 8.4 Discussion

In this section, we discuss some “bigger picture” topics related to the decision theoretic approach to ML, which is the foundation of most approaches to AI (see e.g., [RN19]), and the approach we adopt in this book.

### 8.4.1 The separation principle and its limits

In Bayesian decision theory, we compute our beliefs about the world state,  $p(h|x)$ , without any knowledge of the loss function (and hence the ultimate “task”). We only use the loss function to decide how to act *after* we have finished performing inference. In control theory, this is known as the **separation principle**, and is provably optimal under many conditions (see e.g., [GL13]).

However, the separation of inference from decision making can be suboptimal in cases where we cannot perform exact inference [LJHG11; AS17]. For this reason, the recent trend in deep learning is towards **end-to-end learning**, in which we learn a mapping directly from input to optimal action, i.e., we learn policies of the form  $a = \pi(x; \theta)$ , bypassing explicit estimation of the hidden state.

The downside of the end-to-end approach is that it is less modular, and the system needs to be retrained every time the task (and hence loss function) changes. A useful compromise could be to use two types of policy running in parallel. The high level policy is model-based, and performs posterior inference by computing  $p(h|x)$ , and then makes optimal decisions by computing  $a^* = \text{argmax}_a \sum_h p(h|x)U(h, a)$ , as we discussed in this chapter. This approach can be sample efficient (since it uses a generic model of the world, independent of the task), and can therefore adapt easily to changing input distributions. However, this approach can be slow.

To speedup the system, we can also train a blackbox model (e.g., a neural network) on labeled  $(x, h)$  or  $(x, a)$  pairs generated by the above method. This model is designed to predict the output given the input, without needing to perform inference or optimization at run time. Training a fast function approximator  $f$  to emulate the behavior of a slower, possibly more optimal algorithm is called **amortized inference** (see e.g., [GG14; RHG16; LBW17; Shu+18]). We can view this fast **reflexive** predictor  $a^* = f(x)$  as similar to **type I** reasoning, and the slower, more rational predictor  $a^* = \text{argmax}_a \sum_h p(h|x)U(h, a)$  as similar to **type II** reasoning [Kah13].

### 8.4.2 Optimality of the Bayesian approach and its limits

It can be proved that any approach to decision making that does not follow the Bayesian approach is guaranteed to incur more loss than an agent that does use the Bayesian approach. This is called the **Dutch book theorem** (see e.g., [Háj08]).

Although the above theorem tells us that Bayesian decision theory is the optimal way to perform decision making under uncertainty, it is based on several assumptions. First, it assumes that the agent can exactly perform the relevant calculations, which can be slow; we discussed some fast approximations to this in Sec. 8.4.1. Second, it assumes that the world model used by the agent is correct; we discussed some approaches to Bayesian model checking in Sec. 7.6.8. The third, and most subtle, assumption is that the utility function is correct. We discuss this issue in more detail in Sec. 1.5.3.

## 8.5 Exercises

### Exercise 8.1 [Reject option in classifiers]

(Source: [DHS01, Q2.13].) In many classification problems one has the option either of assigning  $\mathbf{x}$  to class  $j$  or, if you are too uncertain, of choosing the **reject option**. If the cost for rejects is less than the cost of falsely classifying the object, it may be the optimal action. Let  $\alpha_i$  mean you choose action  $i$ , for  $i = 1 : C + 1$ , where  $C$  is the number of classes and  $C + 1$  is the reject action. Let  $Y = j$  be the true (but unknown) **state of nature**. Define the loss function as follows

$$\lambda(\alpha_i|Y = j) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } i = j \text{ and } i, j \in \{1, \dots, C\} \\ \lambda_r & \text{if } i = C + 1 \\ \lambda_s & \text{otherwise} \end{cases} \quad (8.73)$$

In otherwords, you incur 0 loss if you correctly classify, you incur  $\lambda_r$  loss (cost) if you choose the reject option, and you incur  $\lambda_s$  loss (cost) if you make a substitution error (misclassification).

- Show that the minimum risk is obtained if we decide  $Y = j$  if  $p(Y = j|\mathbf{x}) \geq p(Y = k|\mathbf{x})$  for all  $k$  (i.e.,  $j$  is the most probable class) *and* if  $p(Y = j|\mathbf{x}) \geq 1 - \frac{\lambda_r}{\lambda_s}$ ; otherwise we decide to reject.
- Describe qualitatively what happens as  $\lambda_r/\lambda_s$  is increased from 0 to 1 (i.e., the relative cost of rejection increases).

### Exercise 8.2 [Newsvendor problem]

Consider the following classic problem in decision theory / economics. Suppose you are trying to decide how much quantity  $Q$  of some product (e.g., newspapers) to buy to maximize your profits. The optimal amount will depend on how much demand  $D$  you think there is for your product, as well as its cost to you  $C$  and its selling price  $P$ . Suppose  $D$  is unknown but has pdf  $f(D)$  and cdf  $F(D)$ . We can evaluate the expected profit by considering two cases: if  $D > Q$ , then we sell all  $Q$  items, and make profit  $\pi = (P - C)Q$ ; but if  $D < Q$ , we only sell  $D$  items, at profit  $(P - C)D$ , but have wasted  $C(Q - D)$  on the unsold items. So the expected profit if we buy quantity  $Q$  is

$$E\pi(Q) = \int_Q^\infty (P - C)Qf(D)dD + \int_0^Q (P - C)Df(D)dD - \int_0^Q C(Q - D)f(D)dD \quad (8.74)$$

Simplify this expression, and then take derivatives wrt  $Q$  to show that the optimal quantity  $Q^*$  (which maximizes the expected profit) satisfies

$$F(Q^*) = \frac{P - C}{P} \quad (8.75)$$

**Exercise 8.3** [Bayes factors and ROC curves]

Let  $B = p(D|H_1)/p(D|H_0)$  be the Bayes factor in favor of model 1. Suppose we plot two ROC curves, one computed by thresholding  $B$ , and the other computed by thresholding  $p(H_1|D)$ . Will they be the same or different? Explain why.

**Exercise 8.4** [Posterior median is optimal estimate under L1 loss]

Prove that the posterior median is the optimal estimate under L1 loss.

PART II

## Linear models



# 9 Linear discriminant analysis

## 9.1 Introduction

In this chapter, we consider classification models of the following form:

$$p(y = c|\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \frac{p(\mathbf{x}|y = c; \boldsymbol{\theta})p(y = c; \boldsymbol{\theta})}{\sum_{c'} p(\mathbf{x}|y = c'; \boldsymbol{\theta})p(y = c'; \boldsymbol{\theta})} \quad (9.1)$$

The term  $p(y = c; \boldsymbol{\theta})$  is the prior over class labels, and the term  $p(\mathbf{x}|y = c; \boldsymbol{\theta})$  is called the **class conditional density** for class  $c$ .

The overall model is called a **generative classifier**, since it specifies a way to *generate* the features  $\mathbf{x}$  for each class  $c$ , by sampling from  $p(\mathbf{x}|y = c; \boldsymbol{\theta})$ . By contrast, a **discriminative classifier** directly models the class posterior  $p(y|\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta})$ . We discuss the pros and cons of these two approaches to classification in Sec. 9.4.

If we choose the class conditional densities in a special way, we will see that the resulting posterior over classes is a linear function of  $\mathbf{x}$ , i.e.,  $\log p(y = c|\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x} + \text{const}$ , where  $\mathbf{w}$  is derived from  $\boldsymbol{\theta}$ . Thus the overall method is called **linear discriminant analysis** or **LDA**.<sup>1</sup>

## 9.2 Gaussian discriminant analysis

In this section, we consider a generative classifier where the class conditional densities are multivariate Gaussians:

$$p(\mathbf{x}|y = c, \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{x}|\boldsymbol{\mu}_c, \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_c) \quad (9.2)$$

The corresponding class posterior therefore has the form

$$p(y = c|\mathbf{x}, \boldsymbol{\theta}) \propto \pi_c \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{x}|\boldsymbol{\mu}_c, \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_c) \quad (9.3)$$

where  $\pi_c = p(y = c)$  is the prior probability of label  $c$ . (Note that we can ignore the normalization constant in the denominator of the posterior, since it is independent of  $c$ .) We call this model **Gaussian discriminant analysis**.

---

<sup>1</sup> This term is rather confusing for two reasons. First, LDA is a generative, not discriminative, classifier. Second, LDA also stands for “latent Dirichlet allocation”, which is a popular unsupervised generative model for bags of words [BNJ03].

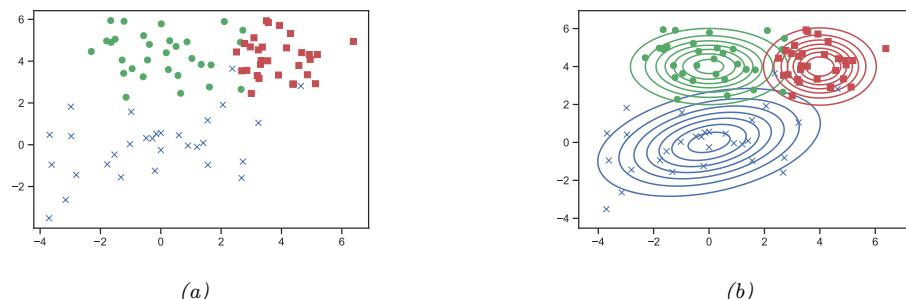


Figure 9.1: (a) Some 2d data from 3 different classes. (b) Fitting 2d Gaussians to each class. Generated by `discrim` analysis `dboundaries` `plot2.py`.

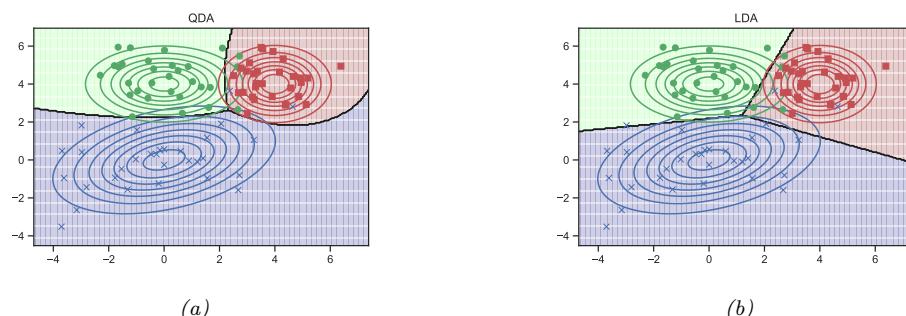


Figure 9.2: Gaussian discriminant analysis fit to data in Fig. 9.1. (a) Unconstrained covariances induce quadratic decision boundaries. (b) Tied covariances induce linear decision boundaries. Generated by `discrim_analysis_dboundaries_plot2.py`.

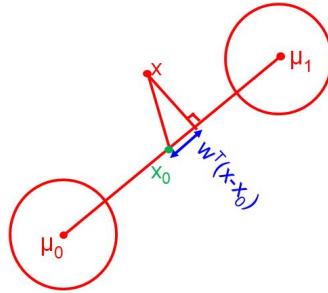
### 9.2.1 Quadratic decision boundaries

From Eq. (9.3), we see that the unnormalized log posterior over class labels is given by

$$\log p(y = c | \mathbf{x}, \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \log \pi_c - \frac{1}{2} \log |2\pi \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_c| - \frac{1}{2} (\mathbf{x} - \boldsymbol{\mu}_c)^\top \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_c^{-1} (\mathbf{x} - \boldsymbol{\mu}_c) + \text{const} \quad (9.4)$$

This is called the **discriminant function**. We see that the decision boundary between any two classes, say  $c$  and  $c'$ , will be a quadratic function of  $\mathbf{x}$ . Hence this is known as **quadratic discriminant analysis (QDA)**.

For example, consider the 2d data from 3 different classes in Fig. 9.1a. We fit full covariance Gaussian class-conditionals (using the method explained in Sec. 9.2.4), and plot the results in Fig. 9.1b. We see that the features for the blue class are somewhat correlated, whereas the features for the green class are independent, and the features for the red class are independent and isotropic (spherical covariance). In Fig. 9.2a, we see that the resulting decision boundaries are quadratic functions of  $\mathbf{x}$ .

Figure 9.3: Geometry of LDA in the 2 class case where  $\Sigma_1 = \Sigma_2 = \mathbf{I}$ .

### 9.2.2 Linear decision boundaries

Now we consider a special case of Gaussian discriminant analysis in which the covariance matrices are **tied** or **shared** across classes, so  $\Sigma_c = \Sigma$ . If  $\Sigma$  is independent of  $c$ , we can simplify Eq. (9.4) as follows:

$$\log p(y = c|\mathbf{x}, \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \log \pi_c - \frac{1}{2}(\mathbf{x} - \boldsymbol{\mu}_c)^\top \boldsymbol{\Sigma}^{-1}(\mathbf{x} - \boldsymbol{\mu}_c) \quad (9.5)$$

$$= \underbrace{\log \pi_c}_{\gamma_c} - \underbrace{\frac{1}{2} \boldsymbol{\mu}_c^\top \boldsymbol{\Sigma}^{-1} \boldsymbol{\mu}_c}_{\beta_c} + \underbrace{\mathbf{x}^\top \boldsymbol{\Sigma}^{-1} \boldsymbol{\mu}_c}_{\mathbf{x}^\top \boldsymbol{\beta}_c} - \underbrace{\frac{1}{2} \mathbf{x}^\top \boldsymbol{\Sigma}^{-1} \mathbf{x}}_{\kappa} \quad (9.6)$$

$$= \gamma_c + \mathbf{x}^\top \boldsymbol{\beta}_c + \kappa \quad (9.7)$$

The final term is independent of  $c$ , and hence is an irrelevant additive constant that can be dropped. Hence we see that the discriminant function is a linear function of  $\mathbf{x}$ , so the decision boundaries will be linear. Hence this method is called **linear discriminant analysis** or **LDA**. See Fig. 9.2b for an example.

### 9.2.3 The connection between LDA and logistic regression

In this section, we derive an interesting connection between LDA and logistic regression, which we introduced in Sec. 3.2.3. From Eq. (9.7) we can write

$$p(y = c|\mathbf{x}, \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \frac{e^{\boldsymbol{\beta}_c^\top \mathbf{x} + \gamma_c}}{\sum_{c'} e^{\boldsymbol{\beta}_{c'}^\top \mathbf{x} + \gamma_{c'}}} = \frac{e^{\mathbf{w}_c^\top [1, \mathbf{x}]}}{\sum_{c'} e^{\mathbf{w}_{c'}^\top [1, \mathbf{x}]}} \quad (9.8)$$

where  $\mathbf{w}_c = [\gamma_c, \boldsymbol{\beta}_c]$ . We see that Eq. (9.8) has the same form as the multinomial logistic regression model. The key difference is that in LDA, is that we first fit the Gaussians (and class prior) to maximize the joint likelihood  $p(\mathbf{x}, y|\boldsymbol{\theta})$ , as discussed in Sec. 9.2.4, and then we derive  $\mathbf{w}$  from  $\boldsymbol{\theta}$ . By contrast, in logistic regression, we estimate  $\mathbf{w}$  directly to maximize the conditional likelihood  $p(y|\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{w})$ . In general, these can give different results (see Exercise 10.3).

To gain further insight into Eq. (9.8), let us consider the binary case. In this case, the posterior is

given by

$$p(y=1|\mathbf{x}, \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \frac{e^{\boldsymbol{\beta}_1^\top \mathbf{x} + \gamma_1}}{e^{\boldsymbol{\beta}_1^\top \mathbf{x} + \gamma_1} + e^{\boldsymbol{\beta}_0^\top \mathbf{x} + \gamma_0}} = \frac{1}{1 + e^{(\boldsymbol{\beta}_0 - \boldsymbol{\beta}_1)^\top \mathbf{x} + (\gamma_0 - \gamma_1)}} \quad (9.9)$$

$$= \sigma((\boldsymbol{\beta}_1 - \boldsymbol{\beta}_0)^\top \mathbf{x} + (\gamma_1 - \gamma_0)) \quad (9.10)$$

where  $\sigma(\eta)$  refers to the sigmoid function.

Now

$$\gamma_1 - \gamma_0 = -\frac{1}{2}\boldsymbol{\mu}_1^\top \boldsymbol{\Sigma}^{-1} \boldsymbol{\mu}_1 + \frac{1}{2}\boldsymbol{\mu}_0^\top \boldsymbol{\Sigma}^{-1} \boldsymbol{\mu}_0 + \log(\pi_1/\pi_0) \quad (9.11)$$

$$= -\frac{1}{2}(\boldsymbol{\mu}_1 - \boldsymbol{\mu}_0)^\top \boldsymbol{\Sigma}^{-1}(\boldsymbol{\mu}_1 + \boldsymbol{\mu}_0) + \log(\pi_1/\pi_0) \quad (9.12)$$

So if we define

$$\mathbf{w} = \boldsymbol{\beta}_1 - \boldsymbol{\beta}_0 = \boldsymbol{\Sigma}^{-1}(\boldsymbol{\mu}_1 - \boldsymbol{\mu}_0) \quad (9.13)$$

$$\mathbf{x}_0 = \frac{1}{2}(\boldsymbol{\mu}_1 + \boldsymbol{\mu}_0) - (\boldsymbol{\mu}_1 - \boldsymbol{\mu}_0) \frac{\log(\pi_1/\pi_0)}{(\boldsymbol{\mu}_1 - \boldsymbol{\mu}_0)^\top \boldsymbol{\Sigma}^{-1}(\boldsymbol{\mu}_1 - \boldsymbol{\mu}_0)} \quad (9.14)$$

then we have  $\mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x}_0 = -(\gamma_1 - \gamma_0)$ , and hence

$$p(y=1|\mathbf{x}, \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \sigma(\mathbf{w}^\top (\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}_0)) \quad (9.15)$$

This has the same form as binary logistic regression. Hence the MAP decision rule is

$$\hat{y}(\mathbf{x}) = 1 \text{ iff } \mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x} > c \quad (9.16)$$

where  $c = \mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x}_0$ . If  $\pi_0 = \pi_1 = 0.5$ , then the threshold simplifies to  $c = \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{w}^\top(\boldsymbol{\mu}_1 + \boldsymbol{\mu}_0)$ .

To interpret this equation geometrically, suppose  $\boldsymbol{\Sigma} = \sigma^2 \mathbf{I}$ . In this case,  $\mathbf{w} = \sigma^{-2}(\boldsymbol{\mu}_1 - \boldsymbol{\mu}_0)$ , which is parallel to a line joining the two centroids,  $\boldsymbol{\mu}_0$  and  $\boldsymbol{\mu}_1$ . So we can classify a point based by projecting it onto this line, and then checking if the projection is closer to  $\boldsymbol{\mu}_0$  or  $\boldsymbol{\mu}_1$ , as illustrated in Fig. 9.3. The question of how close it has to be depends on the prior over classes. If  $\pi_1 = \pi_0$ , then  $\mathbf{x}_0 = \frac{1}{2}(\boldsymbol{\mu}_1 + \boldsymbol{\mu}_0)$ , which is halfway between the means. If we make  $\pi_1 > \pi_0$ , we have to be closer to  $\boldsymbol{\mu}_0$  than halfway in order to pick class 0. And vice versa if  $\pi_0 > \pi_1$ . Thus we see that the class prior just changes the decision threshold, but not the overall shape of the decision boundary. (A similar argument applies in the multi-class case.)

#### 9.2.4 Model fitting

We now discuss how to fit a GDA model using maximum likelihood estimation. The likelihood function is as follows

$$p(\mathcal{D}|\boldsymbol{\theta}) = \prod_{n=1}^N \text{Cat}(y_n|\boldsymbol{\pi}) \prod_{c=1}^C \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{x}_n|\boldsymbol{\mu}_c, \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_c)^{\mathbb{I}(y_n=c)} \quad (9.17)$$

Hence the log-likelihood is given by

$$\log p(\mathcal{D}|\boldsymbol{\theta}) = \left[ \sum_{n=1}^N \sum_{c=1}^C \mathbb{I}(y_n = c) \log \pi_c \right] + \sum_{c=1}^C \left[ \sum_{n:y_n=c} \log \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{x}_n | \boldsymbol{\mu}_c, \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_c) \right] \quad (9.18)$$

Thus we see that we can optimize  $\boldsymbol{\pi}$  and the  $(\boldsymbol{\mu}_c, \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_c)$  terms separately.

From Sec. 4.2.4, we have that the MLE for the class prior is  $\hat{\pi}_c = \frac{N_c}{N}$ . Using the results from Sec. 4.2.6, we can derive the MLEs for the Gaussians as follows:

$$\hat{\boldsymbol{\mu}}_c = \frac{1}{N_c} \sum_{n:y_n=c} \mathbf{x}_n \quad (9.19)$$

$$\hat{\boldsymbol{\Sigma}}_c = \frac{1}{N_c} \sum_{n:y_n=c} (\mathbf{x}_n - \hat{\boldsymbol{\mu}}_c)(\mathbf{x}_n - \hat{\boldsymbol{\mu}}_c)^\top \quad (9.20)$$

Unfortunately the MLE for  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\Sigma}}_c$  can easily overfit (i.e., the estimate may not be well-conditioned) if  $N_c$  is small compared to  $D$ , the dimensionality of the input features. We discuss some solutions to this below.

#### 9.2.4.1 Tied covariances

If we force  $\boldsymbol{\Sigma}_c = \boldsymbol{\Sigma}$  to be tied, we will get linear decision boundaries, as we have seen. This also usually results in a more reliable parameter estimate, since we can pool all the samples across classes:

$$\hat{\boldsymbol{\Sigma}} = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{c=1}^C \sum_{n:y_n=c} (\mathbf{x}_n - \hat{\boldsymbol{\mu}}_c)(\mathbf{x}_n - \hat{\boldsymbol{\mu}}_c)^\top \quad (9.21)$$

#### 9.2.4.2 Diagonal covariances

If we force  $\boldsymbol{\Sigma}_c$  to be diagonal, we reduce the number of parameters from  $O(CD^2)$  to  $O(CD)$ , which avoids the overfitting problem. However, this loses the ability to capture correlations between the features. (This is known as the naive Bayes assumption, which we discuss further in Sec. 9.3.) Despite this approximation, this approach scales well to high dimensions.

We can further restrict the model capacity by using a shared (tied) diagonal covariance matrix. This is called “diagonal LDA” [BL04].

#### 9.2.4.3 MAP estimation

Forcing the covariance matrix to be diagonal is a rather strong assumption. An alternative approach is to perform MAP estimation of a (shared) full covariance Gaussian, rather than using the MLE. Based on the results of Sec. 4.4.2, we find that the MAP estimate is

$$\hat{\boldsymbol{\Sigma}}_{\text{map}} = \lambda \text{diag}(\hat{\boldsymbol{\Sigma}}_{\text{mle}}) + (1 - \lambda) \hat{\boldsymbol{\Sigma}}_{\text{mle}} \quad (9.22)$$

where  $\lambda$  controls the amount of regularization. This technique is known as **regularized discriminant analysis** or RDA [HTF09, p656].

We can use the technique from Sec. 4.4.2.2 to invert  $\hat{\Sigma}_{\text{map}}$  in a robust way. However, this can still be costly, since the matrix has size  $D \times D$ . Fortunately, in the case of RDA, we never need to actually compute  $\hat{\Sigma}_{\text{map}}$  explicitly. This is because Eq. (9.8) tells us that to classify using LDA, all we need to compute is  $p(y = c|\mathbf{x}, \boldsymbol{\theta}) \propto \exp(\delta_c)$ , where

$$\delta_c = \mathbf{x}^\top \boldsymbol{\beta}_c + \gamma_c \quad (9.23)$$

$$\boldsymbol{\beta}_c = \hat{\Sigma}_{\text{map}}^{-1} \boldsymbol{\mu}_c \quad (9.24)$$

$$\gamma_c = -\frac{1}{2} \boldsymbol{\mu}_c^\top \boldsymbol{\beta}_c + \log \pi_c \quad (9.25)$$

We can compute the crucial  $\boldsymbol{\beta}_c$  term for RDA without inverting the  $D \times D$  matrix as follows:

$$\boldsymbol{\beta}_c = \hat{\Sigma}_{\text{map}}^{-1} \boldsymbol{\mu}_c = (\mathbf{V} \tilde{\Sigma}_z \mathbf{V}^\top)^{-1} \boldsymbol{\mu}_c = \mathbf{V} \tilde{\Sigma}_z^{-1} \mathbf{V}^\top \boldsymbol{\mu}_c = \mathbf{V} \tilde{\Sigma}_z^{-1} \boldsymbol{\mu}_{z,c} \quad (9.26)$$

where  $\boldsymbol{\mu}_{z,c} = \mathbf{V}^\top \boldsymbol{\mu}_c$ , and  $\mathbf{X} = \mathbf{U}\mathbf{D}\mathbf{V}^\top$  is the SVD of  $\mathbf{X}$ .

### 9.2.5 Nearest centroid classifier

If we assume a uniform prior over classes, we can compute the most probable class label as follows:

$$\hat{y}(\mathbf{x}) = \operatorname{argmax}_c \log p(y = c|\mathbf{x}, \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \operatorname{argmin}_c (\mathbf{x} - \boldsymbol{\mu}_c)^\top \boldsymbol{\Sigma}^{-1} (\mathbf{x} - \boldsymbol{\mu}_c) \quad (9.27)$$

This is called the **nearest centroid classifier**, or **nearest class mean classifier (NCM)**, since we are assigning  $\mathbf{x}$  to the class with the closest  $\boldsymbol{\mu}_c$ , where distance is measured using (squared) Mahalanobis distance.

We can replace this with any other distance metric to get the decision rule

$$\hat{y}(\mathbf{x}) = \operatorname{argmin}_c d^2(\mathbf{x}, \boldsymbol{\mu}_c) \quad (9.28)$$

We discuss how to learn distance metrics in Sec. 16.2, but one simple approach is to use

$$d^2(\mathbf{x}, \boldsymbol{\mu}_c) = \|\mathbf{x} - \boldsymbol{\mu}_c\|_{\mathbf{W}}^2 = (\mathbf{x} - \boldsymbol{\mu}_c)^\top (\mathbf{W} \mathbf{W}^\top) (\mathbf{x} - \boldsymbol{\mu}_c) = \|\mathbf{W}(\mathbf{x} - \boldsymbol{\mu}_c)\|^2 \quad (9.29)$$

The corresponding class posterior becomes

$$p(y = c|\mathbf{x}, \boldsymbol{\mu}, \mathbf{W}) = \frac{\exp(-\frac{1}{2} \|\mathbf{W}(\mathbf{x} - \boldsymbol{\mu}_c)\|_2^2)}{\sum_{c'=1}^C \exp(-\frac{1}{2} \|\mathbf{W}(\mathbf{x} - \boldsymbol{\mu}_{c'})\|_2^2)} \quad (9.30)$$

We can optimize  $\mathbf{W}$  using gradient descent applied to the NLL. This is called **nearest class mean metric learning** [Men+12]. The advantage of this technique is that it can be used for **one-shot learning** of new classes, since we just need to see a single labeled prototype  $\boldsymbol{\mu}_c$  per class (assuming we have learned a good  $\mathbf{W}$  already).

### 9.2.6 Fisher's linear discriminant analysis

Discriminant analysis is a generative approach to classification, which requires fitting an MVN to the features. As we have discussed, this can be problematic in high dimensions. An alternative

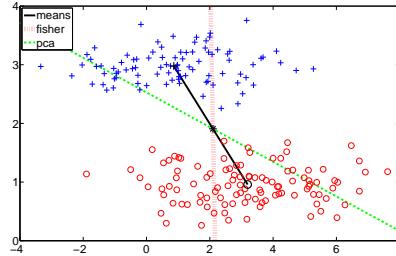


Figure 9.4: Example of Fisher’s linear discriminant applied to data in 2d drawn from two classes. Dashed green line = first principal basis vector. Dotted red line = Fisher’s linear discriminant vector. Solid black line joins the class-conditional means. Generated by [fisherLDAdemo.m](#).

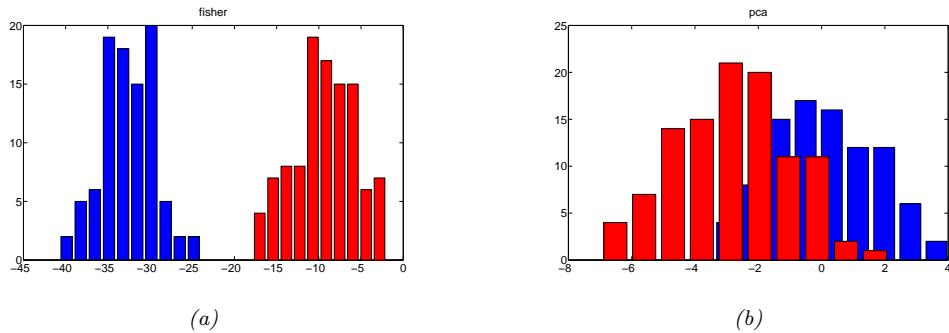


Figure 9.5: Example of Fisher’s linear discriminant. (a) Projection of points onto Fisher’s vector in Fig. 9.4 shows good class separation. (b) Projection of points onto PCA vector in Fig. 9.4 shows poor class separation. Generated by [fisherLDAdemo.m](#).

approach is to reduce the dimensionality of the features  $\mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^D$  and then fit an MVN to the resulting low-dimensional features  $\mathbf{z} \in \mathbb{R}^K$ . The simplest approach is to use a linear projection matrix,  $\mathbf{z} = \mathbf{W}\mathbf{x}$ , where  $\mathbf{W}$  is a  $K \times D$  matrix. One approach to finding  $\mathbf{W}$  would be to use principal components analysis or PCA (Sec. 20.1). However, PCA is an unsupervised technique that does not take class labels into account. Thus the resulting low dimensional features are not necessarily optimal for classification, as illustrated in Fig. 9.4.

An alternative approach is to use gradient based methods to optimize the log likelihood, derived from the class posterior in the low dimensional space, as we discussed in Sec. 9.2.5.

A third approach (which relies on an eigendecomposition, rather than a gradient-based optimizer) is to find the matrix  $\mathbf{W}$  such that the low-dimensional data can be classified as well as possible using a Gaussian class-conditional density model. The assumption of Gaussianity is reasonable since we are computing linear combinations of (potentially non-Gaussian) features. This approach is called **Fisher’s linear discriminant analysis**, or **FLDA**.

FLDA is an interesting hybrid of discriminative and generative techniques. The drawback of this technique is that it is restricted to using  $K \leq C - 1$  dimensions, regardless of  $D$ , for reasons that we

will explain below. In the two-class case, this means we are seeking a single vector  $\mathbf{w}$  onto which we can project the data. Below we derive the optimal  $\mathbf{w}$  in the two-class case. We then generalize to the multi-class case, and finally we give a probabilistic interpretation of this technique.

### 9.2.6.1 Derivation of the optimal 1d projection

We now derive this optimal direction  $\mathbf{w}$ , for the two-class case, following the presentation of [Bis06, Sec 4.1.4]. Define the class-conditional means as

$$\boldsymbol{\mu}_1 = \frac{1}{N_1} \sum_{n:y_n=1} \mathbf{x}_n, \quad \boldsymbol{\mu}_2 = \frac{1}{N_2} \sum_{n:y_n=2} \mathbf{x}_n \quad (9.31)$$

Let  $m_k = \mathbf{w}^\top \boldsymbol{\mu}_k$  be the projection of each mean onto the line  $\mathbf{w}$ . Also, let  $z_n = \mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x}_n$  be the projection of the data onto the line. The variance of the projected points is proportional to

$$s_k^2 = \sum_{n:y_n=k} (z_n - m_k)^2 \quad (9.32)$$

The goal is to find  $\mathbf{w}$  such that we maximize the distance between the means,  $m_2 - m_1$ , while also ensuring the projected clusters are “tight”, which we can do by minimizing their variance. This suggests the following objective:

$$J(\mathbf{w}) = \frac{(m_2 - m_1)^2}{s_1^2 + s_2^2} \quad (9.33)$$

We can rewrite the right hand side of the above in terms of  $\mathbf{w}$  as follows

$$J(\mathbf{w}) = \frac{\mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{S}_B \mathbf{w}}{\mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{S}_W \mathbf{w}} \quad (9.34)$$

where  $\mathbf{S}_B$  is the between-class scatter matrix given by

$$\mathbf{S}_B = (\boldsymbol{\mu}_2 - \boldsymbol{\mu}_1)(\boldsymbol{\mu}_2 - \boldsymbol{\mu}_1)^\top \quad (9.35)$$

and  $\mathbf{S}_W$  is the within-class scatter matrix, given by

$$\mathbf{S}_W = \sum_{n:y_n=1} (\mathbf{x}_n - \boldsymbol{\mu}_1)(\mathbf{x}_n - \boldsymbol{\mu}_1)^\top + \sum_{n:y_n=2} (\mathbf{x}_n - \boldsymbol{\mu}_2)(\mathbf{x}_n - \boldsymbol{\mu}_2)^\top \quad (9.36)$$

To see this, note that

$$\mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{S}_B \mathbf{w} = \mathbf{w}^\top (\boldsymbol{\mu}_2 - \boldsymbol{\mu}_1)(\boldsymbol{\mu}_2 - \boldsymbol{\mu}_1)^\top \mathbf{w} = (m_2 - m_1)(m_2 - m_1) \quad (9.37)$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{S}_W \mathbf{w} &= \sum_{n:y_n=1} \mathbf{w}^\top (\mathbf{x}_n - \boldsymbol{\mu}_1)(\mathbf{x}_n - \boldsymbol{\mu}_1)^\top \mathbf{w} + \\ &\quad \sum_{n:y_n=2} \mathbf{w}^\top (\mathbf{x}_n - \boldsymbol{\mu}_2)(\mathbf{x}_n - \boldsymbol{\mu}_2)^\top \mathbf{w} \end{aligned} \quad (9.38)$$

$$= \sum_{n:y_n=1} (z_n - m_1)^2 + \sum_{n:y_n=2} (z_n - m_2)^2 \quad (9.39)$$

Eq. (9.34) is a ratio of two scalars; we can take its derivative with respect to  $\mathbf{w}$  and equate to zero. One can show (Exercise 9.1) that  $J(\mathbf{w})$  is maximized when

$$\mathbf{S}_B \mathbf{w} = \lambda \mathbf{S}_W \mathbf{w} \quad (9.40)$$

where

$$\lambda = \frac{\mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{S}_B \mathbf{w}}{\mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{S}_W \mathbf{w}} \quad (9.41)$$

Eq. (9.40) is called a **generalized eigenvalue** problem. If  $\mathbf{S}_W$  is invertible, we can convert it to a regular eigenvalue problem:

$$\mathbf{S}_W^{-1} \mathbf{S}_B \mathbf{w} = \lambda \mathbf{w} \quad (9.42)$$

However, in the two class case, there is a simpler solution. In particular, since

$$\mathbf{S}_B \mathbf{w} = (\boldsymbol{\mu}_2 - \boldsymbol{\mu}_1)(\boldsymbol{\mu}_2 - \boldsymbol{\mu}_1)^\top \mathbf{w} = (\boldsymbol{\mu}_2 - \boldsymbol{\mu}_1)(m_2 - m_1) \quad (9.43)$$

then, from Eq. (9.42) we have

$$\lambda \mathbf{w} = \mathbf{S}_W^{-1}(\boldsymbol{\mu}_2 - \boldsymbol{\mu}_1)(m_2 - m_1) \quad (9.44)$$

$$\mathbf{w} \propto \mathbf{S}_W^{-1}(\boldsymbol{\mu}_2 - \boldsymbol{\mu}_1) \quad (9.45)$$

Since we only care about the directionality, and not the scale factor, we can just set

$$\mathbf{w} = \mathbf{S}_W^{-1}(\boldsymbol{\mu}_2 - \boldsymbol{\mu}_1) \quad (9.46)$$

This is the optimal solution in the two-class case. If  $\mathbf{S}_W \propto \mathbf{I}$ , meaning the pooled covariance matrix is isotropic, then  $\mathbf{w}$  is proportional to the vector that joins the class means. This is an intuitively reasonable direction to project onto, as shown in Fig. 9.3.

### 9.2.6.2 Extension to higher dimensions and multiple classes

We can extend the above idea to multiple classes, and to higher dimensional subspaces, by finding a projection *matrix*  $\mathbf{W}$  which maps from  $D$  to  $K$ . Let  $\mathbf{z}_n = \mathbf{W}\mathbf{x}_n$  be the low dimensional projection of the  $n$ 'th data point. Let  $\mathbf{m}_c = \frac{1}{N_c} \sum_{n:y_n=c} \mathbf{z}_n$  be the corresponding mean for the  $c$ 'th class and  $\mathbf{m} = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{c=1}^C N_c \mathbf{m}_c$  be the overall mean, both in the low dimensional space. We define the following scatter matrices:

$$\tilde{\mathbf{S}}_W = \sum_{c=1}^C \sum_{n:y_n=c} (\mathbf{z}_n - \mathbf{m}_c)(\mathbf{z}_n - \mathbf{m}_c)^\top \quad (9.47)$$

$$\tilde{\mathbf{S}}_B = \sum_{c=1}^C N_c (\mathbf{m}_c - \mathbf{m})(\mathbf{m}_c - \mathbf{m})^\top \quad (9.48)$$

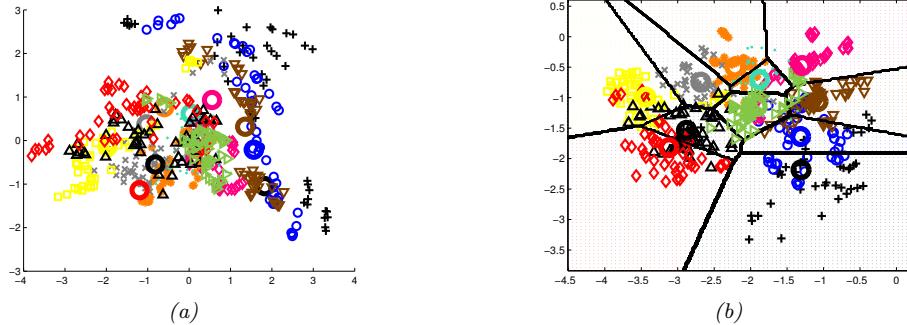


Figure 9.6: (a) PCA projection of vowel data to 2d. (b) FLDA projection of vowel data to 2d. We see there is better class separation in the FLDA case. Adapted from Figure 4.11 of [HTF09]. Generated by `fisherDiscrimVowelDemo.m`, written by Hannes Bretschneider.

Finally, we define the objective function as maximizing the following:<sup>2</sup>

$$J(\mathbf{W}) = \frac{|\tilde{\mathbf{S}}_B|}{|\tilde{\mathbf{S}}_W|} = \frac{|\mathbf{W}^\top \mathbf{S}_B \mathbf{W}|}{|\mathbf{W}^\top \mathbf{S}_W \mathbf{W}|} \quad (9.49)$$

where  $\mathbf{S}_W$  and  $\mathbf{S}_B$  are defined in the original high dimensional space in the obvious way (namely using  $\mathbf{x}_n$  instead of  $\mathbf{z}_n$ ,  $\boldsymbol{\mu}_c$  instead of  $\mathbf{m}_c$ , and  $\boldsymbol{\mu}$  instead of  $\mathbf{m}$ ). The solution can be shown [DHS01] to be  $\mathbf{W} = \mathbf{S}_W^{-\frac{1}{2}} \mathbf{U}$ , where  $\mathbf{U}$  are the  $K$  leading eigenvectors of  $\mathbf{S}_W^{-\frac{1}{2}} \mathbf{S}_B \mathbf{S}_W^{-\frac{1}{2}}$ , assuming  $\mathbf{S}_W$  is non-singular. (If it is singular, we can first perform PCA on all the data.)

Fig. 9.6 gives an example of this method applied to some  $D = 10$  dimensional speech data, representing  $C = 11$  different vowel sounds. We project to  $K = 2$  dimensions in order to visualize the data. We see that FLDA gives better class separation than PCA.

Note that FLDA is restricted to finding at most a  $K \leq C - 1$  dimensional linear subspace, no matter how large  $D$ , because the rank of the between class scatter matrix  $\mathbf{S}_B$  is  $C - 1$ . (The -1 term arises because of the  $\boldsymbol{\mu}$  term, which is a linear function of the  $\boldsymbol{\mu}_c$ .) This is a rather severe restriction which limits the usefulness of FLDA.

### 9.3 Naive Bayes classifiers

In this section, we discuss a simple generative approach to classification in which we assume the features are conditionally independent given the class label. This is called the **naive Bayes assumption**. The model is called “naive” since we do not expect the features to be independent, even conditional on the class label. However, even if the naive Bayes assumption is not true, it often results in classifiers that work well [DP97]. One reason for this is that the model is quite simple (it only has  $O(CD)$  parameters, for  $C$  classes and  $D$  features), and hence it is relatively immune to overfitting.

2. An alternative criterion that is sometimes used [Fuk90] is  $J(\mathbf{W}) = \text{tr} \left\{ \tilde{\mathbf{S}}_W^{-1} \tilde{\mathbf{S}}_B \right\} = \text{tr} \left\{ (\mathbf{W} \mathbf{S}_W \mathbf{W}^\top)^{-1} (\mathbf{W} \mathbf{S}_B \mathbf{W}^\top) \right\}$ .

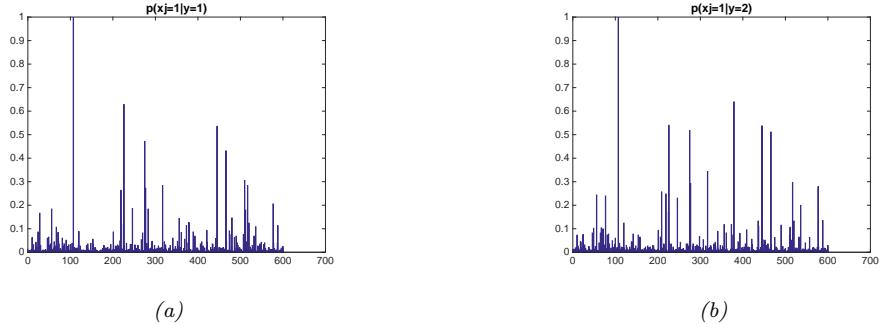


Figure 9.7: Class conditional densities  $p(x_d = 1|y = c)$  for two classes, corresponding to “X windows” and “MS windows”, derived from a bag-of-words representation of some email documents, using a vocabulary of 600 words. The big spike at index 107 corresponds to the word “subject”, which occurs in both classes with probability 1. Generated by [naiveBayesBowDemo.m](#).

More precisely, the naive Bayes assumption corresponds to using a class conditional density of the following form:

$$p(\mathbf{x}|y = c, \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \prod_{d=1}^D p(x_d|y = c, \boldsymbol{\theta}_{dc}) \quad (9.50)$$

where  $\boldsymbol{\theta}_{dc}$  are the parameters for the class conditional density for class  $c$  and feature  $d$ . Hence the posterior over class labels is given by

$$p(y = c|\mathbf{x}, \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \frac{p(y = c|\boldsymbol{\pi}) \prod_{d=1}^D p(x_d|y = c, \boldsymbol{\theta}_{dc})}{\sum_{c'} p(y = c'|\boldsymbol{\pi}) \prod_{d=1}^D p(x_d|y = c', \boldsymbol{\theta}_{dc'})} \quad (9.51)$$

where  $\pi_c$  is the prior probability of class  $c$ , and  $\boldsymbol{\theta} = (\boldsymbol{\pi}, \{\boldsymbol{\theta}_{dc}\})$  are all the parameters. This is known as a **naive Bayes classifier**.

### 9.3.1 Example models

We still need to specify the form of the probability distributions in Eq. (9.50). This depends on what type of feature  $x_d$  is. We give some examples below:

- In the case of binary features,  $x_d \in \{0, 1\}$ , we can use the Bernoulli distribution:  $p(\mathbf{x}|y = c, \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \prod_{d=1}^D \text{Ber}(x_d|\boldsymbol{\theta}_{dc})$ , where  $\boldsymbol{\theta}_{dc}$  is the probability that  $x_d = 1$  in class  $c$ . This is sometimes called the **multivariate Bernoulli naive Bayes** model. See Fig. 9.7 for an example.
- In the case of categorical features,  $x_d \in \{1, \dots, K\}$ , we can use the categorical distribution:  $p(\mathbf{x}|y = c, \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \prod_{d=1}^D \text{Cat}(x_d|\boldsymbol{\theta}_{dc})$ , where  $\boldsymbol{\theta}_{dc}$  is the probability that  $x_d = k$  given that  $y = c$ .
- In the case of real-valued features,  $x_d \in \mathbb{R}$ , we can use the univariate Gaussian distribution:  $p(\mathbf{x}|y = c, \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \prod_{d=1}^D \mathcal{N}(x_d|\mu_{dc}, \sigma_{dc}^2)$ , where  $\mu_{dc}$  is the mean of feature  $d$  when the class label is  $c$ , and  $\sigma_{dc}^2$  is its variance. (This is equivalent to Gaussian discriminant analysis using diagonal covariance matrices.)

### 9.3.2 Model fitting

In this section, we discuss how to fit a naive Bayes classifier using maximum likelihood estimation.

We can write the likelihood as follows:

$$p(\mathcal{D}|\boldsymbol{\theta}) = \prod_{n=1}^N \text{Cat}(y_n|\boldsymbol{\pi}) \prod_{d=1}^D p(x_{nd}|y_n, \boldsymbol{\theta}_d) \quad (9.52)$$

$$= \prod_{n=1}^N \text{Cat}(y_n|\boldsymbol{\pi}) \prod_{d=1}^D \prod_{c=1}^C p(x_{nd}|\boldsymbol{\theta}_{dc}) \mathbb{I}(y_n=c) \quad (9.53)$$

so the log-likelihood is given by

$$\log p(\mathcal{D}|\boldsymbol{\theta}) = \left[ \sum_{n=1}^N \sum_{c=1}^C \mathbb{I}(y_n=c) \log \pi_c \right] + \sum_{c=1}^C \sum_{d=1}^D \left[ \sum_{n:y_n=c} \log p(x_{nd}|\boldsymbol{\theta}_{dc}) \right] \quad (9.54)$$

We see that this decomposes into a term for  $\boldsymbol{\pi}$ , and  $CD$  terms for each  $\boldsymbol{\theta}_{dc}$ :

$$\log p(\mathcal{D}|\boldsymbol{\theta}) = \log p(\mathcal{D}_y|\boldsymbol{\pi}) + \sum_c \sum_d \log p(\mathcal{D}_{dc}|\boldsymbol{\theta}_{dc}) \quad (9.55)$$

where  $\mathcal{D}_y = \{y_n : n = 1 : N\}$  are all the labels, and  $\mathcal{D}_{dc} = \{x_{nd} : y_n = c\}$  are all the values of feature  $d$  for examples from class  $c$ . Hence we can estimate these parameters separately.

In Sec. 4.2.4, we show that the MLE for  $\boldsymbol{\pi}$  is the vector of empirical counts,  $\hat{\pi}_c = \frac{N_c}{N}$ . The MLEs for  $\boldsymbol{\theta}_{dc}$  depend on the choice of the class conditional density for feature  $d$ . We discuss some common choices below.

- In the case of discrete features, we can use a categorical distribution. A straightforward extension of the results in Sec. 4.2.4 gives the following expression for the MLE:

$$\hat{\theta}_{dck} = \frac{N_{dck}}{\sum_{k'=1}^K N_{dck'}} = \frac{N_{dck}}{N_c} \quad (9.56)$$

where  $N_{dck} = \sum_{n=1}^N \mathbb{I}(x_{nd} = k, y_n = c)$  is the number of times that feature  $d$  had value  $k$  in examples of class  $c$ .

- In the case of binary features, the categorical distribution becomes the Bernoulli, and the MLE becomes

$$\hat{\theta}_{dc} = \frac{N_{dc}}{N_c} \quad (9.57)$$

which is the empirical fraction of times that feature  $d$  is on in examples of class  $c$ .

- In the case of real-valued features, we can use a Gaussian distribution. A straightforward extension of the results in Sec. 4.2.5 gives the following expression for the MLE:

$$\hat{\mu}_{dc} = \frac{1}{N_c} \sum_{n:y_n=c} x_{nd} \quad (9.58)$$

$$\hat{\sigma}_{dc}^2 = \frac{1}{N_c} \sum_{n:y_n=c} (x_{nd} - \hat{\mu}_{dc})^2 \quad (9.59)$$

Thus we see that fitting a naive Bayes classifier is extremely simple and efficient.

### 9.3.3 Bayesian naive Bayes

In this section, we extend our discussion of MLE estimation for naive Bayes classifiers from Sec. 9.3.2 to compute the posterior distribution over the parameters. For simplicity, let us assume we have categorical features, so  $p(x_d|\boldsymbol{\theta}_{dc}) = \text{Cat}(x_d|\boldsymbol{\theta}_{dc})$ , where  $\theta_{dck} = p(x_d = k|y = c)$ . In Sec. 7.2.2.2, we show that the conjugate prior for the categorical likelihood is the Dirichlet distribution,  $p(\boldsymbol{\theta}_{dc}) = \text{Dir}(\boldsymbol{\theta}_{dc}|\boldsymbol{\beta}_{dc})$ , where  $\beta_{dck}$  can be interpreted as a set of “**pseudo counts**”, corresponding to counts  $N_{dck}$  that come from prior data. Similarly we use a Dirichlet prior for the label frequencies,  $p(\boldsymbol{\pi}) = \text{Dir}(\boldsymbol{\pi}|\boldsymbol{\alpha})$ . By using a conjugate prior, we can compute the posterior in closed form, as we explain in Sec. 7.2.2. In particular, we have

$$p(\boldsymbol{\theta}|\mathcal{D}) = \text{Dir}(\boldsymbol{\pi}|\boldsymbol{\alpha}) \prod_{d=1}^D \prod_{c=1}^C \text{Dir}(\boldsymbol{\theta}_{dc}|\boldsymbol{\beta}_{dc}) \quad (9.60)$$

where  $\hat{\alpha}_c = \check{\alpha}_c + N_c$  and  $\hat{\beta}_{dck} = \check{\beta}_{dck} + N_{dck}$ .

Using the results from Sec. 7.2.2.4, we can derive the posterior predictive distribution as follows. The prior over the label is given by  $p(y|\mathcal{D}) = \text{Cat}(y|\bar{\boldsymbol{\pi}})$ , where  $\bar{\pi}_c = \hat{\alpha}_c / \sum_{c'} \hat{\alpha}_{c'}$ . For the features, we have  $p(x_d = k|y = c, \mathcal{D}) = \bar{\theta}_{dck}$ , where

$$\bar{\theta}_{dck} = \frac{\hat{\beta}_{dck}}{\sum_{k'} \hat{\beta}_{dck'}} = \frac{\check{\beta}_{dck} + N_{dck}}{\sum_{k'} \check{\beta}_{dck'} + N_{dck'}} \quad (9.61)$$

is the posterior mean of the parameters. (If  $\check{\beta} = 0$ , this reduces to the MLE in Eq. (9.56).) We can then combine these using Bayes rule to compute the predicted distribution over the label, conditioned on the observed test feature vector  $\mathbf{x}$  as well as the training data  $\mathcal{D}$ :

$$p(y = c|\mathbf{x}, \mathcal{D}) \propto p(y = c|\mathcal{D}) \prod_d p(x_d|y = c, \mathcal{D}) = \bar{\pi}_c \prod_d \prod_k \bar{\theta}_{dck}^{\mathbb{I}(x_d=k)} \quad (9.62)$$

This gives us a fully Bayesian form of naive Bayes, in which we have integrated out all the parameters.

### 9.3.4 The connection between naive Bayes and logistic regression

In this section, we show that the class posterior  $p(y|\mathbf{x}, \boldsymbol{\theta})$  for a NBC model has the same form as multinomial logistic regression. For simplicity, we assume that the features are all discrete, and each has  $K$  states, although the result holds for arbitrary feature distributions in the exponential family.

Let  $x_{dk} = \mathbb{I}(x_d = k)$ , so  $\mathbf{x}_d$  is a one-hot encoding of feature  $d$ . Then the class conditional density can be written as follows:

$$p(\mathbf{x}|y = c, \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \prod_{d=1}^D \text{Cat}(x_d|y = c, \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \prod_{d=1}^D \prod_{k=1}^K \theta_{dck}^{x_{dk}} \quad (9.63)$$

Hence the posterior over classes is given by

$$p(y = c|\mathbf{x}, \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \frac{\pi_c \prod_d \prod_k \theta_{dck}^{x_{dk}}}{\sum_{c'} \pi_{c'} \prod_d \prod_k \theta_{dc'k}^{x_{dk}}} = \frac{\exp[\log \pi_c + \sum_d \sum_k x_{dk} \log \theta_{dck}]}{\sum_{c'} \exp[\log \pi_{c'} + \sum_d \sum_k x_{dk} \log \theta_{dc'k}]} \quad (9.64)$$

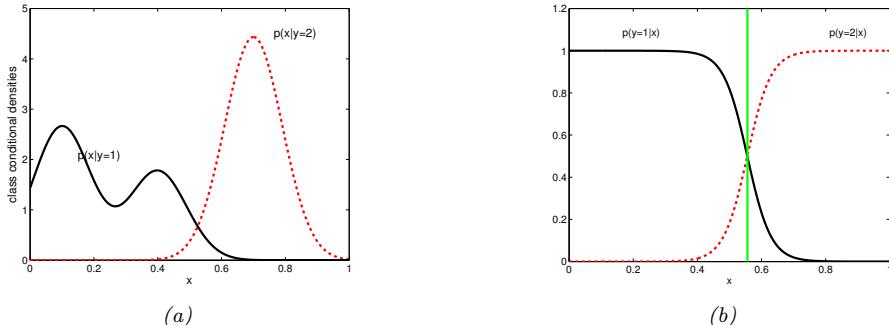


Figure 9.8: The class-conditional densities  $p(x|y = c)$  (left) may be more complex than the class posteriors  $p(y = c|x)$  (right). Adapted from Figure 1.27 of [Bis06]. Generated by `generativeVsDiscrim.m`.

This can be written as a softmax

$$p(y = c | \mathbf{x}, \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \frac{e^{\boldsymbol{\beta}_c^\top \mathbf{x} + \gamma_c}}{\sum_{c'=1}^C e^{\boldsymbol{\beta}_{c'}^\top \mathbf{x} + \gamma_{c'}}} \quad (9.65)$$

by suitably defining  $\beta_c$  and  $\gamma_c$ . This has exactly the same form as multinomial logistic regression in Sec. 3.2.3. The difference is that with naive Bayes we optimize the joint likelihood  $\prod_n p(y_n, \mathbf{x}_n | \boldsymbol{\theta})$ , whereas with logistic regression, we optimize the conditional likelihood  $\prod_n p(y_n | \mathbf{x}_n, \boldsymbol{\theta})$ . In general, these can give different results (see Exercise 10.3).

## 9.4 Generative vs discriminative classifiers

A model of the form  $p(\mathbf{x}, y) = p(y)p(\mathbf{x}|y)$  is called a **generative classifier**, since it can be used to generate examples  $\mathbf{x}$  from each class  $y$ . By contrast, a model of the form  $p(y|\mathbf{x})$  is called a **discriminative classifier**, since it can only be used to discriminate between different classes. Below we discuss various pros and cons of the generative and discriminative approaches to classification.

#### 9.4.1 Advantages of discriminative classifiers

The main advantages of discriminative classifiers are as follows:

- **Better predictive accuracy.** Discriminative classifiers are often much more accurate than generative classifiers [NJ02]. The reason is that the conditional distribution  $p(y|\mathbf{x})$  is often much simpler (and therefore easier to learn) than the joint distribution  $p(y, \mathbf{x})$ , as illustrated in Fig. 9.8. In particular, discriminative models do not need to “waste effort” modeling the distribution of the input features.
  - **Can handle feature preprocessing.** A big advantage of discriminative methods is that they allow us to preprocess the input in arbitrary ways. For example, we can perform a polynomial expansion of the input features, and we can replace a string of words with embedding vectors (see Sec. 19.5). It is often hard to define a generative model on such pre-processed data, since the new features can be correlated in complex ways which are hard to model.

- **Well-calibrated probabilities.** Some generative classifiers, such as naive Bayes (described in Sec. 9.3), make strong independence assumptions which are often not valid. This can result in very extreme posterior class probabilities (very near 0 or 1). Discriminative models, such as logistic regression, are often better calibrated in terms of their probability estimates, although they also sometimes need adjustment (see e.g., [NMC05]).

#### 9.4.2 Advantages of generative classifiers

The main advantages of generative classifiers are as follows:

- **Easy to fit.** Generative classifiers are often very easy to fit. For example, in Sec. 9.3.2, we show how to fit a naive Bayes classifier by simple counting and averaging. By contrast, logistic regression requires solving a convex optimization problem (see Sec. 10.2.3 for the details), and neural nets require solving a non-convex optimization problem, both of which are much slower.
- **Can easily handle missing input features.** Sometimes some of the inputs (components of  $\mathbf{x}$ ) are not observed. In a generative classifier, there is a simple method for dealing with this, as we show in Sec. 9.4.3. However, in a discriminative classifier, there is no principled solution to this problem, since the model assumes that  $\mathbf{x}$  is always available to be conditioned on.
- **Can fit classes separately.** In a generative classifier, we estimate the parameters of each class conditional density independently (as we show in Sec. 9.3.2), so we do not have to retrain the model when we add more classes. In contrast, in discriminative models, all the parameters interact, so the whole model must be retrained if we add a new class.
- **Can handle unlabeled training data.** It is easy to use generative models for semi-supervised learning, in which we combine labeled data  $\mathcal{D}_{xy} = \{(\mathbf{x}_n, y_n)\}$  and unlabeled data,  $\mathcal{D}_x = \{\mathbf{x}_n\}$ . However, this is harder to do with discriminative models, since there is no uniquely optimal way to exploit  $\mathcal{D}_x$ .

#### 9.4.3 Handling missing features

Sometimes we are missing parts of the input  $\mathbf{x}$  during training and/or testing.

In a generative classifier, we can handle missing features that are missing at by marginalizing them out. (We assume that the missingness of a feature is not informative about its potential value.) For example, if we are missing the value of  $x_1$ , we can compute

$$p(y = c | \mathbf{x}_{2:D}, \boldsymbol{\theta}) \propto p(y = c | \boldsymbol{\pi}) p(\mathbf{x}_{2:D} | y = c, \boldsymbol{\theta}) \quad (9.66)$$

$$= p(y = c | \boldsymbol{\pi}) \sum_{x_1} p(x_1, \mathbf{x}_{2:D} | y = c, \boldsymbol{\theta}) \quad (9.67)$$

In Gaussian discriminant analysis, we can marginalize out  $x_1$  using the equations from Sec. 3.5.3. If we make the naive Bayes assumption, things are even easier, since we can just ignore the likelihood term for  $x_1$ . This follows because

$$\sum_{x_1} p(x_1, \mathbf{x}_{2:D} | y = c, \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \left[ \sum_{x_1} p(x_1 | \boldsymbol{\theta}_{1c}) \right] \prod_{d=2}^D p(x_d | \boldsymbol{\theta}_{dc}) = \prod_{d=2}^D p(x_d | \boldsymbol{\theta}_{dc}) \quad (9.68)$$

where we exploited the fact that  $\sum_{x_1} p(x_1|y=c, \boldsymbol{\theta}_1) = 1$ .

By contrast, if we were using a discriminative model, there is no When using a discriminative model, there is no unique best way to handle missing inputs. A common heuristic is called **mean value imputation**, in which missing values are replaced by their empirical mean. Another approach is to represent missing values with a special value (e.g., 0), but then the model cannot distinguish between observing the value of 0 and not observing any value. To solve this problem, we can add a binary indicator variable for each variable to specify if it is missing or observed. We then fit a model of the form  $p(y|\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{m})$ , where  $\mathbf{m}$  is the missingness vector [Mar08].

## 9.5 Exercises

**Exercise 9.1** [Derivation of Fisher's linear discriminant]

Show that the maximum of  $J(\mathbf{w}) = \frac{\mathbf{w}^T \mathbf{S}_B \mathbf{w}}{\mathbf{w}^T \mathbf{S}_W \mathbf{w}}$  is given by  $\mathbf{S}_B \mathbf{w} = \lambda \mathbf{S}_W \mathbf{w}$

where  $\lambda = \frac{\mathbf{w}^T \mathbf{S}_B \mathbf{w}}{\mathbf{w}^T \mathbf{S}_W \mathbf{w}}$ . Hint: recall that the derivative of a ratio of two scalars is given by  $\frac{d}{dx} \frac{f(x)}{g(x)} = \frac{f'g - fg'}{g^2}$ , where  $f' = \frac{d}{dx} f(x)$  and  $g' = \frac{d}{dx} g(x)$ . Also, recall that  $\frac{d}{dx} \mathbf{x}^T \mathbf{A} \mathbf{x} = (\mathbf{A} + \mathbf{A}^T) \mathbf{x}$ .

# 10 Logistic regression

## 10.1 Introduction

**Logistic regression** is a widely used discriminative classification model  $p(y|\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta})$ , where  $\mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^D$  is a fixed-dimensional input vector,  $y \in \{1, \dots, C\}$  is the class label, and  $\boldsymbol{\theta}$  are the parameters. If  $C = 2$ , this is known as **binary logistic regression**, and if  $C > 2$ , it is known as **multinomial logistic regression**, or alternatively, **multiclass logistic regression**. We give the details below.

## 10.2 Binary logistic regression

Binary logistic regression corresponds to the following model

$$p(y|\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \text{Ber}(y|\sigma(\mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x} + b)) \quad (10.1)$$

where  $\sigma$  is the sigmoid function defined in Sec. 3.1.2. In other words,

$$p(y=1|\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \sigma(a) = \frac{1}{1 + e^{-a}} \quad (10.2)$$

where  $a = \mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x} + b$  is the log-odds,  $\log(p/(1-p))$ , where  $p = p(y=1|\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta})$ , as explained in Sec. 3.1.2. (In ML, the quantity  $a$  is usually called the **logit** or the **pre-activation**.)

Sometimes we choose to use the labels  $\tilde{y} \in \{-1, +1\}$  instead of  $y \in \{0, 1\}$ . We can compute the probability of these alternative labels using

$$p(\tilde{y}|\mathbf{x}, \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \sigma(\tilde{y}a) \quad (10.3)$$

since  $\sigma(-a) = 1 - \sigma(a)$ . This slightly more compact notation is widely used in the ML literature.

### 10.2.1 Linear classifiers

The sigmoid gives the probability that the class label is  $y = 1$ . If the loss for misclassifying each class is the same, then the optimal decision rule is to predict  $y = 1$  iff class 1 is more likely than class 0, as we explained in Sec. 8.1.2.2. Thus

$$f(\mathbf{x}) = \mathbb{I}(p(y=1|\mathbf{x}) > p(y=0|\mathbf{x})) = \mathbb{I}\left(\log \frac{p(y=1|\mathbf{x})}{p(y=0|\mathbf{x})} > 0\right) = \mathbb{I}(a > 0) \quad (10.4)$$

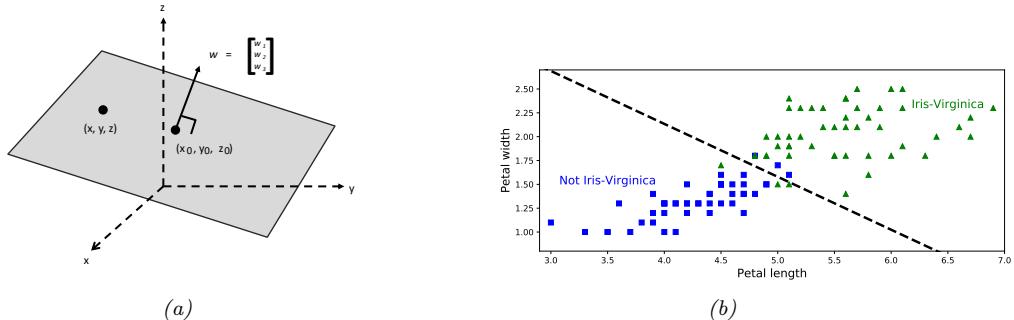


Figure 10.1: (a) Visualization of a 2d plane in a 3d space with surface normal  $\mathbf{w}$  going through point  $\mathbf{x}_0 = (x_0, y_0, z_0)$ . See text for details. (b) Visualization of optimal linear decision boundary induced by logistic regression on a 2-class, 2-feature version of the iris dataset. Generated by `iris_logreg.py`. Adapted from Figure 4.24 of [Gér19].

where  $a = \mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x} + b$ .

Thus we can write the prediction function as follows:

$$f(\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta}) = b + \mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x} = b + \sum_{d=1}^D w_d x_d \quad (10.5)$$

where  $\mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x} = \langle \mathbf{w}, \mathbf{x} \rangle$  is the inner product between the weight vector  $\mathbf{w}$  and the feature vector  $\mathbf{x}$ . This function defines a linear **hyperplane**, with normal vector  $\mathbf{w} \in \mathbb{R}^D$  and an offset  $b \in \mathbb{R}$  from the origin.

Eq. (10.5) can be understood by looking at Fig. 10.1a. Here we show a plane in a 3d feature space going through the point  $\mathbf{x}_0$  with surface normal  $\mathbf{w}$ . Points on the surface satisfy  $\mathbf{w}^\top (\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}_0) = 0$ . If we define  $b = -\mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x}_0$ , we can rewrite this as  $\mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x} + b = 0$ . This plane separates 3d space into two **half spaces**. This linear plane is known as a **decision boundary**. If we can perfectly separate the training examples by such a linear boundary (without making any classification errors on the training set), we say the data is **linearly separable**. From Fig. 10.1b, we see that the two-class, two-feature version of the iris dataset is not linearly separable.

In general, there will be uncertainty about the correct class label, so we need to predict a probability distribution over labels, and not just decide which side of the decision boundary we are on. In Fig. 10.2, we plot  $p(y = 1 | x_1, x_2; \mathbf{w}) = \sigma(w_1 x_1 + w_2 x_2)$  for different weight vectors  $\mathbf{w}$ . The vector  $\mathbf{w}$  defines the orientation of the decision boundary, and its magnitude,  $\|\mathbf{w}\| = \sqrt{\sum_{d=1}^D w_d^2}$ , controls the steepness of the sigmoid, and hence the confidence of the predictions.

### 10.2.2 Nonlinear classifiers

We can often make a problem linearly separable by preprocessing the inputs in a suitable way. In particular, let  $\phi(\mathbf{x})$  be a transformed version of the input feature vector. For example, suppose we use  $\phi(x_1, x_2) = [1, x_1^2, x_2^2]$ , and we let  $\mathbf{w} = [-R^2, 1, 1]$ . Then  $\mathbf{w}^\top \phi(\mathbf{x}) = x_1^2 + x_2^2 - R^2$ , so the decision boundary (where  $f(\mathbf{x}) = 0$ ) defines a circle with radius  $R$ , as shown in Fig. 10.3. The resulting

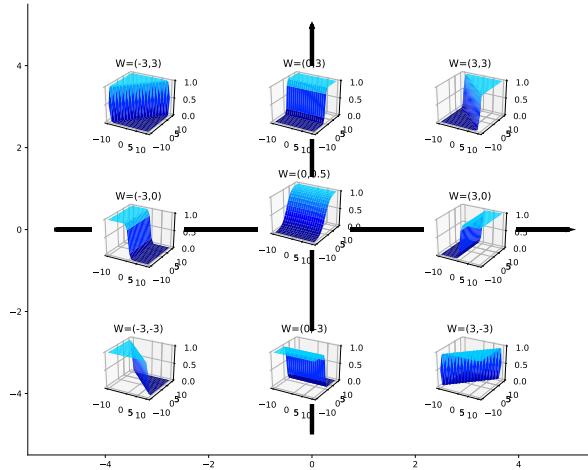


Figure 10.2: Plots of  $\sigma(w_1 x_1 + w_2 x_2)$ . Here  $\mathbf{w} = (w_1, w_2)$  defines the normal to the decision boundary. Points to the right of this have  $\sigma(\mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x}) > 0.5$ , and points to the left have  $\sigma(\mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x}) < 0.5$ . Adapted from Figure 39.3 of [Mac03]. Generated by [sigmoid\\_2d\\_plot.py](#).

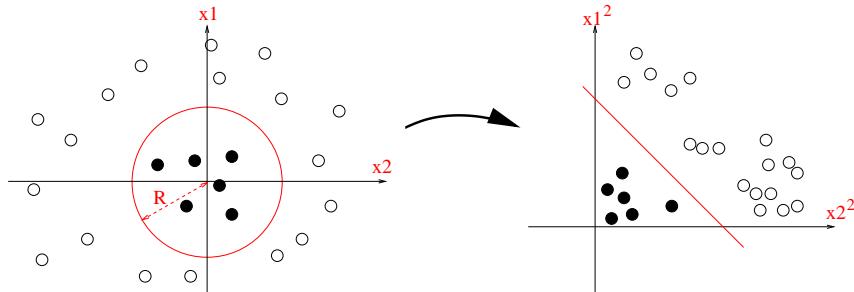


Figure 10.3: Illustration of how we can transform a quadratic decision boundary into a linear one by transforming the features from  $\mathbf{x} = (x_1, x_2)$  to  $\phi(\mathbf{x}) = (x_1^2, x_2^2)$ . Used with kind permission of Jean-Philippe Vert

function  $f$  is still linear in the parameters  $\mathbf{w}$ , which is important for simplifying the learning problem, as we will see in Sec. 10.2.3. However, we can gain even more power by learning the parameters of the feature extractor  $\phi(\mathbf{x})$  in addition to linear weights  $\mathbf{w}$ ; we discuss how to do this in Part III.

In Fig. 10.3, we used a quadratic expansion of the features. We can also use a higher order polynomial, as in Sec. 1.2.2.2. In Fig. 1.7, we show the effects of using polynomial expansion up to degree  $K$  on a 2d logistic regression problem. As in Fig. 1.7, we see that the model becomes more complex as the number of parameters increases, and eventually results in overfitting. We discuss ways to reduce overfitting in Sec. 10.2.7.

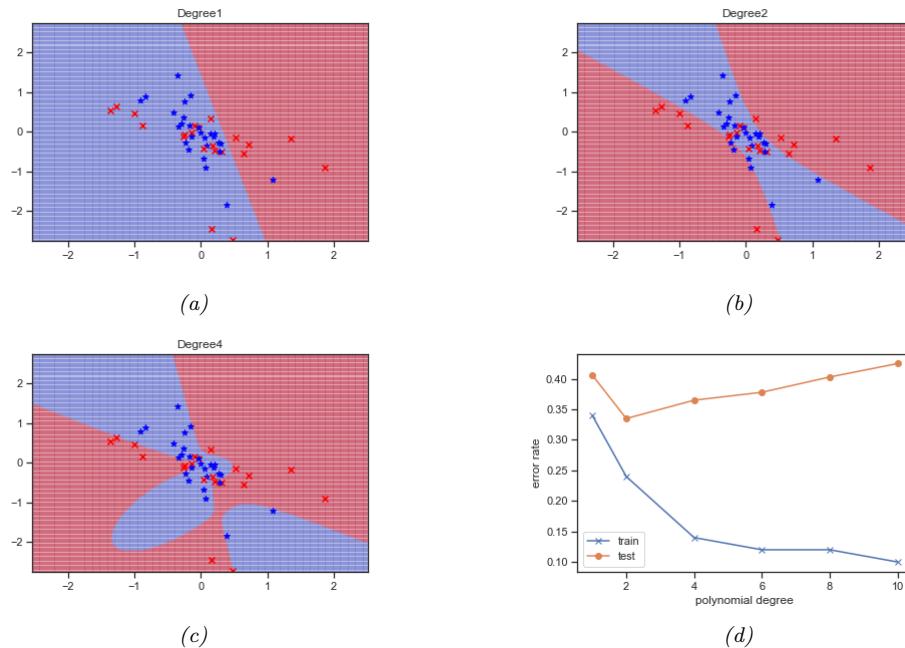


Figure 10.4: Polynomial feature expansion applied to a two-class, two-dimensional logistic regression problem. (a) Degree  $K = 1$ . (b) Degree  $K = 2$ . (c) Degree  $K = 4$ . (d) Train and test error vs degree. Generated by [logreg\\_poly\\_demo.py](#).

### 10.2.3 Maximum likelihood estimation

In this section, we discuss how to estimate the parameters of a logistic regression model using maximum likelihood estimation.

### 10.2.3.1 Objective function

The NLL (ignoring the bias term, for notational simplicity) is given by

$$\text{NLL}(\mathbf{w}) = -\log \prod_{n=1}^N \text{Ber}(y_n | \mu_n) \quad (10.6)$$

$$= -\sum_{n=1}^N \log[\mu_n^{y_n} \times (1 - \mu_n)^{1-y_n}] \quad (10.7)$$

$$= -\sum_{n=1}^N [y_n \log \mu_n + (1 - y_n) \log(1 - \mu_n)] \quad (10.8)$$

$$= \sum_{n=1}^N \mathbb{H}(y_n, \mu_n) \quad (10.9)$$

where  $\mu_n = \sigma(a_n)$  is the probability of class 1,  $a_n = \mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x}_n$  is the log odds, and  $\mathbb{H}(y_n, \mu_n)$  is the **binary cross entropy** defined by

$$\mathbb{H}(p, q) = -[p \log q + (1 - p) \log(1 - q)] \quad (10.10)$$

If we use  $\tilde{y}_n \in \{-1, +1\}$  instead of  $y_n \in \{0, 1\}$ , then we can rewrite this as follows:

$$\text{NLL}(\mathbf{w}) = -\sum_{n=1}^N [\mathbb{I}(\tilde{y}_n = 1) \log(\sigma(a_n)) + \mathbb{I}(\tilde{y}_n = -1) \log(\sigma(-a_n))] \quad (10.11)$$

$$= -\sum_{n=1}^N \log(\sigma(\tilde{y}_n a_n)) \quad (10.12)$$

$$= \sum_{n=1}^N \log(1 + \exp(-\tilde{y}_n a_n)) \quad (10.13)$$

However, in this book, we will mostly use the  $y_n \in \{0, 1\}$  notation, since it is easier to generalize to the multiclass case (Sec. 10.3), and makes the connection with cross-entropy easier to see.

### 10.2.3.2 Optimizing the objective

To find the MLE, we must solve

$$\nabla_{\mathbf{w}} \text{NLL}(\mathbf{w}) = \mathbf{g}(\mathbf{w}) = \mathbf{0} \quad (10.14)$$

We can use any gradient-based optimization algorithm to solve this, such as those we discuss in Chapter 5. We give a specific example in Sec. 10.2.4. But first we must derive the gradient, as we explain below.

### 10.2.3.3 Deriving the gradient

Although we can use automatic differentiation methods (Sec. 13.3.3) to compute the gradient of the NLL, it is also easy to do explicitly, as we show below. Fortunately the resulting equations will turn out to have a simple and intuitive interpretation, which can be used to derive other methods, as we will see.

To start, note that

$$\frac{d\mu_n}{da_n} = \sigma(a_n)(1 - \sigma(a_n)) \quad (10.15)$$

where  $a_n = \mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x}_n$  and  $\mu_n = \sigma(a_n)$ . Hence by the chain rule (and the rules of vector calculus, discussed in Appendix A.3) we have

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial w_d} \mu_n = \frac{\partial}{\partial w_d} \sigma(\mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x}_n) = \frac{\partial}{\partial a_n} \sigma(a_n) \frac{\partial a_n}{\partial w_d} = \mu_n(1 - \mu_n)x_{nd} \quad (10.16)$$

The gradient for the bias term can be derived in the same way, by using the input  $x_{n0} = 1$  in the above equation. However, we will ignore the bias term for simplicity. Hence

$$\nabla_{\mathbf{w}} \log(\mu_n) = \frac{1}{\mu_n} \nabla_{\mathbf{w}} \mu_n = (1 - \mu_n)\mathbf{x}_n \quad (10.17)$$

Similarly,

$$\nabla_{\mathbf{w}} \log(1 - \mu_n) = \frac{-\mu_n(1 - \mu_n)\mathbf{x}_n}{1 - \mu_n} = -\mu_n\mathbf{x}_n \quad (10.18)$$

Thus the gradient vector of the NLL is given by

$$\nabla_{\mathbf{w}} \text{NLL}(\mathbf{w}) = - \sum_{n=1}^N [y_n(1 - \mu_n)\mathbf{x}_n - (1 - y_n)\mu_n\mathbf{x}_n] \quad (10.19)$$

$$= - \sum_{n=1}^N [y_n\mathbf{x}_n - y_n\mathbf{x}_n\mu_n - \mathbf{x}_n\mu_n + y_n\mathbf{x}_n\mu_n] \quad (10.20)$$

$$= \sum_{n=1}^N (\mu_n - y_n)\mathbf{x}_n \quad (10.21)$$

$$= \mathbf{1}_N^\top (\text{diag}(\boldsymbol{\mu} - \mathbf{y}) \mathbf{X}) \quad (10.22)$$

This has a nice intuitive interpretation as the sum of the differences between the observed label  $y_n$  and the prediction  $\mu_n$ , weighted by the inputs  $\mathbf{x}_n$ .

### 10.2.3.4 Deriving the Hessian

Gradient-based optimizers will find a stationary point where  $\mathbf{g}(\mathbf{w}) = \mathbf{0}$ . This could either be a global optimum or a local optimum. To be sure the stationary point is the global optimum, we must show that the objective is **convex**, for reasons we explain in Sec. 5.1.1.1. Intuitively this means that the

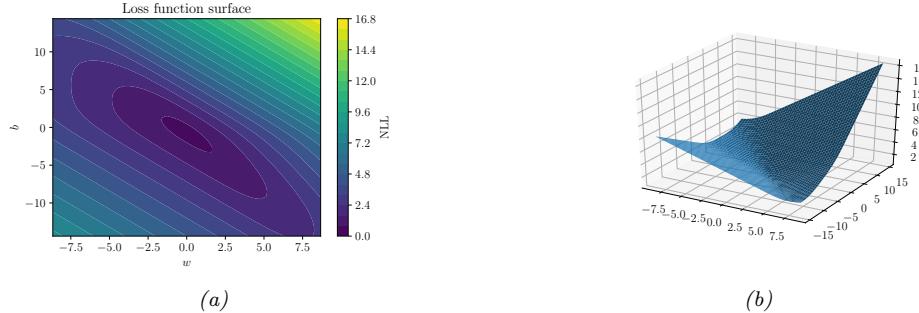


Figure 10.5: NLL loss surface for binary logistic regression applied to Iris dataset with 1 feature and 1 bias term. The goal is to minimize the function. Generated by `iris_logreg_loss_surface.py`.

NLL has a **bowl shape**, with a unique lowest point, which is indeed the case, as illustrated in Fig. 10.5b.

More formally, we must prove that the Hessian is positive semi-definite, which we now do. (See Chapter B for relevant background information on linear algebra.) Once can show that the Hessian is given by

$$\mathbf{H}(\mathbf{w})\nabla_{\mathbf{w}}\nabla_{\mathbf{w}}^{\top}\text{NLL}(\mathbf{w}) = \sum_{n=1}^N (\mu_n(1-\mu_n)\mathbf{x}_n)\mathbf{x}_n^{\top} = \mathbf{X}^{\top}\mathbf{S}\mathbf{X} \quad (10.23)$$

where

$$\mathbf{S} \triangleq \text{diag}(\mu_1(1-\mu_1), \dots, \mu_N(1-\mu_N)) \quad (10.24)$$

We see that  $\mathbf{H}$  is positive semi definite, since for any nonzero vector  $\mathbf{v}$ , we have

$$\mathbf{v}^{\top}\mathbf{X}^{\top}\mathbf{S}\mathbf{X}\mathbf{v} = (\mathbf{v}^{\top}\mathbf{X}^{\top}\mathbf{S}^{\frac{1}{2}})(\mathbf{S}^{\frac{1}{2}}\mathbf{X}\mathbf{v}) = \|\mathbf{v}^{\top}\mathbf{X}^{\top}\mathbf{S}^{\frac{1}{2}}\|_2^2 \geq 0 \quad (10.25)$$

We can ensure that the NLL is strictly convex by ensuring that  $\mu_n > 0$  for all  $n$ ; we can do this using  $\ell_2$  regularization, as we discuss in Sec. 10.2.7.

#### 10.2.4 Stochastic gradient descent

Our goal is to solve the following optimization problem

$$\hat{\mathbf{w}} \triangleq \underset{\mathbf{w}}{\operatorname{argmin}} \mathcal{L}(\mathbf{w}) \quad (10.26)$$

where  $\mathcal{L}(\mathbf{w})$  is the loss function, in this case the negative log likelihood:

$$\text{NLL}(\mathbf{w}) = -\sum_{n=1}^N [y_n \log \mu_n + (1-y_n) \log(1-\mu_n)] \quad (10.27)$$

where  $\mu_n = \sigma(a_n)$  is the probability of class 1, and  $a_n = \mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x}_n$  is the log odds.

There are many algorithms we could use to compute Eq. (10.26), as we discuss in Chapter 5. Perhaps the simplest is to use stochastic gradient descent (Sec. 5.4). If we use a minibatch of size 1, then we get the following simple update equation:

$$\mathbf{w}_{t+1} = \mathbf{w}_t - \eta_t(\mu_n - y_n)\mathbf{x}_n \quad (10.28)$$

where on step  $t$  we sample example  $n = n_t$ .

Since we know the objective is convex (see Sec. 10.2.3.4), then one can show that this procedure will converge to the global optimum, provided we decay the learning rate at the appropriate rate (see Sec. 5.4.3). We can improve the convergence speed using variance reduction techniques such as SAGA (Sec. 5.4.5.2).

### 10.2.5 Perceptron algorithm

A **perceptron**, first introduced in [Ros58], is a deterministic binary classifier of the following form:

$$f(\mathbf{x}_n; \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \mathbb{I}(\mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x}_n + b > 0) \quad (10.29)$$

This can be seen to be a limiting case of a binary logistic regression classifier, in which the sigmoid function  $\sigma(a)$  is replaced by the Heaviside step function  $H(a) \triangleq \mathbb{I}(a > 0)$ . See Fig. 3.2 for a comparison of these two functions.

Since the Heaviside function is not differentiable, we cannot use gradient-based optimization methods to fit this model. However, Rosenblatt proposed the **perceptron learning algorithm** instead. The basic idea is to start with random weights, and then iteratively update them whenever the model makes a prediction mistake. More precisely, we update the weights using

$$\mathbf{w}_{t+1} = \mathbf{w}_t - \eta_t(\hat{y}_n - y_n)\mathbf{x}_n \quad (10.30)$$

where  $(\mathbf{x}_n, y_n)$  is the labeled example sampled at iteration  $t$ , and  $\eta_t$  is the learning rate or step size. (We can set the step size to 1, since the magnitude of the weights does not affect the decision boundary.) See `perceptron_demo_2d.py` for a simple implementation of this algorithm.

The perceptron update rule in Eq. (10.30) has an intuitive interpretation: if the prediction is correct, no change is made, otherwise we move the weights in a direction so as to make the correct answer more likely. More precisely, if  $y_n = 1$  and  $\hat{y}_n = 0$ , we have  $\mathbf{w}_{t+1} = \mathbf{w}_t + \mathbf{x}_n$ , and if  $y_n = 0$  and  $\hat{y}_n = 1$ , we have  $\mathbf{w}_{t+1} = \mathbf{w}_t - \mathbf{x}_n$ .

By comparing Eq. (10.30) to Eq. (10.28), we see that the perceptron update rule is equivalent to the SGD update rule for binary logistic regression using the approximation where we replace the soft probabilities  $\mu_n = p(y_n = 1 | \mathbf{x}_n)$  with hard labels  $\hat{y}_n = f(\mathbf{x}_n)$ . The advantage of the perceptron method is that we don't need to compute probabilities, which can be useful when the label space is very large. The disadvantage is that the method will only converge when the data is linearly separable [Nov62], whereas SGD for minimizing the NLL for logistic regression will always converge to the globally optimal MLE, even if the data is not linearly separable.

In Sec. 13.2, we will generalize perceptrons to nonlinear functions, thus significantly enhancing their usefulness.

### 10.2.6 Iteratively reweighted least squares

Gradient descent is a **first order** optimization method, which means it only uses first order gradients to navigate through the loss landscape. This can be slow, especially when some directions of space point steeply downhill, whereas other have a shallower gradient, as is the case in Fig. 10.5a. In such problems, it can be much faster to use a **second order** optimization method, that takes the curvature of the space into account.

We discuss such methods in more detail in Sec. 5.3. Here we just consider a simple second order method that works well for logistic regression. We focus on the full batch setting (so we assume  $N$  is small), since it is harder to make second order methods work in the stochastic setting (see e.g., [Byr+16; Liu+18b] for some methods).

The classic second-order method is **Newton's method**. This consists of updates of the form

$$\mathbf{w}_{t+1} = \mathbf{w}_t - \eta_t \mathbf{H}_t^{-1} \mathbf{g}_t \quad (10.31)$$

where

$$\mathbf{H}_t \triangleq \nabla^2 \mathcal{L}(\mathbf{w})|_{\mathbf{w}_t} = \nabla^2 \mathcal{L}(\mathbf{w}_t) = \mathbf{H}(\mathbf{w}_t) \quad (10.32)$$

is assumed to be positive-definite to ensure the update is well-defined. If the Hessian is exact, we can set the step size to  $\eta_t = 1$ .

We now apply this method to logistic regression. Recall from Sec. 10.2.3.3 that the gradient and Hessian are given by

$$\nabla_{\mathbf{w}} \text{NLL}(\mathbf{w}) = \sum_{n=1}^N (\mu_n - y_n) \mathbf{x}_n \quad (10.33)$$

$$\mathbf{H} = \mathbf{X}^\top \mathbf{S} \mathbf{X} \quad (10.34)$$

$$\mathbf{S} \triangleq \text{diag}(\mu_1(1 - \mu_1), \dots, \mu_N(1 - \mu_N)) \quad (10.35)$$

Hence the Newton update has the form

$$\mathbf{w}_{t+1} = \mathbf{w}_t - \mathbf{H}^{-1} \mathbf{g}_t \quad (10.36)$$

$$= \mathbf{w}_t + (\mathbf{X}^\top \mathbf{S}_t \mathbf{X})^{-1} \mathbf{X}^\top (\mathbf{y} - \boldsymbol{\mu}_t) \quad (10.37)$$

$$= (\mathbf{X}^\top \mathbf{S}_t \mathbf{X})^{-1} [(\mathbf{X}^\top \mathbf{S}_t \mathbf{X}) \mathbf{w}_t + \mathbf{X}^\top (\mathbf{y} - \boldsymbol{\mu}_t)] \quad (10.38)$$

$$= (\mathbf{X}^\top \mathbf{S}_t \mathbf{X})^{-1} \mathbf{X}^\top [\mathbf{S}_t \mathbf{X} \mathbf{w}_t + \mathbf{y} - \boldsymbol{\mu}_t] \quad (10.39)$$

$$= (\mathbf{X}^\top \mathbf{S}_t \mathbf{X})^{-1} \mathbf{X}^\top \mathbf{S}_t \mathbf{z}_t \quad (10.40)$$

where we have defined the **working response** as

$$\mathbf{z}_t \triangleq \mathbf{X} \mathbf{w}_t + \mathbf{S}_t^{-1} (\mathbf{y} - \boldsymbol{\mu}_t) \quad (10.41)$$

and  $\mathbf{S}_t = \text{diag}(\mu_{t,n}(1 - \mu_{t,n}))$ . Since  $\mathbf{S}_t$  is a diagonal matrix, we can rewrite the targets in component form as follows:

$$z_{t,n} = \mathbf{w}_t^\top \mathbf{x}_n + \frac{y_n - \mu_{t,n}}{\mu_{t,n}(1 - \mu_{t,n})} \quad (10.42)$$

Eq. (10.40) is an example of a weighted least squares problem (Sec. 11.2.2.4), which is a minimizer of

$$\sum_{n=1}^N S_{t,n} (z_{t,n} - \mathbf{w}_t^\top \mathbf{x}_n)^2 \quad (10.43)$$

The overall method is therefore known as the **iteratively reweighted least squares (IRLS)** algorithm, since at each iteration we solve a weighted least squares problem, where the weight matrix  $\mathbf{S}_t$  changes at each iteration. See Algorithm 2 for some pseudocode.

---

**Algorithm 2:** Iteratively reweighted least squares (IRLS)

---

```

1  $\mathbf{w} = \mathbf{0}$ ;
2  $w_0 = \log(\bar{y}/(1 - \bar{y}))$ ;
3 repeat
4   for  $n = 1 : N$  do
5      $a_n = w_0 + \mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x}_n$ ;
6      $\mu_n = \sigma(a_n)$ ;
7      $s_n = \mu_n(1 - \mu_n)$  ;
8      $z_n = \eta_n + \frac{y_n - \mu_n}{s_n}$  ;
9      $\mathbf{S} = \text{diag}(s_{1:N})$  ;
10     $\mathbf{w} = (\mathbf{X}^\top \mathbf{S} \mathbf{X})^{-1} \mathbf{X}^\top \mathbf{S} \mathbf{z}$ ;
11 until converged;

```

---

Note that **Fisher scoring** is the same as IRLS except we replace the Hessian of the actual log-likelihood with its expectation, i.e., we use the Fisher information matrix (Appendix D.2) instead of  $\mathbf{H}$ . Since the Fisher information matrix is independent of the data, it can be precomputed, unlike the Hessian, which must be reevaluated at every iteration. This can be faster for problems with many parameters.

### 10.2.7 MAP estimation

In Fig. 10.4, we saw how logistic regression can overfit when there are too many parameters compared to training examples. This is a consequence of the ability of maximum likelihood to find weights that force the decision boundary to “wiggle” in just the right way so as to curve around the examples. To get this behavior, the weights often need to be set to large values. For example, in Fig. 10.4, when we use degree  $K = 1$ , we find that the MLE for the two input weights (ignoring the bias) is

$$\hat{\mathbf{w}} = [0.51291712, 0.11866937] \quad (10.44)$$

When we use degree  $K = 2$ , we get

$$\hat{\mathbf{w}} = [2.27510513, 0.05970325, 11.84198867, 15.40355969, 2.51242311] \quad (10.45)$$

And when  $K = 4$ , we get

$$\hat{\mathbf{w}} = [-3.07813766, \dots, -59.03196044, 51.77152431, 10.25054164] \quad (10.46)$$

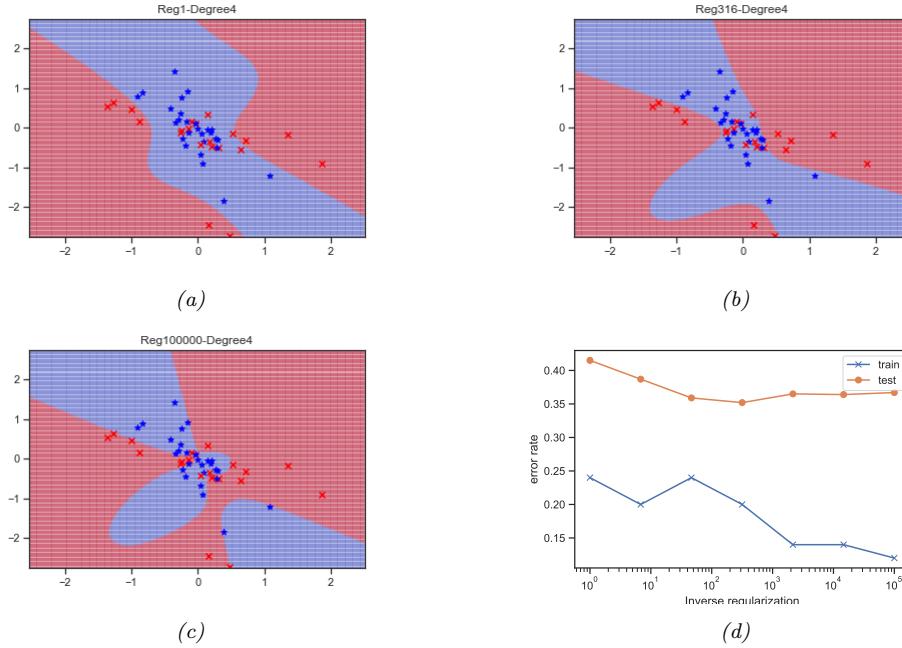


Figure 10.6: Weight decay with variance  $C$  applied to two-class, two-dimensional logistic regression problem with a degree 4 polynomial. (a)  $C = 1$ . (b)  $C = 316$ . (c)  $C = 100,000$ . (d) Train and test error vs  $C$ . Generated by `logreg_poly_demo.py`.

One way to reduce such overfitting is to prevent the weights from becoming so large. We can do this by using a zero-mean Gaussian prior,  $p(\mathbf{w}) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{w} | \mathbf{0}, C\mathbf{I})$ , and then using MAP estimation, as we discussed in Sec. 4.4.3. The new training objective becomes

$$\mathcal{L}(\mathbf{w}) = \text{NLL}(\mathbf{w}) + \lambda \|\mathbf{w}\|_2^2 \quad (10.47)$$

where  $\|\mathbf{w}\|_2^2 = \sum_{d=1}^D w_d^2$  and  $\lambda = 1/C$ . This is called  **$\ell_2$  regularization** or **weight decay**. The larger the value of  $\lambda$ , the more the parameters are penalized for being “large” (deviating from the zero-mean prior), and thus the less flexible the model. See Fig. 10.6 for an illustration.

We can compute the MAP estimate by slightly modifying the input to the above gradient-based optimization algorithms. Specifically, we use the penalized negative log likelihood, and its gradient and Hessian, have the following forms:

$$\text{PNLL}(\mathbf{w}) = \text{NLL}(\mathbf{w}) + \lambda \mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{w} \quad (10.48)$$

$$\nabla_{\mathbf{w}} \text{PNLL}(\mathbf{w}) = \mathbf{g}(\mathbf{w}) + 2\lambda \mathbf{w} \quad (10.49)$$

$$\nabla_{\mathbf{w}}^2 \text{PNLL}(\mathbf{w}) = \mathbf{H}(\mathbf{w}) + 2\lambda \mathbf{I} \quad (10.50)$$

where  $\mathbf{g}(\mathbf{w})$  is the gradient and  $\mathbf{H}(\mathbf{w})$  is the Hessian.

For an interesting exercise related to  $\ell_2$  regularized logistic regression, see Exercise 10.2.

### 10.2.8 Standardization

In Sec. 10.2.7, we use an isotropic prior  $p(\mathbf{w}|\mathbf{0}, \lambda^{-1}\mathbf{I})$  to prevent overfitting. This implicitly encodes the assumption that we expect all weights to be similar in magnitude, which in turn encodes the assumption we expect all input features to be similar in magnitude. However, in many datasets, input features are on different scales. In such cases, it is common to **standardize** the data, to ensure each feature has mean 0 and variance 1.

More precisely, let  $\tilde{x}_{nd}$  be the standardized version of  $x_{nd}$ , for each example  $n = 1 : N$  and each feature dimension  $d = 1 : D$ . Then we have  $\tilde{x}_{nd} = \frac{x_{nd} - \hat{\mu}_d}{\hat{\sigma}_d}$ , where  $\hat{\mu}_d = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^N x_{nd}$  is the empirical mean of feature  $d$ , and  $\hat{\sigma}_d^2 = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^N (x_{nd} - \hat{\mu}_d)^2$  is the empirical variance.

An alternative is to use **min-max scaling**, in which we rescale the inputs so they lie in the interval  $[0, 1]$ . Both methods ensure the features are comparable in magnitude, which can help with model fitting and inference, even if we don't use MAP estimation. (See Sec. 11.6.1.2 for a discussion of this point.)

## 10.3 Multinomial logistic regression

**Multinomial logistic regression** is a discriminative classification model of the following form:

$$p(y|\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \text{Cat}(y|\mathcal{S}(\mathbf{W}\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{b})) \quad (10.51)$$

where  $\mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^D$  is the input vector,  $y \in \{1, \dots, C\}$  is the class label,  $\mathcal{S}()$  is the softmax function (Sec. 3.2.2),  $\mathbf{W}$  is a  $C \times D$  weight matrix,  $\mathbf{b}$  is  $C$ -dimensional bias vector,  $\boldsymbol{\theta} = (\mathbf{W}, \mathbf{b})$  are all the parameters. We will henceforth ignore the bias term  $\mathbf{b}$ ; we assume we prepend each  $\mathbf{x}$  with a 1, and add  $\mathbf{b}$  to the first column of  $\mathbf{W}$ . Thus  $\boldsymbol{\theta} = \mathbf{W}$ .

If we let  $\mathbf{a} = \mathbf{W}\mathbf{x}$  be the  $C$ -dimensional vector of **logits**, then we can rewrite the above as follows:

$$p(y=c|\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \frac{e^{a_c}}{\sum_{c'=1}^C e^{a_{c'}}} \quad (10.52)$$

Because of the normalization condition  $\sum_{c=1}^C p(y_n = c|\mathbf{x}_n; \boldsymbol{\theta}) = 1$ , we can set  $\mathbf{w}_C = \mathbf{0}$ . (For example, in binary logistic regression, where  $C = 2$ , we only learn a single weight vector.) Therefore the parameters  $\boldsymbol{\theta}$  correspond to a weight matrix  $\mathbf{w}$  of size  $D(C - 1)$ , where  $\mathbf{x}_n \in \mathbb{R}^D$ .

Note that this model assumes the labels are mutually exclusive, i.e., there is only one true label. For some applications (e.g., **image tagging**), we want to predict one or more labels for an input; in this case, the output space is the set of subsets of  $\{1, \dots, C\}$ . This is called **multi-label classification**, as opposed to **multi-class classification**. This can be viewed as a bit vector,  $\mathcal{Y} = \{0, 1\}^C$ , where the  $c$ 'th output is set to 1 if the  $c$ 'th tag is present. We can tackle this using a modified version of binary logistic regression with multiple outputs:

$$p(\mathbf{y}|\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \prod_{c=1}^C \text{Ber}(y_c|\sigma(\mathbf{w}_c^\top \mathbf{x})) \quad (10.53)$$

### 10.3.1 Linear and nonlinear classifiers

Logistic regression computes linear decision boundaries in the input space, as shown in Fig. 10.7(a) for the case where  $\mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^2$  and we have  $C = 3$  classes. However, we can always transform the inputs

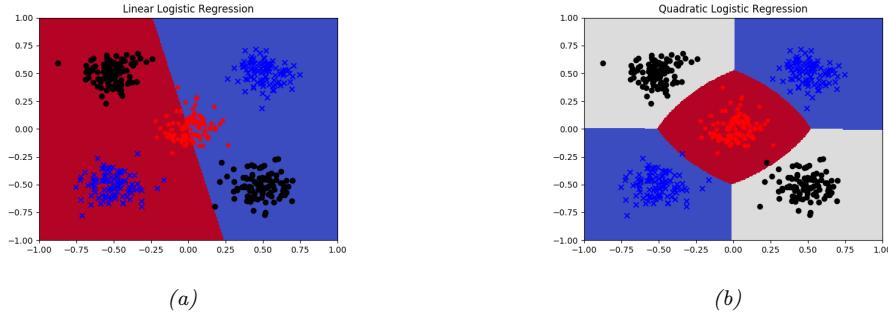


Figure 10.7: Example of 3-class logistic regression with 2d inputs. (a) Original features. (b) Quadratic features. Generated by [logreg\\_multiclass\\_demo.py](#).

in some way to create nonlinear boundaries. For example, suppose we replace  $\mathbf{x} = (x_1, x_2)$  by

$$\phi(\mathbf{x}) = [1, x_1, x_2, x_1^2, x_2^2, x_1 x_2] \quad (10.54)$$

This lets us create quadratic decision boundaries, as illustrated in Fig. 10.7(b).

### 10.3.2 Maximum likelihood estimation

In this section, we discuss how to compute the maximum likelihood estimate (MLE) by minimizing the negative log likelihood (NLL).

#### 10.3.2.1 Objective

The NLL is given by

$$\text{NLL}(\boldsymbol{\theta}) = -\log \prod_{n=1}^N \prod_{c=1}^C \mu_{nc}^{y_{nc}} = -\sum_{n=1}^N \sum_{c=1}^C y_{nc} \log \mu_{nc} = \sum_{n=1}^N \mathbb{H}(\mathbf{y}_n, \boldsymbol{\mu}_n) \quad (10.55)$$

where  $\mu_{nc} = p(y_n = c | \mathbf{x}_n, \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \mathcal{S}(f(\mathbf{x}_n; \boldsymbol{\theta}))_c$ ,  $y_{nc} = \mathbb{I}(y_n = c)$  is the one-hot encoding of  $y_n$ , and  $\mathbb{H}(\mathbf{y}_n, \boldsymbol{\mu}_n)$  is the cross-entropy:

$$\mathbb{H}(\mathbf{p}, \mathbf{q}) = -\sum_{c=1}^C p_c \log q_c \quad (10.56)$$

#### 10.3.2.2 Optimizing the objective

To find the optimum, we need to solve  $\nabla_{\mathbf{w}} \text{NLL}(\mathbf{w}) = \mathbf{0}$ , where  $\mathbf{w}$  is a vectorized version of the weight matrix  $\mathbf{W}$ , and where we are ignoring the bias term for notational simplicity. We can find such a stationary point using any gradient-based optimizer; we give some examples below. But first we derive the gradient and Hessian, and then prove that the objective is convex.

### 10.3.2.3 Deriving the gradient

To derive the gradient of the NLL, we need to use the Jacobian of the softmax function, which is as follows (see Exercise 10.1 for the proof):

$$\frac{\partial \mu_c}{\partial a_j} = \mu_c(\delta_{cj} - \mu_j) \quad (10.57)$$

where  $\delta_{cj} = \mathbb{I}(c = j)$ . For example, if we have 3 classes, the Jacobian matrix is given by

$$\left[ \frac{\partial \mu_c}{\partial a_j} \right]_{cj} = \begin{pmatrix} \mu_1(1 - \mu_1) & -\mu_1\mu_2 & -\mu_1\mu_3 \\ -\mu_2\mu_1 & \mu_2(1 - \mu_2) & -\mu_2\mu_3 \\ -\mu_3\mu_1 & -\mu_3\mu_2 & \mu_3(1 - \mu_3) \end{pmatrix} \quad (10.58)$$

In matrix form, this can be written as

$$\frac{\partial \boldsymbol{\mu}}{\partial \mathbf{a}} = (\boldsymbol{\mu} \mathbf{1}^\top) \odot (\mathbf{I} - \mathbf{1}\boldsymbol{\mu}^\top) \quad (10.59)$$

where  $\odot$  is elementwise product,  $\boldsymbol{\mu} \mathbf{1}^\top$  copies  $\boldsymbol{\mu}$  across each column, and  $\mathbf{1}\boldsymbol{\mu}^\top$  copies  $\boldsymbol{\mu}$  across each row.

We can now derive the (batch) gradient of the NLL using the chain rule, as follows:

$$\nabla_{\mathbf{w}_j} \text{NLL} = \sum_n \sum_c \frac{\partial \text{NLL}}{\partial \mu_{nc}} \frac{\partial \mu_{nc}}{\partial a_{nj}} \frac{\partial a_{nj}}{\partial \mathbf{w}_j} \quad (10.60)$$

$$= - \sum_n \sum_c \frac{y_{nc}}{\mu_{nc}} \mu_{nc}(\delta_{jc} - \mu_{nj}) \mathbf{x}_n \quad (10.61)$$

$$= \sum_n \sum_c y_{nc}(\mu_{nj} - \delta_{jc}) \mathbf{x}_n \quad (10.62)$$

$$= \sum_n (\sum_c y_{nc}) \mu_{nj} \mathbf{x}_n - \sum_n y_{nj} \mathbf{x}_n \quad (10.63)$$

$$= \sum_n (\mu_{nj} - y_{nj}) \mathbf{x}_n \quad (10.64)$$

In matrix notation, we have

$$\mathbf{g}(\mathbf{W}) = \sum_{n=1}^N \mathbf{x}_n (\boldsymbol{\mu}_n - \mathbf{y}_n)^\top \quad (10.65)$$

This has the same form as in the binary logistic regression case, namely an error term times the input  $\mathbf{x}_n$ , summed over  $N$ .

### 10.3.2.4 Deriving the Hessian

Exercise 10.1 asks you to show that the Hessian of the NLL for multinomial logistic regression is given by

$$\mathbf{H}(\mathbf{W}) = \sum_{n=1}^N (\text{diag}(\boldsymbol{\mu}_n) - \boldsymbol{\mu}_n \boldsymbol{\mu}_n^\top) \otimes (\mathbf{x}_n \mathbf{x}_n^\top) \quad (10.66)$$

where  $\mathbf{A} \otimes \mathbf{B}$  is the Kronecker product (Sec. B.2.5). In other words, the block  $c, c'$  submatrix is given by

$$\mathbf{H}_{c,c'}(\mathbf{W}) = \sum_n \mu_{nc} (\delta_{c,c'} - \mu_{n,c'}) \mathbf{x}_n \mathbf{x}_n^\top \quad (10.67)$$

For example, if we have 3 features and 2 classes, this becomes

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{H}(\mathbf{W}) &= \sum_n \begin{pmatrix} \mu_{n1} - \mu_{n1}^2 & -\mu_{n1}\mu_{n2} \\ -\mu_{n1}\mu_{n2} & \mu_{n2} - \mu_{n2}^2 \end{pmatrix} \otimes \begin{pmatrix} x_{n1}x_{n1} & x_{n1}x_{n2} & x_{n1}x_{n3} \\ x_{n2}x_{n1} & x_{n2}x_{n2} & x_{n2}x_{n3} \\ x_{n3}x_{n1} & x_{n3}x_{n2} & x_{n3}x_{n3} \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \sum_n \begin{pmatrix} (\mu_{n1} - \mu_{n1}^2)\mathbf{X}_n & -\mu_{n1}\mu_{n2}\mathbf{X}_n \\ -\mu_{n1}\mu_{n2}\mathbf{X}_n & (\mu_{n2} - \mu_{n2}^2)\mathbf{X}_n \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned} \quad (10.68)$$

where  $\mathbf{X}_n = \mathbf{x}_n \mathbf{x}_n^\top$ . Exercise 10.1 also asks you to show that this is a positive definite matrix, so the objective is convex.

### 10.3.3 Gradient-based optimization

It is straightforward to use the gradient in Sec. 10.3.2.3 to derive the SGD algorithm. Similarly, we can use the Hessian in Sec. 10.3.2.4 to derive a second-order optimization method. However, computing the Hessian can be expensive, so it is common to approximate it using quasi-Newton methods, such as limited memory BFGS. (BFGS stands for Broyden, Fletcher, Goldfarb and Shanno.) See Sec. 5.3.2 for details. Another approach, which is similar to IRLS, is described in Sec. 10.3.4.

All of these methods rely on computing the gradient of the log-likelihood, which in turn requires computing normalized probabilities, which can be computed from the logits vector  $\mathbf{a} = \mathbf{W}\mathbf{x}$  using

$$p(y=c|\mathbf{x}) = \exp(a_c - \text{lse}(\mathbf{a})) \quad (10.70)$$

where  $\text{lse}$  is the log-sum-exp function defined in Sec. 3.2.4. For this reason, many software libraries define a version of the cross-entropy loss that takes unnormalized logits as input.

### 10.3.4 Bound optimization

In this section, we consider an approach for fitting logistic regression using a class of algorithms known as bound optimization, which we describe in Sec. 5.7. The basic idea is to iteratively construct a lower bound on the function you want to maximize, and then to update the bound, so it “pushes up” on the true function. Optimizing the bound is often easier than updating the function directly.

If  $L(\boldsymbol{\theta})$  is a concave function we want to maximize, then one way to obtain a valid lower bound is to use a bound on its Hessian, i.e., to find a negative definite matrix  $\mathbf{B}$  such that  $\mathbf{H}(\boldsymbol{\theta}) \succ \mathbf{B}$ . In this case, one can show that

$$L(\boldsymbol{\theta}) \geq L(\boldsymbol{\theta}^t) + (\boldsymbol{\theta} - \boldsymbol{\theta}^t)^\top \mathbf{g}(\boldsymbol{\theta}^t) + \frac{1}{2}(\boldsymbol{\theta} - \boldsymbol{\theta}^t)^\top \mathbf{B}(\boldsymbol{\theta} - \boldsymbol{\theta}^t) \quad (10.71)$$

where  $\mathbf{g}(\boldsymbol{\theta}^t) = \nabla L(\boldsymbol{\theta}^t)$ . Defining  $Q(\boldsymbol{\theta}, \boldsymbol{\theta}^t)$  as the right-hand-side of Eq. (10.71), the update becomes

$$\boldsymbol{\theta}^{t+1} = \boldsymbol{\theta}^t - \mathbf{B}^{-1} \mathbf{g}(\boldsymbol{\theta}^t) \quad (10.72)$$

This is similar to a Newton update, except we use  $\mathbf{B}$ , which is a fixed matrix, rather than  $\mathbf{H}(\boldsymbol{\theta}^t)$ , which changes at each iteration. This can give us some of the advantages of second order methods at lower computational cost.

Let us now apply this to logistic regression, following [Kri+05]. Let  $\boldsymbol{\mu}_n(\mathbf{w}) = [p(y_n = 1|\mathbf{x}_n, \mathbf{w}), \dots, p(y_n = C|\mathbf{x}_n, \mathbf{w})]$  and  $\mathbf{y}_n = [\mathbb{I}(y_n = 1), \dots, \mathbb{I}(y_n = C)]$ . We want to *maximize* the log-likelihood, which is as follows:

$$L(\mathbf{w}) = \sum_{n=1}^N \left[ \sum_{c=1}^C y_{nc} \mathbf{w}_c^\top \mathbf{x}_n - \log \sum_{c=1}^C \exp(\mathbf{w}_c^\top \mathbf{x}_n) \right] \quad (10.73)$$

The gradient is given by the following (see Sec. 10.3.2.3 for details of the derivation):

$$\mathbf{g}(\mathbf{w}) = \sum_{n=1}^N (\mathbf{y}_n - \boldsymbol{\mu}_n(\mathbf{w})) \otimes \mathbf{x}_n \quad (10.74)$$

where  $\otimes$  denotes kronecker product (which, in this case, is just outer product of the two vectors). The Hessian is given by the following (see Sec. 10.3.2.4 for details of the derivation):

$$\mathbf{H}(\mathbf{w}) = - \sum_{n=1}^N (\text{diag}(\boldsymbol{\mu}_n(\mathbf{w})) - \boldsymbol{\mu}_n(\mathbf{w}) \boldsymbol{\mu}_n(\mathbf{w})^\top) \otimes (\mathbf{x}_n \mathbf{x}_n^\top) \quad (10.75)$$

We can construct a lower bound on the Hessian, as shown in [Boh92]:

$$\mathbf{H}(\mathbf{w}) \succ -\frac{1}{2} [\mathbf{I} - \mathbf{1}\mathbf{1}^\top/C] \otimes \left( \sum_{n=1}^N \mathbf{x}_n \mathbf{x}_n^\top \right) \triangleq \mathbf{B} \quad (10.76)$$

where  $\mathbf{I}$  is a  $C$ -dimensional identity matrix, and  $\mathbf{1}$  is a  $C$ -dimensional vector of all 1s.<sup>1</sup> In the binary case, this becomes

$$\mathbf{H}(\mathbf{w}) \succ -\frac{1}{2} \left( 1 - \frac{1}{2} \right) \left( \sum_{n=1}^N \mathbf{x}_n \mathbf{x}_n^\top \right) = -\frac{1}{4} \mathbf{X}^\top \mathbf{X} \quad (10.77)$$

This follows since  $\mu_n \leq 0.5$  so  $-(\mu_n - \mu_n^2) \geq -0.25$ .

We can use this lower bound to construct an MM algorithm to find the MLE. The update becomes

$$\mathbf{w}^{t+1} = \mathbf{w}^t - \mathbf{B}^{-1} \mathbf{g}(\mathbf{w}^t) \quad (10.78)$$

This iteration can be faster than IRLS (Sec. 10.2.6) since we can precompute  $\mathbf{B}^{-1}$  in time independent of  $N$ , rather than having to invert the Hessian at each iteration. For example, let us consider the binary case, so  $\mathbf{g}^t = \nabla L(\mathbf{w}^t) = \mathbf{X}^\top (\mathbf{y} - \boldsymbol{\mu}^t)$ , where  $\boldsymbol{\mu}^t = [p_n(\mathbf{w}^t), (1 - p_n(\mathbf{w}^t))]_{n=1}^N$ . The update becomes

$$\mathbf{w}^{t+1} = \mathbf{w}^t - 4(\mathbf{X}^\top \mathbf{X})^{-1} \mathbf{g}^t \quad (10.79)$$

Compare this to Eq. (10.37), which has the following form:

$$\mathbf{w}^{t+1} = \mathbf{w}^t - \mathbf{H}^{-1} \mathbf{g}(\mathbf{w}^t) = \mathbf{w}^t - (\mathbf{X}^\top \mathbf{S}^t \mathbf{X})^{-1} \mathbf{g}^t \quad (10.80)$$

where  $\mathbf{S}^t = \text{diag}(\boldsymbol{\mu}^t \odot (1 - \boldsymbol{\mu}^t))$ . We see that Eq. (10.79) is faster to compute, since we can precompute the constant matrix  $(\mathbf{X}^\top \mathbf{X})^{-1}$ .

---

1. If we enforce that  $\mathbf{w}_C = \mathbf{0}$ , we can use  $C - 1$  dimensions for these vectors / matrices.

### 10.3.5 MAP estimation

In Sec. 10.2.7 we discussed the benefits of  $\ell_2$  regularization for binary logistic regression. These benefits hold also in the multi-class case. However, there is also an additional, and surprising, benefit to do with **identifiability** of the parameters, as pointed out in [HTF09, Ex.18.3]. (We say that the parameters are identifiable if there is a unique value that maximizes the likelihood; equivalently, we require that the NLL be *strictly* convex.)

To see why identifiability is an issue, recall that multiclass logistic regression has the form

$$p(y = c|\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{W}) = \frac{\exp(\mathbf{w}_c^T \mathbf{x})}{\sum_{k=1}^C \exp(\mathbf{w}_k^T \mathbf{x})} \quad (10.81)$$

where  $\mathbf{W}$  is a  $C \times C$  weight matrix. We can arbitrarily define  $\mathbf{w}_c = \mathbf{0}$  for one of the classes, say  $c = C$ , since  $p(y = C|\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{W}) = 1 - \sum_{c=1}^{C-1} p(y = c|\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{w})$ . In this case, the model has the form

$$p(y = c|\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{W}) = \frac{\exp(\mathbf{w}_c^T \mathbf{x})}{1 + \sum_{k=1}^{C-1} \exp(\mathbf{w}_k^T \mathbf{x})} \quad (10.82)$$

If we don't "clamp" one of the vectors to some constant value, the parameters will be unidentifiable.

However, suppose we don't clamp  $\mathbf{w}_c = \mathbf{0}$ , so we are using Equation 10.81, but we add  $\ell_2$  regularization by optimizing

$$\text{PNLL}(\mathbf{w}) = - \sum_{n=1}^N \log p(y_n|\mathbf{x}_n, \mathbf{W}) + \lambda \sum_{c=1}^C \|\mathbf{w}_c\|_2^2 \quad (10.83)$$

At the optimum we have  $\sum_{c=1}^C \hat{w}_{cj} = 0$  for  $j = 1 : D$ , so the weights automatically satisfy a sum-to-zero constraint, thus making them uniquely identifiable.

To see why, note that at the optimum we have

$$\nabla \text{NLL}(\mathbf{w}) + 2\lambda \mathbf{w} = \mathbf{0} \quad (10.84)$$

$$\sum_n (\mathbf{y}_n - \boldsymbol{\mu}_n) \otimes \mathbf{x}_n = \lambda \mathbf{w} \quad (10.85)$$

Hence for any feature dimension  $j$  we have

$$\lambda \sum_c w_{cj} = \sum_n \sum_c (y_{nc} - \mu_{nc}) x_{nj} = \sum_n (\sum_c y_{nc} - \sum_c \mu_{nc}) x_{nj} = \sum_n (1 - 1) x_{nj} = 0 \quad (10.86)$$

Thus if  $\lambda > 0$  we have  $\sum_c \hat{w}_{cj} = 0$ , so the weights will sum to zero across classes for each feature dimension.

### 10.3.6 Maximum entropy classifiers

Recall that the multinomial logistic regression model can be written as

$$p(y = c|\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{W}) = \frac{\exp(\mathbf{w}_c^T \mathbf{x})}{Z(\mathbf{w}, \mathbf{x})} = \frac{\exp(\mathbf{w}_c^T \mathbf{x})}{\sum_{c'=1}^C \exp(\mathbf{w}_{c'}^T \mathbf{x})} \quad (10.87)$$

where  $Z(\mathbf{w}, \mathbf{x}) = \sum_c \exp(\mathbf{w}_c^\top \mathbf{x})$  is the partition function (normalization constant). This uses the same features, but a different weight vector, for every class. There is a slight extension of this model that allows us to use features that are class-dependent. This model can be written as

$$p(y = c | \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{w}) = \frac{1}{Z(\mathbf{w}, \mathbf{x})} \exp(\mathbf{w}^\top \phi(\mathbf{x}, c)) \quad (10.88)$$

where  $\phi(\mathbf{x}, c)$  is the feature vector for class  $c$ . This is called a **maximum entropy classifier**, or **maxent classifier** for short. (The origin of this term is explained in Sec. 12.2.6.)

Maxent classifiers include multinomial logistic regression as a special case. To see this let  $\mathbf{w} = [\mathbf{w}_1, \dots, \mathbf{w}_C]$ , and define the feature vector as follows:

$$\phi(\mathbf{x}, c) = [\mathbf{0}, \dots, \mathbf{x}, \dots, \mathbf{0}] \quad (10.89)$$

where  $\mathbf{x}$  is embedded in the  $c$ 'th block, and the remaining blocks are zero. In this case,  $\mathbf{w}^\top \phi(\mathbf{x}, c) = \mathbf{w}_c^\top \mathbf{x}$ , so we recover multinomial logistic regression.

Maxent classifiers are very widely used in the field of natural language processing. For example, consider the problem of **semantic role labeling**, where we classify a word  $\mathbf{x}$  into a semantic role  $y$ , such as person, place or thing. We might define (binary) features such as the following:

$$\phi_1(\mathbf{x}, y) = \mathbb{I}(y = \text{person} \wedge \mathbf{x} \text{ occurs after "Mr." or "Mrs"}) \quad (10.90)$$

$$\phi_2(\mathbf{x}, y) = \mathbb{I}(y = \text{person} \wedge \mathbf{x} \text{ is in whitelist of common names}) \quad (10.91)$$

$$\phi_3(\mathbf{x}, y) = \mathbb{I}(y = \text{place} \wedge \mathbf{x} \text{ is in Google maps}) \quad (10.92)$$

⋮

We see that the features we use depend on the label.

There are two main ways of creating these features. The first is to manually specify many possibly useful features using various templates, and then use a feature selection algorithm, such as the group lasso method of Sec. 11.5.7. The second is to incrementally add features to the model, using a heuristic feature generation method.

### 10.3.7 Hierarchical classification

Sometimes the set of possible labels can be structured into a **hierarchy** or **taxonomy**. For example, we might want to predict what kind of an animal is in an image: it could be a dog or a cat; if it is a dog, it could be a golden retriever or a German shepherd, etc. Intuitively, it makes sense to try to predict the most precise label for which we are confident [Den+12], that is, the system should “hedge its bets”.

One simple way to achieve this, proposed in [RF17], is as follows. First, create a model with a binary output label for every possible node in the tree. Before training the model, we will use **label smearing**, so that a label is propagated to all of its parents (**hyponyms**). For example, if an image is labeled “golden retriever”, we will also label it “dog”. If we train a multi-label classifier (which produces a vector  $p(\mathbf{y}|\mathbf{x})$  of binary labels) on such smeared data, it will perform hierarchical classification, predicting a set of labels at different levels of abstraction.

However, this method could predict “golden retriever”, “cat” and “bird” all with probability 1.0, since the model does not capture the fact that some labels are mutually exclusive. To prevent this,

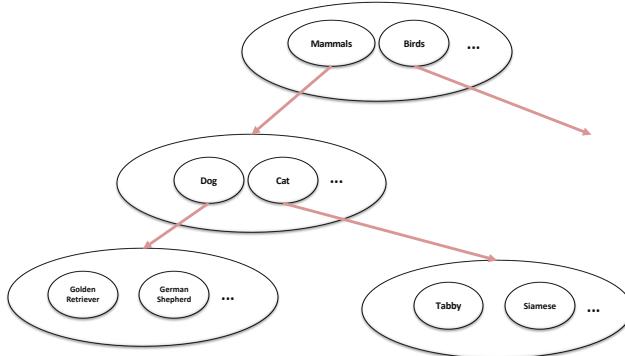


Figure 10.8: A simple example of a label hierarchy. Nodes within the same ellipse have a mutual exclusion relationship between them.

we can add a mutual exclusion constraint between all label nodes which are siblings, as shown in Fig. 10.8. For example, this model enforces that  $p(\text{mammal}|\mathbf{x}) + p(\text{bird}|\mathbf{x}) = 1$ , since these two labels are children of the root node. We can further partition the mammal probability into dogs and cats, so we have  $p(\text{dog}|\mathbf{x}) + p(\text{cat}|\mathbf{x}) = p(\text{mammal}|\mathbf{x})$ .

[Den+14; Din+15] generalize the above method by using a conditional graphical model where the graph structure can be more complex than a tree. In addition, they allow for soft constraints between labels, in addition to hard constraints.

### 10.3.8 Handling large numbers of classes

In this section, we discuss some issues that arise when there are a large number of potential labels, e.g., if the labels correspond to words from a language.

#### 10.3.8.1 Hierarchical softmax

In regular softmax classifiers, computing the normalization constant in the softmax, which is needed to compute the gradient of the log likelihood, takes  $O(C)$  time, which can become the bottleneck of  $C$  is large. However, if we structure the labels as a tree, we can compute the probability of any label in  $O(\log C)$  time, by multiplying the probabilities of each edge on the path from the root to the leaf. For example, consider the tree in Fig. 10.9. We have

$$p(y = \text{I'm}|C) = 0.57 \times 0.68 \times 0.72 = 0.28 \quad (10.93)$$

Thus we replace the “flat” output softmax with a tree-structured sequence of binary classifiers. This is called **hierarchical softmax** [Goo01; MB05].

A good way to structure such a tree is to use Huffman encoding, where the most frequent labels are placed near the top of the tree, as suggested in [Mik+13a]. (For a different approach, based on clustering the most common labels together, see [Gra+17]. And for yet another approach, based on sampling labels, see [Tit16].)

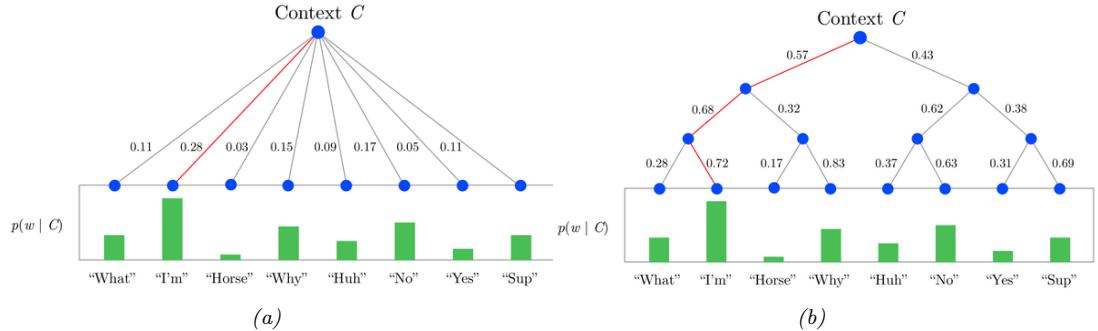


Figure 10.9: A flat and hierarchical softmax model  $p(y|x)$ , where  $x$  are the input features (context) and  $y$  is the output label. From <https://www.quora.com/What-is-hierarchical-softmax>

### 10.3.8.2 Class imbalance and the long tail

Another issue that often arises when there are a large number of classes is that for most classes, we may have very few examples. More precisely, if  $N_c$  is the number of examples of class  $c$ , then the empirical distribution  $p(N_1, \dots, N_C)$  may have a **long tail**. The result is an extreme form of **class imbalance** (see e.g., [ASR15]). Since the rare classes will have a smaller effect on the overall loss than the common classes, the model may “focus its attention” on the common classes.

One method that can help is to set the bias terms  $\mathbf{b}$  such that  $\mathcal{S}(\mathbf{b})_c = N_c/N$ ; such a model will match the empirical label prior even when using weights of  $\mathbf{w} = \mathbf{0}$ . As the weights are adjusted, the model can learn input-dependent deviations from this prior.

Another common approach is to resample the data to make it more balanced, before (or during) training. In particular, suppose we sample a datapoint from class  $c$  with probability

$$p_c = \frac{N_c^q}{\sum_i^C N_i^q} \quad (10.94)$$

If we set  $q = 1$ , we recover standard **instance-balanced sampling**, where  $p_c \propto N_c$ ; this common classes will be sampled more than rare classes. If we set  $q = 0$ , we recover **class-balanced sampling**, where  $p_c = 1/C$ ; this can be thought of as first sampling a class uniformly at random, and then sampling an instance of this class. Finally, we can consider other options, such as  $q = 0.5$ , which is known as **square-root sampling** [Mah+18].

Yet another method that is simple and can easily handle the long tail is to use the **nearest class mean classifier**. This has the form

$$f(\mathbf{x}) = \operatorname{argmin}_c \|\mathbf{x} - \boldsymbol{\mu}_c\|_2^2 \quad (10.95)$$

where  $\boldsymbol{\mu}_c = \frac{1}{N_c} \sum_{n:y_n=c} \mathbf{x}_n$  is the mean of the features belonging to class  $c$ . This induces a softmax posterior, as we discussed in Sec. 9.2.5. We can get much better results if we first use a neural network (see Part III) to learn good features, by training a DNN classifier with cross-entropy loss on the original unbalanced data. We then replace  $\mathbf{x}$  with  $\phi(\mathbf{x})$  in Eq. (10.95). This simple approach can give very good performance on long-tailed distributions [Kan+20].

## 10.4 Preprocessing discrete input data

So far in this chapter, we have implicitly assumed that the input features are real-valued, so  $\mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^D$ . However, we often want to apply logistic regression to data that may have discrete input features, such as categorical variables like race and gender, or words from some vocabulary. In the sections below, we discuss some ways to preprocess such data to make it more suitable for input into logistic regression and other kinds of discriminative models.

### 10.4.1 One-hot encoding

When we have categorical features, we need to convert them to a numerical scale, so that computing weighted combinations of the inputs makes sense. The standard way to preprocess such categorical variables is to use a **one-hot encoding**, also called a **dummy encoding**. If a variable  $x$  has  $K$  values, we will denote its dummy encoding as follows:  $\text{one-hot}(x) = [\mathbb{I}(x=1), \dots, \mathbb{I}(x=K)]$ . For example, if there are 3 colors (say red, green and blue), the corresponding one-hot vectors will be  $\text{one-hot}(\text{red}) = [1, 0, 0]$ ,  $\text{one-hot}(\text{green}) = [0, 1, 0]$ , and  $\text{one-hot}(\text{blue}) = [0, 0, 1]$ .

### 10.4.2 Feature crosses

A linear model using a dummy encoding for each categorical variable can capture the **main effects** of each variable, but cannot capture **interaction effects** between them. For example, suppose we want to predict the fuel efficiency of a vehicle given two categorical input variables: the type (say SUV, Truck, or Family car), and the country of origin (say USA or Japan). If we concatenate the one-hot encodings for the ternary and binary features, we get the following input encoding:

$$\phi(\mathbf{x}) = [1, \mathbb{I}(x_1 = S), \mathbb{I}(x_1 = T), \mathbb{I}(x_1 = F), \mathbb{I}(x_2 = U), \mathbb{I}(x_2 = J)] \quad (10.96)$$

where  $x_1$  is the color and  $x_2$  is the country of origin.

This model cannot capture dependencies between the features. For example, we expect trucks to be less fuel efficient, but perhaps trucks from the USA are even less efficient than trucks from Japan. This cannot be captured using the linear model in Eq. (10.96) since the contribution from the country of origin is independent of the car type.

We can fix this by computing explicit **feature crosses**. For example, we can define a new composite feature with  $3 \times 2$  possible values, to capture the interaction of type and country of origin. The new model becomes

$$f(\mathbf{x}; \mathbf{w}) = \mathbf{w}^\top \phi(\mathbf{x}) \quad (10.97)$$

$$\begin{aligned} &= w_0 + w_1 \mathbb{I}(x_1 = R) + w_2 \mathbb{I}(x_1 = G) + w_3 \mathbb{I}(x_1 = B) \\ &\quad + w_4 \mathbb{I}(x_2 = U) + w_5 \mathbb{I}(x_2 = J) \\ &\quad + w_6 \mathbb{I}(x_1 = R, x_2 = U) + w_7 \mathbb{I}(x_1 = G, x_2 = U) + w_8 \mathbb{I}(x_1 = B, x_2 = U) \\ &\quad + w_9 \mathbb{I}(x_1 = R, x_2 = J) + w_{10} \mathbb{I}(x_1 = G, x_2 = J) + w_{11} \mathbb{I}(x_1 = B, x_2 = J) \end{aligned} \quad (10.98)$$

We can see that the use of feature crosses converts the original dataset into a **wide format**, with many more columns.

### 10.4.3 Dealing with text

It is common to apply classifiers to **text documents**, in order to perform tasks such as **sentiment analysis** or **spam detection**. To feed text data into a classifier, we need to tackle various issues. First, documents have a variable length, and are thus not fixed-length feature vectors, as assumed by many kinds of models such as logistic regression. Second, words are categorical variables with many possible values (equal to the size of the vocabulary), so the corresponding one-hot encodings will be very high dimensional, with no natural notion of similarity. Third, we may encounter words at test time that have not been seen during training (so-called **out-of-vocabulary** or **OOV** words). We discuss some solutions to these problems below. More details can be found in e.g., [BKL10; MRS08; JM18].

#### 10.4.3.1 Bag of words model

A simple approach to dealing with variable-length text documents is to interpret them as a **bag of words**, in which we ignore word order. To convert this to a vector from a fixed input space, we first map each word to a **token** from some vocabulary.<sup>2</sup> Let  $x_{nt}$  be the token at location  $t$  in the  $n$ 'th document. If there are  $V$  unique tokens in the vocabulary, then we can represent the  $n$ 'th document as a  $V$ -dimensional vector  $\tilde{\mathbf{x}}_n$ , where  $x'_{nv}$  is the number of times that word  $v$  occurs in document  $n$ :

$$\tilde{x}_{nv} = \sum_{t=1}^T \mathbb{I}(x_{nt} = v) \quad (10.99)$$

where  $T$  is the length of document  $n$ . We can now interpret documents as vectors in a vector space. This is called the **vector space model** of text [SWY75; TP10].

We traditionally store input data in an  $N \times D$  design matrix denoted by  $\mathbf{X}$ , where  $D$  is the number of features. In the context of vector space models, it is more common to represent the input data as a  $V \times N$  **term frequency matrix**, where  $\text{TF}_{ij}$  is the frequency of term  $i$  in document  $j$ . See Fig. 10.10 for an illustration.

#### 10.4.3.2 TF-IDF

One problem with representing documents as word count vectors is that frequent words may have undue influence, just because the magnitude of their word count is higher, even if they do not carry much semantic content. A common solution to this is to transform the counts by taking logs, which reduces the impact of words that occur many times within a single document.

To reduce the impact of words that occur many times in general (across all documents), we compute a quantity called the **inverse document frequency**, defined as follows:  $\text{IDF}_i \triangleq \log \frac{N}{1 + \text{DF}_i}$ , where  $\text{DF}_i$  is the number of documents with term  $i$ . We can combine these transformations to compute the **TF-IDF** matrix as follows:

$$\text{TFIDF}_{ij} = \log(\text{TF}_{ij} + 1) \times \text{IDF}_i \quad (10.100)$$

---

2. To reduce the number of tokens, we often use various pre-processing techniques such as the following: dropping punctuation, converting all words to lower case; dropping common but uninformative words, such as “and” and “the” (this is called **stop word removal**); replacing words with their base form, such as replacing “running” and “runs” with “run” (this is called **word stemming**); etc. For details, see e.g., [BL12].

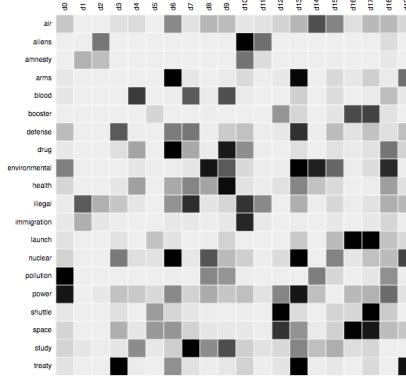


Figure 10.10: Example of a term-document matrix, where raw counts have been replaced by their TF-IDF values (see Sec. 10.4.3.2). Darker cells are larger values. From <https://bit.ly/2kByLQI>. Used with kind permission of Christoph Carl Kling.

(We often normalize each row as well.) This provides a more meaningful representation of documents, and can be used as input to many ML algorithms. See `tfidf_demo.py` for an example.

#### 10.4.3.3 Word embeddings

Although the TF-IDF transformation improves the vector representation of words by placing more weight on “informative” words and less on “uninformative” words, it does not overcome the fundamental issue that semantically similar words, such as “man” and “woman”, may be further apart (in vector space) than semantically dissimilar words, such as “man” and “banana”. Thus the assumption that points that are close in input space should have similar outputs, which is implicitly made by logistic regression models, is invalid.

The standard way to solve this problem is to use **word embeddings**, in which we map each sparse one-hot vector,  $\mathbf{x}_{n,t} \in \{0, 1\}^V$ , to a lower-dimensional dense vector,  $\mathbf{e}_{n,t} \in \mathbb{R}^K$  using  $\mathbf{e}_{nt} = \mathbf{E}\mathbf{x}_{nt}$ , where  $\mathbf{E}$  is learned such that semantically similar words are placed close by. There are many ways to learn such embeddings, as we discuss in Sec. 19.5.

Once we have an embedding matrix, we can represent a variable-length text document as a bag **of word embeddings**. We can then convert this to a fixed length vector by summing (or averaging) the embeddings:

$$\bar{\mathbf{e}}_n = \sum_{t=1}^T \mathbf{e}_{nt} = \mathbf{E}\tilde{\mathbf{x}}_n \quad (10.101)$$

where  $\tilde{\mathbf{x}}_n$  is the bag of words representation from Eq. (10.99). Thus the overall model has the form

$$p(y|\mathbf{x}_n, \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \text{Cat}(y|\mathcal{S}(\mathbf{W}\mathbf{E}\tilde{\mathbf{x}}_n)) \quad (10.102)$$

We often use a **pre-trained word embedding** matrix  $\mathbf{E}$ , in which case the overall model is linear in  $\mathbf{W}$ . See Sec. 13.2.4.3 for a nonlinear extension of this model.

#### 10.4.3.4 Dealing with novel words

At test time, the model may encounter a completely novel word that it has not seen before. This is known as the **out of vocabulary** or **OOV** problem. Such novel words are bound to occur, because the set of words is an **open class**. For example, the set of proper nouns (names of people and places) is unbounded.

A standard heuristic to solve this problem is to replace all novel words with the special symbol **UNK**, which stands for “unknown”. However, this loses information. For example, if we encounter the word “athazagoraphobia”, we may guess it means “fear of something”, since phobia is a common suffix in English (derived from Greek) to mean “fear of”. (It turns out that athazagoraphobia means “fear of being forgotten about or ignored”.)

We could work at the character level, but this would require the model to learn how to group common letter combinations together into words. It is better to leverage the fact that words have substructure, and then to take as input **subword units** or **wordpieces** [SHB16; Wu+16]; these are often created using a method called **byte-pair encoding** [Gag94], which is a form of data compression that creates new symbols to represent common substrings.

## 10.5 Robust logistic regression

Sometimes we have **outliers** in our data, which are often due to labeling errors, also called **label noise**. To prevent the model from being adversely affected by such contamination, we will use **robust logistic regression**. In this section, we discuss some approaches to this problem.

### 10.5.1 Mixture model for the likelihood

One of the simplest ways to define a robust logistic regression model is to modify the likelihood so that it predicts that each output label  $y$  is generated uniformly at random with probability  $\pi$ , and otherwise is generated using the usual conditional model. In the binary case, this becomes

$$p(y|\mathbf{x}) = \pi \text{Ber}(y|0.5) + (1 - \pi) \text{Ber}(y|\sigma(\mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x})) \quad (10.103)$$

This approach, of using a mixture model for the observation model to make it robust, can be applied to many different models (e.g., DNNs).

We can fit this model using standard methods, such as SGD or Bayesian inference methods such as HMC (Sec. 10.6.3). For example, let us create a “contaminated” version of the 1d, two-class Iris dataset that we discussed in Sec. 2.4.3. We will add 6 examples of class 1 (versicolor) with abnormally low sepal length. In Fig. 10.11a, we show the results of fitting a standard (Bayesian) logistic regression model to this dataset. In Fig. 10.11b, we show the results of fitting the above robust model. In the latter case, we see that the decision boundary is similar to the one we inferred from non-contaminated data, as shown in Fig. 2.8b. We also see that the posterior uncertainty about the decision boundary’s location is smaller than when using a non-robust model.

### 10.5.2 Bi-tempered loss

In this section, we present an approach to robust logistic regression proposed in [Ami+19].

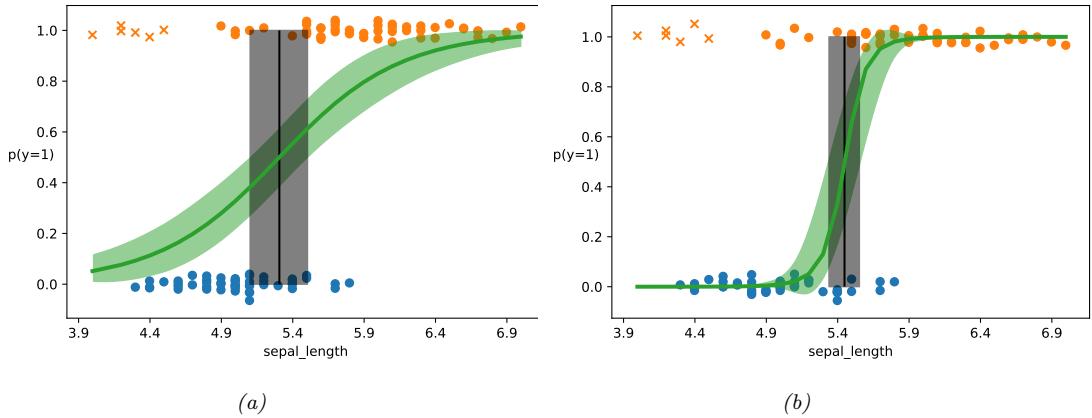


Figure 10.11: (a) Logistic regression on some data with outliers (denoted by  $x$ ). Training points have been (vertically) jittered to avoid overlapping too much. Vertical line is the decision boundary, and its posterior credible interval. (b) Same as (a) but using robust model, with a mixture likelihood. Adapted from Figure 4.13 of [Mar18]. Generated by `logreg_iris_bayes_robust_1d_pymc3.py`.

The first observation is that examples that are far from the decision boundary, but mislabeled, will have undue adverse affect on the model if the loss function is convex [LS10]. This can be overcome by replacing the usual cross entropy loss with a “tempered” version, that uses a temperature parameter  $0 \leq t_1 < 1$  to ensure the loss from outliers is bounded. In particular, consider the standard relative entropy loss function:

$$\mathcal{L}(\mathbf{y}, \hat{\mathbf{y}}) = \mathbb{H}(\mathbf{y}, \hat{\mathbf{y}}) = \sum_c y_c \log \hat{y}_c \quad (10.104)$$

where  $\mathbf{y}$  is the true label distribution (often one-hot) and  $\hat{\mathbf{y}}$  is the predicted distribution. We define the **tempered cross entropy** loss as follows:

$$\mathcal{L}(\mathbf{y}, \hat{\mathbf{y}}) = \sum_c \left[ y_c (\log_{t_1} y_c - \log_{t_1} \hat{y}_c) - \frac{1}{2-t_1} (y_c^{2-t_1} - \hat{y}_c^{2-t_1}) \right] \quad (10.105)$$

which simplifies to the following when the true distribution  $\mathbf{y}$  is one-hot, with all its mass on class  $c$ :

$$\mathcal{L}(c, \hat{\mathbf{y}}) = -\log_{t_1} \hat{y}_c - \frac{1}{2-t_1} \left( 1 - \sum_{c'=1}^C \hat{y}_{c'}^{2-t_1} \right) \quad (10.106)$$

Here  $\log_t$  is tempered version of the log function:

$$\log_t(x) \triangleq \frac{1}{1-t} (x^{1-t} - 1) \quad (10.107)$$

This is monotonically increasing and concave, and reduces to the standard (natural) logarithm when  $t = 1$ . (Similarly, tempered cross entropy reduces to standard cross entropy when  $t = 1$ .) However,

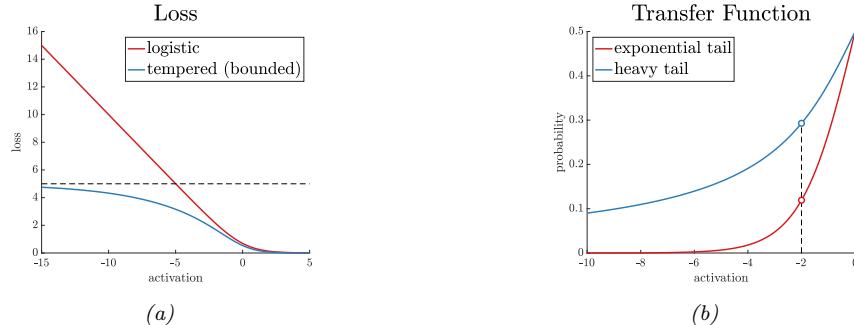


Figure 10.12: (a) Illustration of logistic and tempered logistic loss with  $t_1 = 0.8$ . (b) Illustration of sigmoid and tempered sigmoid transfer function with  $t_2 = 2.0$ . From <https://ai.googleblog.com/2019/08/bi-tempered-logistic-loss-for-training.html>. Used with kind permission of Ehsan Amid.

the tempered log function is bounded from below by  $-1/(1-t)$  for  $0 \leq t < 1$ , and hence the cross entropy loss is bounded from above (see Fig. 10.12).

The second observation is that examples that are near the decision boundary, but mislabeled, need to use a transfer function (that maps from activations  $\mathbb{R}^C$  to probabilities  $[0, 1]^C$ ) that has heavier tails than the softmax, which is based on the exponential, so it can “look past” the neighborhood of the immediate examples. In particular, the standard softmax is defined by

$$\hat{y}_c = \frac{a_c}{\sum_{c'=1}^C \exp(a_{c'})} = \exp \left[ a_c - \log \sum_{c'=1}^C \exp(a_{c'}) \right] \quad (10.108)$$

where  $\mathbf{a}$  is the logits vector. We can make a heavy tailed version by using the **tempered softmax**, which uses a temperature parameter  $t_2 > 1 > t_1$  as follows:

$$\hat{y}_c = \exp_{t_2}(a_c - \lambda_{t_2}(\mathbf{a})) \quad (10.109)$$

where

$$\exp_t(x) \triangleq [1 + (1-t)x]_+^{1/(1-t)} \quad (10.110)$$

is a tempered version of the exponential function. (This reduces to the standard exponential function as  $t \rightarrow 1$ .) In Fig. 10.12(right), we show that the tempered softmax (in the two-class case) has heavier tails, as desired.

All that remains is a way to compute  $\lambda_{t_2}(\mathbf{a})$ . This must satisfy the following fixed point equation:

$$\sum_{c=1}^C \exp_{t_2}(a_c - \lambda(\mathbf{a})) = 1 \quad (10.111)$$

We can solve for  $\lambda$  using binary search, or by using the iterative procedure in Algorithm 3.

Combining the tempered softmax with the tempered cross entropy results in a method called **bi-tempered logistic regression**. In Fig. 10.13, we show an example of this in 2d. The top row is

---

**Algorithm 3:** Iterative algorithm for computing  $\lambda(\mathbf{a})$  in Eq. (10.111). From [AWS19].

---

```

1 Input: logits  $\mathbf{a}$ , temperature  $t > 1$  ;
2  $\mu := \max(\mathbf{a})$  ;
3  $\mathbf{a} := \mathbf{a} - \mu$  ;
4 while  $\mathbf{a}$  not converged do
5    $Z(\mathbf{a}) := \sum_{c=1}^C \exp_t(a_c)$  ;
6    $\mathbf{a} := Z(\mathbf{a})^{1-t}(\mathbf{a} - \mu\mathbf{1})$  ;
7 Return  $-\log_t \frac{1}{Z(\mathbf{a})} + \mu$ 
```

---

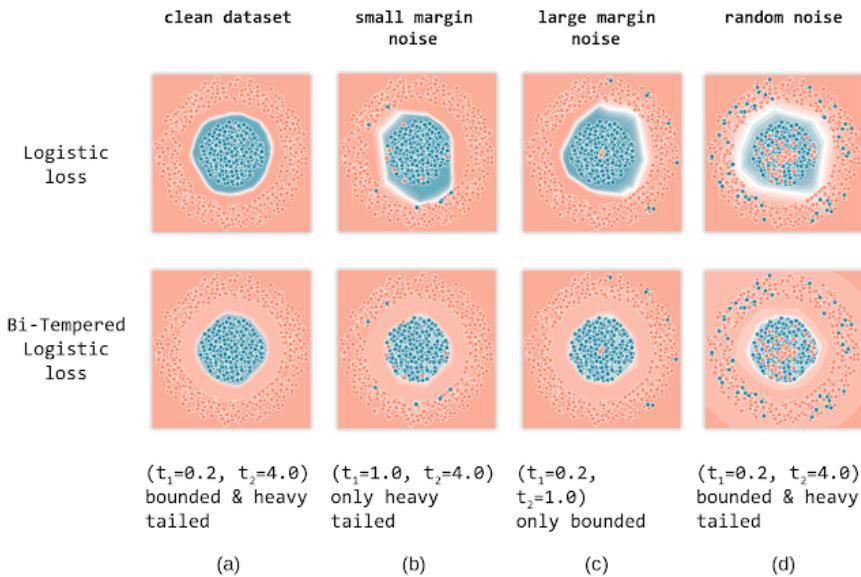


Figure 10.13: Illustration of standard and bi-tempered logistic regression on data with label noise. From <https://ai.googleblog.com/2019/08/bi-tempered-logistic-loss-for-training.html>. Used with kind permission of Ehsan Amid.

standard logistic regression, the bottom row is bi-tempered. The first column is clean data. The second column has label noise near the boundary. The robust version uses  $t_1 = 1$  (standard cross entropy) but  $t_2 = 4$  (tempered softmax with heavy tails). The third column has label noise far from the boundary. The robust version uses  $t_1 = 0.2$  (tempered cross entropy with bounded loss) but  $t_2 = 1$  (standard softmax). The fourth column has both kinds of noise; in this case, the robust version uses  $t_1 = 0.2$  and  $t_2 = 4$ .

## 10.6 Bayesian logistic regression

So far we have focused on point estimates of the parameters, either the MLE or the MAP estimate. However, in some cases we want to compute the posterior,  $p(\mathbf{w}|\mathcal{D})$ , in order to capture our uncertainty. This can be particularly useful in settings where we have little data, and where choosing the wrong decision may be costly; this arises in online advertising, for example (see Sec. 8.3).

Unlike with linear regression, it is not possible to compute the posterior exactly for a logistic regression model. A wide range of approximate algorithms can be used, as we briefly discuss in Sec. 7.7. In this section, we give a few examples of different methods. But before we discuss how to approximate the posterior, we discuss how to use the posterior to make predictions.

### 10.6.1 Approximating the posterior predictive

The posterior  $p(\mathbf{w}|\mathcal{D})$  tells us everything we know about the parameters of the model given the data. However, in machine learning applications, the main task of interest is usually to predict an output  $y$  given an input  $\mathbf{x}$ , rather than to try to understand the parameters of our model. Thus we need to compute the **posterior predictive distribution**

$$p(y|\mathbf{x}, \mathcal{D}) = \int p(y|\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{w})p(\mathbf{w}|\mathcal{D})d\mathbf{w} \quad (10.112)$$

As we discussed in Sec. 2.4.2, a simple approach to this is to first compute a point estimate  $\hat{\mathbf{w}}$  of the parameters, such as the MLE or MAP estimate, and then to ignore all posterior uncertainty, by assuming  $p(\mathbf{w}|\mathcal{D}) = \delta(\mathbf{w} - \hat{\mathbf{w}})$ . In this case, the above integral reduces to the following plugin approximation:

$$p(\mathbf{y}|\mathbf{x}, \mathcal{D}) \approx \int p(\mathbf{y}|\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{w})\delta(\mathbf{w} - \hat{\mathbf{w}})d\mathbf{w} = p(\mathbf{y}|\mathbf{x}, \hat{\mathbf{w}}) \quad (10.113)$$

However, if we want to compute uncertainty in our predictions, we should use a non-degenerate posterior. It is common to use a Gaussian posterior, as we will see. But we still need to approximate the integral in Eq. (10.112). We discuss some approaches to this below.

#### 10.6.1.1 Monte Carlo approximation

The simplest approach is to use a **Monte Carlo approximation** to the integral. This means we draw  $S$  samples from the posterior,  $\mathbf{w}_s \sim p(\mathbf{w}|\mathcal{D})$ , and then compute

$$p(y = 1|\mathbf{x}, \mathcal{D}) \approx \frac{1}{S} \sum_{s=1}^S \sigma(\mathbf{w}_s^\top \mathbf{x}) \quad (10.114)$$

#### 10.6.1.2 Probit approximation

Although the Monte Carlo approximation is simple, it can be slow, since we need to draw  $S$  samples at test time for each input  $\mathbf{x}$ . Fortunately, if  $p(\mathbf{w}|\mathcal{D}) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{w}|\boldsymbol{\mu}, \boldsymbol{\Sigma})$ , there is a simple yet accurate deterministic approximation, first suggested in [SL90]. To explain this approximation, we follow the presentation of [Bis06, p219]. The key observation is that the sigmoid function  $\sigma(a)$  is similar in

shape to the Gaussian cdf (see Sec. 3.3.1)  $\Phi(a)$ . In particular we have  $\sigma(a) \approx \Phi(\lambda a)$ , where  $\lambda^2 = \pi/8$  ensures the two functions have the same slope at the origin. This is useful since we can integrate a Gaussian cdf wrt a Gaussian pdf exactly:

$$\int \Phi(\lambda a) \mathcal{N}(a|m, v) da = \Phi\left(\frac{m}{(\lambda^{-2} + v)^{\frac{1}{2}}}\right) = \Phi\left(\frac{\lambda m}{(1 + \lambda^2 v)^{\frac{1}{2}}}\right) \approx \sigma(\kappa(v)m) \quad (10.115)$$

where we have defined

$$\kappa(v) \triangleq (1 + \pi v/8)^{-\frac{1}{2}} \quad (10.116)$$

Thus if we define  $a = \mathbf{x}^\top \mathbf{w}$ , we have

$$p(y=1|\mathbf{x}, \mathcal{D}) \approx \sigma(\kappa(v)m) \quad (10.117)$$

$$m = \mathbb{E}[a] = \mathbf{x}^\top \boldsymbol{\mu} \quad (10.118)$$

$$v = \mathbb{V}[a] = \mathbb{V}[\mathbf{x}^\top \mathbf{w}] = \mathbf{x}^\top \boldsymbol{\Sigma} \mathbf{x} \quad (10.119)$$

where we used Eq. (C.68) in the last line. Since  $\Phi^{-1}$  is known as the probit function, we will call this the **probit approximation**.

Using Eq. (10.117) results in predictions that are less extreme (in terms of their confidence) than the plug-in estimate. To see this, note that  $0 < \kappa(v) < 1$  and hence  $\kappa(v)m < m$ , so  $\sigma(\kappa(v)m)$  is closer to 0.5 than  $\sigma(m)$  is. However, the decision boundary itself will not be affected. To see this, note that the decision boundary is the set of points  $\mathbf{x}$  for which  $p(y=1|\mathbf{x}, \mathcal{D}) = 0.5$ . This implies  $\kappa(v)m = 0$ , which implies  $m = \bar{\mathbf{w}}^\top \mathbf{x} = 0$ ; but this is the same as the decision boundary from the plugin estimate. Thus “being Bayesian” doesn’t change the misclassification rate (in this case), but it does change the confidence estimates of the model, which can be important, as we illustrate in Sec. 10.6.2.

In the multiclass case, [Nab01, p353] suggests the following extension of the Spiegelhalter method of Sec. 10.6.1.2:

$$p(y=c|\mathbf{x}, \mathcal{D}) \approx \frac{\exp(\kappa(v_c)m_c)}{\sum_{c'} \exp(\kappa(v_{c'})m_{c'})} \quad (10.120)$$

$$m_c = \bar{\mathbf{m}}_c^\top \mathbf{x} \quad (10.121)$$

$$v_c = \mathbf{x}^\top \mathbf{V}_{c,c} \mathbf{x} \quad (10.122)$$

where  $\kappa$  is defined in Eq. (10.116). Unlike the binary case, taking into account posterior covariance gives different predictions than the plug-in approach (see Exercise 3.10.3 of [RW06]).

## 10.6.2 Laplace approximation

As we discuss in Sec. 7.7.2, the Laplace approximation approximates the posterior using a Gaussian. The mean of the Gaussian is equal to the MAP estimate  $\hat{\mathbf{w}}$ , and the covariance is equal to the inverse Hessian  $\mathbf{H}$  computed at the MAP estimate, i.e.,  $p(\mathbf{w}|\mathcal{D}) \approx \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{w}|\hat{\mathbf{w}}, \mathbf{H})$ . We can find the mode using a standard optimization method (see Sec. 10.2.7), and we use can use the results from Sec. 10.2.3.4 to compute the Hessian at the mode.

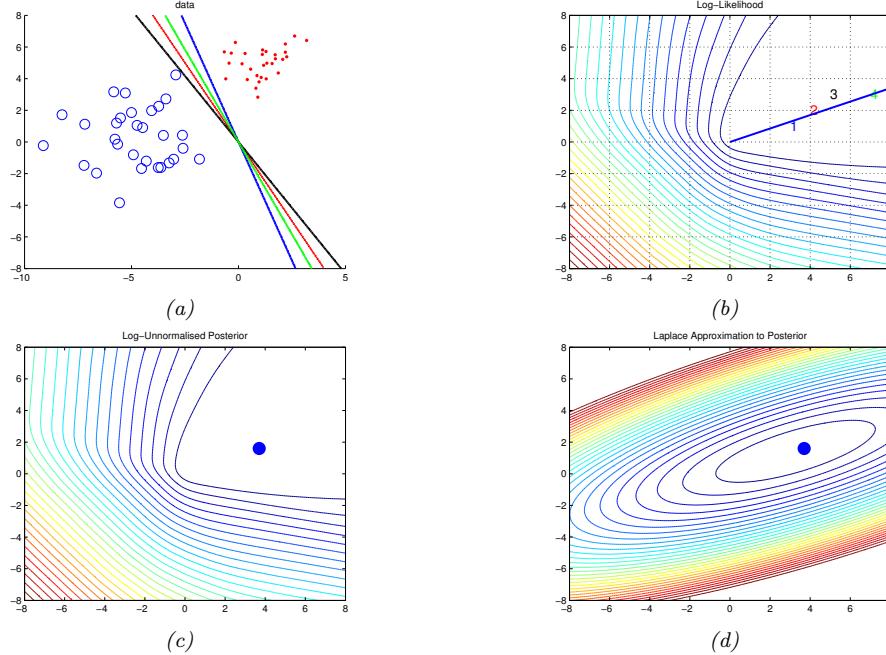


Figure 10.14: (a) Illustration of the data. (b) Log-likelihood for a logistic regression model. The line is drawn from the origin in the direction of the MLE (which is at infinity). The numbers correspond to 4 points in parameter space, corresponding to the lines in (a). (c) Unnormalized log posterior (assuming vague spherical prior). (d) Laplace approximation to posterior. Adapted from a figure by Mark Girolami. Generated by `logregLaplaceGirolamiDemo.m`.

As an example, consider the data illustrated in Fig. 10.14(a). There are many parameter settings that correspond to lines that perfectly separate the training data; we show 4 example lines. The likelihood surface is shown in Fig. 10.14(b). The diagonal line connects the origin to the point in the grid with maximum likelihood,  $\hat{\mathbf{w}}_{\text{mle}} = (8.0, 3.4)$ . (The unconstrained MLE has  $\|\mathbf{w}\| = \infty$ , as we discussed in Sec. 10.2.7; this point can be obtained by following the diagonal line infinitely far to the right.)

For each decision boundary in Fig. 10.14(a), we plot the corresponding parameter vector in Fig. 10.14(b). These parameters values are  $\mathbf{w}_1 = (3, 1)$ ,  $\mathbf{w}_2 = (4, 2)$ ,  $\mathbf{w}_3 = (5, 3)$ , and  $\mathbf{w}_4 = (7, 3)$ . These points all approximately satisfy  $\mathbf{w}_i(1)/\mathbf{w}_i(2) \approx \hat{\mathbf{w}}_{\text{mle}}(1)/\hat{\mathbf{w}}_{\text{mle}}(2)$ , and hence are close to the orientation of the maximum likelihood decision boundary. The points are ordered by increasing weight norm (3.16, 4.47, 5.83, and 7.62).

To ensure a unique solution, we use a (spherical) Gaussian prior centered at the origin,  $\mathcal{N}(\mathbf{w} | \mathbf{0}, \sigma^2 \mathbf{I})$ . The value of  $\sigma^2$  controls the strength of the prior. If we set  $\sigma^2 = \infty$ , we force the MAP estimate to be  $\mathbf{w} = \mathbf{0}$ ; this will result in maximally uncertain predictions, since all points  $\mathbf{x}$  will produce a predictive distribution of the form  $p(y=1|\mathbf{x}) = 0.5$ . If we set  $\sigma^2 = 0$ , the MAP estimate becomes the MLE, resulting in minimally uncertain predictions. (In particular, all positively labeled points

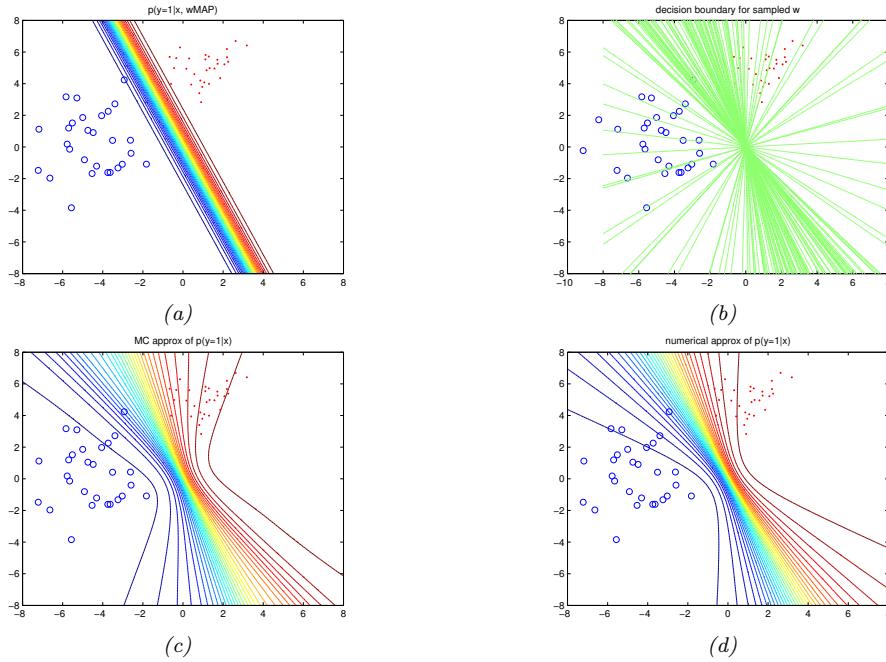


Figure 10.15: Posterior predictive distribution for a logistic regression model in 2d. Top left: contours of  $p(y = 1|\mathbf{x}, \hat{\mathbf{w}}_{map})$ . Top right: samples from the posterior predictive distribution. Bottom left: Averaging over these samples. Bottom right: moderated output (probit approximation). Adapted from a figure by Mark Girolami. Generated by [logregLaplaceGirolamiDemo.m](#).

will have  $p(y = 1|\mathbf{x}) = 1.0$ , and all negatively labeled points will have  $p(y = 1|\mathbf{x}) = 0.0$ , since the data is separable.) As a compromise (to make a nice illustration), we pick the value  $\sigma^2 = 100$ .

Multiplying this prior by the likelihood results in the unnormalized posterior shown in Fig. 10.14(c). The MAP estimate is shown by the blue dot. The Laplace approximation to this posterior is shown in Fig. 10.14(d). We see that it gets the mode correct (by construction), but the shape of the posterior is somewhat distorted. (The southwest-northeast orientation captures uncertainty about the magnitude of  $\mathbf{w}$ , and the southeast-northwest orientation captures uncertainty about the orientation of the decision boundary.)

In Fig. 10.15, we show contours of the posterior predictive distribution. Fig. 10.15(a) shows the plugin approximation using the MAP estimate. We see that there is no uncertainty about the decision boundary, even though we are generating probabilistic predictions over the labels. Fig. 10.15(b) shows what happens when we plug in samples from the Gaussian posterior. Now we see that there is considerable uncertainty about the orientation of the “best” decision boundary. Fig. 10.15(c) shows the average of these samples. By averaging over multiple predictions, we see that the uncertainty in the decision boundary “splays out” as we move further from the training data. Fig. 10.15(d) shows that the probit approximation gives very similar results to the Monte Carlo approximation.

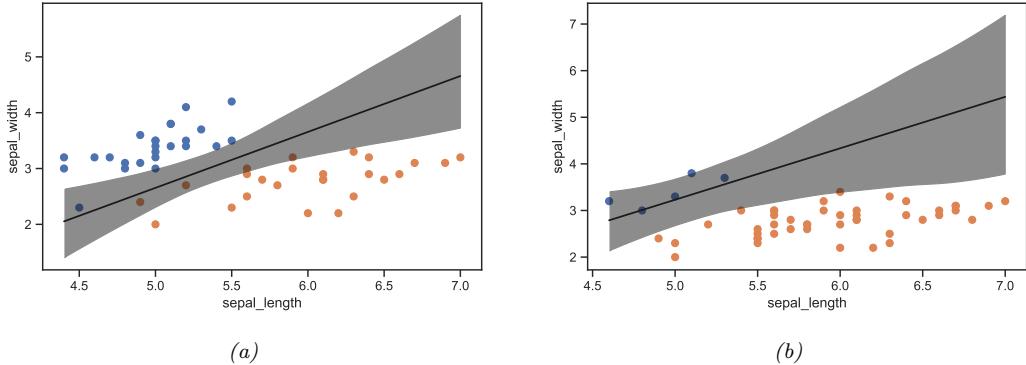


Figure 10.16: Illustration of the posterior over the decision boundary for classifying iris flowers (setosa vs versicolor) using 2 input features. (a) 25 examples per class. Adapted from Figure 4.5 of [Mar18]. (b) 5 examples of class 0, 45 examples of class 1. Adapted from Figure 4.8 of [Mar18]. Generated by `logreg_iris_bayes_2d_pymc3.py`.

### 10.6.3 MCMC approximation

Markov chain Monte Carlo, or MCMC, is often considered the “gold standard” for approximate inference, since it makes no explicit assumptions about the form of the posterior. Instead, it just approximates it non-parametrically using a set of  $S$  samples:

$$q(\boldsymbol{\theta}|\mathcal{D}) \approx \frac{1}{S} \sum_{s=1}^S \delta(\boldsymbol{\theta} - \boldsymbol{\theta}^s) \quad (10.123)$$

where  $\boldsymbol{\theta}^s \sim p(\boldsymbol{\theta}|\mathcal{D})$  are samples from the posterior.

To efficiently compute these samples, we can use the method of Hamiltonian Monte Carlo or HMC, which we briefly describe in Sec. 7.7.4. There are many good software libraries for HMC. Here we will use PyMC3.<sup>3</sup> They all rely on our ability to compute the gradient of the log joint,  $\nabla_{\boldsymbol{\theta}} \log p(\mathcal{D}, \boldsymbol{\theta})$ ; we can use automatic differentiation for this, or use the explicit derivation we discussed in Sec. 10.2.3 for the binary case and Sec. 10.3.2 for the multiclass case.

Let us apply HMC to a 2d version of the binary iris classification problem that we discussed in Sec. 2.4.3, where we just use two input features, sepal length and sepal width. The decision boundary is the set of points  $(x_1^*, x_2^*)$  such that  $\sigma(b + w_1 x_1^* + w_2 x_2^*) = 0.5$ . Such points must lie on the following line:

$$x_2^* = -\frac{b}{w_2} + \left( -\frac{w_1}{w_2} x_1^* \right) \quad (10.124)$$

We can therefore compute an MC approximation to the posterior over decision boundaries by sampling the parameters from the posterior,  $(w_1, w_2, b) \sim p(\boldsymbol{\theta}|\mathcal{D})$ , and plugging them into the above equation, to get  $p(x_1^*, x_2^* | \mathcal{D})$ , similar to Eq. (2.47). The results of this method (using a vague Gaussian prior

<sup>3</sup> See <https://docs.pymc.io/>.

for the parameters) are shown in Fig. 10.16a. The solid line is the posterior mean, and the shaded interval is a 95% credible interval. As before, we see that the uncertainty about the location of the boundary is higher as we move away from the training data.

In Fig. 10.16b, we show what happens to the decision boundary when we have unbalanced classes. We notice two things. First, the posterior uncertainty increases, because we have less data from the blue class. Second, we see that the posterior mean of the decision boundary shifts towards the class with less data. This follows from the analysis of Sec. 9.2.3, where we showed that changing the class prior changes the location of the decision boundary, so that more of the input space gets mapped to the class which is higher a priori.

#### 10.6.4 Variational inference

As we discuss in Sec. 7.7.3, variational inference converts approximate inference into an optimization problem. It does this by choosing an approximate distribution  $q(\mathbf{w}; \boldsymbol{\xi})$  and optimising the variational parameters  $\boldsymbol{\xi}$  to maximize the evidence lower bound (ELBO). This has the effect of making  $q(\mathbf{w}; \boldsymbol{\xi}) \approx p(\mathbf{w}|\mathcal{D})$  in the sense that the KL divergence is small.

##### 10.6.4.1 Binary case

In this section, we consider variational inference for the parameters of a binary logistic regression model using a Gaussian prior,  $p(\mathbf{w}) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{w}|\boldsymbol{\mu}_0, \mathbf{V}_0)$ . We also assume a Gaussian posterior of the form  $q(\mathbf{w}) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{w}|\boldsymbol{\mu}_N, \mathbf{V}_N)$ , which we fit by optimizing the ELBO. Our derivation of this posterior follows the presentation of [Bis06, Sec 10.6].

Let us rewrite the likelihood for a single observation as follows:

$$p(y_n|\mathbf{x}_n, \mathbf{w}) = \sigma(\eta_n)^{y_n} (1 - \sigma(\eta_n))^{1-y_n} \quad (10.125)$$

$$= \left( \frac{1}{1 + e^{-\eta_n}} \right)^{y_n} \left( 1 - \frac{1}{1 + e^{-\eta_n}} \right)^{1-y_n} \quad (10.126)$$

$$= e^{-\eta_n y_n} \frac{e^{-\eta_n}}{1 + e^{-\eta_n}} = e^{-\eta_n y_n} \sigma(-\eta_n) \quad (10.127)$$

where  $\eta_n = \mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x}_n$  are the logits. This is not conjugate to the Gaussian prior. So we will use the following ‘‘Gaussian-like’’ variational lower bound to the sigmoid function, proposed in [JJ96; JJ00]:

$$\sigma(\eta_n) \geq \sigma(\xi_n) \exp [(\eta_n - \xi_n)/2 - \lambda(\xi_n)(\eta_n^2 - \xi_n^2)] \quad (10.128)$$

where  $\xi_n$  is the variational parameter for datapoint  $n$ , and

$$\lambda(\boldsymbol{\xi}) \triangleq \frac{1}{4\xi} \tanh(\boldsymbol{\xi}/2) = \frac{1}{2\xi} \left[ \sigma(\boldsymbol{\xi}) - \frac{1}{2} \right] \quad (10.129)$$

We shall refer to this as the **JJ bound**, after its inventors, Jaakkola and Jordan. See Fig. 10.17(a) for a plot.

Using this bound, we can write

$$p(y_n|\mathbf{x}_n, \mathbf{w}) = e^{-\eta_n y_n} \sigma(-\eta_n) \geq e^{-\eta_n y_n} \sigma(\xi_n) \exp [(-\eta_n + \xi_n)/2 - \lambda(\xi_n)(\eta_n^2 - \xi_n^2)] \quad (10.130)$$

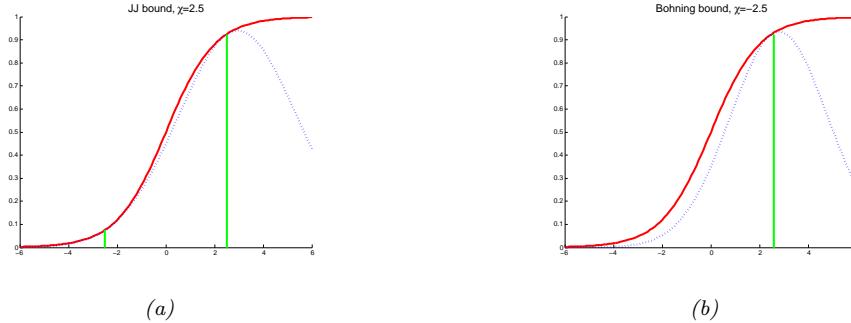


Figure 10.17: Quadratic lower bounds on the sigmoid (logistic) function. In solid red, we plot  $\sigma(x)$  vs  $x$ . In dotted blue, we plot the lower bound  $L(x, \xi)$  vs  $x$  for  $\xi = 2.5$ . (a) JJ bound. This is tight at  $\xi = \pm 2.5$ . (b) Bohning bound (Sec. 10.6.4.2). This is tight at  $\xi = 2.5$ . Generated by `sigmoidLowerBounds.m`.

We can now lower bound the log joint as follows:

$$\log p(\mathbf{y}|\mathbf{X}, \mathbf{w}) + \log p(\mathbf{w}) \geq -\frac{1}{2}(\mathbf{w} - \boldsymbol{\mu}_0)^\top \mathbf{V}_0^{-1}(\mathbf{w} - \boldsymbol{\mu}_0) \quad (10.131)$$

$$+ \sum_{n=1}^N [\eta_n(y_n - 1/2) - \lambda(\boldsymbol{\xi}_n)\mathbf{w}^\top(\mathbf{x}_n \mathbf{x}_n^\top)\mathbf{w}] \quad (10.132)$$

Since this is a quadratic function of  $\mathbf{w}$ , we can derive a Gaussian posterior approximation as follows:

$$q(\mathbf{w}|\boldsymbol{\xi}) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{w}|\boldsymbol{\mu}_N, \mathbf{V}_N) \quad (10.133)$$

$$\boldsymbol{\mu}_N = \mathbf{V}_N \left( \mathbf{V}_0^{-1}\boldsymbol{\mu}_0 + \sum_{n=1}^N (y_n - 1/2)\mathbf{x}_n \right) \quad (10.134)$$

$$\mathbf{V}_N^{-1} = \mathbf{V}_0^{-1} + 2 \sum_{n=1}^N \lambda(\boldsymbol{\xi}_n)\mathbf{x}_n \mathbf{x}_n^\top \quad (10.135)$$

This is more flexible than a Laplace approximation, since the variational parameters  $\boldsymbol{\xi}$  can be used to optimize the curvature of the posterior covariance. To find the optimal  $\boldsymbol{\xi}$ , we can maximize the ELBO, which is given by

$$\log p(\mathbf{y}|\mathbf{X}) = \log \int p(\mathbf{y}|\mathbf{X}, \mathbf{w})p(\mathbf{w})d\mathbf{w} \geq \log \int h(\mathbf{w}, \boldsymbol{\xi})p(\mathbf{w})d\mathbf{w} = \mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\xi}) \quad (10.136)$$

where

$$h(\mathbf{w}, \boldsymbol{\xi}) = \prod_{n=1}^N \sigma(\boldsymbol{\xi}_n) \exp [\eta_n y_n - (\eta_n + \boldsymbol{\xi}_n)/2 - \lambda(\boldsymbol{\xi}_n)(\eta_n^2 - \boldsymbol{\xi}_n^2)] \quad (10.137)$$

We can evaluate the lower bound analytically to get

$$\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\xi}) = \frac{1}{2} \log \frac{|\mathbf{V}_N|}{|\mathbf{V}_0|} + \frac{1}{2} \boldsymbol{\mu}_N^\top \mathbf{V}_N^{-1} \boldsymbol{\mu}_N - \frac{1}{2} \boldsymbol{\mu}_0^\top \mathbf{V}_0^{-1} \boldsymbol{\mu}_0 + \sum_{n=1}^N \left[ \log \sigma(\boldsymbol{\xi}_n) - \frac{1}{2} \boldsymbol{\xi}_n + \lambda(\boldsymbol{\xi}_n) \boldsymbol{\xi}_n^2 \right] \quad (10.138)$$

If we solve for  $\nabla_{\xi} \mathcal{L}(\xi) = \mathbf{0}$ , we get the following iterative update equation for each variational parameter:

$$(\xi_n^{\text{new}})^2 = \mathbf{x}_n \mathbb{E} [\mathbf{w} \mathbf{w}^\top] \mathbf{x}_n = \mathbf{x}_n (\mathbf{V}_n + \boldsymbol{\mu}_N \boldsymbol{\mu}_N^\top) \mathbf{x}_n \quad (10.139)$$

#### 10.6.4.2 Multinomial case

In this section we discuss how to approximate the posterior  $p(\mathbf{w}|\mathcal{D})$  for multinomial logistic regression using variational inference. We use a Gaussian prior  $p(\mathbf{w}) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{w}|\mathbf{m}_0, \mathbf{V}_0)$ , where  $\mathbf{w} = \text{vec}(\mathbf{W}) = [\mathbf{w}_1, \mathbf{w}_2, \dots, \mathbf{w}_C]$ , and a Gaussian posterior. The key idea is to create a “Gaussian-like” lower bound on the multi-class logistic regression likelihood due to [Boh92]. (See also [BM15; Cha12].)

Let  $\mathbf{y}_i \in \{0, 1\}^C$  be a one-hot label vector, and define the logits for example  $i$  to be

$$\boldsymbol{\eta}_i = [\mathbf{x}_i^\top \mathbf{w}_1, \dots, \mathbf{x}_i^\top \mathbf{w}_C] \quad (10.140)$$

If we define  $\mathbf{X}_i = \mathbf{I} \otimes \mathbf{x}_i$ , where  $\otimes$  is the kronecker product, and  $\mathbf{I}$  is  $C \times C$  identity matrix, then we can write the logits as  $\boldsymbol{\eta}_i = \mathbf{X}_i \mathbf{w}$ . (For example, if  $C = 2$  and  $\mathbf{x}_i = [1, 2, 3]$ , we have  $\mathbf{X}_i = [1, 2, 3, 0, 0, 0; 0, 0, 0, 1, 2, 3]$ .) Then the likelihood is given by

$$p(\mathbf{y}|\mathbf{X}, \mathbf{w}) = \prod_{i=1}^N \exp[\mathbf{y}_i^\top \boldsymbol{\eta}_i - \text{lse}(\boldsymbol{\eta}_i)] \quad (10.141)$$

where  $\text{lse}()$  is the log-sum-exp function

$$\text{lse}(\boldsymbol{\eta}_i) \triangleq \log \left( \sum_{c=1}^C \exp(\eta_{ic}) \right) \quad (10.142)$$

For identifiability, we can set  $\mathbf{w}_C = \mathbf{0}$ , so

$$\text{lse}(\boldsymbol{\eta}_i) = \log \left( 1 + \sum_{m=1}^{M-1} \exp(\eta_{im}) \right) \quad (10.143)$$

where  $M = C - 1$ . (We subtract 1 so that in the binary case,  $M = 1$ .)

The above likelihood is not conjugate to the Gaussian prior. However, we will now can convert it to a quadratic form. Consider a Taylor series expansion of the log-sum-exp function around  $\boldsymbol{\psi}_i \in \mathbb{R}^M$ :

$$\text{lse}(\boldsymbol{\eta}_i) = \text{lse}(\boldsymbol{\psi}_i) + (\boldsymbol{\eta}_i - \boldsymbol{\psi}_i)^\top \mathbf{g}(\boldsymbol{\psi}_i) + \frac{1}{2} (\boldsymbol{\eta}_i - \boldsymbol{\psi}_i)^\top \mathbf{H}(\boldsymbol{\psi}_i) (\boldsymbol{\eta}_i - \boldsymbol{\psi}_i) \quad (10.144)$$

$$\mathbf{g}(\boldsymbol{\psi}_i) = \exp[\boldsymbol{\psi}_i - \text{lse}(\boldsymbol{\psi}_i)] = \mathcal{S}(\boldsymbol{\psi}_i) \quad (10.145)$$

$$\mathbf{H}(\boldsymbol{\psi}_i) = \text{diag}(\mathbf{g}(\boldsymbol{\psi}_i)) - \mathbf{g}(\boldsymbol{\psi}_i) \mathbf{g}(\boldsymbol{\psi}_i)^\top \quad (10.146)$$

where  $\mathbf{g}$  and  $\mathbf{H}$  are the gradient and Hessian of  $\text{lse}$ , and  $\boldsymbol{\psi}_i \in \mathbb{R}^M$ , where  $M = C - 1$  is the number of classes minus 1. An upper bound to  $\text{lse}$  can be found by replacing the Hessian matrix  $\mathbf{H}(\boldsymbol{\psi}_i)$  with a matrix  $\mathbf{A}_i$  such that  $\mathbf{A}_i \succeq \mathbf{H}(\boldsymbol{\psi}_i)$  for all  $\boldsymbol{\psi}_i$ . [Boh92] showed that this can be achieved if we use the matrix  $\mathbf{A}_i = \frac{1}{2} \left[ \mathbf{I}_M - \frac{1}{M+1} \mathbf{1}_M \mathbf{1}_M^\top \right]$ . In the binary case, this becomes  $A_i = \frac{1}{2}(1 - \frac{1}{2}) = \frac{1}{4}$ .

Note that  $\mathbf{A}_i$  is independent of  $\boldsymbol{\psi}_i$ ; however, we still write it as  $\mathbf{A}_i$  (rather than dropping the  $i$  subscript), since other bounds that we consider below will have a data-dependent curvature term. The upper bound on lse therefore becomes

$$\text{lse}(\boldsymbol{\eta}_i) \leq \frac{1}{2} \boldsymbol{\eta}_i^\top \mathbf{A}_i \boldsymbol{\eta}_i - \mathbf{b}_i^\top \boldsymbol{\eta}_i + c_i \quad (10.147)$$

$$\mathbf{A}_i = \frac{1}{2} \left[ \mathbf{I}_M - \frac{1}{M+1} \mathbf{1}_M \mathbf{1}_M^\top \right] \quad (10.148)$$

$$\mathbf{b}_i = \mathbf{A}_i \boldsymbol{\psi}_i - \mathbf{g}(\boldsymbol{\psi}_i) \quad (10.149)$$

$$c_i = \frac{1}{2} \boldsymbol{\psi}_i^\top \mathbf{A}_i \boldsymbol{\psi}_i - \mathbf{g}(\boldsymbol{\psi}_i)^\top \boldsymbol{\psi}_i + \text{lse}(\boldsymbol{\psi}_i) \quad (10.150)$$

where  $\boldsymbol{\psi}_i \in \mathbb{R}^M$  is a vector of variational parameters. (This is the same bound as used in Sec. 10.3.4.)<sup>4</sup>

We can use the above result to get the following lower bound on the softmax likelihood:

$$\log p(y_i = c | \mathbf{x}_i, \mathbf{w}) \geq \left[ \mathbf{y}_i^\top \mathbf{X}_i \mathbf{w} - 4 \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{X}_i \mathbf{A}_i \mathbf{X}_i \mathbf{w} + \mathbf{b}_i^\top \mathbf{X}_i \mathbf{w} - c_i \right]_c \quad (10.151)$$

To simplify notation, define the pseudo-measurement

$$\tilde{\mathbf{y}}_i \triangleq \mathbf{A}_i^{-1} (\mathbf{b}_i + \mathbf{y}_i) \quad (10.152)$$

Then we can get a “Gaussianized” version of the observation model:

$$p(\mathbf{y}_i | \mathbf{x}_i, \mathbf{w}) \geq f(\mathbf{x}_i, \boldsymbol{\psi}_i) \mathcal{N}(\tilde{\mathbf{y}}_i | \mathbf{X}_i \mathbf{w}, \mathbf{A}_i^{-1}) \quad (10.153)$$

where  $f(\mathbf{x}_i, \boldsymbol{\psi}_i)$  is some function that does not depend on  $\mathbf{w}$ . Given this, it is easy to compute the posterior  $q(\mathbf{w}) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{m}_N, \mathbf{V}_N)$ , using Bayes rule for Gaussians.

Given the posterior, we can write the ELBO as follows:

$$\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\xi}) \triangleq -\mathbb{KL}(q(\mathbf{w}) \| p(\mathbf{w})) + \mathbb{E}_q \left[ \sum_{i=1}^N \log p(y_i | \mathbf{x}_i, \mathbf{w}) \right] \quad (10.154)$$

$$= -\mathbb{KL}(q(\mathbf{w}) \| p(\mathbf{w})) + \mathbb{E}_q \left[ \sum_{i=1}^N \mathbf{y}_i^\top \boldsymbol{\eta}_i - \text{lse}(\boldsymbol{\eta}_i) \right] \quad (10.155)$$

$$= -\mathbb{KL}(q(\mathbf{w}) \| p(\mathbf{w})) + \sum_{i=1}^N \mathbf{y}_i^\top \mathbb{E}_q [\boldsymbol{\eta}_i] - \sum_{i=1}^N \mathbb{E}_q [\text{lse}(\boldsymbol{\eta}_i)] \quad (10.156)$$

where  $p(\mathbf{w}) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{w} | \mathbf{m}_0, \mathbf{V}_0)$  is the prior and  $q(\mathbf{w}) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{w} | \mathbf{m}_N, \mathbf{V}_N)$  is the approximate posterior. The first term is just the KL divergence between two Gaussians, which is given by

$$\begin{aligned} -\mathbb{KL}(\mathcal{N}(\mathbf{m}_N, \mathbf{V}_N) \| \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{m}_0, \mathbf{V}_0)) &= -\frac{1}{2} [\text{tr}(\mathbf{V}_N \mathbf{V}_0^{-1}) - \log |\mathbf{V}_N \mathbf{V}_0^{-1}| \\ &\quad + (\mathbf{m}_N - \mathbf{m}_0)^\top \mathbf{V}_0^{-1} (\mathbf{m}_N - \mathbf{m}_0) - DM] \end{aligned} \quad (10.157)$$

---

4. If we have binary data, the Bohning bound becomes  $\log(1+e^\eta) \leq \frac{1}{2} a\eta^2 - b\eta + c$ , where  $a = \frac{1}{4}$ ,  $b = a\psi - (1+e^{-\psi})^{-1}$ ,  $c = \frac{1}{2} a\psi^2 - (1+e^{-\psi})^{-1}\psi + \log(1+e^\psi)$ . This is less accurate than the JJ bound, which has an adaptive curvature term, since  $a$  depends on  $\boldsymbol{\xi}$ .

where  $DM$  is the dimensionality of the Gaussian, and we assume a prior of the form  $p(\mathbf{w}) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{m}_0, \mathbf{V}_0)$ , where typically  $\mathbf{\mu}_0 = \mathbf{0}_{DM}$ , and  $\mathbf{V}_0$  is block diagonal. The second term is simply

$$\sum_{i=1}^N \mathbf{y}_i^\top \mathbb{E}_q [\boldsymbol{\eta}_i] = \sum_{i=1}^N \mathbf{y}_i^\top \tilde{\mathbf{m}}_i \quad (10.158)$$

where  $\tilde{\mathbf{m}}_i \triangleq \mathbf{X}_i \mathbf{m}_N$ . The final term can be lower bounded by taking expectations of our quadratic upper bound on lse as follows:

$$-\sum_{i=1}^N \mathbb{E}_q [\text{lse}(\boldsymbol{\eta}_i)] \geq -\frac{1}{2} \text{tr}(\mathbf{A}_i \tilde{\mathbf{V}}_i) - \frac{1}{2} \tilde{\mathbf{m}}_i \mathbf{A}_i \tilde{\mathbf{m}}_i + \mathbf{b}_i^\top \tilde{\mathbf{m}}_i - c_i \quad (10.159)$$

where  $\tilde{\mathbf{V}}_i \triangleq \mathbf{X}_i \mathbf{V}_N \mathbf{X}_i^\top$ . Hence we have

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\xi}) &\geq -\frac{1}{2} [\text{tr}(\mathbf{V}_N \mathbf{V}_0^{-1}) - \log |\mathbf{V}_N \mathbf{V}_0^{-1}| + (\mathbf{m}_N - \mathbf{m}_0)^\top \mathbf{V}_0^{-1} (\mathbf{m}_N - \mathbf{m}_0)] \\ &\quad - \frac{1}{2} DM + \sum_{i=1}^N \mathbf{y}_i^\top \tilde{\mathbf{m}}_i - \frac{1}{2} \text{tr}(\mathbf{A}_i \tilde{\mathbf{V}}_i) - \frac{1}{2} \tilde{\mathbf{m}}_i \mathbf{A}_i \tilde{\mathbf{m}}_i + \mathbf{b}_i^\top \tilde{\mathbf{m}}_i - c_i \end{aligned} \quad (10.160)$$

We will use coordinate ascent to optimize this lower bound. That is, we update the variational posterior parameters  $\mathbf{V}_N$  and  $\mathbf{m}_N$ , and then the variational likelihood parameters  $\boldsymbol{\psi}_i$ . We leave the detailed derivation as an exercise, and just state the results. We have

$$\mathbf{V}_N = \left( \mathbf{V}_0 + \sum_{i=1}^N \mathbf{X}_i^\top \mathbf{A}_i \mathbf{X}_i \right)^{-1} \quad (10.161)$$

$$\mathbf{m}_N = \mathbf{V}_N \left( \mathbf{V}_0^{-1} \mathbf{m}_0 + \sum_{i=1}^N \mathbf{X}_i^\top (\mathbf{y}_i + \mathbf{b}_i) \right) \quad (10.162)$$

$$\boldsymbol{\psi}_i = \tilde{\mathbf{m}}_i = \mathbf{X}_i \mathbf{m}_N \quad (10.163)$$

We can exploit the fact that  $\mathbf{A}_i$  is a constant matrix, plus the fact that  $\mathbf{X}_i$  has block structure, to simplify the first two terms as follows:

$$\mathbf{V}_N = \left( \mathbf{V}_0 + \mathbf{A} \otimes \sum_{i=1}^N \mathbf{x}_i \mathbf{x}_i^\top \right)^{-1} \quad (10.164)$$

$$\mathbf{m}_N = \mathbf{V}_N \left( \mathbf{V}_0^{-1} \mathbf{m}_0 + \sum_{i=1}^N (\mathbf{y}_i + \mathbf{b}_i) \otimes \mathbf{x}_i \right) \quad (10.165)$$

where  $\otimes$  denotes the kronecker product.

### 10.6.5 Online inference using assumed density filtering

In this section, we discuss how to use the assumed density filtering algorithm of Sec. 7.7.5 to recursively compute (i.e., in an online fashion) the (approximate) posterior  $p(\mathbf{w}_t | \mathcal{D}_{1:t})$  for a logistic regression

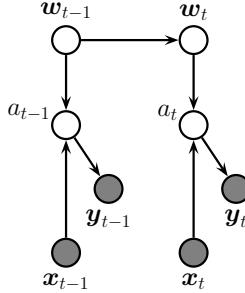


Figure 10.18: A dynamic logistic regression model.  $\mathbf{w}_t$  are the regression weights at time  $t$ , and  $a_t = \mathbf{w}_t^\top \mathbf{x}_t$ .

model using a Gaussian prior, where  $\mathcal{D}_{1:t} = \{(\mathbf{x}_n, y_n) : n = 1 : t\}$  is all the data we have seen so far. This is particularly useful in cases where the data is arriving in a continual stream, such as online advertising (see e.g., [Gra+10]) and recommender systems (see e.g., [Aga+14]). We follow the presentation of [Zoe07].

We assume our model has the following form:

$$p(y_t | \mathbf{x}_t, \mathbf{w}_t) = \text{Ber}(y_t | \sigma(\mathbf{x}_t^\top \mathbf{w}_t)) \quad (10.166)$$

$$p(\mathbf{w}_t | \mathbf{w}_{t-1}) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{w}_t | \mathbf{w}_{t-1}, \sigma^2 \mathbf{I}) \quad (10.167)$$

where  $\sigma^2$  is some process noise which allows the parameters to change slowly over time. (This can be set to 0, as in the recursive least squares method (Sec. 11.6.7), if desired.) See Fig. 10.18 for an illustration. As our approximating family, we will use diagonal Gaussians, for computational efficiency. Thus the prior is the posterior from the previous timestep, and has the form

$$q_{t-1}(\mathbf{w}_{t-1}) = \prod_j \mathcal{N}(w_{t-1,j} | \mu_{t-1,j}, \tau_{t-1,j}) \quad (10.168)$$

Now we discuss how to update this prior.

Define the logits as  $a_t = \mathbf{w}_t^\top \mathbf{x}_t$ . If  $q_{t|t-1}(\mathbf{w}_t) = \prod_j \mathcal{N}(w_{t,j} | \mu_{t|t-1,j}, \tau_{t|t-1,j})$ , then we can compute the predictive distribution for  $a_t$  as follows:

$$q_{t|t-1}(a_t) = \mathcal{N}(a_t | m_{t|t-1}, v_{t|t-1}) \quad (10.169)$$

$$m_{t|t-1} = \sum_j x_{t,j} \mu_{t|t-1,j} \quad (10.170)$$

$$v_{t|t-1} = \sum_j x_{t,j}^2 \tau_{t|t-1,j} \quad (10.171)$$

The posterior for  $a_t$  is given by

$$q_t(a_t) = \mathcal{N}(a_t | m_t, v_t) \quad (10.172)$$

$$m_t = \int a_t \frac{1}{Z_t} p(y_t | a_t) q_{t|t-1}(a_t) da_t \quad (10.173)$$

$$v_t = \int a_t^2 \frac{1}{Z_t} p(y_t | a_t) q_{t|t-1}(a_t) da_t - m_t^2 \quad (10.174)$$

$$Z_t = \int p(y_t | a_t) q_{t|t-1}(a_t) da_t \quad (10.175)$$

where  $p(y_t | a_t) = \text{Ber}(y_t | a_t)$ . These integrals are one dimensional, and so can be computed using Gaussian quadrature, as explained in [Zoe07].

Having inferred  $q_t(a_t)$ , we need to compute  $q_t(\mathbf{w} | a_t)$ . This can be done as follows. Define  $\delta_m$  as the change in the mean and  $\delta_v$  as the change in the variance:

$$m_t = m_{t|t-1} + \delta_m, \quad v_t = v_{t|t-1} + \delta_v \quad (10.176)$$

Then one can show that the new factored posterior over the model parameters is given by

$$q_t(w_{t,j}) = \mathcal{N}(w_{t,j} | \mu_{t,j}, \tau_{t,j}) \quad (10.177)$$

$$\mu_{t,j} = \mu_{t|t-1,j} + a_j \delta_m \quad (10.178)$$

$$\tau_{t,j} = \tau_{t|t-1,j} + a_j^2 \delta_v \quad (10.179)$$

$$a_j \triangleq \frac{x_{t,j} \tau_{t|t-1,j}}{\sum_{j'} x_{t,j'}^2 \tau_{t|t-1,j}^2} \quad (10.180)$$

Thus we see that the parameters which correspond to inputs with larger magnitude (big  $|x_{t,j}|$ ) or larger uncertainty (big  $\tau_{t|t-1,j}$ ) get updated most, which makes intuitive sense.

Note that the whole algorithm only takes  $O(D)$  time and space per step, the same as SGD. However, unlike SGD, there are no step-size parameters, since the diagonal covariance implicitly specifies the size of the update for each dimension. Furthermore, we get a posterior approximation, not just a point estimate.

## 10.7 Exercises

**Exercise 10.1** [Gradient and Hessian of log-likelihood for multinomial logistic regression]

- a. Let  $\mu_{ik} = \mathcal{S}(\boldsymbol{\eta}_i)_k$ , where  $\boldsymbol{\eta}_i = \mathbf{w}^T \mathbf{x}_i$ . Show that the Jacobian of the softmax is

$$\frac{\partial \mu_{ik}}{\partial \eta_{ij}} = \mu_{ik} (\delta_{kj} - \mu_{ij}) \quad (10.181)$$

where  $\delta_{kj} = I(k = j)$ .

- b. Hence show that the gradient of the NLL is given by

$$\nabla_{\mathbf{w}_c} \ell = \sum_i (y_{ic} - \mu_{ic}) \mathbf{x}_i \quad (10.182)$$

Hint: use the chain rule and the fact that  $\sum_c y_{ic} = 1$ .

- c. Show that the block submatrix of the Hessian for classes  $c$  and  $c'$  is given by

$$\mathbf{H}_{c,c'} = - \sum_i \mu_{ic} (\delta_{c,c'} - \mu_{i,c'}) \mathbf{x}_i \mathbf{x}_i^T \quad (10.183)$$

Hence show that the Hessian of the NLL is positive definite.

**Exercise 10.2** [Regularizing separate terms in 2d logistic regression]

(Source: Jaakkola.)

- a. Consider the data in Figure 10.19a, where we fit the model  $p(y=1|\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{w}) = \sigma(w_0 + w_1 x_1 + w_2 x_2)$ . Suppose we fit the model by maximum likelihood, i.e., we minimize

$$J(\mathbf{w}) = -\ell(\mathbf{w}, \mathcal{D}_{\text{train}}) \quad (10.184)$$

where  $\ell(\mathbf{w}, \mathcal{D}_{\text{train}})$  is the log likelihood on the training set. Sketch a possible decision boundary corresponding to  $\hat{\mathbf{w}}$ . (Copy the figure first (a rough sketch is enough), and then superimpose your answer on your copy, since you will need multiple versions of this figure). Is your answer (decision boundary) unique? How many classification errors does your method make on the training set?

- b. Now suppose we regularize only the  $w_0$  parameter, i.e., we minimize

$$J_0(\mathbf{w}) = -\ell(\mathbf{w}, \mathcal{D}_{\text{train}}) + \lambda w_0^2 \quad (10.185)$$

Suppose  $\lambda$  is a very large number, so we regularize  $w_0$  all the way to 0, but all other parameters are unregularized. Sketch a possible decision boundary. How many classification errors does your method make on the training set? Hint: consider the behavior of simple linear regression,  $w_0 + w_1 x_1 + w_2 x_2$  when  $x_1 = x_2 = 0$ .

- c. Now suppose we heavily regularize only the  $w_1$  parameter, i.e., we minimize

$$J_1(\mathbf{w}) = -\ell(\mathbf{w}, \mathcal{D}_{\text{train}}) + \lambda w_1^2 \quad (10.186)$$

Sketch a possible decision boundary. How many classification errors does your method make on the training set?

- d. Now suppose we heavily regularize only the  $w_2$  parameter. Sketch a possible decision boundary. How many classification errors does your method make on the training set?

**Exercise 10.3** [Logistic regression vs LDA/QDA]

(Source: Jaakkola.) Suppose we train the following binary classifiers via maximum likelihood.

- a. GaussI: A generative classifier, where the class-conditional densities are Gaussian, with both covariance matrices set to  $\mathbf{I}$  (identity matrix), i.e.,  $p(\mathbf{x}|y=c) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{x}|\boldsymbol{\mu}_c, \mathbf{I})$ . We assume  $p(y)$  is uniform.
- b. GaussX: as for GaussI, but the covariance matrices are unconstrained, i.e.,  $p(\mathbf{x}|y=c) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{x}|\boldsymbol{\mu}_c, \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_c)$ .
- c. LinLog: A logistic regression model with linear features.
- d. QuadLog: A logistic regression model, using linear and quadratic features (i.e., polynomial basis function expansion of degree 2).

After training we compute the performance of each model  $M$  on the training set as follows:

$$L(M) = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n \log p(y_i|\mathbf{x}_i, \hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}}, M) \quad (10.187)$$

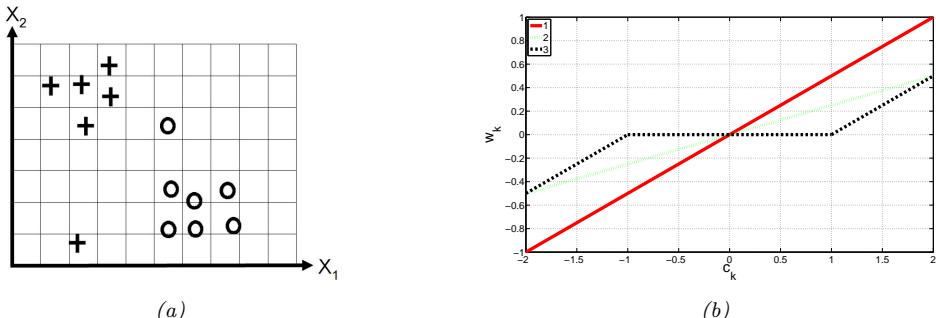


Figure 10.19: (a) Data for logistic regression question. (b) Plot of  $\hat{w}_k$  vs amount of correlation  $c_k$  for three different estimators.

(Note that this is the *conditional* log-likelihood  $p(y|\mathbf{x}, \hat{\theta})$  and not the joint log-likelihood  $p(y, \mathbf{x}|\hat{\theta})$ .) We now want to compare the performance of each model. We will write  $L(M) \leq L(M')$  if model  $M$  *must* have lower (or equal) log likelihood (on the training set) than  $M'$ , for any training set (in other words,  $M$  is worse than  $M'$ , at least as far as training set logprob is concerned). For each of the following model pairs, state whether  $L(M) \leq L(M')$ ,  $L(M) \geq L(M')$ , or whether no such statement can be made (i.e.,  $M$  might sometimes be better than  $M'$  and sometimes worse); also, for each question, briefly (1-2 sentences) explain why.

- a. GaussI, LinLog.
- b. GaussX, QuadLog.
- c. LinLog, QuadLog.
- d. GaussI, QuadLog.
- e. Now suppose we measure performance in terms of the average misclassification rate on the training set:

$$R(M) = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n I(y_i \neq \hat{y}(\mathbf{x}_i)) \quad (10.188)$$

Is it true in general that  $L(M) > L(M')$  implies that  $R(M) < R(M')$ ? Explain why or why not.



# 11 Linear regression

## 11.1 Introduction

In this chapter, we discuss **linear regression**, which is a very widely used method for predicting a real-valued output (also called the **dependent variable** or **target**)  $y \in \mathbb{R}$ , given a vector of real-valued inputs (also called **independent variables** or **explanatory variables**, or **covariates**)  $\mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^D$ . The key property of the model is that the expected value of the output is assumed to be a linear function of the input,  $\mathbb{E}[y|\mathbf{x}] = \mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x}$ , which makes the model easy to interpret, and easy to fit to data. We discuss nonlinear extensions later in this book.

## 11.2 Standard linear regression

In this section, we discuss the most common form of linear regression model.

### 11.2.1 Terminology

The term “linear regression” usually refers to a model of the following form:

$$p(y|\mathbf{x}, \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \mathcal{N}(y|w_0 + \mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x}, \sigma^2) \quad (11.1)$$

where  $\boldsymbol{\theta} = (w_0, \mathbf{w}, \sigma^2)$  are all the parameters of the model. (In statistics, the parameters  $w_0$  and  $\mathbf{w}$  are usually denoted by  $\beta_0$  and  $\beta$ .)

The vector of parameters  $\mathbf{w}_{1:D}$  are known as the **weights** or **regression coefficients**. Each coefficient  $w_d$  specifies the change in the output we expect if we change the corresponding input feature  $x_d$  by one unit. For example, suppose  $x_1$  is the age of a person,  $x_2$  is their education level (represented as a continuous number), and  $y$  is their income. Thus  $w_1$  corresponds to the increase in income we expect as someone becomes one year older (and hence get more experience), and  $w_2$  corresponds to the increase in income we expect as someone’s education level increases by one level. The term  $w_0$  is the **offset** or **bias** term, and specifies the output value if all the inputs are 0. This captures the unconditional mean of the response,  $w_0 = \mathbb{E}[y]$ , and acts as a baseline. We will usually assume that  $\mathbf{x}$  is written as  $[1, x_1, \dots, x_D]$ , so we can absorb the offset term  $w_0$  into the weight vector  $\mathbf{w}$ .

If the input is one-dimensional (so  $D = 1$ ), the model has the form  $f(\mathbf{x}; \mathbf{w}) = ax + b$ , where  $b = w_0$  is the intercept, and  $a = w_1$  is the slope. This is called **simple linear regression**. If the input is multi-dimensional,  $\mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^D$  where  $D > 1$ , the method is called **multiple linear regression**. If the

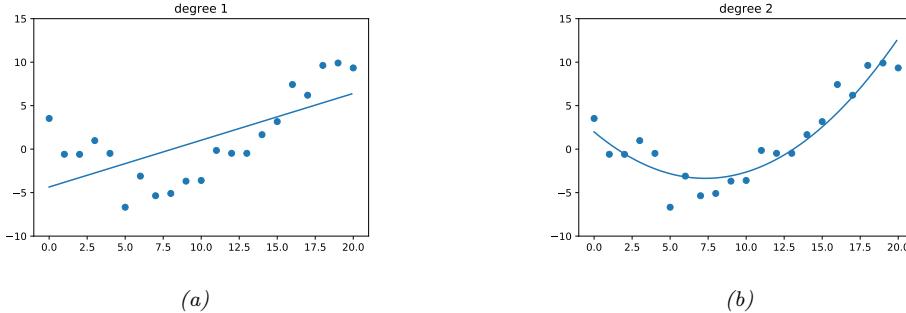


Figure 11.1: Polynomial of degrees 1 and 2 fit to 21 datapoints. Generated by [linreg\\_poly\\_vs\\_degree.py](#).

output is also multi-dimensional,  $\mathbf{y} \in \mathbb{R}^J$ , where  $J > 1$ , it is called **multivariate linear regression**,

$$p(\mathbf{y}|\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{W}) = \prod_{j=1}^J \mathcal{N}(y_j | \mathbf{w}_j^\top \mathbf{x}, \sigma_j^2) \quad (11.2)$$

See Exercise 11.1 for a simple numerical example.

In general, a straight line will not provide a good fit to most data sets. However, we can always apply a nonlinear transformation to the input features, by replacing  $\mathbf{x}$  with  $\phi(\mathbf{x})$  to get

$$p(y|\mathbf{x}, \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \mathcal{N}(y | \mathbf{w}^\top \phi(\mathbf{x}), \sigma^2) \quad (11.3)$$

As long as the parameters of the **feature extractor**  $\phi$  are fixed, the model remains *linear in the parameters*, even if it is not linear in the inputs. (We discuss ways to learn the feature extractor, and the final linear mapping, in Part III.)

As a simple example of a nonlinear transformation, consider the case of **polynomial regression**, which we introduced in Sec. 1.2.2.2. If the input is 1d, and we use a polynomial expansion of degree  $d$ , we get  $\phi(x) = [1, x, x^2, \dots, x^d]$ . See Fig. 11.1 for an example.

### 11.2.2 Least squares estimation

To fit a linear regression model to data, we will minimize the negative log likelihood on the training set. The objective function is given by

$$\text{NLL}(\mathbf{w}, \sigma^2) = -\sum_{n=1}^N \log \left[ \left( \frac{1}{2\pi\sigma^2} \right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \exp \left( -\frac{1}{2\sigma^2} (y_n - \mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x}_n)^2 \right) \right] \quad (11.4)$$

$$= \frac{1}{2\sigma^2} \sum_{n=1}^N (y_n - \hat{y}_n)^2 + \frac{N}{2} \log(2\pi\sigma^2) \quad (11.5)$$

where we have defined the predicted response  $\hat{y}_n \triangleq \mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x}_n$ . The MLE is the point where  $\nabla_{\mathbf{w}, \sigma} \text{NLL}(\mathbf{w}, \sigma^2) = \mathbf{0}$ . We can first optimize wrt  $\mathbf{w}$ , and then solve for the optimal  $\sigma$ .

In this section, we just focus on estimating the weights  $\mathbf{w}$ . In this case, the NLL is equal (up to irrelevant constants) to the **residual sum of squares**, which is given by

$$\text{RSS}(\mathbf{w}) = \frac{1}{2} \sum_{n=1}^N (y_n - \mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x}_n)^2 = \frac{1}{2} \|\mathbf{X}\mathbf{w} - \mathbf{y}\|_2^2 = \frac{1}{2} (\mathbf{X}\mathbf{w} - \mathbf{y})^\top (\mathbf{X}\mathbf{w} - \mathbf{y}) \quad (11.6)$$

We discuss how to optimize this below.

### 11.2.2.1 Ordinary least squares

From Eq. (A.40) we can show that the gradient is given by

$$\nabla_{\mathbf{w}} \text{RSS}(\mathbf{w}) = \mathbf{X}^\top \mathbf{X}\mathbf{w} - \mathbf{X}^\top \mathbf{y} \quad (11.7)$$

Setting the gradient to zero and solving gives

$$\mathbf{X}^\top \mathbf{X}\mathbf{w} = \mathbf{X}^\top \mathbf{y} \quad (11.8)$$

These are known as the **normal equations**, since, at the optimal solution,  $\mathbf{y} - \mathbf{X}\mathbf{w}$  is normal (orthogonal) to the range of  $\mathbf{X}$ , as we explain in Sec. 11.2.2.2. The corresponding solution  $\hat{\mathbf{w}}$  is the **ordinary least squares (OLS)** solution, which is given by

$$\hat{\mathbf{w}} = (\mathbf{X}^\top \mathbf{X})^{-1} \mathbf{X}^\top \mathbf{y} \quad (11.9)$$

The quantity  $\mathbf{X}^\dagger = (\mathbf{X}^\top \mathbf{X})^{-1} \mathbf{X}^\top$  is the (left) pseudo inverse of the (non-square) matrix  $\mathbf{A}$  (see Sec. B.5.3 for more details).

We can check that the solution is unique by showing that the Hessian is positive definite. In this case, the Hessian is given by

$$\mathbf{H}(\mathbf{w}) = \frac{\partial^2}{\partial \mathbf{w}^2} \text{RSS}(\mathbf{w}) = \mathbf{X}^\top \mathbf{X} \quad (11.10)$$

If  $\mathbf{X}$  is full rank (so the columns of  $\mathbf{X}$  are linearly independent), then  $\mathbf{H}$  is positive definite, since for any  $\mathbf{v} > \mathbf{0}$ , we have

$$\mathbf{v}^\top (\mathbf{X}^\top \mathbf{X}) \mathbf{v} = (\mathbf{X}\mathbf{v})^\top (\mathbf{X}\mathbf{v}) = \|\mathbf{X}\mathbf{v}\|^2 > 0 \quad (11.11)$$

Hence in the full rank case, the least squares objective has a unique global minimum. See Fig. 11.2 for an illustration.

### 11.2.2.2 Geometric interpretation of least squares

The normal equations have an elegant geometrical interpretation, deriving from Appendix B.7, as we now explain. We will assume  $N > D$ , so there are more observations than unknowns. (This is known as an **overdetermined system**.) We seek a vector  $\hat{\mathbf{y}} \in \mathbb{R}^N$  that lies in the linear subspace spanned by  $\mathbf{X}$  and is as close as possible to  $\mathbf{y}$ , i.e., we want to find

$$\underset{\hat{\mathbf{y}} \in \text{span}(\{\mathbf{x}_{:,1}, \dots, \mathbf{x}_{:,d}\})}{\operatorname{argmin}} \|\mathbf{y} - \hat{\mathbf{y}}\|_2. \quad (11.12)$$

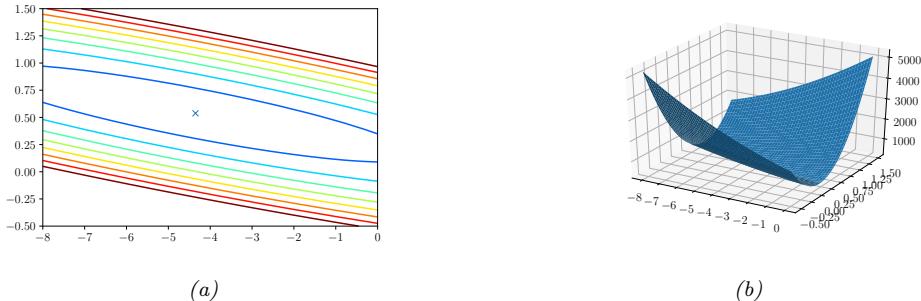


Figure 11.2: (a) Contours of the RSS error surface for the example in Fig. 11.1a. The blue cross represents the MLE. (b) Corresponding surface plot. Generated by `linreg_contours_sse_plot.py`.

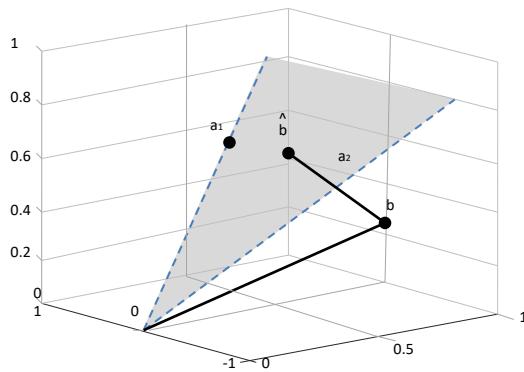


Figure 11.3: Graphical interpretation of least squares for  $m = 3$  equations and  $n = 2$  unknowns when solving the system  $\mathbf{Ax} = \mathbf{b}$ .  $\mathbf{a}_1$  and  $\mathbf{a}_2$  are the columns of  $\mathbf{A}$ , which define a 2d linear subspace embedded in  $\mathbb{R}^3$ . The target vector  $\mathbf{b}$  is a vector in  $\mathbb{R}^3$ ; its orthogonal projection onto the linear subspace is denoted  $\hat{\mathbf{b}}$ . The line from  $\mathbf{b}$  to  $\hat{\mathbf{b}}$  is the vector of residual errors, whose norm we want to minimize.

where  $\mathbf{x}_{:,d}$  is the  $d$ 'th column of  $\mathbf{X}$ . Since  $\hat{\mathbf{y}} \in \text{span}(\mathbf{X})$ , there exists some weight vector  $\mathbf{w}$  such that

$$\hat{\mathbf{y}} = w_1 \mathbf{x}_{:,1} + \cdots + w_n \mathbf{x}_{:,D} = \mathbf{X}\mathbf{w} \quad (11.13)$$

To minimize the norm of the residual,  $\mathbf{y} - \hat{\mathbf{y}}$ , we want the residual vector to be orthogonal to every column of  $\mathbf{X}$ . Hence

$$\mathbf{x}_{:,d}^\top (\mathbf{y} - \hat{\mathbf{y}}) = 0 \Rightarrow \mathbf{X}^\top (\mathbf{y} - \mathbf{X}\mathbf{w}) = \mathbf{0} \Rightarrow \mathbf{w} = (\mathbf{X}^\top \mathbf{X})^{-1} \mathbf{X}^\top \mathbf{y} \quad (11.14)$$

Hence our projected value of  $\mathbf{y}$  is given by

$$\hat{\mathbf{y}} = \mathbf{X}\mathbf{w} = \mathbf{X}(\mathbf{X}^\top \mathbf{X})^{-1} \mathbf{X}^\top \mathbf{y} \quad (11.15)$$

This corresponds to an **orthogonal projection** of  $\mathbf{y}$  onto the column space of  $\mathbf{X}$ . For example, consider the case where we have  $N = 3$  training examples, each of dimensionality  $D = 2$ . The

training data defines a 2d linear subspace, defined by the 2 columns of  $\mathbf{X}$ , each of which is a point in 3d. We project  $\mathbf{y}$ , which is also a point in 3d, onto this 2d subspace, as shown in Fig. 11.3.

### The projection matrix

$$\text{Proj}(\mathbf{X}) \triangleq \mathbf{X}(\mathbf{X}^\top \mathbf{X})^{-1} \mathbf{X}^\top \quad (11.16)$$

is sometimes called the **hat matrix**, since  $\hat{\mathbf{y}} = \text{Proj}(\mathbf{X})\mathbf{y}$ . In the special case that  $\mathbf{X} = \mathbf{x}$  is a column vector, the orthogonal projection of  $\mathbf{y}$  onto the line  $\mathbf{x}$  becomes

$$\text{Proj}(\mathbf{x})\mathbf{y} = \mathbf{x} \frac{\mathbf{x}^\top \mathbf{y}}{\mathbf{x}^\top \mathbf{x}} \quad (11.17)$$

#### 11.2.2.3 Algorithmic issues

Recall that the OLS solution is

$$\hat{\mathbf{w}} = \mathbf{X}^\dagger \mathbf{y} = (\mathbf{X}^\top \mathbf{X})^{-1} \mathbf{X}^\top \mathbf{y} \quad (11.18)$$

However, even if it is theoretically possible to compute the pseudo-inverse by inverting  $\mathbf{X}^\top \mathbf{X}$ , we should not do so for numerical reasons, since  $\mathbf{X}^\top \mathbf{X}$  may be ill conditioned or singular.

A better (and more general) approach is to compute the pseudo-inverse using the SVD. If you look at the source code for the scikit-learn linear regression `fit` function<sup>1</sup>, you will see that it uses the `scipy.linalg.lstsq` function to compute  $\mathbf{x}$ , which in turns indeed uses the SVD.

However, if  $\mathbf{X}$  is tall and skinny (i.e.,  $N \gg D$ ), it can be quicker to use QR decomposition (Sec. B.6.2). To do this, let  $\mathbf{X} = \mathbf{Q}\mathbf{R}$ , where  $\mathbf{Q}^\top \mathbf{Q} = \mathbf{I}$ . In Appendix B.7, we show that OLS is equivalent to solving the system of linear equations  $\mathbf{X}\mathbf{w} = \mathbf{y}$  in a way that minimizes  $\|\mathbf{X}\mathbf{w} - \mathbf{y}\|_2^2$ . (If  $N = D$  and  $\mathbf{X}$  is full rank, the equations have a unique solution, and the error will be 0.) Using QR decomposition, we can rewrite this system of equations as follows:

$$(\mathbf{Q}\mathbf{R})\mathbf{w} = \mathbf{y} \quad (11.19)$$

$$\mathbf{Q}^\top \mathbf{Q}\mathbf{R}\mathbf{w} = \mathbf{Q}^\top \mathbf{y} \quad (11.20)$$

$$\mathbf{w} = \mathbf{R}^{-1}(\mathbf{Q}^\top \mathbf{y}) \quad (11.21)$$

Since  $\mathbf{R}$  is upper triangular, we can solve this last set of equations using backsubstitution, thus avoiding matrix inversion. See `linsys_solve_demo.py` for a demo.

An alternative to the use of direct methods based on matrix decomposition (such as SVD and QR) is to use iterative solvers, such as the **conjugate gradient** method (which assumes  $\mathbf{X}$  is symmetric positive definite), and the **GMRES** (generalized minimal residual method), that works for general  $\mathbf{X}$ . (In SciPy, this is implemented by `sparse.linalg.gmres`.) These methods just require the ability to perform matrix-vector multiplications (i.e., an implementation of a **linear operator**), and thus are well-suited to problems where  $\mathbf{X}$  is sparse or structured. For details, see e.g., [TB97].

---

1. See [https://github.com/scikit-learn/scikit-learn/blob/14031f6/sklearn/linear\\_model/base.py#L539](https://github.com/scikit-learn/scikit-learn/blob/14031f6/sklearn/linear_model/base.py#L539)

### 11.2.2.4 Weighted least squares

In some cases, we want to associate a weight with each example. For example, in **heteroskedastic regression**, the variance depends on the input, so the model has the form

$$p(y|\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \mathcal{N}(y|\mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x}, \sigma^2(\mathbf{x})) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi\sigma^2(\mathbf{x})}} \exp\left(-\frac{1}{2\sigma^2(\mathbf{x})}(y - \mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x})^2\right) \quad (11.22)$$

Thus

$$p(\mathbf{y}|\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{y}|\mathbf{X}\mathbf{w}, \boldsymbol{\Lambda}^{-1}) \quad (11.23)$$

where  $\boldsymbol{\Lambda} = \text{diag}(1/\sigma^2(\mathbf{x}_n))$ . This is known as **weighted linear regression**. One can show that the MLE is given by

$$\hat{\mathbf{w}} = (\mathbf{X}^\top \boldsymbol{\Lambda} \mathbf{X})^{-1} \mathbf{X}^\top \boldsymbol{\Lambda} \mathbf{y} \quad (11.24)$$

This is known as the **weighted least squares** estimate.

### 11.2.3 Other approaches to computing the MLE

In this section, we discuss other approaches for computing the MLE.

#### 11.2.3.1 Solving for offset and slope separately

Typically we use a model of the form  $p(y|\mathbf{x}, \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \mathcal{N}(y|w_0 + \mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x}, \sigma^2)$ , where  $w_0$  is an offset or “bias” term. We can compute  $(w_0, \mathbf{w})$  at the same time by adding a column of 1s to  $\mathbf{X}$ , and the computing the MLE as above. Alternatively, we can solve for  $\mathbf{w}$  and  $w_0$  separately. (This will be useful later.) In particular, one can show that

$$\hat{\mathbf{w}} = (\mathbf{X}_c^\top \mathbf{X}_c)^{-1} \mathbf{X}_c^\top \mathbf{y}_c = \left[ \sum_{i=1}^N (\mathbf{x}_n - \bar{\mathbf{x}})(\mathbf{x}_n - \bar{\mathbf{x}})^T \right]^{-1} \left[ \sum_{i=1}^N (y_n - \bar{y})(\mathbf{x}_n - \bar{\mathbf{x}}) \right] \quad (11.25)$$

$$\hat{w}_0 = \frac{1}{N} \sum_n y_n - \frac{1}{N} \sum_n \mathbf{x}_n^\top \hat{\mathbf{w}} = \bar{y} - \bar{\mathbf{x}}^\top \hat{\mathbf{w}} \quad (11.26)$$

where  $\mathbf{X}_c$  is the centered input matrix containing  $\mathbf{x}_n^c = \mathbf{x}_n - \bar{\mathbf{x}}$  along its rows, and  $\mathbf{y}_c = \mathbf{y} - \bar{\mathbf{y}}$  is the centered output vector. Thus we can first compute  $\hat{\mathbf{w}}$  on centered data, and then estimate  $w_0$  using  $\bar{y} - \bar{\mathbf{x}}^\top \hat{\mathbf{w}}$ .

#### 11.2.3.2 Simple linear regression (1d inputs)

In the case of 1d (scalar) inputs, the results from Sec. 11.2.3.1 reduce to the following simple form, which may be familiar from basic statistics classes:

$$\hat{w}_1 = \frac{\sum_n (x_n - \bar{x})(y_n - \bar{y})}{\sum_n (x_n - \bar{x})^2} = \frac{C_{xy}}{C_x^2} \quad (11.27)$$

$$\hat{w}_0 = \bar{y} - \hat{w}_1 \bar{x} = \mathbb{E}[y] - w_1 \mathbb{E}[x] \quad (11.28)$$

where  $C_{xy} = \text{Cov}[X, Y]$  and  $C_x^2 = \text{Cov}[X, X] = \mathbb{V}[X]$ . We will use this result below.

### 11.2.3.3 Partial regression (2d inputs)

From Eq. (11.27), we can compute the **regression coefficient** of  $Y$  on  $X$  as follows:

$$R_{YX} \triangleq \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \mathbb{E}[Y|X=x] = w_1 = \frac{\sigma_{XY}}{\sigma_X^2} \quad (11.29)$$

This is the slope of the linear prediction for  $Y$  given  $X$ .

Now consider the case where we have 2 inputs, call them  $X$  and  $Z$ , so  $Y = w_0 + w_X X + w_Z Z + \epsilon$ , where  $\mathbb{E}[\epsilon] = 0$ . The least squares estimate of the coefficients are obtained when  $\epsilon$  is uncorrelated with each of the regressors, so  $\text{Cov}[\epsilon, X] = \mathbb{E}[\epsilon X] = 0$  and  $\text{Cov}[\epsilon, Z] = \mathbb{E}[\epsilon Z] = 0$ . Using this, one can show that the optimal coefficients for  $X$  and  $Y$  are given by

$$w_X = R_{YX \cdot Z} = \frac{\sigma_X^2 \sigma_{YZ} - \sigma_{YX} \sigma_{ZX}}{\sigma_Z^2 \sigma_X^2 - \sigma_{ZX}^2} \quad (11.30)$$

$$w_Z = R_{YZ \cdot X} = \frac{\sigma_Z^2 \sigma_{YX} - \sigma_{YZ} \sigma_{ZY}}{\sigma_Z^2 \sigma_X^2 - \sigma_{ZX}^2} \quad (11.31)$$

The term  $R_{YX \cdot Z}$  is called the **partial regression coefficient** of  $Y$  on  $X$ , keeping  $Z$  constant. This is equal to

$$R_{YX \cdot Z} = \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \mathbb{E}[Y|X=x, Z=z] \quad (11.32)$$

Note that this quantity is invariant to the specific value of  $Z$  we condition on. Note also that it is possible for  $R_{YX}$  to be positive and  $R_{YX \cdot Z}$  to be negative, since conditioning on extra variables can always flip the sign of a regression coefficient, as in Simpkins paradox (see Sec. C.4.6).

### 11.2.3.4 Recursively computing the MLE

OLS is a batch method for computing the MLE. In some applications, the data arrives in a continual stream, so we want to compute the estimate online, or **recursively**, as we discussed in Sec. 4.6. In this section, we show how to do this for the case of simple (1d) linear regression.

Recall from Sec. 11.2.3.2 that the batch MLE for simple linear regression is given by

$$\hat{w}_1 = \frac{\sum_n (x_n - \bar{x})(y_n - \bar{y})}{\sum_n (x_n - \bar{x})^2} = \frac{C_{xy}}{C_x^2} \quad (11.33)$$

$$\hat{w}_0 = \bar{y} - \hat{w}_1 \bar{x} \quad (11.34)$$

where  $C_{xy} = \text{Cov}[X, Y]$  and  $C_x = \text{Cov}[X, X] = \mathbb{V}[X]$ .

We now discuss how to compute these results in a recursive fashion. To do this, let us define the following sufficient statistics:

$$\bar{x}^{(n)} = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n x_i, \quad \bar{y}^{(n)} = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n y_i \quad (11.35)$$

$$C_{xx}^{(n)} = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n (x_i - \bar{x})^2, \quad C_{xy}^{(n)} = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n (x_i - \bar{x})(y_i - \bar{y}), \quad C_{yy}^{(n)} = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n (y_i - \bar{y})^2 \quad (11.36)$$

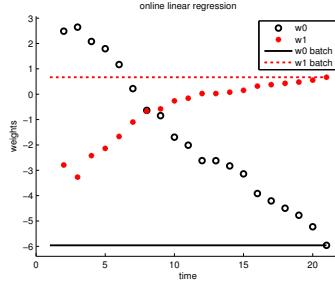


Figure 11.4: Regression coefficients over time for the 1d model in Fig. 11.1(a). Generated by `linregOnlineDemo.m`.

We can update the means online using

$$\bar{x}^{(n+1)} = \bar{x}^{(n)} + \frac{1}{n+1}(x_{n+1} - \bar{x}^{(n)}), \quad \bar{y}^{(n+1)} = \bar{y}^{(n)} + \frac{1}{n+1}(y_{n+1} - \bar{y}^{(n)}) \quad (11.37)$$

To update the covariance terms, let us first rewrite  $C_{xy}^{(n)}$  as follows:

$$C_{xy}^{(n)} = \frac{1}{n} \left[ \left( \sum_{i=1}^n x_i y_i \right) + \left( \sum_{i=1}^n \bar{x}^{(n)} \bar{y}^{(n)} \right) - \bar{x}^{(n)} \left( \sum_{i=1}^n y_i \right) - \bar{y}^{(n)} \left( \sum_{i=1}^n x_i \right) \right] \quad (11.38)$$

$$= \frac{1}{n} \left[ \left( \sum_{i=1}^n x_i y_i \right) + n\bar{x}^{(n)}\bar{y}^{(n)} - \bar{x}^{(n)}n\bar{y}^{(n)} - \bar{y}^{(n)}n\bar{x}^{(n)} \right] \quad (11.39)$$

$$= \frac{1}{n} \left[ \left( \sum_{i=1}^n x_i y_i \right) - n\bar{x}^{(n)}\bar{y}^{(n)} \right] \quad (11.40)$$

Hence

$$\sum_{i=1}^n x_i y_i = nC_{xy}^{(n)} + n\bar{x}^{(n)}\bar{y}^{(n)} \quad (11.41)$$

and so

$$C_{xy}^{(n+1)} = \frac{1}{n+1} \left[ x_{n+1} y_{n+1} + nC_{xy}^{(n)} + n\bar{x}^{(n)}\bar{y}^{(n)} - (n+1)\bar{x}^{(n+1)}\bar{y}^{(n+1)} \right] \quad (11.42)$$

We can derive the update for  $C_{xx}^{(n+1)}$  in a similar manner.

See Fig. 11.4 for a simple illustration of these equations in action.

In Sec. 5.4.2, we discuss the least mean squares algorithm, which uses SGD to recursively compute the MLE for linear regression with  $D$ -dimensional inputs. In Sec. 11.6.7, we show the Bayesian analog of this, where we recursively compute the (Gaussian) posterior  $p(\mathbf{w}|\mathcal{D}_{1:t}, \sigma^2)$ . This is a more general setting, since it reflects uncertainty in the estimates, and can model dynamically changing distributions.

### 11.2.3.5 Deriving the MLE from a generative perspective

Linear regression is a discriminative model of the form  $p(y|\mathbf{x})$ . However, we can also use generative models for regression, by analogy to how we use generative models for classification in Chapter 9. The goal is to compute the conditional expectation

$$f(\mathbf{x}) = \mathbb{E}[y|\mathbf{x}] = \int y p(y|\mathbf{x}) dy = \frac{\int y p(\mathbf{x}, y) dy}{\int p(\mathbf{x}, y) dy} \quad (11.43)$$

Suppose we fit  $p(\mathbf{x}, y)$  using an MVN. The MLEs for the parameters of the joint distribution are the empirical means and covariances (see Sec. 4.2.6 for a proof of this result):

$$\boldsymbol{\mu}_x = \frac{1}{N} \sum_n \mathbf{x}_n \quad (11.44)$$

$$\mu_y = \frac{1}{N} \sum_n y_n \quad (11.45)$$

$$\boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{xx} = \frac{1}{N} \sum_n (\mathbf{x}_n - \bar{\mathbf{x}})(\mathbf{x}_n - \bar{\mathbf{x}})^\top = \frac{1}{N} \mathbf{X}_c^\top \mathbf{X}_c \quad (11.46)$$

$$\boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{xy} = \frac{1}{N} \sum_n (\mathbf{x}_n - \bar{\mathbf{x}})(y_n - \bar{y}) = \frac{1}{N} \mathbf{X}_c^\top \mathbf{y}_c \quad (11.47)$$

Hence from Eq. (3.97), we have

$$\mathbb{E}[y|\mathbf{x}] = \mu_y + \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{yx} \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{xx}^{-1} (\mathbf{x} - \boldsymbol{\mu}_x) \quad (11.48)$$

We can rewrite this as  $\mathbb{E}[y|\mathbf{x}] = w_0 + \mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x}$  by defining

$$w_0 = \mu_y - \mathbf{w}^\top \boldsymbol{\mu}_x = \bar{y} - \mathbf{w}^\top \bar{\mathbf{x}} \quad (11.49)$$

$$\mathbf{w} = \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{xx}^{-1} \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{yx}^\top = (\mathbf{X}_c^\top \mathbf{X}_c)^{-1} \mathbf{X}_c^\top \mathbf{y}_c \quad (11.50)$$

This matches the MLEs for the discriminative model as we showed in Sec. 11.2.3.1. Thus we see that fitting the joint model, and then conditioning it, yields the same result as fitting the conditional model. However, this is only true for Gaussian models (see Sec. 9.4 for further discussion of this point).

### 11.2.3.6 Deriving the MLE for $\sigma^2$

After estimating  $\hat{\mathbf{w}}_{\text{mle}}$  using one of the above methods, we can estimate the noise variance. It is easy to show that the MLE is given by

$$\hat{\sigma}_{\text{mle}}^2 = \underset{\sigma^2}{\operatorname{argmin}} \text{NLL}(\hat{\mathbf{w}}, \sigma^2) = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^N (y_n - \mathbf{x}_n^\top \hat{\mathbf{w}})^2 \quad (11.51)$$

This is just the MSE of the residuals, which is an intuitive result.

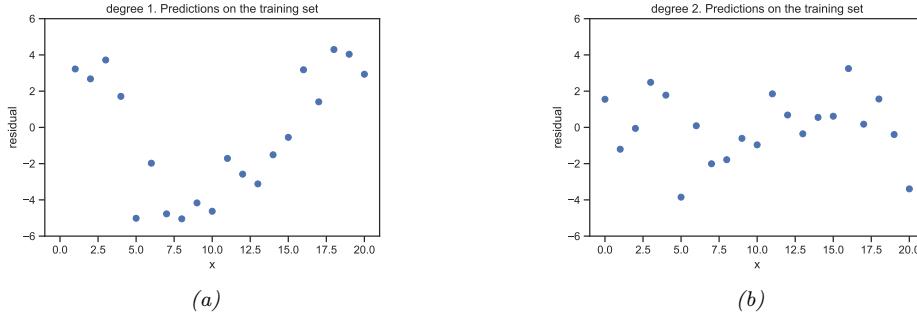


Figure 11.5: Residual plot for polynomial regression of degree 1 and 2 for the functions in Fig. 11.1(a-b). Generated by `linreg_poly_vs_degree.py`.

#### 11.2.4 Measuring goodness of fit

In this section, we discuss some simple ways to assess how well a regression model fits the data (which is known as **goodness of fit**).

##### 11.2.4.1 Residual plots

For 1d inputs, we can check the reasonableness of the model by plotting the residuals,  $r_n = y_n - \hat{y}_n$ , vs the input  $x_n$ . This is called a **residual plot**. The model assumes that the residuals have a  $\mathcal{N}(0, \sigma^2)$  distribution, so the residual plot should be a cloud of points more or less equally above and below the horizontal line at 0, without any obvious trends.

As an example, in Fig. 11.5(a), we plot the residuals for the linear model in Fig. 11.1(a). We see that there is some curved structure to the residuals, indicating a lack of fit. In Fig. 11.5(b), we plot the residuals for the quadratic model in Fig. 11.1(b). We see a much better fit.

##### 11.2.4.2 Prediction accuracy and $R^2$

We can measure the quality of a regression model's predictions by plotting  $\hat{y}_n$  vs  $y_n$ , rather than plotting vs  $x_n$ . See Fig. 11.6 for some examples. We can assess the fit quantitatively by computing the RSS (residual sum of squares) on the dataset:  $\text{RSS}(\mathbf{w}) = \sum_{n=1}^N (y_n - \mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x}_n)^2$ . A model with lower RSS fits the data better. Another measure that is used is **root mean squared error** or **RMSE**:

$$\text{RMSE}(\mathbf{w}) \triangleq \sqrt{\frac{1}{N} \text{RSS}(\mathbf{w})} \quad (11.52)$$

A more interpretable measure can be computed using the **coefficient of determination**, denoted by  $R^2$ :

$$R^2 \triangleq 1 - \frac{\sum_{n=1}^N (\hat{y}_n - y_n)^2}{\sum_{n=1}^N (\bar{y} - y_n)^2} \quad (11.53)$$

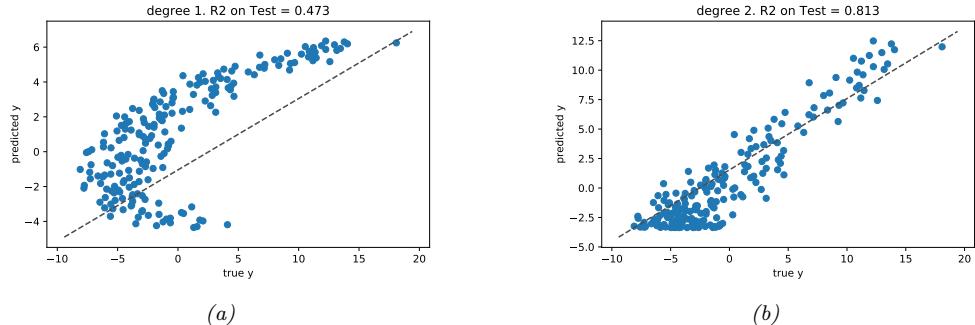


Figure 11.6: Fit vs actual plots for polynomial regression of degree 1 and 2 for the functions in Fig. 11.1(a-b). Generated by `linreg poly vs degree.py`.

where  $\bar{y} = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^N y_n$  is the empirical mean of the response.  $R^2$  measures the variance in the predictions relative to a simple constant prediction of  $\hat{y}_n = \bar{y}$ . One can show that  $0 \leq R^2 \leq 1$ , where larger values imply a greater reduction in variance (better fit). This is illustrated in Fig. 11.6.

### 11.3 Ridge regression

Maximum likelihood estimation can result in overfitting, as we discussed in Sec. 1.2.2.2. A simple solution to this is to use MAP estimation with a zero-mean Gaussian prior on the weights,  $p(\mathbf{w}) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{w}|\mathbf{0}, \lambda^{-1}\mathbf{I})$ , as we discussed in Sec. 4.4.3. This is called **ridge regression**.

In more detail, we compute the MAP estimate as follows:

$$\hat{\mathbf{w}}_{\text{map}} = \operatorname{argmin} \frac{1}{2\sigma^2} (\mathbf{y} - \mathbf{X}\mathbf{w})^\top (\mathbf{y} - \mathbf{X}\mathbf{w}) + \frac{1}{2\tau^2} \mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{w} \quad (11.54)$$

$$= \operatorname{argmin} \text{RSS}(\mathbf{w}) + \lambda \|\mathbf{w}\|_2^2 \quad (11.55)$$

where  $\lambda \triangleq \frac{\sigma^2}{\tau^2}$  is proportional to the strength of the prior, and

$$\|\mathbf{w}\|_2 \triangleq \sqrt{\sum_{d=1}^D |w_d|^2} = \sqrt{\mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{w}} \quad (11.56)$$

is the  $\ell_2$  norm of the vector  $\mathbf{w}$ . Thus we are penalizing weights that become too large in magnitude. In general, this technique is called  **$\ell_2$  regularization** or **weight decay**, and is very widely used. See Fig. 11.7 for an illustration.

Note that we do not penalize the offset term  $w_0$ , since that only affects the global mean of the output, and does not contribute to overfitting. See Exercise 11.2.

### 11.3.1 Computing the MAP estimate

In this section, we discuss algorithms for computing the MAP estimate.

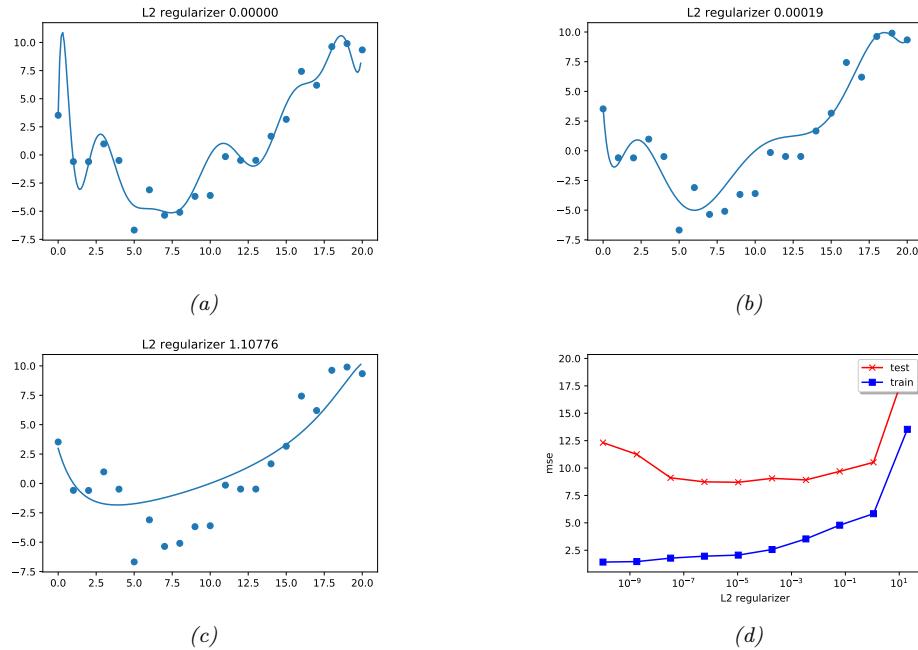


Figure 11.7: (a-c) Ridge regression applied to a degree 14 polynomial fit to 21 datapoints. (d) MSE vs strength of regularizer. The degree of regularization increases from left to right, so model complexity decreases from left to right. Generated by `linreg_poly_ridge.py`.

The MAP estimate corresponds to minimizing the following penalized objective:

$$J(\mathbf{w}) = (\mathbf{y} - \mathbf{X}\mathbf{w})^\top(\mathbf{y} - \mathbf{X}\mathbf{w}) + \lambda\|\mathbf{w}\|_2^2 \quad (11.57)$$

where  $\lambda = \sigma^2/\tau^2$  is the strength of the regularizer. The derivative is given by

$$\nabla_{\mathbf{w}} J(\mathbf{w}) = 2(\mathbf{X}^\top \mathbf{X}\mathbf{w} - \mathbf{X}^\top \mathbf{y} + \lambda\mathbf{w}) \quad (11.58)$$

and hence

$$\hat{\mathbf{w}}_{\text{map}} = (\mathbf{X}^\top \mathbf{X} + \lambda\mathbf{I}_D)^{-1} \mathbf{X}^\top \mathbf{y} = \left( \sum_n \mathbf{x}_n \mathbf{x}_n^\top + \lambda\mathbf{I}_D \right)^{-1} \left( \sum_n y_n \mathbf{x}_n \right) \quad (11.59)$$

### 11.3.1.1 Solving using QR

Naively computing the primal estimate  $\mathbf{w} = (\mathbf{X}^\top \mathbf{X} + \lambda\mathbf{I})^{-1} \mathbf{X}^\top \mathbf{y}$  using matrix inversion is a bad idea, since it can be slow and numerically unstable. In this section, we describe a way to convert the problem to a standard least squares problem, to which we can apply QR decomposition, as discussed in Sec. 11.2.2.3.

We assume the prior has the form  $p(\mathbf{w}) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{0}, \boldsymbol{\Lambda}^{-1})$ , where  $\boldsymbol{\Lambda}$  is the precision matrix. In the case of ridge regression,  $\boldsymbol{\Lambda} = (1/\tau^2)\mathbf{I}$ . We can emulate this prior by adding “virtual data” to the training

set to get

$$\tilde{\mathbf{X}} = \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{X}/\sigma \\ \sqrt{\Lambda} \end{pmatrix}, \quad \tilde{\mathbf{y}} = \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{y}/\sigma \\ \mathbf{0}_{D \times 1} \end{pmatrix} \quad (11.60)$$

where  $\Lambda = \sqrt{\Lambda} \sqrt{\Lambda}^\top$  is a Cholesky decomposition of  $\Lambda$ . We see that  $\tilde{\mathbf{X}}$  is  $(N + D) \times D$ , where the extra rows represent pseudo-data from the prior.

We now show that the RSS on this expanded data is equivalent to penalized RSS on the original data:

$$f(\mathbf{w}) = (\tilde{\mathbf{y}} - \tilde{\mathbf{X}}\mathbf{w})^\top (\tilde{\mathbf{y}} - \tilde{\mathbf{X}}\mathbf{w}) \quad (11.61)$$

$$= \left( \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{y}/\sigma \\ \mathbf{0} \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{X}/\sigma \\ \sqrt{\Lambda} \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{w} \right)^\top \left( \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{y}/\sigma \\ \mathbf{0} \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{X}/\sigma \\ \sqrt{\Lambda} \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{w} \right) \quad (11.62)$$

$$= \begin{pmatrix} \frac{1}{\sigma}(\mathbf{y} - \mathbf{X}\mathbf{w}) \\ -\sqrt{\Lambda}\mathbf{w} \end{pmatrix}^\top \begin{pmatrix} \frac{1}{\sigma}(\mathbf{y} - \mathbf{X}\mathbf{w}) \\ -\sqrt{\Lambda}\mathbf{w} \end{pmatrix} \quad (11.63)$$

$$= \frac{1}{\sigma^2}(\mathbf{y} - \mathbf{X}\mathbf{w})^\top (\mathbf{y} - \mathbf{X}\mathbf{w}) + (\sqrt{\Lambda}\mathbf{w})^\top (\sqrt{\Lambda}\mathbf{w}) \quad (11.64)$$

$$= \frac{1}{\sigma^2}(\mathbf{y} - \mathbf{X}\mathbf{w})^\top (\mathbf{y} - \mathbf{X}\mathbf{w}) + \mathbf{w}^\top \Lambda \mathbf{w} \quad (11.65)$$

Hence the MAP estimate is given by

$$\hat{\mathbf{w}}_{\text{map}} = (\tilde{\mathbf{X}}^\top \tilde{\mathbf{X}})^{-1} \tilde{\mathbf{X}}^\top \tilde{\mathbf{y}} \quad (11.66)$$

which can be solved using standard OLS methods. In particular, we can compute the QR decomposition of  $\tilde{\mathbf{X}}$ , and then proceed as in Sec. 11.2.2.3. This takes  $O((N + D)D^2)$  time.

### 11.3.1.2 Solving using SVD

In this section, we assume  $D \gg N$ , which is the usual case when using ridge regression. In this case, it is faster to use SVD than QR. To see how this works, let  $\mathbf{X} = \mathbf{USV}^\top$  be the SVD of  $\mathbf{X}$ , where  $\mathbf{V}^\top \mathbf{V} = \mathbf{I}_N$ ,  $\mathbf{U} \mathbf{U}^\top = \mathbf{U}^\top \mathbf{U} = \mathbf{I}_N$ , and  $\mathbf{S}$  is a diagonal  $N \times N$  matrix. Now let  $\mathbf{Z} = \mathbf{US}$  be an  $N \times N$  matrix. Then we can rewrite the ridge estimate thus:

$$\hat{\mathbf{w}}_{\text{map}} = \mathbf{V}(\mathbf{Z}^\top \mathbf{Z} + \lambda \mathbf{I}_N)^{-1} \mathbf{Z}^\top \mathbf{y} = \mathbf{V}(\mathbf{S}^2 + \lambda \mathbf{I})^{-1} \mathbf{S} \mathbf{U}^\top \mathbf{y} \quad (11.67)$$

In other words, we can replace the  $D$ -dimensional vectors  $\mathbf{x}_i$  with the  $N$ -dimensional vectors  $\mathbf{z}_i$  and perform our penalized fit as before. We then transform the  $N$ -dimensional solution to the  $D$ -dimensional solution by multiplying by  $\mathbf{V}$ . Geometrically, we are rotating to a new coordinate system in which all but the first  $N$  coordinates are zero. This does not affect the solution since the spherical Gaussian prior is rotationally invariant. The overall time is now  $O(DN^2)$  operations.

### 11.3.2 Connection between ridge regression and PCA

In this section, we discuss an interesting connection between ridge regression and PCA (which we describe in Sec. 20.1), in order to gain further insight into why ridge regression works well. Our discussion is based on [HTF09, p66].

Let  $\mathbf{X} = \mathbf{U}\mathbf{S}\mathbf{V}^\top$  be the SVD of  $\mathbf{X}$ , where  $\mathbf{V}^\top\mathbf{V} = \mathbf{I}_N$ ,  $\mathbf{U}\mathbf{U}^\top = \mathbf{U}^\top\mathbf{U} = \mathbf{I}_N$ , and  $\mathbf{S}$  is a diagonal  $N \times N$  matrix. Using Eq. (11.67) we can see that the ridge predictions on the training set are given by

$$\hat{\mathbf{y}} = \mathbf{X}\hat{\mathbf{w}}_{\text{map}} = \mathbf{U}\mathbf{S}\mathbf{V}^\top\mathbf{V}(\mathbf{S}^2 + \lambda\mathbf{I})^{-1}\mathbf{S}\mathbf{U}^\top\mathbf{y} \quad (11.68)$$

$$= \mathbf{U}\tilde{\mathbf{S}}\mathbf{U}^\top\mathbf{y} = \sum_{j=1}^D \mathbf{u}_j \tilde{S}_{jj} \mathbf{u}_j^\top \mathbf{y} \quad (11.69)$$

where

$$\tilde{S}_{jj} \triangleq [\mathbf{S}(\mathbf{S}^2 + \lambda I)^{-1}\mathbf{S}]_{jj} = \frac{\sigma_j^2}{\sigma_j^2 + \lambda} \quad (11.70)$$

and  $\sigma_j$  are the singular values of  $\mathbf{X}$ . Hence

$$\hat{\mathbf{y}} = \mathbf{X}\hat{\mathbf{w}}_{\text{map}} = \sum_{j=1}^D \mathbf{u}_j \frac{\sigma_j^2}{\sigma_j^2 + \lambda} \mathbf{u}_j^\top \mathbf{y} \quad (11.71)$$

In contrast, the least squares prediction is

$$\hat{\mathbf{y}} = \mathbf{X}\hat{\mathbf{w}}_{\text{mle}} = (\mathbf{U}\mathbf{S}\mathbf{V}^\top)(\mathbf{V}\mathbf{S}^{-1}\mathbf{U}^\top\mathbf{y}) = \mathbf{U}\mathbf{U}^\top\mathbf{y} = \sum_{j=1}^D \mathbf{u}_j \mathbf{u}_j^\top \mathbf{y} \quad (11.72)$$

If  $\sigma_j^2$  is small compared to  $\lambda$ , then direction  $\mathbf{u}_j$  will not have much effect on the prediction. In view of this, we define the effective number of **degrees of freedom** of the model as follows:

$$\text{dof}(\lambda) = \sum_{j=1}^D \frac{\sigma_j^2}{\sigma_j^2 + \lambda} \quad (11.73)$$

When  $\lambda = 0$ ,  $\text{dof}(\lambda) = D$ , and as  $\lambda \rightarrow \infty$ ,  $\text{dof}(\lambda) \rightarrow 0$ .

Let us try to understand why this behavior is desirable. In Sec. 11.6, we show that  $\text{Cov}[\mathbf{w}|\mathcal{D}] \propto (\mathbf{X}^\top\mathbf{X})^{-1}$ , if we use a uniform prior for  $\mathbf{w}$ . Thus the directions in which we are most uncertain about  $\mathbf{w}$  are determined by the eigenvectors of  $(\mathbf{X}^\top\mathbf{X})^{-1}$  with the largest eigenvalues, as shown in Fig. B.6; these correspond to the eigenvectors of  $\mathbf{X}^\top\mathbf{X}$  with the smallest eigenvalues. In Sec. B.5.2, we show that the squared singular values  $\sigma_j^2$  are equal to the eigenvalues of  $\mathbf{X}^\top\mathbf{X}$ . Hence small singular values  $\sigma_j$  correspond to directions with high posterior variance. It is these directions which ridge shrinks the most.

This process is illustrated in Fig. 11.8. The horizontal  $w_1$  parameter is not-well determined by the data (has high posterior variance), but the vertical  $w_2$  parameter is well-determined. Hence  $w_{\text{map}}(2)$  is close to  $w_{\text{mle}}(2)$ , but  $w_{\text{map}}(1)$  is shifted strongly towards the prior mean, which is 0. In this way, ill-determined parameters are reduced in size towards 0. This is called **shrinkage**.

There is a related, but different, technique called **principal components regression**, which is a supervised version of PCA, which we explain in Sec. 20.1. The idea is this: first use PCA to reduce the dimensionality to  $K$  dimensions, and then use these low dimensional features as input to

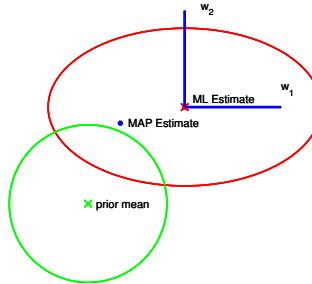


Figure 11.8: Geometry of ridge regression. The likelihood is shown as an ellipse, and the prior is shown as a circle centered on the origin. Adapted from Figure 3.15 of [Bis06]. Generated by `geomRidge.m`.

regression. However, this technique does not work as well as ridge regression in terms of predictive accuracy [HTF01, p70]. The reason is that in PC regression, only the first  $K$  (derived) dimensions are retained, and the remaining  $D - K$  dimensions are entirely ignored. By contrast, ridge regression uses a “soft” weighting of all the dimensions.

### 11.3.3 Choosing the strength of the regularizer

To find the optimal value of  $\lambda$ , we can try a finite number of distinct values, and use cross validation to estimate their expected loss, as discussed in Sec. 4.4.5.2. See Fig. 11.7d for an example.

This approach can be quite expensive if we have many values to choose from. Fortunately, we can often **warm start** the optimization procedure, using the value of  $\hat{\mathbf{w}}(\lambda_k)$  as an initializer for  $\hat{\mathbf{w}}(\lambda_{k+1})$ , where  $\lambda_{k+1} < \lambda_k$ ; in other words, we start with a highly constrained model (strong regularizer), and then gradually relax the constraints (decrease the amount of regularization). The set of parameters  $\hat{\mathbf{w}}_k$  that we sweep out in this way is known as the **regularization path**. See Fig. 11.12(a) for an example.

We can also use an empirical Bayes approach to choose  $\lambda$ . In particular, we choose the hyperparameter by computing  $\hat{\lambda} = \operatorname{argmax}_{\lambda} \log p(\mathcal{D}|\lambda)$ , where  $p(\mathcal{D}|\lambda)$  is the marginal likelihood or evidence. Fig. 4.6b shows that this gives essentially the same result as the CV estimate. However, the Bayesian approach has several advantages: computing  $p(\mathcal{D}|\lambda)$  can be done by fitting a single model, whereas CV has to fit the same model  $K$  times; and  $p(\mathcal{D}|\lambda)$  is a smooth function of  $\lambda$ , so we can use gradient-based optimization instead of discrete search.

## 11.4 Robust linear regression

It is very common to model the noise in regression models using a Gaussian distribution with zero mean and constant variance,  $r_n \sim \mathcal{N}(0, \sigma^2)$ , where  $r_n = y_n - \mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x}_n$ . In this case, maximizing likelihood is equivalent to minimizing the sum of squared residuals, as we have seen. However, if we have **outliers** in our data, this can result in a poor fit, as illustrated in Fig. 11.9(a). (The outliers are the points on the bottom of the figure.) This is because squared error penalizes deviations quadratically, so points far from the line have more effect on the fit than points near to the line.

One way to achieve **robustness** to outliers is to replace the Gaussian distribution for the response

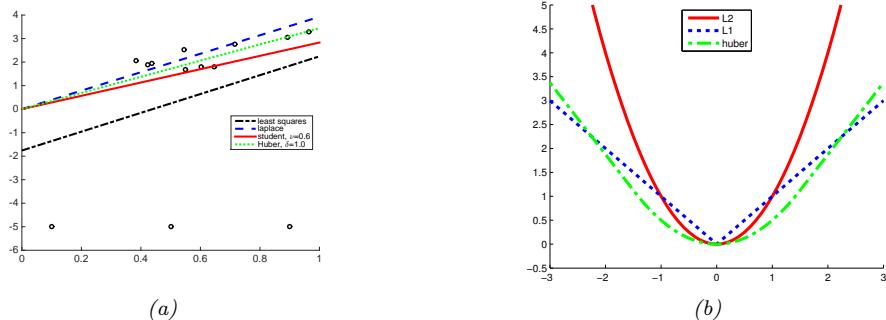


Figure 11.9: (a) Illustration of robust linear regression. Generated by `linregRobustDemoCombined.m`. (b) Illustration of  $\ell_2$ ,  $\ell_1$ , and Huber loss functions with  $\delta = 1.5$ . Generated by `huberLossPlot.m`.

Likelihood	Prior	Posterior	Name	Section
Gaussian	Uniform	Point	Least squares	11.2.2
Student	Uniform	Point	Robust regression	11.4.1
Laplace	Uniform	Point	Robust regression	11.4.2
Gaussian	Gaussian	Point	Ridge	11.3
Gaussian	Laplace	Point	Lasso	11.5
Gaussian	Gauss-Gamma	Gauss-Gamma	Bayesian lin. reg	11.6

Table 11.1: Summary of various likelihoods, priors and posteriors used for linear regression. The likelihood refers to the distributional form of  $p(y|\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{w}, \sigma^2)$ , and the prior refers to the distributional form of  $p(\mathbf{w})$ . The posterior refers to the distributional form of  $p(\mathbf{w}|\mathcal{D})$ . “Point” stands for the degenerate distribution  $\delta(\mathbf{w} - \hat{\mathbf{w}})$ , where  $\hat{\mathbf{w}}$  is the MAP estimate. MLE is equivalent to using a point posterior and a uniform prior.

variable with a distribution that has **heavy tails**. Such a distribution will assign higher likelihood to outliers, without having to perturb the straight line to “explain” them. We discuss several possible alternative probability distributions for the response variable below; see Table 11.1 for a summary.

### 11.4.1 Robust regression using the Student $t$ distribution

In Sec. 3.4.1, we discussed the robustness properties of the Student distribution. To use this in a regression context, we can just make the mean be a linear function of the inputs, as proposed in [Zel76]:

$$p(y|\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{w}, \sigma^2, \nu) = \mathcal{T}(y|\mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x}, \sigma^2, \nu) \quad (11.74)$$

#### 11.4.1.1 Computing the MLE using EM

We now give a simple iterative algorithm for computing the MLE for linear regression using a Student likelihood. To do this, we will associate a weight with every example, representing the probability it is an outlier. We then compute a weighted least squares estimate. Since the probability of being an outlier depends on the current parameters, we iterate this process until convergence.

More precisely, we will use the EM algorithm, introduced in Sec. 5.7.2, to solve the problem. At first blush it may not be apparent how to do this, since there is no missing data, and there are no hidden variables. However, it turns out that we can introduce “artificial” hidden variables to make the problem easier to solve; this is a common trick. The key insight is that we can represent the Student distribution as a Gaussian scale mixture, as we discussed in Sec. 3.7.3.1.

We can apply the GSM version of the Student distribution to our problem by associating a latent scale  $z_n \in \mathbb{R}_+$  with each example. The complete data log likelihood is therefore given by

$$\log p(\mathbf{y}, \mathbf{z} | \mathbf{X}, \mathbf{w}, \sigma^2, \nu) = \sum_n -\frac{1}{2} \log(2\pi z_n \sigma^2) - \frac{1}{2z_n \sigma^2} (y_i - \mathbf{w}^T \mathbf{x}_i)^2 \quad (11.75)$$

$$+ \left(\frac{\nu}{2} - 1\right) \log(z_n) - z_n \frac{\nu}{2} + \text{const} \quad (11.76)$$

Ignoring terms not involving  $\mathbf{w}$ , and taking expectations, we have

$$Q(\boldsymbol{\theta}, \boldsymbol{\theta}^t) = - \sum_n \frac{\lambda_n^t}{2\sigma^2} (y_n - \mathbf{w}^T \mathbf{x}_n)^2 \quad (11.77)$$

where  $\lambda_n^t \triangleq \mathbb{E}[1/z_n | y_n, \mathbf{x}_n, \mathbf{w}^t]$ . We recognize this as a weighted least squares objective, with weight  $\lambda_n^t$  per data point .

We now discuss how to compute these weights. Using the results from Sec. 3.4.5, one can show that

$$p(z_n | y_n, \mathbf{x}_n, \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \text{IG}\left(\frac{\nu + 1}{2}, \frac{\nu + \delta_n}{2}\right) \quad (11.78)$$

where  $\delta_n = \frac{(y_n - \mathbf{x}^T \mathbf{x}_n)^2}{\sigma^2}$  is the standardized residual. Hence

$$\lambda_n = \mathbb{E}[1/z_n] = \frac{\nu^t + 1}{\nu^t + \delta_n^t} \quad (11.79)$$

So if the residual  $\delta_n^t$  is large, the point will be given low weight  $\lambda_n^t$ , which makes intuitive sense, since it is probably an outlier.

### 11.4.2 Robust regression using the Laplace distribution

In Sec. 3.4.3, we noted that the Laplace distribution is also robust to outliers. If we use this as our observation model for regression, we get the following likelihood:

$$p(y | \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{w}, b) = \text{Lap}(y | \mathbf{w}^T \mathbf{x}, b) \propto \exp\left(-\frac{1}{b}|y - \mathbf{w}^T \mathbf{x}|\right) \quad (11.80)$$

The robustness arises from the use of  $|y - \mathbf{w}^T \mathbf{x}|$  instead of  $(y - \mathbf{w}^T \mathbf{x})^2$ . Fig. 11.9(a) gives an example of the method in action.

#### 11.4.2.1 Computing the MLE using linear programming

We can compute the MLE for this model using linear programming. As we explain in Sec. 5.5.3, this is a way to solve a constrained optimization problems of the form

$$\underset{\mathbf{v}}{\operatorname{argmin}} \mathbf{c}^\top \mathbf{v} \quad \text{s.t. } \mathbf{A}\mathbf{v} \leq \mathbf{b} \quad (11.81)$$

where  $\mathbf{v} \in \mathbb{R}^n$  is the set of  $n$  unknown parameters,  $\mathbf{c}^\top \mathbf{v}$  is the linear objective function we want to minimize, and  $\mathbf{a}_i^\top \mathbf{v} \leq b_i$  is a set of  $m$  linear constraints we must satisfy. To apply this to our problem, let us define  $\mathbf{v} = (w_1, \dots, w_D, e_1, \dots, e_N) \in \mathbb{R}^{D+N}$ , where  $e_i = |y_i - \hat{y}_i|$  is the residual error for example  $i$ . We want to minimize the sum of the residuals, so we define  $\mathbf{c} = (0, \dots, 0, 1, \dots, 1) \in \mathbb{R}^{D+N}$ , where the first  $D$  elements are 0, and the last  $N$  elements are 1.

We need to enforce the constraint that  $e_i = |\hat{y}_i - y_i|$ . In fact it is sufficient to enforce the constraint that  $|\mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x}_i - y_i| \leq e_i$ , since minimizing the sum of the  $e_i$ 's will “push down” on this constraint and make it tight. Since  $|a| \leq b \implies -b \leq a \leq b$ , we can encode  $|\mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x}_i - y_i| \leq e_i$  as two linear constraints:

$$e_i \geq \mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x}_i - y_i \quad (11.82)$$

$$e_i \geq -(\mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x}_i - y_i) \quad (11.83)$$

We can write Eq. (11.82)–Eq. (11.83) as

$$(\mathbf{x}_i, 0, \dots, 0, -1, 0, \dots, 0)^\top \mathbf{v} \leq y_i \quad (11.84)$$

where the first  $D$  entries are filled with  $\mathbf{x}_i$ , and the  $-1$  is in the  $(D+i)$ 'th entry of the vector. Similarly we can write Eq. (11.83) as

$$(-\mathbf{x}_i, 0, \dots, 0, -1, 0, \dots, 0)^\top \mathbf{v} \leq -y_i \quad (11.85)$$

We can write these constraints in the form  $\mathbf{Av} \leq \mathbf{b}$  by defining  $\mathbf{A} \in \mathbb{R}^{2N \times (N+D)}$  as follows:

$$\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{x}_1 & -1 & 0 & 0 \cdots & 0 \\ -\mathbf{x}_1 & -1 & 0 & 0 \cdots & 0 \\ \mathbf{x}_2 & 0 & -1 & 0 \cdots & 0 \\ -\mathbf{x}_2 & 0 & -1 & 0 \cdots & 0 \\ \vdots & & & & \end{pmatrix} \quad (11.86)$$

and defining  $\mathbf{b} \in \mathbb{R}^{2N}$  as

$$\mathbf{b} = (y_1, -y_1, y_2, -y_2, \dots, y_N, -y_N) \quad (11.87)$$

### 11.4.3 Robust regression using Huber loss

An alternative to minimizing the NLL using a Laplace or Student likelihood is to use the **Huber loss**, which is defined as follows:

$$\ell_{\text{huber}}(r, \delta) = \begin{cases} r^2/2 & \text{if } |r| \leq \delta \\ \delta|r| - \delta^2/2 & \text{if } |r| > \delta \end{cases} \quad (11.88)$$

This is equivalent to  $\ell_2$  for errors that are smaller than  $\delta$ , and is equivalent to  $\ell_1$  for larger errors. See Fig. 8.3 for a plot.

The advantage of this loss function is that it is everywhere differentiable. Consequently optimizing the Huber loss is much faster than using the Laplace likelihood, since we can use standard smooth

optimization methods (such as SGD) instead of linear programming. Fig. 11.9 gives an illustration of the Huber loss function in action. The results are qualitatively similar to the Laplace and Student methods.

The parameter  $\delta$ , which controls the degree of robustness, is usually set by hand, or by cross-validation. However, [Bar19] shows how to approximate the Huber loss such that we can optimize  $\delta$  by gradient methods.

#### 11.4.4 Robust regression by randomly or iteratively removing outliers

In the computer vision community, a common approach to robust regression is to use **RANSAC**, which stands for “random sample consensus” [FB81]. This works as follows: we sample a small initial set of points, fit the model to them, identify outliers wrt this model (based on large residuals), remove the outliers, and then refit the model to the inliers. We repeat this for many random initial sets and pick the best model.

A deterministic alternative to RANSAC is the following iterative scheme: initially we assume that all datapoints are inliers, and we fit the model to compute  $\hat{\mathbf{w}}_0$ ; then, for each iteration  $t$ , we identify the outlier points as those with large residual under the model  $\hat{\mathbf{w}}_t$ , remove them, and refit the model to the remaining points to get  $\hat{\mathbf{w}}_{t+1}$ . Even though this hard thresholding scheme makes the problem nonconvex, this simple scheme can be proved to rapidly converge to the optimal estimate under some reasonable assumptions [Muk+19; Sug+19].

### 11.5 Lasso regression

In Sec. 11.3, we assumed a Gaussian prior for the regression coefficients when fitting linear regression models. This is often a good choice, since it encourages the parameters to be small, and hence prevents overfitting. However, sometimes we want the parameters to not just be small, but to be exactly zero, i.e., we want  $\hat{\mathbf{w}}$  to be **sparse**, so that we minimize the **L0-norm**:

$$\|\mathbf{w}\|_0 = \sum_{d=1}^D \mathbb{I}(|w_d| > 0) \quad (11.89)$$

This is useful because it can be used to perform **feature selection**. To see this, note that the prediction has the form  $f(\mathbf{x}; \mathbf{w}) = \sum_{d=1}^D w_d x_d$ , so if any  $w_d = 0$ , we ignore the corresponding feature  $x_d$ . (The same idea can be applied to nonlinear models, such as DNNs, by encouraging the first layer weights to be sparse.)

#### 11.5.1 MAP estimation with a Laplace prior ( $\ell_1$ regularization)

There are many ways to compute such sparse estimates (see e.g., [Bha+19]). In this section we focus on MAP estimation using the Laplace distribution (which we discussed in Sec. 11.4.2) as the prior:

$$p(\mathbf{w}|\lambda) = \prod_{d=1}^D \text{Lap}(w_d|0, 1/\lambda) \propto \prod_{d=1}^D e^{-\lambda|w_d|} \quad (11.90)$$

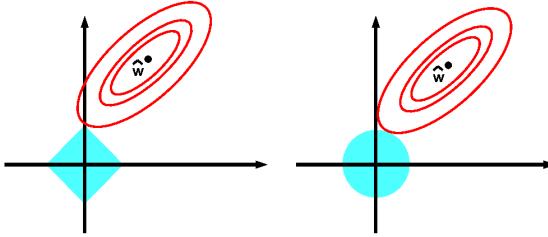


Figure 11.10: Illustration of  $\ell_1$  (left) vs  $\ell_2$  (right) regularization of a least squares problem. Adapted from Figure 3.12 of [HTF01].

where  $\lambda$  is the sparsity parameter, and

$$\text{Lap}(w|\mu, b) \triangleq \frac{1}{2b} \exp\left(-\frac{|w - \mu|}{b}\right) \quad (11.91)$$

Here  $\mu$  is a location parameter and  $b > 0$  is a scale parameter. Fig. 3.8 shows that  $\text{Lap}(w|0, b)$  puts more density on 0 than  $\mathcal{N}(w|0, \sigma^2)$ , even when we fix the variance to be the same.

To perform MAP estimation of a linear regression model with this prior, we just have to minimize the following objective:

$$\text{PNLL}(\mathbf{w}) = -\log p(\mathcal{D}|\mathbf{w}) - \log p(\mathbf{w}|\lambda) = \|\mathbf{X}\mathbf{w} - \mathbf{y}\|_2^2 + \lambda\|\mathbf{w}\|_1 \quad (11.92)$$

where  $\|\mathbf{w}\|_1 \triangleq \sum_{d=1}^D |w_d|$  is the  $\ell_1$  norm of  $\mathbf{w}$ . This method is called **lasso**, which stands for “least absolute shrinkage and selection operator” [Tib96]. (We explain the reason for this name below.) More generally, MAP estimation with a Laplace prior is called  **$\ell_1$ -regularization**.

Note also that we could use other norms for the weight vector. In general, the  $q$ -norm is defined as follows:

$$\|\mathbf{w}\|_q = \left( \sum_{d=1}^D |w_d|^q \right)^{1/q} \quad (11.93)$$

For  $q < 1$ , we can get even sparser solutions. In the limit where  $q = 0$ , we get the  **$\ell_0$ -norm**:

$$\|\mathbf{w}\|_0 = \sum_{d=1}^D \mathbb{I}(|w_d| > 0) \quad (11.94)$$

However, one can show that for any  $q < 1$ , the problem becomes non-convex (see e.g., [HTW15]). Thus  $\ell_1$ -norm is the tightest **convex relaxation** of the  $\ell_0$ -norm.

### 11.5.2 Why does $\ell_1$ regularization yield sparse solutions?

We now explain why  $\ell_1$  regularization results in sparse solutions, whereas  $\ell_2$  regularization does not. We focus on the case of linear regression, although similar arguments hold for other models.

The lasso objective is the following non-smooth objective:

$$\min_{\mathbf{w}} \text{NLL}(\mathbf{w}) + \lambda \|\mathbf{w}\|_1 \quad (11.95)$$

This is the Lagrangian for the following quadratic program (see Sec. 5.5.4):

$$\min_{\mathbf{w}} \text{NLL}(\mathbf{w}) \quad \text{s.t.} \quad \|\mathbf{w}\|_1 \leq B \quad (11.96)$$

where  $B$  is an upper bound on the  $\ell_1$ -norm of the weights: a small (tight) bound  $B$  corresponds to a large penalty  $\lambda$ , and vice versa.

Similarly, we can write the ridge regression objective  $\min_{\mathbf{w}} \text{NLL}(\mathbf{w}) + \lambda \|\mathbf{w}\|_2^2$  in bound constrained form:

$$\min_{\mathbf{w}} \text{NLL}(\mathbf{w}) \quad \text{s.t.} \quad \|\mathbf{w}\|_2^2 \leq B \quad (11.97)$$

In Fig. 11.10, we plot the contours of the NLL objective function, as well as the contours of the  $\ell_2$  and  $\ell_1$  constraint surfaces. From the theory of constrained optimization (Sec. 5.5) we know that the optimal solution occurs at the point where the lowest level set of the objective function intersects the constraint surface (assuming the constraint is active). It should be geometrically clear that as we relax the constraint  $B$ , we “grow” the  $\ell_1$  “ball” until it meets the objective; the corners of the ball are more likely to intersect the ellipse than one of the sides, especially in high dimensions, because the corners “stick out” more. The corners correspond to sparse solutions, which lie on the coordinate axes. By contrast, when we grow the  $\ell_2$  ball, it can intersect the objective at any point; there are no “corners”, so there is no preference for sparsity.

### 11.5.3 Hard vs soft thresholding

The lasso objective has the form  $\mathcal{L}(\mathbf{w}) = \text{NLL}(\mathbf{w}) + \lambda \|\mathbf{w}\|_1$ . One can show (Exercise 11.4) that the gradient for the smooth NLL part is given by

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial w_d} \text{NLL}(\mathbf{w}) = a_d w_d - c_d \quad (11.98)$$

$$a_d = \sum_{n=1}^N x_{nd}^2 \quad (11.99)$$

$$c_d = \sum_{n=1}^N x_{nd} (y_n - \mathbf{w}_{-d}^\top \mathbf{x}_{n,-d}) \quad (11.100)$$

where  $\mathbf{w}_{-d}$  is  $\mathbf{w}$  without component  $d$ , and similarly  $\mathbf{x}_{n,-d}$  is feature vector  $\mathbf{x}_n$  without component  $d$ . We see that  $c_d$  is proportional to the correlation between  $d$ 'th column of features,  $\mathbf{x}_{:,d}$ , and the residual error obtained by predicting using all the other features,  $\mathbf{r}_{-d} = \mathbf{y} - \mathbf{X}_{:,-d} \mathbf{w}_{-d}$ . Hence the magnitude of  $c_d$  is an indication of how relevant feature  $d$  is for predicting  $\mathbf{y}$ , relative to the other features and the current parameters. Setting the gradient to 0 gives the optimal update for  $w_d$ , keeping all other weights fixed:

$$w_d = c_d / a_d = \frac{\mathbf{x}_{:,d}^\top \mathbf{r}_{-d}}{\|\mathbf{x}_{:,d}\|_2^2} \quad (11.101)$$

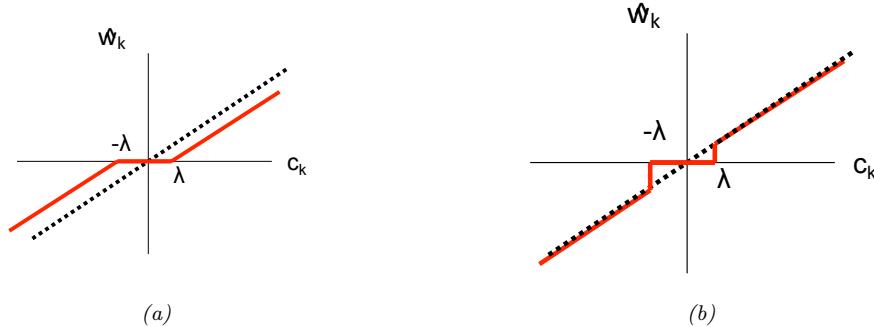


Figure 11.11: Left: soft thresholding. Right: hard thresholding. In both cases, the horizontal axis is the residual error incurred by making predictions using all the coefficients except for  $w_k$ , and the vertical axis is the estimated coefficient  $\hat{w}_k$  that minimizes this penalized residual. The flat region in the middle is the interval  $[-\lambda, +\lambda]$ .

The corresponding new prediction for  $\mathbf{r}_{-d}$  becomes  $\hat{\mathbf{r}}_{-d} = w_d \mathbf{x}_{:,d}$ , which is the orthogonal projection of the residual onto the column vector  $\mathbf{x}_{:,d}$ , consistent with Eq. (11.15).

Now we add in the  $\ell_1$  term. Unfortunately, the  $\|\mathbf{w}\|_1$  term is not differentiable whenever  $w_d = 0$ . Fortunately, we can still compute a subgradient at this point. Using Eq. (A.58) we find that

$$\partial_{w_d} \mathcal{L}(\mathbf{w}) = (a_d w_d - c_d) + \lambda \partial_{w_d} \|\mathbf{w}\|_1 \quad (11.102)$$

$$= \begin{cases} \{a_d w_d - c_d - \lambda\} & \text{if } w_d < 0 \\ [-c_d - \lambda, -c_d + \lambda] & \text{if } w_d = 0 \\ \{a_d w_d - c_d + \lambda\} & \text{if } w_d > 0 \end{cases} \quad (11.103)$$

Depending on the value of  $c_d$ , the solution to  $\partial_{w_d} \mathcal{L}(\mathbf{w}) = 0$  can occur at 3 different values of  $w_d$ , as follows:

1. If  $c_d < -\lambda$ , so the feature is strongly negatively correlated with the residual, then the subgradient is zero at  $\hat{w}_d = \frac{c_d + \lambda}{a_d} < 0$ .
2. If  $c_d \in [-\lambda, \lambda]$ , so the feature is only weakly correlated with the residual, then the subgradient is zero at  $\hat{w}_d = 0$ .
3. If  $c_d > \lambda$ , so the feature is strongly positively correlated with the residual, then the subgradient is zero at  $\hat{w}_d = \frac{c_d - \lambda}{a_d} > 0$ .

In summary, we have

$$\hat{w}_d(c_d) = \begin{cases} (c_d + \lambda)/a_d & \text{if } c_d < -\lambda \\ 0 & \text{if } c_d \in [-\lambda, \lambda] \\ (c_d - \lambda)/a_d & \text{if } c_d > \lambda \end{cases} \quad (11.104)$$

We can write this as follows:

$$\hat{w}_d = \text{SoftThreshold}\left(\frac{c_d}{a_d}, \lambda/a_d\right) \quad (11.105)$$

where

$$\text{SoftThreshold}(x, \delta) \triangleq \text{sign}(x) (|x| - \delta)_+ \quad (11.106)$$

and  $x_+ = \max(x, 0)$  is the positive part of  $x$ . This is called **soft thresholding** (see also Sec. 5.6.2). This is illustrated in Fig. 11.11(a), where we plot  $\hat{w}_d$  vs  $c_d$ . The dotted black line is the line  $w_d = c_d/a_d$  corresponding to the least squares fit. The solid red line, which represents the regularized estimate  $\hat{w}_d$ , shifts the dotted line down (or up) by  $\lambda$ , except when  $-\lambda \leq c_d \leq \lambda$ , in which case it sets  $w_d = 0$ .

By contrast, in Fig. 11.11(b), we illustrate **hard thresholding**. This sets values of  $w_d$  to 0 if  $-\lambda \leq c_d \leq \lambda$ , but it does not shrink the values of  $w_d$  outside of this interval. The slope of the soft thresholding line does not coincide with the diagonal, which means that even large coefficients are shrunk towards zero. This is why lasso stands for “least absolute selection *and* shrinkage operator”. Consequently, lasso is a biased estimator (see Sec. D.4.1).

A simple solution to the biased estimate problem, known as **debiasing**, is to use a two-stage estimation process: we first estimate the support of the weight vector (i.e., identify which elements are non-zero) using lasso; we then re-estimate the chosen coefficients using least squares. For an example of this in action, see Sec. 11.5.3.

#### 11.5.4 Regularization path

If  $\lambda = 0$ , we get the OLS solution, which will be dense. As we increase  $\lambda$ , the solution vector  $\hat{\mathbf{w}}(\lambda)$  will tend to get sparser. If  $\lambda$  is bigger than some critical value, we get  $\hat{\mathbf{w}} = \mathbf{0}$ . This critical value is obtained when the gradient of the NLL cancels out with the gradient of the penalty:

$$\lambda_{\max} = \max_d |\nabla_{w_d} \text{NLL}(\mathbf{0})| = \max_d c_d(\mathbf{w} = \mathbf{0}) = \max_d |\mathbf{y}^\top \mathbf{x}_{:,d}| = \|\mathbf{X}^\top \mathbf{y}\|_\infty \quad (11.107)$$

Alternatively, we can work with the bound  $B$  on the  $\ell_1$  norm. When  $B = 0$ , we get  $\hat{\mathbf{w}} = \mathbf{0}$ . As we increase  $B$ , the solution becomes denser. The largest value of  $B$  for which any component is zero is given by  $B_{\max} = \|\hat{\mathbf{w}}_{\text{mle}}\|_1$ .

As we increase  $\lambda$ , the solution vector  $\hat{\mathbf{w}}$  gets sparser, although not necessarily monotonically. We can plot the values  $\hat{w}_d$  vs  $\lambda$  (or vs the bound  $B$ ) for each feature  $d$ ; this is known as the **regularization path**. This is illustrated in Fig. 11.12(b), where we apply lasso to the prostate cancer regression dataset from [HTF09]. (We treat features `gleason` and `svi` as numeric, not categorical.) On the left, when  $B = 0$ , all the coefficients are zero. As we increase  $B$ , the coefficients gradually “turn on”.<sup>2</sup> The analogous result for ridge regression is shown in Fig. 11.12(a). For ridge, we see all coefficients are non-zero (assuming  $\lambda > 0$ ), so the solution is not sparse.

Remarkably, it can be shown that the lasso solution path is a piecewise linear function of  $\lambda$  [Efr+04; GL15]). That is, there are a set of critical values of  $\lambda$  where the active set of non-zero coefficients changes. For values of  $\lambda$  between these critical values, each non-zero coefficient increases or decreases in a linear fashion. This is illustrated in Fig. 11.12(b). Furthermore, one can solve for these critical values analytically [Efr+04]. In Fig. 11.13, we display the actual coefficient values at each of these critical steps along the regularization path (the last line is the least squares solution). (See `lassoPathProstate.m` for the code).

2. It is common to plot the solution versus the **shrinkage factor**, defined as  $s(B) = B/B_{\max}$ , rather than against  $B$ . This merely affects the scale of the horizontal axis, not the shape of the curves.

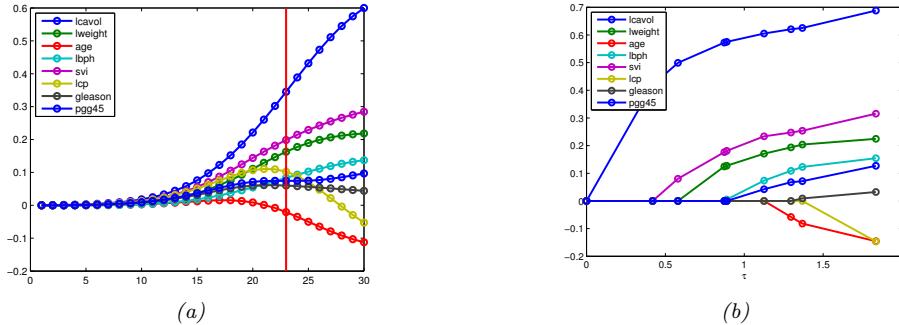


Figure 11.12: (a) Profiles of ridge coefficients for the prostate cancer example vs bound  $B$  on  $\ell_2$  norm of  $\mathbf{w}$ , so small  $B$  (large  $\lambda$ ) is on the left. The vertical line is the value chosen by 5-fold CV using the 1 standard error rule. Adapted from Figure 3.8 of [HTF09]. Generated by `ridgePathProstate.m`. (b) Same as (a) but using  $\ell_1$  norm of  $\mathbf{w}$ . The  $x$ -axis shows the critical values of  $\lambda = 1/B$ , where the regularization path is discontinuous. Adapted from Figure 3.10 of [HTF09]. Generated by `lassoPathProstate.m`.

0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
0.4279	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
0.5015	0.0735	0	0	0	0	0	0
0.5610	0.1878	0	0	0.0930	0	0	0
0.5622	0.1890	0	0.0036	0.0963	0	0	0
0.5797	0.2456	0	0.1435	0.2003	0	0	0.0901
0.5864	0.2572	-0.0321	0.1639	0.2082	0	0	0.1066
0.6994	0.2910	-0.1337	0.2062	0.3003	-0.2565	0	0.2452
0.7164	0.2926	-0.1425	0.2120	0.3096	-0.2890	-0.0209	0.2773

Figure 11.13: Values of the coefficients for linear regression model fit to prostate cancer dataset as we vary the strength of the  $\ell_1$  regularizer. These numbers are plotted in Fig. 11.12(b).

By changing  $\lambda$  from  $\lambda_{\max}$  to 0, we can go from a solution in which all the weights are zero to a solution in which all weights are non-zero. Unfortunately, not all subset sizes are achievable using lasso. In particular, one can show that, if  $D > N$ , the optimal solution can have at most  $N$  variables in it, before reaching the complete set corresponding to the OLS solution of minimal  $\ell_1$  norm. In Sec. 11.5.8, we will see that by using an  $\ell_2$  regularizer as well as an  $\ell_1$  regularizer (a method known as the elastic net), we can achieve sparse solutions which contain more variables than training cases. This lets us explore model sizes between  $N$  and  $D$ .

### 11.5.5 Comparison of least squares, lasso, ridge and subset selection

In this section, we compare least squares, lasso, ridge and subset selection. For simplicity, we assume all the features of  $\mathbf{X}$  are orthonormal, so  $\mathbf{X}^\top \mathbf{X} = \mathbf{I}$ . In this case, the NLL is given by

$$\text{NLL}(\mathbf{w}) = \|\mathbf{y} - \mathbf{X}\mathbf{w}\|^2 = \mathbf{y}^\top \mathbf{y} + \mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{X}^\top \mathbf{X}\mathbf{w} - 2\mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{X}^\top \mathbf{y} \quad (11.108)$$

$$= \text{const} + \sum_d w_d^2 - 2 \sum_d \sum_n w_d x_{nd} y_n \quad (11.109)$$

so we see this factorizes into a sum of terms, one per dimension. Hence we can write down the MAP and ML estimates analytically for each  $w_d$  separately, as given below.

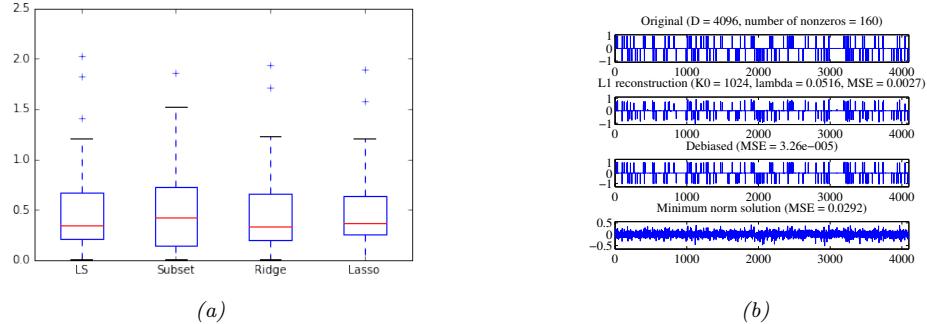


Figure 11.14: (a) Boxplot displaying (absolute value of) prediction errors on the prostate cancer test set for different regression methods. Generated by `prostateComparison.py`. (b) Example of recovering a sparse signal using lasso. See text for details. Adapted from Figure 1 of [FNW07]. Generated by `sparseSensingDemo.m`.

- **MLE** From Eq. (11.102), the OLS solution is given by

$$\hat{w}_d^{\text{mle}} = c_d/a_d = \mathbf{x}_{:,d}^\top \mathbf{y} \quad (11.110)$$

where  $\mathbf{x}_{:,d}$  is the  $d$ 'th column of  $\mathbf{X}$ .

- **Ridge** One can show that the ridge estimate is given by

$$\hat{w}_d^{\text{ridge}} = \frac{\hat{w}_d^{\text{mle}}}{1 + \lambda} \quad (11.111)$$

- **Lasso** From Eq. (11.105), and using the fact that  $\hat{w}_d^{\text{mle}} = c_d/a_d$ , we have

$$\hat{w}_d^{\text{lasso}} = \text{sign}(\hat{w}_d^{\text{mle}}) (\lvert \hat{w}_d^{\text{mle}} \rvert - \lambda)_+ \quad (11.112)$$

This corresponds to soft thresholding, shown in Fig. 11.11(a).

- **Subset selection** If we pick the best  $K$  features using subset selection, the parameter estimate is as follows

$$\hat{w}_d^{\text{ss}} = \begin{cases} \hat{w}_d^{\text{mle}} & \text{if rank}(\lvert \hat{w}_d^{\text{mle}} \rvert) \leq K \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases} \quad (11.113)$$

where rank refers to the location in the sorted list of weight magnitudes. This corresponds to hard thresholding, shown in Fig. 11.11(b).

We now experimentally compare the prediction performance of these methods on the prostate cancer regression dataset from [HTF09]. (We treat features `gleason` and `svi` as numeric, not categorical.) Table 11.2 shows the estimated coefficients at the value of  $\lambda$  (or  $K$ ) chosen by cross-validation; we see that the subset method is the sparsest, then lasso. In terms of predictive performance, all methods are very similar, as can be seen from Fig. 11.14a.

Term	OLS	Best Subset	Ridge	Lasso
intercept	2.465	2.477	2.467	2.465
lcalvol	0.676	0.736	0.522	0.548
lweight	0.262	0.315	0.255	0.224
age	-0.141	0.000	-0.089	0.000
lbph	0.209	0.000	0.186	0.129
svi	0.304	0.000	0.259	0.186
lcp	-0.287	0.000	-0.095	0.000
gleason	-0.021	0.000	0.025	0.000
pgg45	0.266	0.000	0.169	0.083
Test error	0.521	0.492	0.487	0.457
Std error	0.176	0.141	0.157	0.146

Table 11.2: Results of different methods on the prostate cancer data, which has 8 features and 67 training cases. Methods are: OLS = ordinary least squares, Subset = best subset regression, Ridge, Lasso. Rows represent the coefficients; we see that subset regression and lasso give sparse solutions. Bottom row is the mean squared error on the test set (30 cases). Adapted from Table 3.3. of [HTF09]. Generated by [prostateComparison.py](#).

### 11.5.6 Variable selection consistency

It is common to use  $\ell_1$  regularization to estimate the set of relevant variables, a process known as **variable selection**. A method that can recover the true set of relevant variables (i.e., the support of  $\mathbf{w}^*$ ) in the  $N \rightarrow \infty$  limit is called **model selection consistent**. (This is a theoretical notion that assumes the data comes from the model.)

Let us give an example. We first generate a sparse signal  $\mathbf{w}^*$  of size  $D = 4096$ , consisting of 160 randomly placed  $\pm 1$  spikes. Next we generate a random design matrix  $\mathbf{X}$  of size  $N \times D$ , where  $N = 1024$ . Finally we generate a noisy observation  $\mathbf{y} = \mathbf{X}\mathbf{w}^* + \epsilon$ , where  $\epsilon_n \sim \mathcal{N}(0, 0.01^2)$ . We then estimate  $\mathbf{w}$  from  $\mathbf{y}$  and  $\mathbf{X}$ . The original  $\mathbf{w}^*$  is shown in the first row of Fig. 11.14b. The second row is the  $\ell_1$  estimate  $\hat{\mathbf{w}}_{L1}$  using  $\lambda = 0.1\lambda_{\max}$ . We see that this has “spikes” in the right places, so it has correctly identified the relevant variables. However, although we see that  $\hat{\mathbf{w}}_{L1}$  has correctly identified the non-zero components, but they are too small, due to shrinkage. In the third row, we show the results of using the debiasing technique discussed in Sec. 11.5.3. This shows that we can recover the original weight vector. By contrast, the final row shows the OLS estimate, which is dense. Furthermore, it is visually clear that there is no single threshold value we can apply to  $\hat{\mathbf{w}}_{\text{mle}}$  to recover the correct sparse weight vector.

To use lasso to perform variable selection, we have to pick  $\lambda$ . It is common to use cross validation to pick the optimal value on the regularization path. However, it is important to note that cross validation is picking a value of  $\lambda$  that results in good predictive accuracy. This is not usually the same value as the one that is likely to recover the “true” model. To see why, recall that  $\ell_1$  regularization performs selection *and* shrinkage, that is, the chosen coefficients are brought closer to 0. In order to prevent relevant coefficients from being shrunk in this way, cross validation will tend to pick a value of  $\lambda$  that is not too large. Of course, this will result in a less sparse model which contains irrelevant variables (false positives). Indeed, it was proved in [MB06] that the prediction-optimal value of  $\lambda$  does not result in model selection consistency. However, various extensions to the basic method have

been devised that are model selection consistent (see e.g., [BG11; HTW15]).

### 11.5.7 Group lasso

In standard  $\ell_1$  regularization, we assume that there is a 1:1 correspondence between parameters and variables, so that if  $\hat{w}_d = 0$ , we interpret this to mean that variable  $d$  is excluded. But in more complex models, there may be many parameters associated with a given variable. In particular, each variable  $d$  may have a vector of weights  $\mathbf{w}_d$  associated with it, so the overall weight vector has block structure,  $\mathbf{w} = [\mathbf{w}_1, \mathbf{w}_2, \dots, \mathbf{w}_D]$ . If we want to exclude variable  $d$ , we have to force the whole subvector  $\mathbf{w}_d$  to go to zero. This is called **group sparsity**.

#### 11.5.7.1 Applications

Here are some examples where group sparsity is useful:

- Linear regression with categorical inputs: If the  $d$ 'th variable is categorical with  $K$  possible levels, then it will be represented as a one-hot vector of length  $K$  (Sec. 10.4.1), so to exclude variable  $d$ , we have to set the whole vector of incoming weights to 0.
- Multinomial logistic regression: The  $d$ 'th variable will be associated with  $C$  different weights, one per class (Sec. 10.3), so to exclude variable  $d$ , we have to set the whole vector of outgoing weights to 0.
- Neural networks: the  $k$ 'th neuron will have multiple inputs, so if we want to “turn the neuron off”, we have to set all the incoming weights to zero. This allows us to use group sparsity to learn neural network structure (for details, see e.g., [GEH19]).
- Multi-task learning: each input feature is associated with  $C$  different weights, one per output task. If we want to use a feature for all of the tasks or none of the tasks, we should select weights at the group level [OTJ07].

#### 11.5.7.2 Penalizing the two-norm

To encourage group sparsity, we partition the parameter vector into  $G$  groups,  $\mathbf{w} = [\mathbf{w}_1, \dots, \mathbf{w}_G]$ . Then we minimize the following objective

$$\text{PNLL}(\mathbf{w}) = \text{NLL}(\mathbf{w}) + \lambda \sum_{g=1}^G \|\mathbf{w}_g\|_2 \quad (11.114)$$

where  $\|\mathbf{w}_g\|_2 = \sqrt{\sum_{d \in g} w_d^2}$  is the 2-norm of the group weight vector. If the NLL is least squares, this method is called **group lasso** [YL06; Kyu+10].

Note that if we had used the sum of the squared 2-norms in Eq. (11.114), then the model would become equivalent to ridge regression, since

$$\sum_{g=1}^G \|\mathbf{w}_g\|_2^2 = \sum_g \sum_{d \in g} w_d^2 = \|\mathbf{w}\|_2^2 \quad (11.115)$$

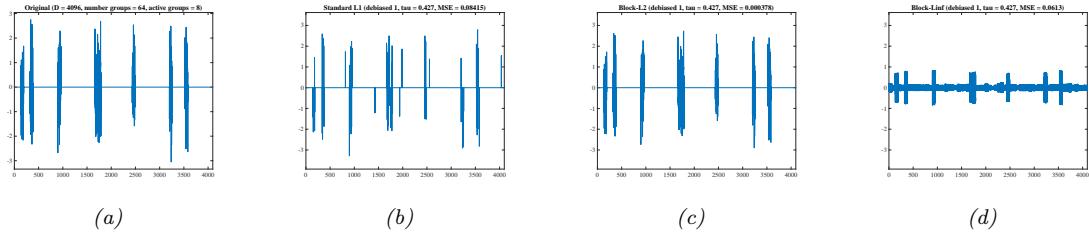


Figure 11.15: Illustration of group lasso where the original signal is piecewise Gaussian. (a) Original signal. (b) Vanilla lasso estimate. (c) Group lasso estimate using a  $\ell_2$  norm on the blocks. (d) Group lasso estimate using an  $\ell_\infty$  norm on the blocks. Adapted from Figures 3-4 of [WNF09]. Generated by `groupLassoDemo.m`.

By using the square root, we are penalizing the radius of a ball containing the group's weight vector: the only way for the radius to be small is if all elements are small.

Another way to see why the square root version enforces sparsity at the group level is to consider the gradient of the objective. Suppose there is only one group of two variables, so the penalty has the form  $\sqrt{w_1^2 + w_2^2}$ . The derivative wrt  $w_1$  is

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial w_1} (w_1^2 + w_2^2)^{\frac{1}{2}} = \frac{w_1}{\sqrt{w_1^2 + w_2^2}} \quad (11.116)$$

If  $w_2$  is close to zero, then the derivative approaches 1, and  $w_1$  is driven to zero as well, with force proportional to  $\lambda$ . If, however,  $w_2$  is large, the derivative approaches 0, and  $w_1$  is free to stay large as well. So all the coefficients in the group will have similar size.

### 11.5.7.3 Penalizing the infinity norm

A variant of this technique replaces the 2-norm with the infinity-norm [TVW05; ZRY05].

$$\|\mathbf{w}_g\|_\infty = \max_{d \in g} |w_d| \quad (11.117)$$

It is clear that this will also result in group sparsity, since if the largest element in the group is forced to zero, all the smaller ones will be as well.

#### 11.5.7.4 Example

An illustration of these techniques is shown in Fig. 11.15 and Fig. 11.16. We have a true signal  $\mathbf{w}$  of size  $D = 2^{12} = 4096$ , divided into 64 groups each of size 64. We randomly choose 8 groups of  $\mathbf{w}$  and assign them non-zero values. In Fig. 11.15 the values are drawn from a  $\mathcal{N}(0, 1)$ ; in Fig. 11.16, the values are all set to 1. We then sample a random design matrix  $\mathbf{X}$  of size  $N \times D$ , where  $N = 2^{10} = 1024$ . Finally, we generate  $\mathbf{y} = \mathbf{X}\mathbf{w} + \boldsymbol{\epsilon}$ , where  $\boldsymbol{\epsilon} \sim \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{0}, 10^{-4}\mathbf{I}_N)$ . Given this data, we estimate the support of  $\mathbf{w}$  using  $\ell_1$  or group  $\ell_1$ , and then estimate the non-zero values using least squares (debiased estimate).

We see from the figures that group lasso does a much better job than vanilla lasso, since it respects the known group structure. We also see that the  $\ell_\infty$  norm has a tendency to make all the elements

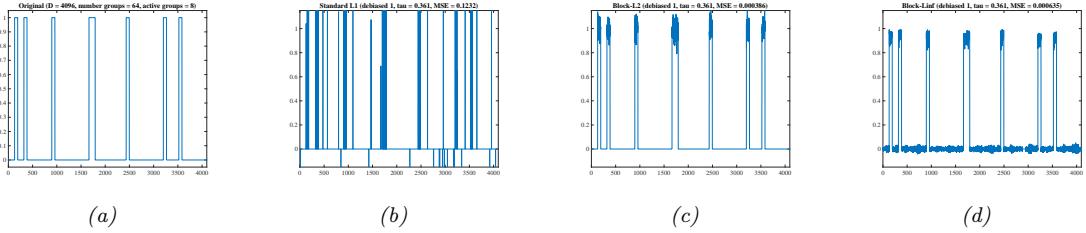


Figure 11.16: Same as Fig. 11.15, except the original signal is piecewise constant.

within a block to have similar magnitude. This is appropriate in the second example, but not the first. (The value of  $\lambda$  was the same in all examples, and was chosen by hand.)

### 11.5.8 Elastic net (ridge and lasso combined)

In group lasso, we need to specify the group structure ahead of time. For some problems, we don't know the group structure, and yet we would still like highly correlated coefficients to be treated as an implicit group. One way to achieve this effect, proposed in [ZH05], is to use the **elastic net**, which is a hybrid between lasso and ridge regression.<sup>3</sup> This corresponds to minimizing the following objective:

$$\mathcal{L}(\mathbf{w}, \lambda_1, \lambda_2) = \|\mathbf{y} - \mathbf{X}\mathbf{w}\|^2 + \lambda_2\|\mathbf{w}\|_2^2 + \lambda_1\|\mathbf{w}\|_1 \quad (11.118)$$

This penalty function is *strictly convex* (assuming  $\lambda_2 > 0$ ) so there is a unique global minimum, even if  $\mathbf{X}$  is not full rank. It can be shown [ZH05] that any strictly convex penalty on  $\mathbf{w}$  will exhibit a **grouping effect**, which means that the regression coefficients of highly correlated variables tend to be equal. In particular, if two features are identically equal, so  $\mathbf{X}_{:j} = \mathbf{X}_{:k}$ , one can show that their estimates are also equal,  $\hat{w}_j = \hat{w}_k$ . By contrast, with lasso, we may have that  $\hat{w}_j = 0$  and  $\hat{w}_k \neq 0$  or vice versa, resulting in less stable estimates.

In addition to its soft grouping behavior, elastic net has other advantages. In particular, if  $D > N$ , the maximum number of non-zero elements that can be selected (excluding the MLE, which has  $D$  non-zero elements) is  $N$ . By contrast, elastic net can select more than  $N$  non-zero variables on its path to the dense estimate, thus exploring more possible subsets of variables.

### 11.5.9 Optimization algorithms

A large variety of algorithms have been proposed to solve the lasso problem, and other  $\ell_1$ -regularized convex objectives. In this section, we briefly mention some of the most popular methods.

3. It is apparently called the "elastic net" because it is "like a stretchable fishing net that retains 'all the big fish'" [ZH05].

### 11.5.9.1 Coordinate descent

Sometimes it is hard to optimize all the variables simultaneously, but it is easy to optimize them one by one. In particular, we can solve for the  $j$ 'th coefficient with all the others held fixed as follows:

$$w_j^* = \underset{\eta}{\operatorname{argmin}} \mathcal{L}(\mathbf{w} + \eta \mathbf{e}_j) \quad (11.119)$$

where  $\mathbf{e}_j$  is the  $j$ 'th unit vector. This is called **coordinate descent**. We can either cycle through the coordinates in a deterministic fashion, or we can sample them at random, or we can choose to update the coordinate for which the gradient is steepest.

This method is particularly appealing if each one-dimensional optimization problem can be solved analytically, as is the case for lasso (see Eq. (11.104)). This is known as the **shooting** algorithm [Fu98; WL08]. (The term “shooting” is a reference to cowboy theme inspired by the term “lasso”.) See Algorithm 4 for details.

This coordinate descent method has been generalized to the GLM case in [FHT10], and is the basis of the popular **glmnet** software library.

---

**Algorithm 4:** Coordinate descent for lasso (aka shooting algorithm)

---

```

1 Initialize  $\mathbf{w} = (\mathbf{X}^\top \mathbf{X} + \lambda \mathbf{I})^{-1} \mathbf{X}^\top \mathbf{y}$ ;
2 repeat
3   for  $d = 1, \dots, D$  do
4      $a_d = \sum_{n=1}^N x_{nd}^2$ ;
5      $c_d = \sum_{n=1}^N x_{nd}(y_n - \mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x}_n + w_d x_{nd})$  ;
6      $w_d = \text{SoftThreshold}(\frac{c_d}{a_d}, \lambda/a_d)$ ;
7 until converged;

```

---

### 11.5.9.2 Projected gradient descent

In this section, we convert the non-differentiable  $\ell_1$  penalty into a smooth regularizer. To do this, we first use the **split variable trick** to define  $\mathbf{w} = \mathbf{w}^+ - \mathbf{w}^-$ , where  $\mathbf{w}^+ = \max\{\mathbf{w}, 0\}$  and  $\mathbf{w}^- = -\min\{\mathbf{w}, 0\}$ . Now we can replace  $\|\mathbf{w}\|_1$  with  $\sum_d (w_d^+ + w_d^-)$ . We also have to replace  $\text{NLL}(\mathbf{w})$  with  $\text{NLL}(\mathbf{w}^+ + \mathbf{w}^-)$ . Thus we get the following smooth, but constrained, optimization problem:

$$\min_{\mathbf{w}^+ \geq 0, \mathbf{w}^- \geq 0} \text{NLL}(\mathbf{w}^+ - \mathbf{w}^-) + \lambda \sum_{d=1}^D (w_d^+ + w_d^-) \quad (11.120)$$

We can use projected gradient descent (Sec. 5.6.1) to solve this problem. Specifically, we can enforce the constraint by projecting onto the positive orthant, which we can do using  $w_d := \max(w_d, 0)$ ; this operation is denoted by  $P_+$ . Thus the projected gradient update takes the following form:

$$\begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{w}_{t+1}^+ \\ \mathbf{w}_{t+1}^- \end{pmatrix} = P_+ \left( \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{w}_t^+ - \eta_t \nabla \text{NLL}(\mathbf{w}_t^+ - \mathbf{w}_t^-) - \eta_t \lambda \mathbf{e} \\ \mathbf{w}_t^- + \eta_t \nabla \text{NLL}(\mathbf{w}_t^+ - \mathbf{w}_t^-) - \eta_t \lambda \mathbf{e} \end{bmatrix} \right) \quad (11.121)$$

where  $\mathbf{e}$  is the unit vector of all ones.

### 11.5.9.3 Proximal gradient descent

In Sec. 5.6, we introduced proximal gradient descent, which can be used to optimize smooth functions with non-smooth penalties, such as  $\ell_1$ . In Sec. 5.6.2, we showed that the proximal operator for the  $\ell_1$  penalty corresponds to soft thresholding. Thus the proximal gradient descent update can be written as

$$\mathbf{w}_{t+1} = \text{SoftThreshold}(\mathbf{w}_t - \eta_t \nabla \text{NLL}(\mathbf{w}_t), \eta_t \lambda) \quad (11.122)$$

where the soft thresholding operator (Eq. (5.133)) is applied elementwise. This is called the **iterative soft thresholding algorithm** or **ISTA** [DDDM04; Don95]. If we combine this with Nesterov acceleration, we get the method known as “fast ISTA” or **FISTA** [BT09], which is widely used to fit sparse linear models.

### 11.5.9.4 LARS

In this section, we discuss methods that can generate a set of solutions for different values of  $\lambda$ , starting with the empty set, i.e., they compute the full regularization path (Sec. 11.5.4). These algorithms exploit the fact that one can quickly compute  $\hat{\mathbf{w}}(\lambda_k)$  from  $\hat{\mathbf{w}}(\lambda_{k-1})$  if  $\lambda_k \approx \lambda_{k-1}$ ; this is known as **warm starting**. In fact, even if we only want the solution for a single value of  $\lambda$ , call it  $\lambda_*$ , it can sometimes be computationally more efficient to compute a set of solutions, from  $\lambda_{\max}$  down to  $\lambda_*$ , using warm-starting; this is called a **continuation method** or **homotopy** method. This is often much faster than directly “cold-starting” at  $\lambda_*$ ; this is particularly true if  $\lambda_*$  is small.

The **LARS** algorithm [Efr+04], which stands for “least angle regression and shrinkage”, is an example of a homotopy method for the lasso problem. This can compute  $\hat{\mathbf{w}}(\lambda)$  for all possible values of  $\lambda$  in an efficient manner. (A similar algorithm was independently invented in [OPT00b; OPT00a]).

LARS works as follows. It starts with a large value of  $\lambda$ , such that only the variable that is most correlated with the response vector  $\mathbf{y}$  is chosen. Then  $\lambda$  is decreased until a second variable is found which has the same correlation (in terms of magnitude) with the current residual as the first variable, where the residual at step  $k$  on the path is defined as  $\mathbf{r}_k = \mathbf{y} - \mathbf{X}_{:, F_k} \mathbf{w}_k$ , where  $F_k$  is the current **active set** (cf., Eq. (11.100)). Remarkably, one can solve for this new value of  $\lambda$  analytically, by using a geometric argument (hence the term “least angle”). This allows the algorithm to quickly “jump” to the next point on the regularization path where the active set changes. This repeats until all the variables are added.

It is necessary to allow variables to be removed from the current active set, even as we increase  $\lambda$ , if we want the sequence of solutions to correspond to the regularization path of lasso. If we disallow variable removal, we get a slightly different algorithm called **least angle regression** or **LAR**. LAR is very similar to **greedy forward selection**, and a method known as **least squares boosting** (see e.g., [HTW15]).

## 11.6 Bayesian linear regression

We have seen how to compute the MLE and MAP estimate for linear regression models under various priors. In this section, we discuss how to compute the full posterior  $p(\boldsymbol{\theta} | \mathcal{D})$ , where  $\boldsymbol{\theta} = (\mathbf{w}, \sigma^2)$ .

### 11.6.1 Computing $p(\mathbf{w}|\mathcal{D}, \sigma^2)$ with Gaussian prior

For simplicity, we will initially assume  $\sigma^2$  is known, so we can focus on computing  $p(\mathbf{w}|\mathcal{D}, \sigma^2)$ . (See Sec. 11.6.2 for the case when both  $\mathbf{w}$  and  $\sigma^2$  are unknown.) To start with, we must pick a prior. As in ridge regression in Sec. 11.3, we will use

$$p(\mathbf{w}) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{w} | \tilde{\mathbf{w}}, \tilde{\Sigma}) \quad (11.123)$$

where  $\tilde{\mathbf{w}} = \mathbf{0}$  is the prior mean and  $\tilde{\Sigma} = \tau^2 \mathbf{I}_D$  is the prior covariance. We can rewrite the likelihood in terms of an MVN as follows:

$$p(\mathcal{D}|\mathbf{w}, \sigma^2) = \prod_{n=1}^N p(y_n | \mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x}, \sigma^2) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{y} | \mathbf{X}\mathbf{w}, \sigma^2 \mathbf{I}_N) \quad (11.124)$$

where  $\mathbf{I}_N$  is the  $N \times N$  identity matrix. We can then use Bayes rule for Gaussians (Eq. (3.102)) to derive the posterior, which is as follows:

$$p(\mathbf{w}|\mathbf{X}, \mathbf{y}, \sigma^2) \propto \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{w} | \mathbf{0}, \tau^2 \mathbf{I}_D) \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{y} | \mathbf{X}\mathbf{w}, \sigma^2 \mathbf{I}_N) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{w} | \hat{\mathbf{w}}, \hat{\Sigma}) \quad (11.125)$$

$$\hat{\mathbf{w}} \triangleq (\lambda \mathbf{I}_D + \mathbf{X}^\top \mathbf{X})^{-1} \mathbf{X}^\top \mathbf{y} \quad (11.126)$$

$$\hat{\Sigma} \triangleq \sigma^2 (\lambda \mathbf{I}_D + \mathbf{X}^\top \mathbf{X})^{-1} \quad (11.127)$$

$\hat{\mathbf{w}}$  is the posterior mean,  $\hat{\Sigma}$  is the posterior covariance, and  $\lambda \triangleq \frac{\sigma^2}{\tau^2}$  controls how strong the prior is compared to the observation noise. (Note that  $\hat{\Sigma}$  is independent of the observed output variables  $\mathbf{y}$ , a peculiar property of linear Gaussian models.)

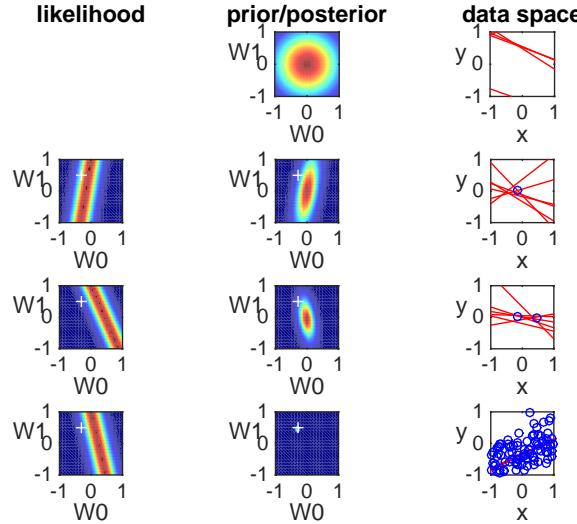
#### 11.6.1.1 1d example

Suppose we have a 1d regression model of the form  $f(x; \mathbf{w}) = w_0 + w_1 x_1$ , where the true parameters are  $w_0 = -0.3$  and  $w_1 = 0.5$ . We now perform inference  $p(\mathbf{w}|\mathcal{D})$  and visualize the 2d prior and posterior as the size of the training set  $N$  increases.

In particular, in Fig. 11.17 (which inspired the front cover of this book), we plot the likelihood, the posterior, and an approximation to the posterior predictive distribution.<sup>4</sup> Each row plots these distributions as we increase the amount of training data,  $N$ . We now explain each row:

- In the first row,  $N = 0$ , so the posterior is the same as the prior. In this case, our predictions are “all over the place”, since our prior is essentially uniform.
- In the second row,  $N = 1$ , so we have seen one data point (the blue circle in the plot in the third column). Our posterior becomes constrained by the corresponding likelihood, and our predictions pass close to the observed data. However, we see that the posterior has a ridge-like shape, reflecting the fact that there are many possible solutions, with different slopes/intercepts. This makes sense since we cannot uniquely infer two parameters ( $w_0$  and  $w_1$ ) from one observation.

4. To approximate this, we draw some samples from the posterior,  $\mathbf{w}_s \sim \mathcal{N}(\mu, \Sigma)$ , and then plot the line  $\mathbb{E}[y|x, \mathbf{w}_s]$ , where  $x$  ranges over  $[-1, 1]$ , for each sampled parameter value.



*Figure 11.17: Sequential Bayesian inference of the parameters of a linear regression model  $p(y|\mathbf{x}) = \mathcal{N}(y|w_0 + w_1 x_1, \sigma^2)$ . Left column: likelihood function for current data point. Middle column: posterior given first  $N$  data points,  $p(w_0, w_1 | \mathbf{x}_{1:N}, y_{1:N}, \sigma^2)$ . Right column: samples from the current posterior predictive distribution. Row 1: prior distribution ( $N = 0$ ). Row 2: after 1 data point. Row 3: after 2 data points. Row 4: after 100 data points. The white cross in columns 1 and 2 represents the true parameter value; we see that the mode of the posterior rapidly converges to this point. The blue circles in column 3 are the observed data points.*

*Adapted from Figure 3.7 of [Bis06]. Generated by linreg\_2d\_bayes\_demo.py.*

- In the third row,  $N = 2$ . In this case, the posterior becomes much narrower since we have two constraints from the likelihood. Our predictions about the future are all now closer to the training data.
- In the fourth (last) row,  $N = 100$ . Now the posterior is essentially a delta function, centered on the true value of  $\mathbf{w}_* = (-0.3, 0.5)$ , indicated by a white cross in the plots in the first and second columns. The variation in our predictions is due to the inherent Gaussian noise with magnitude  $\sigma^2$ .

This example illustrates that, as the amount of data increases, the posterior mean estimate,  $\hat{\mu} = \mathbb{E}[\mathbf{w}|\mathcal{D}]$ , converges to the true value  $\mathbf{w}_*$  that generated the data. We thus say that the Bayesian estimate is a consistent estimator (see Sec. D.5.2 for more details). We also see that our posterior uncertainty decreases over time. This is what we mean when we say we are “learning” about the parameters as we see more data.

### 11.6.1.2 Centering the data reduces posterior correlation

The astute reader might notice that the shape of the 2d posterior in Fig. 11.17 is an elongated ellipse (which eventually collapses to a point as  $N \rightarrow \infty$ ). This implies that there is a lot of posterior

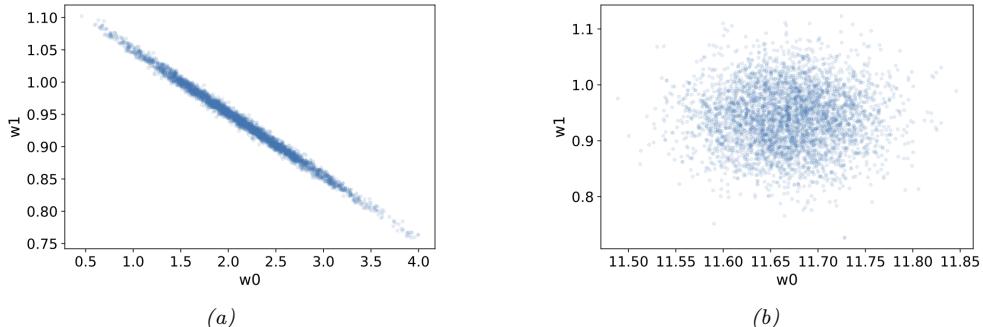


Figure 11.18: Posterior samples of  $p(w_0, w_1 | \mathcal{D})$  for 1d linear regression model  $p(y|x, \theta) = \mathcal{N}(y|w_0 + w_1 x, \sigma^2)$  with a Gaussian prior. (a) Original data. (b) Centered data. Generated by `lin-reg_2d_bayes_centering_pymc3.py`

correlation between the two parameters, which can cause computational difficulties.

To understand why this happens, note that each data point induces a likelihood function corresponding to a line which goes through that data point. When we look at all the data together, we see that predictions with maximum likelihood must correspond to lines that go through the mean of the data,  $(\bar{x}, \bar{y})$ . There are many such lines, but if we increase the slope, we must decrease the intercept. Thus we can think of the set of high probability lines as spinning around the data mean, like a wheel of fortune.<sup>5</sup> This correlation between  $w_0$  and  $w_1$  is why the posterior has the form of a diagonal line. (The Gaussian prior converts this into an elongated ellipse, but the posterior correlation still persists until the sample size causes the posterior to shrink to a point.)

It can be hard to compute such elongated posteriors. One simple solution is to center the input data, i.e., by using  $x'_n = x_n - \bar{x}$ . Now the lines can pivot around the origin, reducing the posterior correlation between  $w_0$  and  $w_1$ . See Fig. 11.18 for an illustration. (We may also choose to divide each  $x_n$  by the standard deviation of that feature, as discussed in Sec. 10.2.8.)

Note that we can convert the posterior derived from fitting to the centered data back to the original coordinates by noting that

$$y' = w'_0 + w'_1 x' = w'_0 + w'_1(x - \bar{x}) = (w'_0 - w'_1 \bar{x}) + w'_1 x \quad (11.128)$$

Thus the parameters on the uncentered data are  $w_0 = w'_0 - w'_1 \bar{x}$  and  $w_1 = w'_1$ .

### 11.6.1.3 Probabilistic predictions

We have discussed how to compute our uncertainty about the parameters of the model,  $p(\mathbf{w}|\mathcal{D})$ . But what about the uncertainty associated with our predictions about future outputs? Using Eq. (3.105), we can show that the posterior predictive distribution at a test point  $\mathbf{x}$  is also Gaussian:

$$p(y|\mathbf{x}, \mathcal{D}, \sigma^2) = \int \mathcal{N}(y|\mathbf{x}^\top \mathbf{w}, \sigma^2) \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{w}|\hat{\boldsymbol{\mu}}, \hat{\boldsymbol{\Sigma}}) d\mathbf{w} \quad (11.129)$$

$$\equiv \mathcal{N}(y | \hat{\mu}^\top \mathbf{x}, \hat{\sigma}^2(\mathbf{x})) \quad (11.130)$$

<sup>5</sup> This analogy is from [Mar18, p96].

where  $\hat{\sigma}^2(\mathbf{x}) \triangleq \sigma^2 + \mathbf{x}^\top \hat{\Sigma} \mathbf{x}$  is the variance of the posterior predictive distribution at point  $\mathbf{x}$  after seeing the  $N$  training examples. The predicted variance depends on two terms: the variance of the observation noise,  $\sigma^2$ , and the variance in the parameters,  $\hat{\Sigma}$ . The latter translates into variance about observations in a way which depends on how close  $\mathbf{x}$  is to the training data  $\mathcal{D}$ . This is illustrated in Fig. 11.19(b), where we see that the error bars get larger as we move away from the training points, representing increased uncertainty. This can be important for certain applications, such as active learning, where we choose where to collect training data (see Sec. 19.7).

In some cases, it is computationally intractable to compute the parameter posterior,  $p(\mathbf{w}|\mathcal{D})$ . In such cases, we may choose to use a point estimate,  $\hat{\mathbf{w}}$ , and then to use the plugin approximation. This gives

$$p(y|\mathbf{x}, \mathcal{D}, \sigma^2) = \int \mathcal{N}(y|\mathbf{x}^\top \mathbf{w}, \sigma^2) \delta(\mathbf{w} - \hat{\mathbf{w}}) d\mathbf{w} = p(y|\mathbf{x}^\top \hat{\mathbf{w}}, \sigma^2). \quad (11.131)$$

We see that the posterior predictive variance is constant, and independent of the data, as illustrated in Fig. 11.19(a). If we sample a parameter from this posterior, we will always recover a single function, as shown in Fig. 11.19(c). By contrast, if we sample from the true posterior,  $\mathbf{w}_s \sim p(\mathbf{w}|\mathcal{D}, \sigma^2)$ , we will get a range of different functions, as shown in Fig. 11.19(d), which more accurately reflects our uncertainty.

### 11.6.2 Computing $p(\mathbf{w}, \sigma^2|\mathcal{D})$ with Gaussian-Gamma prior

In this section, we discuss how to compute  $p(\mathbf{w}, \sigma^2|\mathcal{D})$ . This generalizes the results from Sec. 11.6.1 where we assumed  $\sigma^2$  was known.

#### 11.6.2.1 Likelihood

We will assume the following likelihood:

$$p(\mathcal{D}|\mathbf{w}, \sigma^2) \propto (\sigma^2)^{-N/2} \exp\left(-\frac{1}{2\sigma^2} \sum_{n=1}^N (y_n - \mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x}_n)^2\right) \quad (11.132)$$

#### 11.6.2.2 Prior

Since the regression weights now depend on  $\sigma^2$  in the likelihood, the conjugate prior for  $\mathbf{w}$  has the form

$$p(\mathbf{w}|\sigma^2) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{w}|\check{\mathbf{w}}, \sigma^2 \check{\Sigma}) \quad (11.133)$$

For the noise variance  $\sigma^2$ , the conjugate prior is based on the inverse Gamma distribution, which has the form

$$\text{IG}(\sigma^2|\check{a}, \check{b}) = \frac{\check{b}^{\check{a}}}{\Gamma(\check{a})} (\sigma^2)^{-(\check{a}+1)} \exp(-\frac{\check{b}}{\sigma^2}) \quad (11.134)$$

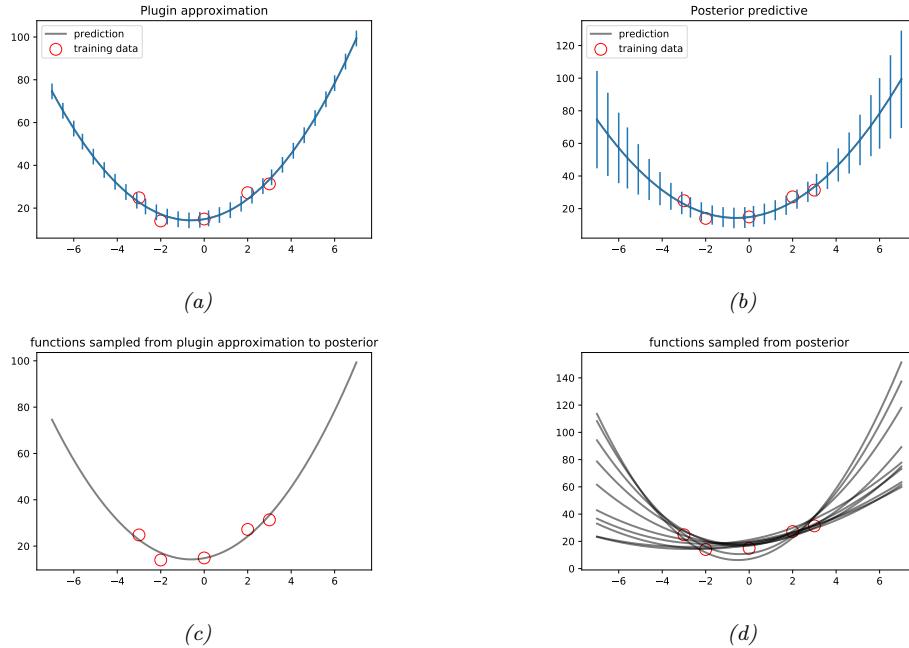


Figure 11.19: (a) Plugin approximation to predictive density (we plug in the MLE of the parameters) when fitting a second degree polynomial to some 1d data. (b) Posterior predictive density, obtained by integrating out the parameters. Black curve is posterior mean, error bars are 2 standard deviations of the posterior predictive density. (c) 10 samples from the plugin approximation to posterior predictive distribution. (d) 10 samples from the true posterior predictive distribution. Generated by [linreg\\_post\\_pred\\_plot.py](#).

(See Sec. 3.4.5 for more details.) Putting these two together, we find that the joint conjugate prior is the **normal inverse Gamma** distribution:

$$\text{NIG}(\mathbf{w}, \sigma^2 | \tilde{\mathbf{w}}, \tilde{\Sigma}, \tilde{a}, \tilde{b}) \triangleq \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{w} | \tilde{\mathbf{w}}, \sigma^2 \tilde{\Sigma}) \text{IG}(\sigma^2 | \tilde{a}, \tilde{b}) \quad (11.135)$$

$$\begin{aligned} &= \frac{\tilde{b}^{\tilde{a}}}{(2\pi)^{D/2} |\tilde{\Sigma}|^{1/2} \Gamma(\tilde{a})} (\sigma^2)^{-(\tilde{a} + (D/2) + 1)} \\ &\times \exp \left[ -\frac{(\mathbf{w} - \tilde{\mathbf{w}})^\top \tilde{\Sigma}^{-1} (\mathbf{w} - \tilde{\mathbf{w}}) + 2\tilde{b}}{2\sigma^2} \right] \end{aligned} \quad (11.136)$$

### 11.6.2.3 Posterior

With this prior and likelihood, one can show (see Sec. 7.2.4.4) that the posterior has the following form:

$$p(\mathbf{w}, \sigma^2 | \mathcal{D}) = \text{NIG}(\mathbf{w}, \sigma^2 | \hat{\mathbf{w}}, \hat{\Sigma}, \hat{a}, \hat{b}) \quad (11.137)$$

$$\hat{\mathbf{w}} = \hat{\Sigma} (\check{\Sigma}^{-1} \check{\mathbf{w}} + \mathbf{X}^\top \mathbf{y}) \quad (11.138)$$

$$\hat{\Sigma} = (\check{\Sigma}^{-1} + \mathbf{X}^\top \mathbf{X})^{-1} \quad (11.139)$$

$$\hat{a} = \check{a} + N/2 \quad (11.140)$$

$$\hat{b} = \check{b} + \frac{1}{2} (\check{\mathbf{w}}^\top \check{\Sigma}^{-1} \check{\mathbf{w}} + \mathbf{y}^\top \mathbf{y} - \hat{\mathbf{w}}^\top \hat{\Sigma}^{-1} \hat{\mathbf{w}}) \quad (11.141)$$

The expressions for  $\hat{\mathbf{w}}$  and  $\hat{\Sigma}$  are similar to the case where  $\sigma^2$  is known. The expression for  $\hat{a}$  is also intuitive, since it just updates the counts. The expression for  $\hat{b}$  can be interpreted as follows: it is the prior sum of squares,  $\check{b}$ , plus the empirical sum of squares,  $\mathbf{y}^\top \mathbf{y}$ , plus a term due to the error in the prior on  $\mathbf{w}$ . (If we set  $\mathbf{x} = 1$  and  $\mathbf{w} = \mu$ , we recover the results in Sec. 7.2.3.3 for inferring  $p(\mu, \sigma^2 | \mathcal{D})$ .

The posterior marginals are as follows. For the variance, we have

$$p(\sigma^2 | \mathcal{D}) = \int p(\mathbf{w} | \sigma^2, \mathcal{D}) p(\sigma^2 | \mathcal{D}) d\mathbf{w} = \text{IG}(\sigma^2 | \hat{a}, \hat{b}) \quad (11.142)$$

For the regression weights, it can be shown that

$$p(\mathbf{w} | \mathcal{D}) = \int p(\mathbf{w} | \sigma^2, \mathcal{D}) p(\sigma^2 | \mathcal{D}) d\sigma^2 = \mathcal{T}(\mathbf{w} | \hat{\mathbf{w}}, \frac{\hat{b}}{\hat{a}} \hat{\Sigma}, 2 \hat{a}) \quad (11.143)$$

We give a worked example of using these equations in Sec. 11.6.3.2.

### 11.6.2.4 Posterior predictive distribution

In machine learning we usually care more about uncertainty (and accuracy) of our predictions, not our parameter estimates. Fortunately, one can derive the posterior predictive distribution in closed form. In particular, one can show that, given  $N'$  new test inputs  $\tilde{\mathbf{X}}$ , we have

$$p(\tilde{\mathbf{y}} | \tilde{\mathbf{X}}, \mathcal{D}) = \int \int p(\tilde{\mathbf{y}} | \tilde{\mathbf{X}}, \mathbf{w}, \sigma^2) p(\mathbf{w}, \sigma^2 | \mathcal{D}) d\mathbf{w} d\sigma^2 \quad (11.144)$$

$$= \int \int \mathcal{N}(\tilde{\mathbf{y}} | \tilde{\mathbf{X}} \mathbf{w}, \sigma^2 \mathbf{I}_{N'}) \text{NIG}(\mathbf{w}, \sigma^2 | \hat{\mathbf{w}}, \hat{\Sigma}, \hat{a}, \hat{b}) d\mathbf{w} d\sigma^2 \quad (11.145)$$

$$= \mathcal{T}(\tilde{\mathbf{y}} | \tilde{\mathbf{X}} \hat{\mathbf{w}}, \frac{\hat{b}}{\hat{a}} (\mathbf{I}_{N'} + \tilde{\mathbf{X}} \hat{\Sigma} \tilde{\mathbf{X}}^\top), 2 \hat{a}) \quad (11.146)$$

The posterior predictive mean is equivalent to “normal” linear regression, but where we plug in  $\hat{\mathbf{w}} = \mathbb{E}[\mathbf{w} | \mathcal{D}]$  instead of the MLE. The posterior predictive variance has two components:  $\hat{b}/\hat{a}\mathbf{I}_{N'}$  due to the measurement noise, and  $\hat{b}/\hat{a}\tilde{\mathbf{X}} \hat{\Sigma} \tilde{\mathbf{X}}^\top$  due to the uncertainty in  $\mathbf{w}$ . This latter term varies depending on how close the test inputs are to the training data. The results are similar to using a Gaussian prior (with fixed  $\hat{\sigma}^2$ ), illustrated in Fig. 11.19(b), except the predictive distribution is even wider, since we are taking into account uncertainty about  $\sigma^2$ .

### 11.6.3 Uninformative priors

A common criticism of Bayesian inference is the need to use a prior. This is sometimes thought to “pollute” the inferences one makes from the data. We can minimize the effect of the prior by using an uninformative prior, as we discussed in Sec. 7.3. We give some examples below.

#### 11.6.3.1 Jeffreys prior for linear regression

From Sec. 7.3.1.3, we know that the Jeffreys prior for the location parameter has the form  $p(\mathbf{w}) \propto 1$ , and from Sec. 7.3.1.4, we know that the Jeffreys prior for the scale factor has the form  $p(\sigma) \propto \sigma^{-1}$ . We can emulate these priors using an improper NIG prior with  $\tilde{\mathbf{w}} = \mathbf{0}$ ,  $\tilde{\Sigma} = \infty \mathbf{I}$ ,  $\tilde{a} = -D/2$  and  $\tilde{b} = 0$ . The corresponding posterior is given by

$$p(\mathbf{w}, \sigma^2 | \mathcal{D}) = \text{NIG}(\mathbf{w}, \sigma^2 | \hat{\mathbf{w}}, \hat{\Sigma}, \hat{a}, \hat{b}) \quad (11.147)$$

$$\hat{\mathbf{w}} = \hat{\mathbf{w}}_{\text{mle}} = (\mathbf{X}^\top \mathbf{X})^{-1} \mathbf{X}^\top \mathbf{y} \quad (11.148)$$

$$\hat{\Sigma} = (\mathbf{X}^\top \mathbf{X})^{-1} \quad (11.149)$$

$$\hat{a} = \frac{N - D}{2} \quad (11.150)$$

$$\hat{b} = \frac{s^2}{2} \quad (11.151)$$

$$s^2 \triangleq (\mathbf{y} - \mathbf{X} \hat{\mathbf{w}}_{\text{mle}})^\top (\mathbf{y} - \mathbf{X} \hat{\mathbf{w}}_{\text{mle}}) \quad (11.152)$$

Hence the posterior distribution of the weights is given by

$$p(\mathbf{w} | \mathcal{D}) = \mathcal{T}(\mathbf{w} | \hat{\mathbf{w}}, \frac{s^2}{N - D} \hat{\Sigma}, N - D) \quad (11.153)$$

where  $\hat{\Sigma} = (\mathbf{X}^\top \mathbf{X})^{-1}$  and  $\hat{\mathbf{w}}$  is the MLE. The marginals for each weight have the form

$$p(w_d | \mathcal{D}) = \mathcal{T}(w_d | \hat{w}_d, \frac{\hat{\Sigma}_{dd} s^2}{N - D}, N - D) \quad (11.154)$$

Interestingly, this is equivalent to the frequentist sampling distribution of the MLE (see Sec. D.3.1.3).

#### 11.6.3.2 Example: Boston housing

As a simple example, let us consider the Boston housing dataset, where the goal is to predict house price given some features. Table 11.3 shows the result of a Bayesian analysis using an uninformative prior. We can use these marginal posteriors to compute if the coefficients are “significantly” different from 0. An informal way to do this (without using decision theory) is to check if its 95% credible interval excludes 0; if so, we put a star in the “significant” column, following the convention in the frequentist statistics literature. From Table 11.3, we see that all the coefficients are significant, except for INDUS (proportion of non-retail business acres per town), and — more surprisingly — AGE (proportion of owner-occupied units built prior to 1940). These results are the same as those obtained using frequentist p-value methods (Sec. D.7.5), since the Bayesian posterior and frequentist sampling distribution are the same in this case.

$w_d$	$\mathbb{E}[w_d \mathcal{D}]$	$\sqrt{\mathbb{V}[w_d \mathcal{D}]}$	95% CI	sig
intercept	22.533	0.21097	[22.118, 22.947]	*
CRIM	-0.921	0.28122	[-1.474, -0.369]	*
ZN	1.082	0.32017	[0.453, 1.711]	*
INDUS	0.143	0.42189	[-0.686, 0.972]	
CHAS	0.683	0.21885	[0.253, 1.113]	*
NOX	-2.062	0.44272	[-2.932, -1.192]	*
RM	2.673	0.29369	[2.096, 3.250]	*
AGE	0.021	0.37187	[-0.710, 0.752]	
DIS	-3.108	0.42005	[-3.933, -2.282]	*
RAD	2.661	0.57758	[1.527, 3.796]	*
TAX	-2.078	0.63383	[-3.323, -0.833]	*
PTRATIO	-2.064	0.28326	[-2.621, -1.508]	*
B	0.857	0.24499	[0.376, 1.339]	*
LSTAT	-3.752	0.36198	[-4.464, -3.041]	*

Table 11.3: Posterior mean, standard deviation and credible intervals for a linear regression model with an uninformative prior fit to the Boston housing data. Each  $w_d$  is a coefficient corresponding to input feature  $x_d$ . The “sig” column has a star in it if the coefficient is “significantly” different from 0. Produced by [linregBayesBoston.m](#).

### 11.6.3.3 Zellner’s g-prior

It is often reasonable to assume an uninformative prior on  $\sigma^2$ , since that is just a scalar that does not have much influence on the results, but using an uninformative prior for  $\mathbf{w}$  can be dangerous, since the strength of the prior controls how well regularized the model is, as we discussed in Sec. 11.3 on ridge regression.

A common compromise is to use an NIG prior with  $\check{a} = -D/2$ ,  $\check{b} = 0$  (to ensure  $p(\sigma^2) \propto 1$ ) and  $\check{\mathbf{w}} = \mathbf{0}$  and  $\check{\Sigma} = g(\mathbf{X}^\top \mathbf{X})^{-1}$ , where  $g > 0$  plays a role analogous to  $1/\lambda$  in ridge regression. This is called Zellner’s **g-prior** [Zel86].<sup>6</sup> We see that the prior covariance is proportional to  $(\mathbf{X}^\top \mathbf{X})^{-1}$  rather than  $\mathbf{I}$ ; this ensures that the posterior is invariant to scaling of the inputs, e.g., due to a change in the units of measurement [Min00a].

With this prior, the posterior becomes

$$p(\mathbf{w}, \sigma^2 | g, \mathcal{D}) = \text{NIG}(\mathbf{w}, \sigma^2 | \mathbf{w}_N, \mathbf{V}_N, a_N, b_N) \quad (11.155)$$

$$\mathbf{V}_N = \frac{g}{g+1} (\mathbf{X}^\top \mathbf{X})^{-1} \quad (11.156)$$

$$\mathbf{w}_N = \frac{g}{g+1} \hat{\mathbf{w}}_{mle} \quad (11.157)$$

$$a_N = N/2 \quad (11.158)$$

$$b_N = \frac{s^2}{2} + \frac{1}{2(g+1)} \hat{\mathbf{w}}_{mle}^\top \mathbf{X}^\top \mathbf{X} \hat{\mathbf{w}}_{mle} \quad (11.159)$$

<sup>6</sup> Note this prior is conditioned on the inputs  $\mathbf{X}$ , but not the outputs  $\mathbf{y}$ ; this is totally valid in a conditional (discriminative) model, where all calculations are conditioned on  $\mathbf{X}$ , which is treated like a fixed constant input.

Various approaches have been proposed for setting  $g$ , including cross validation, empirical Bayes [Min00a; GF00], hierarchical Bayes [Lia+08], etc.

### 11.6.4 Sparsity-promoting priors

In this section, we discuss Bayesian inference for the parameters of linear regression models using sparsity-promoting priors.

#### 11.6.4.1 Spike and slab prior

The canonical way to achieve sparsity when using Bayesian inference is to use a **spike-and-slab** (**SS**) prior [MB88], which has the form of a 2 component mixture model, with one component being a “spike” at 0, and the other being a uniform “slab” between  $-a$  and  $a$ :

$$p(\mathbf{w}) = \prod_{d=1}^D (1 - \pi)\delta(w_d) + \pi\text{Unif}(w_d | -a, a) \quad (11.160)$$

where  $\pi$  is the prior probability that each coefficient is non-zero. The corresponding log prior on the coefficients is thus

$$\log p(\mathbf{w}) = \|\mathbf{w}\|_0 \log(1 - \pi) + (D - \|\mathbf{w}\|_0) \log \pi = -\lambda \|\mathbf{w}\|_0 + \text{const} \quad (11.161)$$

where  $\lambda = \log \frac{\pi}{1-\pi}$  controls the sparsity of the model, and  $\|\mathbf{w}\|_0 = \sum_{d=1}^D \mathbb{I}(w_d \neq 0)$  is the  $\ell_0$  **norm** of the weights. Thus MAP estimation with a spike and slab prior is equivalent  $\ell_0$  **regularization**; this penalizes the number of non-zero coefficients. However, posterior samples will also be sparse, which is not the case under a Laplace prior discussed in Sec. 11.5. Interestingly, [EY09] show theoretically (and [SPZ09] confirm experimentally) that using the posterior mean with a spike-and-slab prior also results in better prediction accuracy than using the posterior mode with a Laplace prior.

In practice, we often approximate the uniform slab with a broad Gaussian distribution,

$$p(\mathbf{w}) = \prod_d (1 - \pi)\delta(w_d) + \pi\mathcal{N}(w_d | 0, \sigma_w^2) \quad (11.162)$$

As  $\sigma_w^2 \rightarrow \infty$ , the second term approaches a uniform distribution over  $[-\infty, +\infty]$ . We can implement the mixture model by associating a binary random variable,  $s_d \sim \text{Ber}(\pi)$ , with each coefficient, to indicate if the coefficient is “on” or “off”.

Unfortunately, MAP estimation (not to mention full Bayesian inference) with such discrete mixture priors is computationally difficult. Various approximate inference methods have been proposed, including greedy search (see e.g., [SPZ09]) or MCMC (see e.g., [HS09]).

#### 11.6.4.2 Laplace prior

A computationally cheap way to achieve sparsity is to perform MAP estimation with a Laplace prior, as in the lasso (Sec. 11.5). In this section, we discuss posterior inference with this prior; this is known as the **Bayesian lasso**. In particular, we assume the following prior:

$$p(\mathbf{w} | \sigma^2) = \prod_j \frac{\lambda}{2\sqrt{\sigma^2}} e^{-\lambda|w_j|/\sqrt{\sigma^2}} \quad (11.163)$$

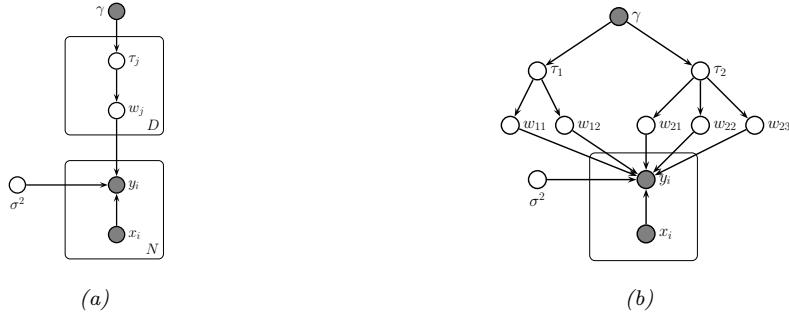


Figure 11.20: (a) Representing lasso using a Gaussian scale mixture prior. (b) Graphical model for group lasso with 2 groups, the first has size  $G_1 = 2$ , the second has size  $G_2 = 3$ .

(Note that conditioning the prior on  $\sigma^2$  is important to ensure that the full posterior is unimodal.)

To simplify inference, we will represent the Laplace prior as a Gaussian scale mixture, which we discussed in Sec. 3.7.3.2. In particular, one can show that the Laplace distribution is an infinite weighted sum of Gaussians, where the precision comes from a Gamma distribution:

$$\text{Lap}(w|0, \lambda) = \int \mathcal{N}(w|0, \tau^2) \text{Ga}(\tau^2|1, \frac{\lambda^2}{2}) d\tau^2 \quad (11.164)$$

We can therefore represent the Bayesian lasso model as a hierarchical latent variable model, as shown in Fig. 11.20a. The corresponding joint distribution has the following form:

$$p(\mathbf{y}, \mathbf{w}, \boldsymbol{\tau}, \sigma^2 | \mathbf{X}) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{y} | \mathbf{X}\mathbf{w}, \sigma^2 \mathbf{I}_N) \left[ \prod_j \mathcal{N}(w_j | 0, \sigma^2 \tau_j^2) \text{Ga}(\tau_j^2 | 1, \lambda^2 / 2) \right] p(\sigma^2) \quad (11.165)$$

We can also create a GSM to match the group lasso prior in Sec. 11.5.7. In particular, one can show (Exercise 11.10) that the group lasso prior is equivalent to the following:

$$\mathbf{w}_g | \sigma^2, \tau_g^2 \sim \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{0}, \sigma^2 \tau_g^2 \mathbf{I}_{d_g}) \quad (11.166)$$

$$\tau_g^2 \sim \text{Ga}(\frac{d_g + 1}{2}, \frac{\lambda^2}{2}) \quad (11.167)$$

where  $d_g$  is the size of group  $g$ . So we see that there is one variance term per group, each of which comes from a Gamma prior, whose shape parameter depends on the group size, and whose rate parameter is controlled by  $\gamma$ .

Fig. 11.20b gives an example, where we have 2 groups, one of size 2 and one of size 3. This picture makes it clearer why there should be a grouping effect. For example, suppose  $w_{1,1}$  is small; then  $\tau_1^2$  will be estimated to be small, which will force  $w_{1,2}$  to be small, due to shrinkage (c.f., Sec. 7.4). Conversely, suppose  $w_{1,1}$  is large; then  $\tau_1^2$  will be estimated to be large, which will allow  $w_{1,2}$  to be large as well.

Given these hierarchical models, we can easily derive a Gibbs sampling algorithm (Sec. 7.7.4) to sample from the posterior (see e.g., [PC08]). Unfortunately, these posterior samples are not sparse,

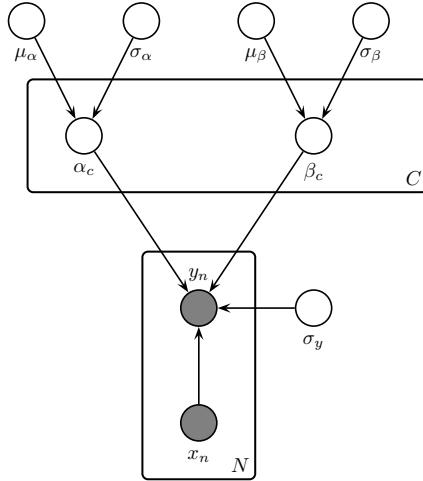


Figure 11.21: A hierarchical Bayesian linear regression model for the radon problem.

even though the MAP estimate is sparse. This is because the prior puts infinitesimal probability on the event that each coefficient is zero.

#### 11.6.4.3 Horseshoe prior

The Laplace prior is not suitable for sparse Bayesian models, because posterior samples are not sparse. Furthermore, the spike and slab prior is often too slow to use. Fortunately, it is possible to devise continuous priors (without discrete latent variables) that are both sparse and efficient. One popular prior of this type is the **horseshoe prior** [CPS10], so-named because of the shape of its density function.

In the horseshoe prior, instead of using a Laplace prior for each weight, we use the following Gaussian scale mixture:

$$w_j \sim \mathcal{N}(0, \lambda_j^2 \tau^2) \quad (11.168)$$

$$\lambda_j \sim \mathcal{C}_+(0, 1) \quad (11.169)$$

where  $\mathcal{C}_+(0, 1)$  is the half-Cauchy distribution (Sec. 3.4.2),  $\lambda_j$  is a local shrinkage factor, and  $\tau^2$  is a global shrinkage factor. The Cauchy distribution has very fat tails, so  $\lambda_j$  is likely to be either 0 or very far from 0, which emulates the spike and slab prior. For more details, see e.g., [Bha+19].

#### 11.6.5 Hierarchical priors

In this section, we consider a hierarchical Bayesian model for multiple related linear regressions. We apply it to a simplified version of the **radon** example from [Gel+14, Sec 9.4].

Radon is known to be the highest cause of lung cancer in non-smokers, so reducing it where possible is desirable. To help with this, we fit a regression model, that predicts the (log) radon level as a function of the location of the house, as represented by a categorical feature indicating its county, and

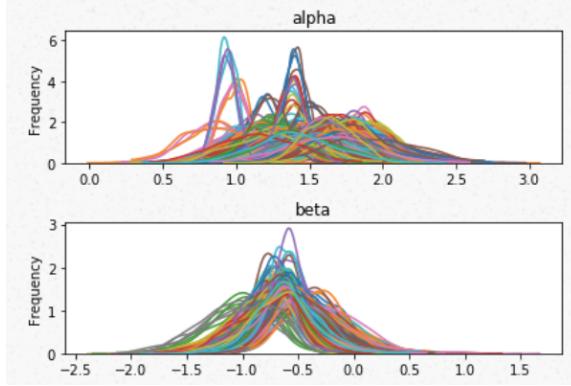


Figure 11.22: Posterior marginals for  $\alpha_c$  and  $\beta_c$  for each county in the radon model. Generated by [lin-reg\\_hierarchical\\_pymc3.ipynb](#).

a binary feature representing whether the house has a basement or not. We use a dataset consisting of  $C = 85$  counties in Minnesota; each county has between 2 and 80 measurements.

We assume the following likelihood:

$$y_n | \mathbf{x}_n = (c, f), \boldsymbol{\theta} \sim \mathcal{N}(\alpha_c + \beta_c f, \sigma_y^2) \quad (11.170)$$

where  $c \in \{1, \dots, C\}$  is the county for house  $n$ , and  $f \in \{0, 1\}$  indicates if the floor is at level 0 (i.e., in the basement) or level 1 (i.e., above ground). Intuitively we expect the radon levels to be lower in houses without basements, since they are more insulated from the earth where the radon lives. Thus we want to compute  $p(\boldsymbol{\beta}|\mathcal{D})$ , so we can test this hypothesis.

Since some counties have very few data points, we use a hierarchical prior in which we assume  $\alpha_c \sim \mathcal{N}(\mu_\alpha, \sigma_\alpha^2)$  and  $\beta_c \sim \mathcal{N}(\mu_\beta, \sigma_\beta^2)$ . We use weak priors for the parameters:  $\mu_\alpha \sim \mathcal{N}(0, 1)$ ,  $\mu_\beta \sim \mathcal{N}(0, 1)$ ,  $\sigma_\alpha \sim \mathcal{C}_+(1)$ ,  $\sigma_\beta \sim \mathcal{C}_+(1)$ ,  $\sigma_y \sim \mathcal{C}_+(1)$ . See Fig. 11.21 for the graphical model.

We can perform posterior inference in this model using a variety of algorithms. In this section, we discuss the results of using HMC (Sec. 7.7.4), as implemented in the PyMC3 package.<sup>7</sup>

Fig. 11.22 shows the posterior marginals for  $\mu_\alpha$ ,  $\mu_\beta$ ,  $\alpha_c$  and  $\beta_c$ . We see that  $\mu_\beta$  is close to -0.6 with high probability, which confirms our suspicion that having  $f = 1$  (i.e., no basement) decreases the amount of radon in the house. We also see that the distribution of the  $\alpha_c$  parameters is quite variable, due to different base rates across the counties.

Fig. 11.23 shows predictions from the hierarchical and non-hierarchical model for 3 different counties. We see that the predictions from the hierarchical model are more consistent across counties, and work well even if there are no examples of certain feature combinations for a given county (e.g., there are no houses without basements in the sample from Cass county). If we sample data from the posterior predictive distribution, and compare it to the real data, we find that the RMSE is 0.13 for the non-hierarchical model and 0.08 for the hierarchical model, indicating that the latter fits better.

One problem that frequently arises in hierarchical models is that the parameters become very

<sup>7</sup> We use the code from Thomas Wiecki and Danne Elbers at <https://twiecki.io/blog/2014/03/17/bayesian-glms-3/>.

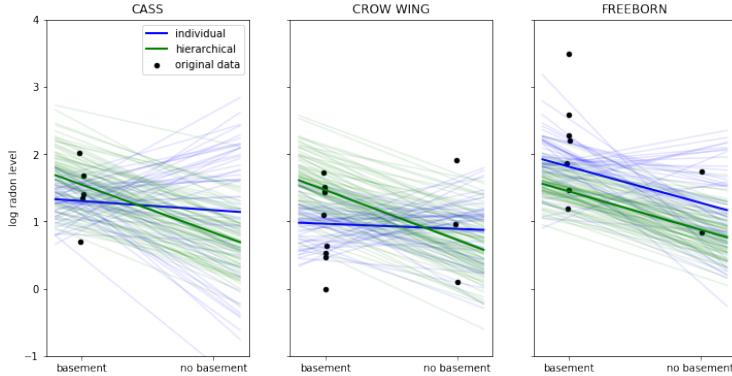


Figure 11.23: Predictions from the radon model for 3 different counties in Minnesota. Black dots are observed datapoints. Green represents results of hierarchical (shared) prior, blue represents results of non-hierarchical prior. Thick lines are the result of using the posterior mean, thin lines are the result of using posterior samples. Generated by [linreg\\_hierarchical\\_pymc3.ipynb](#).

correlated in the posterior, and in complex, non-stationary ways. This can cause computational problems when performing inference.

Fig. 11.24a gives an example where we plot  $p(\beta_c, \sigma_\beta | \mathcal{D})$  for some specific county  $c$ . If we believe that  $\sigma_\beta$  is large, then  $\beta_c$  is “allowed” to vary a lot, and we get the broad distribution at the top of the figure. However, if we believe that  $\sigma_\beta$  is small, then  $\beta_c$  is constrained to be close to the global prior mean of  $\mu_\beta$ . so we get the narrow distribution at the bottom of the figure. This is called the **tunnel effect**. It is difficult for many algorithms (especially sampling algorithms) to explore parts of parameter space at the bottom of the funnel. This is evident from the marginal posterior for  $\sigma_\beta$  shown (as a histogram) on the right hand side of the plot: we see that it excludes the interval  $[0, 0.1]$ , thus ruling out models in which we shrink  $\beta_c$  all the way to 0. In cases where a covariate has no useful predictive role, we would like to be able to induce sparsity, so we need to overcome this problem.

Fortunately, it is possible to remedy this situation by simply changing to a **non-centered parametrization** [PR03]. That is, we replace  $\beta_c \sim \mathcal{N}(\mu_\beta, \sigma_\beta^2)$  with  $\beta_c = \mu_\beta + \tilde{\beta}_c \sigma_\beta$ , where  $\tilde{\beta}_c \sim \mathcal{N}(0, 1)$  represents the *offset* from the global mean,  $\mu_\beta$ . (This is very similar to the reparameterization trick discussed in Sec. 20.3.5.1.) The correlation between  $\tilde{\beta}_c$  and  $\sigma_\beta$  is much less, as shown in Fig. 11.24b. (Note that we can also apply this transformation to  $\alpha_c$ , although it is less necessary, since there is a lot of posterior support for large values of  $\sigma_\alpha$ , so there is no need to visit the bottom of the funnel.)

### 11.6.6 Empirical Bayes (Automatic relevancy determination)

In Sec. 11.6.4.2 and Sec. 11.6.4.3, we considered Gaussian priors on the weights,  $w_j \sim \mathcal{N}(0, 1/\alpha_j)$ , where the precisions  $\alpha_j$  were inferred using hierarchical Bayes. In this section, we discuss an empirical Bayes approach, in which we optimize the prior precisions by computing  $\hat{\alpha} = \text{argmax}_{\alpha} p(\mathbf{y}|\mathbf{X}, \alpha)$ . After estimating the prior, we compute the MAP estimate of the weights using the Gaussian prior,

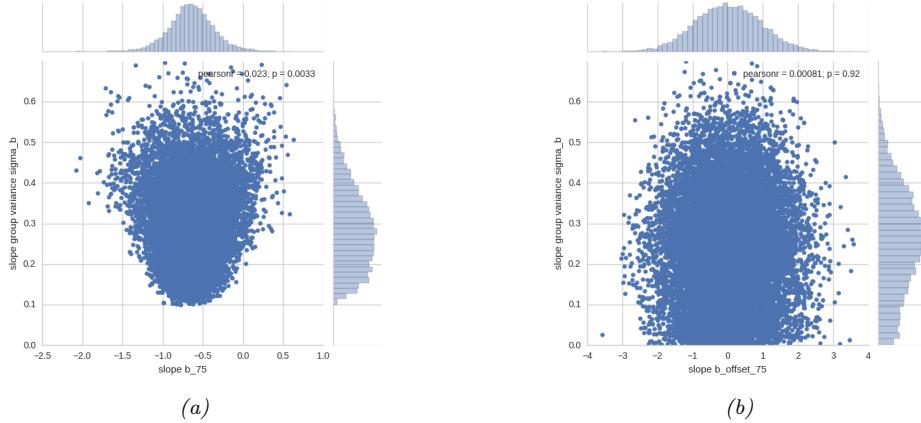


Figure 11.24: (a) Bivariate posterior  $p(\beta_c, \sigma_\beta | \mathcal{D})$  for the hierarchical radon model for county  $c = 75$  using centered parameterization. (b) Similar to (a) except we plot  $p(\tilde{\beta}_c, \sigma_\beta | \mathcal{D})$  for the non-centered parameterization. From <https://twiecki.io/blog/2017/02/08/bayesian-hierarchical-non-centered/>. Used with kind permission of Thomas Wiecki.

$\hat{\mathbf{w}} = \operatorname{argmax}_{\mathbf{w}} \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{w} | \mathbf{0}, \hat{\boldsymbol{\alpha}}^{-1})$ . Perhaps surprisingly, we will see that this results in a sparse estimate, for reasons we explain in Sec. 11.6.6.2.

This technique is known as **sparse Bayesian learning** [Tip01] or **automatic relevancy determination (ARD)** [Mac95; Nea96]. It was originally developed for neural networks (where sparsity is applied to the first layer weights), but here we apply it to linear models.

### 11.6.6.1 ARD for linear models

In this section, we explain ARD in more detail, by applying it to linear regression. The likelihood is  $p(y|\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{w}, \beta) = \mathcal{N}(y|\mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x}, 1/\beta)$ , where  $\beta = 1/\sigma^2$ . The prior is  $p(\mathbf{w}) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{w} | \mathbf{0}, \mathbf{A}^{-1})$ , where  $\mathbf{A} = \operatorname{diag}(\boldsymbol{\alpha})$ . The marginal likelihood can be computed analytically (using Eq. (3.105)) as follows:

$$p(\mathbf{y}|\mathbf{X}, \boldsymbol{\alpha}, \beta) = \int \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{y}|\mathbf{X}\mathbf{w}, (1/\beta)\mathbf{I}_N) \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{w} | \mathbf{0}, \mathbf{A}^{-1}) d\mathbf{w} \quad (11.171)$$

$$= \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{y} | \mathbf{0}, \beta^{-1}\mathbf{I}_N + \mathbf{X}\mathbf{A}^{-1}\mathbf{X}^\top) \quad (11.172)$$

$$= \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{y} | \mathbf{0}, \mathbf{C}_\alpha) \quad (11.173)$$

where  $\mathbf{C}_\alpha \triangleq \beta^{-1}\mathbf{I}_N + \mathbf{X}\mathbf{A}^{-1}\mathbf{X}^\top$ . This is very similar to the marginal likelihood under the spike-and-slab prior (Sec. 11.6.4.1), which is given by

$$p(\mathbf{y}|\mathbf{X}, \mathbf{s}, \sigma_w^2, \sigma_y^2) = \int \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{y}|\mathbf{X}_s \mathbf{w}_s, \sigma_y^2 \mathbf{I}) \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{w}_s | \mathbf{0}_s, \sigma_w^2 \mathbf{I}) d\mathbf{w}_s = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{y} | \mathbf{0}, \mathbf{C}_s) \quad (11.174)$$

where  $\mathbf{C}_s = \sigma_y^2 \mathbf{I}_N + \sigma_w^2 \mathbf{X}_s \mathbf{X}_s^\top$ . (Here  $\mathbf{X}_s$  refers to the design matrix where we select only the columns of  $\mathbf{X}$  where  $s_d = 1$ .) The difference is that we have replaced the binary  $s_j \in \{0, 1\}$  variables with continuous  $\alpha_j \in \mathbb{R}^+$ , which makes the optimization problem easier.

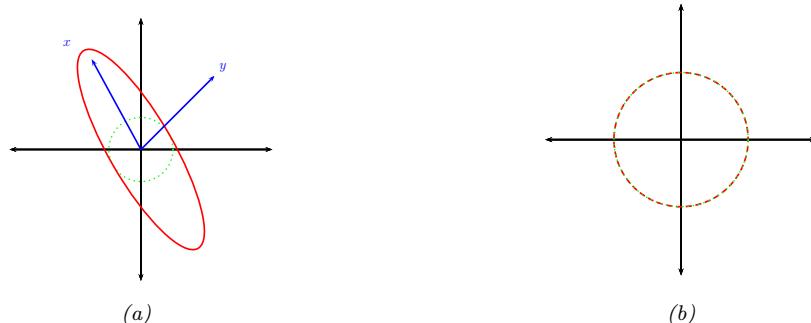


Figure 11.25: Illustration of why ARD results in sparsity. The vector of inputs  $\mathbf{x}$  does not point towards the vector of outputs  $\mathbf{y}$ , so the feature should be removed. (a) For finite  $\alpha$ , the probability density is spread in directions away from  $\mathbf{y}$ . (b) When  $\alpha = \infty$ , the probability density at  $\mathbf{y}$  is maximized. Adapted from Figure 8 of [Tip01].

The objective is the log marginal likelihood, given by

$$\ell(\boldsymbol{\alpha}, \beta) = -\frac{1}{2} \log p(\mathbf{y} | \mathbf{X}, \boldsymbol{\alpha}, \beta) = \log |\mathbf{C}_{\boldsymbol{\alpha}}| + \mathbf{y}^\top \mathbf{C}_{\boldsymbol{\alpha}}^{-1} \mathbf{y} \quad (11.175)$$

There are various algorithms for optimizing  $\ell(\alpha, \beta)$ , some of which we discuss in Sec. 11.6.6.3.

ARD can be used as an alternative to  $\ell_1$  regularization (Sec. 11.5). Although the ARD objective is not convex, it tends to give much sparser results [WW12]. In addition, it can be shown [WRN10] that the ARD objective has many fewer local optima than the  $\ell_0$ -regularized objective, and hence is much easier to optimize.

### 11.6.6.2 Why does ARD result in a sparse solution?

Once we have estimated  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$ , we can compute the posterior over the parameters using Bayes rule for Gaussians, to get  $p(\mathbf{w}|\mathcal{D}, \hat{\alpha}, \hat{\beta}) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{w}|\hat{\mathbf{w}}, \hat{\Sigma})$ , where  $\hat{\Sigma}^{-1} = \hat{\beta}\mathbf{X}^\top\mathbf{X} + \mathbf{A}$  and  $\hat{\mathbf{w}} = \hat{\beta}\hat{\Sigma}\mathbf{X}^\top\mathbf{y}$ . If we have  $\hat{\alpha}_d \approx \infty$ , then  $\hat{w}_d \approx 0$ , so the solution vector will be sparse.

We now give an intuitive argument, based on [Tip01], about when such a sparse solution may be optimal. We shall assume  $\beta = 1/\sigma^2$  is fixed for simplicity. Consider a 1d linear regression with 2 training examples, so  $\mathbf{X} = \mathbf{x} = (x_1, x_2)$ , and  $\mathbf{y} = (y_1, y_2)$ . We can plot  $\mathbf{x}$  and  $\mathbf{y}$  as vectors in the plane, as shown in Fig. 11.25. Suppose the feature is irrelevant for predicting the response, so  $\mathbf{x}$  points in a nearly orthogonal direction to  $\mathbf{y}$ . Let us see what happens to the marginal likelihood as we change  $\alpha$ . The marginal likelihood is given by  $p(\mathbf{y}|\mathbf{x}, \alpha, \beta) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{y}|\mathbf{0}, \mathbf{C}_\alpha)$ , where  $\mathbf{C}_\alpha = \frac{1}{\beta}\mathbf{I} + \frac{1}{\alpha}\mathbf{x}\mathbf{x}^\top$ . If  $\alpha$  is finite, the posterior will be elongated along the direction of  $\mathbf{x}$ , as in Fig. 11.25(a). However, if  $\alpha = \infty$ , we have  $\mathbf{C}_\alpha = \frac{1}{\beta}\mathbf{I}$ , which is spherical, as in Fig. 11.25(b). If  $|\mathbf{C}_\alpha|$  is held constant, the latter assigns higher probability density to the observed response vector  $\mathbf{y}$ , so this is the preferred solution. In other words, the marginal likelihood “punishes” solutions where  $\alpha_d$  is small but  $\mathbf{X}_{:,d}$  is irrelevant, since these waste probability mass. It is more parsimonious (from the point of view of Bayesian Occam’s razor) to eliminate redundant dimensions.

Another way to understand the sparsity properties of ARD is as approximate inference in a

hierarchical Bayesian model. In particular, suppose we put a conjugate prior on each precision,  $\alpha_d \sim \text{Ga}(a, b)$ , and on the observation precision,  $\beta \sim \text{Ga}(c, d)$ . Since exact inference with a Student prior is intractable, we can use variational Bayes [BT00], with a factored posterior approximation of the form

$$q(\mathbf{w}, \boldsymbol{\alpha}) = q(\mathbf{w})q(\boldsymbol{\alpha}) \approx \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{w}|\boldsymbol{\mu}, \boldsymbol{\Sigma}) \prod_d \text{Ga}(\alpha_d | \hat{a}_d, \hat{b}_d) \quad (11.176)$$

(ARD approximates  $q(\boldsymbol{\alpha})$  by a point estimate.) By integrating out  $\boldsymbol{\alpha}$ , we get the posterior marginal  $q(\mathbf{w})$  on the weights, which is given by

$$p(\mathbf{w}|\mathcal{D}) = \int \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{w}|\mathbf{0}, \text{diag}(\boldsymbol{\alpha})^{-1}) \prod_d \text{Ga}(\alpha_d | \hat{a}_d, \hat{b}_d) d\boldsymbol{\alpha} \quad (11.177)$$

This is a Gaussian scale mixture, and can be shown to be the same as a multivariate Student distribution (see Sec. 3.7.3.1), with non-diagonal covariance. Note that the Student has a large spike at 0, which intuitively explains why the posterior mean (which, for a Student distribution, is equal to the posterior mode) is sparse.

Finally, we can also view ARD as a MAP estimation problem with a **non-factorial prior** [WN07]. Intuitively, the dependence between the  $w_j$  parameters arises, despite the use of a diagonal Gaussian prior, because the prior precision  $\alpha_j$  is estimated based after marginalizing out all  $\mathbf{w}$ , and hence depends on all the features. Interestingly, [WRN10] prove that MAP estimation with non-factorial priors is strictly better than MAP estimation with any possible factorial prior in the following sense: the non-factorial objective always has fewer local minima than factorial objectives, while still satisfying the property that the global optimum of the non-factorial objective corresponds to the global optimum of the  $\ell_0$  objective — a property that  $\ell_1$  regularization, which has no local minima, does not enjoy.

#### 11.6.6.3 Algorithms for ARD

There are various algorithms for optimizing  $\ell(\boldsymbol{\alpha}, \beta)$ . One approach is to use EM, in which we compute  $p(\mathbf{w}|\mathcal{D}, \boldsymbol{\alpha})$  in the E step and then maximize  $\boldsymbol{\alpha}$  in the M step. In variational Bayes, we infer both  $\mathbf{w}$  and  $\boldsymbol{\alpha}$  (see [Dru08] for details). In [WN10], they present a method based on iteratively reweighted  $\ell_1$  estimation.

Recently, [HGX17] showed that the nested iterative computations performed these methods can be emulated by a recurrent neural network (Sec. 15.2). Furthermore, by training this model, it is possible to achieve much faster convergence than manually designed optimization algorithms.

#### 11.6.6.4 Relevance vector machines

Suppose we create a linear regression model of the form  $p(y|\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \mathcal{N}(y|\mathbf{w}^\top \phi(\mathbf{x}), \sigma^2)$ , where  $\phi(\mathbf{x}) = [\mathcal{K}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}_1), \dots, \mathcal{K}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}_N)]$ , where  $\mathcal{K}()$  is a kernel function (Sec. 17.2) and  $\mathbf{x}_1, \dots, \mathbf{x}_N$  are the  $N$  training points. This is called **kernel basis function expansion**, and transforms the input from  $\mathbf{x} \in \mathcal{X}$  to  $\phi(\mathbf{x}) \in \mathbb{R}^N$ . Obviously this model has  $O(N)$  parameters, and hence is nonparametric. However, we can use ARD to select a small subset of the exemplars. This technique is called the relevance vector machine (RVM), and will be discussed in Sec. 17.6.1.

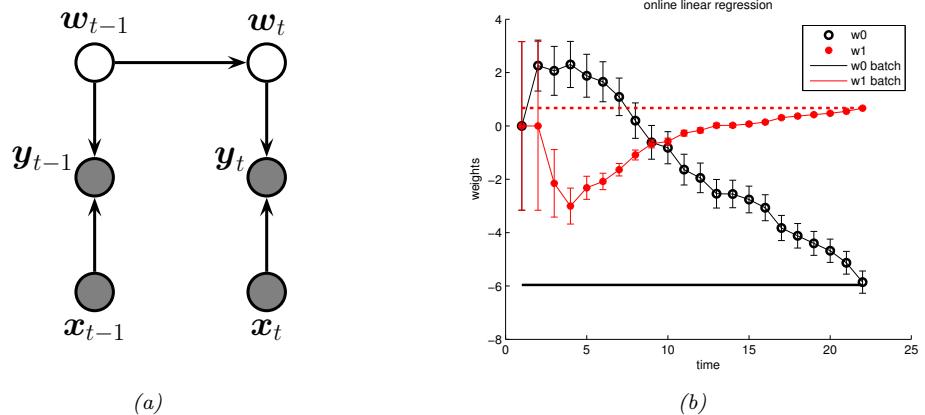


Figure 11.26: (a) A dynamic generalization of linear regression. (b) Illustration of the recursive least squares algorithm applied to the model  $p(y|x, \theta) = \mathcal{N}(y|w_0 + w_1x, \sigma^2)$ . We plot the marginal posterior of  $w_0$  and  $w_1$  vs number of data points. (Error bars represent  $\mathbb{E}[w_j|y_{1:t}] \pm \sqrt{\text{Var}[w_j|y_{1:t}]}$ .) After seeing all the data, we converge to the offline ML (least squares) solution, represented by the horizontal lines. Generated by `linregOnlineDemoKalman.m`.

### 11.6.7 Online inference (recursive least squares)

In Sec. 11.6.1, we discuss how to compute  $p(\mathbf{w}|\sigma^2, \mathcal{D})$  for a linear regression model in batch mode, using a Gaussian prior of the form  $p(\mathbf{w}) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{w}|\boldsymbol{\mu}, \boldsymbol{\Sigma})$ . In this section, we discuss how to compute this posterior online, by repeatedly performing the following update:

$$p(\mathbf{w}|\mathcal{D}_{1:t}) \propto p(\mathcal{D}_t|\mathbf{w})p(\mathbf{w}|\mathcal{D}_{1:t-1}) \quad (11.178)$$

$$\propto p(\mathcal{D}_t|\mathbf{w})p(\mathcal{D}_{t-1}|\mathbf{w}) \dots p(\mathcal{D}_1|\mathbf{w})p(\mathbf{w}) \quad (11.179)$$

where  $\mathcal{D}_t = (\mathbf{x}_t, y_t)$  is the  $t$ 'th labeled example, and  $\mathcal{D}_{1:t-1}$  are the first  $t-1$  examples. (For brevity, we drop the conditioning on  $\sigma^2$ .) We see that the previous posterior,  $p(\mathbf{w}|\mathcal{D}_{1:t-1})$ , becomes the current prior, which gets updated by  $\mathcal{D}_t$  to become the new posterior,  $p(\mathbf{w}|\mathcal{D}_{1:t})$ . This is an example of sequential Bayesian updating or online Bayesian inference. In the case of linear regression, this process is known as the **recursive least squares** or **RLS** algorithm.

We can implement this method by using a linear Gaussian state space model. The basic idea is to let the hidden state represent the regression parameters, and to let the (time-varying) observation model represent the current data vector. If we assume the regression parameters do not change, the dynamics model becomes

$$p(\mathbf{w}_t|\mathbf{w}_{t-1}) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{w}_t|\mathbf{A}\mathbf{w}_{t-1}, \mathbf{Q}_t) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{w}_t|\mathbf{w}_{t-1}, \mathbf{0}) = \delta(\mathbf{w}_t - \mathbf{w}_{t-1}) \quad (11.180)$$

(If we do let the parameters change over time, we get a so-called **dynamic linear model** [Har90; WH97; PPC09].) The (non-stationary) observation model has the form

$$p(\mathbf{y}_t|\mathbf{w}_t, \mathbf{x}_t) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{y}_t|\mathbf{C}_t \mathbf{z}_t, \mathbf{R}_t) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{y}_t|\mathbf{x}_t^\top \mathbf{w}_t, \sigma^2) \quad (11.181)$$

See Fig. 11.26(a) for the model.

Using the Kalman filter algorithm (discussed in the sequel to this book), one can show that the new belief state is given by  $p(\mathbf{w}_t | \mathcal{D}_{1:t}) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{w} | \boldsymbol{\mu}_t, \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_t)$ , where

$$\boldsymbol{\mu}_t = \mathbf{A}_t \boldsymbol{\mu}_{t-1} + \mathbf{K}_t (\mathbf{y}_t - \mathbf{x}_t^\top \boldsymbol{\mu}_{t-1}) \quad (11.182)$$

$$\boldsymbol{\Sigma}_t = (\mathbf{I} - \mathbf{K}_t \mathbf{x}_t^\top) \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{t-1} \quad (11.183)$$

$$\mathbf{K}_t = \frac{1}{\sigma^2} (\boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{t-1}^{-1} + \frac{1}{\sigma^2} \mathbf{x}_t \mathbf{x}_t^\top)^{-1} \mathbf{x}_t \quad (11.184)$$

We can initialize these recursions using a vague prior,  $\boldsymbol{\mu}_0 = \mathbf{0}$ ,  $\boldsymbol{\Sigma}_0 = \infty \mathbf{I}$ .

The quantity  $\mathbf{K}_t$  is called the **Kalman gain matrix**, and determines how much we should trust the current observation relative to our current prior. If we make the approximation  $\mathbf{K}_t \approx \eta_t \mathbf{1}$ , we recover the **least mean squares** or **LMS** algorithm, discussed in Sec. 5.4.2, where  $\eta_t$  is the learning rate. In LMS, we need to adapt the learning rate to ensure convergence to the MLE. Furthermore, the algorithm may require multiple passes through the data to converge to this global optimum. By contrast, the RLS algorithm automatically performs step-size adaptation, and converges to the optimal posterior in a single pass over the data. See Fig. 11.26(b) for an example.

## 11.7 Exercises

**Exercise 11.1** [Multi-output linear regression]

(Source: Jaakkola.)

Consider a linear regression model with a 2 dimensional response vector  $\mathbf{y}_i \in \mathbb{R}^2$ . Suppose we have some binary input data,  $x_i \in \{0, 1\}$ . The training data is as follows:

x	y
0	$(-1, -1)^T$
0	$(-1, -2)^T$
0	$(-2, -1)^T$
1	$(1, 1)^T$
1	$(1, 2)^T$
1	$(2, 1)^T$

Let us embed each  $x_i$  into 2d using the following basis function:

$$\phi(0) = (1, 0)^T, \quad \phi(1) = (0, 1)^T \quad (11.185)$$

The model becomes

$$\hat{\mathbf{y}} = \mathbf{W}^T \phi(x) \quad (11.186)$$

where  $\mathbf{W}$  is a  $2 \times 2$  matrix. Compute the MLE for  $\mathbf{W}$  from the above data.

**Exercise 11.2** [Centering and ridge regression]

Assume that  $\bar{x} = 0$ , so the input data has been centered. Show that the optimizer of

$$J(\mathbf{w}, w_0) = (\mathbf{y} - \mathbf{X}\mathbf{w} - w_0 \mathbf{1})^T (\mathbf{y} - \mathbf{X}\mathbf{w} - w_0 \mathbf{1}) + \lambda \mathbf{w}^T \mathbf{w} \quad (11.187)$$

is

$$\hat{w}_0 = \bar{y} \quad (11.188)$$

$$\mathbf{w} = (\mathbf{X}^T \mathbf{X} + \lambda \mathbf{I})^{-1} \mathbf{X}^T \mathbf{y} \quad (11.189)$$

**Exercise 11.3** [Bayesian linear regression in 1d with known  $\sigma^2$ ]

(Source: Bolstad.) Consider fitting a model of the form

$$p(y|x, \theta) = \mathcal{N}(y|w_0 + w_1x, \sigma^2) \quad (11.190)$$

to the data shown below:

```
x = [94, 96, 94, 95, 104, 106, 108, 113, 115, 121, 131];
y = [0.47, 0.75, 0.83, 0.98, 1.18, 1.29, 1.40, 1.60, 1.75, 1.90, 2.23];
```

- a. Compute an unbiased estimate of  $\sigma^2$  using

$$\hat{\sigma}^2 = \frac{1}{N-2} \sum_{i=1}^N (y_i - \hat{y}_i)^2 \quad (11.191)$$

(The denominator is  $N-2$  since we have 2 inputs, namely the offset term and  $x$ .) Here  $\hat{y}_i = \hat{w}_0 + \hat{w}_1 x_i$ , and  $\hat{\mathbf{w}} = (\hat{w}_0, \hat{w}_1)$  is the MLE.

- b. Now assume the following prior on  $\mathbf{w}$ :

$$p(\mathbf{w}) = p(w_0)p(w_1) \quad (11.192)$$

Use an (improper) uniform prior on  $w_0$  and a  $\mathcal{N}(0, 1)$  prior on  $w_1$ . Show that this can be written as a Gaussian prior of the form  $p(\mathbf{w}) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{w}|\mathbf{w}_0, \mathbf{V}_0)$ . What are  $\mathbf{w}_0$  and  $\mathbf{V}_0$ ?

- c. Compute the marginal posterior of the slope,  $p(w_1|\mathcal{D}, \sigma^2)$ , where  $\mathcal{D}$  is the data above, and  $\sigma^2$  is the unbiased estimate computed above. What is  $\mathbb{E}[w_1|\mathcal{D}, \sigma^2]$  and  $\mathbb{V}[w_1|\mathcal{D}, \sigma^2]$ ? Show your work. (You can use Matlab if you like.) Hint: the posterior variance is a very small number!
- d. What is a 95% credible interval for  $w_1$ ?

**Exercise 11.4** [Partial derivative of the RSS]

Let  $RSS(\mathbf{w}) = \|\mathbf{X}\mathbf{w} - \mathbf{y}\|_2^2$  be the residual sum of squares.

- a. Show that

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial w_k} RSS(\mathbf{w}) = a_k w_k - c_k \quad (11.193)$$

$$a_k = 2 \sum_{i=1}^n x_{ik}^2 = 2\|\mathbf{x}_{:,k}\|^2 \quad (11.194)$$

$$c_k = 2 \sum_{i=1}^n x_{ik}(y_i - \mathbf{w}_{-k}^T \mathbf{x}_{i,-k}) = 2\mathbf{x}_{:,k}^T \mathbf{r}_k \quad (11.195)$$

where  $\mathbf{w}_{-k} = \mathbf{w}$  without component  $k$ ,  $\mathbf{x}_{i,-k}$  is  $\mathbf{x}_i$  without component  $k$ , and  $\mathbf{r}_k = \mathbf{y} - \mathbf{w}_{-k}^T \mathbf{x}_{i,-k}$  is the residual due to using all the features except feature  $k$ . Hint: Partition the weights into those involving  $k$  and those not involving  $k$ .

- b. Show that if  $\frac{\partial}{\partial w_k} RSS(\mathbf{w}) = 0$ , then

$$\hat{w}_k = \frac{\mathbf{x}_{:,k}^T \mathbf{r}_k}{\|\mathbf{x}_{:,k}\|^2} \quad (11.196)$$

Hence when we sequentially add features, the optimal weight for feature  $k$  is computed by computing orthogonally projecting  $\mathbf{x}_{:,k}$  onto the current residual.

**Exercise 11.5** [EM for ARD for linear regression]

Derive the EM algorithm for fitting a linear regression model with an ARD prior. Compute the type II MLE as well as the type II MAP estimate using the priors  $\alpha_j \sim \text{Ga}(a, b)$  and  $\beta \sim \text{Ga}(c, d)$ .

Hint: the following identity should be useful

$$\Sigma \mathbf{X}^T \mathbf{X} = \Sigma \mathbf{X}^T \mathbf{X} + \beta^{-1} \Sigma \mathbf{A} - \beta^{-1} \Sigma \mathbf{A} \quad (11.197)$$

$$= \Sigma(\mathbf{X}^T \mathbf{X} \beta + \mathbf{A}) \beta^{-1} - \beta^{-1} \Sigma \mathbf{A} \quad (11.198)$$

$$= (\mathbf{A} + \beta \mathbf{X}^T \mathbf{X})^{-1} (\mathbf{X}^T \mathbf{X} \beta + \mathbf{A}) \beta^{-1} - \beta^{-1} \Sigma \mathbf{A} \quad (11.199)$$

$$= (\mathbf{I} - \mathbf{A} \Sigma) \beta^{-1} \quad (11.200)$$

**Exercise 11.6** [Fixed point iteration for ARD]

Derive a fixed point iteration algorithm for ARD by solving iteratively solving  $\frac{d\ell}{d\alpha_j} = 0$  and  $\frac{d\ell}{d\beta} = 0$ .

**Exercise 11.7** [Reducing elastic net to lasso]

Define

$$J_1(\mathbf{w}) = |\mathbf{y} - \mathbf{X}\mathbf{w}|^2 + \lambda_2 |\mathbf{w}|^2 + \lambda_1 |\mathbf{w}|_1 \quad (11.201)$$

and

$$J_2(\mathbf{w}) = |\tilde{\mathbf{y}} - \tilde{\mathbf{X}}\tilde{\mathbf{w}}|^2 + c\lambda_1 |\mathbf{w}|_1 \quad (11.202)$$

where  $c = (1 + \lambda_2)^{-\frac{1}{2}}$  and

$$\tilde{\mathbf{X}} = c \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{X} \\ \sqrt{\lambda_2} \mathbf{I}_d \end{pmatrix}, \quad \tilde{\mathbf{y}} = \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{y} \\ \mathbf{0}_{d \times 1} \end{pmatrix} \quad (11.203)$$

Show

$$\operatorname{argmin} J_1(\mathbf{w}) = c(\operatorname{argmin} J_2(\mathbf{w})) \quad (11.204)$$

i.e.

$$J_1(c\mathbf{w}) = J_2(\mathbf{w}) \quad (11.205)$$

and hence that one can solve an elastic net problem using a lasso solver on modified data.

**Exercise 11.8** [Shrinkage in linear regression]

(Source: Jaakkola.) Consider performing linear regression with an orthonormal design matrix, so  $\|\mathbf{x}_{:,k}\|_2^2 = 1$  for each column (feature)  $k$ , and  $\mathbf{x}_{:,k}^T \mathbf{x}_{:,j} = 0$ , so we can estimate each parameter  $w_k$  separately.

Figure 10.19b plots  $\hat{w}_k$  vs  $c_k = 2\mathbf{y}^T \mathbf{x}_{:,k}$ , the correlation of feature  $k$  with the response, for 3 different estimation methods: ordinary least squares (OLS), ridge regression with parameter  $\lambda_2$ , and lasso with parameter  $\lambda_1$ .

- a. Unfortunately we forgot to label the plots. Which method does the solid (1), dotted (2) and dashed (3) line correspond to?
- b. What is the value of  $\lambda_1$ ?
- c. What is the value of  $\lambda_2$ ?

**Exercise 11.9** [Deriving EM for lasso]

Derive the EM algorithm for the lasso model, using the GSM representation of the Laplace prior from Sec. 11.6.4.2.

**Exercise 11.10** [GSM representation of group lasso]

Consider the prior  $\tau_j^2 \sim \text{Ga}(\delta, \rho^2/2)$ , ignoring the grouping issue for now. The marginal distribution induced on the weights by a Gamma mixing distribution is called the **compound normal Gamma** distribution and is given by

$$p(w_j|\delta, \rho) = \int \mathcal{N}(w_j|0, \tau_j^2) \text{Ga}(\tau_j^2|\delta, \rho^2/2) d\tau_j^2 \quad (11.206)$$

$$= \frac{1}{Z} |w_j|^{\delta-1/2} \mathcal{K}_{\delta-\frac{1}{2}}(\rho|w_j|) \quad (11.207)$$

$$1/Z = \frac{\rho^{\delta+\frac{1}{2}}}{\sqrt{\pi} 2^{\delta-1/2} \rho(\delta)} \quad (11.208)$$

where  $\mathcal{K}_\alpha(x)$  is the modified Bessel function of the second kind (the `besselk.m` function in Matlab).

Now suppose we have the following prior on the variances

$$p(\boldsymbol{\sigma}_{1:D}^2) = \prod_{g=1}^G p(\boldsymbol{\sigma}_{1:d_g}^2), \quad p(\boldsymbol{\sigma}_{1:d_g}^2) = \prod_{j \in g} \text{Ga}(\tau_j^2|\delta_g, \rho^2/2) \quad (11.209)$$

The corresponding marginal for each group of weights has the form

$$p(\mathbf{w}_g) \propto |u_g|^{\delta_g - d_g/2} \mathcal{K}_{\delta_g - d_g/2}(\rho u_g) \quad (11.210)$$

where

$$u_g \triangleq \sqrt{\sum_{j \in g} w_{g,j}^2} = \|\mathbf{w}_g\|_2 \quad (11.211)$$

Now suppose  $\delta_g = (d_g + 1)/2$ , so  $\delta_g - d_g/2 = \frac{1}{2}$ . Conveniently, we have  $\mathcal{K}_{\frac{1}{2}}(z) = \sqrt{\frac{\pi}{2z}} \exp(-z)$ . Show that the resulting MAP estimate is equivalent to group lasso.

**Exercise 11.11** [EM for mixture of linear regression experts]

Derive the EM equations for fitting a mixture of linear regression experts.

# 12 Generalized linear models

## 12.1 Introduction

In Chapter 10, we discussed logistic regression, which, in the binary case, corresponds to the model  $p(y|\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{w}) = \text{Ber}(y|\sigma(\mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x}))$ . In Chapter 11, we discuss linear regression, which corresponds to the model  $p(y|\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{w}) = \mathcal{N}(y|\mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x}, \sigma^2)$ . These are obviously very similar to each other. In particular, the mean of the output,  $\mathbb{E}[y|\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{w}]$ , is a linear function of the inputs  $\mathbf{x}$  in both cases.

It turns out that there is a broad family of models with this property, known as **generalized linear models** or **GLMs** [MN89]. We explain these in Sec. 12.3. But first we need to introduce the exponential family, which are a core building block of GLMs (and many other kinds of model).

## 12.2 The exponential family

In this section, we define the **exponential family**, which includes many common probability distributions. The exponential family plays a crucial role in statistics and machine learning, for various reasons, including the following:

- The exponential family is the unique family of distributions that has maximum entropy (and hence makes the least set of assumptions) subject to some user-chosen constraints.
- The exponential family is at the core of GLMs, as discussed in Sec. 12.3.
- The exponential family is at the core of variational inference, as discussed in Sec. 7.7.3.
- Under certain regularity conditions, the exponential family is the only family of distributions with finite-sized sufficient statistics, as discussed in Sec. 12.2.4.
- All members of the exponential family have a **conjugate prior** [DY79], which simplifies Bayesian inference of the parameters, as discussed in Sec. 7.2.

### 12.2.1 Definition

Consider a family of probability distributions parameterized by  $\boldsymbol{\eta} \in \mathbb{R}^K$  with fixed support over  $\mathcal{Y}^D \subseteq \mathbb{R}^D$ . We say that the distribution  $p(\mathbf{y}|\boldsymbol{\eta})$  is in the **exponential family** if its density can be written in the following way:

$$p(\mathbf{y}|\boldsymbol{\eta}) \triangleq \frac{1}{Z(\boldsymbol{\eta})} h(\mathbf{y}) \exp[\boldsymbol{\eta}^\top \mathbf{t}(\mathbf{y})] = h(\mathbf{y}) \exp[\boldsymbol{\eta}^\top \mathbf{t}(\mathbf{y}) - A(\boldsymbol{\eta})] \quad (12.1)$$

where  $h(\mathbf{y})$  is a scaling constant (also known as the **base measure**, often 1),  $\mathbf{t}(\mathbf{y}) \in \mathbb{R}^K$  are the **sufficient statistics**,  $\boldsymbol{\eta}$  are the **natural parameters** or **canonical parameters**,  $Z(\boldsymbol{\eta})$  is a normalization constant known as the **partition function**, and  $A(\boldsymbol{\eta}) = \log Z(\boldsymbol{\eta})$  is the **log partition function**. One can show that  $A$  is a concave function over the concave set  $\Omega \triangleq \{\boldsymbol{\eta} \in \mathbb{R}^K : A(\boldsymbol{\eta}) < \infty\}$ .

It is convenient if the natural parameters are independent of each other. Formally, we say that an exponential family is **minimal** if there is no  $\boldsymbol{\eta} \in \mathbb{R}^K \setminus \{0\}$  such that  $\boldsymbol{\eta}^\top \mathbf{t}(\mathbf{y}) = 0$ . This last condition can be violated in the case of multinomial distributions, because of the sum to one constraint on the parameters; however, it is easy to reparameterize the distribution using  $K - 1$  independent parameters, as we show below.

Eq. (12.1) can be generalized by defining  $\boldsymbol{\eta} = f(\phi)$ , where  $\phi$  is some other, possibly smaller, set of parameters. In this case, the distribution has the form

$$p(\mathbf{y}|\phi) = h(\mathbf{y}) \exp[f(\phi)^\top \mathbf{t}(\mathbf{y}) - A(f(\phi))] \quad (12.2)$$

If the mapping from  $\phi$  to  $\boldsymbol{\eta}$  is nonlinear, we call this a **curved exponential family**. If  $\boldsymbol{\eta} = f(\phi) = \phi$ , the model is said to be in **canonical form**. If, in addition,  $\mathbf{t}(\mathbf{y}) = \mathbf{y}$ , we say this is a **natural exponential family** or **NEF**. In this case, it can be written as

$$p(\mathbf{y}|\boldsymbol{\eta}) = h(\mathbf{y}) \exp[\boldsymbol{\eta}^\top \mathbf{y} - A(\boldsymbol{\eta})] \quad (12.3)$$

## 12.2.2 Examples

In this section, we consider some common examples of distributions in the exponential family. Each corresponds to a different way of defining  $h(\mathbf{y})$  and  $\mathbf{t}(\mathbf{y})$  (since  $Z$  and hence  $A$  is derived from knowing  $h$  and  $\mathbf{t}$ ).

### 12.2.2.1 Bernoulli distribution

The Bernoulli distribution can be written in exponential family form as follows:

$$\text{Ber}(y|\mu) = \mu^y (1-\mu)^{1-y} \quad (12.4)$$

$$= \exp[y \log(\mu) + (1-y) \log(1-\mu)] \quad (12.5)$$

$$= \exp[\mathbf{t}(y)^\top \boldsymbol{\eta}] \quad (12.6)$$

where  $\mathbf{t}(y) = [\mathbb{I}(y=1), \mathbb{I}(y=0)]$ ,  $\boldsymbol{\eta} = [\log(\mu), \log(1-\mu)]$ , and  $\mu$  is the mean parameter. However, this is an **over-complete representation** since there is a linear dependence between the features. We can see this as follows:

$$\mathbf{1}^\top \mathbf{t}(y) = \mathbb{I}(y=0) + \mathbb{I}(y=1) = 1 \quad (12.7)$$

If the representation is overcomplete,  $\boldsymbol{\eta}$  is not uniquely identifiable. It is common to use a **minimal representation**, which means there is a unique  $\boldsymbol{\eta}$  associated with the distribution. In this case, we can just define

$$\text{Ber}(y|\mu) = \exp \left[ y \log \left( \frac{\mu}{1-\mu} \right) + \log(1-\mu) \right] \quad (12.8)$$

We can put this into exponential family form by defining

$$\eta = \log \left( \frac{\mu}{1 - \mu} \right) \quad (12.9)$$

$$\mathbf{t}(y) = y \quad (12.10)$$

$$A(\eta) = -\log(1 - \mu) = \log(1 + e^\eta) \quad (12.11)$$

$$h(y) = 1 \quad (12.12)$$

We can recover the mean parameter  $\mu$  from the canonical parameter  $\eta$  using

$$\mu = \sigma(\eta) = \frac{1}{1 + e^{-\eta}} \quad (12.13)$$

which we recognize as the logistic (sigmoid) function.

### 12.2.2.2 Categorical distribution

We can represent the discrete distribution with  $K$  categories as follows (where  $y_k = \mathbb{I}(y = k)$ ):

$$\text{Cat}(y|\boldsymbol{\mu}) = \prod_{k=1}^K \mu_k^{y_k} = \exp \left[ \sum_{k=1}^K y_k \log \mu_k \right] \quad (12.14)$$

$$= \exp \left[ \sum_{k=1}^{K-1} y_k \log \mu_k + \left( 1 - \sum_{k=1}^{K-1} y_k \right) \log(1 - \sum_{k=1}^{K-1} \mu_k) \right] \quad (12.15)$$

$$= \exp \left[ \sum_{k=1}^{K-1} y_k \log \left( \frac{\mu_k}{1 - \sum_{j=1}^{K-1} \mu_j} \right) + \log(1 - \sum_{k=1}^{K-1} \mu_k) \right] \quad (12.16)$$

$$= \exp \left[ \sum_{k=1}^{K-1} y_k \log \left( \frac{\mu_k}{\mu_K} \right) + \log \mu_K \right] \quad (12.17)$$

where  $\mu_K = 1 - \sum_{k=1}^{K-1} \mu_k$ . We can write this in exponential family form as follows:

$$\text{Cat}(y|\boldsymbol{\eta}) = \exp(\boldsymbol{\eta}^\top \mathbf{t}(y) - A(\boldsymbol{\eta})) \quad (12.18)$$

$$\boldsymbol{\eta} = [\log \frac{\mu_1}{\mu_K}, \dots, \log \frac{\mu_{K-1}}{\mu_K}] \quad (12.19)$$

$$A(\boldsymbol{\eta}) = -\log(\mu_K) \quad (12.20)$$

$$\mathbf{t}(y) = [\mathbb{I}(y = 1), \dots, \mathbb{I}(y = K - 1)] \quad (12.21)$$

$$h(y) = 1 \quad (12.22)$$

We can recover the mean parameters from the canonical parameters using

$$\mu_k = \frac{e^{\eta_k}}{1 + \sum_{j=1}^{K-1} e^{\eta_j}} \quad (12.23)$$

If we define  $\eta_K = 0$ , we can rewrite this as follows:

$$\mu_k = \frac{e^{\eta_k}}{\sum_{j=1}^K e^{\eta_j}} \quad (12.24)$$

for  $k = 1 : K$ . Hence  $\boldsymbol{\mu} = \mathcal{S}(\boldsymbol{\eta})$ , where  $\mathcal{S}$  is the softmax or multinomial logit function in Eq. (3.28). From this, we find

$$\mu_K = 1 - \frac{\sum_{k=1}^{K-1} e^{\eta_k}}{1 + \sum_{k=1}^{K-1} e^{\eta_k}} = \frac{1}{1 + \sum_{k=1}^{K-1} e^{\eta_k}} \quad (12.25)$$

and hence

$$A(\boldsymbol{\eta}) = -\log(\mu_K) = \log \left( \sum_{k=1}^K e^{\eta_k} \right) \quad (12.26)$$

### 12.2.2.3 Univariate Gaussian

The univariate Gaussian is usually written as follows:

$$\mathcal{N}(y|\mu, \sigma^2) = \frac{1}{(2\pi\sigma^2)^{\frac{1}{2}}} \exp\left[-\frac{1}{2\sigma^2}(y-\mu)^2\right] \quad (12.27)$$

$$= \frac{1}{(2\pi)^{\frac{1}{2}}} \exp\left[\frac{\mu}{\sigma^2}y - \frac{1}{2\sigma^2}y^2 - \frac{1}{2\sigma^2}\mu^2 - \log\sigma\right] \quad (12.28)$$

We can put this in exponential family form by defining

$$\boldsymbol{\eta} = \begin{pmatrix} \mu/\sigma^2 \\ -\frac{1}{2\sigma^2} \end{pmatrix} \quad (12.29)$$

$$\mathbf{t}(y) = \begin{pmatrix} y \\ y^2 \end{pmatrix} \quad (12.30)$$

$$A(\boldsymbol{\eta}) = \frac{\mu^2}{2\sigma^2} + \log\sigma = \frac{-\eta_1^2}{4\eta_2} - \frac{1}{2}\log(-2\eta_2) \quad (12.31)$$

$$h(y) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \quad (12.32)$$

We define the **moment parameters** as the mean of the sufficient statistics vector,  $\mathbf{m} = \mathbb{E}[\mathbf{t}(\mathbf{y})]$ . We see that for a univariate Gaussian, we have  $\mathbf{m} = [\mu, \mu^2 + \sigma^2]$ .

If we fix  $\sigma^2 = 1$ , we can write this as a natural exponential family, by defining

$$\eta = \mu \quad (12.33)$$

$$\mathbf{t}(y) = y \quad (12.34)$$

$$A(\mu) = \frac{\mu^2}{2\sigma^2} + \log\sigma = \frac{\mu^2}{2} \quad (12.35)$$

$$h(y) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \exp\left[-\frac{y^2}{2}\right] \quad (12.36)$$

### 12.2.2.4 Multivariate Gaussian

It is common to parameterize the multivariate normal (MVN) in terms of the mean vector  $\boldsymbol{\mu}$  and the covariance matrix  $\boldsymbol{\Sigma}$ . The corresponding pdf is given by

$$\mathcal{N}(\mathbf{y}|\boldsymbol{\mu}, \boldsymbol{\Sigma}) = \frac{1}{(2\pi)^{D/2}\sqrt{\det(\boldsymbol{\Sigma})}} \exp\left(-\frac{1}{2}\mathbf{y}^\top \boldsymbol{\Sigma}^{-1}\mathbf{y} + \mathbf{y}^\top \boldsymbol{\Sigma}^{-1}\boldsymbol{\mu} - \frac{1}{2}\boldsymbol{\mu}^\top \boldsymbol{\Sigma}^{-1}\boldsymbol{\mu}\right) \quad (12.37)$$

$$= c \exp\left(\mathbf{y}^\top \boldsymbol{\Sigma}^{-1}\boldsymbol{\mu} - \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{y}^\top \boldsymbol{\Sigma}^{-1}\mathbf{y}\right) \quad (12.38)$$

$$c \triangleq \frac{\exp(-\frac{1}{2}\boldsymbol{\mu}^\top \boldsymbol{\Sigma}^{-1}\boldsymbol{\mu})}{(2\pi)^{D/2}\sqrt{\det(\boldsymbol{\Sigma})}} \quad (12.39)$$

However, we can also represent the Gaussian using **canonical parameters** or **natural parameters**. In particular, we define the **precision matrix**  $\boldsymbol{\Lambda} = \boldsymbol{\Sigma}^{-1}$ , and the precision-weighted mean,  $\boldsymbol{\xi} \triangleq \boldsymbol{\Sigma}^{-1}\boldsymbol{\mu}$ . The pdf for the MVN in **canonical form** (also called **information form**) is then giving by the following:

$$\mathcal{N}_c(\mathbf{y}|\boldsymbol{\xi}, \boldsymbol{\Lambda}) \triangleq c' \exp\left(\mathbf{y}^\top \boldsymbol{\xi} - \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{y}^\top \boldsymbol{\Lambda}\mathbf{y}\right) \quad (12.40)$$

$$c' \triangleq \frac{\exp(-\frac{1}{2}\boldsymbol{\xi}^\top \boldsymbol{\Lambda}^{-1}\boldsymbol{\xi})}{(2\pi)^{D/2}\sqrt{\det(\boldsymbol{\Lambda}^{-1})}} \quad (12.41)$$

where we use the notation  $\mathcal{N}_c()$  to distinguish it from the standard parameterization  $\mathcal{N}()$ .

We can convert this to exponential family notation as follows:

$$\mathcal{N}_c(\mathbf{y}|\boldsymbol{\xi}, \boldsymbol{\Lambda}) = \underbrace{(2\pi)^{-D/2}}_{h(\mathbf{y})} \underbrace{\exp\left[\frac{1}{2}\log|\boldsymbol{\Lambda}| - \frac{1}{2}\boldsymbol{\xi}^\top \boldsymbol{\Lambda}^{-1}\boldsymbol{\xi}\right]}_{g(\boldsymbol{\eta})} \exp\left[-\frac{1}{2}\mathbf{y}^\top \boldsymbol{\Lambda}\mathbf{y} + \mathbf{y}^\top \boldsymbol{\xi}\right] \quad (12.42)$$

$$= h(\mathbf{y})g(\boldsymbol{\eta}) \exp\left[-\frac{1}{2}\mathbf{y}^\top \boldsymbol{\Lambda}\mathbf{y} + \mathbf{y}^\top \boldsymbol{\xi}\right] \quad (12.43)$$

$$= h(\mathbf{y})g(\boldsymbol{\eta}) \exp\left[-\frac{1}{2}\left(\sum_{ij} y_i y_j \Lambda_{ij}\right) + \mathbf{y}^\top \boldsymbol{\xi}\right] \quad (12.44)$$

$$= h(\mathbf{y})g(\boldsymbol{\eta}) \exp\left[-\frac{1}{2}\text{vec}(\boldsymbol{\Lambda})^\top \text{vec}(\mathbf{y}\mathbf{y}^\top) + \mathbf{y}^\top \boldsymbol{\xi}\right] \quad (12.45)$$

$$= h(\mathbf{y}) \exp[\boldsymbol{\eta}^\top \mathbf{t}(\mathbf{y}) - A(\boldsymbol{\eta})] \quad (12.46)$$

where

$$h(\mathbf{y}) = (2\pi)^{-D/2} \quad (12.47)$$

$$\boldsymbol{\eta} = [\boldsymbol{\xi}; -\frac{1}{2}\text{vec}(\boldsymbol{\Lambda})] = [\boldsymbol{\Sigma}^{-1}\boldsymbol{\mu}; -\frac{1}{2}\text{vec}(\boldsymbol{\Sigma}^{-1})] \quad (12.48)$$

$$\mathbf{t}(\mathbf{y}) = [\mathbf{y}; \text{vec}(\mathbf{y}\mathbf{y}^\top)] \quad (12.49)$$

$$A(\boldsymbol{\eta}) = -\log g(\boldsymbol{\eta}) = -\frac{1}{2}\log|\boldsymbol{\Lambda}| + \frac{1}{2}\boldsymbol{\xi}^\top \boldsymbol{\Lambda}^{-1}\boldsymbol{\xi} \quad (12.50)$$

From this, we see that the mean (moment) parameters are given by

$$\mathbf{m} = \mathbb{E}[\mathbf{t}(\mathbf{y})] = [\boldsymbol{\mu}; \boldsymbol{\mu}\boldsymbol{\mu}^\top + \boldsymbol{\Sigma}] \quad (12.51)$$

(Note that the above is not a minimal representation, since  $\boldsymbol{\Lambda}$  is a symmetric matrix. We can convert to minimal form by working with the upper or lower half of each matrix.)

In Sec. 3.5.3, we gave the equations for marginalization and conditioning of an MVN in moment form. It is also possible to derive the marginalization and conditioning formulas in information form (see Exercise 3.9). We find

$$p(\mathbf{y}_2) = \mathcal{N}_c(\mathbf{y}_2 | \boldsymbol{\xi}_2 - \boldsymbol{\Lambda}_{21}\boldsymbol{\Lambda}_{11}^{-1}\boldsymbol{\xi}_1, \boldsymbol{\Lambda}_{22} - \boldsymbol{\Lambda}_{21}\boldsymbol{\Lambda}_{11}^{-1}\boldsymbol{\Lambda}_{12}) \quad (12.52)$$

$$p(\mathbf{y}_1 | \mathbf{y}_2) = \mathcal{N}_c(\mathbf{y}_1 | \boldsymbol{\xi}_1 - \boldsymbol{\Lambda}_{12}\mathbf{y}_2, \boldsymbol{\Lambda}_{11}) \quad (12.53)$$

Thus we see that marginalization is easier in moment form, and conditioning is easier in information form.

#### 12.2.2.5 Non-examples

Not all distributions of interest belong to the exponential family. For example, the Student distribution (Sec. 3.4.1) does not belong, since its pdf (Eq. (3.60)) does not have the required form. (However, there is a generalization, known as the  **$\phi$ -exponential family** [Nau04; Tsa88] which does include the Student distribution.)

As a more subtle example, consider the uniform distribution,  $Y \sim \text{Unif}(\theta_1, \theta_2)$ . The pdf has the form

$$p(y|\boldsymbol{\theta}) = \frac{1}{\theta_2 - \theta_1} \mathbb{I}(\theta_1 \leq y \leq \theta_2) \quad (12.54)$$

It is tempting to think this is in the exponential family, with  $h(y) = 1$ ,  $\mathbf{t}(y) = \mathbf{0}$ , and  $Z(\boldsymbol{\theta}) = \theta_2 - \theta_1$ . However, the support of this distribution (i.e., the set of values  $\mathcal{Y} = \{y : p(y) > 0\}$ ) depends on the parameters  $\boldsymbol{\theta}$ , which violates an assumption of the exponential family.

#### 12.2.3 Log partition function is cumulant generating function

The first and second **cumulants** of a distribution are its mean  $\mathbb{E}[Y]$  and variance  $\mathbb{V}[Y]$ , whereas the first and second moments are  $\mathbb{E}[Y]$  and  $\mathbb{E}[Y^2]$ . We can also compute higher order cumulants (and moments). An important property of the exponential family is that derivatives of the log partition function can be used to generate all the **cumulants** of the sufficient statistics. In particular, the first and second cumulants are given by

$$\nabla_{\boldsymbol{\eta}} A(\boldsymbol{\eta}) = \mathbb{E}[\mathbf{t}(\mathbf{y})] \quad (12.55)$$

$$\nabla^2 A(\boldsymbol{\eta}) = \text{Cov}[\mathbf{t}(\mathbf{y})] \quad (12.56)$$

We prove this result below.

From the above result, we see that the Hessian of  $A$  is positive definite, and hence  $A$  is a convex function (see Appendix A.4). This will be important when we talk about parameter estimation in Sec. 12.2.4.

### 12.2.3.1 Derivation of the mean

To prove the result, we focus on the 1d case. For the first derivative we have

$$\frac{dA}{d\eta} = \frac{d}{d\eta} \left( \log \int \exp(\eta t(y)) h(y) dy \right) \quad (12.57)$$

$$= \frac{\frac{d}{d\eta} \int \exp(\eta t(y)) h(y) dy}{\int \exp(\eta t(y)) h(y) dy} \quad (12.58)$$

$$= \frac{\int t(y) \exp(\eta t(y)) h(y) dy}{\exp(A(\eta))} \quad (12.59)$$

$$= \int t(y) \exp(\eta t(y) - A(\eta)) h(y) dy \quad (12.60)$$

$$= \int t(y) p(y) dy = \mathbb{E}[t(y)] \quad (12.61)$$

For example, consider the Bernoulli distribution. We have  $A(\eta) = \log(1 + e^\eta)$ , so the mean is given by

$$\frac{dA}{d\eta} = \frac{e^\eta}{1 + e^\eta} = \frac{1}{1 + e^{-\eta}} = \sigma(\eta) = \mu \quad (12.62)$$

### 12.2.3.2 Derivation of the variance

For the second derivative we have

$$\frac{d^2A}{d\eta^2} = \frac{d}{d\eta} \int t(y) \exp(\eta t(y) - A(\eta)) h(y) dy \quad (12.63)$$

$$= \int t(y) \exp(\eta t(y) - A(\eta)) h(y) (t(y) - A'(\eta)) dy \quad (12.64)$$

$$= \int t(y) p(y) (t(y) - A'(\eta)) dy \quad (12.65)$$

$$= \int t^2(y) p(y) dy - A'(\eta) \int t(y) p(y) dy \quad (12.66)$$

$$= \mathbb{E}[t^2(Y)] - \mathbb{E}[t(y)]^2 = \mathbb{V}[t(y)] \quad (12.67)$$

where we used the fact that  $A'(\eta) = \frac{dA}{d\eta} = \mathbb{E}[t(y)]$ . For example, for the Bernoulli distribution we have

$$\frac{d^2A}{d\eta^2} = \frac{d}{d\eta} (1 + e^{-\eta})^{-1} = (1 + e^{-\eta})^{-2} e^{-\eta} \quad (12.68)$$

$$= \frac{e^{-\eta}}{1 + e^{-\eta}} \frac{1}{1 + e^{-\eta}} = \frac{1}{e^\eta + 1} \frac{1}{1 + e^{-\eta}} = (1 - \mu)\mu \quad (12.69)$$

### 12.2.4 MLE for the exponential family

The likelihood of an exponential family model has the form

$$p(\mathcal{D}|\boldsymbol{\eta}) = \left[ \prod_{n=1}^N h(\mathbf{y}_n) \right] \exp \left( \boldsymbol{\eta}^\top \left[ \sum_{n=1}^N \mathbf{t}(\mathbf{y}_n) \right] - NA(\boldsymbol{\eta}) \right) \propto \exp [\boldsymbol{\eta}^\top \mathbf{t}(\mathcal{D}) - NA(\boldsymbol{\eta})] \quad (12.70)$$

where  $\mathbf{t}(\mathcal{D})$  are the sufficient statistics:

$$\mathbf{t}(\mathcal{D}) = \left[ \sum_{n=1}^N \mathbf{t}_1(\mathbf{y}_n), \dots, \sum_{n=1}^N \mathbf{t}_K(\mathbf{y}_n) \right] \quad (12.71)$$

For example, for the Bernoulli model we have  $\mathbf{t}(\mathcal{D}) = [\sum_n \mathbb{I}(y_n = 1)]$ , and for the univariate Gaussian, we have  $\mathbf{t}(\mathcal{D}) = [\sum_n y_n, \sum_n y_n^2]$ .

The **Pitman-Koopman-Darmois theorem** states that, under certain regularity conditions, the exponential family is the only family of distributions with finite sufficient statistics. (Here, finite means a size independent of the size of the data set.) In other words, for an exponential family with natural parameters  $\boldsymbol{\eta}$ , we have

$$p(\mathcal{D}|\boldsymbol{\eta}) = p(\mathbf{t}(\mathcal{D})|\boldsymbol{\eta}) \quad (12.72)$$

We now show how to use this result to compute the MLE. The log likelihood is given by

$$\log p(\mathcal{D}|\boldsymbol{\eta}) = \boldsymbol{\eta}^\top \mathbf{t}(\mathcal{D}) - NA(\boldsymbol{\eta}) + \text{const} \quad (12.73)$$

Since  $-A(\boldsymbol{\eta})$  is concave in  $\boldsymbol{\eta}$ , and  $\boldsymbol{\eta}^\top \mathbf{t}(\mathcal{D})$  is linear in  $\boldsymbol{\eta}$ , we see that the log likelihood is concave, and hence has a unique global maximum. To derive this maximum, we use the fact (shown in Sec. 12.2.3) that the derivative of the log partition function yields the expected value of the sufficient statistic vector:

$$\nabla_{\boldsymbol{\eta}} \log p(\mathcal{D}|\boldsymbol{\eta}) = \nabla_{\boldsymbol{\eta}} \boldsymbol{\eta}^\top \mathbf{t}(\mathcal{D}) - N \nabla_{\boldsymbol{\eta}} A(\boldsymbol{\eta}) = \mathbf{t}(\mathcal{D}) - N \mathbb{E}[\mathbf{t}(\mathbf{y})] \quad (12.74)$$

Setting this gradient to zero, we see that at the MLE, the empirical average of the sufficient statistics must equal the model's theoretical expected sufficient statistics, i.e.,  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\eta}}$  must satisfy

$$\mathbb{E}[\mathbf{t}(\mathbf{y})] = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^N \mathbf{t}(\mathbf{y}_n) \quad (12.75)$$

This is called **moment matching**. For example, in the Bernoulli distribution, we have  $\mathbf{t}(y) = \mathbb{I}(Y = 1)$ , so the MLE satisfies

$$\mathbb{E}[\mathbf{t}(y)] = p(Y = 1) = \mu = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^N \mathbb{I}(y_n = 1) \quad (12.76)$$

### 12.2.5 Exponential dispersion family

In this section, we consider a slight extension of the natural exponential family known as the **exponential dispersion family**. This will be useful when we discuss GLMs in Sec. 12.3. For a scalar variable, this has the form

$$p(y|\eta, \sigma^2) = h(y, \sigma^2) \exp \left[ \frac{\eta y - A(\eta)}{\sigma^2} \right] \quad (12.77)$$

Here  $\sigma^2$  is called the **dispersion parameter**. For fixed  $\sigma^2$ , this is a natural exponential family.

### 12.2.6 Maximum entropy derivation of the exponential family

Suppose we want to find a distribution  $p(\mathbf{x})$  to describe some data, where all we know are the expected values ( $F_k$ ) of certain features or functions  $f_k(\mathbf{x})$ :

$$\int d\mathbf{x} p(\mathbf{x}) f_k(\mathbf{x}) = F_k \quad (12.78)$$

For example,  $f_1$  might compute  $x$ ,  $f_2$  might compute  $x^2$ , making  $F_1$  the empirical mean and  $F_2$  the empirical second moment. Our prior belief in the distribution is  $q(x)$ .

To formalize what we mean by ‘‘least number of assumptions’’, we will search for the distribution that is as close as possible to our prior, in the sense of KL divergence (Sec. 6.2), while satisfying our constraints. If our prior is uniform, minimizing the KL is equivalent to maximizing the entropy.

To minimize KL subject to the constraints in Eq. (12.78), and the constraint that  $p(\mathbf{x}) \geq 0$  and  $\sum_{\mathbf{x}} p(\mathbf{x}) = 1$ , we need to use Lagrange multipliers (see Sec. 5.5.1). The Lagrangian is given by

$$J(p, \boldsymbol{\lambda}) = - \sum_{\mathbf{x}} p(\mathbf{x}) \log \frac{p(\mathbf{x})}{q(\mathbf{x})} + \lambda_0 \left( 1 - \sum_{\mathbf{x}} p(\mathbf{x}) \right) + \sum_k \lambda_k \left( F_k - \sum_{\mathbf{x}} p(\mathbf{x}) f_k(\mathbf{x}) \right) \quad (12.79)$$

We can use the calculus of variations to take derivatives wrt the function  $p$ , but we will adopt a simpler approach and treat  $\mathbf{p}$  as a fixed length vector (since we are assuming that  $\mathbf{x}$  is discrete). Then we have

$$\frac{\partial J}{\partial p_c} = -1 - \log \frac{p(x=c)}{q(x=c)} - \lambda_0 - \sum_k \lambda_k f_k(x=c) \quad (12.80)$$

Setting  $\frac{\partial J}{\partial p_c} = 0$  for each  $c$  yields

$$p(\mathbf{x}) = \frac{q(\mathbf{x})}{Z} \exp \left( - \sum_k \lambda_k f_k(\mathbf{x}) \right) \quad (12.81)$$

where we have defined  $Z \triangleq e^{1+\lambda_0}$ . Using the sum-to-one constraint, we have

$$1 = \sum_{\mathbf{x}} p(\mathbf{x}) = \frac{1}{Z} \sum_{\mathbf{x}} q(\mathbf{x}) \exp \left( - \sum_k \lambda_k f_k(\mathbf{x}) \right) \quad (12.82)$$

Hence the normalization constant is given by

$$Z = \sum_{\mathbf{x}} q(\mathbf{x}) \exp \left( - \sum_k \lambda_k f_k(\mathbf{x}) \right) \quad (12.83)$$

This has exactly the form of the exponential family, where  $\mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x})$  is the vector of sufficient statistics,  $-\boldsymbol{\lambda}$  are the natural parameters, and  $q(\mathbf{x})$  is our base measure.

If we use a uniform prior,  $q(\mathbf{x}) \propto 1$ , minimizing the KL divergence is equivalent to maximizing the entropy (see Sec. 6.1 for details on entropy). The result is called a **maximum entropy model**.

### 12.3 Generalized linear models (GLMs)

A **generalized linear model** or **GLM** is a conditional version of an exponential dispersion family distribution, in which the natural parameters are a linear function of the input. More precisely, the model has the following form:

$$p(y_n | \mathbf{x}_n, \mathbf{w}, \sigma^2) = \exp \left[ \frac{y_n \eta_n - A(\eta_n)}{\sigma^2} + \log h(y_n, \sigma^2) \right] \quad (12.84)$$

where  $\eta_n \triangleq \mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x}_n$  is the (input dependent) natural parameter,  $A(\eta_n)$  is the log normalizer,  $\mathbf{t}(y) = y$  is the sufficient statistic, and  $\sigma^2$  is the dispersion term. Based on the results in Sec. 12.2.3, we can show that the mean and variance of the response variable are as follows:

$$\mathbb{E}[y_n | \mathbf{x}_n, \mathbf{w}, \sigma^2] = A'(\eta_n) \quad (12.85)$$

$$\mathbb{V}[y_n | \mathbf{x}_n, \mathbf{w}, \sigma^2] = A''(\eta_n) \sigma^2 \quad (12.86)$$

We will denote the mapping from the linear inputs  $\eta_n$  to the mean of the output  $\mu_n$  using  $\mu = g^{-1}(\eta)$ , where the function  $g$  is known as the **link function**, and  $g^{-1}$  is known as the **mean function**.

#### 12.3.1 Examples

In this section, we give some examples of widely used GLMs.

##### 12.3.1.1 Linear regression

Recall that linear regression has the form

$$p(y_n | \mathbf{x}_n, \mathbf{w}, \sigma^2) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi\sigma^2}} \exp\left(-\frac{1}{2\sigma^2}(y_n - \mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x}_n)^2\right) \quad (12.87)$$

Hence

$$\log p(y_n | \mathbf{x}_n, \mathbf{w}, \sigma^2) = -\frac{1}{2\sigma^2}(y_n - \eta_n)^2 - \frac{1}{2}\log(2\pi\sigma^2) \quad (12.88)$$

where  $\eta_n = \mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x}_n$ . We can write this in GLM form as follows:

$$\log p(y_n | \mathbf{x}_n, \mathbf{w}, \sigma^2) = \frac{y_n \eta_n - \frac{\eta_n^2}{2}}{\sigma^2} - \frac{1}{2} \left( \frac{y_n^2}{\sigma^2} + \log(2\pi\sigma^2) \right) \quad (12.89)$$

We see that  $A(\eta_n) = \eta_n^2/2$  and hence

$$\mathbb{E}[y_n] = \eta_n = \mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x}_n \quad (12.90)$$

$$\mathbb{V}[y_n] = \sigma^2 \quad (12.91)$$

### 12.3.1.2 Binomial regression

If the response variable is the number of successes in  $N_n$  trials,  $y_n \in \{0, \dots, N_n\}$ , we can use **binomial regression**, which is defined by

$$p(y_n | \mathbf{x}_n, N_n, \mathbf{w}) = \text{Bin}(y_n | \sigma(\mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x}_n), N_n) \quad (12.92)$$

We see that binary logistic regression is the special case when  $N_n = 1$ .

The log pdf is given by

$$\log p(y_n | \mathbf{x}_n, N_n, \mathbf{w}) = y_n \log \mu_n + (N_n - y_n) \log(1 - \mu_n) + \log \binom{N_n}{y_n} \quad (12.93)$$

$$= y_n \log\left(\frac{\mu_n}{1 - \mu_n}\right) + N_n \log(1 - \mu_n) + \log \binom{N_n}{y_n} \quad (12.94)$$

where  $\mu_n = \sigma(\eta_n)$ . To rewrite this in GLM form, let us define

$$\eta_n \triangleq \log \left[ \frac{\mu_n}{(1 - \mu_n)} \right] = \log \left[ \frac{1}{1 + e^{-\mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x}_n}} \frac{1 + e^{-\mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x}_n}}{e^{-\mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x}_n}} \right] = \log \frac{1}{e^{-\mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x}_n}} = \mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x}_n \quad (12.95)$$

Hence we can write binomial regression in GLM form as follows

$$\log p(y_n | \mathbf{x}_n, N_n, \mathbf{w}) = y_n \eta_n - A(\eta_n) + h(y_n) \quad (12.96)$$

where  $h(y_n) = \log \binom{N_n}{y_n}$  and

$$A(\eta_n) = -N_n \log(1 - \mu_n) = N_n \log(1 + e^{\eta_n}) \quad (12.97)$$

Hence

$$\mathbb{E}[y_n] = \frac{dA}{d\eta_n} = \frac{N_n e^{\eta_n}}{1 + e^{\eta_n}} = \frac{N_n}{1 + e^{-\eta_n}} = N_n \mu_n \quad (12.98)$$

and

$$\mathbb{V}[y_n] = \frac{d^2 A}{d\eta_n^2} = N_n \mu_n (1 - \mu_n) \quad (12.99)$$

### 12.3.1.3 Poisson regression

If the response variable is an integer count,  $y_n \in \{0, 1, \dots\}$ , we can use **Poisson regression**, which is defined by

$$p(y_n | \mathbf{x}_n, \mathbf{w}) = \text{Poi}(y_n | \exp(\mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x}_n)) \quad (12.100)$$

where

$$\text{Poi}(y | \mu) = e^{-\mu} \frac{\mu^y}{y!} \quad (12.101)$$

is the Poisson distribution. Poisson regression is widely used in bio-statistical applications, where  $y_n$  might represent the number of diseases of a given person or place, or the number of reads at a genomic location in a high-throughput sequencing context (see e.g., [Kua+09]).

The log pdf is given by

$$\log p(y_n | \mathbf{x}_n, \mathbf{w}) = y_n \log \mu_n - \mu_n - \log(y_n!) \quad (12.102)$$

where  $\mu_n = \exp(\mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x}_n)$ . Hence in GLM form we have

$$\log p(y_n | \mathbf{x}_n, \mathbf{w}) = y_n \eta_n - A(\eta_n) + h(y_n) \quad (12.103)$$

where  $\eta_n = \log(\mu_n) = \mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x}_n$ ,  $A(\eta_n) = \mu_n = e^{\eta_n}$ , and  $h(y_n) = -\log(y_n!)$ . Hence

$$\mathbb{E}[y_n] = \frac{dA}{d\eta_n} = e^{\eta_n} = \mu_n \quad (12.104)$$

and

$$\mathbb{V}[y_n] = \frac{d^2 A}{d\eta_n^2} = e^{2\eta_n} = \mu_n \quad (12.105)$$

### 12.3.2 Maximum likelihood estimation

GLMs can be fit using similar methods to those that we used to fit logistic regression. In particular, the negative log-likelihood has the following form (ignoring constant terms):

$$\text{NLL}(\mathbf{w}) = -\log p(\mathcal{D} | \mathbf{w}) = -\frac{1}{\sigma^2} \sum_{n=1}^N \ell_n \quad (12.106)$$

where

$$\ell_n \triangleq \eta_n y_n - A(\eta_n) \quad (12.107)$$

where  $\eta_n = \mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x}_n$ . For notational simplicity, we will assume  $\sigma^2 = 1$ .

We can compute the gradient for a single term as follows:

$$\mathbf{g}_n \triangleq \frac{\partial \ell_n}{\partial \mathbf{w}} = \frac{\partial \ell_n}{\partial \eta_n} \frac{\partial \eta_n}{\partial \mathbf{w}} = (y_n - A'(\eta_n)) \mathbf{x}_n = (y_n - \mu_n) \mathbf{x}_n \quad (12.108)$$

where  $\mu_n = f(\mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x})$ , and  $f$  is the inverse link function that maps from canonical parameters to mean parameters. For example, in the case of logistic regression,  $f(\eta_n) = \sigma(\eta_n)$ , so we recover Eq. (10.22). This gradient expression can be used inside SGD, or some other gradient method, in the obvious way.

The Hessian is given by

$$\mathbf{H} = \frac{\partial^2}{\partial \mathbf{w} \partial \mathbf{w}^\top} \text{NLL}(\mathbf{w}) = - \sum_{n=1}^N \frac{\partial \mathbf{g}_n}{\partial \mathbf{w}^\top} \quad (12.109)$$

where

$$\frac{\partial \mathbf{g}_n}{\partial \mathbf{w}^\top} = \frac{\partial \mathbf{g}_n}{\partial \mu_n} \frac{\partial \mu_n}{\partial \mathbf{w}^\top} = -\mathbf{x}_n f'(\mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x}_n) \mathbf{x}_n^\top \quad (12.110)$$

Hence

$$\mathbf{H} = \sum_{n=1}^N f'(\eta_n) \mathbf{x}_n \mathbf{x}_n^\top \quad (12.111)$$

For example, in the case of logistic regression,  $f(\eta_n) = \sigma(\eta_n)$ , and  $f'(\eta_n) = \sigma(\eta_n)(1 - \sigma(\eta_n))$ , so we recover Eq. (10.23). In general, we see that the Hessian is positive definite, since  $f'(\eta_n) > 0$ ; hence the negative log likelihood is convex, so the MLE for a GLM is unique (assuming  $f(\eta_n) > 0$  for all  $n$ ).

### 12.3.3 GLMs with non-canonical link functions

We have seen how the mean parameters of the output distribution are given by  $\mu = g^{-1}(\eta)$ , where the function  $g$  is the link function. There are several choices for this function, as we now discuss.

The **canonical link function**  $g$  satisfies the property that  $\theta = g(\mu)$ , where  $\theta$  are the canonical (natural) parameters. Hence

$$\theta = g(\mu) = g(g^{-1}(\eta)) = \eta \quad (12.112)$$

This is what we have assumed so far. For example, for the Bernoulli distribution, the canonical parameter is the log-odds  $\theta = \log(\mu/(1 - \mu))$ , which is given by the logit transform

$$\theta = g(\mu) = \text{logit}(\mu) = \log\left(\frac{\mu}{1 - \mu}\right) \quad (12.113)$$

The inverse of this is the sigmoid or logistic function  $\mu = \sigma(\theta) = 1/(1 + e^{-\theta})$ .

However, we are free to use other kinds of link function. For example, in Sec. 12.4 we use

$$\eta = g(\mu) = \Phi^{-1}(\mu) \quad (12.114)$$

This is known as the **probit link function**.

Another link function that is sometimes used for binary responses is the **complementary log-log** function

$$\eta = g(\mu) = \log(-\log(1 - \mu)) \quad (12.115)$$

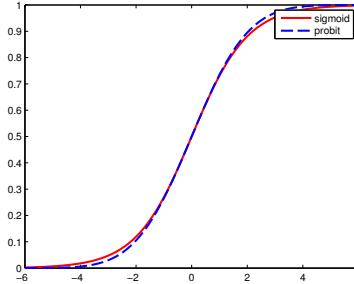


Figure 12.1: The logistic (sigmoid) function  $\sigma(x)$  in solid red, with the Gaussian cdf function  $\Phi(\lambda x)$  in dotted blue superimposed. Here  $\lambda = \sqrt{\pi}/8$ , which was chosen so that the derivatives of the two curves match at  $x = 0$ . Adapted from Figure 4.9 of [Bis06]. Generated by [probit\\_plot.py](#).

This is used in applications where we either observe 0 events (denoted by  $y = 0$ ) or one or more (denoted by  $y = 1$ ), where events are assumed to be governed by a Poisson distribution with rate  $\lambda$ . Let  $E$  be the number of events. The Poisson assumption means  $p(E = 0) = \exp(-\lambda)$  and hence

$$p(y = 0) = (1 - \mu) = p(E = 0) = \exp(-\lambda) \quad (12.116)$$

Thus  $\lambda = -\log(1 - \mu)$ . When  $\lambda$  is a function of covariates, we need to ensure it is positive, so we use  $\lambda = e^\eta$ , and hence

$$\eta = \log(\lambda) = \log(-\log(1 - \mu)) \quad (12.117)$$

## 12.4 Probit regression

In this section, we discuss **probit regression**, which is similar to binary logistic regression except it uses  $\mu_n = \Phi(a_n)$  instead of  $\mu_n = \sigma(a_n)$  as the mean function, where  $\Phi$  is the cdf of the standard normal, and  $a_n = \mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x}_n$ . The corresponding link function is therefore  $a_n = g(\mu_n) = \Phi^{-1}(\mu_n)$ ; the inverse of the Gaussian cdf is known as the **probit function**.

The Gaussian cdf  $\Phi$  is very similar to the logistic function, as shown in Fig. 12.1. Thus probit regression and “regular” logistic regression behave very similarly. However, probit regression has some advantages. In particular, it has a simple interpretation as a latent variable model (see Sec. 12.4.1), which arises from the field of **choice theory** as studied in economics (see e.g., [Koo03]). This also simplifies the task of Bayesian parameter inference.

### 12.4.1 Latent variable interpretation

We can interpret  $a_n = \mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x}_n$  as a factor that is proportional to how likely a person is respond positively (generate  $y_n = 1$ ) given input  $\mathbf{x}_n$ . However, typically there are other unobserved factors that influence someone’s response. Let us model these hidden factors by Gaussian noise,  $\epsilon_n \sim \mathcal{N}(0, 1)$ . Let the combined preference for positive outcomes be represented by the latent variable  $z_n = \mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x}_n + \epsilon_n$ . We assume that the person will pick the positive label iff this latent factor is positive rather than

negative, i.e.,

$$y_n = \mathbb{I}(z_n \geq 0) \quad (12.118)$$

When we marginalize out  $z_n$ , we recover the probit model:

$$p(y_n = 1 | \mathbf{x}_n, \mathbf{w}) = \int \mathbb{I}(z_n \geq 0) \mathcal{N}(z_n | \mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x}_n, 1) dz_n \quad (12.119)$$

$$= p(\mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x}_n + \epsilon_n \geq 0) = p(\epsilon_n \geq -\mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x}_n) \quad (12.120)$$

$$= 1 - \Phi(-\mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x}_n) = \Phi(\mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x}_n) \quad (12.121)$$

Thus we can think of probit regression as a threshold function applied to noisy input.

We can interpret logistic regression in the same way. However, in that case the noise term  $\epsilon_n$  comes from a **logistic distribution**, defined as follows:

$$f(y|\mu, s) \triangleq \frac{e^{-\frac{y-\mu}{s}}}{s(1 + e^{-\frac{y-\mu}{s}})^2} \quad (12.122)$$

The cdf of this distribution is given by

$$F(y|\mu, s) = \frac{1}{1 + e^{-\frac{y-\mu}{s}}} \quad (12.123)$$

It is clear that if we use logistic noise with  $\mu = 0$  and  $s = 1$  we recover logistic regression. However, it is computationally easier to deal with Gaussian noise, as we show below.

### 12.4.2 Maximum likelihood estimation

In this section, we discuss some methods for fitting probit regression using MLE.

#### 12.4.2.1 MLE using SGD

We can find the MLE for probit regression using standard gradient methods. Let  $\mu_n = \mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x}_n$ , and let  $\tilde{y}_n \in \{-1, +1\}$ . Then the gradient of the log-likelihood for a single example  $n$  is given by

$$\mathbf{g}_n \triangleq \frac{d}{d\mathbf{w}} \log p(\tilde{y}_n | \mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x}_n) = \frac{d\mu_n}{d\mathbf{w}} \frac{d}{d\mu_n} \log p(\tilde{y}_n | \mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x}_n) = \mathbf{x}_n \frac{\tilde{y}_n \phi(\mu_n)}{\Phi(\tilde{y}_n \mu_n)} \quad (12.124)$$

where  $\phi$  is the standard normal pdf, and  $\Phi$  is its cdf. Similarly, the Hessian for a single case is given by

$$\mathbf{H}_n = \frac{d}{d\mathbf{w}^2} \log p(\tilde{y}_n | \mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x}_n) = -\mathbf{x}_n \left( \frac{\phi(\mu_n)^2}{\Phi(\tilde{y}_n \mu_n)^2} + \frac{\tilde{y}_n \mu_n \phi(\mu_n)}{\Phi(\tilde{y}_n \mu_n)} \right) \mathbf{x}_n^\top \quad (12.125)$$

This can be passed to any gradient-based optimizer.

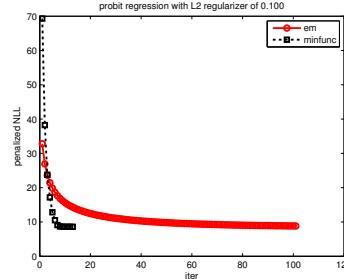


Figure 12.2: Fitting a probit regression model in 2d using a quasi-Newton method or EM. Generated by `probitRegDemo.m`.

#### 12.4.2.2 MLE using EM

We can use the latent variable interpretation of probit regression to derive an elegant EM algorithm for fitting the model. The complete data log likelihood has the following form, assuming a  $\mathcal{N}(\mathbf{0}, \mathbf{V}_0)$  prior on  $\mathbf{w}$ :

$$\ell(\mathbf{z}, \mathbf{w} | \mathbf{V}_0) = \log p(\mathbf{y} | \mathbf{z}) + \log \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{z} | \mathbf{X}\mathbf{w}, \mathbf{I}) + \log \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{w} | \mathbf{0}, \mathbf{V}_0) \quad (12.126)$$

$$= \sum_n \log p(y_n | z_n) - \frac{1}{2} (\mathbf{z} - \mathbf{X}\mathbf{w})^\top (\mathbf{z} - \mathbf{X}\mathbf{w}) - \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{V}_0^{-1} \mathbf{w} \quad (12.127)$$

The posterior in the E step is a **truncated Gaussian**:

$$p(z_n | y_n, \mathbf{x}_n, \mathbf{w}) = \begin{cases} \mathcal{N}(z_n | \mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x}_n, 1) \mathbb{I}(z_n > 0) & \text{if } y_n = 1 \\ \mathcal{N}(z_n | \mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x}_n, 1) \mathbb{I}(z_n < 0) & \text{if } y_n = 0 \end{cases} \quad (12.128)$$

In Eq. (12.127), we see that  $\mathbf{w}$  only depends linearly on  $\mathbf{z}$ , so we just need to compute  $\mathbb{E}[z_n | y_n, \mathbf{x}_n, \mathbf{w}]$ , so we just need to compute the posterior mean. One can show that this is given by

$$\mathbb{E}[z_n | \mathbf{w}, \mathbf{x}_n] = \begin{cases} \mu_n + \frac{\phi(\mu_n)}{1 - \Phi(-\mu_n)} = \mu_n + \frac{\phi(\mu_n)}{\Phi(\mu_n)} & \text{if } y_n = 1 \\ \mu_n - \frac{\phi(\mu_n)}{\Phi(-\mu_n)} = \mu_n - \frac{\phi(\mu_n)}{1 - \Phi(\mu_n)} & \text{if } y_n = 0 \end{cases} \quad (12.129)$$

where  $\mu_n = \mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x}_n$ .

In the M step, we estimate  $\mathbf{w}$  using ridge regression, where  $\boldsymbol{\mu} = \mathbb{E}[\mathbf{z}]$  is the output we are trying to predict. Specifically, we have

$$\hat{\mathbf{w}} = (\mathbf{V}_0^{-1} + \mathbf{X}^\top \mathbf{X})^{-1} \mathbf{X}^\top \boldsymbol{\mu} \quad (12.130)$$

The EM algorithm is simple, but can be much slower than direct gradient methods, as illustrated in Fig. 12.2. This is because the posterior entropy in the E step is quite high, since we only observe that  $z$  is positive or negative, but are given no information from the likelihood about its magnitude. Using a stronger regularizer can help speed convergence, because it constrains the range of plausible  $z$  values. In addition, one can use various speedup tricks, such as data augmentation [DM01].

### 12.4.3 Bayesian inference

It is possible to use the latent variable formulation of probit regression in Sec. 12.4.2.2 to derive a simple Gibbs sampling algorithm for approximating the posterior  $p(\mathbf{w}|\mathcal{D})$  (see e.g., [AC93; HH06]). It is also possible to use variational Bayes, which tends to be much faster (see e.g., [GR06a; FDZ19]). In both cases, the key insight is that the posterior  $p(\mathbf{w}|\mathbf{z})$  is Gaussian (assuming a Gaussian prior), and  $p(\mathbf{z}|\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y}, \mathbf{w})$  is a product of truncated Gaussians, both of which support efficient inference.

### 12.4.4 Ordinal probit regression

One advantage of the latent variable interpretation of probit regression is that it is easy to extend to the case where the response variable is ordered in some way, such as the outputs low, medium and high. This is called **ordinal regression**. The basic idea is as follows. If there are  $C$  output values, we introduce  $C + 1$  thresholds  $\gamma_j$  and set

$$y_n = j \quad \text{if} \quad \gamma_{j-1} < z_n \leq \gamma_j \quad (12.131)$$

where  $\gamma_0 \leq \dots \leq \gamma_C$ . For identifiability reasons, we set  $\gamma_0 = -\infty$ ,  $\gamma_1 = 0$  and  $\gamma_C = \infty$ . For example, if  $C = 2$ , this reduces to the standard binary probit model, whereby  $z_n < 0$  produces  $y_n = 0$  and  $z_n \geq 0$  produces  $y_n = 1$ . If  $C = 3$ , we partition the real line into 3 intervals:  $(-\infty, 0]$ ,  $(0, \gamma_2]$ ,  $(\gamma_2, \infty)$ . We can vary the parameter  $\gamma_2$  to ensure the right relative amount of probability mass falls in each interval, so as to match the empirical frequencies of each class label. See e.g., [AC93] for further details.

Finding the MLEs for this model is a bit trickier than for binary probit regression, since we need to optimize for  $\mathbf{w}$  and  $\boldsymbol{\gamma}$ , and the latter must obey an ordering constraint. See e.g., [KL09] for an approach based on EM. It is also possible to derive a simple Gibbs sampling algorithm for this model (see e.g., [Hof09, p216]).

### 12.4.5 Multinomial probit models

Now consider the case where the response variable can take on  $C$  unordered categorical values,  $y_n \in \{1, \dots, C\}$ . The **multinomial probit** model is defined as follows:

$$z_{nc} = \mathbf{w}_c^\top \mathbf{x}_{nc} + \epsilon_{nc} \quad (12.132)$$

$$\epsilon \sim \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{0}, \mathbf{R}) \quad (12.133)$$

$$y_n = \arg \max_c z_{nc} \quad (12.134)$$

See e.g., [DE04; GR06b; Sco09; FSF10] for more details on the model and its connection to multinomial logistic regression.

If instead of setting  $y_i = \arg \max_c z_{ic}$  we use  $y_{ic} = \mathbb{I}(z_{ic} > 0)$ , we get a model known as **multivariate probit**, which is one way to model  $C$  correlated binary outcomes (see e.g., [TMD12]).



PART III

## Deep neural networks



# 13 Neural networks for unstructured data

## 13.1 Introduction

In Part II, we discussed linear models for regression and classification. In particular, in Chapter 11, we discussed linear regression, which corresponds to the model  $p(y|\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{w}) = \mathcal{N}(y|\mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x}, \sigma^2)$ . In Chapter 10, we discussed logistic regression, which, in the binary case, corresponds to the model  $p(y|\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{w}) = \text{Ber}(y|\sigma(\mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x}))$  and in the multiclass case corresponds to the model  $p(y|\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{w}) = \text{Cat}(y|\mathcal{S}(\mathbf{W}\mathbf{x}))$ . And in Chapter 12, we discussed generalized linear models, which have the form

$$p(\mathbf{y}|\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta}) = p(\mathbf{y}|g^{-1}(f(\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta})) \quad (13.1)$$

where  $p(\mathbf{y}|\boldsymbol{\mu})$  is an exponential family distribution with mean parameters  $\boldsymbol{\mu}$ ,  $g^{-1}()$  is the inverse link function corresponding to that distribution, and

$$f(\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \mathbf{W}\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{b} \quad (13.2)$$

is a linear (affine) transformation of the input, where  $\mathbf{W}$  are called the **weights** and  $\mathbf{b}$  are called the **biases**.

The assumption of linearity is very restrictive. A simple way of increasing the flexibility of such models is to perform a feature transformation, by replacing  $\mathbf{x}$  with  $\phi(\mathbf{x})$ . For example, we can use a polynomial transform, which in 1d is given by  $\phi(x) = [1, x, x^2, x^3, \dots]$ , as we discussed in Sec. 1.2.2. This is sometimes called **basis function expansion**. The model now becomes

$$f(\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \mathbf{W}\phi(\mathbf{x}) + \mathbf{b} \quad (13.3)$$

This is still linear in the parameters  $\boldsymbol{\theta} = (\mathbf{W}, \mathbf{b})$ , which makes model fitting easy. However, having to specify the feature transformation by hand is very limiting.

A natural extension is to endow the feature extractor with its own parameters,  $\boldsymbol{\theta}'$ , to get

$$f(\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta}, \boldsymbol{\theta}') = \mathbf{W}\phi(\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta}') + \mathbf{b} \quad (13.4)$$

We can obviously repeat this process recursively, to create more and more complex functions. If we compose  $L$  functions, we get

$$f(\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta}) = f_L(f_{L-1}(\dots(f_1(\mathbf{x}))\dots)) \quad (13.5)$$

where  $f_\ell(\mathbf{x}) = f(\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta}_\ell)$  is the function at layer  $\ell$ . This is the key idea behind **deep neural networks** or **DNNs**.

$x_1$	$x_2$	$y$
0	0	0
0	1	1
1	0	1
1	1	0

Table 13.1: Truth table for the XOR (exclusive OR) function,  $y = x_1 \vee x_2$ .

The term “DNN” actually encompasses a larger family of models, in which we compose differentiable functions into any kind of DAG (directed acyclic graph), mapping input to output. Eq. (13.5) is the simplest example where the DAG is a chain. This is known as a **feedforward neural network (FFNN)** or **multilayer perceptron (MLP)**.

An MLP assumes that the input is a fixed-dimensional vector, say  $\mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^D$ . We call such data “**unstructured data**”, since we do not make any assumptions about the form of the input. However, this makes the model difficult to apply to inputs that have variable size or shape. In Chapter 14, we discuss **convolutional neural networks (CNN)**, which are designed to work with variable-sized images; in Chapter 15, we discuss **recurrent neural networks (RNN)**, which are designed to work with variable-sized sequences; and in Chapter 23, we discuss **graph neural networks (GNN)**, which are designed to work with variable-sized graphs. For even more information on DNNs, see various other books, such as [HG20; Zha+19a; Gér19].

## 13.2 Multilayer perceptrons (MLPs)

In Sec. 10.2.5, we explained that a **perceptron** is a deterministic version of logistic regression. Specifically, it is a mapping of the following form:

$$f(\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \mathbb{I}(\mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x} + b \geq 0) = H(\mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x} + b) \quad (13.6)$$

where  $H(a)$  is the **heaviside step function**, also known as a **linear threshold function**. Since the decision boundaries represented by perceptrons are linear, they are very limited in what they can represent. In 1969, Marvin Minsky and Seymour Papert published a famous book called “Perceptrons” [MP69] in which they gave numerous examples of pattern recognition problems which perceptrons cannot solve. We give a specific example below, before discussing how to solve the problem.

### 13.2.1 The XOR problem

One of the most famous examples from the “Perceptrons” book is the **XOR problem**. Here the goal is to learn a function that computes the exclusive OR of its two binary inputs. The truth table for this function is given in Table 13.1. We visualize this function in Fig. 13.1a. It is clear that the data is not linearly separable, so a perceptron cannot represent this mapping.

However, we can overcome this problem by stacking multiple perceptrons on top of each other. This is called a **multilayer perceptron (MLP)**. For example, to solve the XOR problem, we can use the MLP shown in Fig. 13.1b. This consists of 3 perceptrons, denoted  $h_1$ ,  $h_2$  and  $y$ . The nodes marked  $x$  are inputs, and the nodes marked 1 are constant terms. The nodes  $h_1$  and  $h_2$  are called **hidden units**, since their values are not observed in the training data.

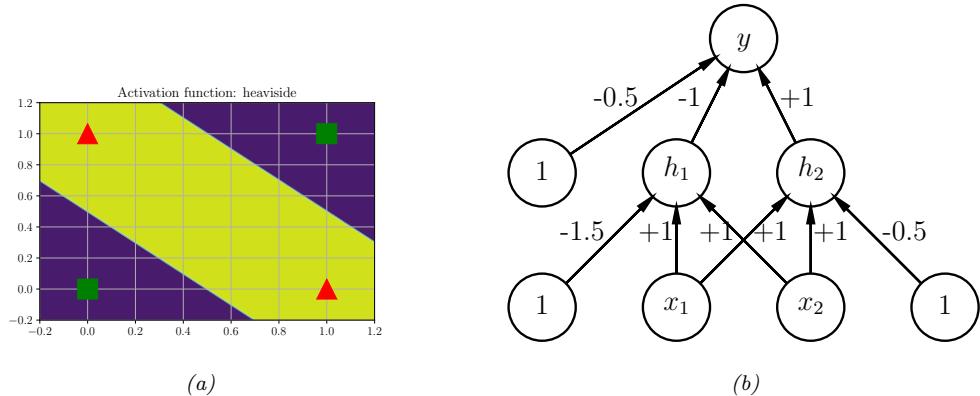


Figure 13.1: (a) Illustration of the fact that the XOR function is not linearly separable, but can be separated by the two layer model using Heaviside activation functions. Adapted from Figure 10.6 of [Gér19]. Generated by `xor_heaviside.py`. (b) A neural net with one hidden layer, whose weights have been manually constructed to implement the XOR function.  $h_1$  is the AND function and  $h_2$  is the OR function. The bias terms are implemented using weights from constant nodes with the value 1.

The first hidden unit computes  $h_1 = x_1 \wedge x_2$  by using appropriately set weights. (Here  $\wedge$  is the AND operation.) In particular, it has inputs from  $x_1$  and  $x_2$ , both weighted by 1.0, but has a bias term of -1.5 (this is implemented by a “wire” with weight -1.5 coming from a dummy node whose value is fixed to 1). Thus  $h_1$  will fire iff  $x_1$  and  $x_2$  are both on, since then

$$\mathbf{w}_1^\top \mathbf{x} - b_1 = [1.0, 1.0]^\top [1, 1] - 1.5 = 0.5 > 0 \quad (13.7)$$

Similarly, the second hidden unit computes  $h_2 = x_1 \vee x_2$ , where  $\vee$  is the OR operation, and the third computes the output  $y = \bar{h}_1 \wedge h_2$ , where  $\bar{h} = -h$  is the NOT (logical negation) operation. Thus  $y$  computes

$$y = f(x_1, x_2) = \overline{(x_1 \wedge x_2)} \wedge (x_1 \vee x_2) \quad (13.8)$$

This is equivalent to the XOR function.

By generalizing this example, we can show that an MLP can represent any logical function. However, we obviously want to avoid having to specify the weights and biases by hand. In the rest of this chapter, we discuss ways to learn these parameters from data.

### 13.2.2 Differentiable MLPs

The MLP we discussed in Sec. 13.2.1 was defined as a stack of perceptrons, each of which involved the non-differentiable Heaviside function. This makes such models very difficult to train, which is why they were never widely used. However, suppose we replace the Heaviside function  $H : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \{0, 1\}$  with a differentiable **activation function**  $\varphi : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ . More precisely, we define the hidden units  $\mathbf{z}_l$  at each layer  $l$  to be a linear transformation of the hidden units at the previous layer passed

Name	Definition	Range	Reference
Sigmoid	$\sigma(a) = \frac{1}{1+e^{-a}}$	$[0, 1]$	
Hyperbolic tangent	$\tanh(a) = 2\sigma(2a) - 1$	$[-1, 1]$	
Softplus	$\sigma_+(a) = \log(1 + e^a)$	$[0, \infty]$	[GBB11]
Rectified linear unit	$\text{ReLU}(a) = \max(a, 0)$	$[0, \infty]$	[GBB11; KSH12]
Leaky ReLU	$\max(a, 0) + \alpha \min(a, 0)$	$[-\infty, \infty]$	[MHN13]
Exponential linear unit	$\max(a, 0) + \min(\alpha(e^a - 1), 0)$	$[-\infty, \infty]$	[CUH16]
Swish	$a\sigma(a)$	$[-\infty, \infty]$	[RZL17]

Table 13.2: List of some popular activation functions for neural networks.

elementwise through this activation function:

$$\mathbf{z}_l = f_l(\mathbf{z}_{l-1}) = \varphi_l(\mathbf{b}_l + \mathbf{W}_l \mathbf{z}_{l-1}) \quad (13.9)$$

or, in scalar form,

$$z_{kl} = \varphi_l \left( b_{kl} + \sum_{j=1}^{K_{l-1}} w_{jkl} z_{jl-1} \right) \quad (13.10)$$

If we now compose  $L$  of these functions together, as in Eq. (13.5), then we can compute the gradient of the output wrt the parameters in each layer using the chain rule, also known as **backpropagation**, as we explain in Sec. 13.3. (This is true for any kind of differentiable activation function, although some kinds work better than others, as we discuss in Sec. 13.2.3.) We can then pass the gradient to an optimizer, and thus minimize some training objective, as we discuss in Sec. 13.4. For this reason, the term “MLP” almost always refers to this differentiable form of the model, rather than the historical version with non-differentiable linear threshold units.

### 13.2.3 Activation functions

We are free to use any kind of differentiable activation function we like at each layer. However, if we use a *linear* activation function,  $\varphi_\ell(a) = c_\ell a$ , then the whole model reduces to a regular linear model. To see this, note that Eq. (13.5) becomes

$$f(\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \mathbf{W}_L c_L (\mathbf{W}_{L-1} c_{L-1} (\cdots (\mathbf{W}_1 \mathbf{x}) \cdots)) \propto \mathbf{W}_L \mathbf{W}_{L-1} \cdots \mathbf{W}_1 \mathbf{x} = \mathbf{W}' \mathbf{x} \quad (13.11)$$

where we dropped the bias terms for notational simplicity. For this reason, it is important to use nonlinear activation functions.

In the early days of neural networks, a common choice was to use a sigmoid (logistic) function, which can be seen as a smooth approximation to the Heaviside function used in a perceptron. However, as shown in Fig. 13.2a, the sigmoid function saturates at 1 for large positive inputs, and at 0 for large negative inputs. The tanh function has a similar shape, but saturates at -1 and +1. In these regimes, the gradient of the output wrt the input will be close to zero, so any gradient signal from higher layers will “vanish”, as shown in [GB10]. (See Sec. 13.4.2 for further discussion of this point.)

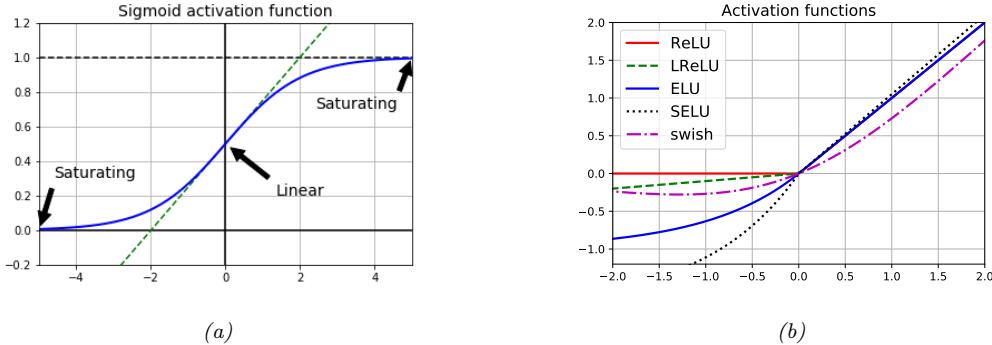


Figure 13.2: (a) Illustration of how the sigmoid function is linear for inputs near 0, but saturates for large positive and negative inputs. Adapted from 11.1 of [Gér19]. Generated by `activationFunPlot.py`. (b) Plots of some popular non-saturating activation functions. Generated by `activationFunPlot.py`.

One of the keys to being able to train very deep models is to use **non-saturating activation functions**. Several different functions have been proposed (see Table 13.2 for a summary). The most common is **rectified linear unit** or **ReLU**, proposed in [GBB11; KSH12]. This is defined as

$$\text{ReLU}(a) = \max(a, 0) = a\mathbb{I}(a > 0) \quad (13.12)$$

The ReLU function simply “turns off” negative inputs, and passes positive inputs unchanged. However, this means the gradient for negative inputs is zero. If a unit ever enters this regime, it will not be able to escape; this is called the “**dying ReLU**” problem [Lu+19].

One simple fix is to use the **leaky ReLU**, proposed in [MHN13]. This is defined as

$$\text{LReLU}(a; \alpha) = \max(\alpha a, a) \quad (13.13)$$

where  $0 < \alpha < 1$ . The slope of this function is 1 for positive inputs, and  $\alpha$  for negative inputs, thus ensuring there is some signal passed back to earlier layers, even when the input is negative. If we allow the parameter  $\alpha$  to be learned, rather than fixed, the leaky ReLU is called **parametric ReLU** [He+15].

Another popular choice is the **ELU**, proposed in [CUH16]. This is defined by

$$\text{ELU}(a; \alpha) = \begin{cases} \alpha(e^a - 1) & \text{if } a \leq 0 \\ a & \text{if } a > 0 \end{cases} \quad (13.14)$$

This has the advantage over leaky ReLU of being a smooth function.

A slight variant of ELU, known as **SELU** (self-normalizing ELU), was proposed in [Kla+17]. This has the form

$$\text{SELU}(a; \alpha, \lambda) = \lambda \text{ELU}(a; \alpha) \quad (13.15)$$

Surprisingly, they prove that by setting  $\alpha$  and  $\lambda$  to carefully chosen values, this activation function is guaranteed to ensure that the output of each layer is standardized (provided the input is also

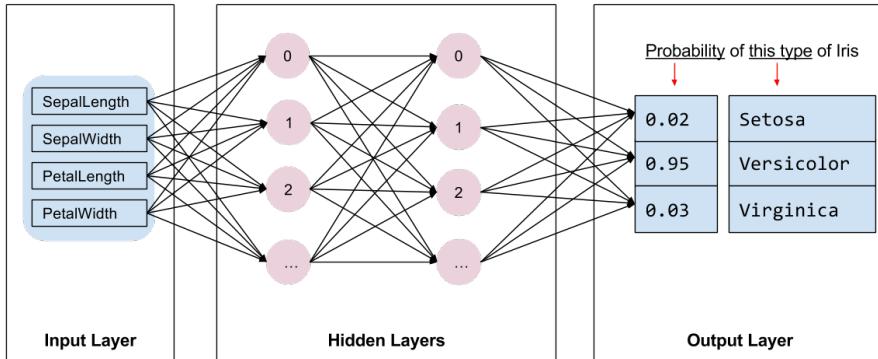


Figure 13.3: A simple 2-layer MLP applied to the iris flower classification problem. The nodes in the hidden layers correspond to the hidden units  $h_{1,i}$  and  $h_{2,j}$ , and the edges between them represent the weights  $w_{2,i,j}$ , where 2 refers to the second layer. (The first layer weight matrix corresponds to the input-to-hidden mapping.) Thus  $\mathbf{z}_2 = \varphi_2(\mathbf{W}_2 \mathbf{z}_1 + \mathbf{b}_1)$ , although we omit the bias terms from the figure for simplicity. From <https://bit.ly/2lDH2Up>.

standardized), even without the use of techniques such as batchnorm (Sec. 13.4.4). This can help with model fitting.

As an alternative to manually discovering good activation functions, we can use blackbox optimization methods to search over the space of functional forms. Such an approach was used in [RZL17], where they discovered a function they call **swish** that seems to do well on some image classification benchmarks. It is defined by

$$\text{swish}(a; \beta) = a\sigma(\beta a) \quad (13.16)$$

See Fig. 13.2b for a visual comparison of these functions. We see that they mainly differ in how they treat negative inputs.

### 13.2.4 Example models

MLPs can be used to perform classification and regression for many kinds of data. We give some examples below.

```

Model: "sequential"
+-----+
Layer (type)          Output Shape       Param #
+-----+
flatten (Flatten)     (None, 784)        0
dense (Dense)         (None, 128)        100480
dense_1 (Dense)       (None, 128)        16512
dense_2 (Dense)       (None, 10)         1290
+-----+
Total params: 118,282
Trainable params: 118,282
Non-trainable params: 0

```

Figure 13.4: Structure of the MLP used for MNIST classification. Note that  $100,480 = (784 + 1) \times 128$ , and  $16,512 = (128 + 1) \times 128$ . Generated by [mlp/mlp\\_mnist\\_tf.ipynb](#).

### 13.2.4.1 MLP for classifying tabular data

Fig. 13.3 gives an illustration of an MLP with two hidden layers applied to the tabular Iris dataset from Sec. 1.2.1.1, which has 4 features and 3 classes. This model has the form

$$p(y|\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \text{Cat}(y|f_3(\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta})) \quad (13.17)$$

$$f_3(\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \mathcal{S}(\mathbf{W}_3 f_2(\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta}) + \mathbf{b}_3) \quad (13.18)$$

$$f_2(\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \varphi_2(\mathbf{W}_2 f_1(\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta}) + \mathbf{b}_2) \quad (13.19)$$

$$f_1(\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \varphi_1(\mathbf{W}_1 f_0(\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta}) + \mathbf{b}_1) \quad (13.20)$$

$$f_0(\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \mathbf{x} \quad (13.21)$$

where  $\boldsymbol{\theta} = (\mathbf{W}_3, \mathbf{b}_3, \mathbf{W}_2, \mathbf{b}_2, \mathbf{W}_1, \mathbf{b}_1)$  are the parameters of the model, corresponding to the 3 groups of edges with adjustable weights. We see that the activation function for the final (output) layer corresponds to the softmax function, which is the inverse link function for the categorical distribution. For the hidden layers, we are free to choose any form we like for the activation function, as we discuss in Sec. 13.2.3.

### 13.2.4.2 MLP for image classification

To apply an MLP to image classification, we need to “**flatten**” the 2d input into 1d vector. We can then use a feedforward architecture similar to the described in Sec. 13.2.4.1. For example, consider building an MLP to classify MNIST digits (Sec. 3.7.2). These are  $28 \times 28 = 784$ -dimensional. If we use 2 hidden layers with 128 units each, followed by a final 10 way softmax layer, we get the model shown in Fig. 13.4.

We show some predictions from this model in Fig. 13.5. We train it for just two “**epochs**” (passes over the dataset), but already the model is doing quite well, with a test set accuracy of 97.1%. Furthermore, the errors seem sensible, e.g., 9 is mistaken as a 3. Training for more epochs can further improve test accuracy.

In Chapter 14 we discuss a different kind of model, called a convolutional neural network, which is better suited to images. This gets even better performance and uses fewer parameters, by exploiting prior knowledge about the spatial structure of images. By contrast, the MLP is invariant to a

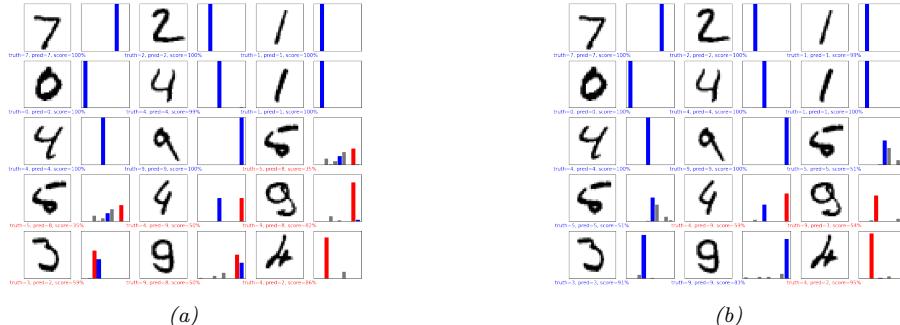


Figure 13.5: Results of applying an MLP (with 2 hidden layers with 128 units and 1 output layer with 10 units) to some MNIST images (cherry picked to include some errors). Red is incorrect, blue is correct. (a) After 1 epoch of training. (b) After 2 epochs. Generated by `mlp/mlp_mnist_tf.ipynb`.

permutation of its inputs. Put another way, we could randomly shuffle the pixels and we would get the same result (assuming we use the same random permutation for all inputs).

### 13.2.4.3 MLP for sentiment analysis of movie reviews

The “MNIST of text classification” is arguably the **IMDB movie review dataset** from [Maa+11]. (IMDB stands for “internet movie database.”) This contains 25k labeled examples for training, and 25k for testing. Each example has a binary label, representing a positive or negative rating. This task is known as (binary) **sentiment analysis**. For example, here are the first two examples from the training set:

1. this film was just brilliant casting location scenery story direction everyone's really suited the part they played robert <UNK> is an amazing actor ...
  2. big hair big boobs bad music and a giant safety pin these are the words to best describe this terrible movie i love cheesy horror movies and i've seen hundreds...

Not surprisingly, the first example is labeled positive and the second negative.

We can design an MLP to perform sentiment analysis as follows. Suppose the input is a sequence of  $T$  tokens,  $\mathbf{x}_{1:T}$ , where  $\mathbf{x}_t$  is a one-hot vector of size  $V$ , where  $V$  is the vocabulary size. We treat this as an unordered bag of words (Sec. 10.4.3.1). The first layer of the model is a  $E \times V$  embedding matrix  $\mathbf{W}_1$ , which converts each sparse  $V$ -dimensional vector to a dense  $E$ -dimensional embedding  $\mathbf{e}_t = \mathbf{W}_1 \mathbf{x}_t$  (see Sec. 19.5 for more details on word embeddings). Next we convert this sequence  $T \times D$  of embeddings into a fixed-sized vector using **global average pooling** to compute  $\bar{\mathbf{e}} = \frac{1}{T} \sum_{t=1}^T \mathbf{e}_t$ . We then pass this through a nonlinear hidden layer to compute the  $K$ -dimensional vector  $\mathbf{h}$ , which

Model: "sequential"		
Layer (type)	Output Shape	Param #
embedding (Embedding)	(None, None, 16)	160000
global_average_pooling1d (GL)	(None, 16)	0
dense (Dense)	(None, 16)	272
dense_1 (Dense)	(None, 1)	17
=====		
Total params:	160,289	
Trainable params:	160,289	
Non-trainable params:	0	

Figure 13.6: Structure of the MLP used for IMDB classification. We use a vocabulary size of  $V = 1000$ , an embedding size of  $E = 16$ , and a hidden layer of size 16. The embedding matrix  $\mathbf{W}_1$  has size  $10,000 \times 16$ , the hidden layer (labeled “dense”) has a weight matrix  $\mathbf{W}_2$  of size  $16 \times 16$  and bias  $\mathbf{b}_2$  of size 16 (note that  $16 \times 16 + 16 = 272$ ), and the final layer (labeled “dense\_1”) has a weight vector  $\mathbf{w}_3$  of size 16 and a bias  $b_3$  of size 1. The global average pooling layer has no free parameters. Generated by [mlp/mlp\\_imdb\\_tf.ipynb](#).

then gets passed into the final linear logistic layer. In summary, the model is as follows:

$$p(y|\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \text{Ber}(y|\sigma(\mathbf{w}_3^\top \mathbf{h} + b_3)) \quad (13.22)$$

$$\mathbf{h} = \varphi(\mathbf{W}_2 \bar{\mathbf{e}} + \mathbf{b}_2) \quad (13.23)$$

$$\bar{\mathbf{e}} = \frac{1}{T} \sum_{t=1}^T \mathbf{e}_t \quad (13.24)$$

$$\mathbf{e}_t = \mathbf{W}_1 \mathbf{x}_t \quad (13.25)$$

If we use a vocabulary size of  $V = 1000$ , an embedding size of  $E = 16$ , and a hidden layer of size 16, we get the model shown in Fig. 13.6. This gets an accuracy of 86% on the validation set.

We see that most of the parameters are in the embedding matrix, which can result in overfitting. Fortunately, we can perform unsupervised pre-training of word embedding models, as we discuss in Sec. 19.5, and then we just have to fine-tune the output layers for this specific labeled task.

#### 13.2.4.4 MLP for heteroskedastic regression

We can also use MLPs for regression. Fig. 13.7 shows how we can make a model for heteroskedastic nonlinear regression. (The term “heteroskedastic” just means that the predicted output variance is input-dependent, as discussed in Sec. 3.3.3.) This function has two outputs which compute  $f_\mu(\mathbf{x}) = \mathbb{E}[y|\mathbf{x}, \boldsymbol{\theta}]$  and  $f_\sigma(\mathbf{x}) = \sqrt{\mathbb{V}[y|\mathbf{x}, \boldsymbol{\theta}]}$ . We can share most of the layers (and hence parameters) between these two functions by using a common “backbone” and two output “heads”, as shown in Fig. 13.7. For the  $\mu$  head, we use a linear activation,  $\varphi(a) = a$ . For the  $\sigma$  head, we use a softplus activation,  $\varphi(a) = \sigma_+(a)$ . If we use linear heads and a nonlinear backbone, the overall model is given by

$$p(y|\mathbf{x}, \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \mathcal{N}(y|\mathbf{w}_\mu^\top f(\mathbf{x}; \mathbf{w}_{\text{shared}}), \sigma_+(\mathbf{w}_\sigma^\top f(\mathbf{x}; \mathbf{w}_{\text{shared}}))) \quad (13.26)$$

Fig. 13.8 shows the advantage of this kind of model on a dataset where the mean grows linearly over time, with seasonal oscillations, and the variance increases quadratically. (This is a simple

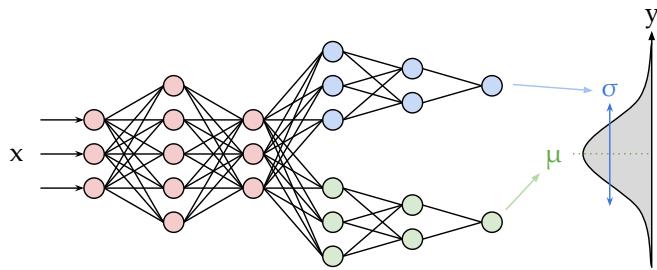


Figure 13.7: Illustration of an MLP with a shared “backbone” and two output “heads”, one for predicting the mean and one for predicting the variance. From <https://bit.ly/39bc4XL>. Used with kind permission of Brendan Hasz.

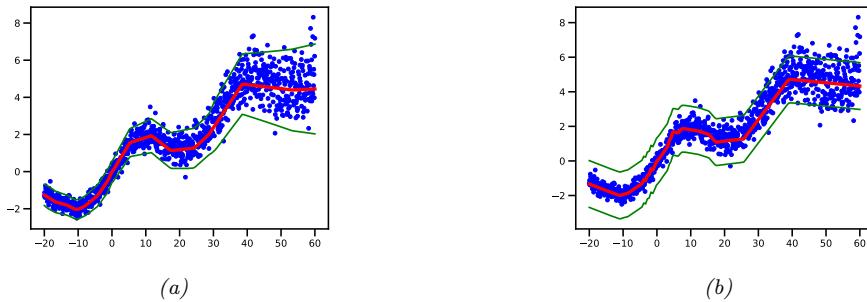


Figure 13.8: Illustration of predictions from an MLP fit using MLE to a 1d regression dataset with growing noise. (a) Output variance is input-dependent, as in Fig. 13.7. (b) Mean is computed using same model as in (a), but output variance is treated as a fixed parameter  $\sigma^2$ , which is estimated by MLE after training, as in Sec. 11.2.3.6. Generated by [mlp/mlp\\_1d\\_regression\\_hetero\\_tf.ipynb](#).

example of a **stochastic volatility model**; it can be used to model financial data, as well as the global temperature of the earth, which (due to climate change) is increasing in mean *and* in variance.) We see that a regression model where the output variance  $\sigma^2$  is treated as a fixed (input-independent) parameter will sometimes be underconfident, since it needs to adjust to the overall noise level, and cannot adapt to the noise level at each point in input space.

### 13.2.5 The importance of depth

One can show that an MLP *with one hidden layer* is a **universal function approximator**, meaning it can model any suitably smooth function, given enough hidden units, to any desired level of accuracy [HSW89; Cyb89; Hor91]. Intuitively, the reason for this is that each hidden unit can specify a half plane, and a sufficiently large combination of these can “carve up” any region of space, to which we can associate any response (this is easiest to see when using piecewise linear activation functions, as shown in Fig. 13.9).

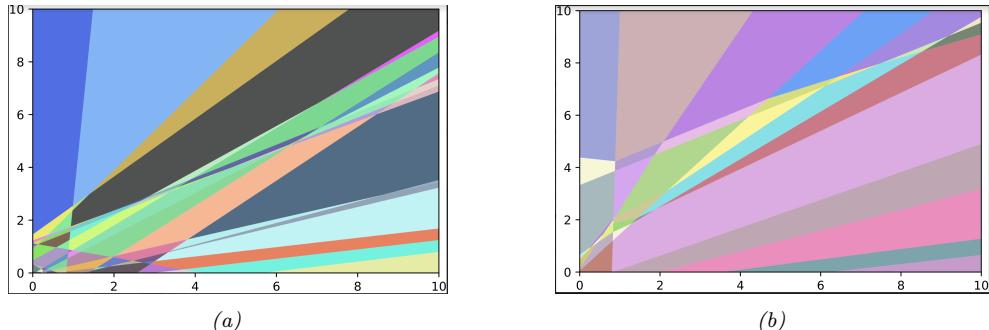


Figure 13.9: A decomposition of  $\mathbb{R}^2$  into a finite set of linear decision regions produced by an MLP with ReLU activations with (a) one hidden layer of 25 hidden units and (b) two hidden layers. From Figure 1 of [HAB19]. Used with kind permission of Maksym Andriushenko.

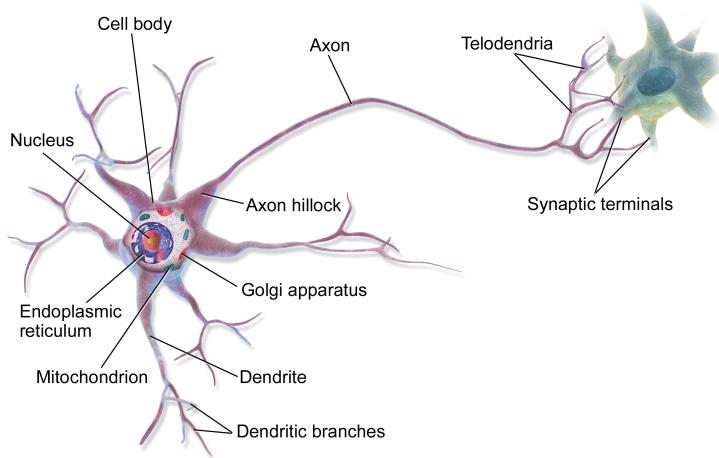
However, various arguments, both experimental and theoretical (e.g., [Has87; Mon+14; Rag+17; Pog+17]), have shown that deep networks work better than shallow ones. The reason is that later layers can leverage the features that are learned by earlier layers; that is, the function is defined in a **compositional** or **hierarchical** way. For example, suppose we want to classify DNA strings, and the positive class is associated with the regular expression  $*AA??CCGG??AA*$ . Although we could fit this with a single hidden layer model, intuitively it will be easier to learn if the model first learns to detect the AA and CG “motifs” using the hidden units in layer 1, and then uses these features to define a simple linear classifier in layer 2, analogously to how we solved the XOR problem in Sec. 13.2.1.

### 13.2.5.1 The “deep learning revolution”

Although the ideas behind DNNs date back several decades, it was not until the 2010s that they started to become very widely used. A breakthrough moment occurred in 2012, when [KSH12] showed that deep CNNs could significantly improve performance on the challenging ImageNet image classification benchmark, reducing the error rate from 26% to 16% in a single year (see Fig. 14.14b); this was a huge jump compared to the previous rate of progress of about 2% reduction per year. Around the same time, [DHK13] showed that deep neural networks could significantly outperform the previous state of the art on various speech recognition tasks.

The “explosion” in the usage of DNNs has several contributing factors. One is the availability of cheap **GPUs** (graphics processing units); these were originally developed to speed up image rendering for video games, but they can also massively reduce the time it takes to fit large CNNs, which involve similar kinds of matrix-vector computations. Another is the growth in large labeled datasets, which enables us to fit complex function approximators with many parameters without overfitting. (For example, ImageNet has 1.3M labeled images, and is used to fit models that have millions of parameters.) Indeed, if deep learning systems are viewed as “rockets”, then large datasets have been called the fuel.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup>. This popular analogy is due to Andrew Ng, who mentioned it in a keynote talk at the GPU Technology Conference (GTC) in 2015. His slides are available at <https://bit.ly/38RTxzH>.



*Figure 13.10: Illustration of two neurons connected together in a “circuit”. The output axon of the left neuron makes a synaptic connection with the dendrites of the cell on the right. Electrical charges, in the form of ion flows, allow the cells to communicate. From <https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Neuron>. Used with kind permission of Wikipedia author BruceBlaus.*

Motivated by the outstanding empirical success of DNNs, various companies started to become interested in this technology. This had led to the development of high quality open-source software libraries, such as Tensorflow (made by Google), PyTorch (made by Facebook), and MXNet (made by Amazon). These libraries support automatic differentiation (see Sec. 13.3.3) and scalable gradient-based optimization (see Sec. 5.4) of complex differentiable functions. We will use some of these libraries in various places throughout the book to implement a variety of models, not just DNNs.<sup>2</sup>

More details on the history of the “deep learning revolution” can be found in e.g., [Sej18].

### 13.2.6 Connections with biology

In this section, we discuss the connections between the kinds of neural networks we have discussed above, known as **artificial neural networks** or **ANNs**, and real neural networks. The details on how real biological brains work are quite complex (see e.g., [Kan+12]), but we can give a simple “cartoon”.

We start by considering a model of a single neuron. To a first approximation, we can say that whether neuron  $k$  fires, denoted by  $h_k \in \{0, 1\}$ , depends on the activity of its inputs, denoted by  $\mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^D$ , as well as the strength of the incoming connections, which we denote by  $\mathbf{w}_k \in \mathbb{R}^D$ . We can compute a weighted sum of the inputs using  $a_k = \mathbf{w}_k^\top \mathbf{x}$ . These weights can be viewed as “wires” connecting the inputs  $x_d$  to neuron  $h_k$ ; these are analogous to **dendrites** in a real neuron (see Fig. 13.10). This weighted sum is then compared to a threshold,  $b_k$ , and if the activation exceeds the threshold, the neuron fires; this is analogous to the neuron emitting an electrical output or **action**.

2. Note, however, that some have argued (see e.g., [BI19]) that current libraries are too inflexible, and put too much emphasis on methods based on dense matrix-vector multiplication, as opposed to more general algorithmic primitives.

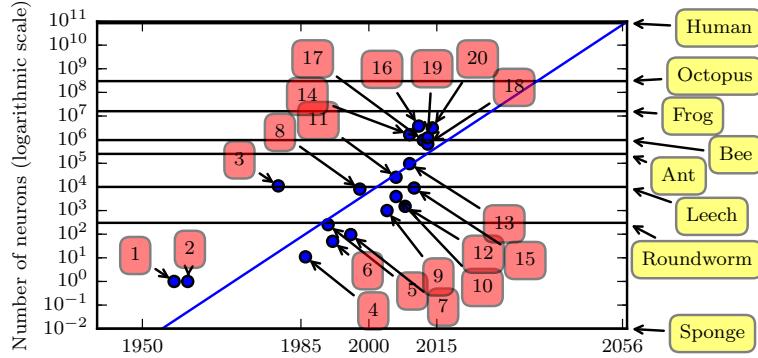


Figure 13.11: Plot of neural network sizes over time. Models 1, 2, 3 and 4 correspond to the perceptron [Ros58], the adaptive linear unit [WH60] the neocognitron [Fuk80], and the first MLP trained by backprop [RHW86]. From Figure 1.11 of [GBC16]. Used with kind permission of Ian Goodfellow.

**potential.** Thus we can model the behavior of the neuron using  $h_k(\mathbf{x}) = H(\mathbf{w}_k^\top \mathbf{x} - b_k)$ , where  $H(a) = \mathbb{I}(a > 0)$  is the Heaviside function. This is called the **McCulloch-Pitts model** of a neuron, and was proposed in 1943 [MP43].

We can combine multiple such neurons together to make an ANN. The result has sometimes been viewed as a model of the brain. However, ANNs differ from biological brains in many ways, including the following:

- Most ANNs use backpropagation to modify the strength of their connections (see Sec. 13.3). However, real brains do not use backprop, since there is no way to send information backwards along an axon [Ben+15b; BS16; KH19]. Instead, they use local update rules for adjusting synaptic strengths.
- Most ANNs are strictly feedforward, but real brains have many feedback connections. It is believed that this feedback acts like a prior, which can be combined with bottom up likelihoods from the sensory system to compute a posterior over hidden states of the world, which can then be used for optimal decision making (see e.g., [Doy+07]).
- Most ANNs use simplified neurons consisting of a weighted sum passed through a nonlinearity, but real biological neurons have complex dendritic tree structure (see Fig. 13.10), with complex spatio-temporal dynamics.
- Most ANNs are smaller in size and number of connections than biological brains (see Fig. 13.11). Of course, ANNs are getting larger every week, fueled by various new **hardware accelerators**, such as GPUs and **TPUs (tensor processing units)**, etc. However, even if ANNs match biological brains in terms of number of units, the comparison is misleading since the processing capability of a biological neuron is much higher than an artificial neuron (see point above).
- Most ANNs are designed to model a single function, such as mapping an image to a label, or a sequence of words to another sequence of words. By contrast, biological brains are very complex

systems, composed of multiple specialized interacting modules, which implement different kinds of functions or behaviors such as perception, control, memory, language, etc (see e.g., [Sha88; Kan+12]).

Of course, there are efforts to make realistic models of biological brains (e.g., the **Blue Brain Project** [Mar06; Yon19]). However, an interesting question is whether studying the brain at this level of detail is useful for “solving AI”. It is commonly believed that the low level details of biological brains do not matter if our goal is to build “intelligent machines”, just as aeroplanes do not flap their wings. However, presumably “AIs” will follow similar “laws of intelligence” to intelligent biological agents, just as planes and birds follow the same laws of aerodynamics.

Unfortunately, we do not yet know what the “laws of intelligence” are, or indeed if there even are such laws. In this book we make the assumption that any intelligent agent should follow the basic principles of information processing and Bayesian decision theory, which is known to be the optimal way to make decisions under uncertainty (see Sec. 8.4.2).

Of course, biological agents are subject to many constraints (e.g., computational, ecological) which often require algorithmic “shortcuts” to the optimal solution; this can explain many of the **heuristics** that people use in everyday reasoning [KST82; GTA00; Gri20]. As the tasks we want our machines to solve become harder, we may be able to gain insights from other areas of neuroscience and cognitive science (see e.g., [MWK16; Has+17; Lak+17]).

### 13.3 Backpropagation

In this section, we describe the famous **backpropagation algorithm**, which can be used to compute the gradient of a loss function applied to the output of the network wrt the parameters in each layer. This gradient can then be passed to a gradient-based optimization algorithm, as we discuss in Sec. 13.4.

The backpropagation algorithm was originally discovered in [BH69], and independently in [Wer74]. However, it was [RHW86] that brought the algorithm to the attention of the “mainstream” ML community.

We initially assume the computation graph is a simple linear chain of stacked layers, as in an MLP. In this case, backprop is equivalent to repeated applications of the chain rule of calculus (see Eq. (A.37)). However, the method can be generalized to arbitrary directed acyclic graphs (DAGs), as we discuss in Sec. 13.3.4.

#### 13.3.1 Forwards pass

Suppose we have a network with  $L$  layers, where the activations of the units in layer  $l$  are denoted by  $\mathbf{z}_l$ . Let  $\mathbf{z}_0 = \mathbf{x}$  be the input,  $\hat{\mathbf{y}} = \mathbf{z}_L$  be the predicted output, and  $\mathcal{L} = \ell(\mathbf{y}, \hat{\mathbf{y}}) = \mathbf{z}_{L+1}$  be the loss for this example, where  $\mathbf{y}$  are the true targets (often called “labels”). We can view the loss function as layer  $L + 1$ , as illustrated in Fig. 13.12.

Each layer  $l$  produces a forward “message”  $\mathbf{z}_l \triangleq f_l(\mathbf{z}_{l-1}; \boldsymbol{\theta}_l)$ , which is a vector with each component being interpreted as the value of a single neuron in the layer. We can compute the overall function in a feedforward way by recursively computing these messages. In the neural net community, this is called **inference**, since it corresponds to inferring a distribution over the output  $\mathbf{y}_n$  given the input  $\mathbf{x}_n$  and the parameters  $\boldsymbol{\theta}$ , i.e., inference in a DNN computes  $p(\mathbf{y}_n | \mathbf{x}_n, \boldsymbol{\theta})$ .

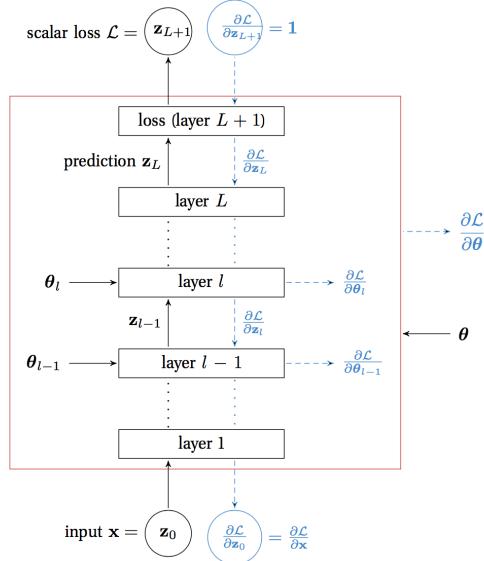


Figure 13.12: A layered neural network illustrating the forward and backward propagation of messages. Upward pointing edges on the forwards pass contain the activation vectors; downward pointing edges on the backwards pass contain gradient vectors. Used with kind permission of Brendan Shillingford. .

### 13.3.2 Backwards pass

In inference, each layer takes the previous layer's forward message  $\mathbf{x}$  as input, and produces a forward message  $\mathbf{z} = f(\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta})$  as output. (We drop the  $l$  subscript for brevity.) These correspond to the upwards black arrows in Fig. 13.12. When training, each layer takes the backward message of the next layer  $\frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial \mathbf{z}}$  as input, and produces two backward messages as output: one is  $\frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial \mathbf{x}}$ , which is the gradient wrt the previous layer  $\mathbf{x}$ , and the other is  $\frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial \boldsymbol{\theta}}$ , which is the gradient wrt the parameters (if any) of the current layer.

We can compute the gradient wrt the  $i$ 'th input as follows:

$$\frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial x_i} = \sum_j \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial z_j} \frac{\partial z_j}{\partial x_i} = \sum_j \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial z_j} \frac{\partial f_j(\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta})}{\partial x_i}. \quad (13.27)$$

In vector notation, we have

$$\frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial \mathbf{x}} = \mathbf{J}_{\mathbf{x}} \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial \mathbf{z}} \quad (13.28)$$

where  $\frac{\partial f(\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta})}{\partial \mathbf{x}} = \mathbf{J}_{\mathbf{x}}$  is the Jacobian wrt inputs for this layer. This backwards message corresponds to the downwards blue arrows in Fig. 13.12.

We can compute the gradient wrt the  $i$ 'th parameter as follows:

$$\frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial \theta_i} = \sum_j \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial z_j} \frac{\partial z_j}{\partial \theta_i} = \sum_j \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial z_j} \frac{\partial f_j(\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta})}{\partial \theta_i} \quad (13.29)$$

This backwards message corresponds to the rightward blue arrows in Fig. 13.12.

### 13.3.2.1 Worked example: linear layer

Let us expand the above equations for the case where  $f$  corresponds to a linear layer, so  $\mathbf{z} = f(\mathbf{x}) = \varphi(\mathbf{W}\mathbf{x})$ . (We have dropped the bias terms for notational simplicity.) We can visualize this as  $\mathbf{x} \xrightarrow{\mathbf{W}} \mathbf{a} \xrightarrow{\varphi} \mathbf{z}$ , in which we compute a linear function of the inputs  $\mathbf{x}$  to get the pre-activations  $\mathbf{a}$ , and then map this through a nonlinearity to get the output activations  $\mathbf{z}$ .

We can derive the gradient of the loss wrt the  $i$ 'th input as follows:

$$\frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial x_i} = \sum_j \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial z_j} \frac{\partial z_j}{\partial x_i} = \sum_j \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial z_j} \frac{\partial z_j}{\partial \mathbf{a}} \frac{\partial \mathbf{a}}{\partial x_i} = \sum_j \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial z_j} \varphi'(\mathbf{a})_j w_{ji} = \sum_j d_j w_{ji} \quad (13.30)$$

In vector form we have

$$\frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial \mathbf{x}} = \mathbf{W}^\top \mathbf{d} \quad (13.31)$$

where

$$\mathbf{d} \triangleq \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial \mathbf{a}} = \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial \mathbf{z}} \frac{\partial \mathbf{z}}{\partial \mathbf{a}} = \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial \mathbf{z}} \odot \varphi'(\mathbf{a}) = \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial \mathbf{z}} \text{diag}(\varphi'(\mathbf{a})) \quad (13.32)$$

We can also derive the gradient wrt a single parameter  $\theta_i = w_{j',k'}$ :

$$\frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial w_{j',k'}} = \sum_j \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial z_j} \frac{\partial z_j}{\partial w_{j',k'}} = \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial z'_j} \varphi'(\mathbf{W}\mathbf{x})_{j'} x_{k'} \quad (13.33)$$

In vector form we have

$$\frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial \mathbf{W}} = \mathbf{d} \mathbf{x}^\top \quad (13.34)$$

Putting this together for multiple layers, we get the final backpropagation algorithm shown in Algorithm 5. See Fig. 13.13 for a visualization of this algorithm applied to a 3 layer MLP.

### 13.3.3 Automatic differentiation

The backprop algorithm is just a special case of a more general technique known as **automatic differentiation (AD)**, also called **autograd**. [Bay+15] provides a review of this field; here we just give a brief explanation, in the context of MLPs.

To explain AD, suppose we have a function of the form  $f : \mathbb{R}^D \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ , which is defined in terms of a chain-structured graph with  $L$  layers:

$$f(\mathbf{x}) = f_L(f_{L-1}(\dots f_2(f_1(\mathbf{x})))) \quad (13.35)$$

Note that  $f_L$  maps a vector to a scalar, whereas the other functions map vectors to vectors.

By the chain rule, the derivative with respect to the input is a product of the Jacobian matrices:

$$\frac{\partial f_L(f_{L-1}(\dots f_2(f_1(\mathbf{x}))))}{\partial \mathbf{x}^\top} = \frac{\partial f_L}{\partial \mathbf{f}_{L-1}^\top} \cdot \frac{\partial \mathbf{f}_{L-1}}{\partial \mathbf{f}_{L-2}^\top} \dots \frac{\partial \mathbf{f}_2}{\partial \mathbf{f}_1^\top} \cdot \frac{\partial \mathbf{f}_1}{\partial \mathbf{x}^\top}. \quad (13.36)$$

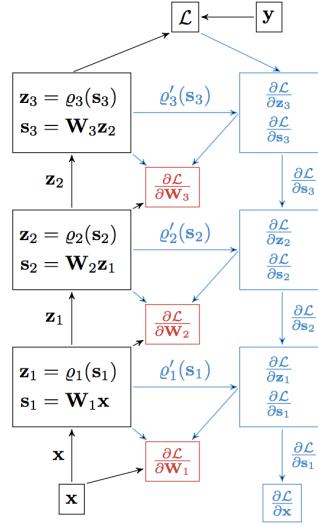


Figure 13.13: Detailed illustration of backpropagation in a 3 layer MLP.  $a_l = W_l z_{l-1}$  is the pre-synaptic activations of layer  $l$ , and  $z_l = \varphi_l(a_l)$  is the post-synaptic activations in layer  $l$ , where  $\varphi_l$  is the activation function. Black arrows on the left correspond to the forwards pass (“inference”), blue arrows on the right correspond to backpropagation of gradients. We see how the gradients for the weights of a given layer (in red boxes) rely on gradients for the activations from the layer above (in blue boxes), as well as activations from the layer below (black boxes), which is why (in a naive implementation) we need to keep the whole network in memory during training. Used with kind permission of Brendan Shillingford.

---

**Algorithm 5:** Backpropagation for an MLP

---

- 1 Initialize  $z_0 = x$
  - 2 **for**  $l = 1 : L$  **do**
  - 3     $a_l = W_l z_{l-1}$
  - 4     $z_l = \varphi_l(a_l)$
  - 5     $\frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial z_L} = \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}(y, z)}{\partial z}|_{z=z_L}$
  - 6 **for**  $l = L : 1$  **do**
  - 7     $d_l = \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial z_l} \odot \varphi'_l(a_l)$
  - 8     $\frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial W_l} = d_l z_{l-1}^\top$
  - 9     $\frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial z_{l-1}} = W_l^\top d_l$
  - 10 Return  $\frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial \theta} = [\frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial W_1}, \dots, \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial W_L}]$
-

There are two orders in which this product of Jacobians can be evaluated, since matrix products are associative. The first is from right-to-left, which is known as **forward-mode differentiation**:

$$\frac{\partial f_L(\mathbf{f}_{L-1}(\cdots \mathbf{f}_2(\mathbf{f}_1(\mathbf{x}))))}{\partial \mathbf{x}^\top} = \left( \frac{\partial f_L}{\partial \mathbf{f}_{L-1}^\top} \cdot \left( \frac{\partial \mathbf{f}_{L-1}}{\partial \mathbf{f}_{L-2}^\top} \left( \cdots \left( \frac{\partial \mathbf{f}_2}{\partial \mathbf{f}_1^\top} \cdot \frac{\partial \mathbf{f}_1}{\partial \mathbf{x}^\top} \right) \right) \right) \right) \quad (13.37)$$

This can be computed by a single forwards pass.

The second approach is from left-to-right, which is known as **reverse-mode differentiation**:

$$\frac{\partial f_L(\mathbf{f}_{L-1}(\cdots \mathbf{f}_2(\mathbf{f}_1(\mathbf{x}))))}{\partial \mathbf{x}^\top} = \left( \left( \left( \left( \frac{\partial f_L}{\partial \mathbf{f}_{L-1}^\top} \cdot \frac{\partial \mathbf{f}_{L-1}}{\partial \mathbf{f}_{L-2}^\top} \right) \cdots \right) \frac{\partial \mathbf{f}_2}{\partial \mathbf{f}_1^\top} \right) \cdot \frac{\partial \mathbf{f}_1}{\partial \mathbf{x}^\top} \right). \quad (13.38)$$

This requires that we make a forwards pass, to evaluate each  $\mathbf{f}_l$  term, and then perform a separate backwards pass, to evaluate the gradients at these intermediate values.

Which method we should choose depends on the form of the function. In Eq. (13.38) each expression in parentheses is a vector, therefore each of the  $L$  products requires keeping track of just one vector in each multiplication. By contrast, in Eq. (13.37), each expression is a matrix. We would see the opposite if the input  $\mathbf{x}$  were a scalar and  $f_L$  were vector-valued. Hence, forward-mode is most efficient when we want derivatives of a function mapping from a scalar to a vector, and reverse-mode is most efficient when we want derivatives of a function mapping from a vector to a scalar. Therefore, we use reverse-mode differentiation for training most ML models, since  $f_L$  is a scalar-valued loss function and the gradient is a vector. The downside of reverse-mode is that it requires access to the intermediate values that are obtained during a forward pass. This can cause memory issues in big models.

### 13.3.4 Computation graphs

AD can be applied to any differentiable function, so long as it is composed of elementary operations like addition, subtraction, multiplication, and division. We can assemble these functions into a **computation graph**. Fig. 13.14 shows a simple example, where  $f(x, y, \theta) = ax^2 + bxy + cy^2$ . Each layer in the graph has two kinds of input: data values (e.g.,  $x$ ,  $y$ , or transformations of  $x$  and  $y$ ) and parameters ( $a$ ,  $b$ , and  $c$ ). We can compute gradients wrt to either the data or the parameters. When training ML models, we want the gradient wrt the parameters; however, it can also be useful to take the gradient wrt the input data, as we discuss in Sec. 14.5.4. Note that not all operations that can be written in a program are differentiable; for example, an **if**-statement depending on the value of a variable might cause problem. Consider the following function, which implements the identity function but has a control statement,

```
f(x) = if x = 2 { return 2 } else { return x }
```

The gradient of  $f$  should be 1, but its output is a constant if  $x = 2$  and AD would return 0. Nevertheless, a large number of operations can be made into differentiable form; this gives rise to the term “**differentiable programming**”.

To implement reverse mode AD for a computation graph, each node in the graph has to implement two methods: an **fprop** method for the forwards pass, and a **bprop** method for the backwards pass.

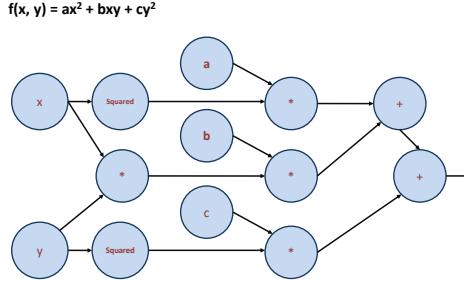


Figure 13.14: The computation graph for the function  $f(x, y; \theta) = ax^2 + bxy + cy^2$ , where  $\theta = [a, b, c]$  are the parameters.

The fprop method for node  $n$  computes the vector of values for that node given the values of its parents in the graph:

$$\mathbf{x}_n = f_n(\{\mathbf{x}_p : p \in \text{parents}(n)\}) \quad (13.39)$$

The bprop method for node  $n$  computes the gradient vector for that node given the gradients of its children in the graph:

$$\mathbf{g}_n = b_n(\{\mathbf{g}_c : c \in \text{children}(n)\}) \quad (13.40)$$

$$= \sum_{c \in \text{children}(n)} \frac{df}{d\mathbf{x}_c^\top} \frac{\partial \mathbf{x}_c}{\partial \mathbf{x}_n^\top} = \sum_c \mathbf{g}_c^\top \mathbf{J}_{nc} \quad (13.41)$$

where  $\mathbf{J}_{nc}$  is the Jacobian of the function  $f_c$  for child  $c$  applied to inputs  $\mathbf{x}_n$ , with all other inputs held fixed. That is,

$$\mathbf{J}_{nc} = \left[ \frac{\partial f_c(\mathbf{x}_n, \mathbf{x}_{-n})_i}{\partial \mathbf{x}_{n,j}} \right]_{i,j} \quad (13.42)$$

where  $f_c(\mathbf{x}_n, \mathbf{x}_{-n})$  is the value of the child node (a vector) when given inputs  $\mathbf{x}_n$  and  $\mathbf{x}_{-n}$  (where  $-n$  are the coparents of  $c$ ). In Sec. 13.3, we show a worked example, where we apply reverse mode AD to an MLP, thus deriving the backpropagation algorithm.

It remains to specify how to create the computation graph. If the computation graph is explicitly defined before being executed (e.g., using Python code to specify the graph structure), it is said to follow **define-then-run** semantics. This means its shape will be fixed, so we can perform various optimizations on the graph up front. For example, we can “fuse” certain operations together, and pre-allocate nodes to compute gradients for the backwards pass.

If the computation graph is created implicitly while executing the function, it is said to follow **define-by-run** semantics. This allows the graph structure to vary dynamically (e.g., to handle variable sized sequences or trees), but the graph becomes harder to optimize. To implement the define-by-run method, we can use **tape-based AD**, which records all the operations that were performed in the forwards pass, and then runs the tape backwards, applying the relevant derivative operators.

We can get the best of both worlds as follows. The first time we execute the program, we record the shape of the graph that was created. If we can guarantee that the shape of the graph will be the same across future runs, we can safely reuse it. Thus the first round of inference may be slow, but subsequent rounds will be much faster. This is called **just-in-time compilation** or **JIT**. To further speed things up, we can perform **program tracing**, in which we execute the function on abstract values of a certain shape and type, just to determine the structure of the graph, before it is applied to any real data. These techniques are used in various deep learning libraries, such as **JAX** (which stands for “just after execution”) [Bra+18].

## 13.4 Training neural networks

In this section, we discuss how to fit DNNs to data. The standard approach is to use maximum likelihood estimation, by minimizing the NLL:

$$\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta}) = -\log p(\mathcal{D}|\boldsymbol{\theta}) = -\sum_{n=1}^N \log p(\mathbf{y}_n|\mathbf{x}_n; \boldsymbol{\theta}) \quad (13.43)$$

It is also common to add a regularizer (such as the negative log prior), as we discuss in Sec. 13.5.

In principle we can just use the backprop algorithm (Sec. 13.3) to compute the gradient of this loss and pass it to an off-the-shelf optimizer, such as those discussed in Chapter 5. (The Adam optimizer of Sec. 5.4.6.3 is a popular choice, due to its ability to scale to large datasets (by virtue of being an SGD-type algorithm), and to converge fairly quickly (by virtue of using diagonal preconditioning and momentum).) However, in practice this may not work well. In this section, we discuss various problems that may arise, as well as some solutions. For more details on the practicalities of training DNNs, see various other books, such as [HG20; Zha+19a; Gér19].

In addition to practical issues, there are important theoretical issues. In particular, we note that the DNN loss is not a convex objective, so in general we will not be able to find the global optimum. Nevertheless, SGD can often find surprisingly good solutions. The research into why this is the case is still being conducted; see [Bah+20] for a recent review of some of this work.

### 13.4.1 Tuning the learning rate

When fitting a DNN with SGD, tuning the learning rate is important for good performance. In Sec. 5.4.3, we discussed the necessary conditions which the learning rate for SGD must satisfy if it is to converge to a local optimum, but these conditions do not specify precisely what **learning rate schedule** to use.

In the deep learning literature, many heuristics have been proposed, some of which are illustrated in Fig. 13.15. These include the piecewise constant schedule (Fig. 13.15b), the cosine or cyclical schedule (Fig. 13.15c), the one-cycle schedule (Fig. 13.15d), etc. (The latter starts with a small value, to prevent the parameters from “exploding”, then warms up until it finds a good basin of attraction, and then cools down to find a local minimum.)

In addition to choosing the decay schedule, it is necessary to choose the initial learning rate  $\eta_0$ . A common heuristic, proposed in [BCN18], and independently in [Smi18] (who called it the “**learning rate finder**”) is as follows: start with a small value, compute the training or validation loss on a minibatch, and then try successively larger ones (increasing by a factor of 10 at each step), until the

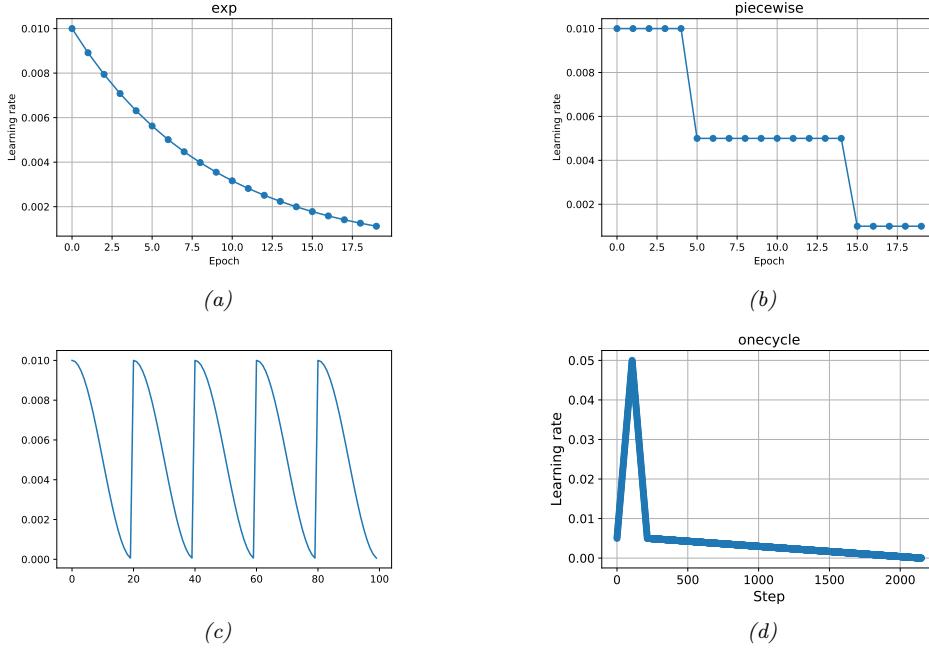


Figure 13.15: Illustration of various learning rate heuristics. (a) Exponential schedule. (b) Piecewise constant schedule. (c) Cosine annealing schedule (also called **stochastic gradient with restarts**) from [Smi17; LH17]. (d) One-cycle schedule from [Smi18].

loss “blows up”, at value  $\eta_{\max}$ . For example, in Fig. 13.16 we see that  $\eta_{\max} \approx 0.1$ . We then set  $\eta_0$  to be something a bit smaller (e.g., 10x smaller) than  $\eta_{\max}$ .

### 13.4.2 Vanishing and exploding gradients

When training very deep models, the gradient tends to become either very small (this is called the **vanishing gradient problem**) or very large (this is called the **exploding gradient probem**), because the error signal is being passed through a series of layers which either amplify or diminish it [Hoc+01]. (Similar problems arise in RNNs on long sequences, as we explain in Sec. 15.2.5.)

To explain the problem in more detail, consider the gradient of the loss wrt a node at layer  $l$ :

$$\frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial \mathbf{z}_l} = \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial \mathbf{z}_{l+1}} \frac{\partial \mathbf{z}_{l+1}}{\partial \mathbf{z}_l} = \mathbf{J}_l \mathbf{g}_{l+1} \quad (13.44)$$

where  $\mathbf{J}_l = \frac{\partial \mathbf{z}_{l+1}}{\partial \mathbf{z}_l}$  is the Jacobian matrix, and  $\mathbf{g}_{l+1} = \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial \mathbf{z}_{l+1}}$  is the gradient at the next layer. If  $\mathbf{J}_l$  is constant across layers, it is clear that the contribution of the gradient from the final layer,  $\mathbf{g}_L$ , to layer  $l$  will be  $\mathbf{J}^{L-l} \mathbf{g}_L$ . Thus the behavior of the system depends on the eigenvectors of  $\mathbf{J}$ .

Although  $\mathbf{J}$  is a real-valued matrix, it is not (in general) symmetric, so its eigenvalues and eigenvectors can be complex-valued, with the imaginary components corresponding to oscillatory

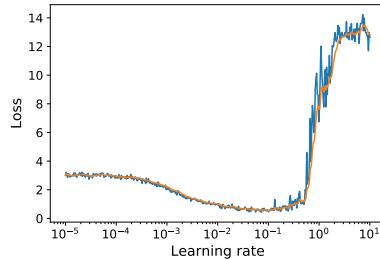


Figure 13.16: Training loss vs learning rate for a small MLP fit to FashionMNIST using vanilla SGD. (Raw loss in blue, EWMA smoothed version in orange). Generated by `lrfinder.py`.

behavior. Let  $\lambda$  be the **spectral radius** of  $\mathbf{J}$ , which is the maximum of the absolute values of the eigenvalues. If this is greater than 1, the gradient can explode; if this is less than 1, the gradient can vanish. (Similarly, the spectral radius of  $\mathbf{W}$ , connecting  $\mathbf{z}_l$  to  $\mathbf{z}_{l+1}$ , determines the stability of the dynamical system when run in forwards mode.)

The exploding gradient problem can be ameliorated by **gradient clipping**, in which we cap the magnitude of the gradient if it becomes too large, i.e., we use

$$\mathbf{g}' = \min(1, \frac{c}{\|\mathbf{g}\|})\mathbf{g} \quad (13.45)$$

This way, the norm of  $\mathbf{g}'$  can never exceed  $c$ , but the vector is always in the same direction as  $\mathbf{g}$ .

However, the vanishing gradient problem is more difficult to solve. There are various solutions, such as the following:

- Modify the activation functions at each layer to prevent the gradient from becoming too large or too small; see Sec. 13.2.3.
- Modify the architecture so that the updates are additive rather than multiplicative; see Sec. 13.4.3.
- Modify the architecture to standardize the activations at each layer, so that the distribution of activations over the dataset remains constant during training; see Sec. 13.4.4.
- Carefully choose the initial values of the parameters; see Sec. 13.4.5.

### 13.4.3 Residual connections

One solution to the vanishing gradient problem for DNNs is to use a **residual network** or **ResNet** [He+16a]. This is a feedforward model in which each layer has the form of a **residual block**, defined by

$$\mathcal{F}'_l(\mathbf{x}) = \mathcal{F}_l(\mathbf{x}) + \mathbf{x} \quad (13.46)$$

where  $\mathcal{F}_l$  is a standard shallow nonlinear mapping (e.g., linear-activation-linear). The inner  $\mathcal{F}_l$  function computes the residual term or delta that needs to be added to the input  $\mathbf{x}$  to generate

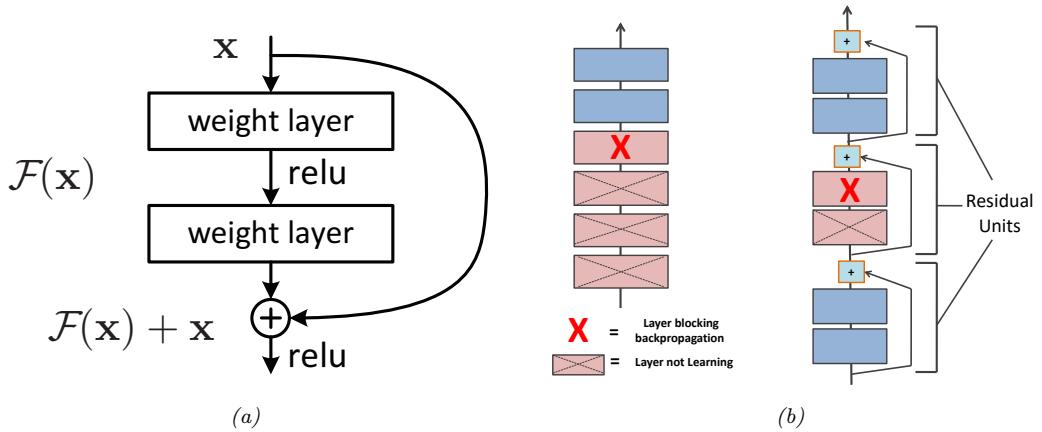


Figure 13.17: (a) Illustration of a residual block. (b) Illustration of why adding residual connections can help when training a very deep model. Adapted from Figure 14.16 of [Gér19].

the desired output; it is often easier to learn to generate a small perturbation to the input than to directly predict the output. (Residual connections are usually used in conjunction with CNNs, as discussed in Sec. 14.3.2.4, but can also be used in MLPs.)

A model with residual connections has the same number of parameters as a model without residual connections, but it is easier to train. The reason is that gradients can flow directly from the output to earlier layers, as sketched in Fig. 13.17b. To see this, note that the activations at the output layer can be derived in terms of any previous layer  $l$  using

$$\mathbf{z}_L = \mathbf{z}_l + \sum_{i=l}^{L-1} \mathcal{F}_i(\mathbf{z}_i; \boldsymbol{\theta}_i). \quad (13.47)$$

We can therefore compute the gradient of the loss wrt the parameters of the  $l$ 'th layer as follows:

$$\frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial \boldsymbol{\theta}_l} = \frac{\partial \mathbf{z}_l}{\partial \boldsymbol{\theta}_l} \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial \mathbf{z}_l} \quad (13.48)$$

$$= \frac{\partial \mathbf{z}_l}{\partial \boldsymbol{\theta}_l} \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial \mathbf{z}_L} \frac{\partial \mathbf{z}_L}{\partial \mathbf{z}_l} \quad (13.49)$$

$$= \frac{\partial \mathbf{z}_l}{\partial \boldsymbol{\theta}_l} \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial \mathbf{z}_L} \left( 1 + \sum_{i=l}^{L-1} \frac{\partial f(\mathbf{z}_i; \boldsymbol{\theta}_i)}{\partial \mathbf{z}_l} \right) \quad (13.50)$$

$$= \frac{\partial \mathbf{z}_l}{\partial \boldsymbol{\theta}_l} \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial \mathbf{z}_L} + \text{other terms} \quad (13.51)$$

Thus we see that the gradient at layer  $l$  depends directly on the gradient at layer  $L$  in a way that is independent of the depth of the network.

### 13.4.4 Batch normalization

Another popular modification to DNN architectures is to add a layer which ensures the distribution of the activations within a layer is zero mean and unit variance, when averaged across the samples in a minibatch. This is called **batch normalization (BN)** [IS15].

More precisely, we replace the activation vector  $\mathbf{z}_n$  (or sometimes the pre-activation vector  $\mathbf{a}_n$ ) for example  $n$  (in some layer) with  $\tilde{\mathbf{z}}_n$ , which is computed as follows:

$$\tilde{\mathbf{z}}_n = \gamma \odot \hat{\mathbf{z}}_n + \beta \quad (13.52)$$

$$\hat{\mathbf{z}}_n = \frac{\mathbf{z}_n - \mu_{\mathcal{B}}}{\sqrt{\sigma_{\mathcal{B}}^2 + \epsilon}} \quad (13.53)$$

$$\mu_{\mathcal{B}} = \frac{1}{|\mathcal{B}|} \sum_{\mathbf{z} \in \mathcal{B}} \mathbf{z} \quad (13.54)$$

$$\sigma_{\mathcal{B}}^2 = \frac{1}{|\mathcal{B}|} \sum_{\mathbf{z} \in \mathcal{B}} (\mathbf{z} - \mu_{\mathcal{B}})^2 \quad (13.55)$$

where  $\mathcal{B}$  is the minibatch containing example  $n$ ,  $\mu_{\mathcal{B}}$  is the mean of the activations for this batch<sup>3</sup>,  $\sigma_{\mathcal{B}}^2$  is the corresponding variance,  $\hat{\mathbf{z}}_n$  is the standardized activation vector,  $\tilde{\mathbf{z}}_n$  is the shifted and scaled version (the output of the BN layer),  $\beta$  and  $\gamma$  are learnable parameters for this layer, and  $\epsilon > 0$  is a small constant. Since this transformation is differentiable, we can easily pass gradients back to the input of the layer and to the BN parameters  $\beta$  and  $\gamma$ .

When applied to the input layer, batch normalization is equivalent to the usual standardization procedure we discussed in Sec. 10.2.8. Note that the mean and variance for the input layer can be computed once, since the data is static. However, the empirical means and variances of the internal layers keep changing, as the parameters adapt. (This is sometimes called “**internal covariate shift**”.) This is why we need to recompute  $\mu$  and  $\sigma^2$  on each minibatch.

The benefits of batch normalization (in terms of training speed and stability) can be quite dramatic, especially for deep CNNs. The exact reasons for this are still unclear, but BN seems to make the optimization landscape significantly smoother [San+18]. It also reduces the sensitivity to the learning rate [ALL18]. In addition to computational advantages, it has statistical advantages. In particular, BN acts like a regularizer; indeed it can be shown to be equivalent to a form of approximate Bayesian inference [TAS18; Luo+19].

However, the reliance on a minibatch of data causes several problems. First, it can result in unstable estimates of the parameters when training with small batch sizes, although a more recent version of the method, known as **batch renormalization** [Iof17], partially addresses this. Second, the batch normalization layer needs to be modified before it can be applied at test time, since we may only have a batch size of 1 for inference. The standard approach to this is as follows: after training, compute  $\mu_l$  and  $\sigma_l^2$  for layer  $l$  across all the examples in the training set, and then “freeze” these parameters, and add them to the list of other parameters for the layer, namely  $\beta_l$  and  $\gamma_l$ . At test time, we then use these frozen training values for  $\mu_l$  and  $\sigma_l^2$ , rather than computing statistics from the test batch. (Thus when using a model with BN, we need to specify if we are using it for inference or training.)

3. When applied to a convolutional layer, we average across spatial locations and across examples, but not across channels (so the length of  $\mu$  is the number of channels). When applied to a fully connected layer, we just average across examples (so the length of  $\mu$  is the width of the layer).

For speed, we can combine a frozen batch norm layer with the previous layer. In particular suppose the previous layer computes  $\mathbf{XW} + \mathbf{b}$ ; combining this with BN gives  $\gamma \odot (\mathbf{XW} + \mathbf{b} - \boldsymbol{\mu})/\sigma + \beta$ . If we define  $\mathbf{W}' = \gamma \odot \mathbf{W}/\sigma$  and  $\mathbf{b}' = \gamma \odot (\mathbf{b} - \boldsymbol{\mu})/\sigma + \beta$ , then we can write the combined layers as  $\mathbf{XW}' + \mathbf{b}'$ . This is called **fused batchnorm**. Similar tricks can be developed to speed up BN during training [Jun+19].

### 13.4.5 Parameter initialization

Since the objective function for DNN training is non-convex, the way that we initialize the parameters of a DNN can play a big role on what kind of solution we end up with, as well as how easy the function is to train (i.e., how well information can flow forwards and backwards through the model). In the rest of this section, we present some common heuristic methods that are used for initializing parameters.

#### 13.4.5.1 Heuristics

In [GB10], they show that sampling parameters from a standard normal can result in the variance of the outputs being much larger than the variance of the inputs, resulting in exploding gradients. To solve this problem, they proposed to sample parameters from a Gaussian distribution with mean 0 and variance given by  $\sigma^2 = 1/\text{fan}_{\text{avg}}$ , where  $\text{fan}_{\text{avg}} = (\text{fan}_{\text{in}} + \text{fan}_{\text{out}})/2$ , where  $\text{fan}_{\text{in}}$  is the **fan-in** of a unit (number of incoming connections), and  $\text{fan}_{\text{out}}$  is the **fan-out** of the unit (number of outgoing connections). This approach is known as **Xavier initialization** or **Glorot initialization**, named after the first author of [GB10]. If we use  $\sigma^2 = 1/\text{fan}_{\text{in}}$ , we get a method known as **LeCun initialization**, named after Yann LeCun, who proposed it in the 1990s. This is equivalent to Glorot initialization when  $\text{fan}_{\text{in}} = \text{fan}_{\text{out}}$ . If we use  $\sigma^2 = 2/\text{fan}_{\text{in}}$ , the method is called **He initialization**, named after Ximing He, who proposed it in [He+15]. The best choice of initialization method depends on which activation function you use. For linear, tanh, logistic, and softmax, Glorot is recommended. For ReLU and variants, He is recommended. For SELU, LeCun is recommended. See [Gér19] for more heuristics.

We can also adopt a data-driven approach to parameter initialization. For example, [MM16] proposed a simple but effective scheme known as **layer-sequential unit-variance** (LSUV) initialization, which works as follows. First we initialize the weights of each (fully connected or convolutional) layer with orthonormal matrices, as proposed in [SMG14]. (This can be achieved by drawing from  $\mathbf{w} \sim \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{0}, \mathbf{I})$ , reshaping to  $\mathbf{w}$  to a matrix  $\mathbf{W}$ , and then computing an orthonormal basis using QR or SVD decomposition.) Then, for each layer  $l$ , we compute the variance  $v_l$  of the activations across a minibatch; we then rescale using  $\mathbf{W}_l := \mathbf{W}_l / \sqrt{v_l}$ . This scheme can be viewed as an orthonormal initialization combined with batch normalization performed only on the first mini-batch. Experiments show that such normalization is sufficient and, the method is faster than full batch normalization.

Another approach, known as **fixup**, is presented in [ZDM19]. This can be used to train very deep resnets without batchnorm.

#### 13.4.5.2 A function space view

Consider an MLP with  $L$  hidden layers and a linear output:

$$f(\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \mathbf{W}_L(\cdots \varphi(\mathbf{W}_2 \varphi(\mathbf{W}_1 \mathbf{x} + \mathbf{b}_1) + \mathbf{b}_2)) + \mathbf{b}_L \quad (13.56)$$

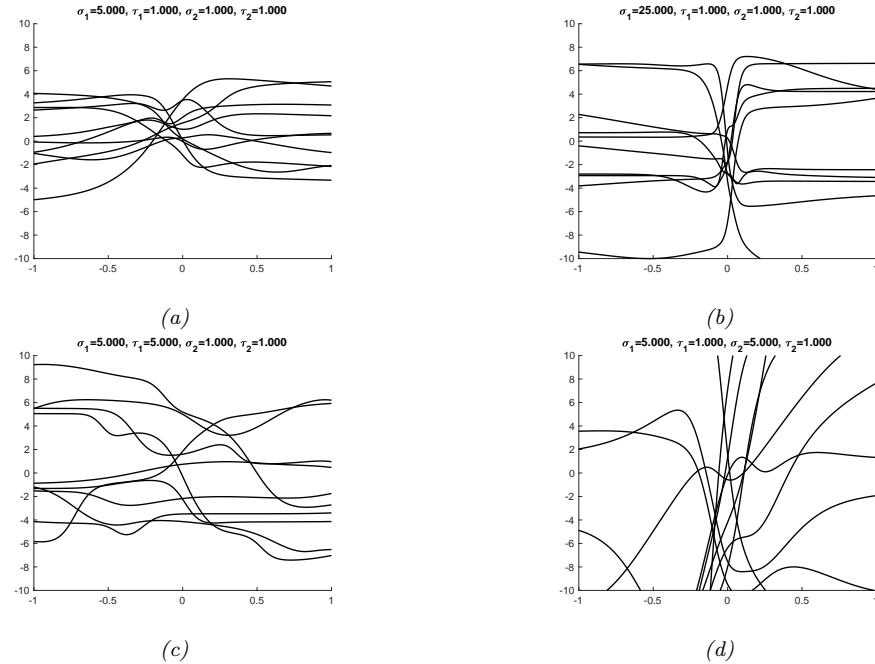


Figure 13.18: The effects of changing the hyperparameters on an MLP with one hidden layer. (a) Random functions sampled from a Gaussian prior with hyperparameters  $\alpha_1 = 5$ ,  $\beta_1 = 1$ ,  $\alpha_2 = 1$ ,  $\beta_2 = 1$ . (b) Increasing  $\alpha_1$  by factor of 5. (c) Increasing  $\beta_1$  by factor of 5. (d) Increasing  $\alpha_2$  by factor of 5. Generated by `mlpPriorsDemo2.m`.

We will use the following factored Gaussian prior for the parameters:

$$\mathbf{W}_\ell \sim \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{0}, \alpha_\ell^2 \mathbf{I}), \mathbf{b}_\ell \sim \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{0}, \beta_\ell^2 \mathbf{I}) \quad (13.57)$$

We can reparameterize this distribution as

$$\mathbf{W}_\ell = \alpha_\ell \boldsymbol{\eta}_\ell, \boldsymbol{\eta}_\ell \sim \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{0}, \mathbf{I}), \mathbf{b}_\ell = \beta_\ell \boldsymbol{\epsilon}_\ell, \boldsymbol{\epsilon}_\ell \sim \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{0}, \mathbf{I}) \quad (13.58)$$

Hence every setting of the prior hyperparameters specifies the following random function:

$$f(\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\alpha}, \boldsymbol{\beta}) = \alpha_L \boldsymbol{\eta}_L (\cdots \varphi(\alpha_1 \boldsymbol{\eta}_1 \mathbf{x} + \beta_1 \boldsymbol{\epsilon}_1)) + \beta_L \boldsymbol{\epsilon}_L \quad (13.59)$$

To get a feeling for the effect of these hyperparameters, we can sample MLP parameters from this prior and plot the resulting random functions. We use a sigmoid nonlinearity, so  $\varphi(a) = \sigma(a)$ . We consider  $L = 2$  layers, so  $\mathbf{W}_1$  are the input-to-hidden weights, and  $\mathbf{W}_2$  are the hidden-to-output weights. We assume the input and output are scalars, so we are generating random nonlinear mappings  $f : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ .

Fig. 13.18(a) shows some sampled functions where  $\alpha_1 = 5$ ,  $\beta_1 = 1$ ,  $\alpha_2 = 1$ ,  $\beta_2 = 1$  in the top left In Fig. 13.18(b) we increasing  $\alpha_1$ ; this allows the first layer weights to get bigger, making the

sigmoid-like shape of the functions steeper (compare to Fig. 10.2). In Fig. 13.18(c), we increase  $\beta_1$ ; this allows the first layer biases to get bigger, which allows the center of the sigmoid to shift left and right more, away from the origin. In Fig. 13.18(d), we increase  $\alpha_2$ ; this allows the second layer linear weights to get bigger, making the functions more “wiggly” (greater sensitivity to change in the input, and hence larger dynamic range).

The above results are specific to the case of sigmoidal activation functions. ReLU units can behave differently. For example, [WI20, App. E] show that for MLPs with ReLU units, if we set  $\beta_\ell = 0$ , so the bias terms are all zero, the effect of changing  $\alpha_\ell$  is just to rescale the output. To see this, note that Eq. (13.59) simplifies to

$$f(\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\alpha}, \boldsymbol{\beta} = \mathbf{0}) = \alpha_L \boldsymbol{\eta}_L(\cdots \varphi(\alpha_1 \boldsymbol{\eta}_1 \mathbf{x})) = \alpha_L \cdots \alpha_1 \boldsymbol{\eta}_L(\cdots \varphi(\boldsymbol{\eta}_1 \mathbf{x})) \quad (13.60)$$

$$= \alpha_L \cdots \alpha_1 f(\mathbf{x}; (\boldsymbol{\alpha} = \mathbf{1}, \boldsymbol{\beta} = \mathbf{0})) \quad (13.61)$$

where we used the fact that for ReLU,  $\varphi(\alpha z) = \alpha \varphi(z)$  for any positive  $\alpha$ , and  $\varphi(\alpha z) = 0$  for any negative  $\alpha$  (since the pre-activation  $z \geq 0$ ). In general, it is the ratio of  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  that matters for determining what happens to input signals as they propagate forwards and backwards through a randomly initialized model; for details, see e.g., [Bah+20].

We see from the above that different distributions over the parameters of a DNN correspond to different *distributions over functions*. Thus initializing the model at random is like sampling a point from this prior. In the limit of infinitely wide neural networks, we can derive this prior distribution analytically: this is known as a **neural network Gaussian process**, and is explained in the sequel to this book, [Mur22].

## 13.5 Regularization

In Sec. 13.4 we discussed computational issues associated with training (large) neural networks. In this section, we discuss statistical issues. In particular, we focus on ways to avoid overfitting. This is crucial, since large neural networks can easily have millions of parameters.

### 13.5.1 Early stopping

Perhaps the simplest way to prevent overfitting is called **early stopping**, which refers to the heuristic of stopping the training procedure when the error on the validation set first starts to increase (see Fig. 4.7 for an example). This method works because we are restricting the ability of the optimization algorithm to transfer information from the training examples to the parameters, as explained in [AS19].

### 13.5.2 Weight decay

A common approach to reduce overfitting is to impose a prior on the parameters, and then use MAP estimation. It is standard to use a Gaussian prior for the weights  $\mathcal{N}(\mathbf{w}|\mathbf{0}, \alpha^2 \mathbf{I})$  and biases  $\mathcal{N}(\mathbf{b}|\mathbf{0}, \beta^2 \mathbf{I})$ . (See Sec. 13.4.5.2 for a discussion of this prior.) This is equivalent to  $\ell_2$  regularization of the objective. In the neural networks literature, this is called **weight decay**, since it encourages small weights, and hence simpler models, as in ridge regression (Sec. 11.3).

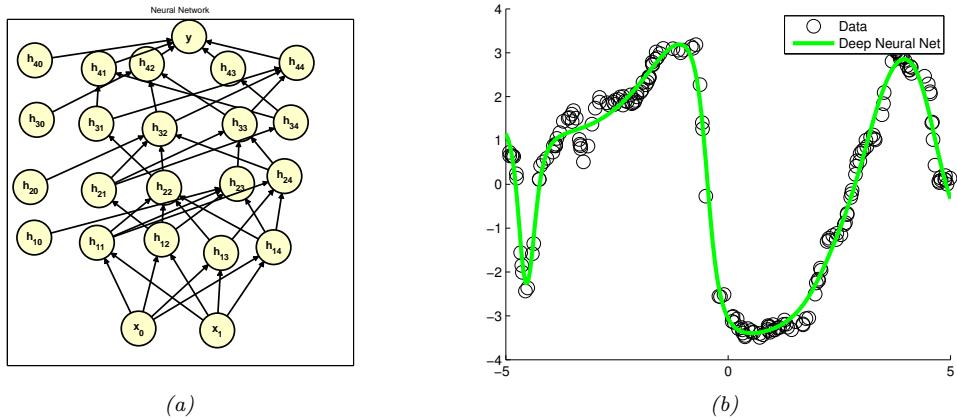


Figure 13.19: (a) A deep but sparse neural network. The connections are pruned using  $\ell_1$  regularization. At each level, nodes numbered 0 are clamped to 1, so their outgoing weights correspond to the offset/bias terms. (b) Predictions made by the model on the training set. Generated by `sparseNnetDemo.m`.

### 13.5.3 Sparse DNNs

Since there are many weights in a neural network, it is often helpful to encourage sparsity. This allows us to perform **model compression**, which can save memory and time. To do this, we can use  $\ell_1$  regularization (as in Sec. 11.5), or ARD (as in Sec. 11.6.6), or spike and slab priors (as in Sec. 11.6.4.1), or horseshoe priors (as in Sec. 11.6.4.3), etc. (see [GEH19] for a recent review).

As a simple example, Fig. 13.19 shows a 5 layer MLP which has been fit to some 1d regression data using an  $\ell_1$  regularizer on the weights. We see that the resulting graph topology is sparse. Of course, many other approaches to sparse estimation are possible

Despite the intuitive appeal of sparse topology, in practice these methods are not widely used, since modern GPUs are optimized for *dense* matrix multiplication, and there are few computational benefits to sparse weight matrices. However, if we use methods that encourage *group* sparsity, we can prune out whole layers of the model. This results in *block sparse* weight matrices, which can result in speedups and memory savings (see e.g., [Sca+17; Wen+16; MAV17; LUW17]).

### 13.5.4 Dropout

Suppose that we randomly (on a per-example basis) turn off all the outgoing connections from each neuron with probability  $p$ , as illustrated in Fig. 13.20. This technique is known as **dropout** [Sri+14].

Dropout can dramatically reduce overfitting and is very widely used. Intuitively, the reason dropout works well is that it prevents complex co-adaptation of the hidden units. In other words, each unit must learn to perform well even if some of the other units are missing at random. This prevents the units from learning complex, but fragile, dependencies on each other.<sup>4</sup> A more formal explanation,

4. Geoff Hinton, who invented dropout, said he was inspired by a talk on sexual reproduction, which encourages genes to be individually useful (or at most depend on a small number of other genes), even when combined with random other genes.

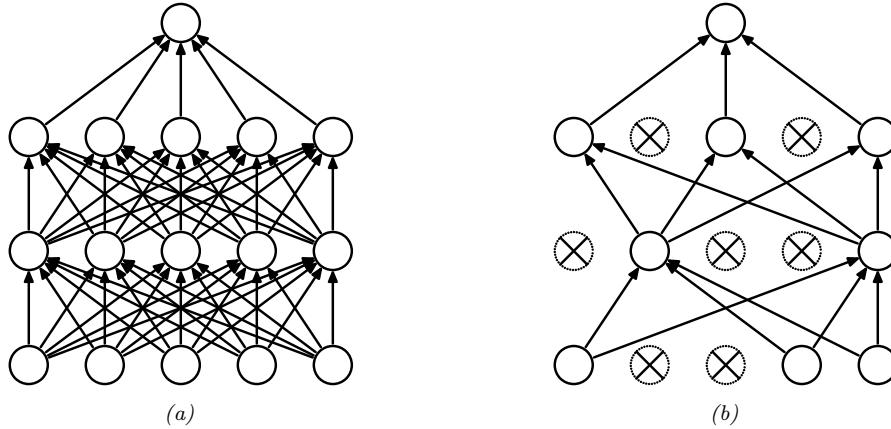


Figure 13.20: Illustration of dropout. (a) A standard neural net with 2 hidden layers. (b) An example of a thinned net produced by applying dropout with  $p_0 = 0.5$ . Units that have been dropped out are marked with an  $x$ . From Figure 1 of [Sri+14]. Used with kind permission of Geoff Hinton.

in terms of Gaussian scale mixture priors, can be found in [N HLS19].

We can view dropout as estimating a noisy version of the weights,  $\theta_{lij} = w_{lij}\epsilon_{li}$ , where  $\epsilon_{li} \sim \text{Ber}(1 - p)$  is a Bernoulli noise term. (So if we sample  $\epsilon_{li} = 0$ , then all of the weights going out of unit  $i$  in layer  $l - 1$  into any  $j$  in layer  $l$  will be set to 0.) At test time, we usually turn the noise off; this is equivalent to setting  $\epsilon_{li} = 1$ . To derive the corresponding estimate for the non-noisy weights, we should use  $w_{lij} = \theta_{lij}/\mathbb{E}[\epsilon_{li}]$ , so the weights have the same expectation at test time as they did during training. For Bernoulli noise, we have  $\mathbb{E}[\epsilon] = 1 - p$ , so we should divide by  $1 - p$  before making predictions.

We can, however, use dropout at test time if we wish. The result is an **ensemble** of networks, each with slightly different sparse graph structures. This is called **Monte Carlo dropout** [GG16; KG17], and has the form

$$p(\mathbf{y}|\mathbf{x}, \mathcal{D}) \approx \frac{1}{S} \sum_{s=1}^S p(\mathbf{y}|\mathbf{x}, \hat{\mathbf{W}}\epsilon^s + \hat{\mathbf{b}}) \quad (13.62)$$

where  $S$  is the number of samples, and we write  $\hat{\mathbf{W}}\epsilon^s$  to indicate that we are multiplying all the estimated weight matrices by a sampled noise vector. This can sometimes provide a good approximation to the Bayesian posterior predictive distribution  $p(\mathbf{y}|\mathbf{x}, \mathcal{D})$ , especially if the noise rate is optimized [GHK17].

### 13.5.5 Bayesian neural networks

Modern DNNs are usually trained using a (penalized) maximum likelihood objective to find a single setting of parameters. However, with large models, there are often many more parameters than data points, so there may be multiple possible models which fit the training data equally well, yet which generalize in different ways. It is often useful to capture the induced uncertainty in the posterior

predictive distribution. This can be done by *marginalizing out* the parameters by computing

$$p(\mathbf{y}|\mathbf{x}, \mathcal{D}) = \int p(\mathbf{y}|\mathbf{x}, \boldsymbol{\theta})p(\boldsymbol{\theta}|\mathcal{D})d\boldsymbol{\theta} \quad (13.63)$$

The result is known as a **Bayesian neural network** or **BNN**. It can be thought of as an infinite ensemble of differently weight neural networks. By marginalizing out the parameters, we can avoid overfitting [Mac95]. Bayesian marginalization is challenging for large neural networks, but also can lead to significant performance gains [WI20]. For more details on the topic of **Bayesian deep learning**, see the sequel to this book, [Mur22].

## 13.6 Other kinds of feedforward networks

### 13.6.1 Radial basis function networks

Consider a 1 layer neural net where the hidden layer is given by the feature vector

$$\phi(\mathbf{x}) = [\mathcal{K}(\mathbf{x}, \boldsymbol{\mu}_1), \dots, \mathcal{K}(\mathbf{x}, \boldsymbol{\mu}_K)] \quad (13.64)$$

where  $\boldsymbol{\mu}_k \in \mathcal{X}$  are a set of  $K$  **centroids** or **exemplars**, and  $\mathcal{K}(\mathbf{x}, \boldsymbol{\mu}) \geq 0$  is a **kernel function**. We describe kernel functions in detail in Sec. 17.2. Here we just give an example, namely the **Gaussian kernel**

$$\mathcal{K}_{\text{gauss}}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{c}) \triangleq \exp\left(-\frac{1}{2\sigma^2} \|\mathbf{c} - \mathbf{x}\|_2^2\right) \quad (13.65)$$

The parameter  $\sigma$  is known as the **bandwidth** of the kernel. Note that this kernel is shift invariant, meaning it is only a function of the distance  $r = \|\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{c}\|_2$ , so we can equivalently write this as

$$\mathcal{K}_{\text{gauss}}(r) \triangleq \exp\left(-\frac{1}{2\sigma^2} r^2\right) \quad (13.66)$$

This is therefore called a **radial basis function kernel** or **RBF kernel**.

A 1 layer neural net in which we use Eq. (13.64) as the hidden layer, with RBF kernels, is called an **RBF network** [BL88]. This has the form

$$p(y|\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta}) = p(y|\mathbf{w}^\top \phi(\mathbf{x})) \quad (13.67)$$

where  $\boldsymbol{\theta} = (\boldsymbol{\mu}, \mathbf{w})$ . If the centroids  $\boldsymbol{\mu}$  are fixed, we can solve for the optimal weights  $\mathbf{w}$  using (regularized) least squares, as discussed in Chapter 11. If the centroids are unknown, we can estimate them by using an unsupervised clustering method, such as K-means (Sec. 21.3). Alternatively, we can associate one centroid per data point in the training set, to get  $\boldsymbol{\mu}_n = \mathbf{x}_n$ , where now  $K = N$ . This is an example of a **non-parametric model**, since the number of parameters grows (in this case linearly) with the amount of data, and is not independent of  $N$ . If  $K = N$ , the model can perfectly interpolate the data, and hence may overfit. However, by ensuring that the output weight vector  $\mathbf{w}$  is sparse, the model will only use a finite subset of the input examples; this is called a **sparse kernel machine**, and will be discussed in more detail in Sec. 17.6.1 and Sec. 17.5. Another way to avoid overfitting is to adopt a Bayesian approach, by integrating out the weights  $\mathbf{w}$ ; this gives rise to a model called a **Gaussian process**, which will be discussed in more detail in Sec. 17.3.

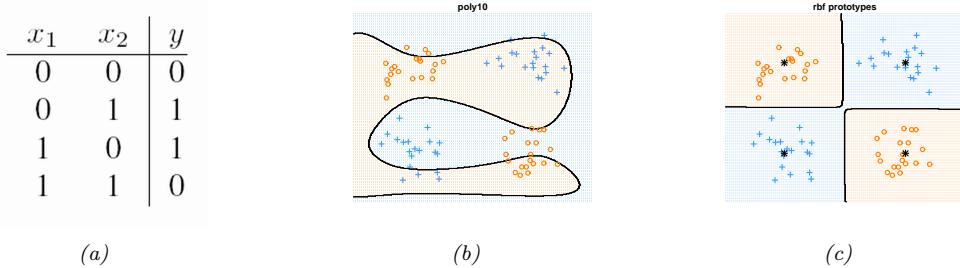


Figure 13.21: (a) xor truth table. (b) Fitting a linear logistic regression classifier using degree 10 polynomial expansion. (c) Same model, but using an RBF kernel with centroids specified by the 4 black crosses. Generated by `logregXorDemo.m`.

### 13.6.1.1 RBF network for regression

We can use RBF networks for regression by defining  $p(y|\mathbf{x}, \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{w}^T \phi(\mathbf{x}), \sigma^2)$ . For example, Figure 13.22 shows a 1d data set fit with  $K = 10$  uniformly spaced RBF prototypes, but with the bandwidth ranging from small to large. Small values lead to very wiggly functions, since the predicted function value will only be non-zero for points  $\mathbf{x}$  that are close to one of the prototypes  $\mu_k$ . If the bandwidth is very large, the design matrix reduces to a constant matrix of 1's, since each point is equally close to every prototype; hence the corresponding function is just a straight line.

### 13.6.1.2 RBF network for classification

We can use RBF networks for binary classification by defining  $p(y|\mathbf{x}, \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \text{Ber}(\mathbf{w}^T \phi(\mathbf{x}))$ . As an example, consider the data coming from the exclusive or function. This is a binary-valued function of two binary inputs. Its truth table is shown in Figure 13.21(a). In Figure 13.1(b), we have shown some data labeled by the xor function, but we have **jittered** the points to make the picture clearer.<sup>5</sup> We see we cannot separate the data even using a degree 10 polynomial. However, using an RBF kernel and just 4 prototypes easily solves the problem as shown in Figure 13.1(c).

### 13.6.2 Mixtures of experts

When considering regression problems, it is common to assume a unimodal output distribution, such as a Gaussian or Student distribution, where the mean and variance is some function of the input, i.e.,

$$p(\mathbf{y}|\mathbf{x}) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{y}|f_\mu(\mathbf{x}), \text{diag}(\sigma_+(f_\sigma(\mathbf{x})))) \quad (13.68)$$

where the  $f$  functions may be MLPs (possibly with some shared hidden units, as in Fig. 13.7. However, this will not work well for **one-to-many functions**, in which each input can have multiple possible outputs.

5. Jittering is a common visualization trick in statistics, wherein points in a plot/display that would otherwise land on top of each other are dispersed with uniform additive noise.

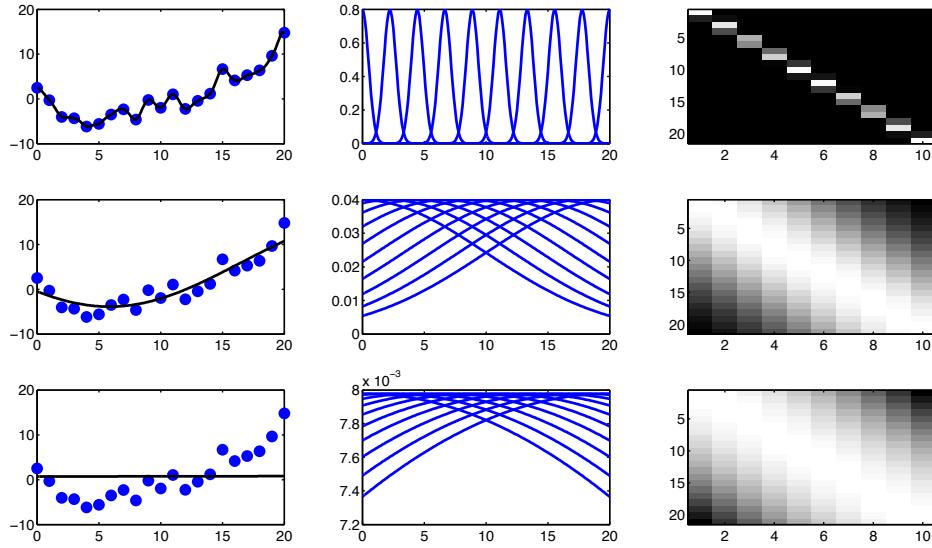


Figure 13.22: RBF basis in 1d. Left column: fitted function. Middle column: basis functions evaluated on a grid. Right column: design matrix. Top to bottom we show different bandwidths:  $\tau = 0.1$ ,  $\tau = 0.5$ ,  $\tau = 50$ . Generated by [linregRbfDemo.m](#).

Fig. 13.23a gives a simple example of such a function. We see that in the middle of the plot there are certain  $x$  values for which there are two equally probable  $y$  values. There are many real world problems of this form, e.g., 3d pose prediction of a person from a single image [Bo+08], colorization of a black and white image [Gua+17], predicting future frames of a video sequence [VT17], etc. Any model which is trained to maximize likelihood using a unimodal output density — even if the model is a flexible nonlinear model, such as neural network — will work poorly on one-to-many functions such as these, since it will just produce a blurry average output.

To prevent this problem of regression to the mean, we can use a **conditional mixture model**. That is, we assume the output is a weighted mixture of  $K$  different outputs, corresponding to different modes of the output distribution for each input  $\mathbf{x}$ . In the Gaussian case, this becomes

$$p(\mathbf{y}|\mathbf{x}) = \sum_{k=1}^K p(\mathbf{y}|\mathbf{x}, z=k)p(z=k|\mathbf{x}) \quad (13.69)$$

$$p(\mathbf{y}|\mathbf{x}, z=k) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{y}|f_{\mu,k}(\mathbf{x}), \text{diag}(f_{\sigma,k}(\mathbf{x}))) \quad (13.70)$$

$$p(z=k|\mathbf{x}) = \text{Cat}(z|\mathcal{S}(f_z(\mathbf{x}))) \quad (13.71)$$

Here  $f_{\mu,k}$  predicts the mean of the  $k$ 'th Gaussian,  $f_{\sigma,k}$  predicts its variance terms, and  $f_z$  predicts which mixture component to use. This model is called a **mixture of experts (MoE)** [Jac+91; JJ94; YWG12; ME14]. The idea is that the  $k$ 'th submodel  $p(\mathbf{y}|\mathbf{x}, z=k)$  is considered to be an “expert” in a certain region of input space. The function  $p(z=k|\mathbf{x})$  is called a **gating function**, and decides which expert to use, depending on the input values. By picking the most likely expert for

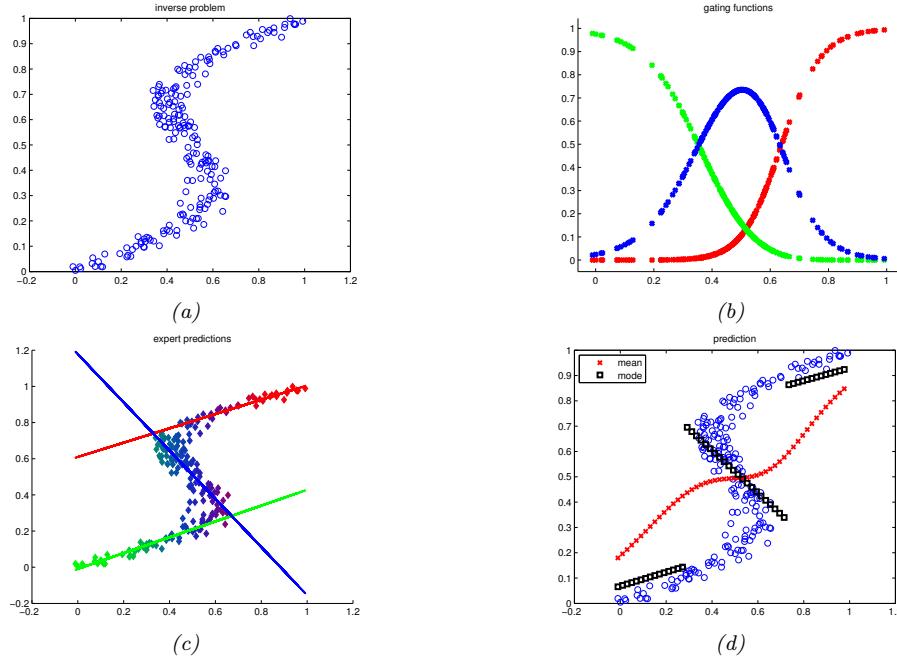


Figure 13.23: (a) Some data from a one-to-many function. (b) The responsibilities of each expert for the input domain. (c) Prediction of each expert. (d) Overall prediction. Mean is red cross, mode is black square. Adapted from Figures 5.20 and 5.21 of [Bis06]. Generated by `mixexpDemoOneToMany.m`.

a given input  $\mathbf{x}$ , we can “activate” just a subset of the model. This is an example of **conditional computation**, since we decide what expert to run based on the results of earlier computations from the gating network [Sha+17].

We can train this model using SGD, or using the EM algorithm (see Sec. 5.7.3 for details on the latter method).

### 13.6.2.1 Mixture of linear experts

In this section, we consider a simple example in which we use linear regression experts and a linear classification gating function, i.e., the model has the form:

$$p(y|\mathbf{x}, z = k, \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \mathcal{N}(y|\mathbf{w}_k^\top \mathbf{x}, \sigma_k^2) \quad (13.72)$$

$$p(z|\mathbf{x}, \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \text{Cat}(z|\mathcal{S}(\mathbf{V}\mathbf{x})) \quad (13.73)$$

The individual weighting term  $p(z = k|\mathbf{x})$  is called the **responsibility** for expert  $k$  for input  $\mathbf{x}$ . In Fig. 13.23b, we see how the gating networks softly partitions the input space amongst the  $K = 3$  experts.

Each expert  $p(y|\mathbf{x}, z = k)$  corresponds to a linear regression model with different parameters. These are shown in Fig. 13.23c.

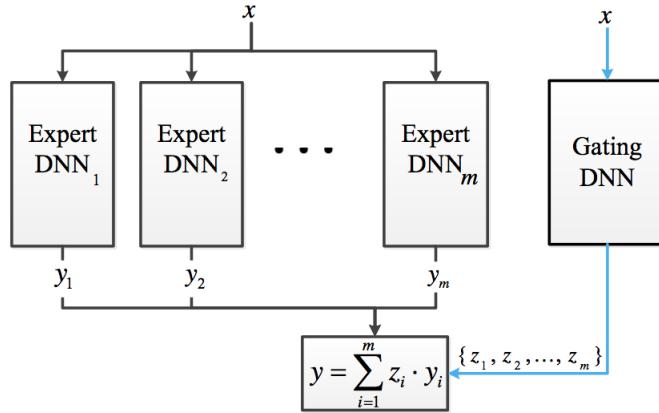


Figure 13.24: Deep MOE with  $m$  experts, represented as a neural network. From Figure 1 of [CGG17]. Used with kind permission of Jacob Goldberger.

If we take a weighted combination of the experts as our output, we get the red curve in Fig. 13.23a, which is clearly a bad predictor. If instead we only predict using the most active expert (i.e., the one with the highest responsibility), we get the discontinuous black curve, which is a much better predictor.

### 13.6.2.2 Mixture density networks

The gating function and experts can be any kind of conditional probabilistic model, not just a linear model. If we make them both DNNs, then resulting model is called a **mixture density network (MDN)** [Bis94; ZS14] or a **deep mixture of experts** [CGG17]. See Fig. 13.24 for a sketch of the model.

### 13.6.2.3 Hierarchical MOEs

If each expert is itself an MoE model, the resulting model is called a **hierarchical mixture of experts** [JJ94]. See Fig. 13.25 for an illustration of such a model with a two level hierarchy.

An HME with  $L$  levels can be thought of as a “soft” decision tree of depth  $L$ , where each example is passed through every branch of the tree, and the final prediction is a weighted average. (We discuss decision trees in Sec. 18.1.)

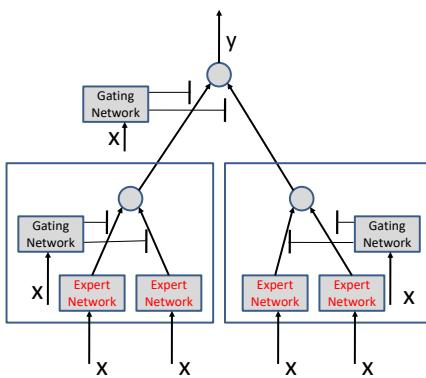


Figure 13.25: A 2-level hierarchical mixture of experts as a neural network. The top gating network chooses between the left and right expert, shown by the large boxes; the left and right experts themselves choose between their left and right sub-experts.



# 14 Neural networks for images

## 14.1 Introduction

In an MLP, the core operation at each hidden layer is computing  $\mathbf{z} = \varphi(\mathbf{W}\mathbf{x})_j$ . However, this does not work well if the input is a variable-sized image,  $\mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^{WHC}$ , where  $W$  is the width,  $H$  is the height, and  $C$  is the number of input **channels** (e.g.,  $C = 3$  for RGB color). The problem is that we would need to learn a different-sized weight matrix for every input size. In addition, even if the input was fixed size, the number of parameters needed would be prohibitive for reasonably sized images.

In this chapter, we discuss **convolutional neural networks (CNN)**, in which we replace matrix multiplication with a convolution operation. We explain this in detail in Sec. 14.2, but the basic idea is to divide the input into overlapping 2d **image patches**, and to compare each patch with a set of small weight matrices, or **filters**, which represent parts of an object; this is illustrated in Fig. 14.1. We can think of this as a form of **template matching**. The key is that we learn the templates from data, and can also do the matching in feature space, not just pixel space.

The templates can occur anywhere in the input, which reduces the number of parameters, and also ensures that the model is **invariant** to translations of the input. This is useful for tasks such as image classification, where the goal is to classify if an object is present at any location. CNNs have many other applications besides image classification, as we will discuss later in this chapter. They can also be applied to 1d inputs (see Sec. 15.3) and 3d inputs; however, we mostly focus on the 2d case in this chapter.

## 14.2 Basics

In this section, we discuss the basics of CNNs.

### 14.2.1 Convolution in 1d

The **convolution** between two functions, say  $f, g : \mathbb{R}^D \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ , is defined as

$$[f \circledast g](\mathbf{z}) = \int_{\mathbb{R}^D} f(\mathbf{u})g(\mathbf{z} - \mathbf{u})d\mathbf{u} \tag{14.1}$$

Now suppose we replace the functions with finite-length vectors, which we can think of as functions defined on a finite set of points. For example, suppose  $f$  is evaluated at the points  $\{-L, -L + 1, \dots, 0, 1, \dots, L\}$  to yield the weight vector (also called a **filter** or **kernel**)  $w_{-L} = f(-L)$  up to

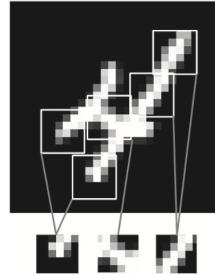


Figure 14.1: We can classify a digit by looking for certain discriminative features (image templates) occurring in the correct (relative) locations. From Figure 5.1 of [Cho]. Used with kind permission of Francois Chollet.

-	-	1	2	3	4	-	-	
7	6	5	-	-	-	-	-	$z_0 = x_0 w_0 = 5$
-	7	6	5	-	-	-	-	$z_1 = x_0 w_1 + x_1 w_0 = 16$
-	-	7	6	5	-	-	-	$z_2 = x_0 w_2 + x_1 w_1 + x_2 w_0 = 34$
-	-	-	7	6	5	-	-	$z_3 = x_1 w_2 + x_2 w_1 + x_3 w_0 = 52$
-	-	-	-	7	6	5	-	$z_4 = x_2 w_2 + x_3 w_1 = 45$
-	-	-	-	-	7	6	5	$z_5 = x_3 w_2 = 28$

Figure 14.2: Discrete convolution of  $\mathbf{x} = [1, 2, 3, 4]$  with  $\mathbf{w} = [5, 6, 7]$  to yield  $\mathbf{z} = [5, 16, 34, 52, 45, 28]$ . We see that this operation consists of “flipping”  $\mathbf{w}$  and then “dragging” it over  $\mathbf{x}$ , multiplying elementwise, and adding up the results.

Input	Kernel	Output
$\boxed{0 \quad 1 \quad 2 \quad 3 \quad 4 \quad 5 \quad 6}$	$\boxed{1 \quad 2}$	$= \boxed{2 \quad 5 \quad 8 \quad 11 \quad 14 \quad 17}$

Figure 14.3: 1d cross correlation. Adapted from Figure 13.10.1 of [Zha+19a].

$w_L = f(L)$ . Now let  $g$  be evaluated at points  $\{-N, \dots, N\}$  to yield the feature vector  $x_{-N} = g(-N)$  up to  $x_N = g(N)$ . Then the above equation becomes

$$[\mathbf{w} \circledast \mathbf{x}](i) = w_{-L} x_{i+L} + \dots + w_{-1} x_{i+1} + w_0 x_i + w_1 x_{i-1} + \dots + w_L x_{i-L} \quad (14.2)$$

(We discuss boundary conditions (edge effects) later on.) We see that we “flip” the weight vector  $\mathbf{w}$  (since indices of  $\mathbf{w}$  are reversed), and then “drag” it over the  $\mathbf{x}$  vector, summing up the local windows at each point, as illustrated in Fig. 14.2.

There is a very closely related operation, in which we do not flip  $\mathbf{w}$  first:

$$[\mathbf{w} * \mathbf{x}](i) = w_{-L} x_{i-L} + \dots + w_{-1} x_{i-1} + w_0 x_i + w_1 x_{i+1} + \dots + w_L x_{i+L} \quad (14.3)$$

This is called **cross correlation**; If the weight vector is symmetric, as is often the case, then cross correlation and convolution are the same. In the deep learning literature, the term “convolution” is usually used to mean cross correlation; we will follow this convention.

Input	Kernel	Output
$\begin{array}{ c c c } \hline 0 & 1 & 2 \\ \hline 3 & 4 & 5 \\ \hline 6 & 7 & 8 \\ \hline \end{array}$	$* \quad \begin{array}{ c c } \hline 0 & 1 \\ \hline 2 & 3 \\ \hline \end{array}$	$= \quad \begin{array}{ c c } \hline 19 & 25 \\ \hline 37 & 43 \\ \hline \end{array}$

Figure 14.4: Illustration of 2d cross correlation. Adapted from Figure 6.2.1 of [Zha+19a].

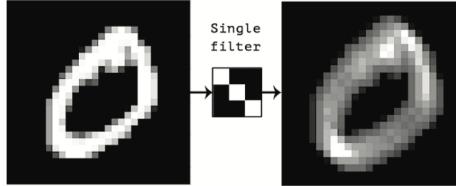


Figure 14.5: Convolving a 2d image (left) with a  $3 \times 3$  filter (middle) produces a 2d response map (right). The bright spots of the response map correspond to locations in the image which contain diagonal lines sloping down and to the right. From Figure 5.3 of [Cho]. Used with kind permission of Francois Chollet.

We can also evaluate the weights  $\mathbf{w}$  on domain  $\{0, 1, \dots, L - 1\}$  and the features  $\mathbf{x}$  on domain  $\{0, 1, \dots, N - 1\}$ , to eliminate negative indices. Then the above equation becomes

$$[\mathbf{w} * \mathbf{x}](i) = \sum_{u=0}^{L-1} w_u x_{i+u} \tag{14.4}$$

See Fig. 14.3 for an example.

### 14.2.2 Convolution in 2d

In 2d, Eq. (14.4) becomes

$$[\mathbf{W} * \mathbf{X}](i, j) = \sum_{u=0}^{H-1} \sum_{v=0}^{W-1} w_{u,v} x_{i+u, j+v} \tag{14.5}$$

where the 2d filter  $\mathbf{W}$  has size  $H \times W$ . For example, consider convolving a  $3 \times 3$  input  $\mathbf{X}$  with a  $2 \times 2$  kernel  $\mathbf{W}$  to compute a  $2 \times 2$  output  $\mathbf{Z}$ :

$$\mathbf{Z} = \begin{pmatrix} w_1 & w_2 \\ w_3 & w_4 \end{pmatrix} \circledast \begin{pmatrix} x_1 & x_2 & x_3 \\ x_4 & x_5 & x_6 \\ x_7 & x_8 & x_9 \end{pmatrix} \tag{14.6}$$

$$= \begin{pmatrix} (w_1 x_1 + w_2 x_2 + w_3 x_4 + w_4 x_5) & (w_1 x_2 + w_2 x_3 + w_3 x_5 + w_4 x_6) \\ (w_1 x_4 + w_2 x_5 + w_3 x_7 + w_4 x_8) & (w_1 x_5 + w_2 x_6 + w_3 x_8 + w_4 x_9) \end{pmatrix} \tag{14.7}$$

See Fig. 14.4 for a visualization of this process.

We can think of 2d convolution as **template matching**, since the output at a point  $(i, j)$  will be large if the corresponding image patch centered on  $(i, j)$  is similar to  $\mathbf{W}$ . If the template  $\mathbf{W}$  corresponds to an oriented edge, then convolving with it will cause the output **heat map** to “light up” in regions that contain edges that match that orientation, as shown in Fig. 14.5. More generally, we can think of convolution as a form of **feature detection**. The resulting output  $\mathbf{Z} = \mathbf{W} \circledast \mathbf{X}$  is therefore called a **feature map**.

### 14.2.3 Convolution as matrix-vector multiplication

Since convolution is a linear operator, we can represent it by matrix multiplication. For example, consider Eq. (14.7). We can rewrite this as matrix-vector multiplication by flattening the the 2d matrix  $\mathbf{X}$  into a 1d vector  $\mathbf{x}$ , and multiplying by a Toeplitz-like matrix  $\mathbf{C}$  derived from  $\mathbf{W}$ , as follows:

$$\mathbf{z} = \mathbf{Cx} = \left( \begin{array}{ccc|ccc|ccc} w_1 & w_2 & 0 & w_3 & w_4 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & w_1 & w_2 & 0 & w_3 & w_4 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & w_1 & w_2 & 0 & w_3 & w_4 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & w_1 & w_2 & 0 & w_3 & w_4 \end{array} \right) \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ x_3 \\ x_4 \\ x_5 \\ x_6 \\ x_7 \\ x_8 \\ x_9 \end{pmatrix} \quad (14.8)$$

$$= \begin{pmatrix} w_1x_1 + w_2x_2 + w_3x_4 + w_4x_5 \\ w_1x_2 + w_2x_3 + w_3x_5 + w_4x_6 \\ w_1x_4 + w_2x_5 + w_3x_7 + w_4x_8 \\ w_1x_5 + w_2x_6 + w_3x_8 + w_4x_9 \end{pmatrix} \quad (14.9)$$

We can recover the  $2 \times 2$  output by reshaping the  $4 \times 1$  vector  $\mathbf{z}$  back to  $\mathbf{Z}$  in the obvious way.<sup>1</sup> Thus we see that CNNs are like MLPs where the weight matrices have a special sparse structure, and the elements are tied across spatial locations. This implements the idea of translation invariance, and massively reduces the number of parameters compared to a weight matrix in a standard fully connected or dense layer, as used in MLPs.

### 14.2.4 Boundary conditions and strides

In Eq. (14.7), we saw that convolving a  $3 \times 3$  image with a  $2 \times 2$  filter resulted in a  $2 \times 2$  output. In general, convolving a  $f_h \times f_w$  filter over an image of size  $x_h \times x_w$  produces an output of size  $(x_h - f_h + 1) \times (x_w - f_w + 1)$ ; this is called **valid convolution**, since we only apply the filter to “valid” parts of the input, i.e., we don’t let it “slide off the ends”. If we want the output to have the same size as the input, we can use **zero-padding**, which means we add a border of 0s to the image, as illustrated in Fig. 14.6a. This is called **same convolution**.

Since each output pixel is generated by a weighted combination of inputs in its **receptive field** (based on the size of the filter), neighboring outputs will be very similar in value, since their inputs are overlapping. We can reduce this redundancy (and speedup computation) by skipping every  $s$ ’th

1. For a precise specification of this operation, with all the indices and subscripts, see <https://bit.ly/2KSuo01>.

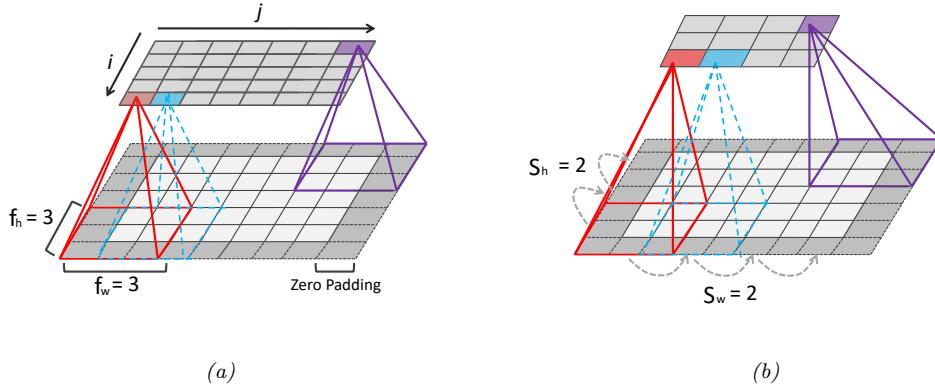


Figure 14.6: Illustration of padding and strides in 2d convolution. (a) We apply “same convolution” to a  $5 \times 7$  input (with zero padding) using a  $3 \times 3$  filter to create a  $5 \times 7$  output. (b) Now we use a stride of 2, so the output has size  $3 \times 4$ . Adapted from Figures 14.3–14.4 of [Gér19].

input. This is called **strided convolution**. This is illustrated in Fig. 14.6a, where we convolve a  $5 \times 7$  image with a  $3 \times 3$  filter with stride 2 to get a  $3 \times 4$  output.

In general, if the input has size  $x_h \times x_w$ , we use a kernel of size  $f_h \times f_w$ , we use zero padding on each side of size  $p_h$  and  $p_w$ , and we use strides of size  $s_h$  and  $s_w$ , then the output has the following size [DV16]:

$$\left\lfloor \frac{x_h + 2p_h - f_h + s_h}{s_h} \right\rfloor \times \left\lfloor \frac{x_w + 2p_w - f_w + s_w}{s_w} \right\rfloor \quad (14.10)$$

For example, consider Fig. 14.6(a). We have  $p = 1$ ,  $f = 3$ ,  $s = 1$ ,  $x_h = 5$  and  $x_w = 7$ , so the output has size

$$\left( \left\lfloor \frac{5 + 2 - 3 + 1}{1} \right\rfloor, \left\lfloor \frac{7 + 2 - 3 + 1}{1} \right\rfloor \right) = \left( \left\lfloor \frac{5}{1} \right\rfloor, \left\lfloor \frac{7}{1} \right\rfloor \right) = 5 \times 7 \quad (14.11)$$

In general, if we use padding which is half the filter size,  $p = \lfloor f/2 \rfloor$ , (where  $f$  is odd), then the output will have the same size as the input.

Now consider Fig. 14.6(b), where we set the stride to  $s = 2$ . Now the output is smaller than the input.

$$\left( \left\lfloor \frac{5 + 2 - 3 + 2}{2} \right\rfloor, \left\lfloor \frac{7 + 2 - 3 + 2}{2} \right\rfloor \right) = \left( \left\lfloor \frac{6}{2} \right\rfloor, \left\lfloor \frac{4}{1} \right\rfloor \right) = 3 \times 4 \quad (14.12)$$

#### 14.2.4.1 Multiple input and output channels

In Fig. 14.5, the input was a gray-scale image. In general, the input will have multiple **channels** (e.g., RGB, or hyper-spectral bands for satellite images). We can extend the definition of convolution to this case by defining a kernel for each input channel; thus now  $\mathbf{W}$  is a 3d weight matrix or **tensor**.

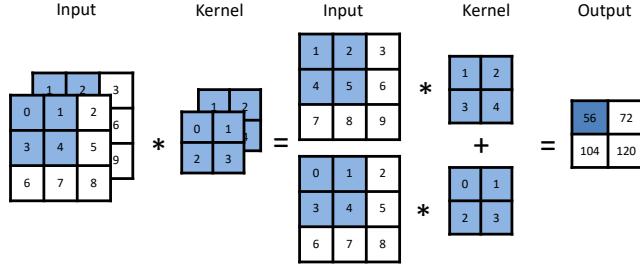


Figure 14.7: Illustration of 2d convolution applied to an input with 2 channels. Adapted from Figure 6.4.1 of [Zha+19a].

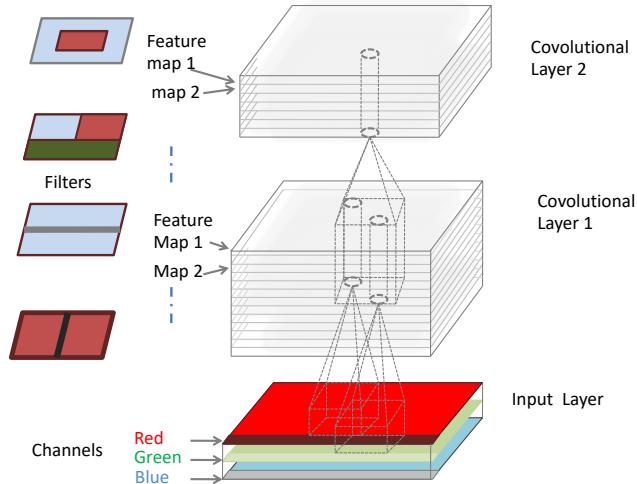


Figure 14.8: Illustration of a CNN with 2 convolutional layers. The input has 3 color channels. The feature maps at internal layers have multiple channels. The cylinders correspond to hypercolumns, which are feature vectors at a certain location. Adapted from Figure 14.6 of [Gér19].

We compute the output by convolving channel  $c$  of the input with kernel  $\mathbf{W}_{\cdot,\cdot,c}$ , and then summing over channels:

$$z_{i,j} = b + \sum_{u=0}^{H-1} \sum_{v=0}^{W-1} \sum_{c=0}^{C-1} x_{si+u,sj+v,c} w_{u,v,c} \quad (14.13)$$

where  $s$  is the stride (which we assume is the same for both height and width, for simplicity), and  $b$  is the bias term. This is illustrated in Fig. 14.7.

Each weight matrix can detect a single kind of feature. We typically want to detect multiple kinds

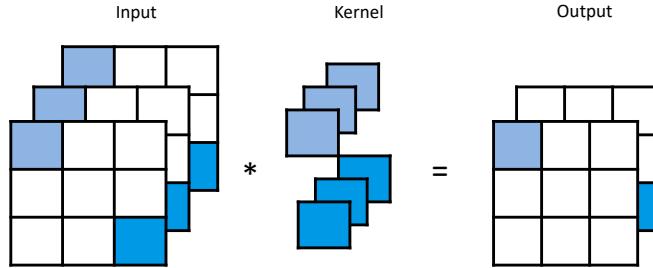


Figure 14.9: Illustration of  $1 \times 1 \times 3 \times 2$  convolution. Adapted from Figure 6.4.2 of [Zha+19a].

of features, as illustrated in Fig. 14.1. We can do this by making  $\mathbf{W}$  into a 4d weight matrix. The filter to detect feature type  $d$  in input channel  $c$  is stored in  $\mathbf{W}_{:, :, c, d}$ . We extend the definition of convolution to this case as follows:

$$z_{i,j,d} = b_d + \sum_{u=0}^{H-1} \sum_{v=0}^{W-1} \sum_{c=0}^{C-1} x_{s_i+u, s_j+v, c} w_{u, v, c, d} \quad (14.14)$$

This is illustrated in Fig. 14.8. Each vertical cylindrical column denotes the set of output features at a given location,  $\mathbf{z}_{i,j,1:D}$ ; this is sometimes called a **hypercolumn**. Each element is a different weighted combination of the  $C$  features in the receptive field of each of the feature maps in the layer below.<sup>2</sup>

#### 14.2.4.2 $1 \times 1$ (pointwise) convolution

Sometimes we just want to take a weighted combination of the features at a given location, rather than across locations. This can be done using using **1x1 convolution**, also called **pointwise convolution**, as illustrated in Fig. 14.9. This changes the number of channels from  $C$  to  $D$ , without changing the spatial dimensionality:

$$z_{i,j,d} = b_d + \sum_{c=0}^{C-1} x_{i,j,c} w_{0,0,c,d} \quad (14.15)$$

This can be thought of as a single layer MLP applied to each feature column in parallel.

#### 14.2.5 Pooling layers

Convolution will preserve information about the location of input features (modulo reduced resolution), a property known as **equivariance**. In some case we want to be invariant to the location. For example, when performing image classification, we may just want to know if an object of interest (e.g., a face) is present anywhere in the image.

2. In Tensorflow, a filter for 2d CNNs has shape  $(H, W, C, D)$ , and a minibatch of feature maps has shape (batch-size, image-height, image-width, image-channels); this is called **NHWC** format. Other systems use different data layouts.

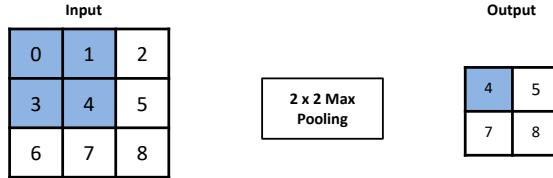


Figure 14.10: Illustration of maxpooling with a  $2 \times 2$  filter and a stride of 1. Adapted from Figure 6.5.1 of [Zha+19a].

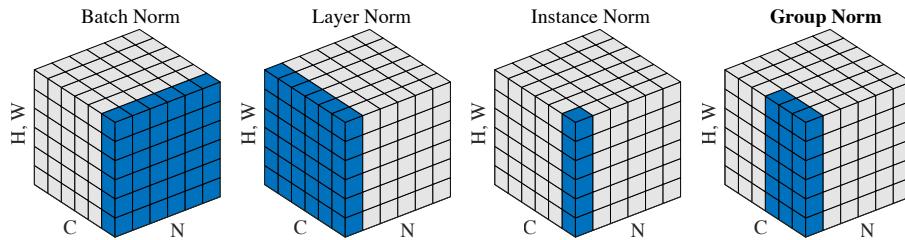


Figure 14.11: Illustration of different activation normalization methods for a CNN. Each subplot shows a feature map tensor, with  $N$  as the batch axis,  $C$  as the channel axis, and  $(H, W)$  as the spatial axes. The pixels in blue are normalized by the same mean and variance, computed by aggregating the values of these pixels. Left to right: batch norm, layer norm, instance norm, and group norm (with 2 groups of 3 channels). From Figure 2 of [WH18]. Used with kind permission of Kaiming He.

One simple way to achieve this is called **max pooling**, which just computes the maximum over its incoming values, as illustrated in Fig. 14.10. An alternative is to use **average pooling**, which replaces the max by the mean. In either case, the output neuron has the same response no matter where the input pattern occurs within its receptive field. (Note that we apply pooling to each feature channel independently.)

If we average over all the locations in a feature map, the method is called **global average pooling**. Thus we can convert a  $H \times W \times D$  feature map into a  $1 \times 1 \times D$  dimensional feature map; this can be reshaped to a  $D$ -dimensional vector, which can be passed into a fully connected layer to map it to a  $C$ -dimensional vector before passing into a softmax output. The use of global average pooling means we can apply the classifier to an image of any size, since the final feature map will always be converted to a fixed  $D$ -dimensional vector before being mapped to a distribution over the  $C$  classes.

#### 14.2.6 Normalization layers

In Sec. 13.4.4 we discussed **batch normalization**, which standardizes all the activations within a given feature channel to be zero mean and unit variance. This can significantly help with training. However, although batch normalization works well, it struggles when the batch size is small, since the estimated mean and variance parameters can be unreliable.

One solution is to compute the mean and variance by pooling statistics across other dimensions of the tensor, but not across examples in the batch. More precisely, let  $z_i$  refer to the  $i$ 'th element of a

tensor; in the case of 2d images, the index  $i$  has 4 components, indicating batch, channel, height and width:  $i = (i_N, i_C, i_H, i_W)$ . We compute the mean and standard deviation for each index  $z_i$  as follows:

$$\mu_i = \frac{1}{|\mathcal{S}_i|} \sum_{k \in \mathcal{S}_i} z_k, \quad \sigma_i = \sqrt{\frac{1}{|\mathcal{S}_i|} \sum_{k \in \mathcal{S}_i} (z_k - \mu_i)^2 + \epsilon} \quad (14.16)$$

where  $\mathcal{S}_i$  is the set of elements we average over. We then compute  $\hat{z}_i = (z_i - \mu_i)/\sigma_i$  and  $\tilde{z}_i = \gamma_c \hat{z}_i + \beta_c$ , where  $c$  is the channel corresponding to index  $i$ .

In batch norm, we pool over batch, height, width, so  $\mathcal{S}_i$  is the set of all location in the tensor that match the channel index of  $i$ . To avoid problems with small batches, we can instead pool over channel, height and width, but match on the batch index. This is known as **layer normalization** [BKH16]. Alternatively, we can have separate normalization parameters for each example in the batch and for each channel. This is known as **instance normalization** [UVL16].

A natural generalization of the above methods is known as **group normalization** [WH18], where we pool over all locations whose channel is in the same group as  $i$ 's. This is illustrated in Fig. 14.11. Layer normalization is a special case in which there is a single group, containing all the channels. Instance normalization is a special case in which there are  $C$  groups, one per channel. In [WH18], they show experimentally that it can be better (in terms of training speed, as well as training and test accuracies) to use groups that are larger than individual channels, but smaller than all the channels.

#### 14.2.7 Putting it altogether

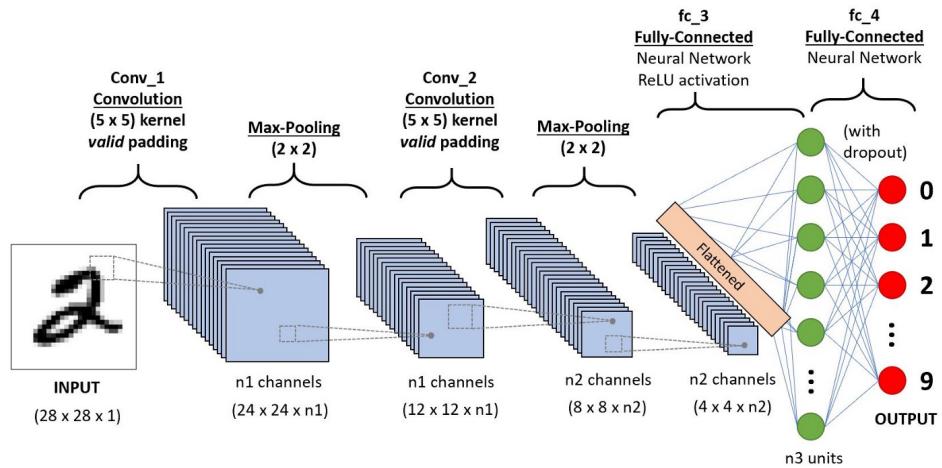
A common design pattern is to create a CNN by alternating convolutional layers with max pooling layers, followed by a final linear classification layer at the end. This is illustrated in Fig. 14.12. (We omit normalization layers in this example, since the model is quite shallow.) This design pattern first appeared in Fukushima's **neocognitron** [Fuk75], and was inspired by Hubel and Wiesel's model of simple and complex cells in the human visual cortex [HW62]. In 1998 Yann LeCun used a similar design in his eponymous **LeNet** model [LeC+98], which used backpropagation and SGD to estimate the parameters. This design pattern continues to be popular in neurally-inspired models of visual object recognition [RP99], as well as various practical applications (see Sec. 14.3 and Sec. 14.4).

### 14.3 Image classification using CNNs

It is common to use CNNs to perform image classification, which is the task of estimating the function  $f : \mathbb{R}^{H \times W \times K} \rightarrow \{0, 1\}^C$ , where  $K$  is the number of input channels (e.g.,  $K = 3$  for RGB images), and  $C$  is the number of class labels. In this section, we discuss several commonly used datasets and models for this task.

#### 14.3.1 Common datasets

The ML literature frequently uses various standard labeled imaged datasets in order to benchmark models and algorithms. We discuss some of these below.



*Figure 14.12: A simple CNN for classifying MNIST images. The model has 2 convolutional layers, and 2 fully connected layers, with a softmax output. The square boxes denote the receptive fields. The two convolutional filters have size  $5 \times 5 \times 1 \times n_1$  and  $5 \times 5 \times n_1 \times n_2$ . The two fully connected layers have weight matrices of size  $(16n_2) \times n_3$  and  $n_3 \times 10$ . The use of a  $5 \times 5$  filter with “valid” convolution means we reduce the input size from 28 pixels per side to  $28 - 5 + 1 = 24$  (see Sec. 14.2.4 for details). The use of  $2 \times 2$  max-pooling with stride 2 reduces the 24 pixels to 12. The second convolution reduces this to  $12 - 5 + 1 = 8$  pixels per side, and the second pooling layer reduces this to 4. As we reduce the spatial size of each layer, we typically increase the number of feature channels (so  $n_2 \approx 2n_1$ ). See Sec. 14.1 for further details. From <https://bit.ly/2YB9oOH>. Used with kind permission of Sumit Saha.*

#### 14.3.1.1 Small datasets

One of the simplest and most widely used is known as **MNIST** [LeC+98; YB19]. This is a dataset of 60k training images of size  $28 \times 28 \times 1$  illustrating handwritten digits from 10 categories; see Fig. 3.19a for an illustration.

Nowadays since MNIST classification is considered “too easy”, so other datasets have been collected. A simple alternative to MNIST is known as **FashionMNIST** [XRV17]. This is a dataset of 60k images of size  $28 \times 28 \times 1$  illustrating clothing items from 10 categories; see Fig. 14.13a for an illustration. Another grayscale dataset is **EMNIST** [Coh+17] which is a dataset of  $\sim 730k$  images of size  $28 \times 28 \times 1$  illustrating handwritten digits and letters from 47 classes.

For small color images, the most common dataset is **CIFAR** [KH09].<sup>3</sup> This is a dataset of  $\sim 50k$  images of size  $32 \times 32 \times 3$  representing everyday objects from 10 or 100 classes; see Fig. 14.13b for an illustration.

3. CIFAR stands for “Canadian Institute For Advanced Research”.



Figure 14.13: (a) Visualization of the **FashionMNIST** dataset [XRV17]. Each image is  $28 \times 28 \times 1$ , where the final dimension of size 1 refers to gray scale. There are 60k training examples and 10k test examples. There are 10 classes: ‘T-shirt/top’, ‘Trouser’, ‘Pullover’, ‘Dress’, ‘Coat’, ‘Sandal’, ‘Shirt’, ‘Sneaker’, ‘Bag’, ‘Ankle boot’. We show the first 25 images from the training set. Generated by `fashion_viz_tf.py`. (b) Some images from the **CIFAR-10** dataset [KH09]. Each image is  $32 \times 32 \times 3$ , where the final dimension of size 3 refers to RGB. There are 50k training examples and 10k test examples. There are 10 classes: plane, car, bird, cat, deer, dog, frog, horse, ship, and truck. We show the first 25 images from the training set. Generated by `cifar_viz_tf.py`.

### 14.3.1.2 The ImageNet competition

Small datasets are useful for prototyping ideas, but it is also important to test methods on larger datasets, both in terms of image size and number of labeled examples. The most widely used dataset of this type is called **ImageNet** [Rus+15]. This is a dataset of  $\sim 14M$  images of size  $256 \times 256 \times 3$  illustrating various objects from 20,000 classes; see Fig. 14.14a for some examples

The ImageNet dataset was used as the basis of the ImageNet Large Scale Visual Recognition Challenge (ILSVRC), which ran from 2010 to 2018. This used a subset of 1.3M images from 1000 classes. During the course of the competition, significant progress was made by the community, as shown in Fig. 14.14b. In particular, 2015 marked the first year in which CNNs could outperform humans (or at least one human, namely Andrej Karpathy) at the task of classifying images from ImageNet. Note that this does not mean that CNNs are better at vision than humans (see e.g., Fig. 14.15 for some failures). Instead, it mostly likely reflects the fact the dataset makes many **fine-grained classification** distinctions — such as between a “tiger” and a “tiger cat” — which humans find difficult to understand; by contrast, sufficiently flexible CNNs can learn arbitrary patterns, including random labels [Zha+17a].

### 14.3.1.3 Other datasets

There are many other image datasets that are commonly used in ML research papers. For example, when studying generative models (as opposed to image classifiers), it is common to use the **CelebA** dataset [Liu+15], which contains 202,599 images of 10,177 celebrities. Each image is annotated with

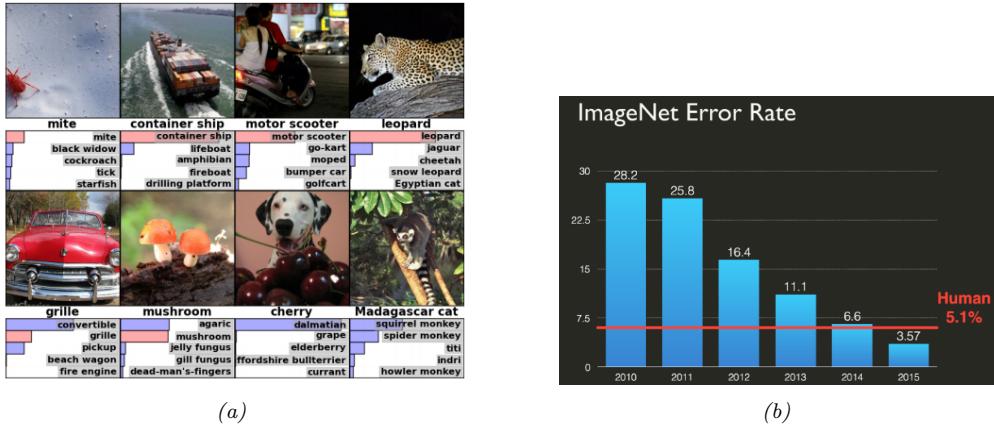


Figure 14.14: (a) Sample images from the ImageNet dataset [Rus+15]. This subset consists of 1.3M color training images, each of which is 256x256 pixels in size. There are 1000 possible labels, one per image, and the task is to minimize the top 5 error rate, i.e., to ensure the correct label is within the 5 most probable predictions. Below each image we show the true label, and a distribution over the top 5 predicted labels. If the true label is in the top 5, its probability bar is colored red. Predictions are generated by a convolutional neural network (CNN) called “AlexNet” (Sec. 14.3.2.2). From Figure 4 of [KSH12]. Used with kind permission of Alex Krizhevsky. (b) Misclassification rate (top 5) on the ImageNet competition over time. Used with kind permission of Andrej Karpathy.



Figure 14.15: Illustration of common failure modes of CNN classifiers on some images from ImageNet. The top row (blue) shows the ground truth label; the next 5 rows are the top 5 predictions from GoogLeNet (red=wrong, green=right). From left to right: Images that contain multiple objects, images of extreme closeups and uncharacteristic views, images with filters, images that significantly benefit from the ability to read text, images that contain very small and thin objects, images with abstract representations, and example of a fine-grained image that GoogLeNet correctly identifies but a human would have significant difficulty with. From <https://bit.ly/3cFbALk>. Used with kind permission of Andrej Karpathy.



Figure 14.16: Some sample images from the “celebrities with attributes” dataset. From <http://mmlab.ie.cuhk.edu/projects/CelebA.html>. Used with kind permission of Ziwei Liu. See [cnn/celeba\\_viz.ipynb](#) for a smaller version of this data.

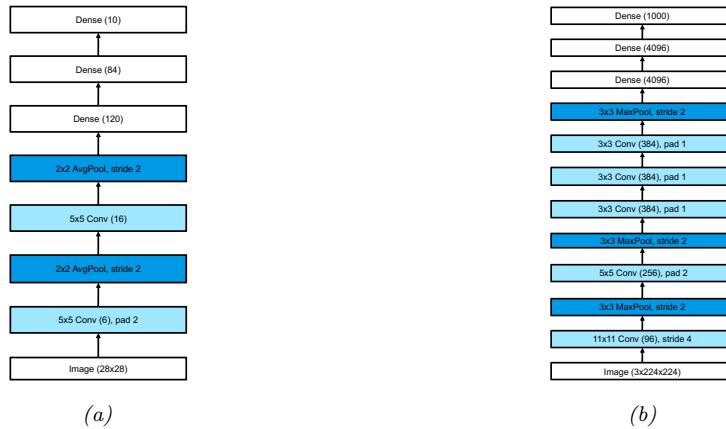
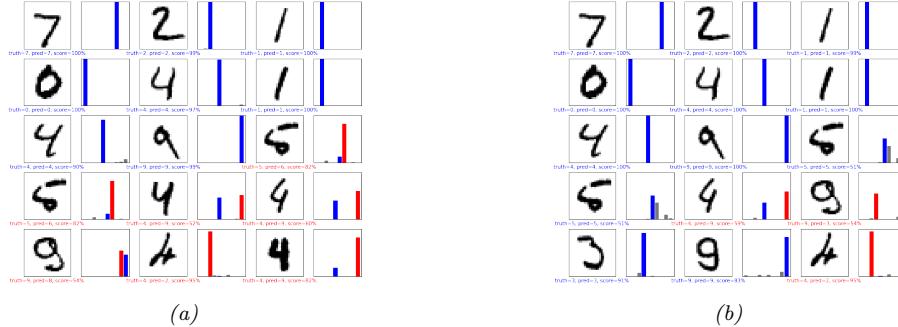


Figure 14.17: (a) LeNet5. (b) AlexNet. Adapted from Figures 6.6.2 and 7.1.2 of [Zha+19a].

40 binary attributes, such as “wearing glasses” or “wavy hair”. See Fig. 14.16 for some examples of this dataset, which we use in Sec. 20.2.6.1 and Sec. 20.3.5.2. (A high-resolution version of the dataset, known as **CelebA-HQ**, is available in [Kar+18].)

### 14.3.2 Common models

In this section, we briefly review various CNNs that have been developed over the years to solve image classification tasks. See e.g., [Gu+18b] for a more extensive review of image classifiers.



*Figure 14.18: Results of applying a CNN to some MNIST images (cherry picked to include some errors). Red is incorrect, blue is correct. (a) After 1 epoch of training. (b) After 2 epochs. Generated by [cnn/cnn\\_mnist\\_tf.ipynb](#).*

#### 14.3.2.1 LeNet

One of the earliest CNNs, created in 1998, is known as **LeNet** [LeC+98], named after its creator, Yann LeCun. It was designed to classify images of handwritten digits, and was trained on the MNIST dataset introduced in Sec. 3.7.2. The model is shown in Fig. 14.17a. Some predictions of this model are shown in Fig. 14.18. After just 1 epoch, the test accuracy is already 98.8%. By contrast, the MLP in Sec. 13.2.4.2 had an accuracy of 95.9% after 1 epoch. More rounds of training can further increase accuracy to a point where performance is indistinguishable from label noise.

Of course, classifying isolated digits is of limited applicability: in the real world, people usually write strings of digits or other letters. This requires both segmentation and classification. LeCun and colleagues devised a way to combine convolutional neural networks with a model similar to a conditional random field to solve this problem. The system was deployed by the US postal service. See [LeC+98] for a more detailed account of the system.

#### 14.3.2.2 AlexNet

Although CNNs have been around for many years, it was not until the paper of [KSH12] in 2012 that mainstream computer vision researchers paid attention to them. In that paper, the authors showed how to reduce the (top 5) error rate on the ImageNet challenge (Sec. 14.3.1.2) from the previous best of 26% to 15%, which was a dramatic improvement. This model became known as **AlexNet** model, named after its creator, Alex Krizhevsky.

Fig. 14.17b(b) shows the architecture. It is very similar to LeNet, shown in Fig. 14.17a, with the following differences: it is deeper (8 layers of adjustable parameters (i.e., excluding the pooling layers) instead of 5); it uses ReLU nonlinearities instead of tanh (see Sec. 13.2.3 for why this is important); it uses dropout (Sec. 13.5.4) for regularization instead of weight decay; and it stacks several convolutional layers on top of each other, rather than strictly alternating between convolution and pooling. Stacking multiple convolutional layers together has the advantage that the receptive fields become larger as the output of one layer is fed into another (for example, three  $3 \times 3$  filters in a row will have a receptive field size of  $7 \times 7$ ). This is better than using a single layer with a larger receptive field, since the multiple layers also have nonlinearities in between. Also, three  $3 \times 3$  filters

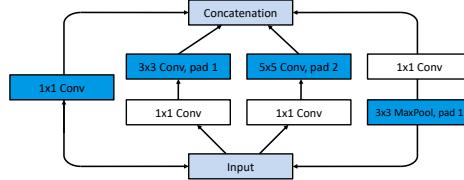


Figure 14.19: Inception module. The  $1 \times 1$  convolutional layers reduce the number of channels, keeping the spatial dimensions the same. The parallel pathways through convolutions of different sizes allows the model to learn which filter size to use for each layer. The final depth concatenation block combines the outputs of all the different pathways (which all have the same spatial size). Adapted from Figure 2b of [Sze+15a].

have fewer parameters than one  $7 \times 7$ .

Note that AlexNet has 60M free parameters (which is much more than the 1M labeled examples), mostly due to the three fully connected layers at the output. Fitting this model relied on using two GPUs (due to limited memory of GPUs at that time), and is widely considered an engineering *tour de force*.<sup>4</sup> Fig. 14.14a shows some predictions made by the model on some images from ImageNet.

#### 14.3.2.3 GoogLeNet (Inception)

Google who developed a model known as **GoogLeNet** [Sze+15a]. (The name is a pun on Google and LeNet.) The main difference from earlier models is that GoogLeNet used a new kind of block, known as an **inception block**<sup>5</sup>, that employs multiple parallel pathways, each of which has a convolutional filter of a different size. See Fig. 14.19 for an illustration. This lets the model learn what the optimal filter size should be at each level. The overall model consists of 9 inception blocks followed by global average pooling. See Fig. 14.20 for an illustration. Since this model first came out, various extensions were proposed; details can be found in [IS15; Sze+15b; SIV17].

#### 14.3.2.4 ResNet

The winner of the 2015 ImageNet classification challenge was a team at Microsoft, who proposed a model known as **ResNet** [He+16a]. The key idea is to replace  $\mathbf{x}_{l+1} = \mathcal{F}_l(\mathbf{x}_l)$  with

$$\mathbf{x}_{l+1} = \varphi(\mathbf{x}_l + \mathcal{F}_l(\mathbf{x}_l)) \quad (14.17)$$

This is known as a **residual block**, since  $\mathcal{F}_l$  only needs to learn the residual, or difference, between input and output of this layer, which is a simpler task. In [He+16a],  $\mathcal{F}$  has the form conv-BN-relu-conv-BN, where conv is a convolutional layer, and BN is a batch norm layer (Sec. 13.4.4). (We can add a  $1 \times 1$  convolution to the skip connection to compensate for a different number of channels between  $\mathbf{x}_l$  and  $\mathcal{F}(\mathbf{x}_l)$ , if needed.) See Fig. 14.21 for an illustration.

4. The 3 authors of the paper (Alex Krizhevsky, Ilya Sutskever and Geoff Hinton) were subsequently hired by Google, although Ilya left in 2015, and Alex left in 2017. For more historical details, see <https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/AlexNet>. Note that AlexNet was not the first CNN implemented on a GPU; that honor goes to a group at Microsoft [CPS06], who got a 4x speedup over CPUs, and then [Cir+11], who got a 60x speedup.

5. This term comes from the movie *Inception*, in which the phrase “We need to go deeper” was uttered. This became a popular meme in 2014.

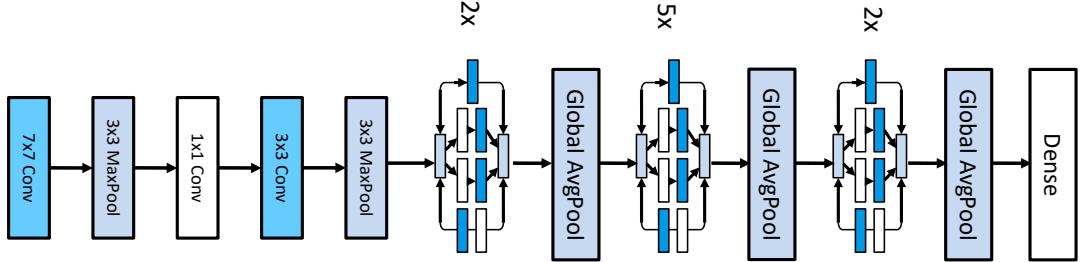


Figure 14.20: GoogLeNet (slightly simplified from the original). Input is on the left. Adapted from Figure 3 of [Sze+15a].

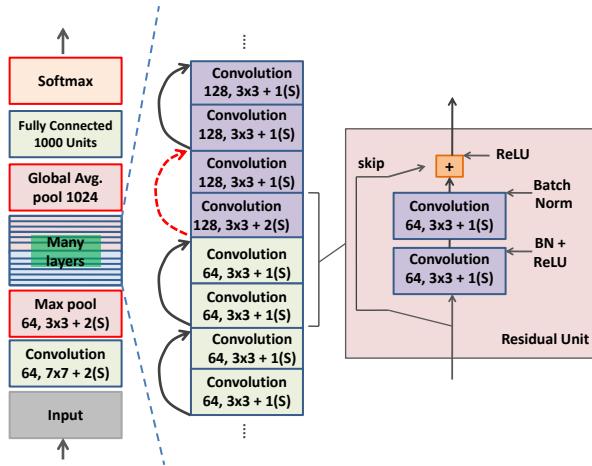


Figure 14.21: The ResNet architecture. The notation  $64, 3 \times 3 + 1(S)$  means a convolutional layer with 64 channels, using  $3 \times 3$  kernels with stride 1 and same convolution. Every time the resolution is halved (by using a stride of size 2), the number of channels is doubled. The black curved edges are skip connections, that bypass the nonlinear pathway. The dotted red curved edges are skip connections combined with  $1 \times 1$  convolution so that the number of input channels matches the output of the nonlinear pathway. Adapted from Figure 14.17 of [Gér19].

The use of residual blocks allows us to train very deep models. For example, [He+16a] trained a 152 layer ResNet on ImageNet. The reason this is possible is that gradient can flow directly from the output to earlier layers, via the skip connections, for reasons explained in Sec. 13.4.3.

In [He+16b], they showed how a small modification of the above scheme allows us to train models with up to 1001 layers. The key insight is that the signal on the skip connections is still being attenuated due to the use of the nonlinear activation function after the addition step,  $\mathbf{x}_{l+1} = \varphi(\mathbf{x}_l + \mathcal{F}(\mathbf{x}_l))$ . They showed that the following kind of residual block works better:

$$\mathbf{x}_{l+1} = \mathbf{x}_l + \mathcal{F}'_l(\mathbf{x}_l) \quad (14.18)$$

where  $\mathcal{F}'(\mathbf{x}_l)$  is Conv-BN-Relu-Conv-BN-Relu. This is called a **preactivation resnet** or **PreResnet** for short, since it returns the activations before being passed through the nonlinear transfer function  $\varphi$ .

The trouble with very deep ResNet models is that there is nothing to force the model to use the residual blocks, so many layers may be wasted. The **wide resnet** model [ZK16], modifies ResNet by using a smaller number of much “wider” residual layers (i.e., with more convolutional channels).

## 14.4 Solving other discriminative vision tasks with CNNs

In this section, we briefly discuss how to tackle various other vision tasks using CNNs. Each task also introduces a new architectural innovation to the library of basic building blocks we have already seen. More details on CNNs for computer vision can be found in e.g., [Bro19].

### 14.4.1 Image tagging

Image classification associates a single label with the whole image, i.e., the outputs are assumed to be mutually exclusive. In many problems, there may be multiple objects present, and we want to label all of them. This is known as **image tagging**, and is an application of multi-label prediction. In this case, we define the output space as  $\mathcal{Y} = \{0, 1\}^C$ , where  $C$  is the number of tag types. Since the output bits are independent (given the image), we should replace the final softmax with a set of  $C$  logistic units.

Users of social media sites like **Instagram** often create hash tags for their images; this therefore provides a “free” way of creating large supervised datasets. Of course, many tags may be quite sparsely used, and their meaning may not be well-defined visually. (For example, someone may take a photo of themselves after they get a COVID test and tag the image “#covid”; however, visually it just looks like any other image of a person.) Thus this kind of user-generated labeling is usually considered quite noisy. However, it can be useful for “pre-training”, as discussed in [Mah+18].

Finally, it is worth noting that image tagging is often a much more sensible objective than image classification, since many images have multiple objects in them, and it can be hard to know which one we should be labeling. Indeed, Andrej Karpathy, who created the “human performance benchmark” on ImageNet, noted the following:<sup>6</sup>

Both [CNNs] and humans struggle with images that contain multiple ImageNet classes (usually many more than five), with little indication of which object is the focus of the image. This error is only present in the classification setting, since every image is constrained to have exactly one correct label. In total, we attribute *16% of human errors* to this category.

### 14.4.2 Object detection

In some cases, we want to produce a variable number of outputs, corresponding to a variable number of objects of interest that may be present in the image. (This is an example of an **open world** problem, with an unknown number of objects.)

---

6. Source: <https://bit.ly/3cFbALK>

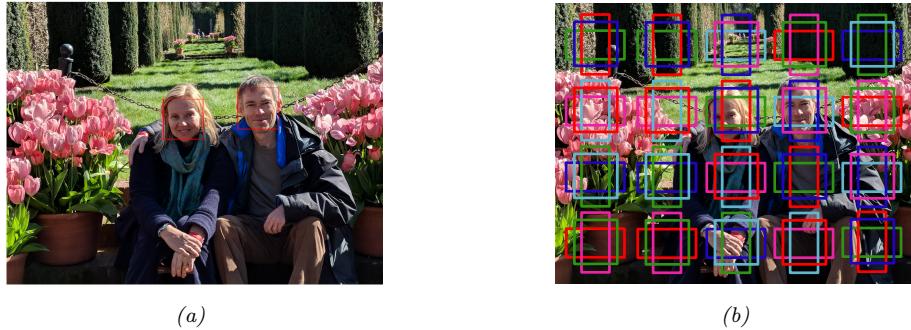


Figure 14.22: (a) Illustration of face detection, a special case of object detection. (Photo of author and his wife Margaret, taken at Filoli in California in February, 2018. Image processed by Jonathan Huang using SSD face model.) (b) Illustration of anchor boxes. Adapted from [Zha+19a, Sec 12.5].

A canonical example of this is **object detection**, in which we must return a set of **bounding boxes** representing the locations of objects of interest, together with their class labels. A special case of this is **face detection**, where there is only one class of interest. This is illustrated in Fig. 14.22a.<sup>7</sup>

The simplest way to tackle such detection problems is to convert it into a closed world problem, in which there is a finite number of possible locations (and orientations) any object can be in. These candidate locations are known as **anchor boxes**. We can create boxes at multiple locations, scales and aspect ratios, as illustrated in Fig. 14.22b. For each box, we train the system to predict what category of object it contains (if any); we can also perform regression to predict the offset of the object location from the center of the anchor. (These residual regression terms allow sub-grid spatial localization.)

Abstractly, we are learning a function of the form

$$f_{\theta} : \mathbb{R}^{H \times W \times K} \rightarrow [0, 1]^{A \times A} \times \{1, \dots, C\}^{A \times A} \times (\mathbb{R}^4)^{A \times A} \quad (14.19)$$

where  $A$  is the number of anchor boxes in each dimension, and  $C$  is the number of object types (class labels). For each box location  $(i, j)$ , we predict three outputs: an object presence probability,  $p_{ij} \in [0, 1]$ , an object category,  $y_{ij} \in \{1, \dots, C\}$ , and two 2d offset vectors,  $\delta_{ij} \in \mathbb{R}^4$ , which can be added to the centroid of the box to get the top left and bottom right corners.

Several models of this type have been proposed, including the **single shot detector** model of [Liu+16], and the **YOLO** (you only look once) model of [Red+16]. Many other methods for object detection have been proposed over the years. These models make different tradeoffs between speed, accuracy, simplicity, etc. See [Hua+17] for an empirical comparison, and [Zha+18] for a more recent review.

7. Note that face detection is different from **face recognition**, which is a classification task that tries to predict the identity of a person from a set or “**gallery**” of possible people. Face recognition is usually solved by applying the classifier to all the patches that are detected as containing faces.



Figure 14.23: (a) Illustration of keypoint detection for body, hands and face using the OpenPose system. From Figure 8 of [Cao+18]. Used with kind permission of Yaser Sheikh. (b) Illustration of object detection and instance segmentation using Mask R-CNN. From [https://github.com/matterport/Mask\\_RCNN](https://github.com/matterport/Mask_RCNN). Used with kind permission of Waleed Abdulla.

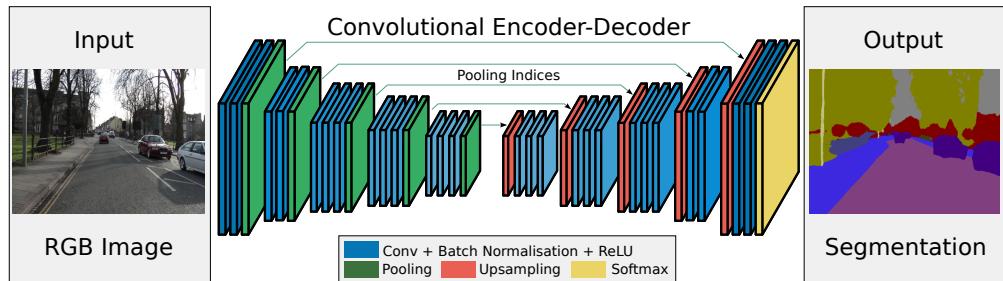


Figure 14.24: Illustration of an encoder-decoder (aka U-net) CNN for semantic segmentation. The encoder uses convolution (which downsamples), and the decoder uses transposed convolution (which upsamples). From Figure 1 of [BKC17]. Used with kind permission of Alex Kendall.

### 14.4.3 Human pose estimation

We can train an object detector to detect people. We can also train it to predict their 2d shape, as represented by the locations of a fixed set of skeletal keypoints, e.g., the location of the head or hands. This is called **human pose estimation**. See Fig. 14.23a for an example. There are several techniques for this, e.g., **PersonLab** [Pap+18] and **OpenPose** [Cao+18]. See [Bab19] for a recent review.

We can also predict 3d properties of each detected object. The main limitation is the ability to collect enough labeled training data, since it is difficult for human annotators to label things in 3d. However, we can use **computer graphics** engines to create simulated images with infinite ground truth 3d annotations (see e.g., [GNK18]).

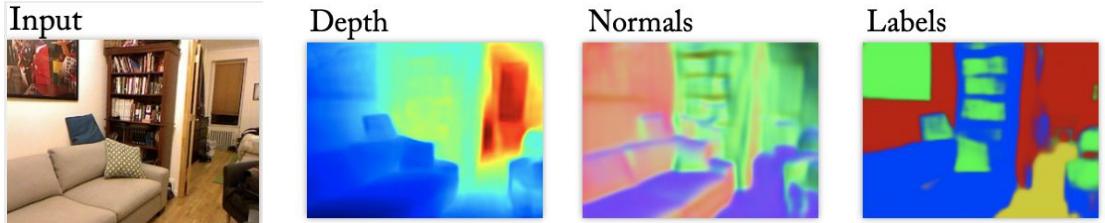


Figure 14.25: Illustration of a multi-task dense prediction problem. From Based on Figure 1 of [EF15]. Used with kind permission of Rob Fergus.

#### 14.4.4 Image segmentation

We can create one output label for each input pixel, arranged in a 2d grid. This can be used for **semantic segmentation**, where we have to predict a class label  $y_i \in \{1, \dots, C\}$  for each pixel. (This should not be confused with instance segmentation, which we discuss in Sec. 14.4.4.3.)

A common way to tackle semantic segmentation is to use an **encoder-decoder** architecture, as illustrated in Sec. 14.4.4. The encoder uses standard convolution to map the input into a small 2d bottleneck, which captures high level properties of the input at a coarse spatial resolution. This uses a technique called dilated convolution that we explain in Sec. 14.4.4.1. The decoder maps the small 2d bottleneck back to a full-sized output image using a technique called transposed convolution that we explain in Sec. 14.4.4.2. Since the bottleneck loses information, we can also add skip connections from input layers to output layers. The overall structure resembles the letter U, so this is also known as a **U-net** [RFB15].

A similar architecture can be used for other **dense prediction** or **image-to-image** tasks, such as **depth prediction** (predict the distance from the camera,  $z_i \in \mathbb{R}$ , for each pixel  $i$ ), **surface normal prediction** (predict the orientation of the surface,  $\mathbf{z}_i \in \mathbb{R}^3$ , at each image patch), etc. We can of course train one model to solve all of these tasks simultaneously, using multiple output heads, as illustrated in Fig. 14.25. (See [Kok17] for details.)

##### 14.4.4.1 Dilated convolution

Convolution is an operation that combines the pixel values in a local neighborhood. By using striding, and stacking many layers of convolution together, we can enlarge the receptive field of each neuron, which is the region of input space that each neuron responds to. However, we would need many layers to give each neuron enough context to cover the entire image (unless we used very large filters, which would be slow and require too many parameters).

As an alternative, we can use **convolution with holes** [Mal99], sometimes known by the French term **à trous algorithm**, and recently renamed **dilated convolution** [YK16]. This method simply takes every  $r$ 'th input element when performing convolution, where  $r$  is known as the **rate** or **dilation factor**. For example, in 1d, convolving with filter  $\mathbf{w}$  using rate  $r = 2$  is equivalent to regular convolution using the filter  $\tilde{\mathbf{w}} = [w_1, 0, w_2, 0, w_3]$ , where we have inserted 0s to expand the receptive field (hence the term “convolution with holes”). This allows us to get the benefit of increased receptive fields without increasing the number of parameters or the amount of compute. See Fig. 14.26 for an

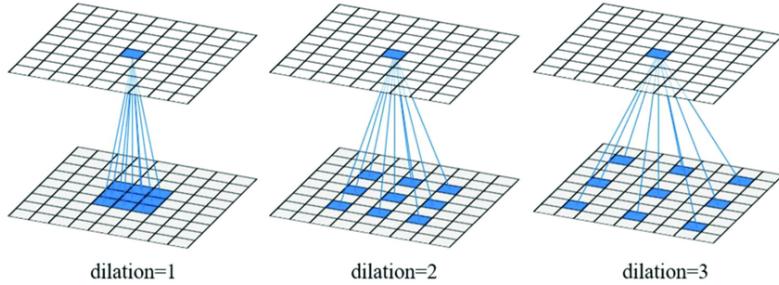


Figure 14.26: Dilated convolution with a  $3 \times 3$  filter using rate 1, 2 and 3. From Figure 1 of [Cui+19]. Used with kind permission of Ximin Cui.

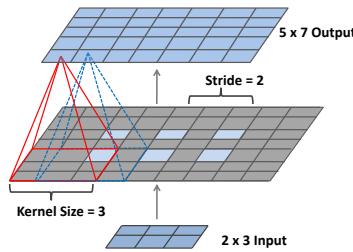


Figure 14.27: Transposed convolution with a filter of size  $3 \times 3$  and stride of 2 to map a  $2 \times 3$  input to a  $5 \times 7$  output. Adapted from Figure 14.27 of [Gér19].

illustration.

More precisely, dilated convolution in 2d is defined as follows:

$$z_{i,j,d} = b_d + \sum_{u=0}^{H-1} \sum_{v=0}^{W-1} \sum_{c=0}^{C-1} x_{i+ru, j+rv, c} w_{u,v,c,d} \quad (14.20)$$

where we assume the same rate  $r$  for both height and width, for simplicity. Compare this to Eq. (14.14), where the stride parameter uses  $x_{si+u, sj+v, c}$ .

#### 14.4.4.2 Transposed convolution

In Sec. 14.4.4.1, we discussed dilated convolution, in which we place 0s (or ‘holes’) in the filter weights (to expand its field of view), and then apply regular convolution. We can also imagine doing the converse, in which we place 0s in the input image, to make it larger, and then apply regular convolution. This is called **transposed convolution**, since the corresponding matrix operation since it maps from a small input to a larger output.

Note that transposed convolution is also sometimes called **deconvolution**, but this is an incorrect usage of the term: deconvolution is the process of ‘undoing’ the effect of convolution with a known filter, such as a blur filter.

#### 14.4.4.3 Instance segmentation

In semantic segmentation, we attach a label to each pixel, but we do not group the pixels into objects. Thus the output has the same size as the input. By contrast, in **instance segmentation**, the goal is to predict the label and 2d shape of each object instance in the image, as illustrated in Fig. 14.23b. In this case there are a variable number of outputs. We can combine semantic segmentation of “stuff” and instance segmentation of “things” into a coherent framework called “**panoptic segmentation**” [Kir+19].

### 14.5 Generating images by inverting CNNs

A CNN trained for image classification is a discriminative model of the form  $p(y|\mathbf{x})$ , which takes as input an image, and returns as output a probability distribution over  $C$  class labels. In this section we discuss how to “invert” this model, by converting it into a (conditional) **generative image model** of the form  $p(\mathbf{x}|y)$ . This will allow us to generate images that belong to a specific class. (We discuss more principled approaches to creating generative models for images in the sequel to this book, [Mur22].)

#### 14.5.1 Converting a trained classifier into a generative model

We can define a joint distribution over images and labels using  $p(\mathbf{x}, y) = p(\mathbf{x})p(y|\mathbf{x})$ , where  $p(y|\mathbf{x})$  is the CNN classifier, and  $p(\mathbf{x})$  is some prior over images. If we then clamp the class label to a specific value, we can create a conditional generative model using  $p(\mathbf{x}|y=c) \propto p(\mathbf{x})p(y=c|\mathbf{x})$ . Note that the discriminative classifier  $p(y|\mathbf{x})$  was trained to “throw away” information, so  $p(y|\mathbf{x})$  is not an invertible function. Thus the prior term  $p(\mathbf{x})$  will play an important role in regularizing this process, as we see in Sec. 14.5.2.

One way to sample from this model is to use the Metropolis Hastings algorithm (Sec. 7.7.4), treating  $\mathcal{E}_c(\mathbf{x}) = \log p(y=c|\mathbf{x}) + \log p(\mathbf{x})$  as the energy function. Since gradient information is available, we can use a proposal of the form  $q(\mathbf{x}'|\mathbf{x}) = \mathcal{N}(\boldsymbol{\mu}(\mathbf{x}), \epsilon \mathbf{I})$ , where  $\boldsymbol{\mu}(\mathbf{x}) = \mathbf{x} + \frac{\epsilon}{2} \nabla \log \mathcal{E}_c(\mathbf{x})$ . This is called the **Metropolis-adjusted Langevin algorithm** (MALA). As an approximation, we can ignore the rejection step, and accept every proposal. This is called the **unadjusted Langevin algorithm**. In addition, we can scale the gradient of the log prior and log likelihood independently. Thus we get an update over the space of images that looks like a noisy version of SGD, except we take derivatives wrt the input pixels (using Eq. (13.28)), instead of the parameters:

$$\mathbf{x}_{t+1} = \mathbf{x}_t + \epsilon_1 \frac{\partial \log p(\mathbf{x}_t)}{\partial \mathbf{x}_t} + \epsilon_2 \frac{\partial \log p(y=c|\mathbf{x}_t)}{\partial \mathbf{x}_t} + \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{0}, \epsilon_3^2 \mathbf{I}) \quad (14.21)$$

We can interpret each term in this equation as follows: the  $\epsilon_1$  term ensures the image is plausible under the prior, the  $\epsilon_2$  term ensures the image is plausible under the likelihood, and the  $\epsilon_3$  term is a noise term, in order to generate diverse samples. If we set  $\epsilon_3 = 0$ , the method becomes a deterministic algorithm to (approximately) generate the “most likely image” for this class.

#### 14.5.2 Image priors

In this section, we discuss various kinds of image priors that we can use to regularize the ill-posed problem of inverting a classifier. These priors, together with the image that we start the optimization

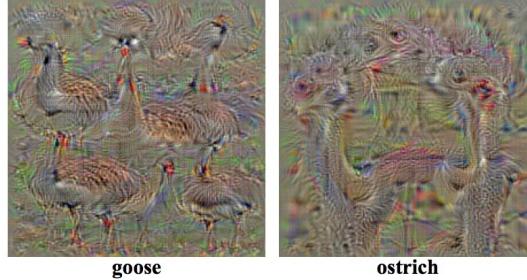


Figure 14.28: Images that maximize the probability of ImageNet classes “goose” and “ostrich” under a simple Gaussian prior. From <http://yosinski.com/deepvis>. Used with kind permission of Jeff Clune.

from, will determine the kinds of outputs that we generate.

#### 14.5.2.1 Gaussian prior

Just specifying the class label is not enough information to specify the kind of images we want. We also need a prior  $p(\mathbf{x})$  over what constitutes a “plausible” image. The prior can have a large effect on the quality of the resulting image, as we show below.

Arguably the simplest prior is  $p(\mathbf{x}) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{x}|\mathbf{0}, \mathbf{I})$ , as suggested in [SVZ14]. (This assumes the image pixels have been centered.) This can prevent pixels from taking on extreme values. In this case, the update due to the prior term has the form

$$\nabla_{\mathbf{x}} \log p(\mathbf{x}_t) = \nabla_{\mathbf{x}} - \frac{1}{2} \|\mathbf{x}_t - \mathbf{0}\|_2^2 = -\mathbf{x}_t \quad (14.22)$$

Thus the overall update (assuming  $\epsilon_2 = 1$  and  $\epsilon_3 = 0$ ) has the form

$$\mathbf{x}_{t+1} = (1 - \epsilon_1)\mathbf{x}_t + \frac{\partial \log p(y=c|\mathbf{x}_t)}{\partial \mathbf{x}_t} \quad (14.23)$$

See Fig. 14.28 for some samples generated by this method.

#### 14.5.2.2 Total variation (TV) prior

We can generate slightly more realistic looking images if we use additional regularizers. [MV15; MV16] suggested computing the **total variation** or **TV** norm of the image. This is equal to the integral of the per-pixel gradients, which can be approximated as follows:

$$\text{TV}(\mathbf{x}) = \sum_{ijk} (x_{ijk} - x_{i+1,j,k})^2 + (x_{ijk} - x_{i,j+1,k})^2 \quad (14.24)$$

where  $x_{ijk}$  is the pixel value in row  $i$ , column  $j$  and channel  $k$  (for RGB images). We can rewrite this in terms of the horizontal and vertical **Sobel edge detector** applied to each channel:

$$\text{TV}(\mathbf{x}) = \sum_k \|\mathbf{H}(\mathbf{x}_{::,k})\|_F^2 + \|\mathbf{V}(\mathbf{x}_{::,k})\|_F^2 \quad (14.25)$$

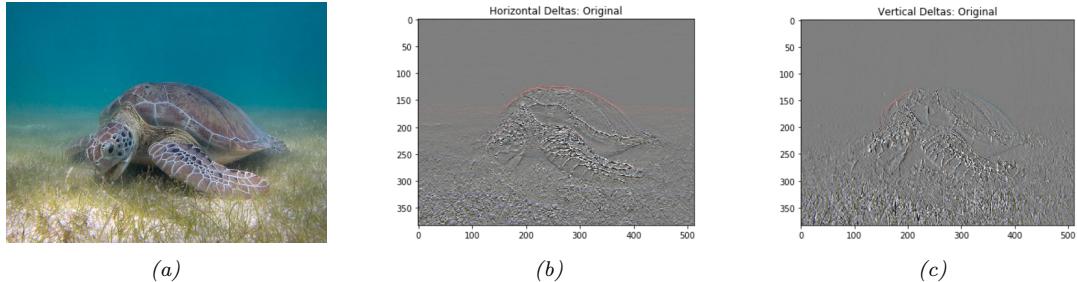


Figure 14.29: Illustration of total variation norm. (a) Input image: a green sea turtle (Used with kind permission of Wikimedia author P. Lindgren). (b) Horizontal deltas. (c) Vertical deltas. Generated by <https://bit.ly/2FiCZDp>.

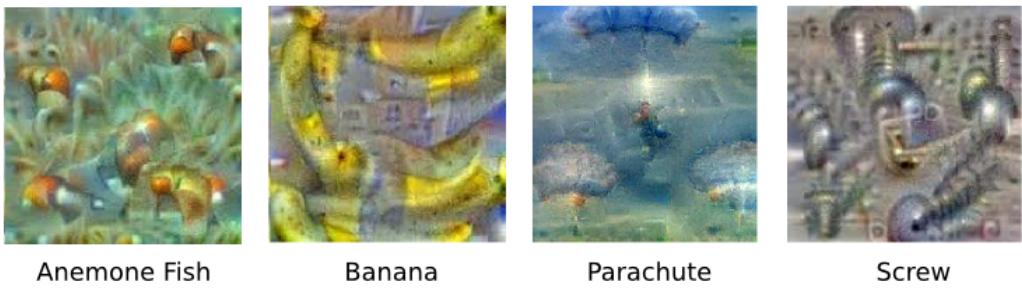


Figure 14.30: Images that maximize the probability of certain ImageNet classes under a TV prior. From <https://bit.ly/2ICkev>. Used with kind permission of Alexander Mordvintsev.

See Fig. 14.29 for an illustration of these edge detectors. Using  $p(\mathbf{x}) \propto \exp(-\text{TV}(\mathbf{x}))$  discourages images from having high frequency artefacts. In [Yos+15], they use Gaussian blur instead of TV norm, but this has a similar effect.

In Fig. 14.30 we show some results of optimizing  $\log p(y = c, \mathbf{x})$  using a TV prior and a CNN likelihood for different class labels  $c$  starting from random noise.

### 14.5.3 Visualizing the features learned by a CNN

It is interesting to ask what the “neurons” in a CNN are learning. One way to do this is to start with a random image, and then to optimize the input pixels so as to maximize the average activation of a particular neuron. This is called **activation maximization** (AM), and uses the same technique as in Sec. 14.5.1 but fixes an internal node to a specific value, rather than clamping the output class label.

Fig. 14.31 illustrates the output of this method (with the TV prior) when applied to the AlexNet CNN trained on Imagenet classification. We see that, as the depth increases, neurons are learning to recognize simple edges/blobs, then texture patterns, then object parts, and finally whole objects. This is believed to be roughly similar to the hierarchical structure of the visual cortex (see e.g., [Kan+12]).

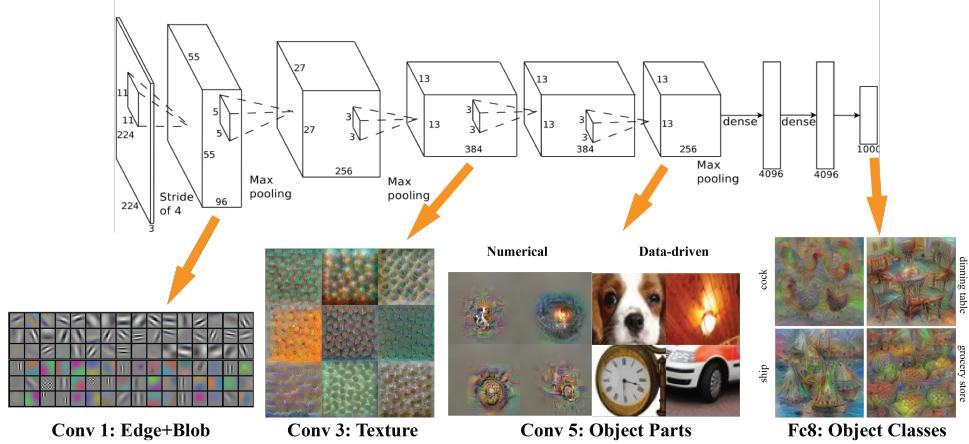


Figure 14.31: We visualize “optimal stimuli” for neurons in layers Conv 1, 3, 5 and fc8 in the AlexNet architecture, trained on the ImageNet dataset. For Conv5, we also show retrieved real images (under the column “data driven”) that produce similar activations. Based on the method in [MV16], as implemented in the code at [http://vision03.csail.mit.edu/cnn\\_art/](http://vision03.csail.mit.edu/cnn_art/). Used with kind permission of Donglai Wei.

An alternative to optimizing in pixel space is to search the training set for images that maximally activate a given neuron. This is illustrated in Fig. 14.31 for the Conv5 layer.

For more information on feature visualization see e.g., [OMS17].

#### 14.5.4 Deep Dream

So far we have focused on generating images which maximize the class label or some other neuron of interest. In this section we tackle a more artistic application, in which we want to generate versions of an input image that emphasize certain features.

To do this, we view our pre-trained image classifier as a feature extractor. Based on the results in Sec. 14.5.3, we know the activity of neurons in different layers correspond to different kinds of features in the image. Suppose we are interested in “amplifying” features from layers  $l \in \mathcal{L}$ . We can do this by defining an energy or loss function of the form  $\mathcal{L}(\mathbf{x}) = \sum_{l \in \mathcal{L}} \bar{\phi}_l(\mathbf{x})$ , where  $\phi_l(\mathbf{x})$  is the average over the features in layer  $l$ ,  $\bar{\phi}_l = \frac{1}{HWC} \sum_{hwc} \phi_{lhw}(x)$ . We can now use gradient descent to optimize this energy. The resulting process is called **DeepDream** [MOT15], since the model amplifies features that were only hinted at in the original image and then creates images with more and more of them.<sup>8</sup>

Fig. 14.32 shows an example. We start with an image of a jellyfish, which we pass into a CNN that was trained to classify ImageNet images. After several iterations, we generate some image which is a hybrid of the input and the kinds of “hallucinations” we saw in Fig. 14.28; these hallucinations involve dog parts, since ImageNet has so many kinds of dogs in its label set. See [Tho16] for details, and <https://deepdreamgenerator.com> for a fun web-based demo.

8. The method was originally called **Inceptionism**, since it uses the inception CNN (Sec. 14.3.2.3).

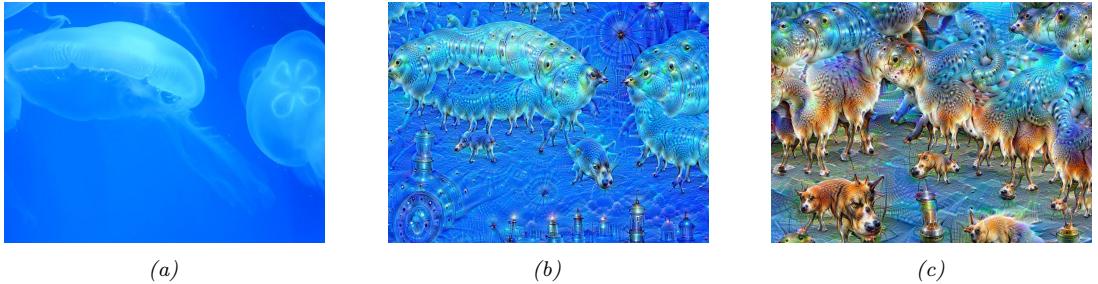


Figure 14.32: Illustration of DeepDream. The CNN is an Inception classifier trained on ImageNet. (a) Starting image of an *Aurelia aurita* (also called moon jelly). (b) Image generated after 10 iterations. (c) Image generated after 50 iterations. From <https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/DeepDream>. Used with kind permission of Wikipedia author Martin Thoma.



Figure 14.33: Example output from a neural style transfer system (a) Content image: a green sea turtle (Used with kind permission of Wikimedia author P. Lindgren). (b) Style image: a painting by Wassily Kandinsky called “Composition 7”. (c) Output of neural style generation. Generated by <https://bit.ly/2FiCZDp>.

### 14.5.5 Neural style transfer

The DeepDream system in Fig. 14.32 shows one way that CNNs can be used to create “art”. However, it is rather creepy. In this section, we discuss a related approach that gives the user more control. In particular, the user has to specify a reference “style image”  $\mathbf{x}_s$  and “content image”  $\mathbf{x}_c$ . The system will then try to generate a new image  $\mathbf{x}$  that “re-renders”  $\mathbf{x}_c$  in the style of  $\mathbf{x}_s$ . This is called **neural style transfer**, and is illustrated in Fig. 14.33. This was first proposed in [GEB16], and there are now many papers on this topic; see [Jin+17] for a recent review.

#### 14.5.5.1 How it works

Style transfer works by optimizing the following energy function:

$$\mathcal{L}(\mathbf{x}|\mathbf{x}_s, \mathbf{x}_c) = \lambda_{TV}\mathcal{L}_{TV}(\mathbf{x}) + \lambda_c\mathcal{L}_{content}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}_c) + \lambda_s\mathcal{L}_{style}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}_s) \quad (14.26)$$

See Fig. 14.34 for a high level illustration.

The first term in Eq. (14.26) is the total variation prior discussed in Sec. 14.5.2.2. The second term measures how similar  $\mathbf{x}$  is to  $\mathbf{x}_c$  by comparing feature maps of a pre-trained CNN  $\phi(\mathbf{x})$  in the

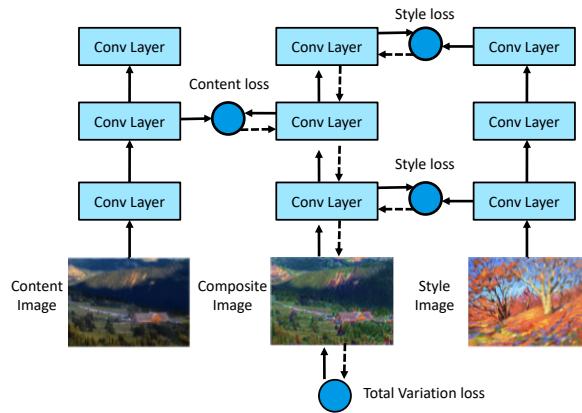


Figure 14.34: Illustration of how neural style transfer works. Adapted from Figure 12.12.2 of [Zha+19a].

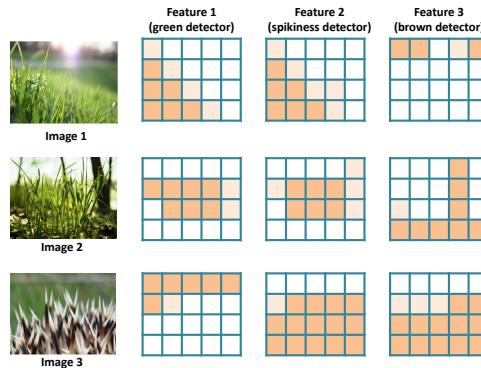


Figure 14.35: Schematic representation of 3 kinds of feature maps for 3 different input images. Adapted from Figure 5.16 of [Fos19].

relevant ‘‘content layer’’  $l$ :

$$\mathcal{L}_{\text{content}}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}_c) = \frac{1}{C_\ell H_\ell W_\ell} \|\phi_\ell(\mathbf{x}) - \phi_\ell(\mathbf{x}_c)\|_2^2 \quad (14.27)$$

Finally we have to define the style term. We can interpret visual style as the statistical distribution of certain kinds of image features. The location of these features in the image may no matter, but their co-occurrence does. This is illustrated in Fig. 14.35. It is clear (to a human) that image 1 is more similar in style to image 2 than to image 3. Intuitively this is because both image 1 and image 2 have spiky green patches in them, whereas image 3 has spiky things that are not green.

To capture the co-occurrence statistics we compute the **Gram matrix** for an image using feature

maps from a specific layer  $\ell$ :

$$G_\ell(\mathbf{x})_{c,d} = \frac{1}{H_\ell W_\ell} \sum_{h=1}^{H_\ell} \sum_{w=1}^{W_\ell} \phi_\ell(\mathbf{x})_{h,w,c} \phi_\ell(\mathbf{x})_{h,w,d} \quad (14.28)$$

The Gram matrix is a  $C_\ell \times C_\ell$  matrix which is proportional to the uncentered covariance of the  $C_\ell$ -dimensional feature vectors sampled over each of the  $H_\ell W_\ell$  locations.

Given this, we define the style loss for layer  $\ell$  as follows:

$$\mathcal{L}_{\text{style}}^\ell(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}_s) = \|\mathbf{G}_\ell(\mathbf{x}) - \mathbf{G}_\ell(\mathbf{x}_s)\|_F^2 \quad (14.29)$$

Finally, we define the overall style loss as a sum over the losses for a set  $\mathcal{S}$  of layers:

$$\mathcal{L}_{\text{style}}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}_s) = \sum_{\ell \in \mathcal{S}} \mathcal{L}_{\text{style}}^\ell(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}_s) \quad (14.30)$$

For example, in Fig. 14.34, we compute the style loss at layers 1 and 3. (Lower layers will capture visual texture, and higher layers will capture object layout.)

#### 14.5.5.2 Speeding up the method

In [GEB16], they used L-BFGS (Sec. 5.3.2) to optimize Eq. (14.26), starting from white noise. We can get faster results if use an optimizer such as Adam instead of BFGS, and initialize from the content image instead of white noise. Nevertheless, running an optimizer for every new style and content image is slow. Several papers (see e.g., [JAFF16; Uy+16; UVL16; LW16]) have proposed to train a neural network to directly predict the outcome of this optimization, rather than solving it for each new image pair. (This can be viewed as a form of amortized optimization.) In particular, for every style image  $\mathbf{x}_s$ , we fit a model  $f_s$  such that  $f_s(\mathbf{x}_c) \approx \text{argmin } \mathcal{L}(\mathbf{x} \mid \mathbf{x}_s, \mathbf{x}_c)$ . We can then apply this model to new content images without having to reoptimize.

More recently, [DSK16] has shown how it is possible to train a single network that takes as input both the content and a discrete representation  $s$  of the style, and then produces  $\text{argmin } \mathcal{L}(\mathbf{x} \mid s, \mathbf{x}_c)$  as the output. This avoids the need to train a separate network for every style image. The key idea is to standardize the features at a given layer using scale and shift parameters that are style specific. In particular, we use the following **conditional instance normalization** transformation:

$$\text{CIN}(\phi(\mathbf{x}_c), s) = \gamma_s \left( \frac{\phi(\mathbf{x}_c) - \mu(\phi(\mathbf{x}_c))}{\sigma(\phi(\mathbf{x}_c))} \right) + \beta_s \quad (14.31)$$

where  $\mu(\phi(\mathbf{x}_c))$  is the mean of the features in a given layer,  $\sigma(\phi(\mathbf{x}_c))$  is the standard deviation, and  $\beta_s$  and  $\gamma_s$  are parameters for style type  $s$ . (See Sec. 14.2.6 for more details on instance normalization.) Surprisingly, this simple trick is enough to capture many kinds of styles.

The drawback of the above technique is that it only works for a fixed number of discrete styles. [HB17] proposed to generalize this by replacing  $\beta_s$  and  $\gamma_s$  by another CNN, which takes an arbitrary style image  $\mathbf{x}_s$  as input, i.e., in Eq. (14.31), we set  $\beta_s = f_\beta(\phi(\mathbf{x}_s))$  and  $\gamma_s = f_\gamma(\phi(\mathbf{x}_s))$ , and learn the parameters  $\beta$  and  $\gamma$  along with all the other parameters to get

$$\text{AIN}(\phi(\mathbf{x}_c), \phi(\mathbf{x}_s)) = f_\gamma(\phi(\mathbf{x}_s)) \left( \frac{\phi(\mathbf{x}_c) - \mu(\phi(\mathbf{x}_c))}{\sigma(\phi(\mathbf{x}_c))} \right) + f_\beta(\phi(\mathbf{x}_s)) \quad (14.32)$$

They call their method **adaptive instance normalization**.

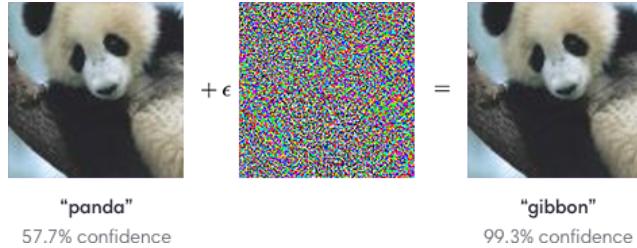


Figure 14.36: Example of an adversarial attack on an image classifier. Left column: original image which is correctly classified. Middle column: small amount of structured noise which is added to the input (magnitude of noise is magnified by 10×). Right column: new image, which is confidently misclassified as a “gibbon”, even though it looks just like the original “panda” image. Here  $\epsilon = 0.007$ . From Figure 1 of [GSS15]. Used with kind permission of Ian Goodfellow.

## 14.6 Adversarial Examples<sup>9</sup>

In Sec. 14.5.1 we discussed ways to generate images that are most likely to activate a given neuron, such as the output label  $y = c$ , by solving

$$\mathbf{x}^* = \underset{\mathbf{x}'}{\operatorname{argmax}} [\log p(y = c | \mathbf{x}'; \boldsymbol{\theta}) + \log p(\mathbf{x}')] \quad (14.33)$$

where  $p(\mathbf{x}')$  is a prior term to regularize the inversion. In this section, we discuss how to modify this approach to generate an image that is *least likely* to generate the true or original label  $y = c$ . Instead of using a prior on “plausible images”, we impose the constraint that  $\mathbf{x}^*$  should remain “perceptually similar” to the original input  $\mathbf{x}$ . This gives rise to the following objective:

$$\mathbf{x}_{\text{adv}} = \underset{\mathbf{x}' \in \Delta(\mathbf{x})}{\operatorname{argmin}} \log p(y = c | \mathbf{x}') \quad (14.34)$$

where  $\Delta(\mathbf{x})$  is the set of images that are “similar” to  $\mathbf{x}$  (we discuss different notions of similarity below).

Eq. (14.34) is an example of an **adversarial attack**. We illustrate this in Fig. 14.36. The input image  $\mathbf{x}$  is on the left, and is predicted to be a panda with probability 57%. By adding a tiny amount of carefully chosen noise (shown in the middle) to the input, we generate the **adversarial image**  $\mathbf{x}_{\text{adv}}$  on the right: this “looks like” the input, but is now classified as a gibbon with probability 99%.

The ability to create adversarial images was first noted in [Sze+14]. It is surprisingly easy to create such examples, which seems paradoxical, given the fact that modern classifiers seem to work so well on normal inputs (see e.g., Fig. 14.14b which shows ImageNet classification error over time), and the perturbed images “look” the same to humans. We explain this paradox in Sec. 14.6.5.

The existence of adversarial images also raises security concerns. For example, [Sha+16b] showed they could force a face recognition system to misclassify person  $A$  as person  $B$ , merely by asking person  $A$  to wear a pair of sunglasses with a special pattern on them, and [Eyk+18] show that it is possible to attach small “adversarial stickers” to traffic signs to classify stop signs as speed limit signs.

<sup>9</sup>. This section is coauthored with Justin Gilmer.

(However, to guarantee robust security, we need to defend against much stronger “**threat models**”, not just imperceptible tweaks, as we discuss in Sec. 14.6.3.)

Below we briefly discuss how to create adversarial attacks, why they occur, and how we can try to defend against them. We focus on the case of deep neural nets for images, although it is important to note that many other kinds of models (including logistic regression and generative models) can also suffer from adversarial attacks. Furthermore, this is not restricted to the image domain, but occurs with many kinds of high dimensional inputs. For example, [Li+19a] contains an audio attack and [Dal+04; Jia+19] contains a text attack. More details on adversarial examples can be found in e.g., [Wiy+19; Yua+19].

### 14.6.1 Whitebox (gradient-based) attacks

To create an adversarial example, we must find a “small” perturbation  $\delta$  to add to the input  $\mathbf{x}$  to create  $\mathbf{x}_{\text{adv}} = \mathbf{x} + \delta$  so that  $f(\mathbf{x}_{\text{adv}}) = y'$ , where  $f()$  is the classifier, and  $y'$  is the label we want to force the system to output. This is known as a **targeted attack**. Alternatively, we may just want to find a perturbation that causes the current predicted label to change from its current value to any other value, so that  $f(\mathbf{x} + \delta) \neq f(\mathbf{x})$ , which is known as **untargeted attack**.

In general, we define the objective for the adversary as *maximizing* the following loss:

$$\mathbf{x}_{\text{adv}} = \underset{\mathbf{x}' \in \Delta(\mathbf{x})}{\operatorname{argmax}} \mathcal{L}(\mathbf{x}', y; \boldsymbol{\theta}) \quad (14.35)$$

where  $y$  is the true label. For the untargeted case, we can define  $\mathcal{L}(\mathbf{x}', y; \boldsymbol{\theta}) = -\log p(y|\mathbf{x}')$ , so we minimize the probability of the true label; and for the targeted case, we can define  $\mathcal{L}(\mathbf{x}', y; \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \log p(y'|\mathbf{x}')$ , where we maximize the probability of the desired label  $y' \neq y$ .

To define what we mean by “small” perturbation, we impose the constraint that  $\mathbf{x}_{\text{adv}} \in \Delta(\mathbf{x})$ , which is the set of “perceptually similar” images to the input  $\mathbf{x}$ . Most of the literature has focused on a simplistic setting in which the adversary is restricted to making bounded  $l_p$  perturbations of a clean input  $\mathbf{x}$ , that is

$$\Delta(\mathbf{x}) = \{\mathbf{x}' : \|\mathbf{x}' - \mathbf{x}\|_p < \epsilon\} \quad (14.36)$$

Typically people assume  $p = 1$  or  $p = 0$ . We will discuss more realistic threat models in Sec. 14.6.3.

In this section, we assume that the attacker knows the model parameters  $\boldsymbol{\theta}$ ; this is called a **whitebox attack**, and lets us use gradient based optimization methods. We relax this assumption in Sec. 14.6.2.)

To solve the optimization problem in Eq. (14.35), we can use any kind of constrained optimization method. In [Sze+14] they used bound-constrained BFGS (Sec. 5.3.2). [GSS15] proposed the more efficient **fast gradient sign (FGS)** method, which performs iterative updates of the form

$$\mathbf{x}_{t+1} = \mathbf{x}_t + \delta_t \quad (14.37)$$

$$\delta_t = \epsilon \operatorname{sign}(\nabla_{\mathbf{x}} \log p(y'|\mathbf{x}, \boldsymbol{\theta})|_{\mathbf{x}_t}) \quad (14.38)$$

where  $\epsilon > 0$  is a small learning rate. (Note that this gradient is with respect to the input pixels, as in Sec. 14.5.1, not the model parameters.) Fig. 14.36 gives an example of this process.

More recently, [Mad+18] proposed the more powerful **projected gradient descent (PGD)** attack; this can be thought of as an iterated version of FGS. There is no “best” variant of PGD for

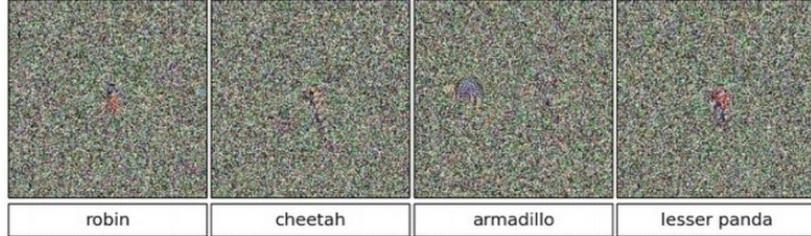


Figure 14.37: Images that look like random noise but which cause the CNN to confidently predict a specific class. From Figure 1 of [NYC15]. Used with kind permission of Jeff Clune.

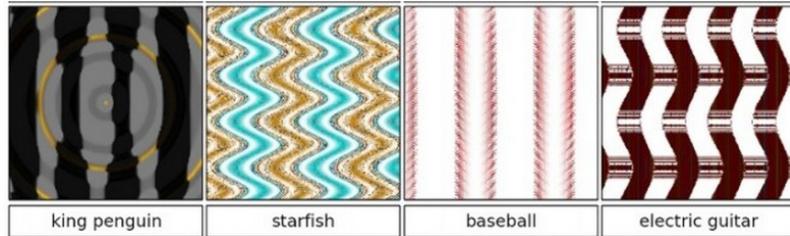


Figure 14.38: Synthetic images that cause the CNN to confidently predict a specific class. From Figure 1 of [NYC15]. Used with kind permission of Jeff Clune.

solving 14.35. Instead, what matters more is the implementation details, e.g. how many steps are used, the step size, and the exact form of the loss. To avoid local minima, we may use random restarts, choosing random points in the constraint space  $\Delta$  to initialize the optimization. The algorithm should be carefully tuned to the specific problem, and the loss should be monitored to check for optimization issues. For best practices, see [Car+19].

### 14.6.2 Blackbox (gradient-free) attacks

In this section, we no longer assume that the adversary knows the parameters  $\theta$  of the predictive model  $f$ . This is known as a **black box attack**. In such cases, we must use derivative-free optimization methods (see Sec. 5.8).

Evolutionary algorithms (EA) are one class of DFO solvers. These were used in [NYC15] to create blackbox attacks. Fig. 14.37 shows some images that were generated by applying an EA to a random noise image. These are known as **fooling images**, as opposed to adversarial images, since they are not visually realistic. Fig. 14.38 shows some fooling images that were generated by applying EA to the parameters of a compositional pattern-producing network [Sta07].<sup>10</sup> By suitably perturbing the CPPN parameters, it is possible to generate structured images with high fitness (classifier score), but which do not look like natural images [Aue12].

<sup>10</sup> A CPPN is a set of elementary functions (such as linear, sine, sigmoid, and Gaussian) which can be composed in order to specify the mapping from each coordinate to the desired color value. CPPN was originally developed as a way to encode abstract properties such as symmetry and repetition, which are often seen during biological development.



Figure 14.39: An adversarially modified image to evade spam detectors. The image is constructed from scratch, and does not involve applying a small perturbation to any given image. This is an illustrative example of how large the space of possible adversarial inputs  $\Delta$  can be when the attacker has full control over the input. From [Big+11]. Used with kind permission of Battista Biggio.

In [SVK19], they used differential evolution to attack images by modifying a single pixel. This is equivalent to bounding the  $\ell_0$  norm of the perturbation, so that  $\|\mathbf{x}_{\text{adv}} - \mathbf{x}\|_0 = 1$ .

In [Pap+17], they learned a differentiable surrogate model of the blackbox, by just querying its predictions  $y$  for different inputs  $\mathbf{x}$ . They then used gradient-based methods to generate adversarial attacks on their surrogate model, and then showed that these attacks transferred to the real model. In this way, they were able to attack various the image classification APIs of various cloud service providers, including Google, Amazon and MetaMind.

### 14.6.3 Real world adversarial attacks

Typically, the space of possible adversarial inputs  $\Delta$  can be quite large, and will be difficult to exactly define mathematically as it will depend on semantics of the input based on the attacker's goals [BR18]. Consider for example of the **content constrained** threat model discussed in [Gil+18b]. One instance of this threat model involves image spam, where the attacker wishes to upload an image attachment in an email that will not be classified as spam by a detection model. In this case  $\Delta$  is incredibly large as it consists of all possible images which contain some semantic concept the attacker wishes to upload (in this case an advertisement). To explore  $\Delta$ , spammers can utilize different fonts, word orientations or add random objects to the background as is the case of the adversarial example in Figure 14.39 (see [Big+11] for more examples). Of course, optimization based methods may still be used here to explore parts of  $\Delta$ . However, in practice it may be preferable to design an adversarial input by hand as this can be significantly easier to execute with only limited-query black-box access to the underlying classifier.

### 14.6.4 Defenses based on robust optimization

As discussed in Section 14.6.3, securing a system against adversarial inputs in more general threat models seems extraordinarily difficult, due to the vast space of possible adversarial inputs  $\Delta$ . However,

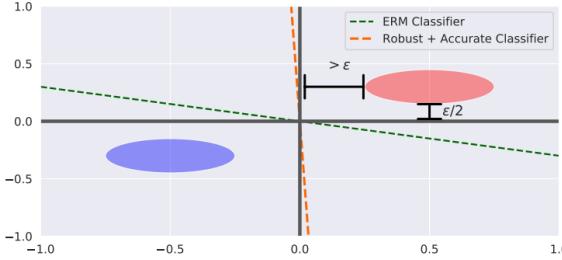


Figure 14.40: Illustration of robust vs non-robust features for separating two classes, represented by Gaussian blobs. The green line is the decision boundary induced by empirical risk minimization (ERM). The red line is the decision boundary induced by robust training — it ignores the vertical feature  $x_2$ , which is less robust than the horizontal feature  $x_1$ . From Figure 14 of [Ily+19]. Used with kind permission of Andrew Ilyas.

there is a line of research focused on producing models which are invariant to perturbations within a small constraint set  $\Delta(\mathbf{x})$ , with a focus on  $l_p$ -robustness where  $\Delta(\mathbf{x}) = \{\mathbf{x}' : \|\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}'\|_p < \epsilon\}$ . Although solving this toy threat model has little application to security settings, enforcing smoothness priors have in some cases improved robustness to random image corruptions [SHS], lead to models which transfer better [Sal+20], and can bias models towards different features in the data [Yin+19a].

Perhaps the most straightforward method for improving  $l_p$ -robustness is to directly optimize for it though **robust optimization** [BTEGN09], also known as **adversarial training** [GSS15]. We define the **adversarial risk** to be

$$\min_{\theta} \mathbb{E}_{(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y}) \sim p(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y})} \left[ \max_{\mathbf{x}' \in \Delta(\mathbf{x})} L(\mathbf{x}', \mathbf{y}; \theta) \right] \quad (14.39)$$

The min max formulation in equation 14.39 poses unique challenges from an optimization perspective—it requires solving both the non-concave inner maximization and the non-convex outer minimization problems. Even worse, the inner max is NP-hard to solve in general [Kat+17]. However, in practice it may be sufficient to compute the gradient of the outer objective  $\nabla_{\theta} L(\mathbf{x}_{\text{adv}}, \mathbf{y}; \theta)$  at an approximately maximal point in the inner problem  $\mathbf{x}_{\text{adv}} \approx \text{argmax}_{\mathbf{x}} L(\mathbf{x}_{\text{adv}}, \mathbf{y}; \theta)$  [Mad+18]. Currently, best practice is to approximate the inner problem using a few steps of PGD.

Other methods seek to **certify** that a model is robust within a given region  $\Delta(x)$ . One method for certification uses randomized smoothing [CRK19]—a technique for converting a model robust to random noise into a model which is provably robust to bounded worst-case perturbations in the  $l_2$ -metric. Another class of methods applies specifically for networks with ReLU activations, leveraging the property that the model is locally linear, and that certifying in region defined by linear constraints reduces to solving a series of linear programs, for which standard solvers can be applied [WK18].

#### 14.6.5 Why models have adversarial examples

The existence of adversarial inputs is paradoxical, since modern classifiers seem to do so well on normal inputs. The basic reason that classifiers can get fooled in this way is that many datasets

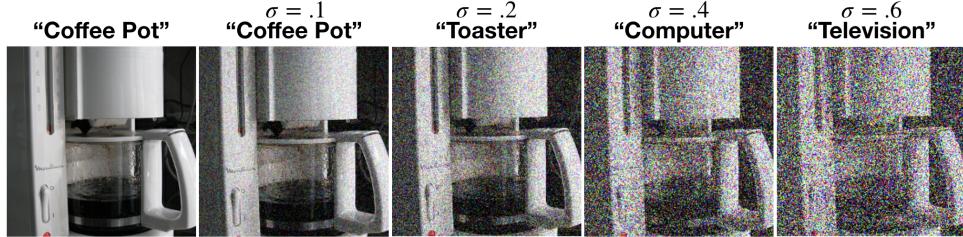


Figure 14.41: Effect of Gaussian noise of increasing magnitude on an image classifier. (The model is a ResNet-50 CNN (Sec. 14.3.2.4) trained on ImageNet with added Gaussian noise of magnitude  $\sigma = 0.6$ .) From Figure 23 of [For+19]. Used with kind permission of Justin Gilmer.

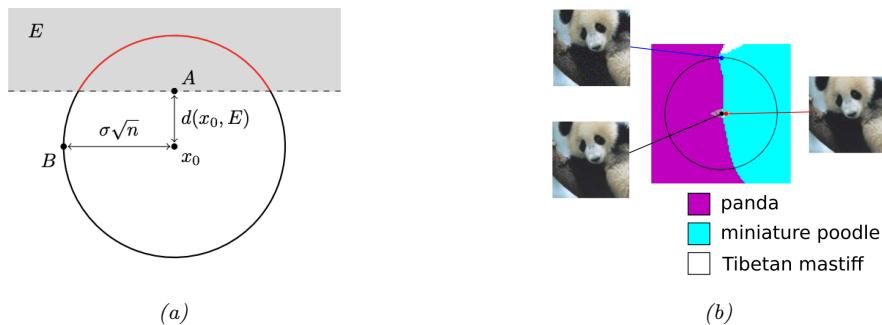


Figure 14.42: (a) When the input dimension  $n$  is large and the decision boundary is locally linear, even a small error rate in random noise will imply the existence of small adversarial perturbations. Here,  $d(\mathbf{x}_0, E)$  denotes the distance from a clean input  $\mathbf{x}_0$  to an adversarial example (A) while the distance from  $\mathbf{x}_0$  to a random sample  $N(0; \sigma^2 I)$  (B) will be approximately  $\sigma\sqrt{n}$ . As  $n \rightarrow \infty$  the ratio of  $d(\mathbf{x}_0, A)$  to  $d(\mathbf{x}_0, B)$  goes to 0. (b) A 2d slice of the InceptionV3 decision boundary through three points: a clean image (black), an adversarial example (red), and an error in random noise (blue). The adversarial example and the error in noise lie in the same region of the error set which is misclassified as “miniature poodle”, which closely resembles a halfspace as in Figure (a). Used with kind permission of Justin Gilmer.

contain features which are discriminative but not robust to small perturbations [Hyy+19]. This is illustrated in Fig. 14.40. The data is drawn from a mixture of 2 Gaussians in 2d, where the mixture component depends on the class label (c.f., Gaussian discriminant analysis, Sec. 9.2). We see that there are many (linear) decision boundaries that achieve perfect accuracy on the test set. However, some are more robust to perturbations than others. In high dimensions, it is easy for a model to find features that “happen” to work well, but which are not robust to small changes.

The existence of adversarial examples is best viewed as a symptom of the more general problem of lack of robustness to **distribution shift**. If a model’s accuracy drops on some shifted distribution of inputs  $q(\mathbf{x})$  that differs from the training distribution  $p(\mathbf{x})$ , then the model will necessarily be vulnerable to an adversarial attack: if errors exist, there must be a nearest such error. Furthermore, if the input distribution is high dimensional, then we should expect the nearest error to be significantly closer than errors which are sampled randomly from some out-of-distribution  $q(\mathbf{x})$ .

Consider, for example when  $p(\mathbf{x})$  is a distribution of clean images and  $q(\mathbf{x})$  applies additive Gaussian noise to the inputs at test time. In Fig. 14.41, we see that a small amount of such (non-adversarial) noise can significantly effect the output of a high quality classifier.

A cartoon illustration of what is going on is shown in Figure 14.42a, where  $\mathbf{x}_0$  is the clean input image,  $B$  is an image corrupted by Gaussian noise, and  $A$  is an adversarial image. If we assume a linear decision boundary, then the error set  $E$  is a half space a certain distance from  $\mathbf{x}_0$ . We can relate the distance to the decision boundary  $d(\mathbf{x}_0, E)$  with the error rate in noise at some input  $\mathbf{x}_0$ , denoted by  $\mu = \mathbb{P}_{\delta \sim N(0, \sigma I)} [\mathbf{x}_0 + \delta \in E]$ . With a linear decision boundary the relationship between these two quantities is determined by

$$d(\mathbf{x}_0, E) = -\sigma\Phi^{-1}(\mu) \quad (14.40)$$

where  $\Phi^{-1}$  denotes the inverse cdf of the gaussian distribution. When the input dimension is large, this distance will be significantly smaller than the distance to a randomly sampled noisy image  $\mathbf{x}_0 + \delta$  for  $\delta \sim N(0, \sigma I)$ , as the noise term will with high probability have norm  $\|\delta\|_2 \approx \sigma\sqrt{d}$ . As a concrete example consider the ImageNet dataset, where  $d = 224 \times 224 \times 3$  and suppose we set  $\sigma = .2$ . Then if the error rate in noise is just  $\mu = .01$ , equation 14.40 will imply that  $d(\mathbf{x}_0, E) = .5$ . Thus the distance to an adversarial example will be more than 100 times closer than the distance to a typical noisy images, which will be  $\sigma\sqrt{d} \approx 77.6$ . This phenomenon of small volume error sets being close to most points in a data distribution  $p(\mathbf{x})$  is called **concentration of measure**, and is a property common among many high dimensional data distributions [MDM19; Gil+18a].

In summary, although the existence of adversarial examples is often discussed as an unexpected phenomenon, there is nothing special about the existence of worst-case errors for ML classifiers—they will always exist as long as errors exist.



# 15 Neural networks for sequences

## 15.1 Introduction

In this chapter, we discuss various kinds of neural networks for sequences. We will consider the case where the input is a sequence, the output is a sequence, or both are sequences. Such models have many applications, such as machine translation, speech recognition, text classification, image captioning, etc.

## 15.2 Recurrent neural networks (RNNs)

A **recurrent neural network** or **RNN** is a neural network which maps from an input space of sequences to an output space of sequences in a stateful way. That is, the prediction of output  $\mathbf{y}_t$  depends not only on the input  $\mathbf{x}_t$ , but also on the hidden state of the system,  $\mathbf{h}_t$ , which gets updated over time, as the sequence is processed. Such models can be used for sequence generation, sequence classification, and sequence translation, as we explain below.

### 15.2.1 Vec2Seq (sequence generation)

In this section, we discuss how to learn functions of the form  $f_{\theta} : \mathbb{R}^D \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{N_{\infty}C}$ , where  $D$  is the size of the input vector, and the output is an arbitrary-length sequence of vectors, each of size  $C$ . We call these **vec2seq** models, since they map a vector to a sequence.

The output sequence  $\mathbf{y}_{1:T}$  is generated one token at a time. At each step we sample  $\tilde{y}_t$  from the hidden state  $\mathbf{h}_t$  of the model, and then “feed it back in” to the model to get the new state  $\mathbf{h}_{t+1}$  (which also depends on the input  $\mathbf{x}$ ). See Fig. 15.1 for an illustration. In this way the model defines a conditional generative model of the form  $p(\mathbf{y}_{1:T}|\mathbf{x})$ , which captures dependencies between the output tokens. We explain this in more detail below, but first we give some example applications.

#### 15.2.1.1 Applications

RNNs can be used to generate sequences unconditionally (by setting  $\mathbf{x} = \emptyset$ ) or conditionally on  $\mathbf{x}$ . Unconditional sequence generation is often called **language modeling**; this refers to learning joint probability distributions over sequences of discrete tokens, i.e., models of the form  $p(y_1, \dots, y_T)$ . (See also Sec. 3.8.1.2, where we discuss using Markov chains for language modeling.)

Fig. 15.2 shows some samples from a character-level RNN that was trained on Shakespeare. We see that the generated sequence looks plausible, even though it is not very meaningful. RNNs give

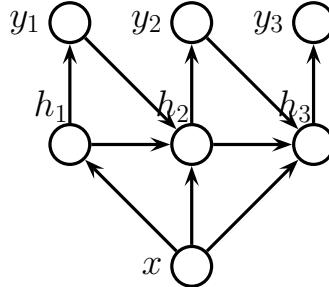


Figure 15.1: Recurrent neural network (RNN) for generating a variable length output sequence  $\mathbf{y}_{1:T}$  given an optional fixed length input vector  $\mathbf{x}$ .

ROMEO: speak to the king and heis?  
 Why, then, I see;  
 I'll may not unperget proof, we shined at night,  
 Even thou a kingdesh o'er formard.

PAULINA:  
 I do remember well:  
 No. No, no.

Figure 15.2: Example output from a character level RNN when given the prefix “ROMEO: ” when trained on the complete works of Shakespeare (1,115,394 characters). (The model is an LSTM (Sec. 15.2.6.2) with 1024 hidden units, and a 256-dimensional word embedding. The model is trained on sequences of length 100 for 30 epochs.) Generated by <https://bit.ly/2FjrDiB>.

state-of-the-art performance on this task [CNB17].<sup>1</sup>

We can also make the generated sequence depend on some kind of input vector  $\mathbf{x}$ . For example, consider the task of **image captioning**: in this case,  $\mathbf{x}$  is some embedding of the image computed by a CNN, as illustrated in Fig. 15.3. (In this example,  $D = H \times W \times 3$  is the size of the image and  $C$  is the size of the vocabulary.) See e.g., [Hos+18] for a review of image captioning methods.

It is also possible to use RNNs to generate sequences of real-valued feature vectors, such as pen strokes for hand-written characters [Gra13] and hand-drawn shapes [HE18]. This can also be useful for time series forecasting real-value sequences.

### 15.2.1.2 Models

For notational simplicity, let  $T$  be the length of the output (with the understanding that this is chosen dynamically). The RNN then corresponds to the following conditional generative model:

$$p(\mathbf{y}_{1:T}|\mathbf{x}) = \sum_{\mathbf{h}_{1:T}} p(\mathbf{y}_{1:T}, \mathbf{h}_{1:T}|\mathbf{x}) = \sum_{\mathbf{h}_{1:T}} p(\mathbf{h}_1|\mathbf{x})p(\mathbf{y}_1|\mathbf{h}_1) \prod_{t=2}^T p(\mathbf{y}_t|\mathbf{h}_t)p(\mathbf{h}_t|\mathbf{h}_{t-1}, \mathbf{y}_{t-1}, \mathbf{x}) \quad (15.1)$$

<sup>1</sup> In the language modeling community, performance is usually measured by perplexity. This is explained in Sec. 6.1.5, but it suffices to know that low perplexity means high log likelihood.

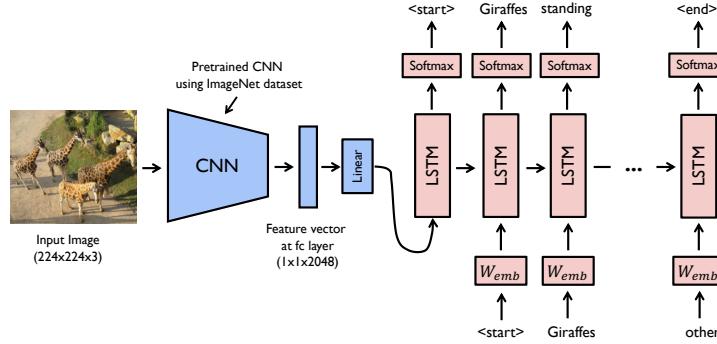


Figure 15.3: Illustration of a CNN-RNN model for image captioning. The pink boxes labeled ‘‘LSTM’’ refer to a specific kind of RNN that we discuss in Sec. 15.2.6.2. The pink boxes labeled  $W_{emb}$  refer to embedding matrices for the (sampled) one-hot tokens, so that the input to the model is a real-valued vector. From <https://bit.ly/2FKnqHm>. Used with kind permission of Yunjey Choi.

where  $\mathbf{h}_t$  is the hidden state. The output distribution is usually given by

$$p(\mathbf{y}_t|\mathbf{h}_t) = \text{Cat}(\mathbf{y}_t|\mathcal{S}(\mathbf{W}_{hy}\mathbf{h}_t + \mathbf{b}_y)) \quad (15.2)$$

where  $\mathbf{W}_{hy}$  are the hidden-to-output weights, and  $\mathbf{b}_y$  is the bias term. However, for real-valued outputs, we can use

$$p(\mathbf{y}_t|\mathbf{h}_t) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{y}_t|\mathbf{W}_{hy}\mathbf{h}_t + \mathbf{b}_y, \sigma^2 \mathbf{I}) \quad (15.3)$$

We assume the hidden state is computed deterministically as follows:

$$p(\mathbf{h}_t|\mathbf{h}_{t-1}, \mathbf{y}_{t-1}, \mathbf{x}) = \mathbb{I}(\mathbf{h}_t = f(\mathbf{h}_{t-1}, \mathbf{y}_{t-1}, \mathbf{x})) \quad (15.4)$$

for some deterministic function  $f$ . The update function  $f$  is usually given by

$$\mathbf{h}_t = \varphi(\mathbf{W}_{xh}[\mathbf{x}; \mathbf{y}_{t-1}] + \mathbf{W}_{hh}\mathbf{h}_{t-1} + \mathbf{b}_h) \quad (15.5)$$

where  $\mathbf{W}_{hh}$  are the hidden-to-hidden weights,  $\mathbf{W}_{xh}$  are the input-to-hidden weights, and  $\mathbf{b}_h$  are the bias terms. See Fig. 15.1 for an illustration.

Note that  $\mathbf{y}_t$  depends on  $\mathbf{h}_t$ , which depends on  $\mathbf{y}_{t-1}$ , which depends on  $\mathbf{h}_{t-1}$ , and so on. Thus  $\mathbf{y}_t$  implicitly depends on all past observations (as well as the optional fixed input  $\mathbf{x}$ ). Thus an RNN overcomes the limitations of standard Markov models, in that they can have unbounded memory. This makes RNNs theoretically as powerful as a **Turing machine** [SS95; PMB19]. In practice, however, the memory length is determined by the size of the latent state and the strength of the parameters; see Sec. 15.2.6 for further discussion of this point.

When we generate from an RNN, we sample from  $\tilde{\mathbf{y}}_t \sim p(\mathbf{y}_t|\mathbf{h}_t)$ , and then ‘‘feed in’’ the sampled value into the hidden state, to deterministically compute  $\mathbf{h}_{t+1} = f(\mathbf{h}_t, \tilde{\mathbf{y}}_t, \mathbf{x})$ , from which we sample  $\tilde{\mathbf{y}}_{t+1} \sim p(\mathbf{y}_{t+1}|\mathbf{h}_{t+1})$ , etc. Thus the only stochasticity in the system comes from the noise in the observation (output) model, which is fed back to the system in each step. (However, there is a variant, known as a **variational RNN** [Chu+15], that adds stochasticity to the dynamics of  $\mathbf{h}_t$  independent of the observation noise.)

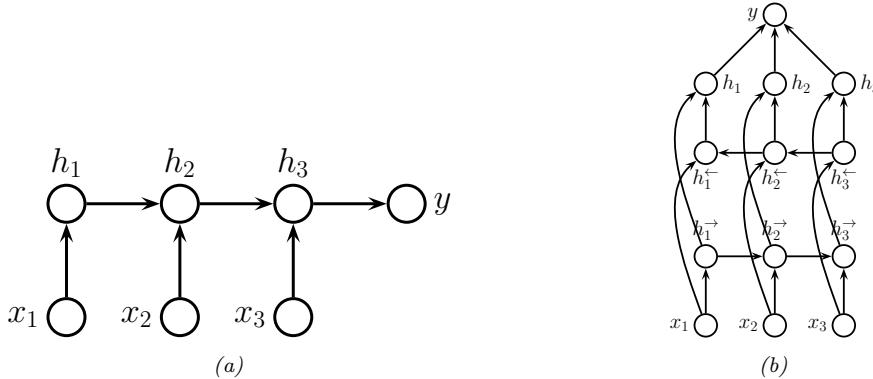


Figure 15.4: (a) RNN for sequence classification. (b) Bi-directional RNN for sequence classification.

### 15.2.1.3 Teacher forcing

The likelihood of a training sequence is given by

$$p(\mathbf{y}_{1:T} | \mathbf{x}) = p(\mathbf{y}_1) \prod_{t=2}^T p(\mathbf{y}_t | \mathbf{y}_{1:t-1}, \mathbf{x}) \quad (15.6)$$

Note that we condition on the *ground truth* labels from the past,  $\mathbf{y}_{1:t-1}$ , not labels generated from the model. This is called **teacher forcing**, since the teacher's values are “force fed” into the model as input at each step. (In the context of robotics, teacher forcing is called **behavioral cloning**.)

Unfortunately, teacher forcing (which is equivalent to MLE training) can sometimes result in models that perform poorly at test time. The reason is that the model has only ever been trained on inputs that are “correct”, so it may not know what to do if, at test time, it encounters an input  $\mathbf{y}_{t-1}$  generated from the previous step that deviates from what it saw in training.

A common solution to this is known as **scheduled sampling** [Ben+15a]. This starts off using teacher forcing, but at random time steps, feeds in samples from the model instead; the fraction of time this happens is gradually increased.

An alternative solution is to use other kinds of models where MLE training works better, such as 1d CNNs (Sec. 15.3) and transformers (Sec. 15.5).

## 15.2.2 Seq2Vec (sequence classification)

In this section, we assume we have a single fixed-length output vector  $\mathbf{y}$  we want to predict, given a variable length sequence as input. Thus we want to learn a function of the form  $f_\theta : \mathbb{R}^{TD} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^C$ . We call this a **seq2vec** model. We will focus on the case where the output is a class label,  $y \in \{1, \dots, C\}$ , for notational simplicity.

The simplest approach is to use the final state of the RNN as input to the classifier:

$$p(y | \mathbf{x}_{1:T}) = \text{Cat}(y | \mathcal{S}(\mathbf{W}\mathbf{h}_T)) \quad (15.7)$$

See Fig. 15.4a for an illustration.

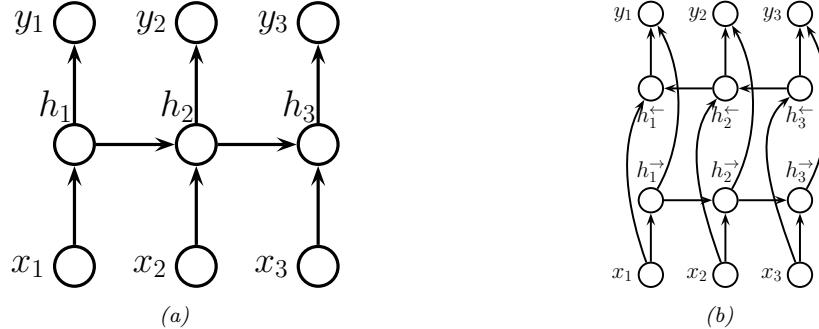


Figure 15.5: (a) RNN for transforming a sequence to another, aligned sequence. (b) Bi-directional RNN for the same task.

We can often get better results if we let the hidden states of the RNN depend on the past and future context. To do this, we create two RNNs, one which recursively computes hidden states in the forwards direction, and one which recursively computes hidden states in the backwards direction. This is called a **bidirectional RNN** [SP97].

More precisely, the model is defined as follows:

$$\mathbf{h}_t^\rightarrow = \varphi(\mathbf{W}_{xh}^\rightarrow \mathbf{x}_t + \mathbf{W}_{hh}^\rightarrow \mathbf{h}_{t-1}^\rightarrow + \mathbf{b}_h^\rightarrow) \quad (15.8)$$

$$\mathbf{h}_t^\leftarrow = \varphi(\mathbf{W}_{xh}^\leftarrow \mathbf{x}_t + \mathbf{W}_{hh}^\leftarrow \mathbf{h}_{t+1}^\leftarrow + \mathbf{b}_h^\leftarrow) \quad (15.9)$$

We can then define  $\mathbf{h}_t = [\mathbf{h}_t^\rightarrow, \mathbf{h}_t^\leftarrow]$  to be the representation of the state at time  $t$ , taking into account past and future information. Finally we average pool over these hidden states to get the final classifier:

$$p(y|\mathbf{x}_{1:T}) = \text{Cat}\left(y|\mathbf{WS}\left(\frac{1}{T} \sum_{t=1}^T \mathbf{h}_t\right)\right) \quad (15.10)$$

See Fig. 15.4b for an illustration. (This is similar to the 1d CNN text classifier in Sec. 15.3.1.)

### 15.2.3 Seq2Seq (sequence translation)

In this section, we consider learning functions of the form  $f_\theta : \mathbb{R}^{TD} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{T'C}$ . We consider two cases: one in which  $T' = T$ , so the input and output sequences have the same length (and hence are aligned), and one in which  $T' \neq T$ , so the input and output sequences have different lengths. This is called a **seq2seq** problem.

#### 15.2.3.1 Aligned case

In this section, we consider the case where the input and output sequences are aligned. We can also think of it as **dense sequence labeling**, since we predict one label per location. It is straightforward to modify an RNN to solve this task, as shown in Fig. 15.5a. This corresponds to

$$p(\mathbf{y}_{1:T}|\mathbf{x}_{1:T}) = \sum_{\mathbf{h}_{1:T}} \mathbb{I}(\mathbf{h}_1 = f(\mathbf{x}_1)) p(\mathbf{y}_1|\mathbf{h}_1) \prod_{t=2}^T \mathbb{I}(\mathbf{h}_t = f(\mathbf{h}_{t-1}, \mathbf{x}_t)) p(\mathbf{y}_t|\mathbf{h}_t) \quad (15.11)$$

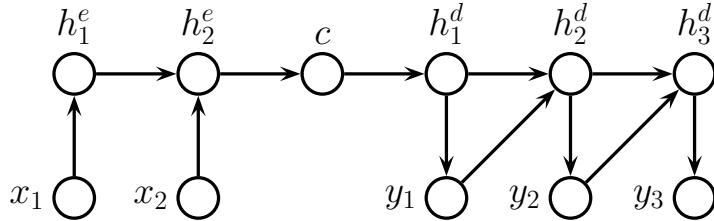


Figure 15.6: Encoder-decoder RNN architecture for mapping sequence  $\mathbf{x}_{1:T}$  to sequence  $\mathbf{y}_{1:T'}$ .

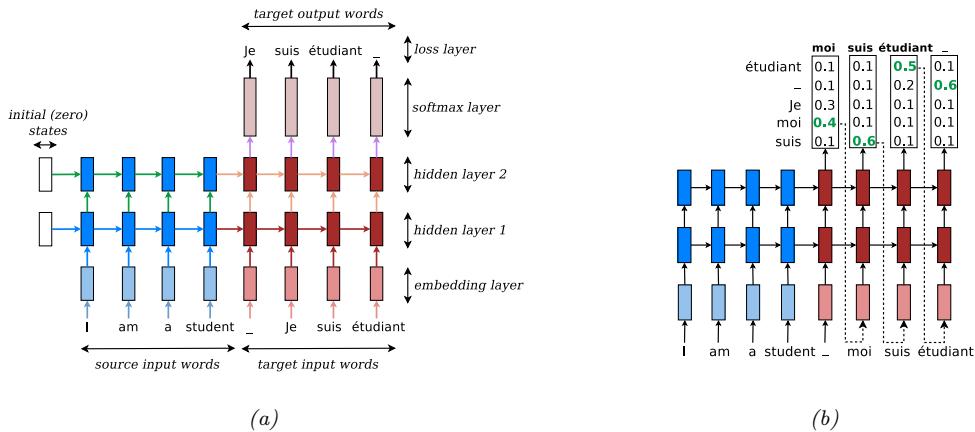


Figure 15.7: (a) Illustration of a seq2seq model for translating English to French. The - character represents the end of a sentence. From Figure 2.4 of [Luo16]. Used with kind permission of Minh-Thang Luong. (b) Illustration of greedy decoding. The most likely French word at each step is highlighted in green, and then fed in as input to the next step of the decoder. From Figure 2.5 of [Luo16]. Used with kind permission of Minh-Thang Luong.

Note that  $\mathbf{y}_t$  depends on  $\mathbf{h}_t$  which depends on the past inputs,  $\mathbf{x}_{1:t}$ . We can get better results if we let the decoder look into the “future” of  $\mathbf{x}$  as well as the past, by using a bidirectional RNN, as shown in Fig. 15.5b.

### 15.2.3.2 Unaligned case

In this section, we discuss how to learn a mapping from one sequence of length  $T$  to another of length  $T'$ . We first encode the input sequence to get the context vector  $\mathbf{c} = f_e(\mathbf{x}_{1:T})$ , using the last state of an RNN (or average pooling over a biRNN). We then generate the output sequence using an RNN decoder  $\mathbf{y}_{1:T'} = f_d(\mathbf{c})$ . This is called an **encoder-decoder architecture** [SVL14; Cho+14a]. See Fig. 15.6 for an illustration.

An important application of this is **machine translation**. When this is tackled using RNNs, it is

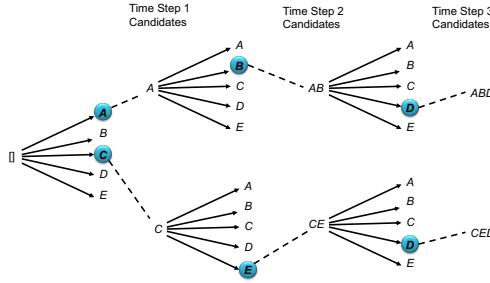


Figure 15.8: Illustration of beam search using a beam of size 2. Adapted from Figure 8.15.3 of [Zha+19a].

called **neural machine translation** (as opposed to the older approach called **statistical machine translation**, that did not use neural networks). See Fig. 15.7a for the basic idea. For a review of the NMT literature, see [Luo16; Neu17].

#### 15.2.4 Beam search

The simplest way to generate from an RNN is to use **greedy decoding**, in which we compute  $\hat{y}_t = \operatorname{argmax}_y p(y_t = y | \hat{\mathbf{y}}_{1:t}, \mathbf{x})$  at each step. We can repeat this process until we generate the end-of-sentence token. See Fig. 15.7b for an illustration of this method applied to NMT.

Unfortunately greedy decoding will not generate the MAP sequence, which is defined by  $\mathbf{y}_{1:T}^* = \operatorname{argmax}_{\mathbf{y}_{1:T}} p(\mathbf{y}_{1:T} | \mathbf{x})$ . The reason is that the locally optimal symbol at step  $t$  might not be on the globally optimal path.

Unfortunately computing the global optimum takes  $O(C^T)$  time in general, which is typically computationally intractable. A common heuristic method is known as **beam search**. In this approach, we compute the top  $K$  candidate outputs at each step; we then expand each one in all  $C$  possible ways, to generate  $CK$  candidates, from which we pick the top  $K$  again. This process is illustrated in Fig. 15.8 for  $K = 2$  and  $C = 5$ .

If we are able to devise a **heuristic function** to approximate the overall probability of any partial path, then we can use this to guide the search; this is the basis of  **$A^*$  search** and **Monte Carlo tree search**. This has been applied to (conditional) language generation in [Kum+18].

#### 15.2.5 Backpropagation through time

We can compute the maximum likelihood estimate of the parameters for an RNN by solving  $\theta^* = \operatorname{argmax}_{\theta} p(\mathbf{y}_{1:T} | \mathbf{x}_{1:T}, \theta)$ , where we have assumed a single training sequence for notational simplicity. To compute the MLE, we have to compute gradients of the loss wrt the parameters. To do this, we can unroll the computation graph, and then apply the backpropagation algorithm. This is called **backpropagation through time** (BPTT) [Wer90]. Unfortunately, this takes  $O(T^2)$  time, where  $T$  is the length of the sequence. It is therefore standard to truncate the sum to the most recent

$K$  terms. For a way to adaptively pick a suitable truncation parameter  $K$ , see [AFF19].

When using truncated BPTT, we can train the model with batches of short sequences, usually created by extracting non-overlapping subsequences (windows) from the original sequence. However, the initial state of the RNN will be random (or all zeros) at the start of each sequence, which ignores the fact that the subsequences are not iid. To prevent this, we can use a **stateful RNN**, which means the final hidden state from the previous step of inference is used to initialize the first hidden state of the current step of inference.

Unfortunately, as explained in Sec. 13.4.2, the gradients in an RNN can decay as we go backwards in time. In order to ensure the gradient doesn't vanish, we need to control the spectral radius  $\lambda$  of the forward mapping,  $\mathbf{W}_{hh}$ , as well as the backwards mapping, given by the Jacobian  $\mathbf{J}_{hh}$ .

The simplest way to avoid these problems is to randomly initialize  $\mathbf{W}_{hh}$  in such a way as to ensure  $\lambda \approx 1$ , and then keep it fixed (i.e., we do not learn  $\mathbf{W}_{hh}$ ). In this case, only the output matrix  $\mathbf{W}_{ho}$  needs to be learned, resulting in a convex optimization problem. This is called an **echo state network** [JH04]. A closely related approach, known as a **liquid state machine** [MNM02], uses binary-valued (spiking) neurons instead of real-valued neurons. A generic term for both ESNs and LSMs is **reservoir computing** [LJ09].

Another approach to this problem is use constrained optimization to ensure the  $\mathbf{W}_{hh}$  matrix remains orthogonal [Vor+17]. A third approach is to modify the RNN architecture itself, to use additive rather than multiplicative updates to the hidden states, as we discuss in Sec. 15.2.6.

### 15.2.6 Gating and long term memory

RNNs with enough hidden units can in principle remember inputs from long in the past. However, in practice “vanilla” RNNs fail to do this because of the vanishing gradient problem (Sec. 13.4.2). In this section we give a solution to this in which we update the hidden state in an additive way, similar to a residual net (Sec. 14.3.2.4).

#### 15.2.6.1 Gated recurrent units (GRU)

In this section, we discuss models which use **gated recurrent units (GRU)**, as proposed in [Cho+14a]. Since the model is somewhat complicated, we present it in two steps, following the presentation of [Zha+19a, Sec 8.8].

First we define a “candidate” next state vector using

$$\tilde{\mathbf{H}}_t = \tanh(\mathbf{X}_t \mathbf{W}_{xh} + (\mathbf{R}_t \odot \mathbf{H}_{t-1}) \mathbf{W}_{hh} + \mathbf{b}_h) \quad (15.12)$$

where  $\mathbf{R}_t = \sigma(\mathbf{W}_{xr} \mathbf{X}_t)$  is known as the **reset gate**, since it determines how much of the old state we want to add to the current observation. (Note that each element of  $\mathbf{R}_t$  is in  $[0, 1]$ , because of the sigmoid output, and we multiply by  $\mathbf{R}_t$  elementwise.)

Once we have computed the candidate new state, the model computes the actual new state using the candidate state for some dimensions and the old state for others:

$$\mathbf{H}_t = \mathbf{Z}_t \odot \mathbf{H}_{t-1} + (1 - \mathbf{Z}_t) \odot \tilde{\mathbf{H}}_t \quad (15.13)$$

where  $\mathbf{Z}_t = \sigma(\mathbf{W}_{xz} \mathbf{X}_t)$  is the **update gate**. When  $Z_{td} = 0$ , we pass  $H_{t-1,d}$  through unchanged; this can capture long-term dependencies. See Fig. 15.9 for an illustration.

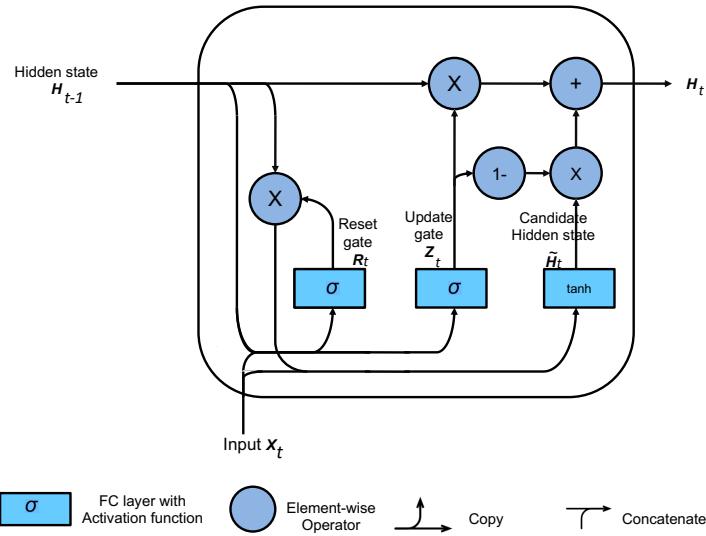


Figure 15.9: Illustration of a GRU. Adapted from Figure 8.8.3 of [Zha+19a].

### 15.2.6.2 Long short term memory (LSTM)

In this section, we discuss the **long short term memory (LSTM)** model of [HS97], which is a more sophisticated version of the GRU (and pre-dates it by almost 20 years).

The basic idea is to partition the hidden state into a long-term part, called a memory cell  $\mathbf{c}_t$ , and a short-term part, denoted  $\mathbf{h}_t$ . We first compute the new cell state using

$$\mathbf{C}_t = \mathbf{F}_t \odot \mathbf{C}_{t-1} + \mathbf{I}_t \odot \tilde{\mathbf{C}}_t \quad (15.14)$$

$$\tilde{\mathbf{C}}_t = \tanh(\mathbf{X}_t \mathbf{W}_{xc} + \mathbf{H}_{t-1} \mathbf{W}_{hc} + \mathbf{b}_c) \quad (15.15)$$

$$\mathbf{I}_t = \sigma(\mathbf{X}_t \mathbf{W}_{xi} + \mathbf{H}_{t-1} \mathbf{W}_{hi} + \mathbf{b}_i) \quad (15.16)$$

$$\mathbf{F}_t = \sigma(\mathbf{X}_t \mathbf{W}_{xf} + \mathbf{H}_{t-1} \mathbf{W}_{hf} + \mathbf{b}_f) \quad (15.17)$$

where  $\mathbf{I}_t$  is the **input gate**,  $\mathbf{F}_t$  is the **forget gate**, and  $\tilde{\mathbf{C}}_t$  is a candidate cell state. This additive update to the cell state allows long-term information to pass through, without the gradient from vanishing.<sup>2</sup>

Next we compute the new short term state as follows:

$$\mathbf{O}_t = \sigma(\mathbf{X}_t \mathbf{W}_{xo} + \mathbf{H}_{t-1} \mathbf{W}_{ho} + \mathbf{b}_o) \quad (15.18)$$

$$\mathbf{H}_t = \mathbf{O}_t \odot \tanh(\mathbf{C}_t) \quad (15.19)$$

2. One important detail pointed out in [JZS15] is that we need to initialize the bias term for the forget gate  $\mathbf{b}_f$  to be large (e.g., close to 1), so that information can easily pass through the  $\mathbf{c}$  chain over time. Without this trick, performance is often much worse.

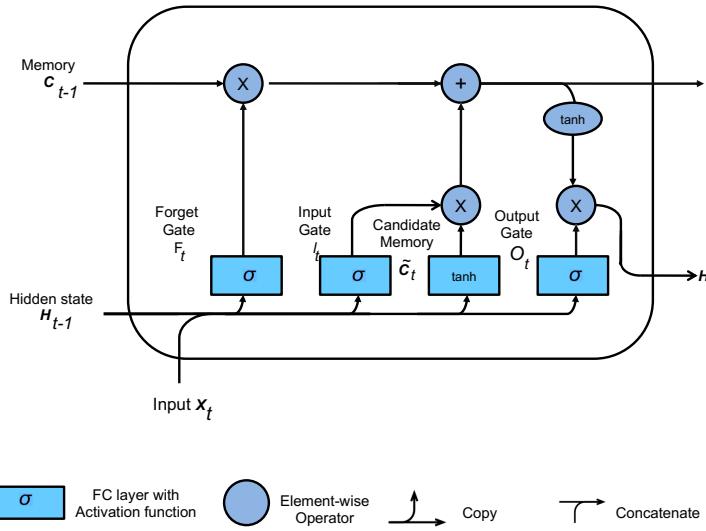


Figure 15.10: Illustration of an LSTM. Adapted from Figure 8.9.4 of [Zha+19a].

where  $\mathbf{O}_t$  is the **output gate**. See Fig. 15.10 for an illustration. Note that  $\mathbf{H}_t$  is used as the output of the unit as well as the hidden state for the next time step. This lets the model remember what it has just output (short-term memory), whereas the cell  $\mathbf{C}_t$  acts as a long-term memory.

Sometimes we add **peephole connections**, where we pass the cell state as an additional input to the gates. Many other variants have been proposed. In fact, [JZS15] used genetic algorithms to test over 10,000 different architectures. Some of these worked better than LSTMs or GRUs, but in general, LSTMs seemed to do consistently well across most tasks. Similar conclusions were reached in [Gre+17]. More recently, [ZL17] used an RNN controller to generate strings which specify RNN architectures, and then trained the controller using reinforcement learning. This resulted in a novel cell structure that outperformed LSTM. However, it is rather complex and has not been adopted by the community.

### 15.3 1d CNNs

Convolutional neural networks (Chapter 14) compute a function of some local neighborhood for each input using tied weights, and return an output. They are usually used for 2d inputs, but can also be applied in the 1d case, as we discuss below. They are an interesting alternative to RNNs that are much easier to train, because they don't have to maintain long term hidden state.

#### 15.3.1 1d CNNs for sequence classification

In this section, we discuss the use of 1d CNNs for learning a mapping from variable-length sequences to a fixed length output, i.e., a function of the form  $f_\theta : \mathbb{R}^{DT} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^C$ , where  $T$  is the length of the

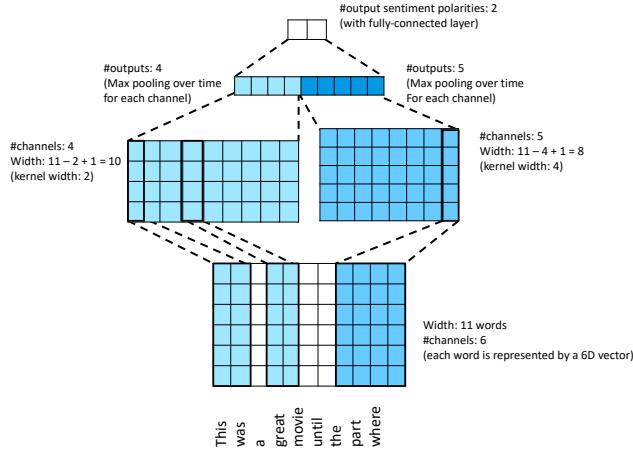


Figure 15.11: Illustration of the TextCNN model for binary sentiment classification. Adapted from Figure 15.3.5 of [Zha+19a].

input,  $D$  is the number of features per input, and  $C$  is the size of the output vector (e.g., class logits).

A basic 1d convolution operation applied to a 1d sequence is shown in Fig. 14.3. Typically the input sequence will have  $D > 1$  input channels (feature dimensions). In this case, we can convolve each channel separately and add up the result, using a different 1d filter (kernel) for each input channel to get  $z_i = \sum_d \mathbf{x}_{i-k:i+k,d}^\top \mathbf{w}_d$ , where  $k$  is size of the 1d receptive field, and  $\mathbf{w}_d$  is the filter for input channel  $d$ . This produces a 1d vector  $\mathbf{z} \in \mathbb{R}^T$  encoding the input (ignoring boundary effects). We can create a vector representation for each location using a different weight vector for each output channel  $c$  to get  $z_{ic} = \sum_d \mathbf{x}_{i-k:i+k,d}^\top \mathbf{w}_{d,c}$ . This implements a mapping from  $TD$  to  $TC$ . To reduce this to a fixed sized vector,  $\mathbf{z} \in \mathbb{R}^C$ , we can use max-pooling over time to get  $z_c = \max_i z_{ic}$ . We can then pass this into a softmax layer.

In [Kim14], they applied this model to sequence classification. The idea is to embed each word using an embedding layer, and then to compute various features using 1d kernels of different widths, to capture patterns of different length scales. We then apply max pooling over time, and concatenate the results, and pass to a fully connected layer. See Fig. 15.11 for an example.

### 15.3.2 Causal 1d CNNs for sequence generation

To use 1d CNNs in a generative setting, we must convert them to a **causal CNN**, in which each output variable only depends on previously generated variables. (This is also called a **convolutional Markov model**.) In particular, we define the model as follows:

$$p(\mathbf{y}|\mathbf{x}) = \prod_{t=1}^T p(y_t|\mathbf{x}_{1:y-m}, \mathbf{x}) \quad (15.20)$$

where  $m$  is the memory length of the model,  $\mathbf{x}$  is some optional conditioning information,  $T$  is the length of the output, and  $p(y_t|\mathbf{y}_{1:t-m}, \mathbf{x})$  is implemented using **causal convolution**. This is like

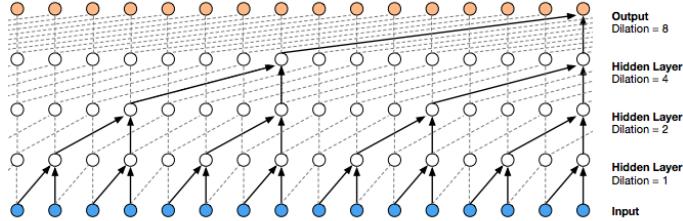


Figure 15.12: Illustration of the wavenet model using dilated (atrous) convolutions, with dilation factors of 1, 2, 4 and 8. From Figure 3 of [oor+16]. Used with kind permission of Aaron van den Oord.

regular 1d convolution except we ‘‘mask out’’ future inputs, so that  $y_t$  only depends on the past values, rather than past and future values. In order to capture long-range dependencies, we can use dilated convolution (Sec. 14.4.4.1), as illustrated in Fig. 15.12.

This model has been successfully used to create a state of the art **text to speech** (TTS) synthesis system known as **wavenet** [oor+16]. In particular, they stack 10 causal 1d convolutional layers with dilation rates  $1, 2, 4, \dots, 256, 512$  to get a convolutional block with an effective receptive field of 1024. (They left-padded the input sequences with a number of zeros equal to the dilation rate before every layer, so that every layer has the same length.) They then repeat this block 3 times to compute deeper features.

In wavenet, the conditioning information  $\mathbf{x}$  is a set of linguistic features derived from an input sequence of words; the model then generates raw audio using the above model. It is also possible to create a fully end-to-end approach, which starts with raw words rather than linguistic features (see [Wan+17]).

Although wavenet produces high quality speech, it is too slow for use in production systems. However, it can be ‘‘distilled’’ into a parallel generative model [Oor+18]. We discuss these kinds of parallel generative models in the sequel to this book, [Mur22].

## 15.4 Attention

In all of the neural networks we have considered so far, the hidden activations are a linear combination of the input activations, followed by a nonlinearity:  $z = \varphi(\mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{h})$ . The weights  $\mathbf{w}$  are fixed parameters that are learned on a training set and applied to dynamically computed hidden states  $\mathbf{h}$ . In this section, we consider models in which the weight vectors are also computed dynamically, in an input-dependent way. That is, we consider models which use the following kind of unit:

$$z = \varphi(f(\mathbf{h}; \boldsymbol{\theta})^\top \mathbf{h}) \tag{15.21}$$

where  $f(\cdot; \boldsymbol{\theta})$  is a learnable function that predicts what weights to use at run-time. This is a form of multiplicative unit.

Models with units of the form Eq. (15.21) are said to be using **attention**, since it allows the model to adaptively ‘‘pay attention to’’ different parts of its inputs by adjusting the weights. Attention mechanisms can be applied to many kinds of neural nets, but were first used in the context of RNNs,

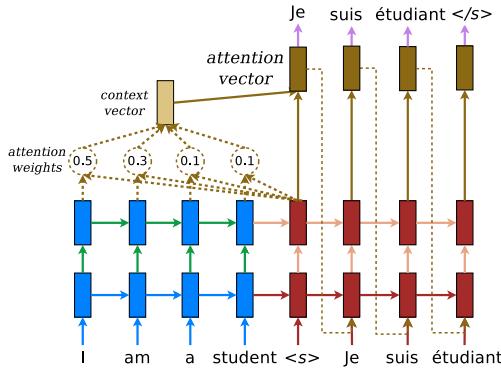


Figure 15.13: Illustration of seq2seq with attention for English to French translation. Used with kind permission of Minh-Thang Luong.

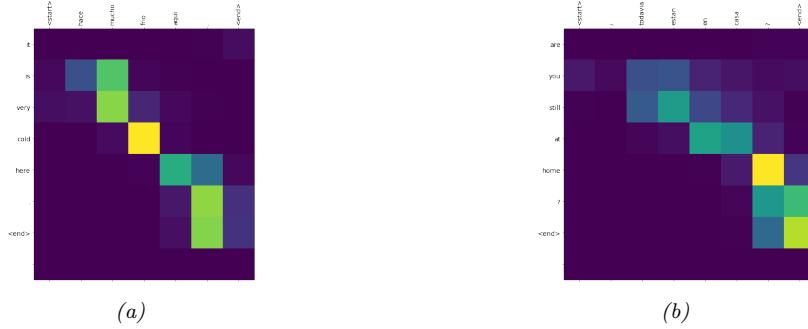


Figure 15.14: Illustration of the attention heatmaps generated while translating two sentences from Spanish to English. (a) Input is “hace mucho frio aqui.”, output is “it is very cold here.”. (b) Input is “¿todavia estan en casa?”, output is “are you still at home?”. Note that when generating the output token “home”, the model should attend to the input token “casa”, but in fact it seems to attend to the input token “?”. Generated by <https://bit.ly/2QILrBt>.

so we explain the approach in more detail in that context below.

### 15.4.1 Seq2seq with attention

Consider the seq2seq model from Sec. 15.2.3. This uses an RNN decoder of the form  $\mathbf{h}_t^d = f_d(\mathbf{h}_{t-1}^d, \mathbf{c})$ , where  $\mathbf{c}$  is a fixed-length context vector, representing the encoding of the input. Usually we set  $\mathbf{c} = \mathbf{h}_T^e$ , which is the final state of the encoder RNN (or we use a bidirectional RNN with average pooling). However, for tasks such as machine translation, this can result in poor performance, since the output does not have access to the input words themselves. We can avoid this bottleneck by allowing the output words to directly “look at” the input words. But which inputs should it look at? After all, word order is not always preserved across languages (e.g., German often puts verbs at the

end of a sentence), so we need to infer the **alignment** between source and target.

We can solve this problem (in a differentiable way) by using (soft) **attention**, as first proposed in [BCB15; LPM15]. In particular, we let the decoder function be  $\mathbf{h}_t^d = f_d(\mathbf{h}_{t-1}^d, \mathbf{c}_t)$ , where the context vector is computed using a weighted sum of input encoding vectors,

$$\mathbf{c}_t = \sum_s A_{ts} \mathbf{h}_s^e \quad (15.22)$$

where  $A_{ts}$  are the **attention weights** given by

$$A_{ts} = \frac{\exp(\text{score}(\mathbf{h}_{t-1}^d, \mathbf{h}_s^e))}{\sum_{s'=1}^{S'} \exp(\text{score}(\mathbf{h}_{t-1}^d, \mathbf{h}_{s'}^e))} \quad (15.23)$$

See Fig. 15.13 for an illustration.

There are several ways to define the score function which measures similarities of the hidden representation. We list two examples below, from [LPM15; BCB15]:

$$\text{score}(\mathbf{a}, \mathbf{b}) = \begin{cases} \mathbf{a}^\top \mathbf{W} \mathbf{b} & \text{Luong's multiplicative style} \\ \mathbf{v}^\top \tanh(\mathbf{W}_1 \mathbf{a} + \mathbf{W}_2 \mathbf{b}) & \text{Bahdanau's additive style} \end{cases} \quad (15.24)$$

We can train this model in the usual way on sentence pairs, and then use it to perform translation. We can also visualize the attention weights computed at each step of decoding, to get an idea of which parts of the input the model thinks are most relevant for generating the corresponding output. Some examples are shown in Fig. 15.14.

### 15.4.2 Seq2vec with attention

We can also use attention with sequence classifiers. For example [Raj+18] apply an RNN classifier, as in Sec. 15.2.2, to **electronic health records**, where the input is a time series of structured data, as well as unstructured text (clinical notes). By using attention, it is possible for the model to focus on the most relevant input keywords. See Fig. 15.15 for an illustration.

### 15.4.3 Attention as a soft dictionary lookup

In Sec. 15.4.1, we computed the context vector at output location  $t$ ,  $\mathbf{c}_t$ , using a weighted sum of input features from the encoder,  $\sum_s A_{ts} \mathbf{h}_s^e$ . However, we can think of attention more generally as comparing a set of target vectors, or **queries**  $\mathbf{q}_i \in \mathbb{R}^D$ , with a set of candidate vectors, or **keys**,  $\mathbf{k}_j \in \mathbb{R}^D$ . We then compute the attention matrix using

$$\mathbf{A}_{i,:} = \mathcal{S}([\text{score}(\mathbf{q}_i, \mathbf{k}_j) : j = 1 : N]) \quad (15.25)$$

Given these weights, we compute a weighted combination of the **values**  $\mathbf{v}_j$  associated with each key. In particular, for the  $i$ 'th query we get the vector

$$\mathbf{r}_i = \sum_j A_{ij} \mathbf{v}_j \quad (15.26)$$

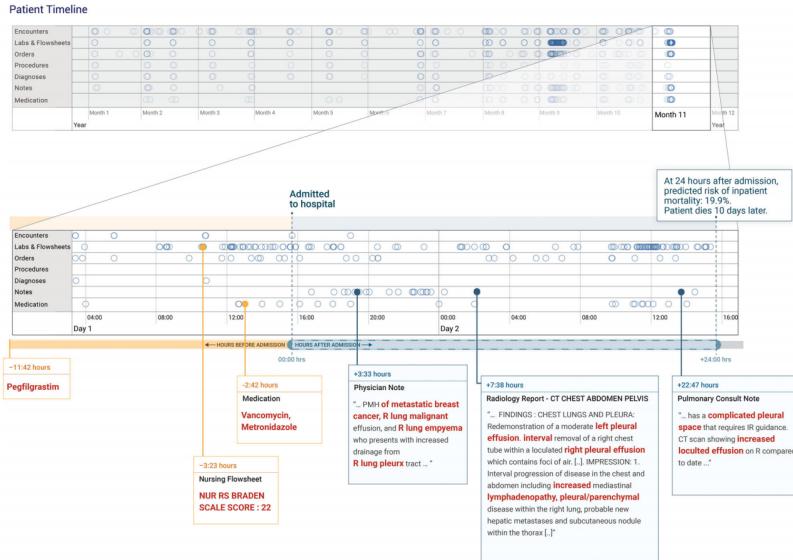


Figure 15.15: Example of an electronic health record. In this example, 24h after admission to the hospital, the RNN classifier predicts the risk of death as 19.9%; the patient ultimately died 10 days after admission. The “relevant” keywords from the input clinical notes are shown in red, as identified by an attention mechanism. From Figure 3 of [Raj+18]. Used with kind permission of Alvin Rakomar.

This is a weighted set of values whose keys most resemble the query  $\mathbf{q}_i$ . We can think of this as a “**soft dictionary lookup**”. If we store all the values in the rows of a  $N \times D$  matrix  $\mathbf{V}$ , we can write this in matrix form as follows:

$$\mathbf{R} = \text{attention}(\mathbf{Q}, \mathbf{K}, \mathbf{V}) \triangleq \mathbf{A}\mathbf{V} \quad (15.27)$$

where  $\mathbf{R}$  is the  $N \times D$  matrix of retrieved values.

Note that this operation is differentiable. Hence it can be used to implement a “memory bank” inside of a neural network, where the keys and values can be computed by other parts of the model. This idea has been used in various papers, such as neural Turing machines [GWD14], memory networks [Suk+15], differentiable neural computer [Gra+16], neural GPUs [KS16], etc. (This general field is sometimes called **differentiable programming**.)

For the scoring function, it is common to use a simplified version of the Luong score from Eq. (15.24) with  $\mathbf{W} = 1$ . Specifically, we use  $\text{score}(\mathbf{q}, \mathbf{k}) = \langle \mathbf{q}, \mathbf{k} \rangle / \sqrt{D}$ , where we divide by  $\sqrt{D}$  to ensure the scores have mean 0 and variance 1 (assuming the inputs also have mean 0 and variance 1). If  $\mathbf{Q} \in \mathbb{R}^{N \times D}$  contains  $N$  queries, and  $\mathbf{K} \in \mathbb{R}^{N \times D}$  contains  $N$  keys, then we can compute all  $N^2$  scores in batch form using

$$\mathbf{S} = \text{score}(\mathbf{Q}, \mathbf{K}) = \mathbf{Q}\mathbf{K}^\top / \sqrt{D} \quad (15.28)$$

This is called (scaled) **dot product attention**. We can also use the Bahdanau score (also called MLP attention) from Eq. (15.24). Given the scores, we can pass them through a softmax to get the



Figure 15.16: Image captioning using attention. (a) Soft attention. Generates “a woman is throwing a frisbee in a park”. (b) Hard attention. Generates “a man and a woman playing frisbee in a field”. From Figure 6 of [Xu+15]. Used with kind permission of Kelvin Xu.

attention matrix

$$\mathbf{A} = \mathcal{S}(\mathbf{S}) = \exp\left(\frac{\mathbf{S}}{\text{diag}(\mathbf{S}\mathbf{1}_N)}\right) \quad (15.29)$$

(The expression  $\mathbf{S}\mathbf{1}_N$  is a vector that sums along the columns of  $\mathbf{S}$ , as explained in Eq. (B.76), and the division is performed elementwise.)

Once we have computed the attention weights, we can perform the dictionary lookup for a batch of queries as follows:

$$\text{attention}(\mathbf{Q}, \mathbf{K}, \mathbf{V}) = \mathbf{AV} = \exp\left(\frac{\mathbf{Q}\mathbf{K}^\top}{\text{diag}((\mathbf{Q}\mathbf{K}^\top)\mathbf{1}_n)}\right)\mathbf{V} \quad (15.30)$$

#### 15.4.4 Soft vs hard attention

If we force the attention heatmap to be sparse, so that each output can only attend to one input location instead of a weighted combination of all of them, the method is called **hard attention**. This results in a nondifferentiable training objective. However, we can use reinforcement learning methods to fit such models. We compare these two approaches for an image captioning problem, as shown in Fig. 15.16b. See [Xu+15] for the details.

It seems from the above examples that these attention heatmaps can “explain” why the model generates a given output. However, the interpretability of attention is controversial (see e.g., [JW19; WP19; SS19; Bru+19] for discussion).

## 15.5 Transformers

The **transformer** model [Vas+17] is a seq2seq model which uses attention in the encoder as well as the decoder, thus eliminating the need for RNNs, as we explain below. Transformers have been used for many (conditional) sequence generation tasks, such as machine translation [Vas+17], constituency parsing [Vas+17], music generation [Hua+18], protein sequence generation [Mad+20; Cho+20b],

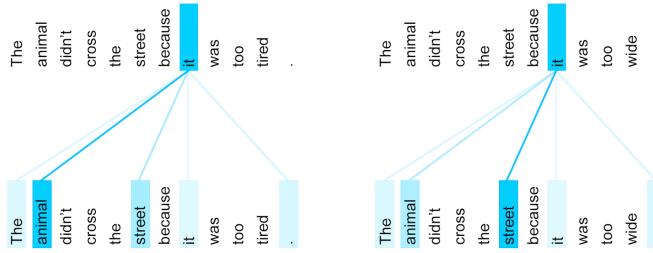


Figure 15.17: Illustration of how encoder self-attention for the word “it” differs depending on the input context. From <https://bit.ly/2kDol2S>. Used with kind permission of Jakob Uszkoreit.

abstractive text summarization [Zha+19b], image generation [Par+18] (treating the image as a rasterized 1d sequence), etc.

The transformer is a rather complex model that uses several new kinds of building blocks or layers. We introduce these new blocks below, and then discuss how to put them altogether.

### 15.5.1 Self-attention

In Sec. 15.4.1 we showed how the decoder of an RNN could use attention to the input sequence, in addition to using an RNN encoder, in order to capture contextual embeddings of each input. However, rather than the decoder attending the encoder, we can modify the model so the encoder attends to itself. Specifically, layer  $l$  of the model can attend to layer  $l - 1$  of the same model. This is called **self attention**. This allows us to generate all the outputs in parallel, thus eliminating the need for RNN.

More precisely, in layer  $\ell$ , we compute the hidden units at location  $t$  using  $\mathbf{h}_t^\ell = \varphi(\mathbf{W}\mathbf{r}_t^\ell)$ , where  $\mathbf{r}_t^\ell = \sum_s A_{ts} \mathbf{h}_s^{\ell-1}$ , and  $A_{ts} = S(\text{score}(\mathbf{h}_t^{\ell-1}, \mathbf{h}_s^{\ell-1}))$ . By stacking multiple self-attention layers, we can learn a nonlinear representation of a sequence, where the hidden representation of each word depends on the hidden representation of every other word.

As an example of how this can be useful, consider translating the English sentence “The animal didn’t cross the street because it was too *tired*” into French. Clearly the word “it” refers to the animal. Now consider the slightly different English sentence “The animal didn’t cross the street because it was too *wide*”. Clearly the word “it” now refers to the street. To generate a pronoun of the correct gender in French, we need to solve the **coreference resolution** problem on the input, to figure out what “it” refers to.

Fig. 15.17 illustrates how self attention applied to the English sentence is able to resolve this ambiguity. In particular, in the first sentence, the representation for “it” depends on the earlier representations of “animal”, whereas in the latter, it depends on the earlier representations of “street”.

To use self attention in a generative model, we need to use a modified version of attention, known as **masked attention**, to ensure we only look at output values that have already been generated. This can be done by restricting the sum to only include earlier hidden units from the previous layer, i.e.,  $\mathbf{r}_t^\ell = \sum_{s < t} A_{ts} \mathbf{h}_s^{\ell-1}$ . (This is analogous to causal convolution, discussed in Sec. 15.3.2.) We can implement masked attention by setting the corresponding inputs to the softmax to a large negative

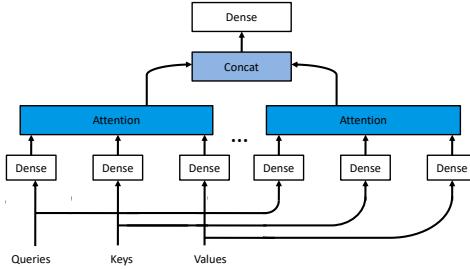


Figure 15.18: Multi-head attention. Adapted from Figure 9.3.3 of [Zha+19a].

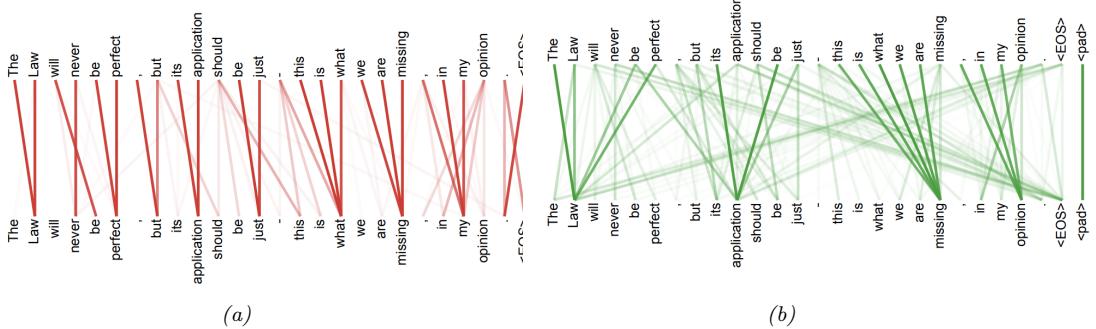


Figure 15.19: Illustration of the attention heatmaps generated by two different heads in a machine translation task. From Figure 5 of [Vas+17]. Used with kind permission of Ashish Vaswani.

number.

### 15.5.2 Multi-headed attention

We can increase the expressive power of the attention layer by learning multiple versions of the dictionary, where we modify the query, keys and values using learned projection matrices. More precisely, let  $d_q$ ,  $d_k$  and  $d_v$  be the hidden sizes to which we project the queries, keys and values, and let  $\mathbf{W}_q^{(j)} \in \mathbb{R}^{d_q \times D_q}$ ,  $\mathbf{W}_k^{(j)} \in \mathbb{R}^{d_k \times D_k}$  and  $\mathbf{W}_v^{(j)} \in \mathbb{R}^{d_v \times D_v}$  be the projection matrices, for  $j = 1 : J$ . Then we can compute  $J$  outputs as in parallel as follows:

$$\mathbf{r}^{(j)} = \text{attention}(\mathbf{W}_q^{(j)} \mathbf{q}, \mathbf{W}_k^{(j)} \mathbf{k}, \mathbf{W}_v^{(j)} \mathbf{v}) \quad (15.31)$$

These outputs are then combined and passed through a final projection layer. This is known as **multi-head attention**; see Fig. 15.18 for an illustration. Intuitively this corresponds to comparing the queries and keys in different subspaces, and then returning modified versions of the values in response.

Fig. 15.19 illustrates the benefit of this approach. On the left we see one head in which each word tends to attend to its own representation in the earlier layer, since that maximizes the pairwise score. However, on the right we see a different head learns to attend to contextual words.

### 15.5.3 Positional encoding

The performance of “vanilla” self-attention can be low, since attention is permutation invariant, and hence ignores the input word ordering. To overcome this, we can concatenate the word embeddings with a **positional embedding**, so that the model knows what order the words occur in.

In more detail, let us assume that the input to attention is a matrix  $\mathbf{X} \in \mathbb{R}^{T \times D}$ , where  $T$  is the length of the sequence. To ensure the attention model knows where each word occurs in its input, we can augment it with a **positional encoding** vector. In particular, we map the integer location indices  $t \in \{1, \dots, T\}$  to a matrix of  $\mathbf{P} \in \mathbb{R}^{T \times D}$ . We could use a binary encoding of  $t$ , which would take  $D = \log_2 T$  bits. However, this does not leverage the fact that the vector representation  $\mathbf{p}_t$  for location  $t$  is a dense floating point representation. In [Vas+17], the propose the following alternative representation:

$$\mathbf{p}_t = [\sin(\omega_1 t), \cos(\omega_1 t), \sin(\omega_2 t), \cos(\omega_2 t), \dots, \sin(\omega_{d/2} t), \cos(\omega_{d/2} t)] \quad (15.32)$$

where  $\omega_k = 1/C^{2k/d}$  is the frequency for the  $k$ 'th entry,  $d$  is the number of basis functions, and  $C = 10,000$  is some constant. For example, if  $d = 4$ , we have

$$\mathbf{p}_t = [\sin(\frac{t}{C^{0/4}}), \cos(\frac{t}{C^{0/4}}), \sin(\frac{t}{C^{2/4}}), \cos(\frac{t}{C^{2/4}})] \quad (15.33)$$

This rather obscure coding scheme is illustrated in Fig. 15.20. We see that each location gets associated with a real-valued vector derived from the values of a set of sine and cosine functions of different frequencies at that location. The advantage of this representation is two-fold. First, it can be computed for arbitrary length inputs (up to  $T \leq C$ ), unlike a learned mapping from integers to vectors. Second, nearby locations have similar encodings, which provides a useful form of inductive bias. In particular, we have  $\mathbf{p}_{t+\phi} = f(\mathbf{p}_t)$ , where  $f$  is a linear transformation. To see this, note that

$$\begin{pmatrix} \sin(\omega_k(t + \phi)) \\ \cos(\omega_k(t + \phi)) \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \sin(\omega_k t) \cos(\omega_k \phi) + \cos(\omega_k t) \sin(\omega_k \phi) \\ \cos(\omega_k t) \cos(\omega_k \phi) - \sin(\omega_k t) \sin(\omega_k \phi) \end{pmatrix} \quad (15.34)$$

$$= \begin{pmatrix} \cos(\omega_k \phi) & \sin(\omega_k \phi) \\ -\sin(\omega_k \phi) & \cos(\omega_k \phi) \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \sin(\omega_k t) \\ \cos(\omega_k t) \end{pmatrix} \quad (15.35)$$

Once we have computed the positional emebddings  $\mathbf{P}$ , we need to combine them with the original word embeddings  $\mathbf{X}$ . If we use  $d = D$  basis functions, we can combine  $\mathbf{P}$  with  $\mathbf{X}$  by addition, i.e, we replace  $\mathbf{X}$  with  $\mathbf{X} + \mathbf{P}$ .

### 15.5.4 Putting it altogether

A transformer is a seq2seq model that uses self-attention for the encoder and decoder rather than an RNN. The encoder uses a series of residual blocks, each of which uses multi-headed attention (Sec. 15.5.2) and layer normalization (Sec. 14.2.6). Each block  $\mathbf{z} = f(\mathbf{x})$  can be defined as follows:

$$\mathbf{z} = \text{LayerNorm}(\varphi(\mathbf{W}\mathbf{x}') + \mathbf{x}') \quad (15.36)$$

$$\mathbf{x}' = \text{LayerNorm}(\text{MultiHeadAttention}(\mathbf{x}) + \mathbf{x}) \quad (15.37)$$

This is applied to the original input sequence after embedding and concatenating with positional encodings. This process is illustrated in the LHS of Fig. 15.21.

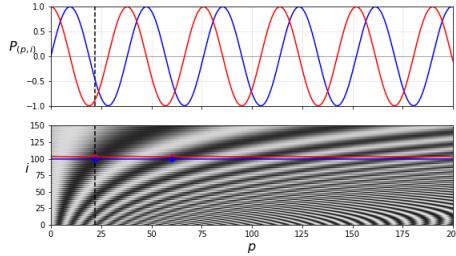


Figure 15.20: Illustration of positional embedding. The dotted vertical line corresponds to the location  $p = 22$ . The red and blue curves correspond to the “basis functions” corresponding to dimensions  $i = 100$  and  $i = 101$ . The gray scale image at the bottom illustrates the “fingerprint” encodings of each location. Adapted from Figure 16.9 of [Gér19]. Generated by [positional\\_embedding\\_plot.py](#).

Layer type	Complexity	Sequential ops.	Max. path length
Self-attention	$O(T^2D)$	$O(1)$	$O(1)$
Self-attention (restricted)	$O(RTD)$	$O(1)$	$O(T/R)$
Recurrent	$O(TD^2)$	$O(T)$	$O(T)$
Convolutional	$O(KTD^2)$	$O(1)$	$O(\log_K T)$

Table 15.1: Comparison of the transformer with other neural sequential generative models.  $T$  is the sequence length,  $D$  is the dimensionality of the input features,  $K$  is the kernel size for convolution, and  $R$  is the size of the neighborhood for local self-attention. For short sequences, we typically have  $T \ll D$ . Based on Table 1 of [Vas+17].

The decoder has a somewhat more complex structure. It is given access to the encoder via another multi-head attention block. But it is also given access to previously generated outputs: these are shifted, and then combined with a positional embedding, and then fed into a masked (causal) multi-head attention model. Finally the output distribution over tokens at each location is computed in parallel. See the RHS of Fig. 15.21 for an illustration, and [Rus18] for a detailed tutorial on this model.

### 15.5.5 Comparing transformers, CNNs and RNNs

There are two main advantages of a transformer model over RNNs (Sec. 15.2) and convolutional Markov models (Sec. 15.3). The first advantage is computational: the encoding in a transformer can be computed in parallel, whereas RNNs require sequential encoding. Furthermore, during training, the decoding can also be done in parallel, because teacher forcing clamps all the outputs to their correct values, without the need to sample.

The second advantage is statistical: in the transformer, distant locations can affect each other’s output directly, since the maximum path length between two tokens is 1. By contrast, an RNN takes  $T$  steps to propagate information from the first to the last position for a sequence of length  $T$ . And in a convolutional model with kernel size  $K$ , we need a stack of  $T/K$  layers or  $\log_K(T)$  dilated layers to ensure all pairs can communicate.

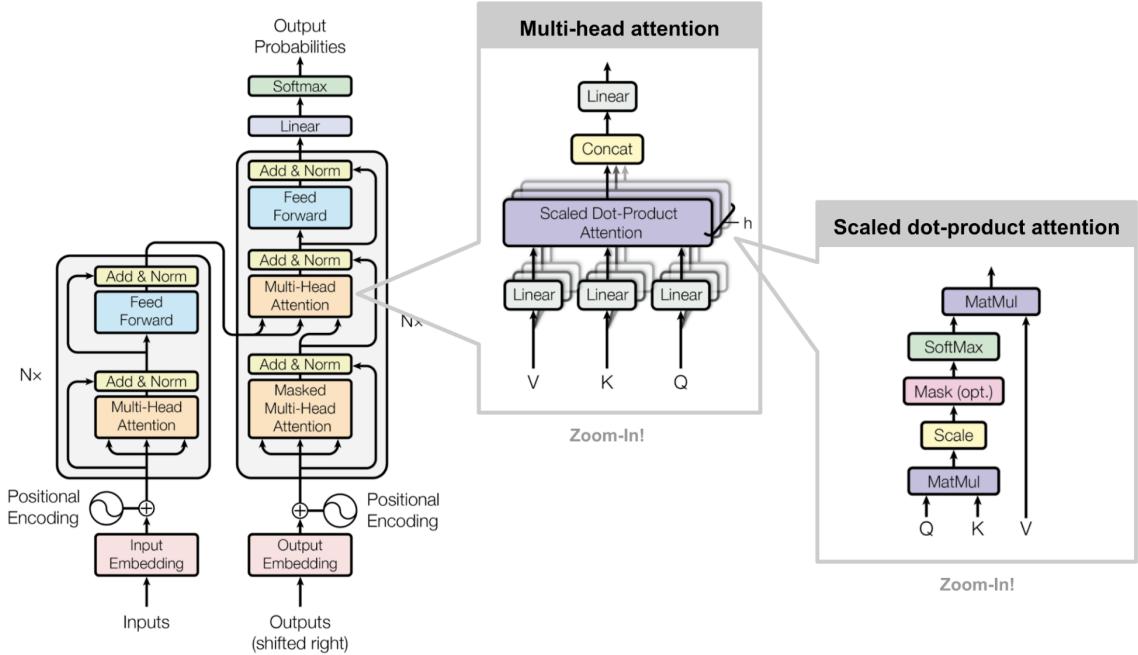


Figure 15.21: The transformer. From [Wen18]. Used with kind permission of Lilian Weng. Adapted from Figures 1–2 of [Vas+17].

The main disadvantage is that transformers take  $O(T_1 T_2 D)$  time for both training and inference, where  $T_1$  is the length of the input, and  $T_2$  is the length of the output, since each output token can attend to all the input tokens. We discuss various faster alternatives in Sec. 15.6.

## 15.6 Efficient transformers<sup>3</sup>

Regular transformers take  $O(N^2)$  time and space complexity, which makes them impractical to apply to long sequences. In the past few years, researchers have proposed several more efficient variants of transformers to bypass this difficulty. In this section, we give a brief survey of some of these methods (see Fig. 15.22 for a summary). For more details, see e.g., [Tay+20a; Tay+20b]).

### 15.6.1 Fixed non-learnable localized attention patterns

The simplest modification of the attention mechanism is to constrain it to a fixed non-learnable localized window, in other words restrict each token to attend only to a pre-selected set of other tokens. If for instance, each sequence is chunked into  $K$  blocks, each of length  $\frac{N}{K}$ , and attention is conducted only within a block, then space/time complexity is reduced from  $O(N^2)$  to  $\frac{N^2}{K}$ . For

3. This section is coauthored with Krzysztof Choromanski.

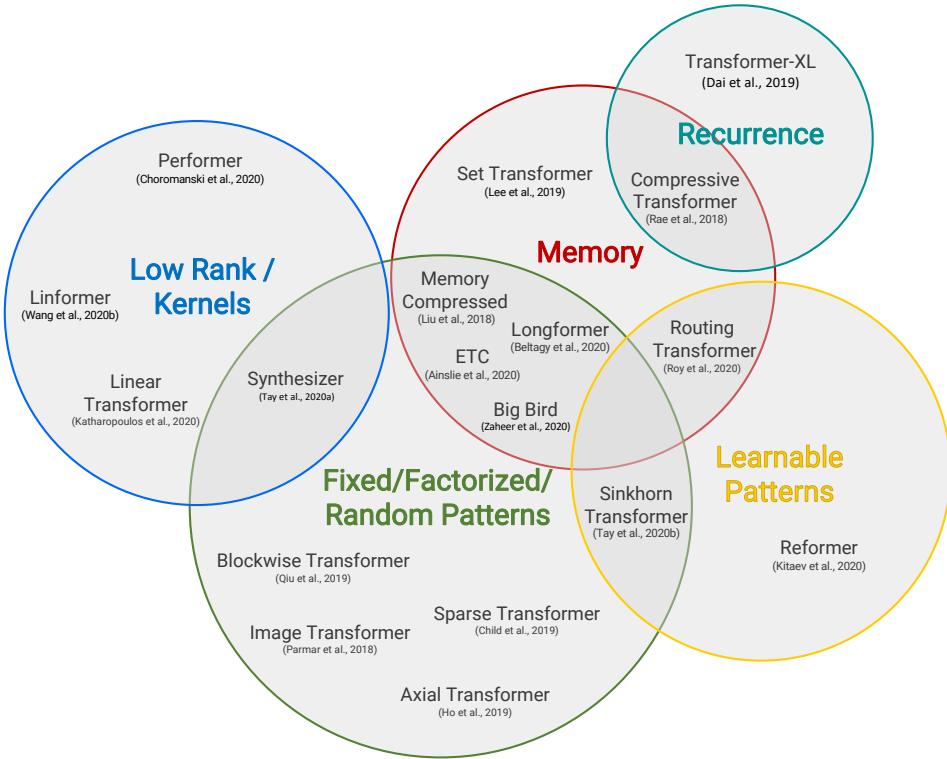


Figure 15.22: Venn diagram presenting the taxonomy of different efficient transformer architectures. From [Tay+20a]. Used with kind permission of Yi Tay.

$K \gg 1$  this constitutes substantial overall computational improvements. Such an approach is applied in particular in [Qiu+19a; Par+18]. The attention patterns do not need to be in the form of blocks. Other approaches involve strided/"dilated windows" or hybrid patterns, where several fixed attention patterns are combined together [Chi+19b; BPC20].

### 15.6.2 Learnable sparse attention patterns

A natural extension of the above approach is to allow the above compact patterns to be learned. The attention is still restricted to pairs of tokens within a single partition of some partitioning of the set of all the tokens, but now those partitionings are trained. In this class of methods we can distinguish two main approaches: based on hashing and clustering. In the hashing scenario all tokens are hashed and thus different partitions correspond to different hashing-buckets. This is the case for instance for the **Reformer** architecture [KKL20], where locality sensitive hashing (LSH) is applied. That leads to time complexity  $O(NM^2 \log(M))$  of the attention module, where  $M$  stands for the dimensionality of tokens' embeddings.

Hashing approaches require the set of queries to be identical to the set of keys. Furthermore,

the number of hashes needed for precise partitioning (which in the above expression is treated as a constant) can be a large constant. In the clustering approach, tokens are clustered using standard clustering algorithms such as K-means (Sec. 21.3); this is known as the “clustering transformer” [Roy+20]. As in the block-case, if  $K$  equal-size clusters are used then space complexity of the attention module is reduced to  $O(\frac{N^2}{K})$ . In practice  $K$  is often taken to be of order  $K = \Theta(\sqrt{N})$ , yet imposing that the clusters be similar in size is in practice difficult.

### 15.6.3 Memory and recurrence methods

In some approaches, a side memory module can access several tokens simultaneously. This method is often instantiated in the form of a *global memory* algorithm as used in [Lee+19; Zah+20].

Another approach is to connect different local blocks via recurrence. A flagship example of this approach is the class of Transformer-XL methods [Dai+19].

### 15.6.4 Low-rank and kernel methods

In this section, we discuss methods that approximate attention using low rank matrices. In [She+18; Kat+20] they approximate the attention matrix  $\mathbf{A}$  directly by a low rank matrix, so that

$$A_{ij} = \phi(\mathbf{q}_i)^\top \phi(\mathbf{k}_j) \quad (15.38)$$

where  $\phi(\mathbf{x}) \in \mathbb{R}^M$  is some finite-dimensional vector with  $M < D$ . One can leverage this structure to compute  $\mathbf{AV}$  in  $O(N)$  time. Unfortunately, for softmax attention, the  $\mathbf{A}$  is not low rank.

In **Linformer** [Wan+20a], they instead transform the keys and values via random Gaussian projections. They then apply the theory of the Johnson-Lindenstrauss Transform [AL13] to approximate softmax attention in this lower dimensional space.

In **Performer** [Cho+20a; Cho+20b], they show that the attention matrix can be computed using a (positive definite) kernel function. We define kernel functions in Sec. 17.2, but the basic idea is that  $\mathcal{K}(\mathbf{q}, \mathbf{k}) \geq 0$  is some measure of similarity between  $\mathbf{q} \in \mathbb{R}^D$  and  $\mathbf{k} \in \mathbb{R}^D$ . For example, the Gaussian kernel, also called the radial basis function kernel, has the form

$$\mathcal{K}_{\text{gauss}}(\mathbf{q}, \mathbf{k}) = \exp\left(-\frac{1}{2\sigma^2}\|\mathbf{q} - \mathbf{k}\|_2^2\right) \quad (15.39)$$

To see how this can be used to compute an attention matrix, note that [Cho+20a] show the following:

$$A_{i,j} = \exp\left(\frac{\mathbf{q}_i^\top \mathbf{k}_j}{\sqrt{D}}\right) = \exp\left(-\frac{\|\mathbf{q}_i - \mathbf{k}_j\|_2^2}{2\sqrt{D}}\right) \times \exp\left(\frac{\|\mathbf{q}_i\|_2^2}{2\sqrt{D}}\right) \times \exp\left(\frac{\|\mathbf{k}_j\|_2^2}{2\sqrt{D}}\right). \quad (15.40)$$

The first term in the above expression is equal to  $\mathcal{K}_{\text{gauss}}(\mathbf{q}_i D^{-1/4}, \mathbf{k}_j D^{-1/4})$  with  $\sigma = 1$ , and the other two terms are just independent scaling factors.

So far we have not gained anything computationally. However, we will show in Sec. 17.4.3 that the Gaussian kernel can be written as the expectation of a set of random features:

$$\mathcal{K}_{\text{gauss}}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y}) = \mathbb{E} [\boldsymbol{\eta}(\mathbf{x})^\top \boldsymbol{\eta}(\mathbf{y})] \quad (15.41)$$

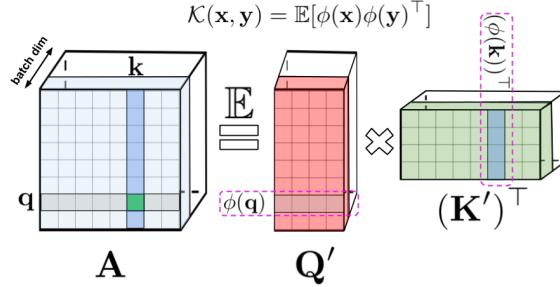


Figure 15.23: Attention matrix  $\mathbf{A}$  rewritten as a product of two lower rank matrices  $\mathbf{Q}'$  and  $(\mathbf{K}')^\top$  with random feature maps  $\phi(\mathbf{q}_i) \in \mathbb{R}^M$  and  $\phi(\mathbf{k}_k) \in \mathbb{R}^M$  for the corresponding queries/keys stored in the rows/columns. Used with kind permission of Krzysztof Choromanski.

where  $\eta(\mathbf{x}) \in \mathbb{R}^M$  is a random feature vector derived from  $\mathbf{x}$ , either based on trigonometric functions Eq. (17.97) or exponential functions Eq. (17.98). (The latter has the advantage that all the features are positive, which gives much better results [Cho+20b].) Therefore for the regular softmax attention,  $A_{i,j}$  can be rewritten as

$$A_{i,j} = \mathbb{E}[\phi(\mathbf{q}_i)^\top \phi(\mathbf{k}_j)] \quad (15.42)$$

where  $\phi$  is defined as:

$$\phi(\mathbf{x}) \triangleq \exp\left(\frac{\|\mathbf{x}\|_2^2}{2\sqrt{D}}\right) \eta\left(\frac{\mathbf{x}}{D^{\frac{1}{4}}}\right). \quad (15.43)$$

We can write the full attention matrix as follows

$$\mathbf{A} = \mathbb{E}[\mathbf{Q}'(\mathbf{K}')^\top] \quad (15.44)$$

where  $\mathbf{Q}' \in \mathbb{R}^{N \times M}$  have rows encoding random feature maps corresponding to the queries and keys. (Note that we can get better performance if we ensure these random features are orthogonal, see [Cho+20a] for the details.) See Fig. 15.23 for an illustration.

We can create an approximation to  $\mathbf{A}$  by using a single sample of the random features  $\phi(\mathbf{q}_i)$  and  $\phi(\mathbf{k}_j)$ , and using a small value of  $M$ , say  $M = O(D \log(D))$ . We can then approximate the entire attention operator in  $O(N)$  time using

$$\widehat{\text{attention}}(\mathbf{Q}, \mathbf{K}, \mathbf{V}) = \text{diag}^{-1}(\mathbf{Q}'((\mathbf{K}')^\top \mathbf{1}_N))(\mathbf{Q}'((\mathbf{K}')^\top \mathbf{V})) \quad (15.45)$$

This can be shown to be an unbiased approximation to the exact softmax attention operator. See Fig. 15.24 for an illustration. (For details on how to generalize this to masked (causal) attention, see [Cho+20a].)

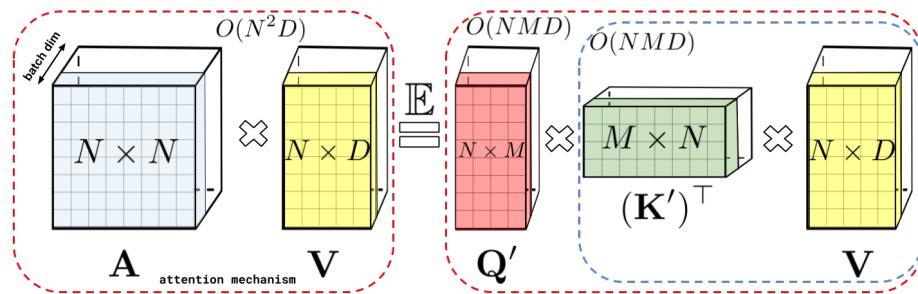


Figure 15.24: Decomposition of the attention matrix  $\mathbf{A}$  can be leveraged to improve attention computations via matrix associativity property. To compute  $\mathbf{AV}$ , we first calculate  $\mathbf{G} = (\mathbf{k}')^\top \mathbf{V}$  and then  $\mathbf{q}' \mathbf{G}$ , resulting in linear in  $N$  space and time complexity. Used with kind permission of Krzysztof Choromanski.



PART IV

## Nonparametric models



# 16 Exemplar-based methods

So far in this book, we have mostly focused on **parametric models**, either unconditional  $p(\mathbf{y}|\boldsymbol{\theta})$  or conditional  $p(\mathbf{y}|\mathbf{x}, \boldsymbol{\theta})$ , where  $\boldsymbol{\theta}$  is a fixed-dimensional vector of parameters. The parameters are estimated from a variable-sized dataset,  $\mathcal{D} = \{(\mathbf{x}_n, \mathbf{y}_n) : n = 1 : N\}$ , but after model fitting, the data is thrown away.

In this section we consider various kinds of **nonparametric models**, that keep the training data around. Thus the effective number of parameters of the model can grow with  $|\mathcal{D}|$ . We focus on models that can be defined in terms of the **similarity** between a test input,  $\mathbf{x}$ , and each of the training inputs,  $\mathbf{x}_n$ . Alternatively, we can define the models in terms of a dissimilarity or distance function  $d(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}_n)$ . Since the models keep the training examples around at test time, we call them **exemplar-based models**. (This approach is also called **instance-based learning** [AKA91], or **memory-based learning**.)

## 16.1 K nearest neighbor (KNN) classification

In this section, we discuss one of the simplest kind of classifier, known as the **K nearest neighbor (KNN)** classifier. The idea is as follows: to classify a new input  $\mathbf{x}$ , we find the  $K$  closest examples to  $\mathbf{x}$  in the training set, denoted  $N_K(\mathbf{x}, \mathcal{D})$ , and then look at their labels, to derive a distribution over the outputs for the local region around  $\mathbf{x}$ . More precisely, we compute

$$p(y = c | \mathbf{x}, \mathcal{D}) = \frac{1}{K} \sum_{n \in N_K(\mathbf{x}, \mathcal{D})} \mathbb{I}(y_n = c) \quad (16.1)$$

We can then return this distribution, or the majority label.

The two main parameters in the model are the size of the neighborhood,  $K$ , and the distance metric  $d(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}')$ . For the latter, it is common to use the **Mahalanobis distance**

$$d_{\mathbf{M}}(\mathbf{x}, \boldsymbol{\mu}) = \sqrt{(\mathbf{x} - \boldsymbol{\mu})^\top \mathbf{M} (\mathbf{x} - \boldsymbol{\mu})} \quad (16.2)$$

where  $\mathbf{M}$  is a positive definite matrix. If  $\mathbf{M} = \mathbf{I}$ , this reduces to Euclidean distance. We discuss how to learn the distance metric in Sec. 16.2.

Despite the simplicity of KNN classifiers, it can be shown that this approach becomes within a factor of 2 of the Bayes error (which measures the performance of the best possible classifier) if  $N \rightarrow \infty$  [CH67; CD14]. (Of course the convergence rate to this optimal performance may be poor in practice, for reasons we discuss in Sec. 16.1.2.)

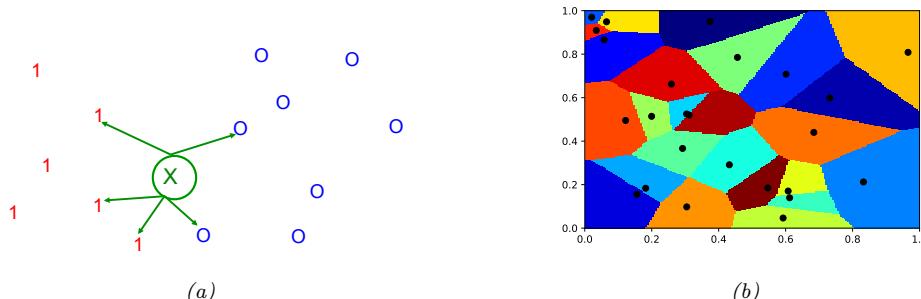


Figure 16.1: (a) Illustration of a  $K$ -nearest neighbors classifier in 2d for  $K = 5$ . The nearest neighbors of test point  $\mathbf{x}$  have labels  $\{1, 1, 1, 0, 0\}$ , so we predict  $p(y = 1 | \mathbf{x}, \mathcal{D}) = 3/5$ . (b) Illustration of the Voronoi tessellation induced by 1-NN. Adapted from Figure 4.13 of [DHS01]. Generated by `knn voronoi plot.py`.

### 16.1.1 Example

We illustrate the KNN classifier in 2d in Fig. 16.1(a) for  $K = 5$ . The test point is marked as an “x”. 3 of the 5 nearest neighbors have label 1, and 2 of the 5 have label 0. Hence we predict  $p(y=1|\mathbf{x}, \mathcal{D}) = 3/5 = 0.6$ .

If we use  $K = 1$ , we just return the label of the nearest neighbor, so the predictive distribution becomes a delta function. A KNN classifier with  $K = 1$  induces a **Voronoi tessellation** of the points (see Fig. 16.1(b)). This is a partition of space which associates a region  $V(\mathbf{x}_n)$  with each point  $\mathbf{x}_n$  in such a way that all points in  $V(\mathbf{x}_n)$  are closer to  $\mathbf{x}_n$  than to any other point. Within each cell, the predicted label is the label of the corresponding training point. Thus the training error will be 0 when  $K = 1$ . However, such a model is usually overfitting the training set, as we show below.

Fig. 16.2 gives an example of KNN applied to a 2d dataset, in which we have three classes. We see how, with  $K = 1$ , the method makes zero errors on the training set. As  $K$  increases, the decision boundaries become smoother (since we are averaging over larger neighborhoods), so the training error increases, as we start to underfit. This is shown in Fig. 16.2(d). The test error shows the usual U-shaped curve.

### 16.1.2 The curse of dimensionality

The main statistical problem with KNN classifiers is that they do not work well with high dimensional inputs, due to the **curse of dimensionality**.

The basic problem is that the volume of space grows exponentially fast with dimension, so you might have to look quite far away in space to find your nearest neighbor. To make this more precise, consider this example from [HTF09, p22]. Suppose we apply a KNN classifier to data where the inputs are uniformly distributed in the  $D$ -dimensional unit cube. Suppose we estimate the density of class labels around a test point  $\mathbf{x}$  by “growing” a hyper-cube around  $\mathbf{x}$  until it contains a desired fraction  $p$  of the data points. The expected edge length of this cube will be  $e_D(s) \triangleq p^{1/D}$ ; this function is plotted in Fig. 16.3(b). If  $D = 10$ , and we want to base our estimate on 10% of the data, we have  $e_{10}(0.1) = 0.8$ , so we need to extend the cube 80% along each dimension around  $\mathbf{x}$ . Even if

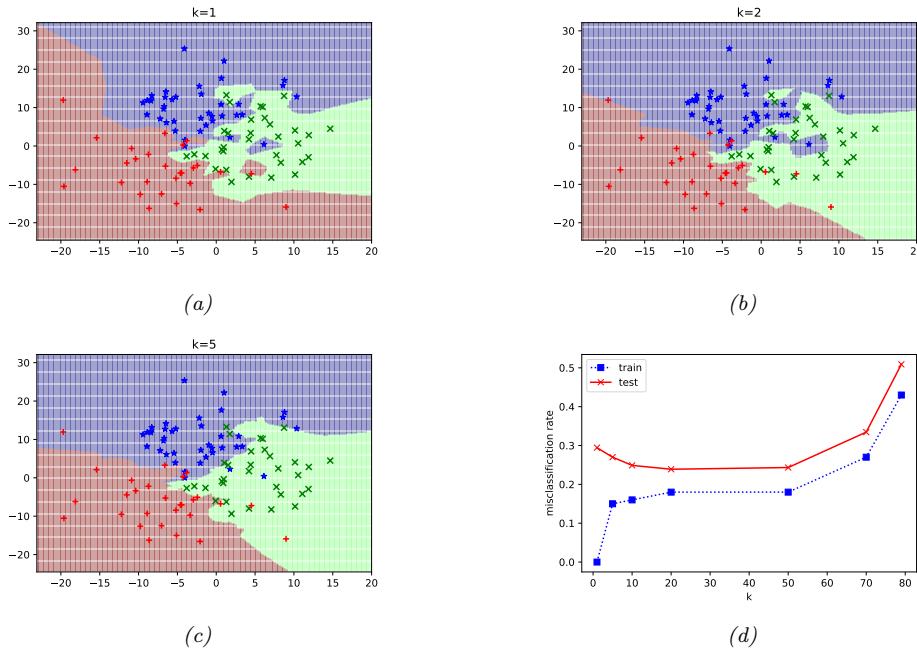


Figure 16.2: Decision boundaries induced by a KNN classifier. (a)  $K = 1$ . (b)  $K = 2$ . (c)  $K = 5$ . (d) Train and test error vs  $K$ . Generated by `knn_classify_demo.py`.

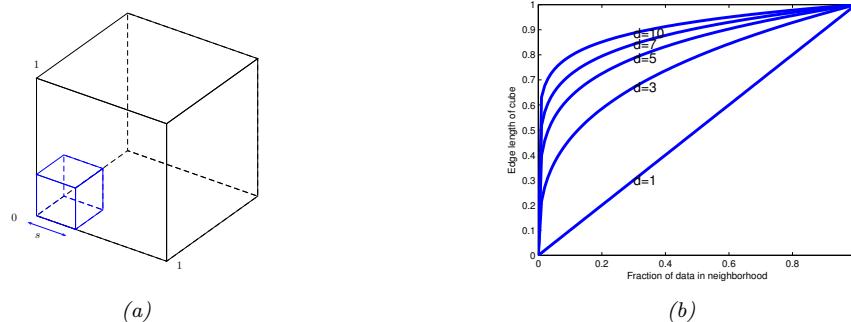


Figure 16.3: Illustration of the curse of dimensionality. (a) We embed a small cube of side  $s$  inside a larger unit cube. (b) We plot the edge length of a cube needed to cover a given volume of the unit cube as a function of the number of dimensions. Adapted from Figure 2.6 from [HTF09]. Generated by `curse_dimensionality.py`.

we only use 1% of the data, we find  $e_{10}(0.01) = 0.63$ . Since the range of the data is only 0 to 1 along each dimension, we see that the method is no longer very local, despite the name “nearest neighbor”. The trouble with looking at neighbors that are so far away is that they may not be good predictors about the behavior of the function at a given point.

There are two main solutions to the curse: make some assumptions about the form of the function (i.e., use a parametric model), and/or use a metric that only cares about a subset of the dimensions (see Sec. 16.2).

### 16.1.3 Reducing the speed and memory requirements

KNN classifiers store all the training data. This is obviously very wasteful of space. Various heuristic pruning techniques have been proposed to remove points that do not affect the decision boundaries, see e.g., [WM00]. In Sec. 17.6, we discuss a more principled approach based on a sparsity promoting prior; the resulting method is called a sparse kernel machine, and only keeps a subset of the most useful exemplars.

In terms of running time, the challenge is to find the  $K$  nearest neighbors in less than  $O(N)$  time, where  $N$  is the size of the training set. Finding exact nearest neighbors is computationally intractable when the dimensionality of the space goes above about 10 dimensions, so most methods focus on finding the approximate nearest neighbors. There are two main classes of techniques, based on partitioning space into regions, or using hashing.

For partitioning methods, one can either use some kind of **k-d tree**, which divides space into axis-parallel regions, or some kind of clustering method, which uses anchor points. [ML14] describes some of these methods, which are implemented in the open source FLANN (fast library for approximate nearest neighbors) library.

For hashing methods, **locality sensitive hashing (LSH)** [GIM99] is widely used, although more recent methods learn the hashing function from data (see e.g., [Wan+15]). See [LRU14] for a good introduction to hashing methods.

### 16.1.4 Open set recognition

Ask not what this is called, ask what this is like. — Moshe Bar.[Bar09]

In all of the classification problems we have considered so far, we have assumed that the set of classes  $\mathcal{C}$  is fixed. (This is an example of the **closed world assumption**, which assumes there is a fixed number of (types of) things.) However, many real world problems involve test samples that come from new categories. This is called **open set recognition**, as we discuss below.

#### 16.1.4.1 Online learning, OOD detection and open set recognition

For example, suppose we train a face recognition system to predict the identity of a person from a fixed set or **gallery** of face images. Let  $\mathcal{D}_t = \{(\mathbf{x}_n, y_n) : \mathbf{x}_n \in \mathcal{X}, y_n \in \mathcal{C}_t, n = 1 : N_t\}$  be the labeled dataset at time  $t$ , where  $\mathcal{X}$  is the set of (face) images, and  $\mathcal{C}_t = \{1, \dots, C_t\}$  is the set of people known to the system at time  $t$  (where  $C_t \leq t$ ). At test time, the system may encounter a new person that it has not seen before. Let  $\mathbf{x}_{t+1}$  be this new image, and  $y_{t+1} = C_{t+1}$  be its new label. The system needs to recognize that the input is from a new category, and not accidentally classify it with a label from  $\mathcal{C}_t$ . This is called **novelty detection**. In this case, the input is being generated from

the distribution  $p(\mathbf{x}|y = C_{t+1})$ , where  $C_{t+1} \notin \mathcal{C}_t$  is the new “class label”. Detecting that  $\mathbf{x}_{t+1}$  is from a novel class may be hard if the appearance of this new image is similar to the appearance of any of the existing images in  $\mathcal{D}_t$ .

If the system is successful at detecting that  $\mathbf{x}_{t+1}$  is novel, then it may ask for the id of this new instance, call it  $C_{t+1}$ . It can then add the labeled pair  $(\mathbf{x}_{t+1}, C_{t+1})$  to the dataset to create  $\mathcal{D}_{t+1}$ , and can grow the set of unique classes by adding  $C_{t+1}$  to  $\mathcal{C}_t$  (c.f., [JK13]). This is called **incremental learning**, **online learning**, **life-long learning**, or **continual learning**. At future time points, the system may encounter an image sampled from  $p(\mathbf{x}|y = c)$ , where  $c$  is an existing class, or where  $c$  is a new class, or the image may be sampled from some entirely different kind of distribution  $p'(\mathbf{x})$  unrelated to faces (e.g., someone uploads a photo of their dog). (Detecting this latter kind of event is called **out-of-distribution** or **OOD** detection.)

In this online setting, we often only get a few (sometimes just one) example of each class. Prediction in this setting is known as **few-shot classification**, and is discussed in more detail in Sec. 19.4. KNN classifiers are well-suited to this task. For example, we can just store all the instances of each class in a gallery of examples, as we explained above. At time  $t + 1$ , when we get input  $\mathbf{x}_{t+1}$ , rather than predicting a label for  $\mathbf{x}_{t+1}$  by comparing it to some parametric model for each class, we just find the example in the gallery that is nearest (most similar) to  $\mathbf{x}_{t+1}$ , call it  $\mathbf{x}'$ . We then need to determine if  $\mathbf{x}'$  and  $\mathbf{x}_{t+1}$  are sufficiently similar to constitute a match. (In the context of person classification, this is known as **person re-identification** or **face verification**, see e.g., [WSH16].) If there is no match, we can declare the input to be novel or OOD.

The key ingredient for all of the above problems is the (dis)similarity metric between inputs. We discuss ways to learn this in Sec. 16.2.

#### 16.1.4.2 Other open world problems

The problem of open-set recognition, and incremental learning, are just examples of problems that require the **open world assumption** c.f., [Rus15]. There are many other examples of such problems.

For example, consider the problem of **entity resolution**, called **entity linking**. In this problem, we need to determine if different strings (e.g., “John Smith” and “Jon Smith”) refer to the same entity or not. See e.g. [SHF15] for details.

Another important application is in **multi-object tracking**. For example, when a radar system detects a new “blip”, is it due to an existing missile that is being tracked, or is it a new objective that has entered the airspace? An elegant mathematical framework for dealing with such problems, known as **random finite sets**, is described in [Mah07; Mah13; Vo+15].

## 16.2 Learning distance metrics

Being able to compute the “semantic distance” between a pair of points,  $d(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}') \in \mathbb{R}^+$  for  $\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}' \in \mathcal{X}$ , or equivalently their similarity  $s(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}') \in \mathbb{R}^+$ , is of crucial importance to tasks such as nearest neighbor classification (Sec. 16.1), self-supervised learning (Sec. 19.2.3.3), similarity-based clustering (Sec. 21.5), content-based retrieval, visual tracking, etc.

When the input space is  $\mathcal{X} = \mathbb{R}^D$ , the most common distance metric is the Mahalanobis distance

$$d_{\mathbf{M}}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}') = \sqrt{(\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}')^\top \mathbf{M} (\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}')} \quad (16.3)$$

We discuss some methods to learn the matrix  $\mathbf{M}$  in Sec. 16.2.1. For high dimensional inputs, or structured inputs, it is better to first learn an embedding  $\mathbf{e} = f(\mathbf{x})$ , and then to compute distances in embedding space. When  $f$  is a DNN, this is called **deep metric learning**; we discuss this in Sec. 16.2.2.

### 16.2.1 Linear and convex methods

In this section, we discuss some methods that try to learn the Mahalanobis distance matrix  $\mathbf{M}$ , either directly (as a convex problem), or indirectly via a linear projection. For other approaches to metric learning, see e.g., [Kul13; Kim19] for more details.

#### 16.2.1.1 Large margin nearest neighbors

In [WS09], they propose to learn the Mahalanobis matrix  $\mathbf{M}$  so that the resulting distance metric works well when used by a nearest neighbor classifier. The resulting method is called **large margin nearest neighbor** or **LMNN**.

This works as follows. For each example data point  $i$ , let  $N_i$  be a set of **target neighbors**; these are usually chosen to be the set of  $K$  points with the same class label that are closest in Euclidean distance. We now optimize  $\mathbf{M}$  so that we minimize the distance between each point  $i$  and all of its target neighbors  $j \in N_i$ :

$$\mathcal{L}_{\text{pull}}(\mathbf{M}) = \sum_{i=1}^N \sum_{j \in N_i} d_{\mathbf{M}}(\mathbf{x}_i, \mathbf{x}_j)^2 \quad (16.4)$$

We also want to ensure that examples with incorrect labels are far away. To do this, we ensure that each example  $i$  is closer (by some margin  $m \geq 0$ ) to its target neighbors  $j$  than to other points  $l$  with different labels (so-called **impostors**). We can do this by minimizing

$$\mathcal{L}_{\text{push}}(\mathbf{M}) = \sum_{i=1}^N \sum_{j \in N_i} \sum_{l=1}^N \mathbb{I}(y_i \neq y_l) [m + d_{\mathbf{M}}(\mathbf{x}_i, \mathbf{x}_j)^2 - d_{\mathbf{M}}(\mathbf{x}_i, \mathbf{x}_l)^2]_+ \quad (16.5)$$

where  $[z]_+ = \max(z, 0)$  is the hinge loss function (Sec. 4.3.2). The overall objective is  $\mathcal{L}(\mathbf{M}) = (1 - \lambda)\mathcal{L}_{\text{pull}}(\mathbf{M}) + \lambda\mathcal{L}_{\text{push}}(\mathbf{M})$ , where  $0 < \lambda < 1$ . This is a convex function defined over a convex set, which can be minimized using **semidefinite programming**. Alternatively, we can parameterize the problem using  $\mathbf{M} = \mathbf{W}^\top \mathbf{W}$ , and then minimize wrt  $\mathbf{W}$  using unconstrained gradient methods. This is no longer convex, but allows us to use a low-dimensional mapping  $\mathbf{W}$ .

For large datasets, we need to tackle the  $O(N^3)$  cost of computing Eq. (16.5). We discuss some speedup tricks in Sec. 16.2.5.

#### 16.2.1.2 Neighborhood components analysis

Another way to learn a linear mapping  $\mathbf{W}$  such that  $\mathbf{M} = \mathbf{W}^\top \mathbf{W}$  is known as **neighborhood components analysis** or **NCA** [Gol+05]. This defines the probability that sample  $\mathbf{x}_i$  has  $\mathbf{x}_j$  as its nearest neighbor using the linear softmax function

$$p_{ij}^{\mathbf{W}} = \frac{\exp(-\|\mathbf{W}\mathbf{x}_i - \mathbf{W}\mathbf{x}_j\|_2^2)}{\sum_{l \neq i} \exp(-\|\mathbf{W}\mathbf{x}_i - \mathbf{W}\mathbf{x}_l\|_2^2)} \quad (16.6)$$

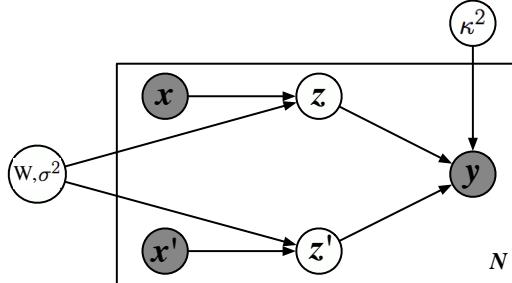


Figure 16.4: Illustration of latent coincidence analysis (LCA) as a directed graphical model. The inputs  $\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}' \in \mathbb{R}^D$  are mapped into Gaussian latent variables  $\mathbf{z}, \mathbf{z}' \in \mathbb{R}^L$  via a linear mapping  $\mathbf{W}$ . If the two latent points coincide (within length scale  $\kappa$ ) then we set the similarity label to  $y = 1$ , otherwise we set it to  $y = 0$ . From Figure 1 of [DS12]. Used with kind permission of Lawrence Saul.

(This is a supervised version of stochastic neighborhood embeddings discussed in Sec. 20.4.10.1.) The expected number of correctly classified examples according for a 1NN classifier using distance  $\mathbf{W}$  is given by  $J(\mathbf{W}) = \sum_{i=1}^N \sum_{j \neq i: y_j = y_i} p_{ij}^{\mathbf{W}}$ . Let  $\mathcal{L}(\mathbf{W}) = 1 - J(\mathbf{W})/N$  be the leave one out error. We can minimize  $\mathcal{L}$  wrt  $\mathbf{W}$  using gradient methods.

### 16.2.1.3 Latent coincidence analysis

Yet another way to learn a linear mapping  $\mathbf{W}$  such that  $\mathbf{M} = \mathbf{W}^\top \mathbf{W}$  is known as **latent coincidence analysis** or **LCA** [DS12]. This defines a conditional latent variable model for mapping a pair of inputs,  $\mathbf{x}$  and  $\mathbf{x}'$ , to a label  $y \in \{0, 1\}$ , which specifies if the inputs are similar (e.g., have same class label) or dissimilar. Each input  $\mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^D$  is mapped to a low dimensional latent point  $\mathbf{z} \in \mathbb{R}^L$  using a stochastic mapping  $p(\mathbf{z}|\mathbf{x}) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{z}|\mathbf{W}\mathbf{x}, \sigma^2\mathbf{I})$ , and  $p(\mathbf{z}'|\mathbf{x}') = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{z}'|\mathbf{W}\mathbf{x}', \sigma^2\mathbf{I})$ . (Compare this to factor analysis, discussed in Sec. 20.2.) We then define the probability that the two inputs are similar using  $p(y = 1|\mathbf{z}, \mathbf{z}') = \exp(-\frac{1}{2\kappa^2} \|\mathbf{z} - \mathbf{z}'\|)$ . See Fig. 16.4 for an illustration of the modeling assumptions.

We can maximize the log marginal likelihood  $\ell(\mathbf{W}, \sigma^2, \kappa^2) = \sum_n \log p(y_n|\mathbf{x}_n, \mathbf{x}'_n)$  using the EM algorithm (Sec. 5.7.2). (We can set  $\kappa = 1$  WLOG, since it just changes the scale of  $\mathbf{W}$ .) More precisely, in the E step, we compute the posterior  $p(\mathbf{z}, \mathbf{z}'|\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}', y)$  (which can be done in closed form), and in the M step, we solve a weighted least squares problem (c.f., Sec. 13.6.2). EM will monotonically increase the objective, and does not need step size adjustment, unlike the gradient based methods used in NCA (Sec. 16.2.1.2). (It is also possible to use variational Bayes (Sec. 7.7.3) to fit this model, as well as various sparse and nonlinear extensions, as discussed in [ZMY19].)

### 16.2.2 Deep metric learning

When measuring the distance between high-dimensional or structured inputs, it is very useful to first learn an embedding to a lower dimensional “semantic” space, where distances are more meaningful, and less subject to the curse of dimensionality (Sec. 16.1.2). Let  $\mathbf{e} = f(\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta}) \in \mathbb{R}^L$  be an embedding of the input that preserves the “relevant” semantic aspects of the input, and let  $\hat{\mathbf{e}} = \mathbf{e}/\|\mathbf{e}\|_2$  be the  $\ell_2$ -normalized version. This ensures that all points lie on a hyper-sphere. We can then measure the

distance between two points using the normalized Euclidean distance

$$d(\mathbf{x}_i, \mathbf{x}_j; \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \|\hat{\mathbf{e}}_i - \hat{\mathbf{e}}_j\|_2^2 \quad (16.7)$$

where smaller values means more similar, or the cosine similarity

$$d(\mathbf{x}_i, \mathbf{x}_j; \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \hat{\mathbf{e}}_i^\top \hat{\mathbf{e}}_j \quad (16.8)$$

where larger values means more similar. (Cosine similarity measures the angle between the two vectors, as illustrated in Fig. 19.9.) These quantities are related via

$$\|\hat{\mathbf{e}}_i - \hat{\mathbf{e}}_j\|_2^2 = (\hat{\mathbf{e}}_i - \hat{\mathbf{e}}_j)^\top (\hat{\mathbf{e}}_i - \hat{\mathbf{e}}_j) = 2 - 2\hat{\mathbf{e}}_i^\top \hat{\mathbf{e}}_j \quad (16.9)$$

This overall approach is called **deep metric learning** or DML.

The basic idea in DML is to learn the embedding function such that similar examples are closer than dissimilar examples. More precisely, we assume we have a labeled dataset,  $\mathcal{D} = \{(\mathbf{x}_i, y_i) : i = 1 : N\}$ , from which we can derive a set of similar pairs,  $\mathcal{S} = \{(i, j) : y_i = y_j\}$ . If  $(i, j) \in \mathcal{S}$  but  $(i, k) \notin \mathcal{S}$ , then we assume that  $\mathbf{x}_i$  and  $\mathbf{x}_j$  should be close in embedding space, whereas  $\mathbf{x}_i$  and  $\mathbf{x}_k$  should be far. We discuss various ways to enforce this property below. Note that these methods also work when we do not have class labels, provided we have some other way of defining similar pairs. For example, in Sec. 19.2.3.3, we discuss self-supervised approaches to representation learning, that automatically create semantically similar pairs, and learn embeddings to force these pairs to be closer than unrelated pairs.

Before discussing DML in more detail, it is worth mentioning that many recent approaches to DML are not as good as they claim to be, as pointed out in [MBL20; Rot+20]. (The claims in some of these papers are often invalid due to improper experimental comparisons, a common flaw in contemporary ML research, as discussed in e.g., [BLV19; LS19d].) We therefore focus on (slightly) older and simpler methods, that tend to be more robust.

### 16.2.3 Classification losses

Suppose we have labeled data with  $C$  classes. Then we can fit a classification model in  $O(NC)$  time, and then reuse the hidden features as an embedding function. (It is common to use the second-to-last layer, since it generalizes better to new classes than the final layer.) This approach is simple and scalable. However, it only learns to embed examples on the correct side of a decision boundary, which does not necessarily result in similar examples being placed close together and dissimilar examples being placed far apart. In addition, this method cannot be used if we do not have labeled training data.

### 16.2.4 Ranking losses

In this section, we consider minimizing **ranking loss**, to ensure that similar examples are closer than dissimilar examples. Most of these methods do not need class labels (although we sometimes assume that labels exist as a notationally simple way to define similarity).

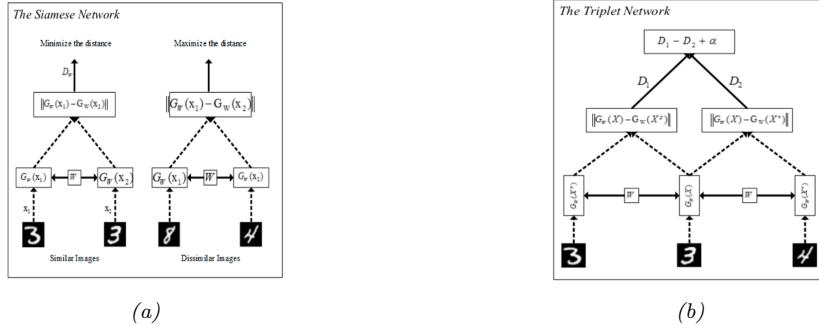


Figure 16.5: Networks for deep metric learning. (a) Siamese network. (b) Triplet network. From Figure 5 of [KB19]. Used with kind permission of Mahmut Kaya. .

#### 16.2.4.1 Pairwise (contrastive) loss and Siamese networks

One of the earliest approaches to representation learning from similar/dissimilar pairs was based on minimizing the following **contrastive loss** [CHL05]:

$$\mathcal{L}(\theta; \mathbf{x}_i, \mathbf{x}_j) = \mathbb{I}(y_i = y_j) d(\mathbf{x}_i, \mathbf{x}_j)^2 + \mathbb{I}(y_i \neq y_j) [m - d(\mathbf{x}_i, \mathbf{x}_j)]_+^2 \quad (16.10)$$

where  $[z]_+ = \max(0, z)$  is the hinge loss and  $m > 0$  is a margin parameter. Intuitively, we want to force positive pairs (with the same label) to be close, and negative pairs (with different labels) to be further apart than some minimal safety margin. We minimize this loss over all pairs of data. Naively this takes  $O(N^2)$  time; see Sec. 16.2.5 for some speedups.

Note that we use the same feature extractor  $\mathbf{f}(\cdot; \theta)$  for both inputs,  $\mathbf{x}_i$  and  $\mathbf{x}_j$ , when computing the distance, as illustrated in Fig. 16.5a. The resulting network is therefore called a **Siamese network** (named after Siamese twins).

#### 16.2.4.2 Triplet loss

One disadvantage of pairwise losses is that the optimization of the positive pairs is independent of the negative pairs, which can make their magnitudes incomparable. A solution to this is to use the **triplet loss** [SKP15]. This is defined as follows. For each example  $i$  (known as an **anchor**), we find a similar (positive) example  $\mathbf{x}_i^+$  and a dissimilar (negative) example  $\mathbf{x}_i^-$ . We then minimize the following loss, averaged overall all triples:

$$\mathcal{L}(\theta; \mathbf{x}_i, \mathbf{x}_i^+, \mathbf{x}_i^-) = [d_\theta(\mathbf{x}_i, \mathbf{x}_i^+)^2 - d_\theta(\mathbf{x}_i, \mathbf{x}_i^-)^2 + m]_+ \quad (16.11)$$

Intuitively this says we want the distance from the anchor to the positive to be less (by some safety margin  $m$ ) than the distance from the anchor to the negative. We can compute the triplet loss using a triplet network as shown in Fig. 16.5b.

Naively minimizing triplet loss takes  $O(N^3)$  time. In practice we compute the loss on a minibatch (chosen so that there is at least one similar and one dissimilar example for the anchor point, often taken to be the first entry in the minibatch). Nevertheless the method can be slow, We discuss some speedups in Sec. 16.2.5.

### 16.2.4.3 N-pairs loss

One problem with the triplet loss is that each anchor is only compared to one negative example at a time. This might not provide a strong enough learning signal. One solution to this is to create a multi-class classification problem in which we create a set of  $N - 1$  negatives and 1 positive for every anchor. This is called the **N-pairs loss** [Soh16]. More precisely, we define the following loss for each set:

$$\mathcal{L}(\theta; \mathbf{x}_i, \mathbf{x}_j^+, \{\mathbf{x}_k^-\}_{k=1}^{N-1}) = -\log \left( 1 + \sum_{k=1}^{N-1} \exp(\hat{\mathbf{e}}_\theta(\mathbf{x}_i)^\top \hat{\mathbf{e}}_\theta(\mathbf{x}_k^-) - \hat{\mathbf{e}}_\theta(\mathbf{x}_i)^\top \hat{\mathbf{e}}_\theta(\mathbf{x}_j^+)) \right) \quad (16.12)$$

$$= -\log \frac{\exp(\hat{\mathbf{e}}_\theta(\mathbf{x}_i)^\top \hat{\mathbf{e}}_\theta(\mathbf{x}_k^-))}{\exp(\hat{\mathbf{e}}_\theta(\mathbf{x}_i)^\top \hat{\mathbf{e}}_\theta(\mathbf{x}_j^+)) + \sum_{k=1}^{N-1} \exp(\hat{\mathbf{e}}_\theta(\mathbf{x}_i)^\top \hat{\mathbf{e}}_\theta(\mathbf{x}_k^-))} \quad (16.13)$$

Note that the N-pairs loss is the same as the **InfoNCE** loss used in the CPC paper [OLV18]. In [Che+20a], they propose a version where the scale the similarities by a temperature term; they call this the **NT-Xent** (normalized temperature-scaled cross-entropy) loss. We can view the temperature parameter as scaling the radius of the hypersphere on which the data lives.

When  $N = 2$ , the loss reduces to the logistic loss

$$\mathcal{L}(\theta; \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}^+, \mathbf{x}_i) = -\log (1 + \exp(\hat{\mathbf{e}}_\theta(\mathbf{x})^\top \hat{\mathbf{e}}_\theta(\mathbf{x}_i) - \hat{\mathbf{e}}_\theta(\mathbf{x})^\top \hat{\mathbf{e}}_\theta(\mathbf{x}^+))) \quad (16.14)$$

Compare this to the margin loss used by triplet learning (when  $m = 1$ ):

$$\mathcal{L}(\theta; \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}^+, \mathbf{x}^-) = -\max(0, \hat{\mathbf{e}}(\mathbf{x})^\top \hat{\mathbf{e}}(\mathbf{x}^-) - \hat{\mathbf{e}}(\mathbf{x})^\top \hat{\mathbf{e}}(\mathbf{x}^+) + 1) \quad (16.15)$$

See Fig. 4.2 for a comparison of these two functions.

### 16.2.5 Speeding up ranking loss optimization

The main disadvantage of ranking loss is the  $O(N^2)$  or  $O(N^3)$  cost of computing the loss function, due to the need to compare all pairs or triples of examples. In this section, we discuss various speedup tricks.

#### 16.2.5.1 Mining techniques

A key insight is that we don't need to consider all negative examples for each anchor, since most will be uninformative (i.e., will incur zero loss). Instead we can focus attention on negative examples which are closer to the anchor than its nearest positive example. These are called **hard negatives**, and are particularly useful for speeding up triplet loss.

More precisely, if  $a$  is an anchor and  $p$  is its nearest positive example, we say that  $n$  is a hard negative (for  $a$ ) if  $d(\mathbf{x}_a, \mathbf{x}_n) < d(\mathbf{x}_a, \mathbf{x}_p)$  and  $y_n \neq y_a$ . Sometimes an anchor may not have any hard negatives. We can therefore increase the pool of candidates by considering **semi-hard negatives**, for which

$$d(\mathbf{x}_a, \mathbf{x}_p) < d(\mathbf{x}_a, \mathbf{x}_n) < d(\mathbf{x}_a, \mathbf{x}_p) + m \quad (16.16)$$

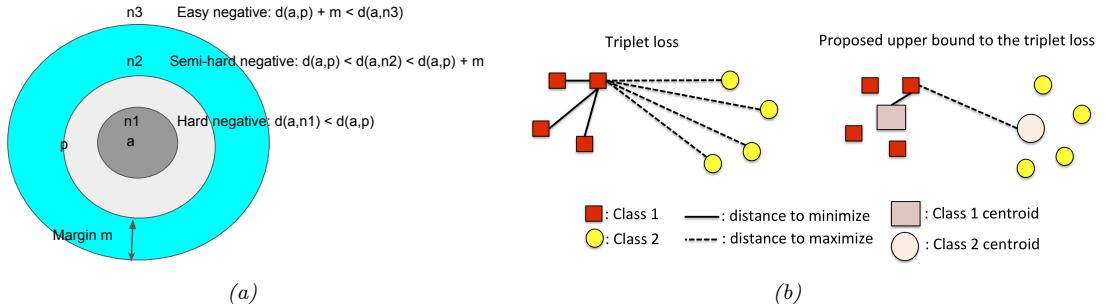


Figure 16.6: Speeding up triplet loss minimization. (a) Illustration of hard vs easy negatives. Here  $a$  is the anchor point,  $p$  is a positive point, and  $n_i$  are negative points. Adapted from Figure 4 of [KB19]. (b) Standard triplet loss would take  $8 \times 3 \times 4 = 96$  calculations, whereas using a proxy loss (with one proxy per class) takes  $8 \times 2 = 16$  calculations. From Figure 1 of [Do+19]. Used with kind permission of Gustavo Cerneiro.

where  $m > 0$  is a margin parameter. See Fig. 16.6a for an illustration. This is the technique used by Google’s **FaceNet** model [SKP15], which learns an embedding function for faces, so it can cluster similar looking faces together, to which the user can attach a name.

In practice, the hard negatives are usually chosen from within the minibatch. This therefore requires large batch sizes to ensure sufficient diversity. Alternatively, we can have a separate process that continually updates the set of candidate hard negatives, as the distance measure evolves during training.

### 16.2.5.2 Proxy methods

Triplet loss minimization is expensive even with hard negative mining (Sec. 16.2.5.1). Ideally we can find a method that is  $O(N)$  time, just like classification loss.

One such method, proposed in [MA+17], measures the distance between each anchor and a set of  $P$  **proxies** that represent each class, rather than directly measuring distance between examples. These proxies need to be updated online as the distance metric evolves during learning. The overall procedure takes  $O(NP^2)$  time, where  $P \sim C$ .

More recently, [Qia+19] proposed to represent each class with multiple prototypes, while still achieving linear time complexity, using a **soft triple** loss.

### 16.2.5.3 Optimizing an upper bound

[Do+19] proposed a simple and fast method for optimizing the triplet loss. The key idea is to define one *fixed* proxy or centroid per class, and then to use distance to the proxy as an upper bound on the triplet loss.

More precisely, consider a simplified form of the triplet loss, without the margin term:

$$\ell_t(\mathbf{x}_i, \mathbf{x}_j, \mathbf{x}_k) = \|\hat{\mathbf{e}}_i - \hat{\mathbf{e}}_j\| - \|\hat{\mathbf{e}}_i - \hat{\mathbf{e}}_k\| \quad (16.17)$$

where  $\hat{\mathbf{e}}_i = \hat{\mathbf{e}}_{\theta}(\mathbf{x}_i)$ , etc. Using the triangle inequality we have

$$\|\hat{\mathbf{e}}_i - \hat{\mathbf{e}}_j\| \leq \|\hat{\mathbf{e}}_i - \mathbf{c}_{y_i}\| + \|\hat{\mathbf{e}}_j - \mathbf{c}_{y_i}\| \quad (16.18)$$

$$\|\hat{\mathbf{e}}_i - \hat{\mathbf{e}}_k\| \geq \|\hat{\mathbf{e}}_i - \mathbf{c}_{y_k}\| - \|\hat{\mathbf{e}}_k - \mathbf{c}_{y_k}\| \quad (16.19)$$

Hence

$$\ell_t(\mathbf{x}_i, \mathbf{x}_j, \mathbf{x}_k) \leq \ell_u(\mathbf{x}_i, \mathbf{x}_j, \mathbf{x}_k) \triangleq \|\hat{\mathbf{e}}_i - \mathbf{c}_{y_i}\| - \|\hat{\mathbf{e}}_i - \mathbf{c}_{y_k}\| + \|\hat{\mathbf{e}}_j - \mathbf{c}_{y_i}\| + \|\hat{\mathbf{e}}_k - \mathbf{c}_{y_k}\| \quad (16.20)$$

We can use this to derive a tractable upper bound on the triplet loss as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{L}_t(\mathcal{D}, \mathcal{S}) &= \sum_{(i,j) \in \mathcal{S}, (i,k) \notin \mathcal{S}, i,j,k \in \{1, \dots, N\}} \ell_t(\mathbf{x}_i, \mathbf{x}_j, \mathbf{x}_k) \leq \sum_{(i,j) \in \mathcal{S}, (i,k) \notin \mathcal{S}, i,j,k \in \{1, \dots, N\}} \ell_u(\mathbf{x}_i, \mathbf{x}_j, \mathbf{x}_k) \\ &\quad (16.21) \end{aligned}$$

$$= C' \sum_{i=1}^N \left( \|\mathbf{x}_i - \mathbf{c}_{y_i}\| - \frac{1}{3(C-1)} \sum_{m=1, m \neq y_i}^C \|\mathbf{x}_i - \mathbf{c}_m\| \right) \triangleq \mathcal{L}_u(\mathcal{D}, \mathcal{S}) \quad (16.22)$$

where  $C' = 3(C-1)(\frac{N}{C}-1)\frac{N}{C}$  is a constant. It is clear that  $\mathcal{L}_u$  can be computed in  $O(NC)$  time. See Fig. 16.6b for an illustration.

In [Do+19], they show that  $0 \leq \mathcal{L}_t - \mathcal{L}_u \leq \frac{N^3}{C^2} K$ , where  $K$  is some constant that depends on the spread of the centroids. To ensure the bound is tight, the centroids should be as far from each other as possible, and the distances between them should be as similar as possible. An easy way to ensure is to define the  $\mathbf{c}_m$  vectors to be one-hot vectors, one per class. These vectors already have unit norm, and are orthogonal to each other. The distance between each pair of centroids is  $\sqrt{2}$ , which ensures the upper bound is fairly tight.

The downside of this approach is that it assumes the embedding layer is  $L = C$  dimensional. There are two solutions to this. First, after training, we can add a linear projection layer to map from  $C$  to  $L \neq C$ , or we can take the second-to-last layer of the embedding network. The second approach is to sample a large number of points on the  $L$ -dimensional unit hyper-sphere (which we can do by sampling from the standard normal, and then normalizing [Mar72]), and then running K-means clustering (Sec. 21.3) with  $K = C$ . In the experiments reported in [Do+19], these two approaches give similar results.

Interestingly, in [Rot+20], they show that increasing  $\pi_{\text{intra}}/\pi_{\text{inter}}$  results in improved downstream performance on various retrieval tasks, where

$$\pi_{\text{intra}} = \frac{1}{Z_{\text{intra}}} \sum_{c=1}^C \sum_{i \neq j: y_i = y_j = c} d(\mathbf{x}_i, \mathbf{x}_j) \quad (16.23)$$

is the average intra-class distance, and

$$\pi_{\text{inter}} = \frac{1}{Z_{\text{inter}}} \sum_{c=1}^C \sum_{c'=1}^C d(\boldsymbol{\mu}_c, \boldsymbol{\mu}_{c'}) \quad (16.24)$$

is the average inter-class distance, where  $\boldsymbol{\mu}_c = \frac{1}{Z_c} \sum_{i:y_i=c} \hat{\mathbf{e}}_i$  is the mean embedding for examples from class  $c$ . This suggests that we should not only keep the centroids far apart (in order to maximize the numerator), but we should also prevent examples from getting too close to their centroids (in order to minimize the denominator); this latter term is not captured in the method of [Do+19].

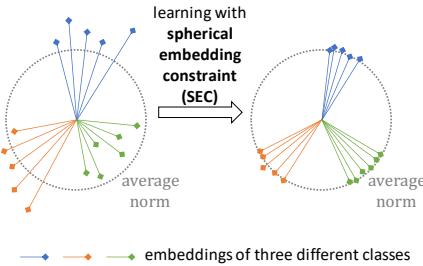


Figure 16.7: Adding spherical embedding constraint to a deep metric learning method. Used with kind permission of Dingyi Zhang.

### 16.2.6 Other training tricks for DML

Besides the speedup tricks in Sec. 16.2.5, there are a lot of other details that are important to get right in order to ensure good DML performance. Many of these details are discussed in [MBL20; Rot+20]. Here we just briefly mention a few.

One important issue is how the minibatches are created. In classification problems (at least with balanced classes), selecting examples at random from the training set is usually sufficient. However, for DML, we need to ensure that each example has some other examples in the minibatch that are similar to it, as well as some others that are dissimilar to it. One approach is to use hard mining techniques (Sec. 16.2.5.1). Another idea is to use coresets methods applied to previously learned embeddings to select a diverse minibatch at each step [Sin+20]. However, [Rot+20] show that the following simple strategy also works well for creating each batch: pick  $B/n$  classes, and then pick  $N_c$  examples randomly from each class, where  $B$  is the batch size, and  $N_c = 2$  is a tuning parameter.

Another important issue is avoiding overfitting. Since most datasets used in the DML literature are small, it is standard to use an image classifier, such as GoogLeNet (Sec. 14.3.2.3) or ResNet (Sec. 14.3.2.4), which has been pre-trained on ImageNet, and then to fine-tune the model using the DML loss. (See Sec. 19.2 for more details on this kind of transfer learning.) In addition, it is standard to use data augmentation (see Sec. 19.1). (Indeed, with some self-supervised learning methods, data aug is the only way to create similar pairs.)

In [ZLZ20], they propose to add a **spherical embedding constraint** (SEC), which is an additional batchwise regularization term, which encourages all the examples to have the same norm. That is, the regularizer is just the empirical variance of the norms of the (unnormalized) embeddings in that batch. See Fig. 16.7 for an illustration. This regularizer can be added to any of the existing DML losses to modestly improve training speed and stability, as well as final performance, analogously to how batchnorm (Sec. 13.4.4) is used.

## 16.3 Kernel density estimation (KDE)

In this section, we consider a form of non-parametric density estimation known as **kernel density estimation** or **KDE**. This is a form of generative model, since it defines a probability distribution  $p(\mathbf{x})$  that can be evaluated pointwise, and which can be sampled from to generate new data.

### 16.3.1 Density kernels

Before explaining KDE, we must define what we mean by a “kernel”. This term has several different meanings in machine learning and statistics.<sup>1</sup> In this section, we use a specific kind of kernel which we refer to as a **density kernel**. This is a function  $\mathcal{K} : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}_+$  such that  $\int \mathcal{K}(x)dx = 1$  and  $\mathcal{K}(-x) = \mathcal{K}(x)$ . This latter symmetry property implies the  $\int x\mathcal{K}(x)dx = 0$ , and hence

$$\int x\mathcal{K}(x - x_n)dx = x_n \quad (16.25)$$

A simple example of such a kernel is the **boxcar kernel**, which is the uniform distribution within the unit interval around the origin:

$$\mathcal{K}(x) \triangleq 0.5\mathbb{I}(|x| \leq 1) \quad (16.26)$$

Another example is the **Gaussian kernel**:

$$\mathcal{K}(x) = \frac{1}{(2\pi)^{\frac{1}{2}}} e^{-x^2/2} \quad (16.27)$$

We can control the width of the kernel by introducing a **bandwidth** parameter  $h$ :

$$\mathcal{K}_h(x) \triangleq \frac{1}{h}\mathcal{K}(\frac{x}{h}) \quad (16.28)$$

We can generalize to vector valued inputs by defining a **radial basis function** or **RBF** kernel:

$$\mathcal{K}_h(\mathbf{x}) \propto \mathcal{K}_h(\|\mathbf{x}\|) \quad (16.29)$$

In the case of the Gaussian kernel, this becomes

$$\mathcal{K}_h(\mathbf{x}) = \frac{1}{h^D(2\pi)^{D/2}} \prod_{d=1}^D \exp\left(-\frac{1}{2h^2}x_d^2\right) \quad (16.30)$$

Although Gaussian kernels are popular, they have unbounded support. Some alternative kernels, which have compact support (which can be computationally faster), are listed in Table 16.1. See Fig. 16.8 for a plot of these kernel functions.

### 16.3.2 Parzen window density estimator

To explain how to use kernels to define a nonparametric density estimate, recall the form of the Gaussian mixture model from Sec. 3.7.1. If we assume a fixed spherical Gaussian covariance and uniform mixture weights, we get

$$p(\mathbf{x}|\boldsymbol{\theta}) = \frac{1}{K} \sum_{k=1}^K \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{x}|\boldsymbol{\mu}_k, \sigma^2 \mathbf{I}) \quad (16.31)$$

---

1. For a good blog post on this, see <https://francisbach.com/cursed-kernels/>.

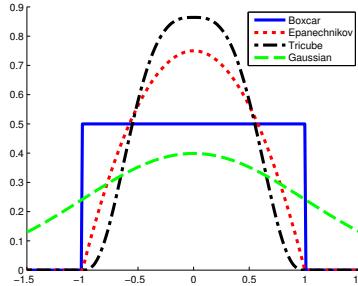


Figure 16.8: A comparison of some popular normalized kernels. Generated by `smoothingKernelPlot.m`.

Name	Definition	Compact	Smooth	Boundaries
Gaussian	$\mathcal{K}(x) = (2\pi)^{-\frac{1}{2}} e^{-x^2/2}$	0	1	1
Boxcar	$\mathcal{K}(x) = \frac{1}{2}\mathbb{I}( x  \leq 1)$	1	0	0
Epanechnikov kernel	$\mathcal{K}(x) = \frac{3}{4}(1-x^2)\mathbb{I}( x  \leq 1)$	1	1	0
Tri-cube kernel	$\mathcal{K}(x) = \frac{70}{81}(1- x ^3)^3\mathbb{I}( x  \leq 1)$	1	1	1

Table 16.1: List of some popular normalized kernels in 1d. Compact=1 means the function is non-zero for a finite range of inputs. Smooth=1 means the function is differentiable over the range of its support. Boundaries=1 means the function is also differentiable at the boundaries of its support.

One problem with this model is that it requires specifying the number  $K$  of clusters, as well as their locations  $\mu_k$ . An alternative to estimating these parameters is to allocate one cluster center per data point. In this case, the model becomes

$$p(\mathbf{x}|\boldsymbol{\theta}) = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^N \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{x}|\mathbf{x}_n, \sigma^2 \mathbf{I}) \quad (16.32)$$

We can generalize Eq. (16.32) by writing

$$p(\mathbf{x}|\mathcal{D}) = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^N \mathcal{K}_h(\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}_n) \quad (16.33)$$

where  $\mathcal{K}_h$  is a density kernel. This is called a **Parzen window density estimator**, or **kernel density estimator (KDE)**.

The advantage over a parametric model is that no model fitting is required (except for choosing  $h$ , discussed in Sec. 16.3.3), and there is no need to pick the number of cluster centers. The disadvantage is that the model takes a lot of memory (you need to store all the data) and a lot of time to evaluate.

Fig. 16.9 illustrates KDE in 1d for two kinds of kernel. On the top, we use a boxcar kernel; the resulting model just counts how many data points land within an interval of size  $h$  around each  $x_n$  to get a piecewise constant density. On the bottom, we use a Gaussian kernel, which results in a smoother density.

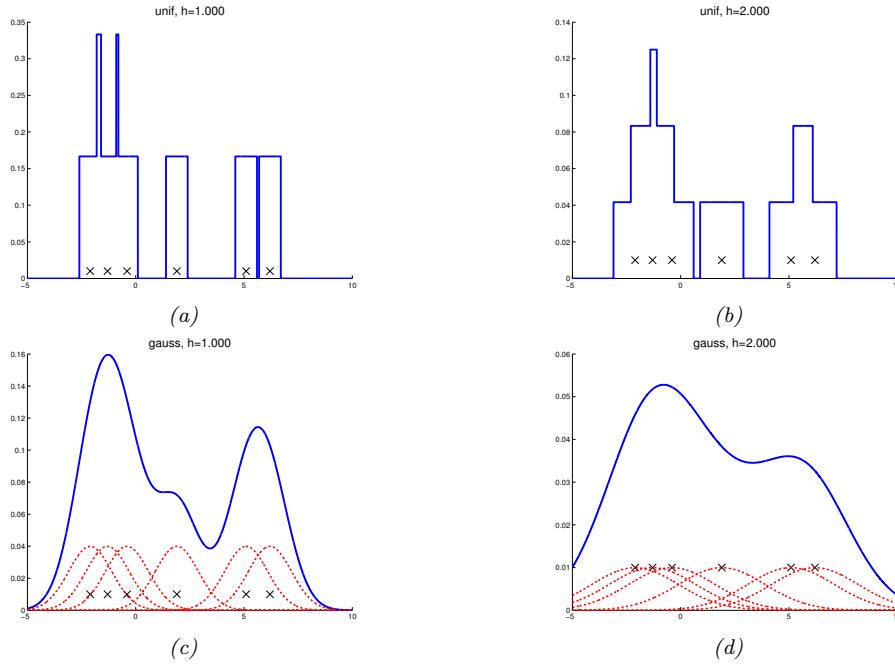


Figure 16.9: A nonparametric (Parzen) density estimator in 1d estimated from 6 data points, denoted by  $x$ . Top row: uniform kernel. Bottom row: Gaussian kernel. Left column: bandwidth parameter  $h = 1$ . Right column: bandwidth parameter  $h = 2$ . Adapted from [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Kernel\\_density\\_estimation](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Kernel_density_estimation). Generated by `parzenWindowDemo2.m`.

### 16.3.3 How to choose the bandwidth parameter

We see from Fig. 16.9 that the bandwidth parameter  $h$  has a large effect on the learned distribution. We can view this as controlling the complexity of the model.

In the case of 1d data, where the “true” data generating distribution is assumed to be a Gaussian, one can show [BA97a] that the optimal bandwidth for a Gaussian kernel (from the point of view of minimizing frequentist risk) is given by  $h = \sigma (\frac{4}{3N})^{1/5}$ . We can compute a robust approximation to the standard deviation by first computing the **median absolute deviation**,  $\text{median}(|\mathbf{x} - \text{median}(\mathbf{x})|)$ , and then using  $\hat{\sigma} = 1.4826 \text{ MAD}$ . If we have  $D$  dimensions, we can estimate  $h_d$  separately for each dimension, and then set  $h = (\prod_{d=1}^D h_d)^{1/D}$ .

### 16.3.4 From KDE to KNN classification

In Sec. 16.1, we discussed the K nearest neighbor classifier as a heuristic approach to classification. Interestingly, we can derive it as a generative classifier in which the class conditional densities  $p(\mathbf{x}|y = c)$  are modeled using KDE. Rather than using a fixed bandwidth and counting how many data points fall within the hyper-cube centered on a datapoint, we will allow the bandwidth or volume to be different for each data point. Specifically, we will “grow” a volume around  $\mathbf{x}$  until we

encounter  $K$  data points, regardless of their class label. This is called a **balloon kernel density estimator** [TS92]. Let the resulting volume have size  $V(\mathbf{x})$  (this was previously  $h^D$ ), and let there be  $N_c(\mathbf{x})$  examples from class  $c$  in this volume. Then we can estimate the class conditional density as follows:

$$p(\mathbf{x}|y=c, \mathcal{D}) = \frac{N_c(\mathbf{x})}{N_c V(\mathbf{x})} \quad (16.34)$$

where  $N_c$  is the total number of examples in class  $c$  in the whole data set. If we take the class prior to be  $p(y=c) = N_c/N$ , then the class posterior is given by

$$p(y=c|\mathbf{x}, \mathcal{D}) = \frac{\frac{N_c(\mathbf{x})}{N_c V(\mathbf{x})} \frac{N_c}{N}}{\sum_{c'} \frac{N_{c'}(\mathbf{x})}{N_{c'} V(\mathbf{x})} \frac{N_{c'}}{N}} = \frac{N_c(\mathbf{x})}{\sum_{c'} N_{c'}(\mathbf{x})} = \frac{N_c(\mathbf{x})}{K} = \frac{1}{K} \sum_{n \in N_K(\mathbf{x}, \mathcal{D})} \mathbb{I}(y_n = c) \quad (16.35)$$

where we used the fact that  $\sum_c N_c(\mathbf{x}) = K$ , since we choose a total of  $K$  points (regardless of class) around every point. This matches 16.1.

### 16.3.5 Kernel regression

Just as KDE can be used for generative classifiers (see Sec. 16.1), it can also be used for generative models for regression, as we discuss below.

#### 16.3.5.1 Nadaraya-Watson estimator for the mean

In regression, our goal is to compute the conditional expectation

$$\mathbb{E}[y|\mathbf{x}, \mathcal{D}] = \int y p(y|\mathbf{x}, \mathcal{D}) dy = \frac{\int y p(\mathbf{x}, y|\mathcal{D}) dy}{\int p(\mathbf{x}, y|\mathcal{D}) dy} \quad (16.36)$$

If we use an MVN for  $p(y, \mathbf{x}|\mathcal{D})$ , we derive a result which is equivalent to linear regression, as we showed in Sec. 11.2.3.5. However, the assumption that  $p(y, \mathbf{x}|\mathcal{D})$  is Gaussian is rather limiting. We can use KDE to more accurately approximate the joint density  $p(\mathbf{x}, y|\mathcal{D})$  as follows:

$$p(y, \mathbf{x}|\mathcal{D}) \approx \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^N \mathcal{K}_h(\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}_n) \mathcal{K}_h(y - y_n) \quad (16.37)$$

Hence

$$\mathbb{E}[y|\mathbf{x}, \mathcal{D}] = \frac{\frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^N \mathcal{K}_h(\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}_n) \int y \mathcal{K}_h(y - y_n) dy}{\frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^N \mathcal{K}_h(\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}_n) \int \mathcal{K}_h(y - y_n) dy} \quad (16.38)$$

We can simplify the numerator using the fact that  $\int y \mathcal{K}_h(y - y_n) dy = y_n$  (from Eq. (16.25)). We can simplify the denominator using the fact that density kernels integrate to one, i.e.,  $\int \mathcal{K}_h(y - y_n) dy = 1$ . Thus

$$\mathbb{E}[y|\mathbf{x}, \mathcal{D}] = \frac{\sum_{n=1}^N \mathcal{K}_h(\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}_n) y_n}{\sum_{n=1}^N \mathcal{K}_h(\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}_n)} = \sum_{n=1}^N y_n w_n(\mathbf{x}) \quad (16.39)$$

$$w_n(\mathbf{x}) \triangleq \frac{\mathcal{K}_h(\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}_n)}{\sum_{n'=1}^N \mathcal{K}_h(\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}_{n'})} \quad (16.40)$$

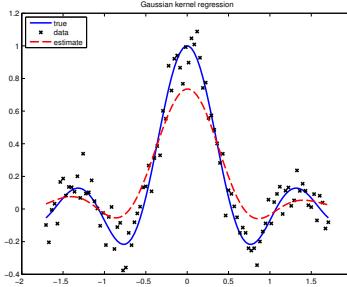


Figure 16.10: An example of kernel regression in 1d using a Gaussian kernel. Generated by `kernelRegression-Demo.m`.

We see that the prediction is just a weighted sum of the outputs at the training points, where the weights depend on how similar  $\mathbf{x}$  is to the stored training points. This method is called **kernel regression**, **kernel smoothing**, or the **Nadaraya-Watson** (N-W) model. See Fig. 16.10 for an example, where we use a Gaussian kernel.

In Sec. 17.3.3, we discuss the connection between kernel regression and Gaussian process regression.

### 16.3.5.2 Estimator for the variance

Sometimes it is useful to compute the predictive variance, as well as the predictive mean. We can do this by noting that

$$\mathbb{V}[y|\mathbf{x}, \mathcal{D}] = \mathbb{E}[y^2|\mathbf{x}, \mathcal{D}] - \mu(\mathbf{x})^2 \quad (16.41)$$

where  $\mu(\mathbf{x}) = \mathbb{E}[y|\mathbf{x}, \mathcal{D}]$  is the N-W estimate. If we use a Gaussian kernel with variance  $\sigma^2$ , we can compute  $\mathbb{E}[y^2|\mathbf{x}, \mathcal{D}]$  as follows:

$$\mathbb{E}[y^2|\mathbf{x}, \mathcal{D}] = \frac{\sum_{n=1}^N \mathcal{K}_h(\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}_n) \int y^2 \mathcal{K}_h(y - y_n) dy}{\sum_{n=1}^N \mathcal{K}_h(\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}_n) \int \mathcal{K}_h(y - y_n) dy} \quad (16.42)$$

$$= \frac{\sum_{n=1}^N \mathcal{K}_h(\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}_n)(\sigma^2 + y_n^2)}{\sum_{n=1}^N \mathcal{K}_h(\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}_n)} \quad (16.43)$$

where we used the fact that

$$\int y^2 \mathcal{N}(y|y_n, \sigma^2) dy = \sigma^2 + y_n^2 \quad (16.44)$$

Combining Eq. (16.43) with Eq. (16.41) gives

$$\mathbb{V}[y|\mathbf{x}, \mathcal{D}] = \sigma^2 + \sum_{n=1}^N w_n(\mathbf{x}) y_n^2 - \mu(\mathbf{x})^2 \quad (16.45)$$

This matches Eqn. 8 of [BA10] (modulo the initial  $\sigma^2$  term).

### 16.3.5.3 Locally weighted regression

We can drop the normalization term from Eq. (16.39) to get

$$\mu(\mathbf{x}) = \sum_{n=1}^N y_n \mathcal{K}_h(\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}_n) \quad (16.46)$$

This is just a weighted sum of the observed responses, where the weights depend on how similar the test input  $\mathbf{x}$  is to the training points  $\mathbf{x}_n$ .

Rather than just interpolating the stored responses  $y_n$ , we can fit a locally linear model around each training point:

$$\mu(\mathbf{x}) = \min_{\boldsymbol{\beta}} \sum_{n=1}^N [y_n - \boldsymbol{\beta}^\top \boldsymbol{\phi}(\mathbf{x}_n)]^2 \mathcal{K}_h(\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}_n) \quad (16.47)$$

where  $\boldsymbol{\phi}(\mathbf{x}) = [1, \mathbf{x}]$ . This is called **locally linear regression** (LRR) or **locally-weighted scatterplot smoothing**, and is commonly known by the acronym **LOWESS** or **LOESS** [CD88]. This is often used when annotating scatter plots with local trend lines.



# 17 Kernel methods

In this chapter, we consider **nonparametric methods** for regression and classification. Such methods do not assume a fixed parametric form for the prediction function, but instead try to estimate the function itself (rather than the parameters) directly from data. The key idea is that we observe the function value at a fixed set of  $N$  points, namely  $y_n = f(\mathbf{x}_n)$  for  $n = 1 : N$ , where  $f$  is the unknown function, so to predict the function value at a new point, say  $\mathbf{x}_*$ , we just have to compare how “similar”  $\mathbf{x}_*$  is to each of the  $N$  training points,  $\{\mathbf{x}_n\}$ , and then we can predict that  $f(\mathbf{x}_*)$  is some weighted combination of the  $\{f(\mathbf{x}_n)\}$  values. Thus we may need to “remember” the entire training set,  $\mathcal{D} = \{(\mathbf{x}_n, y_n)\}$ , in order to make predictions at test time — we cannot “compress”  $\mathcal{D}$  into a fixed-sized parameter vector.

The weights that are used for prediction are determined by the similarity between  $\mathbf{x}_*$  and each  $\mathbf{x}_n$ , which is computed using a special kind of function known as **kernel function**,  $\mathcal{K}(\mathbf{x}_n, \mathbf{x}_*) \geq 0$ , which we explain in Sec. 17.2. This approach is similar to RBF networks (Sec. 13.6.1), except we use the datapoints themselves as centroids.

In Sec. 17.3, we discuss a Bayesian approach called Gaussian processes, which allows us to use the kernel to define a prior and posterior over functions. Alternatively we can use this kernel to define a point estimate of the function using a method called support vector machines, which we explain in Sec. 17.5. But first, in Sec. 17.1, we consider a simpler setting in which the inputs are points on the real line, and the similarity is just Euclidean distance.

## 17.1 Inferring functions from data

Suppose we want to estimate a 1d function, defined on the real line,  $f : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ . For simplicity, we assume the domain of the function is  $[0, 1]$ , and, following [CS07, p135], we will discretize this into a set of  $D$  equally spaced points,  $\mathcal{X} = \{x_1, \dots, x_D\}$ . Let  $f_j = f(x_j)$  be the unknown function value at input  $x_j \in \mathcal{X}$ . We assume that we observe the function value at a set of  $N$  points,  $y_n = f(x_n)$ , for  $n \in \mathcal{V}$ , where  $\mathcal{V} \subseteq \mathcal{X}$  is the set of observed locations; let  $\mathcal{D} = \{(\mathbf{x}_n, y_n)\}$  be the observed data. The values  $f_j = f(x_j)$  for  $j \in \mathcal{H}$  are unknown or hidden, where  $\mathcal{H} = \mathcal{X} \setminus \mathcal{V}$  is the set of  $D - N$  locations for which we do not have observed data.

Our goal is to infer the unknown function values at test locations  $\mathcal{H}$  given the observed function values at the training locations  $\mathcal{V}$ , i.e. we want to compute  $p(\mathbf{f}|\mathcal{D})$ , where  $\mathbf{f} = (f_1, \dots, f_D)$ . We discuss how to do this below. The key trick is that, by approximating the function by a list of function values on a grid of  $D$  points, we can perform inference with random vectors, instead of random functions. We generalize this to arbitrary input domains in Sec. 17.3.

### 17.1.1 Smoothness prior

Computing  $p(f|\mathcal{D})$  is an ill-posed problem, since there are many functions that can fit the data. However, it is often reasonable to assume that the unknown function is smooth. In this section, following [CS07, p135], we approximate the function by a list of function values on a grid of  $D$  points, so we can perform inference with random vectors, instead of random functions. We generalize this to arbitrary input domains in Sec. 17.3.

We can encode our smoothness prior by assuming that  $f_j$  is an average of its neighbors,  $f_{j-1}$  and  $f_{j+1}$ , plus some Gaussian noise:

$$f_j = \frac{1}{2}(f_{j-1} + f_{j+1}) + \epsilon_j, \quad 2 \leq j \leq D - 1 \quad (17.1)$$

where  $\epsilon \sim \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{0}, (1/\lambda)\mathbf{I})$ . The precision term  $\lambda$  controls how much we think the function will vary: a large  $\lambda$  corresponds to a belief that the function is very smooth (differences are close to the mean value of 0), whereas a small  $\lambda$  corresponds to a belief that the function is quite “wiggly”. In vector form, the above equation can be written as follows:  $\mathbf{L}\mathbf{f} = \epsilon$ , where  $\mathbf{L}$  is the  $(D - 2) \times D$  second order finite difference matrix

$$\mathbf{L} = \frac{1}{2} \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 2 & -1 & & \\ & -1 & 2 & -1 & \\ & & \ddots & & \\ & & & -1 & 2 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \quad (17.2)$$

Since  $\mathbf{L}\mathbf{f} = \epsilon$ , we have  $\mathbf{f} = (\mathbf{L}^\top \mathbf{L})^{-1} \mathbf{L}^\top \epsilon$ . The mean of this is  $\mathbb{E}[\mathbf{f}] = \mathbf{0}$ , and the covariance is

$$\text{Cov}[\mathbf{f}] = [(\mathbf{L}^\top \mathbf{L})^{-1} \mathbf{L}^\top] \text{Cov}[\epsilon] [\mathbf{L}(\mathbf{L}^\top \mathbf{L})^{-1}] = \lambda^{-1} (\mathbf{L}^\top \mathbf{L})^{-1} \quad (17.3)$$

and hence

$$p(\mathbf{f}) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{f} | \mathbf{0}, (\lambda \mathbf{L}^\top \mathbf{L})^{-1}) \propto \exp\left(-\frac{\lambda}{2} \|\mathbf{L}\mathbf{x}\|_2^2\right) \quad (17.4)$$

We will henceforth assume we have scaled  $\mathbf{L}$  by  $\sqrt{\lambda}$  so we can ignore the  $\lambda$  term, and just write  $\mathbf{\Lambda} = \mathbf{L}^\top \mathbf{L}$  for the precision matrix.

Note that although  $\mathbf{f}$  is  $D$ -dimensional, the precision matrix  $\mathbf{\Lambda}$  only has rank  $D - 2$ . Thus this is an improper prior, known as an intrinsic Gaussian random field (see [RH05] for details). However, providing we observe  $N \geq 2$  data points, the posterior will be proper.

### 17.1.2 Inference from noise-free observations

In this section, we assume that we have  $N$  noise-free observations of the random vector  $\mathbf{f}$  at locations  $x_1, \dots, x_N$ , so  $f_n = y_n$  for  $n \in \mathcal{V}$ . In this case, we want our predictions for  $f(x)$  to perfectly match the observations  $y$  at the observed  $x$  locations; in other words, we want to **interpolate** the data.

Let  $\mathbf{f}_2$  be these  $N$  observed function values, and let  $\mathbf{f}_1$  be the remaining  $D - N$  unknown function values. Without loss of generality, assume that the unknown variables are ordered first, then the known variables. Then we can partition the  $\mathbf{L}$  matrix as follows:

$$\mathbf{L} = [\mathbf{L}_1, \mathbf{L}_2], \quad \mathbf{L}_1 \in \mathbb{R}^{(D-2) \times (D-N)}, \quad \mathbf{L}_2 \in \mathbb{R}^{(D-2) \times (N)} \quad (17.5)$$

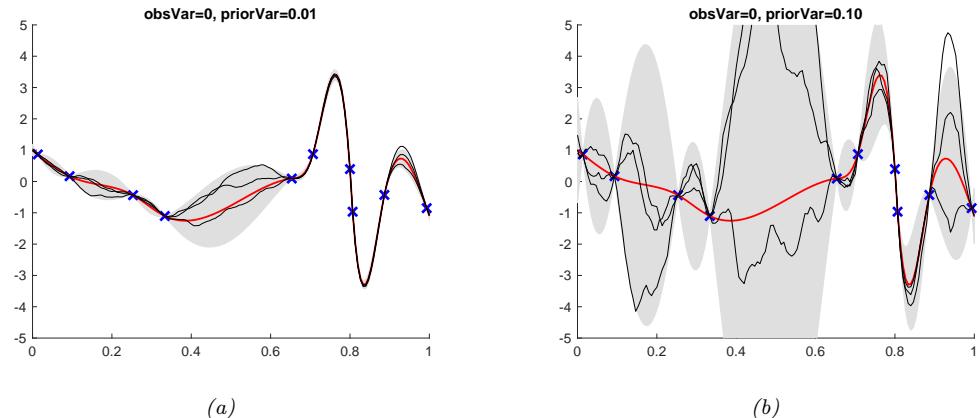


Figure 17.1: Interpolating a function from noise-free data using a smoothness prior with prior precision  $\lambda$ . Blue crosses are observations. Red line is posterior mean, thin black lines are posterior samples. Shaded gray area is the pointwise 95% marginal credible interval for  $f(x_j)$ , i.e.,  $\mu_j \pm 2\sqrt{\Sigma_{1|2,jj}}$ . (a)  $\lambda = 1$ . (b)  $\lambda = 0.1$ . Adapted from Figure 7.1 of [CS07]. Generated by `gaussInterpDemoStable.m`.

We can also partition the precision matrix of the joint distribution:

$$\mathbf{\Lambda} = \mathbf{L}^\top \mathbf{L} = \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{\Lambda}_{11} & \mathbf{\Lambda}_{12} \\ \mathbf{\Lambda}_{21} & \mathbf{\Lambda}_{22} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{L}_1^\top \mathbf{L}_1 & \mathbf{L}_1^\top \mathbf{L}_2 \\ \mathbf{L}_2^\top \mathbf{L}_1 & \mathbf{L}_2^\top \mathbf{L}_2 \end{pmatrix} \quad (17.6)$$

Using Eq. (3.97), we can write the posterior distribution over the unknown function values as follows:

$$p(\mathbf{f}_1|\mathbf{f}_2) = p(\mathbf{f}_1|\mathbf{f}_2) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{f}_1|\boldsymbol{\mu}_{1|2}, \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{1|2}) \quad (17.7)$$

$$\mu_{1|2} = -\mathbf{\Lambda}_{11}^{-1} \mathbf{\Lambda}_{12} \mathbf{f}_2 = -\mathbf{L}_1^{-1} \mathbf{L}_2 \mathbf{f}_2 \quad (17.8)$$

$$\Sigma_{1|2} = \Lambda_{11}^{-1} \quad (17.9)$$

Note that we can compute the mean by solving the following system of linear equations:  $\mathbf{L}_1 \boldsymbol{\mu}_{1|2} = -\mathbf{L}_2 \mathbf{f}_2$ . This is efficient since  $\mathbf{L}_1$  is tridiagonal.

Fig. 17.1 gives an illustration of this process in action. We see that the posterior mean  $\mu_{1|2}$  equals the observed data at the specified points, and smoothly interpolates in between, as desired. When the variance of the prior is small, the posterior samples are smooth, and the uncertainty is low. When the variance of the prior is larger, the posterior samples are more wiggly, and the uncertainty becomes larger.

We can interpret this in terms of a spring system. Suppose we have  $D - 1$  equal length springs connected in a line, each with a “stiffness” of  $\lambda$ , connecting  $D$  equally spaced points. We “clamp”  $N$  of these points to observed values, and let the other  $D - N$  “slide” freely up or down, so they exert no force on the springs they are connected to. The posterior mean of the function takes on a shape that corresponds to the lowest energy state of this spring system. Samples from the posterior correspond to perturbing the system by “shaking” it a little bit; this will cause the springs to vibrate or oscillate. Clearly the stiffer springs (with larger prior precision  $\lambda_0$ , and hence smaller prior variance) will vibrate less than the less stiff springs. This explains the difference in the shaded regions in Fig. 17.1.

### 17.1.3 Inference from noisy observations

We can generalize the above approach to compute  $p(\mathbf{f}|\mathbf{y})$ , where  $y_n = f_n + \epsilon_n$  is a noisy observation of the function value  $f_n = f(\mathbf{x}_n)$ . However, the algebra is a bit messier. We therefore defer discussion of this to the general case in Sec. 17.3.2.

## 17.2 Mercer kernels

In Sec. 17.1, we saw how we could encode prior knowledge about the smoothness of a function by specifying that  $f(x_i)$  and  $f(x_j)$  should be similar if  $x_i$  and  $x_j$  were nearest neighbors on the 1d input grid. To generalize this to arbitrary input domains, we introduce the notion of a **kernel function**.

The word “kernel” has many different meanings in mathematics, including density kernels (Sec. 16.3.1), transition kernels of a Markov chain, (Sec. 3.8.1.2), and convolutional kernels (Sec. 14.1). Here we consider a **Mercer kernel**, also called a **positive definite kernel**. This is any symmetric function  $\mathcal{K} : \mathcal{X} \times \mathcal{X} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^+$  such that

$$\sum_{i=1}^N \sum_{j=1}^N \mathcal{K}(\mathbf{x}_i, \mathbf{x}_j) c_i c_j \geq 0 \quad (17.10)$$

for any set of  $N$  (unique) points  $\mathbf{x}_i \in \mathcal{X}$ , and any choice of numbers  $c_i \in \mathbb{R}$ . (We assume  $\mathcal{K}(\mathbf{x}_i, \mathbf{x}_j) > 0$ , so that we can only achieve equality in the above equation if  $c_i = 0$  for all  $i$ .)

Another way to understand this condition is the following. Given a set of  $N$  datapoints, let us define the **Gram matrix** as the following  $N \times N$  similarity matrix:

$$\mathbf{K} = \begin{pmatrix} \mathcal{K}(\mathbf{x}_1, \mathbf{x}_1) & \cdots & \mathcal{K}(\mathbf{x}_1, \mathbf{x}_N) \\ & \vdots & \\ \mathcal{K}(\mathbf{x}_N, \mathbf{x}_1) & \cdots & \mathcal{K}(\mathbf{x}_N, \mathbf{x}_N) \end{pmatrix} \quad (17.11)$$

We say that  $\mathcal{K}$  is a Mercer kernel iff the Gram matrix is positive definite for any set of (distinct) inputs  $\{\mathbf{x}_i\}_{i=1}^N$ .

The most widely used kernel for real-valued inputs is the **squared exponential kernel** (SE kernel), also called the **exponentiated quadratic**, **Gaussian kernel RBF kernel**. It is defined by

$$\mathcal{K}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}') = \exp\left(-\frac{\|\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}'\|}{2\ell^2}\right) \quad (17.12)$$

Here  $\ell$  corresponds to the length scale of the kernel, i.e., the distance over which we expect differences to matter. This is known as the **bandwidth** parameter. The RBF kernel measures similarity between two vectors in  $\mathbb{R}^D$  using (scaled) Euclidean distance. In Sec. 17.2.2, we will discuss several other kinds of kernel.

In Sec. 17.3, we show how to use kernels to define priors and posteriors over functions. The basic idea is this: if  $\mathcal{K}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}')$  is large, meaning the inputs are similar, then we expect the output of the function to be similar as well, so  $f(\mathbf{x}) \approx f(\mathbf{x}')$ . More precisely, information we learn about  $f(\mathbf{x})$  will help us predict  $f(\mathbf{x}')$  for all  $\mathbf{x}'$  which are correlated with  $\mathbf{x}$ , and hence for which  $\mathcal{K}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}')$  is large.

### 17.2.1 Mercer's theorem

Recall from Appendix B.4 that any positive definite matrix  $\mathbf{K}$  can be represented using an eigendecomposition of the form  $\mathbf{K} = \mathbf{U}^\top \mathbf{\Lambda} \mathbf{U}$ , where  $\mathbf{\Lambda}$  is a diagonal matrix of eigenvalues  $\lambda_i > 0$ , and  $\mathbf{U}$  is a matrix containing the eigenvectors. Now consider element  $(i, j)$  of  $\mathbf{K}$ :

$$k_{ij} = (\mathbf{\Lambda}^{\frac{1}{2}} \mathbf{U}_{:,i})^\top (\mathbf{\Lambda}^{\frac{1}{2}} \mathbf{U}_{:,j}) \quad (17.13)$$

where  $\mathbf{U}_{:,i}$  is the  $i$ 'th column of  $\mathbf{U}$ . If we define  $\phi(\mathbf{x}_i) = \mathbf{\Lambda}^{\frac{1}{2}} \mathbf{U}_{:,i}$ , then we can write

$$k_{ij} = \phi(\mathbf{x}_i)^\top \phi(\mathbf{x}_j) = \sum_m \phi_m(\mathbf{x}_i) \phi_m(\mathbf{x}_j) \quad (17.14)$$

Thus we see that the entries in the kernel matrix can be computed by performing an inner product of some feature vectors that are implicitly defined by the eigenvectors of the kernel matrix. This idea can be generalized to apply to kernel functions, not just kernel matrices; this result is known as **Mercer's theorem**.

For example, consider the **quadratic kernel**  $\mathcal{K}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}') = \langle \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}' \rangle^2$ . In 2d, we have

$$\mathcal{K}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}') = (x_1 x'_1 + x_2 x'_2)^2 = x_1^2 (x'_1)^2 + 2x_1 x_2 x'_1 x'_2 + x_2^2 (x'_2)^2 \quad (17.15)$$

We can write this as  $\mathcal{K}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}') = \phi(\mathbf{x})^\top \phi(\mathbf{x}')$  if we define  $\phi(x_1, x_2) = [x_1^2, \sqrt{2}x_1 x_2, x_2^2] \in \mathbb{R}^3$ . So we embed the 2d inputs  $\mathbf{x}$  into a 3d feature space  $\phi(\mathbf{x})$ .

Now consider the RBF kernel. In this case, the corresponding feature representation is infinite dimensional (see Sec. 17.4.3 for details). However, by working with kernel functions, we can avoid having to deal with infinite dimensional vectors.

### 17.2.2 Some popular Mercer kernels

In the sections below, we describe some popular Mercer kernels. More details can be found at [[Wil14](#)] and <https://www.cs.toronto.edu/~duvenaud/cookbook/>.

#### 17.2.2.1 Stationary kernels for real-valued vectors

For real-valued inputs,  $\mathcal{X} = \mathbb{R}^D$ , it is common to use **stationary kernels**, which are functions of the form  $\mathcal{K}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}') = \mathcal{K}(\|\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}'\|)$ ; thus the value only depends on the elementwise difference between the inputs. The RBF kernel is a stationary kernel. We give some other examples below.

#### ARD kernel

We can generalize the RBF kernel by replacing Euclidean distance with Mahalanobis distance, as follows:

$$\mathcal{K}(\mathbf{r}) = \sigma^2 \exp\left(-\frac{1}{2} \mathbf{r}^\top \mathbf{\Sigma}^{-1} \mathbf{r}\right) \quad (17.16)$$

where  $\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}'$ . If  $\mathbf{\Sigma}$  is diagonal, this can be written as

$$\mathcal{K}(\mathbf{r}; \boldsymbol{\ell}, \sigma^2) = \sigma^2 \exp\left(-\frac{1}{2} \sum_{d=1}^D \frac{1}{\ell_d^2} r_d^2\right) = \prod_{d=1}^D \mathcal{K}(r_d; \ell_d, \sigma^{2/d}) \quad (17.17)$$

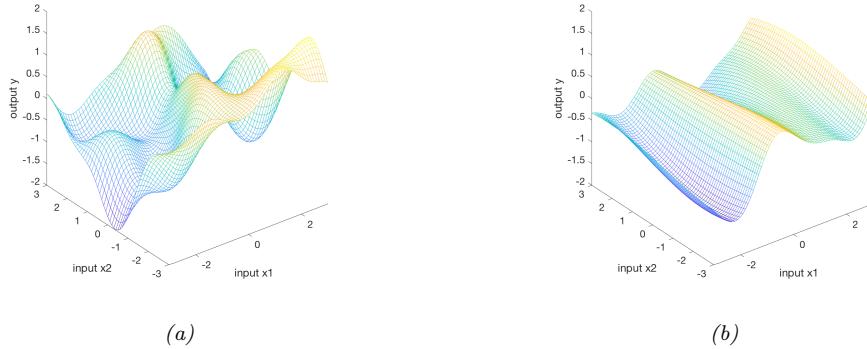


Figure 17.2: Function samples from a GP with an ARD kernel. (a)  $\ell_1 = \ell_2 = 1$ . Both dimensions contribute to the response. (b)  $\ell_1 = 1, \ell_2 = 5$ . The second dimension is essentially ignored. Adapted from Figure 5.1 of [RW06]. Generated by `gprDemoArd.m`.

where

$$\mathcal{K}(r; \ell, \tau^2) = \tau^2 \exp\left(-\frac{1}{2} \frac{1}{\ell^2} r^2\right) \quad (17.18)$$

We can interpret  $\sigma^2$  as the overall variance, and  $\ell_d$  as defining the **characteristic length scale** of dimension  $d$ . If  $d$  is an irrelevant input dimensions, we can set  $\ell_d = \infty$ , so the corresponding dimension will be ignored. This is known as **automatic relevancy determination** or **ARD** (Sec. 11.6.6). Hence the corresponding kernel is called the **ARD kernel**. See Fig. 17.2 for an illustration of some 2d functions sampled from a GP using this prior.

### Matern kernels

The SE kernel gives rise to functions that are infinitely differentiable, and therefore are very smooth. For many applications, it is better to use the **Matern kernel**, which gives rise to “rougher” functions, which can better model local “wiggles” without having to make the overall length scale very small.

The Matern kernel has the following form:

$$\mathcal{K}(r; \nu, \ell) = \frac{2^{1-\nu}}{\Gamma(\nu)} \left( \frac{\sqrt{2\nu}r}{\ell} \right)^\nu K_\nu \left( \frac{\sqrt{2\nu}r}{\ell} \right) \quad (17.19)$$

where  $K_\nu$  is a modified Bessel function and  $\ell$  is the length scale. Functions sampled from this GP are  $k$ -times differentiable iff  $\nu > k$ . As  $\nu \rightarrow \infty$ , this approaches the SE kernel.

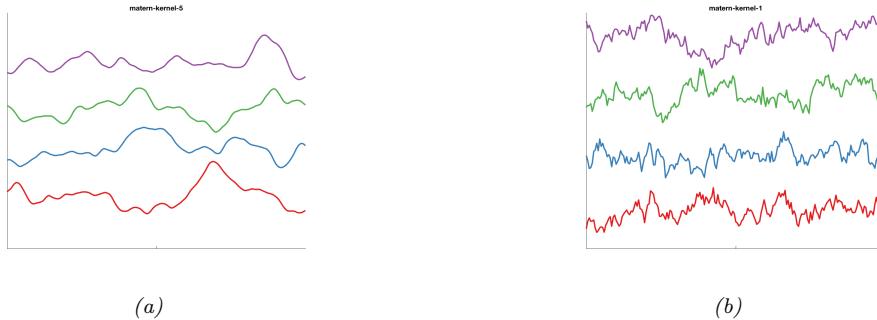


Figure 17.3: Functions sampled from a GP with a Matern kernel. (a)  $\nu = 5/2$ . (b)  $\nu = 1/2$ . Generated by `gpKernelPlot.m`.

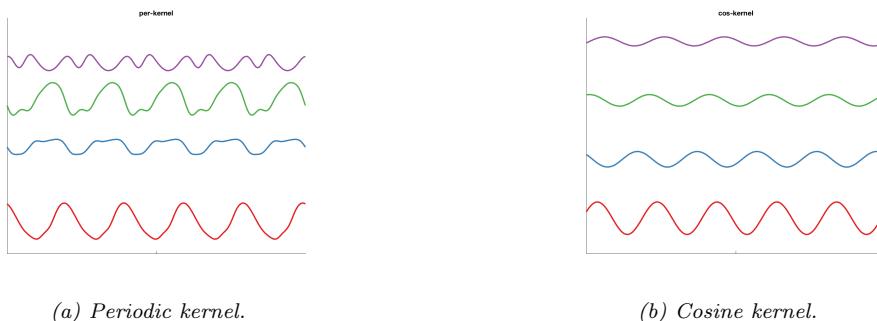


Figure 17.4: Functions sampled from a GP using various stationary periodic kernels. Generated by `gpKernelPlot.m`.

For values  $\nu \in \{\frac{1}{2}, \frac{3}{2}, \frac{5}{2}\}$ , the function simplifies as follows:

$$\mathcal{K}(r; \frac{1}{2}, \ell) = \exp\left(-\frac{r}{\ell}\right) \quad (17.20)$$

$$\mathcal{K}(r; \frac{3}{2}, \ell) = \left(1 + \frac{\sqrt{3}r}{\ell}\right) \exp\left(-\frac{\sqrt{3}r}{\ell}\right) \quad (17.21)$$

$$\mathcal{K}(r; \frac{5}{2}, \ell) = \left(1 + \frac{\sqrt{5}r}{\ell} + \frac{5r^2}{3\ell^2}\right) \exp\left(-\frac{\sqrt{5}r}{\ell}\right) \quad (17.22)$$

The value  $\nu = \frac{1}{2}$  corresponds to the **Ornstein-Uhlenbeck process**, which describes the velocity of a particle undergoing Brownian motion. The corresponding function is continuous but not differentiable, and hence is very “jagged”. See Fig. 17.3b for an illustration.

### Periodic kernels

The **periodic kernel** captures repeating structure, and has the form

$$\mathcal{K}_{\text{per}}(r; \ell, p) = \exp\left(-\frac{2}{\ell^2} \sin^2\left(\pi \frac{r}{p}\right)\right) \quad (17.23)$$

where  $p$  is the period. See Fig. 17.4a for an illustration.

In the limit that  $\ell \rightarrow \infty$ , we get the **cosine kernel**:

$$\mathcal{K}(r; p) = \cos\left(2\pi \frac{r}{p}\right) \quad (17.24)$$

See Fig. 17.4b for an illustration.

#### 17.2.2.2 Making new kernels from old

Given two valid kernels  $\mathcal{K}_1(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}')$  and  $\mathcal{K}_2(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}')$ , we can create a new kernel using any of the following methods:

$$\mathcal{K}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}') = c\mathcal{K}_1(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}'), \text{ for any constant } c > 0 \quad (17.25)$$

$$\mathcal{K}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}') = f(\mathbf{x})\mathcal{K}_1(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}')f(\mathbf{x}'), \text{ for any function } f \quad (17.26)$$

$$\mathcal{K}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}') = q(\mathcal{K}_1(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}')) \text{ for any function polynomial } q \text{ with nonneg. coef.} \quad (17.27)$$

$$\mathcal{K}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}') = \exp(\mathcal{K}_1(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}')) \quad (17.28)$$

$$\mathcal{K}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}') = \mathbf{x}^\top \mathbf{A} \mathbf{x}', \text{ for any psd matrix } \mathbf{A} \quad (17.29)$$

For example, suppose we start with the linear kernel  $\mathcal{K}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}') = \mathbf{x}\mathbf{x}'$ . We know this is a valid Mercer kernel, since the corresponding Gram matrix is just the (scaled) covariance matrix of the data. From the above rules, we can see that the polynomial kernel  $\mathcal{K}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}') = (\mathbf{x}^\top \mathbf{x}')^M$  is a valid Mercer kernel. This contains all monomials of order  $M$ . For example, if  $M = 2$  and the inputs are 2d, we have

$$(\mathbf{x}^\top \mathbf{x}')^2 = (x_1 x'_1 + x_2 x'_2)^2 = (x_1 x'_1)^2 + (x_2 x'_2)^2 + (x_1 x'_1)(x_2 x'_2) \quad (17.30)$$

We can generalize this to contain all terms up to degree  $M$  by using the kernel  $\mathcal{K}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}') = (\mathbf{x}^\top \mathbf{x}' + c)^M$ . For example, if  $M = 2$  and the inputs are 2d, we have

$$\begin{aligned} (\mathbf{x}^\top \mathbf{x}' + 1)^2 &= (x_1 x'_1)^2 + (x_1 x'_1)(x_2 x'_2) + (x_1 x'_1) \\ &\quad + (x_2 x'_2)(x_1 x'_1) + (x_2 x'_2)^2 + (x_2 x'_2) \\ &\quad + (x_1 x'_1) + (x_2 x'_2) + 1 \end{aligned} \quad (17.31)$$

We can also use the above rules to establish that the Gaussian kernel is a valid kernel. To see this, note that

$$\|\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}'\|^2 = \mathbf{x}^\top \mathbf{x} + (\mathbf{x}')^\top \mathbf{x}' - 2\mathbf{x}^\top \mathbf{x}' \quad (17.32)$$

and hence

$$\mathcal{K}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}') = \exp(-\|\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}'\|^2 / 2\sigma^2) = \exp(-\mathbf{x}^\top \mathbf{x} / 2\sigma^2) \exp(\mathbf{x}^\top \mathbf{x}' / \sigma^2) \exp(-(\mathbf{x}')^\top \mathbf{x}' / 2\sigma^2) \quad (17.33)$$

is a valid kernel.

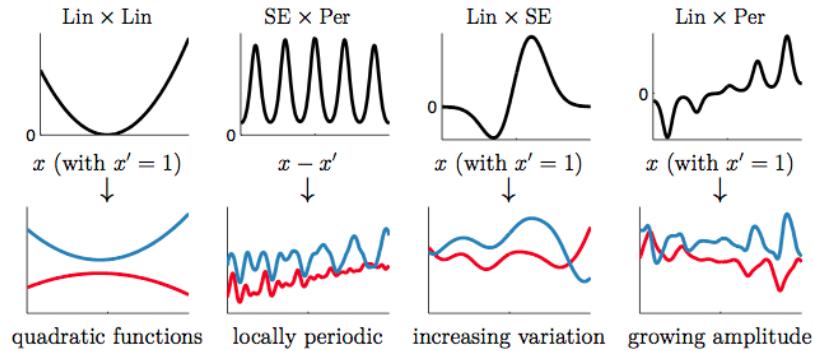


Figure 17.5: Examples of 1d structures obtained by multiplying elementary kernels. Top row shows  $\mathcal{K}(x, x' = 1)$ . Bottom row shows some functions sampled from  $GP(f|0, \mathcal{K})$ . From Figure 2.2 of [Duv14]. Used with kind permission of David Duvenaud.

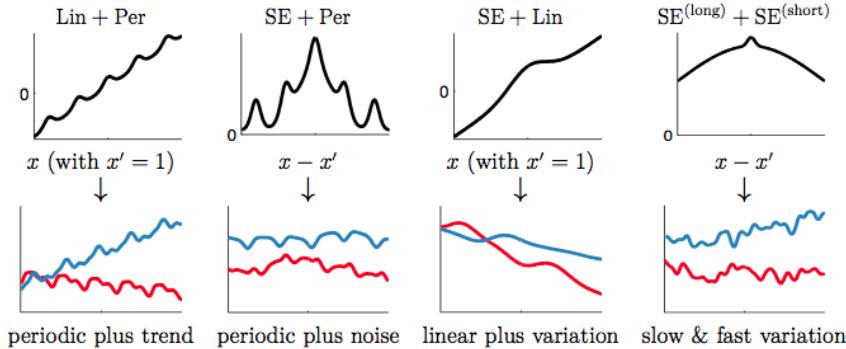


Figure 17.6: Examples of 1d structures obtained by adding elementary kernels. Here  $SE^{(\text{short})}$  and  $SE^{(\text{long})}$  are two SE kernels with different length scales. From Figure 2.4 of [Duv14]. Used with kind permission of David Duvenaud.

### 17.2.2.3 Combining kernels by addition and multiplication

We can also combine kernels using addition or multiplication:

$$\mathcal{K}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}') = \mathcal{K}_1(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}') + \mathcal{K}_2(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}') \quad (17.34)$$

$$\mathcal{K}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}') = \mathcal{K}_1(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}') \times \mathcal{K}_2(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}') \quad (17.35)$$

Multiplying two positive-definite kernels together always results in another positive definite kernel. This is a way to get a conjunction of the individual properties of each kernel, as illustrated in Fig. 17.5.

In addition, adding two positive-definite kernels together always results in another positive definite kernel. This is a way to get a disjunction of the individual properties of each kernel, as illustrated in Fig. 17.6.

### 17.2.2.4 Kernels for structured inputs

Kernels are particularly useful when the inputs are structured objects, such as strings and graphs, since it is often hard to “featurize” variable-sized inputs. For example, we can define a **string kernel** which compares strings in terms of the number of n-grams they have in common [Lod+02; BC17].

We can also define kernels on graphs [KJM19]. For example, the **random walk kernel** conceptually performs random walks on two graphs simultaneously, and then counts the number of paths that were produced by both walks. This can be computed efficiently as discussed in [Vis+10]. For more details on graph kernels, see [KJM19].

For a review of kernels on structured objects, see e.g., [Gär03].

## 17.3 Gaussian processes

In this section, we discuss **Gaussian processes**, which is a way to define distributions over functions of the form  $f : \mathcal{X} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ , where  $\mathcal{X}$  is any domain. The key assumption is that the function values at a set of  $M > 0$  inputs,  $\mathbf{f} = [f(\mathbf{x}_1), \dots, f(\mathbf{x}_M)]$ , is jointly Gaussian, with mean  $(\boldsymbol{\mu} = m(\mathbf{x}_1), \dots, m(\mathbf{x}_M))$  and covariance  $\boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{ij} = \mathcal{K}(\mathbf{x}_i, \mathbf{x}_j)$ , where  $m$  is a mean function and  $\mathcal{K}$  is a positive definite (Mercer) kernel. Since we assume this holds for any  $M > 0$ , this includes the case where  $M = N + 1$ , containing  $N$  training points  $\mathbf{x}_n$  and 1 test point  $\mathbf{x}_*$ . Thus we can infer  $f(\mathbf{x}_*)$  from knowledge of  $f(\mathbf{x}_1), \dots, f(\mathbf{x}_n)$  by manipulating the joint Gaussian distribution  $p(f(\mathbf{x}_1), \dots, f(\mathbf{x}_N), f(\mathbf{x}_*))$ , as we explain below. This generalizes the approach from Sec. 17.1 to work with an arbitrary number of points from an arbitrary input domain. We can also extend this to work with the case where we observe noisy functions of  $f(\mathbf{x}_n)$ , such as in regression or classification problems.

### 17.3.1 Noise-free observations

Suppose we observe a training set  $\mathcal{D} = \{(\mathbf{x}_n, y_n) : n = 1 : N\}$ , where  $y_n = f(\mathbf{x}_n)$  is the noise-free observation of the function evaluated at  $\mathbf{x}_n$ . If we ask the GP to predict  $f(\mathbf{x})$  for a value of  $\mathbf{x}$  that it has already seen, we want the GP to return the answer  $f(\mathbf{x})$  with no uncertainty. In other words, it should act as an **interpolator** of the training data.

Now we consider the case of predicting the outputs for new inputs that may not be in  $\mathcal{D}$ . Specifically, given a test set  $\mathbf{X}_*$  of size  $N_* \times D$ , we want to predict the function outputs  $\mathbf{f}_* = [f(\mathbf{x}_1), \dots, f(\mathbf{x}_{N_*})]$ . By definition of the GP, the joint distribution  $p(\mathbf{f}_X, \mathbf{f}_* | \mathbf{X}, \mathbf{X}_*)$  has the following form

$$\begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{f}_X \\ \mathbf{f}_* \end{pmatrix} \sim \mathcal{N} \left( \begin{pmatrix} \boldsymbol{\mu}_X \\ \boldsymbol{\mu}_* \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{K}_{X,X} & \mathbf{K}_{X,*} \\ \mathbf{K}_{X,*}^\top & \mathbf{K}_{*,*} \end{pmatrix} \right) \quad (17.36)$$

where  $\boldsymbol{\mu}_X = [m(\mathbf{x}_1), \dots, m(\mathbf{x}_N)]$ ,  $\boldsymbol{\mu}_* = [m(\mathbf{x}_1^*), \dots, m(\mathbf{x}_{N_*}^*)]$ ,  $\mathbf{K}_{X,X} = \mathcal{K}(\mathbf{X}, \mathbf{X})$  is  $N \times N$ ,  $\mathbf{K}_{X,*} = \mathcal{K}(\mathbf{X}, \mathbf{X}_*)$  is  $N \times N_*$ , and  $\mathbf{K}_{*,*} = \mathcal{K}(\mathbf{X}_*, \mathbf{X}_*)$  is  $N_* \times N_*$ . See Fig. 17.7 for an illustration. By the standard rules for conditioning Gaussians (Sec. 3.5.3), the posterior has the following form

$$p(\mathbf{f}_* | \mathbf{X}_*, \mathcal{D}) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{f}_* | \boldsymbol{\mu}_{*|X}, \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{*|X}) \quad (17.37)$$

$$\boldsymbol{\mu}_{*|X} = \boldsymbol{\mu}_X + \mathbf{K}_{X,*}^\top \mathbf{K}_{X,X}^{-1} (\mathbf{f}_X - \boldsymbol{\mu}_X) \quad (17.38)$$

$$\boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{*|X} = \mathbf{K}_{*,*} - \mathbf{K}_{X,*}^\top \mathbf{K}_{X,X}^{-1} \mathbf{K}_{X,*} \quad (17.39)$$

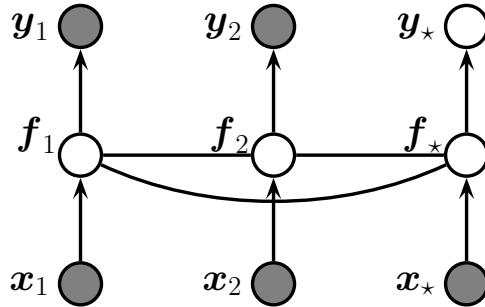


Figure 17.7: A Gaussian process for 2 training points,  $\mathbf{x}_1$  and  $\mathbf{x}_2$ , and 1 testing point,  $\mathbf{x}_*$ , represented as a graphical model representing  $p(\mathbf{y}, \mathbf{f}_X | \mathbf{X}) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{f}_X | m(\mathbf{X}), \mathcal{K}(\mathbf{X})) \prod_i p(y_i | f_i)$ . The hidden nodes  $f_i = f(\mathbf{x}_i)$  represent the value of the function at each of the data points. These hidden nodes are fully interconnected by undirected edges, forming a Gaussian graphical model; the edge strengths represent the covariance terms  $\Sigma_{ij} = \mathcal{K}(\mathbf{x}_i, \mathbf{x}_j)$ . If the test point  $\mathbf{x}_*$  is similar to the training points  $\mathbf{x}_1$  and  $\mathbf{x}_2$ , then the value of the hidden function  $f_*$  will be similar to  $f_1$  and  $f_2$ , and hence the predicted output  $y_*$  will be similar to the training values  $y_1$  and  $y_2$ .

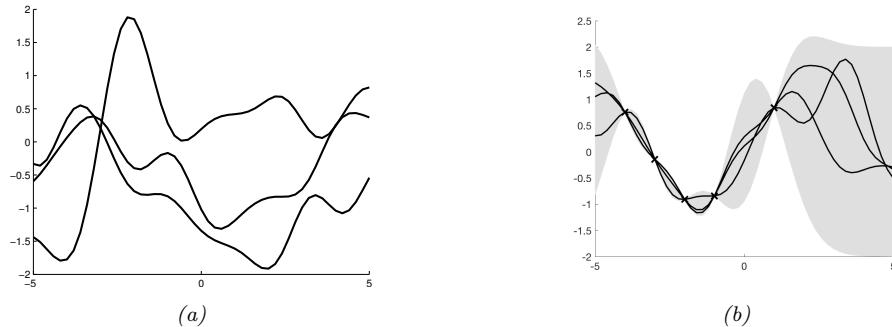


Figure 17.8: Left: some functions sampled from a GP prior with squared exponential kernel. Right: some samples from a GP posterior, after conditioning on 5 noise-free observations. The shaded area represents  $\mathbb{E}[f(\mathbf{x})] \pm 2\text{std}[f(\mathbf{x})]$ . Adapted from Figure 2.2 of [RW06]. Generated by [gprDemoNoiseFree.m](#).

This process is illustrated in Fig. 17.8. On the left we show some samples from the prior,  $p(f)$ , where we use an RBF kernel (Sec. 17.2) and a zero mean function. On the right, we show samples from the posterior,  $p(f|\mathcal{D})$ . We see that the model perfectly interpolates the training data, and that the predictive uncertainty increases as we move further away from the observed data.

### 17.3.2 Noisy observations

Now let us consider the case where what we observe is a noisy version of the underlying function,  $y_n = f(\mathbf{x}_n) + \epsilon_n$ , where  $\epsilon_n \sim \mathcal{N}(0, \sigma_y^2)$ . In this case, the model is not required to interpolate the data,

but it must come “close” to the observed data. The covariance of the observed noisy responses is

$$\text{Cov}[y_i, y_j] = \text{Cov}[f_i, f_j] + \text{Cov}[\epsilon_i, \epsilon_j] = \mathcal{K}(\mathbf{x}_i, \mathbf{x}_j) + \sigma_y^2 \delta_{ij} \quad (17.40)$$

where  $\delta_{ij} = \mathbb{I}(i = j)$ . In other words

$$\text{Cov}[\mathbf{y} | \mathbf{X}] = \mathbf{K}_{X,X} + \sigma_y^2 \mathbf{I}_N \triangleq \hat{\mathbf{K}}_{X,X} \quad (17.41)$$

The joint density of the observed data and the latent, noise-free function on the test points is given by

$$\begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{y} \\ \mathbf{f}_* \end{pmatrix} \sim \mathcal{N}\left(\begin{pmatrix} \boldsymbol{\mu}_X \\ \boldsymbol{\mu}_* \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} \hat{\mathbf{K}}_{X,X} & \mathbf{K}_{X,*} \\ \mathbf{K}_{X,*}^\top & \mathbf{K}_{*,*} \end{pmatrix}\right) \quad (17.42)$$

Hence the posterior predictive density at a set of test points  $\mathbf{X}_*$  is

$$p(\mathbf{f}_* | \mathcal{D}, \mathbf{X}_*) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{f}_* | \boldsymbol{\mu}_{*|X}, \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{*|X}) \quad (17.43)$$

$$\boldsymbol{\mu}_{*|X} = \boldsymbol{\mu}_* + \mathbf{K}_{X,*}^\top \hat{\mathbf{K}}_{X,X}^{-1} (\mathbf{y} - \boldsymbol{\mu}_X) \quad (17.44)$$

$$\boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{*|X} = \mathbf{K}_{*,*} - \mathbf{K}_{X,*}^\top \hat{\mathbf{K}}_{X,X}^{-1} \mathbf{K}_{X,*} \quad (17.45)$$

In the case of a single test input, this simplifies as follows

$$p(f_* | \mathcal{D}, \mathbf{x}_*) = \mathcal{N}(f_* | m_* + \mathbf{k}_*^\top \hat{\mathbf{K}}_{X,X}^{-1} (\mathbf{y} - \boldsymbol{\mu}_X), k_{**} - \mathbf{k}_*^\top \hat{\mathbf{K}}_{X,X}^{-1} \mathbf{k}_*) \quad (17.46)$$

where  $\mathbf{k}_* = [\mathcal{K}(\mathbf{x}_*, \mathbf{x}_1), \dots, \mathcal{K}(\mathbf{x}_*, \mathbf{x}_N)]$  and  $k_{**} = \mathcal{K}(\mathbf{x}_*, \mathbf{x}_*)$ . If the mean function is zero, we can write the posterior mean as follows:

$$\mu_{*|X} = \mathbf{k}_*^\top (\hat{\mathbf{K}}_{X,X}^{-1} \mathbf{y}) \triangleq \mathbf{k}_*^\top \boldsymbol{\alpha} = \sum_{n=1}^N \mathcal{K}(\mathbf{x}_*, \mathbf{x}_n) \alpha_n \quad (17.47)$$

This is identical to the predictions from kernel ridge regression in Eq. (17.145).

### 17.3.3 Comparison to kernel regression

In Sec. 16.3.5, we discussed kernel regression, which is a generative approach to regression in which we approximate  $p(y, \mathbf{x})$  using kernel density estimation. In particular, Eq. (16.39) gives us

$$\mathbb{E}[y | \mathbf{x}, \mathcal{D}] = \frac{\sum_{n=1}^N \mathcal{K}_h(\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}_n) y_n}{\sum_{n=1}^N \mathcal{K}_h(\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}_n)} = \sum_{n=1}^N y_n w_n(\mathbf{x}) \quad (17.48)$$

$$w_n(\mathbf{x}) \triangleq \frac{\mathcal{K}_h(\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}_n)}{\sum_{n'=1}^N \mathcal{K}_h(\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}_{n'})} \quad (17.49)$$

This is very similar to Eq. (17.47). However, there are a few important differences. Firstly, in a GP, we use a positive definite (Mercer) kernel instead of a density kernel; Mercer kernels can be defined on structured objects, such as strings and graphs, which is harder to do for density kernels.

Second, a GP is an interpolator (at least when  $\sigma^2 = 0$ ), so  $\mathbb{E}[y|\mathbf{x}_n, \mathcal{D}] = y_n$ . By contrast, kernel regression is not an interpolator (although it can be made into one by iteratively fitting the residuals, as in [KJ16]). Third, a GP is a Bayesian method, which means we can estimate hyperparameters (of the kernel) by maximizing the marginal likelihood; by contrast, in kernel regression we must use cross-validation to estimate the kernel parameters, such as the bandwidth. Fourth, computing the weights  $w_n$  for kernel regression takes  $O(N)$  time, where  $N = |\mathcal{D}|$ , whereas computing the weights  $\alpha_n$  for GP regression takes  $O(N^3)$  time (although there are approximation methods that can reduce this to  $O(NM^2)$ , as we discuss in Sec. 17.4).

### 17.3.4 Weight space vs function space

In this section, we show how Bayesian linear regression is a special case of a GP.

Consider the linear regression model  $y = f(\mathbf{x}) + \epsilon$ , where  $f(\mathbf{x}) = \mathbf{w}^\top \phi(\mathbf{x})$  and  $\epsilon \sim \mathcal{N}(0, \sigma_y^2)$ . If we use a Gaussian prior  $p(\mathbf{w}) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{w}|\mathbf{0}, \Sigma_w)$ , then the posterior is as follows (see Sec. 11.6.1 for the derivation):

$$p(\mathbf{w}|\mathcal{D}) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{w}|\frac{1}{\sigma_y^2} \mathbf{A}^{-1} \Phi^T \mathbf{y}, \mathbf{A}^{-1}) \quad (17.50)$$

where  $\Phi$  is the  $N \times D$  design matrix, and

$$\mathbf{A} = \sigma_y^{-2} \Phi^\top \Phi + \Sigma_w^{-1} \quad (17.51)$$

The posterior predictive distribution for  $f_* = f(\mathbf{x}_*)$  is therefore

$$p(f_*|\mathcal{D}, \mathbf{x}_*) = \mathcal{N}(f_*|\frac{1}{\sigma_y^2} \phi_*^\top \mathbf{A}^{-1} \Phi^T \mathbf{y}, \phi_*^\top \mathbf{A}^{-1} \phi_*) \quad (17.52)$$

where  $\phi_* = \phi(\mathbf{x}_*)$ . This views the problem of inference and prediction in **weight space**.

We now show that this is equivalent to the predictions made by a GP using a kernel of the form  $K(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}') = \phi(\mathbf{x})^\top \Sigma_w \phi(\mathbf{x}')$ . To see this, let  $\mathbf{K} = \Phi \Sigma_w \Phi^\top$ ,  $\mathbf{k}_* = \Phi \Sigma_w \phi_*$ , and  $k_{**} = \phi_*^\top \Sigma_w \phi_*$ . Using this notation, and the matrix inversion lemma, we can rewrite Eq. (17.52) as follows

$$p(f_*|\mathcal{D}, \mathbf{x}_*) = \mathcal{N}(f_*|\boldsymbol{\mu}_{*|X}, \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{*|X}) \quad (17.53)$$

$$\boldsymbol{\mu}_{*|X} = \phi_*^\top \Sigma_w \Phi^\top (\mathbf{K} + \sigma_y^2 \mathbf{I})^{-1} \mathbf{y} = \mathbf{k}_*^\top \hat{\mathbf{K}}_{X,X}^{-1} \mathbf{y} \quad (17.54)$$

$$\boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{*|X} = \phi_*^\top \Sigma_w \phi_* - \phi_*^\top \Sigma_w \Phi^\top (\mathbf{K} + \sigma_y^2 \mathbf{I})^{-1} \Phi \Sigma_w \phi_* = k_{**} - \mathbf{k}_*^\top \hat{\mathbf{K}}_{X,X}^{-1} \mathbf{k}_* \quad (17.55)$$

which matches the results in Eq. (17.46), assuming  $m(\mathbf{x}) = 0$ . (Non-zero mean can be captured by adding a constant feature with value 1 to  $\phi(\mathbf{x})$ .)

Thus we can derive a GP from Bayesian linear regression. Note, however, that linear regression assumes  $\phi(\mathbf{x})$  is a finite length vector, whereas a GP allows us to work directly in terms of kernels, which may correspond to infinite length feature vectors (see Sec. 17.2.1). That is, a GP works in **function space**.

### 17.3.5 Numerical issues

In this section, we discuss computational and numerical issues which arise when implementing the above equations. For notational simplicity, we assume the prior mean is zero,  $m(\mathbf{x}) = 0$ .

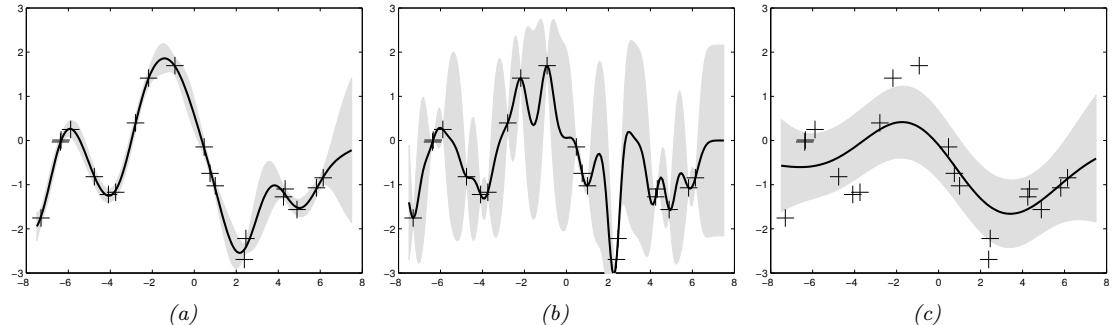


Figure 17.9: Some 1d GPs with SE kernels but different hyper-parameters fit to 20 noisy observations. The kernel has the form in Eq. (17.59). The hyper-parameters ( $\ell, \sigma_f, \sigma_y$ ) are as follows: (a) (1, 1, 0.1) (b) (0.3, 1.08, 0.00005), (c) (3.0, 1.16, 0.89). Adapted from Figure 2.5 of [RW06]. Generated by `gprDemoChangeHparams.m`.

The posterior predictive mean is given by  $\mu_* = \mathbf{k}_*^\top \hat{\mathbf{K}}_{X,X}^{-1} \mathbf{y}$ . For reasons of numerical stability, it is unwise to directly invert  $\hat{\mathbf{K}}_{X,X}$ . A more robust alternative is to compute a Cholesky decomposition,  $\hat{\mathbf{K}}_{X,X} = \mathbf{L}\mathbf{L}^\top$ , which takes  $O(N^3)$  time. Then we compute  $\boldsymbol{\alpha} = \mathbf{L}^\top \backslash (\mathbf{L} \backslash \mathbf{y})$ , where we have used the backslash operator to represent backsubstitution (Sec. B.7.1). Given this, we can compute the posterior mean for each test case in  $O(N)$  time using

$$\mu_* = \mathbf{k}_*^\top \tilde{\mathbf{K}}_{X,X}^{-1} \mathbf{y} = \mathbf{k}_*^\top \mathbf{L}^{-\top} (\mathbf{L}^{-1} \mathbf{y}) = \mathbf{k}_*^\top \boldsymbol{\alpha} \quad (17.56)$$

We can compute the variance in  $O(N^2)$  time for each test case using

$$\sigma_*^2 = k_{**} - \mathbf{k}_*^\top \mathbf{L}^{-T} \mathbf{L}^{-1} \mathbf{k}_* = k_{**} - \mathbf{v}^\top \mathbf{v} \quad (17.57)$$

where  $\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{L} \setminus \mathbf{k}_\ast$ .

Finally, the log marginal likelihood (needed for kernel learning, Sec. 17.3.6) can be computed using

$$\log p(\mathbf{y}|\mathbf{X}) = -\frac{1}{2}\mathbf{y}^\top \boldsymbol{\alpha} - \sum_{n=1}^N \log L_{nn} - \frac{N}{2} \log(2\pi) \quad (17.58)$$

### 17.3.6 Estimating the kernel

Most kernels have some free parameters, which can have a large effect on the predictions from the model. For example, suppose we are performing 1d regression using a GP with an RBF kernel. Since the data has observation noise, the kernel has the following form:

$$\mathcal{K}_y(x_p, x_q) = \sigma_f^2 \exp\left(-\frac{1}{2\ell^2}(x_p - x_q)^2\right) + \sigma_y^2 \delta_{pq} \quad (17.59)$$

Here  $\ell$  is the horizontal scale over which the function changes,  $\sigma_f^2$  controls the vertical scale of the function, and  $\sigma_y^2$  is the noise variance.

Fig. 17.9 illustrates the effects of changing these parameters. We sampled 20 noisy data points from the RBF kernel using  $(\ell, \sigma_f, \sigma_y) = (1, 1, 0.1)$ . We then fit this data using a GP with difference kernel parameters.

In Fig. 17.9(a), we use  $(\ell, \sigma_f, \sigma_y) = (1, 1, 0.1)$ , and the result is a good fit. In Fig. 17.9(b), we reduce the length scale to  $\ell = 0.3$  (the other parameters were optimized by maximum (marginal) likelihood, a technique we discuss below); now the function looks more “wiggly”. Also, the uncertainty goes up faster, since the effective distance from the training points increases more rapidly. In Fig. 17.9(c), we increase the length scale to  $\ell = 3$ ; now the function looks smoother.

### 17.3.6.1 Empirical Bayes

To estimate the kernel parameters  $\boldsymbol{\theta}$  (sometimes called hyperparameters), we could use exhaustive search over a discrete grid of values, with validation loss as an objective, but this can be quite slow. (This is the approach used by nonprobabilistic methods, such as SVMs (Sec. 17.5) to tune kernels.) Here we consider an empirical Bayes approach (Sec. 7.5), which will allow us to use gradient-based optimization methods, which are much faster. In particular, we will maximize the marginal likelihood

$$p(\mathbf{y}|\mathbf{X}, \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \int p(\mathbf{y}|\mathbf{f}, \mathbf{X})p(\mathbf{f}|\mathbf{X}, \boldsymbol{\theta})d\mathbf{f} \quad (17.60)$$

(The reason it is called the marginal likelihood, rather than just likelihood, is because we have marginalized out the latent Gaussian vector  $\mathbf{f}$ .)

For notational simplicity, we assume the mean function is 0. Since  $p(\mathbf{f}|\mathbf{X}) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{f}|\mathbf{0}, \mathbf{K})$ , and  $p(\mathbf{y}|\mathbf{f}) = \prod_{n=1}^N \mathcal{N}(y_n|f_n, \sigma_y^2)$ , the marginal likelihood is given by

$$\log p(\mathbf{y}|\mathbf{X}, \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \log \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{y}|\mathbf{0}, \hat{\mathbf{K}}_{X,X}) = -\frac{1}{2}\mathbf{y}^\top \hat{\mathbf{K}}_{X,X}^{-1} \mathbf{y} - \frac{1}{2} \log |\hat{\mathbf{K}}_{X,X}| - \frac{N}{2} \log(2\pi) \quad (17.61)$$

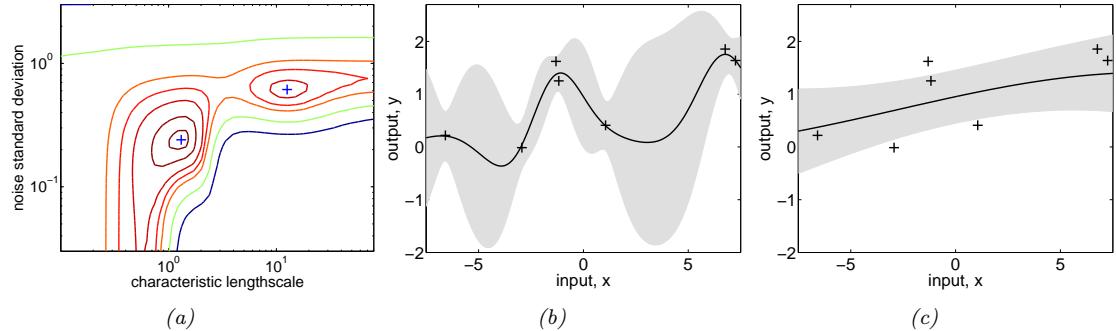
where the dependence of  $\hat{\mathbf{K}}_{X,X} = \mathbf{K}_{X,X} + \sigma_y^2 \mathbf{I}_N$  on  $\boldsymbol{\theta}$  is implicit. The first term is a data fit term, the second term is a model complexity term, and the third term is just a constant. To understand the tradeoff between the first two terms, consider a SE kernel in 1D, as we vary the length scale  $\ell$  and hold  $\sigma_y^2$  fixed. For short length scales, the fit will be good, so  $\mathbf{y}^\top \hat{\mathbf{K}}_{X,X}^{-1} \mathbf{y}$  will be small. However, the model complexity will be high:  $\mathbf{K}$  will be almost diagonal, (as in Fig. 13.22, top right), since most points will not be considered “near” any others, so the  $\log |\hat{\mathbf{K}}_{X,X}|$  term will be large. For long length scales, the fit will be poor but the model complexity will be low:  $\mathbf{K}$  will be almost all 1’s, (as in Fig. 13.22, bottom right), so  $\log |\hat{\mathbf{K}}_{X,X}|$  will be small.

We now discuss how to maximize the marginal likelihood. One can show that

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial \theta_j} \log p(\mathbf{y}|\mathbf{X}, \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{y}^\top \hat{\mathbf{K}}_{X,X}^{-1} \frac{\partial \hat{\mathbf{K}}_{X,X}}{\partial \theta_j} \hat{\mathbf{K}}_{X,X}^{-1} \mathbf{y} - \frac{1}{2} \text{tr}(\hat{\mathbf{K}}_{X,X}^{-1} \frac{\partial \hat{\mathbf{K}}_{X,X}}{\partial \theta_j}) \quad (17.62)$$

$$= \frac{1}{2} \text{tr} \left( (\boldsymbol{\alpha} \boldsymbol{\alpha}^\top - \hat{\mathbf{K}}_{X,X}^{-1}) \frac{\partial \hat{\mathbf{K}}_{X,X}}{\partial \theta_j} \right) \quad (17.63)$$

where  $\boldsymbol{\alpha} = \hat{\mathbf{K}}_{X,X}^{-1} \mathbf{y}$ . It takes  $O(N^3)$  time to compute  $\hat{\mathbf{K}}_{X,X}^{-1}$ , and then  $O(N^2)$  time per hyper-parameter to compute the gradient.



*Figure 17.10: Illustration of local minima in the marginal likelihood surface. (a) We plot the log marginal likelihood vs  $\sigma_y^2$  and  $\ell$ , for fixed  $\sigma_f^2 = 1$ , using the 7 data points shown in panels b and c. (b) The function corresponding to the lower left local minimum,  $(\ell, \sigma_n^2) \approx (1, 0.2)$ . This is quite “wiggly” and has low noise. (c) The function corresponding to the top right local minimum,  $(\ell, \sigma_n^2) \approx (10, 0.8)$ . This is quite smooth and has high noise. The data was generated using  $(\ell, \sigma_n^2) = (1, 0.1)$ . From Figure 5.5 of [RW06]. Generated by `gprDemoMarglik.m`.*

The form of  $\frac{\partial \hat{K}_{X,X}}{\partial \theta_j}$  depends on the form of the kernel, and which parameter we are taking derivatives with respect to. Often we have constraints on the hyper-parameters, such as  $\sigma_y^2 \geq 0$ . In this case, we can define  $\theta = \log(\sigma_y^2)$ , and then use the chain rule.

Given an expression for the log marginal likelihood and its derivative, we can estimate the kernel parameters using any standard gradient-based optimizer. However, since the objective is not convex, local minima can be a problem, as we illustrate below, so we may need to use multiple restarts.

As an example, consider the RBF in Eq. (17.59) with  $\sigma_f^2 = 1$ . In Fig. 17.10(a), we plot  $\log p(\mathbf{y}|\mathbf{X}, \ell, \sigma_y^2)$  (where  $\mathbf{X}$  and  $\mathbf{y}$  are the 7 data points shown in panels b and c) as we vary  $\ell$  and  $\sigma_y^2$ . The two local optima are indicated by '+'. The bottom left optimum corresponds to a low-noise, short-length scale solution (shown in panel b). The top right optimum corresponds to a high-noise, long-length scale solution (shown in panel c). With only 7 data points, there is not enough evidence to confidently decide which is more reasonable, although the more complex model (panel b) has a marginal likelihood that is about 60% higher than the simpler model (panel c). With more data, the more complex model would become even more preferred.

Fig. 17.10 illustrates some other interesting (and typical) features. The region where  $\sigma_y^2 \approx 1$  (top of panel a) corresponds to the case where the noise is very high; in this regime, the marginal likelihood is insensitive to the length scale (indicated by the horizontal contours), since all the data is explained as noise. The region where  $\ell \approx 0.5$  (left hand side of panel a) corresponds to the case where the length scale is very short; in this regime, the marginal likelihood is insensitive to the noise level (indicated by the vertical contours), since the data is perfectly interpolated. Neither of these regions would be chosen by a good optimizer.

### 17.3.6.2 Bayesian inference

When we have a small number of datapoints (e.g., when using GPs for Bayesian optimization), using a point estimate of the kernel parameters can give poor results [Bul11; WF14]. In such cases, we may

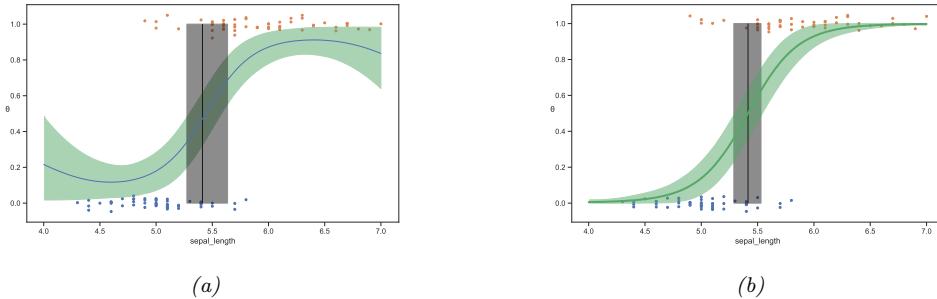


Figure 17.11: GP classifier for a binary classification problem on Iris flowers (setosa vs versicolor) using a single input feature (sepal length). The fat vertical line is the credible interval for the decision boundary. (a) SE kernel. (b) SE plus linear kernel. Adapted from Figures 7.11–7.12 of [Mar18]. Generated by `gp_classify_iris_1d_pymc3.py`.

wish to approximate the posterior over the kernel parameters. Several methods can be used. For example, [MA10] shows how to use slice sampling, [Hen+15] shows how to use Hamiltonian Monte Carlo, and [BBV11] shows how to use sequential Monte Carlo.

### 17.3.7 GPs for classification

So far, we have focused on GPs for regression using Gaussian likelihoods. In this case, the posterior is also a GP, and all computation can be performed analytically. However, if the likelihood is non-Gaussian, such as the Bernoulli likelihood for binary classification, we can no longer compute the posterior exactly.

There are various approximations we can make. In Sec. 17.4.1 we discuss an approach based on variational inference. In this section, we use the Hamiltonian Monte Carlo method (Sec. 7.7.4), both for the latent Gaussian function  $\mathbf{f}$  as well as the kernel hyperparameters  $\boldsymbol{\theta}$ . The basic idea is to specify the negative log joint

$$-\mathcal{E}(\mathbf{f}, \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \log p(\mathbf{f}, \boldsymbol{\theta} | \mathbf{X}, \mathbf{y}) = \log \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{f} | \mathbf{0}, \mathbf{K}(\mathbf{X}, \mathbf{X})) + \sum_{n=1}^N \log \text{Ber}(y_n | f_n(\mathbf{x}_n)) + \log p(\boldsymbol{\theta}) \quad (17.64)$$

We then use autograd to compute  $\nabla_{\mathbf{f}} \mathcal{E}(\mathbf{f}, \boldsymbol{\theta})$  and  $\nabla_{\boldsymbol{\theta}} \mathcal{E}(\mathbf{f}, \boldsymbol{\theta})$ , and use these gradients as inputs to a Gaussian proposal distribution.

Let us consider a 1d example from [Mar18]. This is similar to the Bayesian logistic regression example from Fig. 2.8, where the goal is to classify iris flowers as being setosa or versicolor,  $y_n \in \{0, 1\}$ , given information about the sepal length,  $x_n$ . We will use an SE kernel with length scale  $\ell$ . We put a  $\text{Ga}(2, 0.5)$  prior on  $\ell$ .

Fig. 17.11a shows the results using the SE kernel. This is similar to the results of linear logistic regression (see Fig. 2.8), except that at the edges (away from the data), the probability curves towards 0.5. This is because the prior mean function is  $m(x) = 0$ , and  $\sigma(0) = 0.5$ . We can eliminate this artefact by using a more flexible kernel, which encodes the prior knowledge that we expect the

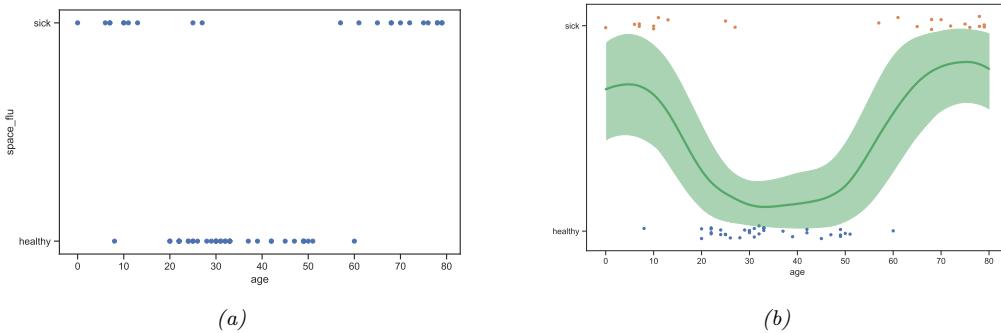


Figure 17.12: (a) Fictitious “space flu” binary classification problem. (b) Fit from a GP with SE kernel. Adapted from Figures 7.13–7.14 of [Mar18]. Generated by `gp_classify_spaceflu_1d_pymc3.py`.

output to be monotonically increasing or decreasing in the input. We can do this using a **linear kernel**,

$$\mathcal{K}(x, x') = (x - c)(x' - c) \quad (17.65)$$

We can scale and add this to the SE kernel to get

$$\mathcal{K}(x, x') = \tau(x - c)(x' - c) + \exp\left[-\frac{(x - x')^2}{2\ell^2}\right] \quad (17.66)$$

The results are shown in Fig. 17.11b, and look more reasonable.

One might wonder why we bothered to use a GP, when the results are no better than a simple linear logistic regression model. The reason is that the GP is much more flexible, and makes fewer a priori assumptions, beyond smoothness. For example, suppose the data looked like Fig. 17.12a. In this case, a linear logistic regression model could not fit the data. We could in principle use a neural network, but it may not work well since we only have 60 data points. However, GPs are well designed to handle the small sample setting. In Fig. 17.12b, we show the results of fitting a GP with an SE kernel to this data. The results look reasonable.

### 17.3.8 Connections with deep learning

It turns out that there are many interesting connections and similarities between GPs and deep neural networks. For example, one can show that an RBF network with one hidden layer, which is **infinitely wide**, is equivalent to a GP with an RBF kernel. (This follows from the fact that the RBF kernel can be expressed as the inner product of an infinite number of features.) More generally, we can interpret many kinds of DNNs as GPs using a specific kind of kernel derived from the architecture of the model. See the sequel to this book, [Mur22], for details.

## 17.4 Scaling GPs to large datasets

The main disadvantage of GPs (and other kernel methods, such as SVMs, which we discuss in Sec. 17.5) is that inverting the  $N \times N$  kernel matrix takes  $O(N^3)$  time, making the method too slow for big datasets. Many different approximate schemes have been proposed to speedup GPs (see e.g., [Liu+18a] for a review). In this section, we briefly mention some of them.

### 17.4.1 (Sparse) variational inference

In this section, we approximate the posterior  $p(\mathbf{f}|\mathbf{y})$  using variational inference. This approach is known as the **variational free energy (VFE)** method for GPs [Tit09; Mat+16].

In more detail, the VFE approach tries to find an approximate posterior  $q(\mathbf{f})$  to minimize  $J(q) = \text{KL}(q(\mathbf{f})\|p(\mathbf{f}|\mathbf{y}))$ , where  $q$  is the variational distribution that we choose, and  $\mathbf{f} = (\mathbf{f}_*, \mathbf{f}_X, \mathbf{f}_Z)$  is a vector of function values at any set of testing points  $*$ , the training points  $\mathbf{X}$ , and a set of  $M$  artificially introduced **inducing points** or **pseudo-inputs**  $\mathbf{Z}$ . The function values at these inducing points are denoted by  $\mathbf{u} = \mathbf{f}_Z$ .

The key idea is that we will optimize these inducing points so that  $(\mathbf{Z}, \mathbf{f}_Z)$  acts as a “bottleneck” to store the information from the training set, so that we can then make the approximation

$$p(\mathbf{f}|\mathbf{y}) \approx q(\mathbf{f}) = q(\mathbf{f}_*, \mathbf{f}_X, \mathbf{f}_Z) = p(\mathbf{f}_*, \mathbf{f}_X | \mathbf{f}_Z) q(\mathbf{f}_Z) \quad (17.67)$$

where  $p(\mathbf{f}_*, \mathbf{f}_X | \mathbf{f}_Z)$  is computed exactly using the GP. We can marginalize out  $\mathbf{f}_X$  from the conditional prior to get  $p(\mathbf{f}_* | \mathbf{f}_Z)$ , since it is jointly Gaussian. If we choose  $q(\mathbf{f}_Z) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{f}_Z | \mathbf{m}, \mathbf{S})$ , then we can compute  $q(\mathbf{f}_*) = \mathbb{E}_{q(\mathbf{f}_Z)} [p(\mathbf{f}_* | \mathbf{f}_Z)]$  efficiently as well, from which we can compute the predictions  $q(\mathbf{y}_* | \mathbf{X}_*, \mathcal{D})$ . Hence this method is often called a “**sparse GP**”, because it makes predictions using just a sparse set of points, namely  $\mathbf{f}_Z$ , instead of the whole training set,  $\mathbf{f}_X$ . We give the details below.

#### 17.4.1.1 Prediction

Suppose we have already computed the variational posterior  $q(\mathbf{f}_Z) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{f}_Z | \mathbf{m}, \mathbf{S})$ . Now consider the induced variational distribution over an arbitrary set of inputs  $T$ , which could be training or test points. We have

$$q(\mathbf{f}_T) = \int p(\mathbf{f}_T | \mathbf{f}_Z) q(\mathbf{f}_Z) d\mathbf{f}_Z = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{f}_T | \boldsymbol{\mu}, \boldsymbol{\Omega}) \quad (17.68)$$

$$\boldsymbol{\mu} = \mathbf{K}_{T,Z} \mathbf{K}_{Z,Z}^{-1} \mathbf{m} \quad (17.69)$$

$$\boldsymbol{\Omega} = \mathbf{K}_{T,T} - \mathbf{K}_{T,Z} \mathbf{K}_{Z,Z}^{-1} \mathbf{K}_{Z,T} + \mathbf{K}_{T,Z} \mathbf{K}_{Z,Z}^{-1} \mathbf{S} \mathbf{K}_{Z,Z}^{-1} \mathbf{K}_{Z,T} \quad (17.70)$$

The corresponding time it takes to compute the mean and variance of this distribution, as well as to draw samples from it, is shown in Table 17.1; we also show the time it takes to do these operations when using the prior or the exact posterior.

For example, consider making predictions for a single test point. Let us assume that we have already “paid” the  $M^3$  cost of computing  $\mathbf{K}_{Z,Z}^{-1}$  during the model fitting (variational inference) phase. Then we can compute the mean and variance of the approximate posterior predictive for any test

Target	$q(\mathbf{f}_T)$	$p(\mathbf{f}_T)$	$p(\mathbf{f}_T \mathbf{y})$
Mean	$O( T M + M^3)$	0	$O( T N + N^3)$
Covariance	$O( T ^2M +  T M^2 + M^3)$	$O( T ^2)$	$O( T ^2N +  T N^2 + N^3)$
Sampling	$O( T ^3 +  T ^2M +  T M^2 + M^3)$	$O( T ^3)$	$O( T ^3 +  T ^2N +  T N^2 + N^3)$

Table 17.1: Time to compute various properties of the distribution over query variables  $T$  using the variational posterior, the prior and the exact posterior. Here  $|T|$  is the number of points in  $T$ ,  $N$  is the number of training points, and  $M$  is the number of inducing points. The prior mean function is assumed to be 0. Based on [GM16, p64].

point  $q(f_*)$  in  $O(M)$  and  $O(M^2)$  time; if we use the exact posterior, these operations take  $O(N)$  and  $O(N^2)$ .

Of course, computing  $q(f_*)$  is not enough; instead, we want to predict  $\mathbf{y}_*$ . We can compute this using

$$q(\mathbf{y}_*|\mathbf{x}_*, \mathcal{D}) = \int p(y|f_*)q(f_*)df_* = \int p(y|f_*)[p(f_*|\mathbf{f}_Z)q(\mathbf{f}_Z)d\mathbf{f}_Z]df_* \quad (17.71)$$

For a Gaussian likelihood, we can compute this in closed form. For a Bernoulli likelihood, we can use the probit approximation (Sec. 10.6.1.2), or just use 1d numerical integration methods, such as quadrature.

#### 17.4.1.2 The variational lower bound

We now discuss how to compute the variational approximation, following [GM16, p33]. We do this by minimizing the following loss:

$$J(q, \mathbf{Z}) = \mathbb{KL}(q(\mathbf{f}_*, \mathbf{f}_X, \mathbf{f}_Z) \| p(\mathbf{f}_*, \mathbf{f}_X, \mathbf{f}_Z | \mathbf{y})) \quad (17.72)$$

$$= \int q(\mathbf{f}_*, \mathbf{f}_X, \mathbf{f}_Z) \log \frac{q(\mathbf{f}_*, \mathbf{f}_X, \mathbf{f}_Z)}{p(\mathbf{f}_*, \mathbf{f}_X, \mathbf{f}_Z | \mathbf{y})} d\mathbf{f}_* d\mathbf{f}_X d\mathbf{f}_Z \quad (17.73)$$

$$= \int p(\mathbf{f}_*, \mathbf{f}_X | \mathbf{f}_Z) q(\mathbf{f}_Z) \log \frac{\underline{p(\mathbf{f}_* | \mathbf{f}_X, \mathbf{f}_Z)} \underline{p(\mathbf{f}_X | \mathbf{f}_Z)} q(\mathbf{f}_Z) p(\mathbf{y})}{\underline{p(\mathbf{f}_* | \mathbf{f}_X, \mathbf{f}_Z)} \underline{p(\mathbf{f}_X | \mathbf{f}_Z)} p(\mathbf{f}_Z) p(\mathbf{y} | \mathbf{f}_X)} d\mathbf{f}_* d\mathbf{f}_X d\mathbf{f}_Z \quad (17.74)$$

$$= \int p(\mathbf{f}_*, \mathbf{f}_X | \mathbf{f}_Z) q(\mathbf{f}_Z) \log \frac{q(\mathbf{f}_Z) p(\mathbf{y})}{p(\mathbf{f}_Z) p(\mathbf{y} | \mathbf{f}_X)} d\mathbf{f}_* d\mathbf{f}_X d\mathbf{f}_Z \quad (17.75)$$

$$= \int q(\mathbf{f}_Z) \log \frac{q(\mathbf{f}_Z)}{p(\mathbf{f}_Z)} d\mathbf{f}_Z - \int p(\mathbf{f}_X | \mathbf{f}_Z) q(\mathbf{f}_Z) \log p(\mathbf{y} | \mathbf{f}_X) d\mathbf{f}_X d\mathbf{f}_Z + C \quad (17.76)$$

$$= \mathbb{KL}(q(\mathbf{f}_Z) \| p(\mathbf{f}_Z)) - \mathbb{E}_{q(\mathbf{f}_X)} [\log p(\mathbf{y} | \mathbf{f}_X)] + C \quad (17.77)$$

where  $C = \log p(\mathbf{y})$  is an irrelevant constant.

We can alternatively write the objective as an evidence lower bound that we want to maximize:

$$\log p(\mathbf{y} | \mathbf{Z}) = J(q, \mathbf{Z}) + \mathbb{E}_{q(\mathbf{f}_X)} [\log p(\mathbf{y} | \mathbf{f}_X)] - \mathbb{KL}(q(\mathbf{f}_Z) \| p(\mathbf{f}_Z)) \quad (17.78)$$

$$\geq \mathbb{E}_{q(\mathbf{f}_X)} [\log p(\mathbf{y} | \mathbf{f}_X)] - \mathbb{KL}(q(\mathbf{f}_Z) \| p(\mathbf{f}_Z)) \triangleq \mathcal{L}(q, \mathbf{Z}) \quad (17.79)$$

Suppose we choose a Gaussian posterior approximation,  $q(\mathbf{f}_Z) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{f}_Z | \mathbf{m}, \mathbf{S})$ . Since  $p(\mathbf{f}_Z) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{f}_Z | \mathbf{0}, \mathcal{K}(\mathbf{Z}, \mathbf{Z}))$ , we can compute the KL term in closed form using the formula for KL divergence between Gaussians (Eq. (6.31)) to get

$$\text{KL}(q(\mathbf{f}_Z) \| p(\mathbf{f}_Z)) = \frac{1}{2} \left[ \text{tr}(\mathbf{K}_{Z,Z}^{-1} \mathbf{S}) + \mathbf{m}^\top \mathbf{K}_{Z,Z}^{-1} \mathbf{m} - M + \log \left( \frac{\det \mathbf{K}_{Z,Z}}{\det \mathbf{S}} \right) \right] \quad (17.80)$$

This term and its gradient can be computed in  $O(M^3)$  time.

As for the expected log-likelihood term, we have

$$\mathbb{E}_{q(\mathbf{f}_X)} [\log p(\mathbf{y} | \mathbf{f}_X)] = \sum_{n=1}^N \mathbb{E}_{q(f_n)} [\log p(y_n | f_n)] \quad (17.81)$$

where  $q(f_n)$  is derived in Sec. 17.4.1.1 (setting the query set to  $T = \mathbf{x}_n$ ). For Gaussian likelihoods, we can compute each of these terms exactly (see Sec. 17.4.1.3). For logistic likelihoods, we can use 1d integration to compute these terms.

To compute the gradients of the expected log likelihood, we leverage the following result [OA09]:

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial \mu} \mathbb{E}_{\mathcal{N}(x|\mu, \sigma^2)} [h(x)] = \mathbb{E}_{\mathcal{N}(x|\mu, \sigma^2)} \left[ \frac{\partial}{\partial x} h(x) \right] \quad (17.82)$$

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial \sigma^2} \mathbb{E}_{\mathcal{N}(x|\mu, \sigma^2)} [h(x)] = \frac{1}{2} \mathbb{E}_{\mathcal{N}(x|\mu, \sigma^2)} \left[ \frac{\partial^2}{\partial x^2} h(x) \right] \quad (17.83)$$

We then substitute  $h(x)$  with  $\log p(y_n | f_n)$ .

The total cost of computing  $\mathcal{L}(q, \mathbf{Z})$  and its gradient is  $O(M^3 + NM^2)$ . We discuss stochastic approximations to this (for large  $N$ ) below. We can then optimize the ELBO  $\mathcal{L}(q, \mathbf{Z})$  wrt  $\mathbf{m}$ ,  $\mathbf{S}$  and  $\mathbf{Z}$  using gradient methods. (In practice, we write  $\mathbf{S} = \mathbf{L}\mathbf{L}^\top$  and optimize wrt  $\mathbf{L}$ .)

### 17.4.1.3 Gaussian likelihoods

If we have a Gaussian observation model, we can compute the expected log likelihood in closed form. In particular, if we assume  $m(\mathbf{x}) = \mathbf{0}$ , we have (from [HFL13, Eq.4]) the following:

$$\mathbb{E}_{q(f_n)} [\log \mathcal{N}(y_n | f_n, \beta^{-1})] = \log \mathcal{N}(y_n | \mathbf{k}_n^\top \mathbf{K}_{Z,Z}^{-1} \mathbf{m}, \beta^{-1}) - \frac{1}{2} \beta \tilde{k}_{nn} - \frac{1}{2} \text{tr}(\mathbf{S} \boldsymbol{\Lambda}_n) \quad (17.84)$$

where  $\tilde{k}_{nn} = k_{nn} - \mathbf{k}_n^\top \mathbf{K}_{Z,Z}^{-1} \mathbf{k}_n$ ,  $\mathbf{k}_n$  is the  $n$ 'th column of  $\mathbf{K}_{Z,X}$  and  $\boldsymbol{\Lambda}_n = \beta \mathbf{K}_{Z,Z}^{-1} \mathbf{k}_n \mathbf{k}_n^\top \mathbf{K}_{Z,Z}^{-1}$ . We can plug this into Eq. (17.79) to derive the ELBO  $\mathcal{L}(q)$ .

One can show that

$$\nabla_{\mathbf{m}} \mathcal{L}(q, \mathbf{Z}) = \beta \mathbf{K}_{Z,Z}^{-1} \mathbf{K}_{Z,X} \mathbf{y} - \boldsymbol{\Lambda} \mathbf{m} \quad (17.85)$$

$$\nabla_{\mathbf{S}} \mathcal{L}(q, \mathbf{Z}) = \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{S}^{-1} - \frac{1}{2} \boldsymbol{\Lambda} \quad (17.86)$$

where

$$\boldsymbol{\Lambda} = \mathbf{K}_{Z,Z}^{-1} + \sum_{n=1}^N \boldsymbol{\Lambda}_n = \beta \mathbf{K}_{Z,Z}^{-1} \mathbf{K}_{Z,X} \mathbf{K}_{X,Z} \mathbf{K}_{Z,Z}^{-1} + \mathbf{K}_{Z,Z}^{-1} \quad (17.87)$$

In the batch setting, we can set the derivatives to zero to get the optimal solution:

$$\mathbf{S} = \mathbf{\Lambda}^{-1} \quad (17.88)$$

$$\mathbf{m} = \beta \mathbf{S} \mathbf{K}_{Z,Z}^{-1} \mathbf{K}_{Z,X} \mathbf{y} \quad (17.89)$$

This is called **sparse GP regression** or **SGPR** [Tit09].

For large  $N$ , we can use a minibatch approximation plus SGD to optimize

$$\mathcal{L}(q, \mathbf{Z}) = \left[ \frac{N}{B} \sum_{b=1}^B \frac{1}{|\mathcal{B}_b|} \sum_{n \in \mathcal{B}_b} \mathbb{E}_{q(f_n)} [\log p(y_n | f_n)] \right] - \mathbb{KL}(q(\mathbf{f}_Z) \| p(\mathbf{f}_Z)) \quad (17.90)$$

where  $\mathcal{B}_b$  is the  $b$ 'th batch, and  $B$  is the number of batches. We call this **SVI-GP**. (SVI stands for “stochastic variational inference”.)

However, since the GP model (with Gaussian likelihoods) is in the exponential family, we can also compute the natural gradient quite efficiently; this converges much faster than following the standard gradient. See [HFL13] for details.

#### 17.4.1.4 Non-Gaussian likelihoods

In the case of non-Gaussian likelihoods, we need to approximate the expected log likelihood

$$\mathbb{E}_{q(f_n)} [\log p(y_n | f_n)] = \int df_n \mathcal{N}(f_n | m_n, S_{nn}) \log p(y_n | f_n) \quad (17.91)$$

This can be solved using 1d numerical integration methods, such as quadrature.

#### 17.4.1.5 Other sparse approximations

Consider the batch setting with Gaussian likelihoods. Suppose we use the optimal  $\mathbf{m}$  and  $\mathbf{S}$  from Eq. (17.89) and Eq. (17.88). In this case the ELBO becomes

$$\log p(\mathbf{y} | \mathbf{Z}) \geq \log \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{y} | \mathbf{0}, \mathbf{Q}_{X,X} + \beta^{-1} \mathbf{I}) - \frac{1}{2} \beta \text{tr}(\mathbf{K}_{X,X} - \mathbf{Q}_{X,X}) \quad (17.92)$$

where  $\mathbf{Q}_{X,X} = \mathbf{K}_{X,Z} \mathbf{K}_{Z,Z}^{-1} \mathbf{K}_{Z,X}$ . This is called the **collapsed lower bound**, since we have marginalized out  $\mathbf{f}_Z$  by setting  $q$  to its optimal parameters [Tit09].

If  $Z = X$ , then  $\mathbf{K}_{Z,Z} = \mathbf{K}_{Z,X} = \mathbf{K}_{X,X}$ , so the bound becomes tight, and we have  $\log p(\mathbf{y}) = \log \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{y} | \mathbf{0}, \mathbf{K}_{X,X} + \beta^{-1} \mathbf{I})$ . However, this takes  $O(N^3)$  time to compute.

If we drop the trace term from Eq. (17.92), we get an approximation known as Deterministic Training Conditional or **DTC** [SWL03]. This corresponds to the objective

$$\log p(\mathbf{y} | \mathbf{Z}) \approx \log \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{y} | \mathbf{0}, \mathbf{Q}_{X,X} + \beta^{-1} \mathbf{I}) = -\frac{1}{2} \log |\mathbf{Q}_{X,X} + \mathbf{\Lambda}| - \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{y}^\top (\mathbf{Q}_{X,X} + \mathbf{\Lambda})^{-1} \mathbf{y} - \frac{n}{2} \log(2\pi) \quad (17.93)$$

where  $\mathbf{\Lambda} = \beta^{-1} \mathbf{I}_N$ . If instead we use  $\mathbf{\Lambda} = \text{diag}(\mathbf{K}_{X,X} - \mathbf{Q}_{X,X}) + \sigma^2 \mathbf{I}_N$ , we get the fully independent training conditional or **FITC** method [SG06]. These approximations are still somewhat widely used. However, they suffer from several problems. First, their accuracy does not necessarily increase as we use more inducing points  $M$  [GM16, p59]. Second, they are designed for the regression setting, and it is not immediately clear how to extend them to non-Gaussian likelihoods. Third, computing the  $\mathbf{Q}_{X,X}$  term takes  $O(NM^2)$  time, which can be slow for large  $N$ . Most modern GP libraries use the VFE method (combined with the SVI minibatch approximation) instead.

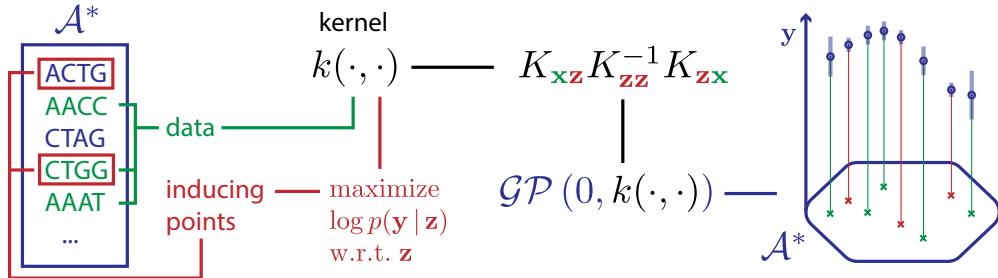


Figure 17.13: Illustration of how to choose inducing points from a discrete input domain (here DNA sequences of length 4) to maximize the log marginal likelihood. From Figure 1 of [For+18]. Used with kind permission of Vincent Fortuin.

#### 17.4.1.6 Inducing points for structured inputs

If the input domain is  $\mathbb{R}^D$ , we can optimize  $\mathbf{Z} \in \mathbb{R}^{MD}$  using gradient methods. However, one of the appeals of kernel methods is that they can handle structured inputs, such as strings and graphs (see Sec. 17.2.2.4). In this case, we cannot use gradient methods to select the inducing points. One approach we can use is to pick a subset of the input points [Cao+15]. Alternatively, we can use blackbox optimization methods, such as simulated annealing (Sec. 5.8.2), as discussed in [For+18]. See Fig. 17.13 for an illustration of this approach applied to sparse GPs with a string kernel.

#### 17.4.2 Exploiting parallelization and kernel matrix structure<sup>1</sup>

It takes  $O(N^3)$  time to compute the Cholesky decomposition of  $\mathbf{K}_{X,X}$ , which is needed to solve the linear system  $\hat{\mathbf{K}}_{X,X}\boldsymbol{\alpha} = \mathbf{y}$  and to compute  $|\mathbf{K}_{X,X}|$ , where  $\hat{\mathbf{K}}_{X,X} = \mathbf{K}_{X,X} + \sigma^2\mathbf{I}_N$ . An alternative to Cholesky decomposition is to use linear algebra methods, often called **Krylov subspace methods**, which are based just on **matrix vector multiplication** or **MVM**. These approaches are often much faster, since they can naturally exploit structure in the kernel matrix. Moreover, even if the kernel matrix does not have special structure, matrix multiplies are trivial to parallelize, and can thus be greatly accelerated by GPUs, unlike Cholesky based methods which are largely sequential.

##### 17.4.2.1 Using conjugate gradient and Lanczos methods

We can solve the linear system  $\hat{\mathbf{K}}_{X,X}\boldsymbol{\alpha} = \mathbf{y}$  using a method called **conjugate gradients** (CG). CG exploits the fact that the solution to  $\mathbf{Ax} = \mathbf{b}$  is the unique minimizer of the quadratic function  $\frac{1}{2}\mathbf{x}^\top \mathbf{A}^\top \mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}^\top \mathbf{b}$ , which can be found by iterating a simple set of equations.

The key computational step in CG is the ability to perform MVMs. Let  $\tau(\hat{\mathbf{K}}_{X,X})$  be the time complexity of a single MVM with  $\hat{\mathbf{K}}_{X,X}$ . For a dense  $N \times N$  matrix, we have  $\tau(\hat{\mathbf{K}}_{X,X}) = N^2$ . However, we may still be able to save time by solving the linear system approximately. In particular, if we perform  $T$  iterations, CG will take  $O(T\tau(\hat{\mathbf{K}}_{X,X}))$  time. If we run for  $T = N$ , and  $\tau(\hat{\mathbf{K}}_{X,X}) = N^2$ ,

<sup>1</sup> This section is coauthored with Andrew Wilson.

it gives the exact solution in  $O(N^3)$  time. However, often we can use fewer iterations and still get good accuracy, depending on the condition number of  $\hat{\mathbf{K}}_{X,X}$ .

We can compute the log determinant of a matrix using the MVM primitive with a similar iterative method known as **stochastic Lanczos quadrature** [UCS17; Don+17]. This procedure takes  $O(R\tau(\hat{\mathbf{K}}_{X,X}))$  time, where  $R$  is the rank of the Lanczos approximation.

These methods have been used in the **blackbox matrix-matrix multiplication (BBMM)** inference procedure of **GPyTorch** [Gar+18a]. Using 8 GPUs, this procedure enabled the authors of [Wan+19] to perform exact inference for a GP regression model on  $N \sim 10^4$  datapoints in seconds,  $N \sim 10^5$  datapoints in minutes, and  $N \sim 10^6$  datapoints in hours.

#### 17.4.2.2 Structured kernel interpolation

One way to ensure that MVMs are fast is to force the kernel matrix to have structure. The **structured kernel interpolation (SKI)** method of [WN15] does this as follows.

First it assumes we have a set of inducing points, with Gram matrix  $\mathbf{K}_{Z,Z}$ . It then interpolates these values to predict the entries of the full kernel matrix using

$$\mathbf{K}_{X,X} \approx \mathbf{W}_X \mathbf{K}_{Z,Z} \mathbf{W}_X^\top \quad (17.94)$$

where  $\mathbf{W}_X$  is a sparse matrix containing interpolation weights. If we use cubic interpolation, then in 1d each row has only 4 nonzeros. Thus we can compute  $(\mathbf{W}_X \mathbf{K}_{Z,Z} \mathbf{W}_X^\top) \mathbf{v}$  for any vector  $\mathbf{v}$  in  $O(N + M^2)$  time.

Note that the **SKI** approach generalizes all inducing point methods. For example, we can recover the subset of regressors method (SoR) method by setting the interpolation weights to  $\mathbf{W} = \mathbf{K}_{X,Z} \mathbf{K}_{Z,Z}^{-1}$ . We can identify this procedure as performing a global Gaussian process interpolation strategy on the user specified kernel. See [WN15] for details.

In 1d, we can further reduce the running time by choosing the inducing points to be on a regular grid, so that  $\mathbf{K}_{Z,Z}$  is a Toeplitz matrix. For higher dimensions, and inducing points on a regular multidimensional lattice,  $\mathbf{K}_{Z,Z}$  will be a Kronecker product of much smaller Toeplitz matrices, leading to MVMs in  $O(N + M \log M)$  time and  $O(N + M)$  space. The resulting method is called **KISS-GP** [WN15], which stands for ‘‘kernel interpolation for scalable, structured GPs’’.

Unfortunately, the KISS method can take exponential time in the input dimensions  $D$  when exploiting Kronecker structure in  $\mathbf{K}_{Z,Z}$ , due to the need to create a fully connected multidimensional lattice. Gardner et al. [Gar+18b] proposes a method called **SKIP**, which stands for ‘‘SKI for products’’. The idea is to leverage the fact that many kernels can be written or constructed as a product of 1d kernels, i.e.,  $\mathcal{K}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}') = \prod_{d=1}^D \mathcal{K}^d(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}')$ . This structure then gives rise to kernel matrices which can be expressed as a Hadamard product of kernel matrices, which can be exploited, in conjunction with stochastic Lanczos methods, for fast MVMs that scale linearly with input dimension. The overall running time to compute the log marginal likelihood (which is the bottleneck for kernel learning) using  $T$  iterations of CG and a Lanczos decomposition of rank  $R$ , becomes  $O(DR(N + M \log M) + R^3 N \log D + TR^2 N)$ . Typical values are  $R \sim 10^1$  and  $T \sim 10^2$ .

#### 17.4.3 Random feature approximation

Although the power of kernels resides in the ability to avoid working with featurized representations of the inputs, such kernelized methods take  $O(N^3)$  time, in order to invert the Gram matrix  $\mathbf{K}$ .

This can make it difficult to use such methods on large scale data. Fortunately, we can approximate the feature map for many (shift invariant) kernels using a randomly chosen finite set of  $M$  basis functions, thus reducing the cost to  $O(NM + M^3)$ . We briefly discuss this idea below. For more details, see e.g., [Liu+20].

#### 17.4.3.1 Random features for RBF kernel

We will focus on the case of the Gaussian RBF kernel. One can show that

$$\mathcal{K}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}') \approx \phi(\mathbf{x})^\top \phi(\mathbf{x}') \quad (17.95)$$

where the (real-valued) feature vector is given by

$$\phi(\mathbf{x}) \triangleq \frac{1}{\sqrt{T}} [(\sin(\boldsymbol{\omega}_1^\top \mathbf{x}), \dots, \sin(\boldsymbol{\omega}_T^\top \mathbf{x}), \cos(\boldsymbol{\omega}_1^\top \mathbf{x}), \dots, \cos(\boldsymbol{\omega}_T^\top \mathbf{x}))] \quad (17.96)$$

$$= \frac{1}{\sqrt{T}} [\sin(\boldsymbol{\Omega} \mathbf{x}), \cos(\boldsymbol{\Omega} \mathbf{x})] \quad (17.97)$$

where  $T = M/2$ , and  $\boldsymbol{\Omega} \in \mathbb{R}^{T \times D}$  is a random Gaussian matrix, where the entries are sampled iid from  $\mathcal{N}(0, 1/\sigma^2)$ , where  $\sigma$  is the kernel bandwidth. The bias of the approximation decreases as we increase  $M$ . In practice, we use a finite  $M$ , and compute a single sample Monte Carlo approximation to the expectation by drawing a single random matrix. The representation in Eq. (17.97) are called **random Fourier features (RFF)** [RR08] or “weighted sums of random kitchen sinks” [RR09].

We can also use positive random features, rather than trigonometric random features, which can be preferable in some applications, such as attention Sec. 15.6.4. In particular, we can use

$$\phi(\mathbf{x}) \triangleq e^{-\|\mathbf{x}\|^2/2} \frac{1}{\sqrt{M}} [(\exp(\boldsymbol{\omega}_1^\top \mathbf{x}), \dots, (\exp(\boldsymbol{\omega}_M^\top \mathbf{x}))] \quad (17.98)$$

where  $\boldsymbol{\omega}_m$  are sampled as before. For details, see [Cho+20b].

Regardless of whether we use trigonometric or positive features, we can obtain a lower variance estimate by ensuring that the rows of  $\mathbf{Z}$  are random but orthogonal; these are called **orthogonal random features**. Such sampling can be conducted efficiently via Gram-Schmidt orthogonalization of the unstructured Gaussian matrices [Yu+16], or several approximations that are even faster (see [CRW17; Cho+19]).

#### 17.4.3.2 Fastfood approximation

Unfortunately, storing the random matrix  $\boldsymbol{\Omega}$  takes  $O(DM)$  space, and computing  $\boldsymbol{\Omega} \mathbf{x}$  takes  $O(DM)$  time, where  $D$  is the input dimensionality, and  $M$  is the number of random features. This can be prohibitive if  $M \gg D$ , which it may need to be in order to get any benefits over using the original set of features. Fortunately, we can use the **fast Hadamard transform** to reduce the memory from  $O(MD)$  to  $O(M)$ , and reduce the time from  $O(MD)$  to  $O(M \log D)$ . This approach has been called **fastfood** [LSS13], a reference to the original term “kitchen sinks”.

### 17.4.3.3 Extreme learning machines

We can use the random features approximation to the kernel to convert a GP into a linear model of the form

$$f(\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \mathbf{W}\phi(\mathbf{x}) = \mathbf{W}h(\mathbf{Z}\mathbf{x}) \quad (17.99)$$

where  $h(a) = \sqrt{1/M}[\sin(a), \cos(a)]$  for RBF kernels. This is equivalent to a one-layer MLP with random (and fixed) input-to-hidden weights. When  $M > N$ , this corresponds to an over-parameterized model, which can perfectly interpolate the training data.

In [Cur+17], they apply this method to fit a logistic regression model of the form  $f(\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \mathbf{W}^\top h(\hat{\mathbf{Z}}\mathbf{x}) + \mathbf{b}$  using SGD; they call the resulting method “McKernel”. We can also optimize  $\mathbf{Z}$  as well as  $\mathbf{W}$ , as discussed in [Alb+17], although now the problem is no longer convex.

Alternatively, we can use  $M < N$ , but stack many such random nonlinear layers together, and just optimize the output weights. This has been called an **extreme learning machine** or **ELM** (see e.g., [Hua14]), although this work is controversial.<sup>2</sup>

## 17.5 Support vector machines (SVMs)

In this section, we discuss a form of (non-probabilistic) predictors for classification and regression problems which have the form

$$f(\mathbf{x}) = \sum_{i=1}^N \alpha_i \mathcal{K}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}_i) \quad (17.100)$$

By adding suitable constraints, we can ensure that many of the  $\alpha_i$  coefficients are 0, so that predictions at test time only depend on a subset of the training points. The surviving points are called “**support vectors**”, and the resulting model is called a **support vector machine** or **SVM**. We give a brief summary below. More details, can be found in e.g., [VGS97; SS01],

### 17.5.1 Large margin classifiers

Consider a binary classifier of the form  $h(\mathbf{x}) = \text{sign}(f(\mathbf{x}))$ , where the decision boundary is given by the following linear function:

$$f(\mathbf{x}) = \mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x} + w_0 \quad (17.101)$$

(In the SVM literature, it is common to assume the class labels are  $-1$  and  $+1$ , rather than  $0$  and  $1$ . To avoid confusion, we denote such target labels by  $\tilde{y}$  rather than  $y$ .) There may be many lines that separate the data. However, intuitively we would like to pick the one that has maximum **margin**, which is the distance of the closest point to the decision boundary, since this will give us the most robust solution. This idea is illustrated in Fig. 17.14: the solution on the left has larger margin than the one on the right, and intuitively is better, since it will be less sensitive to perturbations of the data.

<sup>2</sup>. The controversy has arisen because the inventor Guang-Bin Huang has been accused of not citing related prior work, such as the equivalent approach based on random feature approximations to kernels. For details, see [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Extreme\\_learning\\_machine#Controversy](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Extreme_learning_machine#Controversy).

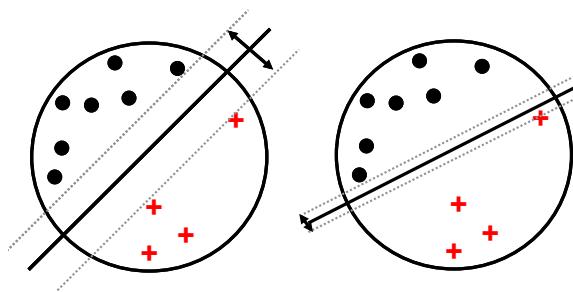


Figure 17.14: Illustration of the large margin principle. Left: a separating hyper-plane with large margin. Right: a separating hyper-plane with small margin.

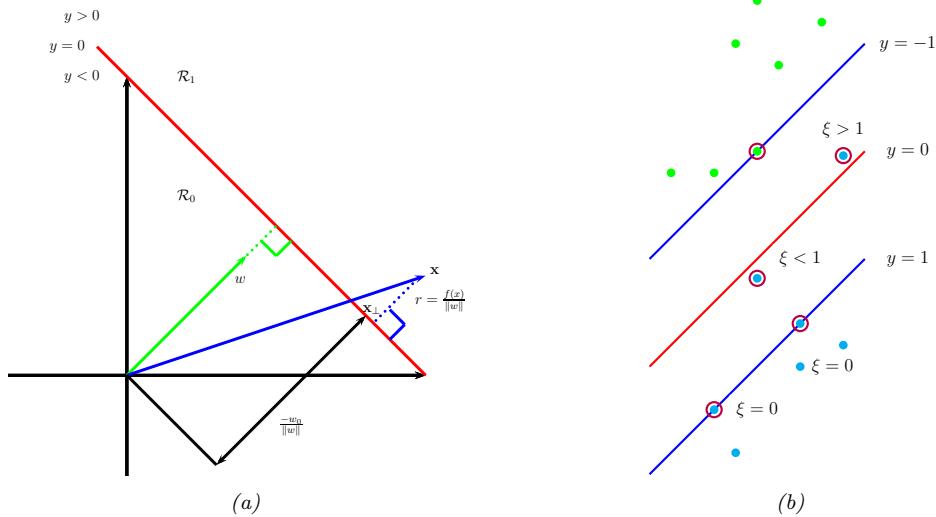


Figure 17.15: (a) Illustration of the geometry of a linear decision boundary in 2d. A point  $\mathbf{x}$  is classified as belonging in decision region  $\mathcal{R}_1$  if  $f(\mathbf{x}) > 0$ , otherwise it belongs in decision region  $\mathcal{R}_0$ ;  $\mathbf{w}$  is a vector which is perpendicular to the decision boundary. The term  $w_0$  controls the distance of the decision boundary from the origin.  $\mathbf{x}_\perp$  is the orthogonal projection of  $\mathbf{x}$  onto the boundary. The signed distance of  $\mathbf{x}$  from the boundary is given by  $f(\mathbf{x})/\|\mathbf{w}\|$ . Adapted from Figure 4.1 of [Bis06]. (b) Points with circles around them are support vectors, and have dual variables  $\alpha_n > 0$ . In the soft margin case, we associate a slack variable  $\xi_n$  with each example. If  $0 < \xi_n < 1$ , the point is inside the margin, but on the correct side of the decision boundary. If  $\xi_n > 1$ , the point is on the wrong side of the boundary. Adapted from Figure 7.3 of [Bis06].

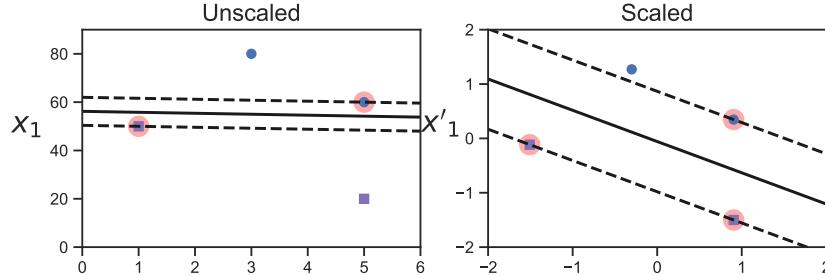


Figure 17.16: Illustration of the benefits of scaling the input features before computing a max margin classifier. Adapted from Figure 5.2 of [Gér19]. Generated by `svm_classifier_feature_scaling.py`.

How can we compute such a **large margin classifier**? First we need to derive an expression for the distance of a point to the decision boundary. Referring to Fig. 17.15(a), we see that

$$\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{x}_\perp + r \frac{\mathbf{w}}{\|\mathbf{w}\|} \quad (17.102)$$

where  $r$  is the distance of  $\mathbf{x}$  from the decision boundary whose normal vector is  $\mathbf{w}$ , and  $\mathbf{x}_\perp$  is the orthogonal projection of  $\mathbf{x}$  onto this boundary.

We would like to maximize  $r$ , so we need to express it as a function of  $\mathbf{w}$ . First, note that

$$f(\mathbf{x}) = \mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x} + w_0 = (\mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x}_\perp + w_0) + r \frac{\mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{w}}{\|\mathbf{w}\|} = (\mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x}_\perp + w_0) + r \|\mathbf{w}\| \quad (17.103)$$

Since  $0 = f(\mathbf{x}_\perp) = \mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x}_\perp + w_0$ , we have  $f(\mathbf{x}) = r \|\mathbf{w}\|$  and hence  $r = \frac{f(\mathbf{x})}{\|\mathbf{w}\|}$ .

Since we want to ensure each point is on the correct side of the boundary, we also require  $f(\mathbf{x}_n) \tilde{y}_n > 0$ . We want to maximize the distance of the closest point, so our final objective becomes

$$\max_{\mathbf{w}, w_0} \frac{1}{\|\mathbf{w}\|} \min_{n=1}^N [\tilde{y}_n (\mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x}_n + w_0)] \quad (17.104)$$

Note that by rescaling the parameters using  $\mathbf{w} \rightarrow k\mathbf{w}$  and  $w_0 \rightarrow kw_0$ , we do not change the distance of any point to the boundary, since the  $k$  factor cancels out when we divide by  $\|\mathbf{w}\|$ . Therefore let us define the scale factor such that  $\tilde{y}_n f_n = 1$  for the point that is closest to the decision boundary. Hence we require  $\tilde{y}_n f_n \geq 1$  for all  $n$ . Finally, note that maximizing  $1/\|\mathbf{w}\|$  is equivalent to minimizing  $\|\mathbf{w}\|^2$ . Thus we get the new objective

$$\min_{\mathbf{w}, w_0} \frac{1}{2} \|\mathbf{w}\|^2 \quad \text{s.t.} \quad \tilde{y}_n (\mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x}_n + w_0) \geq 1, n = 1 : N \quad (17.105)$$

(The factor of  $\frac{1}{2}$  is added for convenience and doesn't affect the optimal parameters.) The constraint says that we want all points to be on the correct side of the decision boundary with a margin of at least 1.

Note that it is important to scale the input variables before using an SVM, otherwise the margin measures distance of a point to the boundary using all input dimensions equally. See Fig. 17.16 for an illustration.

### 17.5.2 The dual problem

The objective in Eq. (17.105) is a standard quadratic programming problem (Sec. 5.5.4), since we have a quadratic objective subject to linear constraints. This has  $N + D + 1$  variables subject to  $N$  constraints, and is known as a **primal problem**.

In convex optimization, for every primal problem we can derive a **dual problem**. Let  $\boldsymbol{\alpha} \in \mathbb{R}^N$  be the dual variables, corresponding to Lagrange multipliers that enforce the  $N$  inequality constraints. The generalized Lagrangian is given below (see Sec. 5.5.2 for relevant background information on constrained optimization):

$$\mathcal{L}(\mathbf{w}, w_0, \boldsymbol{\alpha}) = \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{w} - \sum_{n=1}^N \alpha_n (\tilde{y}_n (\mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x}_n + w_0) - 1) \quad (17.106)$$

To optimize this, we must find a stationary point that satisfies

$$(\hat{\mathbf{w}}, \hat{w}_0, \hat{\boldsymbol{\alpha}}) = \min_{\mathbf{w}, w_0} \max_{\boldsymbol{\alpha}} \mathcal{L}(\mathbf{w}, w_0, \boldsymbol{\alpha}) \quad (17.107)$$

We can do this by computing the partial derivatives wrt  $\mathbf{w}$  and  $w_0$  and setting to zero. We have

$$\nabla_{\mathbf{w}} \mathcal{L}(\mathbf{w}, w_0, \boldsymbol{\alpha}) = \mathbf{w} - \sum_{n=1}^N \alpha_n \tilde{y}_n \mathbf{x}_n \quad (17.108)$$

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial w_0} \mathcal{L}(\mathbf{w}, w_0, \boldsymbol{\alpha}) = - \sum_{n=1}^N \alpha_n \tilde{y}_n \quad (17.109)$$

and hence

$$\hat{\mathbf{w}} = \sum_{n=1}^N \hat{\alpha}_n \tilde{y}_n \mathbf{x}_n \quad (17.110)$$

$$0 = \sum_{n=1}^N \hat{\alpha}_n \tilde{y}_n \quad (17.111)$$

Plugging these into the Lagrangian yields the following

$$\mathcal{L}(\hat{\mathbf{w}}, \hat{w}_0, \boldsymbol{\alpha}) = \frac{1}{2} \hat{\mathbf{w}}^\top \hat{\mathbf{w}} - \sum_{n=1}^N \alpha_n \tilde{y}_n \hat{\mathbf{w}}^\top \mathbf{x}_n - \sum_{n=1}^N \alpha_n \tilde{y}_n w_0 + \sum_{n=1}^N \alpha_n \quad (17.112)$$

$$= \frac{1}{2} \hat{\mathbf{w}}^\top \hat{\mathbf{w}} - \hat{\mathbf{w}}^\top \hat{\mathbf{w}} - 0 + \sum_{n=1}^N \alpha_n \quad (17.113)$$

$$= -\frac{1}{2} \sum_{i=1}^N \sum_{j=1}^N \alpha_i \alpha_j \tilde{y}_i \tilde{y}_j \mathbf{x}_i^\top \mathbf{x}_j + \sum_{n=1}^N \alpha_n \quad (17.114)$$

This is called the **dual form** of the objective. We want to maximize this wrt  $\boldsymbol{\alpha}$  subject to the constraints that  $\sum_{n=1}^N \alpha_n \tilde{y}_n = 0$  and  $0 \leq \alpha_n$  for  $n = 1 : N$ .

The above objective is a quadratic problem in  $N$  variables. Standard QP solvers take  $O(N^3)$  time. However, specialized algorithms, which avoid the use of generic QP solvers, have been developed for this problem, such as the **sequential minimal optimization** or **SMO** algorithm [Pla98], which takes  $O(N)$  to  $O(N^2)$  time.

Since this is a convex objective, the solution must satisfy the KKT conditions (Sec. 5.5.2), which tell us that the following properties hold:

$$\alpha_n \geq 0 \quad (17.115)$$

$$\tilde{y}_n f(\mathbf{x}_n) - 1 \geq 0 \quad (17.116)$$

$$\alpha_n (\tilde{y}_n f(\mathbf{x}_n) - 1) = 0 \quad (17.117)$$

Hence either  $\alpha_n = 0$  (in which case example  $n$  is ignored when computing  $\hat{\mathbf{w}}$ ) or the constraint  $\tilde{y}_n(\hat{\mathbf{w}}^\top \mathbf{x}_n + \hat{w}_0) = 1$  is active. This latter condition means that example  $n$  lies on the decision boundary; these points are known as the **support vectors**, as shown in Fig. 17.15(b). We denote the set of support vectors by  $\mathcal{S}$ .

To perform prediction, we use

$$f(\mathbf{x}; \hat{\mathbf{w}}, \hat{w}_0) = \hat{\mathbf{w}}^\top \mathbf{x} + \hat{w}_0 = \sum_{n \in \mathcal{S}} \alpha_n \tilde{y}_n \mathbf{x}_n^\top \mathbf{x} + \hat{w}_0 \quad (17.118)$$

To solve for  $\hat{w}_0$  we can use the fact that for any support vector, we have  $\tilde{y}_n f(\mathbf{x}; \hat{\mathbf{w}}, \hat{w}_0) = 1$ . Multiplying both sides by  $\tilde{y}_n$ , and exploiting the fact that  $\tilde{y}_n^2 = 1$ , we get  $\hat{w}_0 = \tilde{y}_n - \hat{\mathbf{w}}^\top \mathbf{x}_n$ . In practice we get better results by averaging over all the support vectors to get

$$\hat{w}_0 = \frac{1}{|\mathcal{S}|} \sum_{n \in \mathcal{S}} (\tilde{y}_n - \hat{\mathbf{w}}^\top \mathbf{x}_n) = \frac{1}{|\mathcal{S}|} \sum_{n \in \mathcal{S}} (\tilde{y}_n - \sum_{m \in \mathcal{S}} \alpha_m \tilde{y}_m \mathbf{x}_m^\top \mathbf{x}_n) \quad (17.119)$$

### 17.5.3 Soft margin classifiers

If the data is not linearly separable, there will be no feasible solution in which  $\tilde{y}_n f_n \geq 1$  for all  $n$ . We therefore introduce **slack variables**  $\xi_n \geq 0$  and replace the hard constraints that  $\tilde{y}_n f_n \geq 0$  with the **soft margin constraints** that  $\tilde{y}_n f_n \geq 1 - \xi_n$ . The new objective becomes

$$\min_{\mathbf{w}, w_0, \boldsymbol{\xi}} \frac{1}{2} \|\mathbf{w}\|^2 + C \sum_{n=1}^N \xi_n \quad \text{s.t. } \xi_n \geq 0, \quad \tilde{y}_n (\mathbf{x}_n^\top \mathbf{w} + w_0) \geq 1 - \xi_n \quad (17.120)$$

where  $C \geq 0$  is a hyper parameter controlling how many points we allow to violate the margin constraint. (If  $C = \infty$ , we recover the unregularized, hard-margin classifier.)

The corresponding Lagrangian for the soft margin classifier becomes

$$\mathcal{L}(\mathbf{w}, w_0, \boldsymbol{\alpha}, \boldsymbol{\xi}, \boldsymbol{\mu}) = \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{w} + C \sum_{n=1}^N \xi_n - \sum_{n=1}^N \alpha_n (\tilde{y}_n (\mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x}_n + b) - 1 + \xi_n) - \sum_{n=1}^N \mu_n \xi_n \quad (17.121)$$

where  $\alpha_n \geq 0$  and  $\mu_n \geq 0$  are the Lagrange multipliers. Optimizing out  $\mathbf{w}$ ,  $w_0$  and  $\boldsymbol{\xi}$  gives the dual form

$$\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\alpha}) = \sum_{i=1}^N \alpha_i - \frac{1}{2} \sum_{i=1}^N \sum_{j=1}^N \alpha_i \alpha_j \tilde{y}_i \tilde{y}_j \mathbf{x}_i^\top \mathbf{x}_j \quad (17.122)$$

This is identical to the hard margin case; however, the constraints are different. In particular, the KKT conditions imply

$$0 \leq \alpha_n \leq C \quad (17.123)$$

$$\sum_{n=1}^N \alpha_n \tilde{y}_n = 0 \quad (17.124)$$

If  $\alpha_n = 0$ , the point is ignored. If  $0 < \alpha_n < C$  then  $\xi_n = 0$ , so the point lies on the margin. If  $\alpha_n = C$ , the point can lie inside the margin, and can either be correctly classified if  $\xi_n \leq 1$ , or misclassified if  $\xi_n > 1$ . See Fig. 17.15(b) for an illustration. Hence  $\sum_n \xi_n$  is an upper bound on the number of misclassified points.

As before, the bias term can be computed using

$$\hat{w}_0 = \frac{1}{|\mathcal{M}|} \sum_{n \in \mathcal{M}} \left( \tilde{y}_n - \sum_{m \in \mathcal{S}} \alpha_m \tilde{y}_m \mathbf{x}_m^\top \mathbf{x}_n \right) \quad (17.125)$$

where  $\mathcal{M}$  is the set of points having  $0 < \alpha_n < C$ .

There is an alternative formulation of the soft margin SVM known as the  **$\nu$ -SVM classifier** [Sch+00]. This involves maximizing

$$\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\alpha}) = -\frac{1}{2} \sum_{i=1}^N \sum_{j=1}^N \alpha_i \alpha_j \tilde{y}_i \tilde{y}_j \mathbf{x}_i^\top \mathbf{x}_j \quad (17.126)$$

subject to the constraints that

$$0 \leq \alpha_n \leq 1/N \quad (17.127)$$

$$\sum_{n=1}^N \alpha_n \tilde{y}_n = 0 \quad (17.128)$$

$$\sum_{n=1}^M \alpha_n \geq \nu \quad (17.129)$$

This has the advantage that the parameter  $\nu$ , which replaces  $C$ , can be interpreted as an upper bound on the fraction of **margin errors** (points for which  $\xi_n > 0$ ), as well as a lower bound on the number of support vectors.

#### 17.5.4 The kernel trick

So far we have converted the large margin binary classification problem into a dual problem in  $N$  unknowns ( $\boldsymbol{\alpha}$ ) which (in general) takes  $O(N^3)$  time to solve, which can be slow. However, the principal benefit of the dual problem is that we can replace all inner product operations  $\mathbf{x}^\top \mathbf{x}'$  with a call to a positive definite (Mercer) kernel function,  $\mathcal{K}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}')$ . This is called the **kernel trick**.

In particular, we can rewrite the prediction function in Eq. (17.118) as follows:

$$f(\mathbf{x}) = \hat{\mathbf{w}}^\top \mathbf{x} + \hat{w}_0 = \sum_{n \in \mathcal{S}} \alpha_n \tilde{y}_n \mathbf{x}_n^\top \mathbf{x} + \hat{w}_0 = \sum_{n \in \mathcal{S}} \alpha_n \tilde{y}_n \mathcal{K}(\mathbf{x}_n, \mathbf{x}) + \hat{w}_0 \quad (17.130)$$

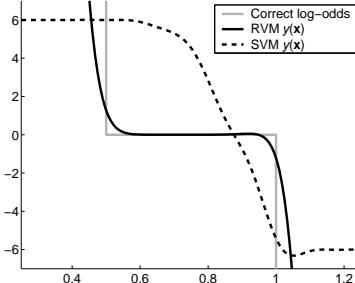


Figure 17.17: Log-odds vs  $x$  for 3 different methods. Adapted from Figure 10 of [Tip01]. Used with kind permission of Mike Tipping.

We also need to kernelize the bias term. This can be done by kernelizing Eq. (17.119) as follows:

$$\hat{w}_0 = \frac{1}{|\mathcal{S}|} \sum_{i \in \mathcal{S}} \left( \tilde{y}_i - \left( \sum_{j \in \mathcal{S}} \hat{\alpha}_j \tilde{y}_j \mathbf{x}_j \right)^T \mathbf{x}_i \right) = \frac{1}{|\mathcal{S}|} \sum_{i \in \mathcal{S}} \left( \tilde{y}_i - \left( \sum_{j \in \mathcal{S}} \hat{\alpha}_j \tilde{y}_j \mathcal{K}(\mathbf{x}_j, \mathbf{x}_i) \right) \right) \quad (17.131)$$

The kernel trick allows us to avoid having to deal with an explicit feature representation of our data, and allows us to easily apply classifiers to structured objects, such as strings and graphs.

### 17.5.5 Converting SVM outputs into probabilities

An SVM classifier produces a hard-labeling,  $\hat{y}(\mathbf{x}) = \text{sign}(f(\mathbf{x}))$ . However, we often want a measure of confidence in our prediction. One heuristic approach is to interpret  $f(\mathbf{x})$  as the log-odds ratio,  $\log \frac{p(y=1|\mathbf{x})}{p(y=0|\mathbf{x})}$ . We can then convert the output of an SVM to a probability using

$$p(y=1|\mathbf{x}, \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \sigma(a f(\mathbf{x}) + b) \quad (17.132)$$

where  $a, b$  can be estimated by maximum likelihood on a separate validation set. (Using the training set to estimate  $a$  and  $b$  leads to severe overfitting.) This technique was first proposed in [Pla00], and is known as **Platt scaling**.

However, the resulting probabilities are not particularly well calibrated, since there is nothing in the SVM training procedure that justifies interpreting  $f(\mathbf{x})$  as a log-odds ratio. To illustrate this, consider an example from [Tip01]. Suppose we have 1d data where  $p(x|y=0) = \text{Unif}(0, 1)$  and  $p(x|y=1) = \text{Unif}(0.5, 1.5)$ . Since the class-conditional distributions overlap in the  $[0.5, 1]$  range, the log-odds of class 1 over class 0 should be zero in this region, and infinite outside this region. We sampled 1000 points from the model, and then fit a probabilistic kernel classifier (an RVM, described in Sec. 17.6.1) and an SVM with a Gaussian kernel of width 0.1. Both models can perfectly capture the decision boundary, and achieve a generalization error of 25%, which is Bayes optimal in this problem. The probabilistic output from the RVM is a good approximation to the true log-odds, but this is not the case for the SVM, as shown in Fig. 17.17.

### 17.5.6 Connection with logistic regression

We have seen that data points that are on the correct side of the decision boundary have  $\xi_n = 0$ ; for the others, we have  $\xi_n = 1 - \tilde{y}_n f(\mathbf{x}_n)$ . Therefore we can rewrite the objective in Eq. (17.120) as follows:

$$\mathcal{L}(\mathbf{w}) = \sum_{n=1}^N \ell_{\text{hinge}}(\tilde{y}_n, f(\mathbf{x}_n)) + \lambda \|\mathbf{w}\|^2 \quad (17.133)$$

where  $\lambda = (2C)^{-1}$  and  $\ell_{\text{hinge}}(y, \eta)$  is the **hinge loss** function defined by

$$\ell_{\text{hinge}}(\tilde{y}, \eta) = \max(0, 1 - \tilde{y}\eta) \quad (17.134)$$

As we see from Fig. 4.2, this is a convex, piecewise differentiable upper bound to the 0-1 loss, that has the shape of a partially open door hinge.

By contrast, (penalized) logistic regression optimizes

$$\mathcal{L}(\mathbf{w}) = \sum_{n=1}^N \ell_{ll}(\tilde{y}_n, f(\mathbf{x}_n)) + \lambda \|\mathbf{w}\|^2 \quad (17.135)$$

where the **log loss** is given by

$$\ell_{ll}(\tilde{y}, \eta) = -\log p(y|\eta) = \log(1 + e^{-\tilde{y}\eta}) \quad (17.136)$$

This is also plotted in Fig. 4.2. We see that it is similar to the hinge loss, but with two important differences. First the hinge loss is piecewise linear, so we cannot use regular gradient methods to optimize it. (We can, however, compute the subgradient at  $\tilde{y}\eta = 1$ .) Second, the hinge loss has a region where it is strictly 0; this results in sparse estimates.

We see that both functions are convex upper bounds on the 0-1 loss, which is given by

$$\ell_{01}(\tilde{y}, \hat{y}) = \mathbb{I}(\tilde{y} \neq \hat{y}) = \mathbb{I}(\tilde{y} \hat{y} < 0) \quad (17.137)$$

These upper bounds are easier to optimize and can be viewed as surrogates for the 0-1 loss. See Sec. 4.3.2 for details.

### 17.5.7 Multi-class classification with SVMs

SVMs are inherently a binary classifier. One way to convert them to a multi-class classification model is to train  $C$  binary classifiers, where the data from class  $c$  is treated as positive, and the data from all the other classes is treated as negative. We then use the rule  $\hat{y}(\mathbf{x}) = \arg \max_c f_c(\mathbf{x})$  to predict the final label, where  $f_c(\mathbf{x}) = \log \frac{p(c=1|\mathbf{x})}{p(c=0|\mathbf{x})}$  is the score given by classifier  $c$ . This is known as the **one-versus-the-rest** approach (also called **one-vs-all**).

Unfortunately, this approach has several problems. First, it can result in regions of input space which are ambiguously labeled. For example, the green region at the top of Fig. 17.18(a) is predicted to be both class 2 and class 1. A second problem is that the magnitude of the  $f_c$ 's scores are not calibrated with each other, so it is hard to compare them. Finally, each binary subproblem is likely to suffer from the class imbalance problem (Sec. 10.3.8.2). For example, suppose we have 10

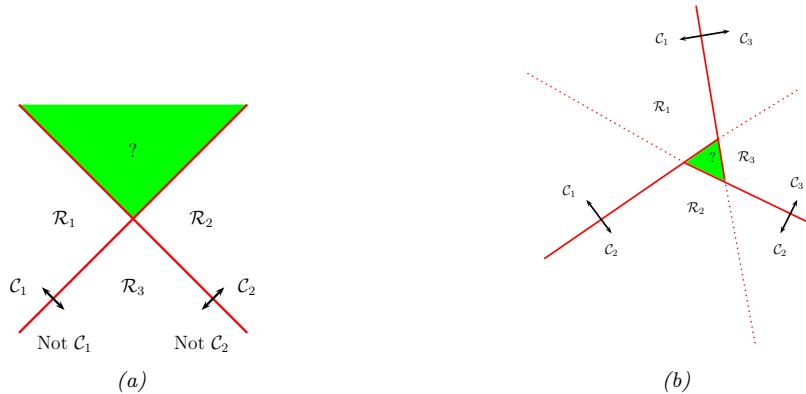


Figure 17.18: (a) The one-versus-rest approach. The green region is predicted to be both class 1 and class 2. (b) The one-versus-one approach. The label of the green region is ambiguous. Adapted from Figure 4.2 of [Bis06].

equally represented classes. When training  $f_1$ , we will have 10% positive examples and 90% negative examples, which can hurt performance.

Another approach is to use the **one-versus-one** or OVO approach, also called **all pairs**, in which we train  $C(C - 1)/2$  classifiers to discriminate all pairs  $f_{c,c'}$ . We then classify a point into the class which has the highest number of votes. However, this can also result in ambiguities, as shown in Fig. 17.18(b). Also, this requires fitting  $O(C^2)$  models.

### 17.5.8 How to choose the regularizer $C$

SVMs require that you specify the kernel function and the parameter  $C$ . Typically  $C$  is chosen by cross-validation. Note, however, that  $C$  interacts quite strongly with the kernel parameters. For example, suppose we are using an RBF kernel with precision  $\gamma = \frac{1}{2\sigma^2}$ . If  $\gamma$  is large, corresponding to narrow kernels, we may need heavy regularization, and hence small  $C$ . If  $\gamma$  is small, a larger value of  $C$  should be used. So we see that  $\gamma$  and  $C$  are tightly coupled, as illustrated in Fig. 17.19.

The authors of libsvm [HCL09] recommend using CV over a 2d grid with values  $C \in \{2^{-5}, 2^{-3}, \dots, 2^{15}\}$  and  $\gamma \in \{2^{-15}, 2^{-13}, \dots, 2^3\}$ . See Fig. 17.20 which shows the CV estimate of the 0-1 risk as a function of  $C$  and  $\gamma$ .

To choose  $C$  efficiently, one can develop a path following algorithm in the spirit of lars (Sec. 11.5.4). The basic idea is to start with  $C$  small, so that the margin is wide, and hence all points are inside of it and have  $\alpha_i = 1$ . By slowly increasing  $C$ , a small set of points will move from inside the margin to outside, and their  $\alpha_n$  values will change from 1 to 0, as they cease to be support vectors. When  $C$  is maximal, the margin becomes empty, and no support vectors remain. See [Has+04] for the details.

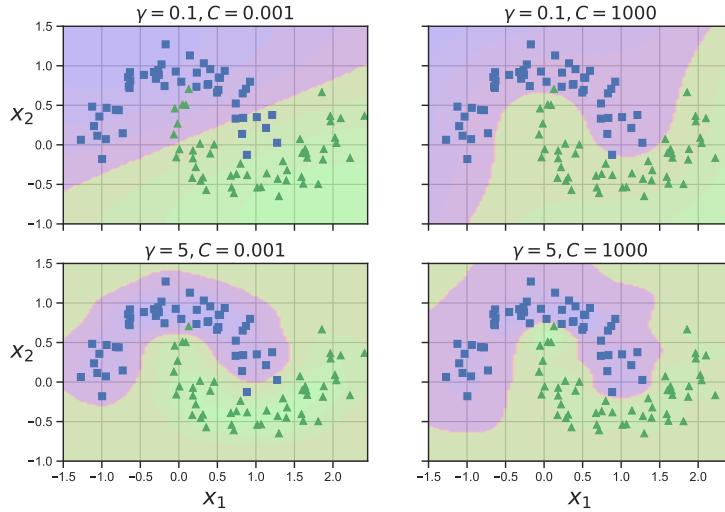


Figure 17.19: SVM classifier with RBF kernel with precision  $\gamma$  and regularizer  $C$  applied to two moons data. Adapted from Figure 5.9 of [Gér19]. Generated by `svm_classifier_2d.py`.

### 17.5.9 Kernel ridge regression

Recall the equation for ridge regression from Eq. (11.57):

$$\hat{\mathbf{w}}_{\text{map}} = (\mathbf{X}^\top \mathbf{X} + \lambda \mathbf{I}_D)^{-1} \mathbf{X}^\top \mathbf{y} = \left( \sum_n \mathbf{x}_n \mathbf{x}_n^\top + \lambda \mathbf{I}_D \right)^{-1} \left( \sum_n \tilde{y}_n \mathbf{x}_n \right) \quad (17.138)$$

Using the matrix inversion lemma (Sec. B.3.3), we can rewrite the ridge estimate as follows

$$\mathbf{w} = \mathbf{X}^\top (\mathbf{X} \mathbf{X}^\top + \lambda \mathbf{I}_N)^{-1} \mathbf{y} = \sum_n \mathbf{x}_n \left( \left( \sum_n \mathbf{x}_n^\top \mathbf{x}_n + \lambda \mathbf{I}_N \right)^{-1} \mathbf{y} \right)_n \quad (17.139)$$

Let us define the following **dual variables**:

$$\boldsymbol{\alpha} \triangleq (\mathbf{X} \mathbf{X}^\top + \lambda \mathbf{I}_N)^{-1} \mathbf{y} = \left( \sum_n \mathbf{x}_n^\top \mathbf{x}_n + \lambda \mathbf{I}_N \right)^{-1} \mathbf{y} \quad (17.140)$$

Then we can rewrite the **primal variables** as follows

$$\mathbf{w} = \mathbf{X}^\top \boldsymbol{\alpha} = \sum_{n=1}^N \alpha_n \mathbf{x}_n \quad (17.141)$$

This tells us that the solution vector is just a linear sum of the  $N$  training vectors. When we plug this in at test time to compute the predictive mean, we get

$$f(\mathbf{x}; \mathbf{w}) = \mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x} = \sum_{n=1}^N \alpha_n \mathbf{x}_n^\top \mathbf{x} \quad (17.142)$$

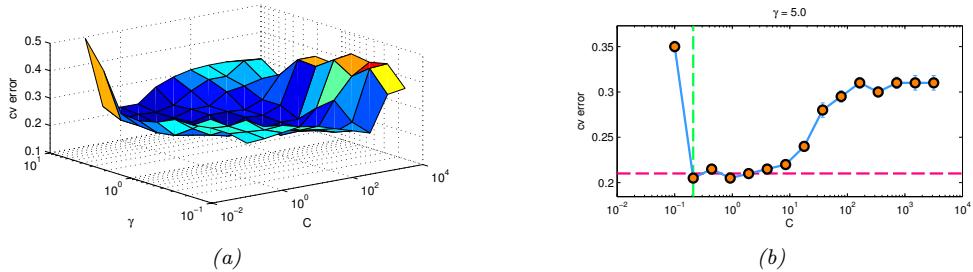


Figure 17.20: (a) A cross validation estimate of the 0-1 error for an SVM classifier with RBF kernel with different precisions  $\gamma = 1/(2\sigma^2)$  and different regularizer  $\lambda = 1/C$ , applied to a synthetic data set drawn from a mixture of 2 Gaussians. (b) A slice through this surface for  $\gamma = 5$ . The red dotted line is the Bayes optimal error, computed using Bayes rule applied to the model used to generate the data. Adapted from Figure 12.6 of [HTF09]. Generated by `svmCgammaDemo.m`.

We can then use the kernel trick to rewrite this as

$$f(\mathbf{x}; \mathbf{w}) = \sum_{n=1}^N \alpha_n \mathcal{K}(\mathbf{x}_n, \mathbf{x}) \quad (17.143)$$

where

$$\boldsymbol{\alpha} = (\mathbf{K} + \lambda \mathbf{I}_N)^{-1} \mathbf{y} \quad (17.144)$$

In other words,

$$f(\mathbf{x}; \mathbf{w}) = \mathbf{k}^\top (\mathbf{K} + \lambda \mathbf{I}_N)^{-1} \mathbf{y} \quad (17.145)$$

where  $\mathbf{k} = [\mathcal{K}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}_1), \dots, \mathcal{K}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}_N)]$ . This is called **kernel ridge regression**. (See Sec. 17.7.5 for more discussion of this method.)

The trouble with the above approach is that the solution vector  $\alpha$  is not sparse, so predictions at test time will take  $O(N)$  time. We discuss a solution to this in Sec. 17.5.10.

### 17.5.10 SVMs for regression

Consider the following  $\ell_2$ -regularized ERM problem:

$$J(\mathbf{w}, \lambda) = \lambda ||\mathbf{w}||^2 + \sum_{n=1}^N \ell(\tilde{y}_n, \hat{y}_n) \quad (17.146)$$

where  $\hat{y}_n = \mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x}_n + w_0$ . If we use the quadratic loss,  $\ell(y, \hat{y}) = (y - \hat{y})^2$ , where  $y, \hat{y} \in \mathbb{R}$ , we recover ridge regression (Sec. 11.3). If we then apply the kernel trick, we recover kernel ridge regression (Sec. 17.5.9).

The problem with kernel ridge regression is that the solution depends on all  $N$  training points, which makes it computationally intractable. However, by changing the loss function, we can make the optimal set of basis function coefficients,  $\alpha^*$ , be sparse, as we show below.

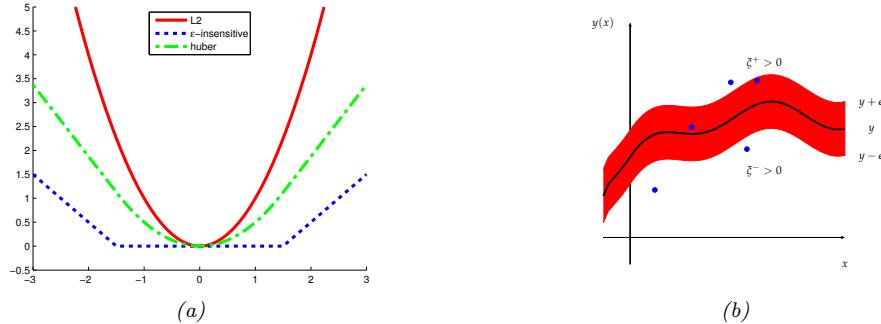


Figure 17.21: (a) Illustration of  $\ell_2$ , Huber and  $\epsilon$ -insensitive loss functions, where  $\epsilon = 1.5$ . Generated by `huberLossPlot.m`. (b) Illustration of the  $\epsilon$ -tube used in SVM regression. Points above the tube have  $\xi_i^+ > 0$  and  $\xi_i^- = 0$ . Points below the tube have  $\xi_i^+ = 0$  and  $\xi_i^- > 0$ . Points inside the tube have  $\xi_i^+ = \xi_i^- = 0$ . Adapted from Figure 7.7 of [Bis06].

In particular, consider the following variant of the Huber loss function (Sec. 8.1.5.3) called the **epsilon insensitive loss function**:

$$L_\epsilon(y, \hat{y}) \triangleq \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } |y - \hat{y}| < \epsilon \\ |y - \hat{y}| - \epsilon & \text{otherwise} \end{cases} \quad (17.147)$$

This means that any point lying inside an  $\epsilon$ -tube around the prediction is not penalized, as in Fig. 17.21.

The corresponding objective function is usually written in the following form

$$J = \frac{1}{2} \|\mathbf{w}\|^2 + C \sum_{n=1}^N L_\epsilon(\tilde{y}_n, \hat{y}_n) \quad (17.148)$$

where  $\hat{y}_n = f(\mathbf{x}_n) = \mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{x}_n + w_0$  and  $C = 1/\lambda$  is a regularization constant. This objective is convex and unconstrained, but not differentiable, because of the absolute value function in the loss term. As in Sec. 11.5.9, where we discussed the lasso problem, there are several possible algorithms we could use. One popular approach is to formulate the problem as a constrained optimization problem. In particular, we introduce **slack variables** to represent the degree to which each point lies outside the tube:

$$\tilde{y}_n \leq f(\mathbf{x}_n) + \epsilon + \xi_n^+ \quad (17.149)$$

$$\tilde{y}_n \geq f(\mathbf{x}_n) - \epsilon - \xi_n^- \quad (17.150)$$

Given this, we can rewrite the objective as follows:

$$J = \frac{1}{2} \|\mathbf{w}\|^2 + C \sum_{n=1}^N (\xi_n^+ + \xi_n^-) \quad (17.151)$$

This is a quadratic function of  $\mathbf{w}$ , and must be minimized subject to the linear constraints in Equations 17.149-17.150, as well as the positivity constraints  $\xi_n^+ \geq 0$  and  $\xi_n^- \geq 0$ . This is a standard quadratic program in  $2N + D + 1$  variables.

By forming the Lagrangian and optimizing, as we did above, one can show that the optimal solution has the following form

$$\hat{\mathbf{w}} = \sum_n \alpha_n \mathbf{x}_n \quad (17.152)$$

where  $\alpha_n \geq 0$  are the dual variables. (See e.g., [SS02] for details.) Fortunately, the  $\alpha$  vector is sparse, meaning that many of its entries are equal to 0. This is because the loss doesn't care about errors which are smaller than  $\epsilon$ . The degree of sparsity is controlled by  $C$  and  $\epsilon$ .

The  $\mathbf{x}_n$  for which  $\alpha_n > 0$  are called the **support vectors**; these are points for which the errors lie on or outside the  $\epsilon$  tube. These are the only training examples we need to keep for prediction at test time, since

$$f(\mathbf{x}) = \hat{w}_0 + \hat{\mathbf{w}}^\top \mathbf{x} = \hat{w}_0 + \sum_{n:\alpha_n>0} \alpha_n \mathbf{x}_n^\top \mathbf{x} \quad (17.153)$$

Finally, we can use the kernel trick to get

$$f(\mathbf{x}) = \hat{w}_0 + \sum_{n:\alpha_n>0} \alpha_n \mathcal{K}(\mathbf{x}_n, \mathbf{x}) \quad (17.154)$$

This overall technique is called **support vector machine regression** or **SVM regression** for short, and was first proposed in [VGS97].

In Fig. 17.22, we give an example where we use an RBF kernel with  $\gamma = 1$ . When  $C$  is small, the model is heavily regularized; when  $C$  is large, the model is less regularized and can fit the data better. We also see that when  $\epsilon$  is small, the tube is smaller, so there are more support vectors.

## 17.6 Sparse vector machines

GPs are very flexible models, but incur an  $O(N)$  time cost at prediction time, which can be prohibitive. SVMs solve that problem by estimating a sparse weight vector. However, SVMs do not give calibrated probabilistic outputs.

We can get the best of both worlds by using parametric models, where the feature vector is defined using basis functions centered on each of the training points, as follows:

$$\phi(\mathbf{x}) = [\mathcal{K}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}_1), \dots, \mathcal{K}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}_N)] \quad (17.155)$$

where  $\mathcal{K}$  is any similarity kernel, not necessarily a Mercer kernel. Eq. (17.155) maps  $\mathbf{x} \in \mathcal{X}$  into  $\phi(\mathbf{x}) \in \mathbb{R}^N$ . We can plug this new feature vector into any discriminative model, such as logistic regression. Since we have  $D = N$  parameters, we need to use some kind of regularization, to prevent overfitting. If we fit such a model using  $\ell_2$  regularization (which we will call **L2VM**, for  $\ell_2$ -vector machine), the result often has good predictive performance, but the weight vector  $\mathbf{w}$  will be dense, and will depend on all  $N$  training points. A natural solution is to impose a sparsity-promoting prior on  $\mathbf{w}$ , so that not all the exemplars need to be kept. We call such methods **sparse vector machines**.

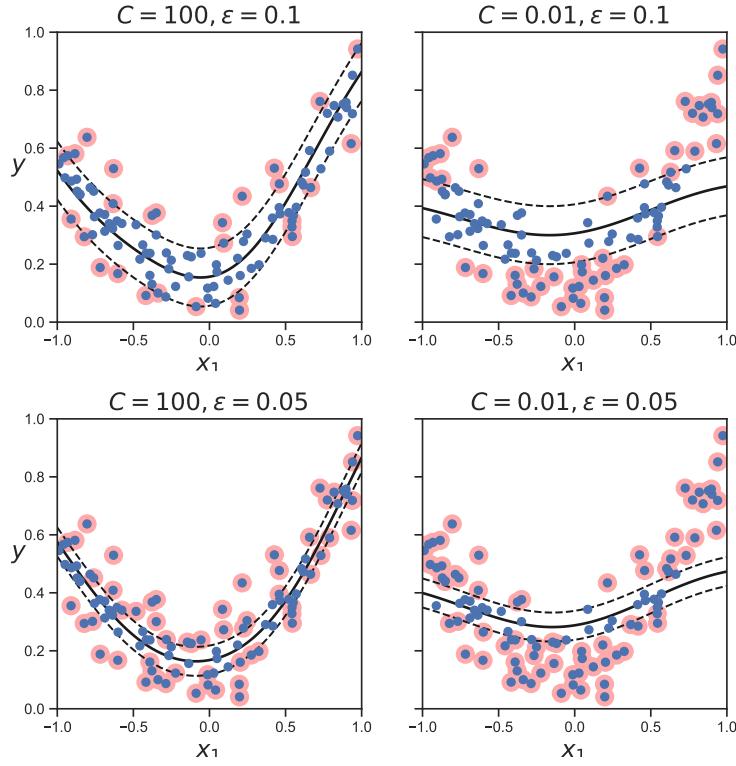


Figure 17.22: Illustration of support vector regression. Adapted from Figure 5.11 of [Gér19]. Generated by `svm_regression_1d.py`.

### 17.6.1 Relevance vector machines (RVMs)

The simplest way to ensure  $\mathbf{w}$  is sparse is to use  $\ell_1$  regularization, as in Sec. 11.5. We call this **L1VM** or **Laplace vector machine**, since this approach is equivalent to using MAP estimation with a Laplace prior for  $\mathbf{w}$ .

However, sometimes  $\ell_1$  regularization does not result in a sufficient level of sparsity for a given level of accuracy. An alternative approach is based on the use of **ARD** or **automatic relevancy determination**, which uses type II maximum likelihood (aka empirical Bayes) to estimate a sparse weight vector (see Sec. 11.6.6 for the details). ARD applied to a linear model with features defined by Eq. (17.155) results in a method called the **relevance vector machine** or **RVM** [Tip01; TF03].

### 17.6.2 Comparison of sparse and dense kernel methods

In Fig. 17.23, we compare L2VM, L1VM, RVM and an SVM using an RBF kernel on a binary classification problem in 2d. For simplicity,  $\lambda$  was chosen by hand for L2VM and L1VM; for RVMS, the parameters are estimated using empirical Bayes; and for the SVM, we use CV to pick  $C = 1/\lambda$ ,

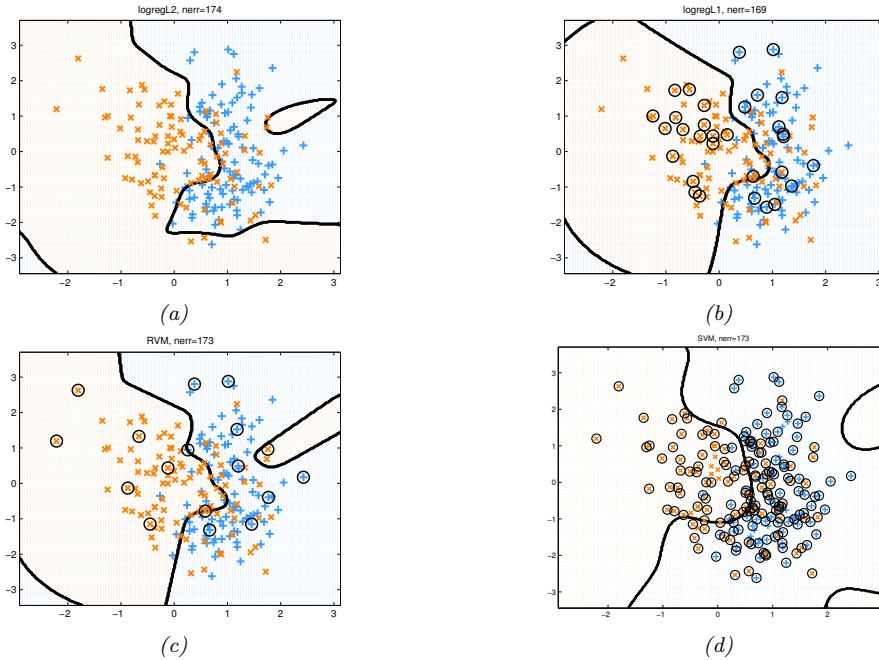


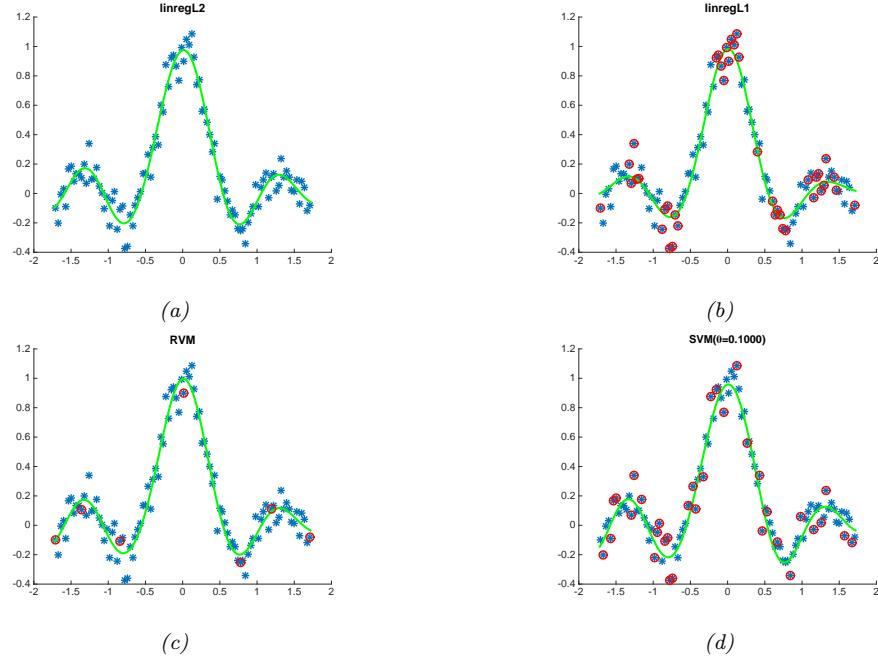
Figure 17.23: Example of non-linear binary classification using an RBF kernel with bandwidth  $\sigma = 0.3$ . (a) L2VM with  $\lambda = 5$ . (b) L1VM with  $\lambda = 1$ . (c) RVM. (d) SVM with  $C = 1/\lambda$  chosen by cross validation. Black circles denote the support vectors. 178 out of the 200 points are chosen as SVs. Generated by `kernelBinaryClassifDemo.m`.

since SVM performance is very sensitive to this parameter (see Sec. 17.5.8). We see that all the methods give similar performance. However, RVM is the sparsest (and hence fastest at test time), then L1VM, and then SVM. RVM is also the fastest to train. This is despite the fact that the RVM code is in Matlab and the SVM code is in the C language. The reason is that CV (needed for the SVM) requires fitting multiple models, which is slow, whereas empirical Bayes only has to fit a single model.

In Fig. 17.24, we compare L2VM, L1VM, RVM and an SVM using an RBF kernel on a 1d regression problem. Again, we see that predictions are quite similar, but RVM is the sparsest, then L1VM, then SVM. This is further illustrated in Fig. 17.25.

We have now discussed several different methods for classification and regression based on kernels, namely GPs, SVMs, L2VMs1, L1VMs, and RVMs. We summarize these different methods in Table 17.2. The columns of this table have the following meaning:

- Optimize  $\mathbf{w}$ : a key question is whether the objective  $\mathcal{L}(\mathbf{w}) = -\log p(\mathcal{D}|\mathbf{w}) - \log p(\mathbf{w})$  is convex or not. L2VM, L1VM and SVMs have convex objectives. RVMs do not. GPs are Bayesian methods that integrate out the weights  $\mathbf{w}$ .
- Optimize kernel: all the methods require that we “tune” the kernel parameters, such as the bandwidth of the RBF kernel, as well as the level of regularization. For methods based on



*Figure 17.24: Example of kernel based regression on the noisy sinc function using an RBF kernel with bandwidth  $\sigma = 0.3$ . (a) L2VM with  $\lambda = 0.5$ . (b) L1VM with  $\lambda = 0.5$ . (c) RVM. (d) SVM regression with  $C = 1/\lambda$ . and  $\epsilon = 0.1$  (the default for SVMlight). Red circles denote the retained training exemplars. Generated by `svmRegrDemo.m`.*

Gaussian priors, including L2VM, RVMs and GPs, we can use efficient gradient based optimizers to maximize the marginal likelihood. For SVMs and L1VMs, we must use cross validation, which is slower (see Sec. 17.5.8).

- **Sparse:** L1VM, RVMs and SVMs are sparse kernel methods, in that they only use a subset of the training examples. GPs and L2VM are not sparse: they use all the training examples. The principle advantage of sparsity is that prediction at test time is usually faster. However, this usually results in overconfidence in the predictions.
- **Probabilistic:** All the methods except for SVMs produce probabilistic output of the form  $p(y|\mathbf{x})$ . SVMs produce a “confidence” value that can be converted to a probability, but such probabilities are usually very poorly calibrated (see Sec. 17.5.5).
- **Multiclass:** All the methods except for SVMs naturally work in the multiclass setting, by using a categorical distribution instead of a Bernoulli. The SVM can be made into a multiclass classifier, but there are various difficulties with this approach, as discussed in Sec. 17.5.7.
- **Mercer kernel:** SVMs and GPs require that the kernel is positive definite; the other techniques do not, since the kernel function in Eq. (17.155) can be an arbitrary function of two inputs.

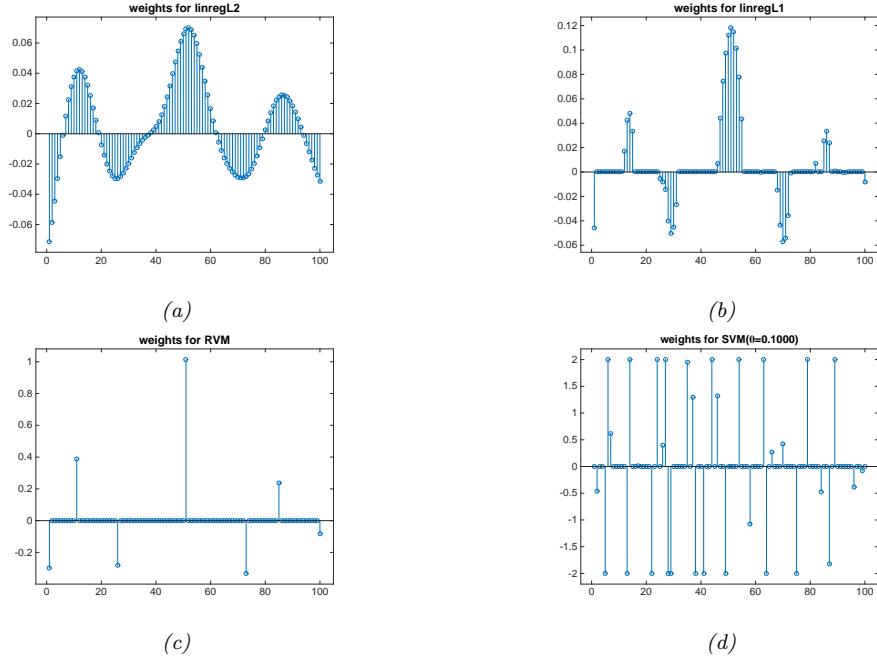


Figure 17.25: Coefficient vectors of length  $N = 100$  for the models in Fig. 17.24. Generated by `svmRegrDemo.m`.

Method	Opt. $\mathbf{w}$	Opt. kernel	Sparse	Prob.	Multiclass	Non-Mercer	Section
SVM	Convex	CV	Yes	No	Indirectly	No	17.5
L2VM	Convex	EB	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	17.6.1
L1VM	Convex	CV	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	17.6.1
RVM	Not convex	EB	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	17.6.1
GP	N/A	EB	No	Yes	Yes	No	17.3.7

Table 17.2: Comparison of various kernel based classifiers. EB = empirical Bayes, CV = cross validation. See text for details.

## 17.7 Optimizing in function space

We can view GPs as a way of performing Bayesian inference over the space of functions  $f : \mathcal{X} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ . We might also be interested in MAP estimation in the space of functions, or, more generally, penalized or regularized point estimation of functions. In this section, we introduce the mathematical machinery needed to perform this task. We will see that this generalizes the ideas behind SVMs. More details can be found in [SS01; STC04; Dau04; SG12; Kan+18].

### 17.7.1 Functional analysis

In this section, we introduce some basic concepts from the area of **functional analysis**. This extends ideas from Sec. B.1.2 to the case of *vector spaces of functions*.

Every element of a (real-valued) function space  $\mathcal{F}$  is a function of the form  $f : \mathcal{X} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ , and elements (functions) can be added and scalar multiplied as if they were vectors. That is, if  $f \in \mathcal{F}$  and  $g \in \mathcal{F}$ , then  $\alpha f + \beta g \in \mathcal{F}$  for  $\alpha, \beta \in \mathbb{R}$ .

We can also define an **inner product** for  $\mathcal{F}$ , which is a mapping  $\langle f, g \rangle \in \mathbb{R}$  which satisfies the following:

$$\langle \alpha f_1 + \beta f_2, g \rangle = \alpha \langle f_1, g \rangle + \beta \langle f_2, g \rangle \quad (17.156)$$

$$\langle f, g \rangle = \langle g, f \rangle \quad (17.157)$$

$$\langle f, f \rangle \geq 0 \quad (17.158)$$

$$\langle f, f \rangle = 0 \text{ iff } f(\mathbf{x}) = 0 \text{ for all } \mathbf{x} \in \mathcal{X} \quad (17.159)$$

We define the norm of a function using

$$\|f\| \triangleq \sqrt{\langle f, f \rangle} \quad (17.160)$$

We say that  $f, g \in \mathcal{F}$  are orthogonal to each other if  $\langle f, g \rangle = 0$ . We say that a set of functions  $\{f_i, i \in \mathcal{I}\}$  is an orthonormal system if the norm of every  $f_i$  is 1, and the  $\{f_i\}$  are orthogonal. Hence the  $\{f_i\}$  are linearly independent. An orthonormal system is called an **orthonormal basis** if there no other (non-zero)  $f \in \mathcal{F}$  that is orthogonal to all the  $\{f_i\}$ .

### 17.7.2 Hilbert space

A function space  $\mathcal{H}$  with an inner product operator is called a **Hilbert space**. (We also require that the function space be complete, which means that every Cauchy sequence of functions  $f_i \in \mathcal{H}$  has a limit that is also in  $\mathcal{H}$ .)

The most common Hilbert space is the space known as  $L^2$ . To define this, we need to specify a **measure**  $\mu$  on the input space  $\mathcal{X}$ ; this is a function that assigns any (suitable) subset  $A$  of  $\mathcal{X}$  to a positive number, such as its volume. This can be defined in terms of the density function  $w : \mathcal{X} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ , as follows:

$$\mu(A) = \int_A w(x) dx \quad (17.161)$$

Thus we have  $\mu(dx) = w(x)dx$ . We can now define  $L^2(\mathcal{X}, \mu)$  to be the space of functions  $f : \mathcal{X} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  that satisfy

$$\int_{\mathcal{X}} f(x)^2 w(x) dx < \infty \quad (17.162)$$

This is known as the set of **square-integrable functions**. This space has an inner product defined by

$$\langle f, g \rangle = \int_{\mathcal{X}} f(x)g(x)w(x)dx \quad (17.163)$$

A Hilbert space with an orthonormal basis  $\{f_i\}$  is similar to a Euclidean vector space. In particular, any element  $f \in \mathcal{H}$  can be written as a unique linear combination of basis vectors:

$$f = \sum_i \langle f, f_i \rangle f_i \quad (17.164)$$

### 17.7.3 Reproducing Kernel Hilbert Space

Let  $\mathcal{H}$  be the space  $L^2(\mathcal{X})$  of functions  $\mathcal{X} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ . For each  $x \in \mathcal{X}$ , let  $\delta_x : \mathcal{H} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be the **evaluation functional** that takes as input a function  $f \in \mathcal{H}$  and evaluates it at  $x$ , i.e.,  $\delta_x(f) = f(x)$ . We say that a Hilbert space  $\mathcal{H}$  is a **Reproducing Kernel Hilbert Space** or **RKHS** if for each  $\delta_x$  there is a unique element  $\mathcal{K}_x \in \mathcal{H}$  such that for every  $f \in \mathcal{H}$

$$\delta_x f = f(x) = \langle f, \mathcal{K}_x \rangle \quad (17.165)$$

Now consider the function  $f = \mathcal{K}_y \in \mathcal{H}$  evaluated at  $x$ . We have

$$\delta_x \mathcal{K}_y = \mathcal{K}_y(x) = \langle \mathcal{K}_y, \mathcal{K}_x \rangle \triangleq \mathcal{K}(x, y) \quad (17.166)$$

This is called the **reproducing property** and  $\mathcal{K}(x, y)$  is called the **RKHS kernel**. Clearly the kernel function is symmetric. One can also show that it is positive semidefinite, in the sense that we can represent it as

$$\mathcal{K}(x, y) = \sum_{j \geq 1} \lambda_j \psi_j(x) \psi_j(y) \quad (17.167)$$

where  $\lambda_j$  is a countable sequence of non-negative numbers decreasing to 0, and the  $\psi_j$  are orthonormal functions in  $L^2(\mathcal{X})$ . This result is known as **Mercer's theorem**.

Mercer's theorem tells us that every RKHS has a corresponding positive definite kernel function. The converse of this is known as the **Moore-Aronszajn theorem**. More precisely, this says that for every psd kernel function  $\mathcal{K} : \mathcal{X} \times \mathcal{X} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ , there exists a unique RKHS of functions  $f : \mathcal{X} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  with reproducing kernel  $\mathcal{K}$ .

### 17.7.4 Representer theorem

In this section, we consider the application of RKHS to the problem of (regularized) empirical risk minimization. In particular, we state and prove the **representer theorem** [KW70; SHS01], which generalizes the result of Eq. (17.130).

**Theorem 17.7.1** (Representer theorem). *Consider the following regularized empirical risk minimization problem:*

$$f^* = \underset{f \in \mathcal{H}_{\mathcal{K}}}{\operatorname{argmin}} \mathcal{L}(f) \quad (17.168)$$

$$\mathcal{L}(f) = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^N \ell(y_n, f(x_n)) + R(\|f\|) \quad (17.169)$$

where  $\mathcal{H}_K$  is an RKHS with kernel  $K$ ,  $L(y, \hat{y}) \in \mathbb{R}$  is a loss function,  $R(c) \in \mathbb{R}$  is a strictly monotonic penalty function, and

$$\|f\|_{\mathcal{H}} = \sqrt{\langle f, f \rangle_{\mathcal{H}}} \quad (17.170)$$

is the norm of the function. Then we have

$$f^*(x) = \sum_{i=1}^N \alpha_i K(x, x_i) \quad (17.171)$$

where  $\alpha_i \in \mathbb{R}$  are some coefficients that depend on the training data  $\{(x_n, y_n)\}$ .

*Proof.* Let us define the feature map  $\Phi(x) = K(\cdot, x)$ . Given any  $x_1, \dots, x_N$ , we can use orthogonal projection to decompose any  $f \in \mathcal{H}_K$  into a sum of two functions, one lying in the span of  $\{\Phi(x_1), \dots, \Phi(x_N)\}$ , and the other lying in the orthogonal complement; let this latter function be denoted by  $v(x)$ . Thus

$$f = \sum_{i=1}^N \alpha_i \Phi(x_i) + v \quad (17.172)$$

where  $\langle v, \Phi(x_i) \rangle = 0$  for all  $i$ . Using this result, together with the reproducing property, we have

$$f(x_j) = \left\langle \sum_{i=1}^N \alpha_i \Phi(x_i) + v, \Phi(x_j) \right\rangle = \sum_{i=1}^N \alpha_i \langle \Phi(x_i), \Phi(x_j) \rangle \quad (17.173)$$

Since  $f$  is independent of  $v$ , we see that the first term in  $\mathcal{L}(f)$  is independent of  $v$ . Now let us consider the second (regularization) term in  $\mathcal{L}(f)$ . Since  $v$  is orthogonal to  $\sum_{i=1}^N \alpha_i \Phi(x_i)$  and  $R$  is strictly monotonic, we have

$$R(\|f\|) = R\left(\left\|\sum_{i=1}^N \alpha_i \Phi(x_i) + v\right\|\right) \quad (17.174)$$

$$= R\left(\sqrt{\left\|\sum_{i=1}^N \alpha_i \Phi(x_i)\right\|^2 + \|v\|^2}\right) \quad (17.175)$$

$$\geq R\left(\left\|\sum_{i=1}^N \alpha_i \Phi(x_i)\right\|\right) \quad (17.176)$$

Thus we can minimize the second term of  $\mathcal{L}(f)$  by setting  $v = 0$ . Hence we can minimize the overall regularized loss by using a solution of the form

$$f^*(\cdot) = \sum_{i=1}^N \alpha_i \Phi(x_i) = \sum_{i=1}^N \alpha_i K(\cdot, x_i) \quad (17.177)$$

□

We can generalize this to allow some parts of the function (e.g., the bias term) to not be penalized. In particular, suppose  $f \in \mathcal{F}$  can be written as  $f(\mathbf{x}) = h(\mathbf{x}) + h_0(\mathbf{x})$ , where  $h$  is an RKHS  $\mathcal{H}$  with kernel  $\mathcal{K}$ , and  $h_0$  is another linear space of real-valued functions  $\mathcal{H}_0$  on  $\mathcal{X}$ . We define our modified objective to be

$$f^* = \operatorname{argmin}_{f \in \mathcal{H} \oplus \mathcal{H}_0} \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^N \ell(y_n, f(\mathbf{x}_n)) + \lambda \|h\|_{\mathcal{H}}^2 \quad (17.178)$$

where the penalty is not applied to  $h_0$ . One can show that the optimal solution has the form

$$f^*(\mathbf{x}) = \sum_{n=1}^N \alpha_n \mathcal{K}(\mathbf{x}_n, \mathbf{x}) + \sum_{m=1}^M \eta_m q_m(\mathbf{x}) \quad (17.179)$$

where  $\{q_1, \dots, q_M\}$  is a basis of  $\mathcal{H}_0$ . (See e.g., [Kro+19, p231] for the proof, which is similar to the one we gave above.)

We give an example in Sec. 17.7.5.

### 17.7.5 Kernel ridge regression revisited

Consider the function space version of ridge regression:

$$\min_{f \in \mathcal{H} \oplus \mathcal{H}_0} \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^N (y_n - f(\mathbf{x}_n))^2 + \lambda \|h\|_{\mathcal{H}}^2 \quad (17.180)$$

where  $f(\mathbf{x}) = h(\mathbf{x}) + h_0(\mathbf{x})$ . From the representer theorem, this is equivalent to solving

$$\min_{\boldsymbol{\alpha} \in \mathbb{R}^N, \boldsymbol{\eta} \in \mathbb{R}^M} \frac{1}{N} \|\mathbf{y} - (\mathbf{K}\boldsymbol{\alpha} + \mathbf{Q}\boldsymbol{\eta})\|^2 + \lambda \boldsymbol{\alpha}^\top \mathbf{K} \boldsymbol{\alpha} \quad (17.181)$$

where  $\mathbf{K}$  is  $N \times N$  Gram matrix, and  $\mathbf{Q}$  is the  $N \times M$  matrix with entries  $[q_m(\mathbf{x}_n)]$ .

This is a convex objective which can be solved by differentiating wrt  $\boldsymbol{\alpha}$  and  $\boldsymbol{\eta}$  and equating to 0. This gives the following system of  $N + M$  linear equations:

$$\begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{K}\mathbf{K}^\top + N\lambda\mathbf{K} & \mathbf{K}\mathbf{Q} \\ \mathbf{Q}^\top \mathbf{K}^\top & \mathbf{Q}^\top \mathbf{Q} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \boldsymbol{\alpha} \\ \boldsymbol{\eta} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{K}^\top \\ \mathbf{Q}^\top \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{y} \quad (17.182)$$

As long as  $\mathbf{Q}$  is full column rank, the minimizing function is unique. For example, if we set  $\mathcal{H}_0$  to be the space of constant functions, we can span it using  $q_1(\mathbf{x}) = 1$ , so  $\mathbf{Q} = \mathbf{1}_N$ . Alternatively, we can ignore the offset term, and use  $q_1(\mathbf{x}) = 0$ . Then we can drop the  $\mathbf{Q}$  term to get

$$(\mathbf{K}\mathbf{K}^\top + N\lambda\mathbf{K})\boldsymbol{\alpha} = \mathbf{K}^\top \mathbf{y} \quad (17.183)$$

$$\mathbf{K}(\mathbf{K} + N\lambda\mathbf{I})\boldsymbol{\alpha} = \mathbf{K}\mathbf{y} \quad (17.184)$$

$$\boldsymbol{\alpha} = (\mathbf{K} + N\lambda\mathbf{I})^{-1} \mathbf{y} \quad (17.185)$$

This recovers the kernel ridge regression result discussed in Sec. 17.5.9.

## 17.8 Exercises

### Exercise 17.1 [Fitting an SVM classifier by hand]

(Source: Jaakkola.) Consider a dataset with 2 points in 1d:  $(x_1 = 0, y_1 = -1)$  and  $(x_2 = \sqrt{2}, y_2 = 1)$ . Consider mapping each point to 3d using the feature vector  $\phi(x) = [1, \sqrt{2}x, x^2]^T$ . (This is equivalent to using a second order polynomial kernel.) The max margin classifier has the form

$$\min \|\mathbf{w}\|^2 \text{ s.t.} \quad (17.186)$$

$$y_1(\mathbf{w}^T \phi(\mathbf{x}_1) + w_0) \geq 1 \quad (17.187)$$

$$y_2(\mathbf{w}^T \phi(\mathbf{x}_2) + w_0) \geq 1 \quad (17.188)$$

- a. Write down a vector that is parallel to the optimal vector  $\mathbf{w}$ . Hint: recall from Figure 7.8 (12Apr10 version) that  $\mathbf{w}$  is perpendicular to the decision boundary between the two points in the 3d feature space.
- b. What is the value of the margin that is achieved by this  $\mathbf{w}$ ? Hint: recall that the margin is the distance from each support vector to the decision boundary. Hint 2: think about the geometry of 2 points in space, with a line separating one from the other.
- c. Solve for  $\mathbf{w}$ , using the fact the margin is equal to  $1/\|\mathbf{w}\|$ .
- d. Solve for  $w_0$  using your value for  $\mathbf{w}$  and Equations 17.186 to 17.188. Hint: the points will be on the decision boundary, so the inequalities will be tight.
- e. Write down the form of the discriminant function  $f(x) = w_0 + \mathbf{w}^T \phi(x)$  as an explicit function of  $x$ .



# 18 Trees, forests, bagging and boosting

## 18.1 Classification and regression trees (CART)

In this section, we discuss **classification and regression trees (CART)** [BFO84], also called **decision trees** [Qui86; Qui93], which are widely used for tabular datasets. We introduced this model in Sec. 1.2.1.3. Here we go into more detail.

### 18.1.1 Model definition

A CART model is a tree structure consisting of a set of nested decision rules. At each node  $i$ , the feature dimension  $d_i$  of the input vector  $\mathbf{x}$  is compared to a threshold value  $t_i$ , and the input is then passed down to the left or right branch, depending on whether it is above or below threshold. (For categorical values, we compare if  $\mathbf{x}_{d_i}$  is equal to the target value  $t_i$  or not.) At the leaves of the tree, the model specifies a distribution over the output for points that are in that part of the input space.

Formally, a CART model can be defined by

$$T(\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \sum_{j=1}^J w_j \mathbb{I}(\mathbf{x} \in R_j) \quad (18.1)$$

where  $R_j$  is the region specified by the  $j$ 'th leaf node,  $w_j$  is the predicted output for that node, and  $\boldsymbol{\theta} = \{(R_j, w_j) : j = 1 : J\}$ . (For regression, this is a scalar; for classification, it can be the logits or class probabilities.)

For example, consider the regression tree in Fig. 18.1(a). The first node asks if  $x_1$  is less than some threshold  $t_1$ . If yes, we then ask if  $x_2$  is less than some other threshold  $t_2$ . If yes, we are in the bottom left quadrant of space,  $R_1$ . If no, we ask if  $x_1$  is less than  $t_3$ . And so on. The result of these **axis parallel splits** is to partition 2d space into 5 regions, as shown in Figure 18.1(b). We can now associate a mean response with each of these regions, resulting in the piecewise constant surface shown in Figure 18.1(b).

For classification problems, we can proceed in a similar manner, except that the leaves contain a distribution over the class labels, rather than just the mean response. See Fig. 18.2a–Fig. 18.2b for an example.

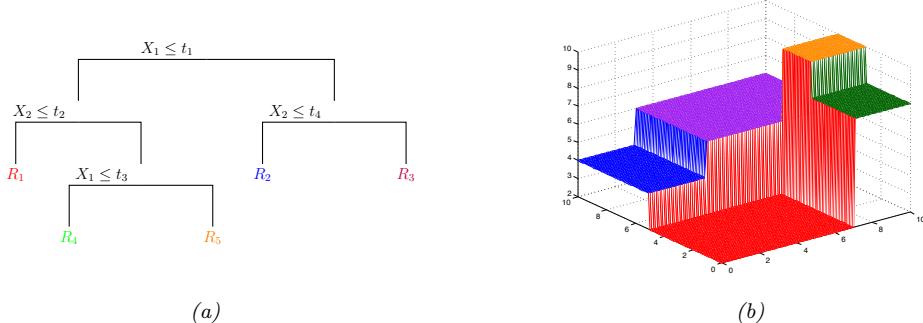


Figure 18.1: A simple regression tree on two inputs. Adapted from Figure 9.2 of [HTF09]. Generated by `regtreeSurfaceDemo.m`.

### 18.1.2 Model fitting

To fit the model, we need to minimize the following loss:

$$\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta}) = \sum_{j=1}^J \sum_{\mathbf{x}_i \in R_j} \ell(y_i, w_j) \quad (18.2)$$

Unfortunately, this is not differentiable, because of the need to learn the discrete tree structure. Indeed, finding the optimal partitioning of the data is NP-complete [HR76]. The standard practice is to use a greedy procedure, in which we iteratively grow the tree one node at a time. This approach is used by **CART** [BFO84], **C4.5** [Qui93], and **ID3** [Qui86], which are three popular implementations of the method.

The idea is as follows. Suppose we are at node  $i$ , and let  $\mathcal{D}_i = \{(\mathbf{x}_n, y_n) \in N_i\}$  be the set of examples that reach this node. Let  $\mathcal{D}_i^L(j, t) = \{(\mathbf{x}_n, y_n) \in N_i : y_{n,j} \leq t\}$  and  $\mathcal{D}_i^R(j, t) = \{(\mathbf{x}_n, y_n) \in N_i : y_{n,j} > t\}$  be a partition of these examples into left and right subtrees. (For categorical features, we use  $\mathcal{D}_i^L(j, t) = \{(\mathbf{x}_n, y_n) \in N_i : y_{n,j} = t\}$  and  $\mathcal{D}_i^R(j, t) = \{(\mathbf{x}_n, y_n) \in N_i : y_{n,j} \neq t\}$ .) We choose the best feature  $j_i$  to split on, and the best value for that feature,  $t_i$ , as follows:

$$(j_i, t_i) = \arg \min_{j \in \{1, \dots, D\}} \min_{t \in \mathcal{T}_i} \frac{|\mathcal{D}_i^L(j, t)|}{|\mathcal{D}|} c(\mathcal{D}_i^L(j, t)) + \frac{|\mathcal{D}_i^R(j, t)|}{|\mathcal{D}|} c(\mathcal{D}_i^R(j, t)) \quad (18.3)$$

where the cost function  $c()$  is defined below.

The set of possible thresholds  $\mathcal{T}_j$  for feature  $j$  can be obtained by sorting the unique values of  $\{x_{nj}\}$ . For example, if feature 1 has the values  $\{4.5, -12, 72, -12\}$ , then we set  $\mathcal{T}_1 = \{-12, 4.5, 72\}$ . In the case of categorical inputs, we consider each unique value of  $\{x_{nj}\}$ . (Although we could allow for multi-way splits, resulting in non-binary trees, this may cause **data fragmentation**, in which too little data might “fall” into each subtree, resulting in overfitting.)

We now discuss the cost function  $c(\mathcal{D}_i)$  which is used to evaluate the cost of node  $i$ . For regression, we can use the mean squared error

$$\text{cost}(\mathcal{D}_i) = \frac{1}{|\mathcal{D}|} \sum_{n \in \mathcal{D}} (y_n - \bar{y})^2 \quad (18.4)$$

where  $\bar{y} = \frac{1}{|\mathcal{D}|} \sum_{n \in \mathcal{D}_i} y_n$  is the mean of the response variable for examples reaching node  $i$ .

For classification, we first compute the empirical distribution over class labels for this node:

$$\hat{\pi}_{ic} = \frac{1}{|\mathcal{D}_i|} \sum_{n \in \mathcal{D}_i} \mathbb{I}(y_n = c) \quad (18.5)$$

Given this, we can then compute the **Gini index**

$$G_i = \sum_{c=1}^C \hat{\pi}_{ic} (1 - \hat{\pi}_{ic}) = \sum_c \hat{\pi}_{ic} - \sum_c \hat{\pi}_{ic}^2 = 1 - \sum_c \hat{\pi}_{ic}^2 \quad (18.6)$$

This is the expected error rate. To see this, note that  $\hat{\pi}_{ic}$  is the probability a random entry in the leaf belongs to class  $c$ , and  $1 - \hat{\pi}_{ic}$  is the probability it would be misclassified.

Alternatively we can define cost as the entropy or **deviance** of the node:

$$H_i = \mathbb{H}(\hat{\pi}_i) = - \sum_{c=1}^C \hat{\pi}_{ic} \log \hat{\pi}_{ic} \quad (18.7)$$

A node that is **pure** (i.e., only has examples of one class) will have 0 entropy.

Given one of the above cost functions, we can use Eq. (18.3) to pick the best feature, and best threshold at each node. We then partition the data, and call the fitting algorithm recursively on each subset of the data.

### 18.1.3 Regularization

If we let the tree become deep enough, it can achieve 0 error on the training set (assuming no label noise), by partitioning the input space into sufficiently small regions where the output is constant. However, this will typically result in overfitting. To prevent this, there are two main approaches. The first is to stop the tree growing process according to some heuristic, such as having too few examples at a node, or reaching a maximum depth. The second approach is to grow the tree to its maximum depth, where no more splits are possible, and then to **prune** it back, by merging split subtrees back into their parent (see e.g., [BA97b]). This can partially overcome the greedy nature of top-down tree growing. (For example, consider applying the top-down approach to the xor data in Fig. 13.1: the algorithm would never make any splits, since each feature on its own has no predictive power.) However, forward growing and backward pruning is slower than the greedy top-down approach.

### 18.1.4 Pros and cons

CART models are popular for several reasons: they are easy to interpret, they can easily handle mixed discrete and continuous inputs, they are insensitive to monotone transformations of the inputs (because the split points are based on ranking the data points), they perform automatic variable selection, they are relatively robust to outliers, and they scale well to large data sets.

However, CART models also have some disadvantages. The primary one is that they do not predict very accurately compared to other kinds of model. This is in part due to the greedy nature of the tree construction algorithm. A related problem is that trees are **unstable**: small changes to the

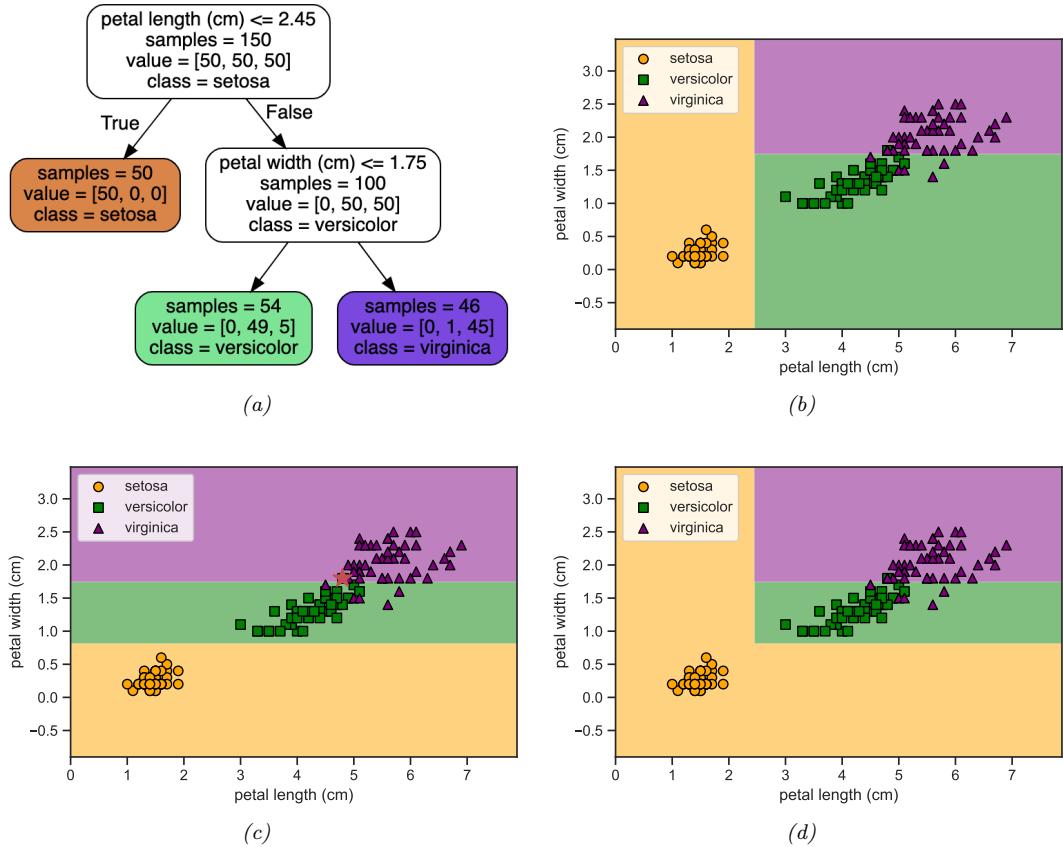


Figure 18.2: (a) A decision tree of depth 2 fit to the iris data, using just the petal length and petal width features. Leaf nodes are color coded according to the majority class. The number of training samples that pass from the root to each node is shown inside each box, as well as how many of these values fall into each class. This can be normalized to get a distribution over class labels for each node. (b) Decision surface induced by (a). (c) Fit to data where we omit a single data point (shown by red star). (d) Ensemble of the two models in (b) and (c). Generated by [dree\\_sensitivity.py](#)

input data can have large effects on the structure of the tree, due to the hierarchical nature of the tree-growing process, causing errors at the top to affect the rest of the tree. For example, consider the tree in Fig. 18.2b. Omitting even a single data point from the training set can result in a dramatically different decision surface, as shown in Fig. 18.2c. due to the use of axis parallel splits. In Sec. 18.3 and Sec. 18.4, we will turn this instability into a virtue.

## 18.2 Ensemble learning

In Sec. 18.1, we saw that decision trees can be quite unstable, in the sense that their predictions might vary a lot if the training data is perturbed. In other words, decision trees are a high variance estimator. A simple way to reduce variance is to average multiple models. This is called **ensemble learning**. The result model has the form

$$f(y|\mathbf{x}) = \frac{1}{|\mathcal{M}|} \sum_{m \in \mathcal{M}} f_m(y|\mathbf{x}) \quad (18.8)$$

where  $f_m$  is the  $m$ 'th base model. The ensemble will have similar bias to the base models, but lower variance, generally resulting in improved overall performance (see Sec. D.4.3 for details on the bias-variance tradeoff).

Averaging is a sensible way to combine predictions from regression models. For classifiers, it can sometimes be better to take a majority vote of the outputs. (This is sometimes called a **committee method**.) To see why this can help, suppose each base model is a binary classifier with an accuracy of  $\theta$ , and suppose class 1 is the correct class. Let  $Y_m \in \{0, 1\}$  be the prediction for the  $m$ 'th model, and let  $S = \sum_{m=1}^M Y_m$  be the number of votes for class 1. We define the final predictor to be the majority vote, i.e., class 1 if  $S > M/2$  and class 0 otherwise. The probability that the ensemble will pick class 1 is

$$p = \Pr(S > M/2) = 1 - B(M/2, M, \theta) \quad (18.9)$$

where  $B(x, M, \theta)$  is the cdf of the binomial distribution with parameters  $M$  and  $\theta$  evaluated at  $x$ . For  $\theta = 0.51$  and  $M = 1000$ , we get  $p = 0.73$  and with  $M = 10,000$  we get  $p = 0.97$ .

The performance of the voting approach is dramatically improved, because we assumed each predictor made independent errors. In practice, their mistakes may be correlated, but as long as we ensemble sufficiently diverse models, we can still come out ahead.

### 18.2.1 Stacking

An alternative to using an unweighted average or majority vote is to learn how to combine the base models, by using

$$f(y|\mathbf{x}) = \sum_{m \in \mathcal{M}} w_m f_m(y|\mathbf{x}) \quad (18.10)$$

This is called **stacking**, which stands for “stacked generalization” [Wol92]. Note that the combination weights used by stacking need to be trained on a separate dataset, otherwise they would put all their mass on the best performing base model.

### 18.2.2 Ensembling is not Bayes model averaging

It is worth noting that an ensemble of models is not the same as using Bayes model averaging over models (Sec. 7.6.2), as pointed out in [Min00b]. An ensemble considers a larger hypothesis class of the form

$$p(y|\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{w}, \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \sum_{m \in \mathcal{M}} w_m p(y|\mathbf{x}, \boldsymbol{\theta}_m) \quad (18.11)$$

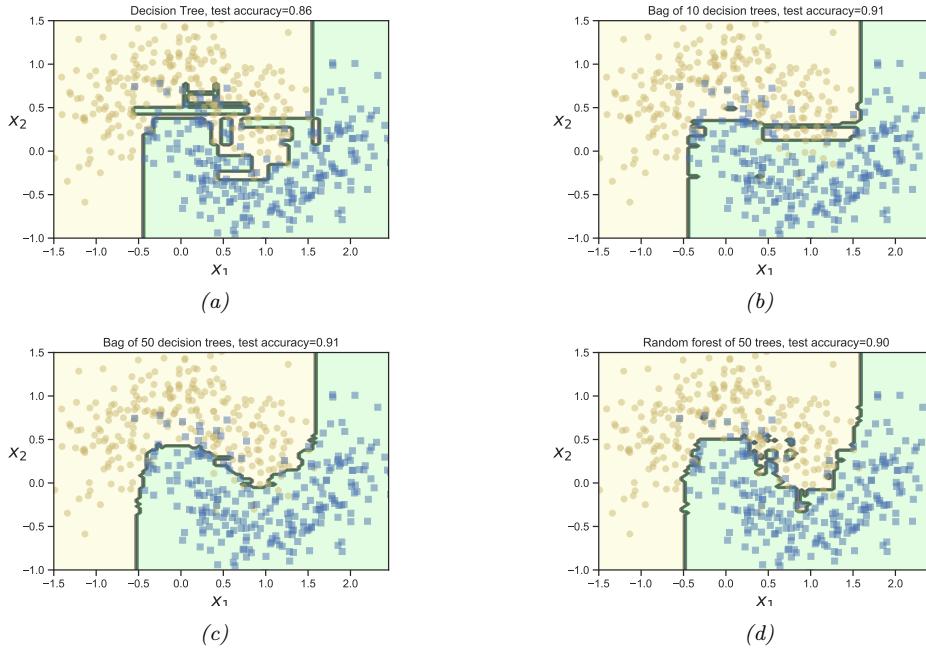


Figure 18.3: (a) A single decision tree. (b-c) Bagging ensemble of 10 and 50 trees. (d) Random forest of 50 trees. Adapted from Figure 7.5 of [Gér19]. Generated by `bagging_trees.py` and `rf_demo_2d.py`.

whereas BMA uses

$$p(y|\mathbf{x}, \mathcal{D}) = \sum_{m \in \mathcal{M}} p(m|\mathcal{D})p(y|\mathbf{x}, m, \mathcal{D}) \quad (18.12)$$

The key difference is that in the case of BMA, the weights  $p(m|\mathcal{D})$  sum to one, and in the limit of infinite data, only a single model will be chosen (namely the MAP model). By contrast, the ensemble weights  $w_m$  are arbitrary, and don't collapse in this way to a single model.

### 18.3 Bagging

In this section, we discuss **bagging** [Bre96], which stands for “bootstrap aggregating”. This is a simple form of ensemble learning in which we fit  $M$  different base models to different randomly sampled versions of the data; this encourages the different models to make diverse predictions. The datasets are sampled with replacement (a technique known as bootstrap sampling, Sec. D.3.3), so a given example may appear multiple times, until we have a total of  $N$  examples per model (where  $N$  is the number of original data points).

The disadvantage of bootstrap is that each base model only sees, on average, 63% of the unique input examples. To see why, note that the chance that a single item will not be selected from a set of size  $N$  in any of  $N$  draws is  $(1 - 1/N)^N$ . In the limit of large  $N$ , this becomes  $e^{-1} \approx 0.37$ , which

means only  $1 - 0.37 = 0.63$  of the data points will be selected.

The 37% of the training instances that are not used by a given base model are called **out-of-bag instances** (oob). We can use the predicted performance of the base model on these oob instances as an estimate of test set performance. This provides a useful alternative to cross validation.

The main advantage of bootstrap is that it prevents the ensemble from relying too much on any individual training example, which enhances robustness and generalization [Gra04]. For example, comparing Fig. 18.2b and Fig. 18.2c, we see that omitting a single example from the training set can have a large impact on the decision tree that we learn (even though the tree growing algorithm is otherwise deterministic). By averaging the predictions from both of these models, we get the more reasonable prediction model in Fig. 18.2d. This advantage generally increases with the size of the ensemble, as shown in Fig. 18.3. (Of course, larger ensembles take more memory and more time.)

Bagging does not always improve performance. In particular, it relies on the base models being unstable estimators, so that omitting some of the data significantly changes the resulting model fit. This is the case for decision trees, but not for other models, such as nearest neighbor classifiers. For neural networks, the story is more mixed. They can be unstable wrt their training set. On the other hand, deep networks will underperform if they only see 63% of the data, so bagged DNNs do not usually work well [NTL20].

## 18.4 Random forests

Bagging relies on the assumption that re-running the same learning algorithm on different subsets of the data will result in sufficiently diverse base models. The technique known as **random forests** [Bre01] tries to decorrelate the base learners even further by learning trees based on a randomly chosen subset of input variables (at each node of the tree), as well as a randomly chosen subset of data cases. It does this by modifying Eq. (18.3) so the feature split dimension  $j$  is optimized over a random subset of the features,  $S_i \subset \{1, \dots, D\}$ .

For example, consider the email spam dataset [HTF09, p301]. This dataset contains 4601 email messages, each of which is classified as spam (1) or non-spam (0). The data was open sourced by George Forman from Hewlett-Packard (HP) Labs.

There are 57 quantitative (real-valued) predictors, as follows:

- 48 features corresponding to the percentage of words in the email that match a given word, such as “remove” or “labs”.
- 6 features corresponding to the percentage of characters in the email that match a given character, namely ; . [ ! \$ #
- 3 features corresponding to the average length, max length, and sum of lengths of uninterrupted sequences of capital letters. (These features are called CAPAVE, CAPMAX and CAPTOT.)

See Fig. 18.4 shows that random forests work much better than bagged decision trees, because many imput features are irrelevant. (See also Sec. 18.6.)

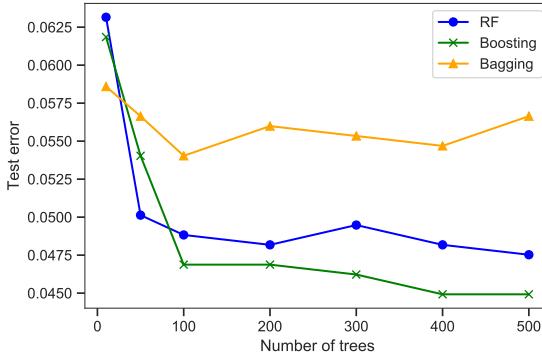


Figure 18.4: Predictive accuracy vs size of tree ensemble for bagging, random forests and gradient boosting with log loss. Adapted from Figure 15.1 of [HTF09]. Generated by `spam_tree_ensemble_compare.py`.

## 18.5 Boosting

Ensembles of trees, whether fit by bagging or the random forest algorithm, correspond to a model of the form

$$f(\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \sum_{m=1}^M \beta_m F_m(\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta}_m) \quad (18.13)$$

where  $F_m$  is the  $m$ 'th tree, and  $\beta_m$  is the corresponding weight, often set to  $\beta_m = 1$ . We can generalize this by allowing the  $F_m$  functions to be general function approximators, such as neural networks, not just trees. The result is called an **additive model** [HTF09]. We can think of this as a linear model with **adaptive basis functions**. The goal, as usual, is to minimize the empirical loss (with an optional regularizer):

$$\mathcal{L}(f) = \sum_{i=1}^N \ell(y_i, f(\mathbf{x}_i)) \quad (18.14)$$

**Boosting** [Sch90; FS96] is an algorithm for sequentially fitting additive models where each  $F_m$  is a binary classifier that returns  $F_m \in \{-1, +1\}$ . In particular, we first  $F_1$  on the original data, and then we weight the data samples by the errors made by  $F_1$ , so misclassified examples get more weight. Next we fit  $F_2$  to this weighted data set. We keep repeating this process until we have fit the desired number  $M$  of components. ( $M$  is a hyper-parameter that controls the complexity of the overall model, and can be chosen by monitoring performance on a validation set, and using early stopping.)

It can be shown that, as long as each  $F_m$  has an accuracy that is better than chance (even on the weighted dataset), then the final ensemble of classifiers will have higher accuracy than any given component. That is, if  $F_m$  is a **weak learner** (so its accuracy is only slightly better than 50%), then we can boost its performance using the above procedure so that the final  $f$  becomes a **strong learner**. (See e.g., [SF12] for more details on the learning theory approach to boosting.)

Note that boosting reduces the bias of the strong learner, by fitting trees that depend on each other, whereas bagging and RF reduce the variance by fitting independent trees. In many cases, boosting can work better. See Fig. 18.4 for an example.

The original boosting algorithm focused on binary classification with a particular loss function that we will explain in Sec. 18.5.3, and was derived from the PAC learning theory framework (see Sec. D.6.4). In the rest of this section, we focus on a more statistical version of boosting, due to [FHT00; Fri01], which works with arbitrary loss functions, making the method suitable for regression, multi-class classification, ranking, etc. Our presentation is based on [HTF09, ch10] and [BH07], which should be consulted for further details.

### 18.5.1 Forward stagewise additive modeling

In this section, we discuss **forward stagewise additive modeling**, in which we sequentially optimize the objective in Eq. (18.14) for general (differentiable) loss functions, where  $f$  is an additive model as in Equation 18.13. That is, at iteration  $m$ , we compute

$$(\beta_m, \boldsymbol{\theta}_m) = \underset{\beta, \boldsymbol{\theta}}{\operatorname{argmin}} \sum_{i=1}^N \ell(y_i, f_{m-1}(\mathbf{x}_i) + \beta F(\mathbf{x}_i; \boldsymbol{\theta})) \quad (18.15)$$

We then set

$$f_m(\mathbf{x}) = f_{m-1}(\mathbf{x}) + \beta_m F(\mathbf{x}_i; \boldsymbol{\theta}_m) = f_{m-1}(\mathbf{x}) + \beta_m F_m(\mathbf{x}_i) \quad (18.16)$$

(Note that we do not adjust the parameters of previously added models.) The details on how to perform this optimization step depend on the loss function that we choose, and (in some cases) on the form of the weak learner  $F$ , as we discuss below.

### 18.5.2 Quadratic loss and least squares boosting

Suppose we use squared error loss,  $\ell(y, \hat{y}) = (y - \hat{y})^2$ . In this case, the  $i$ 'th term in the objective at step  $m$  becomes

$$\ell(y_i, f_{m-1}(\mathbf{x}_i) + \beta F(\mathbf{x}_i; \boldsymbol{\theta})) = (y_i - f_{m-1}(\mathbf{x}_i) - \beta F(\mathbf{x}_i; \boldsymbol{\theta}))^2 = (r_{im} - \beta F(\mathbf{x}_i; \boldsymbol{\theta}))^2 \quad (18.17)$$

where  $r_{im} = y_i - f_{m-1}(\mathbf{x}_i)$  is the residual of the current model on the  $i$ 'th observation. We can minimize the above objective by simply setting  $\beta = 1$ , and fitting  $F$  to the residual errors. This is called **least squares boosting** [BY03].

We give an example of this process in Fig. 18.5, where we use a regression tree of depth 2 as the weak learner. On the left, we show the result of fitting the weak learner to the residuals, and on the right, we show the current strong learner. We see how each new weak learner that is added to the ensemble corrects the errors made by earlier versions of the model.

### 18.5.3 Exponential loss and AdaBoost

Suppose we are interested in binary classification, i.e., predicting  $\tilde{y}_i \in \{-1, +1\}$ . Let us assume the weak learner computes

$$p(y=1|\mathbf{x}) = \frac{e^{F(\mathbf{x})}}{e^{-F(\mathbf{x})} + e^{F(\mathbf{x})}} = \frac{1}{1 + e^{-2F(\mathbf{x})}} \quad (18.18)$$

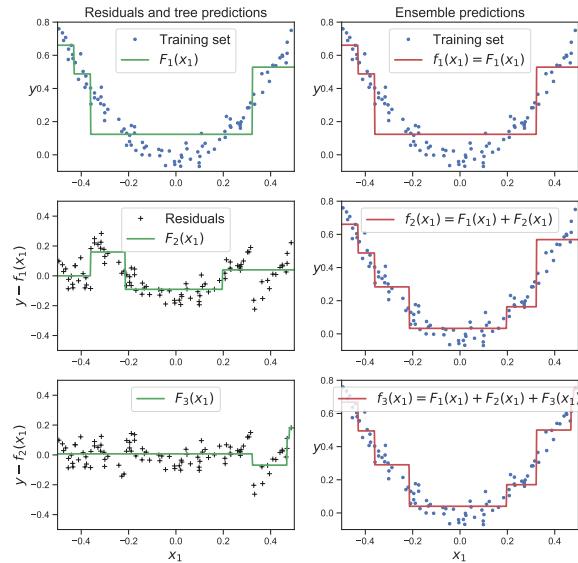


Figure 18.5: Illustration of boosting using a regression tree of depth 2 applied to a 1d dataset. Adapted from Figure 7.9 of [Gér19]. Generated by [boosted\\_regr\\_trees.py](#)

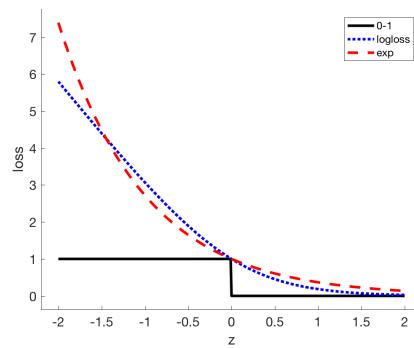


Figure 18.6: Illustration of various loss functions for binary classification. The horizontal axis is the margin  $m(\mathbf{x}) = \tilde{y}F(\mathbf{x})$ , the vertical axis is the loss. The log loss uses log base 2. Generated by [hingeLossPlot.m](#).

so  $F(\mathbf{x})$  returns half the log odds. We know from Eq. (10.13) that the negative log likelihood is given by

$$\ell(\tilde{y}, F(\mathbf{x})) = \log(1 + e^{-2\tilde{y}F(\mathbf{x})}) \quad (18.19)$$

We can minimize this by ensuring that the **margin**  $m(\mathbf{x}) = \tilde{y}F(\mathbf{x})$  is as large as possible. We see from Fig. 18.6 that the log loss is a smooth upper bound on the 0-1 loss. We also see that it penalizes negative margins more heavily than positive ones, as desired (since positive margins are already correctly classified).

However, we can also use other loss functions. In this section, we consider the **exponential loss**

$$\ell(\tilde{y}, F(\mathbf{x})) = \exp(-\tilde{y}F(\mathbf{x})) \quad (18.20)$$

We see from Fig. 18.6 that this is also a smooth upper bound on the 0-1 loss. In the population setting (with infinite sample size), the optimal solution to the exponential loss is the same as for log loss. To see this, we can just set the derivative of the expected loss (for each  $\mathbf{x}$ ) to zero:

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial F(\mathbf{x})} \mathbb{E} \left[ e^{-\tilde{y}f(\mathbf{x})} | \mathbf{x} \right] = \frac{\partial}{\partial F(\mathbf{x})} [p(\tilde{y} = 1 | \mathbf{x})e^{-F(\mathbf{x})} + p(\tilde{y} = -1 | \mathbf{x})e^{F(\mathbf{x})}] \quad (18.21)$$

$$= -p(\tilde{y} = 1 | \mathbf{x})e^{-F(\mathbf{x})} + p(\tilde{y} = -1 | \mathbf{x})e^{F(\mathbf{x})} \quad (18.22)$$

$$= 0 \Rightarrow \frac{p(\tilde{y} = 1 | \mathbf{x})}{p(\tilde{y} = -1 | \mathbf{x})} = e^{2F(\mathbf{x})} \quad (18.23)$$

However, it turns out that the exponential loss is easier to optimize in the boosting setting, as we show below. (We consider the log loss case in Sec. 18.5.4.)

We now discuss how to solve for the  $m$ 'th weak learner,  $F_m$ , when we use exponential loss. At step  $m$  we have to minimize

$$L_m(F) = \sum_{i=1}^N \exp[-\tilde{y}_i(f_{m-1}(\mathbf{x}_i) + \beta F(\mathbf{x}_i))] = \sum_{i=1}^N \omega_{i,m} \exp(-\beta \tilde{y}_i F(\mathbf{x}_i)) \quad (18.24)$$

where  $\omega_{i,m} \triangleq \exp(-\tilde{y}_i f_{m-1}(\mathbf{x}_i))$  is a weight applied to datacase  $i$ , and  $\tilde{y}_i \in \{-1, +1\}$ . We can rewrite this objective as follows:

$$L_m = e^{-\beta} \sum_{\tilde{y}_i=F(\mathbf{x}_i)} \omega_{i,m} + e^{\beta} \sum_{\tilde{y}_i \neq F(\mathbf{x}_i)} \omega_{i,m} \quad (18.25)$$

$$= (e^{\beta} - e^{-\beta}) \sum_{i=1}^N \omega_{i,m} \mathbb{I}(\tilde{y}_i \neq F(\mathbf{x}_i)) + e^{-\beta} \sum_{i=1}^N \omega_{i,m} \quad (18.26)$$

Consequently the optimal function to add is

$$F_m = \operatorname{argmin}_F \sum_{i=1}^N \omega_{i,m} \mathbb{I}(\tilde{y}_i \neq F(\mathbf{x}_i)) \quad (18.27)$$

This can be found by applying the weak learner to a weighted version of the dataset, with weights  $\omega_{i,m}$ .

All that remains is to solve for the size of the update,  $\beta$ . Substituting  $F_m$  into  $L_m$  and solving for  $\beta$  we find

$$\beta_m = \frac{1}{2} \log \frac{1 - \text{err}_m}{\text{err}_m} \quad (18.28)$$

where

$$\text{err}_m = \frac{\sum_{i=1}^N \omega_i \mathbb{I}(\tilde{y}_i \neq F_m(\mathbf{x}_i))}{\sum_{i=1}^N \omega_{i,m}} \quad (18.29)$$

Therefore overall update becomes

$$f_m(\mathbf{x}) = f_{m-1}(\mathbf{x}) + \beta_m F_m(\mathbf{x}) \quad (18.30)$$

After updating the strong learner, we need to recompute the weights for the next iteration, as follows:

$$\omega_{i,m+1} = e^{-\tilde{y}_i f_m(\mathbf{x}_i)} = e^{-\tilde{y}_i f_{m-1}(\mathbf{x}_i) - \tilde{y}_i \beta_m F_m(\mathbf{x}_i)} = \omega_{i,m} e^{-\tilde{y}_i \beta_m F_m(\mathbf{x}_i)} \quad (18.31)$$

If  $\tilde{y}_i = F_m(\mathbf{x}_i)$ , then  $\tilde{y}_i F_m(\mathbf{x}_i) = 1$ , and if  $\tilde{y}_i \neq F_m(\mathbf{x}_i)$ , then  $\tilde{y}_i F_m(\mathbf{x}_i) = -1$ . Hence  $-\tilde{y}_i F_m(\mathbf{x}_i) - 2\mathbb{I}(\tilde{y}_i \neq F_m(\mathbf{x}_i)) - 1$ , so the update becomes

$$\omega_{i,m+1} = \omega_{i,m} e^{\beta_m (2\mathbb{I}(\tilde{y}_i \neq F_m(\mathbf{x}_i)) - 1)} = \omega_{i,m} e^{2\beta_m \mathbb{I}(\tilde{y}_i \neq F_m(\mathbf{x}_i))} e^{-\beta_m} \quad (18.32)$$

Since the  $e^{-\beta_m}$  is constant across all examples, it can be dropped. If we then define  $\alpha_m = 2\beta_m$ , the update becomes

$$\omega_{i,m+1} = \begin{cases} \omega_{i,m} e^{\alpha_m} & \text{if } \tilde{y}_i \neq F_m(\mathbf{x}_i) \\ \omega_{i,m} & \text{otherwise} \end{cases} \quad (18.33)$$

Thus we see that we exponentially increase weights of misclassified examples. The resulting algorithm shown in Algorithm 6, and is known as **AdaBoost.M1** [FS96].<sup>1</sup>

A multiclass generalization of exponential loss, and an adaboost-like algorithm to minimize it, known as **SAMME** (stagewise additive modeling using a multiclass exponential loss function), is described in [Has+09]. This is implemented in scikit learn (the AdaBoostClassifier class).

#### 18.5.4 LogitBoost

The trouble with exponential loss is that it puts a lot of weight on misclassified examples, as is apparent from the exponential blowup on the left hand side of Figure 18.6. This makes the method very sensitive to outliers (mislabeled examples). In addition,  $e^{-\tilde{y}f}$  is not the logarithm of any pmf for binary variables  $\tilde{y} \in \{-1, +1\}$ ; consequently we cannot recover probability estimates from  $f(\mathbf{x})$ .

1. In [FHT00], this is called **discrete AdaBoost**, since it assumes that the base classifier  $F_m$  returns a binary class label. If  $F_m$  returns a probability instead, a modified algorithm, known as **real AdaBoost**, can be used. See [FHT00] for details.

**Algorithm 6:** Adaboost.M1, for binary classification with exponential loss

---

```

1  $\omega_i = 1/N;$ 
2 for  $m = 1 : M$  do
3   Fit a classifier  $F_m(\mathbf{x})$  to the training set using weights  $\mathbf{w}$ ;
4   Compute  $\text{err}_m = \frac{\sum_{i=1}^N \omega_{i,m} \mathbb{I}(\tilde{y}_i \neq F_m(\mathbf{x}_i))}{\sum_{i=1}^N \omega_{i,m}}$  ;
5   Compute  $\alpha_m = \log[(1 - \text{err}_m)/\text{err}_m]$ ;
6   Set  $\omega_i \leftarrow \omega_i \exp[\alpha_m \mathbb{I}(\tilde{y}_i \neq F_m(\mathbf{x}_i))]$ ;
7 Return  $f(\mathbf{x}) = \text{sgn} \left[ \sum_{m=1}^M \alpha_m F_m(\mathbf{x}) \right]$ ;

```

---

A natural alternative is to use log loss instead as we discussed in Sec. 18.5.3. This only punishes mistakes linearly, as is clear from Figure 18.6. Furthermore, it means that we will be able to extract probabilities from the final learned function, using

$$p(y = 1 | \mathbf{x}) = \frac{e^{f(\mathbf{x})}}{e^{-f(\mathbf{x})} + e^{f(\mathbf{x})}} = \frac{1}{1 + e^{-2f(\mathbf{x})}} \quad (18.34)$$

The goal is to minimize the expected log-loss, given by

$$L_m(F) = \sum_{i=1}^N \log [1 + \exp(-2\tilde{y}_i(f_{m-1}(\mathbf{x}) + F(\mathbf{x}_i)))] \quad (18.35)$$

By performing a Newton update on this objective (similar to IRLS), one can derive the algorithm shown in Algorithm 7. This is known as **logitBoost** [FHT00]. The key subroutine is the ability of the weak learner  $F$  to solve a weighted least squares problem. This method can be generalized to the multi-class setting, as explained in [FHT00].

**Algorithm 7:** LogitBoost, for binary classification with log-loss

---

```

1  $\omega_i = 1/N, \pi_i = 1/2;$ 
2 for  $m = 1 : M$  do
3   Compute the working response  $z_i = \frac{y_i^* - \pi_i}{\pi_i(1 - \pi_i)}$ ;
4   Compute the weights  $\omega_i = \pi_i(1 - \pi_i)$ ;
5    $F_m = \text{argmin}_F \sum_{i=1}^N \omega_i(z_i - F(\mathbf{x}_i))^2$ ;
6   Update  $f(\mathbf{x}) \leftarrow f(\mathbf{x}) + \frac{1}{2}F_m(\mathbf{x})$ ;
7   Compute  $\pi_i = 1/(1 + \exp(-2f(\mathbf{x}_i)))$ ;
8 Return  $f(\mathbf{x}) = \text{sgn} \left[ \sum_{m=1}^M F_m(\mathbf{x}) \right]$ ;

```

---

### 18.5.5 Gradient boosting

Rather than deriving new versions of boosting for every different loss function, it is possible to derive a generic version, known as **gradient boosting** [Fri01; Mas+00]. To explain this, imagine solving

Name	Loss	$-\partial\ell(y_i, f(\mathbf{x}_i))/\partial f(\mathbf{x}_i)$
Squared error	$\frac{1}{2}(y_i - f(\mathbf{x}_i))^2$	$y_i - f(\mathbf{x}_i)$
Absolute error	$ y_i - f(\mathbf{x}_i) $	$\text{sgn}(y_i - f(\mathbf{x}_i))$
Exponential loss	$\exp(-\tilde{y}_i f(\mathbf{x}_i))$	$-\tilde{y}_i \exp(-\tilde{y}_i f(\mathbf{x}_i))$
Binary Logloss	$\log(1 + e^{-\tilde{y}_i f_i})$	$y_i - \pi_i$
Multiclass logloss	$-\sum_c y_{ic} \log \pi_{ic}$	$y_{ic} - \pi_{ic}$

Table 18.1: Some commonly used loss functions, their gradients, and their population minimizers  $F^*$ . For binary classification problems, we assume  $\tilde{y}_i \in \{-1, +1\}$ , and  $\pi_i = \sigma(2f(\mathbf{x}_i))$ . For regression problems, we assume  $y_i \in \mathbb{R}$ . Adapted from [HTF09, p360] and [BH07, p483].

$\hat{\mathbf{f}} = \operatorname{argmin}_{\mathbf{f}} \mathcal{L}(\mathbf{f})$  by performing gradient descent in the space of functions. Since functions are infinite dimensional objects, we will represent them by their values on the training set,  $\mathbf{f} = (f(\mathbf{x}_1), \dots, f(\mathbf{x}_N))$ . At step  $m$ , let  $\mathbf{g}_m$  be the gradient of  $\mathcal{L}(\mathbf{f})$  evaluated at  $\mathbf{f} = \mathbf{f}_{m-1}$ :

$$g_{im} = \left[ \frac{\partial\ell(y_i, f(\mathbf{x}_i))}{\partial f(\mathbf{x}_i)} \right]_{f=f_{m-1}} \quad (18.36)$$

Gradients of some common loss functions are given in Table 18.1. We then make the update

$$\mathbf{f}_m = \mathbf{f}_{m-1} - \beta_m \mathbf{g}_m \quad (18.37)$$

where  $\beta_m$  is the step length, chosen by

$$\beta_m = \operatorname{argmin}_{\beta} \mathcal{L}(\mathbf{f}_{m-1} - \beta \mathbf{g}_m) \quad (18.38)$$

In its current form, this is not much use, since it only optimizes  $f$  at a fixed set of  $N$  points, so we do not learn a function that can generalize. However, we can modify the algorithm by fitting a weak learner to approximate the negative gradient signal. That is, we use this update

$$F_m = \operatorname{argmin}_F \sum_{i=1}^N (-g_{im} - F(\mathbf{x}_i))^2 \quad (18.39)$$

The overall algorithm is summarized in Algorithm 8. We have omitted the line search step for  $\beta_m$ , which is not strictly necessary, as argued in [BH07]. However, we have introduced a learning rate or **shrinkage factor**  $0 < \nu \leq 1$ , to control the size of the updates, for regularization purposes.

If we apply this algorithm using squared loss, we recover L2Boosting, since  $-g_{im} = y_i - f_{m-1}(\mathbf{x}_i)$  is just the residual error. We can also apply this algorithm to other loss functions, such as absolute loss or Huber loss (Sec. 8.1.5.3), which is useful for robust regression problems.

For classification, we can use log-loss. In this case, we get an algorithm known as **BinomialBoost** [BH07]. The advantage of this over LogitBoost is that it does not need to be able to do weighted fitting: it just applies any black-box regression model to the gradient vector. To apply this to multi-class classification, we can fit  $C$  separate regression trees, using the pseudo residual of the form

$$-g_{icm} = \frac{\partial\ell(y_i, f_{1m}(\mathbf{x}_i), \dots, f_{Cm}(\mathbf{x}_i))}{\partial f_{cm}(\mathbf{x}_i)} = \mathbb{I}(y_i = c) - \pi_{ic} \quad (18.40)$$

**Algorithm 8:** Gradient boosting

- 
- 1 Initialize  $f_0(\mathbf{x}) = \operatorname{argmin}_F \sum_{i=1}^N L(y_i, F(\mathbf{x}_i))$ ;
  - 2 **for**  $m = 1 : M$  **do**
  - 3   Compute the gradient residual using  $r_{im} = -\left[\frac{\partial L(y_i, f(\mathbf{x}_i))}{\partial f(\mathbf{x}_i)}\right]_{f(\mathbf{x}_i)=f_{m-1}(\mathbf{x}_i)}$
  - 4   Use the weak learner to compute  $F_m = \operatorname{argmin}_F \sum_{i=1}^N (r_{im} - F(\mathbf{x}_i))^2$ ;
  - 5   Update  $f_m(\mathbf{x}) = f_{m-1}(\mathbf{x}) + \nu F_m(\mathbf{x})$ ;
  - 6 Return  $f(\mathbf{x}) = f_M(\mathbf{x})$
- 

Although the trees are fit separately, their predictions are combined via a softmax transform

$$p(y = c | \mathbf{x}) = \frac{e^{f_c(\mathbf{x})}}{\sum_{c'=1}^C e^{f_{c'}(\mathbf{x})}} \quad (18.41)$$

When we have large datasets, we can use a stochastic variant in which we subsample (without replacement) a random fraction of the data to pass to the regression tree at each iteration. This is called **stochastic gradient boosting** [Fri99]. Not only is it faster, but it can also generalize better, because subsampling the data is a form of regularization

#### 18.5.5.1 Gradient tree boosting

In practice, gradient boosting nearly always assumes that the weak learner is a regression tree, which is a model of the form

$$F_m(\mathbf{x}) = \sum_{j=1}^{J_m} w_{jm} \mathbb{I}(\mathbf{x} \in R_{jm}) \quad (18.42)$$

where  $w_{jm}$  is the predicted output for region  $R_{jm}$ . (In general,  $w_{jm}$  could be a vector.) This combination is called **gradient boosted regression trees**, or **gradient tree boosting**. (A related version is known as **MART**, which stands for “multivariate additive regression trees” [FM03].)

To use this in gradient boosting, we first find good regions  $R_{jm}$  for tree  $m$  using standard regression tree learning (see Sec. 18.1) on the residuals; we then (re)solve for the weights of each leaf by solving

$$\hat{w}_{jm} = \operatorname{argmin}_w \sum_{\mathbf{x}_i \in R_{jm}} \ell(y_i, f_{m-1}(\mathbf{x}_i) + w) \quad (18.43)$$

For squared error (as used by gradient boosting), the optimal weight  $\hat{w}_{jm}$  is the just the mean of the residuals in that leaf.

#### 18.5.5.2 XGBoost

**XGBoost** (<https://github.com/dmlc/xgboost>), which stands for “extreme gradient boosting”, is a very efficient and widely used implementation of gradient boosted trees, that adds a few more improvements beyond the description in Sec. 18.5.5.1. The details can be found in [CG16], but in

brief, the extensions are as follows: it adds a regularizer on the tree complexity, it uses a second order approximation of the loss (from [FHT00]) instead of just a linear approximation, it samples features at internal nodes (as in random forests), and it uses various computer science methods (such as handling out-of-core computation for large datasets) to ensure scalability.<sup>2</sup>

In more detail, XGBoost optimizes the following regularized objective

$$\mathcal{L}(f) = \sum_{i=1}^N \ell(y_i, f(\mathbf{x}_i)) + \Omega(f) \quad (18.44)$$

where

$$\Omega(f) = \gamma J + \frac{1}{2} \lambda \sum_{j=1}^J w_j^2 \quad (18.45)$$

is the regularizer, where  $J$  is the number of leaves, and  $\gamma \geq 0$  and  $\lambda \geq 0$  are regularization coefficients. At the  $m$ 'th step, the loss is given by

$$\mathcal{L}_m(F_m) = \sum_{i=1}^N \ell(y_i, f_{m-1}(\mathbf{x}_i) + F_m(\mathbf{x}_i)) + \Omega(F_m) + \text{const} \quad (18.46)$$

We can compute a second order Taylor expansion of this as follows:

$$\mathcal{L}_m(F_m) \approx \sum_{i=1}^N \left[ \ell(y_i, f_{m-1}(\mathbf{x}_i)) + g_{im} F_m(\mathbf{x}_i) + \frac{1}{2} h_{im} F_m^2(\mathbf{x}_i) \right] + \Omega(F_m) + \text{const} \quad (18.47)$$

where  $h_{im}$  is the Hessian

$$h_{im} = \left[ \frac{\partial^2 \ell(y_i, f(\mathbf{x}_i))}{\partial f(\mathbf{x}_i)^2} \right]_{f=f_{m-1}} \quad (18.48)$$

In the case of regression trees, we have  $F(\mathbf{x}) = w_{q(\mathbf{x})}$ , where  $q : \mathbb{R}^D \rightarrow \{1, \dots, J\}$  specifies which leaf node  $\mathbf{x}$  belongs to, and  $\mathbf{w} \in \mathbb{R}^J$  are the leaf weights. Hence we can rewrite Eq. (18.47) as follows, dropping terms that are independent of  $F_m$ :

$$\mathcal{L}_m(q, \mathbf{w}) \approx \sum_{i=1}^N \left[ g_{im} F_m(\mathbf{x}_i) + \frac{1}{2} h_{im} F_m^2(\mathbf{x}_i) \right] + \gamma J + \frac{1}{2} \lambda \sum_{j=1}^J J w_j^2 \quad (18.49)$$

$$= \sum_{j=1}^J \left[ \left( \sum_{i \in I_j} g_{im} \right) w_j + \frac{1}{2} \left( \sum_{i \in I_j} h_i + \lambda \right) w_j^2 \right] + \gamma J \quad (18.50)$$

where  $I_j = \{i : q(\mathbf{x}_i) = j\}$  is the set of indices of data points assigned to the  $j$ 'th leaf.

---

2. Some other popular gradient boosted trees packages are **CatBoost** (<https://catboost.ai/>) and **LightGBM** (<https://github.com/Microsoft/LightGBM>).

Let us define  $G_{jm} = \sum_{i \in I_j} g_{im}$  and  $H_{jm} = \sum_{i \in I_j} h_{im}$ . Then the above simplifies to

$$\mathcal{L}_m(q, \mathbf{w}) = \sum_{j=1}^J \left[ G_{jm} w_j + \frac{1}{2} (H_{jm} + \lambda) w_j^2 \right] + \gamma J \quad (18.51)$$

This is a quadratic in each  $w_j$  so the optimal weights are given by

$$w_j^* = -\frac{G_{jm}}{H_{jm} + \lambda} \quad (18.52)$$

The loss for evaluating different tree structures  $q$  then becomes

$$\mathcal{L}_m(q, \mathbf{w}^*) = -\frac{1}{2} \sum_{j=1}^J \frac{G_{jm}^2}{H_{jm} + \lambda} + \gamma J \quad (18.53)$$

We can greedily optimize this using a recursive node splitting procedure, as in Sec. 18.1. Specifically, for a given leaf  $j$ , we consider splitting it into a left and right half,  $I = I_L \cup I_R$ . We can compute the gain (reduction in loss) of such a split as follows:

$$\text{gain} = \frac{1}{2} \left[ \frac{G_L^2}{H_L + \lambda} + \frac{G_R^2}{H_R + \lambda} - \frac{(G_L + G_R)^2}{(H_L + H_R) + \lambda} \right] - \gamma \quad (18.54)$$

where  $G_L = \sum_{i \in I_L} g_{im}$ ,  $G_R = \sum_{i \in I_R} g_{im}$ ,  $H_L = \sum_{i \in I_L} h_{im}$ , and  $H_R = \sum_{i \in I_R} h_{im}$ . Thus we see that it is not worth splitting a node if the gain is less than  $\gamma$ .

A fast approximation for evaluating this objective, that does not require sorting the features (for choosing the optimal threshold to split on), is described in [CG16].

## 18.6 Interpreting tree ensembles

Trees are popular because they are interpretable. Unfortunately, ensembles of trees (whether in the form of bagging, random forests, or boosting) lose that property. Fortunately, there are some simple methods we can use to interpret what function has been learned.

### 18.6.1 Feature importance

For a single decision tree  $T$ , [BFO84] proposed the following measure for **feature importance** of feature  $k$ :

$$R_k(T) = \sum_{j=1}^{J-1} G_j \mathbb{I}(v_j = k) \quad (18.55)$$

where the sum is over all non-leaf (internal) nodes,  $G_j$  is the gain in accuracy (reduction in cost) at node  $j$ , and  $v_j = k$  if node  $j$  uses feature  $k$ . We can get a more reliable estimate by averaging over all trees in the ensemble:

$$R_k = \frac{1}{M} \sum_{m=1}^M R_k(T_m) \quad (18.56)$$

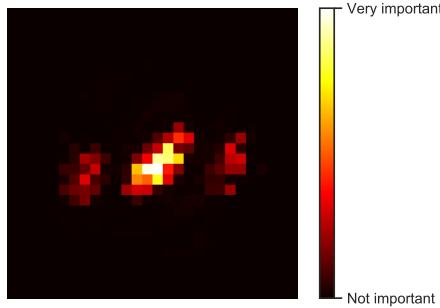


Figure 18.7: Feature importance of a random forest classifier trained to distinguish MNIST digits from classes 0 and 8. Adapted from Figure 7.6 of [Gér19]. Generated by `rf_feature_importance_mnist.py`

After computing these scores, we can normalize them so the largest value is 100%. We give some examples below.

Fig. 18.7 gives an example of estimating feature importance for a classifier trained to distinguish MNIST digits from classes 0 and 8. We see that it focuses on the parts of the image that differ between these classes.

In Fig. 18.8a, we plot the relative importance of each of the features for the spam dataset (Sec. 18.4). Not surprisingly, we find that the most important features are the words “george” (the name of the recipient) and “hp” (the company he worked for), as well as the characters ! and \$.

### 18.6.2 Partial dependency plots

After we have identified the most relevant input features, we can try to assess the impact they have on the output. A **partial dependency plot** for feature  $k$  is a plot of

$$\bar{f}_k(x_k) = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^N f(\mathbf{x}_{n,-k}, x_k) \quad (18.57)$$

vs  $x_k$ . Thus we marginalize out all features except  $k$ . In the case of a binary classifier, we can convert this to log odds,  $\log p(y=1|x_k)/p(y=0|x_k)$ , before plotting. We illustrate this for our spam example in Fig. 18.8b for 4 different features. We see that as the frequency of ! and “remove” increases, so does the probability of spam. Conversely, as the frequency of “edu” or “hp” increases, the probability of spam decreases.

We can also try to capture interaction effects between features  $j$  and  $k$  by computing

$$\bar{f}_{jk}(x_j, x_k) = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^N f(\mathbf{x}_{n,-jk}, x_j, x_k) \quad (18.58)$$

We illustrate this for our spam example in Fig. 18.8c for hp and !. We see that higher frequency of ! makes it more likely to be spam, but much more so if the word “hp” is missing.

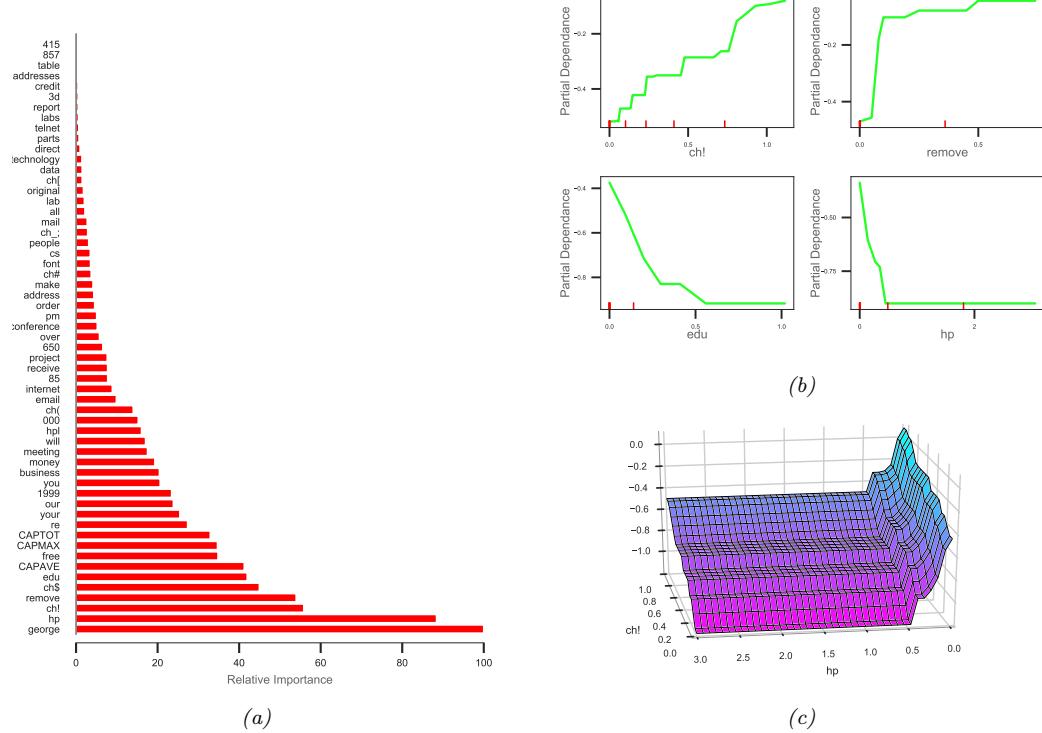


Figure 18.8: (a) Relative feature importance for the spam classification problem. Adapted from Figure 10.6 of [HTF09]. (b) Partial dependence of log-odds of the spam class for 4 important predictors. The red ticks at the base of the plot are deciles of the empirical distribution for this feature. (c) Joint partial dependence of log-odds on the features  $hp$  and  $!$ . Adapted from Figure 10.6–10.8 of [HTF09]. Generated by `spam_tree_ensemble_interpret.py`, based on code by Andrey Gaskov..



## PART V

# Beyond supervised learning



# 19 Learning with fewer labeled examples

Many ML models, especially neural networks, often have many more parameters than we have labeled training examples. For example, a ResNet CNN (Sec. 14.3.2.4) with 50 layers has 23 million parameters. Transformer models (Sec. 15.5) can be even bigger. Of course these parameters are highly correlated, so they are not independent “degrees of freedom”. Nevertheless, such big models are slow to train and, more importantly, they may easily overfit. This is particularly a problem when you do not have a large labeled training set. In this chapter, we discuss some ways to tackle this issue, beyond the generic regularization techniques we discussed in Sec. 13.5 such as early stopping, weight decay and dropout.

## 19.1 Data augmentation

Suppose we just have a single small labeled dataset. In some cases, we may be able to create artificially modified versions of the input vectors, which capture the kinds of variations we expect to see at test time, while keeping the original labels unchanged. This is called **data augmentation**.<sup>1</sup> We give some examples below, and then discuss why this approach works.

### 19.1.1 Examples

For image classification tasks, standard data augmentation methods include random crops, zooms, and mirror image flips, as illustrated in Fig. 19.1. [GVZ16] gives a more sophisticated example, where they render text characters onto an image in a realistic way, thereby creating a very large dataset of text “in the wild”. They used this to train a state of the art visual text localization and reading system. Other examples of data augmentation include artificially adding background noise to clean speech signals, and artificially replacing characters or words at random in text documents.

If we afford to train and test the model many times using different versions of the data, we can learn which augmentations work best, using blackbox optimization methods such as RL (see e.g., [Cub+19]) or Bayesian optimization (see e.g., [Lim+19]); this is called **AutoAugment**. We can also learn to combine multiple augmentations together; this is called **AugMix** [Hen+20].

---

1. The term “data augmentation” is also used in statistics to mean the addition of auxiliary latent variables to a model in order to speed up convergence of posterior inference algorithms [DM01].

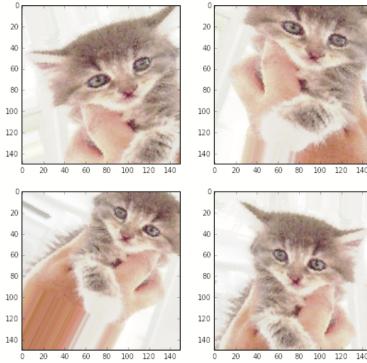


Figure 19.1: Illustration of random crops, zooms and rotations of some cat images. From [Cho17]. Used with kind permission of Francois Chollet.

### 19.1.2 Theoretical justification

Data augmentation often significantly improves performance (predictive accuracy, robustness, etc). At first this might seem like we are getting something for nothing, since we have not provided additional data. However, the data augmentation mechanism can be viewed as a way to algorithmically inject prior knowledge.

To see this, recall that in standard ERM training, we minimize the empirical risk

$$R(f) = \int \ell(f(\mathbf{x}), y) p^*(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y}) d\mathbf{x} d\mathbf{y} \quad (19.1)$$

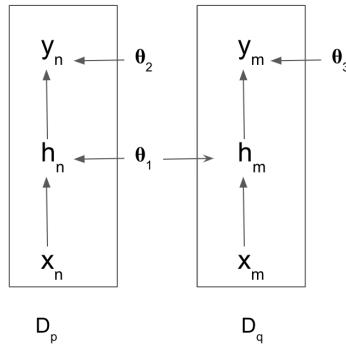
where we approximate  $p^*(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y})$  by the empirical distribution

$$p_D(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y}) = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^N \delta(\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}_n) \delta(\mathbf{y} - \mathbf{y}_n) \quad (19.2)$$

We can think of data augmentation as replacing the empirical distribution with the following algorithmically smoothed distribution

$$p_D(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y}|A) = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^N p(\mathbf{x}|\mathbf{x}_n, A) \delta(\mathbf{y} - \mathbf{y}_n) \quad (19.3)$$

where  $A$  is the data augmentation algorithm, which generates a sample  $\mathbf{x}$  from a training point  $\mathbf{x}_n$ , such that the label (“semantics”) is not changed. (A very simple example would be a Gaussian kernel,  $p(\mathbf{x}|\mathbf{x}_n, A) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{x}|\mathbf{x}_n, \sigma^2 \mathbf{I})$ .) This has been called **vicinal risk minimization** [Cha+01], since we are minimizing the risk in the vicinity of each training point  $\mathbf{x}$ . For more details on this perspective, see [Zha+17b; CDL19; Dao+19].



*Figure 19.2: Illustration of transfer learning from dataset  $\mathcal{D}_p$  to  $\mathcal{D}_q$  using a neural network, in which the feature extractor is shared, but the final layer is domain specific. The parameters  $\theta_1$  are first trained on  $\mathcal{D}_p$ , and then optionally fine-tuned on  $\mathcal{D}_q$ . Thus the information in  $\mathcal{D}_p$  is used to help the model work well on  $\mathcal{D}_q$ , but not vice versa.*

## 19.2 Transfer learning<sup>2</sup>

Many data-poor tasks have some high-level structural similarity to other data-rich tasks. For example, consider the task of **fine-grained visual classification** of endangered bird species. Given that endangered birds are by definition rare, it is unlikely that a large quantity of diverse labeled images of these birds exist. However, birds bear many structural similarities across species - for example, most birds have wings, feathers, beaks, claws, etc. We therefore might expect that first training a model on a large dataset of non-endangered bird species and then continuing to train it on a small dataset of endangered species could produce better performance than training on the small dataset alone.

This is called **transfer learning**, since we are transferring information from one dataset to another, via a shared set of parameters. More precisely, we first perform a **pre-training phase**, in which we train a model with parameters  $\theta$  on a large dataset  $\mathcal{D}_p$ ; this may be labeled or unlabeled. We then perform a second **fine-tuning phase** on the small labeled dataset  $\mathcal{D}_q$  of interest. (The fact that the pre-training and fine-tuning tasks differ means that transfer learning is slightly different from semi-supervised learning, which we discuss in Sec. 19.6.) We discuss these two phases in more detail below, but for more information, see e.g., [Tan+18; Zhu+19] for recent surveys.

### 19.2.1 Fine-tuning

Suppose, for now, that we already have a pretrained classifier,  $p(y|\mathbf{x}, \theta_p)$ , such as a CNN, that works well for inputs  $\mathbf{x} \in \mathcal{X}_p$  (e.g. natural images) and outputs  $y \in \mathcal{Y}_p$  (e.g., ImageNet labels), where the data comes from a distribution  $p(\mathbf{x}, y)$  similar to the one used in training. Now we want to create a new model  $q(y|\mathbf{x}, \theta_q)$  that works well for inputs  $\mathbf{x} \in \mathcal{X}_q$  (e.g. bird images) and outputs  $y \in \mathcal{Y}_q$  (e.g., fine-grained bird labels). where the data comes from a distribution  $q(\mathbf{x}, y)$  which may be different from  $p$ .

2. This section was coauthored with Colin Raffel.

We will assume that the set of possible inputs is the same, so  $\mathcal{X}_q \approx \mathcal{X}_p$  (e.g., both are RGB images), or that we can easily transform inputs from domain  $p$  to domain  $q$  (e.g., we can convert an RGB image to grayscale by dropping the chrominance channels and just keeping luminance). (If this is not the case, then we may need to use a method called domain adaptation, that modifies models to map between modalities, as discussed in Sec. 19.2.4.)

However, the output domains are usually different, i.e.,  $\mathcal{Y}_q \neq \mathcal{Y}_p$ . For example,  $\mathcal{Y}_p$  might be Imagenet labels and  $\mathcal{Y}_q$  might be medical labels (e.g., types of diabetic retinopathy [Arc+19]). In this case, we need to “translate” the output of the pre-trained model to the new domain. This is easy to do with neural networks: we simply “chop off” the final layer of the original model, and add a new “head” to model the new class labels, as illustrated in Fig. 19.2. For example, suppose  $p(y|\mathbf{x}, \boldsymbol{\theta}_p) = \mathcal{S}(y|\mathbf{W}_2\mathbf{h}(\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta}_1) + \mathbf{b}_2)$ , where  $\boldsymbol{\theta}_p = (\mathbf{W}_2, \mathbf{b}_2, \boldsymbol{\theta}_1)$ . Then we can construct  $q(y|\boldsymbol{\theta}_q) = \mathcal{S}(y|\mathbf{W}_3^\top \mathbf{h}(\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta}_1) + \mathbf{b}_3)$ , where  $\boldsymbol{\theta}_q = (\mathbf{W}_3, \mathbf{b}_3, \boldsymbol{\theta}_1)$  and  $\mathbf{h}(\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta}_1)$  is the shared nonlinear feature extractor.

After performing this “model surgery”, we can fine-tune the new model with parameters  $\boldsymbol{\theta}_q = (\boldsymbol{\theta}_1, \boldsymbol{\theta}_3)$ , where  $\boldsymbol{\theta}_1$  parameterizes the feature extractor, and  $\boldsymbol{\theta}_3$  parameters the final linear layer that maps features to the new set of labels. If we treat  $\boldsymbol{\theta}_1$  as “**frozen parameters**”, then the resulting model  $q(y|\mathbf{x}, \boldsymbol{\theta}_q)$  is linear in its parameters, so we have a convex optimization problem for which many simple and efficient fitting methods exist (see Part II). This is particularly helpful in the long-tail setting, where some classes are very rare [Kan+20]. However, a linear “decoder” may be too limiting, so we can also allow  $\boldsymbol{\theta}_1$  to be fine-tuned as well, but using a lower learning rate, to prevent the values moving too far from the values estimated on  $\mathcal{D}_p$ .

### 19.2.2 Supervised pre-training

The pre-training task may be supervised or unsupervised; the main requirements are that it can teach the model basic structure about the problem domain and that it is sufficiently similar to the downstream fine-tuning task. The notion of task similarity is not rigorously defined, but in practice the domain of the pre-training task is often more broad than that of the fine-tuning task (e.g., pre-train on all bird species and fine-tune on endangered ones).

The most straightforward form of transfer learning is the case where a large labeled dataset is suitable for pre-training. For example, it is very common to use the ImageNet dataset (Sec. 14.3.1.2) to pretrain CNNs, which can then be used for a variety of downstream tasks and datasets (see e.g., [Kol+19]). Imagenet has 1.28 million natural images, each associated with a label from one of 1,000 classes. The classes constitute a wide variety of different concepts, including animals, foods, buildings, musical instruments, clothing, and so on. The images themselves are diverse in the sense that they contain objects from many angles and in many sizes with a wide variety of backgrounds. This diversity and scale may partially explain why it has become a de-facto pre-training task for transfer learning in computer vision.

However, Imagenet pre-training has been shown to be less helpful when the domain of the fine-tuning task is quite different from natural images (e.g. medical images [Rag+19]). And in some cases where it is helpful (e.g., training object detection systems), it seems to be more of a speedup trick (by warm-starting optimization at a good point) rather than something that is essential, in the sense that one can achieve comparable performance on the downstream task when training from scratch, if done for long enough [HGD19].

Supervised pre-training is somewhat less common in non-vision applications. One notable exception

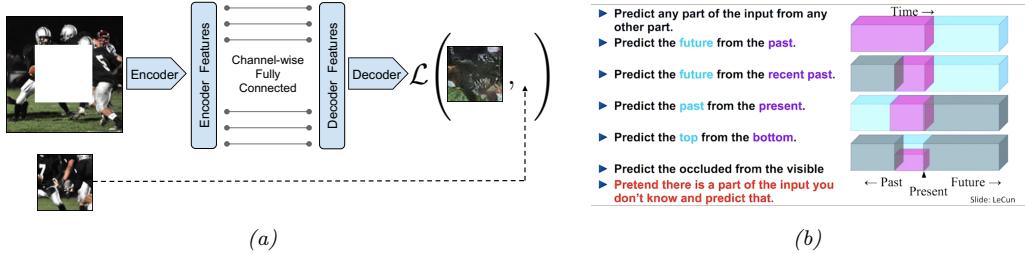


Figure 19.3: (a) Context encoder for self-supervised learning. From [Pat+16]. Used with kind permission of Deepak Pathak. (b) Some other proxy tasks for self-supervised learning. From [LeC18]. Used with kind permission of Yann LeCun.

is to pre-train on natural language inference data (i.e. whether a sentence implies or contradicts another) to learn vector representations of sentences [Con+17], though this approach has largely been supplanted by unsupervised methods (Sec. 19.2.3). Another non-vision application of transfer learning is to pre-train a speech recognition on a large English-labeled corpus before fine-tuning on low-resource languages [Ard+20].

### 19.2.3 Unsupervised pre-training (self-supervised learning)

It is increasingly common to use **unsupervised pre-training**, because unlabeled data is often easy to acquire, e.g., unlabeled images or text documents from the web.

For a short period of time it was common to pre-train deep neural networks using an unsupervised objective (e.g., reconstruction error, as discussed in Sec. 20.3) over the labeled dataset (i.e. ignoring the labels) before proceeding with standard supervised training [HOT06; Vin+10b; Erh+10]. While this technique is also called unsupervised pre-training, it differs from the form of pre-training for transfer learning we discuss in this section, which uses a (large) unlabeled dataset for pre-training before fine-tuning on a different (smaller) labeled dataset.

Pre-training tasks that use unlabeled data are often called **self-supervised** rather than unsupervised. This term is used because the labels are created by the algorithm, rather than being provided externally by a human, as in standard supervised learning. Both supervised and self-supervised learning are discriminative tasks, since they require predicting outputs given inputs. By contrast, other unsupervised approaches, such as some of those discussed in Chapter 20, are generative, since they predict outputs unconditionally.

There are many different self-supervised learning heuristics that have been tried (see e.g., [GR18; JT19; Ren19] for a review). We can identify at least three main broad groups, which we discuss below.

#### 19.2.3.1 Imputation tasks

One approach to SSL is to solve **imputation tasks**. In this approach, we partition the input vector  $\mathbf{x}$  into two parts,  $\mathbf{x} = (\mathbf{x}_h, \mathbf{x}_v)$ , and then try to predict the hidden part  $\mathbf{x}_h$  given the remaining visible part,  $\mathbf{x}_v$ , using a model of the form  $\hat{\mathbf{x}}_h = f(\mathbf{x}_v, \mathbf{x}_h = \mathbf{0})$ . We can think of this as a “**fill-in-the-blank**” task; in the NLP community, this is called a **cloze task**. See Fig. 19.3 for some visual examples, and

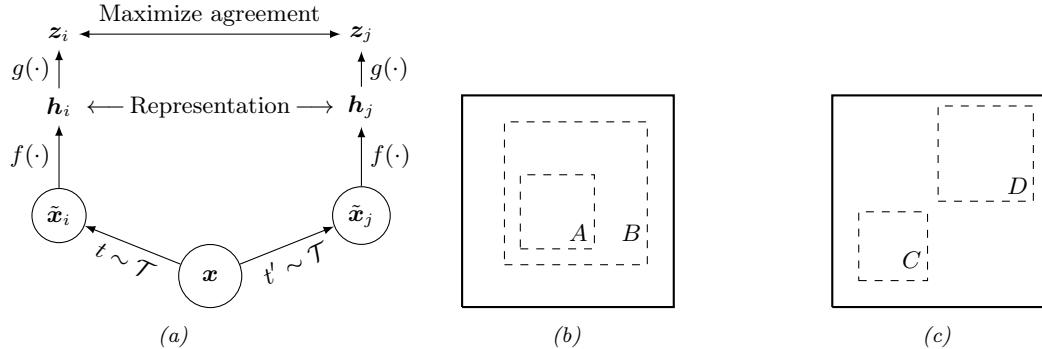


Figure 19.4: (a) Illustration of SimCLR training.  $\mathcal{T}$  is a set of stochastic semantics-preserving transformations (data augmentations). (b-c) Illustration of the benefit of random crops. Solid rectangles represent the original image, dashed rectangles are random crops. On the left, the model is forced to predict the local view A from the global view B (and vice versa). On the right, the model is forced to predict the appearance of adjacent views (C,D). From Figures 2–3 of [Che+20b]. Used with kind permission of Ting Chen.

Sec. 19.5.5.3 for some NLP examples.

### 19.2.3.2 Proxy tasks

Another approach to SSL is to solve **proxy tasks**, also called **pretext tasks**. In this setup, we create pairs of inputs,  $(\mathbf{x}_1, \mathbf{x}_2)$ , and then train a Siamese network classifier (Fig. 16.5a) of the form  $p(y|\mathbf{x}_1, \mathbf{x}_2) = p(y|f(r(\mathbf{x}_1), r(\mathbf{x}_2)))$ , where  $r(\mathbf{x})$  is some function that performs “**representation learning**” [BCV13], and  $y$  is some label that captures the relationship between  $\mathbf{x}_1$  and  $\mathbf{x}_2$ . For example, if  $\mathbf{x}_1$  is an image patch, and  $\mathbf{x}_2$  is a random rotation of  $\mathbf{x}_1$  that we create, we can try to predict the rotation angle  $y$  [GSK18].

### 19.2.3.3 Contrastive tasks

The currently most popular approach to self-supervised learning is to use various kinds of **contrastive tasks**. The basic idea is to create pairs of examples that are semantically similar to each other, using data augmentation methods (Sec. 19.1), and then to ensure that the distance between their representations is closer (in embedding space) than the distance between two unrelated examples. This is exactly the same idea that is used in deep metric learning (Sec. 16.2.2) — the only difference is that the algorithm creates its own similar pairs, rather than relying on an externally provided measure of similarity, such as labels.

As an example of such an approach, consider the **SimCLR** (simple contrastive learning of visual representations) method of [Che+20b; Che+20c], which has shown state of the art performance on transfer learning and semi-supervised learning. The basic idea is as follows. Each input  $\mathbf{x}$  is randomly modified to create two versions,  $\mathbf{x}_i$  and  $\mathbf{x}_j$ . This is done for all  $N$  examples in the batch. We then compute a representation of each input,  $\mathbf{h}_i = f(\mathbf{x}_i)$ , as well as the final embedding,  $\mathbf{z}_i = g(\mathbf{h}_i)$ , which is then  $\ell_2$  normalized. See Fig. 19.4a.

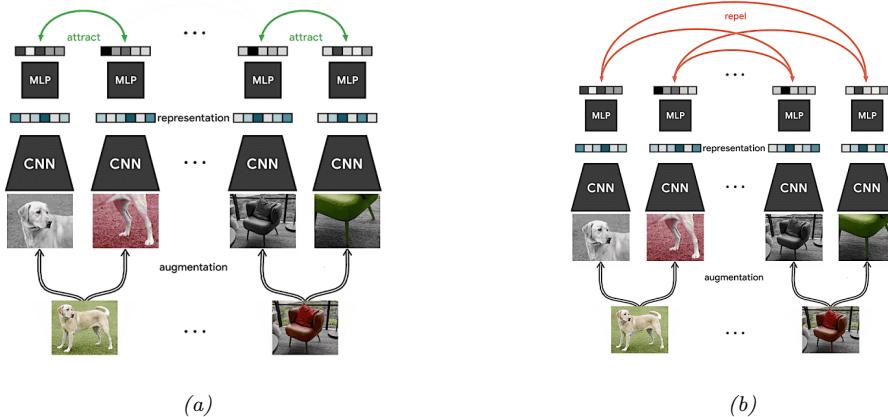


Figure 19.5: Visualization of SimCLR training. Each input image in the minibatch is randomly modified in two different ways (using cropping (followed by resize), flipping, and color distortion), and then fed into a Siamese network. The embeddings (final layer) for each pair derived from the same image is forced to be close, whereas the embeddings for all other pairs are forced to be far. From <https://ai.googleblog.com/2020/04/advancing-self-supervised-and-semi.html>. Used with kind permission of Ting Chen.

Define the similarity between a pair of inputs as follows:

$$S_{ij} = \frac{\mathbf{z}_i^\top \mathbf{z}_j}{\|\mathbf{z}_i\| \|\mathbf{z}_j\|} \quad (19.4)$$

We now define the loss function for a positive pair  $(i, j)$  to be the normalized temperature cross-entropy (**NT-Xent**) loss, defined as follows:

$$\ell_{ij}(\boldsymbol{\theta}) = -\log \frac{\exp(S_{ij}/\tau)}{\sum_{k=1}^{2N} \mathbb{I}(k \neq i) \exp(S_{ik}/\tau)} \quad (19.5)$$

where  $\tau > 0$  is a temperature parameter. (This is identical to the N-pairs loss discussed in Sec. 16.2.4.3, apart from the temperature term.) The final loss for a minibatch is given by

$$\mathcal{L}(\theta) = \sum_{i=1}^N \ell_{i,j=\text{pos}(i)}(\theta) \quad (19.6)$$

The net effect is to pull similar pairs close together, and to force dissimilar pairs far apart, as illustrated in Fig. 19.5.

A critical ingredient to the success of SimCLR is the choice of data augmentation methods. By using random cropping, they can force the model to predict local views from global views, as well as to predict adjacent views of the same image (see Fig. 19.4). (After cropping, all images are resized back to the same size.) In addition, they randomly flip the image some fraction of the time.

However, it turns out that distinguishing positive crops (from the same image) from negative crops (from different images) is often easy to do just based on color histograms. To prevent this kind

of “cheating”, they also apply a random color distortion, thus cutting off this “short circuit”. The combination of random cropping and color distortion is found to work better than either method alone.

After training, the final  $g$  mapping (known as the **projection head**) is thrown away, and we use  $\mathbf{h}_i = f(\mathbf{x}_i)$  as our representation in downstream tasks. The reason this can help is that the mapping  $\mathbf{z}_i = g(\mathbf{h}_i)$  might throw away information that is not necessary for the contrastive task, such as the color or orientation of objects. However, such information may be useful for downstream tasks, so it is better to keep it. (In [Che+20c], they propose SimCLR2, in which they take the middle of the projection head as their final representation layer; this is a “compromise” between using  $f$  and  $g \circ f$ .)

SimCLR relies on large batch training, in order to ensure a sufficiently diverse set of negatives. When this is not possible, we can use a memory bank of past (negative) embeddings, which can be updated using exponential moving averaging (Sec. 4.6.2). This is known as **momentum contrastive learning** or MoCo [He+20].

#### 19.2.4 Domain adaptation

Consider a problem in which we have inputs from different domains, such as a **source domain**  $\mathcal{X}_s$  and **target domain**  $\mathcal{X}_t$ , but a common set of output labels,  $\mathcal{Y}$ . (This is the “dual” of transfer learning, since the input domains are different, but the output domains the same.) For example, the domains might be images from a computer graphics system and real images, or product reviews and movie reviews. We assume we do not have labeled examples from the target domain. Our goal is to fit the model on the source domain, and then modify its parameters so it works on the target domain. This is called (unsupervised) **domain adaptation** (see e.g., [KL19] for a review).

A common approach to this problem is to train the source classifier in such a way that it cannot distinguish whether the input is coming from the source or target distribution; in this case, it will only be able to use features that are common to both domains. This is called **domain adversarial learning** [Gan+16]. More formally, let  $d_n \in \{s, t\}$  be a label that specifies if the data example  $n$  comes from domain  $s$  or  $t$ . We want to optimize

$$\min_{\phi} \max_{\theta} \frac{1}{N_s + N_t} \sum_{n \in \mathcal{D}_s, \mathcal{D}_t} \ell(d_n, f_{\theta}(\mathbf{x}_n)) + \frac{1}{N_s} \sum_{m \in \mathcal{D}_s} \ell(y_m, g_{\phi}(f_{\theta}(\mathbf{x}_m))) \quad (19.7)$$

where  $N_s = |\mathcal{D}_s|$ ,  $N_t = |\mathcal{D}_t|$ ,  $f$  maps  $\mathcal{X}_s \cup \mathcal{X}_t \rightarrow \mathcal{H}$ , and  $g$  maps  $\mathcal{H} \rightarrow \mathcal{Y}_t$ . The objective in Eq. (19.7) minimizes the loss on the desired task of classifying  $y$ , but *maximizes* the loss on the auxiliary task of classifying the source domain  $d$ . This can be implemented by the **gradient sign reversal** trick, and is related to GANs (generative adversarial networks). See e.g., [Csu17; Wu+19] for some other approaches to domain adaptation.

### 19.3 Meta-learning

The field of **meta learning**, also called **learning to learn** [TP97], is concerned with learning multiple related functions (often called “tasks”). For example, suppose we have a set of  $J$  related datasets,  $\{\mathcal{D}^j : j = 1 : J\}$ , where  $\mathcal{D}^j = \{(\mathbf{x}_n^j, y_n^j) : n = 1 : N_j\}$ ,  $\mathbf{x}_n^j \sim p(\mathbf{x})$ , and  $y_n^j = f^j(\mathbf{x}_n^j)$ . (For example,  $p(\mathbf{x})$  could be a distribution over images,  $f^1$  could be a function mapping images to dog breeds,  $f^2$  could be a function mapping images to car types, etc.) We can apply this inner algorithm

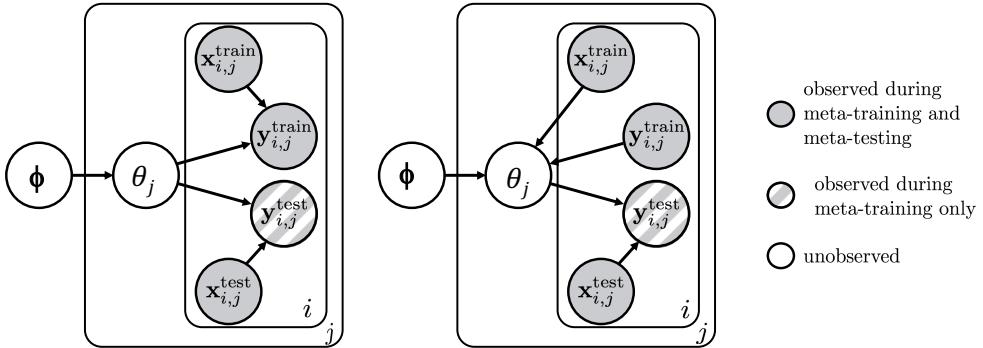


Figure 19.6: Graphical model corresponding to MAML. Left: generative model. Right: During meta-training, each of the task parameters  $\theta_j$ 's are updated using their local datasets. The indices  $j$  are over tasks (meta datasets), and  $i$  are over instances within each task. Solid shaded nodes are always observed; semi-shaded (striped) nodes are only observed during meta training time (i.e., not at test time). From Figure 1 of [FYL18]. Used with kind permission of Chelsea Finn.

to generate a labeled set  $\mathcal{D}_{\text{meta}} = \{(\mathcal{D}^j, f^j) : j = 1 : J\}$ , which we can use to learn an outer or ‘‘meta’’ algorithm or function  $\hat{M}$  that maps a dataset to a prediction function,  $\hat{f}^j = \hat{M}(\mathcal{D}^j)$  (c.f., [Min99]). By contrast, conventional supervised learning learns a function  $\hat{f}$  that maps a single example to a label,  $\hat{y}_n = \hat{f}(\mathbf{x}_n)$ .

There are many other approaches to meta-learning (see e.g., [Van18] for a survey). In Sec. 19.3.1, we discuss one popular approach, known as **MAML**, which can be thought of as an approximate form of empirical Bayes in a hierarchical Bayesian model.

There are also many applications of meta-learning. We discuss one of the most popular examples in Sec. 19.4.

### 19.3.1 Model-agnostic meta-learning (MAML)

A natural approach to transfer learning is to use a hierarchical Bayesian model, as illustrated in Fig. 19.6. The parameters for each task  $\theta_j$  are assumed to come from a common prior,  $p(\theta_j|\phi)$ , which can be used to help pool statistical strength from multiple data-poor problems.

We could perform Bayesian inference for the task parameters  $\theta_j$  and the shared hyper-parameters  $\phi$ , but a more efficient approach is to use the following empirical Bayes (Sec. 7.5) approximation:

$$\phi^* = \underset{\phi}{\operatorname{argmax}} \frac{1}{J} \sum_{j=1}^J \log p(\mathcal{D}_{\text{valid}}^j | \hat{\theta}_j(\phi, \mathcal{D}_{\text{train}}^j)) \quad (19.8)$$

where  $\hat{\theta}_j = \hat{\theta}(\phi, \mathcal{D}_{\text{train}}^j)$  is a point estimate of the parameters for task  $j$  based on  $\mathcal{D}_{\text{train}}^j$  and prior  $\phi$ , and where we use a cross-validation approximation to the marginal likelihood (Sec. 7.6.4).

To compute the point estimate of the task parameters,  $\hat{\theta}_j$ , we use  $K$  steps of a gradient ascent procedure starting at  $\phi$  with a learning rate of  $\eta$ . This can be shown to be equivalent to an

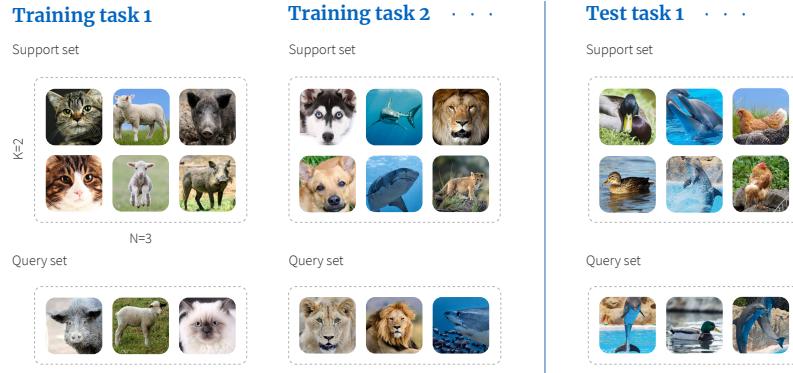


Figure 19.7: Illustration of meta-learning for few-shot learning. Here, each task is a 3-way-2-shot classification problem because each training task contains a support set with three classes, each with two examples. From <https://www.borealisai.com/en/blog/tutorial-2-few-shot-learning-and-meta-learning-i>. Copyright (2019) Borealis AI. Used with kind permission of Simon Prince and April Cooper.

approximate MAP estimate using a Gaussian prior centered at  $\phi$ , where the strength of the prior is controlled by the number of gradient steps [San96; Gra+18]. (This is an example of **fast adaption** of the task specific weights starting from the shared prior  $\phi$ .)

Thus we see that learning the prior  $\phi$  is equivalent to learning a good initializer for task-specific learning. This is known as **model-agnostic meta-learning** or **MAML** [FAL17].

## 19.4 Few-shot learning

People can learn to predict from very few labeled examples. This is called **few-shot learning**. In the extreme in which the person or system learns from a single example of each class, this is called **one-shot learning**, and if no labeled examples are given, it is called **zero-shot learning**.

A common way to evaluate methods for FSL is to use **N-way K-shot classification**, in which the system is expected to learn to classify  $K$  classes using just  $N$  training examples of each class. Typically  $N$  and  $K$  are very small, e.g., Fig. 19.7 illustrates the case where we have  $N = 3$  classes, each with  $K = 2$  examples. Since the amount of data from the new domain (here, ducks, dolphins and hens) is so small, we cannot expect to learn from scratch. Therefore we turn to meta-learning.

During training, the meta-algorithm  $M$  trains on a labeled support set from group  $j$ , returns a predictor  $f^j$ , which is then evaluated on a disjoint query set also from group  $j$ . We optimize  $M$  over all  $J$  groups. Finally we can apply  $M$  to our new labeled support set to get  $f^{\text{test}}$ , which is applied to the query set from the test domain. This is illustrated in Fig. 19.7. We see that there is no overlap between the classes in the two training tasks ( $\{\text{cat, lamb, pig}\}$  and  $\{\text{dog, shark, lion}\}$ ) and those in the test task ( $\{\text{duck, dolphin, hen}\}$ ). Thus the algorithm  $M$  must learn to predict image classes in general rather than any particular set of labels.

There are many approaches to few-shot learning. We discuss one such method in Sec. 19.4.1. For more methods, see e.g., [Wan+20b].

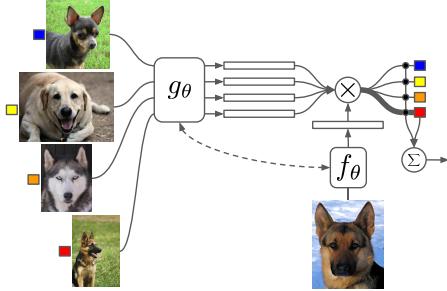


Figure 19.8: Illustration of a matching network for one-shot learning. From Figure 1 of [Vin+16]. Used with kind permission of Oriol Vinyals.

#### 19.4.1 Matching networks

One approach to few shot learning is to learn a distance metric on some other dataset, and then to use  $d_\theta(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}')$  inside of a nearest neighbor classifier. Essentially this defines a semi-parametric model of the form  $p_\theta(y|\mathbf{x}, \mathcal{S})$ , where  $\mathcal{S}$  is the small labeled dataset (known as the support set), and  $\theta$  are the parameters of the distance function. This approach is widely used for **fine-grained classification** tasks, where there are many different visually similar categories, such as face images from a gallery, or product images from a catalog.

An extension of this approach is to learn a function of the form

$$p_\theta(y|\mathbf{x}, \mathcal{S}) = \mathbb{I}\left(y = \sum_{n \in \mathcal{S}} a_\theta(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}_n; \mathcal{S}) y_n\right) \quad (19.9)$$

where  $a_\theta(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}_n; \mathcal{S}) \in \mathbb{R}^+$  is some kind of adaptive similarity kernel. For example, we can use an **attention kernel** of the form

$$a(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}_n; \mathcal{S}) = \frac{\exp(c(f(\mathbf{x}), g(\mathbf{x}_n)))}{\sum_{n'=1}^N \exp(c(f(\mathbf{x}), g(\mathbf{x}_{n'})))} \quad (19.10)$$

where  $c(\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v})$  is the cosine distance. (We can make  $f$  and  $g$  be the same function if we want.) Intuitively, the attention kernel will compare  $\mathbf{x}$  to  $\mathbf{x}_n$  in the context of all the labeled examples, which provides an implicit signal about which feature dimensions are relevant. (We discuss attention mechanisms in more detail in Sec. 15.4.) This is called a **matching network** [Vin+16]. See Fig. 19.8 for an illustration.

We can train the  $f$  and  $g$  functions using multiple small datasets, as in meta-learning (Sec. 19.3). More precisely, let  $\mathcal{D}$  be a large labeled dataset (e.g., ImageNet), and let  $p(\mathcal{L})$  be a distribution over its labels. We create a task by sampling a small set of labels (say 25),  $\mathcal{L} \sim p(\mathcal{L})$ , and then sampling a small support set of examples from  $\mathcal{D}$  with those labels,  $\mathcal{S} \sim \mathcal{L}$ , and finally sampling a small test set with those same labels,  $\mathcal{T} \sim \mathcal{L}$ . We then train the model to predict the test labels given the support set, i.e., we optimize the following objective:

$$\mathcal{L}(\theta; \mathcal{D}) = \mathbb{E}_{\mathcal{L} \sim p(\mathcal{L})} \left[ \mathbb{E}_{\mathcal{S} \sim \mathcal{L}, \mathcal{T} \sim \mathcal{L}} \left[ \sum_{(\mathbf{x}, y) \in \mathcal{T}} \log p_\theta(y|\mathbf{x}, \mathcal{S}) \right] \right] \quad (19.11)$$

After training, we freeze  $\boldsymbol{\theta}$ , and apply Eq. (19.9) to a test support set  $\mathcal{S}$ .

## 19.5 Word embeddings

Words are categorical random variables, so their corresponding one-hot vector representations are sparse. The problem with this binary representation is that semantically similar words may have very different vector representations. For example, the pair of related words “man” and “woman” will be Hamming distance 1 apart, as will the pair of unrelated words “man” and “banana”.

The standard way to solve this problem is to use **word embeddings**, in which we map each sparse one-hot vector,  $\mathbf{s}_{n,t} \in \{0, 1\}^M$ , representing the  $t$ 'th word in document  $n$ , to a lower-dimensional dense vector,  $\mathbf{z}_{n,t} \in \mathbb{R}^D$ , such that semantically similar words are placed close by. This can significantly help with data sparsity. There are many ways to learn such embeddings, as we discuss below.

Before discussing methods, we have to define what we mean by “semantically similar” words. We will assume that two words are semantically similar if they occur in similar contexts. This is known as the **distributional hypothesis** [Har54], which is often summarized by the phrase (originally from [Fir57]) “a word is characterized by the company it keeps”. Thus the methods we discuss will all learn a mapping from a word’s context to an embedding vector for that word.

### 19.5.1 Methods based on SVD

In this section, we discuss a simple way to learn word embeddings based on singular value decomposition (Appendix B.5) of a term-frequency count matrix.

#### 19.5.1.1 Latent semantic indexing (LSI)

Let  $C_{ij}$  be the number of times “term”  $i$  occurs in “context”  $j$ . The definition of what we mean by “term” is application-specific. In English, we often take it to be the set of unique tokens that are separated by punctuation or whitespace; for simplicity, we will call these “words”. However, we may preprocess the text data to remove very frequent or infrequent words, or perform other kinds of preprocessing, as we discuss in Sec. 10.4.3.1.

The definition of what we mean by “context” is also application-specific. In this section, we count how many times word  $i$  occurs in each document  $j \in \{1, \dots, N\}$  from a set or **corpus** of documents; the resulting matrix  $\mathbf{C}$  is called a **term-document frequency matrix**, as in Fig. 10.10. (Sometimes we apply the TF-IDF transformation to the counts, as discussed in Sec. 10.4.3.2.)

Let  $\mathbf{C} \in \mathbb{R}^{M \times N}$  be the count matrix, and let  $\hat{\mathbf{C}}$  be the rank  $K$  approximation that minimizes the following loss:

$$\mathcal{L}(\hat{\mathbf{C}}) = \|\mathbf{C} - \hat{\mathbf{C}}\|_F = \sum_{ij} (C_{ij} - \hat{C}_{ij})^2 \quad (19.12)$$

One can show that the minimizer of this is given by the rank  $K$  truncated SVD approximation,  $\hat{\mathbf{C}} = \mathbf{U}\mathbf{S}\mathbf{V}$ . This means we can represent each  $c_{ij}$  as a bilinear product:

$$c_{ij} \approx \sum_{k=1}^K u_{ik} s_k v_{jk} \quad (19.13)$$

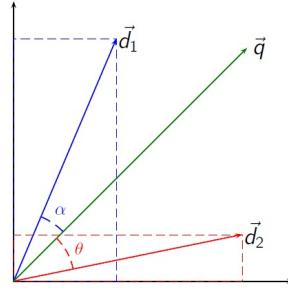


Figure 19.9: Illustration of the cosine similarity between a query vector  $\mathbf{q}$  and two document vectors  $\mathbf{d}_1$  and  $\mathbf{d}_2$ . Since angle  $\alpha$  is less than angle  $\theta$ , we see that the query is more similar to document 1. From [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Vector\\_space\\_model](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Vector_space_model). Used with kind permission of Wikipedia author Ricles.

We define  $\mathbf{u}_i$  to be the embedding for word  $i$ , and  $\mathbf{s} \odot \mathbf{v}_j$  to be the embedding for context  $j$ .

We can use these embeddings for **document retrieval**. The idea is to compute an embedding for the query words using  $\mathbf{u}_i$ , and to compare this to the embedding of all the documents or contexts  $\mathbf{v}_j$ . This is known as **latent semantic indexing** or **LSI** [Dee+90].

In more detail, suppose the query is a bag of words  $w_1, \dots, w_B$ ; we represent this by the vector  $\mathbf{q} = \frac{1}{B} \sum_{b=1}^B \mathbf{u}_{w_b}$ , where  $\mathbf{u}_{w_b}$  is the embedding for word  $w_b$ . Let document  $j$  be represented by  $\mathbf{v}_j$ . We then rank documents by the **cosine similarity** between the query vector and document, defined by

$$\text{sim}(\mathbf{q}, \mathbf{d}) = \frac{\mathbf{q}^\top \mathbf{d}}{\|\mathbf{q}\| \|\mathbf{d}\|} \quad (19.14)$$

where  $\|\mathbf{q}\| = \sqrt{\sum_i q_i^2}$  is the  $\ell_2$ -norm of  $\mathbf{q}$ . This measures the angles between the two vectors, as shown in Fig. 19.9. Note that if the vectors are unit norm, cosine similarity is the same as inner product; it is also equal to the squared Euclidean distance, up to a change of sign and an irrelevant additive constant:

$$\|\mathbf{q} - \mathbf{d}\|^2 = (\mathbf{q} - \mathbf{d})^\top (\mathbf{q} - \mathbf{d}) = \mathbf{q}^\top \mathbf{q} + \mathbf{d}^\top \mathbf{d} - 2\mathbf{q}^\top \mathbf{d} = 2(1 - \text{sim}(\mathbf{q}, \mathbf{d})) \quad (19.15)$$

### 19.5.1.2 Latent semantic analysis (LSA)

Now suppose we define context more generally to be some local neighborhood of words  $j \in \{1, \dots, M^h\}$ , where  $h$  is the window size. Thus  $C_{ij}$  is how many times word  $i$  occurs in a neighborhood of type  $j$ . We can compute the SVD of this matrix as before, to get  $c_{ij} \approx \sum_{k=1}^K u_{ik} s_k v_{jk}$ . We define  $\mathbf{u}_i$  to be the embedding for word  $i$ , and  $\mathbf{s} \odot \mathbf{v}_j$  to be the embedding for context  $j$ . This is known as **latent semantic analysis** or **LSA** [Dee+90].

For example, suppose we compute  $\mathbf{C}$  on the British National Corpus.<sup>3</sup> For each word, let us retrieve the  $K$  nearest neighbors in embedding space ranked by cosine similarity (i.e., normalized

3. This example is taken from [Eis19, p312].

inner product). If the query word is “dog”, and we use  $h = 2$  or  $h = 30$ , the nearest neighbors are as follows:

```
h=2: cat, horse, fox, pet, rabbit, pig, animal, mongrel, sheep, pigeon
h=30: kennel, puppy, pet, bitch, terrier, rottwiler, canine, cat, to bark
```

The 2-word context window is more sensitive to syntax, while the 30-word window is more sensitive to semantics. The “optimal” value of context size  $h$  depends on the application.

### 19.5.1.3 PMI

In practice LSA (and other similar methods) give much better results if we replace the raw counts  $C_{ij}$  with **pointwise mutual information (PMI)** [CH90], defined as

$$\text{PMI}(i, j) = \log \frac{p(i, j)}{p(i)p(j)} \quad (19.16)$$

If word  $i$  is strongly associated with context  $j$ , we will have  $\text{PMI}(i, j) > 0$ . If the PMI is negative, it means  $i$  and  $j$  co-occur less often than if they were independent; however, such negative correlations can be unreliable, so it is common to use the **positive PMI**:  $\text{PPMI}(i, j) = \max(\text{PMI}(i, j), 0)$ . In [BL07], they show that SVD applied to the PPMI matrix results in word embeddings that perform well on many tasks related to word meaning. See Sec. 19.5.3 for a theoretical model that explains this empirical performance.

## 19.5.2 Word2vec

In this section, we discuss the popular **word2vec** model from [Mik+13a; Mik+13b], which are “shallow” neural nets for predicting a word given its context. In Sec. 19.5.3, we will discuss the connections with SVD of the PMI matrix.

There are two versions of the word2vec model. The first is called CBOW, which stands for “continuous bag of words”. The second is called skipgram. We discuss both of these below.

### 19.5.2.1 Word2vec CBOW model

In the continuous bag of words (**CBOW**) model (see Fig. 19.10(a)), the log likelihood of a sequence of words is computed using the following model:

$$\log p(\mathbf{w}) = \sum_{t=1}^T \log p(w_t | \mathbf{w}_{t-H:t+H}) = \sum_{t=1}^T \log \frac{\exp(\mathbf{v}_{w_t}^\top \bar{\mathbf{v}}_t)}{\sum_{w'} \exp(\mathbf{v}_{w'}^\top \bar{\mathbf{v}}_t)} \quad (19.17)$$

$$= \sum_{t=1}^T \mathbf{v}_{w_t}^\top \bar{\mathbf{v}}_t - \log \sum_{w'} \exp(\mathbf{v}_{w'}^\top \bar{\mathbf{v}}_t) \quad (19.18)$$

where  $\mathbf{v}_{w_t}$  is the vector for the word at location  $w_t$ , and

$$\bar{\mathbf{v}}_t = \frac{1}{2H} \sum_{h=1}^H (\mathbf{v}_{w_{t+h}} + \mathbf{v}_{w_{t-h}}) \quad (19.19)$$

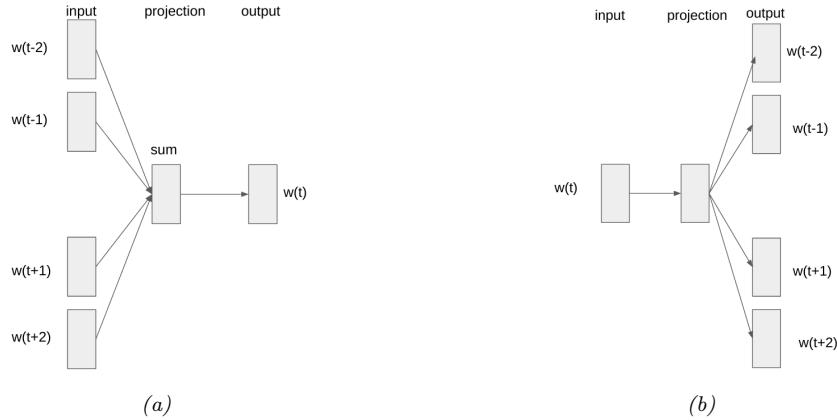


Figure 19.10: Illustration of word2vec model with window size  $H = 2$ . (a) CBOW version. (b) Skip-gram version. .

is the average of the word vectors in the window of size  $H$  around word  $w_t$ . Thus we try to predict each word given its context. The model is called CBOW because it uses a bag of words assumption for the context, and represents each word by a continuous embedding.

### 19.5.2.2 Word2vec Skip-gram model

In CBOW, each word is predicted from its context. A variant of this is to predict the context (surrounding words) given each word. This yields the following objective:

$$\log p(\mathbf{w}) \approx \sum_{t=1}^T \left[ \sum_{h=1}^{H_t} \log p(w_{t-h}|w_t) + \log p(w_{t+h}|w_t) \right] \quad (19.20)$$

$$= \sum_{t=1}^T \left[ \sum_{h=1}^{H_t} \mathbf{u}_{w_{t-h}}^\top \mathbf{v}_{w_t} + \mathbf{u}_{w_{t+h}}^\top \mathbf{v}_{w_t} - 2 \log \sum_{w'} \exp(\mathbf{v}_{w_t}^\top \mathbf{u}_{w'}) \right] \quad (19.21)$$

where  $H_t$  is a randomly sampled window length for location  $t$ , and  $\mathbf{u}_w$  is the embedding vector of word  $w$  when used as a context word as opposed to a predicted word. See Fig. 19.10(b) for an illustration.

We can approximate this objective by sampling a single context word  $c_t$  for each  $w_t$ , instead of summing over all words  $w_{t-h}, \dots, w_{t+h}$  in the window:

$$\log p(\mathbf{w}) \approx \sum_t \log p(c_t|w_t) = \sum_t \left[ \mathbf{u}_{c_t}^\top \mathbf{v}_{w_t} - \log \sum_{w'} \exp(\mathbf{v}_{w_t}^\top \mathbf{u}_{w'}) \right] \quad (19.22)$$

This model is known as the **skipgram model**, since we are working with  $H$ -gram models, but skipping most of the terms.

To avoid the costly sum over all words  $w'$ , we can sum over a smaller set of negative words for  $w_t$ :

$$\log p(\mathbf{w}) \approx \sum_t \left[ \mathbf{u}_{c_t}^\top \mathbf{v}_{w_t} - \sum_{w' \in \text{neg}_t} \log(1 - \sigma(\mathbf{v}_{w_t}^\top \mathbf{u}_{w'})) \right] \quad (19.23)$$

where  $\text{neg}_t$  are a set of randomly chosen words that do not occur in the context window of  $w_t$ . This approach is called **skip-gram with negative sampling (SGNS)**, and is much faster than standard skip-gram training. SGNS training is slower than CBOW training, but tends to learn better word embeddings than CBOW.

In [LG14a], they show that SGNS is equivalent to SVD applied to a shifted version of the PMI matrix, defined as

$$\text{shiftedPMI}(i, j) \triangleq \text{PMI}(i, j) - \log(N^-) \quad (19.24)$$

where  $N^-$  is the number of negative contexts sampled for each word  $i$ .

### 19.5.3 RAND-WALK model of word embeddings

Word embeddings significantly improve the performance of various kinds of NLP models compared to using one-hot encodings for words. It is natural to wonder why the above word embeddings work so well. In this section, we give a simple generative model for text documents that explains this phenomenon, based on [Aro+16].

Consider a sequence of words  $w_1, \dots, w_T$ . We assume each word is generated by a latent context or discourse vector  $\mathbf{z}_t \in \mathbb{R}^D$  using the following **log bilinear language model**, similar to [MH07]:

$$p(w_t = w | \mathbf{z}_t) = \frac{\exp(\mathbf{z}_t^\top \mathbf{v}_w)}{\sum_{w'} \exp(\mathbf{z}_t^\top \mathbf{v}_{w'})} = \frac{\exp(\mathbf{z}_t^\top \mathbf{v}_w)}{Z(\mathbf{z}_t)} \quad (19.25)$$

where  $\mathbf{v}_w \in \mathbb{R}^D$  is the embedding for word  $w$ , and  $Z(\mathbf{z}_t)$  is the partition function. We assume  $D < M$ , the number of words in the vocabulary.

Let us further assume the prior for the word embeddings  $\mathbf{v}_w$  is an isotropic Gaussian, and that the latent topic  $\mathbf{z}_t$  undergoes a slow Gaussian random walk. (This is therefore called the **RAND-WALK model**.) Under this model, one can show that  $Z(\mathbf{z}_t)$  is approximately equal to a fixed constant,  $Z$ , independent of the context. This is known as the **self-normalization property** of log-linear models [AK15]. Furthermore, one can show that the pointwise mutual information of predictions from the model is given by

$$\text{PMI}(w, w') \approx \frac{\mathbf{v}_w^\top \mathbf{v}_{w'}}{D} \quad (19.26)$$

We can therefore fit the RAND-WALK model by matching the model's predicted values for PMI with the empirical values, i.e., we minimize

$$\mathcal{L}(\mathbf{V}) = \sum_{w, w'} X_{w, w'} (\text{PMI}(w, w') - \mathbf{v}_w^\top \mathbf{v}_{w'})^2 \quad (19.27)$$

where  $X_{w, w'}$  is the number of times  $w$  and  $w'$  occur next to each other. This objective can be seen as a frequency-weighted version of the SVD loss in Eq. (19.12).

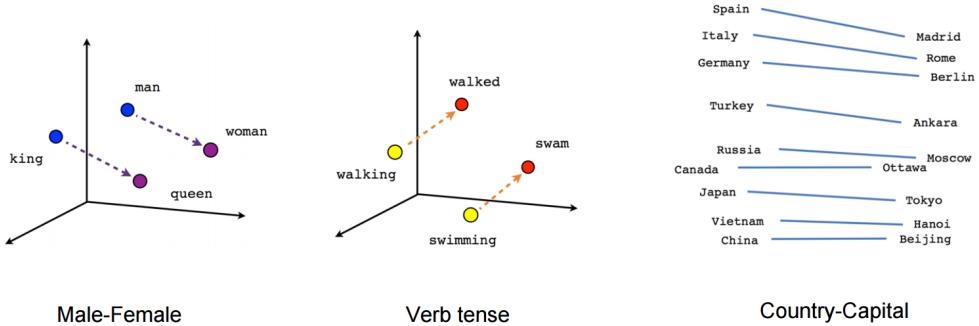


Figure 19.11: Visualization of arithmetic operations in word2vec embedding space. From <https://www.tensorflow.org/tutorials/embedding/word2vec>.

Furthermore, some additional approximations can be used to show that the NLL for the RAND-WALK model is equivalent to the CBOW and SGNS word2vec objectives. We can also derive the objective for the popular **GloVe** model of [PSM14a]. (GloVe stands for “global Vectors for word representation”.)

#### 19.5.4 Word analogies

One of the most remarkable properties of word embeddings produced by word2vec, GloVe, and other similar methods is that the learned vector space seems to capture relational semantics in terms of simple vector addition. In particular, we can solve **word analogy** problems of the form “*a* is to *b* as *c* is to *?*”, written  $a : b :: c : ?$ , by computing

$$d^* = \underset{d}{\operatorname{argmin}} \|(\mathbf{v}_a - \mathbf{v}_b) - (\mathbf{v}_c - \mathbf{v}_d)\| \quad (19.28)$$

For example, we have *man:woman::king:queen*, and indeed we find that

$$\mathbf{v}_{\text{man}} - \mathbf{v}_{\text{woman}} \approx \mathbf{v}_{\text{king}} - \mathbf{v}_{\text{queen}} \quad (19.29)$$

We can verify this empirically using the script at `word_embedding_spacy.py`, which uses a pretrained word embedding model. See Fig. 19.11.

In [PSM14a], they conjecture that  $a : b :: c : d$  holds iff for every word  $w$  in the vocabulary, we have

$$\frac{p(w|a)}{p(w|b)} \approx \frac{p(w|c)}{p(w|d)} \quad (19.30)$$

In [Aro+16], they show that this follows from the RAND-WALK modeling assumptions in Sec. 19.5.3. See also [AH19; EDH19] for other explanations of why word analogies work, based on different modeling assumptions.

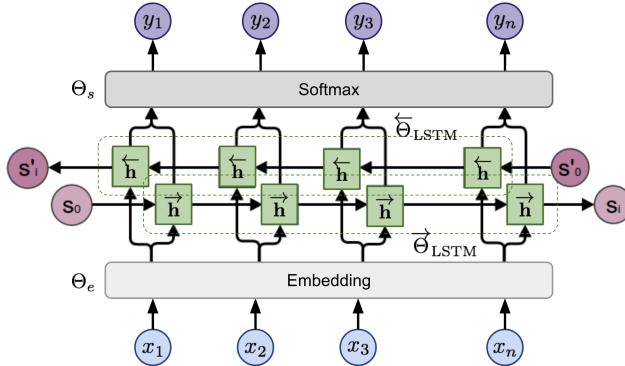


Figure 19.12: Illustration of ELMo bidirectional language model. Here  $y_t = x_{t+1}$  when acting as the target for the forwards LSTM, and  $y_t = x_{t-1}$  for the backwards LSTM. (We add bos and eos sentinels to handle the edge cases.) From Weng2019LM. Used with kind permission of Lilian Weng.

### 19.5.5 Contextual word embeddings

Consider the sentences “I was eating an apple” and “I bought a new phone from Apple”. The meaning of the word “apple” is different in both cases, but a fixed word embedding (of the type discussed above) would not be able to capture this. In this section, we consider **contextual word embeddings**, where the embedding of a word is a function of all the words in its context (usually a sentence). There are many methods for creating such contextual word embeddings. [Wen19] provides a good summary, which we draw on below.

#### 19.5.5.1 ELMo

In [Pet+18], they present a method called **ELMo**, which is short for “Embeddings from Language Model”. The basic idea is to fit two RNN language models, one left-to-right, and one right-to-left, and then to combine their hidden state representations to come up with a contextual embedding for each word. Unlike a biRNN (Sec. 15.2.2), which needs an input-output pair, ELMo is trained in an unsupervised way, to maximize the log likelihood of the input sentence  $\mathbf{x}_{1:T}$ :

$$\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta}) = - \sum_{t=1}^T [\log p(x_t | \mathbf{x}_{1:t-1}; \boldsymbol{\theta}_e, \boldsymbol{\theta}^\rightarrow, \boldsymbol{\theta}_s) + \log p(x_t | \mathbf{x}_{t+1:T}; \boldsymbol{\theta}_e, \boldsymbol{\theta}^\leftarrow, \boldsymbol{\theta}_s)] \quad (19.31)$$

where  $\boldsymbol{\theta}_e$  are the shared parameters of the embedding layer,  $\boldsymbol{\theta}_s$  are the shared parameters of the softmax output layer, and  $\boldsymbol{\theta}^\rightarrow$  and  $\boldsymbol{\theta}^\leftarrow$  are the parameters of the two RNN models. (They use LSTM RNNs, described in Sec. 15.2.6.2.) See Fig. 19.12 for an illustration.

After training, we define the contextual representation  $\mathbf{r}_t = [\mathbf{e}_t, \mathbf{h}_{t,1:L}^\rightarrow, \mathbf{h}_{t,1:L}^\leftarrow]$ , where  $L$  is the number of layers in the LSTM. We then learn a task-specific set of linear weights to map this to the final context-specific embedding of each token:  $\mathbf{r}_t^j = \mathbf{r}_t^\top \mathbf{w}^j$ , where  $j$  is the task id. If we are performing a syntactic task like **part-of-speech (POS)** tagging (i.e., labeling each word as a noun, verb, adjective, etc), then the task will learn to put more weight on lower layers. If we are performing

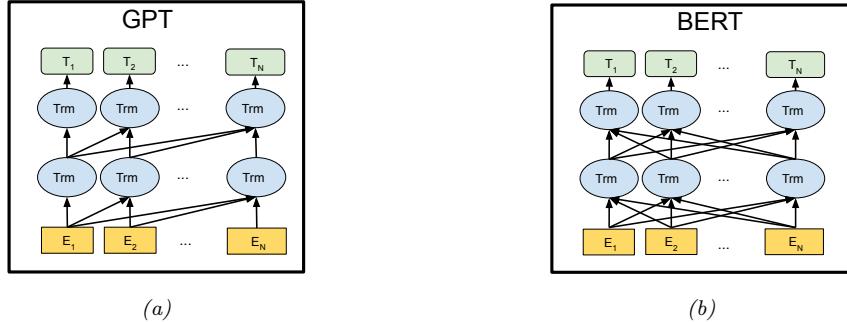


Figure 19.13: Illustration of (a) GPT and (b) BERT.  $E_t$  is the embedding vector for the input token at location  $t$ , and  $T_t$  is the output target to be predicted. From Figure 3 of [Dev+19]. Used with kind permission of Ming-Wei Chang.

a semantic task like **word sense disambiguation (WSD)**, then the task will learn to put more weight on higher layers. In both cases, we only need a small amount of task-specific labeled data, since we are just learning a single weight vector, to map from  $\mathbf{r}_{1:T}$  to the target labels  $\mathbf{y}_{1:T}$ .

### 19.5.5.2 GPT

In [Rad+18], they propose a model called **GPT**, which is short for “Generative Pre-training Transformer”. It is very similar to ELMo, except it replaces the two LSTMs with a single (unidirectional) transformer decoder. See Fig. 19.13a for an illustration. In addition, the training objective is slightly different. Rather than first training a language model, and then training a linear decoder for each task, they jointly optimize on a large unlabeled dataset, and a small labeled dataset. In the classification setting, the loss is given by  $\mathcal{L} = \mathcal{L}_{\text{cls}} + \lambda \mathcal{L}_{\text{LM}}$ , where  $\mathcal{L}_{\text{cls}} = \sum_{(\mathbf{x}, y) \in \mathcal{D}} \log p(y|\mathbf{x})$  is the classification loss and  $\mathcal{L}_{\text{LM}} = -\sum p(x_t|\mathbf{x}_{1:t-1})$  is the language modeling loss.

In [Rad+19], they propose **GPT-2**, which is a larger version of GPT, trained on a large web corpus called **WebText**. They also eliminate any task-specific training, and instead just train it as a language model. At test time, they tell the system what task they want it to perform by feeding in a specially structured sentence, called the **prompt**, and then generating from the model conditioned on this input. This is called **zero-shot task transfer**.

For example, to perform **abstractive summarization** of some input text  $\mathbf{x}_{1:T}$  (as opposed to **extractive summarization**, which just selects a subset of the input words), we sample from  $p(\mathbf{x}_{T+1:T+100} | [\mathbf{x}_{1:T}; \text{TL;DR}])$ , where **TL;DR** is a special token added to the end of the input text, which tells the system the user wants a summary. TL;DR stands for “too long; didn’t read” and frequently occurs in webtext followed by a human-created summary. By adding this token to the input, the user hopes to “trigger” the transformer decoder into a state in which it enters summarization mode. This works because the model has been exposed to (document, summary) pairs, where the summary was prefixed by the TL;DR token. (It is also possible to explicitly train a model to perform certain tasks, by telling it what task to perform as part of the input, and giving it the desired output, as discussed in Sec. 19.5.5.4.)

More recently, OpenAI released **GPT-3** [Bro+20], which is an even larger version of GPT-2, but

based on the same principles.

### 19.5.5.3 BERT

In this section, we describe the **BERT** model (Bidirectional Encoder Representations from Transformers) of [Dev+19]. This can be thought of as a symmetric version of BERT that is trained to maximize the following pseudo-likelihood:

$$p(\mathbf{x}|\theta) \propto \prod_{t=1}^T p(x_t|\mathbf{x}_{-t}, \theta) \quad (19.32)$$

We compute  $p(x_t|\mathbf{x}_{-t})$  using a transformer model, in which we mask out the  $t$ 'th token from the input, and then try to predict it given all the others. This is called the **fill-in-the-blank** or **cloze** task. In practice, we mask out multiple input tokens (up to 15%), and predict them all in parallel, for speed. Thus a typical input might be

Let's make [MASK] chicken! [SEP] It [MASK] great with orange sauce.

where [SEP] is a separator token inserted between two sentences. The desired target labels are “some” and “tastes”. The loss is only computed at the masked locations; this is therefore called a **masked language model**. (This is similar to a denoising autoencoder, Sec. 20.3.2). More precisely, the objective is as follows:

$$\log p_\theta(\bar{\mathbf{x}}|\hat{\mathbf{x}}) \approx \sum_{t=1}^T m_t \log p_\theta(x_t|\hat{\mathbf{x}}) = \sum_{t=1}^T m_t \log \frac{\exp(\mathbf{h}_\theta(\hat{\mathbf{x}})_t^\top \mathbf{e}(x_t))}{\sum_{x'} \exp(\mathbf{h}_\theta(\hat{\mathbf{x}})_t^\top \mathbf{e}(x'))} \quad (19.33)$$

where  $\hat{\mathbf{x}}$  is the masked input sentence,  $\bar{\mathbf{x}}$  are the masked tokens,  $m_t = 1$  iff location  $t$  is masked,  $\mathbf{h}_\theta(\mathbf{x})$  is the hidden representation of the transformer, and  $\mathbf{e}(x)$  is the embedding for token  $x$ .

After training BERT in an unsupervised way, we can use  $\mathbf{r}_t = \mathbf{h}(\mathbf{x})_t$  as the contextual embedding for word  $x_t$ . For dense prediction problems, we can learn a linear decoder to compute  $p(y_t|\mathbf{r}_t)$ . To tackle whole sentence classification tasks, we need to aggregate these word embeddings,  $\{\mathbf{r}_t\}$ . A simple approach would be to average the embeddings by computing  $\bar{\mathbf{r}} = \frac{1}{T} \sum_{t=1}^T \mathbf{r}_t$ , and then train a model of the form  $p(y|\bar{\mathbf{r}})$ . However, the more common approach is to prepend a special [CLS] token to the beginning of each sentence, and to use its embedding as a representation of the entire input.

Fig. 19.14 illustrates how BERT can be used to tackle a variety of NLP tasks, such as single sentence classification (e.g., for **sentiment analysis**), sentence pair classification (e.g., for **natural language entailment**), single sentence tagging (e.g., for **named entity recognition**), or sentence pair tagging (e.g., for **question answering**). Interestingly, [TDP19] shows that BERT rediscovers the standard NLP pipeline, in which different layers perform tasks such as part of speech (POS) tagging, parsing, named entity relationship (NER) detection, semantic role labeling (SRL), coreference resolution, etc. However, the extent to which BERT and other giant language models “understand” text in a robust way (beyond incidental co-occurrence statistics) has recently been called into question (see e.g., [NK19; BK20]).

### 19.5.5.4 T5

Many models are trained in an unsupervised way, and then fine-tuned on specific tasks. It is also possible to train a single model to perform multiple tasks, by telling the system what task to perform

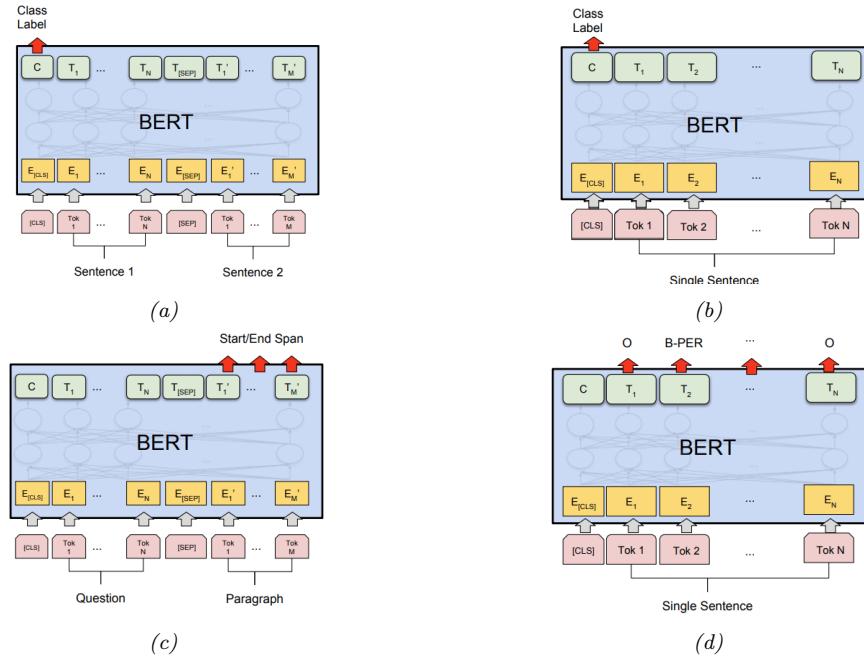


Figure 19.14: Illustration of how BERT can be used for different kinds of supervised NLP tasks. (a) Sentence-pair classification (e.g., entailment). (b) Single sentence classification (e.g., sentiment). (c) Sentence pair tagging (e.g., question answering). (d) Single sentence tagging (e.g., named entity recognition, where the tags are “outside”, “begin-person”, “inside-person”, “begin-place”, “inside-place”, etc). From Figure 4 of [Dev+19]. Used with kind permission of Ming-Wei Chang.

---

T: In meteorology, precipitation is any product of the condensation of atmospheric water vapor that falls under **gravity**. The main forms of precipitation include drizzle, rain, sleet, snow, **graupel** and hail... Precipitation forms as smaller droplets coalesce via collision with other rain drops or ice crystals **within a cloud**. Short, intense periods of rain in scattered locations are called “showers”.

Q1: What causes precipitation to fall? A1: **gravity**

Q2: What is another main form of precipitation besides drizzle, rain, snow, sleet and hail? A2: **graupel**

Q3: Where do water droplets collide with ice crystals to form precipitation? A3: **within a cloud**

---

Figure 19.15: Question-answer pairs for a sample passage in the SQuAD dataset. Each of the answers is a segment of text from the passage. This can be solved using sentence pair tagging. The input is the paragraph text  $T$  and the question  $Q$ . The output is a tagging of the relevant words in  $T$  that answer the question in  $Q$ . From Figure 1 of [Raj+16]. Used with kind permission of Percy Liang.

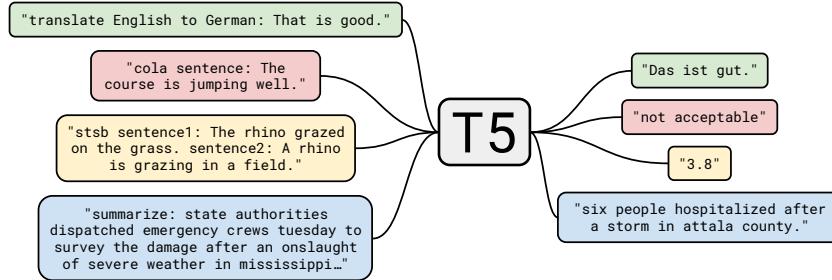


Figure 19.16: Illustration of how the T5 model (“Text-to-text Transfer Transformer”) can be used to perform multiple NLP tasks, such as translating English to German; determining if a sentence is linguistic valid or not (CoLA stands for “Corpus of Linguistic Acceptability”); determining the degree of semantic similarity (STS1 stands for “Semantic Textual Similarity Benchmark”); and abstractive summarization. From Figure 1 of [Raf+19]. Used with kind permission of Colin Raffel.

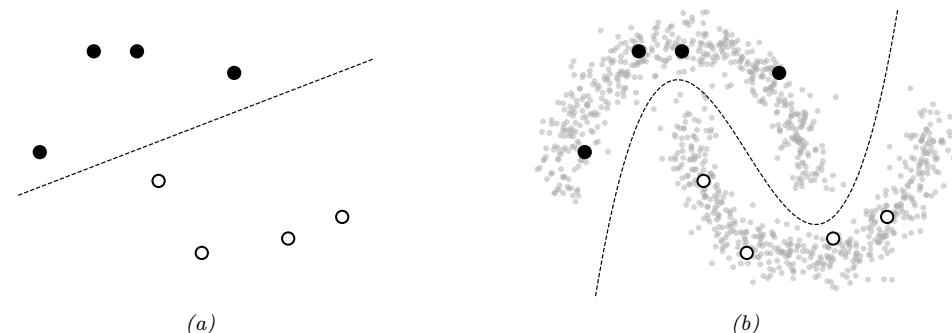
as part of the input sentence, and then training it as a seq2seq model, as illustrated in Fig. 19.16. This is the approach used in T5 [Raf+19], which stands for “Text-to-text Transfer Transformer”. The model is a standard seq2seq transformer, that is trained on supervised  $(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y})$  pairs, as well as unsupervised  $(\mathbf{x}', \mathbf{x}'')$  pairs, where  $\mathbf{x}'$  is a masked version of  $\mathbf{x}$ , and  $\mathbf{x}''$  are the missing tokens that need to be predicted.

## 19.6 Semi-supervised learning<sup>4</sup>

Many recent successful applications of machine learning are in the supervised learning setting, where a large dataset of labeled examples are available for training a model. However, in many practical applications it is expensive to obtain this labeled data. Consider the case of automatic speech recognition: Modern datasets contain thousands of hours of audio recordings [Pan+15; Ard+20]. The process of annotating the words spoken in a recording is many times slower than realtime, potentially resulting in a long (and costly) annotation process. To make matters worse, in some applications data must be labeled by an expert (such as a doctor in medical applications) which can further increase costs.

**Semi-supervised learning** can alleviate the need for labeled data by taking advantage of unlabeled data. The general goal of semi-supervised learning is to allow the model to learn the high-level structure of the data distribution from unlabeled data and only rely on the labeled data for learning the fine-grained details of a given task. Whereas in standard supervised learning we assume that we have access to samples from the joint distribution of data and labels  $\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y} \sim p(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y})$ , semi-supervised learning assumes that we additionally have access to samples from the marginal distribution of  $\mathbf{x}$ , namely  $\mathbf{x} \sim p(\mathbf{x})$ . Further, it is generally assumed that we have many more of these unlabeled samples since they are typically cheaper to obtain. Continuing the example of automatic speech recognition, it is often much cheaper to simply record people talking (which would produce unlabeled data) than it is to transcribe recorded speech. Semi-supervised learning is a good fit for

4. This section is co-authored with Colin Raffel.



*Figure 19.17: Illustration of the benefits of semi-supervised learning for a binary classification problem. Labeled points from each class are shown as black and white circles respectively. (a) Decision boundary we might learn given only unlabeled data. (b) Decision boundary we might learn if we also had a lot of unlabeled data points, shown as smaller grey circles.*

the scenario where a large amount of unlabeled data has been collected and the practitioner would like to avoid having to label all of it.

### 19.6.1 Self-training and pseudo-labeling

An early and straightforward approach to semi-supervised learning is **self-training** [Scu65; Agr70; McL75]. The basic idea behind self-training is to use the model itself to infer predictions on unlabeled data, and then treat these predictions as labels for subsequent training. Self-training has endured as a semi-supervised learning method because of its simplicity and general applicability; i.e. it is applicable to any model that can generate predictions for the unlabeled data. Recently, it has become common to refer to this approach as “**pseudo-labeling**” [Lee13] because the inferred labels for unlabeled data are only “pseudo-correct” in comparison with the true, ground-truth targets used in supervised learning.

Algorithmically, self-training typically follows one of the following two procedures. In the first approach, pseudo-labels are first predicted for the entire collection of unlabeled data and the model is re-trained (possibly from scratch) to convergence on the combination of the labeled and (pseudo-labeled) unlabeled data. Then, the unlabeled data is re-labeled by the model and the process repeats itself until a suitable solution is found. The second approach instead continually generates predictions on randomly-chosen batches of unlabeled data and immediately trains the model against these pseudo-labels. Both approaches are currently common in practice; the first “offline” variant has been shown to be particularly successful when leveraging giant collections of unlabeled data [Yal+19; Xie+20] whereas the “online” approach is often used as one component of more sophisticated semi-supervised learning methods [Soh+20]. Neither variant is fundamentally better than the other. Offline self-training can result in training the model on “stale” pseudo-labels, since they are only updated each time the model converges. However, online pseudo-labeling can incur larger computational costs since it involves constantly “re-labeling” unlabeled data.

Self-training can suffer from an obvious problem: If the model generates incorrect predictions for unlabeled data and then is re-trained on these incorrect predictions, it can become progressively

worse and worse at the intended classification task until it eventually learns a totally invalid solution. This issue has been dubbed **confirmation bias** [TV17] because the model is continually confirming its own (incorrect) bias about the decision rule.

A common way to mitigate confirmation bias is to use a “selection metric” [RHS05] which heuristically tries to only retain pseudo-labels that are correct. For example, assuming that a model outputs probabilities for each possible class, a frequently-used selection metric is to only retain pseudo-labels whose largest class probability is above a threshold [Yar95; RHS05]. If the model’s class probability estimates are well-calibrated, then this selection metric will only retain labels that are highly likely to be correct (according to the model, at least). More sophisticated selection metrics can be designed according to the problem domain.

### 19.6.2 Entropy minimization

Self-training has the implicit effect of encouraging the model to output low-entropy (i.e. high-confidence) predictions. This effect is most apparent in the online setting with a cross-entropy loss, where the model minimizes the following loss function  $\mathcal{L}$  on unlabeled data:

$$\mathcal{L} = - \max_c \log p_\theta(y = c | \mathbf{x}) \quad (19.34)$$

where  $p_\theta(y|\mathbf{x})$  is the model’s class probability distribution given input  $\mathbf{x}$ . This function is minimized when the model assigns all of its class probability to a single class  $c^*$ , i.e.  $p(y = c^* | \mathbf{x}) = 1$  and  $p(y \neq c^* | \mathbf{x}) = 0$ .

A closely-related semi-supervised learning method is **entropy minimization** [GB05], which minimizes the following loss function:

$$\mathcal{L} = - \sum_{c=1}^C p_\theta(y = c | \mathbf{x}) \log p(y = c | \mathbf{x}) \quad (19.35)$$

Note that this function is also minimized when the model assigns all of its class probability to a single class. We can make the entropy-minimization loss in Eq. (19.35) equivalent to the online self-training loss in Eq. (19.34) by replacing the first  $p_\theta(y = c | \mathbf{x})$  term with a “one-hot” vector that assigns a probability of 1 for the class that was assigned the highest probability. In other words, online self-training minimizes the cross-entropy between the model’s output and the “hard” target  $\arg \max p_\theta(y|\mathbf{x})$ , whereas entropy minimization uses the the “soft” target  $p_\theta(y|\mathbf{x})$ . One way to trade off between these two extremes is to adjust the “temperature” of the target distribution by raising each probability to the power of  $1/T$  and renormalizing; this is the basis of the **mixmatch** method of [Ber+19a; Ber+19b; Xie+19b]. At  $T = 1$ , this is equivalent to entropy minimization; as  $T \rightarrow 0$ , it becomes hard online self-training. A comparison of these loss functions is shown in Fig. 19.18.

#### 19.6.2.1 The cluster assumption

Why is entropy minimization a good idea? A basic assumption of many semi-supervised learning methods is that the decision boundary between classes should fall in a low-density region of the data manifold. This effectively assumes that the data corresponding to different classes are clustered together. A good decision boundary, therefore, should not pass through clusters; it should simply separate them. Semi-supervised learning methods that make the “**cluster assumption**” can be

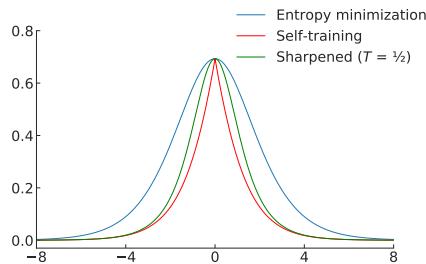


Figure 19.18: Comparison of the entropy minimization, self-training, and “sharpened” entropy minimization loss functions for a binary classification problem.

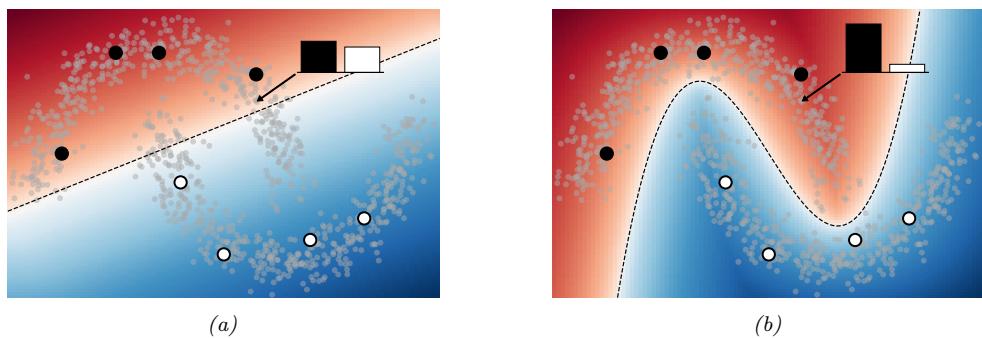


Figure 19.19: Visualization demonstrating how entropy minimization enforces the cluster assumption. The classifier assigns a higher probability to class 1 (black dots) or 2 (white dots) in red or blue regions respectively. The predicted class probabilities for one particular unlabeled datapoint is shown in the bar plot. In (a), the decision boundary passes through high-density regions of data, so the classifier is forced to output high-entropy predictions. In (b), the classifier avoids high-density regions and is able to assign low-entropy predictions to most of the unlabeled data.

thought of as using unlabeled data to estimate the shape of the data manifold and moving the decision boundary away from it.

Entropy minimization is one such method. To see why, first assume that the decision boundary between two classes is “smooth”, i.e. the model does not abruptly change its class prediction anywhere in its domain. This is true in practice for simple and/or regularized models. In this case, if the decision boundary passes through a high-density region of data, it will by necessity produce high-entropy predictions for some samples from the data distribution. Entropy minimization will therefore encourage the model to place its decision boundary in low-density regions of the input space to avoid transitioning from one class to another in a region of space where data may be sampled. A visualization of this behavior is shown in Fig. 19.19.

### 19.6.2.2 Input-output mutual information

An alternative justification for the entropy minimization objective was proposed by Bridle, Heading, and MacKay [BHM92], where it was shown that it naturally arises from maximizing the mutual information (Sec. 6.3) between the data and the label (i.e. the input and output of a model). Denoting  $\mathbf{x}$  as the input and  $y$  as the target, the input-output mutual information can be written as

$$\mathcal{I}(y; \mathbf{x}) = \iint p(y, \mathbf{x}) \log \frac{p(y, \mathbf{x})}{p(y)p(\mathbf{x})} dy d\mathbf{x} \quad (19.36)$$

$$= \iint p(y|\mathbf{x})p(\mathbf{x}) \log \frac{p(y, \mathbf{x})}{p(y)p(\mathbf{x})} dy d\mathbf{x} \quad (19.37)$$

$$= \int p(\mathbf{x}) d\mathbf{x} \int p(y|\mathbf{x}) \log \frac{p(y|\mathbf{x})}{p(y)} dy \quad (19.38)$$

$$= \int p(\mathbf{x}) d\mathbf{x} \int p(y|\mathbf{x}) \log \frac{p(y|\mathbf{x})}{\int p(\mathbf{x})p(y|\mathbf{x}) d\mathbf{x}} dy \quad (19.39)$$

Note that the first integral is equivalent to taking an expectation over  $\mathbf{x}$ , and the second integral is equivalent to summing over all possible values of the class  $y$ . Using these relations, we obtain

$$\mathcal{I}(y; \mathbf{x}) = \mathbb{E}_{\mathbf{x}} \left[ \sum_{i=1}^L p(y_i|\mathbf{x}) \log \frac{p(y_i|\mathbf{x})}{\mathbb{E}_{\mathbf{x}}[p(y_i|\mathbf{x})]} \right] \quad (19.40)$$

$$= \mathbb{E}_{\mathbf{x}} \left[ \sum_{i=1}^L p(y_i|\mathbf{x}) \log p(y_i|\mathbf{x}) \right] - \mathbb{E}_{\mathbf{x}} \left[ \sum_{i=1}^L p(y_i|\mathbf{x}) \log \mathbb{E}_{\mathbf{x}}[p(y_i|\mathbf{x})] \right] \quad (19.41)$$

$$= \mathbb{E}_{\mathbf{x}} \left[ \sum_{i=1}^L p(y_i|\mathbf{x}) \log p(y_i|\mathbf{x}) \right] - \sum_{i=1}^L \mathbb{E}_{\mathbf{x}}[p(y_i|\mathbf{x})] \log \mathbb{E}_{\mathbf{x}}[p(y_i|\mathbf{x})] \quad (19.42)$$

Since we had initially sought to *maximize* the mutual information, and we typically *minimize* loss functions, we can convert this to a suitable loss function by negating it:

$$\mathcal{I}(y; \mathbf{x}) = -\mathbb{E}_{\mathbf{x}} \left[ \sum_{i=1}^L p(y_i|\mathbf{x}) \log p(y_i|\mathbf{x}) \right] + \sum_{i=1}^L \mathbb{E}_{\mathbf{x}}[p(y_i|\mathbf{x})] \log \mathbb{E}_{\mathbf{x}}[p(y_i|\mathbf{x})] \quad (19.43)$$

The first term is exactly the entropy minimization objective in expectation. The second term specifies that we should maximize the entropy of the expected class prediction, i.e. the average class prediction over our training set. This encourages the model to predict each possible class with equal probability, which is only appropriate when we know a priori that all classes are equally likely.

### 19.6.3 Co-training

**Co-training** [BM98] is also similar to self-training, but makes an additional assumption that there are two complementary “views” (i.e. independent sets of features) of the data, both of which can be used separately to train a reasonable model. After training two models separately on each view, unlabeled data is classified by each model to obtain candidate pseudo-labels. If a particular pseudo-label receives a low-entropy prediction (indicating high confidence) from one model and a high-entropy

prediction (indicating low confidence) from the other, then that pseudo-labeled datapoint is added to the training set for the low-confidence model. Then, the process is repeated with the new, larger training datasets. The procedure of only retaining pseudo-labels when one of the models is confident ideally builds up the training sets with correctly-labeled data.

Co-training makes the strong assumption that there are two informative-but-independent views of the data, which may not be true for many problems. The **Tri-Training** algorithm [ZL05] circumvents this issue by instead using *three* models that are first trained on independently-sampled (with replacement) subsets of the labeled data. Ideally, initially training on different collections of labeled data results in models that do not always agree on their predictions. Then, pseudo-labels are generated for the unlabeled data independently by each of the three models. For a given unlabeled datapoint, if two of the models agree on the pseudo-label, it is added to the training set for the third model. This can be seen as a selection metric, because it only retains pseudo-labels where two (differently initialized) models agree on the correct label. The models are then re-trained on the combination of the labeled data and the new pseudo-labels, and the whole process is repeated iteratively.

#### 19.6.4 Label propagation on graphs

If two datapoints are “similar” in some meaningful way, we might expect that they share a label. This idea has been referred to as the **manifold assumption**. **Label propagation** is a semi-supervised learning technique that leverages the manifold assumption to assign labels to unlabeled data. Label propagation first constructs a graph where the nodes are the data examples and the edge weights represent the degree of similarity. The node labels are known for nodes corresponding to labeled data but are unknown for unlabeled data. Label propagation then propagates the known labels across edges of the graph in such a way that there is minimal disagreement in the labels of a given node’s neighbors. This provides label guesses for the unlabeled data, which can then be used in the usual way for supervised training of a model.

More specifically, the basic label propagation algorithm [ZG02] proceeds as follows: First, let  $w_{i,j}$  denote a non-negative edge weight between  $\mathbf{x}_i$  and  $\mathbf{x}_j$  that provides a measure of similarity for the two (labeled or unlabeled) datapoints. Assuming that we have  $M$  labeled datapoints and  $N$  unlabeled datapoints, define the  $(M + N) \times (M + N)$  transition matrix  $\mathbf{T}$  as having entries

$$\mathbf{T}_{i,j} = \frac{w_{i,j}}{\sum_k w_{k,j}} \quad (19.44)$$

$\mathbf{T}_{i,j}$  represents the probability of propagating the label for node  $j$  to node  $i$ . Further, define the  $(M + N) \times C$  label matrix  $\mathbf{Y}$ , where  $C$  is the number of possible classes. The  $i$ th row of  $\mathbf{Y}$  represents the class probability distribution of datapoint  $i$ . Then, repeat the following steps until the values in  $\mathbf{Y}$  do not change significantly: First, use the transition matrix  $\mathbf{T}$  to propagate labels in  $\mathbf{Y}$  by setting  $\mathbf{Y} \leftarrow \mathbf{T}\mathbf{Y}$ . Then, re-normalize the rows of  $\mathbf{Y}$  by setting  $\mathbf{Y}_{i,c} \leftarrow \mathbf{Y}_{i,c} / \sum_k \mathbf{Y}_{k,c}$ . Finally, replace the rows of  $\mathbf{Y}$  corresponding to labeled datapoints with their one-hot representation (i.e.  $\mathbf{Y}_{i,c} = 1$  if datapoint  $i$  has ground-truth label  $c$  and 0 otherwise). After convergence, guessed labels are chosen based on the highest class probability for each datapoint in  $\mathbf{Y}$ .

This algorithm iteratively uses the similarity of datapoints (encoded in the weights used to construct the transition matrix) to propagate information from the (fixed) labels onto the unlabeled data. At each iteration, the label distribution for a given datapoint is computed as the weighted average of

the label distributions for all of its connected datapoints, where the weighting corresponds to the edge weights in  $\mathbf{T}$ . It can be shown that this procedure converges to a single fixed point, whose computational cost mainly involves the inversion of the matrix of unlabeled-to-unlabeled transition probabilities [ZG02].

The overall approach can be seen as a form of **transductive learning**, since it is learning to predict labels for a fixed unlabeled dataset, rather than learning a model that generalizes. However, given the induced labeling, we can perform **inductive learning** in the usual way.

The success of label propagation depends heavily on the notion of similarity used to construct the weights between different nodes (datapoints). For simple data, measuring the Euclidean distance between datapoints can be sufficient. However, for complex and high-dimensional data the Euclidean distance might not meaningfully reflect the likelihood that two datapoints share the same class. The similarity weights can also be set arbitrarily according to problem-specific knowledge. For a few examples of different ways of constructing the similarity graph, see Zhu [Zhu05, chapter 3]. For some recent papers that use this approach in conjunction with deep learning, see e.g., [BRR18; Isc+19].

### 19.6.5 Consistency regularization

**Consistency regularization** leverages the simple idea that perturbing a given datapoint (or the model itself) should not cause the model’s output to change dramatically. Since measuring consistency in this way only makes use of the model’s outputs (and not ground-truth labels), it is readily applicable to unlabeled data and therefore can be used to create appropriate loss functions for semi-supervised learning. This idea was first proposed under the framework of “learning with pseudo-ensembles” [BAP14], with similar variants following soon thereafter [LA16; SJT16].

In its most general form, both the model  $p_\theta(y|\mathbf{x})$  and the transformations applied to the input can be stochastic. For example, in computer vision problems we may transform the input by using data augmentation like randomly rotating or adding noise the input image, and the network may include stochastic components like dropout (Sec. 13.5.4) or weight noise [Gra11]. A common and simple form of consistency regularization first samples  $\mathbf{x}' \sim q(\mathbf{x}'|\mathbf{x})$  (where  $q(\mathbf{x}'|\mathbf{x})$  is the distribution induced by the stochastic input transformations) and then minimizes the loss  $\|p_\theta(y|\mathbf{x}) - p_\theta(y|\mathbf{x}')\|^2$ . In practice, the first term  $p_\theta(y|\mathbf{x})$  is typically treated as fixed (i.e. gradients are not propagated through it). In the semi-supervised setting, the combined loss function over a batch of labeled data  $(\mathbf{x}_1, y_1), (\mathbf{x}_2, y_2), \dots, (\mathbf{x}_M, y_M)$  and unlabeled data  $\mathbf{x}_1, \mathbf{x}_2, \dots, \mathbf{x}_N$  is

$$\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta}) = - \sum_{i=1}^M \log p_\theta(y = y_i | \mathbf{x}_i) + \lambda \sum_{j=1}^N \|p_\theta(y|\mathbf{x}_j) - p_\theta(y|\mathbf{x}'_j)\|^2 \quad (19.45)$$

where  $\lambda$  is a scalar hyperparameter that balances the importance of the loss on unlabeled data and, for simplicity, we write  $\mathbf{x}'_j$  to denote a sample drawn from  $q(\mathbf{x}'|\mathbf{x}_j)$ .

The basic form of consistency regularization in Eq. (19.45) reveals many design choices that impact the success of this semi-supervised learning approach. First, the value chosen for the  $\lambda$  hyperparameter is important. If it is too large, then the model may not give enough weight to learning the supervised task and will instead start to reinforce its own bad predictions (as with confirmation bias in self-training). Since the model is often poor at the start of training before it has been trained on much labeled data, it is common in practice to initialize set  $\lambda$  to zero and increase its value over the course of training.

A second important consideration are the random transformations applied to the input, i.e.,  $q(\mathbf{x}'|\mathbf{x})$ . Generally speaking, these transformations should be designed so that they do not change the label of  $\mathbf{x}$ . As mentioned above, a common choice is to use domain-specific data augmentations. It has recently been shown that using strong data augmentations that heavily corrupt the input (but, arguably, still do not change the label) can produce particularly strong results [Xie+19b; Ber+19b; Soh+20].

The use of data augmentation requires expert knowledge to determine what kinds of transformations are label-preserving and appropriate for a given problem. An alternative technique, called **virtual adversarial training** (VAT), instead transforms the input using an analytically-found perturbation designed to maximally change the model’s output (similar to adversarial examples, see Sec. 14.6). Specifically, VAT computes a perturbation  $\boldsymbol{\delta}$  that approximates  $\boldsymbol{\delta} = \operatorname{argmax}_{\boldsymbol{\delta}} \text{KL}(p_{\theta}(y|\mathbf{x}) \| p_{\theta}(y|\mathbf{x} + \boldsymbol{\delta}))$ . The approximation is done by initializing  $\boldsymbol{\delta}$  to a small constant and taking a single gradient step:

$$\boldsymbol{\delta} \leftarrow \nabla_{\boldsymbol{\delta}} \text{KL}(p_{\theta}(y|\mathbf{x}) \| p_{\theta}(y|\mathbf{x} + \boldsymbol{\delta})) \quad (19.46)$$

VAT then sets

$$\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{x} + \epsilon \frac{\boldsymbol{\delta}}{\|\boldsymbol{\delta}\|_2} \quad (19.47)$$

and proceeds as usual with consistency regularization (as in Eq. (19.45)), where  $\epsilon$  is a scalar hyperparameter that sets the L2-norm of the perturbation applied to  $\mathbf{x}$ .

Consistency regularization can also profoundly affect the geometry properties of the training objective, and the trajectory of SGD, such that performance can particularly benefit from non-standard training procedures. For example, the Euclidean distances between weights at different training epochs is significantly larger for objectives that use consistency regularization. Athiwaratkun, Izmailov, and Wilson [AIW19] show that a variant of **stochastic weight averaging** (SWA) [Izm+18] can achieve state-of-the-art performance on semi-supervised learning tasks by exploiting the geometric properties of consistency regularization.

A final consideration when using consistency regularization is the function used to measure the difference between the network’s output with and without perturbations. Equation (19.45) uses the squared L2 distance (also referred to as the Brier score), which is a common choice [SJT16; TV17; LA16; Ber+19a]. It is also common to use the KL divergence  $\text{KL}(p_{\theta}(y|\mathbf{x}) \| p_{\theta}(y|\mathbf{x}'))$  in analogy with the cross-entropy loss (i.e. KL divergence between ground-truth label and prediction) used for labeled examples [Miy+18; Ber+19b; Xie+19b]. The gradient of the squared-error loss approaches zero as the model’s predictions on the perturbed and unperturbed input differ more and more, assuming the model uses a softmax nonlinearity on its output. Using the squared-error loss therefore has a possible advantage that the model is not updated when its predictions are very unstable. However, the KL divergence has the same scale as the cross-entropy loss used for labeled data, which makes for more intuitive tuning of the unlabeled loss hyperparameter  $\lambda$ . A comparison of the two loss functions is shown in Fig. 19.20.

### 19.6.6 Deep generative models

Generative models provide a natural way of making use of unlabeled data through learning a model of the marginal distribution by minimizing  $\mathcal{L}_U = -\sum_n \log p_{\theta}(\mathbf{x}_n)$ . Various approaches have leveraged generative models for semi-supervised by developing ways to use the model of  $p_{\theta}(\mathbf{x}_n)$  to help produce a better supervised model.

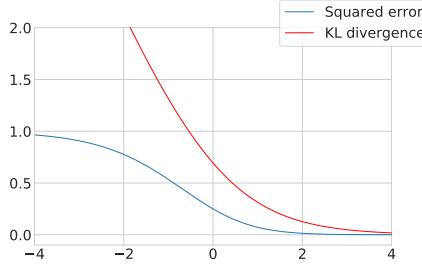


Figure 19.20: Comparison of the squared error and KL divergence losses for a consistency regularization. This visualization is for a binary classification problem where it is assumed that the model’s output for the unperturbed input is 1. The figure plots the loss incurred for a particular value of the logit (i.e. the pre-activation fed into the output sigmoid nonlinearity) for the perturbed input. As the logit grows towards infinity, the model predicts a class label of 1 (in agreement with the prediction for the unperturbed input); as it grows towards negative infinity, the model predictions class 0. The squared error loss saturates (and has zero gradients) when the model predicts one class or the other with high probability, but the KL divergence grows without bound as the model predicts class 0 with more and more confidence.

#### 19.6.6.1 Variational autoencoders

In Sec. 20.3.5, we describe the variational autoencoder (VAE), which defines a probabilistic model of the joint distribution of data  $\mathbf{x}$  and latent variables  $\mathbf{z}$ . Data is assumed to be generated by first sampling  $\mathbf{z} \sim p(\mathbf{z})$  and then sampling  $\mathbf{x} \sim p(\mathbf{x}|\mathbf{z})$ . For learning, the VAE uses an encoder  $\mathbf{q}_\lambda(\mathbf{z}|\mathbf{x})$  to approximate the posterior and a decoder  $p_\theta(\mathbf{x}|\mathbf{z})$  to approximate the likelihood. The encoder and decoder are typically deep neural networks. The parameters of the encoder and decoder can be jointly trained by maximizing the evidence lower bound (ELBO) of data.

The marginal distribution of latent variables  $p(\mathbf{z})$  is often chosen to be a simple distribution like a diagonal-covariance Gaussian. In practice, this can make the latent variables  $\mathbf{z}$  more amenable to downstream classification thanks to the facts that  $\mathbf{z}$  is typically lower-dimensional than  $\mathbf{x}$ , that  $\mathbf{z}$  is constructed via cascaded nonlinear transformations, and that the dimensions of the latent variables are designed to be independent. In other words, the latent variables can provide a (learned) representation where data may be more easily separable. In [Kin+14], this approach is called **M1** and it is indeed shown that the latent variables can be used to train stronger models when labels are scarce. (The general idea of unsupervised learning of representations to help with downstream classification tasks is described further in Sec. 19.2.3.)

An alternative approach to leveraging VAEs, also proposed in [Kin+14] and called **M2**, has the form

$$p_\theta(\mathbf{x}, y) = p_\theta(y)p_\theta(\mathbf{x}|y) = p_\theta(y) \int p_\theta(\mathbf{x}|y, \mathbf{z})p_\theta(\mathbf{z})d\mathbf{z} \quad (19.48)$$

where  $\mathbf{z}$  is a latent variable,  $p_\theta(\mathbf{z}) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{z}|\mathbf{0}, \mathbf{I})$  is the latent prior,  $p_\theta(y) = \text{Cat}(y|\boldsymbol{\pi})$  the label prior, and  $p_\theta(\mathbf{x}|y, \mathbf{z}) = p(\mathbf{x}|f_\theta(y, \mathbf{z}))$  is the likelihood, such as a Gaussian, with parameters computed by  $f$  (a deep neural network). The main innovation of this approach is to assume that data is generated according to both a latent class variable  $y$  as well as the continuous latent variable  $\mathbf{z}$ . The class

variable  $y$  is observed for labeled data and unobserved for unlabeled data.

To compute the likelihood for labeled data,  $p_{\theta}(\mathbf{x}, y)$ , we need to marginalize over  $\mathbf{z}$ , which can do approximately by using an inference network of the form  $q_{\phi}(\mathbf{z}|y, \mathbf{x}) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{z}|\boldsymbol{\mu}_{\phi}(y, \mathbf{x}), \text{diag}(\sigma_{\phi}^2(\mathbf{x})))$ . We then use the following variational lower bound

$$\log p_{\theta}(\mathbf{x}, y) \geq \mathbb{E}_{q_{\phi}(\mathbf{z}|\mathbf{x}, y)} [\log p_{\theta}(\mathbf{x}|y, \mathbf{z}) + \log p_{\theta}(y) + \log p_{\theta}(\mathbf{z}) - \log q_{\phi}(\mathbf{z}|\mathbf{x}, y)] = -\mathcal{L}(\mathbf{x}, y) \quad (19.49)$$

as is standard for VAEs (see Sec. 20.3.5). The only difference is that we observe two kinds of data:  $\mathbf{x}$  and  $y$ .

To compute the likelihood for unlabeled data,  $p_{\theta}(\mathbf{x})$ , we need to marginalize over  $\mathbf{z}$  and  $y$ , which can do approximately by using an inference network of the form

$$q_{\phi}(\mathbf{z}, y|\mathbf{x}) = q_{\phi}(\mathbf{z}|\mathbf{x})q_{\phi}(y|\mathbf{x}) \quad (19.50)$$

$$q_{\phi}(\mathbf{z}|\mathbf{x}) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{z}|\boldsymbol{\mu}_{\phi}(\mathbf{x}), \text{diag}(\sigma_{\phi}^2(\mathbf{x}))) \quad (19.51)$$

$$q_{\phi}(y|\mathbf{x}) = \text{Cat}(y|\boldsymbol{\pi}_{\phi}(\mathbf{x})) \quad (19.52)$$

Note that  $q_{\phi}(y|\mathbf{x})$  acts like a discriminative classifier, that imputes the missing labels. We then use the following variational lower bound:

$$\log p_{\theta}(\mathbf{x}) \geq \mathbb{E}_{q_{\phi}(\mathbf{z}, y|\mathbf{x})} [\log p_{\theta}(\mathbf{x}|y, \mathbf{z}) + \log p_{\theta}(y) + \log p_{\theta}(\mathbf{z}) - \log q_{\phi}(\mathbf{z}, y|\mathbf{x})] \quad (19.53)$$

$$= - \sum_y q_{\phi}(y|\mathbf{x}) \mathcal{L}(\mathbf{x}, y) + \mathbb{H}(q_{\phi}(y|\mathbf{x})) = -\mathcal{U}(\mathbf{x}) \quad (19.54)$$

Note that the discriminative classifier  $q_{\phi}(y|\mathbf{x})$  is only used to compute the loglikelihood of the unlabeled data, which is undesirable. We can therefore add an extra classification loss on the supervised data, to get the following overall objective function:

$$\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta}) = \mathbb{E}_{(\mathbf{x}, y) \sim \mathcal{D}_L} [\mathcal{L}(\mathbf{x}, y)] + \mathbb{E}_{\mathbf{x} \sim \mathcal{D}_U} [\mathcal{U}(\mathbf{x})] + \alpha \mathbb{E}_{(\mathbf{x}, y) \sim \mathcal{D}_L} [-\log q_{\phi}(y|\mathbf{x})] \quad (19.55)$$

where  $\alpha$  is a hyperparameter that controls the relative weight of generative and discriminative learning.

Of course, the probabilistic model used in M2 is just one of many ways to decompose the dependencies between the observed data, the class labels, and the continuous latent variables. There are also many ways other than variational inference to perform approximate inference. The best technique will be problem dependent, but overall the main advantage of the generative approach is that we can incorporate domain knowledge. For example, we can model the **missing data mechanism**, since the absence of a label may be informative about the underlying data (e.g., people may be reluctant to answer a survey question about their health if they are unwell).

### 19.6.6.2 Generative adversarial networks

**Generative adversarial networks** (GANs) (described in more detail in the sequel to this book, [Mur22]) are a popular class of generative models that learn an implicit model of the data distribution. They consist of a generator network, which maps samples from a simple latent distribution to the data space, and a critic network, which attempts to distinguish between the outputs of the generator and samples from the true data distribution. The generator is trained to generate samples that the critic classifies as “real”.

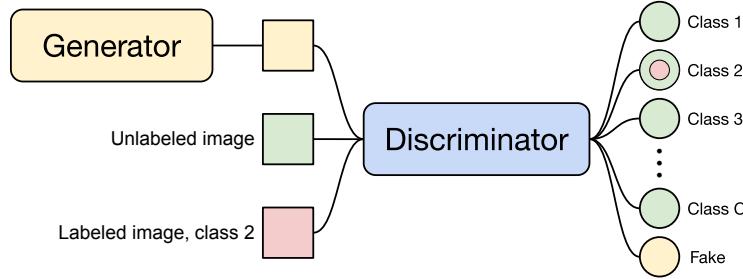


Figure 19.21: Diagram of the semi-supervised GAN framework. The discriminator is trained to output the class of labeled datapoints (red), a “fake” label for outputs from the generator (yellow), and any label for unlabeled data (green).

Since standard GANs do not produce a learned latent representation of a given datapoint and do not learn an explicit model of the data distribution, we cannot use the same approaches as were used for VAEs. Instead, semi-supervised learning with GANs is typically done by modifying the critic so that it outputs either a class label or “fake” instead of simply classifying real vs. fake [Sal+16; Ode16]. For labeled real data, the critic is trained to output the appropriate class label, and for unlabeled real data, it is trained to raise the probability of any of the class labels. As with standard GAN training, the critic is trained to classify outputs from the generator as fake and the generator is trained to fool the critic.

In more detail, let  $p_\theta(y|\mathbf{x})$  denote the critic with  $C + 1$  outputs corresponding to  $C$  classes plus a “fake” class, and let  $G(\mathbf{z})$  denote the generator which takes as input samples from the prior distribution  $p(\mathbf{z})$ . Let us assume that we are using the standard cross-entropy GAN loss as originally proposed in [Goo+14]. Then the critic’s loss is

$$-\mathbb{E}_{\mathbf{x},y \sim p(\mathbf{x},y)} \log p_\theta(y|\mathbf{x}) - \mathbb{E}_{\mathbf{x} \sim p(\mathbf{x})} \log[1 - p_\theta(y = C + 1|\mathbf{x})] - \mathbb{E}_{\mathbf{z} \sim p(\mathbf{z})} \log p_\theta(y = C + 1|G(\mathbf{z})) \quad (19.56)$$

This tries to maximize the probability of the correct class for the labeled examples, to minimize the probability of the fake class for real unlabeled examples, and to maximize the probability of the fake class for generated examples. The generator’s loss is simpler, namely

$$\mathbb{E}_{\mathbf{z} \sim p(\mathbf{z})} \log p_\theta(y = C + 1|G(\mathbf{z})) \quad (19.57)$$

A diagram visualizing the semi-supervised GAN framework is shown in Fig. 19.21.

### 19.6.6.3 Normalizing flows

**Normalizing flows** (described in more detail in the sequel to this book, [Mur22]) are a tractable way to define deep generative models. More precisely, they define an invertible mapping  $f_\theta : \mathcal{X} \rightarrow \mathcal{Z}$ , with parameters  $\theta$ , from the data space  $\mathcal{X}$  to the latent space  $\mathcal{Z}$ . The density in data space can be written starting from the density in the latent space using the change of variables formula:

$$p(x) = p(f(x)) \cdot \left| \det \left( \frac{\partial f}{\partial x} \right) \right|. \quad (19.58)$$

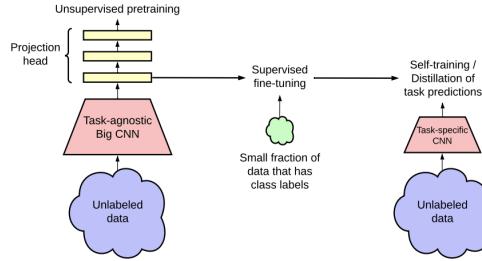


Figure 19.22: Combining self-supervised learning on unlabeled data (left), supervised fine-tuning (middle), and self-training on pseudo-labeled data (right). From Figure 3 of [Che+20c]. Used with kind permission of Ting Chen

We can extend this to semi-supervised learning, as proposed in [Izm+20]. For class labels  $y \in \{1 \dots \mathcal{C}\}$ , we can specify the latent distribution, conditioned on a label  $k$ , as Gaussian with mean  $\mu_k$  and covariance  $\Sigma_k$ :  $p(z|y = k) = \mathcal{N}(z|\mu_k, \Sigma_k)$ . The marginal distribution of  $z$  is then a Gaussian mixture. The likelihood for labeled data is then

$$p_{\mathcal{X}}(x|y = k) = \mathcal{N}(f(x)|\mu_k, \Sigma_k) \cdot \left| \det \left( \frac{\partial f}{\partial x} \right) \right|, \quad (19.59)$$

and the likelihood for data with unknown label is  $p(x) = \sum_k p(x|y = k)p(y = k)$ .

For semi-supervised learning we can then maximize the joint likelihood of the labeled  $\mathcal{D}_\ell$  and unlabeled data  $\mathcal{D}_u$ :

$$p(\mathcal{D}_\ell, \mathcal{D}_u | \theta) = \prod_{(x_i, y_i) \in \mathcal{D}_\ell} p(x_i, y_i) \prod_{x_j \in \mathcal{D}_u} p(x_j), \quad (19.60)$$

over the parameters  $\theta$  of the bijective function  $f$ , which learns a density model for a Bayes classifier.

Given a test point  $x$ , the model predictive distribution is given by

$$p_{\mathcal{X}}(y|x) = \frac{p(x|y)p(y)}{p(x)} = \frac{\mathcal{N}(f(x)|\mu_y, \Sigma_y)}{\sum_{k=1}^{\mathcal{C}} \mathcal{N}(f(x)|\mu_k, \Sigma_k)}. \quad (19.61)$$

We can make predictions for a test point  $x$  with the Bayes decision rule  $y = \arg \max_{c \in \{1, \dots, \mathcal{C}\}} p(y = c|x)$ .

### 19.6.7 Combining self-supervised and semi-supervised learning

It is possible to combine self-supervised and semi-supervised learning. For example, [Che+20c] using SimCLR (Sec. 19.2.3.3) to perform self-supervised representation learning on the unlabeled data, they then fine-tune this representation on a small labeled dataset (as in transfer learning, Sec. 19.2), and finally, they apply the trained model back to the original unlabeled dataset, and distill the predictions from this teacher model  $T$  into a student model  $S$ . (**Knowledge distillation** is the name given to the approach of training one model on the predictions of another, as originally proposed in [HVD14].)

That is, after fine-tuning  $T$ , they train  $S$  by minimizing

$$\mathcal{L}(T) = - \sum_{\mathbf{x}_i \in \mathcal{D}} \left[ \sum_y p^T(y|\mathbf{x}_i; \tau) \log p^S(y|\mathbf{x}_i; \tau) \right] \quad (19.62)$$

where  $\tau > 0$  is a temperature parameter applied to the softmax output, which is used to perform **label smoothing**. If  $S$  has the same form as  $T$ , this is known as **self-training**, as discussed in Sec. 19.6.1. However, normally the student  $S$  is smaller than the teacher  $T$ . (For example,  $T$  might be a high capacity model, and  $S$  is a lightweight version that runs on a phone.) See Fig. 19.22 for an illustration of the overall approach.

## 19.7 Active learning

In **active learning**, the goal is to identify the true predictive mapping  $y = f(\mathbf{x})$  by asking querying as few  $(\mathbf{x}, y)$  points as possible. There are three main variants. In **query synthesis**, the algorithm gets to choose any input  $\mathbf{x}$ , and can ask for its corresponding output  $y = f(\mathbf{x})$ . In **pool-based active learning**, there is a large, but fixed, set of unlabeled data points, and the algorithm gets to ask for a label for one or more of these points. Finally, in **stream-based active learning**, the incoming data is arriving continuously, and the algorithm must choose whether it wants to request a label for the current input or not.

There are various closely related problems. In **Bayesian optimization** (Sec. 5.8.3), the goal is to estimate the location of the global optimum  $\mathbf{x}^* = \operatorname{argmin}_{\mathbf{x}} f(\mathbf{x})$  in as few queries as possible; typically we fit a surrogate (response surface) model to the intermediate  $(\mathbf{x}, y)$  queries, to decide which question to ask next. In **experiment design**, the goal is to infer a parameter vector of some model, using carefully chosen data samples  $\mathcal{D} = \{\mathbf{x}_1, \dots, \mathbf{x}_N\}$ , i.e. we want to estimate  $p(\theta|\mathcal{D})$  using as little data as possible. (This can be thought of as an unsupervised, or generalized, form of active learning.)

In this section, we give a brief review of the pool based approach to active learning. For more details, see e.g., [Set12] for a review.

### 19.7.1 Decision-theoretic approach

In the decision theoretic approach to active learning, proposed in [KHB07; RM01], we define the utility of querying  $\mathbf{x}$  in terms of the **value of information**. In particular, we define the utility of issuing query  $\mathbf{x}$  as

$$U(\mathbf{x}) \triangleq \mathbb{E}_{p(y|\mathbf{x}, \mathcal{D})} \left[ \min_a R(a|\mathcal{D}) - R(a|\mathcal{D}, (\mathbf{x}, y)) \right] \quad (19.63)$$

where  $R(a|\mathcal{D}) = \mathbb{E}_{p(\theta|\mathcal{D})} [\ell(\theta, a)]$  is the posterior expected loss of taking some future action  $a$  given the data  $\mathcal{D}$  observed so far. Unfortunately, evaluating  $U(\mathbf{x})$  for each  $\mathbf{x}$  is quite expensive, since for each possible response  $y$  we might observe, we have to update our beliefs given  $(\mathbf{x}, y)$  to see what affect it might have on our future decisions (similar to look ahead search technique applied to belief states).

### 19.7.2 Information-theoretic approach

In the information theoretic approach to active supervised learning, we avoid using task-specific loss functions, and instead focus on learning our model as well as we can. In particular, [Lin56] proposed to define the utility of querying  $\mathbf{x}$  in terms of **information gain** about the parameters  $\boldsymbol{\theta}$ , i.e., the reduction in entropy:

$$U(\mathbf{x}) \triangleq \mathbb{H}(p(\boldsymbol{\theta}|\mathcal{D})) - \mathbb{E}_{p(y|\mathbf{x}, \mathcal{D})} [\mathbb{H}(p(\boldsymbol{\theta}|\mathcal{D}, \mathbf{x}, y))] \quad (19.64)$$

(Note that the first term is a constant wrt  $\mathbf{x}$ , but we include it for later convenience.) Exercise 19.1 asks you to show that this objective is identical to the expected change in the posterior over the parameters which is given by

$$U'(\mathbf{x}) \triangleq \mathbb{E}_{p(y|\mathbf{x}, \mathcal{D})} [\mathbb{KL}(p(\boldsymbol{\theta}|\mathcal{D}, \mathbf{x}, y) \| p(\boldsymbol{\theta}|\mathcal{D}))] \quad (19.65)$$

Using symmetry of the mutual information, we can rewrite Eq. (19.64) as follows:

$$U(\mathbf{x}) = \mathbb{H}(p(\boldsymbol{\theta}|\mathcal{D})) - \mathbb{E}_{p(y|\mathbf{x}, \mathcal{D})} [\mathbb{H}(p(\boldsymbol{\theta}|\mathcal{D}, \mathbf{x}, y))] \quad (19.66)$$

$$= \mathbb{I}(\boldsymbol{\theta}, y|\mathcal{D}, \mathbf{x}) \quad (19.67)$$

$$= \mathbb{H}(p(y|\mathbf{x}, \mathcal{D})) - \mathbb{E}_{p(\boldsymbol{\theta}|\mathcal{D})} [\mathbb{H}(p(y|\mathbf{x}, \boldsymbol{\theta}))] \quad (19.68)$$

The advantage of this approach is that we now only have to reason about the uncertainty of the predictive distribution over outputs  $y$ , not over the parameters  $\boldsymbol{\theta}$ .

Eq. (19.68) has an interesting interpretation. The first term prefers examples  $\mathbf{x}$  for which there is uncertainty in the predicted label. Just using this as a selection criterion is called **maximum entropy sampling** [SW87]. However, this can have problems with examples which are inherently ambiguous or mislabeled. The second term in Eq. (19.68) will discourage such behavior, since it prefers examples  $\mathbf{x}$  for which the predicted label is fairly certain once we know  $\boldsymbol{\theta}$ ; this will avoid picking inherently hard-to-predict examples. In other words, Eq. (19.68) will select examples  $\mathbf{x}$  for which the model makes confident predictions which are highly diverse. This approach has therefore been called **Bayesian active learning by disagreement** or **BALD** [Hou+12].

This method can be used to train classifiers for other domains where expert labels are hard to acquire, such as medical images or astronomical images [Wal+20].

### 19.7.3 Batch active learning

So far, we have assumed a greedy or **myopic** strategy, in which we select a single example  $\mathbf{x}$ , as if it were the last datapoint to be selected. But sometimes we have a budget to collect a set of  $B$  samples, call them  $(\mathbf{X}, \mathbf{Y})$ . In this case, the information gain criterion becomes  $U(\mathbf{X}) = \mathbb{H}(p(\boldsymbol{\theta}|\mathcal{D})) - \mathbb{E}_{p(\mathbf{Y}|\mathbf{X}, \mathcal{D})} [\mathbb{H}(p(\boldsymbol{\theta}|\mathbf{Y}, \mathbf{X}, \mathcal{D}))]$ . Unfortunately, optimizing this is NP-hard in the horizon length  $B$  [KLQ95; KG05].

Fortunately, under certain conditions, the greedy strategy is near-optimal, as we now explain. First note that, for any given  $\mathbf{X}$ , the information gain function  $f(\mathbf{Y}) \triangleq \mathbb{H}(p(\boldsymbol{\theta}|\mathcal{D})) - \mathbb{H}(p(\boldsymbol{\theta}|\mathbf{Y}, \mathbf{X}, \mathcal{D}))$  maps a set of labels  $\mathbf{Y}$  to a scalar. It is clear that  $f(\emptyset) = 0$ , and that  $f$  is non-decreasing, meaning  $f(Y^{\text{large}}) \geq f(Y^{\text{small}})$ , due to the “more information never hurts” principle. Furthermore, [KG05] proved that  $f$  is **submodular**. As a consequence is that a sequential greedy approach is within a constant factor of optimal. If we combine this greedy technique with the BALD objective, we get a method called **BatchBALD** [KAG19].

## 19.8 Exercises

**Exercise 19.1** [Information gain equations]

Consider the following two objectives for evaluating the utility of querying a datapoint  $\mathbf{x}$  in an active learning setting:

$$U(\mathbf{x}) \triangleq \mathbb{H}(p(\boldsymbol{\theta}|\mathcal{D})) - \mathbb{E}_{p(y|\mathbf{x}, \mathcal{D})} [\mathbb{H}(p(\boldsymbol{\theta}|\mathcal{D}, \mathbf{x}, y))] \quad (19.69)$$

$$U'(\mathbf{x}) \triangleq \mathbb{E}_{p(y|\mathbf{x}, \mathcal{D})} [\mathbb{KL}(p(\boldsymbol{\theta}|\mathcal{D}, \mathbf{x}, y) \| p(\boldsymbol{\theta}|\mathcal{D}))] \quad (19.70)$$

Prove that these are equal.

# 20 Dimensionality reduction

A common form of unsupervised learning is **dimensionality reduction**, in which we learn a mapping from the high-dimensional visible space,  $\mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^D$ , to a low-dimensional latent space,  $\mathbf{z} \in \mathbb{R}^L$ . This mapping can either be a parametric model  $\mathbf{z} = f(\mathbf{x}; \theta)$  which can be applied to any input, or it can be a nonparametric mapping where we compute an **embedding**  $\mathbf{z}_n$  for each input  $\mathbf{x}_n$  in the data set, but not for any other points. This latter approach is mostly used for data visualization, whereas the former approach can also be used as a preprocessing step for other kinds of learning algorithms. For example, we might first reduce the dimensionality by learning a mapping from  $\mathbf{x}$  to  $\mathbf{z}$ , and then learn a simple linear classifier on this embedding, by mapping  $\mathbf{z}$  to  $y$ .

## 20.1 Principal components analysis (PCA)

The simplest and most widely used form of dimensionality reduction is **principal components analysis** or **PCA**. The basic idea is to find a linear and orthogonal projection of the high dimensional data  $\mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^D$  to a low dimensional subspace  $\mathbf{z} \in \mathbb{R}^L$ , such that the low dimensional representation is a “good approximation” to the original data, in the following sense: if we project or **encode**  $\mathbf{x}$  to get  $\mathbf{z} = \mathbf{W}^\top \mathbf{x}$ , and then unproject or **decode**  $\mathbf{z}$  to get  $\hat{\mathbf{x}} = \mathbf{W}\mathbf{z}$ , then we want  $\hat{\mathbf{x}}$  to be close to  $\mathbf{x}$  in  $\ell_2$  distance. In particular, we can define the following **reconstruction error** or **distortion**:

$$\mathcal{L}(\mathbf{W}) \triangleq \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^N \|\mathbf{x}_n - \text{decode}(\text{encode}(\mathbf{x}_n; \mathbf{W}); \mathbf{W})\|_2^2 \quad (20.1)$$

where the encode and decoding stages are both linear maps, as we explain below.

In Sec. 20.1.2, we show that we can minimize this objective by setting  $\hat{\mathbf{W}} = \mathbf{U}_L$ , where  $\mathbf{U}_L$  contains the  $L$  eigenvectors with largest eigenvalues of the empirical covariance matrix

$$\hat{\Sigma} = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^N (\mathbf{x}_n - \bar{\mathbf{x}})(\mathbf{x}_n - \bar{\mathbf{x}})^\top = \frac{1}{N} \mathbf{X}_c^\top \mathbf{X}_c \quad (20.2)$$

where  $\mathbf{X}_c$  is a centered version of the  $N \times D$  design matrix. In Sec. 20.2.2, we show that this is equivalent to maximizing the likelihood of a latent linear Gaussian model known as probabilistic PCA.

### 20.1.1 Examples

Before giving the details, we start by showing some examples.

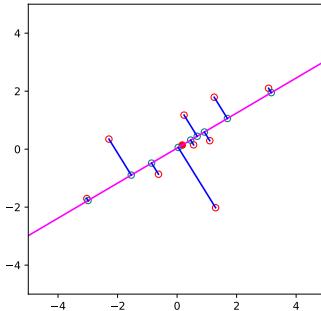


Figure 20.1: An illustration of PCA where we project from 2d to 1d. Circles are the original data points, crosses are the reconstructions. The red star is the data mean. Generated by `pcaDemo2d.py`.

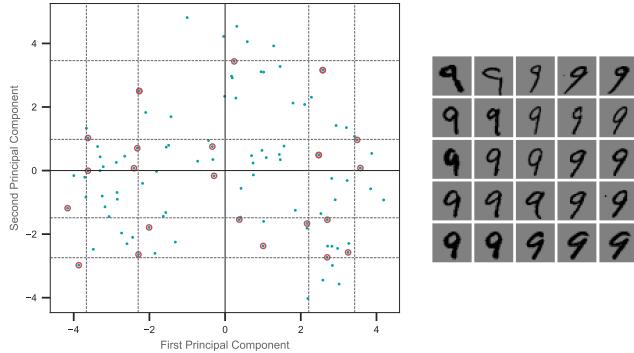


Figure 20.2: An illustration of PCA applied to MNIST digits from class 9. Grid points are at the 5, 25, 50, 75, 95 % quantiles of the data distribution along each dimension. The circled points are the closest projected images to the vertices of the grid. Adapted from Figure 14.23 of [HTF09]. Generated by `pca_digits.py`.

Fig. 20.1 shows a very simple example, where we project 2d data to a 1d line. The projected points (marked by green crosses) capture most of the variation in the original data, which occurs along the diagonal line (as opposed to perpendicular to that line).

In Fig. 20.2, we show what happens when we project some MNIST images of the digit 9 down to 2d. Although the inputs are high dimensional (specifically  $28 \times 28 = 784$  dimensional), the number of “effective degrees of freedom” is much less, since the pixels are correlated, and many digits look similar. Therefore we can represent each image as a point in a low dimensional linear space. We see that the first principal component (horizontal direction) seems to capture the orientation of the digit, and the second component (vertical direction) seems to capture line thickness.

In Fig. 20.3, we show PCA applied to another dataset, known as the Olivetti face dataset, which is a set of  $64 \times 64$  grayscale images. We project these to a 3d subspace. The resulting basis vectors



Figure 20.3: a) Some randomly chosen  $64 \times 64$  pixel images from the Olivetti face database. (b) The mean and the first three PCA components represented as images. Generated by `pcaImageDemo.m`.

(columns of the projection matrix  $\mathbf{W}$ ) are shown as images in Fig. 20.3b; these are known as **eigenfaces** [Tur13], for reasons that will be explained in Sec. 20.1.2. We see that the main modes of variation in the data are related to overall lighting, and then differences in the eyebrow region of the face. If we use enough dimensions (but fewer than the 4096 we started with), we can use the representation  $\mathbf{z} = \mathbf{W}^\top \mathbf{x}$  as input to a nearest-neighbor classifier to perform face recognition; this is faster and more reliable than working in pixel space [MWP98].

### 20.1.2 Derivation of the algorithm

Suppose we have an (unlabeled) dataset  $\mathcal{D} = \{\mathbf{x}_n : n = 1 : N\}$ , where  $\mathbf{x}_n \in \mathbb{R}^D$ . We can represent this as an  $N \times D$  data matrix  $\mathbf{X}$ . We will assume  $\bar{\mathbf{x}} = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^N \mathbf{x}_n = \mathbf{0}$ , which we can ensure by centering the data.

We would like to approximate each  $\mathbf{x}_n$  by a low dimensional representation,  $\mathbf{z}_n \in \mathbb{R}^L$ . We assume that each  $\mathbf{x}_n$  can be “explained” in terms of a weighted combination of basis functions  $\mathbf{w}_1, \dots, \mathbf{w}_L$ , where each  $\mathbf{w}_k \in \mathbb{R}^D$ , and where the weights are given by  $\mathbf{z}_n \in \mathbb{R}^L$ , i.e., we assume  $\mathbf{x}_n \approx \sum_{k=1}^L z_{nk} \mathbf{w}_k$ . The vector  $\mathbf{z}_n$  is the low dimensional representation of  $\mathbf{x}_n$ , and is known as the **latent vector**, since it consists of latent or “hidden” values that are not observed in the data. The collection of these latent variables are called the **latent factors**.

We can measure the error produced by this approximation as follows:

$$\mathcal{L}(\mathbf{W}, \mathbf{Z}) = \frac{1}{N} \|\mathbf{X} - \mathbf{Z}\mathbf{W}^\top\|_F^2 = \frac{1}{N} \|\mathbf{X}^\top - \mathbf{W}\mathbf{Z}^\top\|_F^2 = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^N \|\mathbf{x}_n - \mathbf{W}\mathbf{z}_n\|^2 \quad (20.3)$$

where the rows of  $\mathbf{Z}$  contain the low dimension versions of the rows of  $\mathbf{X}$ . This is known as the (average) **reconstruction error**, since we are approximating each  $\mathbf{x}_n$  by  $\hat{\mathbf{x}}_n = \mathbf{W}\mathbf{z}_n$ .

We want to minimize this subject to the constraint that  $\mathbf{W}$  is an orthogonal matrix. Below we show that the optimal solution is obtained by setting  $\hat{\mathbf{W}} = \mathbf{U}_L$ , where  $\mathbf{U}_L$  contains the  $L$  eigenvectors with largest eigenvalues of the empirical covariance matrix.

### 20.1.2.1 Base case

Let us start by estimating the best 1d solution,  $\mathbf{w}_1 \in \mathbb{R}^D$ . We will find the remaining basis vectors  $\mathbf{w}_2, \mathbf{w}_3$ , etc. later.

Let the coefficients for each of the data points associated with the first basis vector be denoted by  $\tilde{\mathbf{z}}_1 = [z_{11}, \dots, z_{N1}] \in \mathbb{R}^N$ . The reconstruction error is given by

$$\mathcal{L}(\mathbf{w}_1, \tilde{\mathbf{z}}_1) = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^N \|\mathbf{x}_n - z_{n1}\mathbf{w}_1\|^2 = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^N (\mathbf{x}_n - z_{n1}\mathbf{w}_1)^\top (\mathbf{x}_n - z_{n1}\mathbf{w}_1) \quad (20.4)$$

$$= \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^N [\mathbf{x}_n^\top \mathbf{x}_n - 2z_{n1}\mathbf{w}_1^\top \mathbf{x}_n + z_{n1}^2 \mathbf{w}_1^\top \mathbf{w}_1] \quad (20.5)$$

$$= \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^N [\mathbf{x}_n^\top \mathbf{x}_n - 2z_{n1}\mathbf{w}_1^\top \mathbf{x}_n + z_{n1}^2] \quad (20.6)$$

since  $\mathbf{w}_1^\top \mathbf{w}_1 = 1$  (by the orthonormality assumption). Taking derivatives wrt  $z_{n1}$  and equating to zero gives

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial z_{n1}} \mathcal{L}(\mathbf{w}_1, \tilde{\mathbf{z}}_1) = \frac{1}{N} [-2\mathbf{w}_1^\top \mathbf{x}_n + 2z_{n1}] = 0 \Rightarrow z_{n1} = \mathbf{w}_1^\top \mathbf{x}_n \quad (20.7)$$

So the optimal embedding is obtained by orthogonally projecting the data onto  $\mathbf{w}_1$  (see Fig. 20.1(a)). Plugging this back in gives the loss for the weights:

$$\mathcal{L}(\mathbf{w}_1) = \mathcal{L}(\mathbf{w}_1, \tilde{\mathbf{z}}_1^*(\mathbf{w}_1)) = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^N [\mathbf{x}_n^\top \mathbf{x}_n - z_{n1}^2] = \text{const} - \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^N z_{n1}^2 \quad (20.8)$$

To solve for  $\mathbf{w}_1$ , note that

$$\mathcal{L}(\mathbf{w}_1) = -\frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^N z_{n1}^2 = -\frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^N \mathbf{w}_1^\top \mathbf{x}_n \mathbf{x}_n^\top \mathbf{w}_1 = -\mathbf{w}_1^\top \hat{\Sigma} \mathbf{w}_1 \quad (20.9)$$

where  $\Sigma$  is the empirical covariance matrix (since we assumed the data is centered). We can trivially optimize this by letting  $\|\mathbf{w}_1\| \rightarrow \infty$ , so we impose the constraint  $\|\mathbf{w}_1\| = 1$  and instead optimize

$$\tilde{\mathcal{L}}(\mathbf{w}_1) = \mathbf{w}_1^\top \hat{\Sigma} \mathbf{w}_1 + \lambda_1(\mathbf{w}_1^\top \mathbf{w}_1 - 1) \quad (20.10)$$

where  $\lambda_1$  is a Lagrange multiplier (see Sec. 5.5.1). Taking derivatives and equating to zero we have

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{w}_1} \tilde{\mathcal{L}}(\mathbf{w}_1) = 2\hat{\Sigma} \mathbf{w}_1 - 2\lambda_1 \mathbf{w}_1 = 0 \quad (20.11)$$

$$\hat{\Sigma} \mathbf{w}_1 = \lambda_1 \mathbf{w}_1 \quad (20.12)$$

Hence the optimal direction onto which we should project the data is an eigenvector of the covariance matrix. Left multiplying by  $\mathbf{w}_1^\top$  (and using  $\mathbf{w}_1^\top \mathbf{w}_1 = 1$ ) we find

$$\mathbf{w}_1^\top \hat{\Sigma} \mathbf{w}_1 = \lambda_1 \quad (20.13)$$

Since we want to maximize this quantity (minimize the loss), we pick the eigenvector which corresponds to the largest eigenvalue.

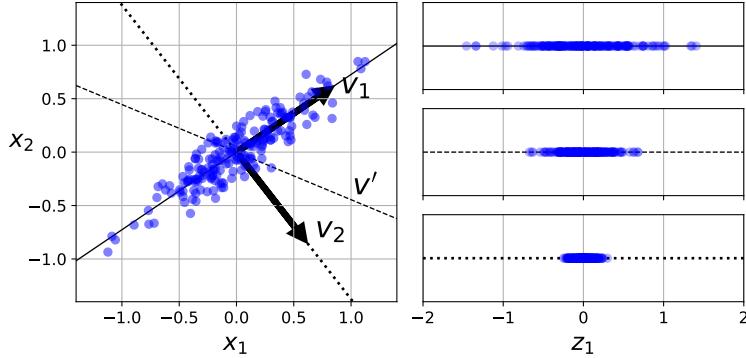


Figure 20.4: Illustration of the variance of the points projected onto different 1d vectors.  $v_1$  is the first principal component, which maximizes the variance of the projection.  $v_2$  is the second principal component which is direction orthogonal to  $v_1$ . Finally  $v'$  is some other vector in between  $v_1$  and  $v_2$ . Adapted from Figure 8.7 of [Gér19]. Generated by [pca\\_projected\\_variance.py](#)

### 20.1.2.2 Optimal weight vector maximizes the variance of the projected data

Before continuing, we make an interesting observation. Since the data has been centered, we have

$$\mathbb{E}[z_{n1}] = \mathbb{E}[\mathbf{x}_n^\top \mathbf{w}_1] = \mathbb{E}[\mathbf{x}_n]^\top \mathbf{w}_1 = 0 \quad (20.14)$$

Hence variance of the projected data is given by

$$\mathbb{V}[\tilde{\mathbf{z}}_1] = \mathbb{E}[\tilde{\mathbf{z}}_1^2] - (\mathbb{E}[\tilde{\mathbf{z}}_1])^2 = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^N z_{n1}^2 - 0 = -\mathcal{L}(\mathbf{w}_1) + \text{const} \quad (20.15)$$

From this, we see that *minimizing* the reconstruction error is equivalent to *maximizing* the variance of the projected data:

$$\arg \min_{\mathbf{w}_1} \mathcal{L}(\mathbf{w}_1) = \arg \max_{\mathbf{w}_1} \mathbb{V}[\tilde{\mathbf{z}}_1(\mathbf{w}_1)] \quad (20.16)$$

This is why it is often said that PCA finds the directions of maximal variance. (See Fig. 20.4 for an illustration.) However, the minimum error formulation easier to understand and is more general.

### 20.1.2.3 Induction step

Now let us find another direction  $\mathbf{w}_2$  to further minimize the reconstruction error, subject to  $\mathbf{w}_1^\top \mathbf{w}_2 = 0$  and  $\mathbf{w}_2^\top \mathbf{w}_2 = 1$ . The error is

$$\mathcal{L}(\mathbf{w}_1, \tilde{\mathbf{z}}_1, \mathbf{w}_2, \tilde{\mathbf{z}}_2) = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^N \|\mathbf{x}_n - z_{n1}\mathbf{w}_1 - z_{n2}\mathbf{w}_2\|^2 \quad (20.17)$$

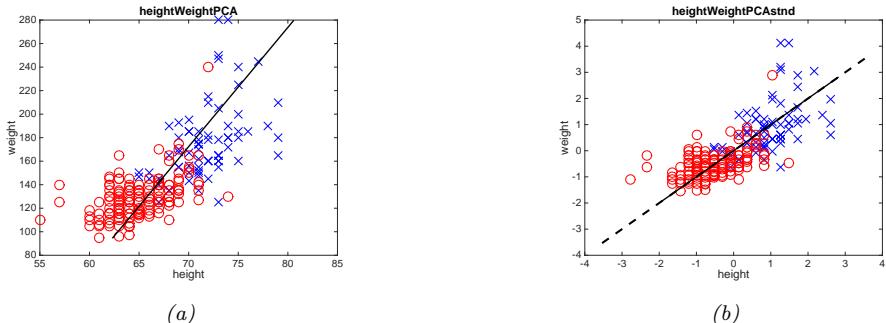


Figure 20.5: Effect of standardization on PCA applied to the height/weight dataset. (Red=female, blue=male.) Left: PCA of raw data. Right: PCA of standardized data. Generated by `pcaStandardization.py`.

Optimizing wrt  $\mathbf{w}_1$  and  $\mathbf{z}_1$  gives the same solution as before. Exercise 20.3 asks you to show that  $\frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial \mathbf{z}_2} = 0$  yields  $z_{n2} = \mathbf{w}_2^\top \mathbf{x}_n$ . Substituting in yields

$$\mathcal{L}(\mathbf{w}_2) = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{n=1}^N [\mathbf{x}_n^\top \mathbf{x}_n - \mathbf{w}_1^\top \mathbf{x}_n \mathbf{x}_n^\top \mathbf{w}_1 - \mathbf{w}_2^\top \mathbf{x}_n \mathbf{x}_n^\top \mathbf{w}_2] = \text{const} - \mathbf{w}_2^\top \hat{\Sigma} \mathbf{w}_2 \quad (20.18)$$

Dropping the constant term, plugging in the optimal  $\mathbf{w}_1$  and adding the constraints yields

$$\tilde{\mathcal{L}}(\mathbf{w}_2) = \mathbf{w}_2^\top \hat{\Sigma} \mathbf{w}_2 + \lambda_2 (\mathbf{w}_2^\top \mathbf{w}_2 - 1) + \lambda_{12} (\mathbf{w}_2^\top \mathbf{w}_1 - 0) \quad (20.19)$$

Exercise 20.3 asks you to show that the solution is given by the eigenvector with the second largest eigenvalue:

$$\hat{\Sigma} \mathbf{w}_2 = \lambda_2 \mathbf{w}_2 \quad (20.20)$$

The proof continues in this way to show that  $\hat{\mathbf{W}} = \mathbf{U}_L$ .

### 20.1.3 Computational issues

In this section, we discuss various practical issues related to using PCA.

### 20.1.3.1 Covariance matrix vs correlation matrix

We have been working with the eigendecomposition of the covariance matrix. However, it is better to use the correlation matrix instead. The reason is that otherwise PCA can be “misled” by directions in which the variance is high merely because of the measurement scale. Fig. 20.5 shows an example of this. On the left, we see that the vertical axis uses a larger range than the horizontal axis. This results in a first principal component that looks somewhat “unnatural”. On the right, we show the results of PCA after standardizing the data (which is equivalent to using the correlation matrix instead of the covariance matrix); the results look much better.

### 20.1.3.2 Dealing with high-dimensional data

We have presented PCA as the problem of finding the eigenvectors of the  $D \times D$  covariance matrix  $\mathbf{X}^\top \mathbf{X}$ . If  $D > N$ , it is faster to work with the  $N \times N$  Gram matrix  $\mathbf{XX}^\top$ . We now show how to do this.

First, let  $\mathbf{U}$  be an orthogonal matrix containing the eigenvectors of  $\mathbf{XX}^\top$  with corresponding eigenvalues in  $\Lambda$ . By definition we have  $(\mathbf{XX}^\top)\mathbf{U} = \mathbf{U}\Lambda$ . Pre-multiplying by  $\mathbf{X}^\top$  gives

$$(\mathbf{X}^\top \mathbf{X})(\mathbf{X}^\top \mathbf{U}) = (\mathbf{X}^\top \mathbf{U})\Lambda \quad (20.21)$$

from which we see that the eigenvectors of  $\mathbf{X}^\top \mathbf{X}$  are  $\mathbf{V} = \mathbf{X}^\top \mathbf{U}$ , with eigenvalues given by  $\Lambda$  as before. However, these eigenvectors are not normalized, since  $\|\mathbf{v}_j\|^2 = \mathbf{u}_j^\top \mathbf{XX}^\top \mathbf{u}_j = \lambda_j \mathbf{u}_j^\top \mathbf{u}_j = \lambda_j$ . The normalized eigenvectors are given by

$$\mathbf{V} = \mathbf{X}^\top \mathbf{U} \Lambda^{-\frac{1}{2}} \quad (20.22)$$

This provides an alternative way to compute the PCA basis. It also allows us to use the kernel trick, as we discuss in Sec. 20.4.6.

### 20.1.3.3 Computing PCA using SVD

In this section, we show the equivalence between PCA as computed using eigenvector methods (Sec. 20.1) and the truncated SVD.<sup>1</sup>

Let  $\mathbf{U}_\Sigma \Lambda_\Sigma \mathbf{U}_\Sigma^\top$  be the top  $L$  eigendecomposition of the covariance matrix  $\Sigma \propto \mathbf{X}^\top \mathbf{X}$  (we assume  $\mathbf{X}$  is centered). Recall from Sec. 20.1.2 that the optimal estimate of the projection weights  $\mathbf{W}$  is given by the top  $L$  eigenvalues, so  $\mathbf{W} = \mathbf{U}_\Sigma$ .

Now let  $\mathbf{U}_X \mathbf{S}_X \mathbf{V}_X^\top \approx \mathbf{X}$  be the  $L$ -truncated SVD approximation to the data matrix  $\mathbf{X}$ . From Eq. (B.169), we know that the right singular vectors of  $\mathbf{X}$  are the eigenvectors of  $\mathbf{X}^\top \mathbf{X}$ , so  $\mathbf{V}_X = \mathbf{U}_\Sigma = \mathbf{W}$ . (In addition, the eigenvalues of the covariance matrix are related to the singular values of the data matrix via  $\lambda_k = s_k^2/N$ .)

Now suppose we are interested in the projected points (also called the principal components or PC scores), rather than the projection matrix. We have

$$\mathbf{Z} = \mathbf{X}\mathbf{W} = \mathbf{U}_X \mathbf{S}_X \mathbf{V}_X^\top \mathbf{V}_X = \mathbf{U}_X \mathbf{S}_X \quad (20.23)$$

Finally, if we want to approximately reconstruct the data, we have

$$\hat{\mathbf{X}} = \mathbf{Z}\mathbf{W}^\top = \mathbf{U}_X \mathbf{S}_X \mathbf{V}_X \quad (20.24)$$

This is precisely the same as a truncated SVD approximation (Sec. B.5.5).

Thus we see that we can perform PCA either using an eigendecomposition of  $\Sigma$  or an SVD decomposition of  $\mathbf{X}$ . The latter is often preferable, for computational reasons. For very high dimensional problems, we can use a randomized SVD algorithm, see e.g., [HMT11; SKT14; DM16]. For example, the randomized solver used by sklearn takes  $O(NL^2) + O(L^3)$  time for  $N$  examples and  $L$  principal components, whereas exact SVD takes  $O(ND^2) + O(D^3)$  time.

---

1. A more detailed explanation can be found at <https://bit.ly/2I5660K>.

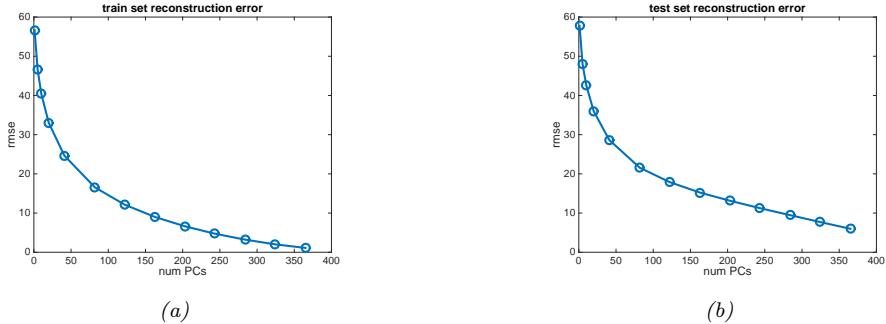


Figure 20.6: Reconstruction error on MNIST vs number of latent dimensions used by PCA. (a) Training set. (b) Test set. Generated by `pcaOverfitDemo.m`.

#### 20.1.4 Choosing the number of latent dimensions

In this section, we discuss how to choose the number of latent dimensions  $L$  for PCA.

##### 20.1.4.1 Reconstruction error

Let us define the reconstruction error on some dataset  $\mathcal{D}$  incurred by the model when using  $L$  dimensions:

$$\mathcal{L}_L = \frac{1}{|\mathcal{D}|} \sum_{n \in \mathcal{D}} \|\mathbf{x}_n - \hat{\mathbf{x}}_n\|^2 \quad (20.25)$$

where the reconstruction is given by  $\hat{\mathbf{x}}_n = \mathbf{W}\mathbf{z}_n + \boldsymbol{\mu}$ , where  $\mathbf{z}_n = \mathbf{W}^\top(\mathbf{x}_n - \boldsymbol{\mu})$  and  $\boldsymbol{\mu}$  is the empirical mean, and  $\mathbf{W}$  is estimated as above. Fig. 20.6(a) plots  $\mathcal{L}_L$  vs  $L$  on the MNIST training data. We see that it drops off quite quickly, indicating that we can capture most of the empirical correlation of the pixels with a small number of factors.

Of course, if we use  $L = \text{rank}(\mathbf{X})$ , we get zero reconstruction error on the training set. To avoid overfitting, it is natural to plot reconstruction error on the test set. This is shown in Fig. 20.6(b). Here we see that the error continues to go down even as the model becomes more complex! Thus we do not get the usual U-shaped curve that we typically expect to see in supervised learning. The problem is that PCA is not a proper generative model of the data: If you give it more latent dimensions, it will be able to approximate the test data more accurately. (A similar problem arises if we plot reconstruction error on the test set using K-means clustering, as discussed in Sec. 21.3.7.) We discuss some solutions to this below.

##### 20.1.4.2 Scree plots

A common alternative to plotting reconstruction error vs  $L$  is to use something called a **scree plot**, which is a plot of the eigenvalues  $\lambda_j$  vs  $j$  in order of decreasing magnitude. One can show

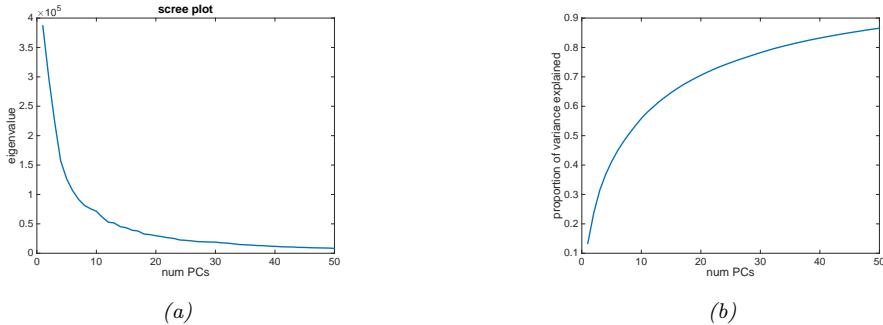


Figure 20.7: (a) Scree plot for training set, corresponding to Fig. 20.6(a). (b) Fraction of variance explained. Generated by `pcaOverfitDemo.m`.

(Exercise 20.4) that

$$\mathcal{L}_L = \sum_{j=L+1}^D \lambda_j \quad (20.26)$$

Thus as the number of dimensions increases, the eigenvalues get smaller, and so does the reconstruction error, as shown in Fig. 20.7a).<sup>2</sup> A related quantity is the **fraction of variance explained**, defined as

$$F_L = \frac{\sum_{j=1}^L \lambda_j}{\sum_{j'=1}^{L_{\max}} \lambda_{j'}} \quad (20.27)$$

This captures the same information as the scree plot, but goes up with  $L$  (see Fig. 20.7b).

#### 20.1.4.3 Profile likelihood

Although there is no U-shape in the reconstruction error plot, there is sometimes a “knee” or “elbow” in the curve, where the error suddenly changes from relatively large errors to relatively small. The idea is that for  $L < L^*$ , where  $L^*$  is the “true” latent dimensionality (or number of clusters), the rate of decrease in the error function will be high, whereas for  $L > L^*$ , the gains will be smaller, since the model is already sufficiently complex to capture the true distribution.

One way to automate the detection of this change in the gradient of the curve is to compute the **profile likelihood**, as proposed in [ZG06]. The idea is this. Let  $\lambda_L$  be some measure of the error incurred by a model of size  $L$ , such that  $\lambda_1 \geq \lambda_2 \geq \dots \geq \lambda_{L_{\max}}$ . In PCA, these are the eigenvalues, but the method can also be applied to the reconstruction error from K-means clustering (see Sec. 21.3.7). Now consider partitioning these values into two groups, depending on whether  $k < L$  or  $k > L$ , where  $L$  is some threshold which we will determine. To measure the quality of  $L$ ,

2. The reason for the term “scree plot” is that “the plot looks like the side of a mountain, and ‘scree’ refers to the debris fallen from a mountain and lying at its base”. (Quotation from Kenneth Janda, <https://bit.ly/2kqG1yw>.)

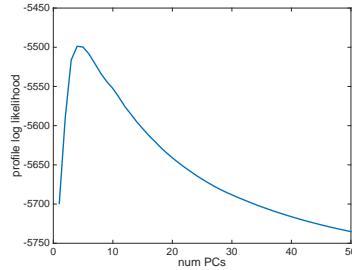


Figure 20.8: Profile likelihood corresponding to PCA model in Fig. 20.6(a). Generated by `pcaOverfitDemo.m`.

we will use a simple change-point model, where  $\lambda_k \sim \mathcal{N}(\mu_1, \sigma^2)$  if  $k \leq L$ , and  $\lambda_k \sim \mathcal{N}(\mu_2, \sigma^2)$  if  $k > L$ . (It is important that  $\sigma^2$  be the same in both models, to prevent overfitting in the case where one regime has less data than the other.) Within each of the two regimes, we assume the  $\lambda_k$  are iid, which is obviously incorrect, but is adequate for our present purposes. We can fit this model for each  $L = 1 : L^{\max}$  by partitioning the data and computing the MLEs, using a pooled estimate of the variance:

$$\mu_1(L) = \frac{\sum_{k \leq L} \lambda_k}{L} \quad (20.28)$$

$$\mu_2(L) = \frac{\sum_{k > L} \lambda_k}{L^{\max} - L} \quad (20.29)$$

$$\sigma^2(L) = \frac{\sum_{k \leq L} (\lambda_k - \mu_1(L))^2 + \sum_{k > L} (\lambda_k - \mu_2(L))^2}{L^{\max}} \quad (20.30)$$

We can then evaluate the profile log likelihood

$$\ell(L) = \sum_{k=1}^L \log \mathcal{N}(\lambda_k | \mu_1(L), \sigma^2(L)) + \sum_{k=L+1}^{L^{\max}} \log \mathcal{N}(\lambda_k | \mu_2(L), \sigma^2(L)) \quad (20.31)$$

This is illustrated in Fig. 20.8. We see that the peak  $L^* = \text{argmax } \ell(L)$  is well determined.

## 20.2 Factor analysis

PCA is a simple method for computing a linear low-dimensional representation of data. In this section, we present a generalization of PCA known as **factor analysis**. This is based on a probabilistic model, which means we can treat it as a building block for more complex models, such as the mixture of FA models in Sec. 20.2.6, or the nonlinear FA model in Sec. 20.3.5. We can recover PCA as a special limiting case of FA, as we discuss in Sec. 20.2.2.

### 20.2.1 Generative model

Factor analysis corresponds to the following linear-Gaussian latent variable generative model:

$$p(\mathbf{z}) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{z} | \boldsymbol{\mu}_0, \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_0) \quad (20.32)$$

$$p(\mathbf{x} | \mathbf{z}, \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{x} | \mathbf{W}\mathbf{z} + \boldsymbol{\mu}, \boldsymbol{\Psi}) \quad (20.33)$$

where  $\mathbf{W}$  is a  $D \times L$  matrix, known as the **factor loading matrix**, and  $\boldsymbol{\Psi}$  is a diagonal  $D \times D$  covariance matrix.

FA can be thought of as a low-rank version of a Gaussian distribution. To see this, note that the induced marginal distribution  $p(\mathbf{x} | \boldsymbol{\theta})$  is a Gaussian (see Eq. (3.105) for the derivation):

$$p(\mathbf{x} | \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \int \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{x} | \mathbf{W}\mathbf{z} + \boldsymbol{\mu}, \boldsymbol{\Psi}) \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{z} | \boldsymbol{\mu}_0, \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_0) d\mathbf{z} \quad (20.34)$$

$$= \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{x} | \mathbf{W}\boldsymbol{\mu}_0 + \boldsymbol{\mu}, \boldsymbol{\Psi} + \mathbf{W}\boldsymbol{\Sigma}_0\mathbf{W}^\top) \quad (20.35)$$

Hence  $\mathbb{E}[\mathbf{x}] = \mathbf{W}\boldsymbol{\mu}_0 + \boldsymbol{\mu}$  and  $\text{Cov}[\mathbf{x}] = \mathbf{W}\text{Cov}[\mathbf{z}]\mathbf{W}^\top + \boldsymbol{\Psi} = \mathbf{W}\boldsymbol{\Sigma}_0\mathbf{W}^\top + \boldsymbol{\Psi}$ . From this, we see that we can set  $\boldsymbol{\mu}_0 = \mathbf{0}$  without loss of generality, since we can always absorb  $\mathbf{W}\boldsymbol{\mu}_0$  into  $\boldsymbol{\mu}$ . Similarly, we can set  $\boldsymbol{\Sigma}_0 = \mathbf{I}$  without loss of generality, since we can always absorb a correlated prior by using a new weight matrix,  $\tilde{\mathbf{W}} = \mathbf{W}\boldsymbol{\Sigma}_0^{-\frac{1}{2}}$ . After these simplifications we have

$$p(\mathbf{z}) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{z} | \mathbf{0}, \mathbf{I}) \quad (20.36)$$

$$p(\mathbf{x} | \mathbf{z}) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{x} | \mathbf{W}\mathbf{z} + \boldsymbol{\mu}, \boldsymbol{\Psi}) \quad (20.37)$$

$$p(\mathbf{x}) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{x} | \boldsymbol{\mu}, \mathbf{W}\mathbf{W}^\top + \boldsymbol{\Psi}) \quad (20.38)$$

For example, suppose where  $L = 1$ ,  $D = 2$  and  $\boldsymbol{\Psi} = \sigma^2\mathbf{I}$ . We illustrate the generative process in this case in Fig. 20.9. We can think of this as taking an isotropic Gaussian “spray can”, representing the likelihood  $p(\mathbf{x} | \mathbf{z})$ , and “sliding it along” the 1d line defined by  $\mathbf{w}\mathbf{z} + \boldsymbol{\mu}$  as we vary the 1d latent prior  $\mathbf{z}$ . This induces an elongated (and hence correlated) Gaussian in 2d. That is, the induced distribution has the form  $p(\mathbf{x}) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{x} | \boldsymbol{\mu}, \mathbf{w}\mathbf{w}^\top + \sigma^2\mathbf{I})$ .

In general, FA approximates the covariance matrix of the visible vector using a low-rank decomposition:

$$\mathbf{C} = \text{Cov}[\mathbf{x}] = \mathbf{W}\mathbf{W}^\top + \boldsymbol{\Psi} \quad (20.39)$$

This only uses  $O(LD)$  parameters, which allows a flexible compromise between a full covariance Gaussian, with  $O(D^2)$  parameters, and a diagonal covariance, with  $O(D)$  parameters.

From Eq. (20.39), we see that we should restrict  $\boldsymbol{\Psi}$  to be diagonal, otherwise we could set  $\mathbf{W} = \mathbf{0}$ , thus ignoring the latent factors, while still being able to model any covariance. The marginal variance of each visible variable is given by  $\mathbb{V}[x_d] = \sum_{k=1}^L w_{dk}^2 + \psi_d$ , where the first term is the variance due to the common factors, and the second  $\psi_d$  term is called the **uniqueness**, and is the variance term that is specific to that dimension.

We can estimate the parameters of an FA model using EM (see Sec. 20.2.3). Once we have fit the model, we can compute probabilistic latent embeddings using  $p(\mathbf{z} | \mathbf{x})$ . Using Bayes rule for Gaussians we have

$$p(\mathbf{z} | \mathbf{x}) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{z} | \mathbf{W}^\top \mathbf{C}^{-1}(\mathbf{x} - \boldsymbol{\mu}), \mathbf{I} - \mathbf{W}^\top \mathbf{C}^{-1} \mathbf{W}) \quad (20.40)$$

where  $\mathbf{C}$  is defined in Eq. (20.39).

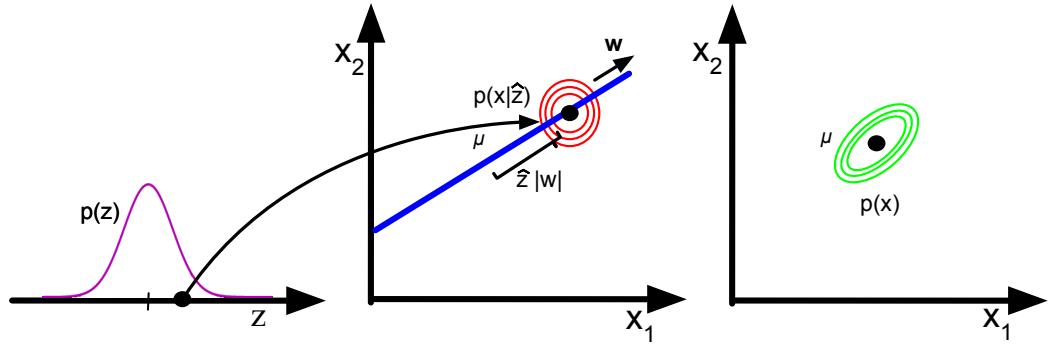


Figure 20.9: Illustration of the FA generative process, where we have  $L = 1$  latent dimension generating  $D = 2$  observed dimensions; we assume  $\Psi = \sigma^2 \mathbf{I}$ . The latent factor has value  $z \in \mathbb{R}$ , sampled from  $p(z)$ ; this gets mapped to a 2d offset  $\delta = zw$ , where  $w \in \mathbb{R}^2$ , which gets added to  $\mu$  to define a Gaussian  $p(\mathbf{x}|z) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{x}|\mu + \delta, \sigma^2 \mathbf{I})$ . By integrating over  $z$ , we “slide” this circular Gaussian “spray can” along the principal component axis  $w$ , which induces elliptical Gaussian contours in  $\mathbf{x}$  space centered on  $\mu$ . Adapted from Figure 12.9 of [Bis06].

### 20.2.2 Probabilistic PCA

In this section, we consider a special case of the factor analysis model in which  $\mathbf{W}$  has orthonormal columns,  $\Psi = \sigma^2 \mathbf{I}$  and  $\mu = \mathbf{0}$ . This model is called **probabilistic principal components analysis (PPCA)** [TB99], or **sensible PCA** [Row97]. The marginal distribution on the visible variables has the form

$$p(\mathbf{x}|\theta) = \int \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{x}|\mathbf{W}\mathbf{z}, \sigma^2 \mathbf{I}) \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{z}|\mathbf{0}, \mathbf{I}) d\mathbf{z} = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{x}|\mu, \mathbf{C}) \quad (20.41)$$

where

$$\mathbf{C} = \mathbf{W}\mathbf{W}^\top + \sigma^2 \mathbf{I} \quad (20.42)$$

The log likelihood for PPCA is given by

$$\log p(\mathbf{X}|\mu, \mathbf{W}, \sigma^2) = -\frac{ND}{2} \log(2\pi) - \frac{N}{2} \log |\mathbf{C}| - \frac{1}{2} \sum_{n=1}^N (\mathbf{x}_n - \mu)^\top \mathbf{C}^{-1} (\mathbf{x}_n - \mu) \quad (20.43)$$

The MLE for  $\mu$  is  $\bar{\mathbf{x}}$ . Plugging in gives

$$\log p(\mathbf{X}|\mu, \mathbf{W}, \sigma^2) = -\frac{N}{2} [D \log(2\pi) + \log |\mathbf{C}| + \text{tr}(\mathbf{C}^{-1} \mathbf{S})] \quad (20.44)$$

where  $\mathbf{S} = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^N (\mathbf{x}_n - \bar{\mathbf{x}})(\mathbf{x}_n - \bar{\mathbf{x}})^\top$  is the empirical covariance matrix.

In [TB99; Row97] they show that the maximum of this objective must satisfy

$$\mathbf{W} = \mathbf{U}_L (\mathbf{L}_L - \sigma^2 \mathbf{I})^{\frac{1}{2}} \mathbf{R} \quad (20.45)$$

where  $\mathbf{U}_L$  is a  $D \times L$  matrix whose columns are given by the  $L$  eigenvectors of  $\mathbf{S}$  with largest eigenvalues,  $\mathbf{L}_L$  is the  $L \times L$  diagonal matrix of eigenvalues, and  $\mathbf{R}$  is an arbitrary  $L \times L$  orthogonal matrix, which (WLOG) we can take to be  $\mathbf{R} = \mathbf{I}$ . In the noise-free limit, where  $\sigma^2 = 0$ , we see that  $\mathbf{W}_{\text{mle}} = \mathbf{U}_L \mathbf{L}_L^{\frac{1}{2}}$ , which is proportional to the PCA solution.

The MLE for the observation variance is

$$\sigma^2 = \frac{1}{D-L} \sum_{i=L+1}^D \lambda_i \quad (20.46)$$

which is the average distortion associated with the discarded dimensions. If  $L = D$ , then the estimated noise is 0, since the model collapses to  $\mathbf{z} = \mathbf{x}$ .

To compute the likelihood  $p(\mathbf{X}|\boldsymbol{\mu}, \mathbf{W}, \sigma^2)$ , we need to evaluate  $\mathbf{C}^{-1}$  and  $\log |\mathbf{C}|$ , where  $\mathbf{C}$  is a  $D \times D$  matrix. To do this efficiently, we can use the matrix inversion lemma to write

$$\mathbf{C}^{-1} = \sigma^{-2} [\mathbf{I} - \mathbf{W}\mathbf{M}^{-1}\mathbf{W}^\top] \quad (20.47)$$

where the  $L \times L$  dimensional matrix  $\mathbf{M}$  is given by

$$\mathbf{M} = \mathbf{W}^\top \mathbf{W} + \sigma^2 \mathbf{I} \quad (20.48)$$

When we plug in the MLE for  $\mathbf{W}$  from Eq. (20.45) (using  $\mathbf{R} = \mathbf{I}$ ) we find

$$\mathbf{M} = \mathbf{U}_L (\mathbf{L}_L - \sigma^2 \mathbf{I}) \mathbf{U}_L^\top + \sigma^2 \mathbf{I} \quad (20.49)$$

and hence

$$\mathbf{C}^{-1} = \sigma^{-2} [\mathbf{I} - \mathbf{U}_L (\mathbf{L}_L - \sigma^2 \mathbf{I}) \mathbf{\Lambda}_L^{-1} \mathbf{U}_L^\top] \quad (20.50)$$

$$\log |\mathbf{C}| = (D-L) \log \sigma^2 + \sum_{j=1}^L \log \lambda_j \quad (20.51)$$

Thus we can avoid all matrix inversions (since  $\mathbf{\Lambda}_L^{-1} = \text{diag}(1/\lambda_j)$ ).

To use PPCA as an alternative to PCA, we need to compute the posterior mean  $\mathbb{E}[\mathbf{z}|\mathbf{x}]$ , which is the equivalent of the encoder model. Using Bayes rule for Gaussians we have

$$p(\mathbf{z}|\mathbf{x}) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{z}|\mathbf{M}^{-1}\mathbf{W}^\top(\mathbf{x} - \boldsymbol{\mu}), \sigma^2 \mathbf{M}^{-1}) \quad (20.52)$$

where  $\mathbf{M}$  is defined in Eq. (20.48). In the  $\sigma^2 = 0$  limit, the posterior mean using the MLE parameters becomes

$$\mathbb{E}[\mathbf{z}|\mathbf{x}] = (\mathbf{W}^\top \mathbf{W})^{-1} \mathbf{W}^\top (\mathbf{x} - \bar{\mathbf{x}}) \quad (20.53)$$

which is the orthogonal projection of the data into the latent space, as in standard PCA.

### 20.2.3 EM algorithm for FA/PPCA

In this section, we describe one method for computing the MLE for the FA model using the EM algorithm, based on [RT82; GH96].

In the E step, we compute the posterior embeddings

$$p(\mathbf{z}_i | \mathbf{x}_i, \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{z}_i | \mathbf{m}_i, \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_i) \quad (20.54)$$

$$\boldsymbol{\Sigma}_i \triangleq (\mathbf{I}_L + \mathbf{W}^\top \boldsymbol{\Psi}^{-1} \mathbf{W})^{-1} \quad (20.55)$$

$$\mathbf{m}_i \triangleq \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_i (\mathbf{W}^\top \boldsymbol{\Psi}^{-1} (\mathbf{x}_i - \boldsymbol{\mu})) \quad (20.56)$$

In the M step, it is easiest to estimate  $\boldsymbol{\mu}$  and  $\mathbf{W}$  at the same time, by defining  $\tilde{\mathbf{W}} = (\mathbf{W}, \boldsymbol{\mu})$ ,  $\tilde{\mathbf{z}} = (\mathbf{z}, 1)$ . Also, define

$$\mathbf{b}_i \triangleq \mathbb{E}[\tilde{\mathbf{z}} | \mathbf{x}_i] = [\mathbf{m}_i; 1] \quad (20.57)$$

$$\mathbf{C}_i \triangleq \mathbb{E}\left[\tilde{\mathbf{z}}\tilde{\mathbf{z}}^T | \mathbf{x}_i\right] = \begin{pmatrix} \mathbb{E}[\mathbf{z}\mathbf{z}^T | \mathbf{x}_i] & \mathbb{E}[\mathbf{z} | \mathbf{x}_i] \\ \mathbb{E}[\mathbf{z} | \mathbf{x}_i]^T & 1 \end{pmatrix} \quad (20.58)$$

Then the M step is as follows:

$$\hat{\tilde{\mathbf{W}}} = \left[ \sum_i \mathbf{x}_i \mathbf{b}_i^\top \right] \left[ \sum_i \mathbf{C}_i \right]^{-1} \quad (20.59)$$

$$\hat{\boldsymbol{\Psi}} = \frac{1}{N} \text{diag} \left\{ \sum_i (\mathbf{x}_i - \hat{\tilde{\mathbf{W}}}\mathbf{b}_i) \mathbf{x}_i^T \right\} \quad (20.60)$$

Note that these updates are for “vanilla” EM. A much faster version of this algorithm, based on ECM, is described in [ZY08].

We can also use EM to fit the PPCA model, which provides a useful alternative to eigenvector methods. This relies on the probabilistic formulation of PCA. However the algorithm continues to work in the zero noise limit,  $\sigma^2 = 0$ , as shown by [Row97].

In particular, let  $\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}$  be a  $L \times N$  matrix storing the posterior means (low-dimensional representations) along its columns. Similarly, let  $\tilde{\mathbf{X}} = \mathbf{X}^T$  store the original data along its columns. From Equation 20.52, when  $\sigma^2 = 0$ , we have

$$\tilde{\mathbf{Z}} = (\mathbf{W}^T \mathbf{W})^{-1} \mathbf{W}^T \tilde{\mathbf{X}} \quad (20.61)$$

This constitutes the E step. Notice that this is just an orthogonal projection of the data.

From Equation 20.59, the M step is given by

$$\hat{\mathbf{W}} = \left[ \sum_i \mathbf{x}_i \mathbb{E}[\mathbf{z}_i]^T \right] \left[ \sum_i \mathbb{E}[\mathbf{z}_i] \mathbb{E}[\mathbf{z}_i]^T \right]^{-1} \quad (20.62)$$

where we exploited the fact that  $\boldsymbol{\Sigma} = \text{Cov}[\mathbf{z}_i | \mathbf{x}_i, \boldsymbol{\theta}] = 0\mathbf{I}$  when  $\sigma^2 = 0$ . It is worth comparing this expression to the MLE for multi-output linear regression (Equation 11.2), which has the form  $\mathbf{W} = (\sum_i \mathbf{y}_i \mathbf{x}_i^T)(\sum_i \mathbf{x}_i \mathbf{x}_i^T)^{-1}$ . Thus we see that the M step is like linear regression where we replace the observed inputs by the expected values of the latent variables.

In summary, here is the entire algorithm:

$$\mathbf{E} \text{ step : } \tilde{\mathbf{Z}} = (\mathbf{W}^T \mathbf{W})^{-1} \mathbf{W}^T \tilde{\mathbf{X}}$$

$$\text{M step : } \mathbf{W} = \tilde{\mathbf{X}}\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}^T(\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}^T)^{-1}$$

[TB99] showed that the only stable fixed point of the EM algorithm is the globally optimal solution. That is, the EM algorithm converges to a solution where  $\mathbf{W}$  spans the same linear subspace as that defined by the first  $L$  eigenvectors. However, if we want  $\mathbf{W}$  to be orthogonal, and to contain the eigenvectors in descending order of eigenvalue, we have to orthogonalize the resulting matrix (which can be done quite cheaply). Alternatively, we can modify EM to give the principal basis directly [AO03].

This algorithm has a simple physical analogy in the case  $D = 2$  and  $L = 1$  [Row97]. Consider some points in  $\mathbb{R}^2$  attached by springs to a rigid rod, whose orientation is defined by a vector  $\mathbf{w}$ . Let  $z_i$  be the location where the  $i$ 'th spring attaches to the rod. In the E step, we hold the rod fixed, and let the attachment points slide around so as to minimize the spring energy (which is proportional to the sum of squared residuals). In the M step, we hold the attachment points fixed and let the rod rotate so as to minimize the spring energy. See Figure 20.10 for an illustration.

Apart from this pleasing intuitive interpretation, EM for PCA has the following advantages over eigenvector methods:

- EM can be faster. In particular, assuming  $N, D \gg L$ , the dominant cost of EM is the projection operation in the E step, so the overall time is  $O(TLND)$ , where  $T$  is the number of iterations. [Row97] showed experimentally that the number of iterations is usually very small (the mean was 3.6), regardless of  $N$  or  $D$ . (This results depends on the ratio of eigenvalues of the empirical covariance matrix.) This is much faster than the  $O(\min(ND^2, DN^2))$  time required by straightforward eigenvector methods, although more sophisticated eigenvector methods, such as the Lanczos algorithm, have running times comparable to EM.
- EM can be implemented in an online fashion, i.e., we can update our estimate of  $\mathbf{W}$  as the data streams in.
- EM can handle missing data in a simple way.
- EM can be extended to handle mixtures of PPCA / FA models (see Sec. 20.2.6).
- EM can be modified to variational EM or to variational Bayes EM to fit more complex models (see e.g., Sec. 20.2.7).

#### 20.2.4 Unidentifiability of the parameters

The parameters of a FA model are unidentifiable. To see this, consider a model with weights  $\mathbf{W}$  and observation covariance  $\Psi$ . We have

$$\text{Cov}[\mathbf{x}] = \mathbf{W}\mathbb{E}[\mathbf{z}\mathbf{z}^\top]\mathbf{W}^\top + \mathbb{E}[\boldsymbol{\epsilon}\boldsymbol{\epsilon}^\top] = \mathbf{W}\mathbf{W}^\top + \Psi \quad (20.63)$$

Now consider a different model with weights  $\tilde{\mathbf{W}} = \mathbf{W}\mathbf{R}$ , where  $\mathbf{R}$  is an arbitrary orthogonal rotation matrix, satisfying  $\mathbf{R}\mathbf{R}^\top = \mathbf{I}$ . This has the same likelihood, since

$$\text{Cov}[\mathbf{x}] = \tilde{\mathbf{W}}\mathbb{E}[\mathbf{z}\mathbf{z}^\top]\tilde{\mathbf{W}}^\top + \mathbb{E}[\boldsymbol{\epsilon}\boldsymbol{\epsilon}^\top] = \mathbf{W}\mathbf{R}\mathbf{R}^\top\mathbf{W}^\top + \Psi = \mathbf{W}\mathbf{W}^\top + \Psi \quad (20.64)$$

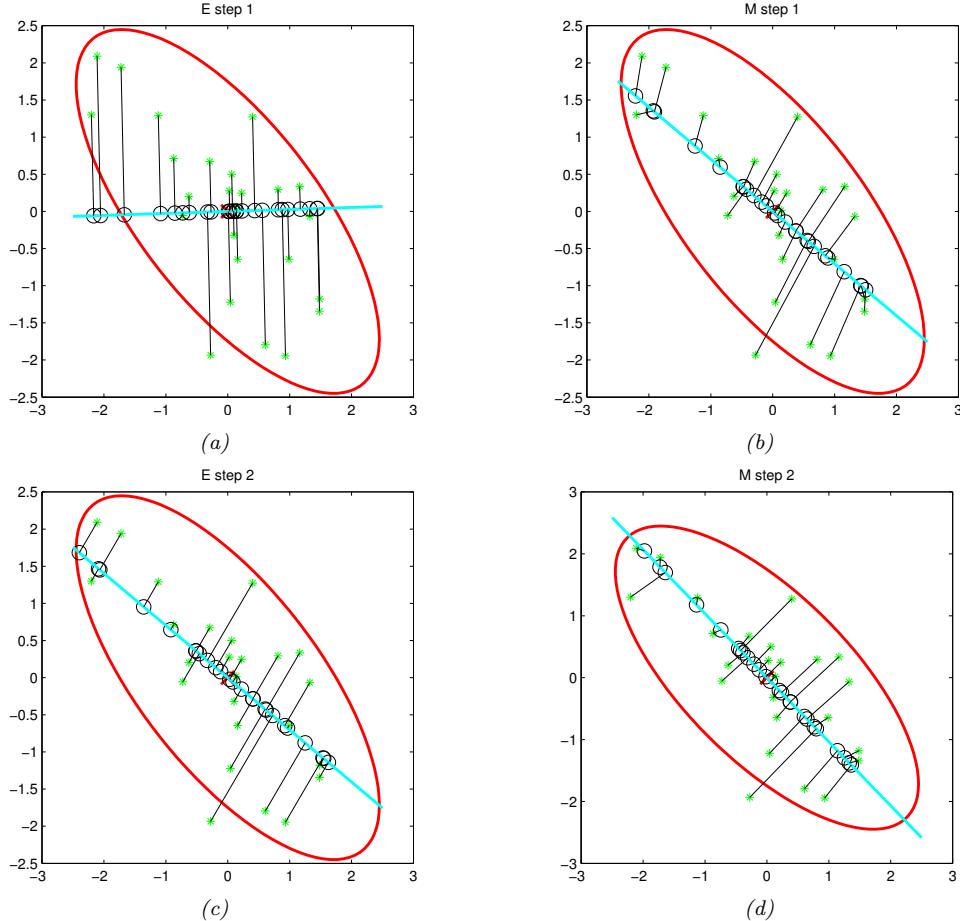


Figure 20.10: Illustration of EM for PCA when  $D = 2$  and  $L = 1$ . Green stars are the original data points, black circles are their reconstructions. The weight vector  $\mathbf{w}$  is represented by blue line. (a) We start with a random initial guess of  $\mathbf{w}$ . The E step is represented by the orthogonal projections. (b) We update the rod  $\mathbf{w}$  in the M step, keeping the projections onto the rod (black circles) fixed. (c) Another E step. The black circles can ‘slide’ along the rod, but the rod stays fixed. (d) Another M step. Adapted from Figure 12.12 of [Bis06]. Generated by [pcaEmStepByStep.m](#).

Geometrically, multiplying  $\mathbf{W}$  by an orthogonal matrix is like rotating  $\mathbf{z}$  before generating  $\mathbf{x}$ ; but since  $\mathbf{z}$  is drawn from an isotropic Gaussian, this makes no difference to the likelihood. Consequently, we cannot uniquely identify  $\mathbf{W}$ , and therefore cannot uniquely identify the latent factors, either.

To break this symmetry, several solutions can be used, as we discuss below.

- **Forcing  $\mathbf{W}$  to have orthonormal columns..** Perhaps the simplest solution to the identifiability problem is to force  $\mathbf{W}$  to have orthonormal columns. This is the approach adopted by PCA. The resulting posterior estimate will then be unique, up to permutation of the latent dimensions.

(In PCA, this ordering ambiguity is resolved by sorting the dimensions in order of decreasing eigenvalues of  $\mathbf{W}$ .)

- **Forcing  $\mathbf{W}$  to be lower triangular.** One way to resolve permutation unidentifiability, which is popular in the Bayesian community (e.g., [LW04c]), is to ensure that the first visible feature is only generated by the first latent factor, the second visible feature is only generated by the first two latent factors, and so on. For example, if  $L = 3$  and  $D = 4$ , the correspond factor loading matrix is given by

$$\mathbf{W} = \begin{pmatrix} w_{11} & 0 & 0 \\ w_{21} & w_{22} & 0 \\ w_{31} & w_{32} & w_{33} \\ w_{41} & w_{42} & w_{43} \end{pmatrix} \quad (20.65)$$

We also require that  $w_{kk} > 0$  for  $k = 1 : L$ . The total number of parameters in this constrained matrix is  $D + DL - L(L-1)/2$ , which is equal to the number of uniquely identifiable parameters in FA.<sup>3</sup> The disadvantage of this method is that the first  $L$  visible variables, known as the **founder variables**, affect the interpretation of the latent factors, and so must be chosen carefully.

- **Sparsity promoting priors on the weights.** Instead of pre-specifying which entries in  $\mathbf{W}$  are zero, we can encourage the entries to be zero, using  $\ell_1$  regularization [ZHT06], ARD [Bis99; AB08], or spike-and-slab priors [Rat+09]. This is called sparse factor analysis. This does not necessarily ensure a unique MAP estimate, but it does encourage interpretable solutions.
- **Choosing an informative rotation matrix.** There are a variety of heuristic methods that try to find rotation matrices  $\mathbf{R}$  which can be used to modify  $\mathbf{W}$  (and hence the latent factors) so as to try to increase the interpretability, typically by encouraging them to be (approximately) sparse. One popular method is known as **varimax** [Kai58].
- **Use of non-Gaussian priors for the latent factors.** If we replace the prior on the latent variables,  $p(\mathbf{z})$ , with a non-Gaussian distribution, we can sometimes uniquely identify  $\mathbf{W}$ , as well as the latent factors. See e.g., [KKH19] for details.

### 20.2.5 Nonlinear factor analysis

The FA model assumes the observed data can be modeled as arising from a linear mapping from a low-dimensional set of Gaussian factors. One way to relax this assumption is to let the mapping from  $\mathbf{z}$  to  $\mathbf{x}$  be a nonlinear model, such as a neural network. That is, the model becomes

$$p(\mathbf{x}) = \int d\mathbf{z} \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{x}|f(\mathbf{w}; \boldsymbol{\theta}), \Psi) \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{z}|\mathbf{0}, \mathbf{I}) \quad (20.66)$$

This is called **nonlinear factor analysis**. Unfortunately we can no longer compute the posterior or the MLE exactly, so we need to use approximate methods. In Sec. 20.3.5, we discuss variational autoencoders, which is the most common way to approximate a nonlinear FA model.

3. We get  $D$  parameters for  $\Psi$  and  $DL$  for  $\mathbf{W}$ , but we need to remove  $L(L-1)/2$  degrees of freedom coming from  $\mathbf{R}$ , since that is the dimensionality of the space of orthogonal matrices of size  $L \times L$ . To see this, note that there are  $L-1$  free parameters in  $\mathbf{R}$  in the first column (since the column vector must be normalized to unit length), there are  $L-2$  free parameters in the second column (which must be orthogonal to the first), and so on.

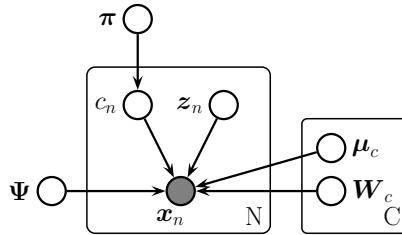


Figure 20.11: Mixture of factor analyzers as a PGM.

### 20.2.6 Mixtures of factor analysers

The factor analysis model (Sec. 20.2) assumes the observed data can be modeled as arising from a linear mapping from a low-dimensional set of Gaussian factors. One way to relax this assumption is to assume the model is only locally linear, so the overall model becomes a (weighted) combination of FA models; this is called a **mixture of factor analysers**. The overall model for the data is a mixture of linear manifolds, which can be used to approximate an overall curved manifold.

More precisely, let latent indicator  $c_n \in \{1, \dots, K\}$ , specifying which subspace (cluster) we should use to generate the data. If  $c_n = k$ , we sample  $\mathbf{z}_n$  from a Gaussian prior and pass it through the  $\mathbf{W}_k$  matrix and add noise, where  $\mathbf{W}_k$  maps from the  $L$ -dimensional subspace to the  $D$ -dimensional visible space.<sup>4</sup> More precisely, the model is as follows:

$$p(\mathbf{x}_n | \mathbf{z}_n, c_n = k, \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{x}_n | \boldsymbol{\mu}_k + \mathbf{W}_k \mathbf{z}_n, \boldsymbol{\Psi}_k) \quad (20.67)$$

$$p(\mathbf{z}_n | \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{z}_n | \mathbf{0}, \mathbf{I}) \quad (20.68)$$

$$p(c_n | \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \text{Cat}(c_n | \boldsymbol{\pi}) \quad (20.69)$$

This is called a **mixture of factor analysers** (MFA) [GH96]. The corresponding distribution in the visible space is given by

$$p(\mathbf{x} | \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \sum_k p(c = k) \int d\mathbf{z} p(\mathbf{z} | c) p(\mathbf{x} | \mathbf{z}, c) = \sum_k \pi_k \int d\mathbf{z} \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{z} | \boldsymbol{\mu}_k, \mathbf{I}) \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{x} | \mathbf{W}_k \mathbf{z}, \sigma^2 \mathbf{I}) \quad (20.70)$$

In the special case that  $\boldsymbol{\Psi}_k = \sigma^2 \mathbf{I}$ , we get a mixture of PPCA models (although it is difficult to ensure orthogonality of the  $\mathbf{W}_k$  in this case). See Fig. 20.12 for an example of the method applied to some 2d data.

We can think of this as a low-rank version of a mixture of Gaussians. In particular, this model needs  $O(KLD)$  parameters instead of the  $O(KD^2)$  parameters needed for a mixture of full covariance Gaussians. This can reduce overfitting.

#### 20.2.6.1 Application: image generation

In this section, we show how to use the mixture of factor analysers model to generate images of faces by fitting to the CelebA dataset (Sec. 14.3.1.3). We use  $K = 1000$  components, each of latent

4. If we allow  $\mathbf{z}_n$  to depend on  $c_n$ , we can let each subspace have a different dimensionality, as suggested in [KS15].

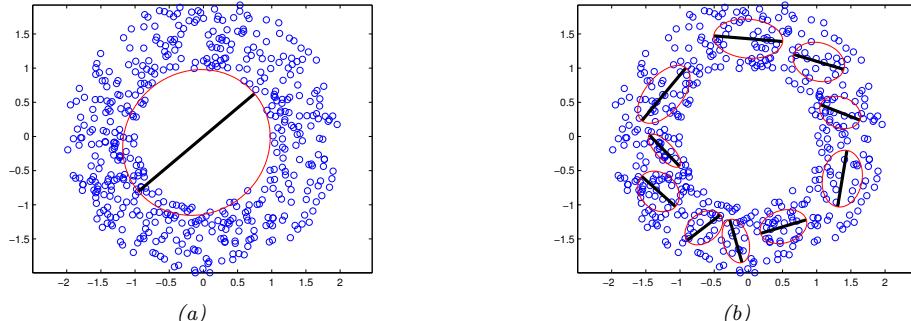


Figure 20.12: Mixture of PPCA models fit to a 2d dataset, using  $L = 1$  latent dimensions and  $K = 1$  and  $K = 10$  mixture components. Generated by `mixPpcaDemoNetlab.m`.



*Figure 20.13: Random samples from the MixFA model fit to CelebA. From Figure 4 of [RW18]. Used with kind permission of Yair Weiss*

dimension  $L = 10$ ; the observed data has dimension  $D = 64 \times 64 \times 3 = 12,288$ .

Fig. 20.13 shows some images generated from the fitted model. The results are surprisingly good for such a simple locally linear model. In fact, in [RW18], they showed that this MixFA model captures more of the modes of the data distribution than more sophisticated generative models, such as VAEs (Sec. 20.3.5) and GANs. Furthermore, the MixFA model has the advantage that we can compute the exact likelihood  $p(\mathbf{x})$ .

### 20.2.7 Exponential family factor analysis

So far we have assumed the observed data is real-valued, so  $\mathbf{x}_n \in \mathbb{R}^D$ . If we want to model other kinds of data (e.g., binary or categorical), we can simply replace the Gaussian output distribution with a suitable member of the exponential family, where the natural parameters are given by a linear function of  $\mathbf{z}_n$ . That is, we use

$$p(\mathbf{x}_n | \mathbf{z}_n) = \exp(\mathbf{t}(\mathbf{x})^\top \boldsymbol{\theta} + h(\mathbf{x}) - q(\boldsymbol{\theta})) \quad (20.71)$$

where the  $N \times D$  matrix of natural parameters is assumed to be given by the low rank decomposition  $\Theta = \mathbf{Z}\mathbf{W}$ , where  $\mathbf{Z}$  is  $N \times L$  and  $\mathbf{W}$  is  $L \times D$ . The resulting model is called **exponential family factor analysis**.

Unlike the linear-Gaussian FA, we cannot compute the exact posterior  $p(\mathbf{z}_n|\mathbf{x}_n, \mathbf{W})$  due to the lack of conjugacy between the expfam likelihood and the Gaussian prior. Furthermore, we cannot compute the exact marginal likelihood either, which prevents us from finding the optimal MLE.

[CDS02] proposed a coordinate ascent method for a deterministic variant of this model, known as **exponential family PCA**. This alternates between computing a point estimate of  $\mathbf{z}_n$  and  $\mathbf{W}$ . This can be regarded as a degenerate version of variational EM, where the E step uses a delta function posterior for  $\mathbf{z}_n$ . [GS08] present an improved algorithm that finds the global optimum.

However, it is preferable to use a probabilistic version of the model. In this case, we must represent the posterior use a non-degenerate distribution to avoid overfitting, since the number of latent variables is proportional to the number of datacases [WCS08]. Fortunately, we can use a non-degenerate posterior, such as a Gaussian, by optimizing the variational lower bound. We give some examples of this below.

#### 20.2.7.1 Example: binary PCA

Consider a factored Bernoulli likelihood:

$$p(\mathbf{x}|\mathbf{z}) = \prod_d \text{Ber}(x_d|\sigma(\mathbf{w}_d^\top \mathbf{z})) \quad (20.72)$$

Suppose we observe  $N = 150$  bit vectors of length  $D = 6$ . Each example is generated by choosing one of three binary prototype vectors, and then by flipping bits at random. See Fig. 20.14(a) for the data. We fit this data using an eFA model using the variational EM algorithm, where we use the JJ lower bound from Sec. 10.6.4.1 to perform approximate inference in the E step. We use  $L = 2$  latent dimensions to allow us to visualize the latent space. In Fig. 20.14(b), we plot  $\mathbb{E}[\mathbf{z}_n|\mathbf{x}_n, \hat{\mathbf{W}}]$ . We see that the projected points group into three distinct clusters, as is to be expected. In Fig. 20.14(c), we plot the reconstructed version of the data, which is computed as follows:

$$p(\hat{x}_{nd} = 1|\mathbf{x}_n) = \int d\mathbf{z}_n p(\mathbf{z}_n|\mathbf{x}_n)p(\hat{x}_{nd}|\mathbf{z}_n) \quad (20.73)$$

If we threshold these probabilities at 0.5 (corresponding to a MAP estimate), we get the “denoised” version of the data in Fig. 20.14(d).

#### 20.2.7.2 Example: categorical PCA

We can generalize the model in Sec. 20.2.7.1 to handle categorical data by using the following likelihood:

$$p(\mathbf{x}|\mathbf{z}) = \prod_d \text{Cat}(x_d|\mathcal{S}(\mathbf{W}_d \mathbf{z})) \quad (20.74)$$

We call this **categorical PCA (CatPCA)**. A variational EM algorithm for fitting this is described in [Kha+10]. It uses the Bohning lower bound from Sec. 10.6.4.2.

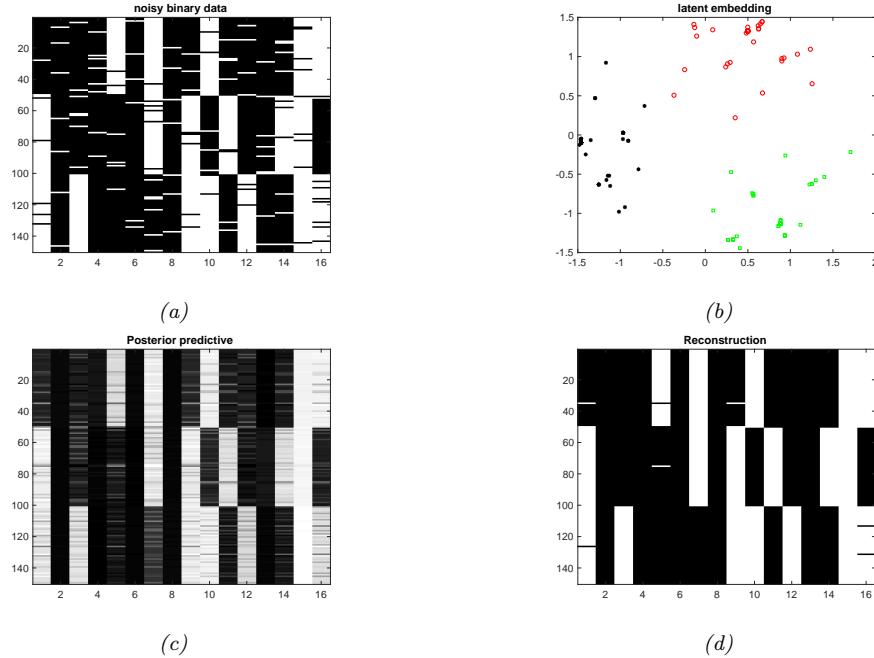


Figure 20.14: (a) 150 synthetic 16 dimensional bit vectors. (b) The 2d embedding learned by binary PCA, fit using variational EM. We have color coded points by the identity of the true “prototype” that generated them. (c) Predicted probability of being on. (d) Thresholded predictions. Generated by `binaryFaDemoTipping.m`.

### 20.2.8 Factor analysis models for paired data

In this section, we discuss linear-Gaussian factor analysis models when we have two kinds of observed variables,  $\mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^{D_x}$  and  $\mathbf{y} \in \mathbb{R}^{D_y}$ , which are paired. These often correspond to different sensors or modalities (e.g., images and sound). We follow the presentation of [Vir10].

#### 20.2.8.1 Supervised PCA

In **supervised PCA** [Yu+06], we model the joint  $p(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y})$  using a shared low-dimensional representation using the following linear Gaussian model:

$$p(\mathbf{z}_n) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{z}_n | \mathbf{0}, \mathbf{I}_L) \quad (20.75)$$

$$p(\mathbf{x}_n | \mathbf{z}_n, \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{x}_n | \mathbf{W}_x \mathbf{z}_n, \sigma_x^2 \mathbf{I}_{D_x}) \quad (20.76)$$

$$p(\mathbf{y}_n | \mathbf{z}_n, \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{y}_n | \mathbf{W}_y \mathbf{z}_n, \sigma_y^2 \mathbf{I}_{D_y}) \quad (20.77)$$

This is illustrated as a graphical model in Fig. 20.15a. The intuition is that  $\mathbf{z}_n$  is a shared latent subspace, that captures features that  $\mathbf{x}_n$  and  $\mathbf{y}_n$  have in common. The variance terms  $\sigma_x$  and  $\sigma_y$  control how much emphasis the model puts on the two different signals. If we put a prior on the parameters  $\boldsymbol{\theta} = (\mathbf{W}_x, \mathbf{W}_y, \sigma_x, \sigma_y)$ , we recover the **Bayesian factor regression** model of [Wes03].

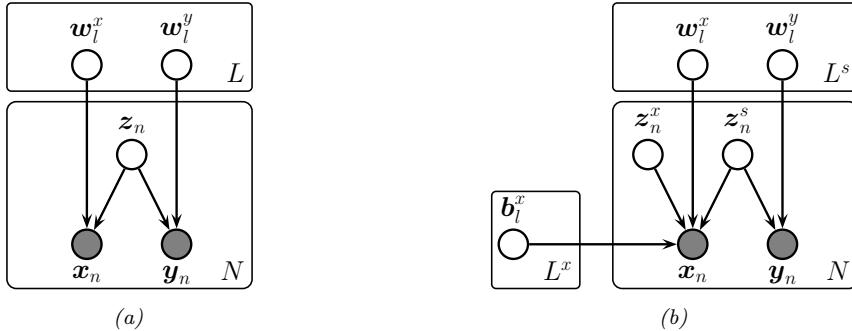


Figure 20.15: Gaussian latent factor models for paired data. (a) Supervised PCA. (b) Partial least squares.

We can marginalize out  $\mathbf{z}_n$  to get  $p(\mathbf{y}_n|\mathbf{x}_n)$ . If  $\mathbf{y}_n$  is a scalar, this becomes

$$p(y_n|\mathbf{x}_n, \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \mathcal{N}(y_n|\mathbf{x}_n^\top \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w}_y^\top \mathbf{C} \mathbf{w}_y + \sigma_y^2) \quad (20.78)$$

$$\mathbf{C} = (\mathbf{I} + \sigma_x^{-2} \mathbf{W}_x^\top \mathbf{W}_x)^{-1} \quad (20.79)$$

$$\mathbf{v} = \sigma_x^{-2} \mathbf{W}_x \mathbf{C} \mathbf{w}_y \quad (20.80)$$

To apply this to the classification setting, we can use supervised ePCA [Guo09], in which we replace the Gaussian  $p(\mathbf{y}|\mathbf{z})$  with a logistic regression model.

This model is completely symmetric in  $\mathbf{x}$  and  $\mathbf{y}$ . If our goal is to predict  $\mathbf{y}$  from  $\mathbf{x}$  via the latent bottleneck  $\mathbf{z}$ , then we might want to upweight the likelihood term for  $\mathbf{y}$ , as proposed in [Ris+08]. This gives

$$p(\mathbf{X}, \mathbf{Y}, \mathbf{Z}|\boldsymbol{\theta}) = p(\mathbf{Y}|\mathbf{Z}, \mathbf{W}_y)p(\mathbf{X}|\mathbf{Z}, \mathbf{W}_x)^\alpha p(\mathbf{Z}) \quad (20.81)$$

where  $\alpha \leq 1$  controls the relative importance of modeling the two sources. The value of  $\alpha$  can be chosen by cross-validation.

### 20.2.8.2 Partial least squares

Another way to improve the predictive performance in supervised tasks is to allow the inputs  $\mathbf{x}$  to have their own ‘‘private’’ noise source that is independent on the target variable, since not all variation in  $\mathbf{x}$  is relevant for predictive purposes. We can do thus by introducing an extra latent variable  $\mathbf{z}_n^x$  just for the inputs, that is different from  $\mathbf{z}_n^s$  that is the shared bottleneck between  $\mathbf{x}_n$  and  $\mathbf{y}_n$ . In the Gaussian case, the overall model has the form

$$p(\mathbf{z}_n) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{z}_n^s | \mathbf{0}, \mathbf{I}) \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{z}_n^x | \mathbf{0}, \mathbf{I}) \quad (20.82)$$

$$p(\mathbf{x}_n|\mathbf{z}_n, \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{x}_n|\mathbf{W}_x \mathbf{z}_n^s + \mathbf{B}_x \mathbf{z}_n^x, \sigma_x^2 \mathbf{I}) \quad (20.83)$$

$$p(\mathbf{y}_n|\mathbf{z}_n, \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{y}_n|\mathbf{W}_y \mathbf{z}_n^s, \sigma_y^2 \mathbf{I}) \quad (20.84)$$

See Fig. 20.15b. MLE for  $\boldsymbol{\theta}$  in this model is equivalent to the technique of **partial least squares (PLS)** [Gus01; Nou+02; Sun+09].

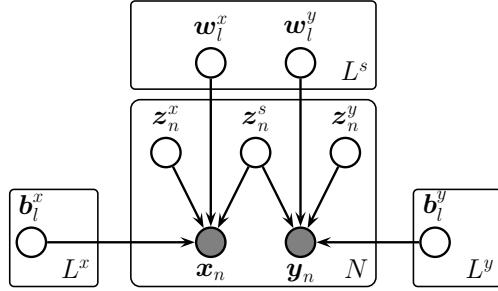


Figure 20.16: Canonical correlation analysis as a PGM.

### 20.2.8.3 Canonical correlation analysis

In some cases, we want to use a fully symmetric model, so we can capture the dependence between  $\mathbf{x}$  and  $\mathbf{y}$ , while allowing for domain-specific or “private” noise sources. We can do thus by introducing a latent variable  $\mathbf{z}_n^x$  just for  $\mathbf{x}_n$ , a latent variable  $\mathbf{z}_n^y$  just for  $\mathbf{y}_n$ , and a shared latent variable  $\mathbf{z}_n^s$ . In the Gaussian case, the overall model has the form

$$p(\mathbf{z}_n) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{z}_n^s | \mathbf{0}, \mathbf{I}) \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{z}_n^x | \mathbf{0}, \mathbf{I}) \quad (20.85)$$

$$p(\mathbf{x}_n | \mathbf{z}_n, \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{x}_n | \mathbf{W}_x \mathbf{z}_n^s + \mathbf{B}_x \mathbf{z}_n^x, \sigma_x^2 \mathbf{I}) \quad (20.86)$$

$$p(\mathbf{y}_n | \mathbf{z}_n, \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{y}_n | \mathbf{W}_y \mathbf{z}_n^s + \mathbf{B}_y \mathbf{z}_n^y, \sigma_y^2 \mathbf{I}) \quad (20.87)$$

where  $\mathbf{W}_x$  and  $\mathbf{W}_y$  are  $L^s \times D$  dimensional,  $\mathbf{V}_x$  is  $L^x \times D$  dimensional, and  $\mathbf{V}_y$  is  $L^y \times D$  dimensional. See Fig. 20.16 for the PGM.

If we marginalize out all the latent variables, we get the following distribution on the visibles (where we assume  $\sigma_x = \sigma_y = \sigma$ ):

$$p(\mathbf{x}_n, \mathbf{y}_n) = \int d\mathbf{z}_n p(\mathbf{z}_n) p(\mathbf{x}_n, \mathbf{y}_n | \mathbf{z}_n) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{x}_n, \mathbf{y}_n | \boldsymbol{\mu}, \mathbf{WW}^\top + \sigma^2 \mathbf{I}) \quad (20.88)$$

where  $\boldsymbol{\mu} = (\boldsymbol{\mu}_x; \boldsymbol{\mu}_y)$ , and  $\mathbf{W} = [\mathbf{W}_x; \mathbf{W}_y]$ . Thus the induced covariance is the following low rank matrix:

$$\mathbf{WW}^\top = \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{W}_x \mathbf{W}_x^\top & \mathbf{W}_x \mathbf{W}_y^\top \\ \mathbf{W}_y \mathbf{W}_x^\top & \mathbf{W}_y \mathbf{W}_y^\top \end{pmatrix} \quad (20.89)$$

[BJ05] showed that MLE for this model is equivalent to a classical statistical method known as **canonical correlation analysis** or **CCA** [Hot36]. However, the PGM perspective allows us to easily generalize to multiple kinds of observations (this is known as **generalized CCA** [Hor61]) or to nonlinear models (this is known as **deep CCA** [WLL16; SNM16]), or exponential family CCA [KVK10]. See [Uur+17] for further discussion of CCA and its extensions.

## 20.3 Autoencoders

We can think of PCA (Sec. 20.1) and factor analysis (Sec. 20.2) as learning a (linear) mapping from  $\mathbf{x} \rightarrow \mathbf{z}$ , called the **encoder**,  $f_e$ , and learning another (linear) mapping  $\mathbf{z} \rightarrow \mathbf{x}$ , called the **decoder**,

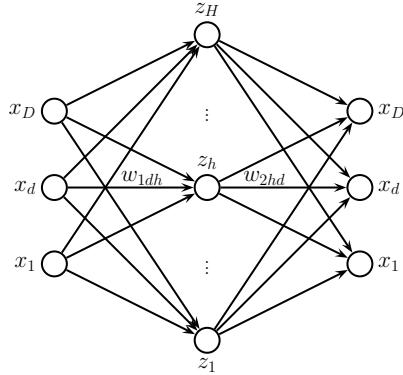


Figure 20.17: An autoencoder with one hidden layer.

$f_d$ . The overall reconstruction function has the form  $r(\mathbf{x}) = f_d(f_e(\mathbf{x}))$ . The model is trained to minimize  $\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta}) = \|\mathbf{r}(\mathbf{x}) - \mathbf{x}\|_2^2$ . More generally, we can use  $\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta}) = -\log p(\mathbf{x}|r(\mathbf{x}))$ .

In this section, we consider the case where the encoder and encoder are nonlinear mappings implemented by neural networks. This is called an **autoencoder**. If we use an MLP with one hidden layer, we get the model shown Fig. 20.17. We can think of the hidden units in the middle as a low-dimensional **bottleneck** between the input and its reconstruction.

Of course, if the hidden layer is wide enough, there is nothing to stop this model from learning the identity function. To prevent this degenerate solution, we have to restrict the model in some way. The simplest approach is to use a narrow bottleneck layer, with  $L \ll D$ ; this is called an **undercomplete representation**. The other approach is to use  $L \gg D$ , known as an **overcomplete representation**, but to impose some other kind of regularization, such as adding noise to the inputs, forcing the activations of the hidden units to be sparse, or imposing a penalty on the derivatives of the hidden units. We discuss these options in more detail below.

### 20.3.1 Bottleneck autoencoders

We start by considering the special case of a **linear autoencoder**, in which there is one hidden layer, the hidden units are computed using  $\mathbf{z} = \mathbf{W}_1 \mathbf{x}$ , and the output is reconstructed using  $\hat{\mathbf{x}} = \mathbf{W}_2 \mathbf{z}$ , where  $\mathbf{W}_1$  is a  $L \times D$  matrix,  $\mathbf{W}_2$  is a  $D \times L$  matrix, and  $L < D$ . Hence  $\hat{\mathbf{x}} = \mathbf{W}_2 \mathbf{W}_1 \mathbf{x} = \mathbf{W} \mathbf{x}$  is the output of the model. If we train this model to minimize the squared reconstruction error,  $\mathcal{L}(\mathbf{W}) = \sum_{n=1}^N \|\mathbf{x}_n - \mathbf{W} \mathbf{x}_n\|_2^2$ , one can show [BH89; KJ95] that  $\hat{\mathbf{W}}$  is an orthogonal projection onto the first  $L$  eigenvectors of the empirical covariance matrix of the data. This is therefore equivalent to PCA.

If we introduce nonlinearities into the autoencoder, we get a model that is strictly more powerful than PCA, as proved in [JHG00]. Such methods can learn very useful low dimensional representations of data.

Consider fitting an autoencoder to the Fashion MNIST dataset. We consider both an MLP architecture (with 2 layers and a bottleneck of size 30), and a CNN based architecture (with 3 layers and a 3d bottleneck with 64 channels). We use a bernoulli likelihood model and binary cross entropy



*Figure 20.18: Results of applying an autoencoder to the Fashion MNIST data. Top row are first 5 images from validation set. Bottom row are reconstructions. (a) MLP model (trained for 20 epochs). The encoder is an MLP with architecture 784-100-30. The decoder is the mirror image of this. (b) CNN model (trained for 5 epochs). The encoder is a CNN model with architecture Conv2D(16, 3x3, same, selu), MaxPool2D(2x2), Conv2D(32, 3x3, same, selu), MaxPool2D(2x2), Conv2D(64, 3x3, same, selu), MaxPool2D(2x2). The decoder is the mirror image of this, using transposed convolution and without the max pooling layers. Adapted from Figure 17.4 of [Gér19]. Generated by [dimred/ae\\_mnist\\_tf.ipynb](#).*

as the loss. Fig. 20.18 shows some test images and their reconstructions.

Fig. 20.19 visualizes the first 2 (of 30) latent dimensions produced by the MLP-AE. More precisely, we plot the tSNE embeddings (see Sec. 20.4.10), color coded by class label. We also show some sample images. We see that the method has done a good job of separating the classes in a fully unsupervised way.

### 20.3.2 Denoising autoencoders

One useful way to control the capacity of an (overcomplete) autoencoder is to add noise to its input, and then train the model to reconstruct a clean (uncorrupted) version of the original input. This is called a **denoising autoencoder** [Vin+10a].

We can implement this by adding Gaussian noise, or using Bernoulli dropout. Fig. 20.20 shows some reconstructions of corrupted images computed using a DAE. We see that the model is able to “hallucinate” details that are missing in the input, since it has seen similar images before, and can store this information in the parameters of the model.

Suppose we train a DAE using Gaussian corruption and squared error reconstruction, i.e., we use  $p_c(\tilde{\mathbf{x}}|\mathbf{x}) = \mathcal{N}(\tilde{\mathbf{x}}|\mathbf{x}, \sigma^2 \mathbf{I})$  and  $\ell(\mathbf{x}, r(\tilde{\mathbf{x}})) = \|\mathbf{e}(\mathbf{x})\|_2^2$ , where  $\mathbf{e}(\mathbf{x}) = r(\tilde{\mathbf{x}}) - \mathbf{x}$  is the residual error for example  $\mathbf{x}$ . Then one can show [AB14] the remarkable result that, as  $\sigma \rightarrow 0$  (and with a sufficiently powerful model and enough data), the residuals approximate the **score function**, which is the log probability of the data, i.e.,  $\mathbf{e}(\mathbf{x}) \approx \nabla_{\mathbf{x}} \log p(\mathbf{x})$ . That is, the DAE learns a **vector field**, corresponding to the gradient of the log data density. Thus points that are close to the data manifold will be projected onto it via the sampling process. See Fig. 20.21 for an illustration.

### 20.3.3 Contractive autoencoders

A different way to regularize autoencoders is by adding the penalty term

$$\Omega(\mathbf{z}, \mathbf{x}) = \lambda \left\| \frac{\partial f_e(\mathbf{x})}{\partial \mathbf{x}} \right\|_F^2 = \lambda \sum_k \|\nabla_{\mathbf{x}} h_k(\mathbf{x})\|_2^2 \quad (20.90)$$

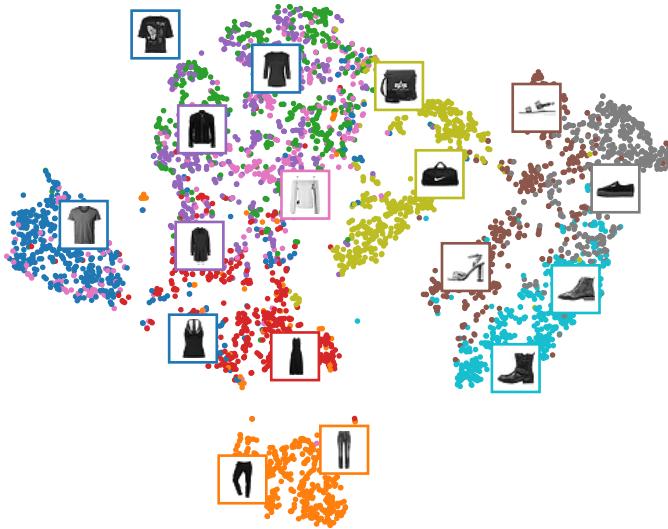


Figure 20.19: tSNE plot of the first 2 latent dimensions of the Fashion MNIST validation set computed using an MLP-based autoencoder. Adapted from Figure 17.5 of [Gér19]. Generated by `dimred/ae_mnist_tf.ipynb`.



Figure 20.20: Denoising autoencoder (MLP architecture) applied to some noisy Fashion MNIST images from the validation set. (a) Gaussian noise. (b) Bernoulli dropout noise. Top row: input. Bottom row: output. Adapted from Figure 17.9 of [Gér19]. Generated by `dimred/ae_mnist_tf.ipynb`.

to the reconstruction loss, where  $h_k$  is the value of the  $k$ 'th hidden embedding unit. That is, we penalize the Frobenius norm of the encoder's Jacobian. This is called a **contractive autoencoder** [Rif+11]. (A linear operator with Jacobian  $\mathbf{J}$  is called a **contraction** if  $\|\mathbf{J}\mathbf{x}\| \leq 1$  for all unit-norm inputs  $\mathbf{x}$ .)

To understand why this is useful, consider Fig. 20.21. We can approximate the curved low-dimensional manifold by a series of locally linear manifolds. These linear approximations can be computed using the Jacobian of the encoder at each point. By encouraging these to be contractive, we ensure the model “pushes” inputs that are off the manifold to move back towards it.

Another way to think about CAEs is as follows. To minimize the penalty term, the model would like to ensure the encoder is a constant function. However, if it was completely constant, it would

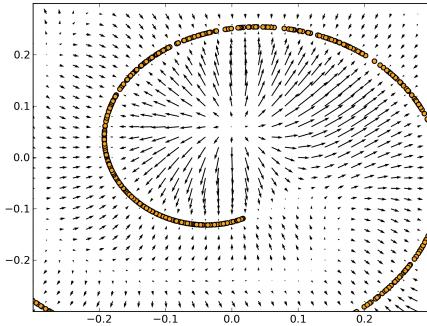


Figure 20.21: The residual error from a DAE,  $\mathbf{e}(\mathbf{x}) = r(\tilde{\mathbf{x}}) - \mathbf{x}$ , can learn a vector field corresponding to the score function. Arrows point towards higher probability regions. The length of the arrow is proportional to  $\|\mathbf{e}(\mathbf{x})\|$ , so points near the 1d data manifold (represented by the curved line) have smaller arrows. From Figure 5 of [AB14]. Used with kind permission of Guillaume Alain.

ignore its input, and hence incur high reconstruction cost. Thus the two terms together encourage the model to learn a representation where only a few units change in response to the most significant variations in the input.

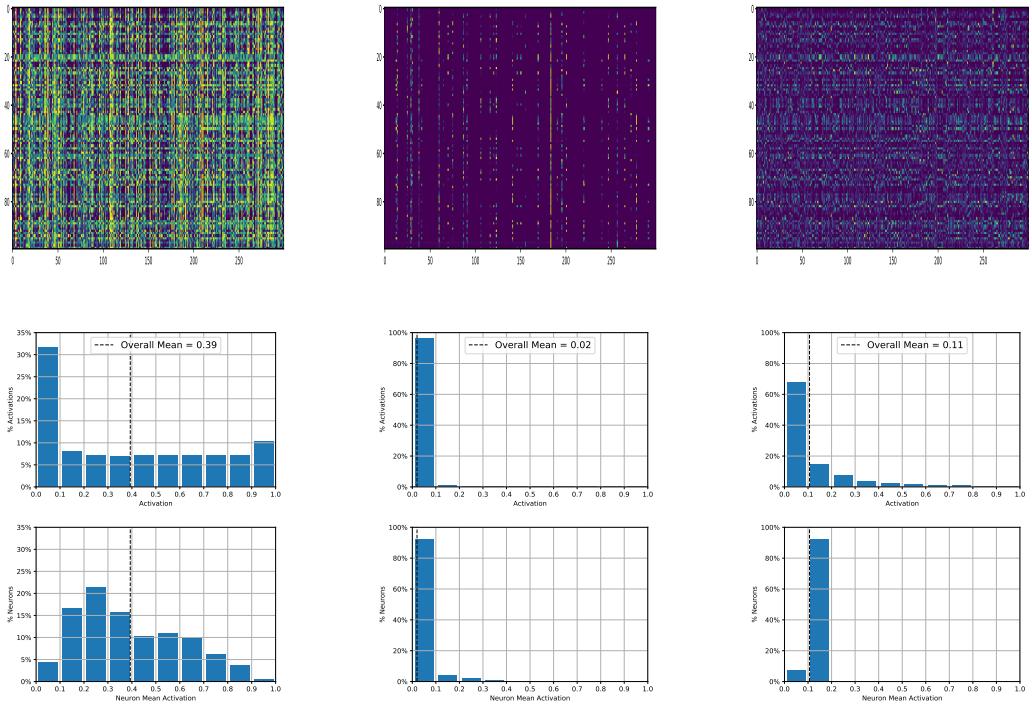
One possible degenerate solution is that the encoder simply learns to multiply the input by a small constant  $\epsilon$  (which scales down the Jacobian), followed by a decoder that divides by  $\epsilon$  (which reconstructs perfectly). To avoid this, we can tie the weights of the encoder and decoder, by setting the weight matrix for layer  $\ell$  of  $f_d$  to be the transpose of the weight matrix for layer  $\ell$  of  $f_e$ , but using untied bias terms. Unfortunately CAEs are slow to train, because of the expense of computing the Jacobian.

#### 20.3.4 Sparse autoencoders

Yet another way to regularize autoencoders is to add a sparsity penalty to the latent activations of the form  $\Omega(\mathbf{z}) = \lambda \|\mathbf{z}\|_1$ . (This is called **activity regularization**.)

An alternative way to implement sparsity, that often gives better results, is to use logistic units, and then to compute the expected fraction of time each unit  $k$  is on within a minibatch (call this  $q_k$ ), and ensure that this is close to a desired target value  $p$ , as proposed in [GBB11]. In particular, we use the regularizer  $\Omega(\mathbf{z}_{1:L, 1:N}) = \lambda \sum_k \text{KL}(\mathbf{p} \parallel \mathbf{q}_k)$  for latent dimensions  $1 : L$  and examples  $1 : N$ , where  $\mathbf{p} = (p, 1-p)$  is the desired target distribution, and  $\mathbf{q}_k = (q_k, 1-q_k)$  is the empirical distribution for unit  $k$ , computed using  $q_k = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^N \mathbb{I}(z_{n,k} = 1)$ .

Fig. 20.22 shows the results when fitting an AE-MLP (with 300 hidden units) to Fashion MNIST. If we set  $\lambda = 0$  (i.e., if we don't impose a sparsity penalty), we see that the average activation value is about 0.4, with most neurons being partially activated most of the time. With the  $\ell_1$  penalty, we see that most units are off all the time, which means they are not being used at all. With the KL penalty, we see that about 70% of neurons are off on average, but unlike the  $\ell_1$  case, we don't see units being permanently turned off (the average activation level is 0.1). This latter kind of sparse



*Figure 20.22: Neuron activity (in the bottleneck layer) for an autoencoder applied to Fashion MNIST. We show results for three models, with different kinds of sparsity penalty: no penalty (left column),  $\ell_1$  penalty (middle column), KL penalty (right column). Top row: Heatmap of 300 neuron activations (columns) across 100 examples (rows). Middle row: Histogram of activation levels derived from this heatmap. Bottom row: Histogram of the mean activation per neuron, averaged over all examples in the validation set. Adapted from Figure 17.11 of [Gér19]. Generated by [dimred/ae\\_mnist\\_tf.ipynb](#).*

firing pattern is similar to that observed in biological brains (see e.g., [Bey+19]).

### 20.3.5 Variational autoencoders

In this section, we discuss the **variational autoencoder** or **VAE** [KW14; RMW14; KW19a], which can be thought of as a probabilistic version of a deterministic autoencoder (Sec. 20.3). The principle advantage is that a VAE is a generative model that can create new samples, whereas an autoencoder just computes embeddings of input vectors.

In more detail, the VAE combines two key ideas. First we create a non-linear extension of the factor analysis generative model, i.e., we replacing  $p(\mathbf{x}|\mathbf{z}) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{x}|\mathbf{Wz}, \sigma^2 \mathbf{I})$  with

$$p(\mathbf{x}|\mathbf{z}, \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{x}|f_d(\mathbf{z}; \boldsymbol{\theta}), \sigma^2 \mathbf{I}) \quad (20.91)$$

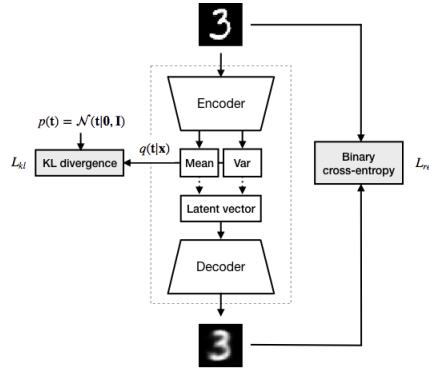


Figure 20.23: Schematic illustration of a VAE. From a figure from <http://krasserm.github.io/2018/07/27/dfc-vae/>. Used with kind permission of Martin Krasser.

where  $f_d$  is the decoder. (We can also use a Bernoulli likelihood if we wish.) Second, we create another model,  $q(\mathbf{z}|\mathbf{x})$ , called the **recognition network** or **inference network**, that is trained simultaneously with the generative model to do approximate posterior inference. If we assume the posterior is Gaussian, with diagonal covariance, we get

$$q(\mathbf{z}|\mathbf{x}, \phi) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{z}|f_{e,\mu}(\mathbf{x}; \phi), \text{diag}(f_{e,\sigma}(\mathbf{x}; \phi))) \quad (20.92)$$

where  $f_e$  is the encoder. See Fig. 20.23 for a sketch.

The idea of training an inference network to “invert” a generative network, rather than running an optimization algorithm to infer the latent code, is called **amortized inference**. This idea was first proposed in the **Helmholtz machine** [Day+95]. However, that paper did not present a single unified objective function for inference and generation, but instead used the wake sleep method for training, which alternates between optimizing the generative model and inference model. By contrast, the VAE optimizes a variational lower bound on the log-likelihood, which is more principled, since it is a single unified objective.

### 20.3.5.1 Training VAEs

We cannot compute the exact marginal likelihood  $p(\mathbf{x}|\theta)$  needed for MLE training, because posterior inference in a nonlinear FA model is intractable. However, we can use the inference network to compute an approximate posterior,  $q(\mathbf{z}|\mathbf{x})$ . We can then use this to compute the evidence lower bound or ELBO. This is discussed in detail in Sec. 7.7.3, but the bottom line is that we need to maximize the following objective:

$$\mathcal{L}(\theta, \phi | \mathcal{D}) = \mathbb{E}_{\mathbf{x} \sim \mathcal{D}} [\mathcal{L}(\theta, \phi | \mathbf{x})] \quad (20.93)$$

where the ELBO for a single datapoint is given by

$$\mathcal{L}(\theta, \phi | \mathbf{x}) = \mathbb{E}_{q_\phi(\mathbf{z}|\mathbf{x})} [\log p_\theta(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{z}) - \log q_\phi(\mathbf{z}|\mathbf{x})] \quad (20.94)$$

$$= \mathbb{E}_{q_\phi(\mathbf{z}|\mathbf{x})} [\log p_\theta(\mathbf{x}|\mathbf{z})] + \mathbb{KL}(q_\phi(\mathbf{z}|\mathbf{x}) \| p_\theta(\mathbf{z})) \quad (20.95)$$

Thus we see that we apply the KL penalty to each individual encoding vector, rather than the approach in Sec. 20.3.4 where we applied the KL penalty to the aggregate posterior in each minibatch.

The ELBO is a lower bound of the log marginal likelihood (aka evidence), as can be seen from Jensen's inequality:

$$\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta}, \boldsymbol{\phi} | \mathbf{x}) = \int q_{\boldsymbol{\phi}}(\mathbf{z} | \mathbf{x}) \log \frac{p_{\boldsymbol{\theta}}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{z})}{q_{\boldsymbol{\phi}}(\mathbf{z} | \mathbf{x})} d\mathbf{z} \quad (20.96)$$

$$\leq \log \int q_{\boldsymbol{\phi}}(\mathbf{z} | \mathbf{x}) \frac{p_{\boldsymbol{\theta}}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{z})}{q_{\boldsymbol{\phi}}(\mathbf{z} | \mathbf{x})} d\mathbf{z} = \log p_{\boldsymbol{\theta}}(\mathbf{x}) \quad (20.97)$$

Thus for fixed inference network parameters  $\boldsymbol{\phi}$ , increasing the ELBO should increase the log likelihood of the data.<sup>5</sup>

We can rewrite the ELBO as follows:

$$\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta}, \boldsymbol{\phi} | \mathbf{x}) = \mathbb{E}_{q(\mathbf{z} | \mathbf{x}, \boldsymbol{\phi})} [\log p(\mathbf{x} | \mathbf{z}, \boldsymbol{\theta})] - \mathbb{KL}(q(\mathbf{z} | \mathbf{x}, \boldsymbol{\phi}) \| p(\mathbf{z})) \quad (20.98)$$

For simplicity, let us suppose that the inference network estimates the parameters of a Gaussian posterior. Since  $q_{\boldsymbol{\phi}}(\mathbf{z} | \mathbf{x})$  is Gaussian, we can write

$$\mathbf{z} = f_{e, \mu}(\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\phi}) + f_{e, \sigma}(\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\phi}) \odot \boldsymbol{\epsilon} \quad (20.99)$$

where  $\boldsymbol{\epsilon} \sim \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{0}, \mathbf{I})$ . This is known as the **reparameterization trick**. Hence

$$\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta}, \boldsymbol{\phi} | \mathbf{x}) = \mathbb{E}_{\boldsymbol{\epsilon} \sim \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{0}, \mathbf{I})} [\log p_{\boldsymbol{\theta}}(\mathbf{x} | \mathbf{z} = \mu_{\boldsymbol{\phi}}(\mathbf{x}) + \sigma_{\boldsymbol{\phi}}(\mathbf{x}) \odot \boldsymbol{\epsilon})] - \mathbb{KL}(q_{\boldsymbol{\phi}}(\mathbf{z} | \mathbf{x}) \| p(\mathbf{z})) \quad (20.100)$$

Now the expectation is independent of the parameters of the model, so we can safely push gradients inside and use backpropagation for training in the usual way, by minimizing  $-\mathbb{E}_{\mathbf{x} \sim \mathcal{D}} [\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta}, \boldsymbol{\phi} | \mathbf{x})]$  wrt  $\boldsymbol{\theta}$  and  $\boldsymbol{\phi}$ .

To compute the loss and its gradient, we need to compute the ELBO for each example. The first term in the ELBO can be computed by sampling  $\boldsymbol{\epsilon}$ , and then “decoding” this sample to generate  $\mathbf{x}$ , and then evaluating  $\log p(\mathbf{x} | \mathbf{z})$ .

The second term in the ELBO is the KL of two Gaussians. This has a closed form. In particular, inserting  $p(\mathbf{z}) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{z} | \mathbf{0}, \mathbf{I})$  and  $q(\mathbf{z}) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{z} | \boldsymbol{\mu}, \text{diag}(\boldsymbol{\sigma}))$  into Eq. (6.32), we get

$$\mathbb{KL}(q \| p) = -\frac{1}{2} \sum_{k=1}^K [\log \sigma_k^2 - \sigma_k^2 - \mu_k^2 + 1] \quad (20.101)$$

(The inference network often outputs the log variance,  $\gamma_k = \log \sigma_k^2$ , for numerical stability.)

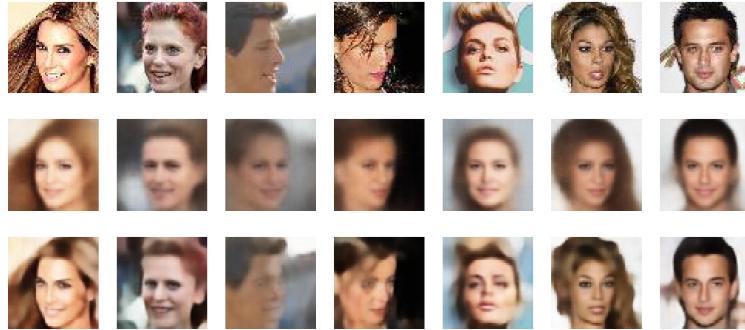
### 20.3.5.2 Comparison of VAEs and autoencoders

VAEs are very similar to autoencoders. In particular, the generative model,  $p_{\boldsymbol{\theta}}(\mathbf{x} | \mathbf{z})$ , acts like the decoder, and the inference network,  $q_{\boldsymbol{\phi}}(\mathbf{z} | \mathbf{x})$ , acts like the encoder.

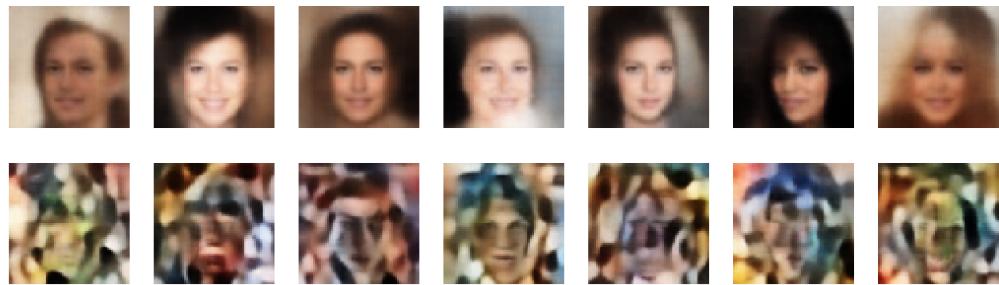
The primary advantage of the VAE is that it can be used to generate new data from random noise. In particular, we sample  $\mathbf{z}$  from the Gaussian prior  $\mathcal{N}(\mathbf{z} | \mathbf{0}, \mathbf{I})$ , and then pass this through the decoder

---

5. If we are unlucky, optimizing  $\boldsymbol{\theta}$  might just make the bound tighter, rather than increasing  $\log p_{\boldsymbol{\theta}}(\mathbf{x})$ .



*Figure 20.24: Comparison of reconstruction abilities of an autoencoder and VAE. Top row: Original images. Middle row: Reconstructions from a VAE. Bottom row: Reconstructions from an AE. We see that the VAE reconstructions (middle) are blurrier. Both models have the same shallow convolutional architecture (3 hidden layers, 200 latents), and are trained on identical data (20k images of size  $64 \times 64$  extracted from CelebA) for the same number of epochs (20). Generated by [dimred/vae\\_celeba\\_tf.ipynb](#).*



*Figure 20.25: Unconditional samples from a VAE (top row) or AE (bottom row) trained on CelebA. Both models have the same structure and both are trained for 20 epochs. Generated by [dimred/vae\\_celeba\\_tf.ipynb](#).*

to get  $\mathbb{E}[\mathbf{x}|\mathbf{z}] = f_d(\mathbf{z}; \boldsymbol{\theta})$ . The VAE’s decoder is trained to convert random points in the embedding space (generated by perturbing the input encodings) to sensible outputs. By contrast, the decoder for the deterministic autoencoder only ever gets as inputs the exact encodings of the training set, so it does not know what to do with random inputs that are outside what it was trained on.

We now give a visual illustration of this difference. In Fig. 20.24, we show results after training a convolutional AE and VAE with 4 hidden layers on a small version of the CelebA dataset (Sec. 14.3.1.3). The architecture is similar to the U-net model in Fig. 14.24, but without the shortcut skip connections. We use 20,000 images of size  $64 \times 64$  and train for 20 epochs. (We can get better results if we train for longer and/or on more data, but we wanted to ensure the demo runs in just a couple of minutes.) We see that both models can encode and decode an image fairly reliably, although the the VAE reconstructions (middle row) are slightly blurrier (soft focus). However, Fig. 20.25 shows that novel samples from the VAE are reasonable, whereas the AE samples are not.



Figure 20.26: Interpolation between two real images (first and last columns) in the latent space of a VAE. Adapted from Figure 3.22 of [Fos19]. Generated by `dimred/vae_celeba_tf.ipynb`.

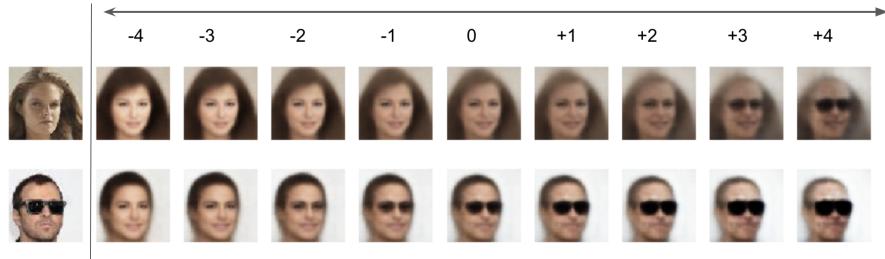


Figure 20.27: Adding or removing the “sunglasses” vector to an image using a VAE. The first column is an input image, with embedding  $\mathbf{z}$ . Subsequent columns show the decoding of  $\mathbf{z} + s\Delta$ , where  $s \in \{-4, -3, -2, -1, 0, 1, 2, 3, 4\}$  and  $\Delta = \bar{\mathbf{z}}^+ - \bar{\mathbf{z}}^-$  is the difference in the average embeddings of images of people with or without sunglasses. Adapted from Figure 3.21 of [Fos19]. Generated by `dimred/vae_celeba_tf.ipynb`.

### 20.3.5.3 Latent space interpolation

One powerful feature of latent variable models is the ability to generate samples that interpolate the “semantic properties” of two different inputs. Specifically, let  $\mathbf{x}_1$  and  $\mathbf{x}_2$  be two images, and let  $\mathbf{z}_1 = \mathbb{E}_{q(\mathbf{z}|\mathbf{x}_1)}[\mathbf{z}]$  and  $\mathbf{z}_2 = \mathbb{E}_{q(\mathbf{z}|\mathbf{x}_2)}[\mathbf{z}]$  be their encodings. We can now generate new images that interpolate between these two anchors by computing  $\mathbf{z} = \lambda\mathbf{z}_1 + (1 - \lambda)\mathbf{z}_2$ , where  $0 \leq \lambda \leq 1$ , and then decoding by computing  $\mathbb{E}[\mathbf{x}|\mathbf{z}]$ . This is called **latent space interpolation**. (The justification for taking a linear interpolation is that the learned manifold has approximately zero curvature, as shown in [SKTF18].) See Fig. 20.26 for an example, where we interpolate between a woman without sunglasses and a man with sunglasses.

### 20.3.5.4 Latent space vector arithmetic

An intriguing property of some latent variable models is that they support the ability to perform vector addition and subtraction in latent space in order to increase or decrease the amount of a desired “semantic factor of variation” (c.f., word2vec model in Fig. 19.10). For example, consider the attribute of wearing sunglasses. Let  $\mathbf{X}_i^+$  be a set of images which have attribute  $i$ , and  $\mathbf{X}_i^-$  be a set of images which do not have this attribute. Let  $\mathbf{Z}_i^+$  and  $\mathbf{Z}_i^-$  be the corresponding embeddings, and  $\bar{\mathbf{z}}^+$  and  $\bar{\mathbf{z}}^-$  be the average of these embeddings. We define the offset vector as  $\Delta = \bar{\mathbf{z}}^+ - \bar{\mathbf{z}}^-$ . If we add some positive multiple of  $\Delta$  to a new point  $\mathbf{z}$ , we increase the amount of this attribute; if we subtract some multiple of  $\Delta$ , we decrease the amount of this attribute. (This idea was first proposed

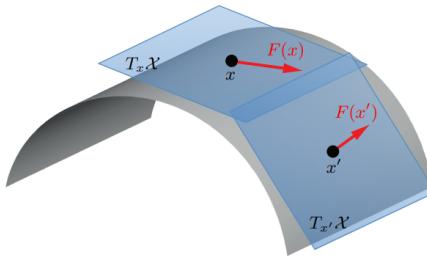


Figure 20.28: Illustration of the tangent space and tangent vectors at two different points on a 2d curved manifold. From Figure 1 of [Bro+17a]. Used with kind permission of Michael Bronstein

in [RMC16].)

## 20.4 Manifold learning

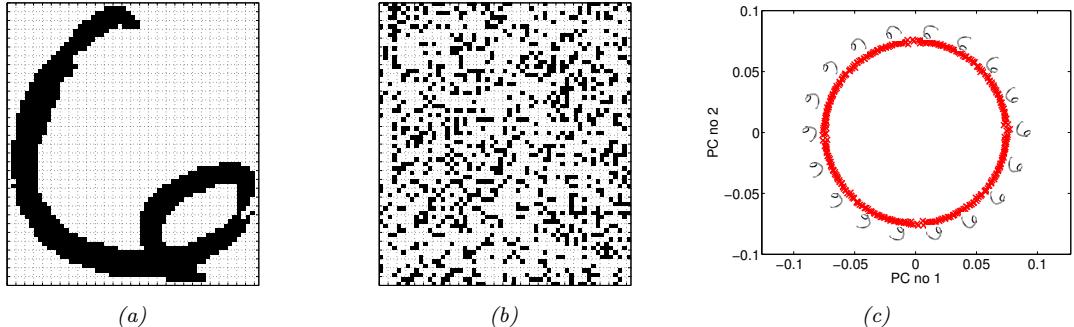
In this section, we discuss the problem of recovering the underlying low-dimensional structure in a high-dimensional dataset. This structure is often assumed to be a curved manifold (explained in Sec. 20.4), so this problem is called **manifold learning**, or **nonlinear dimensionality reduction**. The key difference from methods such as autoencoders (Sec. 20.3) is that we will focus on non-parametric methods, in which we compute an embedding for each point in the training set, as opposed to learning a generic model that can embed any input vector. That is, the methods we discuss do not (easily) support **out-of-sample generalization**. However, they can be easier to fit, and are quite flexible. Such methods can be a useful for unsupervised learning (knowledge discovery), data visualization, and as a preprocessing step for supervised learning.

### 20.4.1 What are manifolds?

Roughly speaking, a **manifold** is a topological space which is locally Euclidean. One of the simplest examples is the surface of the earth, which is a curved 2d surface embedded in a 3d space. At each local point on the surface, the earth seems flat.

More formally, a  $d$ -dimensional manifold  $\mathcal{X}$  is a space in which each point  $x \in \mathcal{X}$  has a neighborhood which is topologically equivalent to a  $d$ -dimensional Euclidean space, called the **tangent space**, denoted  $\mathcal{T}_x = T_x \mathcal{X}$ . This is illustrated in Fig. 20.28.

A **Riemannian manifold** is a differentiable manifold that associates an inner product operator at each point  $x$  in tangent space; this is assumed to depend smoothly on the position  $x$ . The inner product induces a notion of distance, angles, and volume. The collection of these inner products is called a **Riemannian metric**. It can be shown that any sufficiently smooth Riemannian manifold can be embedded into a Euclidean space of potentially higher dimension; the Riemannian inner product at a point then becomes Euclidean inner product in that tangent space.



*Figure 20.29: Illustration of the image manifold.* (a) An image of the digit 6 from the USPS dataset, of size  $64 \times 57 = 3,648$ . (b) A random sample from the space  $\{0, 1\}^{3648}$  reshaped as an image. (c) A dataset created by rotating the original image by one degree 360 times. We project this data onto its first two principal components, to reveal the underlying 2d circular manifold. From Figure 1 of [Law12]. Used with kind permission of Neil Lawrence

#### 20.4.2 The manifold hypothesis

Most “naturally occurring” high dimensional dataset lie a low dimensional manifold. This is called the **manifold hypothesis** [FMN16]. For example, consider the case of an image. Fig. 20.29a shows a single image of size  $64 \times 57$ . This is a vector in a 3,648-dimensional space, where each dimension corresponds to a pixel intensity. Suppose we try to generate an image by drawing a random point in this space; it is unlikely to look like the image of a digit, as shown in Fig. 20.29b. However, the pixels are not independent of each other, since they are generated by some lower dimensional structure, namely the shape of the digit 6.

As we vary the shape, we will generate different images. We can often characterize the space of shape variations using a low-dimensional manifold. This is illustrated in Fig. 20.29c, where we apply PCA (Sec. 20.1) to project a dataset of 360 images, each one a slightly rotated version of the digit 6, into a 2d space. We see that most of the variation in the data is captured by an underlying curved 2d manifold. We say that the **intrinsic dimensionality**  $d$  of the data is 2, even though the **ambient dimensionality**  $D$  is 3,648.

#### 20.4.3 Approaches to manifold learning

In the rest of this section, we discuss ways to learn manifolds from data. There are many different algorithms that have been proposed, which make different assumptions about the nature of the manifold, and which have different computational properties. We discuss a few of these methods in the following sections. For more details, see e.g., [Bur10].

The methods can be categorized as shown in Table 20.1. The term “nonparametric” refers to methods that learn a low dimensional embedding  $\mathbf{z}_i$  for each datapoint  $\mathbf{x}_i$ , but do not learn a mapping function which can be applied to an out-of-sample datapoint. (However, [Ben+04b] discusses how to extend many of these methods beyond the training set by learning a kernel.)

In the sections below, we compare some of these methods using 2 different datasets: a set of 1000 3d-points sampled from the 2d “Swiss roll” manifold, and a set of 1797 64-dimensional points

Method	Parametric	Convex	Section
PCA / classical MDS	N	Y (Dense)	Sec. 20.1
Kernel PCA	N	Y (Dense)	Sec. 20.4.6
Isomap	N	Y (Dense)	Sec. 20.4.5
LLE	N	Y (Sparse)	Sec. 20.4.8
Laplacian Eigenmaps	N	Y (Sparse)	Sec. 20.4.9
tSNE	N	N	Sec. 20.4.10
Autoencoder	Y	N	Sec. 20.3

Table 20.1: A list of some approaches to dimensionality reduction. If a method is convex, we specify in parentheses whether it requires solving a sparse or dense eigenvalue problem.

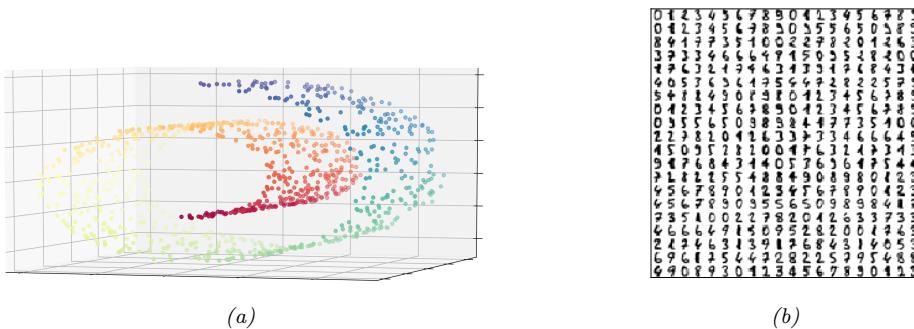


Figure 20.30: Illustration of some data generated from low-dimensional manifolds. (a) The 2d Swiss-roll manifold embedded into 3d. Generated by `manifold_swiss_sklearn.py`. (b) Sample of some UCI digits, which have size  $8 \times 8 = 64$ . Generated by `manifold_digits_sklearn.py`.

sampled from the UCI digits dataset. See Fig. 20.30 for an illustration of the data. We will learn a 2d manifold, so we can visualize the data.

#### 20.4.4 Multi-dimensional scaling (MDS)

The simplest approach to manifold learning is **multidimensional scaling (MDS)**. This tries to find a set of low dimensional vectors  $\{\mathbf{z}_i \in \mathbb{R}^L : i = 1 : N\}$  such that the pairwise distances between these vectors is as similar as possible to a set of pairwise dissimilarities  $\mathbf{D} = \{d_{ij}\}$  provided by the user. There are several variants of MDS, one of which turns out to be equivalent to PCA, as we discuss below.

##### 20.4.4.1 Classical MDS

Suppose we start an  $N \times D$  data matrix  $\mathbf{X}$  with rows  $\mathbf{x}_i$ . Let us define the centered Gram (similarity) matrix as follows:

$$\tilde{K}_{ij} = \langle \mathbf{x}_i - \bar{\mathbf{x}}, \mathbf{x}_j - \bar{\mathbf{x}} \rangle \quad (20.102)$$

In matrix notation, we have  $\tilde{\mathbf{K}} = \tilde{\mathbf{X}}\tilde{\mathbf{X}}^\top$ , where  $\tilde{\mathbf{X}} = \mathbf{C}_N \mathbf{X}$  and  $\mathbf{C}_N = \mathbf{I}_N - \frac{1}{N}\mathbf{1}_N\mathbf{1}_N^\top$  is the centering matrix.

Now define the **strain** of a set of embeddings as follows:

$$\mathcal{L}_{\text{strain}}(\mathbf{Z}) = \sum_{i,j} (\tilde{K}_{ij} - \langle \tilde{\mathbf{z}}_i, \tilde{\mathbf{z}}_j \rangle)^2 = \|\tilde{\mathbf{K}} - \tilde{\mathbf{Z}}\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}^\top\|_F^2 \quad (20.103)$$

where  $\tilde{\mathbf{z}}_i = \mathbf{z}_i - \bar{\mathbf{z}}$  is the centered embedding vector. Intuitively this measures how well similarities in the high-dimensional data space,  $\tilde{K}_{ij}$ , are matched by similarities in the low-dimensional embedding space,  $\langle \tilde{\mathbf{z}}_i, \tilde{\mathbf{z}}_j \rangle$ . Minimizing this loss is called **classical MDS**.

We know from Appendix B.5 that the best rank  $L$  approximation to a matrix is its truncated SVD representation,  $\tilde{\mathbf{K}} = \mathbf{U}\mathbf{S}\mathbf{V}^\top$ . Since  $\tilde{\mathbf{K}}$  is positive semi definite, we have that  $\mathbf{V} = \mathbf{U}$ . Hence the optimal embedding satisfies

$$\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}\tilde{\mathbf{Z}}^\top = \mathbf{U}\mathbf{S}\mathbf{U}^\top = (\mathbf{U}\mathbf{S}^{\frac{1}{2}})(\mathbf{S}^{\frac{1}{2}}\mathbf{U}^\top) \quad (20.104)$$

Thus we can set the embedding vectors to be the rows of  $\tilde{\mathbf{Z}} = \mathbf{U}\mathbf{S}^{\frac{1}{2}}$ .

Now we describe how to apply classical MDS to a dataset where we just have Euclidean distances, rather than raw features. First we compute a matrix of squared Euclidean distances,  $\mathbf{D}^{(2)} = \mathbf{D} \odot \mathbf{D}$ , which has the following entries:

$$D_{ij}^{(2)} = \|\mathbf{x}_i - \mathbf{x}_j\|^2 = \|\mathbf{x}_i - \bar{\mathbf{x}}\|^2 + \|\mathbf{x}_j - \bar{\mathbf{x}}\|^2 - 2\langle \mathbf{x}_i - \bar{\mathbf{x}}, \mathbf{x}_j - \bar{\mathbf{x}} \rangle \quad (20.105)$$

$$= \|\mathbf{x}_i - \bar{\mathbf{x}}\|^2 + \|\mathbf{x}_j - \bar{\mathbf{x}}\|^2 - 2\tilde{K}_{ij} \quad (20.106)$$

We see that  $\mathbf{D}^{(2)}$  only differs from  $\tilde{\mathbf{K}}$  by some row and column constants (and a factor of -2). Hence we can compute  $\tilde{\mathbf{K}}$  by double centering  $\mathbf{D}^{(2)}$  using Eq. (B.88) to get  $\tilde{\mathbf{K}} = -\frac{1}{2}\mathbf{C}_N\mathbf{D}^{(2)}\mathbf{C}_N$ . In other words,

$$\tilde{K}_{ij} = -\frac{1}{2} \left( d_{ij}^2 - \frac{1}{N} \sum_{l=1}^N d_{il}^2 - \frac{1}{N} \sum_{l=1}^N d_{jl}^2 + \frac{1}{N^2} \sum_{l=1}^N \sum_{m=1}^N d_{lm}^2 \right) \quad (20.107)$$

We can then compute the embeddings as before.

It turns out that classical MDS is equivalent to PCA (Sec. 20.1). To see this, let  $\tilde{\mathbf{K}} = \mathbf{U}_L\mathbf{S}_L\mathbf{U}_L^\top$  be the rank  $L$  truncated SVD of the centered kernel matrix. The MDS embedding is given by  $\mathbf{Z}_{\text{MDS}} = \mathbf{U}_L\mathbf{S}_L^{\frac{1}{2}}$ . Now consider the rank  $L$  SVD of the centered data matrix,  $\tilde{\mathbf{X}} = \mathbf{U}_X\mathbf{S}_X\mathbf{V}_X^\top$ . The PCA embedding is  $\mathbf{Z}_{\text{PCA}} = \mathbf{U}_X\mathbf{S}_X$ . Now

$$\tilde{\mathbf{K}} = \tilde{\mathbf{X}}\tilde{\mathbf{X}}^\top = \mathbf{U}_X\mathbf{S}_X\mathbf{V}_X^\top\mathbf{V}_X\mathbf{S}_X\mathbf{U}_X^\top = \mathbf{U}_X\mathbf{S}_X^2\mathbf{U}_X^\top = \mathbf{U}_L\mathbf{S}_L\mathbf{U}_L^\top \quad (20.108)$$

Hence  $\mathbf{U}_X = \mathbf{U}_L$  and  $\mathbf{S}_X = \mathbf{S}_L^2$ , and so  $\mathbf{Z}_{\text{PCA}} = \mathbf{Z}_{\text{MDS}}$ .

#### 20.4.4.2 Metric MDS

Classical MDS assumes Euclidean distances. We can generalize it to allow for any dissimilarity measure by defining the **stress function**

$$\mathcal{L}_{\text{stress}}(\mathbf{Z}) = \sqrt{\frac{\sum_{i < j} (d_{i,j} - \hat{d}_{ij})^2}{\sum_{ij} d_{ij}^2}} \quad (20.109)$$



Figure 20.31: Metric MDS applied to (a) Swiss roll. Generated by `manifold_swiss_sklearn.py` (b) UCI digits. Generated by `manifold_digits_sklearn.py`

where  $\hat{d}_{ij} = \|\mathbf{z}_i - \mathbf{z}_j\|$ . This is called **metric MDS**. Note that this is a different objective than the one used by classical MDS, so even if  $d_{ij}$  are Euclidean distances, the results will be different.

We can use gradient descent to solve the optimization problem. However, it is better to use an bound optimization algorithm (Sec. 5.7) called **SMACOF** [Lee77], which stands for “Scaling by MAjorizing a COmplication Function”. (This is the method implemented in scikit-learn.) See Fig. 20.31 for the results of applying this to our running example.

#### 20.4.4.3 Non-metric MDS

Instead of trying to match the distance between points, we can instead just try to match the ranking of how similar points are. To do this, let  $f(d)$  be a monotonic transformation from distances to ranks. Now define the loss

$$\mathcal{L}_{NM}(\mathbf{Z}) = \sqrt{\frac{\sum_{i < j} (f(d_{i,j}) - \hat{d}_{ij})^2}{\sum_{ij} \hat{d}_{ij}^2}} \quad (20.110)$$

where  $\hat{d}_{ij} = \|\mathbf{z}_i - \mathbf{z}_j\|$ . Minimizing this is known as **non-metric MDS**.

This objective can be optimized iteratively. First the function  $f$  is optimized, for a given  $\mathbf{Z}$ , using isotonic regression; this finds the optimal monotonic transformation of the input distances to match the current embedding distances. Then the embeddings  $\mathbf{Z}$  are optimized, for a given  $f$ , using gradient descent, and the process repeats.

#### 20.4.4.4 Sammon mapping

Metric MDS tries to minimize the sum of squared distances, so it puts the most emphasis on large distances. However, for many embedding methods, small distances matter more, since they capture local structure. One way to capture this is to divide each term of the loss by  $d_{ij}$ , so small distances get upweighted:

$$\mathcal{L}_{sammon}(\mathbf{Z}) = \left( \frac{1}{\sum_{i < j} d_{ij}} \right) \sum_{i \neq j} \frac{(\hat{d}_{ij} - d_{ij})^2}{d_{ij}} \quad (20.111)$$

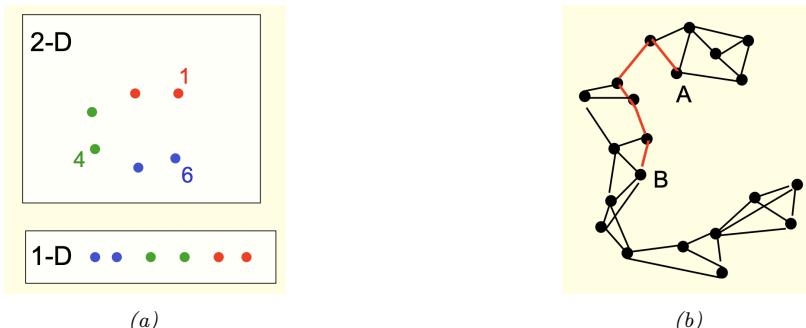


Figure 20.32: (a) If we measure distances along the manifold, we find  $d(1, 6) > d(1, 4)$ , whereas if we measure in ambient space, we find  $d(1, 6) < d(1, 4)$ . The plot at the bottom shows the underlying 1d manifold. (b) The  $K$ -nearest neighbors graph for some datapoints; the red path is the shortest distance between A and B on this graph. From [Hin13]. Used with kind permission of Geoff Hinton.

Minimizing this results in a **Sammon mapping**. (The coefficient in front of the sum is just to simplify the gradient of the loss.) Unfortunately this is a non-convex objective, and it arguably puts too much emphasis on getting very small distances exactly right. We will discuss better methods for capturing local structure later on.

### 20.4.5 Isomap

If the high-dimensional data lies on or near a curved manifold, such as the Swiss roll example, then MDS might consider two points to be close even if their distance along the manifold is large. This is illustrated in Fig. 20.32a.

One way to capture this is to create the  $K$ -nearest neighbor graph between datapoints<sup>6</sup>, and then approximate the manifold distance between a pair of points by the shortest distance along this graph; this can be computed efficiently using Dijkstra's shortest path algorithm. See Fig. 20.32b for an illustration. Once we have computed this new distance metric, we can apply classical MDS (i.e., PCA). This is a way to capture local structure while avoiding local optima. The overall method is called **isomap** [TSL00].

See Fig. 20.33 for the results of this method on our running example. We see that they are quite reasonable. However, if the data is noisy, there can be “false” edges in the nearest neighbor graph, which can result in “short circuits” which significantly distort the embedding, as shown in Fig. 20.34. This problem is known as “**topological instability**” [BS02]. Choosing a very small neighborhood does not solve this problem, since this can fragment the manifold into a large number of disconnected regions. Various other solutions have been proposed, e.g., [CC07].

## 20.4.6 Kernel PCA

PCA (and classical MDS) finds the best linear projection of the data, so as to preserve pairwise similarities between all the points. In this section, we consider nonlinear projections. The key idea

<sup>6</sup> In scikit-learn, you can use the function `sklearn.neighbors.kneighbors_graph`.

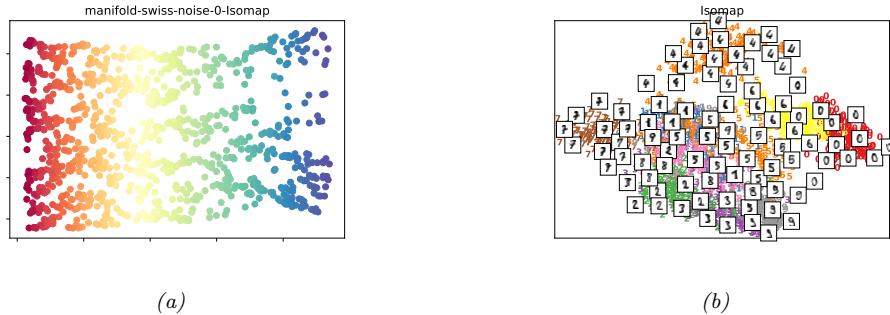


Figure 20.33: Isomap applied to (a) Swiss roll. Generated by `manifold_swiss_sklearn.py`. (b) UCI digits. Generated by `manifold_digits_sklearn.py`.

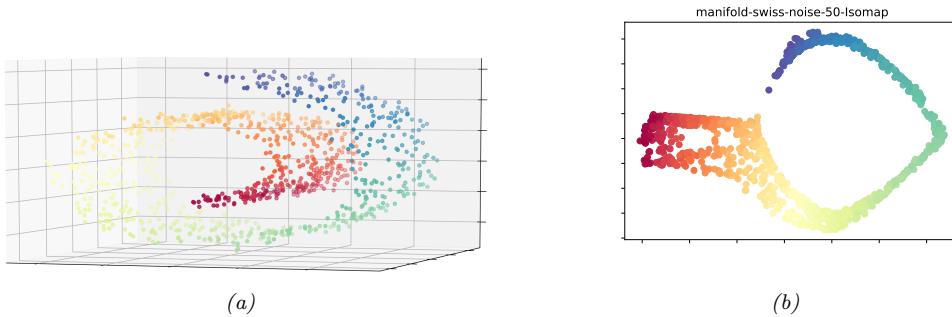


Figure 20.34: (a) Noisy version of Swiss roll data. We perturb each point by adding  $\mathcal{N}(0, 0.5^2)$  noise. (b) Results of Isomap applied to this data. Generated by `manifold_swiss_sklearn.py`

is to solve PCA by finding the eigenvectors of the inner product (Gram) matrix  $\mathbf{K} = \mathbf{XX}^\top$ , as in Sec. 20.1.3.2, and then to use the kernel trick (Sec. 17.5.4), which lets us replace inner products such as  $\mathbf{x}_i^\top \mathbf{x}_j$  with a kernel function,  $K_{ij} = \mathcal{K}(\mathbf{x}_i, \mathbf{x}_k)$ . This is known as **kernel PCA** [SSM98].

Recall from Mercer's theorem that the use of a kernel implies some underlying feature space, so we are implicitly replacing  $\mathbf{x}_i$  with  $\phi(\mathbf{x}_i) = \phi_i$ . Let  $\Phi$  be the corresponding (notional) design matrix, and  $\mathbf{K} = \mathbf{XX}^\top$  be the Gram matrix. Finally, let  $\mathbf{S}_\phi = \frac{1}{N} \sum_i \phi_i \phi_i^\top$  be the covariance matrix in feature space. (We are assuming for now that the features are centered.) From Eq. (20.22), the normalized eigenvectors of  $\mathbf{S}$  are given by  $\mathbf{V}_{\text{kPCA}} = \Phi^\top \mathbf{U} \Lambda^{-\frac{1}{2}}$ , where  $\mathbf{U}$  and  $\Lambda$  contain the eigenvectors and eigenvalues of  $\mathbf{K}$ . Of course, we can't actually compute  $\mathbf{V}_{\text{kPCA}}$ , since  $\phi_i$  is potentially infinite dimensional. However, we can compute the projection of a test vector  $\mathbf{x}_*$  onto the feature space as follows:

$$\phi_*^\top \mathbf{V}_{\text{kPCA}} = \phi_*^\top \Phi^\top \mathbf{U} \Lambda^{-\frac{1}{2}} = \mathbf{k}_*^\top \mathbf{U} \Lambda^{-\frac{1}{2}} \quad (20.112)$$

where  $\mathbf{k}_* = [\mathcal{K}(\mathbf{x}_*, \mathbf{x}_1), \dots, \mathcal{K}(\mathbf{x}_*, \mathbf{x}_N)]$ .

There is one final detail to worry about. The covariance matrix is only given by  $\mathbf{S} = \Phi^\top \Phi$  if the features are zero-mean. Thus we can only use the Gram matrix  $\mathbf{K} = \Phi \Phi^\top$  if  $\mathbb{E}[\phi_i] = \mathbf{0}$ . Unfortunately,

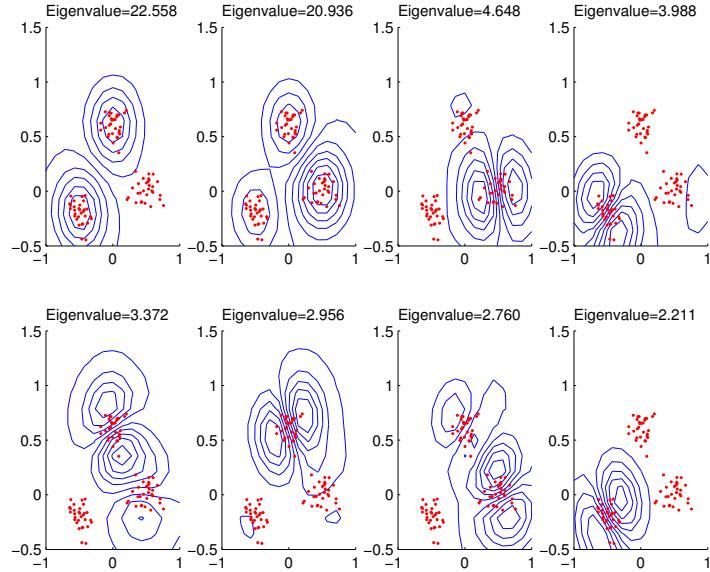


Figure 20.35: Visualization of the first 8 kernel principal component basis functions derived from some 2d data. We use an RBF kernel with  $\sigma^2 = 0.1$ . Generated by `kPCA_Scholkopf.m`.

we cannot simply subtract off the mean in feature space, since it may be infinite dimensional. However, there is a trick we can use. Define the centered feature vector as  $\tilde{\phi}_i = \phi(\mathbf{x}_i) - \frac{1}{N} \sum_{j=1}^N \phi(\mathbf{x}_j)$ . The Gram matrix of the centered feature vectors is given by  $\tilde{K}_{ij} = \tilde{\phi}_i^\top \tilde{\phi}_j$ . Using the double centering trick from Eq. (B.88), we can write this in matrix form as  $\tilde{\mathbf{K}} = \mathbf{C}_N \mathbf{K} \mathbf{C}_N$ , where  $\mathbf{C}_N \triangleq \mathbf{I}_N - \frac{1}{N} \mathbf{1}_N \mathbf{1}_N^\top$  is the centering matrix.

If we apply kPCA with a linear kernel, we recover regular PCA (classical MDS). This is limited to using  $L \leq D$  embedding dimensions. If we use a non-degenerate kernel, we can use up to  $N$  components, since the rank of  $\Phi$  is  $N \times D^*$ , where  $D^*$  is the (potentially infinite) dimensionality of embedded feature vectors. Fig. 20.35 gives an example of the method applied to some  $D = 2$  dimensional data using an RBF kernel. We project points in the unit grid onto the first 8 components and visualize the corresponding surfaces using a contour plot. We see that the first two component separate the three clusters, and the following components split the clusters.

See Fig. 20.36 for some the results on kPCA (with an RBF kernel) on our running example. In this case, the results are arguably not very useful. In fact, it can be shown that kPCA with an RBF kernel expands the feature space instead of reducing it [WSS04], as we saw in Fig. 20.35, which makes it not very useful as a method for dimensionality reduction. We discuss a solution to this in Sec. 20.4.7.

#### 20.4.7 Maximum variance unfolding (MVU)

kPCA with certain kernels, such as RBF, might not result in a low dimensional embedding, as discussed in Sec. 20.4.6. This observation led to the development of the **semidefinite embedding**

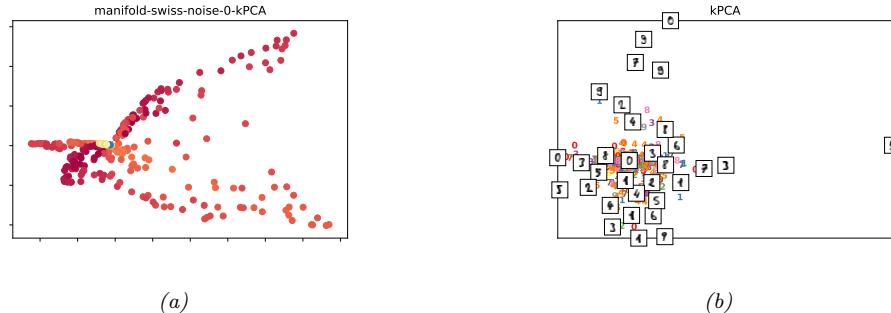


Figure 20.36: Kernel PCA applied to (a) Swiss roll. Generated by `manifold_swiss_sklearn.py`. (b) UCI digits. Generated by `manifold_digits_sklearn.py`.

algorithm [WSS04], also called **maximum variance unfolding**, which tries to learn an embedding  $\{\mathbf{z}_i\}$  such that

$$\max \sum_{ij} \|\mathbf{z}_i - \mathbf{z}_j\|_2^2 \text{ s.t. } \|\mathbf{z}_i - \mathbf{z}_j\|_2^2 = \|\mathbf{x}_i - \mathbf{x}_j\|_2^2 \text{ for all } (i, j) \in G \quad (20.113)$$

where  $G$  is the nearest neighbor graph (as in Isomap). This approach explicitly tries to 'unfold' the data manifold while respecting the nearest neighbor constraints.

This can be reformulated as a **semidefinite programming** (SDP) problem by defining the kernel matrix  $\mathbf{K} = \mathbf{Z}\mathbf{Z}^\top$  and then optimizing

$$\max \text{tr}(\mathbf{K}) \text{ s.t. } \|\mathbf{z}_i - \mathbf{z}_j\|_2^2 = \|\mathbf{x}_i - \mathbf{x}_j\|_2^2, \sum_{ij} K_{ij} = 0, \mathbf{K} \succ 0 \quad (20.114)$$

The resulting kernel is then passed to kPCA, and the resulting eigenvectors give the low dimensional embedding.

#### 20.4.8 Local linear embedding (LLE)

The techniques we have discussed so far all rely on an eigendecomposition of a full matrix of pairwise similarities, either in the ambient space (PCA), in feature space (kPCA), or along the KNN graph (Isomap). In this section, we discuss **local linear embedding** (LLE) [RS00], a technique that solves a sparse eigenproblem, thus focusing more on local structure in the data.

LLE assumes the data manifold around each point  $\mathbf{x}_i$  is locally linear. The best linear approximation can be found by predicting  $\mathbf{x}_i$  as a linear combination of its  $K$  nearest neighbors using reconstruction weights  $\mathbf{w}_i$ . This can be found by solving

$$\hat{\mathbf{W}} = \min_{\mathbf{W}} \sum_{i=1}^N \left( \mathbf{x}_i - \sum_{j=1}^N w_{ij} \mathbf{x}_j \right)^2 \quad (20.115)$$

$$\text{subject to } \begin{cases} w_{ij} = 0 & \text{if } \mathbf{x}_j \notin \text{nbr}(\mathbf{x}_i, K) \\ \sum_{j=1}^N w_{ij} = 1 & \text{for } i = 1 : N \end{cases} \quad (20.116)$$

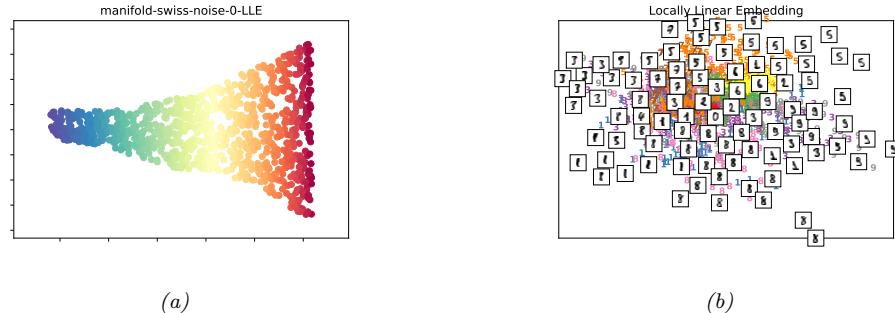


Figure 20.37: LLE applied to (a) Swiss roll. Generated by `manifold_swiss_sklearn.py`. (b) UCI digits. Generated by `manifold_digits_sklearn.py`.

Note that we need the sum-to-one constraint on the weights to prevent the trivial solution  $\mathbf{W} = \mathbf{0}$ . The resulting vector of weights  $\mathbf{w}_{i,:}$  constitute the **barycentric coordinates** of  $\mathbf{x}_i$ .

Any linear mapping of this hyperplane to a lower dimensional space preserves the reconstruction weights, and thus the local geometry. Thus we can solve for the low-dimensional embeddings for each point by solving

$$\hat{\mathbf{Z}} = \underset{\mathbf{Z}}{\operatorname{argmin}} \sum_i \left\| \mathbf{z}_i - \sum_{j=1}^N \hat{w}_{ij} \mathbf{z}_j \right\|_2^2 \quad (20.117)$$

where  $\hat{w}_{ij} = 0$  if  $j$  is not one of the  $K$  nearest neighbors of  $i$ . We can rewrite this loss as

$$\mathcal{L}(\mathbf{Z}) = \|\mathbf{Z} - \mathbf{WZ}\|^2 = \mathbf{Z}^\top (\mathbf{I} - \mathbf{W})^\top (\mathbf{I} - \mathbf{W}) \mathbf{Z} \quad (20.118)$$

Thus the solution is given by the eigenvectors of  $(\mathbf{I} - \mathbf{W})^\top (\mathbf{I} - \mathbf{W})$  corresponding to the smallest nonzero eigenvalues, as shown in Sec. B.4.8.

See Fig. 20.37 for some the results on LLE on our running example. In this case, the results do not seem as good as those produced by Isompa. However, the method tends to be somewhat less sensitive to short-circuiting (noise).

### 20.4.9 Laplacian eigenmaps

In this section, we describe **Laplacian eigenmaps** or **spectral embedding** [BN01]. The idea is to compute a low-dimensional representation of the data in which the weighted distances between a datapoint and its  $K$  nearest neighbors are minimized. We put more weight on the first nearest neighbor than the second, etc. We give the details below.

#### 20.4.9.1 Using eigenvectors of the graph Laplacian to compute embeddings

We want to find embeddings which minimize

$$\mathcal{L}(\mathbf{Z}) = \sum_{(i,j) \in E} W_{i,j} \|\mathbf{z}_i - \mathbf{z}_j\|_2^2 \quad (20.119)$$

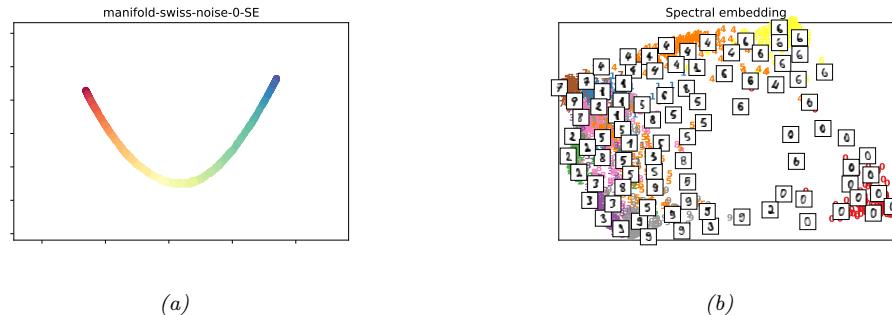


Figure 20.38: Laplacian eigenmaps applied to (a) Swiss roll. Generated by `manifold_swiss_sklearn.py`. (b) UCI digits. Generated by `manifold_digits_sklearn.py`.

Labelled graph	Degree matrix	Adjacency matrix	Laplacian matrix
	$\begin{pmatrix} 2 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 3 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 2 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 3 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 3 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$	$\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$	$\begin{pmatrix} 2 & -1 & 0 & 0 & -1 & 0 \\ -1 & 3 & -1 & 0 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 & 2 & -1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -1 & 3 & -1 & -1 \\ -1 & -1 & 0 & -1 & 3 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & -1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$

Figure 20.39: Illustration of the Laplacian matrix derived from an undirected graph. From [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Laplacian\\_matrix](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Laplacian_matrix). Used with kind permission of Wikipedia author AzaToth.

where  $W_{ij} = \exp(-\frac{1}{2\sigma^2} \|\mathbf{x}_i - \mathbf{x}_j\|_2^2)$  if  $i - j$  are neighbors in the KNN graph and 0 otherwise. We add the constraint  $\mathbf{Z}^\top \mathbf{D}\mathbf{Z} = \mathbf{I}$  to avoid the degenerate solution where  $\mathbf{Z} = \mathbf{0}$ , where  $\mathbf{D}$  is the diagonal weight matrix storing the degree of each node,  $D_{ii} = \sum_j W_{i,j}$ .

We can rewrite the above objective as follows:

$$\mathcal{L}(\mathbf{Z}) = \sum_{ij} W_{ij} (\|\mathbf{z}_i\|^2 + \|\mathbf{z}_j\|^2 - 2\mathbf{z}_i^\top \mathbf{z}_j) \quad (20.120)$$

$$= \sum_i D_{ii} \|\mathbf{z}_i\|^2 + \sum_j D_{jj} \|\mathbf{z}_j\|^2 - 2 \sum_{ij} W_{ij} \mathbf{z}_i^\top \mathbf{z}_j \quad (20.121)$$

$$= 2\mathbf{Z}^\top \mathbf{D}\mathbf{Z} - 2\mathbf{Z}^\top \mathbf{W}\mathbf{Z} = 2\mathbf{Z}^\top \mathbf{L}\mathbf{Z} \quad (20.122)$$

where  $\mathbf{L} = \mathbf{D} - \mathbf{W}$  is the graph Laplacian (see Sec. 20.4.9.2). One can show that minimizing this is equivalent to solving the eigenvalue problem  $\mathbf{L}\mathbf{z}_i = \lambda \mathbf{D}\mathbf{z}_i$  for the  $L$  smallest nonzero eigenvalues.

See Fig. 20.38 for the results of applying this method (with an RBF kernel) to our running example.

#### 20.4.9.2 What is the graph Laplacian?

We saw above that we can compute the eigenvectors of the graph Laplacian in order to learn a good embedding of the high dimensional points. In this section, we give some intuition as to why this

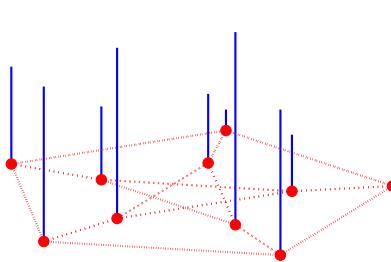


Figure 20.40: Illustration of a (positive) function defined on a graph. From Figure 1 of [Shu+13]. Used with kind permission of Pascal Frossard.

works.

Let  $\mathbf{W}$  be a symmetric weight matrix for a graph, where  $W_{ij} = W_{ji} \geq 0$ . Let  $\mathbf{D} = \text{diag}(d_i)$  be a diagonal matrix containing the weighted degree of each node,  $d_i = \sum_j w_{ij}$ . We define the **graph Laplacian** as follows:

$$\mathbf{L} \triangleq \mathbf{D} - \mathbf{W} \quad (20.123)$$

Thus the elements of  $\mathbf{L}$  are given by

$$L_{ij} = \begin{cases} d_i & \text{if } i = j \\ -1 & \text{if } i \neq j \text{ and } w_{ij} \neq 0 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases} \quad (20.124)$$

See Fig. 20.39 for an example of how to compute this.

Suppose we associate a value  $f_i \in \mathbb{R}$  with each node  $i$  in the graph (see Fig. 20.40 for example). Then we can use the graph Laplacian as a difference operator, to compute a discrete derivative of the function at a point:

$$(\mathbf{Lf})(i) = \sum_{j \in \text{nbr}_i} W_{ij}[f(i) - f(j)] \quad (20.125)$$

where  $\text{nbr}_i$  is the set of neighbors of node  $i$ . We can also compute an overall measure of “smoothness” of the function  $f$  by computing its **Dirichlet energy** as follows:

$$\mathbf{f}^T \mathbf{Lf} = \mathbf{f}^T \mathbf{Df} - \mathbf{f}^T \mathbf{Wf} = \sum_i d_i f_i^2 - \sum_{i,j} f_i f_j w_{ij} \quad (20.126)$$

$$= \frac{1}{2} \left( \sum_i d_i f_i^2 - 2 \sum_{i,j} f_i f_j w_{ij} + \sum_j d_j f_j^2 \right) = \frac{1}{2} \sum_{i,j} w_{ij} (f_i - f_j)^2 \quad (20.127)$$

By studying the eigenvalues and eigenvectors of the Laplacian matrix, we can determine various useful properties of the function. (Applying linear algebra to study the adjacency matrix of a graph,

or related matrices, is called **spectral graph theory** [Chu97].) For example, we see that  $\mathbf{L}$  is symmetric and positive semi-definite, since we have  $\mathbf{f}^T \mathbf{L} \mathbf{f} \geq 0$  for all  $\mathbf{f} \in \mathbb{R}^N$ , which follows from Eq. (20.127) due to the assumption that  $w_{ij} \geq 0$ . Consequently  $\mathbf{L}$  has  $N$  non-negative, real-valued eigenvalues,  $0 \leq \lambda_1 \leq \lambda_2 \leq \dots \leq \lambda_N$ . The corresponding eigenvectors form an orthogonal basis for the function  $f$  defined on the graph, in order of decreasing smoothness.

In Sec. 20.4.9.1, we discuss Laplacian eigenmaps, which is a way to learn low dimensional embeddings for high dimensional data vectors. The approach is to let  $z_{id} = f_i^d$  be the  $d$ 'th embedding dimension for input  $i$ , and then to find a basis for these functions (i.e., embedding of the points) that varies smoothly over the graph, thus respecting distance of the points in ambient space.

There are many other applications of the graph Laplacian in ML. For example, in Sec. 21.5.1, we discuss normalized cuts, which is a way to learn a clustering of high dimensional data vectors based on pairwise similarity; and [WTN19] discusses how to use the eigenvectors of the state transition matrix to learn representations for RL.

## 20.4.10 t-SNE

In this section, we describe a very popular nonconvex technique for learning low dimensional embeddings called **t-SNE** [MH08]. This extends the earlier **stochastic neighbor embedding** method of [HR03], so we first describe SNE, before describing the t-SNE extension.

### 20.4.10.1 Stochastic neighborhood embedding (SNE)

The basic idea in SNE is to convert high-dimensional Euclidean distances into conditional probabilities that represent similarities. More precisely, we define  $p_{j|i}$  to be the probability that point  $j$  would pick point  $i$  as its neighbor if neighbors were picked in proportion to their probability under a Gaussian centered at  $\mathbf{x}_i$ :

$$p_{j|i} = \frac{\exp(-\frac{1}{2\sigma_i^2} \|\mathbf{x}_i - \mathbf{x}_j\|^2)}{\sum_{k \neq i} \exp(-\frac{1}{2\sigma_i^2} \|\mathbf{x}_i - \mathbf{x}_k\|^2)} \quad (20.128)$$

Here  $\sigma_i^2$  is the variance for data point  $i$ , which can be used to “magnify” the scale of points in dense regions of input space, and diminish the scale in sparser regions. (We discuss how to estimate the length scales  $\sigma_i^2$  shortly).

Let  $\mathbf{z}_i$  be the low dimensional embedding representing  $\mathbf{x}_i$ . We define similarities in the low dimensional space in an analogous way:

$$q_{j|i} = \frac{\exp(-\|\mathbf{z}_i - \mathbf{z}_j\|^2)}{\sum_{k \neq i} \exp(-\|\mathbf{z}_i - \mathbf{z}_k\|^2)} \quad (20.129)$$

In this case, the variance is fixed to a constant; changing it would just rescale the learned map, and not change its topology.

If the embedding is a good one, then  $q_{j|i}$  should match  $p_{j|i}$ . Therefore, SNE defines the objective to be

$$\mathcal{L} = \sum_i \mathbb{KL}(P_i \| Q_i) = \sum_i \sum_j p_{j|i} \log \frac{p_{j|i}}{q_{j|i}} \quad (20.130)$$

where  $P_i$  is the conditional distribution over all other data points given  $\mathbf{x}_i$ ,  $Q_i$  is the conditional distribution over all other latent points given  $\mathbf{z}_i$ , and  $\text{KL}(P_i\|Q_i)$  is the KL divergence (Sec. 6.2) between the distributions.

Note that this is an asymmetric objective. In particular, there is a large cost if a small  $q_{j|i}$  is used to model a large  $p_{j|i}$ . This the objective will prefer to pull distant points together rather than push nearby points apart. We can get a better idea of the geometry by looking at the gradient for each embedding vector, which is given by

$$\nabla_{\mathbf{z}_i} \mathcal{L}(\mathbf{Z}) = 2 \sum_j (\mathbf{z}_j - \mathbf{z}_i)(p_{j|i} - q_{j|i} + p_{i|j} - q_{i|j}) \quad (20.131)$$

Thus points are pulled towards each other if the  $p$ 's are bigger than the  $q$ 's, and repelled if the  $q$ 's are bigger than the  $p$ 's.

Although this is an intuitively sensible objective, it is not convex. Nevertheless it can be minimized using SGD. In practice, it helps to add Gaussian noise to the embedding points, and to gradually anneal the amount of noise. [Hin13] recommends to “spend a long time at the noise level at which the global structure starts to form from the hot plasma of map points” before reducing it.<sup>7</sup>

#### 20.4.10.2 Symmetric SNE

There is a slightly simpler version of SNE that minimizes a single KL between the joint distribution  $P$  in high dimensional space and  $Q$  in low dimensional space:

$$\mathcal{L} = \text{KL}(P\|Q) = \sum_{i < j} p_{ij} \log \frac{p_{ij}}{q_{ij}} \quad (20.132)$$

This is called **symmetric SNE**.

The obvious way to define  $p_{ij}$  is to use

$$p_{ij} = \frac{\exp(-\frac{1}{2\sigma^2} \|\mathbf{x}_i - \mathbf{x}_j\|^2)}{\sum_{k < l} \exp(-\frac{1}{2\sigma^2} \|\mathbf{x}_k - \mathbf{x}_l\|^2)} \quad (20.133)$$

We can define  $q_{ij}$  similarly.

The corresponding gradient becomes

$$\nabla_{\mathbf{z}_i} \mathcal{L}(\mathbf{Z}) = 2 \sum_j (\mathbf{z}_j - \mathbf{z}_i)(p_{ij} - q_{ij}) \quad (20.134)$$

As before, points are pulled towards each other if the  $p$ 's are bigger than the  $q$ 's, and repelled if the  $q$ 's are bigger than the  $p$ 's.

Although symmetric SNE is slightly easier to implement, it loses the nice property of regular SNE that the data is its own optimal embedding if the embedding dimension  $L$  is set equal to the ambient dimension  $D$ . Nevertheless, the methods seems to give similar results in practice on real datasets where  $L \ll D$ .

<sup>7</sup>. See [Ros98; WF20] for a discussion of annealing and phase transitions in unsupervised learning. See also [CP10] for a discussion of the **elastic embedding** algorithm, which uses a homotopy method to more efficiently optimize a model that is related to both SNE and Laplacian eigenmaps.

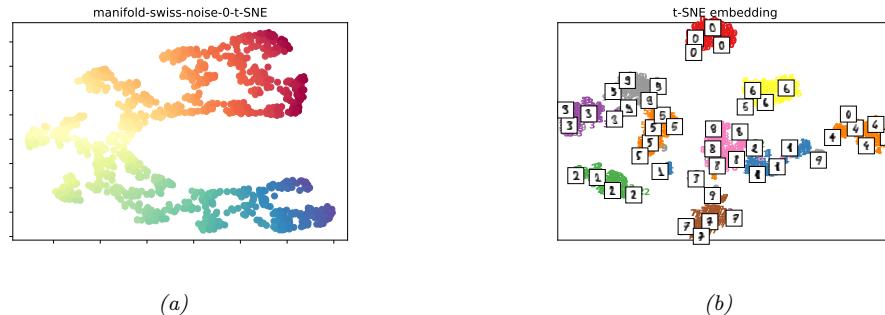


Figure 20.41: tSNE applied to (a) Swiss roll. Generated by `manifold_swiss_sklearn.py`. (b) UCI digits. Generated by `manifold_digits_sklearn.py`.

#### 20.4.10.3 t-distributed SNE

A fundamental problem with SNE and many other embedding techniques is that they tend to squeeze points that are relatively far away in the high dimensional space close together in the low dimensional (usually 2d) embedding space; this is called the **crowding problem**, and arises due to the use of squared errors (or Gaussian probabilities).

One solution to this is to use a probability distribution in latent space that has heavier tails, which eliminates the unwanted attractive forces between points that are relatively far in the high dimensional space. An obvious choice is the Student-t distribution (Sec. 3.4.1). In t-SNE, they set the degree of freedom parameter to  $\nu = 1$ , so the distribution becomes equivalent to a Cauchy:

$$q_{ij} = \frac{(1 + \|\mathbf{z}_i - \mathbf{z}_j\|^2)^{-1}}{\sum_{k < l} (1 + \|\mathbf{z}_k - \mathbf{z}_l\|^2)^{-1}} \quad (20.135)$$

We can use the same global KL objective as in Eq. (20.132). For t-SNE, the gradient turns out to be

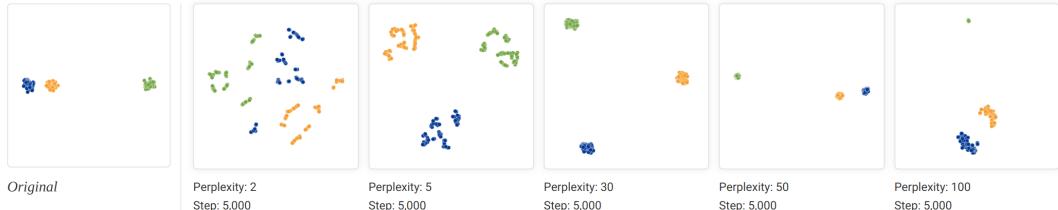
$$\nabla_{\mathbf{z}_i} \mathcal{L} = 4 \sum_j (p_{ij} - q_{ij})(\mathbf{z}_i - \mathbf{z}_j)(1 + \|\mathbf{z}_i - \mathbf{z}_j\|^2)^{-1} \quad (20.136)$$

The gradient for symmetric (Gaussian) SNE is the same, but lacks the  $(1 + \|\mathbf{z}_i - \mathbf{z}_j\|^2)^{-1}$  term. This term is useful because  $(1 + \|\mathbf{z}_i - \mathbf{z}_j\|^2)^{-1}$  acts like an inverse square law. This means that points in embedding space act like stars and galaxies, forming many well-separated clusters (galaxies) each of which has many stars tightly packed inside. This can be useful for separating different classes of data in an unsupervised way (see Fig. 20.41 for an example).

#### 20.4.10.4 Choosing the length scale

An important parameter in t-SNE is the local bandwidth  $\sigma_i^2$ . This is usually chosen so that  $P_i$  has a perplexity chosen by the user.<sup>8</sup> This can be interpreted as a smooth measure of the effective number

8. The perplexity is defined to be  $2^{\mathbb{H}(P_i)}$ , where  $\mathbb{H}(P_i) = -\sum_j p_{j|i} \log_2 p_{j|i}$  is the entropy; see Sec. 6.1.5 for details. A big radius around each point (large value of  $\sigma_i$ ) will result in a high entropy, and thus high perplexity.



*Figure 20.42: Illustration of the effect of changing the perplexity parameter when t-SNE is applied to some 2d data. From [WVJ16]. See <http://distill.pub/2016/misread-tsne> for an animated version of these figures. Used with kind permission of Martin Wattenberg.*

of neighbors.

Unfortunately, the results of t-SNE can be quite sensitive to the perplexity parameter, so it is wise to run the algorithm with many different values. This is illustrated in Fig. 20.42. The input data is 2d, so there is no distortion generating by mapping to a 2d latent space. If the perplexity is too small, the method tends to find structure within each cluster which is not truly present. At perplexity 30 (the default for scikit-learn), the clusters seem equi-distant in embedding space, even though some are closer than others in the data space. Many other caveats in interpreting t-SNE plots can be found in [WVJ16].

#### 20.4.10.5 Computational issues

The naive implementation of t-SNE takes  $O(N^2)$  time, as can be seen from the gradient term in Eq. (20.136). A faster version can be created by leveraging an analogy to N-body simulation in physics. In particular, the gradient requires computing the force of  $N$  points on each of  $N$  points. However, points that are far away can be grouped into clusters (computationally speaking), and their effective force can be approximated by a few representative points per cluster. We can then approximate the forces using the **Barnes-Hut algorithm** [BH86], which takes  $O(N \log N)$  time, as proposed in [Maa14]. Unfortunately, this only works well for low dimensional embeddings, such as  $L = 2$ .

#### 20.4.10.6 UMAP

Various extensions of tSNE have been proposed, that try to improve its speed, the quality of the embedding space, or the ability to embed into more than 2 dimensions.

One popular recent extension is called **UMAP** (which stands for “Uniform Manifold Approximation and Projection”), was proposed in [MHM18]. At a high level, this is similar to tSNE, but it tends to preserve global structure better, and it is much faster. This makes it easier to try multiple values of the hyperparameters. For an interactive tutorial on UMAP, and a comparison to tSNE, see [CP19].

## 20.5 Exercises

### Exercise 20.1 [EM for FA]

Derive the EM updates for the factor analysis model. For simplicity, you can optionally assume  $\mu = \mathbf{0}$  is fixed.

### Exercise 20.2 [EM for mixFA]

Derive the EM updates for a mixture of factor analysers.

### Exercise 20.3 [Deriving the second principal component]

a. Let

$$J(\mathbf{v}_2, \mathbf{z}_2) = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n (\mathbf{x}_i - z_{i1}\mathbf{v}_1 - z_{i2}\mathbf{v}_2)^T (\mathbf{x}_i - z_{i1}\mathbf{v}_1 - z_{i2}\mathbf{v}_2) \quad (20.137)$$

Show that  $\frac{\partial J}{\partial \mathbf{z}_2} = 0$  yields  $z_{i2} = \mathbf{v}_2^T \mathbf{x}_i$ .

b. Show that the value of  $\mathbf{v}_2$  that minimizes

$$\tilde{J}(\mathbf{v}_2) = -\mathbf{v}_2^T \mathbf{C} \mathbf{v}_2 + \lambda_2(\mathbf{v}_2^T \mathbf{v}_2 - 1) + \lambda_{12}(\mathbf{v}_2^T \mathbf{v}_1 - 0) \quad (20.138)$$

is given by the eigenvector of  $\mathbf{C}$  with the second largest eigenvalue. Hint: recall that  $\mathbf{C}\mathbf{v}_1 = \lambda_1\mathbf{v}_1$  and  $\frac{\partial \mathbf{x}^T \mathbf{A} \mathbf{x}}{\partial \mathbf{x}} = (\mathbf{A} + \mathbf{A}^T)\mathbf{x}$ .

### Exercise 20.4 [Deriving the residual error for PCA]

a. Prove that

$$\|\mathbf{x}_i - \sum_{j=1}^K z_{ij}\mathbf{v}_j\|^2 = \mathbf{x}_i^T \mathbf{x}_i - \sum_{j=1}^K \mathbf{v}_j^T \mathbf{x}_i \mathbf{x}_i^T \mathbf{v}_j \quad (20.139)$$

Hint: first consider the case  $K = 2$ . Use the fact that  $\mathbf{v}_j^T \mathbf{v}_j = 1$  and  $\mathbf{v}_j^T \mathbf{v}_k = 0$  for  $k \neq j$ . Also, recall  $z_{ij} = \mathbf{x}_i^T \mathbf{v}_j$ .

b. Now show that

$$J_K \triangleq \frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n \left( \mathbf{x}_i^T \mathbf{x}_i - \sum_{j=1}^K \mathbf{v}_j^T \mathbf{x}_i \mathbf{x}_i^T \mathbf{v}_j \right) = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n \mathbf{x}_i^T \mathbf{x}_i - \sum_{j=1}^K \lambda_j \quad (20.140)$$

Hint: recall  $\mathbf{v}_j^T \mathbf{C} \mathbf{v}_j = \lambda_j \mathbf{v}_j^T \mathbf{v}_j = \lambda_j$ .

c. If  $K = d$  there is no truncation, so  $J_d = 0$ . Use this to show that the error from only using  $K < d$  terms is given by

$$J_K = \sum_{j=K+1}^d \lambda_j \quad (20.141)$$

Hint: partition the sum  $\sum_{j=1}^d \lambda_j$  into  $\sum_{j=1}^K \lambda_j$  and  $\sum_{j=K+1}^d \lambda_j$ .

### Exercise 20.5 [PCA via successive deflation]

Let  $\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \dots, \mathbf{v}_k$  be the first  $k$  eigenvectors with largest eigenvalues of  $\mathbf{C} = \frac{1}{n} \mathbf{X}^T \mathbf{X}$ , i.e., the principal basis vectors. These satisfy

$$\mathbf{v}_j^T \mathbf{v}_k = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } j \neq k \\ 1 & \text{if } j = k \end{cases} \quad (20.142)$$

We will construct a method for finding the  $\mathbf{v}_j$  sequentially.

As we showed in class,  $\mathbf{v}_1$  is the first principal eigenvector of  $\mathbf{C}$ , and satisfies  $\mathbf{C}\mathbf{v}_1 = \lambda_1\mathbf{v}_1$ . Now define  $\tilde{\mathbf{x}}_i$  as the orthogonal projection of  $\mathbf{x}_i$  onto the space orthogonal to  $\mathbf{v}_1$ :

$$\tilde{\mathbf{x}}_i = \mathbf{P}_{\perp \mathbf{v}_1} \mathbf{x}_i = (\mathbf{I} - \mathbf{v}_1\mathbf{v}_1^T)\mathbf{x}_i \quad (20.143)$$

Define  $\tilde{\mathbf{X}} = [\tilde{\mathbf{x}}_1; \dots; \tilde{\mathbf{x}}_n]$  as the **deflated matrix** of rank  $d - 1$ , which is obtained by removing from the  $d$  dimensional data the component that lies in the direction of the first principal direction:

$$\tilde{\mathbf{X}} = (\mathbf{I} - \mathbf{v}_1\mathbf{v}_1^T)^T \mathbf{X} = (\mathbf{I} - \mathbf{v}_1\mathbf{v}_1^T)\mathbf{X} \quad (20.144)$$

- a. Using the facts that  $\mathbf{X}^T \mathbf{X} \mathbf{v}_1 = n\lambda_1 \mathbf{v}_1$  (and hence  $\mathbf{v}_1^T \mathbf{X}^T \mathbf{X} = n\lambda_1 \mathbf{v}_1^T$ ) and  $\mathbf{v}_1^T \mathbf{v}_1 = 1$ , show that the covariance of the deflated matrix is given by

$$\tilde{\mathbf{C}} \triangleq \frac{1}{n} \tilde{\mathbf{X}}^T \tilde{\mathbf{X}} = \frac{1}{n} \mathbf{X}^T \mathbf{X} - \lambda_1 \mathbf{v}_1 \mathbf{v}_1^T \quad (20.145)$$

- b. Let  $\mathbf{u}$  be the principal eigenvector of  $\tilde{\mathbf{C}}$ . Explain why  $\mathbf{u} = \mathbf{v}_2$ . (You may assume  $\mathbf{u}$  is unit norm.)  
c. Suppose we have a simple method for finding the leading eigenvector and eigenvalue of a pd matrix, denoted by  $[\lambda, \mathbf{u}] = f(\mathbf{C})$ . Write some pseudo code for finding the first  $K$  principal basis vectors of  $\mathbf{X}$  that only uses the special  $f$  function and simple vector arithmetic, i.e., your code should not use SVD or the `eig` function. Hint: this should be a simple iterative routine that takes 2–3 lines to write. The input is  $\mathbf{C}$ ,  $K$  and the function  $f$ , the output should be  $\mathbf{v}_j$  and  $\lambda_j$  for  $j = 1 : K$ .

#### Exercise 20.6 [PPCA variance terms]

Recall that in the PPCA model,  $\mathbf{C} = \mathbf{W}\mathbf{W}^T + \sigma^2\mathbf{I}$ . We will show that this model correctly captures the variance of the data along the principal axes, and approximates the variance in all the remaining directions with a single average value  $\sigma^2$ .

Consider the variance of the predictive distribution  $p(\mathbf{x})$  along some direction specified by the unit vector  $\mathbf{v}$ , where  $\mathbf{v}^T \mathbf{v} = 1$ , which is given by  $\mathbf{v}^T \mathbf{C} \mathbf{v}$ .

- a. First suppose  $\mathbf{v}$  is orthogonal to the principal subspace. and hence  $\mathbf{v}^T \mathbf{U} = \mathbf{0}$ . Show that  $\mathbf{v}^T \mathbf{C} \mathbf{v} = \sigma^2$ .  
b. Now suppose  $\mathbf{v}$  is parallel to the principal subspace. and hence  $\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{u}_i$  for some eigenvector  $\mathbf{u}_i$ . Show that  $\mathbf{v}^T \mathbf{C} \mathbf{v} = (\lambda_i - \sigma^2) + \sigma^2 = \lambda_i$ .

#### Exercise 20.7 [Posterior inference in PPCA]

Derive  $p(\mathbf{z}_n | \mathbf{x}_n)$  for the PPCA model.

#### Exercise 20.8 [Imputation in a FA model]

Derive an expression for  $p(\mathbf{x}_h | \mathbf{x}_v, \boldsymbol{\theta})$  for a FA model, where  $\mathbf{x} = (\mathbf{x}_h, \mathbf{x}_v)$  is a partition of the data vector.

#### Exercise 20.9 [Efficiently evaluating the PPCA density]

Derive an expression for  $p(\mathbf{x} | \hat{\mathbf{W}}, \hat{\sigma}^2)$  for the PPCA model based on plugging in the MLEs and using the matrix inversion lemma.

# 21 Clustering

## 21.1 Introduction

**Clustering** is a very common form of unsupervised learning. There are two main kinds of methods. In the first approach, the input is a set of data samples  $\mathcal{D} = \{\mathbf{x}_n : n = 1 : N\}$ , where  $\mathbf{x}_n \in \mathcal{X}$ , where typically  $\mathcal{X} = \mathbb{R}^D$ . In the second approach, the input is an  $N \times N$  pairwise dissimilarity metric  $D_{ij} \geq 0$ . In both cases, the goal is to assign similar data points to the same cluster.

As is often the case with unsupervised learning, it is hard to evaluate the quality of a clustering algorithm. If we have labeled data for some of the data, we can use the similarity (or equality) between the labels of two data points as a metric for determining if the two inputs “should” be assigned to the same cluster or not. If we don’t have labels, but the method is based on a generative model of the data, we can use log likelihood as a metric. We will see examples of both approaches below.

### 21.1.1 Evaluating the output of clustering methods

The validation of clustering structures is the most difficult and frustrating part of cluster analysis. Without a strong effort in this direction, cluster analysis will remain a black art accessible only to those true believers who have experience and great courage. — Jain and Dubes [JD88]

Clustering is an unsupervised learning technique, so it is hard to evaluate the quality of the output of any given method [Kle02; LWG12]. If we use probabilistic models, we can always evaluate the likelihood of the data, but this has two drawbacks: first, it does not directly assess any clustering that is discovered by the model; and second, it does not apply to non-probabilistic methods. So now we discuss some performance measures not based on likelihood.

Intuitively, the goal of clustering is to assign points that are similar to the same cluster, and to ensure that points that are dissimilar are in different clusters. There are several ways of measuring these quantities e.g., see [JD88; KR90]. However, these internal criteria may be of limited use. An alternative is to rely on some external form of data with which to validate the method. For example, if we have labels for each object, then we can assume that objects with the same label are similar. We can then use the metrics we discuss below to quantify the quality of the clusters. (If we do not have labels, but we have a reference clustering, we can derive labels from that clustering.)

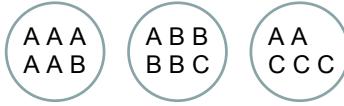


Figure 21.1: Three clusters with labeled objects inside.

### 21.1.1.1 Purity

Let  $N_{ij}$  be the number of objects in cluster  $i$  that belong to class  $j$ , and let  $N_i = \sum_{j=1}^C N_{ij}$  be the total number of objects in cluster  $i$ . Define  $p_{ij} = N_{ij}/N_i$ ; this is the empirical distribution over class labels for cluster  $i$ . We define the **purity** of a cluster as  $p_i \triangleq \max_j p_{ij}$ , and the overall purity of a clustering as

$$\text{purity} \triangleq \sum_i \frac{N_i}{N} p_i \quad (21.1)$$

For example, in Figure 21.1, we have that the purity is

$$\frac{6}{17} \frac{5}{6} + \frac{6}{17} \frac{4}{6} + \frac{5}{17} \frac{3}{5} = \frac{5+4+3}{17} = 0.71 \quad (21.2)$$

The purity ranges between 0 (bad) and 1 (good). However, we can trivially achieve a purity of 1 by putting each object into its own cluster, so this measure does not penalize for the number of clusters.

### 21.1.1.2 Rand index

Let  $U = \{u_1, \dots, u_R\}$  and  $V = \{v_1, \dots, V_C\}$  be two different partitions of the  $N$  data points. For example,  $U$  might be the estimated clustering and  $V$  is reference clustering derived from the class labels. Now define a  $2 \times 2$  contingency table, containing the following numbers:  $TP$  is the number of pairs that are in the same cluster in both  $U$  and  $V$  (true positives);  $TN$  is the number of pairs that are in the different clusters in both  $U$  and  $V$  (true negatives);  $FN$  is the number of pairs that are in the different clusters in  $U$  but the same cluster in  $V$  (false negatives); and  $FP$  is the number of pairs that are in the same cluster in  $U$  but different clusters in  $V$  (false positives). A common summary statistic is the **Rand index**:

$$R \triangleq \frac{TP + TN}{TP + FP + FN + TN} \quad (21.3)$$

This can be interpreted as the fraction of clustering decisions that are correct. Clearly  $0 \leq R \leq 1$ .

For example, consider Figure 21.1. The three clusters contain 6, 6 and 5 points, so the number of “positives” (i.e., pairs of objects put in the same cluster, regardless of label) is

$$TP + FP = \binom{6}{2} + \binom{6}{2} + \binom{5}{2} = 40 \quad (21.4)$$

Of these, the number of true positives is given by

$$TP = \binom{5}{2} + \binom{4}{2} + \binom{3}{2} + \binom{2}{2} = 20 \quad (21.5)$$

where the last two terms come from cluster 3: there are  $\binom{3}{2}$  pairs labeled  $C$  and  $\binom{2}{2}$  pairs labeled  $A$ . So  $FP = 40 - 20 = 20$ . Similarly, one can show  $FN = 24$  and  $TN = 72$ . So the Rand index is  $(20 + 72)/(20 + 20 + 24 + 72) = 0.68$ .

The Rand index only achieves its lower bound of 0 if  $TP = TN = 0$ , which is a rare event. One can define an **adjusted Rand index** [HA85] as follows:

$$AR \triangleq \frac{\text{index} - \text{expected index}}{\max \text{index} - \text{expected index}} \quad (21.6)$$

Here the model of randomness is based on using the generalized hyper-geometric distribution, i.e., the two partitions are picked at random subject to having the original number of classes and objects in each, and then the expected value of  $TP + TN$  is computed. This model can be used to compute the statistical significance of the Rand index.

The Rand index weights false positives and false negatives equally. Various other summary statistics for binary decision problems, such as the F-score (Section 8.1.4), can also be used.

#### 21.1.1.3 Mutual information

Another way to measure cluster quality is to compute the mutual information between two candidate partitions  $U$  and  $V$ , as proposed in [VD99]. To do this, let  $p_{UV}(i, j) = \frac{|u_i \cap v_j|}{N}$  be the probability that a randomly chosen object belongs to cluster  $u_i$  in  $U$  and  $v_j$  in  $V$ . Also, let  $p_U(i) = |u_i|/N$  be the probability that a randomly chosen object belongs to cluster  $u_i$  in  $U$ ; define  $p_V(j) = |v_j|/N$  similarly. Then we have

$$\mathbb{I}(U, V) = \sum_{i=1}^R \sum_{j=1}^C p_{UV}(i, j) \log \frac{p_{UV}(i, j)}{p_U(i)p_V(j)} \quad (21.7)$$

This lies between 0 and  $\min\{\mathbb{H} U, \mathbb{H} V\}$ . Unfortunately, the maximum value can be achieved by using lots of small clusters, which have low entropy. To compensate for this, we can use the **normalized mutual information**,

$$NMI(U, V) \triangleq \frac{\mathbb{I}(U, V)}{(\mathbb{H} U + \mathbb{H} V)/2} \quad (21.8)$$

This lies between 0 and 1. A version of this that is adjusted for chance (under a particular random data model) is described in [VEB09]. Another variant, called **variation of information**, is described in [Mei05].

## 21.2 Hierarchical agglomerative clustering

A common form of clustering is known as **hierarchical agglomerative clustering** or **HAC**. The input to the algorithm is an  $N \times N$  dissimilarity matrix  $D_{ij} \geq 0$ , and the output is a tree structure in which groups  $i$  and  $j$  with small disimilarity are grouped together in a hierarchical fashion.

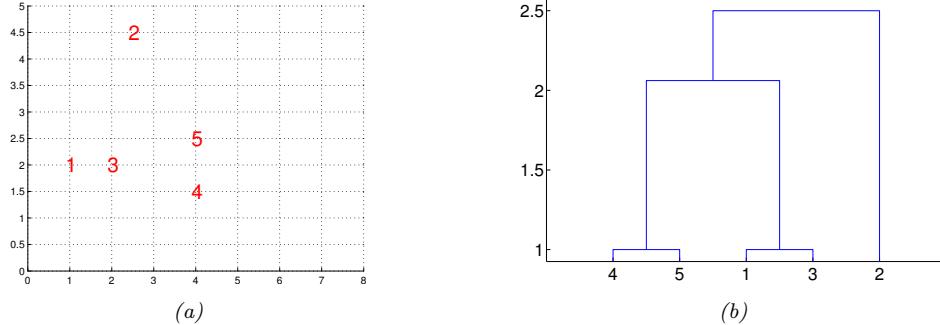


Figure 21.2: (a) An example of single link clustering using city block distance. Pairs (1,3) and (4,5) are both distance 1 apart, so get merged first. (b) The resulting dendrogram. Adapted from Figure 7.5 of [Alp04]. Generated by `agglomDemo.m`.

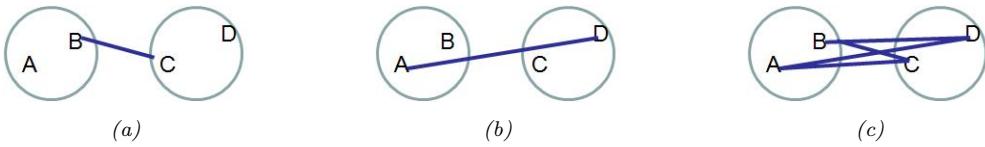


Figure 21.3: Illustration of (a) Single linkage. (b) Complete linkage. (c) Average linkage.

For example, consider the set of 5 inputs points in Fig. 21.2(a),  $\mathbf{x}_n \in \mathbb{R}^2$ . We will use **city block distance** between the points to define the dissimilarity, i.e.,

$$d_{ij} = \sum_{k=1}^2 |x_{ik} - x_{jk}| \quad (21.9)$$

We start with a tree with  $N$  leaves, each corresponding to a cluster with a single data point. Next we compute the pair of points that are closest, and merge them. We see that (1,3) and (4,5) are both distance 1 apart, so they get merged first. We then measure the dissimilarity between the sets {1, 3}, {4, 5} and {2} using some measure (details below), and group them, and repeat. The result is a binary tree known as a **dendrogram**, as shown in Fig. 21.2(b). By cutting this tree at different heights, we can induce a different number of (nested) clusters. We give more details below.

### 21.2.1 The algorithm

Agglomerative clustering starts with  $N$  groups, each initially containing one object, and then at each step it merges the two most similar groups until there is a single group, containing all the data. See Algorithm 9 for the pseudocode. Since picking the two most similar clusters to merge takes  $O(N^2)$  time, and there are  $O(N)$  steps in the algorithm, the total running time is  $O(N^3)$ . However, by using a priority queue, this can be reduced to  $O(N^2 \log N)$  (see e.g., [MRS08, ch. 17] for details).

There are actually three variants of agglomerative clustering, depending on how we define the dissimilarity between groups of objects. We give the details below.

**Algorithm 9:** Agglomerative clustering

---

```

1 Initialize clusters as singletons: for  $i \leftarrow 1$  to  $n$  do  $C_i \leftarrow \{i\}$ ;
2 ;
3 Initialize set of clusters available for merging:  $S \leftarrow \{1, \dots, n\}$ ; repeat
4   Pick 2 most similar clusters to merge:  $(j, k) \leftarrow \arg \min_{j, k \in S} d_{j, k}$ ;
5   Create new cluster  $C_\ell \leftarrow C_j \cup C_k$ ;
6   Mark  $j$  and  $k$  as unavailable:  $S \leftarrow S \setminus \{j, k\}$ ;
7   if  $C_\ell \neq \{1, \dots, n\}$  then
8     Mark  $\ell$  as available,  $S \leftarrow S \cup \{\ell\}$ ;
9   foreach  $i \in S$  do
10    Update dissimilarity matrix  $d(i, \ell)$ ;
11 until no more clusters are available for merging;

```

---

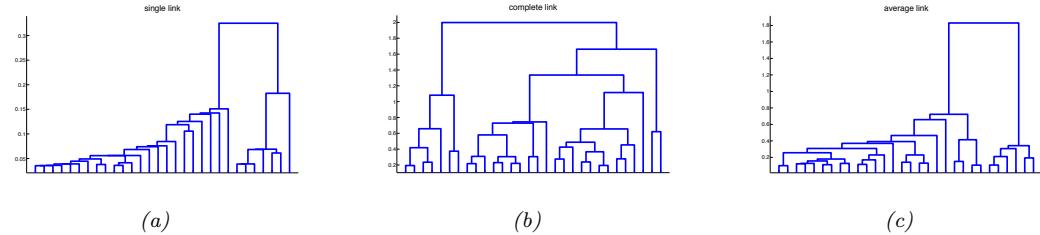


Figure 21.4: Hierarchical clustering of yeast gene expression data. (a) Single linkage. (b) Complete linkage. (c) Average linkage. Generated by `hclustYeastDemo.m`.

### 21.2.1.1 Single link

In **single link clustering**, also called **nearest neighbor clustering**, the distance between two groups  $G$  and  $H$  is defined as the distance between the two closest members of each group:

$$d_{SL}(G, H) = \min_{i \in G, i' \in H} d_{i, i'} \quad (21.10)$$

See Figure 21.3(a).

The tree built using single link clustering is a minimum spanning tree of the data, which is a tree that connects all the objects in a way that minimizes the sum of the edge weights (distances). To see this, note that when we merge two clusters, we connect together the two closest members of the clusters; this adds an edge between the corresponding nodes, and this is guaranteed to be the “lightest weight” edge joining these two clusters. And once two clusters have been merged, they will never be considered again, so we cannot create cycles. As a consequence of this, we can actually implement single link clustering in  $O(N^2)$  time, whereas the other variants take  $O(N^3)$  time.

### 21.2.1.2 Complete link

In **complete link clustering**, also called **furthest neighbor clustering**, the distance between two groups is defined as the distance between the two most distant pairs:

$$d_{CL}(G, H) = \max_{i \in G, i' \in H} d_{i,i'} \quad (21.11)$$

See Figure 21.3(b).

Single linkage only requires that a single pair of objects be close for the two groups to be considered close together, regardless of the similarity of the other members of the group. Thus clusters can be formed that violate the **compactness** property, which says that all the observations within a group should be similar to each other. In particular if we define the **diameter** of a group as the largest dissimilarity of its members,  $d_G = \max_{i \in G, i' \in G} d_{i,i'}$ , then we can see that single linkage can produce clusters with large diameters. Complete linkage represents the opposite extreme: two groups are considered close only if all of the observations in their union are relatively similar. This will tend to produce clusterings with small diameter, i.e., compact clusters. (Compare Fig. 21.4(a) with Fig. 21.4(b).)

### 21.2.1.3 Average link

In practice, the preferred method is **average link clustering**, which measures the average distance between all pairs:

$$d_{avg}(G, H) = \frac{1}{n_G n_H} \sum_{i \in G} \sum_{i' \in H} d_{i,i'} \quad (21.12)$$

where  $n_G$  and  $n_H$  are the number of elements in groups  $G$  and  $H$ . See Figure 21.3(c).

Average link clustering represents a compromise between single and complete link clustering. It tends to produce relatively compact clusters that are relatively far apart. (See Fig. 21.4(c).) However, since it involves averaging of the  $d_{i,i'}$ 's, any change to the measurement scale can change the result. In contrast, single linkage and complete linkage are invariant to monotonic transformations of  $d_{i,i'}$ , since they leave the relative ordering the same.

## 21.2.2 Example

Suppose we have a set of time series measurements of the expression levels for  $N = 300$  genes at  $T = 7$  points. Thus each data sample is a vector  $\mathbf{x}_n \in \mathbb{R}^7$ . See Fig. 21.5 for a visualization of the data. We see that there are several kinds of genes, such as those whose expression level goes up monotonically over time (in response to a given stimulus), those whose expression level goes down monotonically, and those with more complex response patterns.

Suppose we use Euclidean distance to compute a pairwise dissimilarity matrix,  $\mathbf{D} \in \mathbb{R}^{300 \times 300}$ , and apply HAC using average linkage. We get the dendrogram in Fig. 21.6(a). If we cut the tree at a certain height, we get the 16 clusters shown in Figure 21.6(b). The time series assigned to each cluster do indeed “look like” each other.

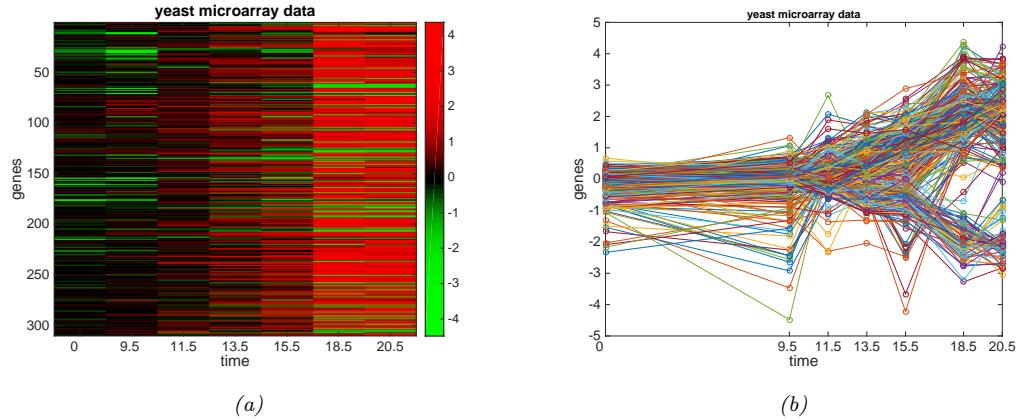


Figure 21.5: (a) Some yeast gene expression data plotted as a heat map. (b) Same data plotted as a time series. Generated by `kmeansYeastDemo.m`.

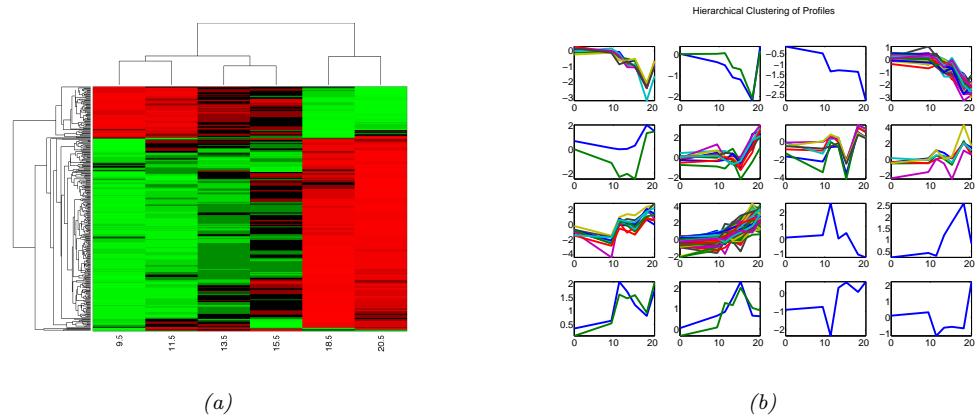


Figure 21.6: Hierarchical clustering applied to the yeast gene expression data. (a) The rows are permuted according to a hierarchical clustering scheme (average link agglomerative clustering), in order to bring similar rows close together. (b) 16 clusters induced by cutting the average linkage tree at a certain height. Generated by `hclustYeastDemo.m`.

## 21.3 K means clustering

There are several problems with hierarchical agglomerative clustering (Sec. 21.2). First, it takes  $O(N^3)$  time (for the average link method), making it hard to apply to big datasets. Second, it assumes that a dissimilarity matrix has already been computed, whereas the notion of “similarity” is often unclear and needs to be learned. Third, it is just an algorithm, not a model, and so it is hard to evaluate how good it is. That is, there is no clear objective that it is optimizing.

In this section, we discuss the **K-means algorithm** [Mac67; Llo82], which addresses these issues.

In particular, it runs in  $O(N)$  time, it computes similarity in terms of Euclidean distance to learned cluster centers  $\mu_k \in \mathbb{R}^D$ , and it optimizes a well-defined cost function, as we will see.

### 21.3.1 The algorithm

We assume there are  $K$  cluster centers  $\mu_k \in \mathbb{R}^D$ , so we can cluster the data by assigning each data point  $\mathbf{x}_n \in \mathbb{R}^D$  to its closest center:

$$z_n^* = \arg \min_k \|\mathbf{x}_n - \mu_k\|_2^2 \quad (21.13)$$

Of course, we don't know the cluster centers, but we can estimate them by computing the average value of all points assigned to them:

$$\mu_k = \frac{1}{N_k} \sum_{n:z_n=k} \mathbf{x}_n \quad (21.14)$$

We can then iterate these steps to convergence.

More formally, we can view this as finding a local minimum of the following cost function.

$$J(\mathbf{M}, \mathbf{Z}) = \sum_{n=1}^N \|\mathbf{x}_n - \mu_{z_n}\|^2 = \|\mathbf{X} - \mathbf{Z}\mathbf{M}^\top\|_F^2 \quad (21.15)$$

where  $\mathbf{X} \in \mathbb{R}^{N \times D}$ ,  $\mathbf{Z} \in [0, 1]^{N \times K}$ , and  $\mathbf{M} \in \mathbb{R}^{D \times K}$  contains the cluster centers  $\mu_k$  in its columns. K-means optimizes this using alternating minimization. (This is closely related to the EM algorithm for GMMs, as we discuss in Sec. 21.4.1.1.)

### 21.3.2 Examples

In this section, we give some examples of K-means clustering.

#### 21.3.2.1 Clustering points in the 2d plane

Fig. 21.7 gives an illustration of K-means clustering applied to some points in the 2d plane. We see that the method induces a **Voronoi tessellation** of the points. The resulting clustering is sensitive to the initialization. Indeed, we see that the lower quality clustering on the right has higher distortion. By default, sklearn uses 10 random restarts (combined with the K-means++ initialization described in Sec. 21.3.4) and returns the clustering with lowest distortion. (In sklearn, the distortion is called the “inertia”.)

#### 21.3.2.2 Clustering gene expression time series data from yeast cells

In Fig. 21.8, we show the result of applying K-means clustering with  $K = 16$  to the  $300 \times 7$  yeast time series matrix shown in Fig. 21.5. We see that time series that “look similar” to each other are assigned to the same cluster. We also see that the centroid of each cluster is a reasonable summary of all the data points assigned to that cluster. Finally we notice that group 6 was not used, since no points were assigned to it. However, this is just an accident of the initialization process, and we are not guaranteed to get the same clustering, or number of clusters, if we repeat the algorithm. (We discuss good ways to initialize the method in Sec. 21.3.4, and ways to choose  $K$  in Sec. 21.3.7.)

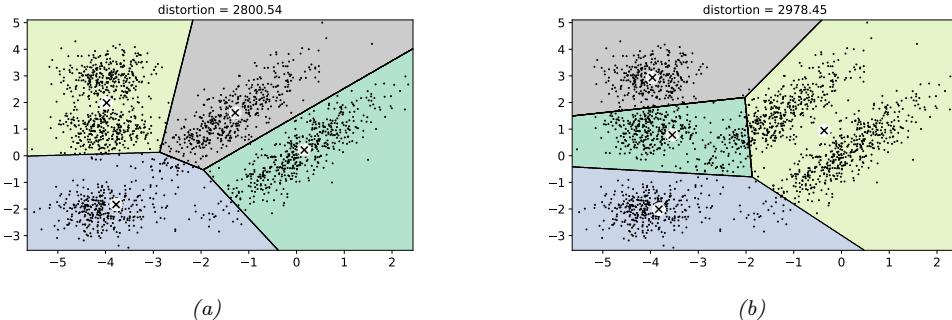


Figure 21.7: Illustration of K-means clustering in 2d. We show the result of using two different random seeds. Adapted from Figure 9.5 of [Gér19]. Generated by `kmeans_voronoi.py`.

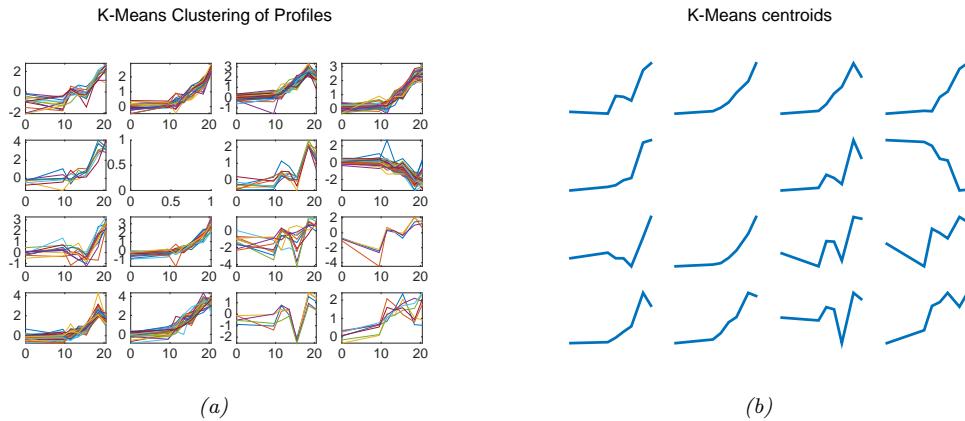


Figure 21.8: Clustering the yeast data from Fig. 21.5 using K-means clustering with  $K = 16$ . (a) Visualizing all the time series assigned to each cluster. (d) Visualizing the 16 cluster centers as prototypical time series. Generated by `kmeansYeastDemo.m`.

### 21.3.3 Vector quantization

Suppose we want to perform lossy compression of some real-valued vectors,  $\mathbf{x}_n \in \mathbb{R}^D$ . A very simple approach to this is to use **vector quantization** or **VQ**. The basic idea is to replace each real-valued vector  $\mathbf{x}_n \in \mathbb{R}^D$  with a discrete symbol  $z_n \in \{1, \dots, K\}$ , which is an index into a **codebook** of  $K$  prototypes,  $\boldsymbol{\mu}_k \in \mathbb{R}^D$ . Each data vector is encoded by using the index of the most similar prototype, where similarity is measured in terms of Euclidean distance:

$$\text{encode}(\mathbf{x}_n) = \arg \min_k \|\mathbf{x}_n - \boldsymbol{\mu}_k\|^2 \quad (21.16)$$

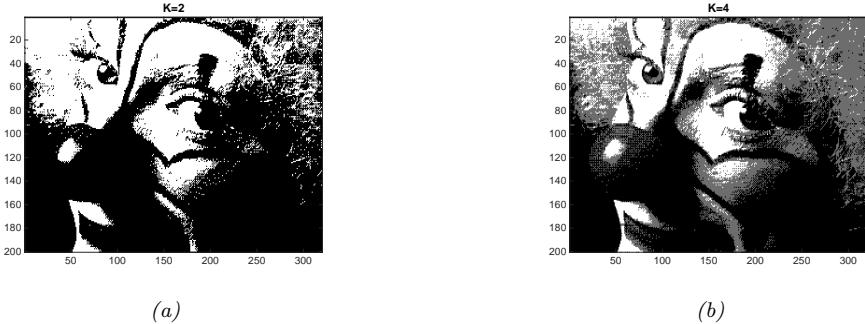


Figure 21.9: An image compressed using vector quantization with a codebook of size  $K$ . (a)  $K = 2$ . (b)  $K = 4$ . Generated by `vqDemo.m`.

We can define a cost function that measures the quality of a codebook by computing the **reconstruction error** or **distortion** it induces:

$$J \triangleq \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^N \|\mathbf{x}_n - \text{decode}(\text{encode}(\mathbf{x}_n))\|^2 = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^N \|\mathbf{x}_n - \boldsymbol{\mu}_{z_n}\|^2 \quad (21.17)$$

where  $\text{decode}(k) = \boldsymbol{\mu}_k$ . This is exactly the cost function that is minimized by the K-means algorithm.

Of course, we can achieve zero distortion if we assign one prototype to every data vector, by using  $K = N$  and assigning  $\boldsymbol{\mu}_n = \mathbf{x}_n$ . However, this does not compress the data at all. In particular, it takes  $O(NDB)$  bits, where  $N$  is the number of real-valued data vectors, each of length  $D$ , and  $B$  is the number of bits needed to represent a real-valued scalar (the quantization accuracy to represent each  $\mathbf{x}_n$ ).

We can do better by detecting similar vectors in the data, creating prototypes or centroids for them, and then representing the data as deviations from these prototypes. This reduce the space requirement to  $O(N \log_2 K + KDB)$  bits. The  $O(N \log_2 K)$  term arises because each of the  $N$  data vectors needs to specify which of the  $K$  codewords it is using; and the  $O(KDB)$  term arises because we have to store each codebook entry, each of which is a  $D$ -dimensional vector. When  $N$  is large, the first term dominates the second, so we can approximate the **rate** of the encoding scheme (number of bits needed per object) as  $O(\log_2 K)$ , which is typically much less than  $O(DB)$ .

One application of VQ is to image compression. Consider the  $200 \times 320$  pixel image in Fig. 21.9; we will treat this as a set of  $N = 64,000$  scalars. If we use one byte to represent each pixel (a gray-scale intensity of 0 to 255), then  $B = 8$ , so we need  $NB = 512,000$  bits to represent the image in uncompressed form. For the compressed image, we need  $O(N \log_2 K)$  bits. For  $K = 4$ , this is about 128kb, a factor of 4 compression, yet it results in negligible perceptual loss (see Fig. 21.9(b)).

Greater compression could be achieved if we modelled spatial correlation between the pixels, e.g., if we encoded 5x5 blocks (as used by JPEG). This is because the residual errors (differences from the model's predictions) would be smaller, and would take fewer bits to encode. This shows the deep connection between data compression and density estimation. See the sequel to this book, [Mur22], for more information.

### 21.3.4 The K-means++ algorithm

K-means is optimizing a non-convex objective, and hence needs to be initialized carefully. A simple approach is to pick  $K$  data points at random, and to use these as the initial values for  $\mu_k$ . We can improve on this by using **multiple restarts**, i.e., we run the algorithm multiple times from different random starting points, and then pick the best solution. However, this can be slow.

A better approach is to pick the centers sequentially so as to try to “cover” the data. That is, we pick the initial point uniformly at random, and then each subsequent point is picked from the remaining points, with probability proportional to its squared distance to the point’s closest cluster center. That is, at iteration  $t$ , we pick the next cluster center to be  $\mathbf{x}_n$  with probability

$$p(\mu_t = \mathbf{x}_n) = \frac{D_{t-1}(\mathbf{x}_n)^2}{\sum_{n'=1}^N D_{t-1}(\mathbf{x}_{n'})^2} \quad (21.18)$$

where

$$D_t(\mathbf{x}) = \min_{k=1}^{t-1} \|\mathbf{x} - \mu_k\|_2^2 \quad (21.19)$$

is the distance of  $\mathbf{x}$  to the closest existing centroid. Thus points that are far away from a centroid are more likely to be picked, thus reducing the distortion. This is known as **farthest point clustering** [Gon85], or **K-means++** [AV07; Bah+12; Bac+16; BLK17; LS19a]. Surprisingly, this simple trick can be shown to guarantee that the reconstruction error is never more than  $O(\log K)$  worse than optimal [AV07].

### 21.3.5 The K-medoids algorithm

There is a variant of K-means called **K-medoids** algorithm, in which we estimate each cluster center  $\mu_k$  by choosing the data example  $\mathbf{x}_n \in \mathcal{X}$  whose average dissimilarity to all other points in that cluster is minimal; such a point is known as a **medoid**. By contrast, in K-means, we take averages over points  $\mathbf{x}_n \in \mathbb{R}^D$  assigned to the cluster to compute the center. K-medoids can be more robust to outliers (although that issue can also be tackled by using mixtures of Student distributions, instead of mixtures of Gaussians). More importantly, K-medoids can be applied to data that does not live in  $\mathbb{R}^D$ , where averaging may not be well defined. In K-medoids, the input to the algorithm is  $N \times N$  pairwise distance matrix,  $D(n, n')$ , not an  $N \times D$  feature matrix.

The classic algorithm for solving the K-medoids is the **partitioning around medoids** or **PAM** method [KR87]. In this approach, at each iteration, we loop over all  $K$  medoids. For each medoid  $m$ , we consider each non-medoid point  $o$ , swap  $m$  and  $o$ , and recompute the cost (sum of all the distances of points to their medoid). If the cost has decreased, we keep this swap. The running time of this algorithm is  $O(K(N - K)^2 I)$ , where  $I$  is the number of iterations.

There is also a simpler and faster method, known as the **Voronoi iteration** method due to [PJ09]. In this approach, at each iteration, we have two steps, similar to K-means. First, for each cluster  $k$ , look at all the points currently assigned to that cluster,  $S_k = \{n : z_n = k\}$ , and then set  $m_k$  to be the index of the medoid of that set. (To find the medoid requires examining all  $|S_k|$  candidate points, and choosing the one that has the smallest sum of distances to all the other points in  $S_k$ .) Second, for each point  $n$ , assign it to its closest medoid,  $z_n = \operatorname{argmin}_k D(n, k)$ . The pseudo-code is given in Algorithm 10. The running time of this algorithm is  $O(NKI)$ , which is comparable to K-means, and much faster than PAM.

**Algorithm 10:** K-medoids algorithm

---

```

1 Initialize  $m_{1:K}$  as a random subset of size  $K$  from  $\{1, \dots, N\}$ ;
2 repeat
3    $z_n = \operatorname{argmin}_k d(n, m_k)$  for  $n = 1 : N$ ;
4    $m_k \leftarrow \operatorname{argmin}_{n:z_n=k} \sum_{n':z_{n'}=k} d(n, n')$  for  $k = 1 : K$ ;
5 until converged;

```

---

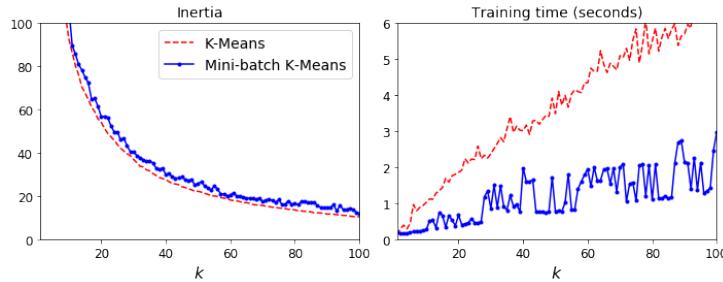


Figure 21.10: Illustration of batch vs mini-batch K-means clustering on the 2d data from Fig. 21.7. Left: distortion vs  $K$ . Right: Training time vs  $K$ . Adapted from Figure 9.6 of [Gér19]. Generated by `kmeans_minibatch.py`.

### 21.3.6 Speedup tricks

K-means clustering takes  $O(NKI)$  time, where  $I$  is the number of iterations, but we can reduce the constant factors using various tricks. For example, [Elk03] shows how to use the triangle inequality to keep track of lower and upper bounds for the distances between inputs and the centroids; this can be used to eliminate some redundant computations. Another approach is to use a minibatch approximation, as proposed in [Scu10]. This can be significantly faster, although can result in slightly worse loss (see Fig. 21.10).

### 21.3.7 Choosing the number of clusters $K$

In this section, we discuss how to choose the number of clusters  $K$  in the K-means algorithm and other related methods.

#### 21.3.7.1 Minimizing the distortion

Based on our experience with supervised learning, a natural choice for picking  $K$  is to pick the value that minimizes the reconstruction error on a validation set, defined as follows:

$$\text{err}(\mathcal{D}_{\text{valid}}, K) = \frac{1}{|\mathcal{D}_{\text{valid}}|} \sum_{n \in \mathcal{D}_{\text{valid}}} \|\mathbf{x}_n - \hat{\mathbf{x}}_n\|_2^2 \quad (21.20)$$

where  $\hat{\mathbf{x}}_n = \text{decode}(\text{encode}(\mathbf{x}_n))$  is the reconstruction of  $\mathbf{x}_n$ .

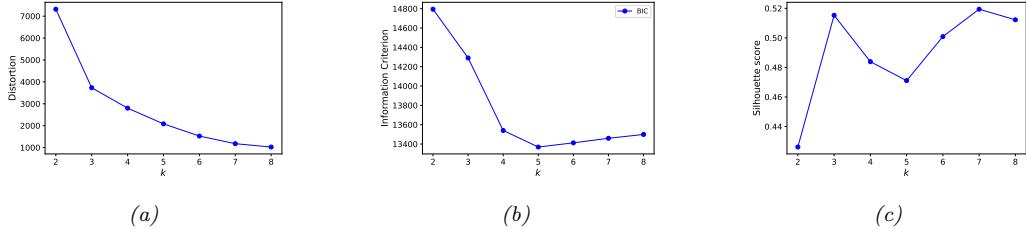


Figure 21.11: Performance of K-means and GMM vs  $K$  on the 2d dataset from Fig. 21.7. (a) Distortion on validation set vs  $K$ . Generated by `kmeans_silhouette.py`. (b) BIC vs  $K$ . Generated by `gmm_2d.py`. (c) Silhouette score vs  $K$ . Generated by `kmeans_silhouette.py`.

Unfortunately, this technique will not work. Indeed, as we see in Fig. 21.11a, the distortion monotonically decreases with  $K$ . To see why, note that the K-means model is a degenerate density model which consists of  $K$  “spikes” at the  $\mu_k$  centers. As we increase  $K$ , we “cover” more of the input space. Hence any given input point is more likely to find a close prototype to accurately represent it as  $K$  increases, thus decreasing reconstruction error. Thus unlike with supervised learning, *we cannot use reconstruction error on a validation set as a way to select the best unsupervised model.* (This comment also applies to picking the dimensionality for PCA, see Sec. 20.1.4.)

### 21.3.7.2 Maximizing the marginal likelihood

A method that does work is to use a proper probabilistic model, such as a GMM, as we describe in Sec. 21.4.1. We can then use the log marginal likelihood (LML) of the data to perform model selection.

We can approximate the LML using the BIC score as we discussed in Sec. 7.6.5.1. This has the following form:

$$\text{BIC}(K) = \log p(\mathcal{D}|\hat{\theta}_k) - D_K \log(N) \quad (21.21)$$

where  $D_K$  is the number of parameters in a model with  $K$  clusters, and  $\hat{\theta}_K$  is the MLE. We see from Fig. 21.11b that this exhibits the typical U-shaped curve, where the penalty decreases and then increases.

The reason this works is that each cluster is associated with a Gaussian distribution that fills a volume of the input space, rather than being a degenerate spike,. Once we have enough clusters to cover the true modes of the distribution, the Bayesian Occam’s razor (Sec. 7.6.3) kicks in, and starts penalizing the model for being unnecessarily complex.

See Sec. 21.4.1.3 for more discussion of Bayesian model selection for mixture models.

### 21.3.7.3 Silhouette coefficient

In this section, we describe a common heuristic method for picking the number of clusters in a K-means clustering model. This is designed to work for spherical (not elongated) clusters. First we define the **silhouette coefficient** of an instance  $i$  to be  $sc(i) = (b_i - a_i) / \max(a_i, b_i)$ , where  $a_i$  is the mean distance to the other instances in cluster  $k_i = \operatorname{argmin}_k \|\mu_k - \mathbf{x}_i\|$ , and  $b_i$  is the mean distance

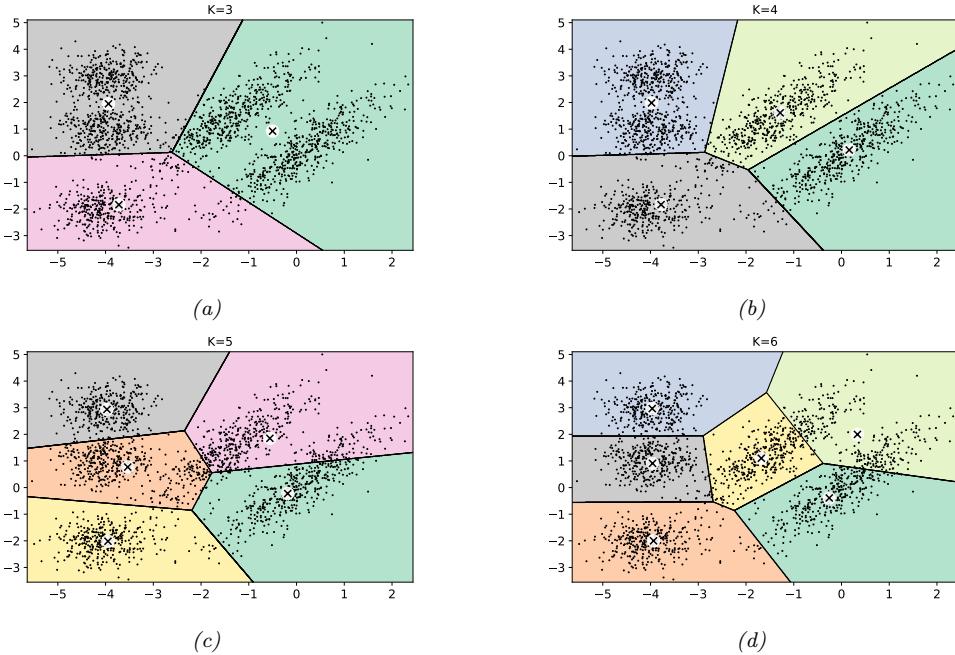


Figure 21.12: Voronoi diagrams for  $K$ -means for different  $K$  on the 2d dataset from Fig. 21.7. Generated by `kmeans_silhouette.py`.

to the other instances in the next closest cluster,  $k'_i = \operatorname{argmin}_{k \neq k_i} \|\mu_k - \mathbf{x}_i\|$ . Thus  $a_i$  is a measure of compactness of  $i$ 's cluster, and  $b_i$  is a measure of distance between the clusters. The silhouette coefficient varies from -1 to +1. A value of +1 means the instance is close to all the members of its cluster, and far from other clusters; a value of 0 means it is close to a cluster boundary; and a value of -1 means it may be in the wrong cluster. We define the **silhouette score** of a clustering  $K$  to be the mean silhouette coefficient over all instances.

In Fig. 21.11a, we plot the distortion vs  $K$  for the data in Fig. 21.7. As we explained above, it goes down monotonically with  $K$ . There is a slight “**kink**” or “**elbow**” in the curve at  $K = 3$ , but this is hard to detect. In Fig. 21.11c, we plot the silhouette score vs  $K$ . Now we see a more prominent peak at  $K = 3$ , although it seems  $K = 7$  is almost as good. See Fig. 21.12 for a comparison of some of these clusterings.

It can be informative to look at the individual silhouette coefficients, and not just the mean score. We can plot these in a **silhouette diagram**, as shown in Fig. 21.13, where each colored region corresponds to a different cluster. The dotted vertical line is the average coefficient. Clusters with many points to the left of this line are likely to be of low quality. We can also use the silhouette diagram to look at the size of each cluster, even if the data is not 2d.

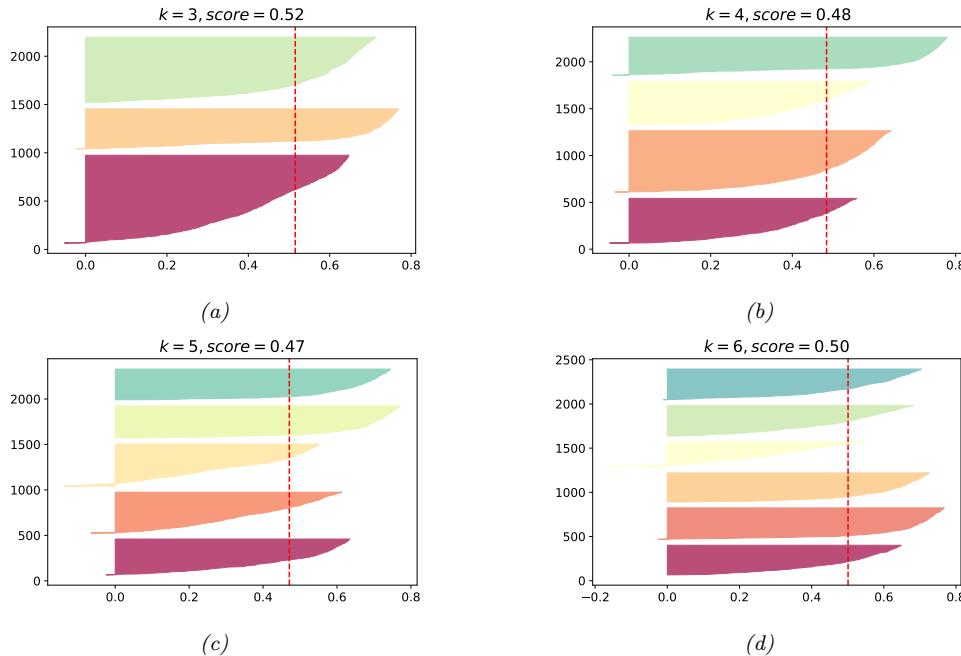


Figure 21.13: Silhouette diagrams for K-means for different  $K$  on the 2d dataset from Fig. 21.7. Generated by `kmeans_silhouette.py`.

#### 21.3.7.4 Incrementally growing the number of mixture components

An alternative searching for the best value of  $K$  is to incrementally “grow” GMMs. We can start with a small value of  $K$ , and after each round of training, we consider splitting the cluster with the highest mixing weight into two, with the new centroids being random perturbations of the original centroid, and the new scores being half of the old scores. If a new cluster has too small a score, or too narrow a variance, it is removed. We continue in this way until the desired number of clusters is reached. See [FJ02] for details.

#### 21.3.7.5 Sparse estimation methods

Another approach is to pick a large value of  $K$ , and then to use some kind of sparsity-promoting prior or inference method to “kill off” unneeded mixture components, such as variational Bayes. See the sequel to this book, [Mur22], for details.

## 21.4 Clustering using mixture models

We have seen how the K-means algorithm can be used to cluster data vectors in  $\mathbb{R}^D$ . However, this method assumes that all clusters have the same spherical shape, which is very restrictive, as is the assumption that all clusters can be described by Gaussians in the input space. By using mixture

models (Sec. 3.7), we can create more flexible kinds of models for clustering data. We give some examples below.

### 21.4.1 Mixtures of Gaussians

Recall from Sec. 3.7.1.1 that a Gaussian mixture model (GMM) is a model of the form

$$p(\mathbf{x}|\boldsymbol{\theta}) = \sum_{k=1}^K \pi_k \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{x}|\boldsymbol{\mu}_k, \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_k) \quad (21.22)$$

If we know the model parameters  $\boldsymbol{\theta} = (\boldsymbol{\pi}, \{\boldsymbol{\mu}_k, \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_k\})$ , we can use Bayes rule to compute the responsibility (posterior membership probability) of cluster  $k$  for data point  $\mathbf{x}_n$ :

$$r_{nk} \triangleq p(z_n = k|\mathbf{x}_n, \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \frac{p(z_n = k|\boldsymbol{\theta})p(\mathbf{x}_n|z_n = k, \boldsymbol{\theta})}{\sum_{k'=1}^K p(z_n = k'|\boldsymbol{\theta})p(\mathbf{x}_n|z_n = k', \boldsymbol{\theta})} \quad (21.23)$$

Given the responsibilities, we can compute the most probable cluster assignment as follows:

$$\hat{z}_n = \arg \max_k r_{nk} = \arg \max_k [\log p(\mathbf{x}_n|z_n = k, \boldsymbol{\theta}) + \log p(z_n = k|\boldsymbol{\theta})] \quad (21.24)$$

This is known as **hard clustering**.

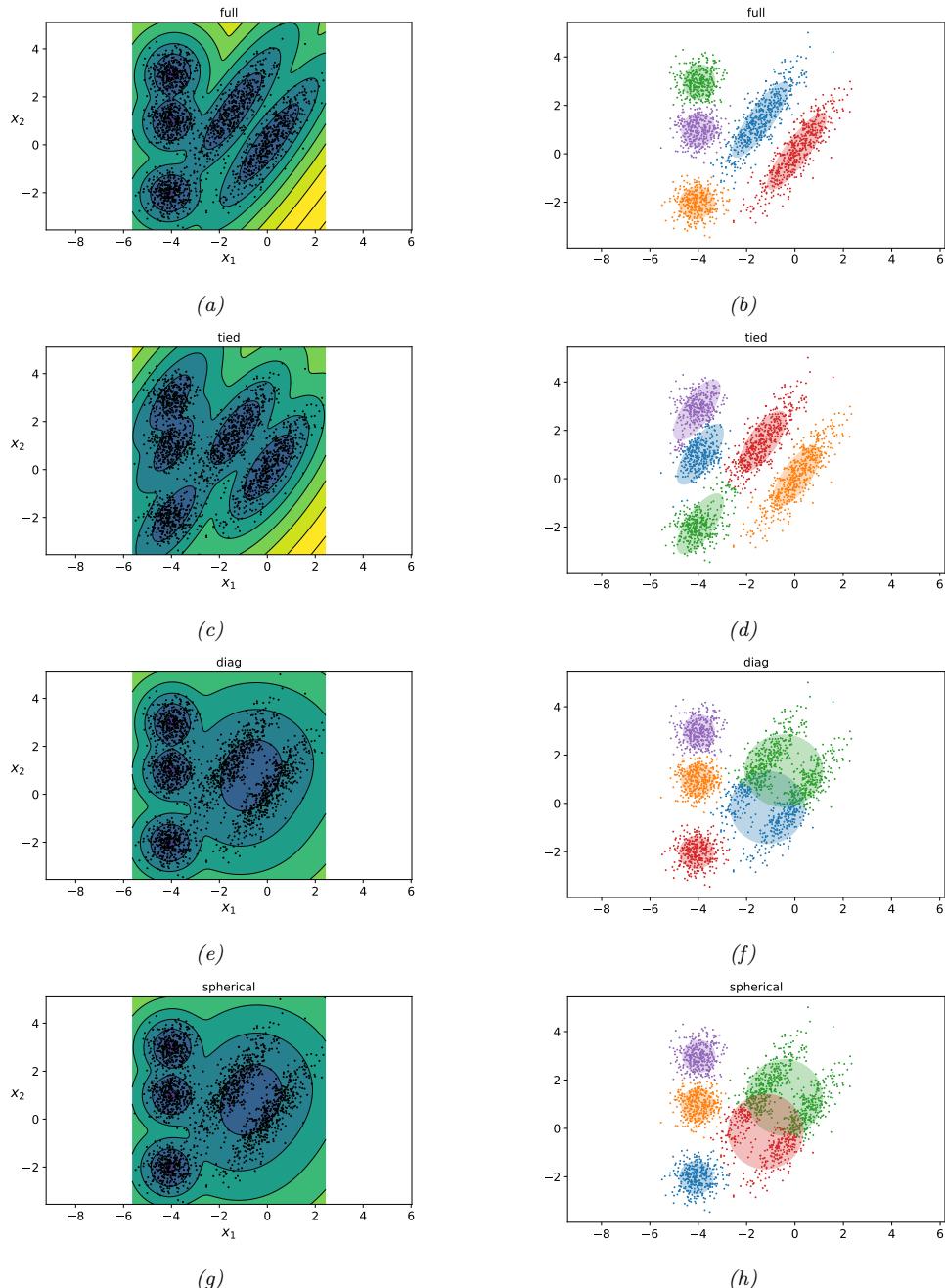
#### 21.4.1.1 K-means is a special case of EM

We can estimate the parameters of a GMM using the EM algorithm (Sec. 5.7.3). It turns out that the K-means algorithm is a special case of this algorithm, in which we make two approximations: we fix  $\boldsymbol{\Sigma}_k = \mathbf{I}$  and  $\pi_k = 1/K$  for all the clusters (so we just have to estimate the means  $\boldsymbol{\mu}_k$ ), and we approximate the E step, by replacing the soft responsibilities with hard cluster assignments, i.e., we compute  $z_n^* = \operatorname{argmax}_k r_{nk}$ , and set  $r_{nk} \approx \mathbb{I}(k = z_n^*)$  instead of using the soft responsibilities,  $r_{nk} = p(z_n = k|\mathbf{x}_n, \boldsymbol{\theta})$ . With this approximation, the weighted MLE problem in Eq. (5.162) of the M step reduces to Eq. (21.14), so we recover K-means.

However, the assumption that all the clusters have the same spherical shape is very restrictive. For example, Fig. 21.14 shows the marginal density and clustering induced using different shaped covariance matrices for some 2d data. We see that modeling this particular dataset needs the ability to capture off-diagonal covariance for some clusters (top row).

#### 21.4.1.2 Unidentifiability and label switching

Note that we are free to permute the labels in a mixture model without changing the likelihood. This is called the **label switching problem**, and is an example of **non-identifiability** of the parameters. This can cause problems if we wish to perform posterior inference over the parameters (as opposed to just computing the MLE or a MAP estimate). For example, suppose we fit a GMM with  $K = 2$  components to the data in Fig. 21.15 using HMC. The posterior over the means,  $p(\boldsymbol{\mu}_1, \boldsymbol{\mu}_2|\mathcal{D})$ , is shown in Fig. 21.16a. We see that the marginal posterior for each component,  $p(\boldsymbol{\mu}_k|\mathcal{D})$ , is bimodal. This reflects the fact that there are two equally good explanations of the data: either  $\boldsymbol{\mu}_1 \approx 47$  and  $\boldsymbol{\mu}_2 \approx 57$ , or vice versa.



*Figure 21.14: Some data in 2d fit using a GMM with  $K = 5$  components. Left column: marginal distribution  $p(\mathbf{x})$ . Right column: visualization of each mixture distribution, and the hard assignment of points to their most likely cluster. (a-b) Full covariance. (c-d) Tied full covariance. (e-f) Diagonal covariance, (g-h) Spherical covariance. Color coding is arbitrary. Generated by `gmm_2d.py`.*

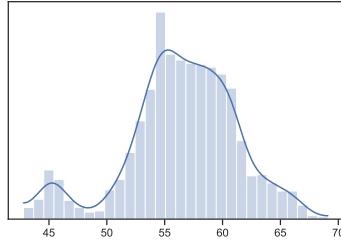


Figure 21.15: Some 1d data, with a kernel density estimate superimposed. Adapted from Figure 6.2 of [Mar18]. Generated by `gmm_identifiability_pymc3.py`.

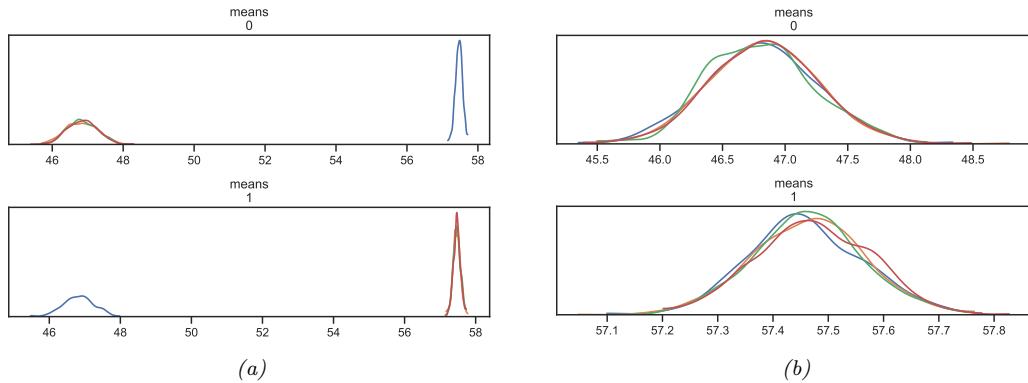


Figure 21.16: Illustration of the label switching problem when performing posterior inference for the parameters of a GMM. We show a KDE estimate of the posterior marginals derived from 1000 samples from 4 HMC chains. (a) Unconstrained model. Posterior is symmetric. (b) Constrained model, where we add a penalty to ensure  $\mu_0 < \mu_1$ . Adapted from Figure 6.6-6.7 of [Mar18]. Generated by `gmm_identifiability_pymc3.py`.

To break symmetry, we can add an **ordering constraint** on the centers, so that  $\mu_1 < \mu_2$ . We can do this by adding a penalty or potential function to the objective if the penalty is violated. More precisely, the penalized log joint becomes

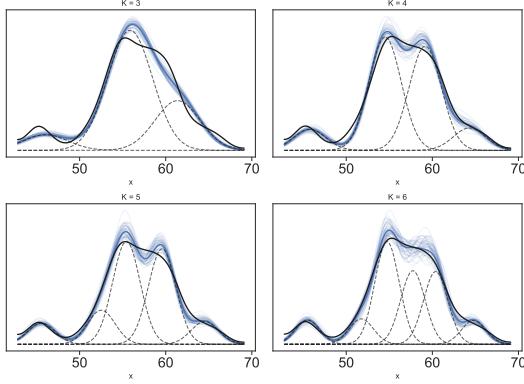
$$\ell'(\boldsymbol{\theta}) = \log p(\mathcal{D}|\boldsymbol{\theta}) + \log p(\boldsymbol{\theta}) + \phi(\boldsymbol{\mu}) \quad (21.25)$$

where

$$\phi(\boldsymbol{\mu}) = \begin{cases} -\infty & \text{if } \mu_1 < \mu_0 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases} \quad (21.26)$$

This has the desired effect, as shown in Fig. 21.16b.

A more general approach is to apply a transformation to the parameters, to ensure identifiability. That is, we sample the parameters  $\boldsymbol{\theta}$  from a proposal, and then apply an invertible transformation  $\boldsymbol{\theta}' = f(\boldsymbol{\theta})$  to them before computing the log joint,  $\log p(\mathcal{D}, \boldsymbol{\theta}')$ . To account for the change of



*Figure 21.17: Fitting GMMs with different numbers of clusters  $K$  to the data in Fig. 21.15. Black solid line is KDE fit. Solid blue line is posterior mean; feint blue lines are posterior samples. Dotted lines show the individual Gaussian mixture components, evaluated by plugging in their posterior mean parameters. Adapted from Figure 6.8 of [Mar18]. Generated by `gmm_chooseK_pymc3.py`.*

variables (Sec. C.5.3), we add the log of the determinant of the Jacobian. In the case of a 1d ordering transformation, which just sorts its inputs, the determinant of the Jacobian is 1, so the log-det-Jacobian term vanishes.

Unfortunately, this approach does not scale to more than 1 dimensional problems, because there is no obvious way to enforce an ordering constraint on the centers  $\mu_k$ .

#### 21.4.1.3 Bayesian model selection

Once we have a reliable way to ensure identifiability, we can use Bayesian model comparison techniques from Sec. 7.6 to select the number of clusters  $K$ . In Fig. 21.17, we illustrate the results of fitting a GMM with  $K = 3 - 6$  components to the data in Fig. 21.15. We use the ordering transform on the means, and perform inference using HMC. We compare the resulting GMM model fits to the fit of a kernel density estimate (Sec. 16.3), which often over-smooths the data. We see fairly strong evidence for two bumps, corresponding to different subpopulations.

We can compare these models more quantitatively by computing their WAIC scores (Sec. 7.6.5.3), which is an approximation to the log marginal likelihood. The results are shown in Fig. 21.18. (This kind of visualization was proposed in [McE20, p228].) We see that the model with  $K = 6$  scores significantly higher than for the other models, although  $K = 5$  is a close second. This is consistent with the plot in Fig. 21.17.

#### 21.4.2 Mixtures of Bernoullis

As we discussed in Sec. 3.7.2, we can use a mixtures of Bernoullis to cluster binary data. The model has the form

$$p(\mathbf{y}|z = k, \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \prod_{d=1}^D \text{Ber}(y_d|\mu_{dk}) = \prod_{d=1}^D \mu_{dk}^{y_d} (1 - \mu_{dk})^{1-y_d} \quad (21.27)$$

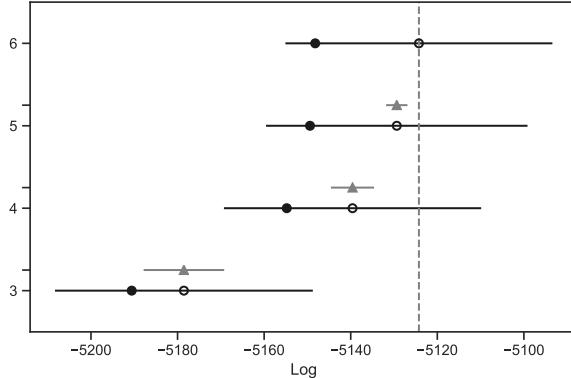


Figure 21.18: WAIC scores for the different GMMs. The empty circle is the posterior mean WAIC score for each model, and the black lines represent the standard error of the mean. The solid circle is the in-sample deviance of each model, i.e., the unpenalized log-likelihood. The dashed vertical line corresponds to the maximum WAIC value. The gray triangle is the difference in WAIC score for that model compared to the best model. Adapted from Figure 6.10 of [Mar18]. Generated by `gmm_chooseK_pymc3.py`.

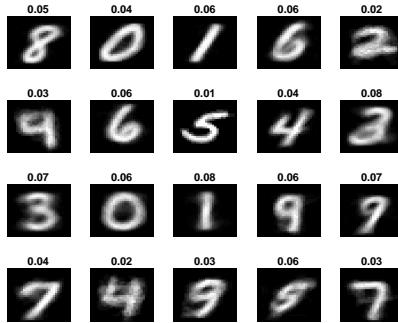


Figure 21.19: We fit a mixture of 20 Bernoullis to the binarized MNIST digit data. We visualize the estimated cluster means  $\hat{\mu}_k$ . The numbers on top of each image represent the estimated mixing weights  $\hat{\pi}_k$ . No labels were used when training the model. Generated by `mixBerMnistEM.m`.

Here  $\mu_{dk}$  is the probability that bit  $d$  turns on in cluster  $k$ . We can fit this model with EM, SGD, MCMC, etc. See Fig. 21.19 for an example, where we cluster some binarized MNIST digits.

## 21.5 Spectral clustering

In this section, we discuss an approach to clustering based on eigenvalue analysis of a pairwise similarity matrix. It uses the eigenvectors to derive feature vectors for each datapoint, which are then clustered using a feature-based clustering method, such as K-means (Sec. 21.3). This is known

as **spectral clustering** [SM00; Lux07].

### 21.5.1 Normalized cuts

We start by creating a weighted undirected graph  $\mathbf{W}$ , where each data vector is a node, and the strength of the  $i - j$  edge is a measure of similarity. Typically we only connect a node to its most similar neighbors, to ensure the graph is sparse, which speeds computation.

Our goal is to find  $K$  clusters of similar points. That is, we want to find a **graph partition** into  $S_1, \dots, S_K$  disjoint sets of nodes so as to minimize some kind of cost.

Our first attempt at a cost function is to compute the weight of connections between nodes in each cluster to nodes outside each cluster:

$$\text{cut}(S_1, \dots, S_K) \triangleq \frac{1}{2} \sum_{k=1}^K W(S_k, \bar{S}_k) \quad (21.28)$$

where  $W(A, B) \triangleq \sum_{i \in A, j \in B} w_{ij}$  and  $\bar{S}_k = V \setminus S_k$  is the complement of  $S_k$ , where  $V = \{1, \dots, K\}$ .

Unfortunately the optimal solution to this often just partitions off a single node from the rest, since that minimizes the weight of the cut. To prevent this, we can divide by the size of each set, to get the following objective, known as the **normalized cut**:

$$\text{Ncut}(S_1, \dots, S_K) \triangleq \frac{1}{2} \sum_{k=1}^K \frac{\text{cut}(S_k, \bar{S}_k)}{\text{vol}(S_k)} \quad (21.29)$$

where  $\text{vol}(A) \triangleq \sum_{i \in A} d_i$  is the total weight of set  $A$  and  $d_i = \sum_{j=1}^N w_{ij}$  is the weighted degree of node  $i$ . This splits the graph into  $K$  clusters such that nodes within each cluster are similar to each other, but are different to nodes in other clusters.

We can formulate the Ncut problem in terms of searching for binary vectors  $\mathbf{c}_i \in \{0, 1\}^N$  that minimizes the above objective, where  $c_{ik} = 1$  iff point  $i$  belongs to cluster  $k$ . Unfortunately this is NP-hard [WW93]. Below we discuss a continuous relaxation of the problem based on eigenvector methods that is easier to solve.

### 21.5.2 Eigenvectors of the graph Laplacian encode the clustering

In Sec. 20.4.9.2, we discussed the graph Laplacian, which is defined as  $\mathbf{L} \triangleq \mathbf{D} - \mathbf{W}$ , where  $\mathbf{W}$  is a symmetric weight matrix for the graph, and  $\mathbf{D} = \text{diag}(d_i)$  is a diagonal matrix containing the weighted degree of each node,  $d_i = \sum_j w_{ij}$ . To get some intuition as to why  $\mathbf{L}$  might be useful for graph-based clustering, we note the following result.

**Theorem 21.5.1.** *The set of eigenvectors of  $\mathbf{L}$  with eigenvalue 0 is spanned by the indicator vectors  $\mathbf{1}_{S_1}, \dots, \mathbf{1}_{S_K}$ , where  $S_k$  are the  $K$  connected components of the graph.*

*Proof.* Let us start with the case  $K = 1$ . If  $\mathbf{f}$  is an eigenvector with eigenvalue 0, then  $0 = \sum_{ij} w_{ij}(f_i - f_j)^2$ . If two nodes are connected, so  $w_{ij} > 0$ , we must have that  $f_i = f_j$ . Hence  $\mathbf{f}$  is constant for all vertices which are connected by a path in the graph. Now suppose  $K > 1$ . In this case,  $\mathbf{L}$  will be block diagonal. A similar argument to the above shows that we will have  $K$  indicator functions, which “select out” the connected components.  $\square$

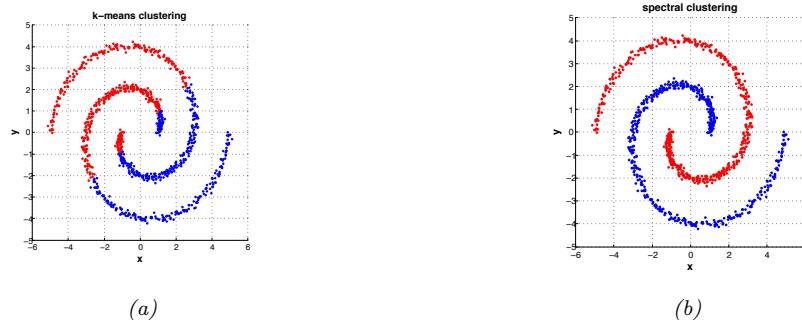


Figure 21.20: Clustering data consisting of 2 spirals. (a) K-means. (b) Spectral clustering. Generated by [spectral\\_clustering\\_demo.py](#).

This suggests the following clustering algorithm. Compute the eigenvectors and values of  $\mathbf{L}$ , and let  $\mathbf{U}$  be an  $N \times K$  matrix with the  $K$  eigenvectors with smallest eigenvalue in its columns. (Fast methods for computing such “bottom” eigenvectors are discussed in [YHJ09]). Let  $\mathbf{u}_i \in \mathbb{R}^K$  be the  $i$ 'th row of  $\mathbf{U}$ . Since these  $\mathbf{u}_i$  will be piecewise constant, we can apply K-means clustering (Sec. 21.3) to them to recover the connected components. (Note that the vectors  $\mathbf{u}_i$  are the same as those computed by Laplacian eigenmaps discussed in Sec. 20.4.9.)

Real data may not exhibit such clean block structure, but one can show, using results from perturbation theory, that the eigenvectors of a “perturbed” Laplacian will be close to these ideal indicator functions [NJW01].

In practice, it is important to normalize the graph Laplacian, to account for the fact that some nodes are more highly connected than others. One way to do this (proposed in [NJW01]) is to create a symmetric matrix

$$\mathbf{L}_{sym} \triangleq \mathbf{D}^{-\frac{1}{2}} \mathbf{L} \mathbf{D}^{-\frac{1}{2}} = \mathbf{I} - \mathbf{D}^{-\frac{1}{2}} \mathbf{W} \mathbf{D}^{-\frac{1}{2}} \quad (21.30)$$

This time the eigenspace of 0 is spanned by  $\mathbf{D}^{\frac{1}{2}} \mathbf{1}_{S_k}$ . This suggests the following algorithm: find the smallest  $K$  eigenvectors of  $\mathbf{L}_{sym}$ , stack them into the matrix  $\mathbf{U}$ , normalize each row to unit norm by creating  $t_{ij} = u_{ij} / \sqrt{(\sum_k u_{ik}^2)}$  to make the matrix  $\mathbf{T}$ , cluster the rows of  $\mathbf{T}$  using K-means, then infer the partitioning of the original points.

### 21.5.3 Example

Figure 21.20 illustrates the method in action. In Figure 21.20(a), we see that K-means does a poor job of clustering, since it implicitly assumes each cluster corresponds to a spherical Gaussian. Next we try spectral clustering. We compute a dense similarity matrix  $\mathbf{W}$  using a Gaussian kernel,  $W_{ij} = \exp(-\frac{1}{2\sigma^2} \|\mathbf{x}_i - \mathbf{x}_j\|_2^2)$ . We then compute the first two eigenvectors of the normalized Laplacian  $\mathbf{L}_{sym}$ . From this we infer the clustering using K-means, with  $K = 2$ ; the results are shown in Figure 21.20(b).

### 21.5.4 Connection with other methods

Spectral clustering is closely related to several other methods for unsupervised learning, some of which we discuss below.

#### 21.5.4.1 Connection with kPCA

Spectral clustering is closely related to kernel PCA (Sec. 20.4.6). In particular, kPCA uses the largest eigenvectors of  $\mathbf{W}$ ; these are equivalent to the smallest eigenvectors of  $\mathbf{I} - \mathbf{W}$ . This is similar to the above method, which computes the smallest eigenvectors of  $\mathbf{L} = \mathbf{D} - \mathbf{W}$ . See [Ben+04a] for details. In practice, spectral clustering tends to give better results than kPCA.

#### 21.5.4.2 Connection with random walk analysis

In practice we get better results by computing the eigenvectors of the normalized graph Laplacian. One way to normalize the graph Laplacian, which is used in [SM00; Mei01], is to define

$$\mathbf{L}_{rw} \triangleq \mathbf{D}^{-1}\mathbf{L} = \mathbf{I} - \mathbf{D}^{-1}\mathbf{W} \quad (21.31)$$

One can show that for  $\mathbf{L}_{rw}$ , the eigenspace of 0 is again spanned by the indicator vectors  $\mathbf{1}_{S_k}$  [Lux07], so we can perform clustering directly on the  $K$  smallest eigenvectors  $\mathbf{U}$ .

There is an interesting connection between this approach and random walks on a graph. First note that  $\mathbf{P} = \mathbf{D}^{-1}\mathbf{W} = \mathbf{I} - \mathbf{L}_{rw}$  is a stochastic matrix, where  $p_{ij} = w_{ij}/d_i$  can be interpreted as the probability of going from  $i$  to  $j$ . If the graph is connected and non-bipartite, it possesses a unique stationary distribution  $\boldsymbol{\pi} = (\boldsymbol{\pi}_1, \dots, \boldsymbol{\pi}_N)$ , where  $\pi_i = d_i/\text{vol}(V)$ , and  $\text{vol}(V) = \sum_i d_i$  is the sum of all the node degrees. Furthermore, one can show that for a partition of size 2,

$$\text{Ncut}(S, \bar{S}) = p(\bar{S}|S) + p(S|\bar{S}) \quad (21.32)$$

This means that we are looking for a cut such that a random walk spends more time transitioning to similar points, and rarely makes transitions from  $S$  to  $\bar{S}$  or vice versa. This analysis can be extended to  $K > 2$ ; for details, see [Mei01].

## 21.6 Biclustering

In some cases, we have a data matrix  $\mathbf{X} \in \mathbb{R}^{N \times D}$  and we want to cluster the rows *and* the columns; this is known as **biclustering** or **coclustering**. This is widely used in bioinformatics, where the rows often represent genes and the columns represent conditions. It can also be used for collaborative filtering, where the rows represent users and the columns represent movies.

A variety of ad hoc methods for biclustering have been proposed; see [MO04] for a review. In Sec. 21.6.1, we present a simple probabilistic generative model in which we assign a latent cluster id to each row, and a different latent cluster id to each column. In Sec. 21.6.2, we extend this to the case where each row can belong to multiple clusters, depending on which groups of features (columns) we choose to use to define the different groups of objects (rows).

O1	killer whale, blue whale, humpback, seal, walrus, dolphin
O2	antelope, horse, giraffe, zebra, deer
O3	monkey, gorilla, chimp
O4	hippo, elephant, rhino
O5	grizzly bear, polar bear
F1	flippers, strain teeth, swims, arctic, coastal, ocean, water
F2	hooves, long neck, horns
F3	hands, bipedal, jungle, tree
F4	bulbous body shape, slow, inactive
F5	meat teeth, eats meat, hunter, fierce
F6	walks, quadrupedal, ground

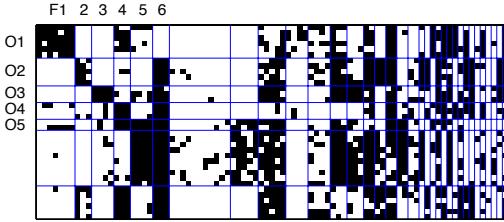


Figure 21.21: Illustration of biclustering. We show 5 of the 12 organism clusters, and 6 of the 33 feature clusters. The original data matrix is shown, partitioned according to the discovered clusters. From Figure 3 of [Kem+06]. Used with kind permission of Charles Kemp.

### 21.6.1 Basic biclustering

Here we present a simple probabilistic generative model for biclustering based on [Kem+06] (see also [SMM03] for a related approach). The idea is to associate each row and each column with a latent indicator,  $u_i \in \{1, \dots, N_u\}$ ,  $v_j \in \{1, \dots, N_v\}$ , where  $N_u$  is the number of row clusters, and  $N_v$  is the number of column clusters. We then use the following generative model:

$$p(\mathbf{U}) = \prod_{i=1}^{N_r} \text{Unif}(u_i | \{1, \dots, N_u\}) \quad (21.33)$$

$$p(\mathbf{V}) = \prod_{j=1}^{N_c} \text{Cat}(v_j | \{1, \dots, N_v\}) \quad (21.34)$$

$$p(\mathbf{X} | \mathbf{U}, \mathbf{V}, \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \prod_{i=1}^{N_r} \prod_{j=1}^{N_c} p(X_{ij} | \boldsymbol{\theta}_{u_i, v_j}) \quad (21.35)$$

where  $\boldsymbol{\theta}_{a,b}$  are the parameters for row cluster  $a$  and column cluster  $b$ .

Fig. 21.21 shows a simple example. The data has the form  $X_{ij} = 1$  iff animal  $i$  has feature  $j$ , where  $i = 1 : 50$  and  $j = 1 : 85$ . The animals represent whales, bears, horses, etc. The features represent properties of the habitat (jungle, tree, coastal), or anatomical properties (has teeth, quadrupedal), or behavioral properties (swims, eats meat), etc. The method discovered 12 animal clusters and 33 feature clusters. ([Kem+06] use a Bayesian nonparametric method to infer the number of clusters.) For example, the O2 cluster is { antelope, horse, giraffe, zebra, deer }, which is characterized by feature clusters F2 = { hooves, long neck, horns } and F6 = { walks, quadrupedal, ground }, whereas the O4 cluster is { hippo, elephant, rhino }, which is characterized by feature clusters F4 = { bulbous body shape, slow, inactive } and F6.

### 21.6.2 Nested partition models (Crosscat)

The problem with basic biclustering (Sec. 21.6.1) is that each object (row) can only belong to one cluster. Intuitively, an object can have multiple roles, and can be assigned to different clusters depending on which subset of features you use. For example, in the animal dataset, we may want to group the animals on the basis of anatomical features (e.g., mammals are warm blooded, reptiles are



Figure 21.22: (a) Example of biclustering. Each row is assigned to a unique cluster, and each column is assigned to a unique cluster. (b) Example of multi-clustering using a nested partition model. The rows can belong to different clusters depending on which subset of column features we are looking at.

not), or on the basis of behavioral features (e.g., predators vs prey).

We now present a model that can capture this phenomenon. We illustrate the method with an example. Suppose we have a  $6 \times 6$  matrix, with  $N_u = 2$  row clusters and  $N_v = 3$  column clusters. Furthermore, suppose the latent column assignments are as follows:  $\mathbf{v} = [1, 1, 2, 3, 3, 3]$ . This means we put columns 1 and 2 into group 1, column 3 into group 2, and columns 4 to 6 into group 3. For the columns that get clustered into group 1, we cluster the rows as follows:  $\mathbf{u}_{:,1} = [1, 1, 1, 2, 2, 2]$ ; For the columns that get clustered into group 2, we cluster the rows as follows:  $\mathbf{u}_{:,2} = [1, 1, 2, 2, 2, 2]$ ; and for the columns that get clustered into group 3, we cluster the rows as follows:  $\mathbf{u}_{:,3} = [1, 1, 1, 1, 1, 2]$ . The resulting partition is shown in Fig. 21.22(b). We see that the clustering of the rows depends on which group of columns we choose to focus on.

Formally, we can define the model as follows:

$$p(\mathbf{U}) = \prod_{i=1}^{N_r} \prod_{l=1}^{N_v} \text{Unif}(u_{il} | \{1, \dots, N_u\}) \quad (21.36)$$

$$p(\mathbf{V}) = \prod_{j=1}^{N_c} \text{Unif}(v_j | \{1, \dots, N_v\}) \quad (21.37)$$

$$p(\mathbf{Z}|\mathbf{U}, \mathbf{V}) = \prod_{i=1}^{N_r} \prod_{j=1}^{N_c} \mathbb{I}(Z_{ij} = (u_{i,v_j}, v_j)) \quad (21.38)$$

$$p(\mathbf{X}|\mathbf{Z}, \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \prod_{i=1}^{N_r} \prod_{j=1}^{N_c} p(X_{ij} | \boldsymbol{\theta}_{z_{ij}}) \quad (21.39)$$

where  $\boldsymbol{\theta}_{k,l}$  are the parameters for cocluster  $k \in \{1, \dots, N_u\}$  and  $l \in \{1, \dots, N_v\}$ .

This model was independently proposed in [Sha+06; Man+16] who call it **crosscat** (for cross-categorization), in [Gua+10; CFD10], who call it **multi-clust**, and in [RG11], who call it **nested partitioning**. In all of these papers, the authors propose to use Dirichlet processes, to avoid the problem of estimating the number of clusters. Here we assume the number of clusters is known, and show the parameters explicitly, for notational simplicity.

Fig. 21.23 illustrates the model applied to some binary data containing 22 animals and 106 features. The figures shows the (approximate) MAP partition. The first partition of the columns contains taxonomic features, such as “has bones”, “is warm-blooded”, “lays eggs”, etc. This divides the animals

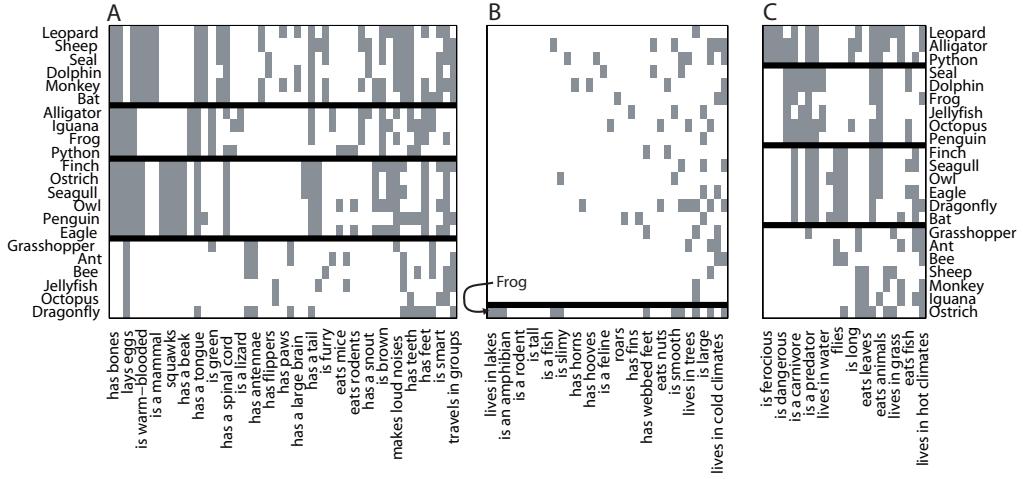


Figure 21.23: MAP estimate produced by the crosscat system when applied to a binary data matrix of animals (rows) by features (columns). See text for details. From Figure 7 of [Sha+06]. Used with kind permission of Vikash Mansingka.

into birds, reptiles/ amphibians, mammals, and invertebrates. The second partition of the columns contains features that are treated as noise, with no apparent structure (except for the single row labeled “frog”). The third partition of the columns contains ecological features like “dangerous”, “carnivorous”, “lives in water”, etc. This divides the animals into prey, land predators, sea predators and air predators. Thus each animal (row) can belong to a different cluster depending on what set of features are considered.

# 22 Recommender systems

**Recommender systems** are systems which recommend **items** (such as movies, books, ads) to **users** based on various information, such as their past viewing/ purchasing behavior (e.g., which movies they rated high or low, which ads they clicked on), as well as optional “side information” such as demographics about the user, or information about the content of the item (e.g., its title, genre or price). Such systems are widely used by various internet companies, such as Facebook, Amazon, Netflix, Google, etc. In this chapter, we give a brief introduction to the topic. More details can be found in e.g., [DKK12; Pat12; Yan+14; AC16; Agg16; Zha+19c]..

## 22.1 Explicit feedback

In this section, we consider the simplest setting in which the user gives **explicit feedback** to the system in terms of a **rating**, such as +1 or -1 (for like/dislike) or a score from 1 to 5. Let  $Y_{ui} \in \mathbb{R}$  be the rating that user  $u$  gives to item  $i$ . We can represent this as an  $M \times N$  matrix, where  $M$  is the number of users, and  $N$  is the number of items. Typically this matrix will be very sparse, since most users will not provide any feedback on most items. See Fig. 22.1(a) for an example. We can also view this sparse matrix as a bipartite graph, where the weight of the  $u - i$  edge is  $Y_{ui}$ . This reflects the fact that we are dealing with **relational data**, i.e., the values of  $u$  and  $i$  have no intrinsic meaning (they are just arbitrary indices), it is the fact that  $u$  and  $i$  are connected that matters.

If  $Y_{ui}$  is missing, it could be because user  $u$  has not interacted with item  $i$ , or it could be that they knew they wouldn’t like it and so they chose not to engage with it. In the former case, some of the data is **missing at random**; in the latter case, the missingness is informative about the true value of  $Y_{ui}$ . (See e.g., [Mar+11] for further discussion of this point.) We will assume the data is missing at random, for simplicity.

### 22.1.1 Datasets

A famous example of an explicit ratings matrix was made available by the movie streaming company Netflix. In 2006, they released a large dataset of 100,480,507 movie ratings (on a scale of 1 to 5) from 480,189 users of 17,770 movies. Despite the large size of the training set, the ratings matrix is still 99% sparse (unknown). Along with the data, they offered a prize of \$100,000, known as the **Netflix Prize**, to any team that could predict the true ratings of a set of test (user, item) pairs more accurately than their incumbent system. The prize was claimed on September 21, 2009 by a team known as “Pragmatic Chaos”. They used an ensemble of different methods, as described in

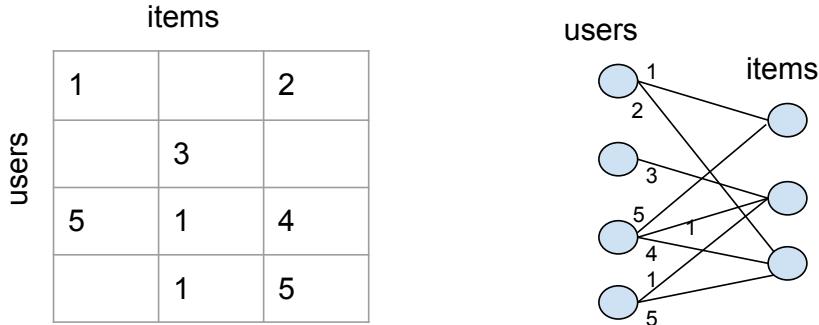


Figure 22.1: Example of a relational dataset represented as a sparse matrix (left) or a sparse bipartite graph (right). Values corresponding to empty cells (missing edges) are unknown. Rows 3 and 4 are similar to each other, indicating that users 3 and 4 might have similar preferences, so we can use the data from user 3 to predict user 4's preferences. However, user 1 seems quite different in their preferences, and seems to give low ratings to all items. For user 2, we have very little observed data, so it is hard to make reliable predictions.

[Kor09; BK07; FHK12]. However, a key component in their ensemble was the method described in Sec. 22.1.3.

Unfortunately the Netflix data is no longer available due to privacy concerns. Fortunately the **MovieLens** group at the University of Minnesota have released an anonymized public dataset of movie ratings, on a scale of 1-5, that can be used for research [HK15]. There are also various other public explicit ratings datasets, such as the **Jester** jokes dataset from [Gol+01] and the **BookCrossing** dataset from [Zie+05].

### 22.1.2 Collaborative filtering

The original approach to the recommendation problem is called **collaborative filtering** [Gol+92]. The idea is that users collaborate on recommending items by sharing their ratings with other users; then if  $u$  wants to know if they interact with  $i$ , they can see what ratings other users  $u'$  have given to  $i$ , and take a weighted average:

$$\hat{Y}_{ui} = \sum_{u': Y_{u',i} \neq ?} \text{sim}(u, u') Y_{u',i} \quad (22.1)$$

where we assume  $Y_{u',i} = ?$  if the entry is unknown. The traditional approach measured the similarity of two users by comparing the sets  $S_u = \{Y_{u,i} \neq ? : i \in \mathcal{I}\}$  and  $S_{u'} = \{Y_{u',i} \neq ? : i \in \mathcal{I}\}$ , where  $\mathcal{I}$  is the set of items. However, this can suffer from data sparsity. In Sec. 22.1.3 we discuss an approach based on learning dense embedding vectors for each item and each user, so we can compute similarity in a low dimensional feature space.

### 22.1.3 Matrix factorization

We can view the recommender problem as one of **matrix completion**, in which we wish to predict all the missing entries of  $\mathbf{Y}$ . We can formulate this as the following optimization problem:

$$\mathcal{L}(\mathbf{Z}) = \sum_{ij: Y_{ij} \neq ?} (Z_{ij} - Y_{ij})^2 = \|\mathbf{Z} - \mathbf{Y}\|_F^2 \quad (22.2)$$

However, this is an under-specified problem, since there are an infinite number of ways of filling in the missing entries of  $\mathbf{Z}$ .

We need to add some constraints. Suppose we assume that  $\mathbf{Y}$  is low rank. Then we can write it in the form  $\mathbf{Z} = \mathbf{U}\mathbf{V}^\top \approx \mathbf{Y}$ , where  $\mathbf{U}$  is an  $M \times K$  matrix,  $\mathbf{V}$  is a  $N \times K$  matrix,  $K$  is the rank of the matrix,  $M$  is the number of users, and  $N$  is the number of items. This corresponds to a prediction of the form by writing

$$\hat{y}_{ui} = \mathbf{u}_u^\top \mathbf{v}_i \quad (22.3)$$

This is called **matrix factorization**.

If we observe all the  $Y_{ij}$  entries, we can find the optimal  $\mathbf{Z}$  using SVD (Appendix B.5). However, when  $\mathbf{Y}$  has missing entries, the corresponding objective is no longer convex, and does not have a unique optimum [SJ03]. We can fit this using **alternating least squares** (ALS), where we estimate  $\mathbf{U}$  given  $\mathbf{V}$  and then estimate  $\mathbf{V}$  given  $\mathbf{U}$  (for details, see e.g., [KBV09]). Alternatively we can just use SGD.

In practice, it is important to also allow for user-specific and item-specific baselines, by writing

$$\hat{y}_{ui} = \mu + b_u + c_i + \mathbf{u}_u^\top \mathbf{v}_i \quad (22.4)$$

This can capture the fact that some users might always tend to give low ratings and others may give high ratings; in addition, some items (e.g., very popular movies) might have unusually high ratings.

In addition, we can add some  $\ell_2$  regularization to the parameters to get the objective

$$\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta}) = \sum_{ij: Y_{ij} \neq ?} (y_{ij} - \hat{y}_{ij})^2 + \lambda(b_u^2 + c_i^2 + \|\mathbf{u}_u\|^2 + \|\mathbf{v}_i\|^2) \quad (22.5)$$

We can optimize this using SGD by sampling a random  $(u, i)$  entry from the set of observed values, and performing the following updates:

$$b_u = b_u + \eta(e_{ui} - \lambda b_u) \quad (22.6)$$

$$c_i = c_i + \eta(e_{ui} - \lambda c_i) \quad (22.7)$$

$$\mathbf{u}_u = \mathbf{u}_u + \eta(e_{ui} \mathbf{u}_u - \lambda \mathbf{u}_u) \quad (22.8)$$

$$\mathbf{v}_i = \mathbf{v}_i + \eta(e_{ui} \mathbf{v}_i - \lambda \mathbf{v}_i) \quad (22.9)$$

where  $e_{ui} = y_{ui} - \hat{y}_{ui}$  is the error term, and  $\eta \geq 0$  is the learning rate. This approach was first proposed by Simon Funk, who was one of the first to do well in the early days of the Netflix competition.<sup>1</sup>

---

1. <https://sifter.org/~simon/journal/20061211.html>.

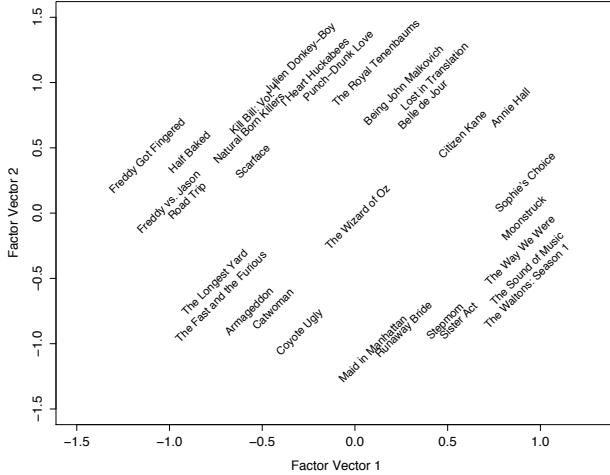


Figure 22.2: Visualization of the first two latent movie factors estimated from the Netflix challenge data. Each movie  $j$  is plotted at the location specified by  $\mathbf{v}_j$ . See text for details. From Figure 3 of [KBV09]. Used with kind permission of Yehuda Koren.

### 22.1.3.1 Probabilistic matrix factorization (PMF)

We can convert matrix factorization into a probabilistic model by defining

$$p(y_{ui} = y) = \mathcal{N}(y | \mu + b_u + c_i + \mathbf{u}_u^\top \mathbf{v}_i, \sigma^2) \quad (22.10)$$

This is known as **probabilistic matrix factorization (PMF)** [SM08]. The NLL of this model is equivalent to the matrix factorization objective in Eq. (22.2). However, the probabilistic perspective allows us to generalize the model more easily. For example, we can capture the fact that the ratings are integers (often mostly 0s), and not reals, using a Poisson or negative Binomial likelihood (see e.g., [GOF18]). This is similar to exponential family PCA (Sec. 20.2.7), except that we view rows and columns symmetrically.

### 22.1.3.2 Example: Netflix

Suppose we apply PMF to the Netflix dataset using  $K = 2$  latent factors. Fig. 22.2 visualizes the learned embedding vectors  $\mathbf{u}_i$  for a few movies. On the left of the plot we have low-brow humor and horror movies (*Half Baked*, *Freddy vs Jason*), and on the right we have more serious dramas (*Sophie's Choice*, *Moonstruck*). On the top we have critically acclaimed independent movies (*Punch-Drunk Love*, *I Heart Huckabees*), and on the bottom we have mainstream Hollywood blockbusters (*Armageddon*, *Runway Bride*). The *Wizard of Oz* is right in the middle of these axes, since it is in some senses an “average movie”.

Users are embedded into the same spaces as movies. We can then predict the rating for any user-video pair using proximity in the latent embedding space.

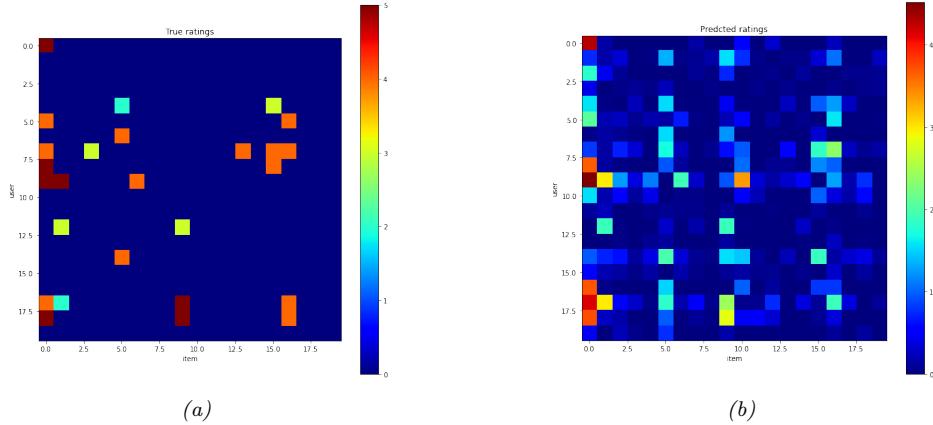


Figure 22.3: (a) A fragment of the observed ratings matrix from the MovieLens-1M dataset. (b) Predictions using SVD with 50 latent components. Generated by `matrix_factorization_recommender.ipynb`.

### 22.1.3.3 Example: MovieLens

Now suppose we apply PMF to the MovieLens-1M dataset with 6040 users, 3706 movies, and 1,000,209 ratings. We will use  $K = 50$  factors. For simplicity, we fit this using SVD applied to the dense ratings matrix, where we replace missing values with 0. (This is just a simple approximation to keep the demo code simple.) In Fig. 22.3 we show a snippet of the true and predicted ratings matrix. (We truncate the predictions to lie in the range [1,5].) We see that the model is not particularly accurate, but does capture some structure in the data.

Furthermore, it seems to behave in a qualitatively sensible way. For example, in Fig. 22.4 we show the top 10 movies rated by a given user as well as the top 10 predictions for movies they had not seen. The model seems to have “picked up” on the underlying preferences of the user. For example, we see that many of the predicted movies are action or film-noir, and both of these genres feature in the user’s own top-10 list, even though explicit genre information is not used during model training.

### 22.1.4 Autoencoders

Matrix factorization is a (bi)linear model. We can make a nonlinear version using autoencoders. Let  $\mathbf{y}_{:,i} \in \mathbb{R}^M$  be the  $i$ ’th column of the ratings matrix, where unknown ratings are set to 0. We can predict this ratings vector using an autoencoder of the form

$$f(\mathbf{y}_{:,i}; \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \mathbf{W}^\top \varphi(\mathbf{V}\mathbf{y}_{:,i} + \boldsymbol{\mu}) + \mathbf{b} \quad (22.11)$$

where  $\mathbf{V} \in \mathbb{R}^{KM}$  maps the ratings to an embedding space,  $\mathbf{W} \in \mathbb{R}^{KM}$  maps the embedding space to a distribution over ratings,  $\boldsymbol{\mu} \in \mathbb{R}^K$  are the biases of the hidden units, and  $\mathbf{b} \in \mathbb{R}^M$  are the biases of the output units. This is called the (item-based) version of the **AutoRec** model [Sed+15]. This has  $2MK + M + K$  parameters. There is also a user-based version, that can be derived in a similar manner, which has  $2NK + N + K$  parameters. (On MovieLens and Netflix, the authors find that the item-based method works better.)

MovieID		Title	Genres
36	858	Godfather, The (1972)	Action Crime Drama
35	1387	Jaws (1975)	Action Horror
65	2028	Saving Private Ryan (1998)	Action Drama War
63	1221	Godfather: Part II, The (1974)	Action Crime Drama
11	913	Maltese Falcon, The (1941)	Film-Noir Mystery
20	3417	Crimson Pirate, The (1952)	Adventure Comedy Sci-Fi
34	2186	Strangers on a Train (1951)	Film-Noir Thriller
55	2791	Airplane! (1980)	Comedy
31	1188	Strictly Ballroom (1992)	Comedy Romance
28	1304	Butch Cassidy and the Sundance Kid (1969)	Action Comedy Western

(a)

MovieID		Title	Genres
516	527	Schindler's List (1993)	Drama War
1848	1953	French Connection, The (1971)	Action Crime Drama Thriller
596	608	Fargo (1996)	Crime Drama Thriller
1235	1284	Big Sleep, The (1946)	Film-Noir Mystery
2085	2194	Untouchables, The (1987)	Action Crime Drama
1188	1230	Annie Hall (1977)	Comedy Romance
1198	1242	Glory (1989)	Action Drama War
897	922	Sunset Blvd. (a.k.a. Sunset Boulevard) (1950)	Film-Noir
1849	1954	Rocky (1976)	Action Drama
581	593	Silence of the Lambs, The (1991)	Drama Thriller

(b)

Figure 22.4: (a) Top 10 movies (from a list of 69) that user “837” has already highly rated. (b) Top 10 predictions (from a list of 3637) from the algorithm. Generated by `matrix_factorization_recommender.ipynb`, based on code by Nick Becker.

We can fit this by only updating parameters that are associated with the observed entries of  $\mathbf{y}_{:,i}$ . Furthermore, we can add an  $\ell_2$  regularizer to the weight matrices to get the objective

$$\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta}) = \sum_{i=1}^N \sum_{u:y_{ui} \neq ?} (y_{u,i} - f(\mathbf{y}_{:,i}; \boldsymbol{\theta})_u)^2 + \frac{\lambda}{2} (\|\mathbf{W}\|_F^2 + \|\mathbf{V}\|_F^2) \quad (22.12)$$

Despite the simplicity of this method, the authors find that this it does better than more complex methods such as restricted Boltzmann machines (RBMs, [SMH07]) and local low-rank matrix approximation (LLORMA, [Lee+13]).

## 22.2 Implicit feedback

So far, we have assumed that the user gives explicit ratings for each item that they interact with. This is a very restrictive assumption. More generally, we would like to learn from the **implicit feedback** that users give just by interacting with a system. For example, we can treat the list of movies that user  $u$  watches as positives, and regard all the other movies as negatives. Thus we get a sparse, positive-only ratings matrix.

Alternatively, we can view the fact that they watched movie  $i$  but did not watch movie  $j$  as an implicit signal that they prefer  $i$  to  $j$ . The resulting data can be represented as a set of tuples of the form  $y_n = (u, i, j)$ , where  $(u, i)$  is a positive pair, and  $(u, j)$  is a negative (or unlabeled) pair.

### 22.2.1 Bayesian personalized ranking

To fit a model to data of the form  $(u, i, j)$ , we need to use a **ranking loss**, so that the model ranks  $i$  ahead of  $j$  for user  $u$ . A simple way to do this is to use a Bernoulli model of the form

$$p(y_n = (u, i, j) | \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \sigma(f(u, i; \boldsymbol{\theta}) - f(u, j; \boldsymbol{\theta})) \quad (22.13)$$

If we combine this with a Gaussian prior for  $\boldsymbol{\theta}$ , we get the following MAP estimation problem:

$$\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta}) = \sum_{(u, i, j) \in \mathcal{D}} \log \sigma(f(u, i; \boldsymbol{\theta}) - f(u, j; \boldsymbol{\theta})) - \lambda \|\boldsymbol{\theta}\|^2 \quad (22.14)$$

where  $\mathcal{D} = \{(u, i, j) : i \in \mathcal{I}_u^+, j \in \mathcal{I} \setminus \mathcal{I}_u^+\}$ , where  $\mathcal{I}_u^+$  are the set of all items that user  $u$  selected, and  $\mathcal{I} \setminus \mathcal{I}_u^+$  are all the other items (which they may dislike, or simply may not have seen). This is known as **Bayesian personalized ranking** or BPR [Ren+09].

Let us consider this example from [Zha+19a, Sec 16.5]. There are 4 items in total,  $\mathcal{I} = \{i_1, i_2, i_3, i_4\}$ , and user  $u$  chose to interact with  $\mathcal{I}_u^+ = \{i_2, i_3\}$ . In this case, the implicit item-item preference matrix for user  $u$  has the form

$$\mathbf{Y}_u = \begin{pmatrix} . & + & + & ? \\ - & . & ? & - \\ - & ? & . & - \\ ? & + & + & . \end{pmatrix} \quad (22.15)$$

where  $Y_{u,i,i'} = +$  means user  $u$  prefers  $i'$  to  $i$ ,  $Y_{u,i,i'} = -$  means user  $u$  prefers  $i$  to  $i'$ , and  $Y_{u,i,i'} = ?$  means we cannot tell what the user's preference is. For example, focusing on the second column, we see that this user rates  $i_2$  higher than  $i_1$  and  $i_4$ , since they selected  $i_2$  but not  $i_1$  or  $i_4$ ; however, we cannot tell if they prefer  $i_2$  over  $i_3$  or vice versa.

When the set of possible items is large, the number of negatives in  $\mathcal{I} \setminus \mathcal{I}_u^+$  can be very large. Fortunately we can approximate the loss by subsampling negatives.

Note that an alternative to the log-loss above is to use a hinge loss, similar to the approach used in SVMs (Sec. 17.5). This has the form

$$\mathcal{L}(y_n = (u, i, j), f) = \max(m - (f(u, i) - f(u, j)), 0) = \max(m - f(u, i) + f(u, j), 0) \quad (22.16)$$

where  $m \geq 0$  is the safety margin. This tries to ensure the negative items  $j$  never score more than  $m$  higher than the positive items  $i$ .

### 22.2.2 Factorization machines

The AutoRec approach of Sec. 22.1.4 is nonlinear, but treats users and items asymmetrically. In this section, we discuss a more symmetric discriminative modeling approach. We start with a linear version. The basic idea is to predict the output (such as a rating) for any given user-item pair,  $\mathbf{x} = [\text{one-hot}(u), \text{one-hot}(i)]$ , using

$$f(\mathbf{x}) = \mu + \boldsymbol{\omega}^\top \mathbf{x} + \mathbf{x}^\top \mathbf{W} \mathbf{x} = \mu + \sum_{i=1}^D v_i x_i + \sum_{i=1}^D \sum_{j=i+1}^D (\mathbf{w}_i^\top \mathbf{w}_j) x_i x_j \quad (22.17)$$

where  $\mathbf{W} \in \mathbb{R}^{DK}$  is a low rank matrix,  $\boldsymbol{\omega} \in \mathbb{R}^D$  is a weight vector,  $\mu \in \mathbb{R}$  is a global offset, and  $D = (M + N)$  is the number of inputs. This is known as a **factorization machine** (FM) [Ren12].

If we define  $\boldsymbol{\omega} = (\mathbf{b}; \mathbf{c})$  and  $\mathbf{W} = \mathbf{A}^\top \mathbf{A}$ , where  $\mathbf{A} = \text{block-diag}(\mathbf{U}, \mathbf{0}; \mathbf{0}, \mathbf{V})$ , then we recover the matrix factorization model of Eq. (22.4). (To see this, note that the one-hot input vectors just “select” the appropriate rows from  $\mathbf{U}$  and  $\mathbf{V}$  (i.e.,  $\mathbf{Ax} = (\mathbf{u}_u, \mathbf{v}_j)$ ).) However, the FM formulation is more general, since it can handle other kinds of information in the input  $\mathbf{x}$ , as we discuss in Sec. 22.3.

Computing Eq. (22.17) takes  $O(KD^2)$  time, since it considers all possible pairwise interactions between every user and every item. Fortunately we can rewrite this so that we can compute it in  $O(KD)$  time as follows:

$$\sum_{i=1}^D \sum_{j=i+1}^D (\mathbf{w}_i^\top \mathbf{w}_j) x_i x_j = \frac{1}{2} \sum_{i=1}^D \sum_{j=1}^D (\mathbf{w}_i^\top \mathbf{w}_j) x_i x_j - \frac{1}{2} \sum_{i=1}^D (\mathbf{w}_i^\top \mathbf{w}_i) x_i x_i \quad (22.18)$$

$$= -\frac{1}{2} \left( \sum_{i=1}^D \sum_{j=1}^D \sum_{k=1}^K w_{ik} w_{jk} x_i x_j - \sum_{i=1}^D \sum_{k=1}^K w_{ik} w_{ik} x_i x_i \right) \quad (22.19)$$

$$= -\frac{1}{2} \sum_{k=1}^K \left( \left( \sum_{i=1}^D w_{ik} x_i \right)^2 - \sum_{i=1}^D w_{ik}^2 x_i^2 \right) \quad (22.20)$$

For sparse vectors, the overall complexity is linear in the number of non-zero components. So if we use one-hot encodings of the user and item id, the complexity is just  $O(K)$ , analogous to the original matrix factorization objective of Eq. (22.4).

We can fit this model to minimize any loss we want. For example, if we have explicit feedback, we may choose MSE loss, and if we have implicit feedback, we may choose ranking loss.

In [Guo+17], they propose a model called **deep factorization machines**, which combines the above method with an MLP applied to a concatenation of the embedding vectors, instead of the inner product. More precisely, it is a model of the form

$$f(\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \sigma(\text{FM}(\mathbf{x}) + \text{MLP}(\mathbf{x})) \quad (22.21)$$

This is closely related to the **wide and deep** model proposed in [Che+16]. The idea is that the bilinear model captures explicit interactions between specific users and items (a form of memorization), whereas the MLP captures implicit interactions between user features and item features, which allows the model to generalize.

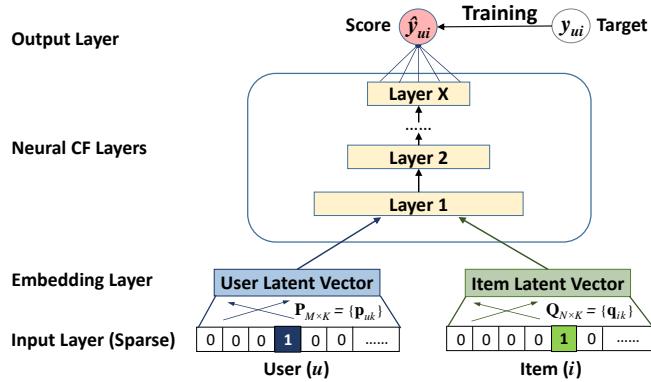


Figure 22.5: Illustration of the neural matrix factorization model. From Figure 2 of [He+17]. Used with kind permission of Xiangnan He.

### 22.2.3 Neural matrix factorization

In this section, we describe the **neural matrix factorization** model of [He+17]. This is another way to combine bilinear models with deep neural networks. The bilinear part is used to define the following generalized matrix factorization (GMF) pathway, which computes the following feature vector for user  $u$  and item  $i$ :

$$\mathbf{z}_{ui}^1 = \mathbf{P}_{u,:} \odot \mathbf{Q}_{i,:} \quad (22.22)$$

where  $\mathbf{P} \in \mathbb{R}^{MK}$  is a user embedding matrix, and  $\mathbf{Q} \in \mathbb{R}^{NK}$  is an item embedding matrix. The DNN part is just an MLP applied to a concatenation of the embedding vectors (using different embedding matrices):

$$\mathbf{z}_{ui}^2 = \text{MLP}([\tilde{\mathbf{U}}_{u,:}, \tilde{\mathbf{V}}_{i,:}]) \quad (22.23)$$

Finally, the model combines these to get

$$f(u, i; \boldsymbol{\theta}) = \sigma(\mathbf{w}^\top [\mathbf{z}_{ui}^1, \mathbf{z}_{ui}^2]) \quad (22.24)$$

See Fig. 22.5 for an illustration.

In [He+17], the model is trained on implicit feedback, where  $y_{ui} = 1$  if the interaction of user  $u$  with item  $i$  is observed, and  $y_{ui} = 0$  otherwise. However, it could be trained to minimize BPR loss.

## 22.3 Leveraging side information

So far, we have assumed that the only information available to the predictor are the integer id of the user and the integer id of the item. This is an extremely impoverished representation, and will fail to work if we encounter a new user or new item (the so-called **cold start** problem). To overcome this, we need to leverage “**side information**”, beyond just the id of the user/item.

	Feature vector $\mathbf{x}$															Target $y$									
$x_1$	1	0	0	0	...	1	0	0	0	0	...	0.3	0.3	0.3	0	...	13	0	0	0	0	...	5	$y_1$	
$x_2$	1	0	0	0	...	0	1	0	0	0	...	0.3	0.3	0.3	0	...	14	1	0	0	0	0	3	$y_2$	
$x_3$	1	0	0	0	...	0	0	1	0	0	...	0.3	0.3	0.3	0	...	16	0	1	0	0	0	1	$y_3$	
$x_4$	0	1	0	0	...	0	0	1	0	0	...	0	0	0.5	0.5	...	5	0	0	0	0	0	4	$y_4$	
$x_5$	0	1	0	0	...	0	0	0	1	0	...	0	0	0.5	0.5	...	8	0	0	1	0	0	5	$y_5$	
$x_6$	0	0	1	0	...	1	0	0	0	0	...	0.5	0	0.5	0	...	9	0	0	0	0	0	1	$y_6$	
$x_7$	0	0	1	0	...	0	0	1	0	0	...	0.5	0	0.5	0	...	12	1	0	0	0	0	5	$y_7$	
A	B	C	...	TI	NH	SW	ST	...	TI	NH	SW	ST	...	TI	NH	SW	ST	...	Time	TI	NH	SW	ST	...	Last Movie rated
User				Movie					Other Movies rated																

Figure 22.6: Illustration of a design matrix for a movie recommender system, where we show the id of the user and movie, as well as other side information. From Figure 1 of [Ren12]. Used with kind permission of Stefen Rendle.

There are many forms of side information we can use. For items, we often have rich meta-data, such text (e.g., title), images (e.g., cover), high-dimensional categorical variables (e.g., location), or just scalars (e.g., price). For users, the side information available depends on the specific form of the interactive system. For search engines, it is the list of queries the user has issued, and (if they are logged in), information derived from websites they have visited (which is tracked via cookies). For online shopping sites, it is the list of searches plus past viewing and purchasing behavior. For social networking sites, there is information about the friendship graph of each user.

It is very easy to capture this side information in the factorization machines framework, by expanding our definition of  $\mathbf{x}$  beyond the two one-hot vectors, as illustrated in Fig. 22.6. The same input encoding can of course be fed into other kinds of models, such as deepFM or neuralMF.

In addition to features about the user and item, there may be other contextual features, such as the time of the interaction (e.g., the day or evening). The order (sequence) of the most recently viewed items is often also a useful signal. The “Convolutional Sequence Embedding Recommendation” or **Caser** model proposed in [TW18] captures this by embedding the last  $M$  items, and then treating the  $M \times K$  input as an image, by using a convolutional layer as part of the model.

Many other kinds of neural models can be designed for the recommender task. See e.g., [Zha+19c] for a review.

## 22.4 Exploration-exploitation tradeoff

An interesting “twist” to recommender systems that does not arise in other kinds of prediction problems is the fact that the data that the system is trained on is a consequence of recommendations made by earlier versions of the system. Thus there is a feedback loop [Bot+13]. For example, consider the YouTube video recommendation system [CAS16]. There are millions of videos on the site, so the system must come up with a shortlist, or “slate”, of videos to show the user, to help them find what they want (see e.g., [Ie+19]). If the user watches one of these videos, the system can consider this positive feedback that it made a good recommendation, and it can update the model parameters accordingly. However, maybe there was some other video that the user would have liked even more? It is impossible to answer this counterfactual unless the system takes a chance and shows some items for which the user response is uncertain. This is an example of the **exploration-exploitation**

**tradeoff** that we introduced in Sec. 8.3.3.

In addition to needing to explore, the system may have to wait for a long time until it can detect if a change it made its recommendation policies was beneficial. It is common to use **reinforcement learning** to learn policies which optimize long-term reward. See the sequel to this book, [Mur22], for details.



# 23 Graph embeddings<sup>1</sup>

## 23.1 Introduction

We now turn our focus to data which has semantic relationships between training samples  $\{\mathbf{x}_n\}_{n=1}^N$ . The relationships (known as edges) connect training samples (nodes) with an application specific meaning (commonly similarity). Graphs provide the mathematical foundations for reasoning about these kind of relationships.

Graphs are universal data structures that can represent complex relational data (composed of nodes and edges), and appear in multiple domains such as social networks, computational chemistry [Gil+17], biology [Sta+06], recommendation systems [KSJ09], semi-supervised learning [GB18], and others.

Let  $\mathbf{A} \in \{0, 1\}^{N \times N}$  be the adjacency matrix, where  $N$  is the number of nodes, and let  $\mathbf{W} \in \mathbb{R}^{N \times N}$  be a weighted version. In the methods we discuss below, some set  $\mathbf{W} = \mathbf{A}$  while others set  $\mathbf{W}$  to a transformation of  $\mathbf{A}$ , such as row-wise normalization. Finally, let  $\mathbf{X} \in \mathbb{R}^{N \times D}$  be a matrix of node features.

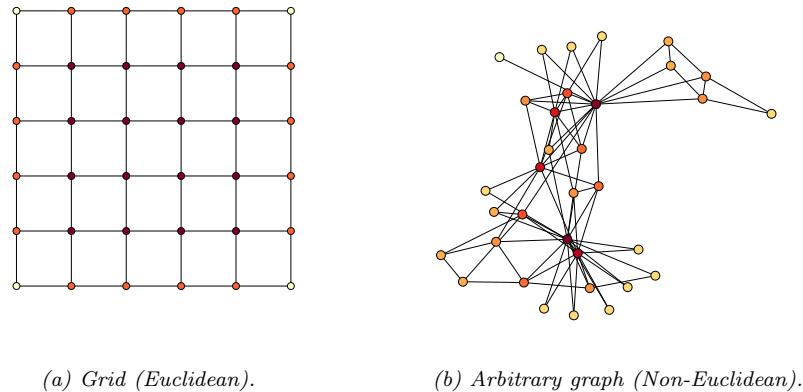
When designing and training a neural network model over graph data, we desire the designed method be applicable to nodes which participate in different graph settings (e.g. have differing connections and community structure). Contrast this with a neural network model designed for images, where each pixel (node) has the same neighborhood structure. By contrast, an arbitrary graph has no specified alignment of nodes, and further, each node might have a different neighborhood structure. See Fig. 23.1 for a comparison. Consequently, operations like Euclidean spatial convolution cannot be directly applied on irregular graphs: Euclidean convolutions strongly rely on geometric priors (such as shift invariance), which don't generalize to non-Euclidean domains.

These challenges led to the development of **Geometric Deep Learning** (GDL) research [Bro+17b], which aims at applying deep learning techniques to non-Euclidean data. In particular, given the widespread prevalence of graphs in real-world applications, there has been a surge of interest in applying machine learning methods to graph-structured data. Among these, **Graph Representation Learning** (GRL) [Cha+20] methods aim at learning low-dimensional continuous vector representations for graph-structured data, also called embeddings.

We divide GRL here into two classes of problems: **unsupervised** and **supervised** (or semi-supervised) GRL. The first class aims at learning low-dimensional Euclidean representations optimizing an objective, e.g. one that preserve the structure of an input graph. The second class also learns low-dimensional Euclidean representations but for a specific downstream prediction task such as

---

1. This chapter is co-authored with Bryan Perozzi.



Used with permission from [Cha+20].

node or graph classification. Further, the graph structure can be fixed throughout training and testing, which is known as the **transductive** learning setting (e.g. predicting user properties in a large social network), or alternatively the model is expected to answer questions about graphs not seen during training, known as the **inductive** learning setting (e.g. classifying molecular structures). Finally, while most supervised and unsupervised methods learn representations in Euclidean vector spaces, there recently has been interest for **non-Euclidean representation learning**, which aims at learning non-Euclidean embedding spaces such as hyperbolic or spherical spaces. The main motivations for this body of work is to use a continuous embedding space that resembles the underlying discrete structure of the input data it tries to embed (e.g. the hyperbolic space is a continuous version of trees [Sar11]).

## 23.2 Graph Embedding as an Encoder/Decoder Problem

While there are many approaches to GRL, many methods follow a similar pattern. First, the network input (node features  $\mathbf{X} \in \mathbb{R}^{N \times D}$  and graph edges in  $\mathbf{A}$  or  $\mathbf{W} \in \mathbb{R}^{N \times N}$ ) is encoded from the discrete domain of the graph into a continuous representation (embedding),  $\mathbf{Z} \in \mathbb{R}^{N \times L}$ . Next, the learned representation  $\mathbf{Z}$  is used to optimize a particular objective (such as reconstructing the links of the graph). In this section we will use the graph encoder-decoder model (**GRAPHEDM**) proposed by Chami et al. [Cha+20] to analyze popular families of GRL methods.

The GRAPHEDM framework (Figure 23.2, [Cha+20]) provides a general framework that encapsulates a wide variety of supervised and unsupervised graph embedding methods: including ones utilizing the graph as a regularizer (e.g. [ZG02]), positional embeddings (e.g. [PARS14]), and graph neural networks such as ones based on message passing [Gil+17; Sca+09] or graph convolutions [Bru+14; KW16a]).

The GRAPHEDM framework takes as input a weighted graph  $\mathbf{W} \in \mathbb{R}^{N \times N}$ , and optional node

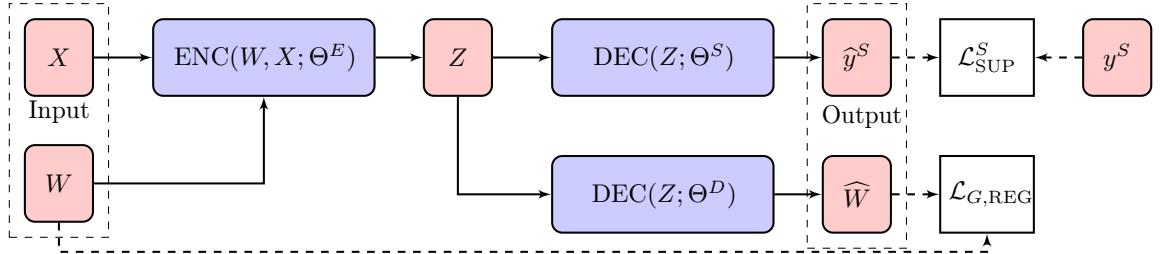


Figure 23.2: Illustration of the GRAPHEDM framework from Chami et al. [Cha+20]. Based on the supervision available, methods will use some or all of the branches. In particular, unsupervised methods do not leverage label decoding for training and only optimize the similarity decoder (lower branch). On the other hand, semi-supervised and supervised methods leverage the additional supervision to learn models' parameters (upper branch). Used with permission.

features  $\mathbf{X} \in \mathbb{R}^{N \times D}$ . In (semi-)supervised settings, we assume that we are given training target labels for nodes (denoted  $N$ ), edges (denoted  $E$ ), and/or for the entire graph (denoted  $G$ ). We denote the supervision signal as  $S \in \{N, E, G\}$ , as presented below.

The GRAPHEDM model itself can be decomposed into the following components:

- **Graph encoder network**  $ENC_{\Theta^E} : \mathbb{R}^{N \times N} \times \mathbb{R}^{N \times D} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{D \times L}$ , parameterized by  $\Theta^E$ , which combines the graph structure with optional node features to produce a node embedding matrix  $\mathbf{Z} \in \mathbb{R}^{N \times L}$  as follows:

$$\mathbf{Z} = ENC(\mathbf{W}, \mathbf{X}; \Theta^E). \quad (23.1)$$

As we shall see next, this node embedding matrix might capture different graph properties depending on the supervision used for training.

- **Graph decoder network**  $DEC_{\Theta^D} : \mathbb{R}^{N \times L} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{N \times N}$ , parameterized by  $\Theta^D$ , which uses the node embeddings  $Z$  to compute similarity scores for all node pairs in matrix  $\hat{\mathbf{W}} \in \mathbb{R}^{N \times N}$  as follows:

$$\hat{\mathbf{W}} = DEC(\mathbf{Z}; \Theta^D). \quad (23.2)$$

- **Classification network**  $DEC_{\Theta^S} : \mathbb{R}^{N \times L} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{N \times |\mathcal{Y}|}$ , where  $\mathcal{Y}$  is the label space. This network is used in (semi-)supervised settings and parameterized by  $\Theta^S$ . The output is a distribution over the labels  $\hat{y}^S$ , using node embeddings, as follows:

$$\hat{y}^S = DEC(\mathbf{Z}; \Theta^S). \quad (23.3)$$

Specific choices of the aforementioned (encoder and decoder) networks allows GRAPHEDM to realize specific graph embedding methods, as we explain in the next subsections.

The output of a model, as described by GRAPHEDM framework, is a reconstructed graph similarity matrix  $\hat{\mathbf{W}}$  (often used to train *unsupervised* embedding algorithms), and/or labels  $\hat{y}^S$  for *supervised* applications. The label output space  $\mathcal{Y}$  is application dependent. For instance, in node-level

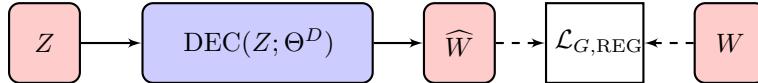


Figure 23.3: Shallow embedding methods. The encoder is a simple embedding look-up and the graph structure is only used in the loss function. Reprinted with permission from [Cha+20].

classification,  $\hat{y}^N \in \mathcal{Y}^N$ , with  $\mathcal{Y}$  representing the node label space. Alternately, for edge-level labeling,  $\hat{y}^E \in \mathcal{Y}^{N \times N}$ , with  $\mathcal{Y}$  representing the edge label space. Finally, we note that other kinds of labeling are possible, such as graph-level labeling (where we would say  $\hat{y}^G \in \mathcal{Y}$ , with  $\mathcal{Y}$  representing the graph label space).

Finally, a loss must be specified. This can be used to optimize the parameters  $\Theta = \{\Theta^E, \Theta^D, \Theta^S\}$ . GRAPHEDM models can be optimized using a combination of three different terms. First, a supervised loss term,  $\mathcal{L}_{\text{SUP}}^S$ , compares the predicted labels  $\hat{y}^S$  to the ground truth labels  $y^S$ . Next, a graph reconstruction loss term,  $\mathcal{L}_{\text{G,RECON}}$ , may leverage the graph structure to impose regularization constraints on the model parameters. Finally, a weight regularization loss term,  $\mathcal{L}_{\text{REG}}$ , allows representing priors on trainable model parameters for reducing overfitting. Models realizable by GRAPHEDM framework are trained by minimizing the total loss  $\mathcal{L}$  defined as:

$$\mathcal{L} = \alpha(y^S, \hat{y}^S; \Theta) + \beta\mathcal{L}_{\text{G,RECON}}(\mathbf{W}, \widehat{\mathbf{W}}; \Theta) + \gamma\mathcal{L}_{\text{REG}}(\Theta), \quad (23.4)$$

where  $\alpha$ ,  $\beta$  and  $\gamma$  are hyper-parameters, that can be tuned or set to zero. Note that graph embedding methods can be trained in a *supervised* ( $\alpha \neq 0$ ) or *unsupervised* ( $\alpha = 0$ ) fashion. Supervised graph embedding approaches leverage an additional source of information to learn embeddings such as node or graph labels. On the other hand, unsupervised network embedding approaches rely on the graph structure only to learn node embeddings.

### 23.3 Shallow graph embeddings

Shallow embedding methods are transductive graph embedding methods, where the encoder function maps categorical node IDs onto a Euclidean space through an embedding matrix. Each node  $v_i \in V$  has a corresponding low-dimensional learnable embedding vector  $\mathbf{Z}_i \in \mathbb{R}^L$  and the shallow encoder function is

$$\mathbf{Z} = \text{ENC}(\Theta^E) \triangleq \Theta^E \quad \text{where} \quad \Theta^E \in \mathbb{R}^{N \times L}. \quad (23.5)$$

Crucially, the embedding dictionary  $\mathbf{Z}$  is directly learned as model parameters. In the unsupervised case, embeddings  $\mathbf{Z}$  are optimized to recover some information about the input graph (e.g., the adjacency matrix  $\mathbf{W}$ , or a some transformation of it). This is somewhat similar to dimensionality reduction methods, such as PCA (Sec. 20.1), but for graph data structures. In the supervised case, the embeddings are optimized to predict some labels, for nodes, edges and/or the whole graph.

#### 23.3.1 Unsupervised embeddings

In the unsupervised case, we will consider two main types of shallow graph embedding methods: distance-based and outer product-based. Distance-based methods optimize the embedding dictionary

$\mathbf{Z} = \Theta^E \in \mathbb{R}^{N \times L}$  such that nodes  $i$  and  $j$  which are close in the graph (as measured by some graph distance function) are embedded in  $\mathbf{Z}$  such that  $d_2(\mathbf{Z}_i, \mathbf{Z}_j)$  is small, where  $d_2(\cdot, \cdot)$  is a pairwise distance function between embedding vectors. The distance function  $d_2(\cdot, \cdot)$  can be customized, which can lead to Euclidean (Section 23.3.2) or non-Euclidean (Section 23.3.3) embeddings. The decoder outputs a node-to-node matrix  $\widehat{\mathbf{W}} = \text{DEC}(\mathbf{Z}; \Theta^D)$ , with  $\widehat{W}_{ij} = d_2(\mathbf{Z}_i, \mathbf{Z}_j)$ .

Alternatively, some methods rely on pairwise dot-products to compute node similarities. The decoder network can be written as:  $\widehat{\mathbf{W}} = \text{DEC}(\mathbf{Z}; \Theta^D) = \mathbf{Z}\mathbf{Z}^\top$ .

In both cases, unsupervised embeddings for distance- and product-based methods are learned by minimizing the graph regularization loss:

$$\mathcal{L}_{G,\text{RECON}}(\mathbf{W}, \widehat{\mathbf{W}}; \Theta) = d_1(s(\mathbf{W}), \widehat{\mathbf{W}}), \quad (23.6)$$

where  $s(\mathbf{W})$  is an optional transformation of the adjacency matrix  $\mathbf{W}$ , and  $d_1$  is pairwise distance function between matrices, which does not need to be of the same form as  $d_2$ . As we shall see, there are many plausible choices for  $s, d_1, d_2$ . For instance, we can  $s$  to be the adjacency matrix itself,  $s(\mathbf{W}) = \mathbf{W}$  or a power of it e.g.  $s(\mathbf{W}) = \mathbf{W}^2$ . If the input is an weighted binary matrix  $\mathbf{W} = \mathbf{A}$ , we can set  $s(\mathbf{W}) = 1 - \mathbf{W}$ , so that connected nodes with  $A_{ij} = 1$  get a weight (distance) of 0.

### 23.3.2 Distance-based: Euclidean methods

Distance-based method sminimize Euclidean distances between similar (connected) nodes. We give some examples below.

**Multi-dimensional scaling** (MDS, Sec. 20.4.4) is equivalent to setting  $s(\mathbf{W})$  to some distance matrix measuring the dissimilarity between nodes (e.g. proportional to pairwise shortest distance) and then defining

$$d_1(s(W), \widehat{W}) = \sum_{i,j} (s(W)_{ij} - \widehat{W}_{ij})^2 = \|s(\mathbf{W}) - \widehat{\mathbf{W}}\|_F^2 \quad (23.7)$$

where  $\widehat{W}_{ij} = d_2(\mathbf{Z}_i, \mathbf{Z}_j) = \|\mathbf{Z}_i - \mathbf{Z}_j\|$  (although other distance metrics are plausible).

**Laplacian eigenmaps** (Sec. 20.4.9) learn embeddingss by solving the generalized eigenvector problem

$$\min_{\mathbf{Z} \in \mathbb{R}^{|V| \times d}} \mathbf{Z}^\top \mathbf{L} \mathbf{Z} \text{ s.t. } \mathbf{Z}^\top \mathbf{D} \mathbf{Z} = \mathbf{I} \text{ and } \mathbf{Z}^\top \mathbf{D} \mathbf{1} = 0 \quad (23.8)$$

where  $\mathbf{L} = \mathbf{D} - \mathbf{W}$  is the graph Laplacian (Sec. 20.4.9.2), and  $\mathbf{D}$  is a diagonal matrix containing the sum across columns for each row. The first constraint removes an arbitrary scaling factor in the embedding and the second one removes trivial solutions corresponding to the constant eigenvector (with eigenvalue zero for connected graphs). Further, note that  $\mathbf{Z}^\top \mathbf{L} \mathbf{Z} = \frac{1}{2} \sum_{i,j} W_{ij} \|\mathbf{Z}_i - \mathbf{Z}_j\|_2^2$  and therefore the minimization objective can be equivalently written as a graph reconstruction term, as follows:

$$d_1(s(\mathbf{W}), \widehat{\mathbf{W}}) = \sum_{i,j} \mathbf{W}_{ij} \times \widehat{\mathbf{W}}_{ij} \quad (23.9)$$

$$\widehat{\mathbf{W}}_{ij} = d_2(\mathbf{Z}_i, \mathbf{Z}_j) = \|\mathbf{Z}_i - \mathbf{Z}_j\|_2^2 \quad (23.10)$$

where  $s(\mathbf{W}) = \mathbf{W}$ .

### 23.3.3 Distance-based: non-Euclidean methods

So far, we have discussed methods which assume that embeddings lie in an Euclidean Space. However, recent work has considered hyperbolic geometry for graph embedding. In particular, hyperbolic embeddings are ideal for embedding trees and offer an exciting alternative to Euclidean geometry for graphs that exhibit hierarchical structures. We give some examples below.

Nickel and Kiela [NK17] learn embeddings of hierarchical graphs using the **Poincaré model** of hyperbolic space. This is simple to represent in our notation as we only need to change  $d_2(\mathbf{Z}_i, \mathbf{Z}_j)$  to the Poincaré distance function:

$$d_2(\mathbf{Z}_i, \mathbf{Z}_j) = d_{\text{Poincaré}}(\mathbf{Z}_i, \mathbf{Z}_j) = \text{arcosh} \left( 1 + 2 \frac{\|\mathbf{Z}_i - \mathbf{Z}_j\|_2^2}{(1 - \|\mathbf{Z}_i\|_2^2)(1 - \|\mathbf{Z}_j\|_2^2)} \right). \quad (23.11)$$

The optimization then learns embeddings which minimize distances between connected nodes while maximizing distances between disconnected nodes:

$$d_1(\mathbf{W}, \widehat{\mathbf{W}}) = \sum_{i,j} \mathbf{W}_{ij} \log \frac{e^{-\widehat{\mathbf{W}}_{ij}}}{\sum_{k | \mathbf{W}_{ik} = 0} e^{-\widehat{\mathbf{W}}_{ik}}} \quad (23.12)$$

where the denominator is approximated using negative sampling. Note that since the hyperbolic space has a manifold structure, care needs to be taken to ensure that the embeddings remain on the manifold (using Riemannian optimization techniques [Bon13]).

Other variants of these methods have been proposed. Nickel and Kiela [NK18] explore the **Lorentz model** of hyperbolic space, and show that it provides better numerical stability than the Poincaré model. Another line of work extends non-Euclidean embeddings to mixed-curvature product spaces [Gu+18a], which provide more flexibility for other types of graphs (e.g. ring of trees). Finally, work by Chamberlain, Clough, and Deisenroth [CCD17] extends Poincaré embeddings using skip-gram losses with hyperbolic inner products.

### 23.3.4 Outer product-based: Matrix factorization methods

Matrix factorization approaches learn embeddings that lead to a low rank representation of some similarity matrix  $s(\mathbf{W})$ , with  $s : \mathbb{R}^{N \times N} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{N \times N}$ . The following are frequent choices:  $s(\mathbf{W}) = \mathbf{W}$ ,  $s(\mathbf{W}) = L$  (Graph Laplacian), or other proximity measure such as the Katz centrality index, Common Neighbors or Adamic/Adar index.

The decoder function in matrix factorization methods is just a dot product:

$$\widehat{\mathbf{W}} = \text{DEC}(\mathbf{Z}; \Theta^D) = \mathbf{Z}\mathbf{Z}^\top \quad (23.13)$$

Matrix factorization methods learn  $\mathbf{Z}$  by minimizing a regularization loss  $\mathcal{L}_{G,\text{RECON}}(\mathbf{W}, \widehat{\mathbf{W}}; \Theta) = \|s(\mathbf{W}) - \widehat{\mathbf{W}}\|_F^2$ .

The **graph factorization** method of [Ahm+13b] learns a low-rank factorization of a graph by minimizing the graph regularization loss  $\mathcal{L}_{G,\text{RECON}}(\mathbf{W}, \widehat{\mathbf{W}}; \Theta) = \sum_{(v_i, v_j) \in E} (\mathbf{W}_{ij} - \widehat{\mathbf{W}}_{ij})^2$ .

Note that if  $\mathbf{A}$  is the binary adjacency matrix, ( $\mathbf{A}_{ij} = 1$  iff  $(v_i, v_j) \in E$  and  $\mathbf{A}_{ij} = 0$  otherwise), the graph regularization loss can be expressed in terms of the Frobenius norm:

$$\mathcal{L}_{G,\text{RECON}}(\mathbf{W}, \widehat{\mathbf{W}}; \Theta) = \|\mathbf{A} \odot (\mathbf{W} - \widehat{\mathbf{W}})\|_F^2, \quad (23.14)$$

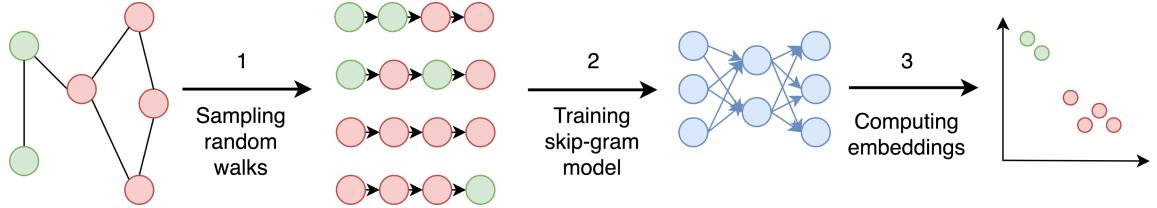


Figure 23.4: An overview of the pipeline for random-walk graph embedding methods. Reprinted with permission from [God18].

where  $\odot$  is the element-wise matrix multiplication operator. Therefore, GF also learns a low-rank factorization of the adjacency matrix  $W$  measured in Frobenius norm. We note that this is a sparse operation (summing only over edges which exist in the graph), and so the method has computational complexity  $O(M)$ .

The methods described so far are all symmetric, that is, they assume that  $\mathbf{W}_{ij} = \mathbf{W}_{ji}$ . This is a limiting assumption when working with directed graphs as some relationships are not reciprocal. The **GraRep** method of [CLX15] overcomes this limitation by learning two embeddings per node, a source embedding  $\mathbf{Z}^s$  and a target embedding  $\mathbf{Z}^t$ , which capture asymmetric proximity in directed networks. In addition to asymmetry, GraRep learns embeddings that preserve  $k$ -hop neighborhoods via powers of the adjacency matrix and minimizes a graph reconstruction loss with:

$$\widehat{\mathbf{W}}^{(k)} = \mathbf{Z}^{(k),s} \mathbf{Z}^{(k),t}^\top \quad (23.15)$$

$$\mathcal{L}_{G,\text{RECON}}(\mathbf{W}, \widehat{\mathbf{W}}^{(k)}; \Theta) = \|\mathbf{D}^{-k} \mathbf{W}^k - \widehat{\mathbf{W}}^{(k)}\|_F^2, \quad (23.16)$$

for each  $1 \leq k \leq K$ . GraRep concatenates all representations to get source embeddings  $\mathbf{Z}^s = [\mathbf{Z}^{(1),s} | \dots | \mathbf{Z}^{(K),s}]$  and target embeddings  $\mathbf{Z}^t = [\mathbf{Z}^{(1),t} | \dots | \mathbf{Z}^{(K),t}]$ . Unfortunately, GraRep is not very scalable, since it uses a matrix power, power,  $\mathbf{D}^{-1}\mathbf{W}$ , making it increasingly more dense. This limitation can be circumvented by using implicit matrix factorization [Per+17] as discussed below.

### 23.3.5 Outer product-based: Skip-gram methods

Skip-gram graph embedding models were inspired by research in natural language processing to model the distributional behavior of words [Mik+13c; PSM14b]. Skip-gram word embeddings are optimized to predict words in their context (the surrounding words) for each target word in a sentence. Given a sequence of words  $(w_1, \dots, w_T)$ , skip-gram will minimize the objective:

$$\mathcal{L} = - \sum_{-K \leq i \leq K, i \neq 0} \log \mathbb{P}(w_{k-i} | w_k),$$

for each target words  $w_k$ . These conditional probabilities can be efficiently estimated using neural networks. See Sec. 19.5.2.2 for details.

This idea has been leveraged for graph embeddings in the **DeepWalk** framework of [PARS14]. They justified this by showing empirically how the frequency statistics induced by random walks in real graphs follow a distribution similar that of words used in natural language. In terms of

GRAPHEDM, skip-gram graph embedding methods use an outer product (Equation 23.13) as their decoder function and a graph reconstruction term computed over random walks on the graph.

In more detail, DeepWalk trains node embeddings to maximize the probability of predicting *context nodes* for each *center node*. The context nodes are nodes appearing adjacent to the center node, in simulated random walks on  $\mathbf{A}$ . To train embeddings, DeepWalk generates sequences of nodes using truncated unbiased random walks on the graph—which can be compared to sentences in natural language models—and then maximize their log-likelihood. Each random walk starts with a node  $v_{i_1} \in V$  and repeatedly samples the next node uniformly at random:  $v_{i_{j+1}} \in \{v \in V \mid (v_{i_j}, v) \in E\}$ . The walk length is a hyperparameter. All generated random-walks can then be encoded by a sequence model. This two-step paradigm introduced by [PARS14] has been followed by many subsequent works, such as **node2vec** [GL16].

We note that it is common for underlying implementations to use two distinct representations for each node, one for when a node is center of a truncated random walk, and one when it is in the context. The implications of this modeling choice is studied further in [AEHPAR17].

To present DeepWalk in the GRAPHEDM framework, we can set:

$$s(\mathbf{W}) = \mathbb{E}_q \left[ (\mathbf{D}^{-1} \mathbf{W})^q \right] \text{ with } q \sim P(Q) = \text{Categorical}([1, 2, \dots, T_{\max}]) \quad (23.17)$$

where  $P(Q = q) = \frac{T_{\max}-1+q}{T_{\max}}$  (see [AEH+18] for the derivation).

Training DeepWalk is equivalent to minimizing:

$$\mathcal{L}_{G,\text{RECON}}(W, \widehat{\mathbf{W}}; \Theta) = \log Z(\mathbf{Z}) - \sum_{v_i \in V, v_j \in V} s(\mathbf{W})_{ij} \widehat{\mathbf{W}}_{ij}, \quad (23.18)$$

where  $\widehat{\mathbf{W}} = \mathbf{Z}\mathbf{Z}^\top$ , and the partition function is given by  $Z(\mathbf{Z}) = \prod_i \sum_j \exp(\widehat{\mathbf{W}}_{ij})$  can be approximated in  $O(N)$  time via hierarchical softmax (see Sec. 19.5.2). (It is also common to model  $\widehat{\mathbf{W}} = \mathbf{Z}_{\text{out}} \mathbf{Z}_{\text{in}}^\top$  for directed graphs using embedding dictionaries  $\mathbf{Z}_{\text{out}}, \mathbf{Z}_{\text{in}} \in \mathbb{R}^{N \times L}$ .)

As noted by [LG14b], Skip-gram methods can be viewed as implicit matrix factorization, and the methods discussed here are related to those of Matrix Factorization (see Sec. 23.3.4). This relationship is discussed in depth by [Qiu+18], who propose a general matrix factorization framework, **NetMF**, which uses the same underlying graph proximity information as DeepWalk, LINE [Tan+15], and node2vec [GL16]. Casting the node embedding problem as matrix factorization can inherit benefits of efficient sparse matrix operations [Qiu+19b].

### 23.3.6 Supervised embeddings

In many applications, we have labeled data in addition to node features and graph structure. While it is possible to tackle a supervised task by first learning unsupervised representations and then using them as features in a secondary model, this is not the ideal workflow. Unsupervised node embeddings might not preserve important properties of graphs (e.g., node neighborhoods or attributes), that are most useful for a downstream supervised task.

In light of this limitation, a number of methods combining these two steps, namely learning embeddings and predicting node or graph labels, have been proposed. Here, we focus on simple shallow methods. We discuss deep, nonlinear embeddings later on.

### 23.3.6.1 Label propagation

**Label propagation** (LP) [ZG02] is a very popular algorithm for graph-based semi-supervised node classification. The encoder is a shallow model represented by a lookup table  $\mathbf{Z}$ . LP uses the label space to represent the node embeddings directly (i.e. the decoder in LP is simply the identity function):

$$\hat{y}^N = \text{DEC}(\mathbf{Z}; \Theta^C) = \mathbf{Z}.$$

In particular, LP uses the graph structure to smooth the label distribution over the graph by adding a regularization term to the loss function, using the underlying assumption is that neighbor nodes should have similar labels (i.e. there exist some label consistency between connected nodes). Laplacian eigenmaps are utilized in the regularization to enforce this smoothness:

$$\mathcal{L}_{G,\text{RECON}}(\mathbf{W}, \widehat{\mathbf{W}}; \Theta) = \sum_{i,j} \mathbf{W}_{ij} \|y_i^N - \hat{y}_j^N\|_2^2 \quad (23.19)$$

LP minimizes this energy function over the space of functions that take fixed values on labelled nodes (i.e.  $\hat{y}_i^N = y_i^N \forall i | v_i \in V_L$ ) using an iterative algorithm that updates an unlabelled node's label distribution via the weighted average of its neighbors' labels.

**Label spreading** (LS) [Zho+04] is a variant of label propagation which minimizes the following energy function:

$$\mathcal{L}_{G,\text{RECON}}(\mathbf{W}, \widehat{\mathbf{W}}; \Theta) = \sum_{i,j} \mathbf{W}_{ij} \left\| \frac{\hat{y}_i^N}{\sqrt{D_i}} - \frac{\hat{y}_j^N}{\sqrt{D_j}} \right\|_2^2, \quad (23.20)$$

where  $D_i = \sum_j W_{ij}$  is the degree of node  $v_i$ .

In both methods, the supervised loss is simply the sum of distances between predicted labels and ground truth labels (one-hot vectors):

$$\mathcal{L}_{\text{SUP}}^N(y^N, \hat{y}^N; \Theta) = \sum_{i | v_i \in V_L} \|y_i^N - \hat{y}_i^N\|_2^2. \quad (23.21)$$

Note that while the regularization term is computed over all nodes in the graph, the supervised loss is computed over labelled nodes only. These methods are expected to work well with *consistent* graphs, that is graphs where node proximity in the graph is positively correlated with label similarity.

## 23.4 Graph Neural Networks

An extensive area of research focuses on defining convolutions over graph data. In the notation of Chami et al. [Cha+20], these (semi-)supervised neighborhood aggregation methods can be represented by an encoder of the form  $\mathbf{Z} = \text{ENC}(\mathbf{X}, \mathbf{W}; \Theta^E)$ , and decoders of the form  $\widehat{\mathbf{W}} = \text{DEC}(\mathbf{Z}; \Theta^D)$  and/or  $\hat{y}^S = \text{DEC}(\mathbf{Z}; \Theta^S)$ . There are many models in this family; we review some of them below.

### 23.4.1 Message passing GNNs

The original **graph neural network** (GNN) model of [GMS05; Sca+09] was the first formulation of deep learning methods for graph-structured data. It views the supervised graph embedding problem

as an information diffusion mechanism, where nodes send information to their neighbors until some stable equilibrium state is reached. More concretely, given randomly initialized node embeddings  $\mathbf{Z}^0$ , it applies the following recursion:

$$\mathbf{Z}^{t+1} = \text{ENC}(\mathbf{X}, \mathbf{W}, \mathbf{Z}^t; \Theta^E), \quad (23.22)$$

where parameters  $\Theta^E$  are reused at every iteration. After convergence ( $t = T$ ), the node embeddings  $\mathbf{Z}^T$  are used to predict the final output such as node or graph labels:

$$\hat{y}^S = \text{DEC}(\mathbf{X}, \mathbf{Z}^T; \Theta^S). \quad (23.23)$$

This process is repeated several times and the GNN parameters  $\Theta^E$  and  $\Theta^D$  are learned with backpropagation via the Almeda-Pineda algorithm [Alm87; Pin88]. By Banach's fixed point theorem, this process is guaranteed to converge to a unique solution when the recursion provides a contraction mapping. In light of this, Scarselli et al. [Sca+09] explore maps that can be expressed using message passing networks:

$$\mathbf{Z}_i^{t+1} = \sum_{j|(v_i, v_j) \in E} f(\mathbf{X}_i, \mathbf{X}_j, \mathbf{Z}_j^t; \Theta^E), \quad (23.24)$$

where  $f(\cdot)$  is a multi-layer perception (MLP) constrained to be a contraction mapping. The decoder function, however, has no constraints and can be any MLP.

Li et al. [Li+15] propose **Gated Graph Sequence Neural Networks** (GGSNNs), which remove the contraction mapping requirement from GNNs. In GGSNNs, the recursive algorithm in Equation 23.22 is relaxed by applying mapping functions for a fixed number of steps, where each mapping function is a gated recurrent unit [Cho+14b] with parameters shared for every iteration. The GGSNN model outputs predictions at every step, and so is particularly useful for tasks which have sequential structure (such as temporal graphs).

Gilmer et al. [Gil+17] provide a framework for graph neural networks called **message passing neural networks** (MPNNs), which encapsulates many recent models. In contrast with the GNN model which runs for an indefinite number of iterations, MPNNs provide an abstraction for modern approaches, which consist of multi-layer neural networks with a *fixed* number of layers. At every layer  $\ell$ , message functions  $f^\ell(\cdot)$  receive messages from neighbors (based on neighbor's hidden state), which are then passed to aggregation functions  $h^\ell(\cdot)$ :

$$\mathbf{m}_i^{\ell+1} = \sum_{j|(v_i, v_j) \in E} f^\ell(\mathbf{H}_i^\ell, \mathbf{H}_j^\ell) \quad (23.25)$$

$$\mathbf{H}_i^{\ell+1} = h^\ell(\mathbf{H}_i^\ell, \mathbf{m}_i^{\ell+1}), \quad (23.26)$$

where  $\mathbf{H}^0 = \mathbf{X}$ . After  $\ell$  layers of message passing, nodes' hidden representations encode information within  $\ell$ -hop neighborhoods.

Battaglia et al. [Bat+18] propose **GraphNet**, which further extends the MPNN framework to learn representations for edges, nodes and the entire graph using message passing functions. The explicit addition of edge and graph representations adds additional expressivity to the MPNN model, and allows the application of graph models to additional domains.

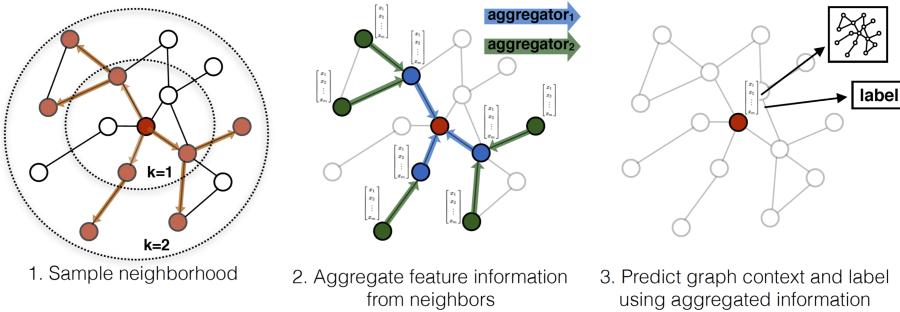


Figure 23.5: Illustration of the GraphSAGE model. Reprinted with permission from [HYL17].

### 23.4.2 Spectral Graph Convolutions

Spectral methods define graph convolutions using the spectral domain of the graph Laplacian matrix. These methods broadly fall into two categories: *spectrum-based methods*, which explicitly compute an eigendecomposition of the Laplacian (e.g., **spectral CNNs** [Bru+14]) and *spectrum-free* methods, which are motivated by spectral graph theory but do not actually perform a spectral decomposition (e.g., **Graph convolutional networks** or **GCN** [KW16a]).

A major disadvantage of spectrum-based methods is that they rely on the spectrum of the graph Laplacian and are therefore domain-dependent (i.e. cannot generalize to new graphs). Moreover, computing the Laplacian's spectral decomposition is computationally expensive. Spectrum-free methods overcome these limitations by utilizing approximations of these spectral filters. However, spectrum-free methods require using the whole graph  $\mathbf{W}$ , and so do not scale well.

For more details on spectral approaches, see e.g., [Bro+17b; Cha+20].

### 23.4.3 Spatial Graph Convolutions

*Spectrum-based* methods have an inherent domain dependency which limits the application of a model trained on one graph to a new dataset. Additionally, *spectrum-free* methods (e.g. GCNs) require using the entire graph  $\mathbf{A}$ , which can quickly become unfeasible as the size of the graph grows.

To overcome these limitations, another branch of graph convolutions (*spatial* methods) borrow ideas from standard CNNs – applying convolutions in the spatial domain as defined by the graph topology. For instance, in computer vision, convolutional filters are spatially localized by using fixed rectangular patches around each pixel. Combined with the natural ordering of pixels in images (top, left, bottom, right), it is possible to reuse filters' weights at every location. This process significantly reduces the total number of parameters needed for a model. While such spatial convolutions cannot directly be applied in graph domains, spatial graph convolutions take inspiration from them. The core idea is to use *neighborhood sampling* and *attention mechanisms* to create fixed-size graph patches, overcoming the irregularity of graphs.

### 23.4.3.1 Sampling-based spatial methods

To overcome the domain dependency and storage limitations of GCNs, Hamilton, Ying, and Leskovec [HYL17] propose **GraphSAGE**, a framework to learn inductive node embeddings. Instead of averaging signals from all one-hop neighbors (via multiplications with the Laplacian matrix), SAGE samples fixed neighborhoods (of size  $q$ ) for each node. This removes the strong dependency on fixed graph structure and allows generalization to new graphs. At every SAGE layer, nodes aggregate information from nodes sampled from their neighborhood (see Fig. 23.5). In the GRAPHEDM notation, the propagation rule can be written as:

$$\mathbf{H}_{:,i}^{\ell+1} = \sigma(\Theta_1^\ell \mathbf{H}_{:,i}^\ell + \Theta_2^\ell \text{AGG}(\{\mathbf{H}_{:,j}^\ell \mid v_j \in \text{Sample}(\text{nbr}(v_i), q)\})), \quad (23.27)$$

where  $\text{AGG}(\cdot)$  is an aggregation function. This aggregation function can be any permutation invariant operator such as averaging (SAGE-mean) or max-pooling (SAGE-pool). As SAGE works with fixed size neighborhoods (and not the entire adjacency matrix), it also reduces the computational complexity of training GCNs.

### 23.4.3.2 Attention-based spatial methods

Attention mechanisms (Sec. 15.4) have been successfully used in language models where they, for example, allow models to identify relevant parts of long sequence inputs. Inspired by their success in language, similar ideas have been proposed for graph convolution networks. Such graph-based attention models learn to focus their attention on important neighbors during the message passing step via parametric patches which are learned on top of node features. This provides more flexibility in inductive settings, compared to methods that rely on fixed weights such as GCNs.

The **Graph attention network** (GAT) model of [Vel+18] is an attention-based version of GCNs. At every GAT layer, it attends over the neighborhood of each node and learns to selectively pick nodes which lead to the best performance for some downstream task. The intuition behind this is similar to SAGE [HYL17] and makes GAT suitable for inductive and transductive problems. However unlike SAGE, which limits the convolution step to fixed size-neighborhoods, GAT allows each node to attend over the entirety of its neighbors – assigning each of them different weights. The attention parameters are trained through backpropagation, and the attention scores are then row-normalized with a softmax activation.

### 23.4.3.3 Geometric spatial methods

Monti et al. [Mon+17] propose **MoNet**, a general framework that works particularly well when the node features lie in a geometric space, such as 3D point clouds or meshes. MoNet learns attention patches using parametric functions in a pre-defined spatial domain (e.g. spatial coordinates), and then applies convolution filters in the resulting graph domain.

MoNet generalizes spatial approaches which introduce constructions for convolutions on manifolds, such as the Geodesic CNN (GCNN) [Mas+15] and the Anisotropic CNN (ACNN) [Bos+16]. Both GCNN and ACNN use fixed patches that are defined on a specific coordinate system and therefore cannot generalize to graph-structured data. However, the MoNet framework is more general; any pseudo-coordinates (i.e. node features) can be used to induce the patches. More formally, if  $\mathbf{U}^s$  are pseudo-coordinates and  $\mathbf{H}^\ell$  are features from another domain, the MoNet layer can be expressed in

our notation as:

$$\mathbf{H}^{\ell+1} = \sigma \left( \sum_{k=1}^K (\mathbf{W} \odot g_k(\mathbf{U}^s)) \mathbf{H}^\ell \Theta_k^\ell \right), \quad (23.28)$$

where  $g_k(U^s)$  are the learned parametric patches, which are  $N \times N$  matrices. In practice, MoNet uses Gaussian kernels to learn patches, such that:

$$g_k(\mathbf{U}^s) = \exp \left( -\frac{1}{2} (\mathbf{U}^s - \boldsymbol{\mu}_k)^\top \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_k^{-1} (\mathbf{U}^s - \boldsymbol{\mu}_k) \right), \quad (23.29)$$

where  $\boldsymbol{\mu}_k$  and  $\boldsymbol{\Sigma}_k$  are learned parameters, and  $\boldsymbol{\Sigma}_k$  is restricted to be diagonal.

#### 23.4.4 Non-Euclidean Graph Convolutions

As we discussed in Sec. 23.3.3, hyperbolic geometry enables learning of shallow embeddings of hierarchical graphs which have smaller distortion than Euclidean embeddings. However, one major downside of shallow embeddings is that they do not generalize well (if at all) across graphs. On the other hand, Graph Neural Networks, which leverage node features, have achieved good results on many inductive graph embedding tasks.

It is natural then, that there has been recent interest in extending Graph Neural Networks to learn non-Euclidean embeddings. One major challenge in doing so again revolves around the nature of convolution itself. How should we perform convolutions in a non-Euclidean space, where standard operations such as inner products and matrix multiplications are not defined?

Hyperbolic Graph Convolution Networks (HGCN) [Cha+19a] and Hyperbolic Graph Neural Networks (HGNN) [LNK19] apply graph convolutions in hyperbolic space by leveraging the Euclidean tangent space, which provides a first-order approximation of the hyperbolic manifold at a point. For every graph convolution step, node embeddings are mapped to the Euclidean tangent space at the origin, where convolutions are applied, and then mapped back to the hyperbolic space. These approaches yield significant improvements on graphs that exhibit hierarchical structure (Figure 23.6).

## 23.5 Deep graph embeddings

In this section, we use graph neural networks to devise graph embeddings in the unsupervised and semi-supervised cases.

### 23.5.1 Unsupervised embeddings

In this section, we discuss unsupervised losses for GNNs, as illustrated in Fig. 23.7.

#### 23.5.1.1 Structural deep network embedding

The **structural deep network embedding** (SDNE) method of [WCZ16] uses auto-encoders which preserve first and second-order node proximity. The SDNE encoder takes a row of the adjacency matrix as input (setting  $s(\mathbf{W}) = \mathbf{W}$ ) and produces node embeddings  $\mathbf{Z} = \text{ENC}(\mathbf{W}; \theta^E)$ . (Note that this ignores any node features.) The SDNE decoder returns  $\widehat{\mathbf{W}} = \text{DEC}(\mathbf{Z}; \Theta^D)$ , a reconstruction

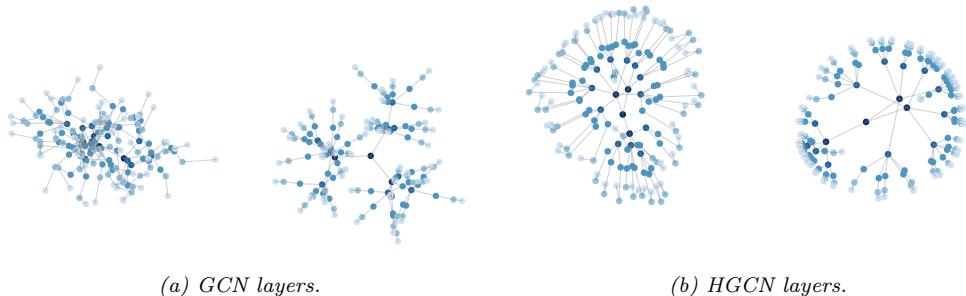


Figure 23.6: Euclidean (left) and hyperbolic (right) embeddings of a tree graph. Hyperbolic embeddings learn natural hierarchies in the embedding space (depth indicated by color). Reprinted with permission from [Cha+19a].

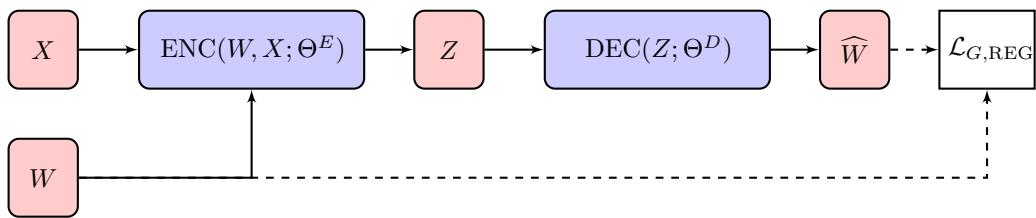


Figure 23.7: Unsupervised graph neural networks. Graph structure and input features are mapped to low-dimensional embeddings using a graph neural network encoder. Embeddings are then decoded to compute a graph regularization loss (unsupervised). Reprinted with permission from [Cha+20].

trained to recover the original graph adjacency matrix. SDNE preserves second order node proximity by minimizing the following loss:

$$||(\mathbf{s}(\mathbf{W}) - \widehat{\mathbf{W}}) \cdot \mathbb{I}(s(\mathbf{W}) > 0)||_F^2 + \alpha_{\text{SDNE}} \sum_{ij} s(\mathbf{W})_{ij} ||\mathbf{Z}_i - \mathbf{Z}_j||_2^2 \quad (23.30)$$

The first term is similar to the matrix factorization regularization objective, except that  $\widehat{\mathbf{W}}$  is not computed using outer products. The second term is the used by distance-based shallow embedding methods.

### 23.5.1.2 (Variational) graph auto-encoders

Kipf and Welling [KW16b] use graph convolutions (Sec. 23.4.2) to learn node embeddings  $\mathbf{Z} = \text{GCN}(\mathbf{W}, \mathbf{X}; \Theta^E)$ . The decoder is an outer product:  $\text{DEC}(\mathbf{Z}; \Theta^D) = \mathbf{Z}\mathbf{Z}^\top$ . The graph reconstruction term is the sigmoid cross entropy between the true adjacency and the predicted edge similarity scores:

$$\mathcal{L}_{G,\text{RECON}}(\mathbf{W}, \widehat{\mathbf{W}}; \Theta) = - \left( \sum_{i,j} (1 - \mathbf{W}_{ij}) \log(1 - \sigma(\widehat{\mathbf{W}}_{ij})) + \mathbf{W}_{ij} \log \sigma(\widehat{\mathbf{W}}_{ij}) \right). \quad (23.31)$$

Computing the regularization term over all possible nodes pairs is computationally challenging in practice, so the Graph Auto Encoders (GAE) model uses negative sampling to overcome this challenge.

Whereas GAE is a deterministic model, the authors also introduce variational graph auto-encoders (VGAE), which relies on variational auto-encoders (as in Sec. 20.3.5) to encode and decode the graph structure. In VGAE, the embedding  $\mathbf{Z}$  is modelled as a latent variable with a standard multivariate normal prior  $p(\mathbf{Z}) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{Z}|\mathbf{0}, \mathbf{I})$  and a graph convolution is used as the amortized inference network,  $q_\Phi(\mathbf{Z}|\mathbf{W}, \mathbf{X})$ . The model is trained by minimizing the corresponding negative evidence lower bound:

$$\text{NELBO}(\mathbf{W}, \mathbf{X}; \Theta) = -\mathbb{E}_{q_\Phi(\mathbf{Z}|\mathbf{W}, \mathbf{X})}[\log p(\mathbf{W}|\mathbf{Z})] + \text{KL}(q_\Phi(\mathbf{Z}|\mathbf{W}, \mathbf{X})||p(\mathbf{Z})) \quad (23.32)$$

$$= \mathcal{L}_{G,\text{RECON}}(\mathbf{W}, \widehat{\mathbf{W}}; \Theta) + \text{KL}(q_\Phi(\mathbf{Z}|\mathbf{W}, \mathbf{X})||p(\mathbf{Z})). \quad (23.33)$$

### 23.5.1.3 Iterative generative modelling of graphs (Graphite)

The **graphite** model of [GZE19] extends GAE and VGAE by introducing a more complex decoder. This decoder iterates between pairwise decoding functions and graph convolutions, as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} \widehat{\mathbf{W}}^{(k)} &= \frac{\mathbf{Z}^{(k)} \mathbf{Z}^{(k)\top}}{\|\mathbf{Z}^{(k)}\|_2^2} + \frac{\mathbf{1}\mathbf{1}^\top}{N} \\ \mathbf{Z}^{(k+1)} &= \text{GCN}(\widehat{\mathbf{W}}^{(k)}, \mathbf{Z}^{(k)}) \end{aligned}$$

where  $\mathbf{Z}^{(0)}$  is initialized using the output of the encoder network. This process allows Graphite to learn more expressive decoders. Finally, similar to GAE, Graphite can be deterministic or variational.

### 23.5.1.4 Methods based on contrastive losses

The **deep graph infomax** method of [Vel+19] is a GAN-like method for creating graph-level embeddings. Given one or more *real* (positive) graphs, each with its adjacency matrix  $\mathbf{W} \in \mathbb{R}^{N \times N}$  and node features  $\mathbf{X} \in \mathbb{R}^{N \times D}$ , this method creates *fake* (negative) adjacency matrices  $\mathbf{W}^- \in \mathbb{R}^{N^- \times N^-}$  and their features  $X^- \in \mathbb{R}^{N^- \times D}$ . It trains (i) an encoder that processes both real and fake samples, respectively giving  $Z = \text{ENC}(\mathbf{X}, \mathbf{W}; \Theta^E) \in \mathbb{R}^{N \times L}$  and  $\mathbf{Z}^- = \text{ENC}(\mathbf{X}^-, \mathbf{W}^-; \Theta^E) \in \mathbb{R}^{N^- \times L}$ , (ii) a (readout) graph pooling function  $\mathcal{R} : \mathbb{R}^{N \times L} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^L$ , and (iii) a discriminator function  $\mathcal{D} : \mathbb{R}^L \times \mathbb{R}^L \rightarrow [0, 1]$  which is trained to output  $\mathcal{D}(\mathbf{Z}_i, \mathcal{R}(\mathbf{Z})) \approx 1$  and  $\mathcal{D}(\mathbf{Z}_j^-, \mathcal{R}(\mathbf{Z}^-)) \approx 0$ , respectively, for nodes corresponding to given graph  $i \in V$  and fake graph  $j \in V^-$ . Specifically, DGI optimizes:

$$\min_{\Theta} - \mathbb{E}_{\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{w}} \sum_{i=1}^N \log \mathcal{D}(\mathbf{Z}_i, \mathcal{R}(\mathbf{Z})) - \mathbb{E}_{\mathbf{x}^-, \mathbf{w}^-} \sum_{j=1}^{N^-} \log (1 - \mathcal{D}(\mathbf{Z}_j^-, \mathcal{R}(\mathbf{Z}^-))), \quad (23.34)$$

where  $\Theta$  contains  $\Theta^E$  and the parameters of  $\mathcal{R}, \mathcal{D}$ . In the first expectation, DGI samples from the real (positive) graphs. If only one graph is given, it could sample some subgraphs from it (e.g. connected components). The second expectation samples fake (negative) graphs. In DGI, fake samples use the real adjacency  $W^- := W$  but fake features  $X^-$  are a row-wise random permutation of real  $X$ . The ENC used in DGI is a graph convolutional network, though any GNN can be used. The

readout  $\mathcal{R}$  summarizes an entire (variable-size) graph to a single (fixed-dimension) vector. Veličković et al. [Vel+19] use  $\mathcal{R}$  as a row-wise mean, though other graph pooling might be used e.g. ones aware of the adjacency.

The optimization of Eq. (23.34)) is shown by [Vel+19] to maximize a lower-bound on the mutual information between the outputs of the encoder and the graph pooling function, i.e., between individual node representations and the graph representation.

In [Pen+20] they present a variant called **Graphical Mutual Information** Rather than maximizing MI of node information and an entire graph, GMI maximizes the MI between the representation of a node and its neighbors.

### 23.5.2 Semi-supervised embeddings

In this section, we discuss semi-supervised losses for GNNs. We consider the simple special case in which we use a nonlinear encoder of the node features, but ignore the graph structure, i.e., we use  $\mathbf{Z} = \text{ENC}(\mathbf{X}; \Theta^E)$ .

#### 23.5.2.1 SemiEmb

[WRC08] propose an approach called **semi-supervised embeddings** (SemiEmb) They use an MLP for the encoder of  $\mathbf{X}$ . For the decoder, we can use a distance-based graph decoder:  $\widehat{\mathbf{W}}_{ij} = \text{DEC}(\mathbf{Z}; \Theta^D)_{ij} = \|\mathbf{Z}_i - \mathbf{Z}_j\|^2$ , where  $\|\cdot\|$  can be the L2 or L1 norm.

SemiEmb regularizes intermediate or auxiliary layers in the network using the same regularizer as the label propagation loss in Eq. (23.19). SemiEmb uses a feed forward network to predict labels from intermediate embeddings, which are then compared to ground truth labels using the Hinge loss.

#### 23.5.2.2 Planetoid

Unsupervised skip-gram methods like DeepWalk and node2vec learn embeddings in a multi-step pipeline, where random walks are first generated from the graph and then used to learn embeddings. These embeddings are likely not optimal for downstream classification tasks. The **Planetoid** method of [YCS16] extends such random walk methods to leverage node label information during the embedding algorithm.

Planetoid first maps nodes to embeddings  $\mathbf{Z} = [\mathbf{Z}^c || \mathbf{Z}^F] = \text{ENC}(\mathbf{X}; \Theta^E)$  using a neural network (again ignoring graph structure). The node embeddings  $\mathbf{Z}^c$  capture structural information while the node embeddings  $\mathbf{Z}^F$  capture feature information. There are two variants, a transductive version that directly learns  $\mathbf{Z}^c$  (as an embedding lookup), and an inductive model where  $\mathbf{Z}^c$  is computed with parametric mappings that act on input features  $\mathbf{X}$ . The Planetoid objective contains both a supervised loss and a graph regularization loss. The graph regularization loss measures the ability to predict context using nodes embeddings:

$$\mathcal{L}_{G,\text{RECON}}(\mathbf{W}, \widehat{\mathbf{W}}; \Theta) = -\mathbb{E}_{(i,j,\gamma)} \log \sigma(\gamma \widehat{\mathbf{W}}_{ij}), \quad (23.35)$$

with  $\widehat{\mathbf{W}}_{ij} = \mathbf{Z}_i^\top \mathbf{Z}_j$  and  $\gamma \in \{-1, 1\}$  with  $\gamma = 1$  if  $(v_i, v_j) \in E$  is a positive pair and  $\gamma = -1$  if  $(v_i, v_j)$  is a negative pair. The distribution under the expectation is directly defined through a sampling process

The supervised loss in Planetoid is the negative log-likelihood of predicting the correct labels:

$$\mathcal{L}_{\text{SUP}}^N(y^N, \hat{y}^N; \Theta) = -\frac{1}{|V_L|} \sum_{i|v_i \in V_L} \sum_{1 \leq k \leq C} y_{ik}^N \log \hat{y}_{ik}^N, \quad (23.36)$$

where  $i$  is a node's index while  $k$  indicates label classes, and  $\hat{y}_i^N$  are computed using a neural network followed by a softmax activation, mapping  $\mathbf{Z}_i$  to predicted labels.

## 23.6 Applications

There are many applications of graph embeddings, both unsupervised and supervised. We give some examples in the sections below.

### 23.6.1 Unsupervised applications

In this section, we discuss common unsupervised applications.

#### 23.6.1.1 Graph reconstruction

A popular unsupervised graph application is graph reconstruction. In this setting, the goal is to learn mapping functions (which can be parametric or not) that map nodes onto a manifold which can reconstruct the graph. This is regarded as *unsupervised* in the sense that there is no supervision beyond the graph structure. Models can be trained by minimizing a reconstruction error, which is the error in recovering the original graph from learned embeddings. Several algorithms were designed specifically for this task, and we refer to Sec. 23.3.1 and Sec. 23.5.1 for some examples of reconstruction objectives. At a high level, graph reconstruction is similar to dimensionality reduction in the sense that the main goal is summarize some input data into a low-dimensional embedding. Instead of compressing high dimensional vectors into low-dimensional ones as standard dimensionality reduction methods (e.g. PCA) do, the goal of graph reconstruction models is to compress data defined on graphs into low-dimensional vectors.

#### 23.6.1.2 Link prediction

The goal in **link prediction** is to predict missing or unobserved links (e.g., links that may appear in the future for dynamic and temporal networks). Link prediction can also help identifying spurious link and remove them. It is a major application of graph learning models in industry, and common example of applications include predicting friendships in **social networks** predicting user-product interactions in **recommendation systems**, predicting suspicious links in a **fraud detection system** (see Fig. 23.8), or predicting missing relationships between entities in a **knowledge graph** (see e.g., [Nic+15]).

A common approach for training link prediction models is to mask some edges in the graph (positive and negative edges), train a model with the remaining edges and then test it on the masked set of edges. Note that link prediction is different from graph reconstruction. In link prediction, we aim at predicting links that are not observed in the original graph while in graph reconstruction, we only want to compute embeddings that preserve the graph structure through reconstruction error minimization.

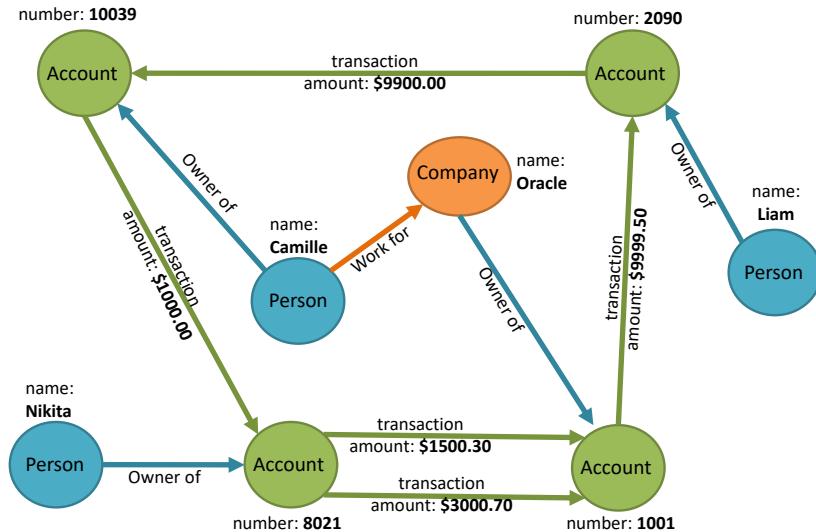


Figure 23.8: A graph representation of some financial transactions. Adapted from <http://pgql-lang.org/spec/1.2/>.

Finally, while link prediction has similarities with supervised tasks in the sense that we have labels for edges (positive, negative, unobserved), we group it under the unsupervised class of applications since edge labels are usually not used during training, but only used to measure the predictive quality of embeddings.

#### 23.6.1.3 Clustering

Clustering is particularly useful for discovering communities and has many real-world applications. For instance, clusters exist in biological networks (e.g. as groups of proteins with similar properties), or in social networks (e.g. as groups of people with similar interests).

The unsupervised methods introduced in this chapter can be used to solve clustering problems by applying the clustering algorithm (e.g. k-means) to embeddings that are output by an encoder. Further, clustering can be joined with the learning algorithm while learning a shallow [Roz+19] or Graph Convolution [Chi+19a; CEL19] embedding model.

#### 23.6.1.4 Visualization

There are many off-the-shelf tools for mapping graph nodes onto two-dimensional manifolds for the purpose of visualization. Visualizations allow network scientists to qualitatively understand graph properties, understand relationships between nodes or visualize node clusters. Among the popular tools are methods based on *Force-Directed Layouts*, with various web-app Javascript implementations.

Unsupervised graph embedding methods are also used for visualization purposes: by first training an encoder-decoder model (corresponding to a shallow embedding or graph convolution network),

and then mapping every node representation onto a two-dimensional space using t-SNE (Sec. 20.4.10) or PCA (Sec. 20.1). Such a process (embedding → dimensionality reduction) is commonly used to qualitatively evaluate the performance of graph learning algorithms. If nodes have attributes, one can use these attributes to color the nodes on 2D visualization plots. Good embedding algorithms embed nodes that have similar attributes nearby in the embedding space, as demonstrated in visualizations of various methods [PARS14; KW16a; AEH+18]. Finally, beyond mapping every node to a 2D coordinate, methods which map every graph to a representation [ARZP19] can similarly be projected into two dimensions to visualize and qualitatively analyze graph-level properties.

### 23.6.2 Supervised applications

In this section, we discuss common supervised applications.

#### 23.6.2.1 Node classification

Node classification is an important supervised graph application, where the goal is to learn node representations that can accurately predict node labels. (This is sometimes called **statistical relational learning** [GT07].) For instance, node labels could be scientific topics in citation networks, or gender and other attributes in social networks.

Since labelling large graphs can be time-consuming and expensive, semi-supervised node classification is a particularly common application. In semi-supervised settings, only a fraction of nodes are labelled and the goal is to leverage links between nodes to predict attributes of unlabelled nodes. This setting is transductive since there is only one partially labelled fixed graph. It is also possible to do inductive node classification, which corresponds to the task of classifying nodes in multiple graphs.

Note that node features can significantly boost the performance on node classification tasks if these are descriptive for the target label. Indeed, recent methods such as GCN (Sec. 23.4.2) GraphSAGE (Sec. 23.4.3.1) have achieved state-of-the-art performance on multiple node classification benchmarks due to their ability to combine structural information and semantics coming from features. On the other hand, other methods such as random walks on graphs fail to leverage feature information and therefore achieve lower performance on these tasks.

#### 23.6.2.2 Graph classification

Graph classification is a supervised application where the goal is to predict graph labels. Graph classification problems are inductive and a common example is classifying chemical compounds (e.g. predicting toxicity or odor from a molecule, as shown in Fig. 23.9).

Graph classification requires some notion of pooling, in order to aggregate node-level information into graph-level information. As discussed earlier, generalizing this notion of pooling to arbitrary graphs is non trivial because of the lack of regularity in the graph structure making graph pooling an active research area. In addition to the supervised methods discussed above, a number of unsupervised methods for learning graph-level representations have been proposed [Tsi+18; ARZP19; TMP20].

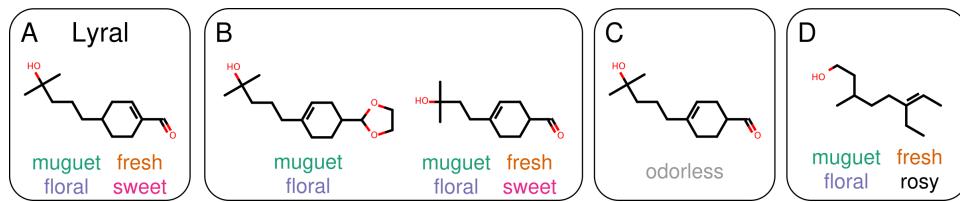


Figure 23.9: Structurally similar molecules do not necessarily have similar odor descriptors. (A) Lyral, the reference molecule. (B) Molecules with similar structure can share similar odor descriptors. (C) However, a small structural change can render the molecule odorless. (D) Further, large structural changes can leave the odor of the molecule largely unchanged. From Figure 1 of [SL+19], originally from [OPK12]. Used with kind permission of Benjamin Sanchez-Lengeling.

# Appendices



## PART VI

# Appendix: Mathematical background



# A Some useful mathematics

## A.1 Introduction

In this chapter, we summarize some basic mathematical facts that we will need later in the book. We cover sets, functions, calculus, function spaces, graphs and manifolds. More details can be found in standard math textbooks. (See also [DFO20; Kro+19] which covers some of this material from an ML point of view.)

## A.2 Sets, functions and relations

A **set** is a collection of objects, such as the finite set of colors  $\mathcal{X} = \{\text{red, green, blue}\}$ , or the (countably) infinite set of non-negative integers,  $\mathbb{Z}_+ = \{0, 1, 2, \dots\}$ , or the (uncountably) infinite set of real-numbers,  $\mathbb{R}$ . The empty set is denoted  $\emptyset$ . We denote the set of integers from 1 to  $N$  by  $\{1, \dots, N\}$ . We write  $x \in \mathcal{X}$  if  $x$  is a member of the set. Set intersection is denoted  $\mathcal{S} \cap \mathcal{T}$ , and is defined as the set of things in common (e.g.,  $\{1, 2, 3\} \cap \{1, 2, 4\} = \{1, 2\}$ ). Set union is denoted  $\mathcal{S} \cup \mathcal{T}$ , and is defined as the set of things from both sets (e.g.,  $\{1, 2, 3\} \cup \{1, 2, 4\} = \{1, 2, 3, 4\}$ ). The size of a set is the number of elements, and is denoted  $|\mathcal{X}|$ .

### A.2.1 Functions

A **function**  $f : \mathcal{X} \rightarrow \mathcal{Y}$  is a mapping from a set of points  $\mathcal{X}$ , known as the **domain**, to another set of points  $\mathcal{Y}$ , known as the **codomain**, such that there is a unique value  $y = f(x) \in \mathcal{Y}$  for each  $x \in \mathcal{X}$ . For example,  $y = x^2$  is the quadratic function, mapping  $\mathcal{X} = \mathbb{R}$  to  $\mathcal{Y} = \mathbb{R}_+$ . We define some more terminology below.

#### A.2.1.1 Terminology

The **image** of a set  $A \subseteq \mathcal{X}$  under a function  $f$ , denoted  $f(A)$ , is the subset of the codomain of obtainable values:  $f(A) = \{f(x) : x \in A\}$ . The image of  $f$ , also called its **range**, is the image of its domain,  $f(\mathcal{X})$ . See Fig. A.1 for an illustration.

The inverse image, or **preimage**, of a set  $B \subseteq \mathcal{Y}$  under  $f$  is the set of values that get mapped to  $B$ :  $f^{-1}(B) = \{x \in \mathcal{X} : f(x) \in B\}$ . For example, the preimage of  $B = \{4, 9\}$  under the quadratic function is the set  $f^{-1}(B) = \{-3, -2, 2, 3\}$ .

If there are multiple  $x$  values that map to the same  $y$  value the function is called **many-to-one**. If each  $x$  maps to a distinct  $y$ , the function is called **one-to-one** or **injective**. If every element of

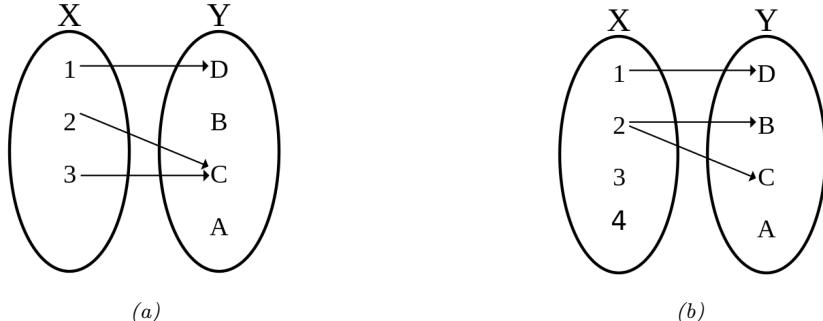


Figure A.1: (a) Diagram of a function, with domain  $X = \{1, 2, 3\}$  and codomain  $Y = \{A, B, C, D\}$ . The image/range is the set  $\{C, D\}$ . (b) This is not a function, since 2 does not map to a unique element. In addition, the mapping for elements 3 and 4 is not defined. From [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Function\\_\(mathematics\)](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Function_(mathematics)). Used with kind permission of Wikipedia author “Bin im Garten”.

the codomain is generated by some  $x$  (i.e., the preimage  $f^{-1}(y)$  of every  $y \in \mathcal{Y}$  is nonempty), then we say  $f$  is **onto** or **surjective**. A function  $f$  is called **bijective** if it is injective and surjective; in this case,  $f$  has an inverse function  $f^{-1}$ .

For example, consider the quadratic function  $f(x) = x^2$ . We consider several variants with different domains and codomains:  $f_1 : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}_+$ ,  $f_2 : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ , and  $f_3 : \mathbb{R}_+ \rightarrow \mathbb{R}_+$ . We see that  $f_1$  is many-to-one (e.g.,  $(-2)^2 = 2^2 = 4$ ) and surjective;  $f_2$  is many-to-one but not surjective; and  $f_3$  is one-to-one and surjective, and hence invertible. As another example, the cubic function  $f(x) = x^3 : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  is surjective.

### A.2.1.2 Continuous functions

We say a function  $f : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^m$  is **continuous** at  $\mathbf{a} \in \mathbb{R}^n$  if

$$\forall \epsilon > 0. \exists \delta > 0. \text{ s.t. } \| \mathbf{x} - \mathbf{a} \| < \delta \implies \| f(\mathbf{x}) - f(\mathbf{a}) \| < \epsilon \quad (\text{A.1})$$

Intuitively this means that if we move a small distance in input space (as measured by the 2-norm, Sec. B.1.3.1), then the function's response should only change a little bit. Fig. A.2a shows a 1d function that violates this assumption.

### A.2.1.3 Lipschitz constants

The **Lipschitz constant** of a function measures how much the function changes as we vary its input. In the 1d case, this is defined as any constant  $C \geq 0$  such that, for all real  $x_1$  and  $x_2$ , we have

$$|f(x_1) - f(x_2)| \leq C|x_1 - x_2| \quad (\text{A.2})$$

This is illustrated in Fig. A.3: for a given constant  $C$ , the function output cannot change by more than  $C$  if we change the function input by 1 unit. This can be generalized to vector inputs using a suitable norm.

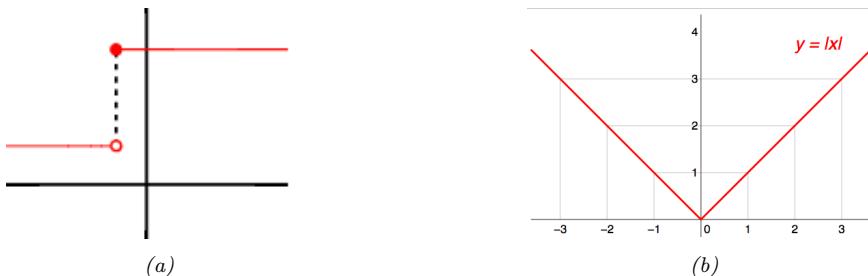


Figure A.2: (a) A function that has a jump discontinuity at the marked point. From <https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Derivative>. Used with kind permission of Wikipedia author Jacj. (b) The absolute value function is continuous, but is not differentiable at  $x = 0$ . From <https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Derivative>. Used with kind permission of Wikipedia author Qef.

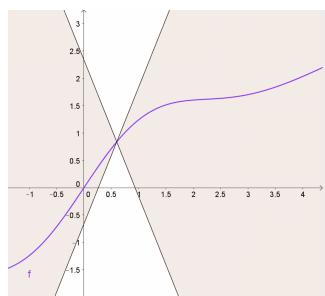


Figure A.3: For a Lipschitz continuous function  $f$ , there exists a double cone (white) whose origin can be moved along the graph of  $f$  so that the whole graph always stays outside the double cone. From [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Lipschitz\\_continuity](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Lipschitz_continuity). Used with kind permission of Wikipedia author Taschee.

#### A.2.1.4 Linear and affine functions

A function  $f : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  is called a **linear function** if

$$f(c_1\mathbf{x} + c_2\mathbf{y}) = c_1 f(\mathbf{x}) + c_2 f(\mathbf{y}) \quad (\text{A.3})$$

for all scalars  $c_1$ ,  $c_2$  and vectors  $\mathbf{x}$ ,  $\mathbf{y}$ . Note that this implies  $f(c_1\mathbf{x}) = c_1f(\mathbf{x})$ . A function is called **affine** if it is the sum of a linear function plus a constant offset. (Sometimes we use the word “linear” to include an offset term as well.)

The importance of linear functions is that we can predict the output of a linear function in terms of its response to simple inputs. To see this, note that we can represent any vector  $\mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^n$  as a sum of  $n$  unit vectors  $\mathbf{e}_i = (0, \dots, 0, 1, 0, \dots, 0)$ .

$$\mathbf{x} = \sum_{i=1}^n x_i \mathbf{e}_i \quad (\text{A.4})$$

(See Sec. B.1.2 for details.) Hence we can predict the output of  $f(\mathbf{x})$  as a sum of **impulse responses**

$$f(\mathbf{x}) = \sum_{i=1}^n x_i f(\mathbf{e}_i) \quad (\text{A.5})$$

Based on Eq. (A.5), we see that we can represent a linear function as an inner product:

$$f(\mathbf{x}) = \mathbf{a}^\top \mathbf{x} \quad (\text{A.6})$$

where  $a_i = f(\mathbf{e}_i)$  for  $i = 1 : n$ . For example, consider the linear function that computes the average of its arguments,  $f(\mathbf{x}) = (x_1 + \dots + x_n)/n$ . This can be represented by  $f(\mathbf{x}) = \mathbf{a}^\top \mathbf{x}$ , where  $\mathbf{a} = (1/n)\mathbf{1}_n = (1/n, \dots, 1/n)$ .

We can extend the definition of affine to handle functions that map vectors to vectors,  $f : \mathbb{R}^m \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$ , by noting

$$f(\mathbf{x}) = \mathbf{A}^\top \mathbf{x} + \mathbf{b} \quad (\text{A.7})$$

where  $\mathbf{A}$  is a  $m \times n$  matrix and  $\mathbf{b}$  is an  $n \times 1$  vector. See Chapter B for details.

### A.2.1.5 Nonlinear functions

Most functions are nonlinear. For example, consider the function that computes the maximum of its arguments,  $f(\mathbf{x}) = \max_i x_i$ . This is not linear. The easiest way to show this is to construct a counter example. Let  $\mathbf{x} = (1, -1)$ ,  $\mathbf{y} = (-1, 1)$ ,  $c_1 = c_2 = 1$ . Then

$$f(c_1\mathbf{x} + c_2\mathbf{y}) = 0 \neq c_1 f(\mathbf{x}) + c_2 f(\mathbf{y}) = 2 \quad (\text{A.8})$$

However, many functions are locally linear around a point (see Sec. A.4.5 for details).

### A.2.1.6 Quadratic functions

A scalar-argument quadratic function has the form

$$f(x) = ax^2 + bx + c \quad (\text{A.9})$$

We can use a technique called **completing the square** to manipulate this equation as follows:

$$ax^2 + bx + c = a(x - h)^2 + k \quad (\text{A.10})$$

$$h = -\frac{b}{2a} \quad (\text{A.11})$$

$$k = c - \frac{b^2}{4a} \quad (\text{A.12})$$

In the vector-argument case, a quadratic function is defined as follows:

$$f(\mathbf{x}) = \mathbf{x}^\top \mathbf{A} \mathbf{x} + \mathbf{x}^\top \mathbf{b} + c \quad (\text{A.13})$$

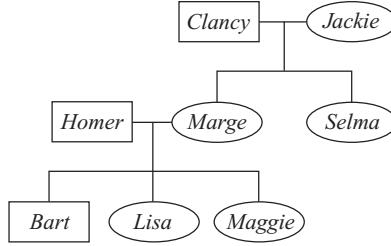


Figure A.4: Pedigree tree for a family from the TV show The Simpsons. Circles are females, squares are males. From Figure 3B from [KF09a]. Used with kind permission of Daphne Koller.

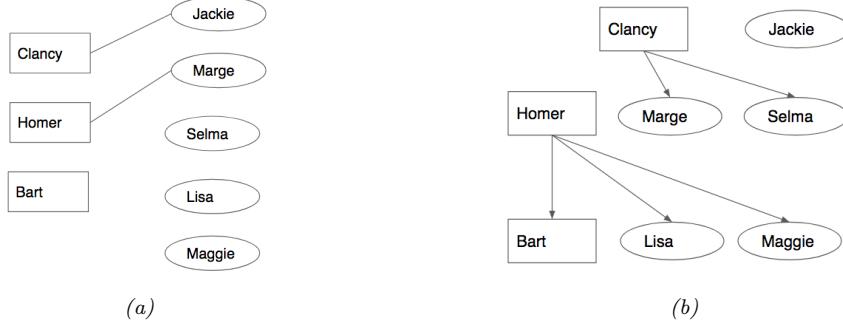


Figure A.5: (a) Graph of the symmetric (undirected) married-to relation between  $\mathcal{V}_m$  and  $\mathcal{V}_f$ . This is a bipartite graph, with male nodes on left, and female nodes on the right. (b) Graph of directed father-of relation from  $\mathcal{V}_m$  to  $\mathcal{V}_m \cup \mathcal{V}_f$ .

Completing the square in this case gives us

$$\mathbf{x}^\top \mathbf{A} \mathbf{x} + \mathbf{x}^\top \mathbf{b} + c = (\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{h})^\top \mathbf{A} (\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{h}) + k \quad (\text{A.14})$$

$$\mathbf{h} = -\frac{1}{2} \mathbf{A}^{-1} \mathbf{b} \quad (\text{A.15})$$

$$k = c - \frac{1}{4} \mathbf{b}^\top \mathbf{A}^{-1} \mathbf{b} \quad (\text{A.16})$$

(This assumes that  $\mathbf{A}$  is invertible.) We often drop the linear term  $\mathbf{x}^\top \mathbf{b}$  and the constant term  $c$  to get the following, known as a **quadratic form**:

$$f(\mathbf{x}) = \mathbf{x}^\top \mathbf{A} \mathbf{x} \quad (\text{A.17})$$

## A.2.2 Relations

A **binary relation**  $R$  is a collection of pairs  $R = \{(x, y) : x \in \mathcal{X}, y \in \mathcal{Y}\}$ , where  $\mathcal{X}$  and  $\mathcal{Y}$  are two sets. We write  $R(x, y)$  if  $(x, y) \in R$ , meaning that  $x$  and  $y$  are related by  $R$ . A function is a special case of a relation of the form  $R = \{(x, f(x)) : x \in \mathcal{X}\}$ .

For example, consider the family tree of the Simpsons, shown in Fig. A.4. Let  $\mathcal{V}_m$  be the set of males,  $\mathcal{V}_f$  be the set of females, and  $\mathcal{V} = \mathcal{V}_m \cup \mathcal{V}_f$  be all the members of the family. The diagram encodes several binary relations. For example, the symmetric relation “married-to” can be represented as the set of pairs

$$R_{\text{married}} = \{(Clancy, Jackie), (Jackie, Clancy), (Homer, Marge), (Marge, Homer)\} \quad (\text{A.18})$$

We see that  $R_m \subseteq \mathcal{V} \times \mathcal{V}$ .

The binary one-to-many relation “father-of” can be represented as the set of pairs

$$R_{\text{father-of}} = \{(Clancy, Marge), (Clancy, Selma), (Homer, Bart), (Homer, Lisa), (Homer, Maggie)\} \quad (\text{A.19})$$

We see that  $R_{\text{father-of}} \subseteq \mathcal{V}_m \times \mathcal{V}$ .

We can represent binary relations as **graphs**, where each node is an object in the domain, and there is an  $i \rightarrow j$  edge if  $(i, j) \in R$ . For example, Fig. A.5(a) represents the symmetric married-to relation as an undirected **bipartite graph**, with males on one side and females on the other. Fig. A.5(b) shows the asymmetric relation “father-of” using a directed graph. Each graph can be represented as  $N \times N$  **adjacency matrix**  $\mathbf{M}$ , where  $N = |\mathcal{V}|$  is the number of nodes, and  $M_{ij} = 1$  iff there is an  $i \rightarrow j$  edge. Sparse matrices (with many zeros) correspond to sparse graphs (with many missing edges) and vice versa. Also, block structure in the matrix corresponds to structure in the graph.

We can also have higher order relations. Formally, a  $k$ -ary relation is a set of  $k$ -tuples,  $R \subseteq \mathcal{V} \times \mathcal{V} \cdots \mathcal{V}$ . These can be represented graphically using **hypergraphs**.

## A.3 Matrix calculus

The topic of **calculus** concerns computing “rates of change” of functions as we vary their inputs. It is of vital importance to machine learning, as well as almost every other numerical discipline. In this section, we review some standard results. In some cases, we use some concepts and notation from matrix algebra, which we cover in Chapter B. For more details on these results from a deep learning perspective, see [PH18].

### A.3.1 Derivatives

Consider a scalar-argument function  $f : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ . We define its **derivative** at a point  $a$  to be the quantity

$$f'(x) \triangleq \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{f(x + h) - f(x)}{h} \quad (\text{A.20})$$

assuming the limit exists. This measures how quickly the output changes when we move a small distance in input space away from  $x$  (i.e., the “rate of change” of the function). We can interpret  $f'(x)$  as the slope of the tangent line at  $f(x)$ , and hence

$$f(x + h) \approx f(x) + f'(x)h \quad (\text{A.21})$$

for small  $h$ .

We can compute a **finite difference** approximation to the derivative by using a finite step size  $h$ , as follows:

$$f'(x) \equiv \underbrace{\lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{f(x+h) - f(x)}{h}}_{\text{forward difference}} = \underbrace{\lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{f(x+h/2) - f(x-h/2)}{h}}_{\text{central difference}} = \underbrace{\lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{f(x) - f(x-h)}{h}}_{\text{backward difference}} \quad (\text{A.22})$$

The smaller the step size  $h$ , the better the estimate, although if  $h$  is too small, there can be errors due to numerical cancellation.

We can think of differentiation as an operator that maps functions to functions,  $D(f) = f'$ , where  $f'(x)$  computes the derivative at  $x$  (assuming the derivative exists at that point). The use of the prime symbol  $f'$  to denote the derivative is called **Lagrange notation**. The second derivative function, which measures how quickly the gradient is changing, is denoted by  $f''$ . The  $n$ 'th derivative function is denoted  $f^{(n)}$ .

Alternatively, we can use **Leibniz notation**, in which we denote the function by  $y = f(x)$ , and its derivative by  $\frac{dy}{dx}$  or  $\frac{d}{dx}f(x)$ . To denote the evaluation of the derivative at a point  $a$ , we write  $\left. \frac{df}{dx} \right|_{x=a}$ .

The **directional derivative** measures how much the function changes along a direction  $\mathbf{v}$  in space. It is defined as follows

$$D_{\mathbf{v}}f(\mathbf{x}) = \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{f(\mathbf{x} + h\mathbf{v}) - f(\mathbf{x})}{h} \quad (\text{A.23})$$

### A.3.2 Gradients

We can extend the notion of derivatives to handle vector-argument functions,  $f : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ , by defining the **partial derivative** of  $f$  with respect to  $x_i$  to be

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial x_i} = \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{f(\mathbf{x} + h\mathbf{e}_i) - f(\mathbf{x})}{h} \quad (\text{A.24})$$

where  $\mathbf{e}_i$  is the  $i$ 'th unit vector.

The **gradient** of a function at a point  $\mathbf{x}$  is the vector of its partial derivatives:

$$\mathbf{g} = \frac{\partial f}{\partial \mathbf{x}} = \nabla f = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{\partial f}{\partial x_1} \\ \vdots \\ \frac{\partial f}{\partial x_n} \end{pmatrix} \quad (\text{A.25})$$

To emphasize the point at which the gradient is evaluated, we can write

$$\mathbf{g}(\mathbf{x}^*) \triangleq \left. \frac{\partial f}{\partial \mathbf{x}} \right|_{\mathbf{x}^*} \quad (\text{A.26})$$

We see that the operator  $\nabla$  (pronounced “nabla”) maps a function  $f : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  to another function  $\mathbf{g} : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$ . Since  $\mathbf{g}()$  is a vector-valued function, it is known as a **vector field**. By contrast, the derivative function  $f'$  is a **scalar field**.

Finally, suppose that some of the arguments to the function depend on each other. Concretely, suppose the function has the form  $f(t, x(t), y(t))$ . We define the **total derivative** of  $f$  wrt  $t$  as follows:

$$\frac{df}{dt} = \frac{\partial f}{\partial t} + \frac{\partial f}{\partial x} \frac{dx}{dt} + \frac{\partial f}{\partial y} \frac{dy}{dt} \quad (\text{A.27})$$

If we multiply both sides by the differential  $dt$ , we get the **total differential**

$$df = \frac{\partial f}{\partial t} dt + \frac{\partial f}{\partial x} dx + \frac{\partial f}{\partial y} dy \quad (\text{A.28})$$

This measures how much  $f$  changes when we change  $t$ , both via the direct effect of  $t$  on  $f$ , but also indirectly, via the effects of  $t$  on  $x$  and  $y$ .

### A.3.3 Jacobian

Consider a function that maps a vector to another vector,  $\mathbf{f} : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^m$ . The **Jacobian matrix** of this function is an  $m \times n$  matrix of partial derivatives:

$$\mathbf{J} = \frac{\partial \mathbf{f}}{\partial \mathbf{x}^\top} \triangleq \begin{pmatrix} \frac{\partial f_1}{\partial x_1} & \cdots & \frac{\partial f_1}{\partial x_n} \\ \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ \frac{\partial f_m}{\partial x_1} & \cdots & \frac{\partial f_m}{\partial x_n} \end{pmatrix} \quad (\text{A.29})$$

Note that we lay out the results in the same orientation as the output  $\mathbf{f}$ ; this is sometimes called numerator layout or the Jacobian formulation.<sup>1</sup>

Sometimes it is useful to take the Jacobian of the composition of two functions. Let  $h(\mathbf{x}) = f(g(\mathbf{x}))$ . By the chain rule of calculus, we have

$$\mathbf{J}_h(\mathbf{x}) = \mathbf{J}_f(g(\mathbf{x})) \mathbf{J}_g(\mathbf{x}) \quad (\text{A.30})$$

### A.3.4 Hessian

For a function  $f : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  that is twice differentiable, we define the **Hessian matrix** as the (symmetric)  $n \times n$  matrix of second partial derivatives:

$$\mathbf{H} = \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial \mathbf{x}^2} = \nabla^2 f = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x_1^2} & \cdots & \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x_1 \partial x_n} \\ & \vdots & \\ \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x_n \partial x_1} & \cdots & \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x_n^2} \end{pmatrix} \quad (\text{A.31})$$

We see that the Hessian is the Jacobian of the gradient.

### A.3.5 Gradients of commonly used functions

In this section, we list without proof the gradients of certain widely used functions.

---

1. For a much more detailed discussion of notation, see [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Matrix\\_calculus](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Matrix_calculus).

### A.3.5.1 Functions that map scalars to scalars

Consider a differentiable function  $f : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ . Here are some useful identities from scalar calculus, which you should already be familiar with.

$$\frac{d}{dx} cx^n = cnx^{n-1} \quad (\text{A.32})$$

$$\frac{d}{dx} \log(x) = 1/x \quad (\text{A.33})$$

$$\frac{d}{dx} \exp(x) = \exp(x) \quad (\text{A.34})$$

$$\frac{d}{dx} [f(x) + g(x)] = \frac{df(x)}{dx} + \frac{dg(x)}{dx} \quad (\text{A.35})$$

$$\frac{d}{dx} [f(x)g(x)] = f(x) \frac{dg(x)}{dx} + g(x) \frac{df(x)}{dx} \quad (\text{A.36})$$

$$\frac{d}{dx} f(u(x)) = \frac{du}{dx} \frac{df(u)}{du} \quad (\text{A.37})$$

Eq. (A.37) is known as the **chain rule of calculus**.

### A.3.5.2 Functions that map vectors to scalars

Consider a differentiable function  $f : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ . Here are some useful identities:<sup>2</sup>

$$\frac{\partial(\mathbf{a}^\top \mathbf{x})}{\partial \mathbf{x}} = \mathbf{a} \quad (\text{A.38})$$

$$\frac{\partial(\mathbf{b}^\top \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x})}{\partial \mathbf{x}} = \mathbf{A}^\top \mathbf{b} \quad (\text{A.39})$$

$$\frac{\partial(\mathbf{x}^\top \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x})}{\partial \mathbf{x}} = (\mathbf{A} + \mathbf{A}^\top)\mathbf{x} \quad (\text{A.40})$$

It is fairly easy to prove these identities by expanding out the quadratic form, and applying scalar calculus.

### A.3.5.3 Functions that map matrices to scalars

Consider a function  $f : \mathbb{R}^{m \times n} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  which maps a matrix to a scalar. We are using the following natural layout for the derivative matrix:

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial \mathbf{X}} = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{\partial f}{\partial x_{11}} & \cdots & \frac{\partial f}{\partial x_{1n}} \\ \vdots & & \vdots \\ \frac{\partial f}{\partial x_{m1}} & \cdots & \frac{\partial f}{\partial x_{mn}} \end{pmatrix} \quad (\text{A.41})$$

Below are some useful identities.

---

2. Some of the identities are taken from the list at <http://www.cs.nyu.edu/~roweis/notes/matrixid.pdf>.

### Identities involving quadratic forms

One can show the following results.

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{X}} (\mathbf{a}^\top \mathbf{X} \mathbf{b}) = \mathbf{a} \mathbf{b}^\top \quad (\text{A.42})$$

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{X}} (\mathbf{a}^\top \mathbf{X}^\top \mathbf{b}) = \mathbf{b} \mathbf{a}^\top \quad (\text{A.43})$$

### Identities involving matrix trace

One can show the following results.

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{X}} \text{tr}(\mathbf{AXB}) = \mathbf{A}^\top \mathbf{B}^\top \quad (\text{A.44})$$

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{X}} \text{tr}(\mathbf{X}^\top \mathbf{A}) = \mathbf{A} \quad (\text{A.45})$$

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{X}} \text{tr}(\mathbf{X}^{-1} \mathbf{A}) = -\mathbf{X}^{-\top} \mathbf{A}^\top \mathbf{X}^{-\top} \quad (\text{A.46})$$

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{X}} \text{tr}(\mathbf{X}^\top \mathbf{AX}) = (\mathbf{A} + \mathbf{A}^\top) \mathbf{X} \quad (\text{A.47})$$

### Identities involving matrix determinant

One can show the following results.

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{X}} \det(\mathbf{AXB}) = \det(\mathbf{AXB}) \mathbf{X}^{-T} \quad (\text{A.48})$$

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{X}} \ln(\det(\mathbf{X})) = \mathbf{X}^{-T} \quad (\text{A.49})$$

## A.4 Convexity

In this section, we introduce the concept of **convexity**, which plays a fundamental role in the theory and practice of optimization, as we see in Chapter 5, as well as several other areas of mathematics and statistics. It builds on several ideas from linear algebra. More details can be found in various textbooks, such as [Dah10].

### A.4.1 Convex sets

We say  $\mathcal{S}$  is a **convex set** if, for any  $\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}' \in \mathcal{S}$ , we have

$$\lambda \mathbf{x} + (1 - \lambda) \mathbf{x}' \in \mathcal{S}, \quad \forall \lambda \in [0, 1] \quad (\text{A.50})$$

That is, if we draw a line from  $\mathbf{x}$  to  $\mathbf{x}'$ , all points on the line lie inside the set. See Fig. A.6 for some illustrations of convex and non-convex sets.

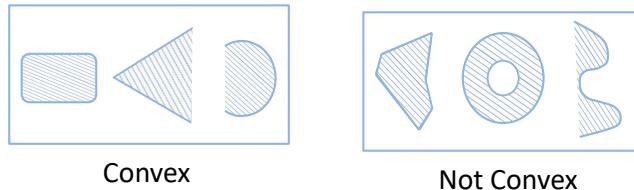


Figure A.6: Illustration of some convex and non-convex sets.

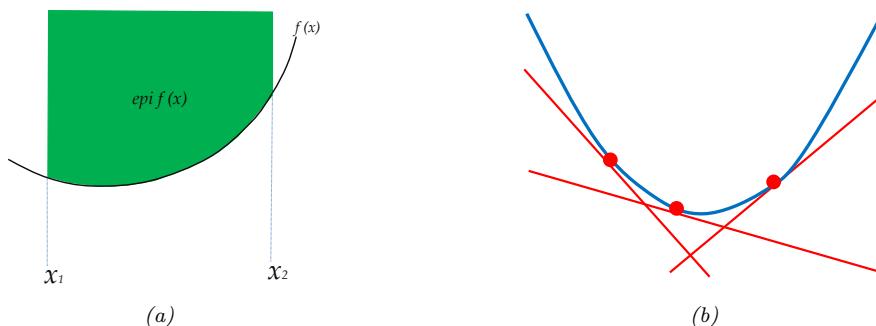


Figure A.7: (a) Illustration of the epigraph of a function. (b) For a convex function  $f(x)$ , its epigraph can be represented as the intersection of half-spaces defined by linear lower bounds derived from the **conjugate function**  $f^*(\lambda) = \max_x \lambda x - f(x)$ .

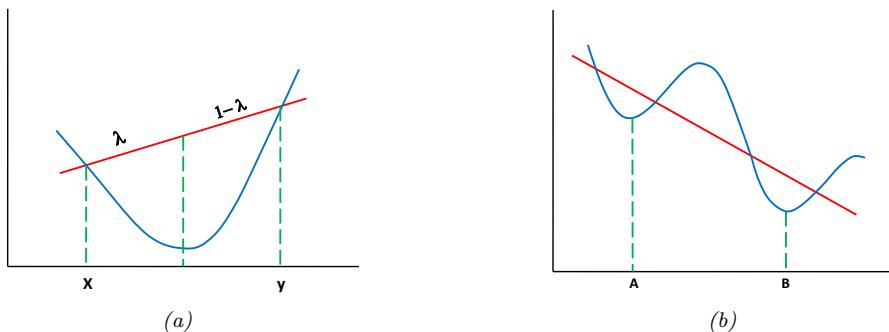


Figure A.8: (a) Illustration of a convex function. We see that the chord joining  $(x, f(x))$  to  $(y, f(y))$  lies above the function. (b) A function that is neither convex nor concave. **A** is a local minimum, **B** is a global minimum.

### A.4.2 Convex functions

We say  $f$  is a **convex function** if its **epigraph** (the set of points above the function, illustrated in Fig. A.7a) defines a convex set. Equivalently, a function  $f(\mathbf{x})$  is called convex if it is defined on a convex set and if, for any  $\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y} \in \mathcal{S}$ , and for any  $0 \leq \lambda \leq 1$ , we have

$$f(\lambda\mathbf{x} + (1 - \lambda)\mathbf{y}) \leq \lambda f(\mathbf{x}) + (1 - \lambda)f(\mathbf{y}) \quad (\text{A.51})$$

See Fig. A.8(a) for a 1d example of a convex function. A function is called **strictly convex** if the inequality is strict. A function  $f(\mathbf{x})$  is **concave** if  $-f(\mathbf{x})$  is convex, and **strictly concave** if  $-f(\mathbf{x})$  is strictly convex. See Fig. A.8(b) for a 1d example of a function that is neither convex nor concave.

Here are some examples of 1d convex functions:

$$\begin{aligned} & x^2 \\ & e^{ax} \\ & -\log x \\ & x^a, \quad a > 1, x > 0 \\ & |x|^a, \quad a \geq 1 \\ & x \log x, \quad x > 0 \end{aligned}$$

#### A.4.2.1 Characterization of convex functions

Intuitively, a convex function is shaped like a bowl. Formally, one can prove the following important result:

**Theorem A.4.1.** Suppose  $f : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  is twice differentiable over its domain. Then  $f$  is convex iff  $\mathbf{H} = \nabla^2 f(\mathbf{x})$  is positive semi definite (Sec. B.1.5.3) for all  $\mathbf{x} \in \text{dom}(f)$ . Furthermore,  $f$  is strictly convex if  $\mathbf{H}$  is positive definite.

For example, consider the quadratic form

$$f(\mathbf{x}) = \mathbf{x}^\top \mathbf{A} \mathbf{x} \quad (\text{A.52})$$

This is convex if  $\mathbf{A}$  is positive semi definite, and is strictly convex if  $\mathbf{A}$  is positive definite. It is neither convex nor concave if  $\mathbf{A}$  has eigenvalues of mixed sign. See Fig. A.9.

#### A.4.2.2 Strongly convex functions

We say a function  $f$  is **strongly convex** with parameter  $m > 0$  if the following holds for all  $\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y}$  in  $f$ 's domain:

$$(\nabla f(\mathbf{x}) - \nabla f(\mathbf{y}))^\top (\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{y}) \geq m \|\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{y}\|_2^2 \quad (\text{A.53})$$

A strongly convex function is also strictly convex, but not vice versa.

If the function  $f$  is twice continuously differentiable, then it is strongly convex with parameter  $m$  if and only if  $\nabla^2 f(\mathbf{x}) \succeq m\mathbf{I}$  for all  $\mathbf{x}$  in the domain, where  $\mathbf{I}$  is the identity and  $\nabla^2 f$  is the Hessian matrix, and the inequality  $\succeq$  means that  $\nabla^2 f(\mathbf{x}) - m\mathbf{I}$  is positive semi-definite. This is equivalent

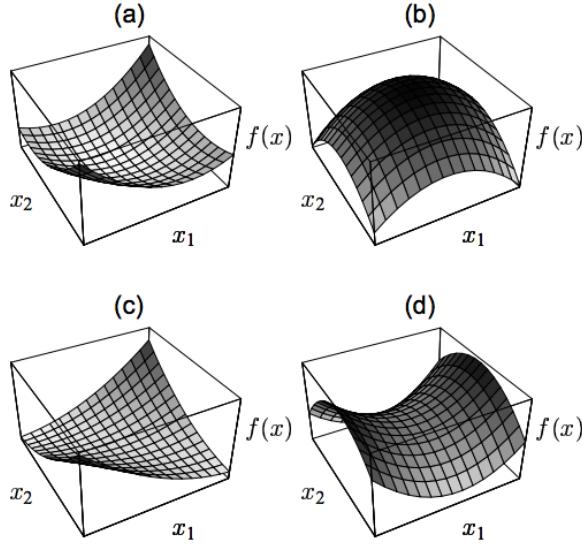


Figure A.9: The quadratic form  $f(\mathbf{x}) = \mathbf{x}^\top \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x}$  in 2d. (a)  $\mathbf{A}$  is positive definite, so  $f$  is convex. (b)  $\mathbf{A}$  is negative definite, so  $f$  is concave. (c)  $\mathbf{A}$  is positive semidefinite but singular, so  $f$  is convex, but not strictly. Notice the valley of constant height in the middle. (d)  $\mathbf{A}$  is indefinite, so  $f$  is neither convex nor concave. The stationary point in the middle of the surface is a saddle point. From Figure 5 of [She94].

to requiring that the minimum eigenvalue of  $\nabla^2 f(\mathbf{x})$  be at least  $m$  for all  $\mathbf{x}$ . If the domain is just the real line, then  $\nabla^2 f(x)$  is just the second derivative  $f''(x)$ , so the condition becomes  $f''(x) \geq m$ . If  $m = 0$ , then this means the Hessian is positive semidefinite (or if the domain is the real line, it means that  $f''(x) \geq 0$ ), which implies the function is convex, and perhaps strictly convex, but not strongly convex.

The distinction between convex, strictly convex, and strongly convex is rather subtle. To better understand this, consider the case where  $f$  is twice continuously differentiable and the domain is the real line. Then we can characterize the differences as follows:

- $f$  is convex if and only if  $f''(x) \geq 0$  for all  $x$ .
- $f$  is strictly convex if  $f''(x) > 0$  for all  $x$  (note: this is sufficient, but not necessary).
- $f$  is strongly convex if and only if  $f''(x) \geq m > 0$  for all  $x$ .

Note that it can be shown that a function  $f$  is strongly convex with parameter  $m$  iff the function

$$J(\mathbf{x}) = f(\mathbf{x}) - \frac{m}{2} \|\mathbf{x}\|^2 \tag{A.54}$$

is convex.

#### A.4.2.3 Operations that preserve convexity

In general, it can be computationally difficult to determine if a function is convex [Ahm+13a]. Fortunately, there are various operations that preserve convexity, that let us derive complex convex

functions from simpler parts. Many such rules are given in [BV04]; here we just list a few.

- Non-negative weighted sums: If  $f_1, \dots, f_m$  are convex functions and  $w_1, \dots, w_m \geq 0$ , then  $f(\mathbf{x}) = \sum_{i=1}^m w_i f_i(\mathbf{x})$  is also convex.
- Composition with an affine mapping: Suppose  $f : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  is convex. Let  $\phi(\mathbf{u}) = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{b}$  be an affine function, where  $\mathbf{u} \in \mathbb{R}^m$ ,  $\mathbf{A} \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times m}$ , and  $\mathbf{b} \in \mathbb{R}^n$ . Finally, define  $g(\mathbf{u}) = f(\phi(\mathbf{u}))$ . Then  $g$  is a convex function of  $\mathbf{u}$ . For example, consider the function  $g(\mathbf{u}) = (u_1 - 2u_2)^4$ . This is convex since  $(u_1 - 2u_2) = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{u}$  is an affine function of  $\mathbf{u}$ , and  $f(z) = z^4$  is convex.
- Pointwise maximum: If  $f_1, \dots, f_m$  are convex functions, then their pointwise maximum,  $f(\mathbf{x}) = \max(f_1(\mathbf{x}), \dots, f_m(\mathbf{x}))$  is also convex. For example, the hinge loss  $f(x) = \max(0, 1 - x)$  is convex. The same claim does not hold for pointwise minimum.

### A.4.3 Jensen's inequality

**Jensen's inequality** states that, for any convex function  $f$ , we have that

$$f\left(\sum_{i=1}^n \lambda_i \mathbf{x}_i\right) \leq \sum_{i=1}^n \lambda_i f(\mathbf{x}_i) \quad (\text{A.55})$$

where  $\lambda_i \geq 0$  and  $\sum_{i=1}^n \lambda_i = 1$ . This is clearly true for  $n = 2$  (by definition of convexity), and can be proved by induction for  $n > 2$ .

For example, if  $f(z) = \log(z)$ , which is a concave function, we have

$$\log(\mathbb{E}_z g(z)) \geq \mathbb{E}_z \log(g(z)) \quad (\text{A.56})$$

As an application, suppose  $g(z) = p(z, x)$  is the likelihood of a probability model, where  $x$  is observed and  $z$  is hidden. Then  $\log(\mathbb{E}_z g(z)) = \log p(x)$  is the log-likelihood of the observed data. We often want to maximize this, but it can be hard to compute. Fortunately,  $\mathbb{E}_z \log(g(z)) = \mathbb{E}_z \log p(x, z)$  is typically easier to compute, so we can maximize this lower bound instead. This is the basis of the EM algorithm for MLE learning, as discussed in Sec. 5.7.2.

### A.4.4 Subgradients

If  $f(x)$  is differentiable at  $x = a$ , it must be continuous at  $a$ . However, the converse does not hold. For example, Fig. A.2b shows the absolute value function  $f(x) = |x|$ ; this is continuous, even at  $x = 0$ , but is not differentiable there, because the slope at that point changes depending on whether you approach  $x = 0$  from the left (i.e.,  $h < 0$  in Eq. (A.20)) or from the right (i.e.,  $h > 0$ ). To handle such cases, we can generalize the notion of derivative, as we explain below.

For a convex function of several variables,  $f : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ , we say that  $\mathbf{g} \in \mathbb{R}^n$  is a **subgradient** of  $f$  at  $\mathbf{x} \in \text{dom}(f)$  if for all vectors  $\mathbf{z} \in \text{dom}(f)$ ,

$$f(\mathbf{z}) \geq f(\mathbf{x}) + \mathbf{g}^\top (\mathbf{z} - \mathbf{x}) \quad (\text{A.57})$$

Note that a subgradient can exist even when  $f$  is not differentiable at a point, as shown in Fig. A.10.

A function  $f$  is called **subdifferentiable** at  $\mathbf{x}$  if there is at least one subgradient at  $\mathbf{x}$ . The set of such subgradients is called the **subdifferential** of  $f$  at  $\mathbf{x}$ , and is denoted  $\partial f(\mathbf{x})$ .

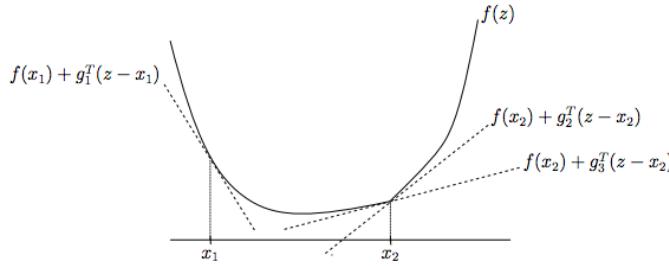


Figure A.10: Illustration of subgradients. At  $\mathbf{x}_1$ , the convex function  $f$  is differentiable, and  $\mathbf{g}_1$  (which is the derivative of  $f$  at  $\mathbf{x}_1$ ) is the unique subgradient at  $\mathbf{x}_1$ . At the point  $\mathbf{x}_2$ ,  $f$  is not differentiable, because of the “kink”. However, there are many subgradients at this point, of which two are shown. From Figure 1 of [BD17]. Used with kind permission of Stephen Boyd.

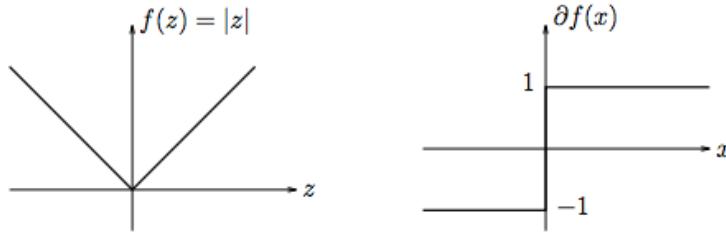


Figure A.11: The absolute value function (left) and its subdifferential (right). From Figure 3 of [BD17]. Used with kind permission of Stephen Boyd.

For example, consider the absolute value function  $f(x) = |x|$ . Its subdifferential is given by

$$\partial f(x) = \begin{cases} \{-1\} & \text{if } x < 0 \\ [-1, 1] & \text{if } x = 0 \\ \{+1\} & \text{if } x > 0 \end{cases} \quad (\text{A.58})$$

where the notation  $[-1, 1]$  means any value between -1 and 1 inclusive. See Fig. A.11 for an illustration.

#### A.4.5 Taylor series approximation

In many cases, the function is not convex, but it may be **locally convex** around a point. In particular, we may be able to compute a linear or quadratic approximation in some neighborhood. This is called a (first or second order) **Taylor series expansion**.

In more detail, let  $f : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be a function that is second order differentiable. We can compute a linear approximation around the point  $\mathbf{a} \in \mathbb{R}^n$  using

$$\hat{f}(\mathbf{x}) = f(\mathbf{a}) + \nabla f(\mathbf{a})^\top (\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{a}) \quad (\text{A.59})$$

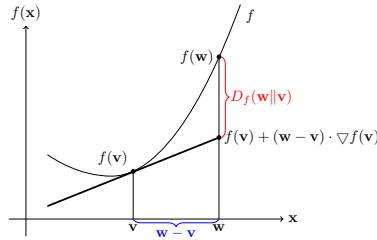


Figure A.12: Illustration of Bregman divergence.

where  $\nabla$  is the gradient. If  $f$  is convex, then  $\hat{f}$  is a linear lower bound (see Fig. A.12).

We can compute a quadratic approximation around the point  $\mathbf{a} \in \mathbb{R}^n$  using

$$\hat{f}(\mathbf{x}) = f(\mathbf{a}) + \nabla f(\mathbf{a})^\top (\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{a}) + \frac{1}{2}(\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{a})^\top \nabla^2 f(\mathbf{a})(\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{a}) \quad (\text{A.60})$$

where  $\nabla^2$  is the Hessian.

#### A.4.6 Bregman divergence

Let  $f : \Omega \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be a continuously differentiable, strictly convex function defined on a closed convex set  $\Omega$ . We define the **Bregman divergence** associated with  $f$  as follows [Bre67]:

$$D_f(\mathbf{w}, \mathbf{v}) = f(\mathbf{w}) - f(\mathbf{v}) - (\mathbf{w} - \mathbf{v})^\top \nabla f(\mathbf{v}) \quad (\text{A.61})$$

To understand this, let

$$\hat{f}_v(\mathbf{w}) = f(\mathbf{v}) + (\mathbf{w} - \mathbf{v})^\top \nabla f(\mathbf{v}) \quad (\text{A.62})$$

be a first order Taylor series approximation to  $f$  centered at  $\mathbf{v}$ . Then the Bregman divergence is the difference from this linear approximation:

$$D_f(\mathbf{w}, \mathbf{v}) = f(\mathbf{w}) - \hat{f}_v(\mathbf{w}) \quad (\text{A.63})$$

See Fig. A.12 for an illustration. Since  $f$  is convex, we have  $D_f(\mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w}) \geq 0$ , since  $\hat{f}_v$  is a linear lower bound on  $f$  (see also Fig. A.7b).

Below we mention some important special cases of Bregman divergences.

- If  $f(\mathbf{w}) = \|\mathbf{w}\|^2$ , then  $D_f(\mathbf{w}, \mathbf{v}) = \|\mathbf{w} - \mathbf{v}\|^2$  is the squared Euclidean distance.
- If  $f(\mathbf{w}) = \mathbf{w}^\top \mathbf{Q} \mathbf{w}$ , then  $D_f(\mathbf{w}, \mathbf{v})$  is the squared Mahalanobis distance (Sec. 3.5.2).
- If  $\mathbf{w}$  are the natural parameters of an exponential family distribution, and  $f(\mathbf{w}) = \log Z(\mathbf{w})$  is the log normalizer, then the Bregman divergence is the same as the Kullback Leibler divergence (Sec. 6.2).

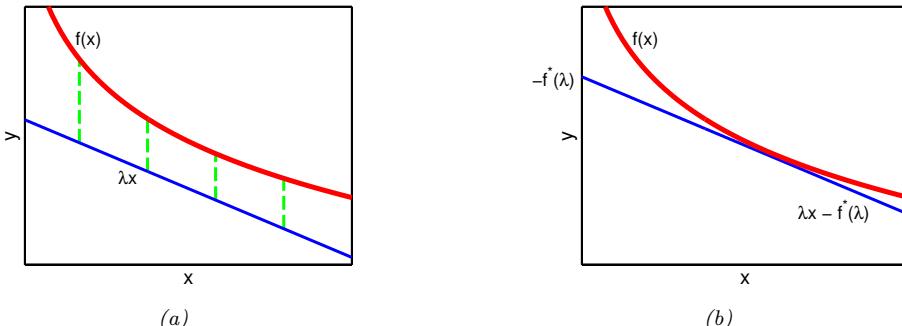


Figure A.13: Illustration of a conjugate function. Red line is original function  $f(x)$ , and the blue line is a linear lower bound  $\lambda x$ . To make the bound tight, we find the  $x$  where  $\nabla f(x)$  is parallel to  $\lambda$ , and slide the line up to touch there; the amount we slide up is given by  $f^*(\lambda)$ . Adapted from Figure 10.11 of [Bis06]. Generated by [conjugateFunction.m](#).

#### A.4.7 Conjugate duality

In this section, we briefly discuss **conjugate duality**, which is a useful way to construct linear lower bounds to non-convex functions, which we can then easily maximize. We follow the presentation of [Bis06, Sec.10.5].

#### A.4.7.1 Introduction

Consider an arbitrary continuous function  $f(\mathbf{x})$ , and suppose we create a linear lower bound on it of the form

$$\mathcal{L}(\mathbf{x}, \boldsymbol{\lambda}) \triangleq \boldsymbol{\lambda}^\top \mathbf{x} - f^*(\boldsymbol{\lambda}) < f(\mathbf{x}) \quad (\text{A.64})$$

where  $\lambda$  is the slope, which we choose, and  $f^*(\lambda)$  is the intercept, which we solve for below. See Fig. A.13(a) for an illustration.

For a fixed  $\lambda$ , we can find the point  $\mathbf{x}_\lambda$  where the lower bound is tight by “sliding” the line upwards until it touches the curve at  $\mathbf{x}_\lambda$ , as shown in Fig. A.13(b). At  $\mathbf{x}_\lambda$ , we minimize the distance between the function and the lower bound:

$$\mathbf{x}_\lambda \triangleq \underset{\mathbf{x}}{\operatorname{argmin}} f(x) - \mathcal{L}(\mathbf{x}, \boldsymbol{\lambda}) = \underset{\mathbf{x}}{\operatorname{argmin}} f(\mathbf{x}) - \boldsymbol{\lambda}^\top \mathbf{x} \quad (\text{A.65})$$

(We assume this minimum exists and is unique.) Since the bound is tight at this point, we have

$$f(\mathbf{x}_\lambda) = \mathcal{L}(\mathbf{x}_\lambda, \boldsymbol{\lambda}) = \boldsymbol{\lambda}^\top \mathbf{x}_\lambda - f^*(\boldsymbol{\lambda}) \quad (\text{A.66})$$

and hence

$$f^*(\boldsymbol{\lambda}) = \boldsymbol{\lambda}^\top \mathbf{x}_\lambda - f(\mathbf{x}_\lambda) = \max_{\mathbf{x}} \boldsymbol{\lambda}^\top \mathbf{x} - f(\mathbf{x}) \quad (\text{A.67})$$

The function  $f^*$  is called the **conjugate** of  $f$ , also known as the **Fenchel transform** of  $f$ . For the special case of differentiable  $f$ ,  $f^*$  is called the **Legendre transform** of  $f$ .

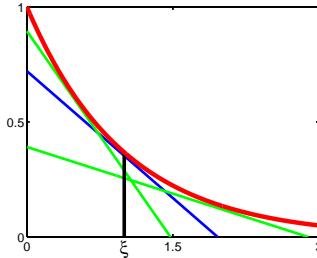


Figure A.14: The red curve is  $f(x) = e^{-x}$  and the colored lines are linear lower bounds. Each lower bound of slope  $\lambda$  is tangent to the curve at the point  $x_\lambda = -\log(-\lambda)$ , where  $f(x_\lambda) = e^{\log(-\lambda)} = -\lambda$ . For the blue curve, this occurs at  $x_\lambda = \xi$ . Adapted from Figure 10.10 of [Bis06]. Generated by `optLowerbound.m`.

One reason conjugate functions are useful is that they can be used to create convex lower bounds to non-convex functions. That is, we have  $\mathcal{L}(\mathbf{x}, \boldsymbol{\lambda}) \leq f(\mathbf{x})$ , with equality at  $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{x}_\lambda$ , for any function  $f : \mathbb{R}^D \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ . For any given  $\mathbf{x}$ , we can optimize over  $\boldsymbol{\lambda}$  to make the bound as tight as possible, giving us a fixed function  $\mathcal{L}(\mathbf{x})$ ; this is called a **variational approximation**. We can then try to maximize this lower bound wrt  $\mathbf{x}$  instead of maximizing  $f(\mathbf{x})$ . This method is used extensively in approximate Bayesian inference, as we discuss in Sec. 7.7.3.

#### A.4.7.2 Example: exponential function

Let us consider an example. Suppose  $f(x) = e^{-x}$ , which is convex. Consider a linear lower bound of the form

$$\mathcal{L}(x, \lambda) = \lambda x - f^*(\lambda) \quad (\text{A.68})$$

where the conjugate function is given by

$$f^*(\lambda) = \max_x \lambda x - f(x) = -\lambda \log(-\lambda) + \lambda \quad (\text{A.69})$$

as illustrated in Fig. A.14.

To see this, define

$$J(x, \lambda) = \lambda x - f(x) \quad (\text{A.70})$$

We have

$$\frac{\partial J}{\partial x} = \lambda - f'(x) = \lambda + e^{-x} \quad (\text{A.71})$$

Setting the derivative to zero gives

$$x_\lambda = \arg \max_x J(x, \lambda) = -\log(-\lambda) \quad (\text{A.72})$$

Hence

$$f^*(\lambda) = J(x_\lambda, \lambda) = \lambda(-\log(-\lambda)) - e^{\log(-\lambda)} = -\lambda \log(-\lambda) + \lambda \quad (\text{A.73})$$

### A.4.7.3 Conjugate of a conjugate

It is interesting to see what happens if we take the conjugate of the conjugate:

$$f^{**}(\mathbf{x}) = \max_{\boldsymbol{\lambda}} \boldsymbol{\lambda}^\top \mathbf{x} - f^*(\boldsymbol{\lambda}) \quad (\text{A.74})$$

If  $f$  is convex, then  $f^{**} = f$ , so  $f$  and  $f^*$  are called **conjugate duals**. To see why, note that

$$f^{**}(\mathbf{x}) = \max_{\boldsymbol{\lambda}} \mathcal{L}(\mathbf{x}, \boldsymbol{\lambda}) \leq f(\mathbf{x}) \quad (\text{A.75})$$

Since we are free to modify  $\boldsymbol{\lambda}$  for each  $\mathbf{x}$ , we can make the lower bound tight at each  $\mathbf{x}$ . Hence  $f^*$  This perfectly characterizes  $f$ , since the epigraph of a convex function is an intersection of half-planes defined by linear lower bounds, as shown in Fig. A.7b.

Let us demonstrate this using the example from Sec. A.4.7.2. We have

$$f^{**}(x) = \max_{\lambda} \lambda x - f^*(\lambda) = \max_{\lambda} \lambda x + \lambda \log(-\lambda) - \lambda \quad (\text{A.76})$$

Define

$$J^*(x, \lambda) = \lambda x - f^*(\lambda) = \lambda x + \lambda \log(-\lambda) - \lambda \quad (\text{A.77})$$

We have

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial \lambda} J^*(x, \lambda) = x + \log(-\lambda) + \lambda \left( \frac{-1}{-\lambda} \right) - 1 = 0 \quad (\text{A.78})$$

$$x = -\log(-\lambda) \quad (\text{A.79})$$

$$\lambda_x = -e^{-x} \quad (\text{A.80})$$

Substituting back we find

$$f^{**}(x) = J^*(x, \lambda_x) = (-e^{-x})x + (-e^{-x})(-x) - (-e^{-x}) \quad (\text{A.81})$$

$$= e^{-x} = f(x) \quad (\text{A.82})$$



# B Linear algebra<sup>1</sup>

## B.1 Introduction

**Linear algebra** is the study of matrices and vectors. In this chapter, we summarize the key material that we will need throughout the book. Much more information can be found in other sources, such as [Str09; Kle13; Mol04; TB97; Axl15; Tho17; Agg20].

### B.1.1 Notation

In this section, we define some notation.

#### B.1.1.1 Vectors

A **vector**  $\mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^n$  is a list of  $n$  numbers, usually written as a **column vector**

$$\mathbf{x} = \begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ \vdots \\ x_n \end{bmatrix}. \quad (\text{B.1})$$

The vector of all ones is denoted **1**. The vector of all zeros is denoted **0**.

The **unit vector**  $\mathbf{e}_i$  is a vector of all 0's, except entry  $i$ , which has value 1:

$$\mathbf{e}_i = (0, \dots, 0, 1, 0, \dots, 0) \quad (\text{B.2})$$

This is also called a **one-hot vector**.

#### B.1.1.2 Matrices

A **matrix**  $\mathbf{A} \in \mathbb{R}^{m \times n}$  with  $m$  rows and  $n$  columns is a 2d array of numbers, arranged as follows:

$$\mathbf{A} = \begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & \cdots & a_{1n} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & \cdots & a_{2n} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ a_{m1} & a_{m2} & \cdots & a_{mn} \end{bmatrix}. \quad (\text{B.3})$$

---

1. This chapter is co-authored with Zico Kolter.

If  $m = n$ , the matrix is said to be **square**.

We use the notation  $A_{ij}$  or  $A_{i,j}$  to denote the entry of  $\mathbf{A}$  in the  $i$ th row and  $j$ th column. We use the notation  $\mathbf{A}_{i,:}$  to denote the  $i$ 'th row and  $\mathbf{A}_{:,j}$  to denote the  $j$ 'th column. We treat all vectors as column vectors by default (so  $\mathbf{A}_{i,:}$  is viewed as a column vector with  $n$  entries). We use bold upper case letters to denote matrices, bold lower case letters to denote vectors, and non-bold letters to denote scalars.

We can view a matrix as a set of columns stacked along the horizontal axis:

$$\mathbf{A} = \begin{bmatrix} | & | & | \\ \mathbf{A}_{:,1} & \mathbf{A}_{:,2} & \cdots & \mathbf{A}_{:,n} \\ | & | & & | \end{bmatrix}. \quad (\text{B.4})$$

For brevity, we will denote this by

$$\mathbf{A} = [\mathbf{A}_{:,1}, \mathbf{A}_{:,2}, \dots, \mathbf{A}_{:,n}] \quad (\text{B.5})$$

We can also view a matrix as a set of rows stacked along the vertical axis:

$$\mathbf{A} = \begin{bmatrix} — & \mathbf{A}_{1,:}^\top & — \\ — & \mathbf{A}_{2,:}^\top & — \\ \vdots & & \\ — & \mathbf{A}_{m,:}^\top & — \end{bmatrix}. \quad (\text{B.6})$$

For brevity, we will denote this by

$$\mathbf{A} = [\mathbf{A}_{1,:}; \mathbf{A}_{2,:}; \dots; \mathbf{A}_{m,:}] \quad (\text{B.7})$$

(Note the use of a semicolon.)

The **transpose** of a matrix results from “flipping” the rows and columns. Given a matrix  $\mathbf{A} \in \mathbb{R}^{m \times n}$ , its transpose, written  $\mathbf{A}^\top \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times m}$ , is defined as

$$(\mathbf{A}^\top)_{ij} = A_{ji} \quad (\text{B.8})$$

The following properties of transposes are easily verified:

$$(\mathbf{A}^\top)^\top = \mathbf{A} \quad (\text{B.9})$$

$$(\mathbf{AB})^\top = \mathbf{B}^\top \mathbf{A}^\top \quad (\text{B.10})$$

$$(\mathbf{A} + \mathbf{B})^\top = \mathbf{A}^\top + \mathbf{B}^\top \quad (\text{B.11})$$

If a square matrix satisfies  $\mathbf{A} = \mathbf{A}^\top$ , it is called **symmetric**. We denote the set of all symmetric matrices of size  $n$  as  $\mathbb{S}^n$ .

### B.1.1.3 Tensors

A **tensor** (in machine learning terminology) is just a generalization of a 2d array to more than 2 dimensions, as illustrated in Fig. B.1. For example, the entries of a 3d tensor are denoted by  $A_{ijk}$ .

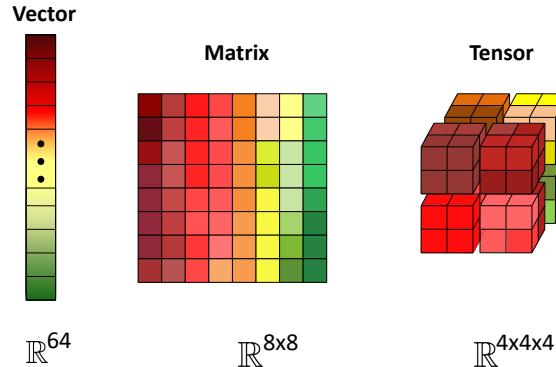


Figure B.1: Illustration of a 1d vector, 2d matrix, and 3d tensor. The colors are used to represent individual entries of the vector; this list of numbers can also be stored in a 2d matrix, as shown. (In this example, the matrix is laid out in column-major order, which is the opposite of that used by Python.) We can also reshape the vector into a 3d tensor, as shown.



Figure B.2: Illustration of (a) row-major vs (b) column-major order. From [https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Row\\_and\\_column\\_major\\_order.svg](https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Row_and_column_major_order.svg). Used with kind permission of Wikipedia author Cmglee.

The number of dimensions is known as the **order** or **rank** of the tensor.<sup>2</sup> In mathematics, tensors can be viewed as a way to define multilinear maps, just as matrices can be used to define linear functions (see Sec. A.2.1.4), although we will not need to use this interpretation.

We can **reshape** a matrix into a vector by stacking its columns on top of each other, as shown in Fig. B.1. This is denoted by

$$\text{vec}(\mathbf{A}) = [\mathbf{A}_{:,1}; \dots; \mathbf{A}_{:,n}] \in \mathbb{R}^{mn \times 1} \quad (\text{B.12})$$

Conversely, we can reshape a vector into a matrix. There are two choices for how to do this, known as **row-major order** (used by languages such as Python and C++) and **column-major order** (used by languages such as Julia, Matlab, R and Fortran). See Fig. B.2 for an illustration of the difference.

2. Note, however, that the rank of a 2d matrix is a different concept, as discussed in Sec. B.1.4.3.

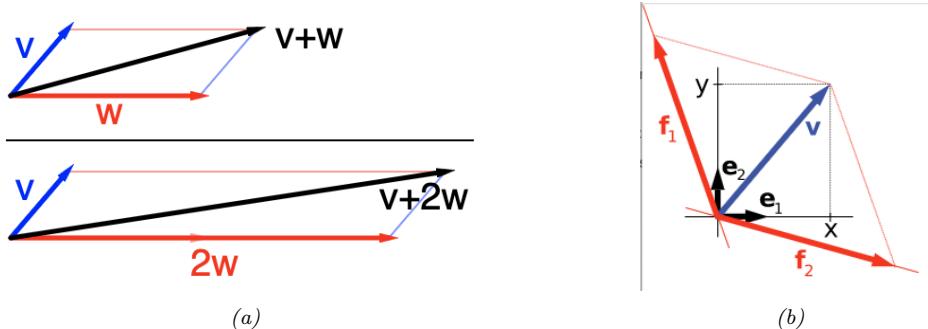


Figure B.3: (a) Top: A vector  $v$  (blue) is added to another vector  $w$  (red). Bottom:  $w$  is stretched by a factor of 2, yielding the sum  $v + 2w$ . From [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Vector\\_space](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Vector_space). Used with kind permission of Wikipedia author IkamusumeFan (b) A vector  $v$  in  $\mathbb{R}^2$  (blue) expressed in terms of different bases: using the standard basis of  $\mathbb{R}^2$ ,  $v = x\mathbf{e}_1 + y\mathbf{e}_2$  (black), and using a different, non-orthogonal basis:  $v = \mathbf{f}_1 + \mathbf{f}_2$  (red). From [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Vector\\_space](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Vector_space). Used with kind permission of Wikipedia author Jakob.scholbach

## B.1.2 Vector spaces

In this section, we discuss some fundamental concepts in linear algebra.

### B.1.2.1 Vector addition and scaling

We can view a vector  $\mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^n$  as defining a point in  $n$ -dimensional Euclidean space. A **vector space** is a collection of such vectors, which can be added to together, and scaled by **scalars** (1-dimensional numbers), in order to create new points. These operations are defined to operate elementwise, in the obvious way, namely  $\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{y} = (x_1 + y_1, \dots, x_n + y_n)$  and  $c\mathbf{x} = (cx_1, \dots, cx_n)$ , where  $c \in \mathbb{R}$ . See Fig. B.3a for an illustration.

### B.1.2.2 Linear independence, spans and basis sets

A set of vectors  $\{\mathbf{x}_1, \mathbf{x}_2, \dots, \mathbf{x}_n\}$  is said to be **(linearly) independent** if no vector can be represented as a linear combination of the remaining vectors. Conversely, a vector which *can* be represented as a linear combination of the remaining vectors is said to be **(linearly) dependent**. For example, if

$$\mathbf{x}_n = \sum_{i=1}^{n-1} \alpha_i \mathbf{x}_i \tag{B.13}$$

for some  $\{\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_{n-1}\}$  then  $\mathbf{x}_n$  is dependent on  $\{\mathbf{x}_1, \dots, \mathbf{x}_{n-1}\}$ ; otherwise, it is independent of  $\{\mathbf{x}_1, \dots, \mathbf{x}_{n-1}\}$ .

The **span** of a set of vectors  $\{\mathbf{x}_1, \mathbf{x}_2, \dots, \mathbf{x}_n\}$  is the set of all vectors that can be expressed as a linear combination of  $\{\mathbf{x}_1, \dots, \mathbf{x}_n\}$ . That is,

$$\text{span}(\{\mathbf{x}_1, \dots, \mathbf{x}_n\}) \triangleq \left\{ \mathbf{v} : \mathbf{v} = \sum_{i=1}^n \alpha_i \mathbf{x}_i, \alpha_i \in \mathbb{R} \right\}. \tag{B.14}$$

It can be shown that if  $\{\mathbf{x}_1, \dots, \mathbf{x}_n\}$  is a set of  $n$  linearly independent vectors, where each  $\mathbf{x}_i \in \mathbb{R}^n$ , then  $\text{span}(\{\mathbf{x}_1, \dots, \mathbf{x}_n\}) = \mathbb{R}^n$ . In other words, *any* vector  $\mathbf{v} \in \mathbb{R}^n$  can be written as a linear combination of  $\mathbf{x}_1$  through  $\mathbf{x}_n$ .

A **basis**  $\mathcal{B}$  is a set of linearly independent vectors that spans the whole space, meaning that  $\text{span}(\mathcal{B}) = \mathbb{R}^n$ . There are often multiple bases to choose from, as illustrated in Fig. B.3b. The **standard basis** uses the **coordinate vectors**  $\mathbf{e}_1 = (1, 0, \dots, 0)$ , up to  $\mathbf{e}_n = (0, 0, \dots, 0, 1)$ . This lets us translate back and forth between viewing a vector in  $\mathbb{R}^2$  as an either an “arrow in the plane”, rooted at the origin, or as an ordered list of numbers (corresponding to the coefficients for each basis vector).

### B.1.2.3 Linear maps and matrices

A **linear map** or **linear transformation** is any function  $f : \mathcal{V} \rightarrow \mathcal{W}$  such that  $f(\mathbf{v} + \mathbf{w}) = f(\mathbf{v}) + f(\mathbf{w})$  and  $f(a \mathbf{v}) = a f(\mathbf{v})$  for all  $\mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w} \in \mathcal{V}$ . Once the basis of  $\mathcal{V}$  is chosen, a linear map  $f : \mathcal{V} \rightarrow \mathcal{W}$  is completely determined by specifying the images of the basis vectors, because any element of  $\mathcal{V}$  can be expressed as a linear combination of them.

Suppose  $\mathcal{V} = \mathbb{R}^n$  and  $\mathcal{W} = \mathbb{R}^m$ . We can compute  $f(\mathbf{v}_i) \in \mathbb{R}^m$  for each basis vector in  $\mathcal{V}$ , and store these along the rows of an  $m \times n$  matrix  $\mathbf{A}$ . We can then compute  $\mathbf{y} = f(\mathbf{x}) \in \mathbb{R}^m$  for any  $\mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^n$  as follows:

$$\mathbf{y} = \left( \sum_{j=1}^n a_{1j} x_j, \dots, \sum_{j=1}^n a_{mj} x_j \right) \quad (\text{B.15})$$

This corresponds to multiplying the vector  $\mathbf{x}$  by the matrix  $\mathbf{A}$ :

$$\mathbf{y} = \mathbf{Ax} \quad (\text{B.16})$$

See Appendix B.2 for more details.

If the function is invertible, we can write

$$\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{A}^{-1}\mathbf{y} \quad (\text{B.17})$$

See Appendix B.3 for details.

### B.1.2.4 Range and nullspace of a matrix

Suppose we view a matrix  $\mathbf{A} \in \mathbb{R}^{m \times n}$  as a set of  $m$  vectors in  $\mathbb{R}^n$ . The **range** (sometimes also called the **column space**) of this matrix is the span of the columns of  $\mathbf{A}$ . In other words,

$$\text{range}(\mathbf{A}) \triangleq \{\mathbf{v} \in \mathbb{R}^m : \mathbf{v} = \mathbf{Ax}, \mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^n\}. \quad (\text{B.18})$$

This can be thought of as the set of vectors that can be “reached” or “generated” by  $\mathbf{A}$ ; it is a subspace of  $\mathbb{R}^m$  whose dimensionality is given by the rank of  $\mathbf{A}$  (see Sec. B.1.4.3). The **nullspace** of a matrix  $\mathbf{A} \in \mathbb{R}^{m \times n}$  is the set of all vectors that get mapped to the null vector when multiplied by  $\mathbf{A}$ , i.e.,

$$\text{nullspace}(\mathbf{A}) \triangleq \{\mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^n : \mathbf{Ax} = \mathbf{0}\}. \quad (\text{B.19})$$

The span of the rows of  $\mathbf{A}$  is the complement to the nullspace of  $\mathbf{A}$ .

See Fig. B.4 for an illustration of the range and nullspace of a matrix. We shall discuss how to compute the range and nullspace of a matrix numerically in Sec. B.5.4 below.

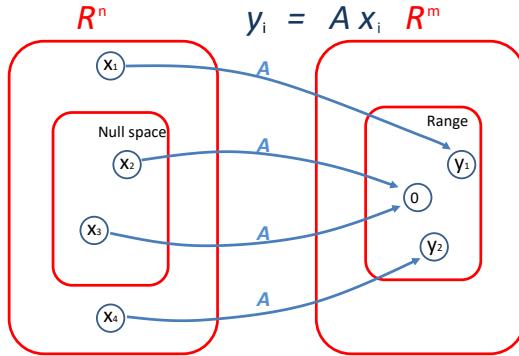


Figure B.4: Visualization of the nullspace and range of an  $m \times n$  matrix  $\mathbf{A}$ . Here  $\mathbf{y}_1 = \mathbf{Ax}_1$ , so  $\mathbf{y}_1$  is in the range (is reachable); similarly for  $\mathbf{y}_2$ . Also  $\mathbf{Ax}_3 = \mathbf{0}$ , so  $\mathbf{x}_3$  is in the nullspace (gets mapped to 0); similarly for  $\mathbf{x}_4$ .

### B.1.2.5 Linear projection

The **projection** of a vector  $\mathbf{y} \in \mathbb{R}^m$  onto the span of  $\{\mathbf{x}_1, \dots, \mathbf{x}_n\}$  (here we assume  $\mathbf{x}_i \in \mathbb{R}^m$ ) is the vector  $\mathbf{v} \in \text{span}(\{\mathbf{x}_1, \dots, \mathbf{x}_n\})$ , such that  $\mathbf{v}$  is as close as possible to  $\mathbf{y}$ , as measured by the Euclidean norm  $\|\mathbf{v} - \mathbf{y}\|_2$ . We denote the projection as  $\text{Proj}(\mathbf{y}; \{\mathbf{x}_1, \dots, \mathbf{x}_n\})$  and can define it formally as

$$\text{Proj}(\mathbf{y}; \{\mathbf{x}_1, \dots, \mathbf{x}_n\}) = \underset{\mathbf{v} \in \text{span}(\{\mathbf{x}_1, \dots, \mathbf{x}_n\})}{\text{argmin}} \|\mathbf{y} - \mathbf{v}\|_2. \quad (\text{B.20})$$

Given a (full rank) matrix  $\mathbf{A} \in \mathbb{R}^{m \times n}$  with  $m > n$ , we can define the projection of a vector  $\mathbf{y} \in \mathbb{R}^m$  onto the range of  $\mathbf{A}$  as follows:

$$\text{Proj}(\mathbf{y}; \mathbf{A}) = \underset{\mathbf{v} \in \mathcal{R}(\mathbf{A})}{\text{argmin}} \|\mathbf{v} - \mathbf{y}\|_2 = \mathbf{A}(\mathbf{A}^\top \mathbf{A})^{-1} \mathbf{A}^\top \mathbf{y}. \quad (\text{B.21})$$

These are the same as the normal equations from Sec. 11.2.2.2.

## B.1.3 Norms of a vector and matrix

In this section, we discuss ways of measuring the “size” of a vector and matrix.

### B.1.3.1 Vector norms

A **norm** of a vector  $\|\mathbf{x}\|$  is, informally, a measure of the “length” of the vector. More formally, a norm is any function  $f : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  that satisfies 4 properties:

- For all  $\mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^n$ ,  $f(\mathbf{x}) \geq 0$  (non-negativity).
- $f(\mathbf{x}) = 0$  if and only if  $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$  (definiteness).
- For all  $\mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^n$ ,  $t \in \mathbb{R}$ ,  $f(t\mathbf{x}) = |t|f(\mathbf{x})$  (absolute value homogeneity).
- For all  $\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y} \in \mathbb{R}^n$ ,  $f(\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{y}) \leq f(\mathbf{x}) + f(\mathbf{y})$  (triangle inequality).

Consider the following common examples:

**p-norm**  $\|\mathbf{x}\|_p = (\sum_{i=1}^n |x_i|^p)^{1/p}$ , for  $p \geq 1$ .

**2-norm**  $\|\mathbf{x}\|_2 = \sqrt{\sum_{i=1}^n x_i^2}$ , also called Euclidean norm. Note that  $\|\mathbf{x}\|_2^2 = \mathbf{x}^\top \mathbf{x}$ .

**1-norm**  $\|\mathbf{x}\|_1 = \sum_{i=1}^n |x_i|$ .

**Max-norm**  $\|\mathbf{x}\|_\infty = \max_i |x_i|$ .

**0-norm**  $\|\mathbf{x}\|_0 = \sum_{i=1}^n \mathbb{I}(|x_i| > 0)$ . This is a **pseudo norm**, since it does not satisfy the triangle inequality or homogeneity. It counts the number of non-zero elements in  $\mathbf{x}$ . If we define  $0^0 = 0$ , we can write this as  $\|\mathbf{x}\|_0 = \sum_{i=1}^n x_i^0$ .

### B.1.3.2 Matrix norms

Suppose we think of a matrix  $\mathbf{A} \in \mathbb{R}^{m \times n}$  as defining a linear function  $f(\mathbf{x}) = \mathbf{Ax}$ . We define the **induced norm** of  $\mathbf{A}$  as the maximum amount by which  $f$  can lengthen any unit-norm input:

$$\|\mathbf{A}\|_p = \max_{\mathbf{x} \neq 0} \frac{\|\mathbf{Ax}\|_p}{\|\mathbf{x}\|_p} = \max_{\|\mathbf{x}\|=1} \|\mathbf{Ax}\|_p \quad (\text{B.22})$$

Typically  $p = 2$ , in which case

$$\|\mathbf{A}\|_2 = \sqrt{\lambda_{\max}(\mathbf{A}^\top \mathbf{A})} = \max_i \sigma_i \quad (\text{B.23})$$

where  $\sigma_i$  is the  $i$ 'th singular value.

The **nuclear norm**, also called the **trace norm**, is defined as

$$\|\mathbf{A}\|_* = \text{tr}(\sqrt{\mathbf{A}^\top \mathbf{A}}) = \sum_i \sigma_i \quad (\text{B.24})$$

where  $\sqrt{\mathbf{A}^\top \mathbf{A}}$  is the matrix square root. Since the singular values are always non-negative, we have

$$\|\mathbf{A}\|_* = \sum_i |\sigma_i| = \|\boldsymbol{\sigma}\|_1 \quad (\text{B.25})$$

Using this as a regularizer encourages many singular values to become zero, resulting in a low rank matrix. More generally, we can define the **Schatten p-norm** as

$$\|\mathbf{A}\|_p = \left( \sum_i \sigma_i^p(\mathbf{A}) \right)^{1/p} \quad (\text{B.26})$$

If we think of a matrix as a vector, we can define the matrix norm in terms of a vector norm,  $\|\mathbf{A}\| = \|\text{vec}(\mathbf{A})\|$ . If the vector norm is the 2-norm, the corresponding matrix norm is the **Frobenius norm**:

$$\|\mathbf{A}\|_F = \sqrt{\sum_{i=1}^m \sum_{j=1}^n a_{ij}^2} = \sqrt{\text{tr}(\mathbf{A}^\top \mathbf{A})} = \|\text{vec}(\mathbf{A})\|_2 \quad (\text{B.27})$$

If  $\mathbf{A}$  is expensive to evaluate, but  $\mathbf{Av}$  is cheap (for a random vector  $\mathbf{v}$ ), we can create a stochastic approximation to the Frobenius norm by using the Hutchinson trace estimator from Eq. (B.37) as follows:

$$\|\mathbf{A}\|_F^2 = \text{tr}(\mathbf{A}^\top \mathbf{A}) = \mathbb{E} [\mathbf{v}^\top \mathbf{A} \mathbf{A}^\top \mathbf{v}] = \mathbb{E} [\|\mathbf{Av}\|_2^2] \quad (\text{B.28})$$

where  $\mathbf{v} \sim \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{0}, \mathbf{I})$ .

### B.1.4 Properties of a matrix

In this section, we discuss various scalar properties of matrices.

#### B.1.4.1 Trace of a square matrix

The **trace** of a square matrix  $\mathbf{A} \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}$ , denoted  $\text{tr}(\mathbf{A})$ , is the sum of diagonal elements in the matrix:

$$\text{tr}(\mathbf{A}) \triangleq \sum_{i=1}^n A_{ii}. \quad (\text{B.29})$$

The trace has the following properties, where  $c \in \mathbb{R}$  is a scalar, and  $\mathbf{A}, \mathbf{B} \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}$  are square matrices:

$$\text{tr}(\mathbf{A}) = \text{tr}(\mathbf{A}^\top) \quad (\text{B.30})$$

$$\text{tr}(\mathbf{A} + \mathbf{B}) = \text{tr}(\mathbf{A}) + \text{tr}(\mathbf{B}) \quad (\text{B.31})$$

$$\text{tr}(c\mathbf{A}) = c \text{tr}(\mathbf{A}) \quad (\text{B.32})$$

$$\text{tr}(\mathbf{AB}) = \text{tr}(\mathbf{BA}) \quad (\text{B.33})$$

$$\text{tr}(\mathbf{A}) = \sum_{i=1}^n \lambda_i \text{ where } \lambda_i \text{ are the eigenvalues of } \mathbf{A} \quad (\text{B.34})$$

We also have the following important **cyclic permutation property**: For  $\mathbf{A}, \mathbf{B}, \mathbf{C}$  such that  $\mathbf{ABC}$  is square,

$$\text{tr}(\mathbf{ABC}) = \text{tr}(\mathbf{BCA}) = \text{tr}(\mathbf{CAB}) \quad (\text{B.35})$$

From this, we can derive the **trace trick**, which rewrites the scalar inner product  $\mathbf{x}^\top \mathbf{Ax}$  as follows

$$\mathbf{x}^\top \mathbf{Ax} = \text{tr}(\mathbf{x}^\top \mathbf{Ax}) = \text{tr}(\mathbf{xx}^\top \mathbf{A}) \quad (\text{B.36})$$

In some cases, it may be expensive to evaluate the matrix  $\mathbf{A}$ , but we may be able to cheaply evaluate matrix-vector products  $\mathbf{Av}$ . Suppose  $\mathbf{v}$  is a random vector such that  $\mathbb{E} [\mathbf{vv}^\top] = \mathbf{I}$ . In this case, we can create a Monte Carlo approximation to  $\text{tr}(\mathbf{A})$  using the following identity:

$$\text{tr}(\mathbf{A}) = \text{tr}(\mathbf{A}\mathbb{E} [\mathbf{vv}^\top]) = \mathbb{E} [\text{tr}(\mathbf{Avv}^\top)] = \mathbb{E} [\text{tr}(\mathbf{v}^\top \mathbf{Av})] \quad (\text{B.37})$$

This is called the **Hutchinson trace estimator** [Hut90].

### B.1.4.2 Determinant of a square matrix

The **determinant** of a square matrix, denoted  $\det(\mathbf{A})$  or  $|\mathbf{A}|$ , is a measure of how much it changes a unit volume when viewed as a linear transformation. (The formal definition is rather complex and is not needed here.)

The determinant operator satisfies these properties, where  $\mathbf{A}, \mathbf{B} \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}$

$$|\mathbf{A}| = |\mathbf{A}^\top| \tag{B.38}$$

$$|c\mathbf{A}| = c^n |\mathbf{A}| \tag{B.39}$$

$$|\mathbf{AB}| = |\mathbf{A}||\mathbf{B}| \tag{B.40}$$

$$|\mathbf{A}| = 0 \text{ iff } \mathbf{A} \text{ is singular} \tag{B.41}$$

$$|\mathbf{A}^{-1}| = 1/|\mathbf{A}| \text{ if } \mathbf{A} \text{ is not singular} \tag{B.42}$$

$$|\mathbf{A}| = \prod_{i=1}^n \lambda_i \text{ where } \lambda_i \text{ are the eigenvalues of } \mathbf{A} \tag{B.43}$$

$$\log |\mathbf{A}| = \text{tr}(\log \mathbf{A}) \tag{B.44}$$

### B.1.4.3 Rank of a matrix

The **column rank** of a matrix  $\mathbf{A}$  is the dimension of the space spanned by its columns, and the **row rank** is the dimension of the space spanned by its rows. It is a basic fact of linear algebra (that can be shown using the SVD, discussed in Appendix B.5) that for any matrix  $\mathbf{A}$ ,  $\text{columnrank}(\mathbf{A}) = \text{rowrank}(\mathbf{A})$ , and so this quantity is simply referred to as the **rank** of  $\mathbf{A}$ , denoted as  $\text{rank}(\mathbf{A})$ . The following are some basic properties of the rank:

- For  $\mathbf{A} \in \mathbb{R}^{m \times n}$ ,  $\text{rank}(\mathbf{A}) \leq \min(m, n)$ . If  $\text{rank}(\mathbf{A}) = \min(m, n)$ , then  $\mathbf{A}$  is said to be **full rank**, otherwise it is called **rank deficient**.
- For  $\mathbf{A} \in \mathbb{R}^{m \times n}$ ,  $\text{rank}(\mathbf{A}) = \text{rank}(\mathbf{A}^\top) = \text{rank}(\mathbf{A}^\top \mathbf{A}) = \text{rank}(\mathbf{AA}^\top)$ .
- For  $\mathbf{A} \in \mathbb{R}^{m \times n}$ ,  $\mathbf{B} \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times p}$ ,  $\text{rank}(\mathbf{AB}) \leq \min(\text{rank}(\mathbf{A}), \text{rank}(\mathbf{B}))$ .
- For  $\mathbf{A}, \mathbf{B} \in \mathbb{R}^{m \times n}$ ,  $\text{rank}(\mathbf{A} + \mathbf{B}) \leq \text{rank}(\mathbf{A}) + \text{rank}(\mathbf{B})$ .

One can show that a square matrix is invertible iff it is full rank.

### B.1.4.4 Condition numbers

The **condition number** of a matrix  $\mathbf{A}$  is a measure of how numerically stable any computations involving  $\mathbf{A}$  will be. It is defined as follows:

$$\kappa(\mathbf{A}) \triangleq \|\mathbf{A}\| \cdot \|\mathbf{A}^{-1}\| \tag{B.45}$$

where  $\|\mathbf{A}\|$  is the norm of the matrix. We can show that  $\kappa(\mathbf{A}) \geq 1$ . (The condition number depends on which norm we use; we will assume the  $\ell_2$ -norm unless stated otherwise.)

We say  $\mathbf{A}$  is **well-conditioned** if  $\kappa(\mathbf{A})$  is small (close to 1), and **ill-conditioned** if  $\kappa(\mathbf{A})$  is large. A large condition number means  $\mathbf{A}$  is nearly singular. This is a better measure of nearness to singularity

than the size of the determinant. For example, suppose  $\mathbf{A} = 0.1\mathbf{I}_{100 \times 100}$ . Then  $\det(\mathbf{A}) = 10^{-100}$ , which suggests  $\mathbf{A}$  is nearly singular, but  $\kappa(\mathbf{A}) = 1$ , which means  $\mathbf{A}$  is well-conditioned, reflecting the fact that  $\mathbf{Ax}$  simply scales the entries of  $\mathbf{x}$  by 0.1.

To get a better understanding of condition numbers, consider the linear system of equations  $\mathbf{Ax} = \mathbf{b}$ . If  $\mathbf{A}$  is non-singular, the unique solution is  $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{A}^{-1}\mathbf{b}$ . Suppose we change  $\mathbf{b}$  to  $\mathbf{b} + \Delta\mathbf{b}$ ; what effect will that have on  $\mathbf{x}$ ? The new solution must satisfy

$$\mathbf{A}(\mathbf{x} + \Delta\mathbf{x}) = \mathbf{b} + \Delta\mathbf{b} \quad (\text{B.46})$$

where

$$\Delta\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{A}^{-1}\Delta\mathbf{b} \quad (\text{B.47})$$

We say that  $\mathbf{A}$  is well-conditioned if a small  $\Delta\mathbf{b}$  results in a small  $\Delta\mathbf{x}$ ; otherwise we say that  $\mathbf{A}$  is ill-conditioned.

For example, suppose

$$\mathbf{A} = \frac{1}{2} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 + 10^{-10} & 1 - 10^{-10} \end{pmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{A}^{-1} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 - 10^{10} & 10^{10} \\ 1 + 10^{10} & -10^{10} \end{pmatrix} \quad (\text{B.48})$$

The solution for  $\mathbf{b} = (1, 1)$  is  $\mathbf{x} = (1, 1)$ . If we change  $\mathbf{b}$  by  $\Delta\mathbf{b}$ , the solution changes to

$$\Delta\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{A}^{-1}\Delta\mathbf{b} = \begin{pmatrix} \Delta b_1 - 10^{10}(\Delta b_1 - \Delta b_2) \\ \Delta b_1 + 10^{10}(\Delta b_1 - \Delta b_2) \end{pmatrix} \quad (\text{B.49})$$

So a small change in  $\mathbf{b}$  can lead to an extremely large change in  $\mathbf{x}$ , because  $\mathbf{A}$  is ill-conditioned ( $\kappa(\mathbf{A}) = 2 \times 10^{10}$ ).

In the case of the  $\ell_2$ -norm, the condition number is equal to the ratio of the largest to smallest singular values (defined in Appendix B.5); furthermore, the singular values are the square roots of the eigenvalues:

$$\kappa(\mathbf{A}) = \sigma_{\max}/\sigma_{\min} = \sqrt{\frac{\lambda_{\max}}{\lambda_{\min}}} \quad (\text{B.50})$$

We can gain further insight into condition numbers by considering a quadratic objective function  $f(\mathbf{x}) = \mathbf{x}^\top \mathbf{A} \mathbf{x}$ . If we plot the level set of this function, it will be elliptical, as shown in Sec. B.4.4. As we increase the condition number of  $\mathbf{A}$ , the ellipses become more and more elongated along certain directions, corresponding to a very narrow valley in function space. If  $\kappa = 1$  (the minimum possible value), the level set will be circular.

### B.1.5 Special types of matrices

In this section, we will list some common kinds of matrices with various forms of structure.

### B.1.5.1 Diagonal matrix

A **diagonal matrix** is a matrix where all non-diagonal elements are 0. This is typically denoted  $\mathbf{D} = \text{diag}(d_1, d_2, \dots, d_n)$ , with

$$\mathbf{D} = \begin{pmatrix} d_1 & & & \\ & d_2 & & \\ & & \ddots & \\ & & & d_n \end{pmatrix} \quad (\text{B.51})$$

The **identity matrix**, denoted  $\mathbf{I} \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}$ , is a square matrix with ones on the diagonal and zeros everywhere else,  $\mathbf{I} = \text{diag}(1, 1, \dots, 1)$ . It has the property that for all  $\mathbf{A} \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}$ ,

$$\mathbf{AI} = \mathbf{A} = \mathbf{IA} \quad (\text{B.52})$$

where the size of  $\mathbf{I}$  is determined by the dimensions of  $\mathbf{A}$  so that matrix multiplication is possible.

We can extract the diagonal vector from a matrix using  $\mathbf{d} = \text{diag}(\mathbf{D})$ . We can convert a vector into a diagonal matrix by writing  $\mathbf{D} = \text{diag}(\mathbf{d})$ .

A **block diagonal matrix** is one which contains matrices on its main diagonal, and is 0 everywhere else, e.g.,

$$\begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{A} & \mathbf{0} \\ \mathbf{0} & \mathbf{B} \end{pmatrix} \quad (\text{B.53})$$

A **band-diagonal matrix** only has non-zero entries along the diagonal, and on  $k$  sides of the diagonal, where  $k$  is the bandwidth. For example, a **tridiagonal**  $6 \times 6$  matrix looks like this:

$$\begin{bmatrix} A_{11} & A_{12} & 0 & \cdots & \cdots & 0 \\ A_{21} & A_{22} & A_{23} & \ddots & \ddots & \vdots \\ 0 & A_{32} & A_{33} & A_{34} & \ddots & \vdots \\ \vdots & \ddots & A_{43} & A_{44} & A_{45} & 0 \\ \vdots & \ddots & \ddots & A_{54} & A_{55} & A_{56} \\ 0 & \cdots & \cdots & 0 & A_{65} & A_{66} \end{bmatrix} \quad (\text{B.54})$$

### B.1.5.2 Triangular matrices

An **upper triangular matrix** only has non-zero entries on and above the diagonal. A **lower triangular matrix** only has non-zero entries on and below the diagonal.

Triangular matrices have the useful property that the diagonal entries of  $\mathbf{A}$  are the eigenvalues of  $\mathbf{A}$ , and hence the determinant is the product of diagonal entries:  $\det(\mathbf{A}) = \prod_i A_{ii}$ .

### B.1.5.3 Positive definite matrices

Given a square matrix  $\mathbf{A} \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}$  and a vector  $\mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^n$ , the scalar value  $\mathbf{x}^\top \mathbf{A} \mathbf{x}$  is called a **quadratic form**. Written explicitly, we see that

$$\mathbf{x}^\top \mathbf{A} \mathbf{x} = \sum_{i=1}^n \sum_{j=1}^n A_{ij} x_i x_j . \quad (\text{B.55})$$

Note that,

$$\mathbf{x}^\top \mathbf{A} \mathbf{x} = (\mathbf{x}^\top \mathbf{A} \mathbf{x})^\top = \mathbf{x}^\top \mathbf{A}^\top \mathbf{x} = \mathbf{x}^\top \left( \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{A} + \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{A}^\top \right) \mathbf{x} \quad (\text{B.56})$$

For this reason, we often implicitly assume that the matrices appearing in a quadratic form are symmetric.

We give the following definitions:

- A symmetric matrix  $\mathbf{A} \in \mathbb{S}^n$  is **positive definite** iff for all non-zero vectors  $\mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^n$ ,  $\mathbf{x}^\top \mathbf{A} \mathbf{x} > 0$ . This is usually denoted  $\mathbf{A} \succ 0$  (or just  $\mathbf{A} > 0$ ). If it is possible that  $\mathbf{x}^\top \mathbf{A} \mathbf{x} = 0$ , we say the matrix is **positive semidefinite** or **psd**. We denote the set of all positive definite matrices by  $\mathbb{S}_{++}^n$ .
- A symmetric matrix  $\mathbf{A} \in \mathbb{S}^n$  is **negative definite**, denoted  $\mathbf{A} \prec 0$  (or just  $\mathbf{A} < 0$ ) iff for all non-zero  $\mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^n$ ,  $\mathbf{x}^\top \mathbf{A} \mathbf{x} < 0$ . If it is possible that  $\mathbf{x}^\top \mathbf{A} \mathbf{x} = 0$ , we say the matrix is **negative semidefinite**.
- A symmetric matrix  $\mathbf{A} \in \mathbb{S}^n$  is **indefinite**, if it is neither positive semidefinite nor negative semidefinite — i.e., if there exists  $\mathbf{x}_1, \mathbf{x}_2 \in \mathbb{R}^n$  such that  $\mathbf{x}_1^\top \mathbf{A} \mathbf{x}_1 > 0$  and  $\mathbf{x}_2^\top \mathbf{A} \mathbf{x}_2 < 0$ .

It should be obvious that if  $\mathbf{A}$  is positive definite, then  $-\mathbf{A}$  is negative definite and vice versa. Likewise, if  $\mathbf{A}$  is positive semidefinite then  $-\mathbf{A}$  is negative semidefinite and vice versa. If  $\mathbf{A}$  is indefinite, then so is  $-\mathbf{A}$ . It can also be shown that positive definite and negative definite matrices are always invertible.

In Sec. B.4.3.1, we show that a matrix is positive definite iff its eigenvalues are positive. Note that if all elements of  $\mathbf{A}$  are positive, it does not mean  $\mathbf{A}$  is necessarily positive definite. For example,  $\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} 4 & 3 \\ 3 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$  is not positive definite. Conversely, a positive definite matrix can have negative entries e.g.,  $\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & -1 \\ -1 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$

A sufficient condition for a (real, symmetric) matrix to be positive definite is that it is **diagonally dominant**, i.e., if in every row of the matrix, the magnitude of the diagonal entry in that row is larger than the sum of the magnitudes of all the other (non-diagonal) entries in that row. More precisely,

$$|a_{ii}| > \sum_{j \neq i} |a_{ij}| \quad \text{for all } i \quad (\text{B.57})$$

In 2d, any real, symmetric  $2 \times 2$  matrix  $\begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ b & d \end{pmatrix}$  is positive definite iff  $a > 0$ ,  $d > 0$  and  $ad > b^2$ .

Finally, there is one type of positive definite matrix that comes up frequently, and so deserves some special mention. Given any matrix  $\mathbf{A} \in \mathbb{R}^{m \times n}$  (not necessarily symmetric or even square), the **Gram matrix**  $\mathbf{G} = \mathbf{A}^\top \mathbf{A}$  is always positive semidefinite. Further, if  $m \geq n$  (and we assume for convenience that  $\mathbf{A}$  is full rank), then  $\mathbf{G} = \mathbf{A}^\top \mathbf{A}$  is positive definite.

#### B.1.5.4 Orthogonal matrices

Two vectors  $\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y} \in \mathbb{R}^n$  are **orthogonal** if  $\mathbf{x}^\top \mathbf{y} = 0$ . A vector  $\mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^n$  is **normalized** if  $\|\mathbf{x}\|_2 = 1$ . A set of vectors that is pairwise orthogonal and normalized is called **orthonormal**. A square matrix

$\mathbf{U} \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}$  is **orthogonal** if all its columns are orthonormal. (Note the different meaning of the term orthogonal when talking about vectors versus matrices.) If the entries of  $\mathbf{U}$  are complex valued, we use the term **unitary** instead of orthogonal.

It follows immediately from the definition of orthogonality and normality that  $\mathbf{U}$  is orthogonal iff

$$\mathbf{U}^\top \mathbf{U} = \mathbf{I} = \mathbf{U} \mathbf{U}^\top. \quad (\text{B.58})$$

In other words, the inverse of an orthogonal matrix is its transpose. Note that if  $\mathbf{U}$  is not square — i.e.,  $\mathbf{U} \in \mathbb{R}^{m \times n}$ ,  $n < m$  — but its columns are still orthonormal, then  $\mathbf{U}^\top \mathbf{U} = \mathbf{I}$ , but  $\mathbf{U} \mathbf{U}^\top \neq \mathbf{I}$ . We generally only use the term orthogonal to describe the previous case, where  $\mathbf{U}$  is square.

An example of an orthogonal matrix is a **rotation matrix** (see Exercise B.1). For example, a rotation in 3d by angle  $\alpha$  about the  $z$  axis is given by

$$\mathbf{R}(\alpha) = \begin{pmatrix} \cos(\alpha) & -\sin(\alpha) & 0 \\ \sin(\alpha) & \cos(\alpha) & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \quad (\text{B.59})$$

If  $\alpha = 45^\circ$ , this becomes

$$\mathbf{R}(45) = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} & -\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} & 0 \\ \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} & \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \quad (\text{B.60})$$

where  $\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} = 0.7071$ . We see that  $\mathbf{R}(-\alpha) = \mathbf{R}(\alpha)^{-1} = \mathbf{R}(\alpha)^\top$ , so this is an orthogonal matrix.

One nice property of orthogonal matrices is that operating on a vector with an orthogonal matrix will not change its Euclidean norm, i.e.,

$$\|\mathbf{U}\mathbf{x}\|_2 = \|\mathbf{x}\|_2 \quad (\text{B.61})$$

for any nonzero  $\mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^n$ , and orthogonal  $\mathbf{U} \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}$ .

Similarly, one can show that the angle between two vectors is preserved after they are transformed by an orthogonal matrix. The cosine of the angle between  $\mathbf{x}$  and  $\mathbf{y}$  is given by

$$\cos(\alpha(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y})) = \frac{\mathbf{x}^\top \mathbf{y}}{\|\mathbf{x}\| \|\mathbf{y}\|} \quad (\text{B.62})$$

so

$$\cos(\alpha(\mathbf{U}\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{U}\mathbf{y})) = \frac{(\mathbf{U}\mathbf{x})^\top (\mathbf{U}\mathbf{y})}{\|\mathbf{U}\mathbf{x}\| \|\mathbf{U}\mathbf{y}\|} = \frac{\mathbf{x}^\top \mathbf{y}}{\|\mathbf{x}\| \|\mathbf{y}\|} = \cos(\alpha(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y})) \quad (\text{B.63})$$

In summary, transformations by orthogonal matrices are generalizations of rotations (if  $\det(\mathbf{U}) = 1$ ) and reflections (if  $\det(\mathbf{U}) = -1$ ), since they preserve lengths and angles.

Note that there is technique called Gram Schmidt orthogonalization which is a way to make any square matrix orthogonal, but we will not cover it here.

## B.2 Matrix multiplication

The product of two matrices  $\mathbf{A} \in \mathbb{R}^{m \times n}$  and  $\mathbf{B} \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times p}$  is the matrix

$$\mathbf{C} = \mathbf{AB} \in \mathbb{R}^{m \times p}, \quad (\text{B.64})$$

where

$$C_{ij} = \sum_{k=1}^n A_{ik}B_{kj}. \quad (\text{B.65})$$

Note that in order for the matrix product to exist, the number of columns in  $\mathbf{A}$  must equal the number of rows in  $\mathbf{B}$ .

Matrix multiplication generally takes  $O(mnp)$  time, although faster methods exist. In addition, specialized hardware, such as GPUs and TPUs, can be leveraged to speed up matrix multiplication significantly, by performing operations across the rows (or columns) in parallel.

It is useful to know a few basic properties of matrix multiplication:

- Matrix multiplication is **associative**:  $(\mathbf{AB})\mathbf{C} = \mathbf{A}(\mathbf{BC})$ .
- Matrix multiplication is **distributive**:  $\mathbf{A}(\mathbf{B} + \mathbf{C}) = \mathbf{AB} + \mathbf{AC}$ .
- Matrix multiplication is, in general, *not commutative*; that is, it can be the case that  $\mathbf{AB} \neq \mathbf{BA}$ .

(In each of the above cases, we are assuming that the dimensions match.)

There are many important special cases of matrix multiplication, as we discuss below.

### B.2.1 Vector-Vector Products

Given two vectors  $\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y} \in \mathbb{R}^n$ , the quantity  $\mathbf{x}^\top \mathbf{y}$ , called the **inner product**, **dot product** or **scalar product** of the vectors, is a real number given by

$$\langle \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y} \rangle \triangleq \mathbf{x}^\top \mathbf{y} = \sum_{i=1}^n x_i y_i. \quad (\text{B.66})$$

Note that it is always the case that  $\mathbf{x}^\top \mathbf{y} = \mathbf{y}^\top \mathbf{x}$ .

Given vectors  $\mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^m$ ,  $\mathbf{y} \in \mathbb{R}^n$  (they no longer have to be the same size),  $\mathbf{xy}^\top$  is called the **outer product** of the vectors. It is a matrix whose entries are given by  $(\mathbf{xy}^\top)_{ij} = x_i y_j$ , i.e.,

$$\mathbf{xy}^\top \in \mathbb{R}^{m \times n} = \begin{bmatrix} x_1 y_1 & x_1 y_2 & \cdots & x_1 y_n \\ x_2 y_1 & x_2 y_2 & \cdots & x_2 y_n \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ x_m y_1 & x_m y_2 & \cdots & x_m y_n \end{bmatrix}. \quad (\text{B.67})$$

### B.2.2 Matrix-Vector Products

Given a matrix  $\mathbf{A} \in \mathbb{R}^{m \times n}$  and a vector  $\mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^n$ , their product is a vector  $\mathbf{y} = \mathbf{Ax} \in \mathbb{R}^m$ . There are a couple ways of looking at matrix-vector multiplication, and we will look at them both.

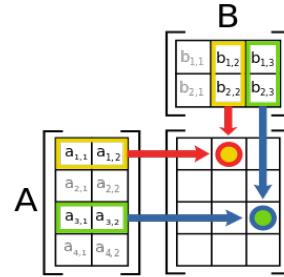


Figure B.5: Illustration of matrix multiplication. From <https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Matrix-multiplication>. Used with kind permission of Wikipedia author Bilou.

If we write  $\mathbf{A}$  by rows, then we can express  $\mathbf{y} = \mathbf{Ax}$  as follows:

$$\mathbf{y} = \mathbf{Ax} = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{a}_1^\top & \mathbf{a}_2^\top & \dots & \mathbf{a}_m^\top \end{bmatrix} \mathbf{x} = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{a}_1^\top \mathbf{x} \\ \mathbf{a}_2^\top \mathbf{x} \\ \vdots \\ \mathbf{a}_m^\top \mathbf{x} \end{bmatrix}. \quad (\text{B.68})$$

In other words, the  $i$ th entry of  $\mathbf{y}$  is equal to the inner product of the  $i$ th *row* of  $\mathbf{A}$  and  $\mathbf{x}$ ,  $y_i = \mathbf{a}_i^\top \mathbf{x}$ .

Alternatively, let's write  $\mathbf{A}$  in column form. In this case we see that

$$\mathbf{y} = \mathbf{Ax} = \begin{bmatrix} | & | & \dots & | \\ \mathbf{a}_1 & \mathbf{a}_2 & \dots & \mathbf{a}_n \\ | & | & \dots & | \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ \vdots \\ x_n \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} | \\ \mathbf{a}_1 \\ | \end{bmatrix} x_1 + \begin{bmatrix} | \\ \mathbf{a}_2 \\ | \end{bmatrix} x_2 + \dots + \begin{bmatrix} | \\ \mathbf{a}_n \\ | \end{bmatrix} x_n. \quad (\text{B.69})$$

In other words,  $\mathbf{y}$  is a **linear combination** of the *columns* of  $\mathbf{A}$ , where the coefficients of the linear combination are given by the entries of  $\mathbf{x}$ . We can view the columns of  $\mathbf{A}$  as a set of **basis vectors** defining a **linear subspace**. We can construct vectors in this subspace by taking linear combinations of the basis vectors. See Sec. B.1.2 for details.

### B.2.3 Matrix-Matrix Products

Below we look at four different (but, of course, equivalent) ways of viewing the matrix-matrix multiplication  $\mathbf{C} = \mathbf{AB}$ .

First we can view matrix-matrix multiplication as a set of vector-vector products. The most obvious viewpoint, which follows immediately from the definition, is that the  $i,j$  entry of  $\mathbf{C}$  is equal to the inner product of the  $i$ th row of  $\mathbf{A}$  and the  $j$ th column of  $\mathbf{B}$ . Symbolically, this looks like the following,

$$\mathbf{C} = \mathbf{AB} = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{a}_1^\top & \mathbf{a}_2^\top & \dots & \mathbf{a}_m^\top \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} | & | & \dots & | \\ \mathbf{b}_1 & \mathbf{b}_2 & \dots & \mathbf{b}_p \\ | & | & \dots & | \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{a}_1^\top \mathbf{b}_1 & \mathbf{a}_1^\top \mathbf{b}_2 & \dots & \mathbf{a}_1^\top \mathbf{b}_p \\ \mathbf{a}_2^\top \mathbf{b}_1 & \mathbf{a}_2^\top \mathbf{b}_2 & \dots & \mathbf{a}_2^\top \mathbf{b}_p \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ \mathbf{a}_m^\top \mathbf{b}_1 & \mathbf{a}_m^\top \mathbf{b}_2 & \dots & \mathbf{a}_m^\top \mathbf{b}_p \end{bmatrix}. \quad (\text{B.70})$$

Remember that since  $\mathbf{A} \in \mathbb{R}^{m \times n}$  and  $\mathbf{B} \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times p}$ ,  $\mathbf{a}_i \in \mathbb{R}^n$  and  $\mathbf{b}_j \in \mathbb{R}^n$ , so these inner products all make sense. This is the most “natural” representation when we represent  $\mathbf{A}$  by rows and  $\mathbf{B}$  by columns. See Fig. B.5 for an illustration.

Alternatively, we can represent  $\mathbf{A}$  by columns, and  $\mathbf{B}$  by rows, which leads to the interpretation of  $\mathbf{AB}$  as a sum of outer products. Symbolically,

$$\mathbf{C} = \mathbf{AB} = \left[ \begin{array}{c|c|c|c} & & & \\ \mathbf{a}_1 & \mathbf{a}_2 & \cdots & \mathbf{a}_n \\ & & & \end{array} \right] \left[ \begin{array}{c|c|c} & \mathbf{b}_1^\top & \\ & \mathbf{b}_2^\top & \\ & \vdots & \\ & \mathbf{b}_n^\top & \end{array} \right] = \sum_{i=1}^n \mathbf{a}_i \mathbf{b}_i^\top. \quad (\text{B.71})$$

Put another way,  $\mathbf{AB}$  is equal to the sum, over all  $i$ , of the outer product of the  $i$ th column of  $\mathbf{A}$  and the  $i$ th row of  $\mathbf{B}$ . Since, in this case,  $\mathbf{a}_i \in \mathbb{R}^m$  and  $\mathbf{b}_i \in \mathbb{R}^p$ , the dimension of the outer product  $\mathbf{a}_i \mathbf{b}_i^\top$  is  $m \times p$ , which coincides with the dimension of  $\mathbf{C}$ .

We can also view matrix-matrix multiplication as a set of matrix-vector products. Specifically, if we represent  $\mathbf{B}$  by columns, we can view the columns of  $\mathbf{C}$  as matrix-vector products between  $\mathbf{A}$  and the columns of  $\mathbf{B}$ . Symbolically,

$$\mathbf{C} = \mathbf{AB} = \mathbf{A} \left[ \begin{array}{c|c|c|c} & \mathbf{b}_1 & \mathbf{b}_2 & \cdots & \mathbf{b}_p \\ & | & | & \cdots & | \\ & \mathbf{b}_1 & \mathbf{b}_2 & \cdots & \mathbf{b}_p \end{array} \right] = \left[ \begin{array}{c|c|c|c} & \mathbf{Ab}_1 & \mathbf{Ab}_2 & \cdots & \mathbf{Ab}_p \\ & | & | & \cdots & | \\ & \mathbf{Ab}_1 & \mathbf{Ab}_2 & \cdots & \mathbf{Ab}_p \end{array} \right]. \quad (\text{B.72})$$

Here the  $i$ th column of  $\mathbf{C}$  is given by the matrix-vector product with the vector on the right,  $\mathbf{c}_i = \mathbf{Ab}_i$ . These matrix-vector products can in turn be interpreted using both viewpoints given in the previous subsection.

Finally, we have the analogous viewpoint, where we represent  $\mathbf{A}$  by rows, and view the rows of  $\mathbf{C}$  as the matrix-vector product between the rows of  $\mathbf{A}$  and the matrix  $\mathbf{B}$ . Symbolically,

$$\mathbf{C} = \mathbf{AB} = \left[ \begin{array}{c|c|c} & \mathbf{a}_1^\top & \\ & \mathbf{a}_2^\top & \\ & \vdots & \\ & \mathbf{a}_m^\top & \end{array} \right] \mathbf{B} = \left[ \begin{array}{c|c|c} & \mathbf{a}_1^\top \mathbf{B} & \\ & \mathbf{a}_2^\top \mathbf{B} & \\ & \vdots & \\ & \mathbf{a}_m^\top \mathbf{B} & \end{array} \right]. \quad (\text{B.73})$$

Here the  $i$ th row of  $\mathbf{C}$  is given by the matrix-vector product with the vector on the left,  $\mathbf{c}_i^\top = \mathbf{a}_i^\top \mathbf{B}$ .

It may seem like overkill to dissect matrix multiplication to such a large degree, especially when all these viewpoints follow immediately from the initial definition we gave (in about a line of math) at the beginning of this section. However, virtually all of linear algebra deals with matrix multiplications of some kind, and it is worthwhile to spend some time trying to develop an intuitive understanding of the viewpoints presented here.

Finally, a word on notation. We write  $\mathbf{A}^2$  as shorthand for  $\mathbf{AA}$ , which is the matrix product. To denote elementwise squaring of the elements of a matrix, we write  $\mathbf{A}^{\odot 2} = [A_{ij}^2]$ . (If  $\mathbf{A}$  is diagonal, then  $\mathbf{A}^2 = \mathbf{A}^{\odot 2}$ .)

We can also define the inverse of  $\mathbf{A}^2$  using the **matrix square root**: we say  $\mathbf{A} = \sqrt{\mathbf{M}}$  if  $\mathbf{A}^2 = \mathbf{M}$ . To denote elementwise square root of the elements of a matrix, we write  $[\sqrt{M_{ij}}]$ .

### B.2.4 Application: manipulating data matrices

As an application of the above results, consider the case where  $\mathbf{X}$  is the  $N \times D$  design matrix, whose rows are the data cases. There are various common preprocessing operations that we apply to this matrix, which we summarize below. (Writing these operations in matrix form is useful because it is notationally compact, and it allows us to implement the methods quickly using fast matrix code.)

#### B.2.4.1 Summing slices of the matrix

Suppose  $\mathbf{X}$  is an  $N \times D$  matrix. We can sum across the rows by premultiplying by a  $1 \times N$  matrix of ones to create a  $1 \times D$  matrix:

$$\mathbf{1}_N^\top \mathbf{X} = (\sum_n x_{n1} \quad \dots \quad \sum_n x_{nD}) \quad (\text{B.74})$$

Hence the mean of the datavectors is given by

$$\bar{\mathbf{x}} = \frac{1}{N} \mathbf{1}_N^\top \mathbf{X} \quad (\text{B.75})$$

We can sum across the columns by postmultiplying by a  $D \times 1$  matrix of ones to create a  $N \times 1$  matrix:

$$\mathbf{X} \mathbf{1}_D = \begin{pmatrix} \sum_d x_{1d} \\ \vdots \\ \sum_d x_{Nd} \end{pmatrix} \quad (\text{B.76})$$

We can sum all entries in a matrix by pre and post multiplying by a vector of 1s:

$$\mathbf{1}_N^\top \mathbf{X} \mathbf{1}_D = \sum_{ij} X_{ij} \quad (\text{B.77})$$

Hence the overall mean is given by

$$\bar{x} = \frac{1}{ND} \mathbf{1}_N^\top \mathbf{X} \mathbf{1}_D \quad (\text{B.78})$$

#### B.2.4.2 Scaling rows and columns of a matrix

We often want to scale rows or columns of a data matrix (e.g., to standardize them). We now show how to write this in matrix notation.

If we pre-multiply  $\mathbf{X}$  by a diagonal matrix  $\mathbf{S} = \text{diag}(\mathbf{s})$ , where  $\mathbf{s}$  is an  $N$ -vector, then we just scale each row of  $\mathbf{X}$  by the corresponding scale factor in  $\mathbf{s}$ :

$$\text{diag}(\mathbf{s}) \mathbf{X} = \begin{pmatrix} s_1 & \dots & 0 \\ & \ddots & \\ 0 & \dots & s_N \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x_{1,1} & \dots & x_{1,D} \\ & \ddots & \\ x_{N,1} & \dots & x_{N,D} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} s_1 x_{1,1} & \dots & s_1 x_{N,1} \\ & \ddots & \\ s_N x_{1,D} & \dots & s_N x_{N,D} \end{pmatrix} \quad (\text{B.79})$$

If we post-multiply  $\mathbf{X}$  by a diagonal matrix  $\mathbf{S} = \text{diag}(\mathbf{s})$ , where  $\mathbf{s}$  is a  $D$ -vector, then we just scale each column of  $\mathbf{X}$  by the corresponding element in  $\mathbf{s}$ .

$$\mathbf{X}\text{diag}(\mathbf{s}) = \begin{pmatrix} x_{1,1} & \cdots & x_{1,D} \\ \ddots & \ddots & \ddots \\ x_{N,1} & \cdots & x_{N,D} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} s_1 & \cdots & 0 \\ \ddots & \ddots & \ddots \\ 0 & \cdots & s_D \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} s_1 x_{1,1} & \cdots & s_D x_{1,D} \\ \ddots & \ddots & \ddots \\ s_1 x_{N,1} & \cdots & s_D x_{N,D} \end{pmatrix} \quad (\text{B.80})$$

Thus we can rewrite the standardization operation from Sec. 10.2.8 in matrix form as follows:

$$\text{standardize}(\mathbf{X}) = (\mathbf{X} - \mathbf{1}_N \boldsymbol{\mu}^T) \text{diag}(\boldsymbol{\sigma})^{-1} \quad (\text{B.81})$$

where  $\boldsymbol{\mu} = \bar{\mathbf{x}}$  is the empirical mean, and  $\boldsymbol{\sigma}$  is a vector of the empirical standard deviations.

#### B.2.4.3 Sum of squares and scatter matrix

The **sum of squares matrix** is a  $D \times D$  matrix defined by

$$\mathbf{S}_0 \triangleq \mathbf{X}^\top \mathbf{X} = \sum_{n=1}^N \mathbf{x}_n \mathbf{x}_n^\top = \sum_{n=1}^N \begin{pmatrix} x_{n,1}^2 & \cdots & x_{n,1} x_{n,D} \\ \ddots & \ddots & \ddots \\ x_{n,D} x_{n,1} & \cdots & x_{n,D}^2 \end{pmatrix} \quad (\text{B.82})$$

The **scatter matrix** is a  $D \times D$  matrix defined by

$$\mathbf{S}_{\bar{\mathbf{x}}} \triangleq \sum_{n=1}^N (\mathbf{x}_n - \bar{\mathbf{x}})(\mathbf{x}_n - \bar{\mathbf{x}})^\top = \left( \sum_n \mathbf{x}_n \mathbf{x}_n^\top \right) - N \bar{\mathbf{x}} \bar{\mathbf{x}}^\top \quad (\text{B.83})$$

We see that this is the sum of squares matrix applied to the mean-centered data. More precisely, define  $\tilde{\mathbf{X}}$  to be a version of  $\mathbf{X}$  where we subtract the mean  $\bar{\mathbf{x}} = \frac{1}{N} \mathbf{X}^\top \mathbf{1}_N$  off every row. Hence we can compute the centered data matrix using

$$\tilde{\mathbf{X}} = \mathbf{X} - \mathbf{1}\bar{\mathbf{x}}^\top = \mathbf{X} - \frac{1}{N} \mathbf{1}_N \mathbf{1}_N^\top \mathbf{X} = \mathbf{C}_N \mathbf{X} \quad (\text{B.84})$$

where

$$\mathbf{C}_N \triangleq \mathbf{I}_N - \frac{1}{N} \mathbf{1}_N \mathbf{1}_N^\top \quad (\text{B.85})$$

is the **centering matrix**. The scatter matrix can now be computed as follows:

$$\mathbf{S}_{\bar{\mathbf{x}}} = \tilde{\mathbf{X}}^\top \tilde{\mathbf{X}} = \mathbf{X}^\top \mathbf{C}_N^\top \mathbf{C}_N \mathbf{X} = \mathbf{X}^\top \mathbf{C}_N \mathbf{X} \quad (\text{B.86})$$

where we exploited the fact that  $\mathbf{C}_N$  is symmetric and idempotent, i.e.,  $\mathbf{C}_N^k = \mathbf{C}_N$  for  $k = 1, 2, \dots$  (since once we subtract the mean, subtracting it again has no effect).

### B.2.4.4 Gram matrix

The  $N \times N$  matrix  $\mathbf{X}\mathbf{X}^\top$  is a matrix of inner products called the **Gram matrix**:

$$\mathbf{K} \triangleq \mathbf{X}\mathbf{X}^\top = \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{x}_1^\top \mathbf{x}_1 & \cdots & \mathbf{x}_1^\top \mathbf{x}_N \\ \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ \mathbf{x}_n^\top \mathbf{x}_1 & \cdots & \mathbf{x}_n^\top \mathbf{x}_N \end{pmatrix} \quad (\text{B.87})$$

Sometimes we want to compute the inner products of the mean-centered data vectors,  $\tilde{\mathbf{K}} = \tilde{\mathbf{X}}\tilde{\mathbf{X}}^\top$ . However, if we are working with a feature similarity matrix instead of raw features, we will only have access to  $\mathbf{K}$ , not  $\mathbf{X}$ . (We will see examples of this in Sec. 20.4.4 and Sec. 20.4.6.) Fortunately, we can compute  $\tilde{\mathbf{K}}$  from  $\mathbf{K}$  using the **double centering trick**:

$$\tilde{\mathbf{K}} = \tilde{\mathbf{X}}\tilde{\mathbf{X}}^\top = \mathbf{C}_N \mathbf{K} \mathbf{C}_N = \mathbf{K} - \frac{\mathbf{1}_N}{N} \mathbf{K} \frac{\mathbf{1}_N}{N} + \frac{\mathbf{1}_N}{N} \mathbf{K} \frac{\mathbf{1}_N}{N} \quad (\text{B.88})$$

This subtracts the row means and column means from  $\mathbf{K}$ , and adds back the global mean that gets subtracted twice, so that both row means and column means of  $\tilde{\mathbf{K}}$  are equal to zero.

To see why Eq. (B.88) is true, consider the scalar form:

$$\tilde{K}_{ij} = \tilde{\mathbf{x}}_i^\top \tilde{\mathbf{x}}_j = (\mathbf{x}_i - \frac{1}{N} \sum_{k=1}^N \mathbf{x}_k)(\mathbf{x}_j - \frac{1}{N} \sum_{l=1}^N \mathbf{x}_l) \quad (\text{B.89})$$

$$= \mathbf{x}_i^\top \mathbf{x}_j - \frac{1}{N} \sum_{k=1}^N \mathbf{x}_i^\top \mathbf{x}_k - \frac{1}{N} \sum_{k=1}^N \mathbf{x}_j^\top \mathbf{x}_k + \frac{1}{N^2} \sum_{k=1}^N \sum_{l=1}^N \mathbf{x}_k^\top \mathbf{x}_l \quad (\text{B.90})$$

### B.2.4.5 Distance matrix

Let  $\mathbf{X}$  be  $N_x \times D$  datamatrix, and  $\mathbf{Y}$  be another  $N_y \times D$  datamatrix. We can compute the squared pairwise distances between these using

$$\mathbf{D}_{ij} = (\mathbf{x}_i - \mathbf{y}_j)^\top (\mathbf{x}_i - \mathbf{y}_j) = \|\mathbf{x}_i\|^2 - 2\mathbf{x}_i^\top \mathbf{y}_j + \|\mathbf{y}_j\|^2 \quad (\text{B.91})$$

Let us now write this in matrix form. Let  $\hat{\mathbf{x}} = [\|\mathbf{x}_1\|^2; \dots; \|\mathbf{x}_{N_x}\|^2] = \text{diag}(\mathbf{X}\mathbf{X}^\top)$  be a vector where each element is the squared norm of the examples in  $\mathbf{X}$ , and define  $\hat{\mathbf{y}}$  similarly. Then we have

$$\mathbf{D} = \hat{\mathbf{x}}\mathbf{1}_{N_y}^\top - 2\mathbf{XY}^\top + \mathbf{1}_{N_x}\hat{\mathbf{y}}^\top \quad (\text{B.92})$$

In the case that  $\mathbf{X} = \mathbf{Y}$ , we have

$$\mathbf{D} = \hat{\mathbf{x}}\mathbf{1}_{N_y}^\top - 2\mathbf{XX}^\top + \mathbf{1}_N\hat{\mathbf{x}}^\top \quad (\text{B.93})$$

This vectorized computation is often much faster than using for loops.

## B.2.5 Kronecker products

If  $\mathbf{A}$  is an  $m \times n$  matrix and  $\mathbf{B}$  is a  $p \times q$  matrix, then the **Kronecker product**  $\mathbf{A} \otimes \mathbf{B}$  is the  $mp \times nq$  block matrix

$$\mathbf{A} \otimes \mathbf{B} = \begin{bmatrix} a_{11}\mathbf{B} & \cdots & a_{1n}\mathbf{B} \\ \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ a_{m1}\mathbf{B} & \cdots & a_{mn}\mathbf{B} \end{bmatrix} \quad (\text{B.94})$$

For example,

$$\begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} \\ a_{31} & a_{32} \end{bmatrix} \otimes \begin{bmatrix} b_{11} & b_{12} & b_{13} \\ b_{21} & b_{22} & b_{23} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} a_{11}b_{11} & a_{11}b_{12} & a_{11}b_{13} & a_{12}b_{11} & a_{12}b_{12} & a_{12}b_{13} \\ a_{11}b_{21} & a_{11}b_{22} & a_{11}b_{23} & a_{12}b_{21} & a_{12}b_{22} & a_{12}b_{23} \\ a_{21}b_{11} & a_{21}b_{12} & a_{21}b_{13} & a_{22}b_{11} & a_{22}b_{12} & a_{22}b_{13} \\ a_{21}b_{21} & a_{21}b_{22} & a_{21}b_{23} & a_{22}b_{21} & a_{22}b_{22} & a_{22}b_{23} \\ a_{31}b_{11} & a_{31}b_{12} & a_{31}b_{13} & a_{32}b_{11} & a_{32}b_{12} & a_{32}b_{13} \\ a_{31}b_{21} & a_{31}b_{22} & a_{31}b_{23} & a_{32}b_{21} & a_{32}b_{22} & a_{32}b_{23} \end{bmatrix} \quad (\text{B.95})$$

Here are some useful identities:

$$(\mathbf{A} \otimes \mathbf{B})^{-1} = \mathbf{A}^{-1} \otimes \mathbf{B}^{-1} \quad (\text{B.96})$$

$$(\mathbf{A} \otimes \mathbf{B})\text{vec}(\mathbf{C}) = \text{vec}(\mathbf{BCA}^\top) \quad (\text{B.97})$$

See [Loa00] for a list of other useful properties.

## B.2.6 Einstein summation

**Einstein summation**, or **einsum** for short, is a notational shortcut for working with tensors. The convention was introduced by Einstein [Ein16, sec 5], who later joked to a friend, “I have made a great discovery in mathematics; I have suppressed the summation sign every time that the summation must be made over an index which occurs twice...” [Pai05, p.216]. For example, instead of writing matrix multiplication as  $C_{ij} = \sum_k A_{ik}B_{kj}$ , we can just write it as  $C_{ij} = A_{ik}B_{kj}$ , where we drop the  $\sum_k$ .

As a more complex example, suppose we have a 3d tensor  $S_{ntk}$  where  $n$  indexes examples in the batch,  $t$  indexes locations in the sequence, and  $k$  indexes words in a one-hot representation. Let  $W_{kd}$  be an embedding matrix that maps sparse one-hot vectors  $\mathbb{R}^k$  to dense vectors in  $\mathbb{R}^d$ . We can convert the batch of sequences of one-hots to a batch of sequences of embeddings as follows:

$$E_{ntd} = \sum_k S_{ntk} W_{kd} \quad (\text{B.98})$$

We can compute the sum of the embedding vectors for each sequence (to get a global representation of each bag of words) as follows:

$$E_{nd} = \sum_k \sum_t S_{ntk} W_{kd} \quad (\text{B.99})$$

Finally we can pass each sequence’s vector representation through another linear transform  $V_{dc}$  to map to the logits over a classifier with  $c$  labels:

$$L_{nc} = \sum_d E_{nd} V_{dc} = \sum_d \sum_k \sum_t S_{ntk} W_{kd} V_{dc} \quad (\text{B.100})$$

In einsum notation, we write  $L_{nc} = S_{ntk} W_{kd} V_{dc}$ . We sum over  $k$  and  $d$  because those indices occur twice on the RHS. We sum over  $t$  because that index does not occur on the LHS.

Einsum is implemented in NumPy, Tensorflow, PyTorch, etc. What makes it particularly useful is that it can perform the relevant tensor multiplications in complex expressions in an optimal order,

so as to minimize time and intermediate memory allocation.<sup>3</sup> The library is best illustrated by the examples in `einsum_demo.py`.

Note that the speed of einsum depends on the order in which the operations are performed, which depends on the shapes of the relevant arguments. The optimal ordering minimizes the treewidth of the resulting computation graph, as explained in [GASG18]. In general, the time to compute the optimal ordering is exponential in the number of arguments, so it is common to use a greedy approximation. However, if we expect to repeat the same calculation many times, using tensors of the same shape but potentially different content, we can compute the optimal ordering once and reuse it multiple times.

## B.3 Matrix inversion

In this section, we discuss how to invert different kinds of matrices.

### B.3.1 The inverse of a square matrix

The **inverse** of a square matrix  $\mathbf{A} \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}$  is denoted  $\mathbf{A}^{-1}$ , and is the unique matrix such that

$$\mathbf{A}^{-1}\mathbf{A} = \mathbf{I} = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{A}^{-1}. \quad (\text{B.101})$$

Note that  $\mathbf{A}^{-1}$  exists if and only if  $\det(\mathbf{A}) \neq 0$ . If  $\det(\mathbf{A}) = 0$ , it is called a **singular** matrix.

The following are properties of the inverse; all assume that  $\mathbf{A}, \mathbf{B} \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}$  are non-singular:

$$(\mathbf{A}^{-1})^{-1} = \mathbf{A} \quad (\text{B.102})$$

$$(\mathbf{AB})^{-1} = \mathbf{B}^{-1}\mathbf{A}^{-1} \quad (\text{B.103})$$

$$(\mathbf{A}^{-1})^\top = (\mathbf{A}^\top)^{-1} \triangleq \mathbf{A}^{-T} \quad (\text{B.104})$$

For the case of a  $2 \times 2$  matrix, the expression for  $\mathbf{A}^{-1}$  is simple enough to give explicitly. We have

$$\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{A}^{-1} = \frac{1}{|\mathbf{A}|} \begin{pmatrix} d & -b \\ -c & a \end{pmatrix} \quad (\text{B.105})$$

For a block diagonal matrix, the inverse is obtained by simply inverting each block separately, e.g.,

$$\begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{A} & \mathbf{0} \\ \mathbf{0} & \mathbf{B} \end{pmatrix}^{-1} = \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{A}^{-1} & \mathbf{0} \\ \mathbf{0} & \mathbf{B}^{-1} \end{pmatrix} \quad (\text{B.106})$$

### B.3.2 Schur complements

In this section, we review some useful results concerning block structured matrices.

**Theorem B.3.1** (Inverse of a partitioned matrix). *Consider a general partitioned matrix*

$$\mathbf{M} = \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{E} & \mathbf{F} \\ \mathbf{G} & \mathbf{H} \end{pmatrix} \quad (\text{B.107})$$

---

3. These optimizations are implemented in the **opt-einsum** library [GASG18]. Its core functionality is included in NumPy and JAX `einsum` functions, provided you set `optimize=True` parameter.

where we assume  $\mathbf{E}$  and  $\mathbf{H}$  are invertible. We have

$$\mathbf{M}^{-1} = \begin{pmatrix} (\mathbf{M}/\mathbf{H})^{-1} & -(\mathbf{M}/\mathbf{H})^{-1}\mathbf{F}\mathbf{H}^{-1} \\ -\mathbf{H}^{-1}\mathbf{G}(\mathbf{M}/\mathbf{H})^{-1} & \mathbf{H}^{-1} + \mathbf{H}^{-1}\mathbf{G}(\mathbf{M}/\mathbf{H})^{-1}\mathbf{F}\mathbf{H}^{-1} \end{pmatrix} \quad (\text{B.108})$$

$$= \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{E}^{-1} + \mathbf{E}^{-1}\mathbf{F}(\mathbf{M}/\mathbf{E})^{-1}\mathbf{G}\mathbf{E}^{-1} & -\mathbf{E}^{-1}\mathbf{F}(\mathbf{M}/\mathbf{E})^{-1} \\ -(\mathbf{M}/\mathbf{E})^{-1}\mathbf{G}\mathbf{E}^{-1} & (\mathbf{M}/\mathbf{E})^{-1} \end{pmatrix} \quad (\text{B.109})$$

where

$$\mathbf{M}/\mathbf{H} \triangleq \mathbf{E} - \mathbf{F}\mathbf{H}^{-1}\mathbf{G} \quad (\text{B.110})$$

$$\mathbf{M}/\mathbf{E} \triangleq \mathbf{H} - \mathbf{G}\mathbf{E}^{-1}\mathbf{F} \quad (\text{B.111})$$

We say that  $\mathbf{M}/\mathbf{H}$  is the **Schur complement** of  $\mathbf{M}$  wrt  $\mathbf{H}$ , and  $\mathbf{M}/\mathbf{E}$  is the Schur complement of  $\mathbf{M}$  wrt  $\mathbf{E}$ . (The reason for this notation will be explained in Eq. (B.132).)

Eq. (B.108) and Eq. (B.109) are called the **partitioned inverse formulae**.

*Proof.* If we could block diagonalize  $\mathbf{M}$ , it would be easier to invert. To zero out the top right block of  $\mathbf{M}$  we can pre-multiply as follows

$$\begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{I} & -\mathbf{F}\mathbf{H}^{-1} \\ \mathbf{0} & \mathbf{I} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{E} & \mathbf{F} \\ \mathbf{G} & \mathbf{H} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{E} - \mathbf{F}\mathbf{H}^{-1}\mathbf{G} & \mathbf{0} \\ \mathbf{G} & \mathbf{H} \end{pmatrix} \quad (\text{B.112})$$

Similarly, to zero out the bottom left we can post-multiply as follows

$$\begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{E} - \mathbf{F}\mathbf{H}^{-1}\mathbf{G} & \mathbf{0} \\ \mathbf{G} & \mathbf{H} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{I} & \mathbf{0} \\ -\mathbf{H}^{-1}\mathbf{G} & \mathbf{I} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{E} - \mathbf{F}\mathbf{H}^{-1}\mathbf{G} & \mathbf{0} \\ \mathbf{0} & \mathbf{H} \end{pmatrix} \quad (\text{B.113})$$

Putting it all together we get

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{I} & -\mathbf{F}\mathbf{H}^{-1} \\ \mathbf{0} & \mathbf{I} \end{pmatrix}}_{\mathbf{X}} \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{E} & \mathbf{F} \\ \mathbf{G} & \mathbf{H} \end{pmatrix}}_{\mathbf{M}} \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{I} & \mathbf{0} \\ -\mathbf{H}^{-1}\mathbf{G} & \mathbf{I} \end{pmatrix}}_{\mathbf{Z}} = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{E} - \mathbf{F}\mathbf{H}^{-1}\mathbf{G} & \mathbf{0} \\ \mathbf{0} & \mathbf{H} \end{pmatrix}}_{\mathbf{W}} \quad (\text{B.114})$$

Taking the inverse of both sides yields

$$\mathbf{Z}^{-1}\mathbf{M}^{-1}\mathbf{X}^{-1} = \mathbf{W}^{-1} \quad (\text{B.115})$$

$$\mathbf{M}^{-1} = \mathbf{Z}\mathbf{W}^{-1}\mathbf{X} \quad (\text{B.116})$$

Substituting in the definitions we get

$$\begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{E} & \mathbf{F} \\ \mathbf{G} & \mathbf{H} \end{pmatrix}^{-1} = \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{I} & \mathbf{0} \\ -\mathbf{H}^{-1}\mathbf{G} & \mathbf{I} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} (\mathbf{M}/\mathbf{H})^{-1} & \mathbf{0} \\ \mathbf{0} & \mathbf{H}^{-1} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{I} & -\mathbf{F}\mathbf{H}^{-1} \\ \mathbf{0} & \mathbf{I} \end{pmatrix} \quad (\text{B.117})$$

$$= \begin{pmatrix} (\mathbf{M}/\mathbf{H})^{-1} & \mathbf{0} \\ -\mathbf{H}^{-1}\mathbf{G}(\mathbf{M}/\mathbf{H})^{-1} & \mathbf{H}^{-1} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{I} & -\mathbf{F}\mathbf{H}^{-1} \\ \mathbf{0} & \mathbf{I} \end{pmatrix} \quad (\text{B.118})$$

$$= \begin{pmatrix} (\mathbf{M}/\mathbf{H})^{-1} & -(\mathbf{M}/\mathbf{H})^{-1}\mathbf{F}\mathbf{H}^{-1} \\ -\mathbf{H}^{-1}\mathbf{G}(\mathbf{M}/\mathbf{H})^{-1} & \mathbf{H}^{-1} + \mathbf{H}^{-1}\mathbf{G}(\mathbf{M}/\mathbf{H})^{-1}\mathbf{F}\mathbf{H}^{-1} \end{pmatrix} \quad (\text{B.119})$$

Alternatively, we could have decomposed the matrix  $\mathbf{M}$  in terms of  $\mathbf{E}$  and  $\mathbf{M}/\mathbf{E} = (\mathbf{H} - \mathbf{G}\mathbf{E}^{-1}\mathbf{F})$ , yielding

$$\begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{E} & \mathbf{F} \\ \mathbf{G} & \mathbf{H} \end{pmatrix}^{-1} = \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{E}^{-1} + \mathbf{E}^{-1}\mathbf{F}(\mathbf{M}/\mathbf{E})^{-1}\mathbf{G}\mathbf{E}^{-1} & -\mathbf{E}^{-1}\mathbf{F}(\mathbf{M}/\mathbf{E})^{-1} \\ -(\mathbf{M}/\mathbf{E})^{-1}\mathbf{G}\mathbf{E}^{-1} & (\mathbf{M}/\mathbf{E})^{-1} \end{pmatrix} \quad (\text{B.120})$$

□

### B.3.3 The matrix inversion lemma

Equating the top left block of the first matrix in Eq. (B.118) with the top left block of the matrix in Eq. (B.119)

$$(\mathbf{E} - \mathbf{F}\mathbf{H}^{-1}\mathbf{G})^{-1} = \mathbf{E}^{-1} + \mathbf{E}^{-1}\mathbf{F}(\mathbf{H} - \mathbf{G}\mathbf{E}^{-1}\mathbf{F})^{-1}\mathbf{G}\mathbf{E}^{-1} \quad (\text{B.121})$$

This is known as the **matrix inversion lemma** or the **Sherman-Morrison-Woodbury formula**.

A typical application in machine learning is the following. Let  $\mathbf{X}$  be an  $N \times D$  data matrix, and  $\boldsymbol{\Sigma}$  be  $N \times N$  diagonal matrix. Then we have (using the substitutions  $\mathbf{E} = \boldsymbol{\Sigma}$ ,  $\mathbf{F} = \mathbf{G}^\top = \mathbf{X}$ , and  $\mathbf{H}^{-1} = -\mathbf{I}$ ) the following result:

$$(\boldsymbol{\Sigma} + \mathbf{X}\mathbf{X}^\top)^{-1} = \boldsymbol{\Sigma}^{-1} - \boldsymbol{\Sigma}^{-1}\mathbf{X}(\mathbf{I} + \mathbf{X}^\top\boldsymbol{\Sigma}^{-1}\mathbf{X})^{-1}\mathbf{X}^\top\boldsymbol{\Sigma}^{-1} \quad (\text{B.122})$$

The LHS takes  $O(N^3)$  time to compute, the RHS takes time  $O(D^3)$  to compute.

Another application concerns computing a **rank one update** of an inverse matrix. Let  $\mathbf{E} = \mathbf{A}$ ,  $\mathbf{F} = \mathbf{u}$ ,  $\mathbf{G} = \mathbf{v}^\top$ , and  $H = -1$ . Then we have

$$(\mathbf{A} + \mathbf{u}\mathbf{v}^\top)^{-1} = \mathbf{A}^{-1} + \mathbf{A}^{-1}\mathbf{u}(-1 - \mathbf{v}^\top\mathbf{A}^{-1}\mathbf{u})^{-1}\mathbf{v}^\top\mathbf{A}^{-1} \quad (\text{B.123})$$

$$= \mathbf{A}^{-1} - \frac{\mathbf{A}^{-1}\mathbf{u}\mathbf{v}^\top\mathbf{A}^{-1}}{1 + \mathbf{v}^\top\mathbf{A}^{-1}\mathbf{u}} \quad (\text{B.124})$$

This is known as the **Sherman-Morrison formula**.

### B.3.4 Matrix determinant lemma

We now use the above results to derive an efficient way to compute the determinant of a block-structured matrix.

From Eq. (B.114), we have

$$|\mathbf{X}||\mathbf{M}||\mathbf{Z}| = |\mathbf{W}| = |\mathbf{E} - \mathbf{F}\mathbf{H}^{-1}\mathbf{G}||\mathbf{H}| \quad (\text{B.125})$$

$$|\begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{E} & \mathbf{F} \\ \mathbf{G} & \mathbf{H} \end{pmatrix}| = |\mathbf{E} - \mathbf{F}\mathbf{H}^{-1}\mathbf{G}||\mathbf{H}| \quad (\text{B.126})$$

$$|\mathbf{M}| = |\mathbf{M}/\mathbf{H}||\mathbf{H}| \quad (\text{B.127})$$

$$|\mathbf{M}/\mathbf{H}| = \frac{|\mathbf{M}|}{|\mathbf{H}|} \quad (\text{B.128})$$

So we can see that  $\mathbf{M}/\mathbf{H}$  acts somewhat like a division operator.

Furthermore, we have

$$|\mathbf{M}| = |\mathbf{M}/\mathbf{H}||\mathbf{H}| = |\mathbf{M}/\mathbf{E}||\mathbf{E}| \quad (\text{B.129})$$

$$|\mathbf{M}/\mathbf{H}| = \frac{|\mathbf{M}/\mathbf{E}||\mathbf{E}|}{|\mathbf{H}|} \quad (\text{B.130})$$

$$|\mathbf{E} - \mathbf{F}\mathbf{H}^{-1}\mathbf{G}| = |\mathbf{H} - \mathbf{G}\mathbf{E}^{-1}\mathbf{F}||\mathbf{H}^{-1}||\mathbf{E}| \quad (\text{B.131})$$

Hence (setting  $\mathbf{E} = \mathbf{A}$ ,  $\mathbf{F} = -\mathbf{u}$ ,  $\mathbf{G} = \mathbf{v}^\top$ ,  $\mathbf{H} = 1$ ) we have

$$|\mathbf{A} + \mathbf{u}\mathbf{v}^\top| = (1 + \mathbf{v}^\top \mathbf{A}^{-1}\mathbf{u})|\mathbf{A}| \quad (\text{B.132})$$

This is known as the **matrix determinant lemma**.

## B.4 Eigenvalue decomposition (EVD)

In this section, we review some standard material on the **eigenvalue decomposition** or **EVD** of square (real-valued) matrices.

### B.4.1 Basics

Given a square matrix  $\mathbf{A} \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}$ , we say that  $\lambda \in \mathbb{R}$  is an **eigenvalue** of  $\mathbf{A}$  and  $\mathbf{u} \in \mathbb{R}^n$  is the corresponding **eigenvector** if

$$\mathbf{A}\mathbf{u} = \lambda\mathbf{u}, \quad \mathbf{u} \neq 0. \quad (\text{B.133})$$

Intuitively, this definition means that multiplying  $\mathbf{A}$  by the vector  $\mathbf{u}$  results in a new vector that points in the same direction as  $\mathbf{u}$ , but is scaled by a factor  $\lambda$ . For example, if  $\mathbf{A}$  is a rotation matrix, then  $\mathbf{u}$  is the axis of rotation and  $\lambda = 1$ .

Note that for any eigenvector  $\mathbf{u} \in \mathbb{R}^n$ , and scalar  $c \in \mathbb{R}$ ,

$$\mathbf{A}(c\mathbf{u}) = c\mathbf{A}\mathbf{u} = c\lambda\mathbf{u} = \lambda(c\mathbf{u}) \quad (\text{B.134})$$

Hence  $c\mathbf{u}$  is also an eigenvector. For this reason when we talk about “the” eigenvector associated with  $\lambda$ , we usually assume that the eigenvector is normalized to have length 1 (this still creates some ambiguity, since  $\mathbf{u}$  and  $-\mathbf{u}$  will both be eigenvectors, but we will have to live with this).

We can rewrite the equation above to state that  $(\lambda, \mathbf{x})$  is an eigenvalue-eigenvector pair of  $\mathbf{A}$  if

$$(\lambda\mathbf{I} - \mathbf{A})\mathbf{u} = \mathbf{0}, \quad \mathbf{u} \neq 0. \quad (\text{B.135})$$

Now  $(\lambda\mathbf{I} - \mathbf{A})\mathbf{u} = \mathbf{0}$  has a non-zero solution to  $\mathbf{u}$  if and only if  $(\lambda\mathbf{I} - \mathbf{A})$  has a non-empty nullspace, which is only the case if  $(\lambda\mathbf{I} - \mathbf{A})$  is singular, i.e.,

$$\det(\lambda\mathbf{I} - \mathbf{A}) = 0. \quad (\text{B.136})$$

This is called the **characteristic equation** of  $\mathbf{A}$ . (See Exercise B.2.) The  $n$  solutions of this equation are the  $n$  (possibly complex-valued) eigenvalues  $\lambda_i$ , and  $\mathbf{u}_i$  are the corresponding eigenvectors. It is standard to sort the eigenvectors in order of their eigenvalues, with the largest magnitude ones first.

The following are properties of eigenvalues and eigenvectors.

- The trace of a matrix is equal to the sum of its eigenvalues,

$$\text{tr}(\mathbf{A}) = \sum_{i=1}^n \lambda_i . \quad (\text{B.137})$$

- The determinant of  $\mathbf{A}$  is equal to the product of its eigenvalues,

$$\det(\mathbf{A}) = \prod_{i=1}^n \lambda_i . \quad (\text{B.138})$$

- The rank of  $\mathbf{A}$  is equal to the number of non-zero eigenvalues of  $\mathbf{A}$ .
- If  $\mathbf{A}$  is non-singular then  $1/\lambda_i$  is an eigenvalue of  $\mathbf{A}^{-1}$  with associated eigenvector  $\mathbf{u}_i$ , i.e.,  $\mathbf{A}^{-1}\mathbf{u}_i = (1/\lambda_i)\mathbf{u}_i$ .
- The eigenvalues of a diagonal or triangular matrix are just the diagonal entries.

### B.4.2 Diagonalization

We can write all the eigenvector equations simultaneously as

$$\mathbf{AU} = \mathbf{U}\Lambda \quad (\text{B.139})$$

where the columns of  $\mathbf{U} \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}$  are the eigenvectors of  $\mathbf{A}$  and  $\Lambda$  is a diagonal matrix whose entries are the eigenvalues of  $\mathbf{A}$ , i.e.,

$$\mathbf{U} \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n} = \begin{bmatrix} | & | & & | \\ \mathbf{u}_1 & \mathbf{u}_2 & \cdots & \mathbf{u}_n \\ | & | & & | \end{bmatrix}, \quad \Lambda = \text{diag}(\lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_n) . \quad (\text{B.140})$$

If the eigenvectors of  $\mathbf{A}$  are linearly independent, then the matrix  $\mathbf{U}$  will be invertible, so

$$\mathbf{A} = \mathbf{U}\Lambda\mathbf{U}^{-1}. \quad (\text{B.141})$$

A matrix that can be written in this form is called **diagonalizable**.

### B.4.3 Eigenvalues and eigenvectors of symmetric matrices

When  $\mathbf{A}$  is real and symmetric, it can be shown that all the eigenvalues are real, and the eigenvectors are **orthonormal**, i.e.,  $\mathbf{u}_i^\top \mathbf{u}_j = 0$  if  $i \neq j$ , and  $\mathbf{u}_i^\top \mathbf{u}_i = 1$ , where  $\mathbf{u}_i$  are the eigenvectors. In matrix form, this becomes  $\mathbf{U}^\top \mathbf{U} = \mathbf{U} \mathbf{U}^\top = \mathbf{I}$ ; hence we see that  $\mathbf{U}$  is an orthogonal matrix.

We can therefore represent  $\mathbf{A}$  as

$$\mathbf{A} = \mathbf{U}\Lambda\mathbf{U}^\top = \begin{pmatrix} | & | & & | \\ \mathbf{u}_1 & \mathbf{u}_2 & \cdots & \mathbf{u}_n \\ | & | & & | \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 & & & \\ & \lambda_2 & & \\ & & \ddots & \\ & & & \lambda_n \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} - & \mathbf{u}_1^\top & - \\ - & \mathbf{u}_2^\top & - \\ \vdots & & \\ - & \mathbf{u}_n^\top & - \end{pmatrix} \quad (\text{B.142})$$

$$= \lambda_1 \begin{pmatrix} | \\ \mathbf{u}_1 \\ | \end{pmatrix} (- \mathbf{u}_1^\top -) + \cdots + \lambda_n \begin{pmatrix} | \\ \mathbf{u}_n \\ | \end{pmatrix} (- \mathbf{u}_n^\top -) = \sum_{i=1}^n \lambda_i \mathbf{u}_i \mathbf{u}_i^\top \quad (\text{B.143})$$

Thus multiplying by any symmetric matrix  $\mathbf{A}$  can be interpreted as multiplying by a rotation matrix  $\mathbf{U}^\top$ , a scaling matrix  $\Lambda$ , followed by an inverse rotation  $\mathbf{U}$ .

Once we have diagonalized a matrix, it is easy to invert. Since  $\mathbf{A} = \mathbf{U}\Lambda\mathbf{U}^\top$ , where  $\mathbf{U}^\top = \mathbf{U}^{-1}$ , we have

$$\mathbf{A}^{-1} = \mathbf{U}\Lambda^{-1}\mathbf{U}^\top = \sum_{i=1}^d \frac{1}{\lambda_i} \mathbf{u}_i \mathbf{u}_i^\top \quad (\text{B.144})$$

This corresponds to rotating, unscaling, and then rotating back.

#### B.4.3.1 Checking for positive definiteness

We can also use the diagonalization property to show that a symmetric matrix is positive definite iff all its eigenvalues are positive. To see this, note that

$$\mathbf{x}^\top \mathbf{A} \mathbf{x} = \mathbf{x}^\top \mathbf{U} \Lambda \mathbf{U}^\top \mathbf{x} = \mathbf{y}^\top \Lambda \mathbf{y} = \sum_{i=1}^n \lambda_i y_i^2 \quad (\text{B.145})$$

where  $\mathbf{y} = \mathbf{U}^\top \mathbf{x}$ . Because  $y_i^2$  is always nonnegative, the sign of this expression depends entirely on the  $\lambda_i$ 's. If all  $\lambda_i > 0$ , then the matrix is positive definite; if all  $\lambda_i \geq 0$ , it is positive semidefinite. Likewise, if all  $\lambda_i < 0$  or  $\lambda_i \leq 0$ , then  $\mathbf{A}$  is negative definite or negative semidefinite respectively. Finally, if  $\mathbf{A}$  has both positive and negative eigenvalues, it is indefinite.

### B.4.4 Geometry of quadratic forms

A **quadratic form** is a function that can be written as

$$f(\mathbf{x}) = \mathbf{x}^\top \mathbf{A} \mathbf{x} \quad (\text{B.146})$$

where  $\mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^n$  and  $\mathbf{A}$  is a positive definite, symmetric  $n$ -by- $n$  matrix. Let  $\mathbf{A} = \mathbf{U}\Lambda\mathbf{U}^\top$  be a diagonalization of  $\mathbf{A}$  (see Sec. B.4.3). Hence we can write

$$f(\mathbf{x}) = \mathbf{x}^\top \mathbf{A} \mathbf{x} = \mathbf{x}^\top \mathbf{U} \Lambda \mathbf{U}^\top \mathbf{x} = \mathbf{y}^\top \Lambda \mathbf{y} = \sum_{i=1}^n \lambda_i y_i^2 \quad (\text{B.147})$$

where  $y_i = \mathbf{x}^\top \mathbf{u}_i$  and  $\lambda_i > 0$  (since  $\mathbf{A}$  is positive definite). The level sets of  $f(\mathbf{x})$  define hyper-ellipsoids. For example, in 2d, we have

$$\lambda_1 y_1^2 + \lambda_2 y_2^2 = r \quad (\text{B.148})$$

which is the equation of a 2d ellipse. This is illustrated in Fig. B.6. The eigenvectors determine the orientation of the ellipse, and the eigenvalues determine how elongated it is.

#### B.4.5 Standardizing and whitening data

Suppose we have a dataset  $\mathbf{X} \in \mathbb{R}^{N \times D}$ . It is common to preprocess the data so that each column has zero mean and unit variance. This is called standardizing the data, as we discussed in Sec. 10.2.8.

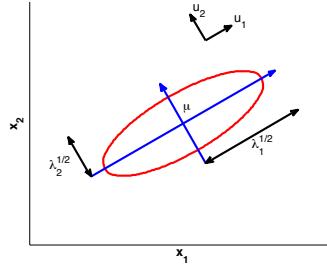


Figure B.6: Visualization of a level set of the quadratic form  $(\mathbf{x} - \boldsymbol{\mu})^\top \mathbf{A}(\mathbf{x} - \boldsymbol{\mu})$  in 2d. The major and minor axes of the ellipse are defined by the first two eigenvectors of  $\mathbf{A}$ , namely  $\mathbf{u}_1$  and  $\mathbf{u}_2$ . Adapted from Figure 2.7 of [Bis06]. Generated by `gaussEvec.m`.

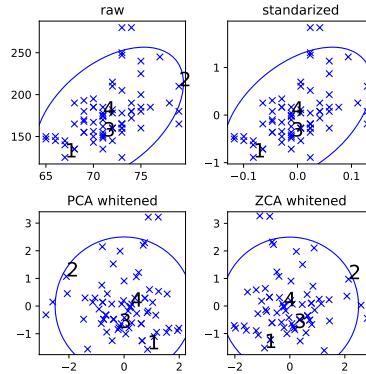


Figure B.7: (a) Height/weight data. (b) Standardized. (c) PCA Whitening. (d) ZCA whitening. Numbers refer to the first 4 datapoints, but there are 73 datapoints in total. Generated by `height_weight_whiten_plot.py`.

Although standardizing forces the variance to be 1, it does not remove correlation between the columns. To do that, we must **whiten** the data. To define this, let the empirical covariance matrix be  $\Sigma = \frac{1}{N} \mathbf{X}^\top \mathbf{X}$ , and let  $\Sigma = \mathbf{E} \mathbf{D} \mathbf{E}^\top$  be its diagonalization. Equivalently, let  $[\mathbf{U}, \mathbf{S}, \mathbf{V}]$  be the SVD of  $\mathbf{X}$  (so  $\mathbf{E} = \mathbf{V}$  and  $\mathbf{D} = \mathbf{S}^2$ , as we discuss in Sec. 20.1.3.3.) Now define

$$\mathbf{W}_{pca} = \mathbf{D}^{-\frac{1}{2}} \mathbf{E}^\top \quad (\text{B.149})$$

This is called the **PCA whitening** matrix. (We discuss PCA in Sec. 20.1.) Let  $\mathbf{y} = \mathbf{W}_{pca} \mathbf{x}$  be a transformed vector. We can check that its covariance is white as follows:

$$\text{Cov} [\mathbf{y}] = \mathbf{W} \mathbb{E} [\mathbf{x} \mathbf{x}^\top] \mathbf{W}^\top = \mathbf{W} \Sigma \mathbf{W}^\top = (\mathbf{D}^{-\frac{1}{2}} \mathbf{E}^\top)(\mathbf{E} \mathbf{D} \mathbf{E}^\top)(\mathbf{E} \mathbf{D}^{-\frac{1}{2}}) = \mathbf{I} \quad (\text{B.150})$$

The whitening matrix is not unique, since any rotation of it,  $\mathbf{W} = \mathbf{R} \mathbf{W}_{pca}$ , will still maintain the whitening property, i.e.,  $\mathbf{W}^\top \mathbf{W} = \Sigma^{-1}$ . For example, if we take  $\mathbf{R} = \mathbf{E}$ , we get

$$\mathbf{W}_{zca} = \mathbf{E} \mathbf{D}^{-\frac{1}{2}} \mathbf{E}^\top = \Sigma^{-\frac{1}{2}} = \mathbf{V} \mathbf{S}^{-1} \mathbf{V}^\top \quad (\text{B.151})$$

This is called **Mahalanobis whitening** or **ZCA**. (ZCA stands for “zero-phase component analysis”, and was introduced in [BS97].) The advantage of ZCA whitening over PCA whitening is that the resulting transformed data is as close as possible to the original data (in the least squares sense) [Amo17]. This is illustrated in Fig. B.7. When applied to images, the ZCA transformed data vectors still look like images. This is useful when the method is used inside a deep learning system [KH09].

### B.4.6 Power method

We now describe a simple iterative method for computing the eigenvector corresponding to the largest eigenvalue of a real, symmetric matrix; this is called the **power method**. This can be useful when the matrix is very large but sparse. For example, it is used by Google’s **PageRank** to compute the stationary distribution of the transition matrix of the world wide web (a matrix of size about 3 billion by 3 billion!). In Sec. B.4.7, we will see how to use this method to compute subsequent eigenvectors and values.

Let  $\mathbf{A}$  be a matrix with orthonormal eigenvectors  $\mathbf{u}_i$  and eigenvalues  $|\lambda_1| > |\lambda_2| \geq \dots \geq |\lambda_m| \geq 0$ , so  $\mathbf{A} = \mathbf{U}\Lambda\mathbf{U}^\top$ . Let  $\mathbf{v}_{(0)}$  be an arbitrary vector in the range of  $\mathbf{A}$ , so  $\mathbf{Ax} = \mathbf{v}_{(0)}$  for some  $\mathbf{x}$ . Hence we can write  $\mathbf{v}_{(0)}$  as

$$\mathbf{v}_0 = \mathbf{U}(\Lambda\mathbf{U}^\top \mathbf{x}) = a_1 \mathbf{u}_1 + \dots + a_m \mathbf{u}_m \quad (\text{B.152})$$

for some constants  $a_i$ . We can now repeatedly multiply  $\mathbf{v}$  by  $\mathbf{A}$  and renormalize:

$$\mathbf{v}_t \propto \mathbf{Av}_{t-1} \quad (\text{B.153})$$

(We normalize at each iteration for numerical stability.)

Since  $\mathbf{v}_t$  is a multiple of  $\mathbf{A}^t \mathbf{v}_0$ , we have

$$\mathbf{v}_t \propto a_1 \lambda_1^t \mathbf{u}_1 + a_2 \lambda_2^t \mathbf{u}_2 + \dots + a_m \lambda_m^t \mathbf{u}_m \quad (\text{B.154})$$

$$= \lambda_1^t (a_1 \mathbf{u}_1 + a_1 (\lambda_2 / \lambda_1)^t \mathbf{u}_2 + \dots + a_m (\lambda_m / \lambda_1)^t \mathbf{u}_m) \quad (\text{B.155})$$

$$\rightarrow \lambda_1^t a_1 \mathbf{u}_1 \quad (\text{B.156})$$

since  $\frac{|\lambda_k|}{|\lambda_1|} < 1$  for  $k > 1$  (assuming the eigenvalues are sorted in descending order). So we see that this converges to  $\mathbf{u}_1$ , although not very quickly (the error is reduced by approximately  $|\lambda_2 / \lambda_1|$  at each iteration). The only requirement is that the initial guess satisfy  $\mathbf{v}_0^\top \mathbf{u}_1 \neq 0$ , which will be true for a random  $\mathbf{v}_0$  with high probability.

We now discuss how to compute the corresponding eigenvalue,  $\lambda_1$ . Define the **Rayleigh quotient** to be

$$R(\mathbf{A}, \mathbf{x}) \triangleq \frac{\mathbf{x}^\top \mathbf{Ax}}{\mathbf{x}^\top \mathbf{x}} \quad (\text{B.157})$$

Hence

$$R(\mathbf{A}, \mathbf{u}_i) = \frac{\mathbf{u}_i^\top \mathbf{Au}_i}{\mathbf{u}_i^\top \mathbf{u}_i} = \frac{\lambda_i \mathbf{u}_i^\top \mathbf{u}_i}{\mathbf{u}_i^\top \mathbf{u}_i} = \lambda_i \quad (\text{B.158})$$

Thus we can easily compute  $\lambda_1$  from  $\mathbf{u}_1$  and  $\mathbf{A}$ . See `power_method_demo.py` for some code.

### B.4.7 Deflation

Suppose we have computed the first eigenvector and value  $\mathbf{u}_1, \lambda_1$  by the power method. We now describe how to compute subsequent eigenvectors and values. Since the eigenvectors are orthonormal, and the eigenvalues are real, we can project out the  $\mathbf{u}_1$  component from the matrix as follows:

$$\mathbf{A}^{(2)} = (\mathbf{I} - \mathbf{u}_1 \mathbf{u}_1^\top) \mathbf{A}^{(1)} = \mathbf{A}^{(1)} - \mathbf{u}_1 \mathbf{u}_1^\top \mathbf{A}^{(1)} = \mathbf{A}^{(1)} - \lambda_1 \mathbf{u}_1 \mathbf{u}_1^\top \quad (\text{B.159})$$

This is called matrix **deflation**. We can then apply the power method to  $\mathbf{A}^{(2)}$ , which will find the largest eigenvector/value in the subspace orthogonal to  $\mathbf{u}_1$ .

In Sec. 20.1.2, we show that the optimal estimate  $\hat{\mathbf{W}}$  for the PCA model (described in Sec. 20.1) is given by the first  $K$  eigenvectors of the empirical covariance matrix. Hence deflation can be used to implement PCA. It can also be modified to implement sparse PCA [Mac09].

### B.4.8 Eigenvectors optimize quadratic forms

We can use matrix calculus to solve an optimization problem in a way that leads directly to eigenvalue/eigenvector analysis. Consider the following, equality constrained optimization problem:

$$\max_{\mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^n} \mathbf{x}^\top \mathbf{A} \mathbf{x} \quad \text{subject to } \|\mathbf{x}\|_2^2 = 1 \quad (\text{B.160})$$

for a symmetric matrix  $\mathbf{A} \in \mathbb{S}^n$ . A standard way of solving optimization problems with equality constraints is by forming the Lagrangian, an objective function that includes the equality constraints (see Sec. 5.5.1). The Lagrangian in this case can be given by

$$\mathcal{L}(\mathbf{x}, \lambda) = \mathbf{x}^\top \mathbf{A} \mathbf{x} + \lambda(1 - \mathbf{x}^\top \mathbf{x}) \quad (\text{B.161})$$

where  $\lambda$  is called the Lagrange multiplier associated with the equality constraint. It can be established that for  $x^*$  to be a optimal point to the problem, the gradient of the Lagrangian has to be zero at  $x^*$  (this is not the only condition, but it is required). That is,

$$\nabla_{\mathbf{x}} \mathcal{L}(\mathbf{x}, \lambda) = 2\mathbf{A}^\top \mathbf{x} - 2\lambda \mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}. \quad (\text{B.162})$$

Notice that this is just the linear equation  $\mathbf{A} \mathbf{x} = \lambda \mathbf{x}$ . This shows that the only points which can possibly maximize (or minimize)  $\mathbf{x}^\top \mathbf{A} \mathbf{x}$  assuming  $\mathbf{x}^\top \mathbf{x} = 1$  are the eigenvectors of  $\mathbf{A}$ .

## B.5 Singular value decomposition (SVD)

We now discuss the SVD, which generalizes EVD to rectangular matrices.

### B.5.1 Basics

Any (real)  $m \times n$  matrix  $\mathbf{A}$  can be decomposed as

$$\mathbf{A} = \mathbf{U} \mathbf{S} \mathbf{V}^\top = \sigma_1 \begin{pmatrix} | \\ \mathbf{u}_1 \\ | \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} - & \mathbf{v}_1^\top & - \end{pmatrix} + \dots + \sigma_r \begin{pmatrix} | \\ \mathbf{u}_r \\ | \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} - & \mathbf{v}_r^\top & - \end{pmatrix} \quad (\text{B.163})$$

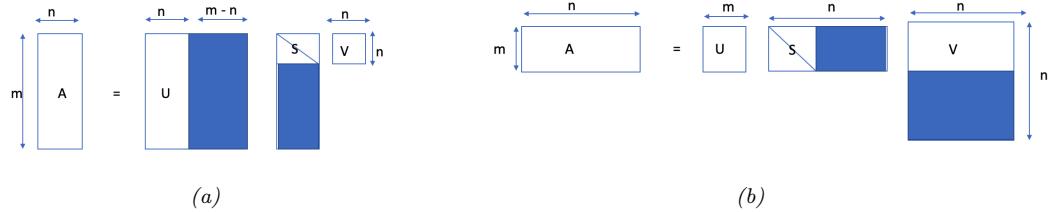


Figure B.8: SVD decomposition of a matrix,  $\mathbf{A} = \mathbf{U}\mathbf{S}\mathbf{V}^\top$ . The shaded parts of each matrix are not computed in the economy-sized version. (a) Tall skinny matrix. (b) Short wide matrix.

where  $\mathbf{U}$  is an  $m \times m$  whose columns are orthonormal (so  $\mathbf{U}^\top \mathbf{U} = \mathbf{I}_m$ ),  $\mathbf{V}$  is  $n \times n$  matrix whose rows and columns are orthonormal (so  $\mathbf{V}^\top \mathbf{V} = \mathbf{V}\mathbf{V}^\top = \mathbf{I}_n$ ), and  $\mathbf{S}$  is a  $m \times n$  matrix containing the  $r = \min(m, n)$  **singular values**  $\sigma_i \geq 0$  on the main diagonal, with 0s filling the rest of the matrix. The columns of  $\mathbf{U}$  are the left **singular vectors**, and the columns of  $\mathbf{V}$  are the right singular vectors. This is called the **singular value decomposition** or **SVD** of the matrix. See Fig. B.8 for an example.

As is apparent from Fig. B.8a, if  $m > n$ , there are at most  $n$  singular values, so the last  $m - n$  columns of  $\mathbf{U}$  are irrelevant (since they will be multiplied by 0). The **economy sized SVD**, also called a **thin SVD**, avoids computing these unnecessary elements. In other words, if we write the  $\mathbf{U}$  matrix as  $\mathbf{U} = [\mathbf{U}_1, \mathbf{U}_2]$ , we only compute  $\mathbf{U}_1$ . Fig. B.8b shows the opposite case, where  $m < n$ , where we represent  $\mathbf{V} = [\mathbf{V}_1; \mathbf{V}_2]$ , and only compute  $\mathbf{V}_1$ .

The cost of computing the SVD is  $O(\min(mn^2, m^2n))$ . Details on how it works can be found in standard linear algebra textbooks.

### B.5.2 Connection between SVD and EVD

If  $\mathbf{A}$  is real, symmetric and positive definite, then the singular values are equal to the eigenvalues, and the left and right singular vectors are equal to the eigenvectors (up to a sign change):

$$\mathbf{A} = \mathbf{U}\mathbf{S}\mathbf{V}^\top = \mathbf{U}\mathbf{S}\mathbf{U}^\top = \mathbf{U}\mathbf{S}\mathbf{U}^{-1} \quad (\text{B.164})$$

Note, however, that NumPy always returns the singular values in decreasing order, whereas the eigenvalues need not necessarily be sorted.

In general, for an arbitrary real matrix  $\mathbf{A}$ , if  $\mathbf{A} = \mathbf{U}\mathbf{S}\mathbf{V}^\top$ , we have

$$\mathbf{A}^\top \mathbf{A} = \mathbf{V} \mathbf{S}^\top \mathbf{U}^\top \mathbf{U} \mathbf{S} \mathbf{V}^\top = \mathbf{V} (\mathbf{S}^\top \mathbf{S}) \mathbf{V}^\top \quad (\text{B.165})$$

Hence

(B.166)

so the eigenvectors of  $\mathbf{A}^\top \mathbf{A}$  are equal to  $\mathbf{V}$ , the right singular vectors of  $\mathbf{A}$ , and the eigenvalues of  $\mathbf{A}^\top \mathbf{A}$  are equal to  $\mathbf{D}_n = \mathbf{S}^\top \mathbf{S}$ , which is an  $n \times n$  diagonal matrix containing the squared singular values. Similarly

$$\mathbf{A}\mathbf{A}^\top = \mathbf{U}\mathbf{S}\mathbf{V}^\top \mathbf{V}\mathbf{S}^\top\mathbf{U}^\top = \mathbf{U}(\mathbf{S}\mathbf{S}^\top)\mathbf{U}^\top \quad (\text{B.167})$$

(B.168)

so the eigenvectors of  $\mathbf{A}\mathbf{A}^\top$  are equal to  $\mathbf{U}$ , the left singular vectors of  $\mathbf{A}$ , and the eigenvalues of  $\mathbf{A}\mathbf{A}^\top$  are equal to  $\mathbf{D}_m = \mathbf{S}\mathbf{S}^\top$ , which is an  $m \times m$  diagonal matrix containing the squared singular values. In summary,

$$\mathbf{U} = \text{evec}(\mathbf{A}\mathbf{A}^\top), \mathbf{V} = \text{evec}(\mathbf{A}^\top\mathbf{A}), \mathbf{D}_m = \text{eval}(\mathbf{A}\mathbf{A}^\top), \mathbf{D}_n = \text{eval}(\mathbf{A}^\top\mathbf{A}) \quad (\text{B.169})$$

If we just use the computed (non-zero) parts in the economy-sized SVD, then we can define

$$\mathbf{D} = \mathbf{S}^2 = \mathbf{S}^\top\mathbf{S} = \mathbf{S}\mathbf{S}^\top \quad (\text{B.170})$$

Note also that an EVD does not always exist, even for square  $\mathbf{A}$ , whereas an SVD always exists.

### B.5.3 Pseudo inverse

The **Moore-Penrose pseudo-inverse** of  $\mathbf{A}$ , pseudo inverse denoted  $\mathbf{A}^\dagger$ , is defined as the unique matrix that satisfies the following 4 properties:

$$\mathbf{A}\mathbf{A}^\dagger\mathbf{A} = \mathbf{A}, \mathbf{A}^\dagger\mathbf{A}\mathbf{A}^\dagger = \mathbf{A}^\dagger, (\mathbf{A}\mathbf{A}^\dagger)^\top = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{A}^\dagger, (\mathbf{A}^\dagger\mathbf{A})^\top = \mathbf{A}^\dagger\mathbf{A} \quad (\text{B.171})$$

If  $\mathbf{A}$  is square and non-singular, then  $\mathbf{A}^\dagger = \mathbf{A}^{-1}$ .

If  $m > n$  (tall, skinny) and the columns of  $\mathbf{A}$  are linearly independent (so  $\mathbf{A}$  is full rank), then

$$\mathbf{A}^\dagger = (\mathbf{A}^\top\mathbf{A})^{-1}\mathbf{A}^\top \quad (\text{B.172})$$

which is the same expression as arises in the normal equations (see Sec. 11.2.2.1). In this case,  $\mathbf{A}^\dagger$  is a left inverse of  $\mathbf{A}$  because

$$\mathbf{A}^\dagger\mathbf{A} = (\mathbf{A}^\top\mathbf{A})^{-1}\mathbf{A}^\top\mathbf{A} = \mathbf{I} \quad (\text{B.173})$$

but is not a right inverse because

$$\mathbf{A}\mathbf{A}^\dagger = \mathbf{A}(\mathbf{A}^\top\mathbf{A})^{-1}\mathbf{A}^\top \quad (\text{B.174})$$

only has rank  $n$ , and so cannot be the  $m \times m$  identity matrix.

If  $m < n$  (short, fat) and the rows of  $\mathbf{A}$  are linearly independent (so  $\mathbf{A}$  is full rank), then the pseudo inverse is

$$\mathbf{A}^\dagger = \mathbf{A}^\top(\mathbf{A}\mathbf{A}^\top)^{-1} \quad (\text{B.175})$$

In this case,  $\mathbf{A}^\dagger$  is a right inverse of  $\mathbf{A}$ .

We can compute the pseudo inverse using the SVD decomposition  $\mathbf{A} = \mathbf{U}\mathbf{S}\mathbf{V}^\top$ . In particular, one can show that

$$\mathbf{A}^\dagger = \mathbf{V}[\text{diag}(1/\sigma_1, \dots, 1/\sigma_r, 0, \dots, 0)]\mathbf{U}^\top \quad (\text{B.176})$$

where  $r$  is the rank of the matrix. Thus  $\mathbf{A}^\dagger$  acts just like a matrix inverse for non-square matrices:

$$\mathbf{A}^\dagger = \mathbf{A}^{-1} = (\mathbf{U}\mathbf{S}\mathbf{V}^\top)^{-1} = \mathbf{V}\mathbf{S}^{-1}\mathbf{U}^\top \quad (\text{B.177})$$

where we define  $\mathbf{S}^{-1} = \text{diag}(\sigma_1^{-1}, \dots, \sigma_r^{-1}, 0, \dots, 0)$ .

### B.5.4 SVD and the range and null space of a matrix

In this section, we show that the left and right singular vectors form an orthonormal basis for the range and null space.

From Eq. (B.163) we have

$$\mathbf{Ax} = \sum_{j:\sigma_j > 0} \sigma_j (\mathbf{v}_j^\top \mathbf{x}) \mathbf{u}_j = \sum_{j=1}^r \sigma_j (\mathbf{v}_j^\top \mathbf{x}) \mathbf{u}_j \quad (\text{B.178})$$

where  $r$  is the rank of  $\mathbf{A}$ . Thus any  $\mathbf{Ax}$  can be written as a linear combination of the left singular vectors  $\mathbf{u}_1, \dots, \mathbf{u}_r$ , so the range of  $\mathbf{A}$  is given by

$$\text{range}(\mathbf{A}) = \text{span}(\{\mathbf{u}_j : \sigma_j > 0\}) \quad (\text{B.179})$$

with dimension  $r$ .

To find a basis for the null space, let us now define a second vector  $\mathbf{y} \in \mathbb{R}^n$  that is a linear combination solely of the right singular vectors for the zero singular values,

$$\mathbf{y} = \sum_{j:\sigma_j=0} c_j \mathbf{v}_j = \sum_{j=r+1}^n c_j \mathbf{v}_j \quad (\text{B.180})$$

Since the  $\mathbf{v}_j$ 's are orthonormal, we have

$$\mathbf{Ay} = \mathbf{U} \begin{pmatrix} \sigma_1 \mathbf{v}_1^\top \mathbf{y} \\ \vdots \\ \sigma_r \mathbf{v}_r^\top \mathbf{y} \\ \sigma_{r+1} \mathbf{v}_{r+1}^\top \mathbf{y} \\ \vdots \\ \sigma_n \mathbf{v}_n^\top \mathbf{y} \end{pmatrix} = \mathbf{U} \begin{pmatrix} \sigma_1 0 \\ \vdots \\ \sigma_r 0 \\ 0 \mathbf{v}_{r+1}^\top \mathbf{y} \\ \vdots \\ 0 \mathbf{v}_n^\top \mathbf{y} \end{pmatrix} = \mathbf{U} \mathbf{0} = \mathbf{0} \quad (\text{B.181})$$

Hence the right singular vectors form an orthonormal basis for the null space:

$$\text{nullspace}(\mathbf{A}) = \text{span}(\{\mathbf{v}_j : \sigma_j = 0\}) \quad (\text{B.182})$$

with dimension  $n - r$ . We see that

$$\dim(\text{range}(\mathbf{A})) + \dim(\text{nullspace}(\mathbf{A})) = r + (n - r) = n \quad (\text{B.183})$$

In words, this is often written as

$$\text{rank} + \text{nullity} = n \quad (\text{B.184})$$

This is called the **rank-nullity theorem**. It follows from this that the rank of a matrix is the number of nonzero singular values.



Figure B.9: Low rank approximations to an image. Top left: The original image is of size  $200 \times 320$ , so has rank 200. Subsequent images have ranks 2, 5, and 20. Generated by `svd_image_demo.py`.

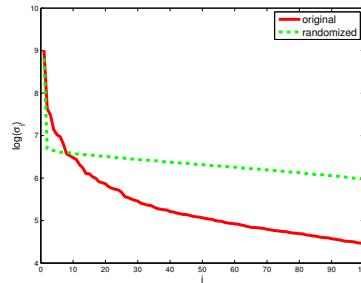


Figure B.10: First 100 log singular values for the clown image (solid red line), and for a data matrix obtained by randomly shuffling the pixels (dotted green line). Generated by `svd_image_demo.py`. Adapted from Figure 14.24 of [HTF09].

### B.5.5 Truncated SVD

Let  $\mathbf{A} = \mathbf{U}\mathbf{S}\mathbf{V}^T$  be the SVD of  $\mathbf{A}$ , and let  $\hat{\mathbf{A}}_K = \mathbf{U}_K \mathbf{S}_K \mathbf{V}_K^T$ , where we use the first  $K$  columns of  $\mathbf{U}$  and  $\mathbf{V}$ . This can be shown to be the optimal rank  $K$  approximation, in the sense that it minimizes  $\|\mathbf{A} - \hat{\mathbf{A}}_K\|_F^2$ .

If  $K = r = \text{rank}(\mathbf{A})$ , there is no error introduced by this decomposition. But if  $K < r$ , we incur some error. This is called a **truncated SVD**. If the singular values die off quickly, as is typical in natural data (see e.g., Fig. B.10), the error will be small. The total number of parameters needed to represent an  $N \times D$  matrix using a rank  $K$  approximation is

$$NK + KD + K = K(N + D + 1) \quad (\text{B.185})$$

As an example, consider the  $200 \times 320$  pixel image in Fig. B.9(top left). This has 64,000 numbers in

it. We see that a rank 20 approximation, with only  $(200 + 320 + 1) \times 20 = 10,420$  numbers is a very good approximation.

One can show that the error in this approximation is given by

$$\|\mathbf{A} - \hat{\mathbf{A}}\|_F = \sum_{k=K+1}^r \sigma_k \quad (\text{B.186})$$

where  $\sigma_k$  is the  $k$ 'th singular value of  $\mathbf{A}$ . Furthermore, one can show that the SVD offers the best rank  $K$  approximation to a matrix (best in the sense of minimizing the above Frobenius norm).

## B.6 Other matrix decompositions

In this section, we briefly review some other useful matrix decompositions.

### B.6.1 LU factorization

We can factorize any square matrix  $\mathbf{A}$  into a product of a lower triangular matrix  $\mathbf{L}$  and an upper triangular matrix  $\mathbf{U}$ . For example,

$$\begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & a_{13} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & a_{23} \\ a_{31} & a_{32} & a_{33} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} l_{11} & 0 & 0 \\ l_{21} & l_{22} & 0 \\ l_{31} & l_{32} & l_{33} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} u_{11} & u_{12} & u_{13} \\ 0 & u_{22} & u_{23} \\ 0 & 0 & u_{33} \end{bmatrix}. \quad (\text{B.187})$$

In general we may need to permute the entries in the matrix before creating this decomposition. To see this, suppose  $a_{11} = 0$ . Since  $a_{11} = l_{11}u_{11}$ , this means either  $l_{11}$  or  $u_{11}$  or both must be zero, but that would imply  $\mathbf{L}$  or  $\mathbf{U}$  are singular. To avoid this, the first step of the algorithm can simply reorder the rows so that the first element is nonzero. This is repeated for subsequent steps. We can denote this process by

$$\mathbf{PA} = \mathbf{LU} \quad (\text{B.188})$$

where  $\mathbf{P}$  is a permutation matrix, i.e., a square binary matrix where  $P_{ij} = 1$  if row  $j$  gets permuted to row  $i$ . This is called **partial pivoting**.

### B.6.2 QR decomposition

Suppose we have  $\mathbf{A} \in \mathbb{R}^{m \times n}$  representing a set of linearly independent basis vectors (so  $m \geq n$ ), and we want to find a series of orthonormal vectors  $\mathbf{q}_1, \mathbf{q}_2, \dots$  that span the successive subspaces of  $\text{span}(\mathbf{a}_1)$ ,  $\text{span}(\mathbf{a}_1, \mathbf{a}_2)$ , etc. In other words, we want to find vectors  $\mathbf{q}_j$  and coefficients  $r_{ij}$  such that

$$\begin{pmatrix} | & | & & | \\ \mathbf{a}_1 & \mathbf{a}_2 & \cdots & \mathbf{a}_n \\ | & | & & | \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} | & | & & | \\ \mathbf{q}_1 & \mathbf{q}_2 & \cdots & \mathbf{q}_n \\ | & | & & | \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} r_{11} & r_{12} & \cdots & r_{1n} \\ r_{22} & \cdots & r_{2n} \\ \ddots & & & \\ & & & r_{nn} \end{pmatrix} \quad (\text{B.189})$$

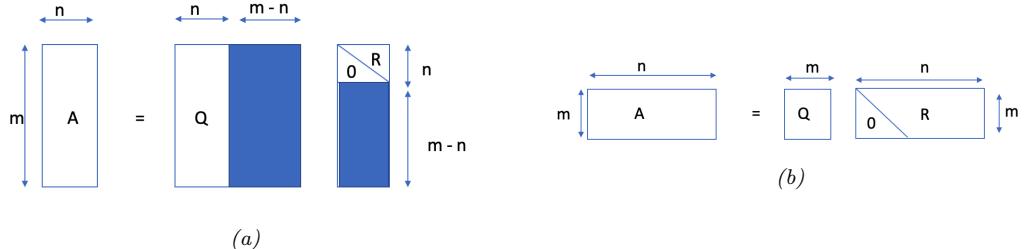


Figure B.11: Illustration of QR decomposition,  $\mathbf{A} = \mathbf{QR}$ , where  $\mathbf{Q}^\top \mathbf{Q} = \mathbf{I}$  and  $\mathbf{R}$  is upper triangular. (a) Tall, skinny matrix. The shaded parts are not computed in the economy-sized version, since they are not needed. (b) Short, wide matrix.

We can write this

$$\mathbf{a}_1 = r_{11}\mathbf{q}_1 \quad (\text{B.190})$$

$$\mathbf{a}_2 = r_{12}\mathbf{q}_1 + r_{22}\mathbf{q}_2 \quad (\text{B.191})$$

$\vdots$

$$\mathbf{a}_n = r_{1n}\mathbf{q}_1 + \cdots + r_{nn}\mathbf{q}_n \quad (\text{B.192})$$

so we see  $\mathbf{q}_1$  spans the space of  $\mathbf{a}_1$ , and  $\mathbf{q}_1$  and  $\mathbf{q}_2$  span the space of  $\{\mathbf{a}_1, \mathbf{a}_2\}$ , etc.

In matrix notation, we have

$$\mathbf{A} = \hat{\mathbf{Q}}\hat{\mathbf{R}} \quad (\text{B.193})$$

where  $\hat{\mathbf{Q}}$  is  $m \times n$  with orthonormal columns and  $\hat{\mathbf{R}}$  is  $n \times n$  and upper triangular. This is called a **reduced QR** or **economy sized QR** factorization of  $\mathbf{A}$ ; see Fig. B.11.

A full QR factorization appends an additional  $m - n$  orthonormal columns to  $\hat{\mathbf{Q}}$  so it becomes a square, orthogonal matrix  $\mathbf{Q}$ , which satisfies  $\mathbf{Q}\mathbf{Q}^\top = \mathbf{Q}^\top\mathbf{Q} = \mathbf{I}$ . Also, we append rows made of zero to  $\hat{\mathbf{R}}$  so it becomes an  $m \times n$  matrix that is still upper triangular, called  $\mathbf{R}$ : see Fig. B.11. The zero entries in  $\mathbf{R}$  “kill off” the new columns in  $\mathbf{Q}$ , so the result is the same as  $\hat{\mathbf{Q}}\hat{\mathbf{R}}$ .

QR decomposition is commonly used to solve systems of linear equations, as we discuss in Sec. 11.2.2.3.

### B.6.3 Cholesky decomposition

Any symmetric positive definite matrix can be factorized as  $\mathbf{A} = \mathbf{R}^\top \mathbf{R}$ , where  $\mathbf{R}$  is upper triangular with real, positive diagonal elements. (This can also be written as  $\mathbf{A} = \mathbf{L}\mathbf{L}^\top$ , where  $\mathbf{L} = \mathbf{R}^\top$  is lower triangular.) This is called a **Cholesky factorization** or **matrix square root**. In NumPy, this is implemented by `np.linalg.cholesky`. The computational complexity of this operation is  $O(V^3)$ , where  $V$  is the number of variables, but can be less for sparse matrices. Below we give some applications of this factorization.

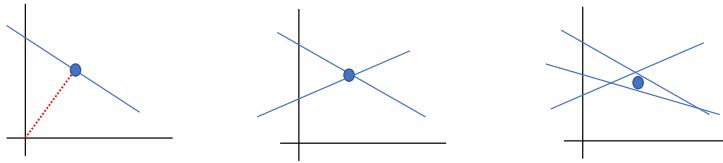


Figure B.12: Solution of a set of  $m$  linear equations in  $n = 2$  variables. (a)  $m = 1 < n$  so the system is underdetermined. We show the minimal norm solution as a blue circle. (The dotted red line is orthogonal to the line, and its length is the distance to the origin.) (b)  $m = n = 2$ , so there is a unique solution. (c)  $m = 3 > n$ , so there is no unique solution. We show the least squares solution.

### B.6.3.1 Application: Sampling from an MVN

The Cholesky decomposition of a covariance matrix can be used to sample from a multivariate Gaussian. Let  $\mathbf{y} \sim \mathcal{N}(\boldsymbol{\mu}, \boldsymbol{\Sigma})$  and  $\boldsymbol{\Sigma} = \mathbf{L}\mathbf{L}^\top$ . We first sample  $\mathbf{x} \sim \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{0}, \mathbf{I})$ , which is easy because it just requires sampling from  $d$  separate 1d Gaussians. We then set  $\mathbf{y} = \mathbf{L}\mathbf{x} + \boldsymbol{\mu}$ . This is valid since

$$\text{Cov}[\mathbf{y}] = \mathbf{L}\text{Cov}[\mathbf{x}]\mathbf{L}^\top = \mathbf{L}\mathbf{I}\mathbf{L}^\top = \boldsymbol{\Sigma} \quad (\text{B.194})$$

See [cholesky\\_demo.py](#) for some code.

## B.7 Solving systems of linear equations

An important application of linear algebra is the study of systems of linear equations. For example, consider the following set of 3 equations:

$$3x_1 + 2x_2 - x_3 = 1 \quad (\text{B.195})$$

$$2x_1 - 2x_2 + 4x_3 = -2 \quad (\text{B.196})$$

$$-x_1 + \frac{1}{2}x_2 - x_3 = 0 \quad (\text{B.197})$$

We can represent this in matrix-vector form as follows:

$$\mathbf{A}\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b} \quad (\text{B.198})$$

where

$$\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 & -1 \\ 2 & -2 & 4 \\ -1 & \frac{1}{2} & -1 \end{pmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{b} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -2 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \quad (\text{B.199})$$

The solution is  $\mathbf{x} = [1, -2, -2]$ .

In general, if we have  $m$  equations and  $n$  unknowns, then  $\mathbf{A}$  will be a  $m \times n$  matrix, and  $\mathbf{b}$  will be a  $m \times 1$  vector. If  $m = n$  (and  $\mathbf{A}$  is full rank), there is a single unique solution. If  $m < n$ , the system is **underdetermined**, so there is not a unique solution. If  $m > n$ , the system is **overdetermined**, since there are more constraints than unknowns, and not all the lines intersect at the same point. See Fig. B.12 for an illustration. We discuss how to compute solutions in each of these cases below.

### B.7.1 Solving square systems

In the case where  $m = n$ , we can solve for  $\mathbf{x}$  by computing an LU decomposition,  $\mathbf{A} = \mathbf{LU}$ , and then proceeding as follows:

$$\mathbf{Ax} = \mathbf{b} \quad (\text{B.200})$$

$$\mathbf{LUx} = \mathbf{b} \quad (\text{B.201})$$

$$\mathbf{Ux} = \mathbf{L}^{-1}\mathbf{b} \triangleq \mathbf{y} \quad (\text{B.202})$$

$$\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{U}^{-1}\mathbf{y} \quad (\text{B.203})$$

The crucial point is that  $\mathbf{L}$  and  $\mathbf{U}$  are both triangular matrices, so we can avoid taking matrix inverses, and use a method known as **backsubstitution** instead.

In particular, we can solve  $\mathbf{y} = \mathbf{L}^{-1}\mathbf{b}$  without taking inverses as follows. First we write

$$\begin{pmatrix} L_{11} & & & \\ L_{21} & L_{22} & & \\ & & \ddots & \\ L_{n1} & L_{n2} & \cdots & L_{nn} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} y_1 \\ \vdots \\ y_n \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} b_1 \\ \vdots \\ b_n \end{pmatrix} \quad (\text{B.204})$$

Hence we can first solve  $L_{nn}y_n = b_n$  to find  $y_n$ . We then substitute this in to solve

$$L_{n-1,n-1}y_{n-1} + L_{n-1,n}y_n = b_{n-1} \quad (\text{B.205})$$

for  $y_{n-1}$ , etc. This process is often denoted by the **backslash operator**,  $\mathbf{y} = \mathbf{L} \setminus \mathbf{b}$ . Once we have  $\mathbf{y}$ , we can solve  $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{U}^{-1}\mathbf{y}$  using backsubstitution in a similar manner.

### B.7.2 Solving underconstrained systems (least norm estimation)

In this section, we consider the underconstrained setting, where  $m < n$ .<sup>4</sup> We assume the rows are linearly independent, so  $\mathbf{A}$  is full rank.

When  $m < n$ , there are multiple possible solutions, which have the form

$$\{\mathbf{x} : \mathbf{Ax} = \mathbf{b}\} = \{\mathbf{x}_p + \mathbf{z} : \mathbf{z} \in \text{nullspace}(\mathbf{A})\} \quad (\text{B.206})$$

where  $\mathbf{x}_p$  is any particular solution. It is standard to pick the particular solution with minimal  $\ell_2$  norm, i.e.,

$$\hat{\mathbf{x}} = \underset{\mathbf{x}}{\operatorname{argmin}} \|\mathbf{x}\|_2^2 \text{ s.t. } \mathbf{Ax} = \mathbf{b} \quad (\text{B.207})$$

We can compute the minimal norm solution using the *right* pseudo inverse:

$$\mathbf{x}_{\text{pinv}} = \mathbf{A}^\top (\mathbf{AA}^\top)^{-1} \mathbf{b} \quad (\text{B.208})$$

To see this, suppose  $\mathbf{x}$  is some other solution, so  $\mathbf{Ax} = \mathbf{b}$ , and  $\mathbf{A}(\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}_{\text{pinv}}) = \mathbf{0}$ . Thus

$$(\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}_{\text{pinv}})^\top \mathbf{x}_{\text{pinv}} = (\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}_{\text{pinv}})^\top \mathbf{A}^\top (\mathbf{AA}^\top)^{-1} \mathbf{b} = (\mathbf{A}(\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}_{\text{pinv}}))^\top (\mathbf{AA}^\top)^{-1} \mathbf{b} = 0 \quad (\text{B.209})$$

---

<sup>4</sup>. Our presentation is based in part on lecture notes by Stephen Boyd at <http://ee263.stanford.edu/lectures/min-norm.pdf>.

and hence  $(\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}_{\text{pinv}}) \perp \mathbf{x}_{\text{pinv}}$ . By **Pythagoras's theorem**, the norm of  $\mathbf{x}$  is

$$\|\mathbf{x}\|^2 = \|\mathbf{x}_{\text{pinv}} + \mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}_{\text{pinv}}\|^2 = \|\mathbf{x}_{\text{pinv}}\|^2 + \|\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}_{\text{pinv}}\|^2 \geq \|\mathbf{x}_{\text{pinv}}\|^2 \quad (\text{B.210})$$

Thus any solution apart from  $\mathbf{x}_{\text{pinv}}$  has larger norm.

We can also solve the constrained optimization problem in Eq. (B.207) by minimizing the following unconstrained objective

$$\mathcal{L}(\mathbf{x}, \boldsymbol{\lambda}) = \mathbf{x}^\top \mathbf{x} + \boldsymbol{\lambda}^\top (\mathbf{A}\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{b}) \quad (\text{B.211})$$

From Sec. 5.5.1, the optimality conditions are

$$\nabla_{\mathbf{x}} \mathcal{L} = 2\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{A}^\top \boldsymbol{\lambda} = \mathbf{0}, \quad \nabla_{\boldsymbol{\lambda}} \mathcal{L} = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{b} = \mathbf{0} \quad (\text{B.212})$$

From the first condition we have  $\mathbf{x} = -\mathbf{A}^\top \boldsymbol{\lambda}/2$ . Substituting into the second we get

$$\mathbf{A}\mathbf{x} = -\frac{1}{2}\mathbf{A}\mathbf{A}^\top \boldsymbol{\lambda} = \mathbf{b} \quad (\text{B.213})$$

which implies  $\boldsymbol{\lambda} = -2(\mathbf{A}\mathbf{A}^\top)^{-1}\mathbf{b}$ . Hence  $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{A}^\top(\mathbf{A}\mathbf{A}^\top)^{-1}\mathbf{y}$ , which is the right pseudo inverse solution.

There is an interesting connection to regularized least squares. Let  $J_1 = \|\mathbf{A}\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{b}\|_2^2$  and  $J_2 = \|\mathbf{x}\|_2^2$ . The least-norm solution minimizes  $J_2$  with  $J_1 = 0$ . Now consider the following weighted sum objective

$$\mathcal{L}(\mathbf{x}) = J_2 + \lambda J_1 = \|\mathbf{x}\|_2^2 + \lambda \|\mathbf{b} - \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x}\|_2^2 \quad (\text{B.214})$$

Since this is a convex problem, the minimum of the Lagrangian occurs when the gradient is zero, so

$$\nabla_{\mathbf{x}} \mathcal{L}(\mathbf{x}) = 2\mathbf{x} - 2\lambda \mathbf{A}^\top (\mathbf{b} - \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x}) = \mathbf{0} \implies \mathbf{x}(\mathbf{I} + \lambda \mathbf{A}^\top \mathbf{A}) = \lambda \mathbf{A}^\top \mathbf{b} \quad (\text{B.215})$$

As  $\lambda \rightarrow \infty$ , we get

$$\hat{\mathbf{x}} = (\mathbf{A}^\top \mathbf{A})^{-1} \mathbf{A}^\top \mathbf{b} \quad (\text{B.216})$$

where  $(\mathbf{A}^\top \mathbf{A})^{-1} \mathbf{A}^\top$  is the *left pseudoinverse* of  $\mathbf{A}$ . Alternatively (but equivalently) we can put weight  $\mu$  on the  $\ell_2$  regularizer  $\|\mathbf{x}\|_2^2$  and let that go to zero. From the above we have

$$(\mu \mathbf{I} + \mathbf{A}^\top \mathbf{A})^{-1} \mathbf{A} \rightarrow \mathbf{A}^\top (\mathbf{A} \mathbf{A}^\top)^{-1} \quad (\text{B.217})$$

So the regularized least squares solution, in the limit of no regularization, converges to the minimum norm solution.

### B.7.3 Solving overconstrained systems (least squares estimation)

If  $m > n$ , we have an overdetermined solution, which typically does not have an exact solution, but we will try to find the solution that gets as close as possible to satisfying all of the constraints

specified by  $\mathbf{Ax} = \mathbf{b}$ . We can do this by minimizing the following cost function, known as the **least squares objective**:

$$f(\mathbf{x}) = \frac{1}{2} \|\mathbf{Ax} - \mathbf{b}\|_2^2 \quad (\text{B.218})$$

Using matrix calculus results from Appendix A.3 we have that the gradient is given by

$$\mathbf{g}(\mathbf{x}) = \frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{x}} f(\mathbf{x}) = \mathbf{A}^\top \mathbf{Ax} - \mathbf{A}^\top \mathbf{b} \quad (\text{B.219})$$

The optimum can be found by solving  $\mathbf{g}(\mathbf{x}) = \mathbf{0}$ . This gives

$$\mathbf{A}^\top \mathbf{Ax} = \mathbf{A}^\top \mathbf{b} \quad (\text{B.220})$$

These are known as the **normal equations**, since, at the optimal solution,  $\mathbf{b} - \mathbf{Ax}$  is normal (orthogonal) to the range of  $\mathbf{A}$ , as we explain in Sec. 11.2.2. The corresponding solution  $\hat{\mathbf{x}}$  is the **ordinary least squares (OLS)** solution, which is given by

$$\hat{\mathbf{x}} = (\mathbf{A}^\top \mathbf{A})^{-1} \mathbf{A}^\top \mathbf{b} \quad (\text{B.221})$$

The quantity  $\mathbf{A}^\dagger = (\mathbf{A}^\top \mathbf{A})^{-1} \mathbf{A}^\top$  is the (left) pseudo inverse of the (non-square) matrix  $\mathbf{A}$  (see Sec. B.5.3 for more details).

We can check that the solution is unique by showing that the Hessian is positive definite. In this case, the Hessian is given by

$$\mathbf{H}(\mathbf{x}) = \frac{\partial^2}{\partial \mathbf{x}^2} f(\mathbf{x}) = \mathbf{A}^\top \mathbf{A} \quad (\text{B.222})$$

If  $\mathbf{A}$  is full rank (so the columns of  $\mathbf{A}$  are linearly independent), then  $\mathbf{H}$  is positive definite, since for any  $\mathbf{v} > \mathbf{0}$ , we have

$$\mathbf{v}^\top (\mathbf{A}^\top \mathbf{A}) \mathbf{v} = (\mathbf{Av})^\top (\mathbf{Av}) = \|\mathbf{Av}\|^2 > 0 \quad (\text{B.223})$$

Hence in the full rank case, the least squares objective has a unique global minimum.

## B.8 Exercises

### Exercise B.1 [Orthogonal matrices]

- a. A rotation in 3d by angle  $\alpha$  about the  $z$  axis is given by the following matrix:

$$\mathbf{R}(\alpha) = \begin{pmatrix} \cos(\alpha) & -\sin(\alpha) & 0 \\ \sin(\alpha) & \cos(\alpha) & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \quad (\text{B.224})$$

Prove that  $\mathbf{R}$  is an orthogonal matrix, i.e.,  $\mathbf{R}^\top \mathbf{R} = \mathbf{I}$ , for any  $\alpha$ .

- b. What is the only eigenvector  $\mathbf{v}$  of  $\mathbf{R}$  with an eigenvalue of 1.0 and of unit norm (i.e.,  $\|\mathbf{v}\|^2 = 1$ )? (Your answer should be the same for any  $\alpha$ .) Hint: think about the geometrical interpretation of eigenvectors.

**Exercise B.2** [Eigenvectors by hand]

Find the eigenvalues and eigenvectors of the following matrix

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 3 \end{pmatrix} \quad (\text{B.225})$$

Compute your result by hand and check it with Python.

# C Probability

## C.1 Introduction

In this chapter, we give a brief introduction to the basics of probability theory. There are many good books that go into more detail, see e.g., [GS97; BT08].

### C.1.1 What is probability?

Probability theory is nothing but common sense reduced to calculation. — Pierre Laplace, 1812

We are all comfortable saying that the probability that a (fair) coin will land heads is 50%. But what does this mean? There are actually two different interpretations of probability. One is called the **frequentist** interpretation. In this view, probabilities represent long run frequencies of **events** that can happen multiple times. For example, the above statement means that, if we flip the coin many times, we expect it to land heads about half the time.<sup>1</sup>

The other interpretation is called the **Bayesian** interpretation of probability. In this view, probability is used to quantify our **uncertainty** or ignorance about something; hence it is fundamentally related to information rather than repeated trials [Jay03; Lin06]. In the Bayesian view, the above statement means we believe the coin is equally likely to land heads or tails on the next toss.

One big advantage of the Bayesian interpretation is that it can be used to model our uncertainty about one-off events that do not have long term frequencies. For example, we might want to compute the probability that the polar ice cap will melt by 2030 CE. This event will happen zero or one times, but cannot happen repeatedly. Nevertheless, we ought to be able to quantify our uncertainty about this event; based on how probable we think this event is, we can decide how to take the optimal action, as discussed in Chapter 8. We shall therefore adopt the Bayesian interpretation in this book. Fortunately, the basic rules of probability theory are the same, no matter which interpretation is adopted.

### C.1.2 Types of uncertainty

The uncertainty in our predictions can arise for two fundamentally different reasons. The first is due to our ignorance of the underlying hidden causes or mechanism generating our data. This is

---

1. Actually, the Stanford statistician (and former professional magician) Persi Diaconis has shown that a coin is about 51% likely to land facing the same way up as it started, due to the physics of the problem [DHM07].

called **epistemic uncertainty**, since epistemology is the philosophical term used to describe the study of knowledge. However, a simpler term for this is **model uncertainty**. The second kind of uncertainty arises from intrinsic variability, which cannot be reduced even if we collect more data. This is sometimes called **aleatoric uncertainty** [Hac75; KD09], derived from the Latin word for “dice”, although a simpler term would be **data uncertainty**. As a concrete example, consider tossing a fair coin. We might know for sure that the probability of heads is  $p = 0.5$ , so there is no epistemic uncertainty, but we still cannot perfectly predict the outcome.

This distinction can be important for applications such as active learning. A typical strategy is to query examples for which  $\mathbb{H}(p(y|\mathbf{x}, \mathcal{D}))$  is large (where  $\mathbb{H}(p)$  is the entropy, discussed in Sec. 6.1). However, this could be due to uncertainty about the parameters, i.e., large  $\mathbb{H}(p(\boldsymbol{\theta}|\mathcal{D}))$ , or just due to inherent label noise or variability, corresponding to large entropy of  $p(y|\mathbf{x}, \boldsymbol{\theta})$ . See [Osb16] for further discussion.

### C.1.3 Fundamental rules of probability

In this section, we review the basic rules of probability, following the presentation of [Jay03], in which we view probability as an extension of **Boolean logic**.

#### C.1.3.1 Probability of an event

We define an **event**, denoted by the binary variable  $A$ , as some state of the world that either holds or does not hold. For example,  $A$  might be event “it will rain tomorrow”, or “it rained yesterday”, or “the label is  $y = 1$ ”, or “the parameter  $\theta$  is between 1.5 and 2.0”, etc. The expression  $\Pr(A)$  denotes the probability with which you believe event  $A$  is true (or the long run fraction of times that  $A$  will occur). We require that  $0 \leq \Pr(A) \leq 1$ , where  $\Pr(A) = 0$  means the event definitely will not happen, and  $\Pr(A) = 1$  means the event definitely will happen. We write  $\Pr(\overline{A})$  to denote the probability of event  $A$  not happening; this is defined to  $\Pr(\overline{A}) = 1 - \Pr(A)$ .

#### C.1.3.2 Probability of a conjunction of two events

We denote the **joint probability** of events  $A$  and  $B$  both happening as follows:

$$\Pr(A \wedge B) = \Pr(A, B) \tag{C.1}$$

If  $A$  and  $B$  are independent events, we have

$$\Pr(A, B) = \Pr(A) \Pr(B) \tag{C.2}$$

For example, suppose  $X$  and  $Y$  are chosen uniformly at random from the set  $\mathcal{X} = \{1, 2, 3, 4\}$ . Let  $A$  be the event that  $X \in \{1, 2\}$ , and  $B$  be the event that  $Y \in \{3\}$ . Then we have  $\Pr(A, B) = \Pr(A) \Pr(B) = \frac{1}{2} \cdot \frac{1}{4}$ .

#### C.1.3.3 Probability of a union of two events

The probability of event  $A$  or  $B$  happening is given by

$$\Pr(A \vee B) = \Pr(A) + \Pr(B) - \Pr(A \wedge B) \tag{C.3}$$

If the events are mutually exclusive (so they cannot happen at the same time), we get

$$\Pr(A \vee B) = \Pr(A) + \Pr(B) \quad (\text{C.4})$$

For example, suppose  $X$  is chosen uniformly at random from the set  $\mathcal{X} = \{1, 2, 3, 4\}$ . Let  $A$  be the event that  $X \in \{1, 2\}$  and  $B$  be the event that  $X \in \{3\}$ . Then we have  $\Pr(A \vee B) = \frac{2}{4} + \frac{1}{4}$ .

#### C.1.3.4 Conditional probability of one event given another

We define the **conditional probability** of event  $B$  happening given that  $A$  has occurred as follows:

$$\Pr(B|A) \triangleq \frac{\Pr(A, B)}{\Pr(A)} \quad (\text{C.5})$$

This is not defined if  $\Pr(A) = 0$ , since we cannot condition on an impossible event.

#### C.1.3.5 Conditional independence of events

We say that event  $A$  is **conditionally independent** of event  $B$  if

$$\Pr(A|B) = \Pr(A) \quad (\text{C.6})$$

Of course, this is a symmetric relationship, so we also have  $\Pr(B|A) = \Pr(B)$ . Hence  $\Pr(A, B) = \Pr(A)\Pr(B)$ . We use the notation  $A \perp B$  to denote this property.

Two events,  $A$  and  $B$ , are conditionally independent given a third event  $C$  if  $\Pr(A|B, C) = \Pr(A|C)$ . Equivalently, we can write this as  $\Pr(A, B|C) = \Pr(A|C)\Pr(B|C)$ . This is written as  $A \perp B|C$ .

For example, let  $A$  be the event “the smoke detector is on”,  $B$  be the event “there is a fire nearby”, and  $C$  be the event “there is smoke nearby”. Clearly  $A$  and  $B$  depend on each other, but  $A \perp B|C$ , since if there is smoke nearby (i.e., event  $C$  is true), the detector will turn on, regardless of whether there is a fire. Events are often dependent on each other, but may be rendered independent if we condition on the relevant intermediate variables, as we discuss in more detail later in this chapter.

## C.2 Random variables

Suppose  $X$  represents some unknown quantity of interest, such as which way a dice will land when we roll it, or the temperature outside your house at the current time. If the value of  $X$  is unknown and/or could change, we call it a **random variable** or **rv**. We can represent our beliefs about its possible values using a **probability distribution**, as we explain below.

### C.2.1 Discrete random variables

The set of values an rv  $X$  can take on, denoted  $\mathcal{X}$ , is called the **state space**. If this is finite or countably infinite,  $X$  is called a **discrete random variable**. In this case, we denote the probability of the event that  $X$  has value  $x$  by  $\Pr(X = x)$ . We define the **probability mass function** or **pmf** as a function which computes the probability of events which correspond to setting the rv to each possible value:

$$p(x) \triangleq \Pr(X = x) \quad (\text{C.7})$$

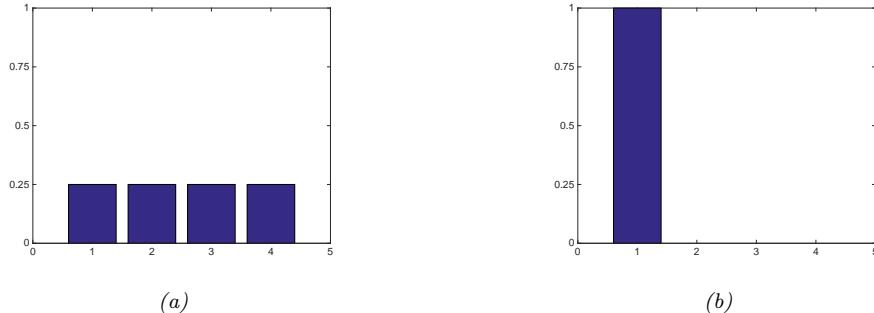


Figure C.1: Some discrete distributions on the state space  $\mathcal{X} = \{1, 2, 3, 4\}$ . (a) A uniform distribution with  $p(x = k) = 1/4$ . (b) A degenerate distribution (delta function) that puts all its mass on  $x = 1$ . Generated by `discrete_prob_dist_plot.py`.

The pmf satisfies the properties  $0 \leq p(x) \leq 1$  and  $\sum_{x \in \mathcal{X}} p(x) = 1$ .

If  $X$  has a finite number of values, say  $K$ , the pmf can be represented as a list of  $K$  numbers, which we can plot as a histogram. For example, Fig. C.1 shows two pmf's defined on  $\mathcal{X} = \{1, 2, 3, 4\}$ . On the left we have a uniform distribution,  $p(x) = 1/4$ , and on the right, we have a degenerate distribution,  $p(x) = \mathbb{I}(x = 1)$ , where  $\mathbb{I}()$  is the binary indicator function. Thus the distribution in Fig. C.1(b) represents the fact that  $X$  is always equal to the value 1. (Thus we see that random variables can also be constant.)

## C.2.2 Continuous random variables

If  $X \in \mathbb{R}$  is a real-valued quantity, it is called a **continuous random variable**. In this case, we can no longer create a finite (or countable) set of distinct possible values it can take on. However, there are a countable number of *intervals* which we can partition the real line into. If we associate events with  $X$  being in each one of these intervals, we can use the methods discussed above for discrete random variables. By allowing the size of the intervals to shrink to zero, we can represent the probability of  $X$  taking on a specific real value, as we show below.

### C.2.2.1 Cumulative distribution function (cdf)

Define the events  $A = (X \leq a)$ ,  $B = (X \leq b)$  and  $C = (a < X \leq b)$ , where  $a < b$ . We have that  $B = A \vee C$ , and since  $A$  and  $C$  are mutually exclusive, the sum rules gives

$$\Pr(B) = \Pr(A) + \Pr(C) \quad (\text{C.8})$$

and hence the probability of being in interval  $C$  is given by

$$\Pr(C) = \Pr(B) - \Pr(A) \quad (\text{C.9})$$

In general, we define the **cumulative distribution function** or **cdf** of the rv  $X$  as follows:

$$P(x) \triangleq \Pr(X \leq x) \quad (\text{C.10})$$

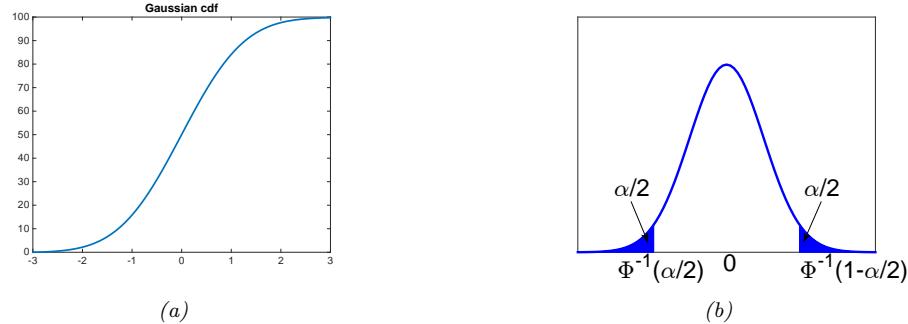


Figure C.2: (a) Plot of the cdf for the standard normal,  $\mathcal{N}(0, 1)$ . Generated by `gauss_plot.py`. (b) Corresponding pdf. The shaded regions each contain  $\alpha/2$  of the probability mass. Therefore the nonshaded region contains  $1 - \alpha$  of the probability mass. The leftmost cutoff point is  $\Phi^{-1}(\alpha/2)$ , where  $\Phi$  is the cdf of the Gaussian. By symmetry, the rightmost cutoff point is  $\Phi^{-1}(1 - \alpha/2) = -\Phi^{-1}(\alpha/2)$ . Generated by `quantile_plot.py`.

(Note that we use a capital  $P$  to represent the cdf.) Using this, we can compute the probability of being in any interval as follows:

$$\Pr(a < X \leq b) = P(b) - P(a) \quad (\text{C.11})$$

Cdf's are monotonically non-decreasing functions. See Fig. C.2a for an example, where we illustrate the cdf of a standard normal distribution,  $\mathcal{N}(x|0, 1)$ ; this cdf is usually denoted by  $\Phi(x)$ .

### C.2.2.2 Probability density function (pdf)

We define the **probability density function** or **pdf** as the derivative of the cdf:

$$p(x) \triangleq \frac{d}{dx} P(x) \quad (\text{C.12})$$

See Fig. C.2b for an example, where we illustrate the pdf of a univariate Gaussian. (Note that this derivative does not always exist, in which case the pdf is not defined.)

Given a pdf, we can compute the probability of a continuous variable being in a finite interval as follows:

$$\Pr(a < X \leq b) = \int_a^b p(x) dx = P(b) - P(a) \quad (\text{C.13})$$

As the size of the interval gets smaller, we can write

$$\Pr(x \leq X \leq x + dx) \approx p(x) dx \quad (\text{C.14})$$

Intuitively, this says the probability of  $X$  being in a small interval around  $x$  is the density at  $x$  times the width of the interval.

### C.2.2.3 Quantiles

If the cdf  $P$  is strictly monotonically increasing, it has an inverse, called the **inverse cdf, or percent point function (ppf), or quantile function**.

If  $P$  is the cdf of  $X$ , then  $P^{-1}(q)$  is the value  $x_q$  such that  $\Pr(X \leq x_q) = q$ ; this is called the  $q$ 'th **quantile** of  $P$ . The value  $P^{-1}(0.5)$  is the **median** of the distribution, with half of the probability mass on the left, and half on the right. The values  $P^{-1}(0.25)$  and  $P^{-1}(0.75)$  are the lower and upper **quartiles**.

For example, let  $\Phi$  be the cdf of the Gaussian distribution  $\mathcal{N}(0, 1)$ , and  $\Phi^{-1}$  be the inverse cdf. Then points to the left of  $\Phi^{-1}(\alpha/2)$  contain  $\alpha/2$  of the probability mass, as illustrated in Fig. C.2b. By symmetry, points to the right of  $\Phi^{-1}(1 - \alpha/2)$  also contain  $\alpha/2$  of the mass. Hence the central interval  $(\Phi^{-1}(\alpha/2), \Phi^{-1}(1 - \alpha/2))$  contains  $1 - \alpha$  of the mass. If we set  $\alpha = 0.05$ , the central 95% interval is covered by the range

$$(\Phi^{-1}(0.025), \Phi^{-1}(0.975)) = (-1.96, 1.96) \quad (\text{C.15})$$

If the distribution is  $\mathcal{N}(\mu, \sigma^2)$ , then the 95% interval becomes  $(\mu - 1.96\sigma, \mu + 1.96\sigma)$ . This is often approximated by writing  $\mu \pm 2\sigma$ .

### C.2.3 An aside on notation

In this book, we cut some corners with the notation, and write  $p(A)$  instead of  $\Pr(A)$  to denote the probability of some (binary) event  $A$ . We also write  $p(x)$  for both pmf's and pdf's. Hopefully the meaning will be clear from context.

## C.3 Sets of related random variables

In this section, we discuss distributions over sets of related random variables.

### C.3.1 Joint, marginal and conditional distributions

Suppose we have two random variables,  $X$  and  $Y$ . We can define the **joint distribution** of two random variables using  $p(x, y) = p(X = x, Y = y)$  for all possible values of  $X$  and  $Y$ . If both variables have finite cardinality, we can represent the joint distribution as a 2d table, all of whose entries sum to one. For example, consider the following example with two binary variables:

$p(X, Y)$	$Y = 0$	$Y = 1$
$X = 0$	0.2	0.3
$X = 1$	0.3	0.2

If two variables are conditionally independent, we can represent the joint as the product of the two marginals. If both variables have finite cardinality, we can factorize the 2d joint table into a product of two 1d vectors, as shown in Fig. C.3.

Given a joint distribution, we define the **marginal distribution** of an rv as follows:

$$p(X = x) = \sum_y p(X = x, Y = y) \quad (\text{C.16})$$

where we are summing over all possible states of  $Y$ . This is sometimes called the **sum rule** or the **rule of total probability**. We define  $p(Y = y)$  similarly. For example, from the above 2d table, we

see  $p(X = 0) = 0.2 + 0.3 = 0.5$  and  $p(Y = 0) = 0.2 + 0.3 = 0.5$ . (The term “marginal” comes from the accounting practice of writing the sums of rows and columns on the side, or margin, of a table.)

We define the **conditional distribution** of an rv using

$$p(Y = y|X = x) = \frac{p(X = x, Y = y)}{p(X = x)} \quad (\text{C.17})$$

We can rearrange this equation to get

$$p(x, y) = p(x)p(y|x) \quad (\text{C.18})$$

This is called the **product rule**.

By extending the product rule to  $D$  variables, we get the **chain rule of probability**:

$$p(\mathbf{x}_{1:D}) = p(x_1)p(x_2|x_1)p(x_3|x_1, x_2)p(x_4|x_1, x_2, x_3)\dots p(x_D|\mathbf{x}_{1:D-1}) \quad (\text{C.19})$$

This provides a way to create a high dimensional joint distribution from a set of conditional distributions. We discuss this in more detail in Sec. 3.8.

### C.3.2 Bayes’ rule

Combining the definition of conditional probability with the product and sum rules yields **Bayes’ rule**,

$$p(Y = y|X = x) = \frac{p(X = x, Y = y)}{p(X = x)} = \frac{p(Y = y)p(X = x|Y = y)}{\sum_{y'} p(Y = y')p(X = x|Y = y')} \quad (\text{C.20})$$

This gives us a way to estimate an unknown variable  $Y$  from noisy measurements of  $X = x$ , by combining our **prior** beliefs, represented by  $p(y)$ , with our model of the observation process, represented by the **likelihood** term  $p(x|y)$ . The result is the **posterior** distribution  $p(y|x)$ , which represents our updated beliefs about  $y$  after seeing  $x$ . Thus in words, we can write

$$\text{posterior} \propto \text{prior} \times \text{likelihood} \quad (\text{C.21})$$

where we use the symbol  $\propto$  to denote “proportional to”, since we are ignoring the denominator, which is just a constant, independent of  $Y$ .

See Sec. 2.2 for some example applications.

### C.3.3 Independence and conditional independence

We say  $X$  and  $Y$  are **unconditionally independent** or **marginally independent**, denoted  $X \perp Y$ , if we can represent the joint as the product of the two marginals (see Figure C.3), i.e.,

$$X \perp Y \iff p(X, Y) = p(X)p(Y) \quad (\text{C.22})$$

In general, we say a set of variables is mutually independent if the joint can be written as a product of marginals.

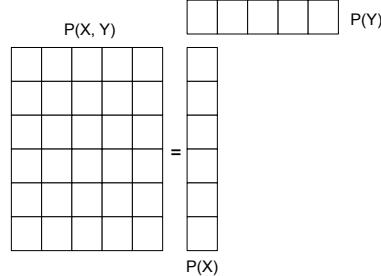


Figure C.3: Computing  $p(x, y) = p(x)p(y)$ , where  $X \perp Y$ . Here  $X$  and  $Y$  are discrete random variables;  $X$  has 6 possible states (values) and  $Y$  has 5 possible states. A general joint distribution on two such variables would require  $(6 \times 5) - 1 = 29$  parameters to define it (we subtract 1 because of the sum-to-one constraint). By assuming (unconditional) independence, we only need  $(6 - 1) + (5 - 1) = 9$  parameters to define  $p(x, y)$ .

Unfortunately, unconditional independence is rare, because most variables can influence most other variables. However, usually this influence is mediated via other variables rather than being direct. We therefore say  $X$  and  $Y$  are **conditionally independent** (CI) given  $Z$  iff the conditional joint can be written as a product of conditional marginals:

$$X \perp Y \mid Z \iff p(X, Y|Z) = p(X|Z)p(Y|Z) \quad (\text{C.23})$$

We can write this assumption as a graph  $X - Z - Y$ , which captures the intuition that all the dependencies between  $X$  and  $Y$  are mediated via  $Z$ . By using larger graphs, we can define complex joint distributions; these are known as **graphical models**, and are discussed in Sec. 3.8.

## C.4 Properties of a distribution

In this section, we discuss various quantities that can be derived from a distribution, which characterize its different properties.

### C.4.1 Moments of a distribution

In this section, we describe various summary statistics that can be derived from a probability distribution (either a pdf or pmf).

#### C.4.1.1 Mean of a distribution

The most familiar property of a distribution is its **mean**, or **expected value**, often denoted by  $\mu$ . For continuous rv's, the mean is defined as follows:

$$\mathbb{E}[X] \triangleq \int_{\mathcal{X}} x p(x) dx \quad (\text{C.24})$$

If the integral is not finite, the mean is not defined; we will see some examples of this later.

For discrete rv's, the mean is defined as follows:

$$\mathbb{E}[X] \triangleq \sum_{x \in \mathcal{X}} x p(x) \quad (\text{C.25})$$

However, this is only meaningful if the values of  $x$  are ordered in some way (e.g., if they represent integer counts).

Since the mean is a linear operator, we have

$$\mathbb{E}[aX + b] = a\mathbb{E}[X] + b \quad (\text{C.26})$$

This is called the **linearity of expectation**.

#### C.4.1.2 Variance of a distribution

The **variance** is a measure of the “spread” of a distribution, often denoted by  $\sigma^2$ . This is defined as follows:

$$\mathbb{V}[X] \triangleq \mathbb{E}[(X - \mu)^2] = \int (x - \mu)^2 p(x) dx \quad (\text{C.27})$$

$$= \int x^2 p(x) dx + \mu^2 \int p(x) dx - 2\mu \int xp(x) dx = \mathbb{E}[X^2] - \mu^2 \quad (\text{C.28})$$

from which we derive the useful result

$$\mathbb{E}[X^2] = \sigma^2 + \mu^2 \quad (\text{C.29})$$

The **standard deviation** is defined as

$$\text{std}[X] \triangleq \sqrt{\mathbb{V}[X]} = \sigma \quad (\text{C.30})$$

This is useful since it has the same units as  $X$  itself.

The variance of a shifted and scaled version of a random variable is given by

$$\mathbb{V}[aX + b] = a^2 \mathbb{V}[X] \quad (\text{C.31})$$

#### C.4.1.3 Mode of a distribution

The **mode** of a distribution is the value with the highest probability mass or probability density:

$$\mathbf{x}^* = \underset{\mathbf{x}}{\operatorname{argmax}} p(\mathbf{x}) \quad (\text{C.32})$$

If the distribution is **multimodal**, this may not be unique, as illustrated in Fig. C.4. Furthermore, even if there is a unique mode, this point may not be a good summary of the distribution.

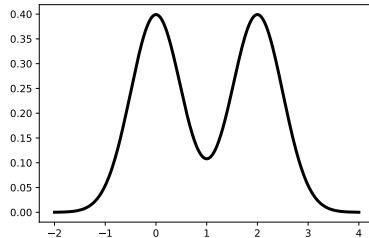


Figure C.4: Illustration of a mixture of two 1d Gaussians,  $p(x) = 0.5\mathcal{N}(x|0, 0.5) + 0.5\mathcal{N}(x|2, 0.5)$ . Generated by `bimodal_dist_plot.py`.

#### C.4.1.4 Conditional moments

When we have two or more dependent random variables, we can compute the moments of one given knowledge of the other. For example, the **law of iterated expectations**, also called the **law of total expectation**, tells us that

$$\mathbb{E}[X] = \mathbb{E}[\mathbb{E}[X|Y]] \quad (\text{C.33})$$

To prove this, let us suppose, for simplicity, that  $X$  and  $Y$  are both discrete rv's. Then we have

$$\mathbb{E}[\mathbb{E}[X|Y]] = \mathbb{E}\left[\sum_x xp(X=x|Y)\right] \quad (\text{C.34})$$

$$= \sum_y \left[ \sum_x xp(X=x|Y) \right] p(Y=y) = \sum_{x,y} xp(X=x, Y=y) = \mathbb{E}[X] \quad (\text{C.35})$$

To give a more intuitive explanation, consider the following simple example.<sup>2</sup> Let  $X$  be the lifetime duration of a lightbulb, and let  $Y$  be the factory the lightbulb was produced in. Suppose  $\mathbb{E}[X|Y=1] = 5000$  and  $\mathbb{E}[X|Y=2] = 4000$ , indicating that factory 1 produces longer lasting bulbs. Suppose factory 1 supplies 60% of the lightbulbs, so  $p(Y=1) = 0.6$  and  $p(Y=2) = 0.4$ . Then the overall expected duration of a random lightbulb is given by

$$\mathbb{E}[X] = \mathbb{E}[X|Y=1]p(Y=1) + \mathbb{E}[X|Y=2]p(Y=2) = 5000 \times 0.6 + 4000 \times 0.4 = 4600 \quad (\text{C.36})$$

There is a similar formula for the variance. In particular, the **law of total variance**, also called the **conditional variance formula**, tells us that

$$\mathbb{V}[X] = \mathbb{E}[\mathbb{V}[X|Y]] + \mathbb{V}[\mathbb{E}[X|Y]] \quad (\text{C.37})$$

To see this, let us define the conditional moments,  $\mu_{X|Y} = \mathbb{E}[X|Y]$ ,  $s_{X|Y} = \mathbb{E}[X^2|Y]$ , and  $\sigma_{X|Y}^2 = \mathbb{V}[X|Y] = s_{X|Y} - \mu_{X|Y}^2$ , which are functions of  $Y$  (and therefore are random quantities).

---

<sup>2</sup>. This example is from [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Law\\_of\\_total\\_expectation](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Law_of_total_expectation), but with modified notation.

Then we have

$$\mathbb{V}[X] = \mathbb{E}[X^2] - (\mathbb{E}[X])^2 = \mathbb{E}[s_{X|Y}|Y] - (\mathbb{E}[\mu_{X|Y}|Y])^2 \quad (\text{C.38})$$

$$= \mathbb{E}[\sigma_{X|Y}^2|Y] + \mathbb{E}[\mu_{X|Y}^2|Y] - (\mathbb{E}[\mu_{X|Y}|Y])^2 \quad (\text{C.39})$$

$$= E_Y[\mathbb{V}[X|Y]] + \mathbb{V}_Y[\mu_{X|Y}] \quad (\text{C.40})$$

To get some intuition for these formulas, consider a mixture of  $K$  univariate Gaussians. Let  $Y$  be the hidden indicator variable that specifies which mixture component we are using, and let  $X = \sum_{y=1}^K \pi_y \mathcal{N}(X|\mu_y, \sigma_y)$ . In Fig. C.4, we have  $\pi_1 = \pi_2 = 0.5$ ,  $\mu_1 = 0$ ,  $\mu_2 = 2$ ,  $\sigma_1 = \sigma_2 = 0.5$ . Thus

$$\mathbb{E}[\mathbb{V}[X|Y]] = \pi_1\sigma_1 + \pi_2\sigma_2 = 0.5 \quad (\text{C.41})$$

$$\mathbb{V}[\mathbb{E}[X|Y]] = \pi_1(\mu_1 - \bar{\mu})^2 + \pi_2(\mu_2 - \bar{\mu})^2 = 0.5(0 - 1)^2 + 0.5(2 - 1)^2 = 0.5 + 0.5 = 1 \quad (\text{C.42})$$

So we get the intuitive result that the variance of  $Y$  is dominated by which centroid it is drawn from (i.e., difference in the means), rather than the local variance around each centroid.

### C.4.2 Covariance

The **covariance** between two rv's  $X$  and  $Y$  measures the degree to which  $X$  and  $Y$  are (linearly) related. Covariance is defined as

$$\text{Cov}[X, Y] \triangleq \mathbb{E}[(X - \mathbb{E}[X])(Y - \mathbb{E}[Y])] = \mathbb{E}[XY] - \mathbb{E}[X]\mathbb{E}[Y] \quad (\text{C.43})$$

If  $\mathbf{x}$  is a  $D$ -dimensional random vector, its **covariance matrix** is defined to be the following symmetric, positive semi definite matrix:

$$\text{Cov}[\mathbf{x}] \triangleq \mathbb{E}\left[(\mathbf{x} - \mathbb{E}[\mathbf{x}])(\mathbf{x} - \mathbb{E}[\mathbf{x}])^\top\right] \triangleq \boldsymbol{\Sigma} \quad (\text{C.44})$$

$$= \begin{pmatrix} \mathbb{V}[X_1] & \text{Cov}[X_1, X_2] & \cdots & \text{Cov}[X_1, X_D] \\ \text{Cov}[X_2, X_1] & \mathbb{V}[X_2] & \cdots & \text{Cov}[X_2, X_D] \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ \text{Cov}[X_D, X_1] & \text{Cov}[X_D, X_2] & \cdots & \mathbb{V}[X_D] \end{pmatrix} \quad (\text{C.45})$$

from which we get the important result

$$\mathbb{E}[\mathbf{x}\mathbf{x}^\top] = \boldsymbol{\Sigma} + \boldsymbol{\mu}\boldsymbol{\mu}^\top \quad (\text{C.46})$$

Another useful result is that the covariance of a linear transformation is given by

$$\text{Cov}[\mathbf{Ax} + \mathbf{b}] = \mathbf{A}\text{Cov}[\mathbf{x}]\mathbf{A}^\top \quad (\text{C.47})$$

as shown in Exercise C.7.

The **cross-covariance** between two random vectors is defined as

$$\text{Cov}[\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y}] = \mathbb{E}[(\mathbf{x} - \mathbb{E}[\mathbf{x}])(\mathbf{y} - \mathbb{E}[\mathbf{y}])^\top] \quad (\text{C.48})$$

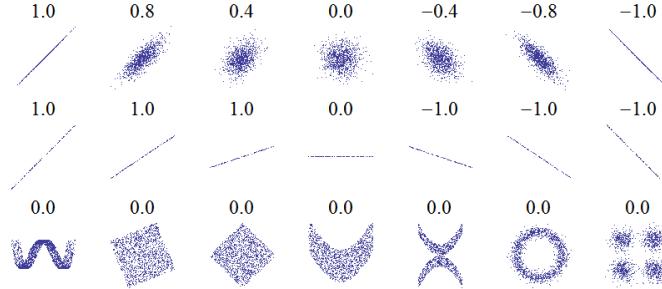


Figure C.5: Several sets of  $(x, y)$  points, with the correlation coefficient of  $x$  and  $y$  for each set. Note that the correlation reflects the noisiness and direction of a linear relationship (top row), but not the slope of that relationship (middle), nor many aspects of nonlinear relationships (bottom). (Note: the figure in the center has a slope of 0 but in that case the correlation coefficient is undefined because the variance of  $Y$  is zero.) From [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Pearson\\_correlation\\_coefficient](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Pearson_correlation_coefficient). Used with kind permission of Wikipedia author Imagecreator.

### C.4.3 Correlation

Covariances can be between negative and positive infinity. Sometimes it is more convenient to work with a normalized measure, with a finite lower and upper bound. The (Pearson) **correlation coefficient** between  $X$  and  $Y$  is defined as

$$\text{corr}[X, Y] \triangleq \frac{\text{Cov}[X, Y]}{\sqrt{\text{V}[X] \text{V}[Y]}} \quad (\text{C.49})$$

One can show (Exercise C.5) that  $-1 \leq \text{corr}[X, Y] \leq 1$ .

One can also show that  $\text{corr}[X, Y] = 1$  if and only if  $Y = aX + b$  for some parameters  $a$  and  $b$ , i.e., if there is a *linear* relationship between  $X$  and  $Y$  (see Exercise C.6). Intuitively one might expect the correlation coefficient to be related to the slope of the regression line, i.e., the coefficient  $a$  in the expression  $Y = aX + b$ . However, as we show in Eq. (11.27), the regression coefficient is in fact given by  $a = \text{Cov}[X, Y] / \text{V}[X]$ . A better way to think of the correlation coefficient is as a degree of linearity. See `correlation_2d_interactive_plot.py` for a demo to illustrate this idea.

In the case of a vector  $\mathbf{x}$  of related random variables, and the **correlation matrix** is given by

$$\text{corr}(\mathbf{x}) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & \frac{\mathbb{E}[(X_1 - \mu_1)(X_2 - \mu_2)]}{\sigma_1 \sigma_2} & \dots & \frac{\mathbb{E}[(X_1 - \mu_1)(X_D - \mu_D)]}{\sigma_1 \sigma_D} \\ \frac{\mathbb{E}[(X_2 - \mu_2)(X_1 - \mu_1)]}{\sigma_2 \sigma_1} & 1 & \dots & \frac{\mathbb{E}[(X_2 - \mu_2)(X_D - \mu_D)]}{\sigma_2 \sigma_D} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ \frac{\mathbb{E}[(X_D - \mu_D)(X_1 - \mu_1)]}{\sigma_D \sigma_1} & \frac{\mathbb{E}[(X_D - \mu_D)(X_2 - \mu_2)]}{\sigma_D \sigma_2} & \dots & 1 \end{pmatrix} \quad (\text{C.50})$$

This can be written more compactly as

$$\text{corr}(\mathbf{x}) = (\text{diag}(\mathbf{K}_{xx}))^{-\frac{1}{2}} \mathbf{K}_{xx} (\text{diag}(\mathbf{K}_{xx}))^{-\frac{1}{2}} \quad (\text{C.51})$$

where  $\mathbf{K}_{xx}$  is the **auto-covariance matrix**

$$\mathbf{K}_{xx} = \boldsymbol{\Sigma} = \mathbb{E}[(\mathbf{x} - \mathbb{E}[\mathbf{x}])(\mathbf{x} - \mathbb{E}[\mathbf{x}])^\top] = \mathbf{R}_{xx} - \boldsymbol{\mu}\boldsymbol{\mu}^\top \quad (\text{C.52})$$

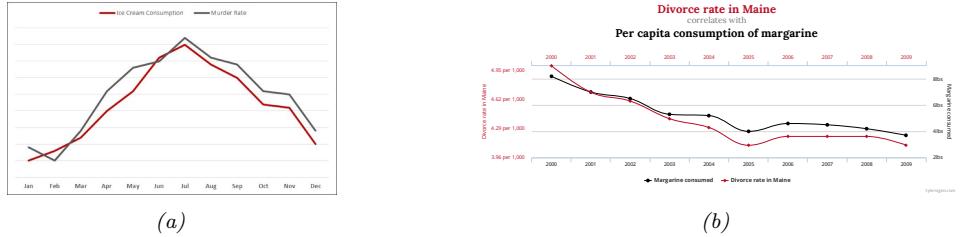


Figure C.6: Examples of spurious correlation between causally unrelated time series. (a) Consumption is ice cream (red) and US murder rate (black) over time. From <https://bit.ly/2zfbuvf>. Used with kind permission of Karen Cyphers. (b) Divorce rate in Maine strongly correlates with per-capita US consumption of margarine (black). From <http://www.tylervigen.com/spurious-correlations>. Used with kind permission of Tyler Vigen.

and  $\mathbf{R}_{xx} = \mathbb{E}[\mathbf{x}\mathbf{x}^\top]$  is the **autocorrelation matrix**.

#### C.4.4 Uncorrelated does not imply independent

If  $X$  and  $Y$  are independent, meaning  $p(X, Y) = p(X)p(Y)$ , then  $\text{Cov}[X, Y] = 0$ , and hence  $\text{corr}[X, Y] = 0$ . So independent implies uncorrelated. However, the converse is not true: *uncorrelated does not imply independent*. For example, let  $X \sim U(-1, 1)$  and  $Y = X^2$ . Clearly  $Y$  is dependent on  $X$  (in fact,  $Y$  is uniquely determined by  $X$ ), yet one can show (Exercise C.4) that  $\text{corr}[X, Y] = 0$ . Some striking examples of this fact are shown in Fig. C.5. This shows several data sets where there is clear dependence between  $X$  and  $Y$ , and yet the correlation coefficient is 0. A more general measure of dependence between random variables is mutual information, discussed in Sec. 6.3. This is zero only if the variables truly are independent.

#### C.4.5 Correlation does not imply causation

It is well known that “**correlation does not imply causation**”. For example, consider Fig. C.6a. In red, we plot  $x_{1:T}$ , where  $x_t$  is the amount of ice cream sold in month  $t$ . In black, we plot  $y_{1:T}$ , where  $y_t$  is the murder rate in month  $t$ . (Quantities have been rescaled to make the plots overlap.) We see a strong correlation between these signals. Indeed, it is sometimes claimed that “eating ice cream causes murder” [Pet13]. Of course, this is just a **spurious correlation**, due to a **hidden common cause**, namely the weather. Hot weather increases ice cream sales, for obvious reasons. Hot weather also increases violent crime; the reason for this is hotly (ahem) debated; some claim it is due to an increase in anger [And01], but other claim it is merely due to more people being outside [Ash18], where most murders occur.

Another example is shown in Fig. C.6b. This time we plot the divorce rate in Maine (red) and margarine consumption (black). It is less obvious why these should be correlated. Indeed, this is very likely to not be a robust result; for example, if we looked over a longer period of time, we may find that these signals are uncorrelated.

Another famous example concerns the positive correlation between birth rates and the presence of storks (a kind of bird). This has given rise to the urban legend that storks deliver babies [Mat00].

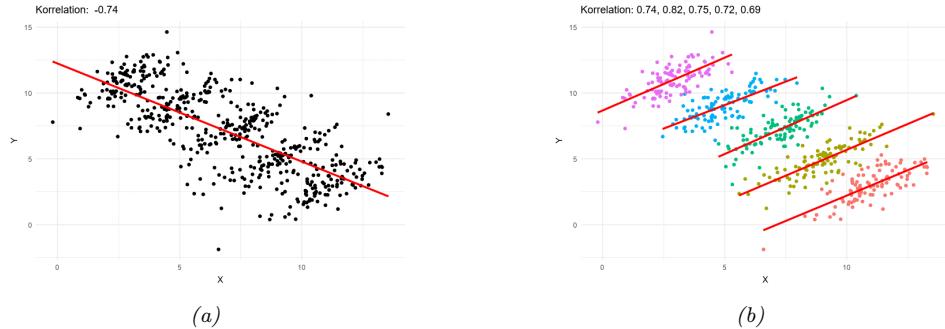


Figure C.7: Illustration of Simpson’s paradox. (a) Overall,  $y$  decreases with  $x$ . (b) Within each group,  $y$  increases with  $x$ . From [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Simpson%27s\\_paradox](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Simpson%27s_paradox). Used with kind permission of Wikipedia author Pace svwiki

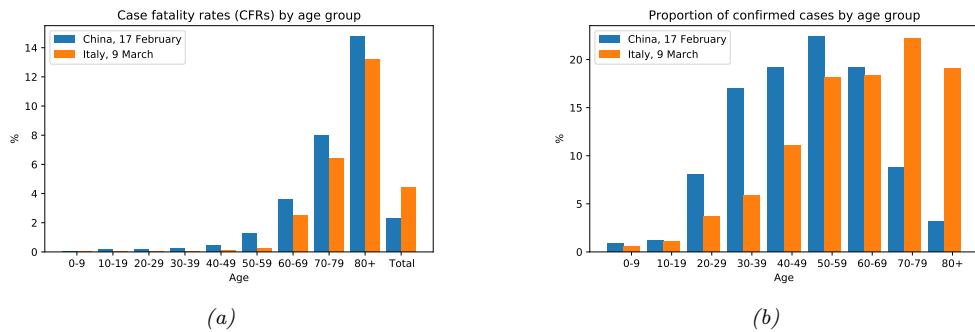


Figure C.8: Illustration of Simpson’s paradox using covid19 data. (a) Case fatality rates (CFRs) in Italy and China by age group, and in aggregated form (“Total”, last pair of bars), up to the time of reporting (see legend). (b) Proportion of all confirmed cases included in (a) within each age group by country. From Figure 1 of [KGS20]. Used with kind permission of Julius von Kügelgen.

Of course, the true reason for the correlation is more likely due to hidden factors, such as increased living standards and hence more food. Many more amusing examples of such spurious correlations can be found in [Vig15].

These examples serve as a “warning sign”, that we should not treat the ability for  $x$  to predict  $y$  as an indicator that  $x$  causes  $y$ .

#### C.4.6 Simpsons’ paradox

**Simpson’s paradox** says that a statistical trend or relationship that appears in several different groups of data can disappear or reverse sign when these groups are combined. This results in counterintuitive behavior if we misinterpret claims of statistical dependence in a causal way.

A visualization of the paradox is given in Fig. C.7. Overall, we see that  $y$  decreases with  $x$ , but within each subpopulation,  $y$  increases with  $x$ .

For a recent real-world example of Simpson’s paradox in the context of covid19, consider Fig. C.8(a). This shows that the case fatality rate (CFR) of covid19 in Italy is less than in China in each age group, but is higher overall. The reason for this is that there are more older people in Italy, as shown in Fig. C.8(b). In other words, Fig. C.8(a) shows  $p(F = 1|A, C)$ , where  $A$  is age,  $C$  is country, and  $F = 1$  is the event that someone dies from covid19, and Fig. C.8(b) shows  $p(A|C)$ , which is the probability someone is in age bucket  $A$  for country  $C$ . Combining these, we find  $p(F = 1|C = \text{Italy}) > p(F = 1|C = \text{China})$ .

## C.5 Transformations of random variables

Suppose  $\mathbf{x} \sim p()$  is some random variable, and  $\mathbf{y} = f(\mathbf{x})$  is some deterministic transformation of it. In this section, we discuss how to compute  $p(\mathbf{y})$ .

### C.5.1 Discrete case

If  $X$  is a discrete rv, we can derive the pmf for  $Y$  by simply summing up the probability mass for all the  $x$ ’s such that  $f(x) = y$ :

$$p_y(y) = \sum_{x:f(x)=y} p_x(x) \tag{C.53}$$

For example, if  $f(X) = 1$  if  $X$  is even and  $f(X) = 0$  otherwise, and  $p_x(X)$  is uniform on the set  $\{1, \dots, 10\}$ , then  $p_y(1) = \sum_{x \in \{2, 4, 6, 8, 10\}} p_x(x) = 0.5$ , and hence  $p_y(0) = 0.5$  also. Note that in this example,  $f$  is a many-to-one function.

### C.5.2 Continuous case

If  $X$  is continuous, we cannot use Eq. (C.53) since  $p_x(x)$  is a density, not a pmf, and we cannot sum up densities. Instead, we work with cdf’s, as follows:

$$P_y(y) \triangleq \Pr(Y \leq y) = \Pr(f(X) \leq y) = \Pr(X \in \{x|f(x) \leq y\}) \tag{C.54}$$

If  $f$  is invertible, we can derive the pdf of  $y$  by differentiating the cdf, as we show below. If  $f$  is not invertible, we can use numerical integration, or a Monte Carlo approximation.

### C.5.3 Invertible transformations (bijectors)

In this section, we consider the case of monotonic and hence invertible functions. (Note a function is invertible iff it is a **bijector**). With this assumption, there is a simple formula for the pdf of  $y$ , as we will see. (This can be generalized to invertible, but non-monotonic, functions, but we ignore this case.)

#### C.5.3.1 Change of variables: scalar case

We start with an example. Suppose  $x \sim \text{Unif}(0, 1)$ , and  $y = f(x) = 2x + 1$ . This function stretches and shifts the probability distribution, as shown in Fig. C.9(a). Now let us zoom in on a point  $x$

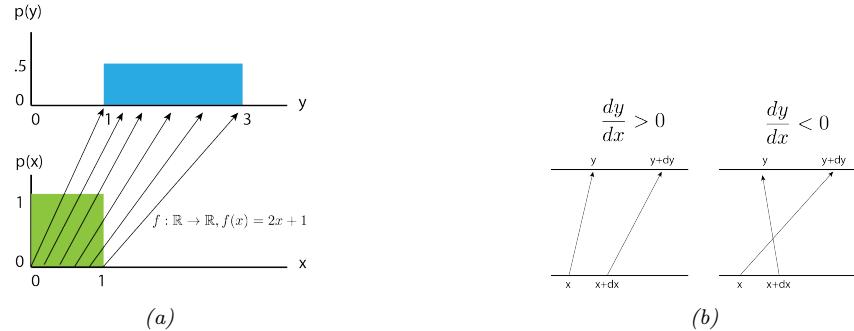


Figure C.9: (a) Mapping a uniform pdf through the function  $f(x) = 2x + 1$ . (b) Illustration of how two nearby points,  $x$  and  $x + dx$ , get mapped under  $f$ . If  $\frac{dy}{dx} > 0$ , the function is locally increasing, but if  $\frac{dy}{dx} < 0$ , the function is locally decreasing. From [Jan18]. Used with kind permission of Eric Jang

and another point that is infinitesimally close, namely  $x + dx$ . We see this interval gets mapped to  $(y, y + dy)$ . The probability mass in these intervals must be the same, hence  $p(x)dx = p(y)dy$ , and so  $p(y) = p(x)dx/dy$ . However, since it does not matter (in terms of probability preservation) whether  $dx/dy > 0$  or  $dx/dy < 0$ , we get

$$p_y(y) = p_x(x) \left| \frac{dx}{dy} \right| \quad (\text{C.55})$$

Now consider the general case for any  $p_x(x)$  and any monotonic function  $f : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ . Let  $g = f^{-1}$ , so  $y = f(x)$  and  $x = g(y)$ . If we assume that  $f : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  is monotonically increasing we get

$$P_y(y) = \Pr(f(X) \leq y) = \Pr(X \leq f^{-1}(y)) = P_x(f^{-1}(y)) = P_x(g(y)) \quad (\text{C.56})$$

Taking derivatives we get

$$p_y(y) \triangleq \frac{d}{dy} P_y(y) = \frac{d}{dy} P_x(x) = \frac{dx}{dy} \frac{d}{dx} P_x(x) = \frac{dx}{dy} p_x(x) \quad (\text{C.57})$$

We can derive a similar expression (but with opposite signs) for the case where  $f$  is monotonically decreasing. To handle the general case we take the absolute value to get

$$p_y(y) = p_x(g(y)) \left| \frac{d}{dy} g(y) \right| \quad (\text{C.58})$$

This is called **change of variables** formula.

### C.5.3.2 Change of variables: multivariate case

We can extend the previous results to multivariate distributions as follows. Let  $\mathbf{f}$  be an invertible function that maps  $\mathbb{R}^n$  to  $\mathbb{R}^n$ , with inverse  $\mathbf{g}$ . Suppose we want to compute the pdf of  $\mathbf{y} = \mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x})$ . By analogy with the scalar case, we have

$$p_y(\mathbf{y}) = p_x(\mathbf{g}(\mathbf{y})) \left| \det [\mathbf{J}_g(\mathbf{y})] \right| \quad (\text{C.59})$$

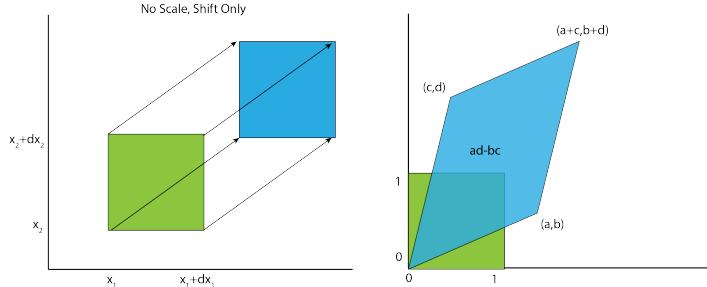


Figure C.10: Illustration of an affine transformation applied to a unit square,  $f(\mathbf{x}) = \mathbf{Ax} + \mathbf{b}$ . (a) Here  $\mathbf{A} = \mathbf{I}$ . (b) Here  $\mathbf{b} = \mathbf{0}$ . From [Jan18]. Used with kind permission of Eric Jang

where  $\mathbf{J}_g = \frac{d\mathbf{g}(\mathbf{y})}{d\mathbf{y}^\top}$  is the Jacobian of  $\mathbf{g}$ , and  $|\det \mathbf{J}(\mathbf{y})|$  is the absolute value of the determinant of  $\mathbf{J}$  evaluated at  $\mathbf{y}$ . (See Sec. A.3.3 for a discussion of Jacobians.) In Exercise 3.3 you will use this formula to derive the normalization constant for a multivariate Gaussian.

Fig. C.10 illustrates this result in 2d, for the case where  $f(\mathbf{x}) = \mathbf{Ax} + \mathbf{b}$ , where  $\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix}$ . We see that the area of the unit square changes by a factor of  $\det(\mathbf{A}) = ad - bc$ , which is the area of the parallelogram.

As another example, consider transforming a density from Cartesian coordinates  $\mathbf{x} = (x_1, x_2)$  to polar coordinates  $\mathbf{y} = f(x_1, x_2)$ , so  $\mathbf{g}(r, \theta) = (r \cos \theta, r \sin \theta)$ . Then

$$\mathbf{J}_g = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{\partial x_1}{\partial r} & \frac{\partial x_1}{\partial \theta} \\ \frac{\partial x_2}{\partial r} & \frac{\partial x_2}{\partial \theta} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \cos \theta & -r \sin \theta \\ \sin \theta & r \cos \theta \end{pmatrix} \quad (\text{C.60})$$

$$|\det(\mathbf{J}_g)| = |r \cos^2 \theta + r \sin^2 \theta| = |r| \quad (\text{C.61})$$

Hence

$$p_{r,\theta}(r, \theta) = p_{x_1, x_2}(r \cos \theta, r \sin \theta) r \quad (\text{C.62})$$

To see this geometrically, notice that the area of the shaded patch in Fig. C.11 is given by

$$\Pr(r \leq R \leq r + dr, \theta \leq \Theta \leq \theta + d\theta) = p_{r,\theta}(r, \theta) dr d\theta \quad (\text{C.63})$$

In the limit, this is equal to the density at the center of the patch,  $p(r, \theta)$ , times the size of the patch,  $r dr d\theta$ . Hence

$$p_{r,\theta}(r, \theta) dr d\theta = p_{x_1, x_2}(r \cos \theta, r \sin \theta) r dr d\theta \quad (\text{C.64})$$

#### C.5.4 Moments of a linear transformation

Suppose  $f$  is an affine function, so  $\mathbf{y} = \mathbf{Ax} + \mathbf{b}$ . In this case, we can easily derive the mean and covariance of  $\mathbf{y}$  as follows. First, for the mean, we have

$$\mathbb{E}[\mathbf{y}] = \mathbb{E}[\mathbf{Ax} + \mathbf{b}] = \mathbf{A}\mu + \mathbf{b} \quad (\text{C.65})$$

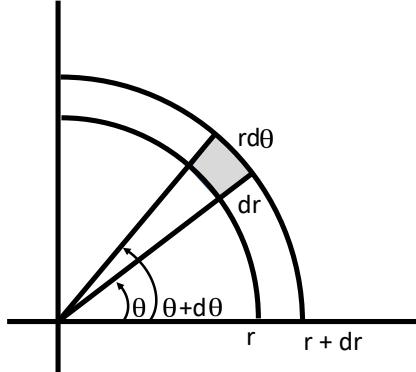


Figure C.11: Change of variables from polar to Cartesian. The area of the shaded patch is  $r dr d\theta$ . Adapted from Figure 3.16 of [Ric95]

where  $\mu = \mathbb{E}[\mathbf{x}]$ . If  $f$  is a scalar-valued function,  $f(\mathbf{x}) = \mathbf{a}^\top \mathbf{x} + b$ , the corresponding result is

$$\mathbb{E}[\mathbf{a}^\top \mathbf{x} + b] = \mathbf{a}^\top \mu + b \quad (\text{C.66})$$

For the covariance, we have

$$\text{Cov}[\mathbf{y}] = \text{Cov}[\mathbf{Ax} + \mathbf{b}] = \mathbf{A}\Sigma\mathbf{A}^\top \quad (\text{C.67})$$

where  $\Sigma = \text{Cov}[\mathbf{x}]$ . We leave the proof of this as an exercise.

As a special case, if  $y = \mathbf{a}^\top \mathbf{x} + b$ , we get

$$\mathbb{V}[y] = \mathbb{V}[\mathbf{a}^\top \mathbf{x} + b] = \mathbf{a}^\top \Sigma \mathbf{a} \quad (\text{C.68})$$

For example, to compute the variance of the sum of two scalar random variables, we can set  $\mathbf{a} = [1, 1]$  to get

$$\mathbb{V}[x_1 + x_2] = (1 \ 1) \begin{pmatrix} \Sigma_{11} & \Sigma_{12} \\ \Sigma_{21} & \Sigma_{22} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \quad (\text{C.69})$$

$$= \Sigma_{11} + \Sigma_{22} + 2\Sigma_{12} = \mathbb{V}[x_1] + \mathbb{V}[x_2] + 2\text{Cov}[x_1, x_2] \quad (\text{C.70})$$

Note, however, that although some distributions (such as the Gaussian) are completely characterized by their mean and covariance, in general we must use the techniques described above to derive the full distribution of  $\mathbf{y}$ .

### C.5.5 The convolution theorem

Let  $y = x_1 + x_2$ , where  $x_1$  and  $x_2$  are independent rv's. If these are discrete random variables, we can compute the pmf for the sum as follows:

$$p(y = j) = \sum_k p(x_1 = j)p(x_2 = j - k) \quad (\text{C.71})$$

-	-	1	2	3	4	-	-	
7	6	5	-	-	-	-	-	$z_0 = x_0 y_0 = 5$
-	7	6	5	-	-	-	-	$z_1 = x_0 y_1 + x_1 y_0 = 16$
-	-	7	6	5	-	-	-	$z_2 = x_0 y_2 + x_1 y_1 + x_2 y_0 = 34$
-	-	-	7	6	5	-	-	$z_3 = x_1 y_2 + x_2 y_1 + x_3 y_0 = 52$
-	-	-	-	7	6	5	-	$z_4 = x_2 y_2 + x_3 y_1 = 45$
-	-	-	-	-	7	6	5	$z_5 = x_3 y_2 = 28$

Figure C.12: Discrete convolution of  $\mathbf{x} = [1, 2, 3, 4]$  with  $\mathbf{y} = [5, 6, 7]$  to yield  $\mathbf{z} = [5, 16, 34, 52, 45, 28]$ . In general,  $z_n = \sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} x_k y_{n-k}$ . We see that this operation consists of “flipping”  $\mathbf{y}$  and then “dragging” it over  $\mathbf{x}$ , multiplying elementwise, and adding up the results.

for  $j = \dots, -2, -1, 0, 1, 2, \dots$

If  $x_1$  and  $x_2$  have pdf’s  $p_1(x_1)$  and  $p_2(x_2)$ , what is the distribution of  $y$ ? The cdf for  $y$  is given by

$$P_y(y^*) = \Pr(y \leq y^*) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} p_1(x_1) dx_1 \int_{-\infty}^{y^* - x_1} p_2(x_2) dx_2 \quad (\text{C.72})$$

where we integrate over the region  $R$  defined by  $x_1 + x_2 < y^*$ . Thus the pdf for  $y$  is

$$p(y) = \left[ \frac{d}{dy^*} P_y(y^*) \right]_{y^*=y} = \int p_1(x_1) p_2(y - x_1) dx_1 \quad (\text{C.73})$$

where we used the rule of **differentiating under the integral sign**:

$$\frac{d}{dx} \int_{a(x)}^{b(x)} f(t) dt = f(b(x)) \frac{db(x)}{dx} - f(a(x)) \frac{da(x)}{dx} \quad (\text{C.74})$$

We can write Eq. (C.73) as follows:

$$p = p_1 \circledast p_2 \quad (\text{C.75})$$

where  $\circledast$  represents the **convolution** operator. For finite length vectors, the integrals become sums, and convolution can be thought of as a “flip and drag” operation, as illustrated in Fig. C.12. Consequently, Eq. (C.73) is called the **convolution theorem**.

For example, suppose we roll two dice, so  $p_1$  and  $p_2$  are both the discrete uniform distributions over  $\{1, 2, \dots, 6\}$ . Let  $y = x_1 + x_2$  be the sum of the dice. We have

$$p(y=2) = p(x_1=1)p(x_2=1) = \frac{1}{6} \frac{1}{6} = \frac{1}{36} \quad (\text{C.76})$$

$$p(y=3) = p(x_1=1)p(x_2=2) + p(x_1=2)p(x_2=1) = \frac{1}{6} \frac{1}{6} + \frac{1}{6} \frac{1}{6} = \frac{2}{36} \quad (\text{C.77})$$

$$\dots \quad (\text{C.78})$$

Continuing in this way, we find  $p(y=5) = 4/36$ ,  $p(y=6) = 5/36$ ,  $p(y=7) = 6/36$ ,  $p(y=8) = 5/36$ ,  $p(y=9) = 4/36$ ,  $p(y=10) = 3/36$ ,  $p(y=11) = 2/36$  and  $p(y=12) = 1/36$ . The result, of course, is

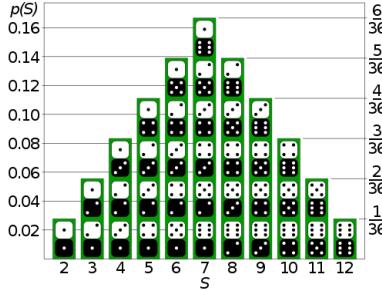


Figure C.13: Distribution of the sum of two dice rolls, i.e.,  $p(y)$  where  $y = x_1 + x_2$  and  $x_i \sim \text{Unif}(\{1, 2, \dots, 6\})$ . From [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Probability\\_distribution](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Probability_distribution). Used with kind permission of Wikipedia author Tim Stellmach.

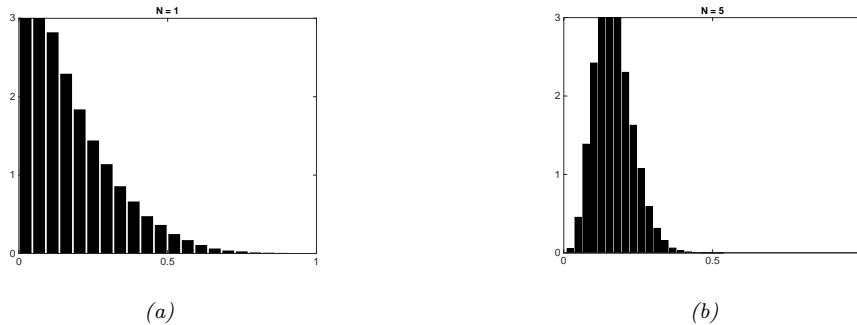


Figure C.14: The central limit theorem in pictures. We plot a histogram of  $\hat{\mu}_N^s = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^N x_{ns}$ , where  $x_{ns} \sim \text{Beta}(1, 5)$ , for  $s = 1 : 10000$ . As  $N \rightarrow \infty$ , the distribution tends towards a Gaussian. (a)  $N = 1$ . (b)  $N = 5$ . Adapted from Figure 2.6 of [Bis06]. Generated by [centralLimitDemo.m](#).

equal to the binomial distribution,  $\text{Bin}(y|2, (1/6, \dots, 1/6))$ . See Fig. C.13 for a plot. We see that the distribution looks like a Gaussian; we explain the reasons for this in Sec. C.5.6.

We can also compute the pdf of the sum of two continuous rv's. For example, in the case of Gaussians, where  $x_1 \sim \mathcal{N}(\boldsymbol{\mu}_1, \sigma_1^2)$  and  $x_2 \sim \mathcal{N}(\boldsymbol{\mu}_2, \sigma_2^2)$ , one can show (Exercise C.9) that if  $y = x_1 + x_2$  then

$$p(y) = \mathcal{N}(x_1 | \boldsymbol{\mu}_1, \sigma_1^2) \otimes \mathcal{N}(x_2 | \boldsymbol{\mu}_2, \sigma_2^2) = \mathcal{N}(y | \boldsymbol{\mu}_1 + \boldsymbol{\mu}_2, \sigma_1^2 + \sigma_2^2) \quad (\text{C.79})$$

Hence the convolution of two Gaussians is a Gaussian.

### C.5.6 Central limit theorem

Now consider  $N$  random variables with pdf's (not necessarily Gaussian)  $p_n(x)$ , each with mean  $\mu$  and variance  $\sigma^2$ . We assume each variable is iid. Let  $S_N = \sum_{n=1}^N X_n$  be the sum of the rv's. One

can show that, as  $N$  increases, the distribution of this sum approaches

$$p(S_N = u) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi N\sigma^2}} \exp\left(-\frac{(u - N\mu)^2}{2N\sigma^2}\right) \quad (\text{C.80})$$

Hence the distribution of the quantity

$$Z_N \triangleq \frac{S_N - N\mu}{\sigma\sqrt{N}} = \frac{\bar{X} - \mu}{\sigma/\sqrt{N}} \quad (\text{C.81})$$

converges to the standard normal, where  $\bar{X} = S_N/N$  is the sample mean. This is called the **central limit theorem**. See e.g., [Jay03, p222] or [Ric95, p169] for a proof.

In Fig. C.14 we give an example in which we compute the sample mean of rv's drawn from a beta distribution. We see that the sampling distribution of this mean rapidly converges to a Gaussian distribution.

## C.6 Exercises

**Exercise C.1** [Conditional independence]

(Source: Koller.)

- a. Let  $H \in \{1, \dots, K\}$  be a discrete random variable, and let  $e_1$  and  $e_2$  be the observed values of two other random variables  $E_1$  and  $E_2$ . Suppose we wish to calculate the vector

$$\vec{P}(H|e_1, e_2) = (P(H=1|e_1, e_2), \dots, P(H=K|e_1, e_2))$$

Which of the following sets of numbers are sufficient for the calculation?

- i.  $P(e_1, e_2)$ ,  $P(H)$ ,  $P(e_1|H)$ ,  $P(e_2|H)$
- ii.  $P(e_1, e_2)$ ,  $P(H)$ ,  $P(e_1, e_2|H)$
- iii.  $P(e_1|H)$ ,  $P(e_2|H)$ ,  $P(H)$

- b. Now suppose we now assume  $E_1 \perp E_2|H$  (i.e.,  $E_1$  and  $E_2$  are conditionally independent given  $H$ ). Which of the above 3 sets are sufficient now?

Show your calculations as well as giving the final result. Hint: use Bayes rule.

**Exercise C.2** [Pairwise independence does not imply mutual independence]

We say that two random variables are pairwise independent if

$$p(X_2|X_1) = p(X_2) \quad (\text{C.82})$$

and hence

$$p(X_2, X_1) = p(X_1)p(X_2|X_1) = p(X_1)p(X_2) \quad (\text{C.83})$$

We say that  $n$  random variables are mutually independent if

$$p(X_i|X_S) = p(X_i) \quad \forall S \subseteq \{1, \dots, n\} \setminus \{i\} \quad (\text{C.84})$$

and hence

$$p(X_{1:n}) = \prod_{i=1}^n p(X_i) \quad (\text{C.85})$$

Show that pairwise independence between all pairs of variables does not necessarily imply mutual independence. It suffices to give a counter example.

**Exercise C.3** [Conditional independence iff joint factorizes]

In the text we said  $X \perp Y|Z$  iff

$$p(x, y|z) = p(x|z)p(y|z) \quad (\text{C.86})$$

for all  $x, y, z$  such that  $p(z) > 0$ . Now prove the following alternative definition:  $X \perp Y|Z$  iff there exist functions  $g$  and  $h$  such that

$$p(x, y|z) = g(x, z)h(y, z) \quad (\text{C.87})$$

for all  $x, y, z$  such that  $p(z) > 0$ .

**Exercise C.4** [Uncorrelated does not imply independent]

Let  $X \sim U(-1, 1)$  and  $Y = X^2$ . Clearly  $Y$  is dependent on  $X$  (in fact,  $Y$  is uniquely determined by  $X$ ). However, show that  $\rho(X, Y) = 0$ . Hint: if  $X \sim U(a, b)$  then  $E[X] = (a + b)/2$  and  $\mathbb{V}[X] = (b - a)^2/12$ .

**Exercise C.5** [Correlation coefficient is between -1 and +1]

Prove that  $-1 \leq \rho(X, Y) \leq 1$

**Exercise C.6** [Correlation coefficient for linearly related variables is  $\pm 1$ ]

Show that, if  $Y = aX + b$  for some parameters  $a > 0$  and  $b$ , then  $\rho(X, Y) = 1$ . Similarly show that if  $a < 0$ , then  $\rho(X, Y) = -1$ .

**Exercise C.7** [Linear combinations of random variables]

Let  $\mathbf{x}$  be a random vector with mean  $\mathbf{m}$  and covariance matrix  $\Sigma$ . Let  $\mathbf{A}$  and  $\mathbf{B}$  be matrices.

- Derive the covariance matrix of  $\mathbf{Ax}$ .
- Show that  $\text{tr}(\mathbf{AB}) = \text{tr}(\mathbf{BA})$ .
- Derive an expression for  $\mathbb{E}[\mathbf{x}^T \mathbf{Ax}]$ .

**Exercise C.8** [Expected value of the minimum of two rv's]

Suppose  $X, Y$  are two points sampled independently and uniformly at random from the interval  $[0, 1]$ . What is the expected location of the leftmost point?

**Exercise C.9** [Convolution of two Gaussians is a Gaussian]

Show that the convolution of two Gaussians is a Gaussian, i.e.,

$$p(y) = \mathcal{N}(x_1|\mu_1, \sigma_1^2) \otimes \mathcal{N}(x_2|\mu_2, \sigma_2^2) = \mathcal{N}(y|\mu_1 + \mu_2, \sigma_1^2 + \sigma_2^2) \quad (\text{C.88})$$

where  $y = x_1 + x_2$ ,  $x_1 \sim \mathcal{N}(\mu_1, \sigma_1^2)$  and  $x_2 \sim \mathcal{N}(\mu_2, \sigma_2^2)$ .

**Exercise C.10** [Variance of a sum]

Show that the variance of a sum is

$$\mathbb{V}[X + Y] = \mathbb{V}[X] + \mathbb{V}[Y] + 2\text{Cov}[X, Y], \quad (\text{C.89})$$

where  $\text{Cov}[X, Y]$  is the covariance between  $X$  and  $Y$ .

**Exercise C.11** [Deriving the inverse gamma density]

Let  $X \sim \text{Ga}(a, b)$ , and  $Y = 1/X$ . Derive the distribution of  $Y$ .

**Exercise C.12** [Mean, mode, variance for the beta distribution]

Suppose  $\theta \sim \text{Beta}(a, b)$ . Show that the mean, mode and variance are given by

$$\mathbb{E}[\theta] = \frac{a}{a+b} \tag{C.90}$$

$$\mathbb{V}[\theta] = \frac{ab}{(a+b)^2(a+b+1)} \tag{C.91}$$

$$\text{mode}[\theta] = \frac{a-1}{a+b-2} \tag{C.92}$$



# D Frequentist statistics

## D.1 Introduction

The approach to statistical inference that we described in Chapter 7 is called Bayesian statistics. It treats parameters of models just like any other unknown random variable, and applies the rules of probability theory to infer them from data. Attempts have been made to devise approaches to statistical inference that avoid treating parameters like random variables, and which thus avoid the use of priors and Bayes rule. This alternative approach is known as **frequentist statistics**, **classical statistics** or **orthodox statistics**.

The basic idea (formalized in Appendix D.3) is to represent uncertainty by calculating how a quantity estimated from data (such as a parameter or a predicted label) would change if the data were changed. It is this notion of variation across repeated trials that forms the basis for modeling uncertainty used by the frequentist approach. By contrast, the Bayesian approach views probability in terms of information rather than repeated trials. This allows the Bayesian to compute the probability of one-off events, as we discussed in Sec. C.1.1. Perhaps more importantly, the Bayesian approach avoids certain paradoxes that plague the frequentist approach (see Sec. D.8.2). These pathologies led the famous statistician George Box to say:

I believe that it would be very difficult to persuade an intelligent person that current [frequentist] statistical practice was sensible, but that there would be much less difficulty with an approach via likelihood and Bayes' theorem. — George Box, 1962 (quoted in [Jay76]).

Nevertheless, it is useful to be familiar with frequentist statistics, since it is widely used, and has some key concepts that are useful even for Bayesians [Rub84].

## D.2 Fisher information matrix (FIM)

In this section, we discuss an important quantity called the **Fisher information matrix**, which is related to the curvature of the log likelihood function. This has many applications, some of which are listed in Table D.1. For a more detailed tutorial on Fisher information and its applications, see [Ly+17].

Application	Section
Asymptotic sampling distribution of MLE	Sec. D.3.1
Cramer-Rao lower bound	Sec. D.4.2.1
Jeffreys' uninformative priors	Sec. 7.3.1
Natural gradient descent	Sec. 5.3.4

Table D.1: Some applications of the Fisher information matrix which are discussed in this book.

### D.2.1 Definition

The **score function** is defined to be the gradient of the log likelihood:

$$\mathbf{s}(\boldsymbol{\theta}) \triangleq \nabla \log p(\mathbf{x}|\boldsymbol{\theta}) \quad (\text{D.1})$$

The **Fisher information matrix (FIM)** is defined to be the covariance of the score function:

$$\mathbf{F}(\boldsymbol{\theta}) \triangleq \mathbb{E}_{\mathbf{x} \sim p(\mathbf{x}|\boldsymbol{\theta})} [\nabla \log p(\mathbf{x}|\boldsymbol{\theta}) \nabla \log p(\mathbf{x}|\boldsymbol{\theta})^\top] \quad (\text{D.2})$$

so the  $(i, j)$ 'th entry has the form

$$F_{ij} = \mathbb{E}_{\mathbf{x} \sim \boldsymbol{\theta}} \left[ \left( \frac{\partial}{\partial \theta_i} \log p(\mathbf{x}|\boldsymbol{\theta}) \right) \left( \frac{\partial}{\partial \theta_j} \log p(\mathbf{x}|\boldsymbol{\theta}) \right) \right] \quad (\text{D.3})$$

We give an interpretation of this quantity below.

### D.2.2 Connection between the FIM and the Hessian of the NLL

So far, we have defined the FIM, but have not explained why it is an interesting or useful quantity to compute. In this section, we prove that the Fisher information matrix equals the expected Hessian of the NLL. Since the Hessian measures the curvature of the likelihood, we see that the FIM tells us how well the likelihood function can identify the best set of parameters. (If a likelihood function is flat, we cannot infer anything about the parameters, but if it is a delta function at a single point, the best parameter vector will be uniquely determined.) Thus the FIM is intimately related to the frequentist notion of uncertainty of the MLE, which is captured by the variance we expect to see in the MLE if we were to compute it on multiple different datasets drawn from our model.

More precisely, we have the following theorem.

**Theorem D.2.1.** *If  $\log p(\mathbf{x}|\boldsymbol{\theta})$  is twice differentiable, and under certain regularity conditions, the FIM is equal to the expected Hessian of the NLL, i.e.,*

$$\mathbf{F}(\boldsymbol{\theta})_{ij} \triangleq \mathbb{E}_{\mathbf{x} \sim \boldsymbol{\theta}} \left[ \left( \frac{\partial}{\partial \theta_i} \log p(\mathbf{x}|\boldsymbol{\theta}) \right) \left( \frac{\partial}{\partial \theta_j} \log p(\mathbf{x}|\boldsymbol{\theta}) \right) \right] = -\mathbb{E}_{\mathbf{x} \sim \boldsymbol{\theta}} \left[ \frac{\partial^2}{\partial \theta_i \partial \theta_j} \log p(\mathbf{x}|\boldsymbol{\theta}) \right] \quad (\text{D.4})$$

Before we prove this result, we establish the following important lemma.

**Lemma 1.** *The expected value of the score function is zero, i.e.,*

$$\mathbb{E}_{p(\mathbf{x}|\boldsymbol{\theta})} [\nabla \log p(\mathbf{x}|\boldsymbol{\theta})] = \mathbf{0} \quad (\text{D.5})$$

We will prove this lemma in the scalar case. First, note that since  $\int p(x|\theta)dx = 1$ , we have

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial \theta} \int p(x|\theta)dx = 0 \quad (\text{D.6})$$

Combining this with the identity

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial \theta} p(x|\theta) = \left[ \frac{\partial}{\partial \theta} \log p(x|\theta) \right] p(x|\theta) \quad (\text{D.7})$$

we have

$$0 = \int \frac{\partial}{\partial \theta} p(x|\theta)dx = \int \left[ \frac{\partial}{\partial \theta} \log p(x|\theta) \right] p(x|\theta)dx = \mathbb{E}[s(\theta)] \quad (\text{D.8})$$

Now we return to the proof of our main theorem. For simplicity, we will focus on the scalar case, following the presentation of [Ric95, p263].

*Proof.* Taking derivatives of Eq. (D.8), we have

$$0 = \frac{\partial}{\partial \theta} \int \left[ \frac{\partial}{\partial \theta} \log p(x|\theta) \right] p(x|\theta)dx \quad (\text{D.9})$$

$$= \int \left[ \frac{\partial^2}{\partial \theta^2} \log p(x|\theta) \right] p(x|\theta)dx + \int \left[ \frac{\partial}{\partial \theta} \log p(x|\theta) \right] \frac{\partial}{\partial \theta} p(x|\theta)dx \quad (\text{D.10})$$

$$= \int \left[ \frac{\partial^2}{\partial \theta^2} \log p(x|\theta) \right] p(x|\theta)dx + \int \left[ \frac{\partial}{\partial \theta} \log p(x|\theta) \right]^2 p(x|\theta)dx \quad (\text{D.11})$$

and hence

$$-\mathbb{E}_{x \sim \theta} \left[ \frac{\partial^2}{\partial \theta^2} \log p(x|\theta) \right] = \mathbb{E}_{x \sim \theta} \left[ \left( \frac{\partial}{\partial \theta} \log p(x|\theta) \right)^2 \right] \quad (\text{D.12})$$

as claimed.  $\square$

Now consider the Hessian of the NLL given  $N$  iid samples  $\mathcal{D} = \{\mathbf{x}_n : n = 1 : N\}$ :

$$H_{ij} \triangleq -\frac{\partial^2}{\partial \theta_i \partial \theta_j} \log p(\mathcal{D}|\boldsymbol{\theta}) = -\sum_{n=1}^N \frac{\partial^2}{\partial \theta_i \partial \theta_j} \log p(\mathbf{x}_n|\boldsymbol{\theta}) \quad (\text{D.13})$$

From the above theorem, we have

$$\mathbb{E}_{p(\mathcal{D}|\boldsymbol{\theta})} [\mathbf{H}(\mathcal{D})|_{\boldsymbol{\theta}}] = N \mathbf{F}(\boldsymbol{\theta}) \quad (\text{D.14})$$

We will use this result later in this chapter.

### D.2.3 Examples

In this section, we give some simple examples of how to compute the FIM.

### D.2.3.1 FIM for the Bernoulli

Suppose  $x \sim \text{Ber}(\theta)$ . The log likelihood for a single sample is

$$l(\theta|x) = x \log \theta + (1-x) \log(1-\theta) \quad (\text{D.15})$$

The score function is just the gradient of the log-likelihood:

$$s(\theta|x) \triangleq \frac{d}{d\theta} l(\theta|x) = \frac{x}{\theta} - \frac{1-x}{1-\theta} \quad (\text{D.16})$$

The Fisher information is the expected value of the gradient of the negative score function:

$$F(\theta) = \mathbb{E}_{x \sim \theta} [-s'(\theta|x)] = \frac{\theta}{\theta^2} + \frac{1-\theta}{(1-\theta)^2} = \frac{1}{\theta(1-\theta)} \quad (\text{D.17})$$

### D.2.3.2 FIM for the Gaussian

Consider a univariate Gaussian  $p(x|\boldsymbol{\theta}) = \mathcal{N}(x|\mu, v)$ . We have

$$\ell(\boldsymbol{\theta}) = \log p(x|\boldsymbol{\theta}) = -\frac{1}{2v}(x-\mu)^2 - \frac{1}{2} \log(v) - \frac{1}{2} \log(2\pi) \quad (\text{D.18})$$

The partial derivatives are given by

$$\frac{\partial \ell}{\partial \mu} = (x-\mu)v^{-1}, \quad \frac{\partial^2 \ell}{\partial \mu^2} = -v^{-1} \quad (\text{D.19})$$

$$\frac{\partial \ell}{\partial v} = \frac{1}{2}v^{-2}(x-\mu)^2 - \frac{1}{2}v^{-1}, \quad \frac{\partial \ell}{\partial v^2} = -v^{-3}(x-\mu)^2 + \frac{1}{2}v^{-2} \quad (\text{D.20})$$

$$\frac{\partial \ell}{\partial \mu \partial v} = -v^{-2}(x-\mu) \quad (\text{D.21})$$

and hence

$$\mathbf{F}(\boldsymbol{\theta}) = \begin{pmatrix} \mathbb{E}[v^{-1}] & \mathbb{E}[v^{-2}(x-\mu)] \\ \mathbb{E}[v^{-2}(x-\mu)] & \mathbb{E}[v^{-3}(x-\mu)^2 - \frac{1}{2}v^{-2}] \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{1}{v} & 0 \\ 0 & \frac{1}{2v^2} \end{pmatrix} \quad (\text{D.22})$$

### D.2.4 Connection between FIM and KL divergence

The Fisher information can be viewed as an approximation to the KL divergence between two similar distributions, as we now show.

Let  $p_{\boldsymbol{\theta}}(\mathbf{x})$  and  $p_{\boldsymbol{\theta}'}(\mathbf{x})$  be two distributions, where  $\boldsymbol{\theta}' = \boldsymbol{\theta} + \boldsymbol{\delta}$ . We can measure how close the second distribution is to the first in terms their predictive distribution (as opposed to comparing  $\boldsymbol{\theta}$  and  $\boldsymbol{\theta}'$  in parameter space) as follows:

$$\mathbb{KL}(p_{\boldsymbol{\theta}} \| p_{\boldsymbol{\theta}'}) = \mathbb{E}_{p_{\boldsymbol{\theta}}(\mathbf{x})} [\log p_{\boldsymbol{\theta}}(\mathbf{x}) - \log p_{\boldsymbol{\theta}'}(\mathbf{x})] \quad (\text{D.23})$$

Let us approximate this with a second order Taylor series expansion:

$$\mathbb{KL}(p_{\boldsymbol{\theta}} \| p_{\boldsymbol{\theta}'}) \approx -\boldsymbol{\delta}^\top \mathbb{E}[\nabla \log p_{\boldsymbol{\theta}}(\mathbf{x})] - \frac{1}{2} \boldsymbol{\delta}^\top \mathbb{E}[\nabla^2 \log p_{\boldsymbol{\theta}}(\mathbf{x})] \boldsymbol{\delta} \quad (\text{D.24})$$

Since the expected NLL is zero (from Eq. (D.5)), the first term vanishes, so we have

$$\mathbb{KL}(p_{\boldsymbol{\theta}} \| p_{\boldsymbol{\theta}'}) \approx \frac{1}{2} \boldsymbol{\delta}^\top \mathbf{F}(\boldsymbol{\theta}) \boldsymbol{\delta} \quad (\text{D.25})$$

where  $\mathbf{F}$  is the FIM

$$\mathbf{F} = -\mathbb{E} [\nabla^2 \log p_{\boldsymbol{\theta}}(\mathbf{x})] = \mathbb{E} [(\nabla \log p_{\boldsymbol{\theta}}(\mathbf{x}))(\nabla \log p_{\boldsymbol{\theta}}(\mathbf{x}))^\top] \quad (\text{D.26})$$

## D.3 Sampling distributions

In frequentist statistics, uncertainty is not represented by the posterior distribution of a random variable, but instead by the **sampling distribution** of an **estimator**. Let us now define these terms,

As explained in the section on decision theory in Sec. 8.1, an estimator is a decision procedure that specifies what action to take given some observed data. In the context of parameter estimation, where the action space is to return a parameter vector, we will denote this by  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}} = \pi(\mathcal{D})$ . For example,  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}}$  could be the maximum likelihood estimate, the MAP estimate, or the method of moments estimate.

The sampling distribution of an estimator is the distribution of results we would see if we applied the estimator multiple times to different datasets sampled from some distribution; in the context of parameter estimation, it is the distribution of  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}}$ , viewed as a random variable that depends on the random sample  $\mathcal{D}$ . In more detail, imagine sampling  $S$  different data sets, each of size  $N$ , from some true model  $p(\mathbf{x}|\boldsymbol{\theta}^*)$  to generate

$$\tilde{\mathcal{D}}^{(s)} = \{\mathbf{x}_n \sim p(\mathbf{x}_n|\boldsymbol{\theta}^*): n = 1 : N\} \quad (\text{D.27})$$

We denote this by  $\mathcal{D}^{(s)} \sim \boldsymbol{\theta}^*$  for brevity. Now apply the estimator to each  $\mathcal{D}^{(s)}$  to get a set of estimates,  $\{\hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}}(\mathcal{D}^{(s)})\}$ . As we let  $S \rightarrow \infty$ , the distribution induced by this set is the sampling distribution of the estimator. More precisely, we have

$$p(\pi(\tilde{\mathcal{D}}) = \boldsymbol{\theta} | \tilde{\mathcal{D}} \sim \boldsymbol{\theta}^*) \approx \frac{1}{S} \sum_{s=1}^S \delta(\boldsymbol{\theta} = \pi(\mathcal{D}^{(s)})) \quad (\text{D.28})$$

In some cases, we can compute this analytically (assuming we know  $\boldsymbol{\theta}^*$ ), as we discuss in Sec. D.3.1, although typically we need to approximate it by Monte Carlo. In both cases, we have to deal with the issue that  $\boldsymbol{\theta}^*$  is unknown, as we will discuss.

### D.3.1 Exact sampling distribution of the MLE

In some cases, it is possible to analytically derive the sampling distribution of an estimator. We give an example below.

#### D.3.1.1 Example: Univariate Gaussian

The MLE for the mean of a univariate Gaussian given a sample  $\mathcal{D}$  of size  $N$  is given by  $\hat{\mu}(\tilde{\mathcal{D}}) = \bar{x}$ , where  $\bar{x} = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^N x_n$  is the empirical mean. If we assume the data is generated from  $x_n \sim \mathcal{N}(\mu, \sigma^2)$ ,

then the sampling distribution of  $\bar{x}$  can be written in the following form:

$$p(\bar{x}|\tilde{\mathcal{D}}) = m|\tilde{\mathcal{D}} \sim \mathcal{N}(\mu, \sigma^2) = \mathcal{T}(m|\mu, \frac{s^2(\tilde{\mathcal{D}})}{N}, N-1) \quad (\text{D.29})$$

where  $s(\tilde{\mathcal{D}})$  is the sample standard deviation defined in Eq. (7.96), which we repeat here for convenience:

$$s^2(\tilde{\mathcal{D}}) \triangleq \frac{1}{N-1} \sum_{n=1}^N (x_n - \bar{x}(\tilde{\mathcal{D}}))^2 \quad (\text{D.30})$$

For a proof of this result, see e.g., [Ric95, p542] or [CB02, p554]. Note that these books write the result as follows:

$$\frac{\mu - \bar{x}}{\sqrt{s^2/N}} | \mu \sim t_{N-1} \quad (\text{D.31})$$

However, in this notation, it is unclear which terms are random variables (function of the unknown hypothetical dataset  $\tilde{\mathcal{D}}$ , namely  $\bar{x}$  and  $s$ ), and which are known constants (namely  $N$  and  $\mu$ ). Eq. (D.29) makes this clearer (although we don't explicitly include  $N$  on the RHS of the conditioning bar).

### D.3.1.2 Connection with the posterior distribution

In many simple cases, the sampling distribution is identical to the posterior distribution obtained using uninformative priors, as discussed in [BT73]. For example, from Sec. 7.2.3.4, we know that the posterior  $p(\mu|\mathcal{D})$  using an uninformative prior is given by

$$p(\mu|\mathcal{D}) = \mathcal{T}(\mu|\bar{x}(\mathcal{D}), \frac{s^2(\mathcal{D})}{N}, N-1) \quad (\text{D.32})$$

By exploiting the fact that  $\mathcal{T}(\mu|\bar{x}, \tau^2, \nu)$  can be rewritten as  $\mathcal{T}(\bar{x}|\mu, \tau^2, \nu)$ , we see that the posterior is equivalent to the sampling distribution in Eq. (D.29). Intuitively, the reason the result is the same is that the posterior only depends on the likelihood, since the prior is uninformative. Nevertheless, semantically the sampling distribution and the posterior are quite different.

### D.3.1.3 Example: Linear regression

The sampling distribution for the MLE for linear regression is derived in many books on frequentist statistics. The result is usually written as follows:

$$\frac{w_d - \hat{w}_d}{s_d} \sim t_{N-D} \quad (\text{D.33})$$

where  $\hat{w}_d$  is the OLS estimate, and  $s_d = \sqrt{\frac{\sigma_{\text{unb}}^2 2C_{dd}}{N-D}}$  is the standard error of the estimated parameter, where  $\mathbf{C} = (\mathbf{X}^\top \mathbf{X})^{-1}$ . This is equivalent to the marginal posterior under an uninformative prior given in Eq. (11.154), which we repeat here:

$$p(w_d|\mathcal{D}) = \mathcal{T}(w_d|\hat{w}_d, \frac{s_d^2}{N-D}, N-D) \quad (\text{D.34})$$

### D.3.2 Large sample approximation

When the sample size becomes large, the sampling distribution of the MLE for certain models becomes Gaussian. More formally, we have the following result:

**Theorem D.3.1.** *If the parameters are identifiable, then*

$$p(\pi(\tilde{\mathcal{D}}) = \hat{\theta} | \tilde{\mathcal{D}} \sim \boldsymbol{\theta}^*) \rightarrow \mathcal{N}(\hat{\theta} | \boldsymbol{\theta}^*, (N\mathbf{F}(\boldsymbol{\theta}^*))^{-1}) \quad (\text{D.35})$$

where  $\mathbf{F}(\boldsymbol{\theta}^*)$  is the Fisher information matrix, defined in Eq. (D.2).

This is known as the **asymptotic normality** of the sampling distribution. Intuitively, the reason for this is that the variance of the MLE is (inversely) related to the amount of curvature of the log likelihood surface at its peak, which is measured by the Fisher information.

We now prove the above theorem for the scalar case, following [Ric95, p264].

*Proof.* Define the log likelihood as

$$l(\theta) = \sum_{n=1}^N \log p(x_n | \theta) \quad (\text{D.36})$$

By the law of large numbers, we have

$$\frac{1}{N} l(\theta) \rightarrow \mathbb{E} [\log p(X | \theta)] = \int p(x | \theta^*) \log p(x | \theta) dx \quad (\text{D.37})$$

To maximize the expected log likelihood, let us first compute its derivative:

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial \theta} \int p(x | \theta^*) \log p(x | \theta) dx = \int p(x | \theta^*) \frac{\frac{\partial}{\partial \theta} p(x | \theta)}{p(x | \theta)} dx \quad (\text{D.38})$$

At  $\theta = \theta^*$ , the gradient vanishes:

$$\int \left[ \frac{\partial}{\partial \theta} p(x | \theta) \Big|_{\theta=\theta^*} \right] dx = \frac{\partial}{\partial \theta} \left[ \int p(x | \theta) dx \right]_{\theta=\theta^*} = \frac{\partial}{\partial \theta} 1 = 0 \quad (\text{D.39})$$

The MLE  $\hat{\theta}$  is, by definition, a point that maximizes the log likelihood, so the gradient of the log likelihood at  $\hat{\theta}$  is therefore also 0. If there is only one such stationary point (so the MLE is unique), then we can conclude that  $\hat{\theta} \rightarrow \theta^*$ , which shows that the MLE is a consistent estimator (Sec. D.5.2).

Now we will consider the variance of this estimate. Let us make a second order Taylor series approximation:

$$0 = l'(\hat{\theta}) \approx l'(\theta^*) + (\hat{\theta} - \theta^*) l''(\theta^*) \quad (\text{D.40})$$

$$(\hat{\theta} - \theta^*) \approx \frac{-l'(\theta^*)}{l''(\theta^*)} \quad (\text{D.41})$$

$$N^{\frac{1}{2}}(\hat{\theta} - \theta^*) \approx \frac{-N^{-\frac{1}{2}} l'(\theta^*)}{N^{-1} l''(\theta^*)} \quad (\text{D.42})$$

Let us first consider the numerator. Its expectation is given by

$$\mathbb{E} \left[ -N^{-\frac{1}{2}} l'(\theta^*) \right] = N^{-\frac{1}{2}} \sum_{n=1}^N \mathbb{E} \left[ \frac{\partial}{\partial \theta} \log p(x_n | \boldsymbol{\theta}^*) \right] = 0 \quad (\text{D.43})$$

and hence its variance is given by

$$\mathbb{V} \left[ -N^{-\frac{1}{2}} l'(\theta^*) \right] = N^{-1} \sum_{n=1}^N \mathbb{E} \left[ \left( \frac{\partial}{\partial \theta} \log p(x_n | \boldsymbol{\theta}^*) \right)^2 \right] = F(\theta^*) \quad (\text{D.44})$$

Now consider the denominator. By the law of large numbers, we have

$$\frac{1}{N} l''(\theta^*) = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^N \frac{\partial^2}{\partial \theta^2} \log p(x_n | \theta^*) \rightarrow \mathbb{E} \left[ \frac{\partial^2}{\partial \theta^2} \log p(x | \theta^*) \right] = -F(\theta^*) \quad (\text{D.45})$$

using Eq. (D.2). Hence

$$N^{\frac{1}{2}}(\hat{\theta} - \theta^*) \approx \frac{N^{-\frac{1}{2}} l'(\theta^*)}{F(\theta^*)} \quad (\text{D.46})$$

where  $F(\theta^*)$  is a constant, and  $l'(\theta^*)$  is a random variable (since it depends on the data), and so

$$\mathbb{E} \left[ N^{\frac{1}{2}}(\hat{\theta} - \theta^*) \right] \approx 0 \quad (\text{D.47})$$

$$\mathbb{V} \left[ N^{\frac{1}{2}}(\hat{\theta} - \theta^*) \right] \approx \frac{F(\theta^*)}{F^2(\theta^*)} = \frac{1}{F(\theta^*)} \quad (\text{D.48})$$

$$\mathbb{V} \left[ \hat{\theta} - \theta^* \right] \approx \frac{1}{NF(\theta^*)} \quad (\text{D.49})$$

We have computed the mean and variance of the distribution of the MLE. To show it is Gaussian, we can invoke the central limit theorem, since the log likelihood is a sum of iid random variables.  $\square$

### D.3.3 Bootstrap approximation

In cases where the estimator is a complex function of the data, we can approximate its sampling distribution using a Monte Carlo technique known as the **bootstrap**.

The idea is simple. If we knew the true parameters  $\boldsymbol{\theta}^*$ , we could generate many (say  $S$ ) fake datasets, each of size  $N$ , from the true distribution, using  $\tilde{\mathcal{D}}^{(s)} = \{\mathbf{x}_n \sim p(\mathbf{x}_n | \boldsymbol{\theta}^*) : n = 1 : N\}$ . We could then compute our estimator from each sample,  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}}^s = \pi(\tilde{\mathcal{D}}^{(s)})$  and use the empirical distribution of the resulting  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}}^s$  as our estimate of the sampling distribution, as in Eq. (D.28). Since  $\boldsymbol{\theta}^*$  is unknown, the idea of the **parametric bootstrap** is to generate each sampled dataset using  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}} = \pi(\mathcal{D})$  instead of  $\boldsymbol{\theta}^*$ , i.e., we use  $\tilde{\mathcal{D}}^{(s)} = \{\mathbf{x}_n \sim p(\mathbf{x}_n | \hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}}) : n = 1 : N\}$  in Eq. (D.28). This is a plug-in approximation to the sampling distribution.

An alternative, called the **non-parametric bootstrap**, is to sample  $N$  data points from the original data with replacement. This creates a new distribution  $\mathcal{D}^{(s)}$  which has the same size as the

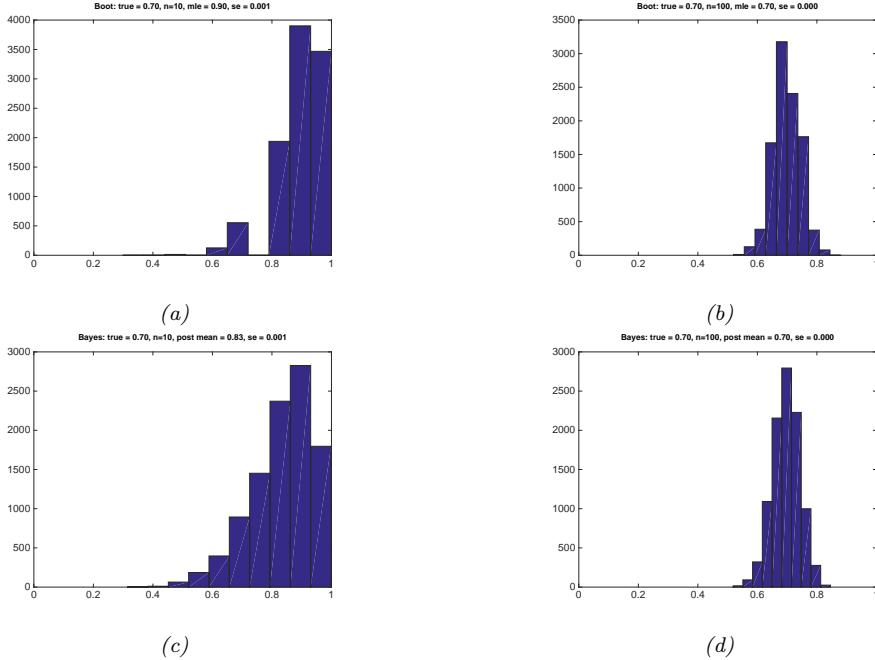


Figure D.1: Bootstrap (top row) vs Bayes (bottom row). The  $N$  data cases were generated from  $\text{Ber}(\theta = 0.7)$ . Left column:  $N = 10$ . Right column:  $N = 100$ . (a-b) A bootstrap approximation to the sampling distribution of the MLE for a Bernoulli distribution. We show the histogram derived from  $B = 10,000$  bootstrap samples. (c-d) Histogram of 10,000 samples from the posterior distribution using a uniform prior. Generated by `bootstrapDemoBer.m`.

original. However, the number of unique data points in a bootstrap sample is just  $0.632 \times N$ , on average. (To see this, note that the probability an item is picked at least once is  $(1 - (1 - 1/N)^N)$ , which approaches  $1 - e^{-1} \approx 0.632$  for large  $N$ .)

Fig. D.1(a-b) shows an example where we compute the sampling distribution of the MLE for a Bernoulli using the parametric bootstrap. (Results using the non-parametric bootstrap are essentially the same.) When  $N = 10$ , we see that the sampling distribution is asymmetric, and therefore quite far from Gaussian, but when  $N = 100$ , the distribution looks more Gaussian, as theory suggests (see Sec. D.3.2).

### D.3.3.1 Bootstrap is a “poor man’s” posterior

A natural question is: what is the connection between the parameter estimates  $\hat{\theta}^s = \pi(\mathcal{D}^{(s)})$  computed by the bootstrap and parameter values sampled from the posterior,  $\theta^s \sim p(\cdot | \mathcal{D})$ ? Conceptually they are quite different. But in the common case that the estimator is MLE and the prior is not very strong, they can be quite similar. For example, Fig. D.1(c-d) shows an example where we compute the posterior using a uniform Beta(1,1) prior, and then sample from it. We see that the posterior and the sampling distribution are quite similar. So one can think of the bootstrap distribution as a

“poor man’s” posterior [HTF01, p235].

However, perhaps surprisingly, bootstrap can be slower than posterior sampling. The reason is that the bootstrap has to generate  $S$  sampled datasets, and then fit a model to each one. By contrast, in posterior sampling, we only have to “fit” a model once given a single dataset. (Some methods for speeding up the bootstrap when applied to massive data sets are discussed in [Kle+11].)

### D.3.4 Confidence intervals

In frequentist statistics, we use the variability induced by the sampling distribution as a way to estimate uncertainty of a parameter estimate. More precisely, we define a  $100(1 - \alpha)\%$  **confidence interval** for a parameter estimate  $\theta$  as any interval  $I(\tilde{\mathcal{D}}) = (\ell(\tilde{\mathcal{D}}), u(\tilde{\mathcal{D}}))$  derived from a hypothetical dataset  $\tilde{\mathcal{D}}$  such that

$$\Pr(\theta \in I(\tilde{\mathcal{D}}) | \tilde{\mathcal{D}} \sim \theta) = 1 - \alpha \quad (\text{D.50})$$

It is common to set  $\alpha = 0.05$ , which yields a 95% CI. This means that, if we repeatedly sampled data, and compute  $I(\tilde{\mathcal{D}})$  for each such dataset, then about 95% of such intervals will contain the true parameter  $\theta$ .

Note, however, that Eq. (D.50) does *not* mean that for any particular dataset that  $\theta \in I(\mathcal{D})$  with 95% probability; this is what a Bayesian credible interval computes (Sec. 7.1.2.2), but is not what a frequentist confidence interval computes. For more details on this important distinction, see Sec. D.8.1.

Let us put aside such “philosophical” concerns, and discuss how to compute a confidence interval. Suppose that  $\hat{\theta}$  is an estimate of the parameter  $\theta$ . Let  $\theta^*$  be its true but unknown value. Also, suppose that the sampling distribution of  $\Delta = \hat{\theta} - \theta^*$  is known. Let  $\underline{\delta}$  and  $\bar{\delta}$  denote its  $\alpha/2$  and  $1 - \alpha/2$  quantiles. Hence

$$\Pr(\underline{\delta} \leq \hat{\theta} - \theta^* \leq \bar{\delta}) = 1 - \alpha \quad (\text{D.51})$$

Rearranging we get

$$\Pr(\hat{\theta} - \bar{\delta} \leq \theta^* \leq \hat{\theta} - \underline{\delta}) = 1 - \alpha \quad (\text{D.52})$$

And hence

$$I(\tilde{\mathcal{D}}) = (\hat{\theta}(\tilde{\mathcal{D}}) - \bar{\delta}(\tilde{\mathcal{D}}), \hat{\theta}(\tilde{\mathcal{D}}) + \underline{\delta}(\tilde{\mathcal{D}})) \quad (\text{D.53})$$

is a  $100(1 - \alpha)\%$  confidence interval.

In some cases, we can analytically compute the distribution of  $\Delta = \hat{\theta} - \theta^*$ . This can be used to derive exact confidence intervals. However, it is more common to assume a Gaussian approximation to the sampling distribution, as in Sec. D.3.2. In this case, we have  $\sqrt{NF(\hat{\theta})}(\hat{\theta} - \theta^*) \sim \mathcal{N}(0, 1)$ . Hence we can compute an approximate CI using

$$\hat{\theta} \pm z_{\alpha/2} \hat{s}_e \quad (\text{D.54})$$

where  $z_{\alpha/2}$  is the  $\alpha/2$  quantile of the Gaussian cdf, and  $\hat{s}_e = 1/\sqrt{NF(\hat{\theta})}$  is the estimated standard error. If we set  $\alpha = 0.05$ , we have  $z_{\alpha/2} = 1.96$ , which justifies the common approximation  $\hat{\theta} \pm 2\hat{s}_e$ .

If the Gaussian approximation is not a good one, we can use a bootstrap approximation (see Sec. D.3.3). In particular, we sample  $S$  datasets from  $\hat{\theta}(\mathcal{D})$ , and apply the estimator to each one to get  $\hat{\theta}(\mathcal{D}^{(s)})$ ; we then use the empirical distribution of  $\hat{\theta}(\mathcal{D}) - \hat{\theta}(\mathcal{D}^{(s)})$  as an approximation to the sampling distribution of  $\Delta$ .

## D.4 Bias and variance

An estimator is a procedure applied to data which returns an estimand. Let  $\hat{\theta}()$  be the estimator, and  $\hat{\theta}(\mathcal{D})$  be the estimand. In frequentist statistics, we treat the data as a random variable, drawn from some true but unknown distribution,  $p^*(\mathcal{D})$ ; this induces a distribution over the estimand,  $p^*(\hat{\theta}(\mathcal{D}))$ , known as the sampling distribution (see Appendix D.3). In this section, we discuss two key properties of this distribution, its bias and its variance, which we define below.

### D.4.1 Bias of an estimator

The **bias** of an estimator is defined as

$$\text{bias}(\hat{\theta}(\cdot)) \triangleq \mathbb{E} [\hat{\theta}(\mathcal{D})] - \theta^* \quad (\text{D.55})$$

where  $\theta^*$  is the true parameter value, and the expectation is wrt “nature’s distribution”  $p(\mathcal{D}|\theta^*)$ . If the bias is zero, the estimator is called **unbiased**. For example, the MLE for a Gaussian mean is unbiased:

$$\text{bias}(\hat{\mu}) = \mathbb{E} [\bar{x}] - \mu = \mathbb{E} \left[ \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^N x_n \right] - \mu = \frac{N\mu}{N} - \mu = 0 \quad (\text{D.56})$$

where  $\bar{x}$  is the sample mean.

However, the MLE for a Gaussian variance,  $\sigma_{\text{mle}}^2 = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^N (x_n - \bar{x})^2$ , is not an unbiased estimator of  $\sigma^2$ . In fact, one can show (Exercise D.1) that

$$\mathbb{E} [\sigma_{\text{mle}}^2] = \frac{N-1}{N} \sigma^2 \quad (\text{D.57})$$

so the ML estimator slightly underestimates the variance. Intuitively, this is because we “use up” one of the data points to estimate the mean, so if we have a sample size of 1, we will estimate the variance to be 0. If, however,  $\mu$  is known, the ML estimator is unbiased (see Exercise D.2).

Now consider the following estimator

$$\sigma_{\text{unb}}^2 \triangleq \frac{1}{N-1} \sum_{n=1}^N (x_n - \bar{x})^2 = \frac{N}{N-1} \sigma_{\text{mle}}^2 \quad (\text{D.58})$$

This is an unbiased estimator, which we can easily prove as follows:

$$\mathbb{E} [\sigma_{\text{unb}}^2] = \frac{N}{N-1} \mathbb{E} [\sigma_{\text{mle}}^2] = \frac{N}{N-1} \frac{N-1}{N} \sigma^2 = \sigma^2 \quad (\text{D.59})$$

### D.4.2 Variance of an estimator

It seems intuitively reasonable that we want our estimator to be unbiased. However, being unbiased is not enough. For example, suppose we want to estimate the mean of a Gaussian from  $\mathcal{D} = \{x_1, \dots, x_N\}$ . The estimator that just looks at the first data point,  $\hat{\theta}(\mathcal{D}) = x_1$ , is an unbiased estimator, but will generally be further from  $\theta^*$  than the empirical mean  $\bar{x}$  (which is also unbiased). So the variance of an estimator is also important.

We define the variance of an estimator as follows:

$$\mathbb{V}[\hat{\theta}] \triangleq \mathbb{E}[\hat{\theta}^2] - (\mathbb{E}[\hat{\theta}])^2 \quad (\text{D.60})$$

where the expectation is taken wrt  $p(\mathcal{D}|\theta^*)$ . This measures how much our estimate will change as the data changes. We can extend this to a covariance matrix for vector valued estimators.

#### D.4.2.1 The Cramer-Rao lower bound

Intuitively we would like the variance of our estimator to be as small as possible. Therefore, a natural question is: how low can the variance go? A famous result, called the **Cramer-Rao lower bound**, provides a lower bound on the variance of any unbiased estimator. More precisely,

**Theorem D.4.1** (Cramer-Rao inequality). *Let  $X_1, \dots, X_N \sim p(X|\theta^*)$  and  $\hat{\theta} = \hat{\theta}(x_1, \dots, x_N)$  be an unbiased estimator of  $\theta^*$ . Then, under various smoothness assumptions on  $p(X|\theta^*)$ , we have*

$$\mathbb{V}[\hat{\theta}] \geq \frac{1}{NF(\theta^*)} \quad (\text{D.61})$$

where  $F(\theta^*)$  is the Fisher information matrix.

A proof can be found e.g., in [Ric95, p275].

It can be shown that the MLE achieves the Cramer Rao lower bound, and hence has the smallest asymptotic variance of any unbiased estimator. Thus MLE is said to be **asymptotically optimal**.

### D.4.3 The bias-variance tradeoff

In this section, we discuss a fundamental tradeoff that needs to be made when picking a method for parameter estimation, assuming our goal is to minimize the mean squared error (MSE) of our estimate. Let  $\hat{\theta} = \hat{\theta}(\mathcal{D})$  denote the estimate, and  $\bar{\theta} = \mathbb{E}[\hat{\theta}]$  denote the expected value of the estimate (as we vary  $\mathcal{D}$ ). (All expectations and variances are wrt  $p(\mathcal{D}|\theta^*)$ , but we drop the explicit conditioning for notational brevity.) Then we have

$$\mathbb{E}[(\hat{\theta} - \theta^*)^2] = \mathbb{E}\left[\left[(\hat{\theta} - \bar{\theta}) + (\bar{\theta} - \theta^*)\right]^2\right] \quad (\text{D.62})$$

$$= \mathbb{E}\left[\left(\hat{\theta} - \bar{\theta}\right)^2\right] + 2(\bar{\theta} - \theta^*)\mathbb{E}[\hat{\theta} - \bar{\theta}] + (\bar{\theta} - \theta^*)^2 \quad (\text{D.63})$$

$$= \mathbb{E}\left[\left(\hat{\theta} - \bar{\theta}\right)^2\right] + (\bar{\theta} - \theta^*)^2 \quad (\text{D.64})$$

$$= \mathbb{V}[\hat{\theta}] + \text{bias}^2(\hat{\theta}) \quad (\text{D.65})$$

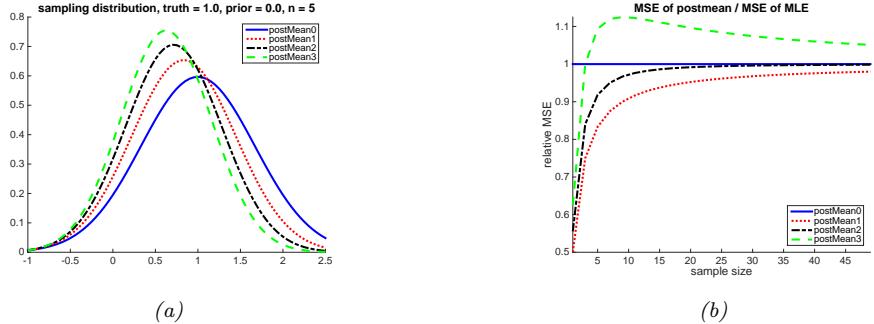


Figure D.2: Left: Sampling distribution of the MAP estimate (equivalent to the posterior mean) under a  $\mathcal{N}(\theta_0 = 0, \sigma^2/\kappa_0)$  prior with different prior strengths  $\kappa_0$ . (If we set  $\kappa = 0$ , the MAP estimate reduces to the MLE.) The data is  $n = 5$  samples drawn from  $\mathcal{N}(\theta^* = 1, \sigma^2 = 1)$ . Right: MSE relative to that of the MLE versus sample size. Adapted from Figure 5.6 of [Hof09]. Generated by `samplingDistGaussShrinkage.m`.

In words,

$$\text{MSE} = \text{variance} + \text{bias}^2 \quad (\text{D.66})$$

This is called the **bias-variance tradeoff** (see e.g., [GBD92]). What it means is that it might be wise to use a biased estimator, so long as it reduces our variance by more than the square of the bias, assuming our goal is to minimize squared error.

#### D.4.3.1 Example: unbiased estimator for a Gaussian variance

One can show (Exercise D.3) that the variance of the ML estimator for the Gaussian variance is

$$\mathbb{V}[\sigma_{\text{mle}}^2] = \frac{2(N-1)}{N^2} \sigma^4 \quad (\text{D.67})$$

and the variance of the unbiased estimator for a Gaussian variance is

$$\mathbb{V}[\sigma_{\text{unb}}^2] = \frac{2\sigma^4}{N-1} = \left( \frac{N}{N-1} \right)^2 \mathbb{V}[\sigma_{\text{mle}}^2] \quad (\text{D.68})$$

Thus we see that although the bias of the unbiased estimator is lower than for the ML estimator, its variance is higher.

#### D.4.3.2 Example: MAP estimator for a Gaussian mean

Let us give an example, based on [Hof09, p79]. Suppose we want to estimate the mean of a Gaussian from  $\mathbf{x} = (x_1, \dots, x_N)$ . We assume the data is sampled from  $x_n \sim \mathcal{N}(\theta^* = 1, \sigma^2)$ . An obvious

estimate is the MLE. This has a bias of 0 and a variance of

$$\mathbb{V}[\bar{x}|\theta^*] = \frac{\sigma^2}{N} \quad (\text{D.69})$$

But we could also use a MAP estimate. In Sec. 7.2.4.1, we show that the MAP estimate under a Gaussian prior of the form  $\mathcal{N}(\theta_0, \sigma^2/\kappa_0)$  is given by

$$\tilde{x} \triangleq \frac{N}{N + \kappa_0} \bar{x} + \frac{\kappa_0}{N + \kappa_0} \theta_0 = w\bar{x} + (1 - w)\theta_0 \quad (\text{D.70})$$

where  $0 \leq w \leq 1$  controls how much we trust the MLE compared to our prior. The bias and variance are given by

$$\mathbb{E}[\tilde{x}] - \theta^* = w\theta^* + (1 - w)\theta_0 - \theta^* = (1 - w)(\theta_0 - \theta^*) \quad (\text{D.71})$$

$$\mathbb{V}[\tilde{x}] = w^2 \frac{\sigma^2}{N} \quad (\text{D.72})$$

So although the MAP estimate is biased (assuming  $w < 1$ ), it has lower variance.

Let us assume that our prior is slightly misspecified, so we use  $\theta_0 = 0$ , whereas the truth is  $\theta^* = 1$ . In Fig. D.2(a), we see that the sampling distribution of the MAP estimate for  $\kappa_0 > 0$  is biased away from the truth, but has lower variance (is narrower) than that of the MLE.

In Fig. D.2(b), we plot  $\text{mse}(\tilde{x})/\text{mse}(\bar{x})$  vs  $N$ . We see that the MAP estimate has lower MSE than the MLE for  $\kappa_0 \in \{1, 2\}$ . The case  $\kappa_0 = 0$  corresponds to the MLE, and the case  $\kappa_0 = 3$  corresponds to a strong prior, which hurts performance because the prior mean is wrong. Thus we see that, provided the prior strength is properly “tuned”, a MAP estimate can outperform an ML estimate in terms of minimizing MSE.

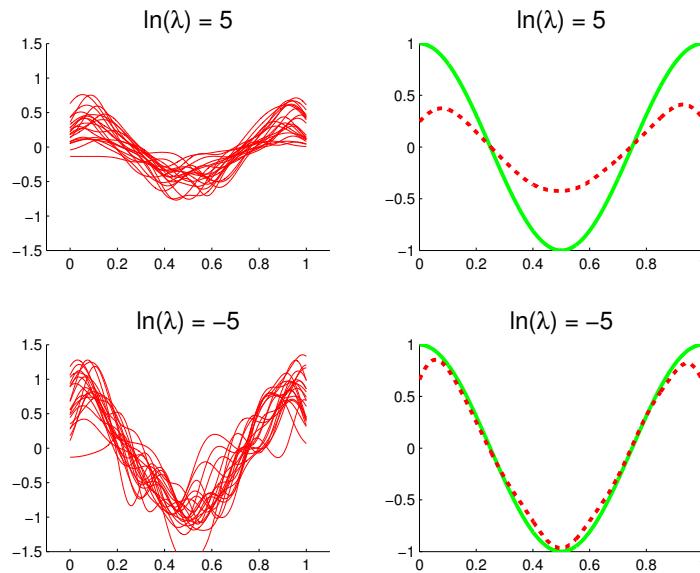
#### D.4.3.3 Example: MAP estimator for linear regression

Another important example of the bias-variance tradeoff arises in ridge regression, which we discuss in Sec. 11.3. In brief, this corresponds to MAP estimation for linear regression under a Gaussian prior,  $p(\mathbf{w}) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{w}|\mathbf{0}, \lambda^{-1}\mathbf{I})$ . The zero-mean prior encourages the weights to be small, which reduces overfitting; the precision term,  $\lambda$ , controls the strength of this prior. Setting  $\lambda = 0$  results in the MLE; using  $\lambda > 0$  results in a biased estimate. To illustrate the effect on the variance, consider a simple example where we fit a 1d ridge regression model using 2 different values of  $\lambda$ . Fig. D.3 on the left plots each individual fitted curve, and on the right plots the average fitted curve. We see that as we increase the strength of the regularizer, the variance decreases, but the bias increases.

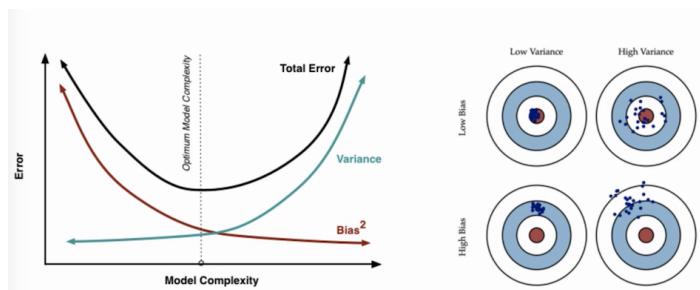
See also Fig. D.4 where we give a cartoon sketch of the bias variance tradeoff in terms of model complexity.

#### D.4.3.4 Bias-variance tradeoff for classification

If we use 0-1 loss instead of squared error, the frequentist risk is no longer expressible as squared bias plus variance. In fact, one can show (Exercise 7.2 of [HTF09]) that the bias and variance combine multiplicatively. If the estimate is on the correct side of the decision boundary, then the bias is negative, and decreasing the variance will decrease the misclassification rate. But if the estimate



*Figure D.3: Illustration of bias-variance tradeoff for ridge regression. We generate 100 data sets from the true function, shown in solid green. Left: we plot the regularized fit for 20 different data sets. We use linear regression with a Gaussian RBF expansion, with 25 centers evenly spread over the  $[0, 1]$  interval. Right: we plot the average of the fits, averaged over all 100 datasets. Top row: strongly regularized: we see that the individual fits are similar to each other (low variance), but the average is far from the truth (high bias). Bottom row: lightly regularized: we see that the individual fits are quite different from each other (high variance), but the average is close to the truth (low bias). Adapted from [Bis06] Figure 3.5. Generated by `biasVarModelComplexity3.m`.*



*Figure D.4: Cartoon illustration of the bias variance tradeoff. From <http://scott.fortmann-roe.com/docs/BiasVariance.html>. Used with kind permission of Scott Fortmann-Roe.*

is on the wrong side of the decision boundary, then the bias is positive, so it pays to *increase* the variance [Fri97a]. This little known fact illustrates that the bias-variance tradeoff is not very useful for classification. It is better to focus on expected loss, not directly on bias and variance. We can approximate the expected loss using cross validation, as we discuss in Sec. 4.4.5.

#### D.4.4 Jackknife

The **jackknife** [Efr87] is an approach to estimating the variability of an estimator based on **resampling** the data. Unlike the bootstrap (Sec. D.3.3), it cannot be used to approximate the full sampling distribution, but it can estimate the bias and variance of many well-behaved estimators.

The approach is based on computing  $N$  estimates, by leaving out one data point at a time, i.e., we compute  $\hat{\theta}_n = \pi(\mathcal{D}_{-n})$ , where  $\mathcal{D}_{-n}$  is the full dataset omitting the  $n$ 'th point. The mean of these estimates is  $\bar{\theta} = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^N \hat{\theta}_n$ .

We can now estimate the bias using

$$\hat{\text{bias}}(\hat{\theta}) = (N - 1)(\bar{\theta} - \hat{\theta}) \quad (\text{D.73})$$

From this, we can compute a bias-corrected estimate:

$$\hat{\theta}_{\text{jack}} = \hat{\theta} - \hat{\text{bias}}(\hat{\theta}) = N\hat{\theta} - (N - 1)\bar{\theta} \quad (\text{D.74})$$

We can also estimate the variance as follows:

$$\mathbb{V}[\hat{\theta}] = \frac{N - 1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^N (\hat{\theta}_n - \bar{\theta})^2 \quad (\text{D.75})$$

where  $\hat{\theta} = \pi(\mathcal{D})$ . From this, we can estimate the standard error of the point estimate.

For example, suppose  $\pi(\mathcal{D}) = \hat{\theta} = \bar{x}$  is the empirical mean. Then  $\hat{\theta}_{-n} = (N\bar{x} - x_n)/(N - 1)$ , and  $\bar{\theta} = \bar{x}$ . The standard error can be estimated using

$$\hat{s}\text{e}(\hat{\theta}) = \left[ \frac{1}{N(N - 1)} \sum_{n=1}^N (x_n - \bar{x})^2 \right]^{\frac{1}{2}} \quad (\text{D.76})$$

### D.5 Frequentist decision theory

In this section, we discuss **frequentist decision theory**. This is similar to Bayesian decision theory, discussed in Sec. 8.1, but differs in that there is no prior, and hence no posterior, over the unknown state of nature. Consequently we cannot define the risk as the posterior expected loss. We will consider other definitions in Sec. D.5.1.

#### D.5.1 Computing the risk of an estimator

We define the frequentist **risk** of an estimator  $\pi$  given an unknown state of nature  $\theta$  to be the expected loss when applying that estimator to data  $\mathbf{x}$  sampled from the likelihood function  $p(\mathbf{x}|\theta)$ :

$$R(\theta, \pi) \triangleq \mathbb{E}_{p(\mathbf{x}|\theta)} [\ell(\theta, \pi(\mathbf{x}))] \quad (\text{D.77})$$

We give an example of this in Sec. D.5.1.1.

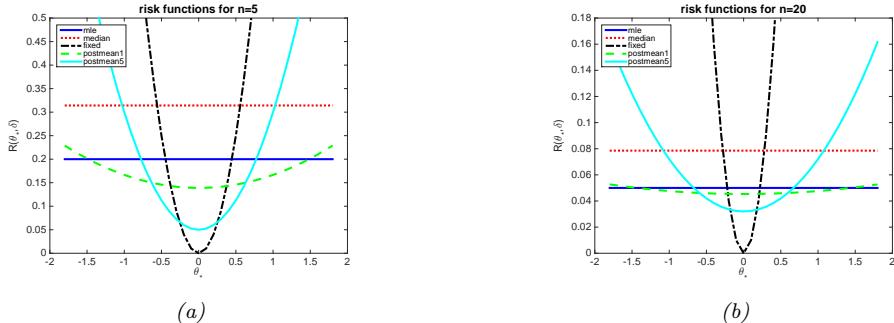


Figure D.5: Risk functions for estimating the mean of a Gaussian. Each curve represents  $R(\hat{\theta}_i(\cdot), \theta^*)$  plotted vs  $\theta^*$ , where  $i$  indexes the estimator. Each estimator is applied to  $N$  samples from  $\mathcal{N}(\theta^*, \sigma^2 = 1)$ . The dark blue horizontal line is the sample mean (MLE); the red line horizontal line is the sample median; the black curved line is the estimator  $\hat{\theta} = \theta_0 = 0$ ; the green curved line is the posterior mean when  $\kappa = 1$ ; the light blue curved line is the posterior mean when  $\kappa = 5$ . (a)  $N = 5$  samples. (b)  $N = 20$  samples. Adapted from Figure B.1 of [BS94]. Generated by `riskFnGauss.m`.

### D.5.1.1 Example

Let us give an example, based on [BS94]. Consider the problem of estimating the mean of a Gaussian. We assume the data is sampled from  $x_n \sim \mathcal{N}(\theta^*, \sigma^2 = 1)$ . If we use quadratic loss,  $\ell_2(\theta, \hat{\theta}) = (\theta - \hat{\theta})^2$ , the corresponding risk function is the MSE.

We now consider 5 different estimators for computing  $\theta$ :

- $\pi_1(\mathcal{D}) = \bar{x}$ , the sample mean
  - $\pi_2(\mathcal{D}) = \text{median}(\mathcal{D})$ , the sample median
  - $\pi_3(\mathcal{D}) = \theta_0$ , a fixed value
  - $\pi_\kappa(\mathcal{D})$ , the posterior mean under a  $\mathcal{N}(\theta|\theta_0, \sigma^2/\kappa)$  prior:

$$\pi_\kappa(\mathcal{D}) = \frac{N}{N + \kappa} \bar{x} + \frac{\kappa}{N + \kappa} \theta_0 = w\bar{x} + (1 - w)\theta_0 \quad (\text{D.78})$$

For  $\pi_\kappa$ , we use  $\theta_0 = 0$ , and consider a weak prior,  $\kappa = 1$ , and a stronger prior,  $\kappa = 5$ .

Let  $\hat{\theta} = \hat{\theta}(\mathbf{x}) = \pi(\mathbf{x})$  be the estimated parameter. The risk of this estimator is given by the MSE. In Sec. D.4.3, we show that the MSE can be decomposed into squared bias plus variance:

$$\text{MSE}(\hat{\theta}|\theta^*) = \mathbb{V}[\hat{\theta}] + \text{bias}^2(\hat{\theta}) \quad (\text{D.79})$$

where the bias is defined as  $\text{bias}(\hat{\theta}) = \mathbb{E} [\hat{\theta} - \theta^*]$ . We now use this expression to derive the risk for each estimator.

$\pi_1$  is the sample mean. This is unbiased, so its risk is

$$\text{MSE}(\pi_1|\theta^*) = \mathbb{V}[\bar{x}] = \frac{\sigma^2}{N} \quad (\text{D.80})$$

$\pi_2$  is the sample median. This is also unbiased. Furthermore, one can show that its variance is approximately  $\pi/(2N)$ , so the risk is

$$\text{MSE}(\pi_2|\theta^*) = \frac{\pi}{2N} \quad (\text{D.81})$$

$\pi_3$  returns the constant  $\theta_0$ , so its bias is  $(\theta^* - \theta_0)$  and its variance is zero. Hence the risk is

$$\text{MSE}(\pi_3|\theta^*) = (\theta^* - \theta_0)^2 \quad (\text{D.82})$$

Finally,  $\pi_4$  is the posterior mean under a Gaussian prior. We can derive its MSE as follows:

$$\text{MSE}(\pi_\kappa|\theta^*) = \mathbb{E} \left[ (w\bar{x} + (1-w)\theta_0 - \theta^*)^2 \right] \quad (\text{D.83})$$

$$= \mathbb{E} \left[ (w(\bar{x} - \theta^*) + (1-w)(\theta_0 - \theta^*))^2 \right] \quad (\text{D.84})$$

$$= w^2 \frac{\sigma^2}{N} + (1-w)^2(\theta_0 - \theta^*)^2 \quad (\text{D.85})$$

$$= \frac{1}{(N+\kappa)^2} (N\sigma^2 + \kappa^2(\theta_0 - \theta^*)^2) \quad (\text{D.86})$$

These functions are plotted in Fig. D.5 for  $N \in \{5, 20\}$ . We see that in general, the best estimator depends on the value of  $\theta^*$ , which is unknown. If  $\theta^*$  is very close to  $\theta_0$ , then  $\pi_3$  (which just predicts  $\theta_0$ ) is best. If  $\theta^*$  is within some reasonable range around  $\theta_0$ , then the posterior mean, which combines the prior guess of  $\theta_0$  with the actual data, is best. If  $\theta^*$  is far from  $\theta_0$ , the MLE is best.

### D.5.1.2 Bayes risk

In general, the true state of nature  $\boldsymbol{\theta}$  that generates the data  $\mathbf{x}$  is unknown, so we cannot compute the risk given in Eq. (D.77). One solution to this is to assume a prior  $\rho$  for  $\boldsymbol{\theta}$ , and then average it out. This gives us the **Bayes risk**, also called the **integrated risk**:

$$R(\rho, \pi) \triangleq \mathbb{E}_{\rho(\boldsymbol{\theta})} [R(\boldsymbol{\theta}, \pi)] = \int d\boldsymbol{\theta} d\mathbf{x} \rho(\boldsymbol{\theta}) p(\mathbf{x}|\boldsymbol{\theta}) \ell(\boldsymbol{\theta}, \pi(\mathbf{x})) \quad (\text{D.87})$$

A decision rule that minimizes the Bayes risk is known as a **Bayes estimator**. This is equivalent to the optimal policy recommended by Bayesian decision theory in Eq. (8.2) since

$$\pi(\mathbf{x}) = \operatorname{argmin}_a \int d\boldsymbol{\theta} \rho(\boldsymbol{\theta}) p(\mathbf{x}|\boldsymbol{\theta}) \ell(\boldsymbol{\theta}, a) = \operatorname{argmin}_a \int d\boldsymbol{\theta} p(\boldsymbol{\theta}|\mathbf{x}) \ell(\boldsymbol{\theta}, a) \quad (\text{D.88})$$

Hence we see that the picking the optimal action on a case-by-case basis (as in the Bayesian approach) is optimal on average (as in the frequentist approach). In other words, the Bayesian approach provides a good way of achieving frequentist goals. See [BS94, p448] for further discussion of this point.

### D.5.1.3 Maximum risk

Of course the use of a prior might seem undesirable in the context of frequentist statistics. We can therefore define the **maximum risk** as follows:

$$R_{\max}(\pi) \triangleq \sup_{\boldsymbol{\theta}} R(\boldsymbol{\theta}, \pi) \quad (\text{D.89})$$

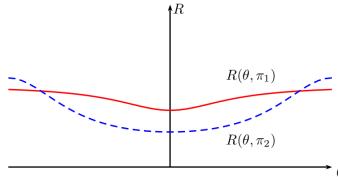


Figure D.6: Risk functions for two decision procedures,  $\pi_1$  and  $\pi_2$ . Since  $\pi_1$  has lower worst case risk, it is the minimax estimator, even though  $\pi_2$  has lower risk for most values of  $\theta$ . Thus minimax estimators are overly conservative.

A decision rule that minimizes the maximum risk is called a **minimax estimator**, and is denoted  $\pi_{MM}$ . For example, in Fig. D.6, we see that  $\pi_1$  has lower worst-case risk than  $\pi_2$ , ranging over all possible values of  $\theta$ , so it is the minimax estimator.

Minimax estimators have a certain appeal. However, computing them can be hard. And furthermore, they are very pessimistic. In fact, one can show that all minimax estimators are equivalent to Bayes estimators under a **least favorable prior**.<sup>1</sup> In most statistical situations (excluding game theoretic ones), assuming nature is an adversary is not a reasonable assumption.

### D.5.2 Consistent estimators

Suppose we have a dataset  $\mathcal{D} = \{\mathbf{x}_n : n = 1 : N\}$  where the samples  $\mathbf{x}_n \in \mathcal{X}$  are generated from a distribution  $p(\mathbf{x}|\boldsymbol{\theta}^*)$ , where  $\boldsymbol{\theta}^* \in \Theta$  is the true parameter. Furthermore, suppose the parameters are **identifiable**, meaning that  $p(\mathcal{D}|\boldsymbol{\theta}) = p(\mathcal{D}|\boldsymbol{\theta}')$  iff  $\boldsymbol{\theta} = \boldsymbol{\theta}'$  for any dataset  $\mathcal{D}$ . Then we say that an estimator  $\pi : \mathcal{X}^N \rightarrow \Theta$  is a **consistent estimator** if  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}}(\mathcal{D}) \rightarrow \boldsymbol{\theta}^*$  as  $N \rightarrow \infty$  (where the arrow denotes convergence in probability). In other words, the procedure  $\pi$  recovers the true parameter (or a subset of it) in the limit of infinite data. This is equivalent to minimizing the 0-1 loss,  $\mathcal{L}(\boldsymbol{\theta}^*, \hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}}) = \mathbb{I}(\boldsymbol{\theta}^* \neq \hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}})$ . An example of a consistent estimator is the maximum likelihood estimator (MLE).

Note that an estimator can be unbiased but not consistent. For example, consider the estimator  $\pi(\{\mathbf{x}_1, \dots, \mathbf{x}_N\}) = \mathbf{x}_N$ . This is an unbiased estimator of the mean, since  $\mathbb{E}[\pi(\mathcal{D})] = \mathbb{E}[\mathbf{x}]$ . But the sampling distribution of  $\pi(\mathcal{D})$  does not converge to a fixed value, so it cannot converge to the point  $\boldsymbol{\theta}^*$ .

Although consistency is a desirable property, it is of somewhat limited usefulness in practice since most real datasets do not come from our chosen model family (i.e., there is no  $\boldsymbol{\theta}^*$  such that  $p(\cdot|\boldsymbol{\theta}^*)$  generates the observed data  $\mathcal{D}$ ). In practice, it is more useful to find estimators that minimize some discrepancy measure between the empirical distribution  $p_D(\mathbf{x}|\mathcal{D})$  and the estimated distribution  $p(\mathbf{x}|\hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}})$ . If we use KL divergence as our discrepancy measure, our estimate becomes the MLE.

1. In the context of bandit algorithms (Sec. 8.3), one can similarly show that the worst-case regret that an optimal Bayesian algorithm can suffer is the same as the minimax regret, as shown in [LS19c].

### D.5.3 Admissible estimators

In Fig. D.5, we see that the sample median (dotted red line) always has higher risk than the sample mean (solid black line), at least under the Gaussian likelihood model. We therefore say that the sample mean **dominates** the sample median as an estimator.

We say that  $\pi_1$  **dominates**  $\pi_2$  if  $R(\boldsymbol{\theta}, \pi_1) \leq R(\boldsymbol{\theta}, \pi_2)$  for all  $\boldsymbol{\theta}$ . The domination is said to be strict if the inequality is strict for some  $\boldsymbol{\theta}^*$ . An estimator is said to be **admissible** if it is not strictly dominated by any other estimator.

In Fig. D.5, we see that the sample median (dotted red line) always has higher risk than the sample mean (solid black line). Therefore the sample median is not an admissible estimator for the mean. However, this conclusion only applies to the Gaussian likelihood model. If the true model for  $p(x|\boldsymbol{\theta})$  is something heavy-tailed, like a Laplace or Student distribution, or a Gaussian mixture, then the sample median is likely to have lower risk, since it is more robust to outliers.

More surprisingly, in Sec. D.5.4, we show that the sample mean is not always an admissible estimator either, even under a Gaussian likelihood model with squared error loss.

It is natural to restrict our attention to admissible estimators. [Wal47] showed the following important result (known as the **complete class theorem**), which essentially says that this restricts us to Bayesian estimators.

**Theorem D.5.1** (Wald). *Every admissible frequentist decision rule is a Bayes decision rule with respect to some, possibly improper, prior distribution.*

However, the concept of admissibility is of somewhat limited usefulness. For example, it is easy to construct admissible but “silly” estimators, as we show in the following example.

**Theorem D.5.2.** *Let  $X \sim \mathcal{N}(\theta, 1)$ , and consider estimating  $\theta$  under squared loss. Let  $\pi_1(x) = \theta_0$ , a constant independent of the data. This is an admissible estimator.*

*Proof.* Suppose not. Then there is some other estimator  $\pi_2$  with smaller risk, so  $R(\boldsymbol{\theta}^*, \pi_2) \leq R(\boldsymbol{\theta}^*, \pi_1)$ , where the inequality must be strict for some  $\boldsymbol{\theta}^*$ . Consider the risk at  $\boldsymbol{\theta}^* = \theta_0$ . We have  $R(\theta_0, \pi_1) = 0$ , and

$$R(\theta_0, \pi_2) = \int (\pi_2(x) - \theta_0)^2 p(x|\theta_0) dx \tag{D.90}$$

Since  $0 \leq R(\boldsymbol{\theta}^*, \pi_2) \leq R(\boldsymbol{\theta}^*, \pi_1)$  for all  $\boldsymbol{\theta}^*$ , and  $R(\theta_0, \pi_1) = 0$ , we have  $R(\theta_0, \pi_2) = 0$  and hence  $\pi_2(x) = \theta_0 = \pi_1(x)$ . Thus the only way  $\pi_2$  can avoid having higher risk than  $\pi_1$  at  $\theta_0$  is by being equal to  $\pi_1$ . Hence there is no other estimator  $\pi_2$  with strictly lower risk, so  $\pi_2$  is admissible.  $\square$

Note that the estimator  $\pi_1(x) = \theta_0$  is equivalent to a Bayes decision rule with respect to a prior distribution concentrated on  $\theta_0$  with certainty, and that this is why it is silly.

### D.5.4 Stein’s paradox

Suppose we have  $K$  random variables with distribution  $X_k \sim \mathcal{N}(\theta_k, \sigma^2)$ , and we observe a single sample. Thus the likelihood model is  $p(\mathbf{x}|\boldsymbol{\theta}) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{x}|\boldsymbol{\theta}, \sigma^2 \mathbf{I})$ . We want to estimate  $\boldsymbol{\theta}$  from  $\mathbf{x}$ . We will use squared loss, so the risk is the MSE, as we showed in Sec. D.5.1.1.

The obvious estimator is to use the sample mean,  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}} = \mathbf{x}$ . However, one can show that, for  $K \geq 3$ , the sample mean is inadmissible. This is known as **Stein’s paradox** [Ste56].

#### D.5.4.1 Sketch of the proof

To prove this result, we just need to create another estimator with lower risk. Consider the estimate

$$\hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}}_{JS}^0 = \left(1 - \frac{K\sigma^2}{\|\mathbf{x}\|^2}\right) \mathbf{x} \quad (\text{D.91})$$

This is called the **James-Stein estimator**. One can show that the risk of this estimator is lower than the risk of the sample mean provided  $K \geq 3$  [Ste56].

The intuition behind this result is the following. Suppose, for notational simplicity, that  $\sigma^2 = 1$ . In this case, we have

$$\mathbb{E} [\|\mathbf{x}\|_2^2] = \mathbb{E} \left[ \sum_k x_k^2 \right] = \sum_{k=1}^K \mathbb{E} [x_k^2] = \sum_{k=1}^K (1 + \theta_k^2) = K + \|\boldsymbol{\theta}\|_2^2 \quad (\text{D.92})$$

where we used the fact that  $\mathbb{V}[x_k] = \mathbb{E}[x_k^2] - \mathbb{E}[x_k]^2 = 1$  and  $\mathbb{E}[x_k]^2 = \theta_k^2$ . This means that, with high probability, the true  $\boldsymbol{\theta}$  is in the sphere  $\{\boldsymbol{\theta} : \|\boldsymbol{\theta}\|^2 \leq \|\mathbf{x}\|^2 - K\}$ . Since the usual estimator  $\mathbf{x}$  is approximately the same size as  $\boldsymbol{\theta}$ , it will almost certainly be outside this sphere. Therefore we should shrink the value of our estimate by a factor of  $(\|\mathbf{x}\|^2 - K)/\|\mathbf{x}\|^2 = 1 - K/\|\mathbf{x}\|^2$ .

Note that the shrinkage factor may be negative, which is undesirable. One can devise a better estimate as follows:

$$\hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}}_{JS}^+ = \left(1 - \frac{K\sigma^2}{\|\mathbf{x}\|^2}\right)_+ \mathbf{x} \quad (\text{D.93})$$

This is called the **truncated or positive part** JS estimator. For some values of  $\boldsymbol{\theta}$ , this can be shown to have lower risk than the original JS estimator, which means the original estimator is inadmissible. For details, see [LC98, ch.5].

#### D.5.4.2 Connection to empirical Bayes

We can derive the above result using empirical Bayes, following Sec. 7.5.2. In particular, consider the posterior mean estimate under a Gaussian prior,  $p(\boldsymbol{\theta}) = \mathcal{N}(\boldsymbol{\mu}, \tau^2 \mathbf{I})$  and likelihood  $p(\mathbf{x}|\boldsymbol{\theta}) = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{x}|\boldsymbol{\theta}, \sigma^2 \mathbf{I})$ . From Eq. (7.187), the posterior mean is

$$\hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}} = \lambda \boldsymbol{\mu} + (1 - \lambda) \mathbf{x} = \boldsymbol{\mu} + (1 - \lambda)(\mathbf{x} - \boldsymbol{\mu}) \quad (\text{D.94})$$

where  $\lambda = \sigma^2 / (\sigma^2 + \tau^2)$ .

Suppose, for simplicity, that  $\sigma^2 = 1$  and we set  $\boldsymbol{\mu} = \mathbf{0}$ . Hence

$$\hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}} = (1 - \lambda) \mathbf{x} \quad (\text{D.95})$$

From Eq. (7.185), we have that

$$\hat{\tau}^2 + 1 = \frac{1}{K} \sum_{k=1}^K x_k^2 = \frac{1}{K} \|\mathbf{x}\|^2 \quad (\text{D.96})$$

and hence

$$\lambda = \frac{1}{1 + \hat{\tau}^2} \quad (\text{D.97})$$

Hence

$$\hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}}_{EB} = (1 - \lambda)\mathbf{x} = \frac{\hat{\tau}^2}{1 + \hat{\tau}^2}\mathbf{x} = \left(1 - \frac{K}{\|\mathbf{x}\|^2}\right)\mathbf{x} \quad (\text{D.98})$$

which matches Eq. (D.93) when  $\sigma^2 = 1$ .

#### D.5.4.3 Why is it called a “paradox”?

Suppose we set  $\boldsymbol{\mu} = \bar{x}\mathbf{1}$ , where  $\bar{x} = \frac{1}{K} \sum_{k=1}^K x_k$  is the average of all the observations. This is a reasonable thing to do if the observations are related, since we can pool information from across multiple sources. However, this estimate will have lower risk than the sample mean even if the observations are unrelated. This can lead to paradoxical behavior. For example, suppose we want to estimate the speed of light, tea consumption in Taiwan, hog weight in Montana, and the rainfall in Vancouver.<sup>2</sup> The average of these quantities,  $\bar{x}$ , is not very meaningful. Nevertheless, if we want to estimate the joint vector of parameters  $\boldsymbol{\theta}$ , the shrinkage estimator with  $\boldsymbol{\mu} = \bar{x}\mathbf{1}$  will reduce the MSE compared to the sample mean. However, any particular component (such as the speed of light) would improve for some parameter values, and deteriorate for others.

## D.6 Empirical risk minimization

In this section, we consider how to apply frequentist decision theory in the context of supervised learning.

### D.6.1 Empirical risk

In standard accounts of frequentist decision theory used in statistics textbooks, there is a single unknown “state of nature”, corresponding to the unknown parameters  $\boldsymbol{\theta}^*$  of some model, and we define the risk as in Eq. (D.77), namely  $R(\pi, \boldsymbol{\theta}^*) = \mathbb{E}_{p(\mathcal{D}|\boldsymbol{\theta}^*)} [\ell(\boldsymbol{\theta}^*, \pi(\mathcal{D}))]$ .

In supervised learning, we have a different unknown state of nature (namely the output  $y$ ) for each input  $\mathbf{x}$ , and our estimator  $\pi$  is a prediction function  $\hat{y} = f(\mathbf{x})$ , and the state of nature is the true distribution  $p^*(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y})$ . Thus the risk of an estimator as follows:

$$R(f, p^*) = R(f) \triangleq \mathbb{E}_{p^*(\mathbf{x})p^*(y|\mathbf{x})} [\ell(\mathbf{y}, f(\mathbf{x}))] \quad (\text{D.99})$$

This is called the **population risk**, since the expectations are taken wrt the true joint distribution  $p^*(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y})$ . Of course,  $p^*$  is unknown, but we can approximate it using the empirical distribution with  $N$  samples:

$$p_D(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y}|\mathcal{D}) \triangleq \frac{1}{|\mathcal{D}|} \sum_{(\mathbf{x}_n, \mathbf{y}_n) \in \mathcal{D}} \delta(\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}_n)\delta(\mathbf{y} - \mathbf{y}_n) \quad (\text{D.100})$$

---

2. This example is based on [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/James-Stein\\_estimator](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/James-Stein_estimator). See also [EM75].

where  $p_D(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y}) = p_{\text{train}}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y})$ . Plugging this in gives us the **empirical risk**:

$$R(f, \mathcal{D}) \triangleq \mathbb{E}_{p_D(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y})} [\ell(\mathbf{y}, f(\mathbf{x}))] = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^N \ell(\mathbf{y}_n, f(\mathbf{x}_n)) \quad (\text{D.101})$$

Note that  $R(f, \mathcal{D})$  is a random variable, since it depends of the training set.

A natural way to choose the predictor is to use

$$\hat{f}_{\text{ERM}} = \underset{f \in \mathcal{H}}{\operatorname{argmin}} R(f, \mathcal{D}) = \underset{f \in \mathcal{H}}{\operatorname{argmin}} \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^N \ell(\mathbf{y}_n, f(\mathbf{x}_n)) \quad (\text{D.102})$$

where we optimize over a specific **hypothesis space**  $\mathcal{H}$  of functions. This is called **empirical risk minimization (ERM)**.

#### D.6.1.1 Approximation error vs estimation error

In this section, we analyze the theoretical performance of functions that are fit using the ERM principle. Let  $f^{**} = \underset{f}{\operatorname{argmin}} R(f)$  be the function that achieves the minimal possible population risk, where we optimize over all possible functions. Of course, we cannot consider all possible functions, so let us also define  $f^* = \underset{f \in \mathcal{H}}{\operatorname{argmin}} R(f)$  to be the best function in our hypothesis space,  $\mathcal{H}$ . Unfortunately we cannot compute  $f^*$ , since we cannot compute the population risk, so let us finally define the prediction function that minimizes the empirical risk in our hypothesis space:

$$f_N^* = \underset{f \in \mathcal{H}}{\operatorname{argmin}} R(f, \mathcal{D}) = \underset{f \in \mathcal{H}}{\operatorname{argmin}} \mathbb{E}_{p_{\text{train}}} [\ell(\mathbf{y}, f(\mathbf{x}))] \quad (\text{D.103})$$

One can show [BB08] that the risk of our chosen predictor compared to the best possible predictor can be decomposed into two terms, as follows:

$$\mathbb{E}_{p^*} [R(f_N^*) - R(f^{**})] = \underbrace{R(f^*) - R(f^{**})}_{\mathcal{E}_{\text{app}}(\mathcal{H})} + \underbrace{\mathbb{E}_{p^*} [R(f_N^*) - R(f^*)]}_{\mathcal{E}_{\text{est}}(\mathcal{H}, N)} \quad (\text{D.104})$$

The first term,  $\mathcal{E}_{\text{app}}(\mathcal{H})$ , is the **approximation error**, which measures how closely  $\mathcal{H}$  can model the true optimal function  $f^{**}$ . The second term,  $\mathcal{E}_{\text{est}}(\mathcal{H}, N)$ , is the **estimation error** or **generalization error**, which measures the difference in estimated risks due to having a finite training set. We can approximate this by the difference between the training set error and the test set error, using two empirical distributions drawn from  $p^*$ :

$$\mathbb{E}_{p^*} [R(f_N^*) - R(f^*)] \approx \mathbb{E}_{p_{\text{train}}} [\ell(\mathbf{y}, f_N^*(\mathbf{x}))] - \mathbb{E}_{p_{\text{test}}} [\ell(\mathbf{y}, f_N^*(\mathbf{x}))] \quad (\text{D.105})$$

This difference is often called the **generalization gap**.

We can decrease the approximation error by using a more expressive family of functions  $\mathcal{H}$ , but this usually increases the generalization error, due to overfitting. We discuss solutions to this tradeoff below.

### D.6.1.2 Regularized risk

To avoid the chance of overfitting, it is common to add a complexity penalty to the objective function, giving us the **regularized empirical risk**:

$$R_\lambda(f, \mathcal{D}) = R(f, \mathcal{D}) + \lambda C(f) \quad (\text{D.106})$$

where  $C(f)$  measures the complexity of the prediction function  $f(\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta})$  and  $\lambda \geq 0$ , which is known as a **hyperparameter**, controls the strength of the complexity penalty. (We discuss how to pick  $\lambda$  in Sec. D.6.2.)

In practice, we usually work with parametric functions, and apply the regularizer to the parameters themselves. This yields the following form of the objective:

$$R_\lambda(\boldsymbol{\theta}, \mathcal{D}) = R(\boldsymbol{\theta}, \mathcal{D}) + \lambda C(\boldsymbol{\theta}) \quad (\text{D.107})$$

Note that, if the loss function is log loss, and the regularizer is a negative log prior, the regularized risk is given by

$$R_\lambda(\boldsymbol{\theta}, \mathcal{D}) = -\frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^N \log p(\mathbf{y}_n | \mathbf{x}_n, \boldsymbol{\theta}) - \lambda \log p(\boldsymbol{\theta}) \quad (\text{D.108})$$

Minimizing this is equivalent to MAP estimation.

### D.6.2 Structural risk

A natural way to estimate the hyperparameters is to minimize for the lowest achievable empirical risk:

$$\hat{\lambda} = \operatorname{argmin}_{\lambda} \min_{\boldsymbol{\theta}} R_\lambda(\boldsymbol{\theta}, \mathcal{D}) \quad (\text{D.109})$$

(This is an example of **bilevel optimization**, also called **nested optimization**.) Unfortunately, this technique will not work, since it will always pick the least amount of regularization, i.e.,  $\hat{\lambda} = 0$ . To see this, note that

$$\operatorname{argmin}_{\lambda} \min_{\boldsymbol{\theta}} R_\lambda(\boldsymbol{\theta}, \mathcal{D}) = \operatorname{argmin}_{\lambda} \min_{\boldsymbol{\theta}} R(\boldsymbol{\theta}, \mathcal{D}) + \lambda C(\boldsymbol{\theta}) \quad (\text{D.110})$$

which is minimized by setting  $\lambda = 0$ . The problem is that the empirical risk underestimates the population risk, resulting in overfitting when we choose  $\lambda$ . This is called **optimism of the training error**.

If we knew the regularized population risk  $R_\lambda(\boldsymbol{\theta})$ , instead of the regularized empirical risk  $R_\lambda(\boldsymbol{\theta}, \mathcal{D})$ , we could use it to pick a model of the right complexity (e.g., value of  $\lambda$ ). This is known as **structural risk minimization** [Vap98]. There are two main ways to estimate the population risk for a given model (value of  $\lambda$ ), namely cross-validation (Sec. D.6.3), and statistical learning theory (Sec. D.6.4), which we discuss below.

### D.6.3 Cross-validation

In this section, we discuss a simple way to estimate the population risk for a supervised learning setup. We simply partition the dataset into two, the part used for training the model, and a second part, called the **validation set** or **holdout set**, used for assessing the risk. We can fit the model on the training set, and use its performance on the validation set as an approximation to the population risk.

To explain the method in more detail, we need some notation. First we make the dependence of the empirical risk on the dataset more explicit as follows:

$$R_\lambda(\boldsymbol{\theta}, \mathcal{D}) = \frac{1}{|\mathcal{D}|} \sum_{(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y}) \in \mathcal{D}} \ell(\mathbf{y}, f(\mathbf{x}; \boldsymbol{\theta})) + \lambda C(\boldsymbol{\theta}) \quad (\text{D.111})$$

Let us also define  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}}_\lambda(\mathcal{D}) = \operatorname{argmin}_{\boldsymbol{\theta}} R_\lambda(\mathcal{D}, \boldsymbol{\theta})$ . Finally, let  $\mathcal{D}_{\text{train}}$  and  $\mathcal{D}_{\text{valid}}$  be a partition of  $\mathcal{D}$ . (Often we use about 80% of the data for the training set, and 20% for the validation set.)

For each model  $\lambda$ , we fit it to the training set to get  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}}_\lambda(\mathcal{D}_{\text{train}})$ . We then use the unregularized empirical risk on the validation set as an estimate of the population risk. This is known as the **validation risk**:

$$R_\lambda^{\text{val}} \triangleq R_0(\hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}}_\lambda(\mathcal{D}_{\text{train}}), \mathcal{D}_{\text{valid}}) \quad (\text{D.112})$$

Note that we use different data to train and evaluate the model.

The above technique can work very well. However, if the number of training cases is small, this technique runs into problems, because the model won't have enough data to train on, and we won't have enough data to make a reliable estimate of the future performance.

A simple but popular solution to this is to use **cross validation (CV)**. The idea is as follows: we split the training data into  $K$  **folds**; then, for each fold  $k \in \{1, \dots, K\}$ , we train on all the folds but the  $k$ 'th, and test on the  $k$ 'th, in a round-robin fashion, as sketched in Fig. 4.5. Formally, we have

$$R_\lambda^{\text{cv}} \triangleq \frac{1}{K} \sum_{k=1}^K R_0(\hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}}_\lambda(\mathcal{D}_{-k}), \mathcal{D}_k) \quad (\text{D.113})$$

where  $\mathcal{D}_k$  is the data in the  $k$ 'th fold, and  $\mathcal{D}_{-k}$  is all the other data. This is called the **cross-validated risk**. Fig. 4.5 illustrates this procedure for  $K = 5$ . If we set  $K = N$ , we get a method known as **leave-one-out cross-validation**, since we always train on  $N - 1$  items and test on the remaining one.

We can use the CV estimate as an objective inside of an optimization routine to pick the optimal hyperparameter,  $\hat{\lambda} = \operatorname{argmin}_\lambda R_\lambda^{\text{cv}}$ . Finally we combine all the available data (training and validation), and re-estimate the model parameters using  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}} = \operatorname{argmin}_{\boldsymbol{\theta}} R_{\hat{\lambda}}(\boldsymbol{\theta}, \mathcal{D})$ .

### D.6.4 Statistical learning theory

The principal problem with cross validation is that it is slow, since we have to fit the model multiple times. This motivates the desire to compute analytic approximations or bounds on the population risk. This is studied in the field of **statistical learning theory** (SLT) (see e.g., [Vap98]).

More precisely, the goal of SLT is to upper bound the generalization error with a certain probability. If the bound is satisfied, then we can be confident that a hypothesis that is chosen by minimizing the empirical risk will have low population risk. In the case of binary classifiers, this means the hypothesis will make the correct predictions; in this case we say it is **probably approximately correct**, and that the hypothesis class is **PAC learnable** (see e.g., [KV94] for details).

#### D.6.4.1 Bounding the generalization error

In this section, we establish conditions under which we can prove that a hypothesis class is PAC learnable. Let us initially consider the case where the hypothesis space is finite, with size  $\dim(\mathcal{H}) = |\mathcal{H}|$ . In other words, we are selecting a hypothesis from a finite list, rather than optimizing real-valued parameters. In this case, we can prove the following.

**Theorem D.6.1.** *For any data distribution  $p^*$ , and any dataset  $\mathcal{D}$  of size  $N$  drawn from  $p^*$ , the probability that the generalization error will be more than  $\epsilon$ , in the worst case, is upper bounded as follows:*

$$P \left( \max_{h \in \mathcal{H}} |R(h) - R(h, \mathcal{D})| > \epsilon \right) \leq 2 \dim(\mathcal{H}) e^{-2N\epsilon^2} \quad (\text{D.114})$$

*Proof.* Before we prove this, we introduce two useful results. First, **Hoeffding's inequality**, which states that if  $X_1, \dots, X_N \sim \text{Ber}(\theta)$ , then, for any  $\epsilon > 0$ ,

$$P(|\bar{x} - \theta| > \epsilon) \leq 2e^{-2N\epsilon^2} \quad (\text{D.115})$$

where  $\bar{x} = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{i=1}^N x_i$ . Second, the **union bound**, which says that if  $A_1, \dots, A_d$  are a set of events, then  $P(\cup_{i=1}^d A_i) \leq \sum_{i=1}^d P(A_i)$ . Using these results, we have

$$P \left( \max_{h \in \mathcal{H}} |R(h) - R(h, \mathcal{D})| > \epsilon \right) = P \left( \bigcup_{h \in \mathcal{H}} |R(h) - R(h, \mathcal{D})| > \epsilon \right) \quad (\text{D.116})$$

$$\leq \sum_{h \in \mathcal{H}} P(|R(h, \mathcal{D}) - R(h)| > \epsilon) \quad (\text{D.117})$$

$$\leq \sum_{h \in \mathcal{H}} 2e^{-2N\epsilon^2} = 2 \dim(\mathcal{H}) e^{-2N\epsilon^2} \quad (\text{D.118})$$

□

This bound tells us that the optimism of the training error increases with  $\dim(\mathcal{H})$  but decreases with  $N = |\mathcal{D}|$ , as is to be expected.

#### D.6.4.2 VC dimension

If the hypothesis space  $\mathcal{H}$  is infinite (e.g., we have real-valued parameters), we cannot use  $\dim(\mathcal{H}) = |\mathcal{H}|$ . Instead, we can use a quantity called the **VC dimension** of the hypothesis class, named after



Figure D.7: (a) Illustration of the Neyman-Pearson hypothesis testing paradigm. Generated by [neymanPearson2.m](#). (b) Two hypothetical two-sided power curves.  $B$  dominates  $A$ . Adapted from Figure 6.3.5 of [LM86]. Generated by [twoPowerCurves.m](#).

Vapnik and Chervonenkis; this measures the degrees of freedom (effective number of parameters) of the hypothesis class. See e.g., [Vap98] for the details.

Unfortunately, it is hard to compute the VC dimension for many interesting models, and the upper bounds are usually very loose, making this approach of limited practical value. However, various other, more practical, estimates of generalization error have recently been devised, especially for DNNs, such as [Jia+20].

## D.7 Hypothesis testing

Suppose we have two hypotheses, known as the **null hypothesis**  $H_0$  and an **alternative hypothesis**  $H_1$ , and we want to choose the one we think is correct on the basis of a dataset  $\mathcal{D}$ . We could use a Bayesian approach and compute the Bayes factor  $p(H_0|\mathcal{D})/p(H_1|\mathcal{D})$ , as we discussed in Sec. 7.6.6. However, this requires integrating over all possible parameterizations of the models  $H_0$  and  $H_1$ , which can be computationally difficult, and which can be sensitive to the choice of prior. In this section, we consider a frequentist approach to the problem.

### D.7.1 Likelihood ratio test

If we use 0-1 loss, and assume  $p(H_0) = p(H_1)$ , then the optimal decision rule is to accept  $H_0$  iff  $\frac{p(\mathcal{D}|H_0)}{p(\mathcal{D}|H_1)} > 1$ . This is called the **likelihood ratio test**. We give some examples of this below.

#### D.7.1.1 Example: comparing Gaussian means

Suppose we are interested in testing whether some data comes from a Gaussian with mean  $\mu_0$  or from a Gaussian with mean  $\mu_1$ . (We assume a known shared variance  $\sigma^2$ .) This is illustrated in Fig. D.7a, where we plot  $p(x|H_0)$  and  $p(x|H_1)$ . We can derive the likelihood ratio as follows:

$$\frac{p(\mathcal{D}|H_0)}{p(\mathcal{D}|H_1)} = \frac{\exp\left(-\frac{1}{2\sigma^2} \sum_{n=1}^N (x_n - \mu_0)^2\right)}{\exp\left(-\frac{1}{2\sigma^2} \sum_{n=1}^N (x_n - \mu_1)^2\right)} \quad (\text{D.119})$$

$$= \exp\left(\frac{1}{2\sigma^2}(2N\bar{x}(\mu_0 - \mu_1) + N\mu_1^2 - N\mu_0^2)\right) \quad (\text{D.120})$$

We see that this ratio only depends on the observed data via its mean,  $\bar{x}$ . This is an example of a **test statistic**  $\tau(\mathcal{D})$ , which is a scalar sufficient statistic for hypothesis testing. From Fig. D.7a, we can see that  $\frac{p(\mathcal{D}|H_0)}{p(\mathcal{D}|H_1)} > 1$  iff  $\bar{x} < x^*$ , where  $x^*$  is the point where the two pdf's intersect (we are assuming this point is unique).

### D.7.1.2 Simple vs compound hypotheses

In Sec. D.7.1.1, the parameters for the null and alternative hypotheses were either fully specified ( $\mu_0$  and  $\mu_1$ ) or shared ( $\sigma^2$ ). This is called a **simple hypothesis** test. In general, a hypothesis might not fully specify all the parameters; this is called a **compound hypothesis**. In this case, we should integrate out these unknown parameters, as in the Bayesian approach, since a hypothesis with more parameters will always have higher likelihood. As an approximation, we can “maximize them out”, which gives us the maximum likelihood ratio test:

$$\frac{p(H_0|\mathcal{D})}{p(H_1|\mathcal{D})} = \frac{\int_{\boldsymbol{\theta} \in H_0} p(\boldsymbol{\theta})p_{\boldsymbol{\theta}}(\mathcal{D})}{\int_{\boldsymbol{\theta} \in H_1} p(\boldsymbol{\theta})p_{\boldsymbol{\theta}}(\mathcal{D})} \approx \frac{\max_{\boldsymbol{\theta} \in H_0} p_{\boldsymbol{\theta}}(\mathcal{D})}{\max_{\boldsymbol{\theta} \in H_1} p_{\boldsymbol{\theta}}(\mathcal{D})} \quad (\text{D.121})$$

## D.7.2 Null hypothesis significance testing (NHST)

Rather than assuming 0-1 loss, it is conventional to design the decision rule so that it has a **type I error rate** (the probability of accidentally rejecting the null hypothesis  $H_0$ ) of  $\alpha$ . (See Sec. 8.1.3 for details on error rates of binary decision rules.) The error rate  $\alpha$  is called the **significance** of the test. Hence the overall approach is called **null hypothesis significance testing** or **NHST**.

In our Gaussian mean example, we see from Fig. D.7a that the type I error rate is the vertical shaded blue area:

$$\alpha(\mu_0) = p(\text{reject } H_0 | H_0 \text{ is true}) \quad (\text{D.122})$$

$$= p(\bar{X}(\tilde{\mathcal{D}}) > x^* | \tilde{\mathcal{D}} \sim H_0) \quad (\text{D.123})$$

$$= p\left(\frac{\bar{X} - \mu_0}{\sigma/\sqrt{N}} > \frac{x^* - \mu_0}{\sigma/\sqrt{N}}\right) \quad (\text{D.124})$$

Hence  $x^* = z_\alpha \sigma/\sqrt{N} + \mu_0$ , where  $z_\alpha$  is the upper  $\alpha$  quantile of the standard Normal.

The type II error rate is the probability we accidentally accept the null when the alternative is true:

$$\beta(\mu_1) = p(\text{type II error}) = p(\text{accept } H_0 | H_1 \text{ is true}) = p(\tau(\tilde{\mathcal{D}}) < \tau^* | \tilde{\mathcal{D}} \sim H_1) \quad (\text{D.125})$$

This is shown by the horizontal shaded red area in Fig. D.7a. We define the **power** of a test as  $1 - \beta(\mu_1)$ ; this is the probability that we reject  $H_0$  given that  $H_1$  is true. In other words, it is the ability to correctly recognize that the null hypothesis is wrong. Clearly the least power occurs if  $\mu_1 = \mu_0$  (so the curves overlap); in this case, we have  $1 - \beta(\mu_1) = \alpha(\mu_0)$ . As  $\mu_1$  and  $\mu_0$  become further apart, the power approaches 1 (because the shaded red area gets smaller,  $\beta \rightarrow 0$ ). If we have two tests,  $A$  and  $B$ , where  $\text{power}(B) \geq \text{power}(A)$  for the same type I error rate, we say  **$B$  dominates  $A$** . See Fig. D.7b. A test with highest power under  $H_1$  amongst all tests with significance level  $\alpha$  is called a **most powerful test**. It turns out that the likelihood ratio test is a most powerful test, a result known as the **Neyman-Pearson lemma**.

	LH	RH	
Male	9	43	$N_1 = 52$
Female	4	44	$N_2 = 48$
Totals	13	87	100

Table D.2: A  $2 \times 2$  contingency table from [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Contingency\\_table](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Contingency_table). The MLEs for the left handedness rate in males and females are  $\hat{\theta}_1 = 9/52 = 0.1731$  and  $\hat{\theta}_2 = 4/48 = 0.0417$ .

### D.7.3 t-test

Suppose we have two sets of paired samples,  $y_i^1$  and  $y_i^2$ , for  $i = 1 : N$ . For example,  $y_i^1$  might be the blood pressure of person  $i$  before taking a drug, and  $y_i^2$  might be the blood pressure of the same person after taking the drug. Let  $x_i = y_i^1 - y_i^2$ . It is often reasonable to assume that  $x_i \sim \mathcal{N}(\mu, \sigma^2)$ , where  $\mu$  is the unknown effect of the drug on blood pressure.

Suppose we want to test the point null hypothesis  $H_0 : \mu = 0$  (i.e., that the drug has no effect) given samples  $\mathbf{x} = (x_1, \dots, x_N)$ . Let  $\bar{x} = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{i=1}^N x_i$  be the test statistic. One can show that the sampling distribution of  $\bar{x}$  under the null hypothesis is given by

$$p(\bar{x}|\mu) = \mathcal{T}(\bar{x}|\mu, s^2/N, N-1) \quad (\text{D.126})$$

This has exactly the same form as the posterior  $p(\mu|\mathbf{x})$  in Eq. (7.217), derived from the same Gaussian likelihood with an uninformative prior. However, the interpretation is quite different: in the sampling distribution, the data (and hence  $\bar{x}$ ) is random, and the parameter  $\mu$  is fixed, whereas in the Bayesian posterior, the data  $\mathbf{x}$  is fixed, and the parameter  $\mu$  is unknown and hence random.

To derive a hypothesis test, we will use the following decision rule: accept  $H_0$  iff  $\bar{x} \leq x^*$ , where  $x^*$  is chosen so that  $p(\bar{x} \geq x^*|\mu) = 1 - \alpha$ , where  $\alpha = 0.05$  is the significance level. This procedure is called a (one-sample) **t-test**. (See also Sec. 7.6.7.2 for a Bayesian version of this test.)

### D.7.4 $\chi^2$ test

Suppose we have two sets of unpaired samples,  $\mathcal{X} = \{\mathbf{x}_1, \dots, \mathbf{x}_N\}$  sampled from  $P$  and  $\mathcal{X}' = \{\tilde{\mathbf{x}}_1, \dots, \tilde{\mathbf{x}}_M\}$  sampled from  $Q$ , and we want to test the hypothesis  $H_0 : P = Q$  vs  $H_1 : P \neq Q$ . This is called a **two-sample test**.

There are many ways to perform such tests, depending on the nature of the data. In this section, we assume the data corresponds to frequencies of a binary event from two different groups. For example, suppose we want to know if left-handedness is more common in men than women given the data shown in the contingency table Table D.2. Let the null hypothesis be that gender is independent of handedness, i.e.,  $P = Q$ .

To test this hypothesis, we need some kind of summary statistic for the data table, call it  $\tau(\mathcal{D})$ . We are free to choose any summary statistic that we like. This is often chosen so that the sampling distribution of the statistic under the null hypothesis is easy to compute. In the context of contingency tables, it is common to use the **chi-squared statistic**, which is a function of the difference between the observed counts,  $O_{ij}$ , and the counts we would expect if the row and column variables were

independent,  $E_{ij}$ . More precisely, the chi-squared statistic is defined as follows:

$$\chi^2(\mathcal{D}) \triangleq \sum_{i=1}^I \sum_{j=1}^J \frac{(O_{ij} - E_{ij})^2}{E_{ij}} \quad (\text{D.127})$$

$$E_{ij} = N \hat{\theta}_{i\cdot} \hat{\theta}_{\cdot j} \quad (\text{D.128})$$

$$\hat{\theta}_{i\cdot} \triangleq \frac{1}{N} \sum_{j=1}^J O_{ij} \quad (\text{D.129})$$

$$\hat{\theta}_{\cdot j} \triangleq \frac{1}{N} \sum_{i=1}^I O_{ij} \quad (\text{D.130})$$

where  $I$  is the number of rows and  $J$  is the number of columns.

One can show that the chi-squared statistic of a contingency table  $\tilde{\mathcal{D}}$  sampled from the null distribution has a chi-squared distribution, i.e.,

$$\chi^2(\tilde{\mathcal{D}}) | H_0 \sim \chi_\nu^2(\cdot) \quad (\text{D.131})$$

where  $\nu = (I - 1)(J - 1)$  is the number of degrees of freedom. (A proof of this result can be found in standard frequentist textbooks, such as [Ric95].) The critical value  $c^*$  to reject the null hypothesis at level  $\alpha = 0.95$  is given by solving

$$\alpha = \Pr(\chi^2(\tilde{\mathcal{D}}) > c^* | \tilde{\mathcal{D}} \sim H_0) \quad (\text{D.132})$$

If  $\chi^2(\mathcal{D}) < c^*$ , we do not reject the null hypothesis. This overall approach is called **Pearson's chi-squared test** (to distinguish it from other tests that rely on the  $\chi^2$ -distribution).

For the handedness data in Table D.2, we find  $\chi^2(\mathcal{D}) = 1.77$  and  $c^* = 3.8415$  (see `chisquaredTest-Demo.m` for the code). Hence we conclude that handedness and gender are independent, which seems a bit odd given the large discrepancy in the estimated rates.

When the sample sizes are small, **Fisher's exact test**<sup>3</sup> is an alternative test that can be used to analyse 2x2 contingency tables. Many other tests can also be applied.<sup>4</sup> Of course, rather than trying to choose a suitable test heuristic, we can also just perform a Bayesian analysis, as shown in Sec. 7.6.7.1 (which in this case finds that the left handedness rate of males *is* significantly larger).

## D.7.5 p-values

When we reject  $H_0$  we often say the result is **statistically significant** at level  $\alpha$ . However, the result may be statistically significant but not practically significant, depending on how far from the decision boundary the test statistic is.

Rather than arbitrarily declaring a result as significant or not, it is preferable to quote the **p-value**. This is defined as the probability, under the null hypothesis, of observing a test statistic that is as large or larger than that actually observed:

$$\text{pval}(\tau(\mathcal{D})) \triangleq \Pr(\tau(\tilde{\mathcal{D}}) \geq \tau(\mathcal{D}) | \tilde{\mathcal{D}} \sim H_0) \quad (\text{D.133})$$

3. See [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Fisher%27s\\_exact\\_test](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Fisher%27s_exact_test).

4. See e.g., <http://www.biostathandbook.com/testchoice.html> for a list.

In other words,  $\text{pval}(\tau_{\text{obs}}) \triangleq \Pr(\tau_{\text{null}} \geq \tau_{\text{obs}})$ , where  $\tau_{\text{obs}} = \tau(\mathcal{D})$  and  $\tau_{\text{null}} = \tau(\tilde{\mathcal{D}})$ , where  $\tilde{\mathcal{D}} \sim H_0$  is hypothetical future data. To see the connection with hypothesis testing, suppose we pick a decision threshold  $t^*$  such that  $\Pr(\tau(\tilde{\mathcal{D}}) \geq t^* | H_0) = \alpha$ . If we set  $t^* = \tau(\mathcal{D})$ , then  $\alpha = \text{pval}(\tau(\mathcal{D}))$ .

Thus if we only accept hypotheses where the p-value is less than  $\alpha = 0.05$ , then 95% of the time we will correctly reject the null hypothesis. However, this does *not* mean that the alternative hypothesis  $H_1$  is true with probability 0.95. Indeed, even most scientists misinterpret p-values.<sup>5</sup> The quantity that most people want to compute is the Bayesian posterior  $p(H_1 | \mathcal{D}) = 0.95$ . For more on this important distinction, see Sec. D.8.2.

## D.8 Pathologies of frequentist statistics

Frequentist statistics exhibits various forms of unintuitive (arguably pathological) properties, which have been pointed out in multiple articles (see e.g., [Mat98; MS11; Kru13; Gel16; Hoe+14; Lyu+20; Cha+19b]). In this section, we summarize a few of them. For example, suppose the 95% confidence interval of some quantity  $\theta$  estimated from data  $\mathcal{D}$  is, say,  $I = [0.1, 0.2]$ , this does *not* mean that  $p(\theta \in I | \mathcal{D}) = 0.95$ , despite what most people think (see Sec. D.8.1). Similarly, if the p-value of the data given some model or hypothesis  $H$  is 0.05, this does not mean  $p(H | \mathcal{D}) = 0.05$ , despite what most people think (see Sec. D.8.2).

### D.8.1 Confidence intervals are not credible

A 95% frequentist confidence interval for a parameter  $\theta$  is defined as any interval  $I(\tilde{\mathcal{D}})$  such that  $\Pr(\theta \in I(\tilde{\mathcal{D}}) | \tilde{\mathcal{D}} \sim \theta) = 0.95$ , as we explain in Sec. D.3.4. This does *not* mean that the parameter is 95% likely to live inside this interval given the observed data. That quantity — which is usually what we want to compute — is instead given by the Bayesian credible interval  $p(\theta \in I | \mathcal{D})$ , as we explain in Sec. 7.1.2.2. These concepts are quite different: In the frequentist approach,  $\theta$  is treated as an unknown fixed constant, and the data is treated as random. In the Bayesian approach, we treat the data as fixed (since it is known) and the parameter as random (since it is unknown).

This counter-intuitive definition of confidence intervals can lead to bizarre results. Consider the following example from [Ber85, p11]. Suppose we draw two integers  $\mathcal{D} = (y_1, y_2)$  from

$$p(y|\theta) = \begin{cases} 0.5 & \text{if } y = \theta \\ 0.5 & \text{if } y = \theta + 1 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases} \quad (\text{D.134})$$

If  $\theta = 39$ , we would expect the following outcomes each with probability 0.25:

$$(39, 39), (39, 40), (40, 39), (40, 40) \quad (\text{D.135})$$

Let  $m = \min(y_1, y_2)$  and define the following interval:

$$[\ell(\mathcal{D}), u(\mathcal{D})] = [m, m] \quad (\text{D.136})$$

For the above samples this yields

$$[39, 39], [39, 39], [39, 39], [40, 40] \quad (\text{D.137})$$

---

5. See e.g., <https://fivethirtyeight.com/features/not-even-scientists-can-easily-explain-p-values/>.

Hence Eq. (D.136) is clearly a 75% CI, since 39 is contained in 3/4 of these intervals. However, if we observe  $\mathcal{D} = (39, 40)$  then  $p(\theta = 39|\mathcal{D}) = 1.0$ , so we know that  $\theta$  must be 39, yet we only have 75% “confidence” in this fact. We see that the CI will “cover” the true parameter 75% of the time, if we compute multiple CIs from different randomly sampled datasets, but if we just have a single observed dataset, and hence a single CI, then the frequentist “coverage” probability can be very misleading.

Another, less contrived, example is as follows. Suppose we want to estimate the parameter  $\theta$  of a Bernoulli distribution. Let  $\bar{y} = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^N y_n$  be the sample mean. The MLE is  $\hat{\theta} = \bar{y}$ . An approximate 95% confidence interval for a Bernoulli parameter is  $\bar{y} \pm 1.96\sqrt{\bar{y}(1-\bar{y})/N}$  (this is called a **Wald interval** and is based on a Gaussian approximation to the Binomial distribution; compare to Eq. (7.23)). Now consider a single trial, where  $N = 1$  and  $y_1 = 0$ . The MLE is 0, which overfits, as we saw in Sec. 4.4.1. But our 95% confidence interval is also  $(0, 0)$ , which seems even worse. It can be argued that the above flaw is because we approximated the true sampling distribution with a Gaussian, or because the sample size was too small, or the parameter “too extreme”. However, the Wald interval can behave badly even for large  $N$ , and non-extreme parameters [BCD01]. By contrast, a Bayesian credible interval with a non-informative Jeffreys prior behaves in the way we would expect.

Several more interesting examples, along with Python code, can be found at [Van14]. See also [Hoe+14; Mor+16; Lyu+20; Cha+19b], who show that many people, including professional statisticians, misunderstand and misuse frequentist confidence intervals in practice, whereas Bayesian credible intervals do not suffer from these problems.

### D.8.2 p-values confuse deduction with induction

A p-value is often interpreted as the likelihood of the data under the null hypothesis, so small values are interpreted to mean that  $H_0$  is unlikely, and therefore that  $H_1$  is likely. The reasoning is roughly as follows:

If  $H_0$  is true, then this test statistic would probably not occur. This statistic did occur. Therefore  $H_0$  is probably false.

However, this is invalid reasoning. To see why, consider the following example (from [Coh94]):

If a person is an American, then he is probably not a member of Congress. This person is a member of Congress. Therefore he is probably not an American.

This is obviously fallacious reasoning. By contrast, the following logical argument is valid reasoning:

If a person is a Martian, then he is not a member of Congress. This person is a member of Congress. Therefore he is not a Martian.

The difference between these two cases is that the Martian example is using **deduction**, that is, reasoning forward from logical definitions to their consequences. More precisely, this example uses a rule from logic called **modus tollens**, in which we start out with a definition of the form  $P \Rightarrow Q$ ; when we observe  $\neg Q$ , we can conclude  $\neg P$ . By contrast, the American example concerns **induction**, that is, reasoning backwards from observed evidence to probable (but not necessarily true) causes using statistical regularities, not logical definitions.

	Ineffective	Effective	
“Not significant”	171	4	175
“Significant”	9	16	25
	180	20	200

Table D.3: Some statistics of a hypothetical clinical trial. Source: [SAM04, p74].

To perform induction, we need to use probabilistic inference (as explained in detail in [Jay03]). In particular, to compute the probability of the null hypothesis, we should use Bayes rule, as follows:

$$p(H_0|\mathcal{D}) = \frac{p(\mathcal{D}|H_0)p(H_0)}{p(\mathcal{D}|H_0)p(H_0) + p(\mathcal{D}|H_1)p(H_1)} \quad (\text{D.138})$$

If the prior is uniform, so  $p(H_0) = p(H_1) = 0.5$ , this can be rewritten in terms of the **likelihood ratio**  $LR = p(\mathcal{D}|H_0)/p(\mathcal{D}|H_1)$  as follows:

$$p(H_0|\mathcal{D}) = \frac{LR}{LR + 1} \quad (\text{D.139})$$

In the American Congress example,  $\mathcal{D}$  is the observation that the person is a member of Congress. The null hypothesis  $H_0$  is that the person is American, and the alternative hypothesis  $H_1$  is that the person is not American. We assume that  $p(\mathcal{D}|H_0)$  is low, since most Americans are not members of Congress. However,  $p(\mathcal{D}|H_1)$  is also low — in fact, in this example, it is 0, since only Americans can be members of Congress. Hence  $LR = \infty$ , so  $p(H_0|\mathcal{D}) = 1.0$ , as intuition suggests. Note, however, that NHST ignores  $p(\mathcal{D}|H_1)$  as well as the prior  $p(H_0)$ , so it gives the wrong results — not just in this problem, but in many problems. Indeed, Sellke, Bayarri, and Berger [SBB01] show that even if the p-value is as low as 0.05, the posterior probability of  $H_0$  can be as high as 30% or more.

### D.8.3 p-values overstate evidence against the null hypothesis

In general there can be huge differences between p-values and  $p(H_0|\mathcal{D})$ . In particular, Sellke, Bayarri, and Berger [SBB01] show that even if the p-value is as low as 0.05, the posterior probability of  $H_0$  can be as high as 30% or more, even with a uniform prior.

Consider this concrete example from [SAM04, p74]. Suppose 200 clinical trials are carried out for some drug. Suppose we perform a statistical test of whether the drug has a significant effect or not. The test has a type I error rate of  $\alpha = 0.05$  and a type II error rate of  $\beta = 0.2$ . The resulting data is shown in Table D.3.

We can compute the probability that the drug is not effective, given that the result is supposedly “significant”, as follows:

$$p(H_0|‘\text{significant}’) = \frac{p(‘\text{significant}’|H_0)p(H_0)}{p(‘\text{significant}’|H_0)p(H_0) + p(‘\text{significant}’|H_1)p(H_1)} \quad (\text{D.140})$$

$$= \frac{p(\text{type I error})p(H_0)}{p(\text{type I error})p(H_0) + (1 - p(\text{type II error}))p(H_1)} \quad (\text{D.141})$$

$$= \frac{\alpha p(H_0)}{\alpha p(H_0) + (1 - \beta)p(H_1)} \quad (\text{D.142})$$

If we have prior knowledge, based on past experience, that most (say 90%) drugs are ineffective, then we find  $p(H_0|\text{'significant'}) = 0.36$ , which is much more than the 5% probability people usually associate with a p-value of  $\alpha = 0.05$ .

Thus we should distrust claims of statistical significance if they violate our prior knowledge.

#### D.8.4 p-values depend on the stopping rule

Another problem with p-values is that their computation depends on decisions you make about when to stop collecting data, even if these decisions don't change the data you actually observed. For example, suppose I toss a coin  $n = 12$  times and observe  $s = 9$  successes (heads) and  $f = 3$  failures (tails), so  $n = s + f$ . In this case,  $n$  is fixed and  $s$  (and hence  $f$ ) is random. The relevant sampling model is the binomial

$$\text{Bin}(s|n, \theta) = \binom{n}{s} \theta^s (1 - \theta)^{n-s} \quad (\text{D.143})$$

Let the null hypothesis be that the coin is fair,  $\theta = 0.5$ , where  $\theta$  is the probability of success (heads). The one-sided p-value, using test statistic  $\tau(\mathcal{D}) = s$ , is

$$p_1 = \Pr(S \geq 9|H_0) = \sum_{s=9}^{12} \text{Bin}(s|12, 0.5) = \sum_{s=9}^{12} \binom{12}{s} 0.5^{12} = 0.073 \quad (\text{D.144})$$

The two-sided p-value is

$$p_2 = \sum_{s=9}^{12} \text{Bin}(s|12, 0.5) + \sum_{s=0}^3 \text{Bin}(s|12, 0.5) = 0.073 + 0.073 = 0.146 \quad (\text{D.145})$$

In either case, the p-value is larger than the magical 5% threshold, so a frequentist would not reject the null hypothesis.

Now suppose I told you that I actually kept tossing the coin until I observed  $f = 3$  tails. In this case,  $f$  is fixed and  $s$  (and hence  $n = s + f$ ) is random. The probability model becomes the **negative binomial distribution**, given by

$$\text{NegBinom}(s|f, \theta) = \binom{s+f-1}{f-1} \theta^s (1-\theta)^f \quad (\text{D.146})$$

Note that the term which depends on  $\theta$  is the same in Equations 3.3 and D.146, so the posterior over  $\theta$  would be the same in both cases. However, these two interpretations of the same data give different p-values. In particular, under the negative binomial model we get

$$p_3 = \Pr(S \geq 9|H_0) = \sum_{s=9}^{\infty} \binom{3+s-1}{2} (1/2)^s (1/2)^3 = 0.0327 \quad (\text{D.147})$$

So the p-value is 3%, and suddenly there seems to be significant evidence of bias in the coin! Obviously this is ridiculous: the data is the same, so our inferences about the coin should be the same. After

all, I could have chosen the experimental protocol at random. It is the outcome of the experiment that matters, not the details of how I decided which one to run.<sup>6</sup>

Although this might seem like just a mathematical curiosity, this also has significant practical implications. In particular, the fact that the **stopping rule** affects the computation of the p-value means that frequentists often do not terminate experiments early, even when it is obvious what the conclusions are, lest it adversely affect their statistical analysis. If the experiments are costly or harmful to people, this is obviously a bad idea. Perhaps it is not surprising, then, that the US Food and Drug Administration (FDA), which regulates clinical trials of new drugs, has recently become supportive of Bayesian methods<sup>7</sup>, since Bayesian methods are not affected by the stopping rule.

### D.8.5 Why isn't everyone a Bayesian?

We have seen that inference based on frequentist principles about multiple random realizations of the data (e.g., methods which use confidence intervals, p-values and NHST) can exhibit various forms of counter-intuitive behavior that can sometimes contradict common sense reason. The fundamental reason is that frequentist inference violates the **likelihood principle** [BW88], which says that inference should be based on the likelihood of the observed data, not on hypothetical future data that you have not observed. Bayes obviously satisfies the likelihood principle, and consequently does not suffer from these pathologies.

Given these fundamental flaws of frequentist statistics, and the fact that Bayesian methods do not have such flaws, an obvious question to ask is: “Why isn’t everyone a Bayesian?” The (frequentist) statistician Bradley Efron wrote a paper with exactly this title [Efr86]. His short paper is well worth reading for anyone interested in this topic. Below we quote his opening section:

The title is a reasonable question to ask on at least two counts. First of all, everyone used to be a Bayesian. Laplace wholeheartedly endorsed Bayes’s formulation of the inference problem, and most 19th-century scientists followed suit. This included Gauss, whose statistical work is usually presented in frequentist terms.

A second and more important point is the cogency of the Bayesian argument. Modern statisticians, following the lead of Savage and de Finetti, have advanced powerful theoretical arguments for preferring Bayesian inference. A byproduct of this work is a disturbing catalogue of inconsistencies in the frequentist point of view.

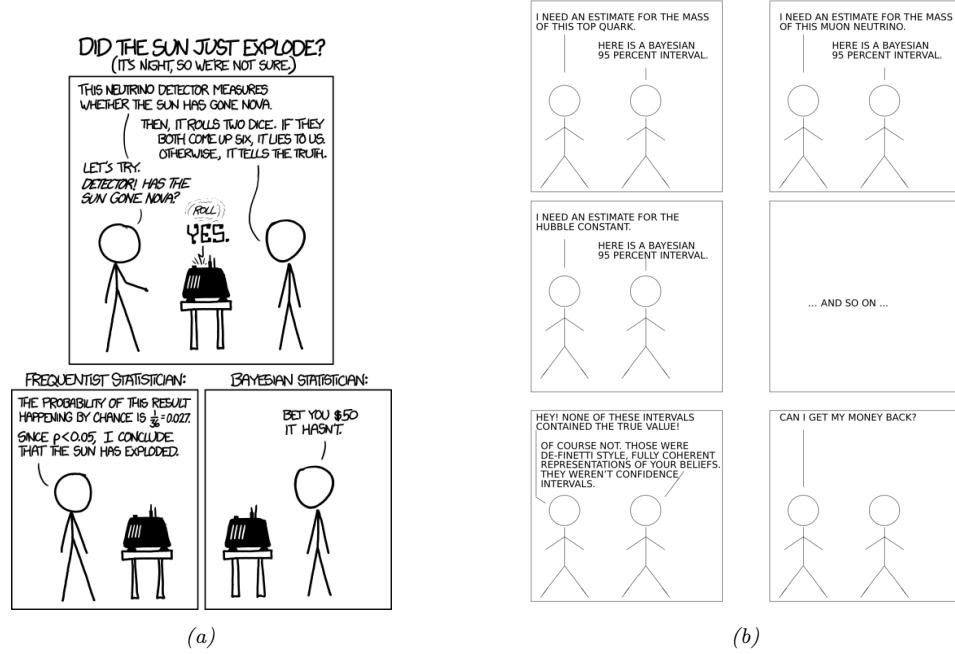
Nevertheless, everyone is not a Bayesian. The current era (1986) is the first century in which statistics has been widely used for scientific reporting, and in fact, 20th-century statistics is mainly non-Bayesian. However, Lindley (1975) predicts a change for the 21st century.

Time will tell whether Lindley was right. However, the trends seem to be going in this direction. For example, in 2016 the American Statistical Association published an editorial warning about the use of p-values and NHST [WL16], and in 2018, the journal *Nature* published a similar article [AGM19].

---

6. If you are skeptical of this claim, consider the following variant of the story. Suppose we agree on the following protocol: if it is an odd day, I toss my coin 12 times, otherwise I toss my coin until I see 3 tails. You tell me it is July 11th; I toss my coin 12 times and observe 9 heads, so I accept (or fail to reject) the null hypothesis. But now suppose you realize you made a mistake, and it’s actually July 12th. So I redo the experiment, toss until I see 3 tails, and end up tossing 12 times (thus again seeing 9 heads). Why should I now reject the null hypothesis?

7. See <http://yamlb.wordpress.com/2006/06/19/the-us-fda-is-becoming-progressively-more-bayesian/>.



*Figure D.8: Cartoons illustrating the difference between frequentists and Bayesians. (a) The pro-Bayesian argument. (The  $p < 0.05$  comment is explained in Sec. D.8.2. The betting comment is a reference to the Dutch book theorem, which is explained in Sec. 8.4.2.) From <https://xkcd.com/1132/>. Used with kind permission of Randall Munroe (author of xkcd). (b) The pro-frequentist argument. Used with kind permission of Larry Wasserman.*

Traditionally, computation has been a barrier to using Bayesian methods, but this is less of an issue these days, due to faster computers and better algorithms, as we discuss in Sec. 7.7. Another, more fundamental, concern is that the Bayesian approach is only as correct as its modeling assumptions. However, this criticism also applies to frequentist methods, since the sampling distribution of an estimator must be derived using assumptions about the data generating mechanism. Fortunately, in both cases, we can check these assumptions empirically using cross validation (Sec. 4.4.5), calibration, and Bayesian model checking (Sec. 7.6.8). As Donald Rubin [Rub84] writes

The applied statistician should be Bayesian in principle and calibrated to the real world in practice. [They] should attempt to use specifications that lead to approximately calibrated procedures under reasonable deviations from [their assumptions]. [They] should avoid models that are contradicted by observed data in relevant ways — frequency calculations for hypothetical replications can model a model's adequacy and help to suggest more appropriate models.

## D.9 Exercises

**Exercise D.1** [ML estimator  $\sigma_{\text{mle}}^2$  is biased]

Show that  $\hat{\sigma}_{MLE}^2 = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{n=1}^N (x_n - \hat{\mu})^2$  is a biased estimator of  $\sigma^2$ , i.e., show

$$\mathbf{E}_{X_1, \dots, X_N \sim \mathcal{N}(\mu, \sigma^2)} [\hat{\sigma}^2(X_1, \dots, X_N)] \neq \sigma^2$$

Hint: note that  $X_1, \dots, X_N$  are independent, and use the fact that the expectation of a product of independent random variables is the product of the expectations.

**Exercise D.2** [Estimation of  $\sigma^2$  when  $\mu$  is known]

Suppose we sample  $x_1, \dots, x_N \sim \mathcal{N}(\mu, \sigma^2)$  where  $\mu$  is a *known* constant. Derive an expression for the MLE for  $\sigma^2$  in this case. Is it unbiased?

**Exercise D.3** [Variance and MSE of estimators for Gaussian variance]

Prove that the standard error for the MLE for a Gaussian variance is

$$\sqrt{\mathbb{V}[\sigma_{\text{mle}}^2]} = \sqrt{\frac{2(N-1)}{N^2}} \sigma^2 \quad (\text{D.148})$$

Hint: use the fact that

$$\frac{N-1}{\sigma^2} \sigma_{\text{unb}}^2 \sim \chi_{N-1}^2, \quad (\text{D.149})$$

and that  $\mathbb{V}[\chi_{N-1}^2] = 2(N-1)$ . Finally, show that  $\text{MSE}(\sigma_{\text{unb}}^2) = \frac{2N-1}{N^2} \sigma^4$  and  $\text{MSE}(\sigma_{\text{mle}}^2) = \frac{2}{N-1} \sigma^4$ .



# Index

- A*\* search, **469**  
à trous algorithm, **446**  
AMSGRAD, 129  
ADADELTA, **128**  
ADAGRAD, **127**  
ADAM, **128**  
PADAM, 129  
RMSPROP, **128**  
RPROP, **128**  
YOGI, 129  
1x1 convolution, **433**
- A/B test, **243**  
abstractive summarization, **599**  
action, **248**  
action potential, **403**  
actions, **233**  
activation function, **393**  
activation maximization, **450**  
active, **132**  
active learning, 353, **614**  
active set, **349**  
activity regularization, **643**  
AD, **406**  
Adaboost.M1, **570**  
AdaBoostClassifier, 570  
Adam, 410  
Adamic/Adar, 710  
adaptive basis functions, **566**  
adaptive instance normalization, **454**  
adaptive learning rate, **127**, **129**  
adaptive policies, **248**  
add-one smoothing, **93**  
additive model, **566**  
ADF, **229**  
adjacency matrix, **734**  
adjusted Rand index, **669**  
admissible, **832**  
adversarial attack, **455**  
adversarial bandit, **249**  
adversarial image, **455**  
adversarial risk, **459**  
adversarial training, **459**  
ADVI, **227**  
affine, **731**  
affine function, **8**
- agent, **14**, **233**, 248  
aggregated gradient, **126**  
aha, **30**  
AI, **16**, 256  
AI ethics, **17**  
AI safety, **17**  
Akaike information criterion, **217**  
aleatoric uncertainty, **7**, **790**  
AlexNet, **440**  
alignment, **476**  
all pairs, **544**  
ALS, **695**  
alternating least squares, **695**  
alternative hypothesis, **218**, **220**, **839**  
Amazon.com, 221  
ambient dimensionality, **650**  
amortized inference, **256**, **645**  
analysis by synthesis, **25**  
anchor, **499**  
anchor boxes, **444**  
ANN, **402**  
approximate posterior inference, **224**  
approximation error, **835**  
ARD, **363**, **516**, **549**  
ARD kernel, **516**  
area under the curve, **238**  
Armijo backtracking method, **113**  
Armijo-Goldstein, **113**  
artificial intelligence, **16**  
artificial neural networks, **402**  
Asia network, **77**  
associative, **762**  
assumed density filtering, **229**, 313  
asymptotic normality, **819**  
asymptotically optimal, **824**  
attention, **474**, **476**  
attention kernel, **591**  
attention matrix, 476, 478  
attention weights, **476**  
AUC, **238**  
AugMix, **581**  
auto-covariance matrix, **800**  
AutoAugment, **581**  
autocorrelation matrix, **801**  
autoencoder, **640**  
autograd, **406**

- automatic differentiation, 406  
 automatic differentiation variational inference, 227  
 automatic relevancy determination, 363, 516, 549  
 AutoRec, 697  
 autoregressive model, 76  
 average link clustering, 672  
 average pooling, 434  
 average precision, 239  
 axis aligned, 62  
 axis parallel splits, 559  
 axis-parallel rectangles, 32  
 axon, 402
- backbone, 399  
 background knowledge, 29  
 backpropagation, 394  
 backpropagation algorithm, 404, 409  
 backpropagation through time, 469  
 backslash operator, 785  
 backsubstitution, 323, 785  
 bag of word embeddings, 299  
 bag of words, 298, 398  
 bagging, 564  
 BALD, 615  
 balloon kernel density estimator, 507  
 band-diagonal matrix, 759  
 bandit algorithms, 831  
 bandit problem, 248  
 bandwidth, 420, 504, 514  
 Barnes-Hut algorithm, 664  
 barycentric coordinates, 658  
 base measure, 372  
 basis, 753  
 basis function expansion, 391  
 basis vectors, 763  
 batch learning, 102  
 batch normalization, 414, 434  
 batch renormalization, 414  
 BatchBALD, 615  
 Bayes error, 100, 491  
 Bayes estimator, 234, 830  
 Bayes factor, 218, 839  
 Bayes model averaging, 31  
 Bayes risk, 830  
 Bayes' rule, 21, 21, 795  
 Bayes' rule for Gaussians, 66  
 Bayes's rule, 21  
 Bayesian, 789  
 Bayesian  $\chi^2$ -test, 221  
 Bayesian active learning by disagreement, 615  
 Bayesian decision theory, 233  
 Bayesian deep learning, 42, 420  
 Bayesian factor regression, 637  
 Bayesian inference, 21, 22  
 Bayesian information criterion, 216  
 Bayesian lasso, 358  
 Bayesian model averaging, 212  
 Bayesian network, 75  
 Bayesian neural network, 420  
 Bayesian Occam's razor, 213  
 Bayesian optimization, 151, 614  
 Bayesian p-value, 223  
 Bayesian personalized ranking, 699  
 Bayesian statistics, 104, 813  
 Bayesian t-test, 222  
 BBMM, 534  
 BBO, 150
- beam search, 469  
 behavioral cloning, 466  
 belief state, 22, 30, 251  
 belief-state MDP, 252  
 Berkson's paradox, 77  
 Bernoulli bandit, 250  
 Bernoulli distribution, 45  
 BERT, 600  
 Bessel function, 516  
 best-arm identification, 249  
 beta distribution, 59, 93, 178  
 beta function, 59  
 beta-binomial, 182  
 BFGS, 118  
 bi-tempered logistic regression, 302  
 bias, 8, 319, 823  
 bias-variance tradeoff, 825  
 biases, 391  
 BIC, 216, 217  
 BIC score, 679  
 biclustering, 689  
 bidirectional RNN, 467  
 big data, 4, 40  
 bigram model, 77, 157  
 bijective, 730  
 bijector, 803  
 bilevel optimization, 836  
 binary classification, 2, 22  
 binary connect, 139  
 binary cross entropy, 281  
 binary entropy function, 153  
 binary logistic regression, 277  
 binomial coefficient, 46  
 binomial distribution, 45, 45  
 binomial regression, 381  
 BinomialBoost, 572  
 bipartite graph, 734  
 bits, 153  
 bivariate Gaussian, 61  
 black box attack, 457  
 black swan paradox, 93  
 blackbox, 150  
 blackbox matrix-matrix multiplication, 534  
 blackbox optimization, 150  
 Blackbox optimization problem, 15  
 blind inverse problem, 71  
 block diagonal, 759  
 block structured matrices, 769  
 Blue Brain Project, 404  
 BMA, 212  
 BN, 414  
 BNN, 420  
 Boltzmann distribution, 50  
 Boltzmann policy, 255  
 BookCrossing, 694  
 Boolean logic, 790  
 Boosting, 566  
 bootstrap, 820  
 borrow statistical strength, 204  
 Boston housing, 356  
 bottleneck, 640  
 bound optimization, 139, 291  
 bounding boxes, 444  
 bowl shape, 283  
 box constraints, 136  
 boxcar kernel, 504, 505  
 bprop, 408

- branching factor, 157  
Bregman divergence, 744  
Brier score, 243, 609  
Brownian motion, 517  
building blocks, 45  
byte-pair encoding, 300
- C4.5, 560  
calculus, 734  
calculus of variations, 379  
canonical correlation analysis, 639  
canonical form, 372, 375  
canonical link function, 383  
canonical parameters, 372, 375  
CART, 559, 560  
Cartesian, 805  
Caser, 702  
CatBoost, 574  
categorical, 49  
categorical PCA, 636  
CatPCA, 636  
Cauchy, 58  
causal, 802  
causal CNN, 473  
causal convolution, 473  
CBOW, 594, 594, 595  
CCA, 639  
cdf, 52, 792  
CelebA, 437  
CelebA-HQ, 439  
center, 352  
centering matrix, 89, 656, 766  
central interval, 174  
central limit theorem, 56, 809  
centroids, 420  
certify, 459  
chain rule for entropy, 156  
chain rule for mutual information, 164  
chain rule of calculus, 737  
chain rule of probability, 795  
change of variables, 804  
channels, 427, 431  
characteristic equation, 772  
characteristic length scale, 516  
Chernoff-Hoeffding inequality, 253  
Chi-squared distribution, 60  
chi-squared distribution, 842  
chi-squared statistic, 841, 842  
choice theory, 384  
Cholesky decomposition, 331  
Cholesky factorization, 783  
CIFAR, 436  
CIFAR-10, 437  
city block distance, 670  
class conditional density, 261  
class confusion matrix, 237  
class imbalance, 238, 296, 543  
class-balanced sampling, 296  
classes, 2  
classical MDS, 652  
classical statistics, 813  
classification, 2  
classification and regression trees, 559  
click through rate, 247, 249  
clinical trials, 249  
closed world assumption, 494  
cloze, 600
- cloze task, 585  
cluster assumption, 604  
Clustering, 667  
clustering, 69  
clusters, 12  
CNN, 3, 392, 427  
co-adaptation, 418  
Co-training, 606  
coclustering, 689  
codebook, 675  
codomain, 729  
coefficient of determination, 328  
CoLA, 602  
cold start, 701  
collaborative filtering, 689, 694  
collapsed lower bound, 532  
column rank, 757  
column space, 753  
column vector, 749  
column-major order, 751  
committee method, 563  
commutative, 762  
compactness, 672  
complementary log-log, 383  
complementary slackness, 132  
complete class theorem, 832  
complete link clustering, 672  
completing the square, 198, 732  
complexity penalty, 93  
composite objective, 110  
compositional, 401  
compositional pattern-producing network, 457  
compound hypothesis, 840  
compound normal Gamma, 370  
computation graph, 408  
computer graphics, 445  
concave, 378, 740  
concentration inequality, 253  
concentration of measure, 461  
concept, 25  
condition number, 94, 113, 757  
conditional computation, 423  
conditional distribution, 64, 795  
conditional entropy, 156  
conditional generative model, 35  
conditional instance normalization, 454  
conditional mixture model, 422  
conditional mutual information, 164  
conditional probability, 791  
conditional probability distribution, 7, 46, 75  
conditional probability table, 75  
conditional variance formula, 798  
conditionally conjugate, 197  
conditionally independent, 74, 791, 796  
confidence interval, 174, 822, 843  
confirmation bias, 604  
conjugate, 745  
conjugate duality, 745  
conjugate duals, 747  
conjugate function, 739  
conjugate gradient, 113, 323  
conjugate gradients, 533  
conjugate prior, 66, 177, 178, 179, 371  
consensus sequence, 154  
conservation of probability mass, 214  
Consistency regularization, 608  
consistent estimator, 351, 831

- constrained optimization, **109**  
 constrained optimization problem, **129**  
 constrained optimization problems, **335**  
 constraints, **109**  
 content constrained, **458**  
 contextual bandit, **249**  
 contextual word embeddings, **598, 598**  
 continual learning, **495**  
 continuation method, **151, 349**  
 continuous, **730**  
 continuous optimization, **107**  
 continuous random variable, **792**  
 contraction, **642**  
 contractive autoencoder, **642**  
 contrastive loss, **499**  
 contrastive tasks, **586**  
 control, **243**  
 control group, **220**  
 control variate, **125**  
 controlled Markov chain, **250**  
 conversions, **247**  
 convex, **282**  
 convex combination, **180**  
 convex function, **740**  
 convex optimization, **109**  
 convex relaxation, **338**  
 convex set, **738**  
 convexity, **738**  
 convolution, **427, 807**  
 convolution theorem, **807**  
 convolution with holes, **446**  
 convolutional Markov model, **473**  
 convolutional neural network, **3, 438**  
 convolutional neural networks, **392, 427**  
 cooling schedule, **151**  
 coordinate descent, **348**  
 coordinate vectors, **753**  
 coreference resolution, **479**  
 coreset, **503**  
 corpus, **592**  
 correlation coefficient, **61, 800**  
 correlation does not imply causation, **801**  
 correlation matrix, **89, 800**  
 cosine kernel, **518**  
 cosine similarity, **593**  
 cost function, **107**  
 covariance, **799**  
 covariance matrix, **61, 799**  
 covariates, **2, 319**  
 COVID, **204**  
 COVID-19, **22**  
 CPD, **75**  
 CPPN, **457**  
 CPT, **75**  
 Cramer-Rao inequality, **824**  
 Cramer-Rao lower bound, **824**  
 credible interval, **174, 193, 843**  
 critical point, **130**  
 cross correlation, **428**  
 cross entropy, **155, 159, 161**  
 cross validation, **97, 837**  
 cross-covariance, **799**  
 cross-entropy, **242**  
 cross-entropy method, **151**  
 cross-over rate, **238**  
 cross-validated risk, **98, 837**  
 crosscat, **691**  
 crowding problem, **663**  
 CTR, **249**  
 cumulants, **376**  
 cumulative distribution function, **52, 792**  
 cumulative regret, **252**  
 cumulative reward, **248**  
 curse of dimensionality, **492**  
 curve fitting, **11**  
 curved exponential family, **372**  
 CV, **97, 837**  
 cyclic permutation property, **756**  
 DAG, **75**  
 data augmentation, **161, 386, 581**  
 data compression, **13, 676**  
 data fragmentation, **560**  
 Data mining, **16**  
 data processing inequality, **167**  
 Data science, **16**  
 data uncertainty, **7, 790**  
 debiasing, **341**  
 decision boundary, **5, 38, 48, 278**  
 decision making under uncertainty, **1**  
 decision rule, **4**  
 decision surface, **5**  
 decision tree, **5**  
 decision trees, **559**  
 decode, **617**  
 decoder, **639, 646**  
 deconvolution, **447**  
 deduction, **844**  
 deep CCA, **639**  
 deep factorization machines, **700**  
 deep graph infomax, **719**  
 deep metric learning, **496, 498**  
 deep mixture of experts, **424**  
 deep neural networks, **10, 391**  
 DeepDream, **451**  
 DeepWalk, **711**  
 default prior, **199**  
 defender's fallacy, **42**  
 define-by-run, **409**  
 define-then-run, **409**  
 deflated matrix, **666**  
 deflation, **777**  
 degree of normality, **57**  
 degrees of freedom, **11, 57, 190, 216, 332**  
 delayed reward, **14**  
 delta function approximate posterior, **37**  
 delta rule, **124**  
 demonstrations, **15**  
 dendrogram, **670**  
 dendrites, **402**  
 denoising autoencoder, **641**  
 dense prediction, **446**  
 dense sequence labeling, **467**  
 density estimation, **13**  
 density kernel, **504**  
 dependent variable, **319**  
 depth prediction, **446**  
 derivative, **734**  
 derivative free optimization, **150**  
 descent direction, **111**  
 design matrix, **3, 765**  
 determinant, **757**  
 Deterministic Training Conditional, **532**  
 development set, **97**

- deviance, **216, 561**  
 DFO, **150**  
 diagonal covariance matrix, **62**  
 diagonal matrix, **759**  
 diagonalizable, **773**  
 diagonally dominant, **760**  
 diameter, **672**  
 differentiable neural computer, **477**  
 differentiable programming, **408, 477**  
 differential entropy, **157**  
 differentiating under the integral sign, **807**  
 differentiation, **735**  
 diffuse prior, **199**  
 dilated convolution, **446, 446, 447**  
 dilation factor, **446**  
 dimensionality reduction, **4, 617**  
 Dirac delta function, **36**  
 directed acyclic graph, **75**  
 directional derivative, **735**  
 Dirichlet distribution, **185, 273**  
 Dirichlet energy, **660**  
 discount factor, **248**  
 discrete AdaBoost, **570**  
 discrete optimization, **107**  
 discrete random variable, **791**  
 discretize, **158, 166**  
 discriminant function, **262**  
 discriminative classifier, **261, 274**  
 discriminative model, **35**  
 dispersion parameter, **379**  
 distance metric, **159**  
 distortion, **617, 676**  
 distribution shift, **460**  
 distributional hypothesis, **592**  
 distributive, **762**  
 divergence measure, **159**  
 DNA sequence motifs, **154**  
 DNN, **10, 391**  
 document retrieval, **593**  
 domain, **729**  
 domain adaptation, **584, 588**  
 domain adversarial learning, **588**  
 dominates, **832, 840**  
 dot product, **762**  
 dot product attention, **477**  
 double centering trick, **767**  
 double sided exponential, **58**  
 dropout, **418**  
 DTC, **532**  
 dual feasibility, **132**  
 dual form, **539**  
 dual problem, **539**  
 dual variables, **545**  
 dummy encoding, **49, 297**  
 Dutch book, **257**  
 Dutch book theorem, **848**  
 dying ReLU, **395**  
 dynamic linear model, **366**  
 Dyspnea, **77**
- E** step, **141, 142**  
 early stopping, **99, 417**  
 earning while learning dilemma, **244**  
 EB, **209**  
 echo state network, **470**  
 ECM, **630**  
 economy sized QR, **783**
- economy sized SVD, **778**  
 edge devices, **138**  
 EER, **238**  
 effect size, **220**  
 eigenfaces, **619**  
 eigenvalue, **772**  
 eigenvalue decomposition, **772**  
 eigenvalue spectrum, **95**  
 eigenvector, **772**  
 eight schools, **207**  
 Einstein summation, **768**  
 einsum, **768**  
 elastic embedding, **662**  
 elastic net, **342, 347**  
 ELBO, **141, 227, 645**  
 elbow, **680**  
 electronic health records, **476**  
 ell-2 loss, **7**  
 ELM, **536**  
 ELMo, **598**  
 ELU, **395**  
 EM, **65, 139, 140, 742**  
 EM algorithm, **335**  
 embedding, **617**  
 EMNIST, **436**  
 empirical Bayes, **209, 212**  
 empirical distribution, **84, 161, 834**  
 empirical Fisher, **122**  
 empirical risk, **6, 835**  
 empirical risk minimization, **6, 91, 123, 835**  
 encode, **617**  
 encoder, **639, 646**  
 encoder-decoder, **445, 446**  
 encoder-decoder architecture, **468**  
 end-to-end learning, **256**  
 endogeneous variables, **2**  
 energy function, **225**  
 ensemble, **212, 419**  
 ensemble learning, **563**  
 entity linking, **495**  
 entity resolution, **495**  
 entropy, **141, 153, 242, 561**  
 entropy minimization, **604**  
 environment, **248**  
 Epanechnikov kernel, **505**  
 epigraph, **740**  
 epistemic uncertainty, **7, 790**  
 epistemology, **790**  
 epoch, **123**  
 epochs, **397**  
 epsilon insensitive loss function, **547**  
 epsilon-greedy, **255**  
 equal error rate, **238**  
 equality constraints, **109, 129**  
 equivalent sample size, **179**  
 equivariance, **433**  
 ERM, **91, 835**  
 error function, **53**  
 estimation error, **835**  
 estimator, **817**  
 evaluation functional, **554**  
 EVD, **772**  
 event, **790, 790, 791**  
 events, **789**  
 evidence, **141, 182, 212, 227**  
 evidence lower bound, **141, 227, 645**  
 evolutionary algorithms, **151**

- EWMA, **103**, 127  
 exact line search, **113**  
 exchangeable, **79**  
 exchangeable with, **204**  
 exclusive KL, **162**  
 exclusive or, **421**  
 exemplar-based models, **491**  
 exemplars, **420**  
 exogeneous variables, **2**  
 expanded parameterization, **73**  
 expectation maximization, **139**, **140**  
 expected complete data log likelihood, **142**  
 expected sufficient statistics, **142**  
 expected value, **54**, **796**  
 experiment design, **614**  
 explaining away, **77**, **197**  
 explanatory variables, **319**  
 explicit feedback, **693**  
 exploding gradient probem, **411**  
 Exploration-exploitation tradeoff, **14**  
 exploration-exploitation tradeoff, **244**, **250**, **703**  
 exploratory data analysis, **4**  
 exponential cooling schedule, **151**  
 exponential dispersion family, **379**  
 Exponential distribution, **60**  
 exponential family, **199**, **371**, **371**, **380**  
 exponential family factor analysis, **635**  
 exponential family PCA, **636**  
 Exponential linear unit, **394**  
 exponential loss, **569**  
 exponentially decaying schedule, **124**  
 exponentially weighted moving average, **103**  
 exponentiated cross entropy, **157**  
 exponentiated quadratic, **514**  
 extension, **26**, **28**  
 extractive summarization, **599**  
 extreme learning machine, **536**
- F**1 score, **239**  
 face detection, **444**  
 face recognition, **444**  
 face verification, **495**  
 FaceNet, **501**  
 factor analysis, **626**  
 factor loading matrix, **627**  
 factorization machine, **700**  
 false alarm rate, **237**  
 false negative rate, **22**  
 false positive rate, **22**, **237**  
 fan-in, **415**  
 fan-out, **415**  
 Fano's inequality, **168**  
 farthest point clustering, **677**  
 FashionMNIST, **436**, **437**  
 fast adaption, **590**  
 fast gradient sign, **456**  
 fast Hadamard transform, **535**  
 fastfood, **535**  
 feasibility, **132**  
 feasibility problem, **109**  
 feasible set, **109**  
 feature crosses, **297**  
 feature detection, **430**  
 feature engineering, **9**  
 feature extraction, **10**  
 feature extractor, **320**  
 feature importance, **575**, **576**
- feature map, **430**  
 feature preprocessing, **9**  
 feature selection, **137**, **168**, **337**  
 features, **1**, **35**  
 featurization, **3**  
 feedforward neural network, **392**  
 Fenchel transform, **745**  
 few-shot classification, **495**  
 few-shot learning, **590**  
 FFNN, **392**  
 FGS, **456**  
 fill-in-the-blank, **585**, **600**  
 filter, **427**  
 filters, **427**  
 FIM, **814**  
 fine-grained classification, **437**, **591**  
 fine-grained visual classification, **583**  
 fine-tuning phase, **583**  
 finite difference, **735**  
 finite difference matrix, **512**  
 finite horizon, **248**  
 finite sum problem, **123**  
 first order, **110**, **285**  
 first order Markov condition, **76**  
 first-order, **116**  
 Fisher information, **200**  
 Fisher information matrix, **120**, **200**, **286**, **813**, **814**, **819**  
 Fisher scoring, **286**  
 Fisher's exact test, **842**  
 Fisher's linear discriminant analysis, **267**  
 FISTA, **349**  
 FITC, **532**  
 fixup, **415**  
 FLANN, **494**  
 flat local minimum, **107**  
 flatten, **397**  
 FLDA, **267**  
 folded, **56**  
 folds, **97**, **837**  
 fooling images, **457**  
 forest plot, **205**  
 forget gate, **471**  
 forward stagewise additive modeling, **567**  
 forward-mode differentiation, **408**  
 forwards KL, **161**  
 forwards model, **25**  
 founder variables, **633**  
 fprop, **408**  
 fraction of variance explained, **625**  
 fraud detection system, **721**  
 frequentist, **789**  
 frequentist decision theory, **828**  
 frequentist statistics, **104**, **813**  
 Frobenius norm, **755**  
 frozen parameters, **584**  
 full conditionals, **229**  
 full covariance matrix, **62**  
 full rank, **757**  
 fully independent training conditional, **532**  
 function, **729**  
 function space, **523**  
 functional analysis, **553**  
 furthest neighbor clustering, **672**  
 fused batchnorm, **415**
- g-prior, **357**  
 gallery, **444**, **494**

- gamma distribution, **59**  
GANs, **588**  
gap, **253**  
Gated Graph Sequence Neural Networks, **714**  
gated recurrent units, **470**  
gating function, **422**  
Gaussian bandit, **251**  
Gaussian discriminant analysis, **261**  
Gaussian distribution, **52**  
Gaussian kernel, **420**, 485, **504**, **514**  
Gaussian mixture model, **69**  
Gaussian process, **420**  
Gaussian processes, **151**, **520**  
Gaussian scale mixture, **72**, 335, 359  
GCN, **715**  
general form, **132**  
generalization, **26**  
generalization error, **835**, 838  
generalization gap, **11**, **835**  
generalize, **6**, **92**  
generalized CCA, **639**  
generalized eigenvalue, **269**  
generalized Lagrangian, **131**, 539  
generalized linear model, **380**  
generalized linear models, **371**  
Generative adversarial networks, **611**  
generative classifier, **261**, **274**  
generative image model, **448**  
Geometric Deep Learning, **705**  
geometric series, **103**, 115  
Gibbs sampling, **229**  
Gini index, **561**  
Gittins index, **252**  
GLM, **380**  
glmnet, **348**  
GLMs, **371**  
global average pooling, **398**, **434**  
global optimization, **107**  
global optimum, **107**, 282  
globally convergent, **108**  
Glorot initialization, **415**  
GloVe, **597**  
GMM, **69**  
GMRES, **323**  
GNN, **392**, **713**  
goodness of fit, **328**  
GoogLeNet, **441**  
GPT, **599**  
GPT-2, **599**  
GPT-3, **599**  
GPUs, **401**  
GPyTorch, **534**  
gradient, **111**, **735**  
gradient boosted regression trees, **573**  
gradient boosting, **571**  
gradient clipping, **412**  
gradient sign reversal, **588**  
gradient tree boosting, **573**  
Gram matrix, **453**, **514**, **760**, **767**  
Gram Schmidt, **761**  
Graph attention network, **716**  
Graph convolutional networks, **715**  
graph factorization, **710**  
graph Laplacian, **660**, 687  
graph neural network, **713**  
graph neural networks, **392**  
graph partition, **687**  
Graph Representation Learning, **705**  
graphical models, **796**  
Graphical Mutual Information, **720**  
graphite, **719**  
GraphNet, **714**  
graphs, **734**  
GraphSAGE, **716**  
GraRep, **711**  
greedy decoding, **469**  
greedy forward selection, **349**  
greedy policy, **250**  
grid approximation, **225**  
grid search, **97**  
group lasso, **345**  
group normalization, **435**  
group sparsity, **345**  
grouping effect, **347**  
groups, **220**  
GRU, **470**  
GSM, **72**  
HAC, **669**  
Haldane prior, **200**  
half Cauchy, **58**, 193  
half normal, 193  
half spaces, **278**  
half-Cauchy distribution, 360  
half-normal distribution, **56**  
Hamiltonian Monte Carlo, **229**, 308  
hard attention, **478**  
hard clustering, **70**, **682**  
hard negatives, **500**  
hard thresholding, **341**, 343  
hardware accelerators, **403**  
harmonic mean, 239  
hat matrix, **323**  
HDI, **175**  
He initialization, **415**  
head terms, **40**  
heads, **399**  
healthy levels game, **32**  
heat map, **430**  
Heaviside, 284  
heaviside step function, **46**, **392**  
heavy ball, **114**  
heavy tail, **40**  
heavy tails, **57**, **334**  
Helmholtz machine, **645**  
Hessian, 283  
Hessian matrix, **736**  
heteroskedastic regression, **55**, **324**  
heuristic function, **469**  
heuristics, **404**  
hidden, **21**  
hidden common cause, **801**  
hidden units, **392**  
hidden variables, **78**, **140**  
hierarchical, **401**  
hierarchical agglomerative clustering, **669**  
hierarchical Bayesian model, **203**  
hierarchical Bayesian models, 33  
hierarchical mixture of experts, **424**  
hierarchical softmax, **295**  
hierarchy, **294**  
highest density interval, **175**  
highest posterior density, **174**  
Hilbert space, **553**

hinge loss, **92**, 152, **543**, 699, 742  
 Hinton diagram, **65**  
 hit rate, **237**  
 HMC, **229**  
 Hoeffding's inequality, **838**  
 holdout set, **837**  
 homogeneous, **76**  
 homoscedastic regression, **55**  
 homotopy, **349**  
 horseshoe prior, **360**  
 HPD, **174**  
 Huber loss, **241**, **336**, 572  
 Huffman encoding, 295  
 human pose estimation, **445**  
 Hutchinson trace estimator, **756**  
 hyper-parameters, 150, **179**  
 hypercolumn, **433**  
 hypergraphs, **734**  
 hypernyms, **294**  
 hyperparameter, **836**  
 hyperparameters, **203**  
 hyperplane, **278**  
 hypothesis space, 26, **835**  
 Hypothesis testing, **218**  
 I-projection, **162**  
 ID3, **560**  
 identifiability, **293**  
 identifiable, 293, **831**  
 identity matrix, **759**  
 iid, **84**, **178**  
 ill-conditioned, 89, **757**  
 ill-posed, **25**  
 ILP, **135**  
 image, **729**  
 image captioning, **464**  
 image classification, **3**  
 image compression, 676  
 image deblurring, **71**  
 image denoising, **71**  
 image inpainting, **71**  
 image patches, **427**  
 image tagging, **288**, **443**  
 image-to-image, **446**  
 ImageNet, 401, **437**, **438**, 440  
 IMDB, 99  
 IMDB movie review dataset, **398**  
 implicit feedback, **699**  
 impostors, **496**  
 improper prior, **201**  
 impulse responses, **731**  
 imputation tasks, **585**  
 inception block, **441**  
 Inceptionism, **451**  
 inclusive KL, **161**  
 incremental learning, **495**  
 indefinite, **760**  
 independent and identically distributed, **178**  
 independent variables, **319**  
 indicator function, **6**, 792  
 induced norm, **755**  
 inducing points, **529**  
 induction, **26**, **93**, **844**  
 inductive bias, **40**  
 inductive learning, **608**  
 inequality constraint, 131  
 inequality constraints, **109**, **129**  
 infeasible, 133  
 inference, **404**  
 inference network, **645**  
 infinite horizon, **248**  
 infinitely wide, **528**  
 infinitely wide neural networks, 417  
 InfoNCE, **500**  
 information, 789  
 information criteria, **216**  
 information diagram, **163**  
 information diagrams, 164  
 information form, **375**  
 information gain, **159**, **615**  
 information gathering action, **7**  
 information projection, **162**  
 information retrieval, 238  
 information state, **251**  
 information theory, **153**, **242**  
 injective, **729**  
 inner product, **553**, **762**  
 input gate, **471**  
 inputs, **35**  
 Instagram, **443**  
 instance normalization, **435**  
 instance segmentation, **448**  
 instance-balanced sampling, **296**  
 instance-based learning, **491**  
 Integer linear programming, **135**  
 integrated risk, **830**  
 integration by parts, 43  
 interaction effects, **297**  
 intercept, **8**  
 interior point method, 133  
 internal covariate shift, **414**  
 interpolate, **9**, **512**  
 interpolated precision, **239**  
 interpolator, **520**  
 interpretable, **13**  
 intrinsic motivation, **255**  
 intrinsic dimensionality, **650**  
 intrinsic Gaussian random field, 512  
 invariant, **200**, **427**  
 inverse, **769**  
 inverse cdf, **794**  
 inverse chi-squared distribution, **190**  
 inverse document frequency, **298**  
 inverse Gamma, 189, 353  
 inverse Gamma distribution, **60**  
 inverse probability, **25**  
 inverse problems, **25**  
 inverse reinforcement learning, **17**  
 inverse Wishart, 94, **195**, 197  
 iris, 2  
 iris dataset, **3**  
 IRLS, **286**  
 isomap, **654**  
 isotropic covariance matrix, **62**  
 ISTA, **349**  
 items, **693**  
 iterate averaging, **125**  
 iterative soft thresholding algorithm, **349**  
 iteratively reweighted least squares, **286**  
 jackknife, **828**  
 Jacobian, 290, 805  
 Jacobian formulation, 736  
 Jacobian matrix, **736**

- James-Stein estimator, **833**  
 JAX, **410**  
 Jeffreys prior, 192, **200**  
 Jensen's inequality, 141, **742**  
 Jeopardy, 236  
 Jester, **694**  
 JIT, **410**  
 jittered, **421**  
 JJ bound, **309**  
 joint distribution, **794**  
 joint probability, **790**  
 JPEG, 676  
 just-in-time compilation, **410**  
 K nearest neighbor, **491**  
 k-d tree, **494**  
 K-means algorithm, **673**  
 K-means clustering, **70**  
 K-means++, **677**  
 K-medoids, **677**  
 Kalman filter, **67**, 367  
 Kalman gain matrix, **367**  
 Karl Popper, 93  
 Karush-Kuhn-Tucker, **132**  
 Katz centrality index, 710  
 KDE, **503**, **505**  
 kernel, **427**, 504  
 kernel basis function expansion, **365**  
 kernel density estimation, 177, **503**  
 kernel density estimator, **505**  
 kernel function, **420**, **511**, **514**  
 kernel PCA, **655**, 689  
 kernel regression, **508**, 522  
 kernel ridge regression, 522, **546**  
 kernel smoothing, **508**  
 kernel trick, **541**  
 keys, **476**  
 keywords, 779  
 KFAC, **122**  
 kink, **680**  
 KISS-GP, **534**  
 KKT, **132**  
 KL divergence, 142, **159**, **241**  
 KNN, **491**  
 Knowledge distillation, **613**  
 knowledge graph, **721**  
 Kronecker product, **767**  
 kronecker product, 313  
 Krylov subspace methods, **533**  
 Kullback Leibler divergence, **241**  
 Kullback-Leibler divergence, 142, **159**  
 L-BFGS, **118**  
 L0 norm, 358  
 L0 regularization, 358  
 L0-norm, **337**, 338  
 L1 loss, 240  
 L1 regularization, 338  
 L1VM, **549**  
 L2, 553  
 L2 loss, 240  
 L2 regularization, 96, 287, 329  
 L2VM, **548**  
 label, **2**  
 label noise, **300**  
 Label propagation, **607**, **713**  
 label smearing, **294**  
 label smoothing, **614**  
 Label spreading, **713**  
 label switching problem, **146**, **682**  
 Lagrange multiplier, **130**  
 Lagrange multipliers, 86, 379  
 Lagrange notation, **735**  
 Lagrangian, **109**, **130**, 339, 379, 777  
 Lanczos algorithm, 631  
 language model, **76**  
 language modeling, **463**  
 language models, 157  
 Laplace, 337  
 Laplace approximation, **225**, 305  
 Laplace distribution, **58**  
 Laplace vector machine, **549**  
 Laplace's rule of succession, **181**  
 Laplacian eigenmaps, **658**, 688, **709**  
 LAR, **349**  
 large margin classifier, **538**  
 large margin nearest neighbor, **496**  
 LARS, **349**  
 lasso, **338**  
 latent coincidence analysis, **497**  
 latent factors, **619**  
 latent semantic analysis, **593**  
 latent semantic indexing, **593**  
 latent space interpolation, **648**  
 latent variable, **68**  
 latent vector, **619**  
 law of iterated expectations, **798**  
 law of total expectation, **798**  
 law of total variance, **798**  
 layer normalization, **435**  
 layer-sequential unit-variance, **415**  
 LCA, **497**  
 LDA, **261**, **263**  
 Leaky ReLU, 394  
 leaky ReLU, **395**  
 learning curve, **100**  
 learning rate, **111**  
 learning rate finder, **410**  
 learning rate schedule, **111**, **124**, **410**  
 learning to learn, **588**  
 learning while earning, 15  
 learning with a critic, 14  
 learning with a teacher, 14  
 least angle regression, **349**  
 least favorable prior, **831**  
 least mean squares, **124**, 326, **367**  
 least squares boosting, **349**, **567**  
 least squares objective, **787**  
 least squares solution, 8  
 leave-one-out cross-validation, **98**, **837**  
 LeCun initialization, **415**  
 Legendre transform, **745**  
 Leibniz notation, **735**  
 LeNet, **435**, **440**  
 level sets, 62, **62**  
 life-long learning, **495**  
 LightGBM, **574**  
 likelihood, **22**, **31**, **795**  
 likelihood dominates the prior, **40**  
 likelihood overwhelms the prior, **31**  
 likelihood principle, **847**  
 likelihood ratio, **28**, **218**, **845**  
 likelihood ratio test, **839**

limited memory BFGS, **118**, 291  
 line search, **112**  
 Linear algebra, **749**  
 linear autoencoder, **640**  
 linear combination, **763**  
 linear discriminant analysis, **261**, **263**  
 linear function, **731**  
 linear Gaussian system, **65**  
 linear kernel, **528**  
 linear map, **753**  
 linear operator, **323**  
 linear program, **132**  
 linear programming, 335  
 linear rate, **113**  
 linear regression, **55**, **319**, 371, 391  
 linear subspace, **763**  
 linear threshold function, **392**  
 linear transformation, **753**  
 linearity of expectation, **797**  
 linearly dependent, 752  
 linearly independent, 752  
 linearly separable, **278**  
 Linformer, **485**  
 link function, **380**, 383  
 link prediction, **721**  
 Lipschitz constant, **730**  
 liquid state machine, **470**  
 LKJ distribution, **195**  
 LMNN, **496**  
 LMS, **124**, **367**  
 local linear embedding, **657**  
 local maximum, **108**  
 local minimum, **107**  
 local optimum, **107**, 282  
 locality sensitive hashing, **494**  
 locally convex, **743**  
 locally linear, 732  
 locally linear regression, **509**  
 locally-weighted scatterplot smoothing, **509**  
 location-scale family, **202**  
 LOESS, **509**  
 log bilinear language model, **596**  
 log likelihood, **84**  
 log loss, **242**, **543**  
 log odds, **47**  
 log partition function, **372**  
 log-sum-exp trick, **52**  
 logistic, **46**  
 logistic distribution, **385**  
 logistic function, **37**, **48**  
 Logistic regression, **277**  
 logistic regression, **37**, **48**, 371  
 logit, **47**, **277**  
 logit function, **48**  
 logitBoost, **571**  
 logits, **50**, **51**, **288**  
 long short term memory, **471**  
 long tail, 40, **40**, **296**  
 Lorentz, **58**  
 Lorentz model, **710**  
 loss function, **6**, **7**, **107**, **233**  
 loss matrix, **233**  
 lossy compression, 675  
 lower triangular matrix, **759**  
 LOWESS, **509**  
 LSA, **593**  
 lse, **52**  
 LSH, **494**  
 LSI, **593**  
 LSTM, **471**  
 M step, **141**  
 M'th order Markov model, 76  
 M-projection, **161**  
 M1, **610**  
 M2, **610**  
 MAB, **248**  
 machine learning, **1**  
 machine translation, **468**  
 Mahalanobis distance, **63**, **491**  
 Mahalanobis whitening, **776**  
 main effects, **297**  
 majorize-minimize, **139**  
 MALA, 448  
 MAML, **589**, **590**  
 manifold, 649, **649**  
 manifold assumption, **607**  
 manifold hypothesis, **650**  
 manifold learning, **649**  
 many-to-one, **729**  
 MAP, **31**  
 mAP, **239**  
 MAP estimate, **234**  
 MAP estimation, 836  
 MAR, **147**  
 margin, **92**, **536**, **569**  
 margin errors, **541**  
 marginal distribution, **64**, **794**  
 marginal likelihood, **22**, **182**, 184, 209, **212**  
 marginalization paradox, **220**  
 marginally independent, **795**  
 Markov chain, **76**  
 Markov chain Monte Carlo, **228**  
 Markov decision process, **249**  
 Markov kernel, **76**  
 Markov model, **76**  
 MART, **573**  
 masked attention, **479**  
 masked language model, **600**  
 matching network, **591**  
 Matern kernel, **516**  
 matrix, **749**  
 matrix completion, **695**  
 matrix determinant lemma, **772**  
 matrix factorization, **695**  
 matrix inversion lemma, 545, **771**  
 matrix square root, 755, **764**, **783**  
 matrix vector multiplication, **533**  
 max pooling, **434**  
 maxent classifier, **294**  
 maximal information coefficient, **166**  
 maximum a posteriori, **31**, **36**  
 maximum a posteriori, **234**  
 maximum entropy, 56, **153**  
 maximum entropy classifier, **294**  
 maximum entropy model, **380**  
 maximum entropy sampling, **615**  
 maximum expected utility principle, **234**  
 maximum likelihood estimate, **31**, **36**  
 maximum likelihood estimation, **83**  
 maximum risk, **830**  
 maximum variance unfolding, **657**  
 MCAR, **147**  
 McCulloch-Pitts model, **403**

- McKernel, **536**  
 MCMC, **228**  
 MDL, **218**  
 MDN, **424**  
 MDP, **249**  
 MDS, **651**  
 mean, **54, 796**  
 mean average precision, **239**  
 mean field, **227**  
 mean function, **380**  
 mean squared error, **7, 90**  
 mean value imputation, **276**  
 measure, **553**  
 median, **53, 794**  
 median absolute deviation, **506**  
 medoid, **677**  
 memory networks, **477**  
 memory-based learning, **491**  
 Mercer kernel, **514**  
 Mercer's theorem, **515, 554**  
 message passing neural networks, **714**  
 meta learning, **588**  
 meta-learning, **591**  
 method of moments, **101**  
 metric MDS, **653**  
 Metropolis Hastings algorithm, **228**  
 Metropolis-adjusted Langevin algorithm, **448**  
 min-max scaling, **288**  
 minibatch, **123**  
 minimal, **372**  
 minimal representation, **372**  
 minimal sufficient statistic, **168**  
 minimally informative prior, **199**  
 minimax estimator, **831**  
 minimum description length, **218**  
 minimum mean squared error, **240**  
 minimum spanning tree, **671**  
 minorize-maximize, **139**  
 MIP, **135**  
 misclassification rate, **5, 91**  
 missing at random, **147, 693**  
 missing completely at random, **147**  
 missing data, **140, 147**  
 missing data mechanism, **611**  
 missing value imputation, **64**  
 mixed ILP, **135**  
 mixing weights, **184**  
 mixmatch, **604**  
 mixture density network, **424**  
 mixture distribution, **29**  
 mixture model, **68**  
 mixture of Bernoullis, **71**  
 mixture of beta distributions, **183**  
 mixture of experts, **422**  
 mixture of factor analysers, **634**  
 mixture of Gaussians, **69**  
 mixture weight, **29**  
 ML, **1**  
 MLE, **31, 83**  
 MLP, **392**  
 MM, **139**  
 MMSE, **240**  
 MNIST, **71, 73, 436, 440**  
 MoCo, **588**  
 mode, **234, 797**  
 mode-covering, **161**  
 mode-seeking, **162**  
 model checking, **222**  
 model compression, **418**  
 model fitting, **6, 83**  
 model selection, **211**  
 model selection consistent, **344**  
 model uncertainty, **7, 790**  
 model-agnostic meta-learning, **590**  
 modulus tollens, **844**  
 MoE, **422**  
 MoG, **69**  
 moment matching, **211, 230, 378**  
 moment parameters, **374**  
 moment projection, **161**  
 momentum, **114**  
 momentum contrastive learning, **588**  
 MoNet, **716**  
 Monte Carlo approximation, **228, 304**  
 Monte Carlo dropout, **419**  
 Monte Carlo integration, **176**  
 Monte Carlo tree search, **469**  
 Monty Hall problem, **23**  
 Moore-Aronszajn theorem, **554**  
 Moore-Penrose pseudo-inverse, **779**  
 most powerful test, **840**  
 motes, **9**  
 motif, **154**  
 MovieLens, **694**  
 moving average, **103**  
 MSE, **7, 90**  
 multi-armed bandit, **248**  
 multi-class classification, **288**  
 multi-clust, **691**  
 Multi-dimensional scaling, **709**  
 multi-head attention, **480**  
 multi-label classification, **288**  
 multi-label classifier, **294**  
 multi-level model, **203**  
 multi-object tracking, **495**  
 multiclass logistic regression, **277**  
 multidimensional scaling, **651**  
 multilayer perceptron, **392**  
 multimodal, **797**  
 multinomial coefficient, **49**  
 multinomial distribution, **49**  
 Multinomial logistic regression, **288**  
 multinomial logistic regression, **51, 277**  
 multinomial logit, **50**  
 multinomial probit, **387**  
 multiple imputation, **65**  
 multiple linear regression, **8, 319**  
 multiple restarts, **677**  
 multiplicative noise, **73**  
 multivariate Bernoulli naive Bayes, **271**  
 multivariate Gaussian, **61**  
 multivariate linear regression, **320**  
 multivariate normal, **61**  
 multivariate probit, **387**  
 mutual information, **162**  
 mutual information, **801**  
 mutually independent, **809**  
 MVM, **533**  
 MVN, **61**  
 myopic, **615**  
 N-pairs loss, **500, 587**  
 N-way K-shot classification, **590**  
 Nadaraya-Watson, **508**

- naive Bayes assumption, 265, **270**  
 naive Bayes classifier, **271**  
 named entity recognition, **600**  
 nats, **153**  
 natural exponential family, **372**  
 natural gradient, **120**  
 natural gradient descent, **119**  
 natural language entailment, **600**  
 natural language processing, 294  
 natural parameters, **372, 375**  
 NCA, **496**  
 NCM, **266**  
 nearest centroid classifier, **266**  
 nearest class mean classifier, **266, 296**  
 nearest class mean metric learning, **266**  
 nearest neighbor clustering, **671**  
 NEF, **372**  
 negative binomial distribution, **846**  
 negative definite, **760**  
 negative examples, **26**  
 negative log likelihood, **84**  
 negative semidefinite, **760**  
 neighborhood components analysis, **496**  
 neocognitron, **435**  
 nested optimization, **836**  
 nested partitioning, **691**  
 Nesterov accelerated gradient, **115**  
 Netflix Prize, **693**  
 NetMF, **712**  
 neural architecture search, **151**  
 neural GPUs, **477**  
 neural language model, **77**  
 neural machine translation, **469**  
 neural matrix factorization, **701**  
 neural network Gaussian process, **417**  
 neural style transfer, **452**  
 neural Turing machines, **477**  
 NeurIPS, 15  
 Newton's method, **116, 285**  
 Neyman-Pearson lemma, **840**  
 NGD, **119**  
 NHST, **840**  
 NHWC, **433**  
 NIPS, 15  
 NIW, **197**  
 NIX, **191**  
 NLL, **84**  
 NMAR, **147**  
 node2vec, **712**  
 noise floor, **100**  
 non-centered parameterization, **207**  
 non-centered parametrization, **362**  
 non-factorial prior, **365**  
 non-identifiability, **682**  
 non-metric MDS, **653**  
 non-parametric bootstrap, **820**  
 non-parametric methods, **649**  
 non-parametric model, **420**  
 non-saturating activation functions, **395**  
 noninformative, **199**  
 nonlinear dimensionality reduction, **649**  
 nonlinear factor analysis, **633**  
 nonparametric methods, **511**  
 nonparametric models, **491**  
 nonsmooth optimization, **110**  
 norm, **754, 757**  
 normal distribution, **52**  
 normal equations, **321, 787**  
 normal inverse chi-squared, **191**  
 normal inverse Gamma, **191, 354**  
 Normal-inverse-Wishart, **197**  
 normalized, **760**  
 normalized cut, **687**  
 normalized mutual information, **165, 669**  
 Normalizing flows, **612**  
 not missing at random, **147**  
 novelty detection, **494**  
 NT-Xent, **500, 587**  
 nu-SVM classifier, **541**  
 nuclear norm, **755**  
 nucleotide, **154**  
 nuisance variables, **64**  
 null hypothesis, **218, 220, 220, 839**  
 null hypothesis significance testing, **840**  
 nullspace, **753**  
 numerator layout, **736**  
 object detection, **444**  
 objective, **199**  
 objective function, **84, 107**  
 observation distribution, **22**  
 Occam factor, **217**  
 Occam's razor, **28, 213**  
 offset, **8, 319**  
 Old Faithful, **144**  
 Olivetti face dataset, **618**  
 OLS, **90, 321, 787**  
 one-armed bandit, **248**  
 one-hot, **242**  
 one-hot encoding, **289, 297**  
 one-hot vector, **49, 749**  
 one-shot learning, **266, 590**  
 one-standard error rule, **98**  
 one-step-ahead predictive distribution, **229**  
 one-to-many functions, **421**  
 one-to-one, **729**  
 one-versus-one, **544**  
 one-versus-the-rest, **543**  
 one-vs-all, **543**  
 online advertising system, **249**  
 online Bayesian inference, **104, 366**  
 online learning, **102, 495**  
 onto, **730**  
 OOD, **495**  
 OOV, **298, 300**  
 open class, **300**  
 open set recognition, **494**  
 open world, **443**  
 open world assumption, **495**  
 OpenPose, **445**  
 opportunity cost, **243**  
 opt-einsum, **769**  
 optimal policy, **234**  
 optimism in the face of uncertainty, **253**  
 optimism of the training error, **836**  
 optimization problem, **31, 107**  
 order, **751**  
 order statistics, **102**  
 ordered Markov property, **75**  
 ordering constraint, **684**  
 ordinal regression, **387**  
 ordinary least squares, **90, 321, 787**  
 orgasm, **30**  
 Ornstein-Uhlenbeck process, **517**

- orthodox statistics, **813**  
orthogonal, **760, 761, 773**  
orthogonal projection, **322**  
orthogonal random features, **535**  
orthonormal, **760, 773**  
orthonormal basis, **553**  
out of vocabulary, **300**  
out-of-bag instances, **565**  
out-of-distribution, **495**  
out-of-sample generalization, **649**  
out-of-vocabulary, **298**  
outer product, **762**  
outliers, **56, 240, 300, 333**  
output gate, **472**  
over-complete representation, **372**  
over-parameterized, **51**  
overcomplete representation, **640**  
overdetermined, **784**  
overdetermined system, **321**  
overfitting, **11, 32, 92, 180**
- p-value, **218, 842**  
PAC learnable, **838**  
PageRank, **776**  
pair plot, **4**  
paired test, **221**  
pairwise independent, **809**  
PAM, **677**  
panoptic segmentation, **448**  
parameter space, **107**  
parameter tying, **76, 204**  
parameters, **5, 8**  
parametric bootstrap, **820**  
parametric models, **491**  
parametric ReLU, **395**  
Pareto distribution, **41**  
part-of-speech, **598**  
partial dependency plot, **576**  
partial derivative, **735**  
partial least squares, **638**  
partial pivoting, **782**  
partial regression coefficient, **325**  
partially observable Markov decision process, **250**  
partially observed data, **147**  
partition function, **51, 372**  
partitioned inverse formulae, **770**  
partitioning around medoids, **677**  
Parzen window density estimator, **505**  
pattern, **26**  
pattern recognition, **2**  
PCA, **617, 618**  
PCA whitening, **775**  
pdf, **53, 793**  
Pearson's chi-squared test, **842**  
peephole connections, **472**  
penalty term, **136**  
per-step regret, **252**  
percent point function, **794**  
perceptron, **284, 392**  
perceptron learning algorithm, **284**  
perfect information, **246**  
Performer, **485**  
periodic kernel, **518**  
perplexity, **157, 464**  
person re-identification, **495**  
personalized recommendations, **41**  
PersonLab, **445**
- perturbation theory, **688**  
PGD, **456**  
PGM, **75**  
phi-exponential family, **376**  
Pitman-Koopman-Darmois theorem, **378**  
placebo, **249**  
Planetoid, **720**  
plates, **79**  
Platt scaling, **542**  
PLS, **638**  
plugin approximation, **31, 37, 180**  
PMF, **696**  
pmf, **791**  
PMI, **594**  
Poincaré model, **710**  
point estimate, **31, 36, 83, 173, 179**  
point estimates, **104**  
pointwise convolution, **433**  
pointwise mutual information, **594**  
Poisson regression, **382**  
polar, **805**  
policy, **14, 248**  
Polyak-Ruppert averaging, **125**  
polynomial expansion, **320**  
polynomial regression, **9, 96, 320**  
polytope, **133**  
POMDP, **250**  
pool-based active learning, **614**  
pooled, **204**  
population risk, **11, 97, 834**  
POS, **598**  
position weight matrix, **154**  
positional embedding, **481**  
positional encoding, **481**  
positive definite, **760**  
positive definite kernel, **514**  
positive examples, **25**  
positive part, **833**  
positive PMI, **594**  
positive semidefinite, **760**  
posterior, **795**  
posterior distribution, **22, 64**  
posterior expected loss, **233**  
posterior inference, **22**  
posterior mean, **179, 240**  
posterior median, **240**  
posterior mode, **31, 31**  
posterior predictive checking, **222**  
posterior predictive distribution, **30, 181, 304, 352**  
posterior samples, **33**  
posterior-predictive p-value, **223**  
power, **840**  
power method, **776**  
power schedule, **124**  
PPCA, **628**  
ppf, **794**  
pre-activation, **277**  
pre-trained word embedding, **299**  
pre-training phase, **583**  
preactivation resnet, **443**  
precision, **53, 188, 239, 239**  
precision at K, **239**  
precision matrix, **88, 375**  
precision-recall curves, **238**  
preconditioned SGD, **126**  
preconditioner, **127**

- preconditioning matrix, **127**  
 predictive analytics, **16**  
 preferences, **233**  
 preimage, **729**  
 PreResnet, **443**  
 pretext tasks, **586**  
 prevalence, **22**, **240**  
 primal problem, **539**  
 primal variables, **545**  
 principal components analysis, **617**  
 principal components regression, **332**  
 principle of insufficient reason, **199**  
 prior, **93**, **795**  
 prior distribution, **22**, **64**  
 probabilistic forecasting, **241**  
 probabilistic graphical model, **75**  
 probabilistic inference, **22**  
 probabilistic matrix factorization, **696**  
 probabilistic model-building genetic algorithms, **151**  
 probabilistic PCA, **617**  
 probabilistic perspective, **1**  
 probabilistic prediction, **241**  
 probabilistic principal components analysis, **628**  
 probability density function, **53**, **793**  
 probability distribution, **241**, **791**  
 probability distributions, **1**  
 probability mass function, **791**  
 probability matching, **254**  
 probability simplex, **185**  
 probability theory, **21**  
 probably approximately correct, **838**  
 probit approximation, **305**  
 probit function, **53**, **305**, **384**  
 probit link function, **383**  
 probit regression, **384**  
 product rule, **795**  
 product rule of probability, **21**  
 profile likelihood, **625**  
 profile log likelihood, **626**  
 program tracing, **410**  
 projected gradient descent, **137**, **348**, **456**  
 projecting, **230**  
 projection, **754**  
 projection head, **588**  
 projection matrix, **323**  
 prompt, **599**  
 proper scoring rule, **242**  
 proposal distribution, **150**, **228**  
 prosecutor's fallacy, **42**  
 proxies, **501**  
 proximal gradient descent, **349**  
 proximal gradient method, **135**  
 proximal operator, **135**  
 ProxQuant, **139**  
 proxy tasks, **586**  
 prune, **561**  
 psd, **760**  
 pseudo counts, **179**, **273**  
 pseudo inverse, **321**, **787**  
 pseudo norm, **755**  
 pseudo-inputs, **529**  
 pseudo-labeling, **603**  
 pure, **561**  
 pure exploration, **252**  
 purity, **668**  
 PyMC3, **308**, **361**  
 Pythagoras's theorem, **786**
- QP, **134**  
 quadratic discriminant analysis, **262**  
 quadratic form, **733**, **759**, **774**  
 quadratic kernel, **515**  
 quadratic loss, **7**, **240**  
 quadratic program, **134**, **339**, **547**  
 quantile, **53**, **794**  
 quantile function, **794**  
 quantization, **158**  
 quantize, **158**, **166**  
 quantized, **138**  
 quartiles, **53**, **794**  
 Quasi-Newton, **117**  
 quasi-Newton, **291**  
 queries, **476**  
 query synthesis, **614**  
 question answering, **600**
- radial basis function, **504**  
 radial basis function kernel, **420**, **485**  
 radon, **360**  
 Rand index, **668**  
 RAND-WALK, **596**  
 random finite sets, **495**  
 random forests, **565**  
 random Fourier features, **535**  
 random search, **150**  
 random shuffling, **123**  
 random variable, **791**  
 random variables, **1**  
 random walk kernel, **520**  
 random walk Metropolis, **228**  
 random walk proposal, **150**  
 range, **729**, **753**  
 rank, **751**, **757**  
 rank deficient, **757**  
 rank one update, **771**  
 rank-nullity theorem, **780**  
 ranking loss, **498**, **699**  
 RANSAC, **337**  
 rate, **446**, **676**  
 rate of convergence, **113**  
 rating, **693**  
 rats, **205**  
 Rayleigh quotient, **776**  
 RBF, **504**  
 RBF kernel, **420**, **514**  
 RBF network, **420**  
 real AdaBoost, **570**  
 recall, **237**, **239**  
 receiver operating characteristic, **238**  
 receptive field, **430**, **446**  
 recognition network, **645**  
 recommendation systems, **721**  
 Recommender systems, **693**  
 recommender systems, **41**  
 reconstruction error, **617**, **619**, **676**  
 Rectified linear unit, **394**  
 rectified linear unit, **395**  
 recurrent neural network, **463**  
 recurrent neural networks, **392**  
 recursive least squares, **124**, **366**  
 recursive update, **102**  
 recursively, **325**  
 reduced QR, **783**  
 reference prior, **203**  
 reflexive, **256**

- Reformer, **484**  
 region of practical equivalence, **220**  
 regression, **7**  
 regression coefficient, **325**  
 regression coefficients, **8, 319**  
 regret, **246, 252**  
 regularization, **93**  
 regularization parameter, **93**  
 regularization path, **333, 341, 349**  
 regularized discriminant analysis, **265**  
 regularized empirical risk, **836**  
 reinforcement learning, **14, 250, 703**  
 reject option, **235**  
 relation, **733**  
 relational data, **693**  
 relative entropy, **159**  
 relevance vector machine, **365, 549**  
 ReLU, **395**  
 reparameterization trick, **207, 646**  
 representation learning, **586**  
 representer theorem, **554**  
 Reproducing Kernel Hilbert Space, **554**  
 reproducing property, **554**  
 resampling, **828**  
 reservoir computing, **470**  
 reset gate, **470**  
 reshape, **751**  
 residual block, **412, 441**  
 residual error, **90**  
 residual network, **412**  
 residual plot, **328**  
 residual sum of squares, **90, 321**  
 residuals, **7, 328**  
 ResNet, **412, 441**  
 response, **2**  
 responsibility, **70, 143, 423**  
 reverse KL, **162**  
 reverse-mode differentiation, **408**  
 reward, **14, 243, 248**  
 reward function, **107**  
 reward hacking, **17**  
 RFF, **535**  
 ridge regression, **96, 215, 329, 417, 826**  
 Riemannian manifold, **649**  
 Riemannian metric, **649**  
 risk, **828**  
 risk averse, **234, 235**  
 risk neutral, **234**  
 risk sensitive, **234**  
 RKHS, **554**  
 RKHS kernel, **554**  
 RL, **14**  
 RLS, **366**  
 RMSE, **90, 328**  
 RNN, **392, 463**  
 Robbins-Monro conditions, **124**  
 robust, **7, 56, 240**  
 robust linear regression, **133**  
 robust logistic regression, **300**  
 robust optimization, **459**  
 robustness, **333**  
 ROC, **238**  
 root mean squared error, **90, 328**  
 ROPE, **220**  
 rotation matrix, **761**  
 row rank, **757**  
 row-major order, **751**  
 RSS, **90**  
 rule of iterated expectation, **80**  
 rule of total probability, **794**  
 running sum, **103**  
 rv, **791**  
 RVM, **549**  
 saddle point, **108, 741**  
 SAGA, **126, 284**  
 same convolution, **430**  
 SAMME, **570**  
 Sammon mapping, **654**  
 sample efficiency, **13**  
 sample mean, **823**  
 sample size, **2, 86, 178**  
 sample standard deviation, **193**  
 sampling distribution, **222, 817**  
 SARS-CoV-2, **22**  
 scalar field, **735**  
 scalar product, **762**  
 scalars, **752**  
 scale of evidence, **218**  
 scale-invariant prior, **202**  
 scatter matrix, **88, 766**  
 Schatten  $p$ -norm, **755**  
 scheduled sampling, **466**  
 Schur complement, **770**  
 scientific method, **30**  
 score function, **107, 641, 814, 816**  
 scree plot, **624**  
 second order, **285**  
 Second-order, **116**  
 self attention, **479**  
 self-normalization property, **596**  
 self-supervised, **585**  
 self-supervised learning, **13**  
 self-training, **603, 614**  
 SELU, **395**  
 semantic role labeling, **294**  
 semantic segmentation, **446**  
 semi-hard negatives, **500**  
 semi-supervised embeddings, **720**  
 Semi-supervised learning, **602**  
 semi-supervised learning, **275, 583**  
 semidefinite embedding, **656**  
 semidefinite programming, **496, 657**  
 sensible PCA, **628**  
 sensitivity, **22, 237**  
 sensor fusion, **67**  
 sentiment analysis, **298, 398, 600**  
 separation principle, **256**  
 seq2seq, **467**  
 seq2vec, **466**  
 sequence logo, **155**  
 sequential Bayesian updating, **104, 366**  
 sequential decision problem, **248**  
 sequential minimal optimization, **540**  
 set, **729**  
 SGD, **123**  
 SGNS, **596**  
 SGPR, **532**  
 shaded nodes, **78**  
 Shannon's source coding theorem, **155**  
 shared, **263**  
 Sherman-Morrison formula, **771**  
 Sherman-Morrison-Woodbury formula, **771**  
 shooting, **348**

- short and fat, 4  
 shrinkage, 189, 205, 332  
 shrinkage estimation, 94  
 shrinkage factor, 341, 572  
 Siamese network, 499, 586  
 side information, 701  
 sifting property, 37  
 sigmoid, 37, 46, 264  
 significance, 840  
 silhouette coefficient, 679, 680  
 silhouette diagram, 680  
 silhouette score, 680  
 SimCLR, 586  
 similar, 26  
 similarity, 491  
 simple hypothesis, 840  
 simple linear regression, 7, 319  
 simple regret, 252  
 simplex algorithm, 133  
 Simpson's paradox, 802  
 Simpsons paradox, 325  
 Simulated annealing, 150  
 single link clustering, 671  
 single shot detector, 444  
 singular, 769  
 singular statistical model, 217  
 singular value decomposition, 778  
 singular values, 758, 778  
 singular vectors, 778  
 size principle, 28  
 SKI, 534  
 SKIP, 534  
 skip connections, 442  
 skip-gram with negative sampling, 596  
 skipgram, 594  
 skipgram model, 595  
 slack variables, 540, 547  
 slate, 702  
 slope, 8  
 slot machines, 248  
 SMACOF, 653  
 smallest consistent hypothesis, 35  
 SMO, 540  
 smooth optimization, 110  
 Sobel edge detector, 449  
 social networks, 721  
 soft clustering, 70  
 soft dictionary lookup, 477  
 soft margin constraints, 540  
 soft thresholding, 341, 343  
 soft thresholding operator, 138  
 soft triple, 501  
 softmax, 50, 374  
 Softplus, 394  
 softplus, 55  
 solver, 107  
 source domain, 588  
 spam detection, 298  
 span, 752  
 sparse, 186, 337  
 sparse Bayesian learning, 363  
 sparse factor analysis, 633  
 sparse GP, 529  
 sparse GP regression, 532  
 sparse kernel machine, 420, 494  
 sparse linear regression, 135  
 sparse vector machines, 548  
 sparsity inducing regularizer, 137  
 specificity, 22  
 spectral clustering, 687  
 spectral CNNs, 715  
 spectral embedding, 658  
 spectral graph theory, 661  
 spectral radius, 412  
 spherical covariance matrix, 62  
 spherical embedding constraint, 503  
 spike-and-slab, 358  
 split variable trick, 348  
 spurious correlation, 801  
 spurious correlations, 802  
 square, 750  
 square-integrable functions, 553  
 square-root sampling, 296  
 squared error, 240  
 squared exponential kernel, 514  
 SS, 358  
 stacking, 563  
 standard basis, 753  
 standard deviation, 54, 797  
 standard error, 180  
 standard error of the mean, 98, 193  
 standard form, 132  
 standard normal, 53  
 standardization operation, 766  
 standardize, 288  
 standardized, 144  
 standardizing, 774  
 state of nature, 233, 248  
 state space, 791  
 state transition matrix, 76  
 state transition model, 250  
 stateful RNN, 470  
 stationary, 76  
 stationary kernels, 515  
 stationary point, 108  
 statistical learning theory, 837  
 statistical machine translation, 469  
 statistical relational learning, 723  
 statistically significant, 842  
 statistics, 16  
 steepest descent, 111  
 Stein's paradox, 832  
 step size, 111  
 stochastic averaged gradient accelerated, 126  
 stochastic bandit, 249  
 stochastic gradient boosting, 573  
 stochastic gradient descent, 123, 284  
 stochastic gradient with restarts, 411  
 stochastic Lanczos quadrature, 534  
 stochastic local search, 150  
 stochastic matrix, 76  
 stochastic neighbor embedding, 661  
 stochastic optimization, 122  
 stochastic variance reduced gradient, 125  
 stochastic variational inference, 228  
 stochastic volatility model, 400  
 Stochastic Weight Averaging, 125  
 stochastic weight averaging, 609  
 stop word removal, 298  
 stopping rule, 847  
 storks, 801  
 straight-through estimator, 138  
 strain, 652  
 stream-based active learning, 614

stress function, **652**  
strict, **832**  
strict local minimum, **107**  
strictly concave, **740**  
strictly convex, **740**  
strided convolution, **431**  
string kernel, **520**  
strong learner, **566**  
strong sampling assumption, **28**  
strongly convex, **740**  
structural deep network embedding, **717**  
structural risk minimization, **836**  
structured kernel interpolation, **534**  
STS-B, **602**  
Student distribution, **56**  
Student t distribution, **56**  
subdifferentiable, **742**  
subdifferential, **742**  
subgradient, **742**  
subjective, **28**  
submodular, **615**  
subword units, **300**  
sufficient statistic, **168**  
sufficient statistics, **86**, **87**, **178**, **371**, **372**  
sum of squares matrix, **766**  
sum rule, **794**  
supervised learning, **1**  
supervised PCA, **637**  
support vector machine, **536**  
support vector machine regression, **548**  
support vectors, **536**, **540**, **548**  
surface normal prediction, **446**  
surjective, **730**  
surrogate function, **139**, **151**  
surrogate loss function, **91**  
suspicious coincidence, **219**  
suspicious coincidences, **28**  
SVD, **95**, **332**, **778**  
SVI-GP, **532**  
SVM, **135**, **536**  
SVM regression, **548**  
SVRG, **125**  
Swish, **394**  
swish, **396**  
Swiss roll, **650**  
symmetric, **750**  
symmetric SNE, **662**  
synaptic connection, **402**  
syntactic sugar, **79**  
systems of linear equations, **784**

t-SNE, **661**  
t-test, **841**  
T5, **602**  
tabular data, **3**  
tail events, **40**  
tall and skinny, **4**  
tangent space, **649**  
tape-based AD, **409**  
target, **2**, **319**  
target domain, **588**  
target neighbors, **496**  
targeted attack, **456**  
tasks, **588**  
taxonomy, **294**  
Taylor series, **225**  
Taylor series expansion, **170**, **743**

teacher forcing, **466**  
temperature, **50**  
tempered cross entropy, **301**  
tempered softmax, **302**  
template matching, **427**, **430**  
Temporal credit assignment problem, **14**  
tensor, **431**, **750**  
tensor processing units, **403**  
term frequency matrix, **298**  
term-document frequency matrix, **592**  
test and roll, **243**  
test risk, **11**  
test set, **11**  
test statistic, **840**  
test statistics, **222**  
text documents, **298**  
text to speech, **474**  
TF-IDF, **298**  
thin SVD, **778**  
Thompson sampling, **255**  
threat models, **456**  
tied, **263**  
Tikhonov damping, **119**  
Tikhonov regularization, **119**  
time series forecasting, **464**  
time-invariant, **76**  
TL;DR, **599**  
Toeplitz, **534**  
token, **298**  
topological instability, **654**  
topological order, **75**  
total derivative, **736**  
total differential, **736**  
total regret, **252**  
total variation, **449**  
TPUs, **403**  
trace, **756**  
trace norm, **755**  
trace trick, **756**  
training, **6**, **83**  
training set, **2**  
transductive learning, **608**  
transfer learning, **503**, **583**  
transformer, **478**  
transition function, **76**  
transition kernel, **76**  
translation-invariant prior, **202**  
transpose, **750**  
transposed convolution, **446**, **447**  
treatment, **243**  
treatment group, **220**  
treewidth, **769**  
Tri-cube kernel, **505**  
Tri-Training, **607**  
triangle inequality, **159**  
tridiagonal, **513**, **759**  
trigram model, **76**  
triplet loss, **499**  
true negative rate, **22**  
true positive rate, **22**, **237**  
truncate, **469**  
truncated, **833**  
truncated Gaussian, **386**  
truncated SVD, **781**  
trust-region optimization, **118**  
tube, **547**  
tunnel effect, **362**

Turing machine, **465**  
 TV, **449**  
 two-sample test, **841**  
 type I, **256**  
 type I error rate, **237, 840**  
 type II, **256**  
 type II maximum likelihood, **209**  
 typical patterns, **13**  
  
 U-net, **445, 446**  
 U-shaped curve, **11**  
 UCB, **253**  
 UMAP, **664**  
 unadjusted Langevin algorithm, **448**  
 unbiased, **823**  
 uncertainty, **789**  
 unconditionally independent, **795**  
 unconstrained optimization, **109**  
 undercomplete representation, **640**  
 underdetermined, **784**  
 underfitting, **11, 97, 100**  
 unidentifiable, **293**  
 uninformative, **179, 199**  
 uninformative prior, **356**  
 union bound, **838**  
 uniqueness, **627**  
 unit vector, **749**  
 unit vectors, **49, 731**  
 unitary, **761**  
 universal function approximator, **400**  
 UNK, **300**  
 unpaired test, **221**  
 unrolled, **79**  
 unstable, **561**  
 unstructured data, **392**  
 unsupervised learning, **11**  
 unsupervised pre-training, **585**  
 untargeted attack, **456**  
 update gate, **470**  
 upper confidence bound, **253**  
 upper triangular matrix, **759**  
 users, **693**  
 utility function, **234**  
  
 VAE, **644**  
 valid convolution, **430**  
 validation risk, **97, 837**  
 validation set, **11, 97, 837**  
 value of information, **614**  
 values, **476**  
 vanishing gradient problem, **411**  
 variable metric, **117**  
 variable selection, **344**  
 variance, **54, 797**  
 variation of information, **669**  
 variational approximation, **746**  
 variational autoencoder, **610, 644**  
 variational autoencoders, **633**  
 variational free energy, **529**  
 Variational inference, **226**  
 variational inference, **371**  
 variational parameters, **227**  
 variational RNN, **465**  
 varimax, **633**  
 VC dimension, **838**  
 vec2seq, **463**  
 vector, **749**  
 vector addition, **597**  
 vector field, **641, 735**  
  
 vector quantization, **675**  
 vector space, **752**  
 vector space model, **298**  
 version space, **26**  
 VFE, **529**  
 VI, **226**  
 vicinal risk minimization, **582**  
 virtual adversarial training, **609**  
 vision as inverse graphics, **25**  
 Voronoi iteration, **677**  
 Voronoi tessellation, **492, 674**  
 VQ, **675**  
  
 wake sleep, **645**  
 Wald interval, **844**  
 warm start, **333**  
 warm starting, **349**  
 Watanabe–Akaike information criterion, **217**  
 Watson, **236**  
 wavenet, **474**  
 weak learner, **566**  
 weakly informative, **193**  
 website testing, **246**  
 WebText, **599**  
 weight decay, **96, 287, 329, 417**  
 weight space, **523**  
 weighted average, **31**  
 weighted least squares, **324, 335**  
 weighted least squares problem, **286**  
 weighted linear regression, **324**  
 weights, **8, 319, 391**  
 well-conditioned, **757**  
 whitebox attack, **456**  
 whiten, **775**  
 wide and deep, **700**  
 wide data, **4**  
 wide format, **297**  
 wide resnet, **443**  
 widely applicable information criterion, **217**  
 Widrow-Hoff rule, **124**  
 winner takes all, **50**  
 Wolfe conditions, **118**  
 word analogy, **597**  
 word embeddings, **299, 592, 592**  
 word sense disambiguation, **599**  
 word stemming, **298**  
 word2vec, **594, 648**  
 wordpieces, **300**  
 working response, **285**  
 World Health Organization, **166**  
 WSD, **599**  
  
 Xavier initialization, **415**  
 XGBoost, **573**  
 XOR problem, **392**  
  
 YOLO, **444**  
  
 ZCA, **776**  
 zero count, **93**  
 zero-avoiding, **161**  
 zero-forcing, **162**  
 zero-one loss, **6, 234**  
 zero-padding, **430**  
 zero-shot learning, **590**  
 zero-shot task transfer, **599**  
 zig-zag, **113**  
 Zipf's law, **40**

# Bibliography

- [AB08] C. Archambeau and F. Bach. “Sparse probabilistic projections”. In: *NIPS*. 2008 (page 633).
- [AB14] G. Alain and Y. Bengio. “What Regularized Auto-Encoders Learn from the Data-Generating Distribution”. In: *JMLR* (2014) (pages 641, 643).
- [ABM10] J.-Y. Audibert, S. Bubeck, and R. Munos. “Best Arm Identification in Multi-Armed Bandits”. In: *COLT*. 2010, pp. 41–53 (page 249).
- [AC16] D. K. Agarwal and B.-C. Chen. *Statistical Methods for Recommender Systems*, en. 1st edition. Cambridge University Press, Feb. 2016 (page 693).
- [AC93] J. Albert and S. Chib. “Bayesian analysis of binary and polychotomous response data”. In: *JASA* 88.422 (1993), pp. 669–679 (page 387).
- [Ada00] L. Adamic. *Zipf, Power-laws, and Pareto - a ranking tutorial*. Tech. rep. 2000 (page 41).
- [AEH+18] S. Abu-El-Haija, B. Perozzi, R. Al-Rfou, and A. A. Alemi. “Watch your step: Learning node embeddings via graph attention”. In: *Advances in Neural Information Processing Systems*. 2018, pp. 9180–9190 (pages 712, 723).
- [AEHPAR17] S. Abu-El-Haija, B. Perozzi, and R. Al-Rfou. “Learning Edge Representations via Low-Rank Asymmetric Projections”. In: *Proceedings of the 2017 ACM on Conference on Information and Knowledge Management*. CIKM ’17. 2017, 1787–1796 (page 712).
- [AFF19] C. Aicher, N. J. Foti, and E. B. Fox. “Adaptively Truncating Backpropagation Through Time to Control Gradient Bias”. In: (May 2019). arXiv: 1905.07473 [cs.LG] (page 470).
- [AG13] S. Agrawal and N. Goyal. “Further Optimal Regret Bounds for Thompson Sampling”. In: *AISTATS*. 2013 (page 246).
- [Aga+14] D. Agarwal, B. Long, J. Traupman, D. Xin, and L. Zhang. “LASER: a scalable response prediction platform for online advertising”. In: *WSDM*. 2014 (pages 249, 314).
- [Agg16] C. C. Aggarwal. *Recommender Systems: The Textbook*, en. 1st ed. 2016 edition. Springer, Mar. 2016 (page 693).
- [Agg20] C. C. Aggarwal. *Linear Algebra and Optimization for Machine Learning: A Textbook*, en. 1st ed. 2020 edition. Springer, May 2020 (page 749).
- [AGM19] V. Amrhein, S. Greenland, and B. McShane. “Scientists rise up against statistical significance”. In: *Nature* 567.7748 (Mar. 2019), p. 305 (page 847).
- [Agr70] A. Agrawala. “Learning with a probabilistic teacher”. In: *IEEE Transactions on Information Theory* 16.4 (1970), pp. 373–379 (page 603).
- [AH19] C. Allen and T. Hospedales. “Analogies Explained: Towards Understanding Word Embeddings”. In: *ICML*. 2019 (page 597).
- [AHK12] A. Anandkumar, D. Hsu, and S. M. Kakade. “A Method of Moments for Mixture Models and Hidden Markov Models”. In: *COLT*. Vol. 23. Proceedings of Machine Learning Research. Edinburgh, Scotland: PMLR, 2012, pp. 33.1–33.34 (page 101).
- [Ahm+13a] A. A. Ahmadi, A. Olshevsky, P. A. Parrilo, and J. N. Tsitsiklis. “NP-hardness of deciding convexity of quartic polynomials and related problems”. en. In: *Math. Program.* 137.1-2 (2013), pp. 453–476 (page 741).
- [Ahm+13b] A. Ahmed, N. Shervashidze, S. Narayananmurthy, V. Josifovski, and A. J. Smola. “Distributed large-scale natural graph factorization”. In: *Proceedings of the 22nd international conference on World Wide Web*. ACM. 2013, pp. 37–48 (page 710).
- [AIW19] B. Athiwaratkun, M. F. P. Izmailov, and A. G. Wilson. “There Are Many Consistent Explanations of Unlabeled Data: Why You Should Average”. In: *ICLR*. 2019 (page 609).
- [AK15] J. Andreas and D. Klein. “When and why are log-linear models self-normalizing?” In: *Proc. ACL*. Denver, Colorado: Association for Computational Linguistics, 2015, pp. 244–249 (page 596).
- [Aka74] H. Akaike. “A new look at the statistical model identification”. In: *IEEE Trans. on Automatic Control* 19.6 (1974) (page 217).
- [AKA91] D. W. Aha, D. Kibler, and M. K. Albert. “Instance-based learning algorithms”. In: *Mach. Learn.* 6.1 (Jan. 1991), pp. 37–66 (page 491).
- [AL13] N. Ailon and E. Liberty. “An Almost Optimal Unrestricted Fast Johnson-Lindenstrauss Transform”. In: *ACM Trans. Algorithms* 9.3 (2013), 21:1–21:12 (page 485).
- [Alb+17] M. Alber, P.-J. Kindermans, K. Schütt, K.-R. Müller, and F. Sha. “An Empirical Study on The Properties of Random Bases for Kernel Methods”. In: *NIPS*. Curran Associates, Inc., 2017, pp. 2763–2774 (page 536).
- [ALL18] S. Arora, Z. Li, and K. Lyu. “Theoretical Analysis of Auto Rate-Tuning by Batch Normalization”. In: (Dec. 2018). arXiv: 1812 . 03981 [cs.LG] (page 414).
- [Alm87] L. B. Almeida. “A learning rule for asynchronous perceptrons with feedback in a combinatorial environment.” In: *Proceedings, 1st First International Conference on Neural Networks*. Vol. 2. IEEE. 1987, pp. 609–618 (page 714).

- [Alo+09] D. Aloise, A. Deshpande, P. Hansen, and P. Popat. “NP-hardness of Euclidean sum-of-squares clustering”. In: *Machine Learning* 75 (2009), pp. 245–249 (page 146).
- [Alp04] E. Alpaydin. *Introduction to machine learning*. MIT Press, 2004 (page 670).
- [AM74] D. Andrews and C. Mallows. “Scale mixtures of Normal distributions”. In: *JRSSB* 36 (1974), pp. 99–102 (page 72).
- [Ama98] S. Amari. “Natural Gradient Works Efficiently in Learning”. In: *Neural Comput.* 10.2 (Feb. 1998), pp. 251–276 (page 119).
- [AMH19] A. Aubret, L. Matignon, and S. Hassas. “A survey on intrinsic motivation in reinforcement learning”. In: (Aug. 2019). arXiv: 1908.06976 [cs.LG] (page 255).
- [Ami+19] E. Amid, M. K. Warmuth, R. Anil, and T. Koren. “Robust Bi-Tempered Logistic Loss Based on Bregman Divergences”. In: *NIPS*. 2019 (page 300).
- [Amo+16] D. Amodei, C. Olah, J. Steinhardt, P. Christiano, J. Schulman, and D. Mané. “Concrete Problems in AI Safety”. In: (June 2016). arXiv: 1606.06565 [cs.AI] (page 17).
- [Amo17] Amoeba. *What is the difference between ZCA whitening and PCA whitening*. Stackexchange. 2017 (page 776).
- [And01] C. A. Anderson. “Heat and Violence”. In: *Current Directions in Psychological Science* 10.1 (2001), pp. 33–38 (page 801).
- [And+18] R. Anderson, J. Huchette, C. Tjandraatmadja, and J. P. Vielma. “Strong convex relaxations and mixed-integer programming formulations for trained neural networks”. In: (Nov. 2018). arXiv: 1811.01988 [math.OC] (page 135).
- [Ani+18] R. Anirudh, J. J. Thiagarajan, B. Kailkhura, and T. Bremer. “An Unsupervised Approach to Solving Inverse Problems using Generative Adversarial Networks”. In: (May 2018). arXiv: 1805.07281 [cs.CV] (page 71).
- [AO03] J.-H. Ahn and J.-H. Oh. “A Constrained EM Algorithm for Principal Component Analysis”. In: *Neural Computation* 15 (2003), pp. 57–65 (page 631).
- [Arc+19] F. Arcadu, F. Benmansour, A. Maunz, J. Willis, Z. Haskova, and M. Prunotto. “Deep learning algorithm predicts diabetic retinopathy progression in individual patients”. en. In: *NPJ Digit Med* 2 (Sept. 2019), p. 92 (page 584).
- [Ard+20] R. Ardila et al. “Common Voice: A Massively-Multilingual Speech Corpus”. In: *Proceedings of The 12th Language Resources and Evaluation Conference*. 2020, pp. 4218–4222 (pages 585, 602).
- [Arn+19] S. M. R. Arnold, P.-A. Manzagol, R. Babanezhad, I. Mitliagkas, and N. Le Roux. “Reducing the variance in online optimization by transporting past gradients”. In: *NIPS*. 2019 (page 126).
- [Aro+16] S. Arora, Y. Li, Y. Liang, T. Ma, and A. Risteski. “A Latent Variable Model Approach to PMI-based Word Embeddings”. In: *TACL* 4 (Dec. 2016), pp. 385–399 (pages 596, 597).
- [Aro+19] L. Aroyo, A. Dumitrasche, O. Inel, Z. Szlávík, B. Timmermans, and C. Welty. “Crowdsourcing Inclusivity: Dealing with Diversity of Opinions, Perspectives and Ambiguity in Annotated Data”. In: *WWW*. WWW ’19. San Francisco, USA: Association for Computing Machinery, May 2019, pp. 1294–1295 (page 12).
- [ARZP19] R. Al-Rfou, D. Zelle, and B. Perozzi. “DDGK: Learning Graph Representations for Deep Divergence Graph Kernels”. In: *Proceedings of the 2019 World Wide Web Conference on World Wide Web* (2019) (page 723).
- [AS17] A. Achille and S. Soatto. “A separation principle for control in the age of deep learning”. In: (2017) (page 256).
- [AS19] A. Achille and S. Soatto. “Where is the Information in a Deep Neural Network?” In: (May 2019). arXiv: 1905.12213 [cs.LG] (page 417).
- [Ash18] J. Asher. “A Rise in Murder? Let’s Talk About the Weather”. In: *The New York Times* (Sept. 2018) (page 801).
- [ASR15] A. Ali, S. M. Shamsuddin, and A. L. Ralescu. “Classification with class imbalance problem: A Review”. In: *Int. J. Advance Soft Comput. Appl.* 7.3 (2015) (page 296).
- [Aue12] J. E. Auerbach. “Automated evolution of interesting images”. In: *Artificial Life* 13. 2012 (page 457).
- [AV07] D. Arthur and S. Vassilvitskii. “k-means++: the advantages of careful seeding”. In: *Proc. 18th ACM-SIAM symp. on Discrete algorithms*. 2007, 1027–1035 (page 677).
- [AWS19] E. Amid, M. K. Warmuth, and S. Srinivasan. “Two-temperature logistic regression based on the Tsallis divergence”. In: *AISTATS*. 2019 (page 303).
- [Axl15] S. Axler. *Linear algebra done right*. 2015 (page 749).
- [Aze+20] E. M. Azevedo, A. Deng, J. L. Montiel Olea, J. Rao, and E. G. Weyl. “A/B Testing with Fat Tails”. In: *J. Polit. Econ.* (July 2020), pp. 000–000 (page 247).
- [BA10] R. Bailey and J. Addison. *A Smoothed-Distribution Form of Nadaraya-Watson Estimation*. Tech. rep. 10-30. Univ. Birmingham, 2010 (page 508).
- [BA97a] A. Bowman and A. Azzalini. *Applied Smoothing Techniques for Data Analysis*. Oxford, 1997 (page 506).
- [BA97b] L. A. Breslow and D. W. Aha. “Simplifying decision trees: A survey”. In: *Knowl. Eng. Rev.* 12.1 (Jan. 1997), pp. 1–40 (page 561).
- [Bab19] S. Babu. *A 2019 guide to Human Pose Estimation with Deep Learning*. 2019 (page 445).
- [Bac+16] O. Bachem, M. Lucic, H. Hassani, and A. Krause. “Fast and Provably Good Seedings for k-Means”. In: *NIPS*. 2016, pp. 55–63 (page 677).

- [Bah+12] B. Bahmani, B. Moseley, A. Vattani, R. Kumar, and S. Vassilvitskii. “Scalable k-Means++”. In: *VLDB*. 2012 (page 677).
- [Bah+20] Y. Bahri, J. Kadmon, J. Pennington, S. Schoenholz, J. Sohl-Dickstein, and S. Ganguli. “Statistical Mechanics of Deep Learning”. In: *Annu. Rev. Condens. Matter Phys.* (Mar. 2020) (pages 410, 417).
- [Bal17] S. Baluja. “Learning deep models of optimization landscapes”. In: *IEEE Symposium Series on Computational Intelligence (SSCI)* (2017) (page 151).
- [BAP14] P. Bachman, O. Alsharif, and D. Precup. “Learning with pseudo-ensembles”. In: *Advances in neural information processing systems*. 2014, pp. 3365–3373 (page 608).
- [Bar09] M. Bar. “The proactive brain: memory for predictions” en. In: *Philos. Trans. R. Soc. Lond. B Biol. Sci.* 364.1521 (May 2009), pp. 1235–1243 (page 494).
- [Bar19] J. T. Barron. “A General and Adaptive Robust Loss Function”. In: *CVPR*. 2019 (page 337).
- [Bat+18] P. W. Battaglia et al. “Relational inductive biases, deep learning, and graph networks”. In: *arXiv preprint arXiv:1806.01261* (2018) (page 714).
- [Bay+15] A. G. Baydin, B. A. Pearlmutter, A. A. Radul, and J. M. Siskind. “Automatic differentiation in machine learning: a survey”. In: (Feb. 2015). arXiv: 1502.05767 [cs.SC] (page 406).
- [BB08] O. Bousquet and L. Bottou. “The Tradeoffs of Large Scale Learning”. In: *NIPS*. 2008, pp. 161–168 (pages 123, 835).
- [BB11] L. Bottou and O. Bousquet. “The Tradeoffs of Large Scale Learning”. In: *Optimization for Machine Learning*. Ed. by S. Sra, S. Nowozin, and S. J. Wright. MIT Press, 2011, pp. 351–368 (page 123).
- [BB12] J. Bergstra and Y. Bengio. “Random Search for Hyper-Parameter Optimization”. In: *JMLR* 13 (2012), pp. 281–305 (page 150).
- [BBS09] J. O. Berger, J. M. Bernardo, and D. Sun. “The Formal Definition of Reference Priors”. In: *Ann. Stat.* 37.2 (2009), pp. 905–938 (page 203).
- [BBV11] R. Benassi, J. Bect, and E. Vazquez. “Bayesian optimization using sequential Monte Carlo”. In: (Nov. 2011). arXiv: 1111.4802 [math.OC] (page 527).
- [BC17] D. Beck and T. Cohn. “Learning Kernels over Strings using Gaussian Processes”. In: *Proceedings of the Eighth International Joint Conference on Natural Language Processing (Volume 2: Short Papers)*. Vol. 2. 2017, pp. 67–73 (page 520).
- [BCB12] S. Bubeck and N. Cesa-Bianchi. “Regret Analysis of Stochastic and Nonstochastic Multi-armed Bandit Problems”. In: *Foundations and Trends(R) in Machine Learning* 5.1 (2012), pp. 1–122 (page 248).
- [BCB15] D. Bahdanau, K. Cho, and Y. Bengio. “Neural Machine Translation by Jointly Learning to Align and Translate”. In: *ICLR*. 2015 (page 476).
- [BCD01] L. Brown, T. Cai, and A. DasGupta. “Interval Estimation for a Binomial Proportion”. In: *Statistical Science* 16.2 (2001), pp. 101–133 (page 844).
- [BCN18] L. Bottou, F. E. Curtis, and J. Nocedal. “Optimization Methods for Large-Scale Machine Learning”. In: *SIAM Rev.* 60.2 (2018), pp. 223–311 (pages 107, 410).
- [BCV13] Y. Bengio, A. Courville, and P. Vincent. “Representation learning: a review and new perspectives”. en. In: *IEEE PAMI* 35.8 (Aug. 2013), pp. 1798–1828 (page 586).
- [BD17] S. Boyd and J. Duchi. *Lecture notes for EE364b: Convex Optimization II*. Stanford Univ., 2017 (page 743).
- [BD87] G. Box and N. Draper. *Empirical Model-Building and Response Surfaces*. Wiley, 1987 (page 211).
- [BDEL03] S. Ben-David, N. Eiron, and P. M. Long. “On the difficulty of approximately maximizing agreements”. In: *J. Comput. System Sci.* 66.3 (May 2003), pp. 496–514 (page 91).
- [Ben+04a] Y. Bengio, O. Delalleau, N. Roux, J. Paiement, P. Vincent, and M. Ouimet. “Learning eigenfunctions links spectral embedding and kernel PCA”. In: *Neural Computation* 16 (2004), pp. 2197–2219 (page 689).
- [Ben+04b] Y. Bengio, J.-F. Paiement, P. Vincent, O. Delalleau, N. L. Roux, and M. Ouimet. “Out-of-Sample Extensions for LLE, Isomap, MDS, Eigenmaps, and Spectral Clustering”. In: *NIPS*. MIT Press, 2004, pp. 177–184 (page 650).
- [Ben+15a] S. Bengio, O. Vinyals, N. Jaitly, and N. Shazeer. “Scheduled Sampling for Sequence Prediction with Recurrent Neural Networks”. In: *NIPS*. 2015 (page 466).
- [Ben+15b] Y. Bengio, D.-H. Lee, J. Bornschein, T. Mesnard, and Z. Lin. “Towards Biologically Plausible Deep Learning”. In: (2015). arXiv: 1502.04156 [cs.LG] (page 403).
- [Ber05] J. M. Bernardo. “Reference Analysis”. In: *Handbook of Statistics*. Ed. by D. K. Dey and C. R. Rao. Vol. 25. Elsevier, Jan. 2005, pp. 17–90 (page 203).
- [Ber09] D. Bertsimas. *MIT Class 15.093J: "Optimization Methods"*. 2009 (page 114).
- [Ber15] D. Bertsekas. *Convex Optimization Algorithms*. Athena Scientific, 2015 (pages 107, 113, 130).
- [Ber16] D. Bertsekas. *Nonlinear Programming*. Third. Athena Scientific, 2016 (pages 107, 130).
- [Ber19] D. Bertsekas. *Reinforcement learning and optimal control*. Athena Scientific, 2019 (page 250).
- [Ber+19a] D. Berthelot, N. Carlini, I. Goodfellow, N. Papernot, A. Oliver, and C. Raffel. “Mixmatch: A holistic approach to semi-supervised learning”. In: *Advances in Neural Information Processing Systems*. 2019, pp. 5049–5059 (pages 604, 609).
- [Ber+19b] D. Berthelot et al. “Remixmatch: Semi-supervised learning with distribution align-

- ment and augmentation anchoring". In: *arXiv preprint arXiv:1911.09785* (2019) (pages 604, 609).
- [Ber85] J. Berger. "Bayesian Salesmanship". In: *Bayesian Inference and Decision Techniques with Applications: Essays in Honor of Bruno deFinetti*. Ed. by P. K. Goel and A. Zellner. North-Holland, 1985 (page 843).
- [Ber99] D. Bertsekas. *Nonlinear Programming*. Second. Athena Scientific, 1999 (page 114).
- [Bet17] M. Betancourt. "A Conceptual Introduction to Hamiltonian Monte Carlo". In: (Oct. 2017). arXiv: 1701.02434 [stat.ME] (page 229).
- [Bey+19] M. Beyeler, E. L. Rounds, K. D. Carlson, N. Dutt, and J. L. Krichmar. "Neural correlates of sparse coding and dimensionality reduction". en. In: *PLoS Comput. Biol.* 15.6 (June 2019), e1006908 (page 644).
- [BFO84] L. Breiman, J. Friedman, and R. Olshen. *Classification and regression trees*. Wadsworth, 1984 (pages 559, 560, 575).
- [BG11] P. Bühlmann and S. van de Geer. *Statistics for High-Dimensional Data: Methodology, Theory and Applications*. Springer, 2011 (page 345).
- [BH07] P. Bühlmann and T. Hothorn. "Boosting Algorithms: Regularization, Prediction and Model Fitting". In: *Statistical Science* 22.4 (2007), pp. 477–505 (pages 567, 572).
- [BH69] A. Bryson and Y.-C. Ho. *Applied optimal control: optimization, estimation, and control*. Blaisdell Publishing Company, 1969 (page 404).
- [BH86] J. Barnes and P. Hut. "A hierarchical O(N log N) force-calculation algorithm". In: *Nature* 324.6096 (Dec. 1986), pp. 446–449 (page 664).
- [BH89] P. Baldi and K. Hornik. "Neural networks and principal components analysis: Learning from examples without local minima". In: *Neural Networks* 2 (1989), pp. 53–58 (page 640).
- [Bha+19] A. Bhadra, J. Datta, N. G. Polson, and B. T. Willard. "Lasso Meets Horseshoe: a survey". In: *Bayesian Anal.* 34.3 (2019), pp. 405–427 (pages 337, 360).
- [BHM92] J. S. Bridle, A. J. Heading, and D. J. MacKay. "Unsupervised Classifiers, Mutual Information and Phantom Targets". In: *Advances in neural information processing systems*. 1992, pp. 1096–1101 (page 606).
- [BI19] P. Barham and M. Isard. "Machine Learning Systems are Stuck in a Rut". In: *Proceedings of the Workshop on Hot Topics in Operating Systems*. HotOS '19. Bertinoro, Italy: Association for Computing Machinery, May 2019, pp. 177–183 (page 402).
- [Big+11] B. Biggio, G. Fumera, I. Pillai, and F. Roli. "A survey and experimental evaluation of image spam filtering techniques". In: *Pattern recognition letters* 32.10 (2011), pp. 1436–1446 (page 458).
- [Bis06] C. Bishop. *Pattern recognition and machine learning*. Springer, 2006 (pages 58, 69, 140, 144, 145, 162, 215, 236, 268, 274, 304, 309, 333, 351, 384, 423, 537, 544, 547, 628, 632, 745, 746, 775, 808, 827).
- [Bis94] C. M. Bishop. *Mixture Density Networks*. Tech. rep. NCRG 4288. Neural Computing Research Group, Department of Computer Science, Aston University, 1994 (page 424).
- [Bis99] C. Bishop. "Bayesian PCA". In: *NIPS*. 1999 (page 633).
- [Bach05] F. Bach and M. Jordan. "A probabilistic interpretation of canonical correlation analysis". Tech. rep. 688. U. C. Berkeley, 2005 (page 639).
- [Bartlett06] P. Bartlett, M. Jordan, and J. McAuliffe. "Convexity, Classification, and Risk Bounds". In: *JASA* 101.473 (2006), pp. 138–156 (page 91).
- [Bell07] R. M. Bell and Y. Koren. "Lessons from the Netflix Prize Challenge". In: *SIGKDD Explor. Newsl.* 9.2 (Dec. 2007), pp. 75–79 (page 694).
- [Bender20] E. M. Bender and A. Koller. "Climbing towards NLU: On Meaning, Form, and Understanding in the Age of Data". In: *ACL* (2020) (page 600).
- [Badrinarayanan17] V. Badrinarayanan, A. Kendall, and R. Cipolla. "SegNet: A Deep Convolutional Encoder-Decoder Architecture for Image Segmentation". In: *IEEE PAMI* 39.12 (2017) (page 445).
- [Ba16] J. L. Ba, J. R. Kiros, and G. E. Hinton. "Layer Normalization". In: (2016). arXiv: 1607.06450 [stat.ML] (page 435).
- [Bird10] S. Bird, E. Klein, and E. Loper. *Natural Language Processing with Python: Analyzing Text with the Natural Language Toolkit*. 2010 (page 298).
- [Bickel04] P. Bickel and E. Levina. "Some theory for Fisher's linear discriminant function, "Naive Bayes", and some alternatives when there are many more variables than observations". In: *Bernoulli* 10 (2004), pp. 989–1010 (page 265).
- [Bullinaria07] J. A. Bullinaria and J. P. Levy. "Extracting semantic representations from word co-occurrence statistics: a computational study". en. In: *Behav. Res. Methods* 39.3 (Aug. 2007), pp. 510–526 (page 594).
- [Bullinaria12] J. A. Bullinaria and J. P. Levy. "Extracting semantic representations from word co-occurrence statistics: stop-lists, stemming, and SVD". en. In: *Behav. Res. Methods* 44.3 (Sept. 2012), pp. 890–907 (page 298).
- [Broomhead88] D. S. Broomhead and D. Lowe. "Multi-variable Functional Interpolation and Adaptive Networks". In: *Complex Systems* (1988) (page 420).
- [Bachem17] O. Bachem, M. Lucic, and A. Krause. "Distributed and provably good seedings for k-means in constant rounds". In: *ICML*. 2017, pp. 292–300 (page 677).
- [Boucheron16] S. Boucheron, G. Lugosi, and P. Massart. *Concentration Inequalities: A Nonasymptotic Theory of Independence*. Oxford University Press, 2016 (page 253).
- [Bouthillier17] X. Bouthillier, C. Laurent, and P. Vincent. "Unreproducible Research is Reproducible". In: *ICML*. Vol. 97. Proceedings of Machine Learning.

- ing Research. Long Beach, California, USA: PMLR, 2019, pp. 725–734 (page 498).
- [BM15] R. P. Browne and P. D. McNicholas. “Multivariate sharp quadratic bounds via Sigma-strong convexity and the Fenchel connection”. en. In: *Electron. J. Stat.* 9.2 (2015), pp. 1913–1938 (page 311).
- [BM98] A. Blum and T. Mitchell. “Combining labeled and unlabeled data with co-training”. In: *Proceedings of the eleventh annual conference on Computational learning theory*. 1998, pp. 92–100 (page 606).
- [BMS11] S. Bubeck, R. Munos, and G. Stoltz. “Pure Exploration in Finitely-armed and Continuous-armed Bandits”. In: *Theoretical Computer Science* 412.19 (2011), pp. 1832–1852 (page 252).
- [BN01] M. Belkin and P. Niyogi. “Laplacian Eigenmaps and Spectral Techniques for Embedding and Clustering”. In: *NIPS*. 2001, pp. 585–591 (page 658).
- [BNJ03] D. Blei, A. Ng, and M. Jordan. “Latent Dirichlet allocation”. In: *JMLR* 3 (2003), pp. 993–1022 (page 261).
- [Bo+08] L. Bo, C. Sminchisescu, A. Kanaujia, and D. Metaxas. “Fast Algorithms for Large Scale Conditional 3D Prediction”. In: *CVPR*. 2008 (page 422).
- [Boe+05] P.-T. de Boer, D. P. Kroese, S. Mannor, and R. Y. Rubinstein. “A Tutorial on the Cross-Entropy Method”. en. In: *Ann. Oper. Res.* 134.1 (Feb. 2005), pp. 19–67 (page 151).
- [Boh92] D. Bohning. “Multinomial logistic regression algorithm”. In: *Annals of the Inst. of Statistical Math.* 44 (1992), pp. 197–200 (pages 292, 311).
- [Bon13] S. Bonnabel. “Stochastic gradient descent on Riemannian manifolds”. In: *IEEE Transactions on Automatic Control* 58.9 (2013), pp. 2217–2229 (page 710).
- [Bos+16] D. Boscaini, J. Masci, E. Rodolà, and M. Bronstein. “Learning shape correspondence with anisotropic convolutional neural networks”. In: *Advances in Neural Information Processing Systems*. 2016, pp. 3189–3197 (page 716).
- [Bot+13] L. Bottou et al. “Counterfactual Reasoning and Learning Systems: The Example of Computational Advertising”. In: *JMLR* 14 (2013), pp. 3207–3260 (page 702).
- [BPC20] I. Beltagy, M. E. Peters, and A. Cohan. “Longformer: The Long-Document Transformer”. In: *CoRR* abs/2004.05150 (2020). arXiv: 2004 .05150 (page 484).
- [BR18] B. Biggio and F. Roli. “Wild patterns: Ten years after the rise of adversarial machine learning”. In: *Pattern Recognition* 84 (2018), pp. 317–331 (page 458).
- [Bra+18] J. Bradbury et al. *JAX: composable transformations of Python + NumPy programs*. Version 0.1.55. 2018 (page 410).
- [Bre01] L. Breiman. “Random Forests”. In: *Machine Learning* 45.1 (2001), pp. 5–32 (page 565).
- [Bre67] L. M. Bregman. “The relaxation method of finding the common point of convex sets and its application to the solution of problems in convex programming”. In: *USSR Computational Mathematics and Mathematical Physics* 7.3 (Jan. 1967), pp. 200–217 (page 744).
- [Bre96] L. Breiman. “Bagging predictors”. In: *Machine Learning* 24 (1996), pp. 123–140 (page 564).
- [Bri50] G. W. Brier. “Verification of forecasts expressed in terms of probability”. In: *Monthly Weather Review* 78.1 (Jan. 1950), pp. 1–3 (page 243).
- [Bri90] J. Bridle. “Probabilistic Interpretation of Feed-forward Classification Network Outputs, with Relationships to Statistical Pattern Recognition”. In: *Neurocomputing: Algorithms, Architectures and Applications*. Ed. by F. F. Soulie and J. Herault. Springer Verlag, 1990, pp. 227–236 (page 50).
- [Bro+17a] M. M. Bronstein, J. Bruna, Y. LeCun, A. Szlam, and P. Vandergheynst. “Geometric Deep Learning: Going beyond Euclidean data”. In: *IEEE Signal Process. Mag.* 34.4 (July 2017), pp. 18–42 (page 649).
- [Bro+17b] M. M. Bronstein, J. Bruna, Y. LeCun, A. Szlam, and P. Vandergheynst. “Geometric deep learning: going beyond euclidean data”. In: *IEEE Signal Processing Magazine* 34.4 (2017), pp. 18–42 (pages 705, 715).
- [Bro19] J. Brownlee. *Deep Learning for Computer Vision - Machine Learning Mastery*. Accessed: 2020-6-30. Machine Learning Mastery, Feb. 2019 (page 443).
- [Bro+20] T. B. Brown et al. “Language Models are Few-Shot Learners”. In: (May 2020). arXiv: 2005 .14165 [cs.CL] (page 599).
- [BRR18] T. D. Bui, S. Ravi, and V. Ramavajjala. “Neural Graph Machines: Learning Neural Networks Using Graphs”. In: *WSDM*. 2018 (page 608).
- [Bru+14] J. Bruna, W. Zaremba, A. Szlam, and Y. LeCun. “Spectral networks and locally connected networks on graphs International Conference on Learning Representations (ICLR2014)”. In: *ICLRS, April* (2014) (pages 706, 715).
- [Bru+19] G. Brunner, Y. Liu, D. Pascual, O. Richter, and R. Wattenhofer. “On the Validity of Self-Attention as Explanation in Transformer Models”. In: (Aug. 2019). arXiv: 1908.04211 [cs.CL] (page 478).
- [BS02] M. Balasubramanian and E. L. Schwartz. “The isomap algorithm and topological stability”. en. In: *Science* 295.5552 (Jan. 2002), p. 7 (page 654).
- [BS16] P. Baldi and P. Sadowski. “A Theory of Local Learning, the Learning Channel, and the Optimality of Backpropagation”. In: *Neural Netw.* 83 (2016), pp. 51–74 (page 403).
- [BS17] D. M. Blei and P. Smyth. “Science and data science”. en. In: *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U. S. A.* (Aug. 2017) (page 16).
- [BS94] J. Bernardo and A. Smith. *Bayesian Theory*. John Wiley, 1994 (pages 829, 830).
- [BS97] A. J. Bell and T. J. Sejnowski. “The “independent components” of natural scenes are edge

- filters". en. In: *Vision Res.* 37.23 (Dec. 1997), pp. 3327–3338 (page 776). [CAS16]
- [BT00] C. Bishop and M. Tipping. "Variational relevance vector machines". In: *UAI*. 2000 (page 365).
- [BT08] D. Bertsekas and J. Tsitsiklis. *Introduction to Probability*. 2nd Edition. Athena Scientific, 2008 (page 789).
- [BT09] A. Beck and M. Teboulle. "A Fast Iterative Shrinkage-Thresholding Algorithm for Linear Inverse Problems". In: *SIAM J. Imaging Sci.* 2.1 (Jan. 2009), pp. 183–202 (page 349).
- [BT73] G. Box and G. Tiao. *Bayesian inference in statistical analysis*. Addison-Wesley, 1973 (page 818).
- [BTEGN09] A. Ben-Tal, L. El Ghaoui, and A. Nemirovski. *Robust optimization*. Vol. 28. Princeton University Press, 2009 (page 459).
- [Bul11] A. D. Bull. "Convergence rates of efficient global optimization algorithms". In: *JMLR* 12 (2011), 2879–2904 (page 526).
- [Bur10] C. J. C. Burges. "Dimension Reduction: A Guided Tour". en. In: *Foundations and Trends in Machine Learning* (July 2010) (page 650).
- [BV04] S. Boyd and L. Vandenberghe. *Convex optimization*. Cambridge, 2004 (pages 107, 130, 132, 742).
- [BW08] P. L. Bartlett and M. H. Wegkamp. "Classification with a Reject Option using a Hinge Loss". In: *JMLR* 9.Aug (2008), pp. 1823–1840 (page 235).
- [BW88] J. Berger and R. Wolpert. *The Likelihood Principle*. 2nd edition. The Institute of Mathematical Statistics, 1988 (page 847).
- [BWL19] Y. Bai, Y.-X. Wang, and E. Liberty. "Prox-Quant: Quantized Neural Networks via Proximal Operators". In: *ICLR*. 2019 (page 139).
- [BY03] P. Bühlmann and B. Yu. "Boosting with the L2 loss: Regression and classification". In: *JASA* 98.462 (2003), pp. 324–339 (page 567).
- [Byr+16] R. Byrd, S. Hansen, J. Nocedal, and Y. Singer. "A Stochastic Quasi-Newton Method for Large-Scale Optimization". In: *SIAM J. Optim.* 26.2 (Jan. 2016), pp. 1008–1031 (page 285).
- [BZ20] A. Barbu and S.-C. Zhu. *Monte Carlo Methods*. en. Springer, 2020 (page 228).
- [Cao+15] Y. Cao, M. A. Brubaker, D. J. Fleet, and A. Hertzmann. "Efficient Optimization for Sparse Gaussian Process Regression". en. In: *IEEE PAMI* 37.12 (Dec. 2015), pp. 2415–2427 (page 533).
- [Cao+18] Z. Cao, G. Hidalgo, T. Simon, S.-E. Wei, and Y. Sheikh. "OpenPose: Realtime Multi-Person 2D Pose Estimation using Part Affinity Fields". In: (Dec. 2018). arXiv: 1812 . 08008 [cs.CV] (page 445).
- [Car+19] N. Carlini et al. "On evaluating adversarial robustness". In: *arXiv preprint arXiv:1902.06705* (2019) (page 457).
- [CG16] P. Covington, J. Adams, and E. Sargin. "Deep Neural Networks for YouTube Recommendations". In: *Proceedings of the 10th ACM Conference on Recommender Systems*. RecSys '16. Boston, Massachusetts, USA: Association for Computing Machinery, Sept. 2016, pp. 191–198 (page 702).
- [CG18] G. Casella and R. Berger. *Statistical inference*. 2nd edition. Duxbury, 2002 (pages 101, 818).
- [CBD15] M. Courbariaux, Y. Bengio, and J.-P. David. "BinaryConnect: Training Deep Neural Networks with binary weights during propagations". In: *NIPS*. 2015 (page 139).
- [CC07] H. Choi and S. Choi. "Robust kernel Isomap". In: *Pattern Recognit.* 40.3 (Mar. 2007), pp. 853–862 (page 654).
- [CCD17] B. P. Chamberlain, J. Clough, and M. P. Deisenroth. "Neural embeddings of graphs in hyperbolic space". In: *arXiv preprint arXiv:1705.10359* (2017) (page 710).
- [CD14] K. Chaudhuri and S. Dasgupta. "Rates of Convergence for Nearest Neighbor Classification". In: *NIPS*. 2014 (page 491).
- [CD88] W. Cleveland and S. Devlin. "Locally-Weighted Regression: An Approach to Regression Analysis by Local Fitting". In: *JASA* 83.403 (1988), pp. 596–610 (page 509).
- [CDL19] S. Chen, E. Dobriban, and J. H. Lee. "Invariance reduces Variance: Understanding Data Augmentation in Deep Learning and Beyond". In: (July 2019). arXiv: 1907 . 10905 [stat.ML] (page 582).
- [CDS02] M. Collins, S. Dasgupta, and R. E. Schapire. "A Generalization of Principal Components Analysis to the Exponential Family". In: *NIPS-14*. 2002 (page 636).
- [CEL19] Z. Chen, J. B. Estrach, and L. Li. "Supervised community detection with line graph neural networks". In: *7th International Conference on Learning Representations, ICLR 2019*. 2019 (page 722).
- [CFD10] Y. Cui, X. Z. Fern, and J. G. Dy. "Learning Multiple Nonredundant Clusterings". In: *ACM Transactions on Knowledge Discovery from Data* 4.3 (2010) (page 691).
- [CG16] T. Chen and C. Guestrin. "XGBoost: A Scalable Tree Boosting System". In: *KDD*. ACM, 2016, pp. 785–794 (pages 573, 575).
- [CGG17] J. Chen and Q. Gu. "Closing the Generalization Gap of Adaptive Gradient Methods in Training Deep Neural Networks". In: (June 2018). arXiv: 1806.06763 [cs.LG] (page 129).
- [CH67] S. E. Chazan, J. Goldberger, and S. Gannot. "Speech Enhancement using a Deep Mixture of Experts". In: (2017). arXiv: 1703.09302 [cs.SD] (page 424).
- [CH90] T. Cover and P. Hart. "Nearest neighbor pattern classification". In: *IEEE Trans. Inform. Theory* 13.1 (1967), pp. 21–27 (page 491).
- [CH90] K. W. Church and P. Hanks. "Word Association Norms, Mutual Information, and Lexicography". In: *Computational Linguistics* (1990) (page 594).

- [Cha+01] O. Chapelle, J. Weston, L. Bottou, and V. Vapnik. “Vicinal Risk Minimization”. In: *NIPS*. MIT Press, 2001, pp. 416–422 (page 582).
- [Cha12] K. M. A. Chai. “Variational Multinomial Logit Gaussian Process”. In: *JMLR* 13.Jun (2012), pp. 1745–1808 (page 311).
- [Cha+19a] I. Chami, Z. Ying, C. Ré, and J. Leskovec. “Hyperbolic graph convolutional neural networks”. In: *Advances in Neural Information Processing Systems*. 2019, pp. 4869–4880 (pages 717, 718).
- [Cha+19b] J. J. Chandler, I. Martinez, M. M. Finucane, J. G. Terziev, and A. M. Resch. “Speaking on Data’s Behalf: What Researchers Say and How Audiences Choose”. en. In: *Eavl. Rev.* (Mar. 2019), p. 193841X19834968 (pages 843, 844).
- [Cha+20] I. Chami, S. Abu-El-Haija, B. Perozzi, C. Ré, and K. Murphy. “Machine Learning on Graphs: A Model and Comprehensive Taxonomy”. In: *arXiv preprint arXiv:2005.03675* (2020) (pages 705–708, 713, 715, 718).
- [Che+16] H.-T. Cheng et al. “Wide & Deep Learning for Recommender Systems”. In: (June 2016). arXiv: [1606.07792 \[cs.LG\]](#) (page 700).
- [Che+20a] T. Chen, S. Kornblith, M. Norouzi, and G. Hinton. “A Simple Framework for Contrastive Learning of Visual Representations”. In: *ICML*. 2020 (page 500).
- [Che+20b] T. Chen, S. Kornblith, M. Norouzi, and G. Hinton. “A simple framework for contrastive learning of visual representations”. In: *ICML*. 2020 (page 586).
- [Che+20c] T. Chen, S. Kornblith, K. Swersky, M. Norouzi, and G. Hinton. “Big Self-Supervised Models are Strong Semi-Supervised Learners”. In: *NIPS*. 2020 (pages 586, 588, 613).
- [Chi+19a] W.-L. Chiang, X. Liu, S. Si, Y. Li, S. Bengio, and C.-J. Hsieh. “Cluster-GCN: An Efficient Algorithm for Training Deep and Large Graph Convolutional Networks”. In: *ACM SIGKDD Conference on Knowledge Discovery and Data Mining (KDD)*. 2019 (page 722).
- [Chi+19b] R. Child, S. Gray, A. Radford, and I. Sutskever. “Generating Long Sequences with Sparse Transformers”. In: *CoRR* abs/1904.10509 (2019). arXiv: [1904.10509](#) (page 484).
- [CHL05] S. Chopra, R. Hadsell, and Y. LeCun. “Learning a Similarity Metric Discriminatively, with Application to Face Verification”. en. In: *CVPR*. 2005 (page 499).
- [Cho] F. Chollet. *Keras* (pages 428, 429).
- [Cho+14a] K. Cho et al. “Learning Phrase Representations using RNN Encoder-Decoder for Statistical Machine Translation”. In: *EMNLP*. 2014 (pages 468, 470).
- [Cho+14b] K. Cho, B. Van Merriënboer, D. Bahdanau, and Y. Bengio. “On the properties of neural machine translation: Encoder-decoder approaches”. In: *arXiv preprint arXiv:1409.1259* (2014) (page 714).
- [Cho+15] Y. Chow, A. Tamar, S. Mannor, and M. Pavone. “Risk-Sensitive and Robust Decision-Making: a CVaR Optimization Approach”. In: *NIPS*. 2015, pp. 1522–1530 (page 234).
- [Cho17] F. Chollet. *Deep learning with Python*. Manning, 2017 (page 582).
- [Cho+19] K. Choromanski, M. Rowland, W. Chen, and A. Weller. “Unifying Orthogonal Monte Carlo Methods”. In: *Proceedings of the 36th International Conference on Machine Learning, ICML 2019, 9–15 June 2019, Long Beach, California, USA*. Ed. by K. Chaudhuri and R. Salakhutdinov. Vol. 97. Proceedings of Machine Learning Research. PMLR, 2019, pp. 1203–1212 (page 535).
- [Cho+20a] K. Choromanski et al. “Masked Language Modeling for Proteins via Linearly Scalable Long-Context Transformers”. In: (June 2020). arXiv: [2006.03555 \[cs.LG\]](#) (pages 485, 486).
- [Cho+20b] K. Choromanski et al. “Rethinking Attention with Performers”. In: *CoRR* abs/2009.14794 (2020). arXiv: [2009.14794](#) (pages 478, 485, 486, 535).
- [Chu+15] J. Chung, K. Kastner, L. Dinh, K. Goel, A. Courville, and Y. Bengio. “A Recurrent Latent Variable Model for Sequential Data”. In: *NIPS*. 2015 (page 465).
- [Chu97] F. Chung. *Spectral Graph Theory*. AMS, 1997 (page 661).
- [Cir+11] D. C. Ciresan, U. Meier, J. Masci, L. M. Gambardella, and J. Schmidhuber. “Flexible, High Performance Convolutional Neural Networks for Image Classification”. In: *IJCAI*. 2011 (page 441).
- [CL11] O. Chapelle and L. Li. “An empirical evaluation of Thompson sampling”. In: *NIPS*. 2011 (page 255).
- [CL96] B. P. Carlin and T. A. Louis. *Bayes and Empirical Bayes Methods for Data Analysis*. Chapman and Hall, 1996 (page 209).
- [CLX15] S. Cao, W. Lu, and Q. Xu. “Grarep: Learning graph representations with global structural information”. In: *Proceedings of the 24th ACM International on Conference on Information and Knowledge Management*. ACM. 2015, pp. 891–900 (page 711).
- [CM06] N. Chater and C. D. Manning. “Probabilistic models of language processing and acquisition”. In: *Trends Cogn. Sci.* 10.7 (July 2006), pp. 335–344 (page 26).
- [CMS12] D. Ciresan, U. Meier, and J. Schmidhuber. “Multi-column deep neural networks for image classification”. In: *Neural Networks* 32 (2012), pp. 333–338 (page xxix).
- [CNB17] C. Chelba, M. Norouzi, and S. Bengio. “N-gram Language Modeling using Recurrent Neural Network Estimation”. In: (Mar. 2017). arXiv: [1703.10724 \[cs.CL\]](#) (page 464).
- [Coh+17] G. Cohen, S. Afshar, J. Tapson, and A. van Schaik. “EMNIST: an extension of MNIST to handwritten letters”. In: (Feb. 2017). arXiv: [1702.05373 \[cs.CV\]](#) (page 436).
- [Coh94] J. Cohen. “The earth is round ( $p < .05$ )”. In: *American Psychologist* 49.12 (1994), pp. 997–1003 (page 844).
- [Con+17] A. Conneau, D. Kiela, H. Schwenk, L. Barraud, and A. Bordes. “Supervised learning of

- universal sentence representations from natural language inference data". In: *arXiv preprint arXiv:1705.02364* (2017) (page 585).
- [Coo05] J. Cook. *Exact Calculation of Beta Inequalities*. Tech. rep. M. D. Anderson Cancer Center, Dept. Biostatistics, 2005 (page 221).
- [Cor+87] A. Corana, M. Marchesi, C. Martini, and S. Ridella. "Minimizing Multimodal Functions of Continuous Variables with the "Simulated Annealing" Algorithm". In: *ACM Trans. Math. Softw.* 13.3 (Sept. 1987), pp. 262–280 (page 151).
- [CP10] M. A. Carreira-Perpinan. "The Elastic Embedding Algorithm for Dimensionality Reduction". In: *ICML*. 2010 (page 662).
- [CP19] A. Coenen and A. Pearce. *Understanding UMAP*. 2019 (page 664).
- [CPS06] K. Chellapilla, S. Puri, and P. Simard. "High Performance Convolutional Neural Networks for Document Processing". In: *10th Intl. Workshop on Frontiers in Handwriting Recognition*. 2006 (page 441).
- [CPS10] C. Carvahlo, N. Polson, and J. Scott. "The horseshoe estimator for sparse signals". In: *Biometrika* 97.2 (2010), p. 465 (page 360).
- [CRK19] J. M. Cohen, E. Rosenfeld, and J. Z. Kolter. "Certified adversarial robustness via randomized smoothing". In: *arXiv preprint arXiv:1902.02918* (2019) (page 459).
- [CRW17] K. M. Choromanski, M. Rowland, and A. Weller. "The Unreasonable Effectiveness of Structured Random Orthogonal Embeddings". In: *Advances in Neural Information Processing Systems 30: Annual Conference on Neural Information Processing Systems 2017, 4-9 December 2017, Long Beach, CA, USA*. Ed. by I. Guyon et al. 2017, pp. 219–228 (page 535).
- [CS07] D. Calvetti and E. Somersalo. *Introduction to Bayesian Scientific Computing*. Springer, 2007 (pages 511–513).
- [CS20] F. E. Curtis and K. Scheinberg. "Adaptive Stochastic Optimization: A Framework for Analyzing Stochastic Optimization Algorithms". In: *IEEE Signal Process. Mag.* 37.5 (Sept. 2020), pp. 32–42 (page 125).
- [Csu17] G. Csurka. "Domain Adaptation for Visual Applications: A Comprehensive Survey". In: *Domain Adaptation in Computer Vision Applications*. Ed. by G. Csurka. 2017 (page 588).
- [CT06] T. M. Cover and J. A. Thomas. *Elements of Information Theory*. 2nd edition. John Wiley, 2006 (pages 153, 155, 160, 169).
- [CT91] T. M. Cover and J. A. Thomas. *Elements of Information Theory*. John Wiley, 1991 (pages 158, 170).
- [Cub+19] E. D. Cubuk, B. Zoph, D. Mane, V. Vasudevan, and Q. V. Le. "AutoAugment: Learning Augmentation Policies from Data". In: *CVPR*. 2019 (page 581).
- [CUH16] D.-A. Clevert, T. Unterthiner, and S. Hochreiter. "Fast and Accurate Deep Network Learning by Exponential Linear Units (ELUs)". In: *ICLR*. 2016 (pages 394, 395).
- [Cui+19] X. Cui, K. Zheng, L. Gao, B. Zhang, D. Yang, and J. Ren. "Multiscale Spatial-Spectral Convolutional Network with Image-Based Framework for Hyperspectral Imagery Classification". In: *Remote Sensing* 11.19 (Sept. 2019), p. 2220 (page 447).
- [Cur+17] J. D. Curtó et al. "McKernel: A Library for Approximate Kernel Expansions in Log-linear Time". In: (Feb. 2017). arXiv: [1702.08159v14 \[cs.LG\]](https://arxiv.org/abs/1702.08159v14) (page 536).
- [Cyb89] G. Cybenko. "Approximation by superpositions of a sigmoidal function". In: *Mathematics of Control, Signals, and Systems* 2 (1989), 303–331 (page 400).
- [D'Amour et al. 2020] A. D'Amour et al. "Underspecification Presents Challenges for Credibility in Modern Machine Learning". In: (Nov. 2020). arXiv: [2011.03395 \[cs.LG\]](https://arxiv.org/abs/2011.03395) (pages 17, 42).
- [Dahl10] G. Dahl. *An introduction to convexity*. 2010 (page 738).
- [Dai+19] Z. Dai, Z. Yang, Y. Yang, J. G. Carbonell, Q. V. Le, and R. Salakhutdinov. "Transformer-XL: Attentive Language Models beyond a Fixed-Length Context". In: *Proceedings of the 57th Conference of the Association for Computational Linguistics, ACL 2019, Florence, Italy, July 28–August 2, 2019, Volume 1: Long Papers*. Ed. by A. Korhonen, D. R. Traum, and L. Márquez. Association for Computational Linguistics, 2019, pp. 2978–2988 (page 485).
- [Dalvi+04] N. Dalvi, P. Domingos, S. Sanghavi, and D. Verma. "Adversarial classification". In: *Proceedings of the tenth ACM SIGKDD international conference on Knowledge discovery and data mining*. 2004, pp. 99–108 (page 456).
- [Dulac-Arnold et al. 2019] G. Dulac-Arnold, D. Mankowitz, and T. Hester. "Challenges of Real-World Reinforcement Learning". In: *ICML Workshop RL4RealLife*. 2019 (page 15).
- [Dao+19] T. Dao, A. Gu, A. J. Ratner, V. Smith, C. De Sa, and C. Re. "A Kernel Theory of Modern Data Augmentation". In: *ICML*. 2019 (page 582).
- [Daume04] H. Daume. *From Zero to Reproducing Kernel Hilbert Spaces in Twelve Pages or Less*. 2004 (page 552).
- [Day+95] P. Dayan, G. Hinton, R. Neal, and R. Zemel. "The Helmholtz machine". In: *Neural Networks* 9.8 (1995) (page 645).
- [Defazio & Bottou 2018] A. Defazio and L. Bottou. "On the Ineffectiveness of Variance Reduced Optimization for Deep Learning". In: (Dec. 2018). arXiv: [1812.04529 \[cs.LG\]](https://arxiv.org/abs/1812.04529) (page 126).
- [DB18] A. Defazio, F. Bach, and S. Lacoste-Julien. "SAGA: A Fast Incremental Gradient Method With Support for Non-Strongly Convex Composite Objectives". In: *NIPS*. Curran Associates, Inc., 2014, pp. 1646–1654 (pages 125, 126).
- [DBLJ14] I. Daubechies, M. Defrise, and C. De Mol. "An iterative thresholding algorithm for linear inverse problems with a sparsity constraint". In: *Commun. Pure Appl. Math. Advances in E* 57.11 (Nov. 2004), pp. 1413–1457 (page 349).

- [DE04] J. Dow and J. Endersby. "Multinomial probit and multinomial logit: a comparison of choice models for voting research". In: *Electoral Studies* 23.1 (2004), pp. 107–122 (page 387).
- [Dee+90] S. Deerwester, S. Dumais, G. Furnas, T. Landauer, and R. Harshman. "Indexing by Latent Semantic Analysis". In: *J. of the American Society for Information Science* 41.6 (1990), pp. 391–407 (page 593).
- [DeG70] M. DeGroot. *Optimal Statistical Decisions*. McGraw-Hill, 1970 (page 233).
- [Den+12] J. Deng, J. Krause, A. C. Berg, and L. Fei-Fei. "Hedging your bets: Optimizing accuracy-specificity trade-offs in large scale visual recognition". In: *CVPR*. June 2012, pp. 3450–3457 (page 294).
- [Den+14] J. Deng et al. "Large-Scale Object Classification using Label Relation Graphs". In: *ECCV*. 2014 (page 295).
- [Dev+19] J. Devlin, M.-W. Chang, K. Lee, and K. Toutanova. "BERT: Pre-training of Deep Bidirectional Transformers for Language Understanding". In: *NAACL*. 2019 (pages 599–601).
- [DFO20] M. Deisenroth, A. Faisal, and C. S. Ong. *Mathematics for machine learning*. Cambridge, 2020 (page 729).
- [DG06] J. Davis and M. Goadrich. "The Relationship Between Precision-Recall and ROC Curves". In: *ICML*. 2006, pp. 233–240 (page 238).
- [DHK13] L. Deng, G. Hinton, and B. Kingsbury. "New types of deep neural network learning for speech recognition and related applications: an overview". In: *ICASSP*. May 2013, pp. 8599–8603 (pages xxix, 401).
- [DHM07] P. Diaconis, S. Holmes, and R. Montgomery. "Dynamical Bias in the Coin Toss". In: *SIAM Review* 49.2 (2007), pp. 211–235 (page 789).
- [DHS01] R. O. Duda, P. E. Hart, and D. G. Stork. *Pattern Classification*. 2nd edition. Wiley Interscience, 2001 (pages 257, 270, 492).
- [DHS11] J. Duchi, E. Hazan, and Y. Singer. "Adaptive Subgradient Methods for Online Learning and Stochastic Optimization". In: *JMLR* 12 (2011), pp. 2121–2159 (page 127).
- [Din+15] N. Ding, J. Deng, K. Murphy, and H. Neven. "Probabilistic Label Relation Graphs with Ising Models". In: *ICCV*. 2015 (page 295).
- [DKK12] G. Dror, N. Koenigstein, and Y. Koren. "Web-Scale Media Recommendation Systems". In: *Proc. IEEE* 100.9 (2012), pp. 2722–2736 (page 693).
- [DKS95] J. Dougherty, R. Kohavi, and M. Sahami. "Supervised and Unsupervised Discretization of Continuous Features". In: *ICML*. 1995 (page 158).
- [DLR77] A. P. Dempster, N. M. Laird, and D. B. Rubin. "Maximum likelihood from incomplete data via the EM algorithm". In: *J. of the Royal Statistical Society, Series B* 34 (1977), pp. 1–38 (page 140).
- [DM01] D. van Dyk and X.-L. Meng. "The Art of Data Augmentation". In: *J. Computational and Graphical Statistics* 10.1 (2001), pp. 1–50 (pages 386, 581).
- [DM16] P. Drineas and M. W. Mahoney. "RandNLA: Randomized Numerical Linear Algebra". In: *CACM* (June 2016) (page 623).
- [Do+19] T.-T. Do, T. Tran, I. Reid, V. Kumar, T. Hoang, and G. Carneiro. "A Theoretically Sound Upper Bound on the Triplet Loss for Improving the Efficiency of Deep Distance Metric Learning". In: *CVPR*. 2019, pp. 10404–10413 (pages 501, 502).
- [Don17] K. Dong, D. Eriksson, H. Nickisch, D. Bindel, and A. G. Wilson. "Scalable Log Determinants for Gaussian Process Kernel Learning". In: *NIPS*. 2017, pp. 6327–6337 (page 534).
- [Don95] D. L. Donoho. "De-noising by soft-thresholding". In: *IEEE Trans. Inf. Theory* 41.3 (May 1995), pp. 613–627 (page 349).
- [Doy+07] K. Doya, S. Ishii, A. Pouget, and R. P. N. Rao, eds. *Bayesian Brain: Probabilistic Approaches to Neural Coding*. MIT Press, 2007 (pages 25, 403).
- [DP97] P. Domingos and M. Pazzani. "On the Optimality of the Simple Bayesian Classifier under Zero-One Loss". In: *Machine Learning* 29 (1997), pp. 103–130 (page 270).
- [Dra95] D. Draper. "Assessment and Propagation of Model Uncertainty". In: *JRSSB* 57.1 (1995), pp. 45–97 (page 212).
- [Dri+04] P. Drineas, A. Frieze, R. Kannan, S. Vempala, and V. Vinay. "Clustering Large Graphs via the Singular Value Decomposition". In: *Machine Learning* 56 (2004), pp. 9–33 (page 146).
- [Dru08] J. Drugowitsch. *Bayesian linear regression*. Tech. rep. U. Rochester, 2008 (page 365).
- [DS12] M. Der and L. K. Saul. "Latent Coincidence Analysis: A Hidden Variable Model for Distance Metric Learning". In: *NIPS*. Curran Associates, Inc., 2012, pp. 3230–3238 (page 497).
- [DSK16] V. Dumoulin, J. Shlens, and M. Kudlur. "A Learned Representation For Artistic Style". In: (2016). arXiv: 1610.07629 [cs.CV] (page 454).
- [Dum+18] A. Dumitrache et al. "Empirical Methodology for Crowdsourcing Ground Truth". In: *Semantic Web Journal* (Sept. 2018) (page 12).
- [Duv14] D. Duvenaud. "Automatic Model Construction with Gaussian Processes". PhD thesis. Computational and Biological Learning Laboratory, University of Cambridge, 2014 (page 519).
- [DV16] V. Dumoulin and F. Visin. "A guide to convolution arithmetic for deep learning". In: (2016). arXiv: 1603.07285 [stat.ML] (page 431).
- [DY79] P. Diaconis and D. Ylvisaker. "Conjugate priors for exponential families". In: vol. 7. 1979, pp. 269–281 (page 371).
- [EDH19] K. Ethayarajh, D. Duvenaud, and G. Hirst. "Towards Understanding Linear Word Analogies". In: *Proc. ACL*. Association for Computational Linguistics, July 2019, pp. 3253–3262 (page 597).
- [EF15] D. Eigen and R. Fergus. "Predicting Depth, Surface Normals and Semantic Labels with a

- Common Multi-Scale Convolutional Architecture". In: *ICCV*. 2015 (page 446).
- [Efr+04] B. Efron, I. Johnstone, T. Hastie, and R. Tibshirani. "Least angle regression". In: *Annals of Statistics* 32.2 (2004), pp. 407–499 (pages 341, 349).
- [Efr86] B. Efron. "Why Isn't Everyone a Bayesian?" In: *The American Statistician* 40.1 (1986) (page 847).
- [Efr87] B. Efron. *The Jackknife, the Bootstrap, and Other Resampling Plans (CBMS-NSF Regional Conference Series in Applied Mathematics)*. en. Society for Industrial and Applied Mathematics, Jan. 1987 (page 828).
- [Ein16] A. Einstein. "Die Grundlage der allgemeinen Relativitätstheorie". In: *Ann. Phys.* 354.7 (1916), pp. 769–822 (page 768).
- [Eis19] J. Eisenstein. *Introduction to Natural Language Processing*. 2019 (page 593).
- [Elk03] C. Elkan. "Using the triangle inequality to accelerate k-means". In: *ICML*. 2003 (page 678).
- [EM75] B. Efron and C. Morris. "Data analysis using Stein's estimator and its generalizations". In: *JASA* 70.350 (1975), pp. 311–319 (page 834).
- [EMH19] T. Elsken, J. H. Metzen, and F. Hutter. "Neural Architecture Search: A Survey". In: *JMLR* 20 (2019), pp. 1–21 (page 151).
- [Erh+10] D. Erhan, Y. Bengio, A. Courville, P.-A. Manzagol, P. Vincent, and S. Bengio. "Why Does Unsupervised Pre-training Help Deep Learning?" In: *JMLR* 11 (2010), pp. 625–660 (page 585).
- [EY09] M. Elad and I. Yavneh. "A plurality of sparse representations is better than the sparsest one alone". In: *IEEE Trans. on Info. Theory* 55.10 (2009), pp. 4701–4714 (page 358).
- [Eyk+18] K. Eykholt et al. "Robust Physical-World Attacks on Deep Learning Models". In: *CVPR*. 2018 (page 455).
- [FAL17] C. Finn, P. Abbeel, and S. Levine. "Model-Agnostic Meta-Learning for Fast Adaptation of Deep Networks". In: *ICML*. 2017 (page 590).
- [FB19] E. M. Feit and R. Berman. "Test & Roll: Profit-Maximizing A/B Tests". In: *Marketing Science* 38.6 (Nov. 2019), pp. 1038–1058 (pages 244, 247).
- [FB81] M. A. Fischler and R. Bolles. "Random sample concensus: A paradigm for model fitting with applications to image analysis and automated cartography". In: *Comm. ACM* 24.6 (1981), pp. 381–395 (page 337).
- [FDZ19] A. Fasano, D. Durante, and G. Zanella. "Scalable and Accurate Variational Bayes for High-Dimensional Binary Regression Models". In: (Nov. 2019). arXiv: 1911 . 06743 [stat.ME] (page 387).
- [Fer+10] D. Ferrucci et al. "Building Watson: An Overview of the DeepQA Project". In: *AI Magazine* (2010), pp. 59–79 (page 236).
- [FH20] E. Fong and C. Holmes. "On the marginal likelihood and cross-validation". In: *Biometrika* 107.2 (May 2020) (page 215).
- [FHK12] A. Feuerherger, Y. He, and S. Khatri. "Statistical Significance of the Netflix Challenge". In: *Stat. Sci.* 27.2 (May 2012), pp. 202–231 (page 694).
- [FHT00] J. Friedman, T. Hastie, and R. Tibshirani. "Additive logistic regression: a statistical view of boosting". In: *Annals of statistics* 28.2 (2000), pp. 337–374 (pages 567, 570, 571, 574).
- [FHT10] J. Friedman, T. Hastie, and R. Tibshirani. "Regularization Paths for Generalized Linear Models via Coordinate Descent". In: *J. of Statistical Software* 33.1 (2010) (page 348).
- [Fir57] J. Firth. "A synopsis of linguistic theory 1930–1955". In: *Studies in Linguistic Analysis*. Ed. by F. Palmer. 1957 (page 592).
- [FJ02] M. A. T. Figueiredo and A. K. Jain. "Unsupervised Learning of Finite Mixture Models". In: *IEEE PAMI* 24.3 (2002), pp. 381–396 (page 681).
- [FL+19] J. A. Flores-Livas, L. Boeri, A. Sanna, G. Profeta, R. Arita, and M. Eremets. "A Perspective on Conventional High-Temperature Superconductors at High Pressure: Methods and Materials". In: *Phys. Rep.* (2019) (page 108).
- [FM03] J. H. Friedman and J. J. Meulman. "Multiple additive regression trees with application in epidemiology". In: *Stat. Med.* 22.9 (May 2003), pp. 1365–1381 (page 573).
- [FMN16] C. Fefferman, S. Mitter, and H. Narayanam. "Testing the manifold hypothesis". In: *J. Amer. Math. Soc.* 29.4 (Feb. 2016), pp. 983–1049 (page 650).
- [FNW07] M. Figueiredo, R. Nowak, and S. Wright. "Gradient projection for sparse reconstruction: application to compressed sensing and other inverse problems". In: *IEEE J. on Selected Topics in Signal Processing* (2007) (page 343).
- [For+18] V. Fortuin, G. Dresdner, H. Strathmann, and G. Rätsch. "Scalable Gaussian Processes on Discrete Domains". In: (Oct. 2018). arXiv: 1810.10368 [stat.ML] (page 533).
- [For+19] N. Ford, J. Gilmer, N. Carlini, and D. Cubuk. "Adversarial Examples Are a Natural Consequence of Test Error in Noise". In: (Jan. 2019). arXiv: 1901.10513 [cs.LG] (page 460).
- [For07] D. Foster. *Generative Deep Learning: Teaching Machines to Paint, Write, Compose, and Play*. 1 edition. O'Reilly Media, July 2019 (pages 453, 648).
- [FR07] C. Fraley and A. Raftery. "Bayesian Regularization for Normal Mixture Estimation and Model-Based Clustering". In: *J. of Classification* 24 (2007), pp. 155–181 (pages 94, 146).
- [Fra+17] L. Franceschi, M. Donini, P. Frasconi, and M. Pontil. "Forward and Reverse Gradient-Based Hyperparameter Optimization". In: *ICML*. 2017 (page 150).
- [Fre98] B. Frey. *Graphical Models for Machine Learning and Digital Communication*. MIT Press, 1998 (page 74).

- [Fri01] J. Friedman. “Greedy Function Approximation: a Gradient Boosting Machine”. In: *Annals of Statistics* 29 (2001), pp. 1189–1232 (pages 567, 571).
- [Fri97a] J. Friedman. “On bias, variance, 0-1 loss and the curse of dimensionality”. In: *J. Data Mining and Knowledge Discovery* 1 (1997), pp. 55–77 (page 828).
- [Fri97b] J. H. Friedman. “Data mining and statistics: What’s the connection”. In: *Proceedings of the 29th Symposium on the Interface Between Computer Science and Statistics*. 1997 (page 16).
- [Fri99] J. Friedman. *Stochastic Gradient Boosting*. Tech. rep. 1999 (page 573).
- [FS96] Y. Freund and R. R. Schapire. “Experiments with a new boosting algorithm”. In: *ICML*. 1996 (pages 566, 570).
- [FSF10] S. Fruhwirth-Schnatter and R. Fruhwirth. “Data Augmentation and MCMC for Binary and Multinomial Logit Models”. In: *Statistical Modelling and Regression Structures*. Ed. by T. Kneib and G. Tutz. Springer, 2010, pp. 111–132 (page 387).
- [FT05] M. Faching and C. Tomasi. “Mean shift is a bound optimization”. en. In: *IEEE Trans. Pattern Anal. Mach. Intell.* 27.3 (Mar. 2005), pp. 471–474 (page 140).
- [Fu98] W. Fu. “Penalized regressions: the bridge versus the lasso”. In: *J. Computational and graphical statistics* 7 (1998), 397–416 (page 348).
- [Fuk75] K. Fukushima. “Cognitron: a self-organizing multilayered neural network”. In: *Biological Cybernetics* 20.6 (1975), pp. 121–136 (page 435).
- [Fuk80] K. Fukushima. “Neocognitron: a self organizing neural network model for a mechanism of pattern recognition unaffected by shift in position”. en. In: *Biol. Cybern.* 36.4 (1980), pp. 193–202 (page 403).
- [Fuk90] K. Fukunaga. *Introduction to Statistical Pattern Recognition*. 2nd edition. Academic Press, 1990 (page 270).
- [FXL18] C. Finn, K. Xu, and S. Levine. “Probabilistic Model-Agnostic Meta-Learning”. In: *NIPS*. 2018 (page 589).
- [Gag94] P. Gage. “A New Algorithm for Data Compression”. In: *Dr Dobbs Journal* (1994) (page 300).
- [Gan+16] Y. Ganin, E. Ustinova, H. Ajakan, P. Germain, and others. “Domain-adversarial training of neural networks”. In: *JMLR* (2016) (page 588).
- [Gär03] T. Gärtner. “A Survey of Kernels for Structured Data”. In: *SIGKDD Explor. Newsl.* 5.1 (July 2003), pp. 49–58 (page 520).
- [Gar+18a] J. Gardner, G. Pleiss, K. Q. Weinberger, D. Bindel, and A. G. Wilson. “GPyTorch: Blackbox Matrix-Matrix Gaussian Process Inference with GPU Acceleration”. In: *NIPS*. Ed. by S. Bengio, H. Wallach, H. Larochelle, K. Grauman, N. Cesa-Bianchi, and R. Garnett. Curran Associates, Inc., 2018, pp. 7576–7586 (page 534).
- [Gar+18b] J. R. Gardner, G. Pleiss, R. Wu, K. Q. Weinberger, and A. G. Wilson. “Product Kernel Interpolation for Scalable Gaussian Processes”. In: *AISTATS*. 2018 (page 534).
- [GASG18] D. G. A. Smith and J. Gray. “opt-einsum - A Python package for optimizing contraction order for einsum-like expressions”. In: *JOSS* 3.26 (June 2018), p. 753 (page 769).
- [GB05] Y. Grandvalet and Y. Bengio. “Semi-supervised learning by entropy minimization”. In: *Advances in neural information processing systems*. 2005, pp. 529–536 (page 604).
- [GB10] X. Glorot and Y. Bengio. “Understanding the difficulty of training deep feedforward neural networks”. In: *AISTATS*. 2010, pp. 249–256 (pages 394, 415).
- [GB18] V. Garcia and J. Bruna. “Few-shot Learning with Graph Neural Networks”. In: *International Conference on Learning Representations (ICLR)*. 2018 (page 705).
- [GBB11] X. Glorot, A. Bordes, and Y. Bengio. “Deep Sparse Rectifier Neural Networks”. In: *AISTATS*. 2011 (pages 394, 395, 643).
- [GBC16] I. Goodfellow, Y. Bengio, and A. Courville. *Deep Learning*. <http://www.deeplearningbook.org>. MIT Press, 2016 (page 403).
- [GBD92] S. Geman, E. Bienenstock, and R. Doursat. “Neural networks and the bias-variance dilemma”. In: *Neural Computing* 4 (1992), pp. 1–58 (page 825).
- [GC20] A. Gelman and B. Carpenter. “Bayesian analysis of tests with unknown specificity and sensitivity”. In: *medRxiv* 2020.05.22.20108944v2 (May 2020) (page 23).
- [GDFY16] S. Ghosh, F. M. Delle Fave, and J. Yedidia. “Assumed Density Filtering Methods for Learning Bayesian Neural Networks”. In: *AAAI*. 2016 (page 230).
- [GEB16] L. A. Gatys, A. S. Ecker, and M. Bethge. “Image style transfer using convolutional neural networks”. In: *CVPR*. 2016, pp. 2414–2423 (pages 452, 454).
- [GEH19] T. Gale, E. Elsen, and S. Hooker. “The State of Sparsity in Deep Neural Networks”. In: (Feb. 2019). arXiv: [1902.09574 \[cs.LG\]](https://arxiv.org/abs/1902.09574) (pages 345, 418).
- [Gel+04] A. Gelman, J. Carlin, H. Stern, and D. Rubin. *Bayesian data analysis*. 2nd edition. Chapman and Hall, 2004 (pages 175, 222, 223).
- [Gel06] A. Gelman. “Prior distributions for variance parameters in hierarchical models (comment on article by Browne and Draper)”. en. In: *Bayesian Anal.* 1.3 (Sept. 2006), pp. 515–534 (page 193).
- [Gel+14] A. Gelman, J. B. Carlin, H. S. Stern, D. B. Dunson, A. Vehtari, and D. B. Rubin. *Bayesian Data Analysis, Third Edition*. Third edition. Chapman and Hall/CRC, 2014 (pages 191, 204, 205, 207, 360).
- [Gel16] A. Gelman. “The problems with p-values are not just with p-values”. In: *American Statistician* (2016) (page 843).

- [Gér19] A. Géron. *Hands-On Machine Learning with Scikit-Learn and TensorFlow: Concepts, Tools, and Techniques for Building Intelligent Systems (2nd edition)*. en. O'Reilly Media, Incorporated, 2019 (pages 5, 48, 51, 115, 278, 392, 393, 395, 410, 413, 415, 431, 432, 442, 447, 482, 538, 545, 549, 564, 568, 576, 621, 641, 642, 644, 675, 678).
- [GF00] E. George and D. Foster. “Calibration and empirical Bayes variable selection”. In: *Biometrika* 87.4 (2000), pp. 731–747 (page 358).
- [GG14] S. J. Gershman and N. D. Goodman. “Amortized Inference in Probabilistic Reasoning”. In: *36th Annual Conference of the Cognitive Science Society*. 2014 (page 256).
- [GG16] Y. Gal and Z. Ghahramani. “Dropout as a Bayesian Approximation: Representing Model Uncertainty in Deep Learning”. In: *ICML*. 2016 (page 419).
- [GH07] A. Gelman and J. Hill. *Data analysis using regression and multilevel/ hierarchical models*. Cambridge, 2007 (page 204).
- [GH96] Z. Ghahramani and G. Hinton. *The EM Algorithm for Mixtures of Factor Analyzers*. Tech. rep. Dept. of Comp. Sci., Uni. Toronto, 1996 (pages 629, 634).
- [GHK17] Y. Gal, J. Hron, and A. Kendall. “Concrete Dropout”. In: (May 2017). arXiv: 1705.07832 [stat.ML] (page 419).
- [GHV14] A. Gelman, J. Hwang, and A. Vehtari. “Understanding predictive information criteria for Bayesian models”. In: *Statistics and Computing* 24.6 (Nov. 2014), pp. 997–1016 (page 216).
- [Gil+17] J. Gilmer, S. S. Schoenholz, P. F. Riley, O. Vinyals, and G. E. Dahl. “Neural message passing for quantum chemistry”. In: *Proceedings of the 34th International Conference on Machine Learning-Volume 70*. JMLR. org, 2017, pp. 1263–1272 (pages 705, 706, 714).
- [Gil+18a] J. Gilmer et al. “Adversarial spheres”. In: *arXiv preprint arXiv:1801.02774* (2018) (page 461).
- [Gil+18b] J. Gilmer, R. P. Adams, I. Goodfellow, D. Andersen, and G. E. Dahl. “Motivating the rules of the game for adversarial example research”. In: *arXiv preprint arXiv:1807.06732* (2018) (page 458).
- [GIM99] A. Gionis, P. Indyk, and R. Motwani. “Similarity Search in High Dimensions via Hashing”. In: *Proc. 25th Intl. Conf. on Very Large Data Bases*. VLDB '99. 1999, pp. 518–529 (page 494).
- [Git89] J. Gittins. *Multi-armed Bandit Allocation Indices*. Wiley, 1989 (page 252).
- [GK19] L. Graesser and W. L. Keng. *Foundations of Deep Reinforcement Learning: Theory and Practice in Python*. en. 1 edition. Addison-Wesley Professional, Dec. 2019 (page 256).
- [GL13] T. T. Georgiou and A. Lindquist. “The Separation Principle in Stochastic Control, Redux”. In: *IEEE Trans. Automat. Contr.* 58.10 (Oct. 2013), pp. 2481–2494 (page 256).
- [GL15] [GL16] [GM16] [GMH19] [GMS05] [GNK18] [God18] [GOF18] [Gol+01] [Gol+05] [Gol+92] [Gon85] [Goo01] [Goo+14] [Gop98] [Gor06] [GR06a] [Gu+15] [Gro+16] [Gde16] [Gor+19] [Gor+20] [Gou+18] [God+18] [Gold+01] [Gold+05] [Gold+18] [Gold+92] [Gonz85] [Good+01] [Good+14] [Gopn98] [Gord06] [Girol+06]
- B. Gu and C. Ling. “A New Generalized Error Path Algorithm for Model Selection”. In: *ICML*. 2015 (page 341).
- A. Grover and J. Leskovec. “node2vec: Scalable feature learning for networks”. In: *Proceedings of the 22nd ACM SIGKDD international conference on Knowledge discovery and data mining*. ACM, 2016, pp. 855–864 (page 712).
- A. G. de Garis Matthews. “Scalable Gaussian process inference using variational methods”. PhD thesis. U. Cambridge, 2016 (pages 530, 532).
- M. I. Gorinova, D. Moore, and M. D. Hoffman. “Automatic Reparameterisation of Probabilistic Programs”. In: (June 2019). arXiv: 1906.03028 [stat.ML] (page 207).
- M. Gori, G. Monfardini, and F. Scarselli. “A new model for learning in graph domains”. In: *Proceedings. 2005 IEEE International Joint Conference on Neural Networks, 2005*. Vol. 2. IEEE, 2005, pp. 729–734 (page 713).
- R. A. Güler, N. Neverova, and I. Kokkinos. “Densepose: Dense human pose estimation in the wild”. In: *CVPR*. 2018, pp. 7297–7306 (page 445).
- P. Godec. <https://towardsdatascience.com/graph-embeddings-the-summary-cc6075aba007>. 2018 (page 711).
- O. Gouvert, T. Oberlin, and C. Févotte. “Negative Binomial Matrix Factorization for Recommender Systems”. In: (Jan. 2018). arXiv: 1801.01708 [cs.LG] (page 696).
- K. Goldberg, T. Roeder, D. Gupta, and C. Perkins. “Eigentaste: A Constant Time Collaborative Filtering Algorithm”. In: *Information Retrieval* 4.2 (2001), pp. 133–151 (page 694).
- J. Goldberger, S. Roweis, G. Hinton, and R. Salakhutdinov. “Neighbourhood Components Analysis”. In: *NIPS*. 2005 (page 496).
- D. Goldberg, D. Nichols, B. M. Oki, and D. Terry. “Using collaborative filtering to weave an information tapestry”. In: *Commun. ACM* 35.12 (Dec. 1992), pp. 61–70 (page 694).
- T. Gonzales. “Clustering to minimize the maximum intercluster distance”. In: *Theor. Comp. Sci.* 38 (1985), pp. 293–306 (page 677).
- N. Goodman. “Classes for fast maximum entropy training”. In: *ICASSP*. 2001 (page 295).
- I. J. Goodfellow et al. “Generative Adversarial Networks”. In: *NIPS*. 2014 (page 612).
- A. Gopnik. “Explanation as Orgasm”. In: *Minds and Machines* 8.1 (1998), pp. 101–118 (page 30).
- P. F. Gorder. “Neural Networks Show New Promise for Machine Vision”. In: *Computing in science & engineering* 8.6 (2006), pp. 4–8 (page 12).
- M. Girolami and S. Rogers. “Variational Bayesian Multinomial Probit Regression with Gaussian Process Priors”. In: *Neural Comput.* 18.8 (Aug. 2006), pp. 1790–1817 (page 387).

- [GR06b] M. Girolami and S. Rogers. "Variational Bayesian multinomial probit regression with Gaussian process priors". In: *Neural Computation* 18.8 (2006), pp. 1790–1817 (page 387).
- [GR07] T. Gneiting and A. E. Raftery. "Strictly Proper Scoring Rules, Prediction, and Estimation". In: *JASA* 102.477 (2007), pp. 359–378 (page 242).
- [GR18] A. Graves and M.-A. Ranzato. "Tutorial on unsupervised deep learning: part 2". In: *NIPS*. 2018 (page 585).
- [Gra04] Y. Grandvalet. "Bagging Equalizes Influence". In: *Mach. Learn.* 55 (2004), pp. 251–270 (page 565).
- [Gra+10] T. Graepel, J. Quinonero-Candela, T. Borchert, and R. Herbrich. "Web-Scale Bayesian Click-Through Rate Prediction for Sponsored Search Advertising in Microsoft's Bing Search Engine". In: *ICML*. 2010 (pages 249, 255, 314).
- [Gra11] A. Graves. "Practical variational inference for neural networks". In: *Advances in neural information processing systems*. 2011, pp. 2348–2356 (page 608).
- [Gra13] A. Graves. "Generating Sequences With Recurrent Neural Networks". In: (Aug. 2013). arXiv: 1308.0850 [cs.NE] (page 464).
- [Gra+16] A. Graves et al. "Hybrid computing using a neural network with dynamic external memory". en. In: *Nature* 538.7626 (Oct. 2016), pp. 471–476 (page 477).
- [Gra+17] E. Grave, A. Joulin, M. Cissé, D. Grangier, and H. Jégou. "Efficient softmax approximation for GPUs". In: *ICML*. 2017 (page 295).
- [Gra+18] E. Grant, C. Finn, S. Levine, T. Darrell, and T. Griffiths. "Recasting Gradient-Based Meta-Learning as Hierarchical Bayes". In: *ICLR*. 2018 (page 590).
- [Gre+17] K. Greff, R. K. Srivastava, J. Koutník, B. R. Steunebrink, and J. Schmidhuber. "LSTM: A Search Space Odyssey". In: *IEEE Transactions on Neural Networks and Learning Systems* 28.10 (2017) (page 472).
- [Gri20] T. L. Griffiths. "Understanding Human Intelligence through Human Limitations". en. In: *Trends Cogn. Sci.* 24.11 (Nov. 2020), pp. 873–883 (pages 25, 404).
- [GS08] Y. Guo and D. Schuurmans. "Efficient global optimization for exponential family PCA and low-rank matrix factorization". In: *2008 46th Annual Allerton Conference on Communication, Control, and Computing*. Sept. 2008, pp. 1100–1107 (page 636).
- [GS97] C. M. Grinstead and J. L. Snell. *Introduction to probability* (2nd edition). American Mathematical Society, 1997 (page 789).
- [GSK18] S. Gidaris, P. Singh, and N. Komodakis. "Unsupervised Representation Learning by Predicting Image Rotations". In: *ICLR*. 2018 (page 586).
- [GSS15] I. J. Goodfellow, J. Shlens, and C. Szegedy. "Explaining and Harnessing Adversarial Examples". In: *ICLR*. 2015 (pages 455, 456, 459).
- [GT07] L. Getoor and B. Taskar, eds. *Introduction to Relational Statistical Learning*. MIT Press, 2007 (page 723).
- [GTA00] G. Gigerenzer, P. M. Todd, and ABC Research Group. *Simple Heuristics That Make Us Smart*, en. Illustrated edition. Oxford University Press, Sept. 2000 (page 404).
- [Gu+18a] A. Gu, F. Sala, B. Gunel, and C. Ré. "Learning Mixed-Curvature Representations in Product Spaces". In: *International Conference on Learning Representations* (2018) (page 710).
- [Gu+18b] J. Gu et al. "Recent Advances in Convolutional Neural Networks". In: *Pattern Recognit.* 77 (2018), pp. 354–377 (page 439).
- [Gua+10] Y. Guan, J. Dy, D. Niu, and Z. Ghahramani. "Variational Inference for Nonparametric Multiple Clustering". In: *1st Intl. Workshop on Discovering, Summarizing and Using Multiple Clustering (MultiClust)*. 2010 (page 691).
- [Gua+17] S. Guadarrama, R. Dahl, D. Bieber, M. Norouzi, J. Shlens, and K. Murphy. "PixColor: Pixel Recursive Colorization". In: *BMVC*. 2017 (page 422).
- [Guo09] Y. Guo. "Supervised exponential family principal component analysis via convex optimization". In: *NIPS*. 2009 (page 638).
- [Guo+17] H. Guo, R. Tang, Y. Ye, Z. Li, and X. He. "DeepFM: a factorization-machine based neural network for CTR prediction". In: *IJCAI*. IJCAI'17. Melbourne, Australia: AAAI Press, Aug. 2017, pp. 1725–1731 (page 700).
- [Gus01] M. Gustafsson. "A probabilistic derivation of the partial least-squares algorithm". In: *Journal of Chemical Information and Modeling* 41 (2001), pp. 288–294 (page 638).
- [GVZ16] A. Gupta, A. Vedaldi, and A. Zisserman. "Synthetic Data for Text Localisation in Natural Images". In: *CVPR*. 2016 (page 581).
- [GWD14] A. Graves, G. Wayne, and I. Danihelka. "Neural Turing Machines". In: (Oct. 2014). arXiv: 1410.5401 [cs.NE] (page 477).
- [GZE19] A. Grover, A. Zweig, and S. Ermon. "Graphite: Iterative Generative Modeling of Graphs". In: *International Conference on Machine Learning*. 2019, pp. 2434–2444 (page 719).
- [HA17] W. Hare and C. Audet. *Derivative Free and Black-Box Optimization*. Springer, 2017 (page 151).
- [HA85] L. Hubert and P. Arabie. "Comparing Partitions". In: *J. of Classification* 2 (1985), pp. 193–218 (page 669).
- [HAB19] M. Hein, M. Andriushchenko, and J. Bitterwolf. "Why ReLU networks yield high-confidence predictions far away from the training data and how to mitigate the problem". In: *CVPR*. 2019 (page 401).
- [Hac75] I. Hacking. *The Emergence of Probability: A Philosophical Study of Early Ideas about Probability, Induction and Statistical Inference*. Cambridge University Press, 1975 (page 790).
- [Háj08] A. Hájek. "Dutch Book Arguments". In: *The Oxford Handbook of Rational and Social*

- Choice*. Ed. by P. Anand, P. Pattanaik, and C. Puppe. Oxford University Press, 2008 (page 257).
- [Haj88] B. Hajek. “Cooling Schedules for Optimal Annealing”. In: *Math. Oper. Res.* 13.2 (1988), pp. 311–329 (page 151).
- [Har54] Z. Harris. “Distributional structure”. In: *Word* 10.23 (1954), pp. 146–162 (page 592).
- [Har90] A. C. Harvey. *Forecasting, Structural Time Series Models, and the Kalman Filter*. Cambridge University Press, 1990 (page 366).
- [Has+04] T. Hastie, S. Rosset, R. Tibshirani, and J. Zhu. “The entire regularization path for the support vector machine”. In: *JMLR* 5 (2004), pp. 1391–1415 (page 544).
- [Has+09] T. Hastie, S. Rosset, J. Zhu, and H. Zou. “Multi-class AdaBoost”. In: *Statistics and its Interface* 2.3 (2009), pp. 349–360 (page 570).
- [Has+17] D. Hassabis, D. Kumaran, C. Summerfield, and M. Botvinick. “Neuroscience-Inspired Artificial Intelligence”. en. In: *Neuron* 95.2 (2017), pp. 245–258 (page 404).
- [Has87] J. Hastad. *Computational limits of small-depth circuits*. MIT Press, 1987 (page 401).
- [HB17] X. Huang and S. Belongie. “Arbitrary style transfer in real-time with adaptive instance normalization”. In: *ICCV. 2017* (page 454).
- [HCL09] C.-W. Hsu, C.-C. Chang, and C.-J. Lin. *A Practical Guide to Support Vector Classification*. Tech. rep. Dept. Comp. Sci., National Taiwan University, 2009 (page 544).
- [He+15] K. He, X. Zhang, S. Ren, and J. Sun. “Delving Deep into Rectifiers: Surpassing Human-Level Performance on ImageNet Classification”. In: *ICCV. 2015* (pages 395, 415).
- [He+16a] K. He, X. Zhang, S. Ren, and J. Sun. “Deep Residual Learning for Image Recognition”. In: *CVPR. 2016* (pages 412, 441, 442).
- [He+16b] K. He, X. Zhang, S. Ren, and J. Sun. “Identity Mappings in Deep Residual Networks”. In: *ECCV. 2016* (page 442).
- [He+17] X. He, L. Liao, H. Zhang, L. Nie, X. Hu, and T.-S. Chua. “Neural Collaborative Filtering”. In: *WWW. 2017* (page 701).
- [HE18] D. Ha and D. Eck. “A Neural Representation of Sketch Drawings”. In: *ICLR. 2018* (page 464).
- [He+20] K. He, H. Fan, Y. Wu, S. Xie, and R. Girshick. “Momentum contrast for unsupervised visual representation learning”. In: *CVPR. 2020*, pp. 9729–9738 (page 588).
- [Hen+15] J. Hensman, A. Matthews, M. Filippone, and Z. Ghahramani. “MCMC for Variationally Sparse Gaussian Processes”. In: *NIPS. 2015*, pp. 1648–1656 (page 527).
- [Hen+20] D. Hendrycks\*, N. Mu\*, E. D. Cubuk, B. Zoph, J. Gilmer, and B. Lakshminarayanan. “AugMix: A Simple Data Processing Method to Improve Robustness and Uncertainty”. In: *ICLR. 2020* (page 581).
- [HFL13] [HG20] [HGD19] [HH06] [Hin13] [Hin14] [HK15] [HL04] [HMT11] [Hoc+01] [Hoe+14] [Hoe+99] [Hof09] [Hon+10] [Hor61] [Hor91]
- J. Hensman, N. Fusi, and N. D. Lawrence. “Gaussian Processes for Big Data”. In: *UAI. 2013* (pages 531, 532).
- J. Howard and S. Gugger. *Deep Learning for Coders with Fastai and PyTorch: AI Applications Without a PhD*. en. 1st ed. O’Reilly Media, Aug. 2020 (pages 392, 410).
- K. He, R. Girshick, and P. Dollar. “Rethinking ImageNet Pre-training”. In: *CVPR. 2019* (page 584).
- C. Holmes and L. Held. “Bayesian auxiliary variable models for binary and multinomial regression”. In: *Bayesian Analysis* 1.1 (2006), pp. 145–168 (page 387).
- G. Hinton. *CSC 2535 Lecture 11: Non-linear dimensionality reduction*. 2013 (pages 654, 662).
- G. Hinton. *Lecture 6e on neural networks*. 2014 (page 128).
- F. M. Harper and J. A. Konstan. “The MovieLens Datasets: History and Context”. In: *ACM Trans. Interact. Intell. Syst.* 5.4 (Dec. 2015), pp. 1–19 (page 694).
- D. R. Hunter and K. Lange. “A Tutorial on MM Algorithms”. In: *The American Statistician* 58 (2004), pp. 30–37 (page 139).
- N. Halko, P.-G. Martinsson, and J. A. Tropp. “Finding structure with randomness: Probabilistic algorithms for constructing approximate matrix decompositions”. In: *SIAM Rev., Survey and Review section* 53.2 (2011), pp. 217–288 (page 623).
- S. Hochreiter, Y. Bengio, P. Frasconi, and J. Schmidhuber. “Gradient flow in recurrent nets: the difficulty of learning long-term dependencies”. In: *A Field Guide to Dynamical Recurrent Neural Networks*. Ed. by S. C. Kremer and J. F. Kolen. 2001 (page 411).
- R. Hoekstra, R. D. Morey, J. N. Rouder, and E.-J. Wagenmakers. “Robust misinterpretation of confidence intervals”. en. In: *Psychon. Bull. Rev.* 21.5 (Oct. 2014), pp. 1157–1164 (pages 843, 844).
- J. Hoeting, D. Madigan, A. Raftery, and C. Volinsky. “Bayesian Model Averaging: A Tutorial”. In: *Statistical Science* 4.4 (1999) (page 31).
- P. D. Hoff. *A First Course in Bayesian Statistical Methods*. Springer, 2009 (pages 175, 387, 825).
- A. Honkela, T. Raiko, M. Kuusela, M. Tornio, and J. Karhunen. “Approximate Riemannian Conjugate Gradient Learning for Fixed-Form Variational Bayes”. In: *JMLR* 11.Nov (2010), pp. 3235–3268 (page 120).
- P. Horst. “Generalized canonical correlations and their applications to experimental data”. en. In: *J. Clin. Psychol.* 17 (Oct. 1961), pp. 331–347 (page 639).
- K. Hornik. “Approximation Capabilities of Multilayer Feedforward Networks”. In: *Neural Networks* 4.2 (1991), pp. 251–257 (page 400).

- [Hos+18] M. Z. Hossain, F. Sohel, M. F. Shiratuddin, and H. Laga. “A Comprehensive Survey of Deep Learning for Image Captioning”. In: *ACM Computing Surveys* (2018) (page 464).
- [HOT06] G. Hinton, S. Osindero, and Y. Teh. “A fast learning algorithm for deep belief nets”. In: *Neural Computation* 18 (2006), pp. 1527–1554 (page 585).
- [Hot36] H. Hotelling. “Relations Between Two Sets of Variates”. In: *Biometrika* 28.3/4 (1936), pp. 321–377 (page 639).
- [Hou+12] N. Houlsby, F. Huszar, Z. Ghahramani, and J. M. Hernández-lobato. “Collaborative Gaussian Processes for Preference Learning”. In: *NIPS*. 2012, pp. 2096–2104 (page 615).
- [HR03] G. E. Hinton and S. T. Roweis. “Stochastic Neighbor Embedding”. In: *NIPS*. 2003, pp. 857–864 (page 661).
- [HR76] L. Hyafil and R. Rivest. “Constructing Optimal Binary Decision Trees is NP-complete”. In: *Information Processing Letters* 5.1 (1976), pp. 15–17 (page 560).
- [HS09] M. Heaton and J. Scott. *Bayesian computation and the linear model*. Tech. rep. Duke, 2009 (page 358).
- [HS19] J. Haochen and S. Sra. “Random Shuffling Beats SGD after Finite Epochs”. In: *ICML*. Vol. 97. Proceedings of Machine Learning Research. Long Beach, California, USA: PMLR, 2019, pp. 2624–2633 (page 123).
- [HS97] S. Hochreiter and J. Schmidhuber. “Long short-term memory”. In: *Neural Computation* 9.8 (1997), 1735–1780 (page 471).
- [HSW89] K. Hornik, M. Stinchcombe, and H. White. “Multilayer feedforward networks are universal approximators”. In: *Neural Networks* 2.5 (1989), pp. 359–366 (page 400).
- [HTF01] T. Hastie, R. Tibshirani, and J. Friedman. *The Elements of Statistical Learning*. Springer, 2001 (pages 98, 333, 338, 822).
- [HTF09] T. Hastie, R. Tibshirani, and J. Friedman. *The Elements of Statistical Learning*. 2nd edition. Springer, 2009 (pages 265, 270, 293, 331, 341–344, 492, 493, 546, 560, 565–567, 572, 577, 618, 781, 826).
- [HTW15] T. Hastie, R. Tibshirani, and M. Wainwright. *Statistical Learning with Sparsity: The Lasso and Generalizations*. CRC Press, 2015 (pages 338, 345, 349).
- [Hua14] G.-B. Huang. “An Insight into Extreme Learning Machines: Random Neurons, Random Features and Kernels”. In: *Cognit. Comput.* 6.3 (Sept. 2014), pp. 376–390 (page 536).
- [Hua+17] J. Huang et al. “Speed/accuracy trade-offs for modern convolutional object detectors”. In: *CVPR*. 2017 (page 444).
- [Hua+18] C.-Z. A. Huang et al. “Music Transformer”. In: (Sept. 2018). arXiv: 1809 . 04281 [cs.LG] (page 478).
- [Hub+08] M. F. Huber, T. Bailey, H. Durrant-Whyte, and U. D. Hanebeck. “On entropy approximation for Gaussian mixture random vectors”. In: *2008 IEEE International Conference on Multisensor Fusion and Integration for Intelligent Systems*. Aug. 2008, pp. 181–188 (page 158).
- [Hub64] P. Huber. “Robust Estimation of a Location Parameter”. In: *Annals of Statistics* 53 (1964), 73–101 (page 241).
- [Hud06] J. E. Hudson. “Signal Processing Using Mutual Information”. In: *IEEE Signal Processing Magazine* 23.6 (2006), pp. 50–54 (page 167).
- [Hut90] M. F. Hutchinson. “A stochastic estimator of the trace of the influence matrix for laplacian smoothing splines”. In: *Communications in Statistics - Simulation and Computation* 19.2 (Jan. 1990), pp. 433–450 (page 756).
- [HVD14] G. Hinton, O. Vinyals, and J. Dean. “Distilling the Knowledge in a Neural Network”. In: *NIPS DL workshop*. 2014 (page 613).
- [HW62] D. Hubel and T. Wiesel. “Receptive fields, binocular interaction, and functional architecture in the cat’s visual cortex”. In: *J. Physiology* 160 (1962), pp. 106–154 (page 435).
- [HXW17] H. He, B. Xin, and D. Wipf. “From Bayesian Sparsity to Gated Recurrent Nets”. In: *NIPS*. 2017 (page 365).
- [HY01] M. Hansen and B. Yu. “Model selection and the principle of minimum description length”. In: *JASA* (2001) (page 218).
- [HYL17] W. Hamilton, Z. Ying, and J. Leskovec. “Inductive representation learning on large graphs”. In: *Advances in Neural Information Processing Systems*. 2017, pp. 1024–1034 (pages 715, 716).
- [Idr+17] H. Idrees et al. “The THUMOS challenge on action recognition for videos “in the wild””. In: *Comput. Vis. Image Underst.* 155 (Feb. 2017), pp. 1–23 (page 12).
- [Ie+19] E. Ie et al. “SlateQ: A tractable decomposition for reinforcement learning with recommendation sets”. In: *IJCAI*. Macao, China: International Joint Conferences on Artificial Intelligence Organization, Aug. 2019 (page 702).
- [Ily+19] A. Ilyas, S. Santurkar, D. Tsipras, L. Engstrom, B. Tran, and A. Madry. “Adversarial Examples Are Not Bugs, They Are Features”. In: (May 2019). arXiv: 1905 . 02175 [stat.ML] (pages 459, 460).
- [Iof17] S. Ioffe. “Batch Renormalization: Towards Reducing Minibatch Dependence in Batch-Normalized Models”. In: (2017). arXiv: 1702 . 03275 [cs.LG] (page 414).
- [Ily+19] S. Ioffe and C. Szegedy. “Batch Normalization: Accelerating Deep Network Training by Reducing Internal Covariate Shift”. In: *ICML*. 2015, pp. 448–456 (pages 414, 441).
- [Isc+19] A. Iscen, G. Tolias, Y. Avrithis, and O. Chum. “Label Propagation for Deep Semi-supervised Learning”. In: *CVPR*. 2019 (page 608).
- [Izm+18] P. Izmailov, D. Podoprikhin, T. Garipov, D. Vetrov, and A. G. Wilson. “Averaging Weights Leads to Wider Optima and Better Generalization”. In: *UAI*. 2018 (pages 125, 609).

- [Izm+20] P. Izmailov, P. Kirichenko, M. Finzi, and A. G. Wilson. “Semi-supervised learning with normalizing flows”. In: *ICML*. 2020, pp. 4615–4630 (page 613).
- [Jac+91] R. Jacobs, M. Jordan, S. Nowlan, and G. Hinton. “Adaptive mixtures of local experts”. In: *Neural Computation* (1991) (page 422).
- [JAFF16] J. Johnson, A. Alahi, and L. Fei-Fei. “Perceptual Losses for Real-Time Style Transfer and Super-Resolution”. In: *ECCV*. 2016 (page 454).
- [Jan18] E. Jang. *Normalizing Flows Tutorial*. 2018 (pages 804, 805).
- [Jay03] E. T. Jaynes. *Probability theory: the logic of science*. Cambridge university press, 2003 (pages 56, 789, 790, 809, 845).
- [Jay76] E. T. Jaynes. “Confidence intervals vs Bayesian intervals”. In: *Foundations of Probability Theory, Statistical Inference, and Statistical Theories of Science, vol II*. Ed. by W. L. Harper and C. A. Hooker. Reidel Publishing Co., 1976 (page 813).
- [JD88] A. Jain and R. Dubes. *Algorithms for Clustering Data*. Prentice Hall, 1988 (page 667).
- [Jef04] R. Jeffrey. *Subjective Probability: The Real Thing*. Cambridge, 2004 (page 200).
- [Jef61] H. Jeffreys. *Theory of Probability*. Oxford, 1961 (page 218).
- [Jef73] H. Jeffreys. *Scientific Inference*. Third edition. Cambridge, 1973 (page 21).
- [JH04] H. Jaeger and H. Haas. “Harnessing Nonlinearity: Predicting Chaotic Systems and Saving Energy in Wireless Communication”. In: *Science* 304.5667 (2004) (page 470).
- [JHG00] N. Japkowicz, S. Hanson, and M. Gluck. “Non-linear autoassociation is not equivalent to PCA”. In: *Neural Computation* 12 (2000), pp. 531–545 (page 640).
- [Jia+13] Y. Jia, J. T. Abbott, J. L. Austerweil, T. Griffiths, and T. Darrell. “Visual Concept Learning: Combining Machine Vision and Bayesian Generalization on Concept Hierarchies”. In: *NIPS*. 2013 (page 26).
- [Jia+19] R. Jia, A. Raghunathan, K. Göksel, and P. Liang. “Certified Robustness to Adversarial Word Substitutions”. In: *EMNLP*. 2019 (page 456).
- [Jia+20] Y. Jiang, B. Neyshabur, H. Mobahi, D. Krishnan, and S. Bengio. “Fantastic Generalization Measures and Where to Find Them”. In: *ICLR*. 2020 (page 839).
- [Jin+17] Y. Jing, Y. Yang, Z. Feng, J. Ye, Y. Yu, and M. Song. “Neural Style Transfer: A Review”. In: *arXiv [cs.CV]* (May 2017) (page 452).
- [JJ00] T. S. Jaakkola and M. I. Jordan. “Bayesian parameter estimation via variational methods”. In: *Statistics and Computing* 10 (2000), pp. 25–37 (page 309).
- [JJ94] M. I. Jordan and R. A. Jacobs. “Hierarchical mixtures of experts and the EM algorithm”. In: *Neural Computation* 6 (1994), pp. 181–214 (pages 422, 424).
- [JJ96] T. Jaakkola and M. Jordan. “A variational approach to Bayesian logistic regression problems and their extensions”. In: *AISTATS*. 1996 (page 309).
- [Jern] A. Jern and C. Kemp. “A probabilistic account of exemplar and category generation”. en. In: *Cogn. Psychol.* 66.1 (Feb. 2013), pp. 85–125 (page 495).
- [Jurafsky] D. Jurafsky and J. H. Martin. *Speech and language processing: An Introduction to Natural Language Processing, Computational Linguistics, and Speech Recognition*. 2nd edition. Prentice-Hall, 2008 (page 157).
- [Jurafsky2] D. Jurafsky and J. H. Martin. *Speech and language processing: An Introduction to Natural Language Processing, Computational Linguistics, and Speech Recognition (Third Edition)*. Draft of 3rd edition. 2018 (page 298).
- [Jordan] M. I. Jordan. “The era of Big Data”. In: *ISBA Bulletin*. Vol. 18. 2011, pp. 1–3 (page 40).
- [Jordan2] M. I. Jordan. “Artificial Intelligence—The Revolution Hasn’t Happened Yet”. In: *Harvard Data Science Review* 1.1 (July 2019) (page 17).
- [Jing] L. Jing and Y. Tian. “Self-supervised Visual Feature Learning with Deep Neural Networks: A Survey”. In: (Feb. 2019). arXiv: 1902.06162 [cs.CV] (page 585).
- [Jung] W. Jung, D. Jung, B. Kim, S. Lee, W. Rhee, and J. Anh. “Restructuring Batch Normalization to Accelerate CNN Training”. In: *SysML*. 2019 (page 415).
- [Jain] S. Jain and B. C. Wallace. “Attention is not Explanation”. In: *NAACL*. 2019 (page 478).
- [Johnson] R. Johnson and T. Zhang. “Accelerating Stochastic Gradient Descent using Predictive Variance Reduction”. In: *NIPS*. Curran Associates, Inc., 2013, pp. 315–323 (page 125).
- [Jozefowicz] R. Jozefowicz, W. Zaremba, and I. Sutskever. “An Empirical Exploration of Recurrent Network Architectures”. In: *ICML*. 2015, pp. 2342–2350 (pages 471, 472).
- [Kinney] J. B. Kinney and G. S. Atwal. “Equitability, mutual information, and the maximal information coefficient”. In: *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U. S. A.* 111.9 (2014), pp. 3354–3359 (page 167).
- [Kirsch] A. Kirsch, J. van Amersfoort, and Y. Gal. “BatchBALD: Efficient and Diverse Batch Acquisition for Deep Bayesian Active Learning”. In: *NIPS*. 2019 (page 615).
- [Kahneman] D. Kahneman. *Thinking, Fast and Slow*. en. 1st ed. Farrar, Straus and Giroux, Apr. 2013 (page 256).
- [Kaiser] H. Kaiser. “The varimax criterion for analytic rotation in factor analysis”. In: *Psychometrika* 23.3 (1958) (page 633).
- [Kandel] E. Kandel, J. Schwartz, T. Jessell, S. Siegelbaum, and A. Hudspeth, eds. *Principles of Neural Science*. Fifth Edition. 2012 (pages 402, 404, 450).
- [Kanagawa] M. Kanagawa, P. Hennig, D. Sejdinovic, and B. K. Sriperumbudur. “Gaussian Processes and Kernel Methods: A Review on Connections and

- Equivalences". In: (July 2018). arXiv: 1807 . 02582 [stat.ML] (page 52).
- [Kan+20] B. Kang et al. "Decoupling Representation and Classifier for Long-Tailed Recognition". In: *ICLR*. 2020 (pages 296, 584).
- [Kar+18] T. Karras, T. Aila, S. Laine, and J. Lehtinen. "Progressive Growing of GANs for Improved Quality, Stability, and Variation". In: *ICLR*. 2018 (page 439).
- [Kat+17] G. Katz, C. Barrett, D. L. Dill, K. Julian, and M. J. Kochenderfer. "Reluplex: An efficient SMT solver for verifying deep neural networks". In: *International Conference on Computer Aided Verification*. Springer. 2017, pp. 97–117 (page 459).
- [Kat+20] A. Katharopoulos, A. Vyas, N. Pappas, and F. Fleuret. "Transformers are RNNs: Fast Autoregressive Transformers with Linear Attention". In: *ICML*. 2020 (page 485).
- [KB15] D. Kingma and J. Ba. "Adam: A Method for Stochastic Optimization". In: *ICLR*. 2015 (pages 103, 128).
- [KB19] M. Kaya and H. S. Bilge. "Deep Metric Learning: A Survey". en. In: *Symmetry* 11.9 (Aug. 2019), p. 1066 (pages 499, 501).
- [KBH19] F. Kunstner, L. Balles, and P. Hennig. "Limitations of the Empirical Fisher Approximation". In: (May 2019). arXiv: 1905 . 12558 [cs.LG] (page 122).
- [KBV09] Y. Koren, R. Bell, and C. Volinsky. "Matrix factorization techniques for recommender systems". In: *IEEE Computer* 42.8 (2009), pp. 30–37 (pages 695, 696).
- [KD09] A. D. Kiureghian and O. Ditlevsen. "Aleatory or epistemic? Does it matter?" In: *Structural Safety* 31.2 (Mar. 2009), pp. 105–112 (page 790).
- [Kem+06] C. Kemp, J. Tenenbaum, T. Y. T. Griffiths and, and N. Ueda. "Learning systems of concepts with an infinite relational model". In: *AAAI*. 2006 (page 690).
- [KF09a] D. Koller and N. Friedman. *Probabilistic Graphical Models: Principles and Techniques*. MIT Press, 2009 (page 733).
- [KF09b] D. Krishnan and R. Fergus. "Fast Image Deconvolution using Hyper-Laplacian Priors". In: *NIPS*. 2009, pp. 1033–1041 (page 71).
- [KG05] A. Krause and C. Guestrin. "Near-optimal value of information in graphical models". In: *UAI*. 2005 (page 615).
- [KG17] A. Kendall and Y. Gal. "What Uncertainties Do We Need in Bayesian Deep Learning for Computer Vision?" In: *NIPS*. Curran Associates, Inc., 2017, pp. 5574–5584 (page 419).
- [KGS20] J. von Kügelgen, L. Gresele, and B. Schölkopf. "Simpson's paradox in Covid-19 case fatality rates: a mediation analysis of age-related causal effects". In: (May 2020). arXiv: 2005 . 07180 [stat.AP] (page 802).
- [KH09] A. Krizhevsky and G. Hinton. *Learning multiple layers of features from tiny images*. Tech. rep. U. Toronto, 2009 (pages 436, 437, 776).
- [KHH19] D. Krotov and J. J. Hopfield. "Unsupervised learning by competing hidden units". en. In: *PNAS* 116.16 (Apr. 2019), pp. 7723–7731 (page 403).
- [Kha+10] M. E. Khan, B. Marlin, G. Bouchard, and K. P. Murphy. "Variational bounds for mixed-data factor analysis". In: *NIPS*. 2010 (page 636).
- [A. Kapoor, E. Horvitz, and S. Basu. "Selective Supervision: Guiding Supervised Learning with Decision-Theoretic Active Learning". In: *IJCAI*. 2007 (page 614).
- [Y. Kim. "Convolutional Neural Networks for Sentence Classification". In: *EMNLP*. 2014 (page 473).
- [D. H. Kim. *Survey of Deep Metric Learning*. 2019 (page 496).
- [D. P. Kingma, D. J. Rezende, S. Mohamed, and M. Welling. "Semi-Supervised Learning with Deep Generative Models". In: *NIPS*. 2014 (page 610).
- [A. Kirillov, K. He, R. Girshick, C. Rother, and P. Dollár. "Panoptic Segmentation". In: *CVPR*. 2019 (page 448).
- [L. Kang and V. Joseph. "Kernel Approximation: From Regression to Interpolation". In: *SIAM/ASA J. Uncertainty Quantification* 4.1 (Jan. 2016), pp. 112–129 (page 523).
- [J. Karhunen and J. Joutsensalo. "Generalizations of principal component analysis, optimization problems, and neural networks". In: *Neural Networks* 8.4 (1995), pp. 549–562 (page 640).
- [N. M. Kriege, F. D. Johansson, and C. Morris. "A Survey on Graph Kernels". In: (Mar. 2019). arXiv: 1903.11835 [cs.LG] (page 520).
- [S. Kirkpatrick, C. G. Jr., and M. Vecchi. "Optimization by simulated annealing". In: *Science* 220 (1983), pp. 671–680 (page 150).
- [S. Kotsiantis and D. Kanellopoulos. "Discretization Techniques: A recent survey". In: *GESTS Intl. Trans. on Computer Science and Engineering* 31.1 (2006), pp. 47–58 (page 158).
- [I. Khemakhem, D. P. Kingma, and A. Hyvärinen. "Variational Autoencoders and Nonlinear ICA: A Unifying Framework". In: *arXiv preprint arXiv:1907.04809* (2019) (page 633).
- [N. Kitayev, L. Kaiser, and A. Levskaya. "Reformer: The Efficient Transformer". In: *8th International Conference on Learning Representations, ICLR 2020, Addis Ababa, Ethiopia, April 26–30, 2020*. OpenReview.net, 2020 (page 484).
- [F. Kunstner, R. Kumar, and M. Schmidt. "Homeomorphic-Invariance of EM: Non-Asymptotic Convergence in KL Divergence for Exponential Families via Mirror Descent". In: (Nov. 2020). arXiv: 2011 . 01170 [cs.LG] (pages 141, 144).
- [H. Kawakatsu and A. Largey. "EM algorithms for ordered probit models with endogenous regressors". In: *The Econometrics Journal* 12.1 (2009), pp. 164–186 (page 387).

- [KL17] J. K. Kruschke and T. M. Liddell. “The Bayesian New Statistics: Hypothesis testing, estimation, meta-analysis, and power analysis from a Bayesian perspective”. In: *Psychon. Bull. Rev.* (2017) (page 220).
- [KL19] W. M. Kouw and M. Loog. “A review of domain adaptation without target labels”. en. In: *IEEE PAMI* (Oct. 2019) (page 588).
- [Kla+17] G. Klambauer, T. Unterthiner, A. Mayr, and S. Hochreiter. “Self-Normalizing Neural Networks”. In: *NIPS*. 2017 (page 395).
- [Kle02] J. Kleinberg. “An Impossibility Theorem for Clustering”. In: *NIPS*. 2002 (page 667).
- [Kle+11] A. Kleiner, A. Talwalkar, P. Sarkar, and M. I. Jordan. *A scalable bootstrap for massive data*. Tech. rep. UC Berkeley, 2011 (page 822).
- [Kle13] P. N. Klein. *Coding the Matrix: Linear Algebra through Applications to Computer Science*. en. 1 edition. Newtonian Press, Sept. 2013 (page 749).
- [KLQ95] C. Ko, J. Lee, and M. Queyranne. “An exact algorithm for maximum entropy sampling”. In: *Operations Research* 43 (1995), 684–691 (page 615).
- [KMY04] D. Kersten, P. Mamassian, and A. Yuille. “Object perception as Bayesian inference”. en. In: *Annu. Rev. Psychol.* 55 (2004), pp. 271–304 (page 25).
- [Koc15] M. Kochenderfer. *Decision Making Under Uncertainty: Theory and Application*. en. 1 edition. The MIT Press, 2015 (page 250).
- [Kok17] I. Kokkinos. “UberNet: Training a Universal Convolutional Neural Network for Low-, Mid-, and High-Level Vision Using Diverse Datasets and Limited Memory”. In: *CVPR*. Vol. 2. 2017, p. 8 (page 446).
- [Kol+19] A. Kolesnikov et al. “Large Scale Learning of General Visual Representations for Transfer”. In: (Dec. 2019). arXiv: 1912 . 11370 [cs.CV] (page 584).
- [Kon20] M. Konnikova. *The Biggest Bluff: How I Learned to Pay Attention, Master Myself, and Win*. en. Penguin Press, June 2020 (page 6).
- [Koo03] G. Koop. *Bayesian econometrics*. Wiley, 2003 (page 384).
- [Kor09] Y. Koren. *The BellKor Solution to the Netflix Grand Prize*. Tech. rep. Yahoo! Research, 2009 (page 694).
- [KR19] M. Kearns and A. Roth. *The Ethical Algorithm: The Science of Socially Aware Algorithm Design*. en. Oxford University Press, Nov. 2019 (page 17).
- [KR87] L. Kaufman and P. Rousseeuw. “Clustering by means of Medoids”. In: *Statistical Data Analysis Based on the L1-norm and Related Methods*. Ed. by Y. Dodge. North-Holland, 1987, 405–416 (page 677).
- [KR90] L. Kaufman and P. Rousseeuw. *Finding Groups in Data: An Introduction to Cluster Analysis*. Wiley, 1990 (page 667).
- [Kri+05] B. Krishnapuram, L. Carin, M. Figueiredo, and A. Hartemink. “Learning sparse Bayesian classifiers: multi-class formulation, fast algorithms, and generalization bounds”. In: *IEEE Transaction on Pattern Analysis and Machine Intelligence* (2005) (page 292).
- [Kro+19] D. P. Kroese, Z. Botev, T. Taimre, and R. Vaishman. *Data Science and Machine Learning: Mathematical and Statistical Methods*. 1 edition. Chapman and Hall/CRC, Nov. 2019 (pages 556, 729).
- [Kru13] J. K. Kruschke. “Bayesian estimation supersedes the t test”. In: *J. Experimental Psychology: General* 142.2 (2013), pp. 573–603 (pages 57, 843).
- [Kru15] J. Kruschke. *Doing Bayesian Data Analysis: A Tutorial with R, JAGS and STAN*. Second edition. Academic Press, 2015 (pages 204, 220).
- [KS15] H. Kaya and A. A. Salah. “Adaptive Mixtures of Factor Analyzers”. In: (July 2015). arXiv: 1507.02801 [stat.ML] (page 634).
- [Kru16] L. Kaiser and I. Sutskever. “Neural GPUs Learn Algorithms”. In: *ICLR*. 2016 (page 477).
- [KSH12] A. Krizhevsky, I. Sutskever, and G. Hinton. “Imagenet classification with deep convolutional neural networks”. In: *NIPS*. 2012 (pages xxix, 394, 395, 401, 438, 440).
- [KSJ09] I. Konstas, V. Stathopoulos, and J. M. Jose. “On social networks and collaborative recommendation”. In: *Proceedings of the 32nd international ACM SIGIR conference on Research and development in information retrieval*. 2009, pp. 195–202 (page 705).
- [KST82] D. Kahneman, P. Slovic, and A. Tversky, eds. *Judgment under uncertainty: Heuristics and biases*. Cambridge, 1982 (page 404).
- [Kua+09] P. Kuan, G. Pan, J. A. Thomson, R. Stewart, and S. Keles. *A hierarchical semi-Markov model for detecting enrichment with application to ChIP-Seq experiments*. Tech. rep. U. Wisconsin, 2009 (page 382).
- [Kuc+16] A. Kucukelbir, D. Tran, R. Ranganath, A. Gelman, and D. M. Blei. “Automatic Differentiation Variational Inference”. In: *JMLR* (2016) (page 227).
- [Kul13] B. Kulis. “Metric Learning: A Survey”. In: *Foundations and Trends in Machine Learning* 5.4 (2013), pp. 287–364 (page 496).
- [Kum+18] K. Kumagai, I. Kobayashi, D. Mochihashi, H. Asoh, T. Nakamura, and T. Nagai. “Natural Language Generation Using Monte Carlo Tree Search”. In: *Journal of Advanced Computational Intelligence and Intelligent Informatics* 22.5 (2018), pp. 777–785 (page 469).
- [KV94] M. J. Kearns and U. V. Vazirani. *An Introduction to Computational Learning Theory*. MIT Press, 1994 (page 838).
- [KVK10] A. Klami, S. Virtanen, and S. Kaski. “Bayesian exponential family projections for coupled data sources”. In: *UAI*. 2010 (page 639).
- [KW14] D. P. Kingma and M. Welling. “Auto-encoding variational Bayes”. In: *ICLR*. 2014 (page 644).

- [KW16a] T. N. Kipf and M. Welling. “Semi-supervised classification with graph convolutional networks”. In: *arXiv preprint arXiv:1609.02907* (2016) (pages 706, 715, 723).
- [KW16b] T. N. Kipf and M. Welling. “Variational graph auto-encoders”. In: *arXiv preprint arXiv:1611.07308* (2016) (page 718).
- [KW19a] D. P. Kingma and M. Welling. “An Introduction to Variational Autoencoders”. In: *Foundations and Trends in Machine Learning* 12.4 (2019), pp. 307–392 (page 644).
- [KW19b] M. J. Kochenderfer and T. A. Wheeler. *Algorithms for Optimization*. en. The MIT Press, Mar. 2019 (pages 107, 151).
- [KW70] G. S. Kimeldorf and G. Wahba. “A Correspondence Between Bayesian Estimation on Stochastic Processes and Smoothing by Splines”. en. In: *Ann. Math. Stat.* 41.2 (Apr. 1970), pp. 495–502 (page 554).
- [KW96] R. E. Kass and L. Wasserman. “The Selection of Prior Distributions by Formal Rules?”. In: *JASA* 91.435 (1996), pp. 1343–1370 (page 200).
- [KWW21] M. J. Kochenderfer, T. A. Wheeler, and K. Wray. *Algorithms for Decision Making*. The MIT Press, Mar. 2021 (page 233).
- [Kyu+10] M. Kyung, J. Gill, M. Ghosh, and G. Casella. “Penalized Regression, Standard Errors and Bayesian Lassos”. In: *Bayesian Analysis* 5.2 (2010), pp. 369–412 (page 345).
- [LA16] S. Laine and T. Aila. “Temporal ensembling for semi-supervised learning”. In: *arXiv preprint arXiv:1610.02242* (2016) (pages 608, 609).
- [LA87] P. J. M. Laarhoven and E. H. L. Aarts, eds. *Simulated Annealing: Theory and Applications*. Norwell, MA, USA: Kluwer Academic Publishers, 1987 (page 150).
- [Lak+17] B. M. Lake, T. D. Ullman, J. B. Tenenbaum, and S. J. Gershman. “Building Machines That Learn and Think Like People”. en. In: *Behav. Brain Sci.* (2017), pp. 1–101 (pages 25, 404).
- [Law12] N. D. Lawrence. “A Unifying Probabilistic Perspective for Spectral Dimensionality Reduction: Insights and New Models”. In: *JMLR* 13.May (2012), pp. 1609–1638 (page 650).
- [LBW17] T. A. Le, A. G. Baydin, and F. Wood. “Inference Compilation and Universal Probabilistic Programming”. In: *AISTATS*. 2017 (page 256).
- [LC98] E. L. Lehmann and G. Casella. *Theory of Point Estimation*. Springer, New York, NY, 1998 (page 833).
- [LeC18] Y. LeCun. *Self-supervised learning: could machines learn like humans?* 2018 (page 585).
- [LeC+98] Y. LeCun, L. Bottou, Y. Bengio, and P. Haffner. “Gradient-Based Learning Applied to Document Recognition”. In: *Proceedings of the IEEE* 86.11 (1998), pp. 2278–2324 (pages 71, 73, 435, 436, 440).
- [Lee13] D.-H. Lee. “Pseudo-label: The simple and efficient semi-supervised learning method for deep neural networks”. In: *ICML Workshop on Challenges in Representation Learning*. 2013 (page 603).
- [Lee+13] J. Lee, S. Kim, G. Lebanon, and Y. Singer. “Local Low-Rank Matrix Approximation”. In: *ICML*. Vol. 28. Proceedings of Machine Learning Research. Atlanta, Georgia, USA: PMLR, 2013, pp. 82–90 (page 698).
- [Lee+19] J. Lee, Y. Lee, J. Kim, A. R. Kosiorek, S. Choi, and Y. W. Teh. “Set Transformer: A Framework for Attention-based Permutation-Invariant Neural Networks”. In: *ICML*. 2019 (page 485).
- [Lee77] J. de Leeuw. “Applications of Convex Analysis to Multidimensional Scaling”. In: *Recent Developments in Statistics*. Ed. by J. R. Barra, F Brodeau, G Romier, and B Van Cutsem. 1977 (page 653).
- [LG14a] O. Levy and Y. Goldberg. “Neural Word Embedding as Implicit Matrix Factorization”. In: *NIPS*. 2014 (page 596).
- [LG14b] O. Levy and Y. Goldberg. “Neural word embedding as implicit matrix factorization”. In: *Advances in neural information processing systems*. 2014, pp. 2177–2185 (page 712).
- [LH17] I. Loshchilov and F. Hutter. “SGDR: Stochastic Gradient Descent with Warm Restarts”. In: *ICLR*. 2017 (page 411).
- [Li+10] L. Li, W. Chu, J. Langford, and R. E. Schapire. “A contextual-bandit approach to personalized news article recommendation”. In: *WWW*. 2010 (page 249).
- [Li+15] Y. Li, D. Tarlow, M. Brockschmidt, and R. Zemel. “Gated graph sequence neural networks”. In: *arXiv preprint arXiv:1511.05493* (2015) (page 714).
- [Li+19a] J. Li, S. Qu, X. Li, J. Szurley, J. Z. Kolter, and F. Metze. “Adversarial Music: Real world Audio Adversary against Wake-word Detection System”. In: *NIPS*. Curran Associates, Inc., 2019, pp. 11908–11918 (page 456).
- [Li+19b] X. Li, L. Vilnis, D. Zhang, M. Boratko, and A. McCallum. “Smoothing the Geometry of Probabilistic Box Embeddings”. In: *ICLR*. 2019 (page 33).
- [Lia+08] F. Liang, R. Paulo, G. Molina, M. Clyde, and J. Berger. “Mixtures of g-priors for Bayesian Variable Selection”. In: *JASA* 103.481 (2008), pp. 410–423 (page 358).
- [Lim+19] S. Lim, I. Kim, T. Kim, C. Kim, and S. Kim. “Fast AutoAugment”. In: (May 2019). *arXiv:1905.00397 [cs.LG]* (page 581).
- [Lin06] D. Lindley. *Understanding Uncertainty*. Wiley, 2006 (page 789).
- [Lin56] D. Lindley. “On a measure of the information provided by an experiment”. In: *The Annals of Math. Stat.* (1956), 986–1005 (page 615).
- [Liu+15] Z. Liu, P. Luo, X. Wang, and X. Tang. “Deep Learning Face Attributes in the Wild”. In: *ICCV*. 2015 (page 437).
- [Liu+16] W. Liu, D. Anguelov, D. Erhan, C. Szegedy, and S. Reed. “SSD: Single Shot MultiBox Detector”. In: *ECCV*. 2016 (page 444).
- [Liu+18a] H. Liu, Y.-S. Ong, X. Shen, and J. Cai. “When Gaussian Process Meets Big Data: A Review

- of Scalable GPs". In: (July 2018). arXiv: [1807.01065 \[stat.ML\]](#) (page 529).
- [Liu+18b] L. Liu, X. Liu, C.-J. Hsieh, and D. Tao. "Stochastic Second-order Methods for Non-convex Optimization with Inexact Hessian and Gradient". In: (Sept. 2018). arXiv: [1809.09853 \[math.OC\]](#) (page 285).
- [Liu+20] F. Liu, X. Huang, Y. Chen, and J. A. K. Suykens. "Random Features for Kernel Approximation: A Survey on Algorithms, Theory, and Beyond". In: (Apr. 2020). arXiv: [2004.11154 \[stat.ML\]](#) (page 535).
- [LJ09] H. Lukosevicius and H. Jaeger. "Reservoir computing approaches to recurrent neural network training". In: *Computer Science Review* 3.3 (2009), 127–149 (page 470).
- [LJHG11] S. Lacoste-Julien, F. Huszar, and Z. Ghahramani. "Approximate inference for the loss-calibrated Bayesian". In: *AISTATS*. 2011 (page 256).
- [LJK09] D. Lewandowski, D. Kurowicka, and H. Joe. "Generating random correlation matrices based on vines and extended onion method". In: *J. Multivar. Anal.* 100.9 (Oct. 2009), pp. 1989–2001 (page 195).
- [Llo82] S. Lloyd. "Least squares quantization in PCM". In: *IEEE Trans. Inf. Theory* 28.2 (Mar. 1982), pp. 129–137 (page 673).
- [LLT89] K. Lange, R. Little, and J. Taylor. "Robust Statistical Modeling Using the T Distribution". In: *JASA* 84.408 (1989), pp. 881–896 (page 57).
- [LM04] E. Learned-Miller. *Hyperspacings and the estimation of information theoretic quantities*. Tech. rep. 04-104. U. Mass. Amherst Comp. Sci. Dept, 2004 (page 158).
- [LM86] R. Larsen and M. Marx. *An introduction to mathematical statistics and its applications*. Prentice Hall, 1986 (page 839).
- [LNK19] Q. Liu, M. Nickel, and D. Kiela. "Hyperbolic graph neural networks". In: *Advances in Neural Information Processing Systems*. 2019, pp. 8228–8239 (page 717).
- [Loa00] C. F. V. Loan. "The ubiquitous Kronecker product". In: *J. Comput. Appl. Math.* 123.1 (Nov. 2000), pp. 85–100 (page 768).
- [Lod+02] H. Lodhi, C. Saunders, J. Shawe-Taylor, N. Cristianini, and C. Watkins. "Text classification using string kernels". en. In: *J. Mach. Learn. Res.* (Mar. 2002) (page 520).
- [LPM15] M.-T. Luong, H. Pham, and C. D. Manning. "Effective Approaches to Attention-based Neural Machine Translation". In: *EMNLP*. 2015 (page 470).
- [LR85] T. L. Lai and H. Robbins. "Asymptotically efficient adaptive allocation rules". en. In: *Adv. Appl. Math.* (Mar. 1985) (page 253).
- [LRU14] J. Leskovec, A. Rajaraman, and J. Ullman. *Mining of massive datasets*. Cambridge, 2014 (page 494).
- [LS10] P. Long and R. Servedio. "Random classification noise beats all convex potential boosters". In: *JMLR* 78.3 (2010), pp. 287–304 (page 301).
- [LS19a] S. Lattanzi and C. Sohler. "A Better k-means++ Algorithm via Local Search". In: *ICML*. Vol. 97. Proceedings of Machine Learning Research. Long Beach, California, USA: PMLR, 2019, pp. 3662–3671 (page 677).
- [LS19b] T. Lattimore and C. Szepesvari. *Bandit Algorithms*. Cambridge, 2019 (pages 248, 253).
- [LS19c] T. Lattimore and C. Szepesvari. *Bayesian/minimax duality for adversarial bandits* (blog post). 2019 (page 831).
- [LS19d] Z. C. Lipton and J. Steinhardt. "Troubling Trends in Machine Learning Scholarship: Some ML papers suffer from flaws that could mislead the public and stymie future research". In: *The Queue* 17.1 (Feb. 2019), pp. 45–77 (page 498).
- [LS88] S. L. Lauritzen and D. J. Spiegelhalter. "Local computations with probabilities on graphical structures and their applications to expert systems". In: *JRSSB* B.50 (1988), pp. 127–224 (page 77).
- [LSS13] Q. Le, T. Sarlos, and A. Smola. "Fastfood - Computing Hilbert Space Expansions in loglinear time". In: *ICML*. Vol. 28. Proceedings of Machine Learning Research. Atlanta, Georgia, USA: PMLR, 2013, pp. 244–252 (page 535).
- [Lu+19] L. Lu, Y. Shin, Y. Su, and G. E. Karniadakis. "Dying ReLU and Initialization: Theory and Numerical Examples". In: (Mar. 2019). arXiv: [1903.06733 \[stat.ML\]](#) (page 395).
- [Luo16] M.-T. Luong. "Neural machine translation". PhD thesis. Stanford Dept. Comp. Sci., 2016 (pages 468, 469).
- [Luo+19] P. Luo, X. Wang, W. Shao, and Z. Peng. "Towards Understanding Regularization in Batch Normalization". In: *ICLR*. 2019 (page 414).
- [Lou17] C. Louizos, K. Ullrich, and M. Welling. "Bayesian Compression for Deep Learning". In: *NIPS*. 2017 (page 418).
- [LUW17] U. von Luxburg. "A tutorial on spectral clustering". In: *Statistics and Computing* 17.4 (2007), pp. 395–416 (pages 687, 689).
- [Lux07] O. Ledoit and M. Wolf. "A Well-Conditioned Estimator for Large-Dimensional Covariance Matrices". In: *J. of Multivariate Analysis* 88.2 (2004), pp. 365–411 (page 94).
- [LW04a] O. Ledoit and M. Wolf. "Honey, I Shrunk the Sample Covariance Matrix". In: *J. of Portfolio Management* 31.1 (2004) (page 94).
- [LW04b] H. Lopes and M. West. "Bayesian model assessment in factor analysis". In: *Statistica Sinica* 14 (2004), pp. 41–67 (page 633).
- [LW04c] C. Li and M. Wand. "Precomputed Real-Time Texture Synthesis with Markovian Generative Adversarial Networks". In: *ECCV*. 2016 (page 454).
- [LW16] U. von Luxburg, R. Williamson, and I. Guyon. "Clustering: science or art?" In: *Workshop on Unsupervised and Transfer Learning*. 2012 (page 667).
- [LWG12] A. Ly, M. Marsman, J. Verhagen, R. Grasman, and E.-J. Wagenaars. "A Tutorial on

- Fisher Information". In: (May 2017). arXiv: 1705.01064 [math.ST] (page 813).
- [Lyu+20] X.-K. Lyu, Y. Xu, X.-F. Zhao, X.-N. Zuo, and C.-P. Hu. "Beyond psychology: prevalence of p value and confidence interval misinterpretation across different fields". In: *Journal of Pacific Rim Psychology* 14 (2020) (pages 843, 844).
- [MA10] I. Murray and R. P. Adams. "Slice sampling covariance hyperparameters of latent Gaussian models". In: *NIPS*. 2010, pp. 1732–1740 (page 527).
- [MA+17] Y. Movshovitz-Attias, A. Toshev, T. K. Leung, S. Ioffe, and S. Singh. "No Fuss Distance Metric Learning using Proxies". In: *ICCV*. 2017 (page 501).
- [Maa+11] A. L. Maas, R. E. Daly, P. T. Pham, D. Huang, A. Y. Ng, and C. Potts. "Learning Word Vectors for Sentiment Analysis". In: *Proc. ACL*. 2011, pp. 142–150 (page 398).
- [Maa14] L. van der Maaten. "Accelerating t-SNE using Tree-Based Algorithms". In: *JMLR* (2014) (page 664).
- [Mac03] D. MacKay. *Information Theory, Inference, and Learning Algorithms*. Cambridge University Press, 2003 (pages 153, 171, 279).
- [Mac09] L. W. Mackey. "Deflation Methods for Sparse PCA". In: *NIPS*. 2009 (page 777).
- [Mac67] J MacQueen. "Some methods for classification and analysis of multivariate observations". en. In: *Proceedings of the Fifth Berkeley Symposium on Mathematical Statistics and Probability, Volume 1: Statistics*. The Regents of the University of California, 1967 (page 673).
- [Mac95] D. MacKay. "Probable networks and plausible predictions — a review of practical Bayesian methods for supervised neural networks". In: *Network: Computation in Neural Systems* 6.3 (1995), pp. 469–505 (pages 213, 363, 420).
- [Mad+18] A. Madry, A. Makelov, L. Schmidt, D. Tsipras, and A. Vladu. "Towards Deep Learning Models Resistant to Adversarial Attacks". In: *ICLR*. 2018 (pages 456, 459).
- [Mad+20] A. Madani et al. "ProGen: Language Modeling for Protein Generation". en. Mar. 2020 (page 478).
- [Mah07] R. P. S. Mahler. *Statistical Multisource-Multitarget Information Fusion*. Norwood, MA, USA: Artech House, Inc., 2007 (page 495).
- [Mah13] R. Mahler. "Statistics 102 for Multisource-Multitarget Detection and Tracking". In: *IEEE J. Sel. Top. Signal Process.* 7.3 (June 2013), pp. 376–389 (page 495).
- [Mah+18] D. Mahajan et al. "Exploring the Limits of Weakly Supervised Pretraining". In: (May 2018). arXiv: 1805.00932 [cs.CV] (pages 296, 443).
- [Mai15] J. Mairal. "Incremental Majorization-Minimization Optimization with Application to Large-Scale Machine Learning". In: *SIAM J. Optim.* 25.2 (Jan. 2015), pp. 829–855 (page 139).
- [Mal99] S. Mallat. *A Wavelet Tour of Signal Processing*. Academic Press, 1999 (page 446).
- [Man+16] V. Mansinghka, P. Shafto, E. Jonas, C. Petschelt, M. Gasner, and J. Tenenbaum. "Crosscat: A Fully Bayesian, Nonparametric Method For Analyzing Heterogeneous, High-dimensional Data." In: *JMLR* 17 (2016) (page 691).
- [Mar06] H. Markram. "The blue brain project". en. In: *Nat. Rev. Neurosci.* 7.2 (Feb. 2006), pp. 153–160 (page 404).
- [Mar08] B. Marlin. "Missing Data Problems in Machine Learning". PhD thesis. U. Toronto, 2008 (pages 147, 276).
- [Mar11] B. M. Marlin, R. S. Zemel, S. T. Roweis, and M. Slaney. "Recommender Systems, Missing Data and Statistical Model Estimation". In: *IJCAI*. 2011 (pages 147, 693).
- [Mar16] J. Martens. "Second-order optimization for neural networks". PhD thesis. Toronto, 2016 (page 122).
- [Mar18] O. Martin. *Bayesian analysis with Python*. Packt, 2018 (pages 38, 301, 308, 352, 527, 528, 684–686).
- [Mar72] G. Marsaglia. "Choosing a Point from the Surface of a Sphere". en. In: *Ann. Math. Stat.* 43.2 (Apr. 1972), pp. 645–646 (page 502).
- [Mar82] D. Marr. *Vision. A Computational Investigation into the Human Representation and Processing of Visual Information*. W.H. Freeman and Company, 1982 (page 3).
- [Mas+00] L. Mason, J. Baxter, P. L. Bartlett, and M. R. Frean. "Boosting Algorithms as Gradient Descent". In: *NIPS*. 2000, pp. 512–518 (page 571).
- [Mas+15] J. Masci, D. Boscaini, M. Bronstein, and P. Vandergheynst. "Geodesic convolutional neural networks on riemannian manifolds". In: *Proceedings of the IEEE international conference on computer vision workshops*. 2015, pp. 37–45 (page 716).
- [Mat00] R. Matthews. "Storks Deliver Babies ( p = 0.008)". In: *Teach. Stat.* 22.2 (June 2000), pp. 36–38 (page 801).
- [Mat16] A. Matthews, J. Hensman, R. Turner, and Z. Ghahramani. "On Sparse Variational Methods and the Kullback-Leibler Divergence between Stochastic Processes". en. In: *AISTATS*. May 2016, pp. 231–239 (page 529).
- [Mat98] R. Matthews. *Bayesian Critique of Statistics in Health: The Great Health Hoax*. 1998 (page 843).
- [MAV17] D. Molchanov, A. Ashukha, and D. Vetrov. "Variational Dropout Sparsifies Deep Neural Networks". In: *ICML*. 2017 (page 418).
- [May79] P. Maybeck. *Stochastic models, estimation, and control*. Academic Press, 1979 (page 229).
- [MB05] F. Morin and Y. Bengio. "Hierarchical Probabilistic Neural Network Language Model". In: *AISTATS*. 2005 (page 295).
- [MB06] N. Meinshausen and P. Bühlmann. "High dimensional graphs and variable selection with the lasso". In: *The Annals of Statistics* 34 (2006), pp. 1436–1462 (page 344).

- [MB88] T. Mitchell and J. Beauchamp. “Bayesian Variable Selection in Linear Regression”. In: *JASA* 83 (1988), pp. 1023–1036 (page 358).
- [MLB20] K. Musgrave, S. Belongie, and S.-N. Lim. “A Metric Learning Reality Check”. In: *ECCV*. Mar. 2020 (pages 498, 503).
- [MC19] P. Moreno Comellas. “Vision as inverse graphics for detailed scene understanding”. en. PhD thesis. July 2019 (page 25).
- [McE20] R. McElreath. *Statistical Rethinking: A Bayesian Course with Examples in R and Stan (2nd edition)*. en. Chapman and Hall/CRC, 2020 (page 685).
- [McL75] G. J. McLachlan. “Iterative reclassification procedure for constructing an asymptotically optimal rule of allocation in discriminant analysis”. In: *Journal of the American Statistical Association* 70.350 (1975), pp. 365–369 (page 603).
- [McM+13] H. B. McMahan et al. “Ad click prediction: a view from the trenches”. In: *KDD*. 2013, pp. 1222–1230 (page 249).
- [MD97] X. L. Meng and D. van Dyk. “The EM algorithm — an old folk song sung to a fast new tune (with Discussion)”. In: *J. Royal Stat. Soc. B* 59 (1997), pp. 511–567 (page 141).
- [MDM19] S. Mahloujifar, D. I. Diochnos, and M. Mahmoody. “The curse of concentration in robust learning: Evasion and poisoning attacks from concentration of measure”. In: *Proceedings of the AAAI Conference on Artificial Intelligence*. Vol. 33. 2019, pp. 4536–4543 (page 461).
- [ME14] S. Masoudnia and R. Ebrahimpour. “Mixture of experts: a literature survey”. In: *Artificial Intelligence Review* 42.2 (Aug. 2014), pp. 275–293 (page 422).
- [Mei01] M. Meila. “A random walks view of spectral segmentation”. In: *AISTATS*. 2001 (page 689).
- [Mei05] M. Meila. “Comparing clusterings: an axiomatic view”. In: *ICML*. 2005 (page 669).
- [Men+12] T. Mensink, J. Verbeek, F. Perronnin, and G. Csurka. “Metric Learning for Large Scale Image Classification: Generalizing to New Classes at Near-Zero Cost”. In: *ECCV*. Springer Berlin Heidelberg, 2012, pp. 488–501 (page 266).
- [MG05] I. Murray and Z. Ghahramani. *A note on the evidence and Bayesian Occam’s razor*. Tech. rep. Gatsby, 2005 (pages 213, 215).
- [MG15] J. Martens and R. Grosse. “Optimizing Neural Networks with Kronecker-factored Approximate Curvature”. In: *ICML*. 2015 (page 122).
- [MH07] A. Mnih and G. Hinton. “Three new graphical models for statistical language modelling”. en. In: *ICML*. 2007 (page 596).
- [MH08] L. v. d. Maaten and G. Hinton. “Visualizing Data using t-SNE”. In: *JMLR* 9.Nov (2008), pp. 2579–2605 (page 661).
- [MHM18] L. McInnes, J. Healy, and J. Melville. “UMAP: Uniform Manifold Approximation and Projection for Dimension Reduction”. In: (Feb. 2018). arXiv: 1802.03426 [stat.ML] (page 664).
- [MHN13] A. L. Maas, A. Y. Hannun, and A. Y. Ng. “Rectifier Nonlinearities Improve Neural Network Acoustic Models”. In: *ICML*. Vol. 28. 2013 (pages 394, 395).
- [Mik+13a] T. Mikolov, K. Chen, G. Corrado, and J. Dean. “Efficient Estimation of Word Representations in Vector Space”. In: *ICLR*. 2013 (pages 295, 594).
- [Mik+13b] T. Mikolov, I. Sutskever, K. Chen, G. Corrado, and J. Dean. “Distributed Representations of Words and Phrases and their Compositionalities”. In: *NIPS*. 2013 (page 594).
- [Mik+13c] T. Mikolov, I. Sutskever, K. Chen, G. S. Corrado, and J. Dean. “Distributed representations of words and phrases and their compositionality”. In: *NIPS*. 2013, pp. 3111–3119 (page 711).
- [Min00a] T. Minka. *Bayesian linear regression*. Tech. rep. MIT, 2000 (pages 357, 358).
- [Min00b] T. Minka. *Bayesian model averaging is not model combination*. Tech. rep. MIT Media Lab, 2000 (page 563).
- [Min00c] T. Minka. *Estimating a Dirichlet distribution*. Tech. rep. MIT, 2000 (page 210).
- [Min99] T. Minka. *Learning how to learn is learning with point sets*. Tech. rep. MIT Media Lab, 1999 (page 589).
- [Mit97] T. Mitchell. *Machine Learning*. McGraw Hill, 1997 (pages 1, 26, 33).
- [Miy+18] T. Miyato, S.-I. Maeda, M. Koyama, and S. Ishii. “Virtual Adversarial Training: A Regularization Method for Supervised and Semi-Supervised Learning”. In: *IEEE PAMI* (2018) (page 609).
- [MK97] G. J. McLachlan and T. Krishnan. *The EM Algorithm and Extensions*. Wiley, 1997 (page 140).
- [ML14] M. Muja and D. G. Lowe. “Scalable Nearest Neighbor Algorithms for High Dimensional Data”. In: *IEEE PAMI* 36 (2014) (page 494).
- [MM16] D. Mishkin and J. Matas. “All you need is a good init”. In: *ICLR*. 2016 (page 415).
- [MN89] P. McCullagh and J. Nelder. *Generalized linear models*. 2nd edition. Chapman and Hall, 1989 (page 371).
- [MNM02] W. Maass, T. Natschlaeger, and H. Markram. “Real-time computing without stable states: A new framework for neural computation based on perturbations”. In: *Neural Computation* 14.11 (2002), 2531–2560 (page 470).
- [MO04] S. C. Madeira and A. L. Oliveira. “Biclustering Algorithms for Biological Data Analysis: A Survey”. In: *IEEE/ACM Transactions on Computational Biology and Bioinformatics* 1.1 (2004), pp. 24–45 (page 689).
- [Mol04] C. Moler. *Numerical Computing with MATLAB*. SIAM, 2004 (page 749).
- [Mon+14] G. F. Montufar, R. Pascanu, K. Cho, and Y. Bengio. “On the Number of Linear Regions of Deep Neural Networks”. In: *NIPS*. 2014 (page 401).

- [Mon+17] F. Monti, D. Boscaini, J. Masci, E. Rodola, J. Svoboda, and M. M. Bronstein. “Geometric deep learning on graphs and manifolds using mixture model cnns”. In: *Proceedings of the IEEE Conference on Computer Vision and Pattern Recognition*. 2017, pp. 5115–5124 (page 716).
- [Mor+16] R. D. Morey, R. Hoekstra, J. N. Rouder, M. D. Lee, and E.-J. Wagenmakers. “The fallacy of placing confidence in confidence intervals”. en. In: *Psychon. Bull. Rev.* 23.1 (Feb. 2016), pp. 103–123 (page 844).
- [MOT15] A. Mordvintsev, C. Olah, and M. Tyka. *Inceptionism: Going Deeper into Neural Networks*. <https://ai.googleblog.com/2015/06/inceptionism-going-deeper-into-neural.html>. Accessed: NA-NA-NA. 2015 (page 451).
- [MP43] W. McCulloch and W. Pitts. “A logical calculus of the ideas immanent in nervous activity”. In: *Bulletin of Mathematical Biophysics* 5 (1943), pp. 115–137 (page 403).
- [MP69] M. Minsky and S. Papert. *Perceptrons*. MIT Press, 1969 (page 392).
- [MRS08] C. Manning, P. Raghavan, and H. Schuetze. *Introduction to Information Retrieval*. Cambridge University Press, 2008 (pages 298, 670).
- [MS11] D. Mayo and A. Spanos. “Error Statistics”. In: *Handbook of Philosophy of Science*. Ed. by P. S. Bandyopadhyay and M. R. Forster. 2011 (page 843).
- [Muk+19] B. Mukhoty, G. Gopakumar, P. Jain, and P. Kar. “Globally-convergent Iteratively Reweighted Least Squares for Robust Regression Problems”. In: *AISTATS*. 2019, pp. 313–322 (page 337).
- [Mur22] K. P. Murphy. *Probabilistic Machine Learning: Advanced Topics*. MIT Press, 2022 (pages xxix, 15, 16, 25, 40, 42, 67, 74, 78, 153, 159, 224, 250, 251, 417, 420, 448, 474, 528, 611, 612, 676, 681, 703).
- [MV15] A. Mahendran and A. Vedaldi. “Understanding deep image representations by inverting them”. In: *CVPR*. June 2015, pp. 5188–5196 (page 449).
- [MV16] A. Mahendran and A. Vedaldi. “Visualizing Deep Convolutional Neural Networks Using Natural Pre-images”. In: *Intl. J. Computer Vision* (2016), pp. 1–23 (pages 449, 451).
- [MWK16] A. H. Marblestone, G. Wayne, and K. P. Kording. “Toward an Integration of Deep Learning and Neuroscience”. en. In: *Front. Comput. Neurosci.* 10 (2016), p. 94 (page 404).
- [MWP98] B. Moghaddam, W. Wahid, and A. Pentland. “Beyond eigenfaces: probabilistic matching for face recognition”. In: *Proceedings Third IEEE International Conference on Automatic Face and Gesture Recognition*. Apr. 1998, pp. 30–35 (page 619).
- [Nab01] I. Nabney. *NETLAB: algorithms for pattern recognition*. Springer, 2001 (page 305).
- [Nad+19] S. Naderi, K. He, R. Aghajani, S. Scalaroff, and P. Felzenszwalb. “Generalized Majorization-Minimization”. In: *ICML*. 2019 (page 139).
- [Nau04] J. Naudts. “Estimators, escort probabilities and  $\phi$ -exponential families in statistical physics”. In: *J. of Inequalities in Pure and Applied Mathematics* 5.4 (2004) (page 376).
- [Nea96] R. Neal. *Bayesian learning for neural networks*. Springer, 1996 (page 363).
- [Nes04] Y. Nesterov. *Introductory Lectures on Convex Optimization. A basic course*. Kluwer, 2004 (page 115).
- [Neu04] A. Neumaier. “Complete search in continuous global optimization and constraint satisfaction”. In: *Acta Numer.* 13 (May 2004), pp. 271–369 (page 107).
- [Neu17] G. Neubig. “Neural Machine Translation and Sequence-to-sequence Models: A Tutorial”. In: (Mar. 2017). arXiv: 1703 . 01619 [cs.CL] (page 469).
- [NHL819] E. Nalisnick, J. M. Hernández-Lobato, and P. Smyth. “Dropout as a Structured Shrinkage Prior”. In: *ICML*. 2019 (page 419).
- [Nic+15] M. Nickel, K. Murphy, V. Tresp, and E. Gabrilovich. “A Review of Relational Machine Learning for Knowledge Graphs”. In: *Proc. IEEE* (2015) (page 721).
- [NJ02] A. Y. Ng and M. I. Jordan. “On Discriminative vs. Generative Classifiers: A comparison of logistic regression and Naïve Bayes”. In: *NIPS-14*. 2002 (page 274).
- [NJW01] A. Ng, M. Jordan, and Y. Weiss. “On Spectral Clustering: Analysis and an algorithm”. In: *NIPS*. 2001 (page 688).
- [NK17] M. Nickel and D. Kiela. “Poincaré embeddings for learning hierarchical representations”. In: *Advances in neural information processing systems*. 2017, pp. 6338–6347 (page 710).
- [NK18] M. Nickel and D. Kiela. “Learning Continuous Hierarchies in the Lorentz Model of Hyperbolic Geometry”. In: *International Conference on Machine Learning*. 2018, pp. 3779–3788 (page 710).
- [NK19] T. Niven and H.-Y. Kao. “Probing Neural Network Comprehension of Natural Language Arguments”. In: *Proc. ACL*. 2019 (page 600).
- [NMC05] A. Niculescu-Mizil and R. Caruana. “Predicting Good Probabilities with Supervised Learning”. In: *ICML*. 2005 (page 275).
- [Nou+02] M. N. Nounou, B. R. Bakshi, P. K. Goel, and X. Shen. “Process modeling by Bayesian latent variable regression”. In: *Am. Inst. Chemical Engineers Journal* 48.8 (Aug. 2002), pp. 1775–1793 (page 638).
- [Nov62] A. Novikoff. “On convergence proofs on perceptrons”. In: *Symp. on the Mathematical Theory of Automata* 12 (1962), pp. 615–622 (page 284).
- [NR18] G. Neu and L. Rosasco. “Iterate Averaging as Regularization for Stochastic Gradient Descent”. In: *COLT*. 2018 (page 125).
- [NS17] E. Nalisnick and P. Smyth. “Variational Reference Priors”. In: *ICLR Workshop*. 2017 (page 203).

- [NS18] E. Nalisnick and P. Smyth. “Learning Priors for Invariance”. In: *AISTATS*. 2018 (page 203).
- [NTL20] J. Nixon, D. Tran, and B. Lakshminarayanan. “Why aren’t bootstrapped neural networks better?” In: *NIPS Workshop on “I can’t believe it’s not better”*. 2020 (page 565).
- [NW06] J. Nocedal and S. Wright. *Numerical Optimization*. Springer, 2006 (pages 107, 113, 118, 130).
- [NYC15] A. Nguyen, J. Yosinski, and J. Clune. “Deep Neural Networks are Easily Fooled: High Confidence Predictions for Unrecognizable Images”. In: *CVPR*. 2015 (page 457).
- [OA09] M. Opper and C. Archambeau. “The variational Gaussian approximation revisited”. en. In: *Neural Comput.* 21.3 (Mar. 2009), pp. 786–792 (page 531).
- [Ode16] A. Odena. “Semi-supervised learning with generative adversarial networks”. In: *arXiv preprint arXiv:1606.01583* (2016) (page 612).
- [OLV18] A. van den Oord, Y. Li, and O. Vinyals. “Representation Learning with Contrastive Predictive Coding”. In: (July 2018). arXiv: 1807.03748 [cs.LG] (page 500).
- [OMS17] C. Olah, A. Mordvintsev, and L. Schubert. “Feature Visualization”. In: *Distill* (2017) (page 451).
- [oor+16] A. Van den oord et al. “WaveNet: A Generative Model for Raw Audio”. In: (Dec. 2016). arXiv: 1609.03499 [cs.SD] (page 474).
- [Oor+18] A. van den Oord et al. “Parallel WaveNet: Fast High-Fidelity Speech Synthesis”. In: *ICML*. Ed. by J. Dy and A. Krause. Vol. 80. Proceedings of Machine Learning Research. Stockholmssässan, Stockholm Sweden: PMLR, 2018, pp. 3918–3926 (page 474).
- [OPK12] G. Ohloff, W. Pickenhagen, and P. Kraft. *Scent and Chemistry*. en. Wiley, Jan. 2012 (page 724).
- [OPT00a] M. R. Osborne, B. Presnell, and B. A. Turlach. “A new approach to variable selection in least squares problems”. In: *IMA Journal of Numerical Analysis* 20.3 (2000), pp. 389–403 (page 349).
- [OPT00b] M. R. Osborne, B. Presnell, and B. A. Turlach. “On the lasso and its dual”. In: *J. Computational and graphical statistics* 9 (2000), pp. 319–337 (page 349).
- [Ort+19] P. A. Ortega et al. “Meta-learning of Sequential Strategies”. In: (May 2019). arXiv: 1905.03030 [cs.LG] (page 181).
- [Osb16] I. Osband. “Risk versus Uncertainty in Deep Learning: Bayes, Bootstrap and the Dangers of Dropout”. In: *NIPS workshop on Bayesian deep learning*. 2016 (page 790).
- [OTJ07] G. Obozinski, B. Taskar, and M. I. Jordan. *Joint covariate selection for grouped classification*. Tech. rep. UC Berkeley, 2007 (page 345).
- [Pai05] A. Pais. *Subtle Is the Lord: The Science and the Life of Albert Einstein*. en. Oxford University Press, Nov. 2005 (page 768).
- [Pan+15] [Pap+17] [Par+18] [PAPRS14] [Pas14] [Pat12] [Pat+16] [Pau+20] [PB+14] [PC08] [Pea18] [Pel08] [Pen+20] [Per+17] [Panayotov, G. Chen, D. Povey, and S. Khudanpur. “Librispeech: an asr corpus based on public domain audio books”. In: *ICASSP*. IEEE. 2015, pp. 5206–5210 (page 602). N. Papernot, P. McDaniel, I. Goodfellow, S. Jha, Z Berkay Celik, and A. Swami. “Practical Black-Box Attacks against Deep Learning Systems using Adversarial Examples”. In: *ACM Asia Conference on Computer and Communications Security*. 2017 (page 458). G. Papandreou, T. Zhu, L.-C. Chen, S. Gidaris, J. Tompson, and K. Murphy. “PersonLab: Person Pose Estimation and Instance Segmentation with a Bottom-Up, Part-Based, Geometric Embedding Model”. In: *ECCV*. 2018, pp. 269–286 (page 445). N. Parmar et al. “Image Transformer”. In: *ICLR*. 2018 (pages 479, 484). B. Perozzi, R. Al-Rfou, and S. Skiena. “Deepwalk: Online learning of social representations”. In: *Proceedings of the 20th ACM SIGKDD international conference on Knowledge discovery and data mining*. ACM. 2014, pp. 701–710 (pages 706, 711, 712, 723). R. Pascanu. “On Recurrent and Deep Neural Networks”. PhD thesis. U. Montreal, 2014 (page 119). A. Paterek. *Predicting movie ratings and recommender systems*. 2012 (page 693). D. Pathak, P. Krahenbuhl, J. Donahue, T. Darrell, and A. A. Efros. “Context Encoders: Feature Learning by Inpainting”. In: *CVPR*. 2016 (page 585). A. Paullada, I. D. Raji, E. M. Bender, E. Denton, and A. Hanna. “Data and its (dis)contents: A survey of dataset development and use in machine learning research”. In: *NeurIPS 2020 Workshop: ML Retrospectives, Surveys & Meta-analyses (ML-RSA)*. Dec 2020 (page 17). N. Parikh, S. Boyd, et al. “Proximal algorithms”. In: *Foundations and Trends in Optimization* 1.3 (2014), pp. 127–239 (page 135). T. Park and G. Casella. “The Bayesian Lasso”. In: *JASA* 103.482 (2008), pp. 681–686 (page 359). J. Pearl. *Theoretical Impediments to Machine Learning With Seven Sparks from the Causal Revolution*. Tech. rep. UCLA, 2018 (page 11). M. Pelikan. “Probabilistic model-building genetic algorithms”. In: *GECCO*. GECCO ’08. Atlanta, GA, USA: Association for Computing Machinery, July 2008, pp. 2389–2416 (page 151). Z. Peng et al. “Graph Representation Learning via Graphical Mutual Information Maximization”. In: *Proceedings of The Web Conference*. 2020 (page 720). B. Perozzi, V. Kulkarni, H. Chen, and S. Skiena. “Don’t Walk, Skip! Online Learning of Multi-Scale Network Embeddings”. In: *Proceedings of the 2017 IEEE/ACM International Conference on Advances in Social Networks Analysis and Mining 2017*. ASONAM

- '17. Sydney, Australia: Association for Computing Machinery, 2017, 258–265 (page 711).
- [Pet13] J. Peters. *When Ice Cream Sales Rise, So Do Homicides. Coincidence, or Will Your Next Cone Murder You?* <https://slate.com/news-and-politics/2013/07/warm-weather-homicide-rates-when-ice-cream-sales-rise-homicides-rise-coincidence.html>. Accessed: 2020-5-20. July 2013 (page 801).
- [Pet+18] M. E. Peters et al. “Deep contextualized word representations”. In: *NAACL*. 2018 (page 598).
- [PH18] T. Parr and J. Howard. “The Matrix Calculus You Need For Deep Learning”. In: (Feb. 2018). arXiv: [1802.01528 \[cs.LG\]](https://arxiv.org/abs/1802.01528) (page 734).
- [Pin88] F. J. Pineda. “Generalization of back propagation to recurrent and higher order neural networks”. In: *Neural information processing systems*. 1988, pp. 602–611 (page 714).
- [PJ09] H.-S. Park and C.-H. Jun. “A simple and fast algorithm for K-medoids clustering”. In: *Expert Systems with Applications* 36.2, Part 2 (2009), pp. 3336–3341 (page 677).
- [PJ92] B Polyak and A Juditsky. “Acceleration of Stochastic Approximation by Averaging”. In: *SIAM J. Control Optim.* 30.4 (July 1992), pp. 838–855 (page 125).
- [Pla00] J. Platt. “Probabilities for SV machines”. In: *Advances in Large Margin Classifiers*. Ed. by A. Smola, P. Bartlett, B. Schoelkopf, and D. Schuurmans. MIT Press, 2000 (page 542).
- [Pla98] J. Platt. “Using analytic QP and sparseness to speed training of support vector machines”. In: *NIPS*. 1998 (page 540).
- [PM17] D. L. Poole and A. K. Mackworth. *Artificial intelligenceL foundations computational agents 2nd edition*. Cambridge University Press, Nov. 2017 (page 16).
- [PM18] J. Pearl and D. Mackenzie. *The book of why: the new science of cause and effect*. 2018 (page 24).
- [PMB19] J. Pérez, J. Marinkovic, and P. Barcelo. “On the Turing Completeness of Modern Neural Network Architectures”. In: *ICLR*. 2019 (page 465).
- [Pog+17] T. Poggio, H. Mhaskar, L. Rosasco, B. Miranda, and Q. Liao. “Why and when can deep-but not shallow-networks avoid the curse of dimensionality: A review”. en. In: *Int. J. Autom. Comput.* (2017), pp. 1–17 (page 401).
- [PPC09] G. Petris, S. Petrone, and P. Campagnoli. *Dynamic linear models with R*. Springer, 2009 (page 366).
- [PPS18] T. Pierrot, N. Perrin, and O. Sigaud. “First-order and second-order variants of the gradient descent in a unified framework”. In: (Oct. 2018). arXiv: [1810.08102 \[cs.LG\]](https://arxiv.org/abs/1810.08102) (page 107).
- [PR03] O. Papaspiliopoulos and G. O. Roberts. “Non-Centred Parameterisation for Hierarchical Models and Data Augmentation”. In: *Bayesian Statistics* 7 (2003), pp. 307–326 (page 362).
- [Pre+88] W. Press, W. Vetterling, S. Teukolsky, and B. Flannery. *Numerical Recipes in C: The Art of Scientific Computing*. Second. Cambridge University Press, 1988 (page 114).
- [PS12] N. G. Polson and J. G. Scott. “On the Half-Cauchy Prior for a Global Scale Parameter”. en. In: *Bayesian Anal.* 7.4 (Dec. 2012), pp. 887–902 (page 193).
- [PSM14a] J. Pennington, R. Socher, and C. Manning. “GloVe: Global vectors for word representation”. In: *EMNLP*. 2014, pp. 1532–1543 (page 597).
- [PSM14b] J. Pennington, R. Socher, and C. Manning. “Glove: Global vectors for word representation”. In: *Proceedings of the 2014 conference on empirical methods in natural language processing (EMNLP)*. 2014, pp. 1532–1543 (page 711).
- [PSW15] N. G. Polson, J. G. Scott, and B. T. Willard. “Proximal Algorithms in Statistics and Machine Learning”. en. In: *Stat. Sci.* 30.4 (Nov. 2015), pp. 559–581 (page 135).
- [QC+06] J. Quiñonero-Candela, C. E. Rasmussen, F. Sinz, O. Bousquet, and B. Schölkopf. “Evaluating Predictive Uncertainty Challenge”. In: *Machine Learning Challenges. Evaluating Predictive Uncertainty, Visual Object Classification, and Recognising Tectual Entailment*. Lecture Notes in Computer Science. Springer Berlin Heidelberg, 2006, pp. 1–27 (page 243).
- [Qia+19] Q. Qian, L. Shang, B. Sun, J. Hu, H. Li, and R. Jin. “SoftTriple Loss: Deep Metric Learning Without Triplet Sampling”. In: *ICCV*. 2019 (page 501).
- [Qiu+18] J. Qiu, Y. Dong, H. Ma, J. Li, K. Wang, and J. Tang. “Network embedding as matrix factorization: Unifying deepwalk, line, pte, and node2vec”. In: *Proceedings of the Eleventh ACM International Conference on Web Search and Data Mining*. 2018, pp. 459–467 (page 712).
- [Qiu+19a] J. Qiu, H. Ma, O. Levy, S. W. Yih, S. Wang, and J. Tang. “Blockwise Self-Attention for Long Document Understanding”. In: *CoRR* abs/1911.02972 (2019). arXiv: [1911 . 02972](https://arxiv.org/abs/1911.02972) (page 484).
- [Qiu+19b] J. Qiu et al. “NetSMF: Large-Scale Network Embedding as Sparse Matrix Factorization”. In: *The World Wide Web Conference. WWW ’19*. San Francisco, CA, USA: Association for Computing Machinery, 2019, 1509–1520 (page 712).
- [Qui86] J. R. Quinlan. “Induction of decision trees”. In: *Machine Learning* 1 (1986), pp. 81–106 (pages 559, 560).
- [Qui93] J. R. Quinlan. *C4.5 Programs for Machine Learning*. Morgan Kauffman, 1993 (pages 559, 560).
- [Rad+18] A. Radford, K. Narasimhan, T. Salimans, and I. Sutskever. *Improving Language Understanding by Generative Pre-Training*. Tech. rep. OpenAI, 2018 (page 599).
- [Rad+19] A. Radford, J. Wu, R. Child, D. Luan, D. Amodei, and I. Sutskever. *Language Models are Unsupervised Multitask Learners*. Tech. rep. OpenAI, 2019 (page 599).
- [Raf+19] C. Raffel et al. “Exploring the Limits of Transfer Learning with a Unified Text-to-Text Trans-

- former". In: (Oct. 2019). arXiv: [1910 . 10683 \[cs.LG\]](#) (page 602).
- [Rag+17] M. Raghu, B. Poole, J. Kleinberg, S. Ganguli, and J. Sohl-Dickstein. "On the Expressive Power of Deep Neural Networks". In: *ICML*. 2017 (page 401).
- [Rag+19] M. Raghu, C. Zhang, J. Kleinberg, and S. Bengio. "Transfusion: Understanding transfer learning for medical imaging". In: *NIPS*. 2019, pp. 3347–3357 (page 584).
- [Raj+16] P. Rajpurkar, J. Zhang, K. Lopyrev, and P. Liang. "SQuAD: 100,000+ Questions for Machine Comprehension of Text". In: *EMNLP*. 2016 (page 601).
- [Raj+18] A. Rajkomar et al. "Scalable and accurate deep learning with electronic health records". en. In: *NPJ Digit Med* 1 (May 2018), p. 18 (pages 476, 477).
- [Rao99] R. P. Rao. "An optimal estimation approach to visual perception and learning". en. In: *Vision Res.* 39.11 (June 1999), pp. 1963–1989 (page 25).
- [Rat+09] M. Rattray, O. Stegle, K. Sharp, and J. Winn. "Inference algorithms and learning theory for Bayesian sparse factor analysis". In: *Proc. Intl. Workshop on Statistical-Mechanical Informatics*. 2009 (page 633).
- [RB93] M. Riedmiller and H. Braun. "A direct adaptive method for faster backpropagation learning: The RPROP algorithm". In: *ICNN*. IEEE. 1993, pp. 586–591 (page 128).
- [Red+16] J. Redmon, S. Divvala, R. Girshick, and A. Farhadi. "You Only Look Once: Unified, Real-Time Object Detection". In: *CVPR*. 2016, pp. 779–788 (page 444).
- [Ren+09] S. Rendle, C. Freudenthaler, Z. Gantner, and L. Schmidt-Thieme. "BPR: Bayesian Personalized Ranking from Implicit Feedback". In: *UAI*. 2009 (page 699).
- [Ren12] S. Rendle. "Factorization Machines with libFM". In: *ACM Trans. Intell. Syst. Technol.* 3.3 (May 2012), pp. 1–22 (pages 700, 702).
- [Ren19] Z. Ren. *List of papers on self-supervised learning*. 2019 (page 585).
- [Res+11] D. Reshef et al. "Detecting Novel Associations in Large Data Sets". In: *Science* 334 (2011), pp. 1518–1524 (pages 166, 167).
- [RF17] J. Redmon and A. Farhadi. "YOLO9000: Better, Faster, Stronger". In: *CVPR*. 2017 (page 294).
- [RFB15] O. Ronneberger, P. Fischer, and T. Brox. "U-Net: Convolutional Networks for Biomedical Image Segmentation". In: *MICCAI (Intl. Conf. on Medical Image Computing and Computer Assisted Interventions)*. 2015 (page 446).
- [RG11] A. Rodriguez and K. Ghosh. *Modeling relational data through nested partition models*. Tech. rep. UC Santa Cruz, 2011 (page 691).
- [RH05] H. Rue and L. Held. *Gaussian Markov Random Fields: Theory and Applications*. Vol. 104. Monographs on Statistics and Applied Probability. London: Chapman & Hall, 2005 (page 604).
- [RHG16] D. Ritchie, P. Horsfall, and N. D. Goodman. "Deep Amortized Inference for Probabilistic Programs". In: (Oct. 2016). arXiv: [1610 . 05735 \[cs.AI\]](#) (page 256).
- [RHS05] C. Rosenberg, M. Hebert, and H. Schneiderman. "Semi-Supervised Self-Training of Object Detection Models". In: *Proceedings of the Seventh IEEE Workshops on Application of Computer Vision (WACV/MOTION'05)-Volume 1-Volume 01*. 2005, pp. 29–36 (page 604).
- [RHW86] D. Rumelhart, G. Hinton, and R. Williams. "Learning internal representations by error propagation". In: *Parallel Distributed Processing: Explorations in the Microstructure of Cognition*. Ed. by D. Rumelhart, J. McClelland, and the PDD Research Group. MIT Press, 1986 (pages 403, 404).
- [Ric95] J. Rice. *Mathematical statistics and data analysis*. 2nd edition. Duxbury, 1995 (pages 806, 809, 815, 818, 819, 824, 842).
- [Rif+11] S. Rifai, P. Vincent, X. Muller, X. Glorot, and Y. Bengio. "Contractive Auto-Encoders: Explicit Invariance During Feature Extraction". In: *ICML*. 2011 (page 642).
- [Ris+08] I. Rish, G. Grabarnik, G. Cecchi, F. Pereira, and G. Gordon. "Closed-form supervised dimensionality reduction with generalized linear models". In: *ICML*. 2008 (page 638).
- [RK04] R. Rubinstein and D. Kroese. *The Cross-Entropy Method: A Unified Approach to Combinatorial Optimization, Monte-Carlo Simulation, and Machine Learning*. Springer-Verlag, 2004 (page 151).
- [RKK18] S. J. Reddi, S. Kale, and S. Kumar. "On the Convergence of Adam and Beyond". In: *ICLR*. 2018 (page 129).
- [RM01] N. Roy and A. McCallum. "Toward optimal active learning through Monte Carlo estimation of error reduction". In: *ICML*. 2001 (page 614).
- [RMC09] H. Rue, S. Martino, and N. Chopin. "Approximate Bayesian Inference for Latent Gaussian Models Using Integrated Nested Laplace Approximations". In: *JRSSB* 71 (2009), pp. 319–392 (page 225).
- [RMC16] A. Radford, L. Metz, and S. Chintala. "Unsupervised Representation Learning with Deep Convolutional Generative Adversarial Networks". In: *ICLR*. 2016 (page 649).
- [RMH97] A. Raftery, D. Madigan, and J. Hoeting. "Bayesian Model Averaging for Linear Regression Models". In: *JASA* 92.437 (1997), pp. 179–191 (page 212).
- [RMW14] D. J. Rezende, S. Mohamed, and D. Wierstra. "Stochastic Backpropagation and Approximate Inference in Deep Generative Models". In: *ICML*. Ed. by E. P. Xing and T. Jebara. Vol. 32. Proceedings of Machine Learning Research. Bejing, China: PMLR, 2014, pp. 1278–1286 (page 644).
- [RN10] S. Russell and P. Norvig. *Artificial Intelligence: A Modern Approach*. 3rd edition. Prentice Hall, 2010 (page 16).

- [RN19] S. Russell and P. Norvig. *Artificial Intelligence: A Modern Approach*. 4th edition. Prentice Hall, 2019 (page 256).
- [Rob07] C. P. Robert. *The Bayesian Choice: From Decision-Theoretic Foundations to Computational Implementation*. en. 2nd edition. Springer Verlag, New York, 2007 (page 203).
- [Ros58] F. Rosenblatt. "The Perceptron: A Probabilistic Model for Information Storage and Organization in the Brain". In: *Psychological Review* 65.6 (1958), pp. 386–408 (pages 284, 403).
- [Ros98] K. Rose. "Deterministic Annealing for Clustering, Compression, Classification, Regression, and Related Optimization Problems". In: *Proc. IEEE* 80 (1998), pp. 2210–2239 (page 662).
- [Rot+20] K. Roth, T. Milbich, S. Sinha, P. Gupta, B. Ommer, and J. P. Cohen. "Revisiting Training Strategies and Generalization Performance in Deep Metric Learning". In: *ICML*. 2020 (pages 498, 502, 503).
- [Row97] S. Roweis. "EM algorithms for PCA and SPCA". In: *NIPS*. 1997 (pages 628, 630, 631).
- [Roy+20] A. Roy, M. Saffar, A. Vaswani, and D. Grangier. "Efficient Content-Based Sparse Attention with Routing Transformers". In: *CoRR* abs/2003.05997 (2020). arXiv: 2003 . 05997 (page 485).
- [Roz+19] B. Rozemberczki, R. Davies, R. Sarkar, and C. Sutton. "GEMSEC: Graph Embedding with Self Clustering". In: *Proceedings of the 2019 IEEE/ACM International Conference on Advances in Social Networks Analysis and Mining*. ASONAM '19. Vancouver, British Columbia, Canada: Association for Computing Machinery, 2019, 65–72 (page 722).
- [RP99] M. Riesenhuber and T. Poggio. "Hierarchical Models of Object Recognition in Cortex". In: *Nature Neuroscience* 2 (1999), pp. 1019–1025 (page 435).
- [RR08] A. Rahimi and B. Recht. "Random Features for Large-Scale Kernel Machines". In: *NIPS*. Curran Associates, Inc., 2008, pp. 1177–1184 (page 535).
- [RR09] A. Rahimi and B. Recht. "Weighted Sums of Random Kitchen Sinks: Replacing minimization with randomization in learning". In: *NIPS*. Curran Associates, Inc., 2009, pp. 1313–1320 (page 535).
- [RS00] S. T. Roweis and L. K. Saul. "Nonlinear dimensionality reduction by locally linear embedding". en. In: *Science* 290.5500 (Dec. 2000), pp. 2323–2326 (page 657).
- [RT82] D. B. Rubin and D. T. Thayer. "EM algorithms for ML factor analysis". In: *Psychometrika* 47.1 (Mar. 1982), pp. 69–76 (page 629).
- [Rub84] D. B. Rubin. "Bayesianly Justifiable and Relevant Frequency Calculations for the Applied Statistician". In: *Ann. Stat.* 12.4 (1984), pp. 1151–1172 (pages 222, 813, 848).
- [Rub97] R. Y. Rubinstein. "Optimization of computer simulation models with rare events". In: *Eur. J. Oper. Res.* 99.1 (May 1997), pp. 89–112 (page 151).
- [Rup88] D. Ruppert. *Efficient Estimations from a Slowly Convergent Robbins-Monro Process*. Tech. rep. 1988 (page 125).
- [Rus+15] O. Russakovsky et al. "ImageNet Large Scale Visual Recognition Challenge". In: *Intl. J. Computer Vision* (2015), pp. 1–42 (pages 437, 438).
- [Rus15] S. Russell. "Unifying Logic and Probability". In: *Commun. ACM* 58.7 (June 2015), pp. 88–97 (page 495).
- [Rus18] A. M. Rush. "The Annotated Transformer". In: *Proceedings of ACL Workshop on Open Source Software for NLP*. 2018 (page 482).
- [Rus+18] D. J. Russo, B. Van Roy, A. Kazerouni, I. Osband, and Z. Wen. "A Tutorial on Thompson Sampling". In: *Foundations and Trends in Machine Learning* 11.1 (2018), pp. 1–96 (page 255).
- [Rus19] S. Russell. *Human Compatible: Artificial Intelligence and the Problem of Control*. en. Kindle. Viking, Oct. 2019 (page 17).
- [RW06] C. E. Rasmussen and C. K. I. Williams. *Gaussian Processes for Machine Learning*. MIT Press, 2006 (pages 305, 516, 521, 524, 526).
- [RW15] D. Rosenbaum and Y. Weiss. "The Return of the Gating Network: Combining Generative Models and Discriminative Training in Natural Image Priors". In: *NIPS*. 2015, pp. 2665–2673 (page 72).
- [RW18] E. Richardson and Y. Weiss. "On GANs and GMMs". In: *NIPS*. 2018 (page 635).
- [RZL17] P. Ramachandran, B. Zoph, and Q. V. Le. "Searching for Activation Functions". In: (Oct. 2017). arXiv: 1710 . 05941 [cs.NE] (pages 394, 396).
- [SA93] P. Sinha and E. Adelson. "Recovering reflectance and illumination in a world of painted polyhedra". In: *ICCV*. May 1993, pp. 156–163 (page 25).
- [Sal+16] T. Salimans, I. Goodfellow, W. Zaremba, V. Cheung, A. Radford, and X. Chen. "Improved Techniques for Training GANs". In: (2016). arXiv: 1606 . 03498 [cs.LG] (page 612).
- [Sal+20] H. Salman, A. Ilyas, L. Engstrom, A. Kapoor, and A. Madry. "Do Adversarially Robust ImageNet Models Transfer Better?" In: *arXiv preprint arXiv:2007.08489* (2020) (page 459).
- [SAM04] D. J. Spiegelhalter, K. R. Abrams, and J. P. Myles. *Bayesian Approaches to Clinical Trials and Health-Care Evaluation*. Wiley, 2004 (page 845).
- [San+18] S. Santurkar, D. Tsipras, A. Ilyas, and A. Madry. "How Does Batch Normalization Help Optimization? (No, It Is Not About Internal Covariate Shift)". In: *NIPS*. 2018 (page 414).
- [San96] R. Santos. "Equivalence of regularization and truncated iteration for general ill-posed problems". In: *Linear Algebra and its Applications* 236.15 (1996), pp. 25–33 (page 590).
- [Sar11] R. Sarkar. "Low distortion delaunay embedding of trees in hyperbolic plane". In: *In-*

- [SB18] R. Sutton and A. Barto. *Reinforcement learning: an introduction* (2nd edn). MIT Press, 2018 (page 706).
- [SBB01] T. Sellke, M. J. Bayarri, and J. Berger. “Calibration of p Values for Testing Precise Null Hypotheses”. In: *The American Statistician* 55.1 (2001), pp. 62–71 (page 845).
- [SBP17] Y. Sun, P. Babu, and D. P. Palomar. “Majorization-Minimization Algorithms in Signal Processing, Communications, and Machine Learning”. In: *IEEE Trans. Signal Process.* 65.3 (Feb. 2017), pp. 794–816 (page 139).
- [Sca+09] F. Scarselli, M. Gori, A. C. Tsoi, M. Hagenbuchner, and G. Monfardini. “The graph neural network model”. In: *IEEE Transactions on Neural Networks* 20.1 (2009), pp. 61–80 (pages 706, 713, 714).
- [Sca+17] S. Scardapane, D. Comminiello, A. Hussain, and A. Uncini. “Group Sparse Regularization for Deep Neural Networks”. In: *Neurocomputing* 241 (2017) (page 418).
- [Sch+00] B. Scholkopf, A. J. Smola, R. C. Williamson, and P. L. Bartlett. “New support vector algorithms”. en. In: *Neural Comput.* 12.5 (May 2000), pp. 1207–1245 (page 541).
- [Sch78] G. Schwarz. “Estimating the dimension of a model”. In: *Annals of Statistics* 6.2 (1978), pp. 461–464 (page 216).
- [Sch90] R. E. Schapire. “The strength of weak learnability”. In: *Mach. Learn.* 5.2 (June 1990), pp. 197–227 (page 566).
- [Sco09] S. Scott. “Data augmentation, frequentist estimation, and the Bayesian analysis of multinomial logit models”. In: *Statistical Papers* (2009) (page 387).
- [Sco10] S. Scott. “A modern Bayesian look at the multi-armed bandit”. In: *Applied Stochastic Models in Business and Industry* 26 (2010), pp. 639–658 (pages 254, 255).
- [Sco79] D. Scott. “On optimal and data-based histograms”. In: *Biometrika* 66.3 (1979), pp. 605–610 (pages 158, 166).
- [Scu10] D. Sculley. “Web-scale k-means clustering”. In: *WWW*. WWW ’10. Raleigh, North Carolina, USA: Association for Computing Machinery, Apr. 2010, pp. 1177–1178 (page 678).
- [Scu65] H. Scudder. “Probability of error of some adaptive pattern-recognition machines”. In: *IEEE Transactions on Information Theory* 11.3 (1965), pp. 363–371 (page 603).
- [SD12] J. Sohl-Dickstein. “The Natural Gradient by Analogy to Signal Whitenning, and Recipes and Tricks for its Use”. In: (May 2012). arXiv: 1205.1828 [cs.LG] (page 121).
- [Sed+15] S. Sedhain, A. K. Menon, S. Sanner, and L. Xie. “AutoRec: Autoencoders Meet Collaborative Filtering”. In: *WWW*. WWW ’15 Companion. Florence, Italy: Association for Computing Machinery, May 2015, pp. 111–112 (page 697).
- [Sej18] T. J. Sejnowski. *The Deep Learning Revolution*. en. Kindle. The MIT Press, Sept. 2018 (page 402).
- [Set12] B. Settles. “Active learning”. In: *Synthesis Lectures on Artificial Intelligence and Machine Learning* 6 (2012), 1–114 (page 614).
- [Sch12] R. Schapire and Y. Freund. *Boosting: Foundations and Algorithms*. MIT Press, 2012 (page 566).
- [SG06] E. Snelson and Z. Ghahramani. “Sparse Gaussian processes using pseudo-inputs”. In: *NIPS*. 2006 (page 532).
- [SG12] D. Sejdinovic and A. Gretton. *What is an RKHS?* 2012 (page 552).
- [SGJ11] D. Sontag, A. Globerson, and T. Jaakkola. “Introduction to Dual Decomposition for Inference”. In: *Optimization for Machine Learning*. Ed. by S. Sra, S. Nowozin, and S. J. Wright. MIT Press, 2011 (page 133).
- [Shafto+06] P. Shafto, C. Kemp, V. Mansinghka, M. Gordon, and J. B. Tenenbaum. “Learning cross-cutting systems of categories”. In: *Cognitive Science Conference*. 2006 (pages 691, 692).
- [Shahriari+16] B. Shahriari, K. Swersky, Z. Wang, R. P. Adams, and N. de Freitas. “Taking the Human Out of the Loop: A Review of Bayesian Optimization”. In: *Proc. IEEE* 104.1 (Jan. 2016), pp. 148–175 (page 151).
- [Sharif+16] M. Sharif, S. Bhagavatula, L. Bauer, and M. K. Reiter. “Accessorial to a Crime: Real and Stealthy Attacks on State-of-the-Art Face Recognition”. In: *Proceedings of the 2016 ACM SIGSAC Conference on Computer and Communications Security*. ACM, 2016, pp. 1528–1540 (page 455).
- [Shazeer+17] N. Shazeer et al. “Outrageously Large Neural Networks: The Sparsely-Gated Mixture-of-Experts Layer”. In: *ICLR*. 2017 (page 423).
- [Shallice88] T. Shallice. *From Neuropsychology to Mental Structure*. 1988 (page 404).
- [SHB16] R. Sennrich, B. Haddow, and A. Birch. “Neural Machine Translation of Rare Words with Subword Units”. In: *Proc. ACL*. 2016 (page 300).
- [She+18] Z. Shen, M. Zhang, S. Yi, J. Yan, and H. Zhao. “Factorized Attention: Self-Attention with Linear Complexities”. In: *CoRR* abs/1812.01243 (2018). arXiv: 1812.01243 (page 485).
- [She94] J. R. Shewchuk. *An introduction to the conjugate gradient method without the agonizing pain*. Tech. rep. CMU, 1994 (page 741).
- [SHF15] R. Steorts, R. Hall, and S. Fienberg. “A Bayesian Approach to Graphical Record Linkage and De-duplication”. In: *JASA* (2015) (page 495).
- [Sheutz+17] D. Stutz, M. Hein, and B. Schiele. “Confidence-calibrated adversarial training: Generalizing to unseen attacks”. In: () (page 459).
- [Schölkopf+01] B. Schölkopf, R. Herbrich, and A. J. Smola. “A Generalized Representer Theorem”. In: *COLT*. COLT ’01/EuroCOLT ’01. London, UK, UK: Springer-Verlag, 2001, pp. 416–426 (page 554).

- [Shu+13] D. I. Shuman, S. K. Narang, P. Frossard, A. Ortega, and P. Vandergheynst. “The emerging field of signal processing on graphs: Extending high-dimensional data analysis to networks and other irregular domains”. In: *IEEE Signal Process. Mag.* 30.3 (2013), pp. 83–98 (page 660).
- [Shu+18] R. Shu, H. H. Bui, S. Zhao, M. J. Kochenderfer, and S. Ermon. “Amortized Inference Regularization”. In: *NIPS*. 2018 (page 256).
- [Sil18] D. Silver. *Lecture 9L Exploration and Exploitation*. 2018 (pages 251, 254).
- [Sin+20] S. Sinha, H. Zhang, A. Goyal, Y. Bengio, H. Larochelle, and A. Odena. “Small-GAN: Speeding up GAN Training using Core-Sets”. In: *ICML*. Vol. 119. Proceedings of Machine Learning Research. Virtual: PMLR, 2020, pp. 9005–9015 (page 503).
- [SIV17] C. Szegedy, S. Ioffe, and V. Vanhoucke. “Inception-v4, Inception-ResNet and the Impact of Residual Connections on Learning”. In: *AAAI*. 2017 (page 441).
- [SJ03] N. Srebro and T. Jaakkola. “Weighted low-rank approximations”. In: *ICML*. 2003 (page 695).
- [SJT16] M. Sajjadi, M. Javanmardi, and T. Tasdizen. “Regularization with stochastic transformations and perturbations for deep semi-supervised learning”. In: *Advances in neural information processing systems*. 2016, pp. 1163–1171 (pages 608, 609).
- [SKP15] F. Schroff, D. Kalenichenko, and J. Philbin. “FaceNet: A Unified Embedding for Face Recognition and Clustering”. In: *CVPR*. 2015 (pages 499, 501).
- [SKT14] A. Szelam, Y. Kluger, and M. Tygert. “An implementation of a randomized algorithm for principal component analysis”. In: (2014). arXiv: 1412.3510 [stat.CO] (page 623).
- [SKTF18] H. Shao, A. Kumar, and P. Thomas Fletcher. “The Riemannian Geometry of Deep Generative Models”. In: *CVPR*. 2018, pp. 315–323 (page 648).
- [SL+19] B. Sanchez-Lengeling, J. N. Wei, B. K. Lee, R. C. Gerkin, A. Aspuru-Guzik, and A. B. Wiltschko. “Machine Learning for Scent: Learning Generalizable Perceptual Representations of Small Molecules”. In: (Oct. 2019). arXiv: 1910.10685 [stat.ML] (page 724).
- [SL90] D. J. Spiegelhalter and S. L. Lauritzen. “Sequential updating of conditional probabilities on directed graphical structures”. In: *Networks* 20 (1990) (page 304).
- [Sli19] A. Slivkins. “Introduction to Multi-Armed Bandits”. In: (Apr. 2019). arXiv: 1904 . 07272 [cs.LG] (page 248).
- [SLRB17] M. Schmidt, N. Le Roux, and F. Bach. “Minimizing finite sums with the stochastic average gradient”. In: *Mathematical Programming* 162.1-2 (2017), pp. 83–112 (page 125).
- [SM00] J. Shi and J. Malik. “Normalized Cuts and Image Segmentation”. In: *IEEE PAMI* (2000) (pages 687, 689).
- [SM08] R. Salakhutdinov and A. Mnih. “Probabilistic Matrix Factorization”. In: *NIPS*. Vol. 20. 2008 (page 696).
- [SMG14] A. M. Saxe, J. L. McClelland, and S. Ganguli. “Exact solutions to the nonlinear dynamics of learning in deep linear neural networks”. In: *ICLR*. 2014 (page 415).
- [SMH07] R. Salakhutdinov, A. Mnih, and G. Hinton. “Restricted Boltzmann machines for collaborative filtering”. In: *ICML*. ICML ’07. Corvallis, Oregon, USA: Association for Computing Machinery, June 2007, pp. 791–798 (page 698).
- [Smi17] L. N. Smith. “Cyclical Learning Rates for Training Neural Networks”. In: *WACV*. 2017 (page 411).
- [Smi18] L. Smith. “A disciplined approach to neural network hyper-parameters: Part 1 – learning rate, batch size, momentum, and weight decay”. In: (2018) (pages 410, 411).
- [SMM03] Q. Sheng, Y. Moreau, and B. D. Moor. “Bi-clustering Microarray data by Gibbs sampling”. In: *Bioinformatics* 19 (2003), pp. ii196–ii205 (page 690).
- [SNM16] M. Suzuki, K. Nakayama, and Y. Matsuo. “Joint Multimodal Learning with Deep Generative Models”. In: (2016). arXiv: 1611 . 01891 [stat.ML] (page 639).
- [Soh16] K. Sohn. “Improved Deep Metric Learning with Multi-class N-pair Loss Objective”. In: *NIPS*. Curran Associates, Inc., 2016, pp. 1857–1865 (page 500).
- [Soh+20] K. Sohn et al. “Fixmatch: Simplifying semi-supervised learning with consistency and confidence”. In: *arXiv preprint arXiv:2001.07685* (2020) (pages 603, 609).
- [Sör15] K. Sørensen. “Metaheuristics—the metaphor exposed”. In: *Intl. Trans. in Op. Res.* 22.1 (Jan. 2015), pp. 3–18 (page 151).
- [SP97] M. Schuster and K. K. Paliwal. “Bidirectional recurrent neural networks”. In: *IEEE Trans on Signal Processing* 45.11 (Nov. 1997), pp. 2673–2681 (page 467).
- [Spe11] T. Speed. “A correlation for the 21st century”. In: *Science* 334 (2011), pp. 152–1503 (page 167).
- [SPZ09] P. Schniter, L. C. Potter, and J. Ziniel. “Fast Bayesian Matching Pursuit: Model Uncertainty and Parameter Estimation for Sparse Linear Models”. In: *IEEE Trans. on Signal Processing* (2009) (page 358).
- [SR15] T. Saito and M. Rehmsmeier. “The precision-recall plot is more informative than the ROC plot when evaluating binary classifiers on imbalanced datasets”. en. In: *PLoS One* 10.3 (Mar. 2015), e0118432 (page 238).
- [SRG03] R. Salakhutdinov, S. T. Roweis, and Z. Ghahramani. “Optimization with EM and Expectation-Conjugate-Gradient”. In: *ICML*. 2003 (page 141).
- [Sri+14] N. Srivastava, G. Hinton, A. Krizhevsky, I. Sutskever, and R. Salakhutdinov. “Dropout: A Simple Way to Prevent Neural Networks from Overfitting”. In: *JMLR* (2014) (pages 418, 419).

- [SS01] B. Schlkopf and A. J. Smola. *Learning with Kernels: Support Vector Machines, Regularization, Optimization, and Beyond (Adaptive Computation and Machine Learning)*. en. 1st edition. The MIT Press, Dec. 2001 (pages 536, 552).
- [SS02] B. Schoelkopf and A. Smola. *Learning with Kernels: Support Vector Machines, Regularization, Optimization, and Beyond*. MIT Press, 2002 (page 548).
- [SS05] J. Schaefer and K. Strimmer. “A shrinkage approach to large-scale covariance matrix estimation and implications for functional genomics”. In: *Statist. Appl. Genet. Mol. Biol.* 4.32 (2005) (page 94).
- [SS19] S. Serrano and N. A. Smith. “Is Attention Interpretable?” In: *Proc. ACL*. 2019 (page 478).
- [SS95] H. T. Siegelmann and E. D. Sontag. “On the Computational Power of Neural Nets”. In: *J. Comput. System Sci.* 50.1 (Feb. 1995), pp. 132–150 (page 465).
- [SSE18] Y. Song, J. Song, and S. Ermon. “Accelerating Natural Gradient with Higher-Order Invariance”. In: *ICML*. 2018 (page 120).
- [SSM98] B. Schoelkopf, A. Smola, and K.-R. Mueller. “Nonlinear component analysis as a kernel Eigenvalue problem”. In: *Neural Computation* 10 (5 1998), pp. 1299–1319 (page 655).
- [Sta+06] C. Stark, B.-J. Breitkreutz, T. Reguly, L. Boucher, A. Breitkreutz, and M. Tyers. “BiogRID: a general repository for interaction datasets”. In: *Nucleic acids research* 34.suppl\_1 (2006), pp. D535–D539 (page 705).
- [Sta07] K. O. Stanley. “Compositional pattern producing networks: A novel abstraction of development”. In: *Genet. Program. Evolvable Mach.* 8.2 (Oct. 2007), pp. 131–162 (page 457).
- [Sta+17] N. Stallard et al. “Determination of the optimal sample size for a clinical trial accounting for the population size”. en. In: *Biom. J.* 59.4 (July 2017), pp. 609–625 (page 247).
- [STC04] J. Shawe-Taylor and N. Cristianini. *Kernel Methods for Pattern Analysis*. Cambridge, 2004 (page 552).
- [Ste56] C. Stein. “Inadmissibility of the usual estimator for the mean of a multivariate distribution”. In: *Proc. 3rd Berkeley Symposium on Mathematical Statistics and Probability* (1956), 197–206 (pages 832, 833).
- [Str09] G. Strang. *Introduction to linear algebra*. 4th edition. SIAM Press, 2009 (page 749).
- [Sug+19] A. S. Suggala, K. Bhatia, P. Ravikumar, and P. Jain. “Adaptive Hard Thresholding for Near-optimal Consistent Robust Regression”. In: *Proceedings of the Annual Conference On Learning Theory (COLT)*. 2019, pp. 2892–2897 (page 337).
- [Suk+15] S. Sukhbaatar, A. Szlam, J. Weston, and R. Fergus. “End-To-End Memory Networks”. In: *NIPS*. 2015 (page 477).
- [Sun+09] L. Sun, S. Ji, S. Yu, and J. Ye. “On the Equivalence Between Canonical Correlation Analysis and Orthonormalized Partial Least Squares”. In: *IJCAI*. 2009 (page 638).
- [Sun+19] S. Sun, Z. Cao, H. Zhu, and J. Zhao. “A Survey of Optimization Methods from a Machine Learning Perspective”. In: (June 2019). arXiv: 1906.06821 [cs.LG] (page 107).
- [SVK19] J. Su, D. V. Vargas, and S. Kouichi. “One pixel attack for fooling deep neural networks”. In: *IEEE Trans. Evol. Comput.* 23.5 (2019) (page 458).
- [SVL14] I. Sutskever, O. Vinyals, and Q. V. V. Le. “Sequence to Sequence Learning with Neural Networks”. In: *NIPS*. 2014 (page 468).
- [SVZ14] K. Simonyan, A. Vedaldi, and A. Zisserman. “Deep Inside Convolutional Networks: Visualising Image Classification Models and Saliency Maps”. In: *ICLR*. 2014 (page 449).
- [SW87] M. Shewry and H. Wynn. “Maximum entropy sampling”. In: *J. Applied Statistics* 14 (1987), 165–170 (page 615).
- [SWL03] M. Seeger, C. K. I. Williams, and N. D. Lawrence. “Fast Forward Selection to Speed Up Sparse Gaussian Process Regression”. In: *AISTATS*. 2003 (page 532).
- [SWY75] G Salton, A Wong, and C. S. Yang. “A vector space model for automatic indexing”. In: *Commun. ACM* 18.11 (Nov. 1975), pp. 613–620 (page 298).
- [SXM18] J. Shu, Z. Xu, and D. Meng. “Small Sample Learning in Big Data Era”. In: (Aug. 2018). arXiv: 1808.04572 [cs.LG] (page 40).
- [Sze10] C. Szepesvari. *Algorithms for Reinforcement Learning*. Morgan Claypool, 2010 (page 250).
- [Sze+14] C. Szegedy et al. “Intriguing properties of neural networks”. In: *ICLR*. 2014 (pages 455, 456).
- [Sze+15a] C. Szegedy et al. “Going Deeper with Convolutions”. In: *CVPR*. 2015 (pages 441, 442).
- [Sze+15b] C. Szegedy, V. Vanhoucke, S. Ioffe, J. Shlens, and Z. Wojna. “Rethinking the Inception Architecture for Computer Vision”. In: (2015). arXiv: 1512.00567 [cs.CV] (page 441).
- [Tal07] N. Taleb. *The Black Swan: The Impact of the Highly Improbable*. Random House, 2007 (page 93).
- [Tan+15] J. Tang, M. Qu, M. Wang, M. Zhang, J. Yan, and Q. Mei. “Line: Large-scale information network embedding”. In: *Proceedings of the 24th International Conference on World Wide Web*. International World Wide Web Conferences Steering Committee, 2015, pp. 1067–1077 (page 712).
- [Tan+18] C. Tan, F. Sun, T. Kong, W. Zhang, C. Yang, and C. Liu. “A Survey on Deep Transfer Learning”. In: *ICANN*. 2018 (page 583).
- [TAS18] M. Teye, H. Azizpour, and K. Smith. “Bayesian Uncertainty Estimation for Batch Normalized Deep Networks”. In: *ICML*. 2018 (page 414).
- [Tay+20a] Y. Tay, M. Dehghani, D. Bahri, and D. Metzler. “Efficient Transformers: A Survey”. In: (Sept. 2020). arXiv: 2009.06732 [cs.LG] (pages 483, 484).

- [Tay+20b] Y. Tay et al. “Long Range Arena: A Benchmark for efficient Transformers”. In: *CoRR* (2020) (page 483).
- [TB97] L. Trefethen and D. Bau. *Numerical Linear Algebra*. SIAM, 1997 (pages 323, 749).
- [TB99] M. Tipping and C. Bishop. “Probabilistic principal component analysis”. In: *JRSSB* 21.3 (1999), pp. 611–622 (pages 628, 631).
- [TDP19] I. Tenney, D. Das, and E. Pavlick. “BERT Re-discovers the Classical NLP Pipeline”. In: *Proc. ACL*. 2019 (page 600).
- [Ten00] J. B. Tenenbaum. “Rules and Similarity in Concept Learning”. In: *NIPS*. 2000, pp. 59–65 (page 26).
- [Ten+11] J. Tenenbaum, C. Kemp, T. Griffiths, and N. Goodman. “How to Grow a Mind: Statistics, Structure, and Abstraction”. In: *Science* 6022 (2011), pp. 1279–1285 (page 33).
- [Ten99] J. Tenenbaum. “A Bayesian framework for concept learning”. PhD thesis. MIT, 1999 (pages 27, 29, 30, 32, 34, 42).
- [TF03] M. Tipping and A. Faul. “Fast marginal likelihood maximisation for sparse Bayesian models”. In: *AI/Stats.* 2003 (page 549).
- [Tho16] M. Thoma. “Creativity in Machine Learning”. In: (Jan. 2016). arXiv: 1601 . 03642 [cs.CV] (page 451).
- [Tho17] R. Thomas. *Computational Linear Algebra for Coders*. 2017 (page 749).
- [Tho+19] V. Thomas, F. Pedregosa, B. van Merriënboer, P.-A. Mangazol, Y. Bengio, and N. Le Roux. “Information matrices and generalization”. In: (June 2019). arXiv: 1906 . 07774 [cs.LG] (page 122).
- [Tho33] W. R. Thompson. “On the Likelihood that One Unknown Probability Exceeds Another in View of the Evidence of Two Samples”. In: *Biometrika* 25.3/4 (1933), pp. 285–294 (page 255).
- [Tib96] R. Tibshirani. “Regression shrinkage and selection via the lasso”. In: *J. Royal. Statist. Soc B* 58.1 (1996), pp. 267–288 (page 338).
- [Tip01] M. Tipping. “Sparse Bayesian learning and the relevance vector machine”. In: *JMLR* 1 (2001), pp. 211–244 (pages 363, 364, 542, 549).
- [Tit09] M. K. Titsias. “Variational Learning of Inducing Variables in Sparse Gaussian Processes”. In: *AISTATS*. 2009 (pages 529, 532).
- [Tit16] M. Titsias. “One-vs-Each Approximation to Softmax for Scalable Estimation of Probabilities”. In: *NIPS*. 2016, pp. 4161–4169 (page 295).
- [TK86] L. Tierney and J. Kadane. “Accurate approximations for posterior moments and marginal densities”. In: *JASA* 81.393 (1986) (page 225).
- [TMD12] A. Talhouk, K. Murphy, and A. Doucet. “Efficient Bayesian Inference for Multivariate Probit Models with Sparse Inverse Correlation Matrices”. In: *J. Comp. Graph. Statist.* 21.3 (2012), pp. 739–757 (page 387).
- [TMP20] A. Tsitsulin, M. Munkhoeva, and B. Perozzi. “Just SLAQ When You Approximate: Accurate Spectral Distances for Web-Scale Graphs”. In: *Proceedings of The Web Conference 2020*. WWW ’20. 2020, 2697–2703 (page 723).
- [TOB16] L. Theis, A. van den Oord, and M. Bethge. “A note on the evaluation of generative models”. In: *ICLR*. 2016 (page 13).
- [TP10] P. D. Turney and P. Pantel. “From Frequency to Meaning: Vector Space Models of Semantics”. In: *JAIR* 37 (2010), pp. 141–188 (page 298).
- [TP97] S. Thrun and L. Pratt, eds. *Learning to learn*. Kluwer, 1997 (page 588).
- [TS92] D. G. Terrell and D. W. Scott. “Variable kernel density estimation”. In: *Annals of Statistics* 20.3 (1992), 1236–1265 (page 507).
- [Tsa88] C. Tsallis. “Possible generalization of Boltzmann-Gibbs statistics”. In: *J. of Statistical Physics* 52 (1988), pp. 479–487 (page 376).
- [Tsi+18] A. Tsitsulin, D. Mottin, P. Karras, A. Bronstein, and E. Müller. “NetLSD: Hearing the Shape of a Graph”. In: *Proceedings of the 24th ACM SIGKDD International Conference on Knowledge Discovery & Data Mining*. KDD ’18. 2018, 2347–2356 (page 723).
- [TSL00] J. Tenenbaum, V. de Silva, and J. Langford. “A global geometric framework for nonlinear dimensionality reduction”. In: *Science* 290.550 (2000), pp. 2319–2323 (page 654).
- [Tur13] M. Turk. “Over Twenty Years of Eigenfaces”. In: *ACM Trans. Multimedia Comput. Commun. Appl.* 9.1s (Oct. 2013), 45:1–45:5 (page 619).
- [TV17] A. Tarvainen and H. Valpola. “Mean teachers are better role models: Weight-averaged consistency targets improve semi-supervised deep learning results”. In: *Advances in neural information processing systems*. 2017, pp. 1195–1204 (pages 604, 609).
- [TVW05] B. Turlach, W. Venables, and S. Wright. “Simultaneous Variable Selection”. In: *Technometrics* 47.3 (2005), pp. 349–363 (page 346).
- [TW18] J. Tang and K. Wang. “Personalized Top-N Sequential Recommendation via Convolutional Sequence Embedding”. In: *WSDM*. WSDM ’18. Marina Del Rey, CA, USA: Association for Computing Machinery, Feb. 2018, pp. 565–573 (page 702).
- [VJeng19] V. Tjeng, K. Xiao, and R. Tedrake. “Evaluating Robustness of Neural Networks with Mixed Integer Programming”. In: *ICLR*. 2019 (page 135).
- [S. Ubaru, J. Chen, and Y. Saad. “Fast Estimation of  $tr(f(A))$  via Stochastic Lanczos Quadrature”. In: *SIAM J. Matrix Anal. Appl.* 38.4 (Jan. 2017), pp. 1075–1099 (page 534).
- [D. Ulyanov, V. Lebedev, Andrea, and V. Lemitsky. “Texture Networks: Feed-forward Synthesis of Textures and Stylized Images”. In: *ICML*. 2016, pp. 1349–1357 (page 454).
- [Uur+17] V. Uurtio, J. M. Monteiro, J. Kandola, J. Shawe-Taylor, D. Fernandez-Reyes, and J. Rousu. “A Tutorial on Canonical Correla-

- tion Methods". In: *ACM Computing Surveys* (2017) (page 639).
- [UVL16] D. Ulyanov, A. Vedaldi, and V. Lempitsky. "Instance Normalization: The Missing Ingredient for Fast Styling". In: (2016). arXiv: 1607.08022 [cs.CV] (pages 435, 454).
- [Val00] H. Valpola. "Bayesian Ensemble Learning for Nonlinear Factor Analysis". PhD thesis. Helsinki University of Technology, 2000 (page 120).
- [Van06] L. Vandenberghe. *Applied Numerical Computing: Lecture notes*. 2006 (page 117).
- [Van14] J. VanderPlas. *Frequentism and Bayesianism III: Confidence, Credibility, and why Frequentism and Science do not Mix*. Blog post. 2014 (page 844).
- [Van18] J. Vanschoren. "Meta-Learning: A Survey". In: (Oct. 2018). arXiv: 1810.03548 [cs.LG] (page 589).
- [Vap98] V. Vapnik. *Statistical Learning Theory*. Wiley, 1998 (pages 836, 837, 839).
- [Vas+17] A. Vaswani et al. "Attention Is All You Need". In: *NIPS*. 2017 (pages 478, 480–483).
- [Vas+19] S. Vaswani, A. Mishkin, I. Laradji, M. Schmidt, G. Gidel, and S. Lacoste-Julien. "Painless Stochastic Gradient: Interpolation, Line-Search, and Convergence Rates". In: *NIPS*. Curran Associates, Inc., 2019, pp. 3727–3740 (page 125).
- [VBW15] S. S. Villar, J. Bowden, and J. Wason. "Multi-armed Bandit Models for the Optimal Design of Clinical Trials: Benefits and Challenges". en. In: *Stat. Sci.* 30.2 (2015), pp. 199–215 (page 249).
- [VD99] S. Vaithyanathan and B. Dom. "Model Selection in Unsupervised Learning, With Applications To Document Clustering". In: *ICML*. 1999 (page 669).
- [VEB09] N. Vinh, J. Epps, and J. Bailey. "Information Theoretic Measures for Clusterings Comparison: Is a Correction for Chance Necessary?" In: *ICML*. 2009 (page 669).
- [Vel+18] P. Veličković, G. Cucurull, A. Casanova, A. Romero, P. Lio, and Y. Bengio. "Graph attention networks". In: *International Conference on Learning Representations*. 2018 (page 716).
- [Vel+19] P. Veličković, W. Fedus, W. L. Hamilton, P. Liò, Y. Bengio, and R. D. Hjelm. "Deep Graph Infomax". In: *International Conference on Learning Representations*. 2019 (pages 719, 720).
- [VGS97] V. Vapnik, S. Golowich, and A. Smola. "Support vector method for function approximation, regression estimation, and signal processing". In: *NIPS*. 1997 (pages 536, 548).
- [Vig15] T. Vigen. *Spurious Correlations*. en. Gift edition. Hachette Books, May 2015 (page 802).
- [Vin+10a] P. Vincent, H. Larochelle, I. Lajoie, Y. Bengio, and P.-A. Manzagol. "Stacked Denoising Autoencoders: Learning Useful Representations in a Deep Network with a Local Denoising Criterion". In: *JMLR* 11 (Dec. 2010), pp. 3371–3408 (page 641).
- [Vin+10b] P. Vincent, H. Larochelle, I. Lajoie, Y. Bengio, and P.-A. Manzagol. "Stacked denoising autoencoders: Learning useful representations in a deep network with a local denoising criterion". In: *Journal of machine learning research* 11.Dec (2010), pp. 3371–3408 (page 585).
- [Vin+16] O. Vinyals, C. Blundell, T. Lillicrap, K. Kavukcuoglu, and D. Wierstra. "Matching Networks for One Shot Learning". In: *NIPS*. 2016 (page 591).
- [Vir10] S. Virtanen. "Bayesian exponential family projections". MA thesis. Aalto University, 2010 (page 637).
- [Vis+10] S. V. N. Vishwanathan, N. N. Schraudolph, R. Kondor, and K. M. Borgward. "Graph Kernels". In: *JMLR* 11 (2010), pp. 1201–1242 (page 520).
- [Vo+15] B.-N. Vo et al. *Multitarget tracking*. John Wiley and Sons, 2015 (page 495).
- [Vor+17] E. Vorontsov, C. Trabelsi, S. Kadouri, and C. Pal. "On orthogonality and learning recurrent networks with long term dependencies". In: *ICML*. 2017 (page 470).
- [Wal+20] C. Vondrick and A. Torralba. "Generating the Future with Adversarial Transformers". In: *CVPR*. 2017 (page 422).
- [Wal47] G. Valiant and P. Valiant. "Estimating the unseen: improved estimators for entropy and other properties". In: *NIPS*. 2013 (page 155).
- [Walmsley+20] M. Walmsley et al. "Galaxy Zoo: probabilistic morphology through Bayesian CNNs and active learning". In: *Monthly Notices Royal Astronomical Society* 491.2 (Jan. 2020), pp. 1554–1574 (page 615).
- [Wal47] A. Wald. "An Essentially Complete Class of Admissible Decision Functions". en. In: *Ann. Math. Stat.* 18.4 (Dec. 1947), pp. 549–555 (page 832).
- [Wan+15] J. Wang, W. Liu, S. Kumar, and S.-F. Chang. "Learning to Hash for Indexing Big Data - A Survey". In: *Proc. IEEE* (2015) (page 494).
- [Wan+17] Y. Wang et al. "Tacotron: Towards End-to-End Speech Synthesis". In: *Interspeech*. 2017 (page 474).
- [Wan+19] K. Wang, G. Pleiss, J. Gardner, S. Tyree, K. Q. Weinberger, and A. G. Wilson. "Exact Gaussian Processes on a Million Data Points". In: *NIPS*. 2019, pp. 14622–14632 (page 534).
- [Wan+20a] S. Wang, B. Z. Li, M. Khabsa, H. Fang, and H. Ma. "Linformer: Self-Attention with Linear Complexity". In: *CoRR* abs/2006.04768 (2020). arXiv: 2006.04768 (page 485).
- [Wan+20b] Y. Wang, Q. Yao, J. Kwok, and L. M. Ni. "Generalizing from a Few Examples: A Survey on Few-Shot Learning". In: *ACM Computing Surveys* 1.1 (2020) (page 590).
- [Wan+20c] Y. Wang, Y.-C. Chen, X. Tao, and J. Jia. "VC-Net: A Robust Approach to Blind Image Inpainting". In: *ECCV*. 2020 (page 71).
- [Wat10] S. Watanabe. "Asymptotic Equivalence of Bayes Cross Validation and Widely Applicable Information Criterion in Singular Learning Theory". In: *JMLR* 11 (Dec. 2010), pp. 3571–3594 (page 217).

- [Wat13] S. Watanabe. "A Widely Applicable Bayesian Information Criterion". In: *JMLR* 14 (2013), pp. 867–897 (page 217).
- [WCS08] M. Welling, C. Chemudugunta, and N. Suttor. "Deterministic Latent Variable Models and their Pitfalls". In: *ICDM*. 2008 (page 636).
- [WCZ16] D. Wang, P. Cui, and W. Zhu. "Structural deep network embedding". In: *Proceedings of the 22nd ACM SIGKDD international conference on Knowledge discovery and data mining*. ACM. 2016, pp. 1225–1234 (page 717).
- [Wei76] J. Weizenbaum. *Computer Power and Human Reason: From Judgment to Calculation*. en. 1st ed. W H Freeman & Co, Mar. 1976 (page 17).
- [Wen+16] W. Wen, C. Wu, Y. Wang, Y. Chen, and H. Li. "Learning Structured Sparsity in Deep Neural Networks". In: (2016). arXiv: [1608.03665 \[cs.NE\]](#) (page 418).
- [Wen18] L. Weng. "Attention? Attention!". In: *lilianweng.github.io/lil-log* (2018) (page 483).
- [Wen19] L. Weng. "Generalized Language Models". In: *lilianweng.github.io/lil-log* (2019) (page 598).
- [Wer74] P. Werbos. "Beyond regression: New Tools for Prediction and Analysis in the Behavioral Sciences". PhD thesis. Harvard, 1974 (page 404).
- [Wer90] P. J. Werbos. "Backpropagation Through Time: What It Does and How to Do It". In: *Proc. IEEE* 78.10 (1990), pp. 1550–1560 (page 469).
- [Wes03] M. West. "Bayesian Factor Regression Models in the "Large p, Small n" Paradigm". In: *Bayesian Statistics* 7 (2003) (page 637).
- [Wes87] M. West. "On scale mixtures of normal distributions". In: *Biometrika* 74 (1987), pp. 646–648 (page 72).
- [WF14] Z. Wang and N. de Freitas. "Theoretical Analysis of Bayesian Optimisation with Unknown Gaussian Process Hyper-Parameters". In: (June 2014). arXiv: [1406.7758 \[stat.ML\]](#) (page 526).
- [WF20] T. Wu and I. Fischer. "Phase Transitions for the Information Bottleneck in Representation Learning". In: *ICLR*. 2020 (page 662).
- [WH18] Y. Wu and K. He. "Group Normalization". In: *ECCV*. 2018 (pages 434, 435).
- [WH60] B. Widrow and M. E. Hoff. "Adaptive Switching Circuits". In: *1960 IRE WESCON Convention Record, Part 4*. IRE, 1960, pp. 96–104 (page 403).
- [WH97] M. West and J. Harrison. *Bayesian forecasting and dynamic models*. Springer, 1997 (page 366).
- [WI20] A. G. Wilson and P. Izmailov. "Bayesian Deep Learning and a Probabilistic Perspective of Generalization". In: *NIPS*. Feb. 2020 (pages 417, 420).
- [Wil14] A. G. Wilson. "Covariance kernels for fast automatic pattern discovery and extrapolation with Gaussian processes". PhD thesis. University of Cambridge, 2014 (page 515).
- [Wil20] A. G. Wilson. "The Case for Bayesian Deep Learning". In: (Jan. 2020). arXiv: [2001.10995 \[cs.LG\]](#) (page 42).
- [Win20] P. Winder. *Reinforcement Learning: Industrial Applications of Intelligent Agents*. en. 1st ed. O'Reilly Media, Dec. 2020 (page 15).
- [Wiy+19] R. R. Wiyatno, A. Xu, O. Dia, and A. de Berker. "Adversarial Examples in Modern Machine Learning: A Review". In: (Nov. 2019). arXiv: [1911.05268 \[cs.LG\]](#) (page 456).
- [WK18] E. Wong and Z. Kolter. "Provable defenses against adversarial examples via the convex outer adversarial polytope". In: *International Conference on Machine Learning*. PMLR. 2018, pp. 5286–5295 (page 459).
- [WL08] T. T. Wu and K. Lange. "Coordinate descent algorithms for lasso penalized regression". In: *Ann. Appl. Stat.* 2.1 (2008), pp. 224–244 (page 348).
- [WL16] R. L. Wasserstein and N. A. Lazar. "The ASA Statement on p-Values: Context, Process, and Purpose". In: *The American Statistician* 70.2 (Apr. 2016), pp. 129–133 (page 847).
- [WL17] W. Wang, H. Lee, and K. Livescu. "Deep Variational Canonical Correlation Analysis". In: *arXiv* (Nov. 2016) (page 639).
- [WLL16] D. R. Wilson and T. R. Martinez. "Reduction Techniques for Instance-Based Learning Algorithms". In: *Mach. Learn.* 38.3 (Mar. 2000), pp. 257–286 (page 494).
- [WM00] D. Wipf and S. Nagarajan. "A new view of automatic relevancy determination". In: *NIPS*. 2007 (page 365).
- [WN07] D. Wipf and S. Nagarajan. "Iterative Reweighted  $\ell_1$  and  $\ell_2$  Methods for Finding Sparse Solutions". In: *J. of Selected Topics in Signal Processing (Special Issue on Compressive Sensing)* 4.2 (2010) (page 365).
- [WN10] A. G. Wilson and H. Nickisch. "Kernel Interpolation for Scalable Structured Gaussian Processes (KISS-GP)". In: *ICML*. ICML'15. Lille, France: JMLR.org, 2015, pp. 1775–1784 (page 534).
- [WN15] S. Wright, R. Nowak, and M. Figueiredo. "Sparse reconstruction by separable approximation". In: *IEEE Trans. on Signal Processing* 57.7 (2009), pp. 2479–2493 (page 346).
- [WNF09] D. Wolpert. "Stacked Generalization". In: *Neural Networks* 5.2 (1992), pp. 241–259 (page 563).
- [WP19] S. Wiegreffe and Y. Pinter. "Attention is not not Explanation". In: *EMNLP*. 2019 (page 478).
- [WRC08] J. Weston, F. Ratle, and R. Collobert. "Deep learning via semi-supervised embedding". In: *Proceedings of the 25th international conference on Machine learning*. ACM. 2008, pp. 1168–1175 (page 720).
- [WRN10] D. Wipf, B. Rao, and S. Nagarajan. "Latent Variable Bayesian Models for Promoting Sparsity". In: *IEEE Transactions on Information Theory* (2010) (pages 364, 365).

- [WS09] K. Weinberger and L. Saul. “Distance Metric Learning for Large Margin Classification”. In: *JMLR* 10 (2009), pp. 207–244 (page 496).
- [WSH16] L. Wu, C. Shen, and A. van den Hengel. “PersonNet: Person Re-identification with Deep Convolutional Neural Networks”. In: (2016). arXiv: [1601.07255 \[cs.CV\]](#) (page 495).
- [WSS04] K. Q. Weinberger, F. Sha, and L. K. Saul. “Learning a kernel matrix for nonlinear dimensionality reduction”. In: *ICML*. 2004 (pages 656, 657).
- [WTN19] Y. Wu, G. Tucker, and O. Nachum. “The Laplacian in RL: Learning Representations with Efficient Approximations”. In: *ICLR*. 2019 (page 661).
- [Wu+16] Y. Wu et al. “Google’s Neural Machine Translation System: Bridging the Gap between Human and Machine Translation”. In: (Sept. 2016). arXiv: [1609.08144 \[cs.CL\]](#) (page 300).
- [Wu+19] Y. Wu, E. Winston, D. Kaushik, and Z. Lipton. “Domain Adaptation with Asymmetrically-Relaxed Distribution Alignment”. In: *ICML*. 2019 (page 588).
- [WVJ16] M. Wattenberg, F. Viégas, and I. Johnson. “How to Use t-SNE Effectively”. In: *Distill* 1.10 (Oct. 2016) (page 664).
- [WW12] Y. Wu and D. P. Wipf. “Dual-Space Analysis of the Sparse Linear Model”. In: *NIPS*. 2012 (page 364).
- [WW93] D. Wagner and F. Wagner. “Between min cut and graph bisection”. In: *Proc. 18th Intl. Symp. on Math. Found. of Comp. Sci.* 1993, pp. 744–750 (page 687).
- [XC19] Z. Xia and A. Chakrabarti. “Training Image Estimators without Image Ground-Truth”. In: *NIPS*. 2019 (page 71).
- [Xie+19a] Q. Xie, Z. Dai, E. Hovy, M.-T. Luong, and Q. V. Le. “Unsupervised Data Augmentation”. In: (Apr. 2019). arXiv: [1904.12848 \[cs.LG\]](#) (page 161).
- [Xie+19b] Q. Xie, Z. Dai, E. Hovy, M.-T. Luong, and Q. V. Le. “Unsupervised data augmentation for consistency training”. In: *arXiv preprint arXiv:1904.12848* (2019) (pages 604, 609).
- [Xie+20] Q. Xie, M.-T. Luong, E. Hovy, and Q. V. Le. “Self-training with noisy student improves imagenet classification”. In: *Proceedings of the IEEE/CVF Conference on Computer Vision and Pattern Recognition*. 2020, pp. 10687–10698 (page 603).
- [XJ96] L. Xu and M. I. Jordan. “On Convergence Properties of the EM Algorithm for Gaussian Mixtures”. In: *Neural Computation* 8 (1996), pp. 129–151 (page 141).
- [XRV17] H. Xiao, K. Rasul, and R. Vollgraf. “Fashion-MNIST: a Novel Image Dataset for Benchmarking Machine Learning Algorithms”. In: (2017). arXiv: [1708.07747 \[stat.ML\]](#) (pages 436, 437).
- [XT07] F. Xu and J. Tenenbaum. “Word learning as Bayesian inference”. In: *Psychological Review* 114.2 (2007) (page 26).
- [Xu+15] K. Xu et al. “Show, Attend and Tell: Neural Image Caption Generation with Visual Attention”. In: *ICML*. 2015 (page 478).
- [Yal+19] I. Z. Yahniz, H. Jégou, K. Chen, M. Paluri, and D. Mahajan. “Billion-scale semi-supervised learning for image classification”. In: *arXiv preprint arXiv:1905.00546* (2019) (page 603).
- [Yan+14] X. Yang, Y. Guo, Y. Liu, and H. Steck. “A Survey of Collaborative Filtering Based Social Recommender Systems”. In: *Comput. Commun.* 41 (Mar. 2014), pp. 1–10 (page 693).
- [Yar95] D. Yarowsky. “Unsupervised word sense disambiguation rivaling supervised methods”. In: *33rd annual meeting of the association for computational linguistics*. 1995, pp. 189–196 (page 604).
- [Yadav+B19] C. Yadav and L. Bottou. “Cold Case: The Lost MNIST Digits”. In: *arXiv* (May 2019) (pages 71, 73, 436).
- [YB19] Z. Yang, W. W. Cohen, and R. Salakhutdinov. “Revisiting semi-supervised learning with graph embeddings”. In: *Proceedings of the 33rd International Conference on International Conference on Machine Learning-Volume 48*. JMLR. org. 2016, pp. 40–48 (page 720).
- [Yeu91] R. W. Yeung. “A new outlook on Shannon’s information measures”. In: *IEEE Trans. Inf. Theory* 37.3 (May 1991), pp. 466–474 (page 163).
- [YHJ09] D. Yan, L. Huang, and M. I. Jordan. “Fast approximate spectral clustering”. In: *15th ACM Conf. on Knowledge Discovery and Data Mining*. 2009 (page 688).
- [Yin+19a] D. Yin, R. G. Lopes, J. Shlens, E. D. Cubuk, and J. Gilmer. “A Fourier Perspective on Model Robustness in Computer Vision”. In: *NIPS*. 2019 (page 459).
- [Yin+19b] P. Yin, J. Lyu, S. Zhang, S. Osher, Y. Qi, and J. Xin. “Understanding Straight-Through Estimator in Training Activation Quantized Neural Nets”. In: *ICLR*. 2019 (pages 138, 139).
- [YK06] A. Yuille and D. Kersten. “Vision as Bayesian inference: analysis by synthesis?” en. In: *Trends Cogn. Sci.* 10.7 (July 2006), pp. 301–308 (page 25).
- [Yu+16] F. Yu and V. Koltun. “Multi-Scale Context Aggregation by Dilated Convolutions”. In: *ICLR*. 2016 (page 446).
- [YL06] M. Yuan and Y. Lin. “Model Selection and Estimation in Regression with Grouped Variables”. In: *J. Royal Statistical Society, Series B* 68.1 (2006), pp. 49–67 (page 345).
- [Yon19] E. Yong. “The Human Brain Project Hasn’t Lived Up to Its Promise”. In: *The Atlantic* (July 2019) (page 404).
- [YK16] J. Yosinski, J. Clune, A. Nguyen, T. Fuchs, and H. Lipson. “Understanding Neural Networks Through Deep Visualization”. In: *ICML Workshop on Deep Learning*. 2015 (page 450).
- [Yos+15] S. Yu, K. Yu, V. Tresp, K. H-P., and M. Wu. “Supervised probabilistic principal component analysis”. In: *KDD*. 2006 (page 637).

- [Yu+16] F. X. X. Yu, A. T. Suresh, K. M. Choromanski, D. N. Holtmann-Rice, and S. Kumar. "Orthogonal Random Features". In: *NIPS*. Curran Associates, Inc., 2016, pp. 1975–1983 (page 535).
- [Yua+19] X. Yuan, P. He, Q. Zhu, and X. Li. "Adversarial Examples: Attacks and Defenses for Deep Learning". en. In: *IEEE Trans. Neural Networks and Learning Systems* 30.9 (Sept. 2019), pp. 2805–2824 (page 456).
- [YWG12] S. E. Yuksel, J. N. Wilson, and P. D. Gader. "Twenty Years of Mixture of Experts". In: *IEEE Trans. on neural networks and learning systems* (2012) (page 422).
- [Zah+18] M. Zaheer, S. Reddi, D. Sachan, S. Kale, and S. Kumar. "Adaptive Methods for Nonconvex Optimization". In: *NIPS*. Curran Associates, Inc., 2018, pp. 9815–9825 (page 129).
- [Zah+20] M. Zaheer et al. "Big Bird: Transformers for Longer Sequences". In: *CoRR* abs/2007.14062 (2020). arXiv: 2007.14062 (page 485).
- [ZDM19] H. Zhang, Y. N. Dauphin, and T. Ma. "Fixup Initialization: Residual Learning Without Normalization". In: *ICLR*. 2019 (page 415).
- [Zei12] M. D. Zeiler. "ADADELTA: An Adaptive Learning Rate Method". In: (Dec. 2012). arXiv: 1212.5701 [cs.LG] (page 128).
- [Zel76] A. Zellner. "Bayesian and non-Bayesian analysis of the regression model with multivariate student-t error terms". In: *JASA* 71.354 (1976), pp. 400–405 (page 334).
- [Zel86] A. Zellner. "On assessing prior distributions and Bayesian regression analysis with g-prior distributions". In: *Bayesian inference and decision techniques, Studies of Bayesian and Econometrics and Statistics volume 6*. North Holland, 1986 (page 357).
- [ZG02] X. Zhu and Z. Ghahramani. *Learning from labeled and unlabeled data with label propagation*. Tech. rep. CALD tech report CMU-CALD-02-107. CMU, 2002 (pages 607, 608, 706, 713).
- [ZG06] M. Zhu and A. Ghodsi. "Automatic dimensionality selection from the scree plot via the use of profile likelihood". In: *Computational Statistics & Data Analysis* 51 (2006), pp. 918–930 (page 625).
- [ZH05] H. Zou and T. Hastie. "Regularization and Variable Selection via the Elastic Net". In: *JRSSB* 67.2 (2005), pp. 301–320 (page 347).
- [Zha+17a] C. Zhang, S. Bengio, M. Hardt, B. Recht, and O. Vinyals. "Understanding deep learning requires rethinking generalization". In: *ICLR*. 2017 (page 437).
- [Zha+17b] H. Zhang, M. Cisse, Y. N. Dauphin, and D. Lopez-Paz. "mixup: Beyond Empirical Risk Minimization". In: *ICLR*. 2017 (page 582).
- [Zha+18] Z.-Q. Zhao, P. Zheng, S.-T. Xu, and X. Wu. "Object Detection with Deep Learning: A Review". In: (July 2018). arXiv: 1807 . 05511 [cs.CV] (page 444).
- [Zha+19a] A. Zhang, Z. Lipton, M. Li, and A. Smola. *Dive into deep learning*. 2019 (pages 41, 392, 410, 428, 429, 432–434, 439, 444, 453, 469–473, 480, 699).
- [Zha+19b] J. Zhang, Y. Zhao, M. Saleh, and P. J. Liu. "PEGASUS: Pre-training with Extracted Gap-sentences for Abstractive Summarization". In: (Dec. 2019). arXiv: 1912 . 08777 [cs.CL] (page 479).
- [Zha+19c] S. Zhang, L. Yao, A. Sun, and Y. Tay. "Deep Learning Based Recommender System: A Survey and New Perspectives". In: *ACM Comput. Surv.* 52.1 (Feb. 2019), pp. 1–38 (pages 693, 702).
- [Zho+04] D. Zhou, O. Bousquet, T. N. Lal, J. Weston, and B. Schölkopf. "Learning with local and global consistency". In: *Advances in neural information processing systems*. 2004, pp. 321–328 (page 713).
- [Zho+18] D. Zhou, Y. Tang, Z. Yang, Y. Cao, and Q. Gu. "On the Convergence of Adaptive Gradient Methods for Nonconvex Optimization". In: (Aug. 2018). arXiv: 1808 . 05671 [cs.LG] (page 129).
- [ZHT06] H. Zou, T. Hastie, and R. Tibshirani. "Sparse principal component analysis". In: *JCGS* 15.2 (2006), pp. 262–286 (page 633).
- [Zhu05] X. Zhu. "Semi-supervised learning with graphs". PhD thesis. Carnegie Mellon University, 2005 (page 608).
- [Zhu+19] F. Zhuang et al. "A Comprehensive Survey on Transfer Learning". In: (Nov. 2019). arXiv: 1911.02685 [cs.LG] (page 583).
- [Zie+05] C.-N. Ziegler, S. M. McNee, J. A. Konstan, and G. Lausen. "Improving recommendation lists through topic diversification". In: *WWW*. WWW '05. Chiba, Japan: Association for Computing Machinery, May 2005, pp. 22–32 (page 694).
- [ZK16] S. Zagoruyko and N. Komodakis. "Wide Residual Networks". In: *BMVC*. 2016 (page 443).
- [ZL05] Z.-H. Zhou and M. Li. "Tri-training: Exploiting unlabeled data using three classifiers". In: *IEEE Transactions on knowledge and Data Engineering* 17.11 (2005), pp. 1529–1541 (page 607).
- [ZL17] B. Zoph and Q. V. Le. "Neural Architecture Search with Reinforcement Learning". In: *ICLR*. 2017 (page 472).
- [ZLZ20] D. Zhang, Y. Li, and Z. Zhang. "Deep metric learning with spherical embedding". In: *NIPS*. 2020 (page 503).
- [ZMG19] G. Zhang, J. Martens, and R. B. Grosse. "Fast Convergence of Natural Gradient Descent for Over-Parameterized Neural Networks". In: *NIPS*. 2019, pp. 8082–8093 (page 120).
- [ZMY19] D. Zabihzadeh, R. Monsefi, and H. S. Yazdi. "Sparse Bayesian approach for metric learning in latent space". In: *Knowledge-Based Systems* 178 (Aug. 2019), pp. 11–24 (page 497).
- [Zoe07] O. Zoeter. "Bayesian generalized linear models in a terabyte world". In: *Proc. 5th International Symposium on image and Signal Processing and Analysis*. 2007 (pages 314, 315).

- [ZRY05] P. Zhao, G. Rocha, and B. Yu. *Grouped and Hierarchical Model Selection through Composite Absolute Penalties*. Tech. rep. UC Berkeley, 2005 (page 346).
- [ZS14] H. Zen and A Senior. “Deep mixture density networks for acoustic modeling in statistical parametric speech synthesis”. In: *ICASSP*. May 2014, pp. 3844–3848 (page 424).
- [ZW11] D Zoran and Y Weiss. “From learning models of natural image patches to whole image restoration”. In: *ICCV*. 2011 (pages 71, 72).
- [ZY08] J.-H. Zhao and P. L. H. Yu. “Fast ML Estimation for the Mixture of Factor Analyzers via an ECM Algorithm”. In: *IEEE. Trans. on Neural Networks* 19.11 (2008) (page 630).